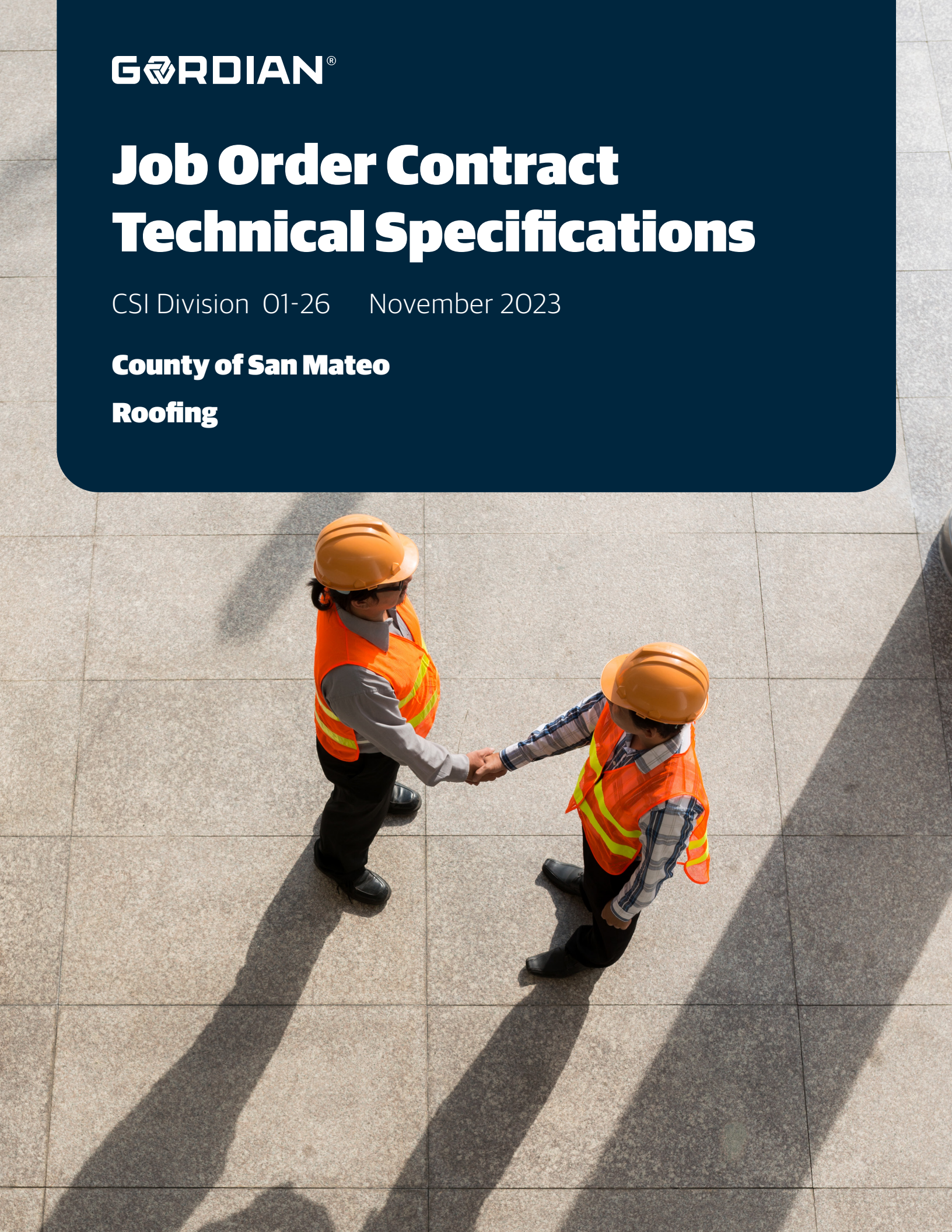
GORDIAN®

Job Order Contract Technical Specifications

CSI Division 01-26 November 2023

County of San Mateo

Roofing



This Page Intentionally Left Blank

01 General Requirements

02 Existing Conditions

03 Concrete

05 Metals

06 Wood, Plastics, and Composites

07 Thermal And Moisture Protection

08 Openings

22 Plumbing

23 Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC)

26 Electrical

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 22 16 00 - NO SPECIFICATION REQUIRED

1.1 GENERAL

A. A separate specification is not required for this item. The description given in the line item of the Construction Task Catalog completely defines the item.

1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION - (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 22 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 22 20 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 22 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 31 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 42 13 00 - ABBREVIATIONS, ACRONYMS, DEFINITIONS, AND SYMBOLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers abbreviations, acronyms, definitions, and symbols used in the Contract Documents.

B. Unit of Measure Definitions

1. Following is a list of Industry Standard abbreviations.

A	Area Square Feet; Ampere
AB	Anchor Bolt
ABC	Aggregate Base Course
ABS	Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene
AC	Alternating Current; Air-Conditioning; Asphaltic Concrete; Plywood Grade A & C
ACFM	Actual Cubic Feet Per Minute
ACM	Asbestos Containing Material
ACP	Asphaltic Concrete Paving
ACR	Acre
ACZA	Ammoniacal Copper Zinc Arsenate
AD	Plywood, Grade A & D
ADDL	Additional
ADJ	Adjustable
ADMIN	Administer; Administration
AGG	Aggregate
AH	Ampere Hours
AHM	Ampere-Hour Meter
AHU	Air Handling Unit
AIC	Amperes Interrupting Capacity
AL	Aluminum
ALT	Alternate
AMP	Ampere
AMT	Amount
AOT	Adjusted Oxygen Transfer
APP	Attactic Polypropylene
APPROX	Approximate
Apt.	Apartment
ART	Articulated
ASB	Asbestos
ASJ	All Surface Jacketing
Avg.	Average
AWG	American Wire Gauge
BAG	Bag
BBL	Barrel
B&B	Grade B and Better; Balled & Burlapped
B&S	Bell and Spigot
B&W	Black and White
BC	Between Centers
BCY	Bank Cubic Yard
BDL	Bundle
BD FT	Board Feet
BEV	Bevel/Beveled
BF	Board Feet
BFP	Boiler Feed Pump
BHN	Brinell Hardness Number
BHP	Boiler Horsepower; Brake Horsepower
BI	Black Iron
Bit.	Bituminous
Bitum.	Bituminous
Bk.	Backed
Brkrs.	Breakers
Bldg.	Building
BLK	Black; Block
BM	Bank Measure; Beam
BOD	Biochemical Oxygen Demand
BOX	Box (each)
BR	Bedroom
Brg.	Bearing
BRK	Brick
BTFLY VLV	Butterfly Valve
BTR	Better (Lumber)
BTU	British Thermal Units
BTU/HR	British Thermal Units per Hour
BUR	Built Up Roof
BW	Butt Weld
BWG	Birmingham Wire Gauge
BX	Interlocked Armored Cable
C	Centigrade; Conductance; Conductivity, Hundred
CA	Corrosion Allowance
Cab.	Cabinet
CAP	Capacity
CB	Circuit Breaker
CC	Center to Center
CCA	Chromate Copper Arsenate
CCF	Hundred Cubic Feet

CCY	Compacted Cubic Yard
cd	Candela
cd/sf	Candela per Square Foot
CF	Cubic Foot (Feet)
CFM	Cubic Feet per Minute
CHG	Charge
CHW	Chilled Water; Commercial Hot Water
CI	Cast Iron
CIP	Cast in Place; Cast Iron Pipe
CIRC	Circulating; Circuit
CLF	Hundred Linear Feet; Current Limiting Fuse
CLP	Cross Linked Polyethylene
cm	Centimeter
CMP	Corrugated Metal Pipe
CMPA	Corrugated Metal Pipe - Arched
CMU	Concrete Masonry Unit
CO	Carbon Monoxide
CO2	Carbon Dioxide
COL	Column
Comb	Combination
Compr	Compressor
CONC	Concrete
CONSTR	Construction
Cont	Continuous; Continued
Corr	Corrugated
CP	Chrome Plated
CPE	Chlorinated Polyethylene
Cplg.	Coupling
CPM	Cycles per Minute
CPM	Critical Path Method
CPS	Centipoise
CPRSR	Compressor
CPVC	Chlorinated Polyvinyl Chloride
CS	Carbon Steel
CSF	Hundred Square Feet
CSPE	ChloroSulphinated Polyethylene
CSS	Cast Semi Steel
CT	Current Transformer
CTB	Cement Treated Base
CTR	Center
CU FT	Cubic Foot
CU IN	Cubic Inch
CU YD	Cubic Yard
CW	Chilled Water; Cold Water
CWR	Chilled Water Return
CWS	Chilled Water Supply
CWT	Hundred Weight
CY	Cubic Yard (27 cu. ft.); Cycle
CYH	Cubic Yards Per Hour
Cyl	Cylinder
d	Penny (nail size)
D	Deep; Depth; Discharge
Dis.	Discharge
Disch.	Discharge
DB	Dry Bulb; Decibel
DBL	Double
DC	Direct Current
DCS	Distributed Control System
DDC	Direct Digital Control
Demob	Demobilization
DF	Douglas Fir
DFT	Dry Film Thickness
DH	Double Hung
DHW	Domestic Hot Water
DI	Ductile Iron
D/P	Differential Pressure
DIA	Diameter
Diam	Diameter
Diag.	Diagonal
Distrib.	Distribution
DL	Dead Load; Diesel
DLH	Deep Long Span Bar Joist
DPST	Double Pole, Single Throw
DS	Double Strength
DSA	Double Strength A Quality Glass
DSB	Double Strength B Quality Glass
DWV	Drain, Waste, Vent Piping
DX	Deluxe White, Direct Expansion
dyn	Dyne
e	Eccentricity
E	Electrical Grade (Fiberglass Construction)
EA	Each
Econ.	Economy
ECR	Electrical Grade, Corrosion Resistant (Fiberglass Construction)
EDP	Electronic Data Processing
EDR	Equiv. Direct Radiation
EG	Electro Galvanized
EIFS	Exterior Insulation Finish System
ELEC	Electric; Electrical
Elev.	Elevator; Elevating
EM	Electron Microscopy
EMT	Electric Metallic Tubing; Thin Wall Conduit
Eng.	Engine, Engineered
EPDM	Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer
EPS	Expanded Polystyrene
EQL	Equally
Equip.	Equipment
ERW	Electrical Resistance Welded
EROPS	Enclosed Roll Over Protection System
ES	Energy Saver
Est.	Estimated
EW	Each Way
EWT	Entering Water Temperature

Excav.	Excavation
EXH	Exhaust
Exp.	Expansion; Exposure
EXP JT	Expansion Joint
Ext.	Exterior
F	Fahrenheit; Female; Fill
f	Fiber stress
f_c	Compressive Stress in Concrete
f_y	Minimum Yield Stress of Steel
f'_m	Compressive Strength of Masonry
F&D	Flanged-and-Dished
F&I	Furnished and Installed
Fab.	Fabricated
FAD	Free Air Delivery
FBGS	Fiberglass
FC	Footcandles
FCXP	Fan Cooled Explosion Proof
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
FEP	Fluorinated Ethylene Propylene (Teflon)
FF	Flat Face
Fig.	Figure
Fin.	Finished
FL	Full Load
FLDG	Folding
Fl. Oz.	Fluid Ounces
Flr.	Floor
FM	Frequency Modulation; Factory Mutual
Frmg.	Framing
Fndtn.	Foundation
FT	Foot, Feet
FTNG(S)	Fitting(s)
FLG	Flange
FOB	Freight on Board
Fount.	Fountain
FPM	Feet Per Minute
FPS	Feet Per Second
FPT	Female Pipe Thread
FRP	Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic
FS	Forged Steel
FSC	Cast Body, Cast Switch Box
Ftg.	Footing
Ft. Lb.	Foot Pound
Furn.	Furniture
FVNR	Full Voltage Non-Reversing
FXM	Female by Male
G	Gravity
g	Gram
GA	Gauge or Gage
G & A	General and Administrative
GAL	Gallon
Gal./Min.	Gallon per Minute
GALV	Galvanized
GBSD	Gear Box Sheave Diameter
Gen.	General
GFCI	Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter
GFR	Ground Fault Relay
GPD	Gallons per Day
GPH	Gallon per Hour
GPM	Gallon per Minute
GR	Grade
Grnd.	Ground
GSF	Ground Square Foot
GVW	Gross Vehicle Weight
H	High, Height; High Strength Bar Joist
HC	Handicapped; High Capacity
HD	High Density; Heavy Duty
HDO	High Density Overlay
HDPE	High Density Polyethylene
Hdr.	Header
Hdw.	Hardware
HEPA	High Efficiency Particulate Air
Hg	Mercury
HIC	High Interrupting Capacity
HM	Hollow Metal
HNDL	Handle
HO	High Output; Heel Outlet
Horiz.	Horizontal
HP	High Pressure;Horse Power
HPF	High Pressure Factor
HPL	High Pressure Laminate
HR	Hour
HRS	Hot-Rolled Steel
HS	High Speed; High Strength
HSC	High Short Circuit
HSLA	High Strength Low Alloy
HT	Hospital Tips; Height
Htg.	Heating
Htrs.	Heaters
HVAC	Heating, Ventilating & Air Conditioning
Hvy.	Heavy
HW	Hot Water
HWR	Hot Water Return
HWS	Hot Water Supply
HWT	Hundred Carton Weight
Hyd.	Hydraulic
Hydr.	Hydraulic
HZ	Hertz (cycles)
I	Moment of Inertia
IC	Interrupt Capacity
ICFM	Inlet Cubic Feet per Minute
ID	Inside Diameter
I.D.	Identification; Inside Dimension
IF	Inside Frosted
IMC	Intermediate Metal Conduit
IN	Inch
IN LB	Inch Pound
IN WC	Inches Water Column

Incan.	Incandescent
Incl.	Include, Including
Inst.	Install, Installation
Insul.	Insulation, Insulated
Int.	Interior
INTSCT	Intersect
IP	Iron Pipe
IPS	International Pipe Standard Iron Pipe Size Inches per Second
IPT	Iron Pipe Threaded
ISP	Inlet Steam Pressure
IW	Indirect Waste
J	Joule
JOB	Job
JOC	Job Order Contracting
JT	Joint
K	Thousand; Thousand Pounds; Heavy Wall Copper Tubing; Kelvin
KAH	Thousand Amp Hours
KD	Kiln Dried; Knocked Down
KDAT	Kiln Dried After Treatment
Kip	1000 Pounds
KO	Knockout
Km	Kilometer
KLF	Kips per Linear Foot
KSF	Kips per Square Foot
KSI	Kips per Square Inch
kA	KiloAmp
kg	Kilogram
kHz	Kilohertz
kJ	Kilojoule
kV	Kilovolt
kVA	Kilovolt Ampere (1,000 volt amps)
KVAR	Kilovar (Reactance)
kW	Kilowatt
kWh	Kilowatt Hour
L	Length; Long; Medium Wall Copper Tubing
L&E	Labor and Equipment
LAB	Labor
LAN	Lane
LAT	Latitude
LAV	Lavatory
L.B.	Load Bearing; L Conduit Body
LB	Pound (Force or Mass)
LB/HR	Pounds per Hour
LBS	Pounds
LBSF	Pounds per Square Foot
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
LCL	Less Than Carload Lot
LCY	Loose Cubic Yard
LE	Leading Edge; Lead Equivalent
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LEL	Lower Explosive Limit
LF	Linear Foot
LFD	Linear Feet Per Day
LFTL	Lineal Feet Tube Length
Lge.	Large; Long
LH	Labor Hours; Long Span Bar Joist
LIN	Linear
LL	Live Load
LLD	Lamp Lumen Depreciation
LNG	Liquid Natural Gas
LOA	Length Over All
L-O-L	Lateralolet
LP(G)	Liquid Propane (Gas)
LS	Low Speed; Lump Sum
Lt	Light
Lt Ga	Light Gauge
LTL	Less than Truck Load
Lt Wt	Light Weight
LV	Low Voltage
lm	Lumen
lm/sf	Lumen per square foot
lm/W	Lumen per Watt
m	Meter
m3/H	Cubic Meters per Hour
mA	Milliampere
m/S	Meters per Second
M	Thousand; Male; Light Wall Copper Tubing
MATL	Material
MAX	Maximum
Mach	Machine
Mag. Str.	Magnetic Starter
Maint.	Maintenance
Mat	Material
Mat'l;	Material
Max.	Maximum
Mb	Million Bytes (characters(
MBF	Thousand Board Feet
MBH	Thousand BTU per Hour
MBtu	Thousand British Thermal Units
MC	Metal Clad Cable
MCF	Thousand Cubic Feet
MCM	Thousand Circular Mills
MCP	Motor Circuit Protector
MD	Medium Duty
MDO	Medium Density Overlaid
Med.	Medium
MF	Thousand Feet
MF3	Thousand Cubic Feet
Mfg.	Manufacturing
Mfrs.	Manufacturers
Mg	Milligram

MG	Market Grade
MGD	Million Gallons per Day
MGPH	Thousand Gallons per Hour
MH	Manhole; Manhour; Metal Halide
MHz	MegaHertz
Mi	Mile
MI	Malleable Iron; Mineral Insulated
MIN	Minimum; Minute
MISC	Miscellaneous
ml	Milliliter; Mainline
MLF	Thousand Linear Feet
mm	Millimeter
MO	Month
Mobil.	Mobilization
Mog.	Mogul Base
MPH	Miles Per Hour
MPT	Male Pipe Thread
MRT	Mile Round Trip
ms	Millisecond
MSD	Motor Sheave Diameter
MSF	Thousand Square Feet
MSY	Thousand Square Yards
MT	Mount
MTD	Mounted
MTG	Mounting
MTR	Mill Test Report
MVA	Million Volt Ampere
MVAR	Million Volt Amperes Reactance
MV	Megavolt
MW	Megawatt
MXM	Male by Male
MYD	Thousand Yards
N	Natural; North
nA	Nanoampere
NA	Not Applicable
NC	Normally Closed
NEHB	Bolted Circuit Breaker to 600V
NDT	Non Destructive Testing
NIOSH	National Alloy
NLB	Non-Load Bearing
NM	Non-Metallic Cable
nm	Nanometer
NO	Normally Open
No.	Number
NOM	Nominal
NQOD	Combination Plug-on/Bolt-on Circuit Breaker to 240V
NRC	Noise Reduction Coefficient
NPT	National Pipe Thread
NPS	Nominal Pipe Size
NRP	Non-Removable Pins
NRS	Non-Rising Stem
ns	Nanosecond
NTE	Note
NTP	National Taper Pipe (Thread)
nW	Nanowatt
OAL	Overall Length
OB	Opposing Blade
OC	On Center
OD	Outside Diameter
O.D.	Outside Dimension
ODP	Open Drip Roof
ODS	Overhead Distribution System
OEM	Original Equipment Manufacturer
OG	Ogee
OH	Overhead
OH&P	Overhead and Profit
OHL	Over Hung Load
Oper.	Operator
Opng.	Opening
OPR	Operating
Orna.	Ornamental
OSA	Outside Air
OSB	Oriented Strand Board
OS & Y	Outside Screw and Yoke
OUT	Outlet or Output (each)
Ovhd.	Overhead
OWG	Oil, Water or Gas
OWSJ	Open Web Steel Joist
OZ	Ounce
P	Pole; Applied Load; Projection
p	Page
pp	Pages
PAPR	Powered Air Purifying Respirator
PAR	Weatherproof Reflector
PB	Push Button
PC	Personal Computer; Piece;
PCs	Pieces
P.C.	Portland Cement; Power Connector
PCF	Pounds per Cubic Foot
PCM	Phase Contrast Microscopy
PE	Professional Engineer; Plain End Porcelain Enamel; Polyethylene;
PERF	Perforated
PH	Phase
PI	Pressure Injected
PID	Programmable Integral Derivative Controller
PKG	Package
PL	Plate
PLC	Programmable Loop Controller
PLM	Polarized Light Microscopy
PLTC	Power Limited Tray Cable
PLY	Plywood
PNEU	Pneumatic
PNTD	Painted
POA	Priced On Application/Priced On Approval
PESB	Pre-engineered Steel Building

PPD Pounds Per Day
PP; PPL Polypropylene
PPM Parts Per Million
PPS Polyphenylene Sulfide
PR Pair
Prefab. Prefabricated
Prefin. Prefinished
PROGEN® Proposal Generator Software for Job Order Contracting
PROP Propelled; Propeller
PSF Pounds Per Square Foot
PSI Pounds Per Square Inch
PSIA Pounds Per Square Inch Atmosphere
PSIG Pounds Per Square Inch Gauge
PSP Plastic Sewer Pipe
PT Power or Potential Transformer
Pt. Pint
Ptns. Partitions
P&T Pressure & Temperature
PTFE Polytetrafluoroethylene
Pu Ultimate Load
PV Photovoltaic
PVA Polyvinyl Acrylate
PVC Polyvinyl Chloride
PVDC Polyvinylidene Chloride
PVDF Polyvinylidene Fluoride
PVF Polyvinyl Fluoride
Pvmt. Pavement
PVQ Pressure Vessel Quality
Pwr. Power

Q Quantity Heat Flow
QA Quality Assurance
QC Quality Control; Quick Coupling
QT Quart
Quan. Quantity
Qty. Quantity

R Thermal Resistance
R/L Random Lengths
R/W/L Random Widths and Lengths
RA Return Air; Registered Architect
RCP Reinforced Concrete Pipe
Rect. Rectangle
REINF Reinforced/Reinforcing
Req'd Required
RF Raised Face
RGH Rough
RGS Rigid Galvanized Steel
RH Relative Humidity
RHW Rubber, Heat & Water Resistant; Residential Hot Water
rms Root Mean Square
RND Round
ROL Roll (each)
ROM Room
ROPS Roll Over Protection System
ROW Row
R.O.W. Right of Way
RPM Revolutions Per Minute
RR Direct Burial Feeder Conduit
RS Rapid Start
RSC Rigid Steel Conduit
RSR Riser (Per Rise)
RT Round Trip
RTD Resistance Temperature Detector
RTJ Ring Type Joint
RTRP Reinforced Thermoset Resin Piping
RVT Reinforced Vinyl Tile

S Suction; Single Entrance; South
S1S2E Surfaced 1 side, 2 Edges
S2S Surfaced 2 Sides
S4S Surfaced 4 Sides
Sa Sack
SA Supply Air
SBS Styrene Butyl Styrene
Scaf. Scaffolding
SCFH Standard Cubic Foot Per Hour
SCFM Standard Cubic Foot per Minute
SCH Schedule
SCR Modular Brick
SCRD Screwed
SD Sound Deadening
SDR Standard Dimension Brick; Size To Diameter Ratio
SE Surfaced Edge; Semi-Elliptical
SEA Seat
SER Service Entrance Cable
SEU Service Entrance Cable
SET Set
SF Square Foot/Feet
SFCA Square Feet of Form in Contact with Concrete
SHTS Sheets
SI Square Inch
SIS Synthetic Heat-Resistant
SLDR Solder
SLH Super Long Span Bar Joist
SN Solid Neutral
S-O-L Socketolet
SP Self-Propelled; Single Pole; Space; Standpipe
Static Pressure (measured in inches of water);
SPDT Single Pole, Double Throw
SPGR Specific Gravity
SPWG Static Pressure Water Gauge
SQ Square;
Hundred Square Feet (10' x 10' area)

SQ FT Square Foot/Square Feet
SQ IN Square Inch
SQ YD Square Yard
SS Stainless Steel; Single Strength
SSB Single Strength B Quality Glass
SSL Self Sealing Lap
STC Sound Transmission Class
STD Standard
STK Select Tight Knot
STP Stop (each); Standard Temperature & Pressure
SURF Surface
STL Steel
SURF Surface
SW Seam Weld
SW Switch
SWBD Switchboard
SWS Segmentally Welded Steel
SWSI Single Width, Single Inlet
SY Square Yard
SYN Synthetic
SYP Southern Yellow Pine
SYS System

T Thick; Temperature; Ton
T&C Threaded and Coupled
T&G Tongue and Grove
TBC Tensile Bolt Cloth
TBE Threaded Both Ends
TC Terra Cotta
TCLP Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure
TDS Total Dissolved Solids
TEAO Totally Enclosed Air Over
TEFC Totally Enclosed Fan Cooled
TETC Totally Enclosed Tube Cooled
TFE Tetrafluoroethylene (Teflon)
THHN Nylon Jacketed Wire
THK Thick
THKNS Thickness
THW Insulated Strand Wire
THWN Nylon Jacketed Wire
TI Titanium
TL Truckload
TM Track Mounted
T-O-L Threadolet
TON Ton
Tot. Total
TPH Tons Per Hour
Transf. Transformer
TSHP Total Shaft Horse Power
T'STAT Thermostat
TV Television
TW Thermoplastic Water Resistant Wire

UA Unequal Angle
UCI Uniform Construction Index
UF Underground Feeder
UHF Ultra High Frequency
UI United Inch
UNC Unified Coarse (Threads)
USP United States Primed
UTP Unshielded Twisted Pair
UV Under Voltage

V Volt
VA Volt Amperes
VAV Variable Air Volume
VCT Vinyl Composition Tile
Vert. Vertical
VF Vinyl Faced
VHF Very High Frequency
VLF Vertical Linear Foot
VLV Valve
Vol. Volume
VRP Vinyl Reinforced Polyester

w/ With
W Watt; Width; Wire; West
WB Wet Bulb
WC Water Column; Water Closet
WF Wide Flange
WG Water Gauge
WHM Watthour Meter
WK Week
Wldg. Welding
WOG Water, Oil, Gas
W-O-L Weldolet
WP Weather Protected
WR Water Resistant
WSP Water, Steam, Petroleum
WT Weight
WWF Welded Wire Fabric

X or x By or Times
XFER Transfer
XFMR Transformer
XHD Extra Heavy Duty
XHHW; XLPE Cross-Linked Polyethylene Wire Insulation
XLP Cross-Linked Polyethylene
XP Explosion Proof
XRF X-Ray Fluorescence
Y Wye
YD Yard
YR Year

2. Symbols

Δ	Delta	Ø	Diameter or Phase
/	per	'	feet
-	through or to	"	inches
@	at	#	pound or number
%	per 100 or percent	°	degree
$	U.S. dollars	<	Less Than
~	Approximate	>	Greater Than

3. Explanation Of Terms

BTU: Stands for British Thermal Unit. The BTU number indicates the amount of heat required to raise one pound of water by one degree Fahrenheit. What this means is the higher the BTU rating, the higher the heating capacity of a product.

MBH: Equal to 1000 BTUs.

Tons (In Reference To Cooling): Unit of measurement for determining cooling capacity. One ton equals 12,000 BTUH.

SEER: Stands for Seasonal Energy Efficiency Ratio. This measures the cooling efficiency in air conditioners or heat pumps. The higher the SEER rating, the more energy-efficient the unit. The government's minimum SEER rating is 10.

4. Calculation Of Board Feet

a. All Lumber Grades Are Presumed To Be 75 Percent Construction And 25 Percent Standard Or Equivalent Grade Unless Otherwise Listed. Dimensions Are Nominal. Board Foot Is Defined As 1" x 12" x 1' Long; To Calculate BF/LF, Multiply The Size Of The Board Height x Width/12.

1) 1"x2" = 0.167 BF/LF
2) 1"x3" = 0.25 BF/LF
3) 2"x3" = 0.5 BF/LF
4) 2"x4" = 0.667 BF/LF
5) 2"x6" = 1.0 BF/LF
6) 2"x8" = 1.333 BF/LF
7) 2"x10" = 1.667 BF/LF
8) 2:x12" = 2.0 BF/LF
9) 4"x4" = 1.333 BF/LF
10) 6"x4" = 2.0 BF/LF
11) 6"x6" = 3.0 BL/LF
12) 8"x8" = 5.333 BF/LF
13) etc.

b. To Calculate Board Feet;
1) For most lumber: Thickness (inches) x width (inches) x length (feet) divided by 12 = board feet.
2) For small pieces: Thickness (inches) x width (inches) x length (inches) divided by 144 = board feet.

5. Conversion Tables

ENGLISH TO METRIC CONVERSION TABLE					
MULTIPLY	**BY**	**TO GET**	**MULTIPLY**	**BY**	**TO GET**
acres	0.404 687 3	Hectares	ounce(force)	0.278 013 9	newtons=N
board feet	0.002 359 74	cubic meter	pint(liq.)	0.473 176	liters=l

ENGLISH TO METRIC CONVERSION TABLE					
cubic ft.	0.028 316 85	cubic meter	pint(dry)	0.550 61	liters=l
cubic yd.	0.764 554 9	cubic meter	pound(wt.)	0.453 592 37	kilogram
feet	0.304 8	Meters	pound(force)	4.448 222	newtons=N
footcandles	10.763 91	lux=lumens/m^2	pound/sq.ft	47.880 26	pascal=N/m^2
ft.-lb_f	1.355 818	N□m=joule	pound/sq.in	6.894 757	kilopascals
gallon (US)	3.785 412	Liters	quart(liq.)	0.946 352 9	liters
horsepower*	745.699 9	watt=J/sec	sq. feet	0.092 903 04	sq. meter
* horsepower=550 ft-lb_f/sec			sq. in.	645.16	sq. mm
inch	25.4	Millimeters	sq. mile	258.998 8	hectares
inch-pound$_f$	0.112 984 8	N□m=joule	sq. mile	2.589 988	sq. km
kips	4.448 222	Kilonewton	sq. yard	0.836 127 4	sq. meter
kips/in^2	6.894 757	megapascal	ton(short)	0.907 184 7	metric ton
miles (US)	1.609 347	Kilometer	ton(short)	907.184 7	kilogram=kg
ounce (wt.)	28.349 52	Grams	ton(short)	8896.444	newtons=N
ounce(liq.)	29.573 53	Ml	yards	0.914 4	meters=m

FOR TEMPERATURE CONVERSION USE °C= 5/9(°F - 32)

METRIC TO ENGLISH CONVERSION TABLE					
MULTIPLY	**BY**	**TO GET**	**MULTIPLY**	**BY**	**TO GET**
cubic meter	1.308 0	cubic yard	**liter**	0.264 17	gallon
	35.314 7	cubic foot		1.056 7	quart
	61,024	cubic inch		2.113 4	pint
	264.172	Gallon		33.814	fl.ounce
gram	0.035 274	ounce(wt)	milliliter	0.033 814	fl.ounce
	0.002 204 6	pound(wt)	liter/m	0.080 52	gal/ft
kilogram	35.274	ounce(wt)	liter/m^2	0.220 88	gal/sq.yd
	2.204 623	pound(wt)	**lux**	0.092 902	ft-candle
	0.002 204 6	Kip	**meter**	1.093 6	yard
	0.001 102 3	Ton		3.280 84	foot
megagram	1.102 3	ton	millimeter	0.039 370	inch
(metric ton)			kilometer	0.621 37	mile
hectare	2.471 04	Acre	micrometer	0.039 370 1	mil
	107,639	square feet	**Newton**	0.224 81	pound(f)
	11,959.9	square yard	kilonewton	0.224 81	kip(f)
	0.003 861 02	square mile	**Pascal**	0.020 885	lb/sq. feet
microare	0.155 00	square inch	kilopascal	0.145 04	lb/sq. inch
joule	0.737 56	foot pound	megapascal	0.145 04	kips/sq. inch
	8.849 5	inch pound	**square meter**	1.195 99	square yard
kg/m^3	1.685 55	lbs./cubic yards		10.763 9	square feet
	0.062 428	lbs./cubic feet	square millimeter	0.001 55	square inch
km/hr	0.621 37	miles per hour	square kilometer	0.386 102	square mile
			watt (J/second)	0.001 341	horsepower
				0.737 56	ft-lb/second

FOR TEMPERATURE CONVERSION USE °F = 9/5 °C + 32

C. Material Weights/Engineering Values

1. The following engineering values are guidelines for establishing shrink/swell factors and shall be used unless otherwise directed by the Owner. The Owner has final authority in establishing unit weights that are appropriate for all material and may change the stated values.

a. Material weights (Lbs Per CY) for In-place (Bank) [BCY], Loose (Excavated Materials) [LCY], and Compacted [CCY]

MATERIALS	BCY	LCY	CCY
Earth, Common (Average)	3170	2536	3520
Sand (Dry)	2880	2590	3240
Sand (Wet)	3090	2940	3460
Earth, Dry	3030	2070	3520
Earth, Damp	3370	2360	3520
Earth, Wet	2940	2940	3520
Earth, Rock Mixture (75% E/ 25% R)	3380	2370	3720
Earth, Rock Mixture (50% E/ 50% R)	3750	2710	4000
Earth, Rock Mixture (25% E/ 75% R)	4120	3140	3680
Gravel (Average)	3280	2730	3570
Limestone	4380	2690	3220
Riprap Rock (Average)	4500	2610	3150
Granite	4540	2640	3170
Basalt	4950	3020	3640
Clay	3220	2150	3570
Gneiss	4550	2720	3180

D. Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP)

1. Origin

a. Reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) is the term given to removed and/or reprocessed pavement materials containing asphalt and aggregates. These materials are generated when asphalt pavements are removed for reconstruction, resurfacing, or to obtain access to buried utilities. When properly crushed and screened, RAP consists of high-quality, well-graded aggregates coated by asphalt cement.

b. Asphalt pavement is generally removed either by milling or full-depth removal. Milling entails removal of the pavement surface using a milling machine, which can remove up to 50 mm (2 in) thickness in a single pass. Full-depth removal involves ripping and breaking the pavement using a rhino horn on a bulldozer and/or pneumatic pavement breakers. In most instances, the broken material is picked up and loaded into haul trucks by a front-end loader and transported to a central facility for processing. At this facility, the RAP is processed using a series of operations, including crushing, screening, conveying, and stacking.

c. Although the majority of old asphalt pavements are recycled at central processing plants, asphalt pavements may be pulverized in place and incorporated into granular or stabilized base courses using a self-propelled pulverizing machine. Hot in-place and cold in-place recycling processes have evolved into continuous train operations that include partial depth removal of the pavement surface, mixing the reclaimed material with beneficiating additives (such as virgin aggregate, binder, and/or softening or rejuvenating agents to improve binder properties), and placing and compacting the resultant mix in a single pass.

2. Physical Properties

a. The properties of RAP are largely dependent on the properties of the constituent materials and the type of asphalt concrete mix (wearing surface, binder course, etc.). There can be substantial differences between asphalt concrete mixes in aggregate quality, size, and consistency. Since the aggregates in surface course (wearing course) asphalt concrete must have high resistance to wear/abrasion (polishing) to contribute to acceptable friction

resistance properties, these aggregates may be of higher quality than the aggregates in binder course applications, where polishing resistance is not of concern.

b. Both milling and crushing can cause some aggregate degradation. The gradation of milled RAP is generally finer and more dense than that of the virgin aggregates. Crushing does not cause as much degradation as milling; consequently, the gradation of crushed RAP is generally not as fine as milled RAP, but finer than virgin aggregates crushed with the same type of equipment.

c. The particle size distribution of milled or crushed RAP may vary to some extent, depending on the type of equipment used to produce the RAP, the type of aggregate in the pavement, and whether any underlying base or subbase aggregate has been mixed in with the reclaimed asphalt pavement material during the pavement removal.

d. During processing, virtually all RAP produced is milled or crushed down to 38 mm (1.5 in) or less, with a maximum allowable top size of either 51 mm (2 in) or 63 mm (2.5 in). Table 13-1 lists the typical range of particle size distribution that normally results from the milling or crushing of RAP. Milled RAP is generally finer than crushed RAP. The pavement fraction passing a 2.36 mm (No. 8) sieve can be expected to increase from a premilled range of 41 to 69 percent to a postmilled range of 52 to 72 percent. The fraction passing a 0.075 mm (No. 200) sieve can be expected to increase from approximately 6 to 10 percent to a range of 8 to 12 percent. Most sources of RAP will be a well-graded coarse aggregate, comparable to, or perhaps slightly finer and more variable than, crushed natural aggregates.

e. The unit weight of milled or processed RAP depends on the type of aggregate in the reclaimed pavement and the moisture content of the stockpiled material. The unit weight of milled or processed RAP has been found to range from 1940 to 2300 kg/m3 (120 to 140 lb/ft3), which is slightly lower than that of natural aggregates.

f. Moisture content of the RAP will increase while in storage. Crushed or milled RAP can pick up a considerable amount of water if exposed to rain. Moisture contents up to 5 percent or higher have been measured for stored crushed RAP. As noted earlier, during periods of extensive precipitation, the moisture content of some RAP stockpiles may be as high as 7 to 8 percent. Lengthy stockpiling of crushed or milled RAP should, therefore, be kept to a minimum.

g. The asphalt cement content of RAP typically ranges between 3 and 7 percent by weight. The asphalt cement adhering to the aggregate is somewhat harder than new asphalt cement. This is due primarily to exposure of the pavement to atmospheric oxygen (oxidation) during use and weathering. The degree of hardening depends on several factors, including the intrinsic properties of the asphalt cement, the mixing temperature/time (increases with increasing high temperature exposure), the degree of asphalt concrete compaction (increases if not well compacted), asphalt cement/air voids content (increases with lower asphalt/higher air voids content), and age in service (increases with age).

Table 1. Typical range of particle size distribution for reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) (percent by weight passing).

Screen Size (mesh)	Percent Finer After Processing or Milling
37.5 mm (1.5 in)	100
25 mm (1.0 in)	95 - 100
19 mm (3/4 in)	84 - 100
12.5 mm (1/2 in)	70 - 100
9.5 mm (3/8 in)	58 - 95
75 mm (No. 4)	38 - 75
2.36 mm (No. 8)	25 - 60
1.18 mm (No. 16)	17 - 40
0.60 mm (No. 30)	10 - 35[a]
0.30 mm (No. 50)	5 - 25[b]
0.15 mm (No. 100)	3 - 20[c]
0.075 mm (No. 200)	2 - 15[d]

a. Usually less than 30 percent
b. Usually less than 20 percent
c Usually less than 15 percent
d. Usually less than 10 percent

h. The RAP obtained from most wearing surface mixes will usually have an asphalt content in the 4.5 to 6 percent range. The recovered asphalt from RAP usually exhibits low penetration and relatively high viscosity values, depending on the amount of time the original pavement has been in service. Penetration values at 25°C (77°F) are likely to range from 10 to 80 while the absolute viscosity values at 60°C (140°F) may range from as low as 2,000 poises (equivalent to AC-20) up to as high as 50,000 poises or greater, depending on the extent of aging. Viscosity ranges from 4,000 to 25,000 poises can normally be expected from the asphalt cement that is recovered from RAP material. Table 2 provides a summary of the typical ranges of physical properties of RAP, other than gradation.

Table 2. Physical and mechanical properties of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP).

Type of Property	RAP Property	Typical Range of Values
Physical Properties	Unit Weight	1940 - 2300 kg/m^3 (120-140 lb/ft$^{3)}$
	Moisture Content	Normal: up to 5% Maximum: 7-8%
	Asphalt Content	Normal: 4.5-6% Maximum Range: 3-7%
	Asphalt Penetration	Normal: 10-80 at 25°C (77°F)
	Absolute Viscosity or Recovered Asphalt Cement	Normal: 4,000 - 25,000 poises at 60°C (140°F)
Mechanical Properties	Compacted Unit Weight	1600 - 2000 kg/m^3 (100-125 lb/ft^3)
	California Bearing Ratio (CBR)	100% RAP: 20-25% 40% RAP and 60% Natural Aggregate: 150% or higher

3. Chemical Properties
   a. Mineral aggregates constitute the overwhelming majority (93 to 97 percent by weight) of RAP. Only a minor percentage (3 to 7 percent) of RAP consists of hardened asphalt cement. Consequently, the overall chemical composition of RAP is essentially similar to that of the naturally occurring aggregate that is its principal constituent.
   b. Asphalt cement is made up of mainly high molecular weight aliphatic hydrocarbon compounds, but also small concentrations of other materials such as sulfur, nitrogen, and polycyclic hydrocarbons (aromatic and/or naphthenic) of very low chemical reactivity. Asphalt cement is a combination of asphaltenes and maltenes (resins and oils). Asphaltenes are more viscous than either resins or oils and play a major role in determining asphalt viscosity. Oxidation of aged asphalt causes the oils to convert to resins and the resins to convert to asphaltenes, resulting in age hardening and a higher viscosity binder.
4. Mechanical Properties
   a. The mechanical properties of RAP depend on the original asphalt pavement type, the method(s) utilized to recover the material, and the degree of processing necessary to prepare the RAP for a particular application. Since most RAP is recycled back into pavements, there is a general lack of data pertaining to the mechanical properties for RAP in other possible applications.
   b. The compacted unit weight of RAP will decrease with increasing unit weight, with maximum dry density values reported to range from 1600 kg/m3 (100 lb/ft3) to 2000 kg/m3 (125 lb/ft3). California Bearing Ratio (CBR) values for RAP material containing trap rock aggregate have been reported in the 20 to 25 percent range. However, when RAP is blended with natural aggregates for use in granular base, the asphalt cement in the RAP has a significant strengthening effect over time, such that specimens containing 40 percent RAP have produced CBR values exceeding 150 after 1 week.
   c. Table 2 provides a summary of the mechanical properties of RAP discussed in the preceding paragraphs.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 42 16 00	01 42 13 00	Abbreviations, Acronyms, Definitions, and Symbols

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 42 19 00 - REFERENCES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Definitions
1. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
2. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
3. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
4. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
5. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
6. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
7. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
8. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
9. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

B. Industry Standards
1. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
2. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
3. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
   a. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

C. Abbreviations And Acronyms
1. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

AA	Aluminum Association, Inc. (The) www.aluminum.org	(703) 358-2960
AAADM	American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers www.aaadm.com	(216) 241-7333
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council www.aabchq.com	(202) 737-0202

AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association www.aamanet.org	(847) 303-5664
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials www.transportation.org	(202) 624-5800
AATCC	American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists (The) www.aatcc.org	(919) 549-8141
ABAA	Air Barrier Association of America www.airbarrier.org	(866) 956-5888
ABMA	American Bearing Manufacturers Association www.abma-dc.org	(202) 367-1155
ACI	ACI International (American Concrete Institute) www.aci-int.org	(248) 848-3700
ACPA	American Concrete Pipe Association www.concrete-pipe.org	(972) 506-7216
AEIC	Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The) www.aeic.org	(205) 257-2530
AF&PA	American Forest & Paper Association www.afandpa.org	(800) 878-8878 (202) 463-2700
AGA	American Gas Association www.aga.org	(202) 824-7000
AGC	Associated General Contractors of America (The) www.agc.org	(703) 548-3118
AHA	American Hardboard Association (Now part of CPA)	
AHAM	Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers www.aham.org	(202) 872-5955
AI	Asphalt Institute www.asphaltinstitute.org	(859) 288-4960
AIA	American Institute of Architects (The) www.aia.org	(800) 242-3837 (202) 626-7300
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction www.aisc.org	(800) 644-2400 (312) 670-2400
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute www.steel.org	(202) 452-7100
AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction	(303) 792-9559

	www.aitc-glulam.org	
ALCA	Associated Landscape Contractors of America (Now PLANET - Professional Landcare Network)	
ALSC	American Lumber Standard Committee, Incorporated www.alsc.org	(301) 972-1700
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc. www.amca.org	(847) 394-0150
ANSI	American National Standards Institute www.ansi.org	(202) 293-8020
AOSA	Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc. www.aosaseed.com	(405) 780-7372
APA	Architectural Precast Association www.archprecast.org	(239) 454-6989
APA	APA - The Engineered Wood Association www.apawood.org	(253) 565-6600
APA EWS	APA - The Engineered Wood Association; Engineered Wood Systems (See APA - The Engineered Wood Association)	
API	American Petroleum Institute www.api.org	(202) 682-8000
ARI	Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute www.ari.org	(703) 524-8800
ARMA	Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association www.asphaltroofing.org	(202) 207-0917
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers www.asce.org	(800) 548-2723 (703) 295-6300
ASCE/SEI	American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute (See ASCE)	
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers www.ashrae.org	(800) 527-4723 (404) 636-8400
ASME	ASME International (The American Society of Mechanical Engineers International) www.asme.org	(800) 843-2763 (973) 882-1170
ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering www.asse-plumbing.org	(440) 835-3040
ASTM	ASTM International (American Society for Testing and Materials International)	(610) 832-9585

	www.astm.org	
AWCI	AWCI International (Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry International) www.awci.org	(703) 534-8300
AWCMA	American Window Covering Manufacturers Association (Now WCSC)	
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute www.awinet.org	(571) 323-3636
AWPA	American Wood-Preservers' Association www.awpa.com	(205) 733-4077
AWS	American Welding Society www.aws.org	(800) 443-9353 (305) 443-9353
AWWA	American Water Works Association www.awwa.org	(800) 926-7337 (303) 794-7711
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association www.buildershardware.com	(212) 297-2122
BIA	Brick Industry Association (The) www.bia.org	(703) 620-0010
BICSI	Building Industry Consulting Service International www.bicsi.org	(800) 242-7405 (813) 979-1991
BIFMA	BIFMA International (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association International) www.bifma.com	(616) 285-3963
BISSC	Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee www.bissc.org	(866) 342-4772
CCC	Carpet Cushion Council www.carpetcushion.org	(610) 527-3880
CDA	Copper Development Association www.copper.org	(800) 232-3282 (212) 251-7200
CEA	Canadian Electricity Association www.canelect.ca	(613) 230-9263
CFFA	Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc. www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com	(216) 241-7333
CGA	Compressed Gas Association www.cganet.com	(703) 788-2700
CIMA	Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association www.cellulose.org	(888) 881-2462 (937) 222-2462

CISCA	Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association www.cisca.org	(630) 584-1919
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute www.cispi.org	(423) 892-0137
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute www.chainlinkinfo.org	(301) 596-2583
CRRC	Cool Roof Rating Council www.coolroofs.org	(866) 465-2523 (510) 485-7175
CPA	Composite Panel Association www.pbmdf.com	(301) 670-0604
CPPA	Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe Association www.cppa-info.org	(800) 510-2772 (202) 462-9607
CRI	Carpet & Rug Institute (The) www.carpet-rug.com	(800) 882-8846 (706) 278-3176
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute www.crsi.org	(847) 517-1200
CSA	Canadian Standards Association	(800) 463-6727 (416) 747-4000
CSA	CSA International (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services) www.csa-international.org	(866) 797-4272 (416) 747-4000
CSI	Cast Stone Institute www.caststone.org	(717) 272-3744
CSI	Construction Specifications Institute (The) www.csinet.org	(800) 689-2900 (703) 684-0300
CSSB	Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau www.cedarbureau.org	(604) 820-7700
CTI	Cooling Technology Institute (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute) www.cti.org	(281) 583-4087
DHI	Door and Hardware Institute www.dhi.org	(703) 222-2010
EIA	Electronic Industries Alliance www.eia.org	(703) 907-7500
EIMA	EIFS Industry Members Association www.eima.com	(800) 294-3462 (770) 968-7945
EJCDC	Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee www.ejdc.org	(703) 295-5000

EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc. www.ejma.org	(914) 332-0040
ESD	ESD Association www.esda.org	(315) 339-6937
FIBA	Federation Internationale de Basketball (The International Basketball Federation) www.fiba.com	41 22 545 00 00
FIVB	Federation Internationale de Volleyball (The International Volleyball Federation) www.fivb.ch	41 21 345 35 35
FM Approvals	FM Approvals www.fmglobal.com	(781) 762-4300
FM Global	FM Global (Formerly: FMG - FM Global) www.fmglobal.com	(401) 275-3000
FMRC	Factory Mutual Research (Now FM Global)	
FRSA	Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc. www.floridaroof.com	(407) 671-3772
FSA	Fluid Sealing Association www.fluidsealing.com	(610) 971-4850
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council www.fsc.org	49 228 367 66 0
GA	Gypsum Association www.gypsum.org	(202) 289-5440
GANA	Glass Association of North America www.glasswebsite.com	(785) 271-0208
GRI	(Now GSI)	
GS	Green Seal www.greenseal.org	(202) 872-6400
GSI	Geosynthetic Institute www.geosynthetic-institute.org	(610) 522-8440
HI	Hydraulic Institute www.pumps.org	(888) 786-7744 (973) 267-9700
HI	Hydronics Institute www.gamanet.org	(908) 464-8200

HMMA	Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association (Part of NAAMM)	
HPVA	Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association www.hpva.org	(703) 435-2900
HPW	H. P. White Laboratory, Inc. www.hpwhite.com	(410) 838-6550
IAS	International Approval Services (Now CSA International)	
IBF	International Badminton Federation www.internationalbadminton.org	(6-03) 9283-7155
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc. www.icea.net	(770) 830-0369
ICRI	International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc. www.icri.org	(847) 827-0830
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission www.iec.ch	41 22 919 02 11
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The) www.ieee.org	(212) 419-7900
IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America www.iesna.org	(212) 248-5000
IEST	Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology www.iest.org	(847) 255-1561
IGCC	Insulating Glass Certification Council www.igcc.org	(315) 646-2234
IGMA	Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance www.igmaonline.org	(613) 233-1510
ILI	Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc. www.iliai.com	(812) 275-4426
ISO	International Organization for Standardization www.iso.ch	41 22 749 01 11
	Available from ANSI www.ansi.org	(202) 293-8020
ISSFA	International Solid Surface Fabricators Association www.issfa.net	(877) 464-7732 (702) 567-8150
ITS	Intertek Testing Service NA www.intertek.com	(972) 238-5591
ITU	International Telecommunication Union www.itu.int/home	41 22 730 51 11

KCMA	Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association www.kcma.org	(703) 264-1690
LMA	Laminating Materials Association (Now part of CPA)	
LPI	Lightning Protection Institute www.lightning.org	(800) 488-6864
MBMA	Metal Building Manufacturers Association www.mbma.com	(216) 241-7333
MFMA	Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc. www.maplefloor.org	(847) 480-9138
MFMA	Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc. www.metalframingmfg.org	(312) 644-6610
MH	Material Handling (Now MHIA)	
MHIA	Material Handling Industry of America www.mhia.org	(800) 345-1815 (704) 676-1190
MIA	Marble Institute of America www.marble-institute.com	(440) 250-9222
MPI	Master Painters Institute www.paintinfo.com	(888) 674-8937
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc. www.mss-hq.com	(703) 281-6613
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers www.naamm.org	(312) 332-0405
NACE	NACE International (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International) www.nace.org	(800) 797-6623 (281) 228-6200
NADCA	National Air Duct Cleaners Association www.nadca.com	(202) 737-2926
NAGWS	National Association for Girls and Women in Sport www.aahperd.org/nagws/	(800) 213-7193, ext. 453
NAIMA	North American Insulation Manufacturers Association www.naima.org	(703) 684-0084
NBGQA	National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc. www.nbgqa.com	(800) 557-2848

NCAA	National Collegiate Athletic Association (The) www.ncaa.org	(317) 917-6222
NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association www.ncma.org	(703) 713-1900
NCPI	National Clay Pipe Institute www.ncpi.org	(262) 248-9094
NCTA	National Cable & Telecommunications Association www.ncta.com	(202) 775-3550
NEBB	National Environmental Balancing Bureau www.nebb.org	(301) 977-3698
NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association www.necanet.org	(301) 657-3110
NeLMA	Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association www.nelma.org	(207) 829-6901
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association www.nema.org	(703) 841-3200
NETA	InterNational Electrical Testing Association www.netaworld.org	(888) 300-6382 (303) 697-8441
NFHS	National Federation of State High School Associations www.nfhs.org	(317) 972-6900
NFPA	NFPA (National Fire Protection Association) www.nfpa.org	(800) 344-3555 (617) 770-3000
NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council www.nfrc.org	(301) 589-1776
NGA	National Glass Association www.glass.org	(866) 342-5642 (703) 442-4890
NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association www.natlhardwood.org	(800) 933-0318 (901) 377-1818
NLGA	National Lumber Grades Authority www.nlga.org	(604) 524-2393
NOFMA	NOFMA: The Wood Flooring Manufacturers Association (Formerly: National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association) www.nofma.com	(901) 526-5016
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association www.nrca.net	(800) 323-9545 (847) 299-9070
NRMCA	National Ready Mixed Concrete Association www.nrmca.org	(888) 846-7622 (301) 587-1400

NSF	NSF International (National Sanitation Foundation International) www.nsf.org	(800) 673-6275 (734) 769-8010
NSSGA	National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association www.nssga.org	(800) 342-1415 (703) 525-8788
NTMA	National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The) www.ntma.com	(800) 323-9736 (540) 751-0930
NTRMA	National Tile Roofing Manufacturers Association (Now TRI)	
NWWDA	National Wood Window and Door Association (Now WDMA)	
OPL	Omega Point Laboratories, Inc. (Now ITS)	
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute www.pci.org	(312) 786-0300
PDCA	Painting & Decorating Contractors of America www.pdca.com	(800) 332-7322 (314) 514-7322
PDI	Plumbing & Drainage Institute www.pdionline.org	(800) 589-8956 (978) 557-0720
PGI	PVC Geomembrane Institute http://pgi-tp.ce.uiuc.edu	(217) 333-3929
PLANET	Professional Landcare Network (Formerly: ACLA - Associated Landscape Contractors of America) www.landcarenetwork.org	(800) 395-2522 (703) 736-9666
PTI	Post-Tensioning Institute www.post-tensioning.org	(602) 870-7540
RCSC	Research Council on Structural Connections www.boltcouncil.org	
RFCI	Resilient Floor Covering Institute www.rfci.com	(301) 340-8580
RIS	Redwood Inspection Service www.calredwood.org	(888) 225-7339 (415) 382-0662
SAE	SAE International www.sae.org	(877) 606-7323 (724) 776-4841
SDI	Steel Deck Institute www.sdi.org	(847) 458-4647
SDI	Steel Door Institute	(440) 899-0010

	www.steeldoor.org	
SEFA	Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association www.sefalabs.com	(516) 294-5424
SEI/ASCE	Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers (See ASCE)	
SGCC	Safety Glazing Certification Council www.sgcc.org	(315) 646-2234
SIA	Security Industry Association www.siaonline.org	(703) 683-2075
SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturers Association (Now IGMA)	
SJI	Steel Joist Institute www.steeljoist.org	(843) 626-1995
SMA	Screen Manufacturers Association www.smacentral.org	(561) 533-0991
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association www.smacna.org	(703) 803-2980
SMPTE	Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers www.smpte.org	(914) 761-1100
SPFA	Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance (Formerly: SPI/SPFD - The Society of the Plastics Industry, Inc.; Spray Polyurethane Foam Division) www.sprayfoam.org	(800) 523-6154
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (The) www.spib.org	(850) 434-2611
SPRI	Single Ply Roofing Industry www.spri.org	(781) 647-7026
SSINA	Specialty Steel Industry of North America www.ssina.com	(800) 982-0355 (202) 342-8630
SSPC	SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings www.sspc.org	(877) 281-7772 (412) 281-2331
STI	Steel Tank Institute www.steeltank.com	(847) 438-8265
SWI	Steel Window Institute www.steelwindows.com	(216) 241-7333
SWRI	Sealant, Waterproofing, & Restoration Institute www.swrionline.org	(816) 472-7974

TCA	Tile Council of America, Inc. www.tileusa.com	(864) 646-8453
TIA/EIA	Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance www.tiaonline.org	(703) 907-7700
TMS	The Masonry Society www.masonrysociety.org	(303) 939-9700
TPI	Truss Plate Institute, Inc. www.tpinst.org	(703) 683-1010
TPI	Turfgrass Producers International www.turfgrasssod.org	(800) 405-8873 (847) 649-5555
TRI	Tile Roofing Institute www.tileroofing.org	(312) 670-4177
UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc. www.ul.com	(877) 854-3577 (847) 272-8800
UNI	Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association www.uni-bell.org	(972) 243-3902
USAV	USA Volleyball www.usavolleyball.org	(888) 786-5539 (719) 228-6800
USGBC	U.S. Green Building Council www.usgbc.org	(202) 828-7422
USITT	United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc. www.usitt.org	(800) 938-7488 (315) 463-6463
WASTEC	Waste Equipment Technology Association www.wastec.org	(800) 424-2869 (202) 244-4700
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau www.wclib.org	(800) 283-1486 (503) 639-0651
WCMA	Window Covering Manufacturers Association (Now WCSC)	
WCSC	Window Covering Safety Council (Formerly: WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association) www.windowcoverings.org	(800) 506-4636 (212) 297-2109
WDMA	Window & Door Manufacturers Association (Formerly: NWWDA - National Wood Window and Door Association) www.wdma.com	(800) 223-2301 (847) 299-5200
WI	Woodwork Institute (Formerly: WIC - Woodwork Institute of	(916) 372-9943

	California) www.wicnet.org	
WIC	Woodwork Institute of California (Now WI)	
WMMPA	Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association www.wmmpa.com	(800) 550-7889 (530) 661-9591
WSRCA	Western States Roofing Contractors Association www.wsrca.com	(800) 725-0333 (650) 570-5441
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association www.wwpa.org	(503) 224-3930

2. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials www.iapmo.org	(909) 472-4100
IBC	International Building Code (See ICC)	
ICBO	International Conference of Building Officials (See ICC)	
ICBO ES	ICBO Evaluation Service, Inc. (See ICC-ES)	
ICC	International Code Council www.iccsafe.org	(888) 422-7233 (703) 931-4533
ICC-ES	ICC Evaluation Service, Inc. www.icc-es.org	(800) 423-6587 (562) 699-0543
SBCCI	Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc. (See ICC)	

3. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

CE	Army Corps of Engineers www.usace.army.mil	
CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission www.cpsc.gov	(800) 638-2772 (301) 504-7923
DOC	Department of Commerce www.commerce.gov	(202) 482-2000

DOD	Department of Defense http://.dodssp.daps.dla.mil	(215) 697-6257
DOE	Department of Energy www.energy.gov	(202) 586-9220
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency www.epa.gov	(202) 272-0167
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration www.faa.gov	(866) 835-5322
FCC	Federal Communications Commission www.fcc.gov	(888) 225-5322
FDA	Food and Drug Administration www.fda.gov	(888) 463-6332
GSA	General Services Administration www.gsa.gov	(800) 488-3111
HUD	Department of Housing and Urban Development www.hud.gov	(202) 708-1112
LBL	Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory www.lbl.gov	(510) 486-4000
NCHRP	National Cooperative Highway Research Program (See TRB)	
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology www.nist.gov	(301) 975-6478
OSHA	Occupational Safety & Health Administration www.osha.gov	(800) 321-6742 (202) 693-1999
PBS	Public Building Service (See GSA)	
PHS	Office of Public Health and Science www.osophs.dhhs.gov/ophs	(202) 690-7694
RUS	Rural Utilities Service (See USDA)	(202) 720-9540
SD	State Department www.state.gov	(202) 647-4000
TRB	Transportation Research Board http://gulliver.trb.org	(202) 334-2934
USDA	Department of Agriculture www.usda.gov	(202) 720-2791

USPS	Postal Service www.usps.com	(202) 268-2000

4. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

ADAAG	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities Available from Access Board www.access-board.gov	(800) 872-2253 (202) 272-0080
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations Available from Government Printing Office www.gpoaccess.gov/cfr/index.html	(866) 512-1800 (202) 512-1800
DOD	Department of Defense Military Specifications and Standards Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil	(215) 697-2664
DSCC	Defense Supply Center Columbus (See FS)	
FED-STD	Federal Standard (See FS)	
FS	Federal Specification Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil	(215) 697-2664
	Available from Defense Standardization Program www.dps.dla.mil	
	Available from General Services Administration www.gsa.gov	(202) 619-8925
	Available from National Institute of Building Sciences www.wbdg.org/ccb	(202) 289-7800
FTMS	Federal Test Method Standard (See FS)	
MIL	(See MILSPEC)	
MIL-STD	(See MILSPEC)	
MILSPEC	Military Specification and Standards Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil	(215) 697-2664
UFAS	Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards Available from Access Board www.access-board.gov	(800) 872-2253 (202) 272-0080

5. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following

list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

CBHF	State of California, Department of Consumer Affairs Bureau of Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation www.dca.ca.gov/bhfti	(800) 952-5210 (916) 574-2041
CCR	California Code of Regulations www.calregs.com	(916) 323-6815
CPUC	California Public Utilities Commission www.cpuc.ca.gov	(415) 703-2782
TFS	Texas Forest Service Forest Resource Development http://txforestservice.tamu.edu	(979) 458-6650

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 19 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 51 13 00	26 24 16 00	Panelboards

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 52 13 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Summary
1. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

B. Definitions
1. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by the Owner, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

C. Use Charges
1. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, the Owner's construction forces, the Owner, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Water Service: Water from the Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
3. Electric Power Service: Electric power from the Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

D. Submittals
1. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
2. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

F. Project Conditions
1. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before the Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Pavement: Comply with Division 32 Section(s) "Asphalt Paving" OR "Concrete Paving", **as directed**.
2. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails **OR** with galvanized barbed-wire top strand, **as directed**.
3. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 9-gage, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-

mm-) OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete **OR** galvanized steel, **as directed**, bases for supporting posts.

4. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, 6 feet (1.8 m) **OR** 8 feet (2.4 m), **as directed**, high, framed with four 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet (2.4 m) apart.
5. Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
6. Gypsum Board: Minimum 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick by 48 inches (1219 mm) wide by maximum available lengths; regular-type panels with tapered edges. Comply with ASTM C 36/C 36M.
7. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.
8. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09.

B. Temporary Facilities
1. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
2. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of construction personnel. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
   a. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
   b. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with not less than 1 receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot- (1.2-m-) square tack board.
   c. Drinking water and private toilet.
   d. Coffee machine and supplies.
   e. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F (20 to 22 deg C).
   f. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc (215 lx) at desk height.
3. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
   a. Store combustible materials apart from building.

C. Equipment
1. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
2. HVAC Equipment: Unless the Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
   a. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
   b. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
   c. Permanent HVAC System: If the Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return air grille in system and remove at end of construction.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.

a. For greenfield sites if reduced site disturbance is required for LEED-NC Credit SS 5.1: Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in General Requirements.

2. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

B. Temporary Utility Installation

1. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
   a. Arrange with utility company, the Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
2. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
   a. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system **OR** private system indicated, **as directed**, as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.

   OR

   Water Service: Use of the Owner's existing water service facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
   a. Where installations below an outlet might be damaged by spillage or leakage, provide a drip pan of suitable size to minimize water damage. Drain accumulated water promptly from pans.
4. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
   a. Toilets: Use of the Owner's existing toilet facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
5. Heating **OR** Heating and Cooling, **as directed**: Provide temporary heating **OR** heating and cooling, **as directed**, required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
6. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
7. Electric Power Service: Use of the Owner's existing electric power service will be permitted, as long as equipment is maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner.

   OR

   Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
   a. Install electric power service overhead **OR** underground, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Connect temporary service to the Owner's existing power source, as directed by the Owner.
8. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
   a. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
   b. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
9. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line for each field office.
   a. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
      1) Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer in each field office.

b. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
   1) Police and fire departments.
   2) Ambulance service.
   3) Contractor's home office.
   4) the Owner's office.
   5) the Owner's office.
   6) Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
c. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.

10. Electronic Communication Service: Provide temporary electronic communication service, including electronic mail, in common-use facilities.
    a. Provide DSL **OR** T-1 line, **as directed**, in primary field office.

C. Support Facilities Installation
1. General: Comply with the following:
   a. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
   b. Maintain support facilities until near Final Completion. Remove before Final Completion. Personnel remaining after Final Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to the Owner.
2. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated **OR** within construction limits indicated, **as directed**, on Drawings.
   a. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.

   OR
3. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
   a. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
   b. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
   c. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
   d. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Final Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving".
4. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
   b. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
5. Parking: Provide temporary **OR** Use designated areas of the Owner's existing, **as directed**, parking areas for construction personnel.
6. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
   a. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
   b. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
7. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Provide Project identification and other signs as indicated on Drawings, **OR as directed**. Install signs where indicated to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
   a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
   b. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.

8. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with General Requirements for progress cleaning requirements.
9. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
    a. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
10. Temporary Elevator Use: Refer to Division 14 for temporary use of new elevators.
11. Existing Elevator Use: Use of the Owner's existing elevators will be permitted, as long as elevators are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore elevators to condition existing before initial use, including replacing worn cables, guide shoes, and similar items of limited life.
    a. Do not load elevators beyond their rated weight capacity.
    b. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect elevator car and entrance doors and frame. If, despite such protection, elevators become damaged, engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.
12. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
13. Existing Stair Usage: Use of the Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, as long as stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
    a. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If, despite such protection, stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas so no evidence remains of correction work.
14. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Cover finished, permanent stairs with protective covering of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at time of acceptance.

D. Security And Protection Facilities Installation
1. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
2. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
    a. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
3. Stormwater Control: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
4. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
5. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Final Completion. Obtain extended warranty for the Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
6. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin **OR** When excavation begins, **as directed**, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
    a. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    b. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Provide the Owner with one set of keys, **as directed**.

7. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.
8. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
9. Covered Walkway: Erect structurally adequate, protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals along adjacent public street(s). Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings, **OR as directed**.
    a. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing.
    b. Provide wood-plank overhead decking, protective plywood enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
    c. Extend back wall beyond the structure to complete enclosure fence.
    d. Paint and maintain in a manner approved by the Owner.
10. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
    a. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.
11. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by the Owner and tenants from fumes and noise.
    a. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant plywood on construction operations side.
    b. If containment of airborne particles and dust generated by construction activities is critical to occupants of other spaces in building, e.g., occupied healthcare facilities: Construct dustproof partitions with 2 layers of 3-mil (0.07-mm) polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with 2 layers of 3-mil (0.07-mm) polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches (460 mm) up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant plywood.
        1) Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
    c. Insulate partitions to provide noise protection to occupied areas.
    d. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with dustproof doors and security locks.
    e. Protect air-handling equipment.
    f. Weather strip openings.
    g. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
12. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
    a. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure **OR** construction, **as directed**, areas.
    b. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
    c. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
    d. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

E. Operation, Termination, And Removal
1. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
2. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

a. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.

3. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
4. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Final Completion.
5. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Final Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
   a. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. the Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
   b. Remove temporary paving not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent paving. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
   c. At Final Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in General Requirements

END OF SECTION 01 52 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 52 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 52 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 52 19 00	01 52 13 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 53 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 54 23 00 - SCAFFOLDING TUBULAR STEEL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of scaffolding-tubular steel. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Tubular steel or aluminum scaffolding system shall comply with OSHA Safety and Health Standards, Section 29 CFR, 1926/1910.

1.3 EXECUTION - (Section not used.)

END OF SECTION 01 54 23 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 54 23 00a - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for unit masonry assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
   a. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
   b. Decorative concrete masonry units.
   c. Pre-faced concrete masonry units.
   d. Concrete brick.
   e. Face brick.
   f. Building (common) brick.
   g. Hollow brick.
   h. Glazed brick.
   i. Structural-clay facing tile.
   j. Firebox brick.
   k. Clay flue lining units.
   l. Stone trim units.
   m. Mortar and grout.
   n. Reinforcing steel.
   o. Masonry joint reinforcement.
   p. Ties and anchors.
   q. Embedded flashing.
   r. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
   s. Masonry-cell insulation.
   t. Cavity-wall insulation.

C. Definitions
1. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths (f'_m) at 28 days.
2. Determine net-area compressive strength (f'_m) of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Tables 2105.2 in the International Building Code, **as directed**.
   OR
   Determine net-area compressive strength (f'_m) of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For reinforcing steel. Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
3. Samples for each type and color of exposed masonry units and colored mortars.

4. Material Certificates: For each type of product indicated. Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards.
5. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
   a. For masonry units include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
6. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below.
   a. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 67.
   b. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 140.
   c. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, per ASTM C 780 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
   d. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, per ASTM C 1019 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
   a. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction **OR** typical exterior wall, **as directed,** in sizes approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) long by 48 inches (1200 mm) high.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
2. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
3. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
4. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
5. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

H. Project Conditions
1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.3 in the International Building Code, **as directed**.
2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Concrete Masonry Units (CMUs)
1. Shapes: Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
2. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength for exposed units and where indicated.
3. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
   a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi (13.1 MPa) **OR** 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) **OR** 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) **OR** 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.
4. Decorative Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
   a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi (13.1 MPa) **OR** 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) **OR** 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) **OR** 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.
   c. Pattern and Texture:
      1) Standard pattern, ground finish.
      2) Standard pattern, split-face finish.
      3) Standard pattern, split-ribbed finish.
      4) Scored vertically, standard finish.
      5) Triple scored vertically, standard finish.
5. Pre-faced Concrete Masonry Units: Lightweight hollow **OR** solid, **as directed,** concrete units complying with ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, with manufacturer's standard smooth resinous facing complying with ASTM C 744.
   a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi (13.1 MPa) **OR** 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) **OR** 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) **OR** 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Size: Manufactured with pre-faced surfaces having 1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-) wide returns of facing to create 1/4-inch- (6.5-mm-) wide mortar joints with modular coursing.
6. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C 55 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
   a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.3 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.

B. Concrete And Masonry Lintels
1. General: Provide either concrete or masonry lintels, at Contractor's option, complying with requirements below.
2. Concrete Lintels:
   a. Precast units matching concrete masonry units and with reinforcing bars indicated or required to support loads indicated.

      OR

      Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Masonry Lintels: Made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout.

C. Brick
1. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
   a. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
   b. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.

2. Face Brick: ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX **OR** FBS **OR** FBA, **as directed**.
   a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) **OR** 4400 psi (30.3 MPa) **OR** 5500 psi (37.9 MPa) **OR** 6400 psi (44.1 MPa) **OR** 8000 psi (55.2 MPa) **OR** 8400 psi (57.9 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
   c. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
   d. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
   e. Size: **As directed**.
3. Building (Common) Brick: ASTM C 62 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW **OR** NW, MW, or SW, **as directed**.
   a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) **OR** 4400 psi (30.3 MPa) **OR** 5500 psi (37.9 MPa) **OR** 6400 psi (44.1 MPa) **OR** 8000 psi (55.2 MPa) **OR** 8400 psi (57.9 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Size: Match size of face brick.
4. Hollow Brick: ASTM C 652 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area) **OR** H60V (void areas between 40 and 60 percent of gross cross-sectional area) , **as directed**, Type HBX **OR** HBS **OR** HBA **OR** HBB, **as directed**.
   a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) **OR** 4400 psi (30.3 MPa) **OR** 5500 psi (37.9 MPa) **OR** 6400 psi (44.1 MPa) **OR** 8000 psi (55.2 MPa) **OR** 8400 psi (57.9 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
   c. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
   d. Size: **As directed**.
5. Glazed Face Brick: ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX **OR** FBS **OR** FBA, **as directed**; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
6. Glazed Face Brick: ASTM C 1405, Class Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Grade S (Select) **OR** SS (Select Sized or Ground Edge), **as directed**.
7. Glazed Face Brick: Either ASTM C 1405, Class Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Grade S (Select) or ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
8. Glazed Hollow Brick: Hollow brick complying with ASTM C 652 **OR** IBC , **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area) **OR** H60V (void areas between 40 and 60 percent of gross cross-sectional area), **as directed**, Type HBX **OR** HBS **OR** HBA, **as directed**; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
   a. Size: **As directed**.
   b. Provide Type I (single-faced units) where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed, and Type II (double-faced units) where two opposite finished faces are exposed when units are installed.

D. Structural-Clay Facing Tile
   1. General:
      a. Provide solid, multicored, or hollow units, with shape and direction of cores optional, unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Provide multicored units designed for use in reinforced, grouted masonry.
      c. Provide special shapes where required for corners, jambs, coved bases, sills, and other special conditions indicated that cannot be produced by sawing standard units.

2. Glazed Structural-Clay Facing Tile: ASTM C 126, Grade S (Select) **OR** SS (Select Sized or Ground Edged), **as directed**.
   a. Size: **As directed**.
   b. Provide Type I (single-faced units) where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed, and Type II (double-faced units) where two opposite finished faces are exposed when units are installed.
3. Unglazed Structural-Clay Facing Tile: ASTM C 212, Type FTX **OR** FTS, **as directed**, Standard **OR** Special-Duty, **as directed,** class.
   a. Number of Faces: Single faced where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed **OR** Double faced where both finished faces are exposed when units are installed, **as directed**.

E. Fireplace And Chimney Lining Units
1. Firebox Brick: ASTM C 1261, size required to produce lining thickness indicated.
2. Clay Flue Lining Units: ASTM C 315.

F. Stone Trim Units
1. Granite: ASTM C 615.
   a. Description: Fine **OR** Medium, **as directed**,-grained, white **OR** pink **OR** gray **OR** black, **as directed,** stone. Uniform pattern, without veining.
2. Limestone: ASTM C 568, Classification I Low **OR** II Medium **OR** III High, **as directed**,-Density.
3. Marble: ASTM C 503, Classification I Calcite **OR** II Dolomite **OR** III Serpentine **OR** IV Travertine, **as directed**.
   a. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained, white stone with only slight veining.
4. Quartz-Based Stone: ASTM C 616, Classification I Sandstone **OR** II Quartzitic Sandstone **OR** III Quartzite, **as directed**.
5. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** Smooth **OR** Machine tooled, 4 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 6 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 8 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Chat sawed **OR** Split face **OR** Rock face (pitched face), **as directed**.
   a. Finish for Tops of Sills and Soffits of Lintels: Sand rubbed **OR** Split face, **as directed**.
6. Provide stone units accurately shaped, with exposed faces dressed true, and with beds and joints at right angles to faces.
   a. For granite, comply with recommendations in NBGQA's "Specifications for Architectural Granite."
   b. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
   c. For marble, comply with recommendations in MIA's "Dimensional Stone--Design Manual IV."

G. Mortar And Grout Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction.
2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Type S.
3. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
4. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
5. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
6. Mortar Pigments: Iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
7. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime or masonry cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
   a. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
   b. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
   c. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
8. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

a. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6.5 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
b. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
c. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
d. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

9. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
10. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 395, epoxy-resin-based material formulated for use as pointing mortar for structural-clay tile facing units.
11. Refractory Mortar Mix: Ground fireclay or non-water-soluble, calcium aluminate, medium-duty refractory mortar that passes ASTM C 199 test; or an equivalent product acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
12. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
13. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with concrete masonry units, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
14. Water: Potable.

H. Reinforcement
1. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).
2. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
a. Interior Walls: Mill- **OR** Hot-dip, **as directed,** galvanized, carbon steel.
b. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon **OR** Stainless, **as directed,** steel.
c. Wire Size for Side Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) **OR** W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm), **as directed,** diameter.
d. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) **OR** W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm), **as directed** diameter.
e. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) **OR** W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm), **as directed** diameter.
f. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
g. Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
h. Multiwythe Masonry:
1) Ladder type with 1 side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches (100 mm) in width, plus 1 side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches (100 mm) or less in width.
2) Tab type, with 1 side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with rectangular tabs sized to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
3) Adjustable (two-piece) type, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with ties that extend into facing wythe. Ties engage eyes or slots in reinforcement and extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous wire in the facing wythe.
i. Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel continuous wire.

I. Ties And Anchors
1. Materials:
a. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 coating.
b. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.

c. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
d. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
e. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
f. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
g. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
h. Stainless Steel bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM a 666, Type 304.

2. Corrugated Metal Ties: Metal strips not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide with corrugations having a wavelength of 0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 12.7 mm) and an amplitude of 0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm) made from steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**, not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) **OR** 0.053 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) **OR** 0.097 inch (2.5 mm), **as directed**, thick. Ties made from galvanized steel sheet may be used in interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches (50 mm) parallel to face of veneer.
4. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) wide.
   a. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches (50 mm) long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units or hollow units laid with cells horizontal.
   b. Where wythes do not align **OR** are of different materials, **as directed**, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
   c. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed,** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed,** wire. Mill-galvanized wire ties may be used in interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structure: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
   a. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed,** wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Tie Section for Steel Frame: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face, made from 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed** wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Connector Section for Concrete: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**. 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) **OR** 0.108-inch- (2.7-mm-), **as directed**, thick, galvanized sheet may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Tie Section for Concrete: Corrugated metal ties with dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and sized to extend to within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face.
6. Partition Top anchors: 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick metal plate with 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter metal rod 6 inches (150 mm) long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**.
7. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick by 24 inches (600 mm) long, with ends turned up 2 inches (50 mm) or with cross pins.
   a. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** Epoxy coating 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick **OR** Rust-inhibitive paint, **as directed**.
8. Stone Anchors: Fabricate dowels, cramps, and other stone anchors from stainless steel.
9. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors

a. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
   1) Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).

b. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.
   1) Anchor Section:
      a) Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, and slotted holes for inserting wire tie.
      b) Sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
      c) Gasketed sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, modified bituminous gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and extend beyond pronged legs.
   2) Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**.
   3) Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed,** wire.

c. Slip-in, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and an anchor section designed to interlock with metal studs and be slipped into place as sheathing is installed.
   1) Wire-Type Anchor: Bent wire anchor section with an eye to receive the wire tie. Wire tie has a vertical leg that slips into the eye of anchor section and allows vertical adjustment. Both sections are made from 3/16-inch (4.8-mm), hot-dip galvanized wire.
   2) Strap-and-Wire Type Anchor: Flat metal strap with notch to interlock with flange of metal stud and two holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit anchor section. Strap is made from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication; anchor wire tie is made from 3/16-inch (4.8-mm), hot-dip galvanized wire.

d. Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a metal anchor section and a connector section designed to engage a continuous wire embedded in the veneer mortar joint.
   1) Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, and slotted holes for inserting connector section.
   2) Connector Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal bent plate; sheet metal clip; or wire tie and rigid extruded vinyl clip designed to engage continuous wire. Size connector to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
   3) Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**.

4) Fabricate wire connector sections from 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) -**OR** 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon **OR** stainless, **as directed,**-steel wire.

e. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 (4.8-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than 3 exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.

f. Stainless-Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: Proprietary fastener consisting of carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless-steel shank, complying with ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 (4.8-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads.

J. Miscellaneous Anchors

1. Unit Type Inserts in Concrete: Cast-iron or malleable-iron wedge-type inserts.
2. Dovetail Slots in Concrete: Furnish dovetail slots with filler strips, of slot size indicated, fabricated from 0.034-inch (0.9-mm), galvanized steel sheet.
3. Anchor Bolts: Headed or L-shaped steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.
4. Postinstalled Anchors: Provide chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in solid or grouted unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
   a. Corrosion Protection:
      1) Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (5 microns) for Class SC 1 service condition (mild).
      2) Stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group 1 or 4) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors.

K. Embedded Flashing Materials

1. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual OR Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" as directed.
   a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick.
   b. Copper: ASTM B 370, Temper H00 or H01, cold-rolled copper sheet, 10-oz./sq. ft. (3-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0135 inch (0.34 mm) thick for fully concealed flashing; 16-oz./sq. ft. (5-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0216 inch (0.55 mm) thick elsewhere.
   c. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches (2400 mm) long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m). Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
   d. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed**, with ribs at 3-inch (75-mm) intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
   e. Metal Drip Edges: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
   f. Metal Flashing Terminations: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch (19 mm) and down into joint 3/8 inch (10 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
   g. Metal Expansion-Joint Strips: Fabricate from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed,** to shapes indicated.
2. Flexible Flashing: For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:

a. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) **OR** 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m), **as directed**, copper sheet bonded with asphalt between 2 layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
b. Asphalt-Coated Copper Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) **OR** 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m), **as directed**, copper sheet coated with flexible asphalt. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
c. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch (0.8 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**.
d. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) thick, with a 0.015-inch- (0.4-mm-) thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive.
e. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D 4637, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.

3. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from high-density polyethylene incorporating chemical stabilizers that prevent UV degradation. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts that are designed to be built into mortar bed joints and weep collected moisture to the exterior of CMU walls and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.
4. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
   a. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
   b. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
   c. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing urethane **OR** polysulfide silicone **as directed,** sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
5. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer.

L. Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories
1. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; formulated from neoprene, urethane or PVC.
2. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall.
3. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
4. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton or UV-resistant synthetic fiber, 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm) in diameter, in length required to produce 2-inch (50-mm) exposure on exterior and 18 inches (450 mm) in cavity between wythes. Use only for weeps.
   b. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (9-mm) OD by 4 inches (100 mm) long.
   c. Rectangular Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Clear butyrate, 3/8 by 1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches (9 by 38 by 89 mm) long.
   d. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
   e. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
   f. Aluminum Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, L-shaped units made from sheet aluminum, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a vertical channel with louvers stamped in web and with a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; painted before installation to

comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting", in color approved to match that of mortar.

g. Vinyl Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, offset, T-shaped units made from flexible, injection-molded PVC, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of masonry units, and a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; in color approved by Architect to match that of mortar.

5. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
   a. Provide one of the following configurations:
      1) Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches (175 mm) deep.
      2) Strips, not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
      3) Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
6. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch (3.6-mm) steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.

M. Insulation
1. Loose-Granular Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C 549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).
2. Molded-Polystyrene Insulation Units: Rigid, cellular thermal insulation formed by the expansion of polystyrene-resin beads or granules in a closed mold to comply with ASTM C 578, Type I. Provide specially shaped units designed for installing in cores of masonry units.
3. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV **OR** X, **as directed**, closed-cell product extruded with an integral skin.
4. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I (aluminum-foil-faced), Class 2 (glass-fiber-reinforced).
6. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation board manufacturer for application indicated.

N. Masonry Cleaners
1. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains from new masonry without damaging masonry. Use product approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

O. Mortar And Grout Mixes
1. General: Do not use admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
   b. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to portland cement and lime.
   c. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
2. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
3. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 **OR** BIA Technical Notes 8A **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed,** Proportion Specification.
4. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 **OR** BIA Technical Notes 8A **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed,** Property Specification.
   a. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M **OR** S, **as directed**.
   b. For reinforced masonry, use Type S **OR** N, **as directed**.
   c. For mortar parge coats, use Type S or N.

d. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
e. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.

5. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
   a. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
   b. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
6. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
7. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
   a. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Table 21-C in the International Building Code, **as directed,** for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
   b. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (200 to 280 mm) as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
8. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: Mix epoxy pointing mortar to comply with mortar manufacturer's written instructions.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
2. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
3. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
4. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.
5. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
   a. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
   b. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.

B. Laying Masonry Walls
1. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
2. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
3. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
4. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Mortar Bedding And Jointing

1. Lay hollow brick and concrete masonry units as follows:
   a. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
   b. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
   c. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
   d. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
2. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
3. Lay structural-clay tile as follows:
   a. Lay vertical-cell units with full head joints, unless otherwise indicated. Provide bed joints with full mortar coverage on face shells and webs.
   b. Lay horizontal-cell units with full bed joints, unless otherwise indicated. Keep drainage channels, if any, free of mortar. Form head joints with sufficient mortar so excess will be squeezed out as units are placed in position.
   c. Maintain joint thicknesses indicated except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not indicated, lay walls with 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6- to 10-mm-) thick joints.
   d. Where epoxy-mortar pointed joints are indicated, rake out setting mortar to a uniform depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) and point with epoxy mortar.
4. Set firebox brick in full bed of refractory mortar with full head joints. Form joints by buttering both surfaces of adjoining brick and sliding it into place. Make joints just wide enough to accommodate variations in size of brick, approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm). Tool joints smooth on surfaces exposed to fire or smoke.
5. Install clay flue liners to comply with ASTM C 1283. Install flue liners ahead of surrounding masonry. Set clay flue liners in full bed of refractory mortar 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) thick. Strike joints flush on inside of flue to provide smooth surface. Maintain expansion space between flue liner and surrounding masonry except where surrounding masonry is required to provide lateral support for flue liners.
6. Set stone **OR** cast-stone, **as directed,** trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
7. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

D. Composite Masonry
1. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using one of the following methods:
   a. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 4.5 sq. ft. (0.42 sq. m) **OR** 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m), **as directed**, of wall area spaced not to exceed 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, o.c. horizontally and 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and space not more than 36 inches (915 mm) apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically.
      1) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type ties.
   b. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
      1) Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes **OR** tab-type reinforcement, **as directed**.
      2) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
2. Collar Joints: Solidly fill collar joints by parging face of first wythe that is laid and shoving units of other wythe into place.
3. Collar Joints in Clay Tile Masonry: After each course is laid, fill the vertical, longitudinal joint between wythes solidly with mortar at exterior walls, except cavity walls, and interior walls and partitions.

4. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
   a. Provide individual metal ties not more than 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   b. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
   c. Provide rigid metal anchors not more than 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1220 mm), **as directed**, o.c. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.

E. Cavity Walls
1. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:
   a. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 4.5 sq. ft. (0.42 sq. m) **OR** 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m), **as directed**, of wall area spaced not to exceed 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, o.c. horizontally and 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and space not more than 36 inches (915 mm) apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically.
   b. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
      1) Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes **OR** tab-type reinforcement, **as directed**.
      2) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
      3) Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
   c. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
2. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
3. Parge cavity face of backup wythe in a single coat approximately 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick. Trowel face of parge coat smooth.
   OR
   Coat cavity face of backup wythe to comply with Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing".

F. Installing Cavity-Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions, with edges butted tightly. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry.

G. Masonry-Cell Insulation
1. Pour granular insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of insulation at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of insulation to 1 story in height, but not more than 20 feet (6 m).
2. Install molded-polystyrene insulation units into masonry unit cells before laying units.

H. Masonry Joint Reinforcement
1. General: Install in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
2. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
4. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

I. Anchoring Masonry To Structural Members
   1. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
      a. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
      c. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically and 36 inches (915 mm) o.c. horizontally.

J. Anchoring Masonry Veneers
   1. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing **OR** concrete and masonry backup, **as directed,** with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
      a. Fasten screw-attached and seismic anchors through sheathing to wall framing and to concrete and masonry backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners.
      b. Insert slip-in anchors in metal studs as sheathing is installed. Provide one anchor at each stud in each horizontal joint between sheathing boards.
      c. Embed tie sections **OR** connector sections and continuous wire, **as directed,** in masonry joints. Provide not less than 2 inches (50 mm) of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
      d. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
      e. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically and 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, o.c. horizontally with not less than 1 anchor for each 3.5 sq. ft. (0.33 sq. m) **OR** 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m), **as directed**, of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches (914 mm), around perimeter.

K. Control And Expansion Joints
   1. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
   2. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", but not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm).
      a. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

L. Lintels
   1. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
   2. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

M. Flashing, Weep Holes, Cavity Drainage, And Vents
   1. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
   2. Install flashing as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
      a. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
      b. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (150 mm) at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.

c. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
d. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.

3. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
4. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
5. Install weep holes in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
   a. Use specified weep/vent products or open head joints to form weep holes.
   b. Space weep holes 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Cover cavity side of weep holes with plastic insect screening at cavities insulated with loose-fill insulation.
6. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in Part 2 "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
7. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/vent products or open head joints to form vents.
   a. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

N. Reinforced Unit Masonry Installation
1. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
   a. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
   b. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
2. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.5 in the International Building Code, **as directed**.
   a. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
   b. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.6 in the International Building Code, **as directed,** for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
   c. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches (1520 mm).

O. Field Quality Control
1. Inspectors: Engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections.
   a. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports:
3. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m) of wall area or portion thereof.
4. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 67.

5. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 140.
6. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 780 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
7. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 1019 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.

P. Parging
1. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in 2 uniform coats to a total thickness of 3/4 inch (19 mm) with a steel-trowel finish. Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.

Q. Cleaning
1. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
2. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
   a. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.
   b. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner.
   c. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
   d. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
   e. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   f. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

R. Masonry Waste Disposal
1. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
   a. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.
   b. Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 01 54 23 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 54 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 54 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 55 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 55 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 56 26 00 - EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of mesh or netting for erosion control. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Jute Mesh: Fed. Spec. CCC-C-467.
2. Plastic Mesh: Manufacturer's recommendation.
3. Plastic Netting: Manufacturer's recommendation.
4. Polypropylene Mesh: Manufacturer's recommendation.
5. Woven Fabric Fence: EPA specifications.
6. Hay-Bales: EPA specifications.

1.3 EXECUTION:

A. Preparation: Grade, compact, fertilize, and seed the area to be protected.

B. Installation: Apply blankets either horizontally or vertically to the slope. In ditches, apply blanket in direction of water flow. Lap and anchor blankets according to the manufacturer's instructions. Install woven fabric fence and hay bales adjacent to all excavated areas.

END OF SECTION 01 56 26 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 56 26 00a - STABILIZATION MEASURES FOR EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
   1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for sediment removal.

1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. The Contractor shall remove all material from areas as required to meet project requirements. Water and sediment removed from these areas shall be discharged to a sedimentation basin constructed and maintained by the Contractor. All work shall be in strict compliance with Pollution Control requirements and Dewatering requirements. All material removed shall be disposed of in an approved landfill in accordance with all State and Federal Regulations.

END OF SECTION 01 56 26 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 56 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 29 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 39 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 58 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 66 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 71 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 71 23 16 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cutting and patching. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.

C. Definitions
1. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
2. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

D. Submittals
1. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed. Include the following information:
   a. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate why they cannot be avoided.
   b. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building's appearance and other significant visual elements.
   c. Products: List products to be used and firms or entities that will perform the Work.
   d. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
   e. Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: List services/systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services/systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long services/systems will be disrupted.
   f. Structural Elements: Where cutting and patching involve adding reinforcement to structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of reinforcement with original structure.
   g. the Owner's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and patching. Approval does not waive right to later require removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.

E. Quality Assurance
1. LEED Requirements for Building Reuse:
   a. Credit MR 1.1 and 1.2, **as directed**: Maintain existing building structure (including structural floor and roof decking) and envelope (exterior skin and framing, excluding window assemblies and nonstructural roofing material) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
   b. Credit MR 1.3: Maintain existing interior nonstructural elements (interior walls, doors, floor coverings, and ceiling systems) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
   c. Credit MR 1.2 and 1.3, **as directed**: Maintain existing nonshell, nonstructural components (walls, flooring, and ceilings) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.

2. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
   a. **Refer to the Owner for list of elements that might otherwise be overlooked as structural elements and that require Architect's or Construction Manager's approval of a cutting and patching proposal**.
3. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operating elements include the following:
   a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
   b. Air or smoke barriers.
   c. Fire-suppression systems.
   d. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
   e. Control systems.
   f. Communication systems.
   g. Conveying systems.
   h. Electrical wiring systems.
   i. Operating systems of special construction in Division 13.
4. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch miscellaneous elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Miscellaneous elements include the following:
   a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
   b. Membranes and flashings.
   c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
   d. Equipment supports.
   e. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
   f. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
5. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
6. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

F. Warranty
1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
2. In-Place Materials: Use materials identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
   a. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
2. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
3. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
4. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize **OR** prevent, **as directed**, interruption to occupied areas.

B. Performance
1. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
   a. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
2. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
   a. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
   b. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
   c. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
   d. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 where required by cutting and patching operations.
   e. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
   f. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
3. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections.
   a. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
   b. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
      1) Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
      2) Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
   c. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
      1) Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.

d. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
e. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.

4. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

END OF SECTION 01 71 23 16

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 74 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 74 19 00 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Summary
1. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
   a. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
      Note: All salvageable materials remain the property of the Owner and shall be turned over as directed when specified in the Job Order.
   b. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
   c. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

B. Definitions
1. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
2. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
3. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
5. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
6. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

C. Performance Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**
1. General: Develop waste management plan that results in end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 50 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent by weight of total waste generated by the Work.
2. Salvage/Recycle Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible including the following materials:

   OR

   Salvage/Recycle Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible. Owner has established minimum goals for the following materials:
   a. Demolition Waste:
      1) Asphaltic concrete paving.
      2) Concrete.
      3) Concrete reinforcing steel.
      4) Brick.
      5) Concrete masonry units.
      6) Wood studs.
      7) Wood joists.
      8) Plywood and oriented strand board.
      9) Wood paneling.
      10) Wood trim.
      11) Structural and miscellaneous steel.
      12) Rough hardware.
      13) Roofing.
      14) Insulation.
      15) Doors and frames.

16) Door hardware.
17) Windows.
18) Glazing.
19) Metal studs.
20) Gypsum board.
21) Acoustical tile and panels.
22) Carpet.
23) Carpet pad.
24) Demountable partitions.
25) Equipment.
26) Cabinets.
27) Plumbing fixtures.
28) Piping.
29) Supports and hangers.
30) Valves.
31) Sprinklers.
32) Mechanical equipment.
33) Refrigerants.
34) Electrical conduit.
35) Copper wiring.
36) Lighting fixtures.
37) Lamps.
38) Ballasts.
39) Electrical devices.
40) Switchgear and panelboards.
41) Transformers.

b. Construction Waste:
1) Site-clearing waste.
2) Masonry and CMU.
3) Lumber.
4) Wood sheet materials.
5) Wood trim.
6) Metals.
7) Roofing.
8) Insulation.
9) Carpet and pad.
10) Gypsum board.
11) Piping.
12) Electrical conduit.
13) Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
a) Paper.
b) Cardboard.
c) Boxes.
d) Plastic sheet and film.
e) Polystyrene packaging.
f) Wood crates.
g) Plastic pails.

D. Submittals
1. Waste Management Plan: Submit 3 copies of plan within 7 **OR** 30, **as directed**, days of date established for commencement of the Work **OR** the Notice to Proceed **OR** the Notice of Award, **as directed**.

2. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit three copies of report. Include separate reports for demolition and construction waste, **as directed**. Include the following information:
   a. Material category.
   b. Generation point of waste.
   c. Total quantity of waste in tons (tonnes).
   d. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons (tonnes).
   e. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons (tonnes).
   f. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons (tonnes).
   g. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.
3. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Final Completion, submit three copies of calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.
4. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
5. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
6. LEED Submittal: LEED letter template for Credit MR 2.1 and 2.2, **as directed**, signed by Contractor, tabulating total waste material, quantities diverted and means by which it is diverted, and statement that requirements for the credit have been met.
7. Qualification Data: For Waste Management Coordinator and refrigerant recovery technician.
8. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: LEED Accredited Professional by U.S. Green Building Council. Waste management coordinator may also serve as LEED coordinator.
2. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
3. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Waste Management Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
   a. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of Waste Management Coordinator.
   b. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
   c. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
   d. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
   e. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

F. Waste Management Plan
1. General: Develop plan consisting of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Include separate sections in plan for demolition and construction waste if Project requires selective demolition or building demolition. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
2. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition, site-clearing, and construction waste generated by the Work. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
3. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.

a. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
b. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
c. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
d. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location on Project site where materials separation will be located.

4. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there was no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Include the following:
a. Total quantity of waste.
b. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include hauling and tipping fees and cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
c. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
d. Revenue from salvaged materials.
e. Revenue from recycled materials.
f. Savings in hauling and tipping fees by donating materials.
g. Savings in hauling and tipping fees that are avoided.
h. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
i. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Plan Implementation
1. General: Implement waste management plan as approved by the Owner. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
a. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls" for operation, termination, and removal requirements.
2. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan. Coordinator shall be present at Project site full time for duration of Project.
3. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work occurring at Project site.
a. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
b. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
4. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
a. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
b. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

B. Salvaging Demolition Waste

1. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work:
   a. Clean salvaged items.
   b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
   c. Store items in a secure area until installation.
   d. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
   e. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
2. Salvaged Items for Sale and Donation: Not permitted.
3. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use:
   a. Clean salvaged items.
   b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
   c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
   d. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site **OR** off-site **OR** designated by Owner, **as directed**.
   e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.

C. Recycling Demolition And Construction Waste, General
1. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
2. Recycling Receivers and Processors: Refer to the Owner for available recycling receivers and processors.
3. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Owner **OR** accrue to Contractor **OR** be shared equally by Owner and Contractor, **as directed**.
4. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical.
   a. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until they are removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
      1) Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
   b. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
   c. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
   d. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
   e. Remove recyclable waste off Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

D. Recycling Demolition Waste
1. Asphaltic Concrete Paving: Grind asphalt to maximum 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, size.
   a. Crush asphaltic concrete paving and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as general fill.
2. Asphaltic Concrete Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility.
3. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.
   a. Pulverize concrete to maximum 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, size.
   b. Crush concrete and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as satisfactory soil for fill or subbase.
4. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
   a. Pulverize masonry to maximum 3/4-inch (19-mm) **OR** 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, size.

1) Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as general fill **OR** satisfactory soil for fill or subbase, **as directed**.
2) Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use as mineral mulch.

b. Clean and stack undamaged, whole masonry units on wood pallets.

5. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
6. Metals: Separate metals by type.
   a. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
   b. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
7. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts. Remove and dispose of nails, staples, and accessories.
8. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
9. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
   a. Separate suspension system, trim, and other metals from panels and tile and sort with other metals.
10. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
    a. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
11. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
12. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
13. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
14. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
15. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.
16. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.

E. Recycling Construction Waste
   1. Packaging:
      a. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
      b. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
      c. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
      d. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
   2. Site-Clearing Wastes: Chip brush, branches, and trees on-site **OR** at landfill facility, **as directed**.
      a. Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of chipped organic waste as organic mulch.
   3. Wood Materials:
      a. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
      b. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
         1) Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.
   4. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
      a. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
         1) Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.

F. Disposal Of Waste
   1. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
      a. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
      b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
   2. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
      OR
      Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
   3. Disposal: Transport waste materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
      OR
      Disposal: Transport waste materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 74 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 32 13 00 - SUBSURFACE DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for drilling, sampling and testing for subsurface investigation of soils.

B. System Description: The purpose of the work specified herein is to determine the type, nature, and characteristics of subsurface materials and the extent and conditions of the various materials as they exist to the depths and at the locations specified. This is to be accomplished by means of auger borings, drive sample borings, undisturbed sample borings, core drilling, pressure testing, or test pits.
1. Auger Borings and Sampling: An auger boring is any boring made in unconsolidated soils with a conventional manually or power-driven earth auger for the purpose of obtaining samples of subsurface materials. Auger boring and sampling shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1452.
2. Drive Sample Borings and Sampling: A drive sample boring is a boring made through unconsolidated or partly consolidated sediments or decomposed rock by means of a mechanically driven sampler. The purpose of these borings is to obtain knowledge of the composition, the thickness, the depth, the sequence, the structure, and the pertinent physical properties of foundation or borrow materials. Drive sample boring and sampling shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1587. Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1586.
3. Undisturbed Sample Borings and Sampling: An undisturbed sample boring is a boring made to obtain soil samples which, when tested, will show properties as close to the in situ (in place) properties as any sample which can be obtained. All undisturbed sampling shall be accomplished in accordance with ASTM D 1587.
4. Core Drilling: Drilling of cores shall be performed as per ASTM D 2113. The method used shall provide equally good recovery of cores from both hard and soft rocks.
5. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): Hydraulic pressure testing is the process of forcing water under pressure into subsurface rock formations through pre-drilled holes for the purpose of determining the subsurface leakage conditions and possible grouting requirements.
6. Test Pit Excavation and Sampling: A test pit is any excavation in soil, hardpan, decomposed rock, or other unconsolidated or partially consolidated overburden materials which has an open cross-sectional area large enough to permit efficient excavation and shoring/lining, engineering and geological inspection and photographing of the subsurface soils and manual undisturbed sampling from within the test pit. All test pits shall be excavated, dewatered (if necessary), shored/lined and protected from surface water drainage in accordance with all applicable Federal, State, local, and OSHA safety regulations.
7. Bearing Capacity: ASTM D 1149.
8. Soils Classification: ASTM D 2487, ASTM D 2488, MIL-STD 619.

C. Submittals
1. Permits, Certifications, and Licenses: Comply with all Federal, State and local laws, regulations and ordinances relating to the performance of this work. The Contractor shall, at its own expense, procure all required permits, certifications and licenses required of him by Federal, State, and local law for the execution of this work. Furnish copies of all such documents to the Owner prior to starting work.
2. Drilling, Sampling, and Testing Plan: Prior to starting work, submit a plan for drilling, sampling, testing, and safety. The plan shall include, but not be limited to, the proposed method of drilling and sampling including a description of the equipment and sampling tools that will be used, a listing of any subcontractors to include a description of how the subcontractors will be used and a description of all methods and procedures that will be utilized to ensure a safe operation and to protect the environment. This submittal shall also include a statement of the prior experience, in

the type of work described in these specifications, of the person or persons designated to perform the work specified herein. No work shall be performed until this plan has been approved and no deviation from the approved plan will be permitted without prior approval by the Owner.

3. Drilling Log: Submit complete, legible copies of drilling log and records to the Owner within 5 days after a hole or test pit is completed.

D. Care And Delivery Of Samples

1. General: The Contractor shall be solely responsible for preserving all samples in good condition. Keep samples from freezing and from undue exposure to the weather, and shall keep all descriptive labels and designations on sample jars, tubes, and boxes clean and legible until final delivery. Except as otherwise specified, deliver samples safely to test facility, **as directed**. Deliver samples within the time limits specified for each type of investigation or in accordance with schedules prepared by the Owner.
2. Undisturbed Samples: Take every precaution to avoid damage to samples as a result of careless handling and undue delay in shipping. Ship samples in containers approved by the Owner, of sufficient durability to protect the samples from any damage during shipment. Pack sample tubes in vermiculite or other equal material approved by the Owner to protect the samples against vibration. Avoid exposing sealed and crated samples to precipitation, direct sunlight, freezing and temperatures in excess of 100 degrees F (38 degrees C). Samples permitted to freeze, even partially, shall be replaced by the Contractor at its expense. In general, no undisturbed samples shall remain on the site of sampling for more than one week before shipment. Store and ship samples with the tube in a horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, position in order to prevent consolidation and segregation or change of water content.

E. Project/Site Conditions

1. Environmental Requirements
   a. In order to prevent and to provide for abatement and control of any environmental pollution arising from Contractor activities in the performance of this contract, the Contractor and its subcontractors shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws, regulations, and ordinances concerning environmental pollution control and abatement.
      1) The Contractor shall be responsible for keeping informed of all updates and changes in all applicable laws, regulations, and ordinances.
      2) The Contractor shall not pollute lakes, ditches, rivers, springs, canals, waterways, groundwaters, or reservoirs with drill fluids, fuels, oils, bitumens, calcium chloride, insecticides, herbicides, or other materials that may be harmful to the environment or a detriment to outdoor recreation.
2. Field Measurements: The approximate locations of drill holes or test pits shall be as directed. The actual locations will be established in the field by the Owner prior to the start of work. The elevations of the established locations will also be provided by the Owner prior to the start of work. The Contractor will provide access to the locations as it deems necessary for the prosecution of the work. Since no separate payment will be made for access construction, all costs associated with this shall be included in the cost of drilling or excavating.

F. Sequencing And Scheduling

1. Schedule of Drilling, Sampling and Testing: The schedule of Drilling, Sampling, and Testing is listed in the following schedule:

SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING AND TESTING

HOLE NO. or PIT NO.	METHOD	DEPTH FT(M)	VERTICAL or INCLINED	SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS

2. Order of Work: The order in which the work is to be accomplished will be determined in the field by the Owner.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Containers: Furnish jars, tubes, and boxes that meet the following requirements. All such containers will become the property of the Owner and the cost thereof shall be included in the contract price for the applicable item for which payment is provided.

1. Sample Jars: Sample jars shall be 1 pint (0.5 L) **OR** 1 quart (1.0 L), **as directed**, capacity, wide-mouth over 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) in diameter, glass **OR** plastic, **as directed**, jars with moisture-tight screw tops.
2. Shipping Boxes: Boxes for shipping sample jars shall be corrugated cardboard **OR** wooden, **as directed**, boxes that have the capacity to hold no more than 12 sample jars and the strength to contain and protect the jars and their contents under ordinary handling and environmental conditions.
3. Tubes and Crates: Undisturbed samples shall be shipped in thin walled Shelby tubes packed in crates.
4. Core Boxes: Longitudinally partitioned, hinged top, wooden core boxes constructed of plywood and dressed lumber or other approved materials shall be used for all rock cores. As many core boxes as may be required shall be used to box all core. Core boxes shall be completely equipped with all necessary partitions, hinges, and a hasp for holding down the cover. In addition, the Contractor shall provide wood spacers made of surfaced lumber (not plywood) and having dimensions that are 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than the inside dimensions of the individual core box troughs and no less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick for blocking the core in the boxes and for providing a marking space to identify core runs and pull depths/elevations. The quantities of these blocks that are required are: ten blocks per core box for 3-inch (75-mm) or smaller core, five blocks per core box for 4-inch (100-mm) and PQ core, and three blocks per core box for 6-inch (150-mm) core. The box should have the following capacities:

6-inch (150-mm) core	single row of core
4-inch (100-mm) or PQ core	2 rows of core
3-inch (75-mm) or smaller core	3 or 4 rows of core

The maximum length of a core box shall be 4 feet (1.2 m) for 3-inch (75 mm) or smaller core and shall be dimensioned so that a box will hold 12 to 16 feet (3.6 to 4.9 m) of core. The maximum length of a core box for core that is larger than 3 inches (75 mm) shall be 5 feet (1.5 m).

B. Labels

1. Sample Jar Labels: A printed or type-written, fade resistant and waterproof label shall be affixed to the outside of each jar and shall contain the following information:
   PROJECT_____LOCATION_____
   (Such as Table Rock Dam) (Such as Borrow Area B)
   HOLE NO. _____ STATION_____
   JAR NO. _____ of _____ JARS
   TOP ELEV. OF HOLE_____ DEPTH OF SAMPLE _____
   DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL_____
   (Such as moist, silty, medium sand)
2. Shipping Box Labels: Each box of jar samples shall be identified with weatherproof and wear-proof labels indicating the following:
   PROJECT: [_____]
   LOCATION: [_____]
   JAR SAMPLES FROM HOLE OR HOLES: [_____]
3. Core Box Labels: Core boxes shall be identified with stenciled labels. The information on this label shall contain the following:
   PROJECT: [_____]
   HOLE NO. [_____]
   BOX NO. [_____]
   TOTAL NUMBER OF BOXES FOR THE HOLE: [_____]

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Mobilization and Demobilization
   1. Mobilization: Mobilization shall consist of the delivery to the site of all plant, equipment, materials and supplies to be furnished by the Contractor, the complete assembly in satisfactory working order of all such plant and equipment at the jobsite and the satisfactory storage at the site of all such materials and supplies.
   2. Demobilization: Demobilization shall consist of the removal from the site of all plant, equipment, materials and supplies after completion of the work and also includes, at the direction of the Owner, the cleanup and removal of all scrap, waste backfill material, waste drilling fluid, soil contaminated with engine/hydraulic oil, backfilling all sumps or excavations resulting from the operations and, in general, returning the site as close to its original condition as possible.

B. Equipment and Supplies
   1. Auger Boring and Sampling: The equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making auger borings shall include, but not be limited to, standard continuous flight augers and/or standard cup-type earth augers, similar or equal to the Iwan Auger and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter unless otherwise approved. The augers shall be completely equipped with all the accessories necessary for boring and sampling of overburden materials to the depths and diameters specified or shown on the drawings.
   2. Drive Sample Boring and Sampling: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making drive sample borings shall include, but not be limited to, standard 2-inch (50 mm) split barrel **OR** solid barrel, **as directed**, drive samplers and power-driven drilling machinery of a type or types approved by the Owner, complete with a drive-hammer of the weight as required to meet project requirements, and all other accessories for taking samples of all types of soils or decomposed rock at the locations and to the depths indicated in the schedule in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING. The drive shoe for the split barrel samplers shall be of hardened steel and shall be replaced or repaired when it becomes dented or distorted. Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all casing, drill stem, drill bits, drill fluid and additives, pumps, and power necessary to accomplish the required boring and sampling.
   3. Undisturbed Sample Boring and Sampling: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making undisturbed sample borings shall include, but not be limited to, power-driven drilling machinery of an approved type or types complete with the special devices and accessories enumerated and described hereinafter. Drilling machinery shall be of the hydraulic feed type. Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all samplers, casing, drill stem, drill bits, drill fluid and additives, pumps, and power necessary to accomplish the required boring and sampling. Drill casing, if used, shall be of such minimum inside diameter as to allow use of the selected sampler.
      a. Sands and Cohesive Soils: The sampling device used to sample fine to medium grain sands and cohesive soils shall be a fixed or stationary piston type that uses a 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 5-inch (125-mm), **as directed**, diameter thin wall Shelby tube. Subject to the approval of the Owner, floating or free piston and non-piston type samplers may be used provided adequate means, such as check valve or vacuum system, are provided to prevent loss of samples.
      b. Stiff and Dense Soils: The sampling device for obtaining samples of stiff and dense soils shall be similar or equal to a Denison double tube, swivel head core barrel, or a Pitcher sampler and must be approved by the Owner prior to use.
   4. Core Drilling - Size BX and NX Core: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for core drilling shall include core-drilling machinery of a type or types approved by the Owner complete with all the accessories needed to take continuous rock cores of a diameter consistent with bit size to the depths specified. The Contractor shall use, as a minimum, a standard ball-bearing, swivel-head, double-tube core barrel, or equivalent. The capacity of the core barrel shall not exceed 10.5 feet (3.2 m) of core. Supplies for core drilling to be furnished by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, all casing, drill rods, core barrels, coring bits, piping, pumps, water, tools, and power required for drilling and all boxes and containers required for core samples. Selection of the type of bit shall be at the Contractor's discretion provided that the selected bit produces high quality rock core. (see paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL BORINGS or PITS). The

Contractor's drilling equipment shall be capable of drilling inclined as well as vertical core holes as specified.

5. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): Pressure testing equipment to be furnished by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, a water pump with a minimum capacity of 50 gallons per minute (3.15 liters per second) that is capable of delivering a constant discharge pressure with double expander packers with rubber expansion elements set 5 feet (1.5 m) **OR** 10 feet (3 m), **as directed**, apart with piping so arranged that water may be admitted either below the bottom packer element or between the two packer elements, a pressure relief valve, a pressure gage capable of measuring water pressures to the nearest 10 psi (1.45 kPa) and water meter capable of measuring flows to the nearest 1.6 gallon(s) per minute (0.1 liter(s) per second). Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all accessory valves, gages, surge tanks, stopcocks, plugs, expanders, potable water for testing, standby pumps, fuels, pipes, pressure hose, and tools necessary for maintaining uninterrupted tests for each boring to be tested. The pressure test equipment shall be configured so that the pressure gage is located at the top of the hole, a by-pass water line and valve are located between the pump and the gage, a flow meter is located between the by-pass and the pressure gage, and a valve is located in the line between the flow meter and the pressure gage. All equipment and supplies used for pressure testing shall be approved by the Owner prior to use.
6. Test Pit Excavation and Sampling: Selection of the test pit excavation, shoring/lining and dewatering (if necessary) methods and equipment shall be at the Contractor's discretion but must be approved by the Owner. When the number of test pits to be excavated is large, and when adaptable mechanical trenching equipment is available, the Owner may require that such mechanical excavating equipment be used to expedite completion of the pits. Supplies which the Contractor shall furnish for obtaining undisturbed samples shall include, but not be limited to, split metal cylinders and/or metal or wooden boxes of acceptable sizes and types. Accessories to be supplied by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, a small sample trimming shovel or spade, hatchet, trimming knife, wax and facilities for melting and brushing same, trowels, labels, and boxes for shipping samples. The Contractor shall also furnish all materials required for shoring/lining to comply with all applicable safety regulations. The Owner may require the Contractor to salvage and re-use this shoring/lining material in successive test pits.

C. Identifying Samples: Sample jars, shipping boxes, and labels shall comply with paragraphs SAMPLE JARS, SHIPPING BOXES, and LABELS, respectively. The Contractor shall take all precautions required to insure that the shipping boxes are not subjected to rough handling or damaging environmental conditions, and complies with paragraph CARE AND DELIVERY OF SAMPLES. A copy of the boring log for the portion of the boring that the samples came from shall be enclosed in the shipping box.

D. Auger Boring and Sampling: Samples shall be labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Samples shall be obtained for each change of overburden material and at maximum vertical intervals as directed by the Owner. In order to retain the natural moisture content of the material to the fullest extent possible, all samples shall be of sufficient volume to completely fill the sample jars and the samples shall be placed in the sample jars as soon as possible after they are taken from the hole. All sample jars shall be labeled. In general, no sample shall remain on the site of boring for more than 1 week after being taken from the boring and placed in a jar.

E. Drive Sample Boring and Sampling: Samples shall be labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Drive sample borings drilled through overburden materials shall be suitably cased to permit obtaining drive samples of the size or sizes specified or as directed. Samples shall be taken either continuously or at a change in materials in accordance with instructions contained in the SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING or as otherwise directed by the Owner. To minimize the compacting effect of casing driving when casing is used to stabilize a boring, the bottom of the casing shall be kept as high above the soil sampling zone as conditions permit. If hollow stem auger is used as a casing and/or to advance the boring, a plug assembly must be used to keep soil from entering the inside of the auger. Above the water table, samples shall be obtained from a dry hole. Below the water table, water shall be maintained within the hole at or above the groundwater level.

Where information on the natural water content of soils above the water table is not needed and when approved by the Owner, boreholes may be drilled without casing by using a suitable drilling fluid to prevent collapse of sidewalls. When a drilling fluid is used, soil sampling shall be done by such means that will prevent inclusion of drilling fluid in the samples. The samples shall be placed in sample jars as soon as possible after they are taken from the hole and, when possible, the volume of the sample shall be large enough to completely fill the sample jar in order that the natural moisture content of the material may be retained to the fullest extent possible. All samples shall be labeled. No sample shall remain at the site of boring for more than one week after being taken from the hole.

F. Undisturbed Sample Boring And Sampling: In general, labeling of undisturbed samples shall conform to paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Particular care shall be taken to indicate the top and bottom of each sample tube. Tubes and crates for undisturbed samples shall be labeled "DO NOT JAR OR VIBRATE" and "HANDLE, HAUL, AND SHIP IN A HORIZONTAL **OR** VERTICAL POSITION," **as directed**.

1. Procedure: The procedure for Undisturbed Sample Boring and Sampling shall be the same as outlined in paragraph DRIVE SAMPLE BORING AND SAMPLING, except that the sampling device shall be advanced downward by one continuous, smooth drive using the drill rig's hydraulic feed system. The hydraulic down pressure shall be read and recorded at 6 inch (150 mm) intervals during each sample drive. The sampling device for stiff and dense soils shall be advanced by continuous rotation of the outer cutting barrel in conjunction with use of drill fluid circulation. Driving of any undisturbed sampling device by means such as a drop hammer will not be permitted.
2. Sealing
    a. Alternate 1: The soil sample obtained in a thin wall Shelby tube shall be retained in the tube and sealed on both ends with a mechanically expandable O-ring sealing disk of the appropriate size.
    b. Alternate 2: The soil sample obtained in a thin wall Shelby tube shall be extruded from the tube in the field as soon as the tube is removed from the boring by a method approved by the Owner. The extruded soil sample shall immediately be wrapped in aluminum foil or thin plastic wrap and placed in the center of a metal bottomed, waxed cardboard or plastic tube that has a diameter of at least 1 inch (25 mm) larger than the diameter of the soil sample, is at least 1-inch (25 mm) longer than the length of the soil sample, and has at least 1/2-inch (13 mm) of congealed 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax in the bottom. The annular space between the soil sample and the tube shall be filled with a 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax to a distance of at least 1/2-inch (13 mm) above the top of the soil sample.
    c. Alternate 3: Both ends of the soil sample tube/liner obtained with a Denison barrel, or its equivalent, shall be cleaned out to remove all drill fluid contaminated and/or disturbed soil or to a minimum distance of 2 inches (50 mm) from the ends of the tube/liner. Any material removed that is not contaminated with drill fluid shall be placed in a sample jar and labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. The cleaned out ends of the sample liner tube shall then be sealed with a 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax. A metal or wooden disk, having a diameter just slightly smaller than the inside diameter of the liner tube shall be inserted into the wax to a distance of 1/4-inch (6 mm) from the end of the soil sample. The wax plugs shall be flush with the ends of the tube and a final seal consisting of a metal cap or tape shall be placed over the ends of the tube.

G. Core Hole Overburden Drilling: Where samples of overburden materials are required in connection with core drilling, the soil overburden shall be drilled and sampled in accordance with the applicable provisions for the type of samples required. Where sampling of the overburden materials is not required, the Contractor may utilize any method and equipment for drilling and, if required, casing through the overburden that will not affect the quality of the core drilling from the rock surface downward in accordance with these specifications. The method chosen must be approved by the Owner prior to starting any overburden drilling.

H. Core Drilling - Size BX and NX core.

1. Procedure: All holes shall be drilled vertically **OR** at the inclined angles listed in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING, **as directed**, to the bottom elevations or depths specified unless indicated in the schedule of borings or directed to be drilled otherwise. Off-setting of borings from the locations specified in the Plan of Borings or as shown on the drawings, will not be permitted without prior approval. Casing through the overburden may be required. This casing shall be sealed in the rock at the elevation where rock is encountered prior to commencement of rock coring. The Contractor shall operate its drills at such speeds and with such down pressures and shall control drill fluid pressures and quantities to insure maximum core quality and recovery in whatever kind of rock is encountered. Where soft or broken rock is encountered, the Contractor shall reduce the length of runs to 5 feet (1.5 m) or less in order to reduce and/or keep core loss and core disturbance to the minimum. Failure to comply with the foregoing procedures shall constitute justification for the Owner to require redrilling, at the Contractor's expense, of any boring from which the core recovery is unsatisfactory. The Contractor shall exercise particular care in recording zones of water loss, cavities, rod jerks, rough drilling and other unusual and non-ordinary coring experiences that, supplementing the core record, will throw light on the nature and the extent of any fracturing or abnormalities.
2. Arrangement of Core: Core boxes shall comply with paragraph CORE BOXES. All cores shall be arranged neatly in the partitioned boxes in the same sequence in which they occurred before removal from the hole. Facing the open box with the hinged cover above and the open box below, cores shall be arranged in descending sequence beginning at the left end of the trough nearest the hinges and continuing in the other troughs from left to right. The highest part of the core shall be placed in box 1, and the lower portions of the core shall be placed in the other boxes in consecutive order.
3. Preservation of Core: Representative samples of core shall be wrapped in aluminum foil or thin plastic wrap or cheese cloth and then sealed by applying paraffin wax to the outside of the wrapping material prior to placing the core in the core box. This sealing process shall be accomplished as soon as possible after the core is removed from the core barrel. The minimum length of core that is preserved from each boring shall be no less than 2.5 times the core diameter. Spacer blocks shall be marked and placed in the core box to show where samples have been removed.
4. Labeling, Marking and Packing Core: Stenciled labels for core boxes complying with paragraph CORE BOX LABELS shall be placed on the inside and outside of the top cover in addition to each end. In addition, the depths (or elevations) of each core run/pull shall be marked with a black waterproof pen on the spacer blocks that are placed between core pulls. When a box is full, the space between the core and the trough sides shall be filled with finely ground vermiculite or other packing material approved by the Owner.
5. Disposition of Core: While on site, the Contractor shall protect the filled core boxes from direct sunlight, precipitation, and freezing by some form of the Owner approved shelter that allows ventilation to the boxes. Upon completion of core drilling and sampling operations, core boxes containing cores shall be stored in an area provided by the Owner near the site of drilling **OR** shipped or delivered to address provided by the Owner, **as directed**.

I. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): The Contractor shall pressure-test each hole commencing at the top of bedrock and progressing downward to the bottom of the hole or to such depths as determined by the Owner below which testing of the hole is not necessary. Where core data from the test holes indicate only isolated zones that are open or fractured, pressure testing may be limited by the Owner to these zones only. Water pressure employed for each lift shall be determined in the field by the Owner and shall not exceed of depth one pound per square inch per foot (22.6 kPa per meter) of depth to the upper expander. The pressure test will be divided into two phases; the first phase will be a flow test which shall then be followed by the second phase which is a duration test. In performing the first phase, water is pumped slowly at first, and the flow then gradually increased to the point where the predetermined maximum pressure is maintained, by adjusting the valve on the by-pass line. The allowable pressure shall be held for 1 minute before any readings are taken. The volume of flow into the test section shall be measured for a period of 5 minutes during which time the pressure shall not vary by more than 5 psi (34.5 kPa). After this 5-minute test, the second phase shall be started by closing the valve located

between the flow meter and the pressure gage. The drop in pressure is then read for a period of 5 minutes at 15 to 30-second intervals. In some situations, such as in a very tight formation, the Owner may eliminate phase one of the test. The Contractor may be required to make check tests at its own expense if the testing equipment or its assembly and arrangement are found to be faulty during or after the testing of any holes. The Contractor shall record all gage and meter readings made during a pressure test on a suitable form approved by the Owner.

J. Test Pit Excavation And Sampling

1. Excavation: The test pits shall be excavated in the order scheduled in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING, and shall be excavated to depths and dimensions indicated in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING. Before excavating pits, the Contractor shall thoroughly familiarize itself with work site and with all available subsurface data, particularly groundwater conditions. Regardless of the method of excavation employed, the pits shall be excavated, dewatered and shored/lined in conformance with all applicable safety regulations.
2. Sampling: Soil samples shall be obtained from each pit at the depths/elevations indicated in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING **OR** at depths determined by the Owner, **as directed**. In obtaining samples from test pits, the undisturbed in situ (in place) natural physical and structural characteristics of the sampled materials shall be preserved insofar as possible both while samples are being taken and during shipment to the point of testing. In cohesive and partially cohesive soils this may be accomplished by isolating the soil column or cube to be sampled by gently trenching around it and knife-trimming it to the required dimensions of the split cylinder or box. A thin coating of melted 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax shall then be applied quickly but gently to the sample with a paint brush to seal it against loss of moisture. The metal or wooden sample container, with the top and bottom removed shall then be placed over the wax coated sample such that the sample is centered within the container and the top of the container sides are at least 1 inch (25 mm) above the top of the sample. The spaces between the sample and the side walls of the container shall then be filled with melted wax. After this wax has congealed, the space between the top of the sample container sides and the top of the sample shall be filled with wax. After this wax has congealed, it shall be trimmed so that when the top of the sample container is installed there is no void between the container top and the wax. After the container top is installed, the soil column or cube shall then be cut off a few hundred inches (millimeters) below the container, the sample and container inverted and removed from the pit and the sample trimmed at the base so that the bottom of the sample is at least 1 inch (25 mm) below the bottom of the container. This space shall be filled with wax and, after the wax has congealed, it shall be trimmed so that when the bottom of the container is installed, there shall be no void between the wax and the bottom of the container. Where overburden materials to be sampled are only partially cohesive, it is best not to expose the entire soil column before waxing. By exposing and waxing small sections at a time, the sample will be subjected to less disturbance. Where natural moisture content is an important factor, delay shall be avoided in taking the sample in order that the natural moisture content of the material may be retained to the fullest extent.
3. Disposition of Samples: Samples shall be packed in vermiculite or a packing material approved by the Owner and shipped in sturdy wooden boxes of strength and construction sufficient to guarantee against damage during shipment. Boxes should be no larger than is required for shipping two such samples. All sample boxes shall be marked FRAGILE-HANDLE WITH CARE and shall be identified by labels, similar to those as specified in paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES, attached to the outside of each box. Extreme care shall be taken to indicate the top and bottom of each sample. The Contractor shall avoid exposing sealed and crated samples to precipitation and extremes of temperature. Undisturbed samples permitted to freeze, even partially, shall be replaced by the Contractor at its expense. The Contractor shall not hold these samples at the site of sampling for a period in excess of one week. Prior to shipment, each sealed and boxed sample shall be checked for correct labeling.

K. Supplemental Borings or Pits: Borings or Pits that are abandoned or from which unsatisfactory samples or cores are obtained will be supplemented by other borings or pits adjacent to the original in order that satisfactory samples or the required information will be obtained. Actual locations of any supplemental borings or pits will be established by the Owner. Penetration to the depth where the original was abandoned or to the depths where unsatisfactory samples were obtained may be made by any method selected by the Contractor that in the opinion of the Owner will permit satisfactory completion and sampling below the elevation where the last satisfactory sample was obtained in the abandoned or satisfactory sampling in the reaches where satisfactory samples were not obtained in the original borings or pits. No payment will be made for supplemental borings or pits that are required to be drilled or excavated to replace borings or pits that were abandoned or from which satisfactory samples were not obtained because of mechanical failure of drilling and sampling equipment, negligence on the part of the Contractor, or other preventable cause for which the Contractor is responsible except that payment will be made for acceptable portions of these supplementary borings or pits below the depths or outside the reaches for which payment was made for the original borings or pits.

L. Backfilling
1. Drill Holes: Unless otherwise noted in these specifications or directed by the Owner, all drill holes shall be backfilled and abandoned in accordance with all Federal, State, and local laws, regulations and ordinances. The Contractor shall preserve all holes in good condition until final measurement and until the records and samples have been accepted. As a minimum, all holes shall be grouted from the bottom of the hole to within 2 feet (600 mm) of the ground. All grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe that is inserted to the bottom of the boring to ensure that the grout fills the full extent of the hole. The remaining ungrouted portion of the hole shall be backfilled with local soil and tamped. All backfilling operations shall be performed in the presence of the Owner and, if required by regulation, Federal, State, and local officials. No separate payment will be made for backfilling drill holes. The cost of this work shall be included in the drilling costs.
2. Test Pits: The Contractor shall backfill all test pits with local soil compacted to original densities as directed by the Owner. No separate payment will be made for backfilling test pits. The cost of this work shall be included in the test pit excavation costs.

M. Records: The Contractor shall keep accurate driller's logs and records of all work accomplished under this contract and shall deliver complete, legible copies of these logs and records to the Owner upon completion of the work or at such other time or times as it may be directed. All such records shall be recorded during the actual performance of the work and shall be preserved in good condition and order by the Contractor until they are delivered and accepted. The Owner shall have the right to examine and review all such records at any time prior to their delivery to him and shall have the right to request changes to the record keeping procedure. The following information shall be included on the logs or in the records for each hole or test pit:
1. Hole or Test Pit number or designation and elevation of top of hole or test pit.
2. Driller's name and Geologist's name.
3. Make, size, and manufacturer's model designation of drilling, sampling, pressure testing, and test-pit excavating equipment.
4. Type of drilling, sampling, and pressure testing operation by depth.
5. Hole diameter.
6. Dates and time by depths when test-pit excavation, drilling, sampling, and pressure testing operations were performed.
7. Time required for drilling each run and pressure testing each interval tested.
8. Drill action, rotation speed, hydraulic pressure, water pressure, tool drops, and any other unusual and non-ordinary experience which could indicate the subsurface conditions encountered.
9. Depths at which samples or cores were recovered or attempts made to sample or core including top and bottom depth of each run and of each interval pressure tested.
10. Classification or description by depths of the materials sampled, cored, or penetrated using the Unified Soil Classification System (ASTM D 2487) and including a description of moisture conditions, consistency and other appropriate descriptive information described in paragraph

SUPPLEMENTAL BORINGS or PITS of ASTM D 2488. This classification or description shall be made immediately after the samples or cores are retrieved.

11. Classification and description by depths of rock materials sampled or cored including rock type, composition, texture, presence and orientation of bedding, floiation, or fractures, presence of vugs or other interstices, and the RQD for each cored interval.
12. Indication of penetration resistance such as drive-hammer blows given in blows per foot for driving sample spoons and casing and the pressure in applied to push thin-wall or piston-type samplers.
13. Weight (Force) of drive hammer.
14. Percentage of sample or core recovered per run.
15. Depth at which groundwater is encountered initially and when stabilized.
16. Depths at which drill water is lost and regained and amounts.
17. Depths at which the color of the drill water return changes.
18. Type and weight of drill fluid.
19. Depth of bottom of hole.
20. Pressures employed in pressure testing.

TABLE 1 - COMMON CORE DIAMETERS

	CORE DIAMETER		HOLE DIAMETER	
	in.	(mm)	in.	(mm)
Conventional Core Barrels				
AWG	1.185	(30.1)	1.890	(48.0)
BWG	1.655	(42.0)	2.360	(60.0)
NWG	2.155	(54.7)	2.980	(75.7)
HWG	3.000	(76.2)	3.907	(99.2)
Wireline Core Barrels*				
A	1.064	(27.0)	1.890	(48.0)
B	1.432	(36.5)	2.360	(60.0)
N	1.875	(47.6)	2.980	(75.7)
H	2.450	(62.2)	3.716	(94.4)
	3.345	(85.0)	4.827	(122.6)
Large Diameter Series				
2-3/4" X 3-7/8"	2.690	(68.3	3.875	(98.4)
4" X 5-1/2"	3.970	(100.8)	5.495	(139.6)
6" X 7-3/4"	5.970	(151.6)	7.750	(196.9)

*No Industry Standard for Wireline Sizes. Diameters shown for wireline core barrels are nominal and vary between manufacturers.

END OF SECTION 02 32 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 32 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 41 13 13 - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE REMOVAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for portland cement concrete removal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Section Includes:
1. Provide all labor, materials and equipment required for the removal work and disposal of existing Portland Cement Concrete indicated on the drawings and specified, including but not limited to the following:
   a. Saw cutting existing concrete pavements, sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters noted on drawings to be removed.
   b. Saw cutting existing concrete sidewalks for new tree pit openings (refer to drawings for locations).
   c. Saw cutting existing bituminous paving noted on drawings to be removed.
   d. Removal and disposal of demolished concrete sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters, including concrete removed for new tree pit openings.
   e. Removal and disposal of demolished bituminous paving.
   f. All excavating, rough grading and compacting as required to establish subgrade for new sidewalks, and Subgrade and Sub-Base for driveways.
   g. Providing, placing and grading sand fill under new sidewalks. Top of compacted subgrades shall allow for the placement of sidewalks plus thickness of sand fill.
   h. Removal and disposal of excavated material.

C. Special Requirements:
1. Protection: Provide protection barricades, maintain all lights and signals and other measures as required by federal, state, and municipal laws, for the full period of demolition operations and remove same when directed. In removing work, perform all work required to protect and maintain adjacent property, streets, alleys, sidewalks, curbs, and other structures remaining in place.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Backfilling Material:
1. Sand: Natural sand, with the following gradation: 100% passing the 1 sieve-, 65-100% passing the No. 4 sieve; 40-90% passing the No. 10 sieve- 30-80% passing the No. 16 sieve- 10-50% passing the No. 50 sieve; 0-30% passing the No. 100 sieve, and 0-10% passing the No. 200 sieve.
2. Crushed Stone: Crushed stone having a #57 crusher run gradation.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Demolition:
1. The contractor shall accept the site as it finds it and shall inform itself as to the character and types of work to be removed. The Owner assumes no responsibility for the condition of the existing construction to be removed or demolished.
2. No demolition shall be commenced until a program of operations has been coordinated with the Owner, except that preparatory work may be started if specifically approved by the Owner.

3. Operations shall be done in such manner as to avoid hazards to persons and property and interference with use of adjacent areas or interruption of free passage to and from such areas. Maintain Pedestrian access to all private entrances where construction of new sidewalks is in progress. Provide temporary walk ways or other means as required to maintain entry into the private properties, complying with all laws and ordinances and as approved by the Owner. Care shall be taken to prevent the spread of dust and flying particles.
4. Demolition and removal work shall be executed in a careful and orderly manner. Accumulation of rubbish will not be permitted.
5. After work is started, it shall be continued to completion at a rate that will allow the balance of the work to be completed within the time specified. If extra shifts are necessary beyond regular working hours, the work shall proceed with a minimum of nuisance to surrounding properties.
6. Contractor shall determine the nature and extent of demolition that will be necessary by comparing the drawings with the existing field conditions. It is expressly understood that this contract includes all work of a demolition nature that may be required or necessary for a full and complete execution of the work, whether particularly referred to herein or not.

B. Removal And Excavation:
1. When removing existing sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters provisions shall be made for satisfactory transition between replacements and the portion remaining in place. The contractor shall saw cut to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches with a concrete sawing machine to prevent the surface from spalling when the concrete is broken out. This work shall be done in such a manner that a straight joint will be secured.
2. It shall be the responsibility of the contractor to determine the thickness of the existing sidewalk to be removed. No additional compensation will be allowed because of variations from the assumed thickness or from the thickness shown on the plans.
3. After existing concrete sidewalks and driveways have been removed, excavate to depth required for sand fill.
4. The bottoms of all excavations shall be properly leveled off and all loose materials shall be removed from excavations. All wood, timber and organic materials, that are exposed at the bottom of all excavations, shall be removed and the area backfilled with sand and compacted.
5. Any excess or unauthorized excavation shall be backfilled with sand and compacted, at no additional cost to the Owner.
6. No backfill shall be placed in standing water, on frozen ground or on surfaces which have not been approved by the Commissioner.
7. Backfilling for all areas shall be approved material. Backfill shall be compacted to 95% maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 1557.
8. Contractor shall determine the nature and extent of excavation work that will be necessary by comparing the drawings with the existing areas to be excavated. It is expressly understood that this contract includes all work of an excavation nature that may be required or necessary for a complete execution of all excavation work, whether particularly referred to herein or not.

C. Disposal Of Materials:
1. All demolished and unsuitable materials, including excavated earth removed to establish required grade elevations shall be disposed of legally in such a manner that public or private property will not be damaged or endangered.

D. Clean-Up:
1. On completion of the demolition work, excavation work and before acceptance by the Owner, clean the areas affected, including areas outside the limits of the contractor's work area where permission to work has been granted. Remove surplus construction material or debris resulting from the demolition work and excavation work, and dispose of legally off the site.
2. Access routes to and from the site shall be kept clean of debris resulting from the work.

END OF SECTION 02 41 13 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 41 13 13	02 41 19 13	Selective Demolition

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 41 16 13 - BUILDING DEMOLITION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for building demolition. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Demolition and removal of buildings and site improvements.
b. Abandoning in place **OR** Removing, **as directed**, below-grade construction.
c. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning in-place **OR** removing, **as directed**, site utilities.
d. Salvaging items for reuse by the Owner.

C. Definitions
1. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged.
2. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to the Owner ready for reuse. Include fasteners or brackets needed for reattachment elsewhere.

D. Materials Ownership
1. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
2. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to the Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of the Owner.
a. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to the Owner.

E. Informational Submittals
1. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
2. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit informational report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control, **as directed**. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
a. Adjacent Buildings: Detail special measures proposed to protect adjacent buildings to remain.
3. Schedule of Building Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
a. Detailed sequence of demolition work, with starting and ending dates for each activity.
b. Temporary interruption of utility services.
c. Shutoff and capping or re-routing of utility services.
4. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to the Owner prior to start of demolition.
5. Predemolition Photographs **OR** Video, **as directed**: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by building demolition operations. Submit before the Work begins.
6. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.
7. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that

recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.
4. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be demolished.
   b. Review structural load limitations of existing structures.
   c. Review and finalize building demolition schedule and verify availability of demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
   d. Review and finalize protection requirements.
   e. Review procedures for noise control and dust control.
   f. Review procedures for protection of adjacent buildings.
   g. Review items to be salvaged and returned to the Owner.

G. Project Conditions
1. Buildings to be demolished will be vacated and their use discontinued before start of the Work.
2. Buildings immediately adjacent to demolition area will be occupied. Conduct building demolition so operations of occupied buildings will not be disrupted.
   a. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice of activities that will affect operations of adjacent occupied buildings.
   b. Maintain access to existing walkways, exits, and other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings.
      1) Do not close or obstruct walkways, exits, or other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings without written permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
3. the Owner assumes no responsibility for buildings and structures to be demolished.
   a. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
   b. Before building demolition, the Owner will remove certain items, as directed by the Owner.
4. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
   a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work.
   b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and the Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner under a separate contract.

   OR

   Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in buildings and structures to be demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
   a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
   b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
   c. the Owner will provide material safety data sheets for materials that are known to be present in buildings and structures to be demolished because of building operations or processes performed there.
5. On-site storage or sale of removed items or materials is not permitted.

H. Coordination
1. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with the Owner's on-site operations **OR** operations of adjacent occupied buildings, **as directed**.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Soil Materials
1. Satisfactory Soils: Satisfactory Soils: For soils which is to be used for backfilling voids that result from demolition operations in below-grade areas, comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting demolition operations.
2. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction provided by the Owner. the Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
3. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs **OR** video, **as directed**, of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
4. Perform **OR** Engage a professional engineer to perform, **as directed**, an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during building demolition operations.
   a. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
5. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.

B. Preparation
1. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction before starting demolition.
2. Existing Utilities: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utilities serving buildings and structures to be demolished.
   a. the Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
      OR
      Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies, **as directed**.
   b. If removal, relocation, or abandonment of utility services will affect adjacent occupied buildings, then provide temporary utilities that bypass buildings and structures to be demolished and that maintain continuity of service to other buildings and structures.
   c. Cut off pipe or conduit a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) below grade. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

   OR

   Existing Utilities: Refer to Division 22 AND Division 26 for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utilities. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing, **as directed**.
3. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent unexpected movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
   a. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of demolition.
4. Salvaged Items: Comply with the following:
   a. Clean salvaged items of dirt and demolition debris.
   b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
   c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to the Owner.
   d. Transport items to storage area designated by the Owner **OR** indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

C. Protection
   1. Existing Facilities: Protect adjacent walkways, loading docks, building entries, and other building facilities during demolition operations. Maintain exits from existing buildings.
   2. Existing Utilities: Maintain utility services to remain and protect from damage during demolition operations.
      a. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving adjacent occupied or operating facilities unless authorized in writing by the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
      b. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
         1) Provide at least 72 hours' notice to occupants of affected buildings if shutdown of service is required during changeover.
   3. Temporary Protection: Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, and as indicated. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls".
      a. Protect adjacent buildings and facilities from damage due to demolition activities.
      b. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
      c. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
      d. Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
      e. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around building demolition area and to and from occupied portions of adjacent buildings and structures.
      f. Protect walls, windows, roofs, and other adjacent exterior construction that are to remain and that are exposed to building demolition operations.
      g. Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust, noise, and dirt migration to occupied portions of adjacent buildings.
   4. Remove temporary barriers and protections where hazards no longer exist. Where open excavations or other hazardous conditions remain, leave temporary barriers and protections in place.

D. Demolition, General
   1. General: Demolish indicated existing buildings and site improvements completely. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
      a. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
      b. Maintain fire watch during and for a specified time after flame cutting operations as directed by the Owner.
      c. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
      d. Locate building demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
   2. Engineering Surveys: During demolition, perform surveys to detect hazards that may result from building demolition activities.
   3. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct building demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
      a. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
      b. Use water mist and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations. Do not use water when it may damage adjacent construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
   4. Explosives: Use of explosives is not permitted, **unless directed otherwise**.

E. Demolition By Mechanical Means
1. Proceed with demolition of structural framing members systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete building demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
2. Remove debris from elevated portions of the building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
   a. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to minimize ground impact and dust generation.
3. Salvage: Items to be salvaged are indicated on Drawings **OR** below, **as directed**:
   a. Doors and door hardware.
   b. Windows.
   c. Cabinets.
   d. Mirrors.
   e. Chalkboards.
   f. Tackboards.
   g. Marker boards.
   h. Plumbing fixtures.
   i. Other items as directed.
4. Below-Grade Construction: Abandon foundation walls and other below-grade construction. Cut below-grade construction flush with grade.

   OR

   Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction that are within footprint of new construction and extending 5 feet (1.5 m) outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon below-grade construction outside this area.
   a. Remove below-grade construction, including basements, foundation walls, and footings, completely **OR** to at least 6 inches (150 mm) below grade **OR** to at least 12 inches (300 mm) below grade **OR** to depths indicated, **as directed**.

   OR

   Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction.
   b. Remove below-grade construction, including basements, foundation walls, and footings, completely **OR** to at least 6 inches (150 mm) below grade **OR** to at least 12 inches (300 mm) below grade **OR** to depths indicated, **as directed**.
5. Existing Utilities: Abandon existing utilities and below-grade utility structures. Cut utilities flush with grade.

   OR

   Existing Utilities: Demolish existing utilities and below-grade utility structures that are within 5 feet (1.5 m) outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon utilities outside this area.
   a. Fill abandoned utility structures with satisfactory soil materials **OR** recycled pulverized concrete, **as directed**, according to backfill requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
   b. Piping: Disconnect piping at unions, flanges, valves, or fittings.
   c. Wiring Ducts: Disassemble into unit lengths and remove plug-in and disconnecting devices.

   OR

   Existing Utilities: Demolish and remove existing utilities and below-grade utility structures.
   a. Piping: Disconnect piping at unions, flanges, valves, or fittings.
   b. Wiring Ducts: Disassemble into unit lengths and remove plug-in and disconnecting devices.

F. Demolition By Explosives – ONLY IF APPROVED BY THE OWNER
1. Explosives: Perform explosive demolition according to governing regulations.
   a. Obtain written permission from authorities having jurisdiction before bringing explosives to, or using explosives on, Project site.
   b. Do not damage adjacent structures, property, or site improvements when using explosives.
2. Comply with recommendation in Explosives Consultant's report.

G. Site Restoration
   1. Below-Grade Areas: Rough grade below-grade areas ready for further excavation or new construction.
      OR
      Below-Grade Areas: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from building demolition operations with satisfactory soil materials **OR** recycled pulverized concrete **OR** recycled pulverized masonry, **as directed**, according to backfill requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
   2. Site Grading: Uniformly rough grade area of demolished construction to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.

H. Repairs
   1. Promptly repair damage to adjacent buildings caused by demolition operations.

I. Disposal Of Demolished Materials
   1. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in EPA approved landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. See Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal" for recycling and disposal of demolition waste.
      a. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
      b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
   2. Do not burn demolished materials.

J. Cleaning
   1. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by building demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before building demolition operations began.
      a. Clean roadways of debris caused by debris transport.

END OF SECTION 02 41 16 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 41 16 13	02 41 13 13	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 41 16 13	02 41 19 13	Selective Demolition

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 41 19 13 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for selective demolition. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
b. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
c. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

C. Definitions
1. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
2. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to the Owner ready for reuse, **as directed**.
3. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
4. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

D. Materials Ownership
1. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to the Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain the Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to the Owner.
a. Coordinate with the Owner's archaeologist **OR** historical adviser, **as directed**, who will establish special procedures for removal and salvage.

E. Submittals
1. Qualification Data: For demolition firm, professional engineer, refrigerant recovery technician, **as directed**.
2. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
a. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure the Owner's building manager's and other tenants' on-site operations are uninterrupted.
b. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
c. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
d. Use of elevator and stairs.
e. Locations of proposed dust- and noise-control temporary partitions and means of egress, including for other tenants affected by selective demolition operations.
f. Coordination of the Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of the Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
g. Means of protection for items to remain and items in path of waste removal from building.
3. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

4. Predemolition Photographs or Videotapes: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.
5. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.
    a. Comply with submittal requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".

F. Quality Assurance
1. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
2. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.
3. LEED Requirements for Building Reuse:
    a. Credit MR 1.1 and 1.2, **as directed**: Maintain existing building structure (including structural floor and roof decking) and envelope (exterior skin and framing, excluding window assemblies and nonstructural roofing material) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
    b. Credit MR 1.3: Maintain existing interior nonstructural elements (interior walls, doors, floor coverings, and ceiling systems) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
    c. Credit MR 1.2 and 1.3, **as directed**: Maintain existing nonshell, nonstructural components (walls, flooring, and ceilings) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
4. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.
6. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
    a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
    b. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
    c. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    d. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
    e. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

G. Project Conditions
1. the Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so the Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
2. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
    a. Before selective demolition, items will be removed as directed by the Owner.
3. Notify the Owner of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
4. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
    a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work **OR** have been removed by the Owner under a separate contract, **as directed**.
    b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner. the Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.

    OR

5. Hazardous Materials: It is unknown whether hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
   a. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner and the Owner. the Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.
6. Hazardous Materials (if asbestos abatement is part of Work of this Contract): Hazardous materials are present in construction to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
   a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
   b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
7. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
8. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
   a. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

H. Warranty
1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Utility Services And Mechanical/Electrical Systems
1. Existing Services/Systems: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
2. Service/System Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
   a. the Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
   b. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
   c. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
   d. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.
      1) Where entire wall is to be removed, existing services/systems may be removed with removal of the wall.

B. Preparation
1. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
2. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
   a. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
   b. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.

c. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
d. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
e. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling.

3. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
   a. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

C. Selective Demolition, General
1. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
   a. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
   b. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
   c. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
   d. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
   e. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
   f. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
   g. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
   h. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
   i. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".
2. Reuse of Building Elements: Project has been designed to result in end-of-Project rates for reuse of building elements as follows. Do not demolish building elements beyond what is indicated on Drawings without the Owner's approval.
   a. Building Structure and Shell: 75 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent.
   b. Nonshell Elements: 50 percent.
3. Removed and Salvaged Items:
   a. Clean salvaged items.
   b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
   c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to the Owner.
   d. Transport items to the Owner's storage area on-site **OR** off-site **OR** designated by the Owner **OR** indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
   a. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.
   b. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
   c. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

d. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

5. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by the Owner, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned, **as directed**, and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

D. Selective Demolition Procedures For Specific Materials

1. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete indicated for selective demolition. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.

   OR

   Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
2. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
4. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
   a. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
5. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. Refer to Division 07 for new roofing requirements.
   a. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
   b. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.
6. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.

E. Disposal Of Demolished Materials

1. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, **as directed**, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
   a. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
   b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
   c. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
   d. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".
2. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

   OR

   Burning: Burning of demolished materials will be permitted only at designated areas on the Owner's property, **as directed**, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
3. Disposal: Transport demolished materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on the Owner's property.

   OR

   Disposal: Transport demolished materials off the Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

F. Cleaning

1. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

G. Selective Demolition Schedule
1. Existing Items **OR** Construction, **as directed**, to Be Removed, as directed by the Owner.
2. Existing Items to Be Removed and Salvaged, as directed by the Owner.
3. Existing Items to Be Removed and Reinstalled, as directed by the Owner.
4. Existing Items to Remain, as directed by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 41 19 13	01 71 23 16	Cutting and Patching
02 41 19 13	02 41 13 13	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 41 19 13	02 41 16 13	Building Demolition
02 41 19 16	02 41 13 13	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 41 19 16	02 41 16 13	Building Demolition
02 41 19 16	02 41 19 13	Selective Demolition
02 43 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 61 26 00 - DISPOSAL OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for disposal of hazardous materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Definition
1. Hazardous materials shall be defined as asbestos containing materials, lead-based paint, PCBs, bird waste, and other materials categorized as hazardous by the EPA.

C. Submittals
1. Before start of work: At the pre-construction meeting, the Contractor shall submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until these submittal are returned with Owner's Representative stamp indicating that the submittal is returned for unrestricted use.
   a. Copy of State or local license for hazardous waste hauler.
   b. Certificate of at least one on-site supervisor which has satisfactorily completed the OSHA 40 hour Health and Safety course for handling hazardous materials.
   c. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed the OSHA 40-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials.
   d. List of the employees scheduled to perform this work.
   e. Schedule of start and finish times and dates for this work.
   f. Name and address of landfill where these waste materials are to be deposited. Include contact person and telephone number.
   g. Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for all materials to be removed.
   h. If contractor introduces any chemical into the work environment, a MSDS for that chemical must be presented to the Owner's Representative prior to use.
   i. Transporter must have notified the EPA and/or other appropriate local government agency in advance of its intentions to transport hazardous materials and, if applicable, receive an identification number.
   j. Contingency Plan for handling emergencies with spills or leaks.
   k. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed the OSHA 24-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Drums: Recovery or salvage drums acceptable for disposal of hazardous waste. Prior approval of drums is required. Drums or containers must meet the required OSHA, EPA (40 CFR Parts 264-264 and 300), and DOT Regulations (49 CFR Parts 171-178). Use of damaged containers shall not be allowed.
2. Labels: As required by the EPA and OSHA for handling, transportation, and disposal of hazardous waste.
3. Absorbent Material: Clay, soil or any commercially available absorbent used for the purpose of absorbing hazardous or potentially hazardous materials.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. All waste shall be transported and disposed of in accordance with all federal, state and local guidelines and regulations. The contractor is to obtain all permits, licenses, etc., which are necessary for the transporting and disposal of hazardous waste.

B. Waste haulers shall maintain waste manifest and shipment record forms.

END OF SECTION 02 61 26 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 61 26 00	02 82 33 00	Removal Of Friable Asbestos-Containing Materials

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 81 00 00 - EXCAVATION AND HANDLING OF CONTAMINATED MATERIAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for excavation and handling of contaminated material. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Shop Drawings: Separate cross-sections of each area before and after excavation and after backfilling.
2. Product Data: Work Plan within 30 calendar days after notice to proceed. No work at the site, with the exception of site inspections and surveys, shall be performed until the Work Plan is approved. The Contractor shall allow 30 calendar days in the schedule for the Owner's review. No adjustment for time or money will be made if resubmittals of the Work Plan are required due to deficiencies in the plan. At a minimum, the Work Plan shall include:
   a. Schedule of activities.
   b. Method of excavation and equipment to be used.
   c. Shoring or side-wall slopes proposed.
   d. Dewatering plan.
   e. Storage methods and locations for liquid and solid contaminated material.
   f. Borrow sources and haul routes.
   g. Decontamination procedures.
   h. Spill contingency plan.
3. Closure Report: Three (3) copies of the Closure Report within 14 calendar days of work completion at the site.
4. Test Reports
   a. Backfill
   b. Surveys
   c. Confirmation Sampling and Analysis
   d. Sampling of Stored Material
   e. Sampling Liquid
   f. Compaction
   g. Test results.

C. Surveys
1. Surveys shall be performed immediately prior to and after excavation of contaminated material to determine the volume of contaminated material removed. Surveys shall also be performed immediately after backfill of each excavation. The Contractor shall provide cross-sections on 25 foot (7.6 meter) intervals and at break points for all excavated areas. Locations of confirmation samples shall also be surveyed and shown on the drawings.

D. Regulatory Requirements
1. Permits and Licenses: The Contractor shall obtain required federal, state, and local permits for excavation and storage of contaminated material. Permits shall be obtained at no additional cost the Owner.
2. Air Emissions: Air emissions shall be monitored and controlled in accordance with the Owner’s Environmental Requirements.

E. Chemical Testing
1. Required sampling and chemical analysis shall be conducted in accordance with local requirements and the Owner’s requirements.

F. Scheduling
1. The Contractor shall notify the Owner five (5) calendar days prior to the start of excavation of contaminated material. the Owner will **OR** The Contractor shall, **as directed**, be responsible for contacting regulatory agencies in accordance with the applicable reporting requirements.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Backfill
1. Backfill material shall be obtained from the location indicated on the drawings **OR** offsite sources approved by the Owner, **as directed**. Backfill shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D 2487 as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SP, SM, SC, ML, MH, CL, or CH and shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, snow, ice or frozen materials. Backfill material shall be tested for the parameters listed below at a frequency of once per 3000 cubic yards (cubic meters). A minimum of one set of classification tests shall be performed per borrow source. One backfill sample per borrow source shall also be collected and tested for the chemical parameters listed below.

Physical Parameter	Test Method
Grain Size	ASTM D 422
Compaction	ASTM D 698

Backfill shall not be used until borrow source chemical and physical test results have been submitted and approved.

B. Spill Response Materials
1. The Contractor shall provide appropriate spill response materials including, but not limited to the following: containers, adsorbents, shovels, and personal protective equipment. Spill response materials shall be available at all times when contaminated materials/wastes are being handled or transported. Spill response materials shall be compatible with the type of materials and contaminants being handled.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Existing Structures And Utilities
1. No excavation shall be performed until site utilities have been field located. The Contractor shall take the necessary precautions to ensure no damage occurs to existing structures and utilities. Damage to existing structures and utilities resulting from the Contractor's operations shall be repaired at no additional cost to the Owner. Utilities encountered that were not previously shown or otherwise located shall not be disturbed without approval from the Owner.

B. Clearing
1. Clearing shall be performed to the limits shown on the drawings in accordance with Division 2 Section “Site Clearing.”

C. Contaminated Material Removal
1. Excavation: Areas of contamination shall be excavated to the depth and extent shown on the drawings and not more than 0.2 feet (60 mm) beyond the depth and extent shown on the drawings unless directed by the Owner. Excavation shall be performed in a manner that will limit spills and the potential for contaminated material to be mixed with uncontaminated material. An excavation log describing visible signs of contamination encountered shall be maintained for each area of excavation. Excavation logs shall be prepared in accordance with ASTM D 5434.
2. Shoring: If workers must enter the excavation, it shall be evaluated, shored, sloped or braced as required by U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) EM 385-1-1 and U.S. National Archives and Records Administration (NARA) 29 CFR 1926 section 650.

3. Dewatering: Surface water shall be diverted to prevent entry into the excavation. Dewatering shall be limited to that necessary to assure adequate access, a safe excavation, prevent the spread of contamination, and to ensure that compaction requirements can be met. No dewatering shall be performed without prior approval of the Owner.

D. Confirmation Sampling And Analysis
1. the Owner shall be present to inspect the removal of contaminated material from each site. After all material suspected of being contaminated has been removed, the excavation shall be examined for evidence of contamination. If the excavation appears to be free of contamination, field analysis shall be used to determine the presence of contamination using a real time vapor monitoring instrument **OR** immunoassay field kits, **as directed**. Excavation of additional material shall be as directed by the Owner. After all suspected contaminated material is removed, confirmation samples shall be collected and analyzed.
2. Samples shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner. A minimum of one sample shall be collected from the bottom and each side wall of the excavation. Based on test results, the Contractor shall propose any additional excavation which may be required to remove material which is contaminated above action levels. Additional excavation shall be subject to approval by the Owner. Locations of samples shall be marked in the field and documented on the as-built drawings.

E. Contaminated Material Storage
1. Material shall be placed in temporary storage immediately after excavation **OR** after treatment while awaiting test results, **as directed**. The following paragraphs describe acceptable methods of material storage. Storage units shall be in good condition and constructed of materials that are compatible with the material or liquid to be stored. If multiple storage units are required, each unit shall be clearly labeled with an identification number and a written log shall be kept to track the source of contaminated material in each temporary storage unit.
2. Stockpiles
   a. Stockpiles shall be constructed to isolate stored contaminated material from the environment. The maximum stockpile size shall be as directed by the Owner. Stockpiles shall be constructed to include:
      1) A chemically resistant geomembrane liner free of holes and other damage. Non-reinforced geomembrane liners shall have a minimum thickness of 20 mils (0.5 mm). Scrim reinforced geomembrane liners shall have a minimum weight of 40 lbs. per 1000 square feet (20 kg/100 square meters). The ground surface on which the geomembrane is to be placed shall be free of rocks greater than 0.5 inches (12 mm) in diameter and any other object which could damage the membrane.
      2) Geomembrane cover free of holes or other damage to prevent precipitation from entering the stockpile. Non-reinforced geomembrane covers shall have a minimum thickness of 10 mils (0.25 mm). Scrim reinforced geomembrane covers shall have a minimum weight of 26 lbs. per 1000 square feet (13 kg/100 square meters). The cover material shall be extended over the berms and anchored or ballasted to prevent it from being removed or damaged by wind.
      3) Berms surrounding the stockpile, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) in height. Vehicle access points shall also be bermed.
      4) The liner system shall be sloped to allow collection of leachate. Storage and removal of liquid which collects in the stockpile, in accordance with paragraph Liquid Storage.
3. Roll-Off Units: Roll-off units used to temporarily store contaminated material shall be water tight. A cover shall be placed over the units to prevent precipitation from contacting the stored material. The units shall be located as shown on the drawings. Liquid which collects inside the units shall be removed and stored in accordance with paragraph Liquid Storage.
4. Liquid Storage: Liquid collected from excavations and stockpiles shall be temporarily stored in 55 gallon barrels (220 L barrels) **OR** 500 gallon tanks (2000 L tanks), **as directed**. Liquid storage containers shall be water-tight and shall be located as shown on the drawings.

F. Sampling
1. Sampling of Stored Material
a. Samples of stored material shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner.
b. Stored material with contaminant levels that exceed the action levels shall be treated offsite. Analyses for contaminated material to be taken to an offsite treatment facility shall conform to local, state, and federal criteria as well as to the requirements of the treatment facility. Documentation of all analyses performed shall be furnished to the Owner. Additional sampling and analyses to the extent required by the approved offsite treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner **OR** subject to approval by the Owner, **as directed**.
OR
Stored material with contaminant levels that exceed the action levels shall be treated onsite.
2. Sampling Liquid
a. Liquid collected from excavations **OR** storage areas **OR** decontamination facilities, **as directed**, shall be sampled at a frequency of once for every 500 gallons (2,000 L) of liquid collected.
b. Liquid with contaminant levels that exceed action levels shall be treated offsite. Analyses for contaminated liquid to be taken to an offsite treatment facility shall conform to local, state, and federal criteria as well as to the requirements of the treatment facility. Documentation of all analyses performed shall be furnished to the Owner. Additional sampling and analysis to the extent required by the approved offsite treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility receiving the material shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner **OR** subject to approval by the Owner.
OR
Liquid with contaminant levels that exceed action levels shall be treated onsite.
3. Sampling Beneath Storage Units
a. Samples from beneath each storage unit shall be collected prior to construction of and after removal of the storage unit. Samples shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner from a depth interval of 0 to 0.5 feet (0 to 0.15 m).
b. Based on test results, soil which has become contaminated above action levels shall be removed at no additional cost to the Owner. Contaminated material which is removed from beneath the storage unit shall be handled in accordance with paragraph Sampling of Stored Material. as directed by the Owner and at no additional cost to the Owner, additional sampling and testing shall be performed to verify areas of contamination found beneath stockpiles have been cleaned up to below action levels.

G. Spills
1. In the event of a spill or release of a hazardous substance (as designated in NARA 40 CFR 302), pollutant, contaminant, or oil (as governed by the Oil Pollution Act [OPA], 33 U.S.C. 2701 et seq.), the Contractor shall notify the Owner immediately. If the spill exceeds the reporting threshold, the Contractor shall follow the pre-established procedures as described in the Contingency Plan for immediate reporting and containment. Immediate containment actions shall be taken to minimize the effect of any spill or leak. Cleanup shall be in accordance with applicable federal, state, and local regulations. as directed by the Owner, additional sampling and testing shall be performed to verify spills have been cleaned up. Spill cleanup and testing shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.

H. Backfilling
1. Confirmation Test Results: Excavations shall be backfilled immediately after all contaminated materials have been removed and confirmation test results have been approved. Backfill shall be placed and compacted to the lines and grades shown on the drawings.

2. Compaction: Approved backfill shall be placed in lifts with a maximum loose thickness of 8 inches (200 mm). Soil shall be compacted to 90 percent of ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**, maximum dry density. Density tests shall be performed at a frequency of once per 10,000 square feet (930 square meters) per lift. A minimum of one density test shall be performed on each lift of backfill placed. Field in-place dry density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, or ASTM D 2922. If ASTM D 2922 is used, a minimum of one in ten tests shall be checked using ASTM D 1556 or ASTM D 2167. Test results from ASTM D 1556 or ASTM D 2167 shall govern if there is a discrepancy with the ASTM D 2922 test results.

I. Disposal Requirements
1. Offsite disposal of contaminated material shall be in accordance with Division 2 Section “Disposal of Hazardous Materials.”

J. Closure Report
1. Three copies of a Closure Report shall be prepared and submitted within 14 calendar days of completing work at the site. The report shall be labeled with the contract number, project name, location, date, and name of general contractor. The Closure Report shall include the following information as a minimum:
   a. A cover letter signed by a responsible company official **OR** Professional Engineer registered in the state of the work who is a responsible company official, **as directed**, certifying that all services involved have been performed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract documents and regulatory requirements.
   b. A narrative report including, but not limited to, the following:
      1) site conditions, ground water elevation, and cleanup criteria;
      2) excavation logs;
      3) field screening readings;
      4) quantity of materials removed from each area of contamination;
      5) quantity of water/product removed during dewatering;
      6) sampling locations and sampling methods;
      7) sample collection data such as time of collection and method of preservation;
      8) sample chain-of-custody forms; and
      9) source of backfill.
   c. Copies of all chemical and physical test results.
   d. Copies of all manifests and land disposal restriction notifications.
   e. Copies of all certifications of final disposal signed by the responsible disposal facility official.
   f. Waste profile sheets.
   g. Scale drawings showing limits of each excavation, limits of contamination, known underground utilities within 50 feet (15 m) of excavation, sample locations, and sample identification numbers. On-site stockpile, storage, treatment, loading, and disposal areas shall also be shown on the drawings.
   h. Progress Photographs. Color photographs shall be used to document progress of the work. A minimum of four views of the site showing the location of the area of contamination, entrance/exit road, and any other notable site conditions shall be taken before work begins. After work has been started, activities at each work location shall be photographically recorded daily **OR** weekly, **as directed**. Photographs shall be a minimum of 3 x 5 inches (76.2 x 127.0 mm) and shall include:
      1) Soil removal and sampling.
      2) Dewatering operations.
      3) Unanticipated events such as spills and the discovery of additional contaminated material.
      4) Contaminated material/water storage, handling, treatment, and transport.
      5) Site or task-specific employee respiratory and personal protection.
      6) Fill placement and grading.

7) Post-construction photographs. After completion of work at each site, the Contractor shall take a minimum of four views of each excavation site. A digital version of all photos shown in the report shall be included with the Closure Report. Photographs shall be a minimum of 3 inches by 5 inches (76mm by 127 mm) and shall be mounted back-to-back in double face plastic sleeves punched to fit standard three ring binders. Each print shall have an information box attached. The box shall be typewritten and arranged as follows:

Project Name: Direction of View:
Location: Date/Time:
Photograph No.: Description of View:

END OF SECTION 02 81 00 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 81 00 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 82 16 00 - ENCAPSULATION (LOCK-DOWN) OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for encapsulation (lock-down) of asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: Manufacturers technical information including label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
2. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions with specific project requirements noted.
3. Performance Warrantee: Manufacturers performance guarantee.
4. Material Safety Data Sheet: Material Safety Data Sheet in accordance with the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200) for each surfactant and encapsulating material proposed for use on the work. Include a separate attachment for each sheet indicating the specific worker protective equipment proposed for use with the material indicated.

C. Delivery And Storage: Deliver materials to the job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:
1. Name or title of material
2. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture
3. Manufacturer's name
4. Thinning instructions
5. Application instructions
6. Deliver materials together with a copy of the OSHA Material
7. Safety Data Sheet for the material.

D. Job Conditions: Apply encapsulating materials only when environmental conditions in the work area are as required by the manufacturer's instructions.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Testing: Test material to be encapsulated using methods set forth in ASTM E1494 “Standard Practice for Encapsulants for Spray-or-Trowel-Applied Friable Asbestos- Containing Building Materials."

F. Warranty
1. Performance Warranty: Contractor shall submit written Performance Warranty, executed by the contractor, agreeing to repair/replace spray-on work which has cracked, fallen from substrate, or otherwise deteriorated to a condition where it would not perform effectively for its intended purposes due substantially to defective materials or workmanship and not due to abuse by occupants, improper maintenance, unforeseeable ambient exposures or other causes beyond anticipated conditions and contractors control. Warranty period shall be for at least one year after date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Encapsulant system shall be an acrylic, elastomeric type, spray, brush or roller-applied, tinted penetrating or tinted bridging type, specifically designed for application to asbestos-containing material. System shall be equal to Global Encasement System as manufactured by GLOBAL Encasement Inc., 132-32nd Street, Union City, NJ 07087 U.S.A., Tel. (800) 266-3982/(201) 902-9770.
    a. All encasement topcoat materials shall be warranted to be heavy-bodied, from the same manufacturer, and shall be long lasting, highly-pure (low VOC) materials that remain flexible, chalk resistant and resist cracking, peeling, algae and fungus that can cause future indoor air quality concerns.
    b. To allow for building movement without cracking or disturbing fibrous materials, coating systems shall have passed testing to ASTM standards for adhesion, permeability, aged flexibility and with aged elasticity for the encasement system of over 250%.
    c. Coatings shall be Class A Fire Rated, water-based, non-toxic, safe and easy to use, contain no hazardous ingredients by OSHA definition, comply with all known building codes and be non-flammable.
    d. Coating materials shall have low VOC (Volatile Organic Compound) content.
    e. Coating materials shall not release health threatening toxic smoke and fumes in a fire and shall comply with all known building codes.
    f. Coating materials shall have passed the following testing standards:
        1) ASTM E 119 fire tests demonstrating that applying a multi-layer system over fireproofing does not adversely affect the fireproof rating of the fireproofing (3 hour test).
        2) UPITT Combustion Toxicity Test proving nothing toxic is released in a fire.
        3) ASTM E 84 and E162 fire tests for "Class A" - Surface Flammability and Burning Characteristics (Flame Spread = 0, Smoke Developed = 5).
        4) "Pull-off Adhesion" test per ASTM E736 equals or exceeds 9,950 lbs./sq. ft. (89.1 lbs./sq. in.).
        5) ASTM D 1653 and E96 "Water Vapor Permeability" (showing the rate that water vapor can pass through the system).
        6) Impact Resistance, "Tensile Strength" shall exceed 150 psi; "Elongation" shall exceed 250%.
        7) System shall be mildew resistant, impact resistant, scrub resistant, non-yellowing, non-chalking, highly blister resistant, rust resistant, highly chemical resistant and shall remain flexible after 1000 hour ASTM Accelerated Weather testing.
        8) Water-Based materials (low VOC) Volatile Organic Content of Primer-Sealer-Neutralizer = 0.1 g/L (0.001 lb./gal.) and Encasement Top Coat = 0.1 g/L (0.001 lb./gal.) as tested by EPA Method 24.
        9) Materials comply with applicable standards for installation on interior and/or exterior surfaces of a building.
        10) Encasement Systems shall provide additional water-proofing protection.

B. Related Materials:
    1. Elastomeric architectural sealants, caulking compounds, primers, and similar materials shall be approved by the manufacturer of the encasement coatings. All materials used shall be applied in accordance with its manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Applicable Standards
    1. Product shall be rated as acceptable for use intended when field tested in accordance with ASTM E 1494.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. General

1. Prior to applying any encapsulating material in Work Areas, Contractor shall obtain final visual inspection approval by the Project Administrator.
2. Prior to applying any encapsulating material, Contractor shall ensure that application of the sealer will not cause the base material to fail and allow the sealed material to fall of its own weight or separate from the substrate. Should Contractor doubt the ability of the installation to support the sealant, request direction from the Owner's Representative before proceeding with the encapsulating work.
3. Do Not Commence Application of encapsulating materials until all removal work within the work area has been completed.

B. Worker Protection
1. Before beginning work with any material for which a Material Safety Data Sheet has been submitted provide workers with the required protective equipment. Require that appropriate protective equipment be used at all times.

C. Application
1. Comply with all manufacturer's instructions for particular conditions of installation. Consult with manufacturer's technical representative for conditions not covered.
2. Encapsulate all surfaces in full compliance with manufacturer's procedures.
3. At completion of Encapsulation and before removal of Work Area enclosures and Pressure Differential System, decontaminate space in accordance with requirements of manufacturer’s instructions.
4. Remove all debris from the project site and restore area to proper conditions by cleaning all surfaces in accordance with manufacturer’s written recommendations.
5. At completion of work submit manufacturer’s record of inspection of completed work and Manufacturers Performance Guarantee executed by both manufacturer and Contractor.

END OF SECTION 02 82 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 82 33 00 - REMOVAL OF FRIABLE ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of friable asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Description
1. Furnish all labor, materials, facilities, equipment, services, employee training and testing, permits and agreements necessary to perform the work required for asbestos removal, encapsulation, repair, clean-up, decontamination, re-insulation and all other work in accordance with these specifications, in accordance with the latest regulations from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), the recommendations of National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), and any other applicable federal, state and local government regulations. Whenever there is a conflict or overlap of the above references, the most stringent provision is applicable.
2. The work specified herein shall be performed by competent persons trained, knowledgeable and qualified in the state-of-the-art techniques of asbestos abatement, handling and subsequent cleaning of contaminated areas.

C. Scope
1. The quantities of materials and limits of abatement work area(s) shall be verified by the asbestos contractor.

D. Asbestos Hazard
1. Asbestos-containing material when damaged or disturbed is subject to fiber releases. Wet methods are a primary means of controlling fiber release.
2. Strict compliance with each of the provisions outlined in these specifications for the encapsulation, repair and handling of asbestos-containing material is of great importance, because:
   a. The inhalation of airborne asbestos fibers can cause a very serious and often fatal disease.
   b. Workers may not be aware they are inhaling asbestos fibers.
   c. Symptoms of the disease do not appear for many years.
   d. Only the Contractor and its employees can prevent the inhalation of asbestos fibers, which can lead to the development of asbestos-related disease.
   e. No insurance is available to provide for asbestos-related disease.

E. Other Hazardous Material
1. Contractor shall comply with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.62 - Lead in Construction when demolishing any equipment or architectural component identified as lead-containing or lead-based paint. The work of this project is considered a demolition activity.
2. the Owner anticipates that a substantial amount of the Project will involve lead paint.

F. Qualifications
1. the Owner and the Owner's Representative will verify and approve the experience of the Asbestos Abatement Contractor based upon submission at the time of bidding by Contractor evidence of the following:
   a. Experience: Provide the names and locations of at least three asbestos abatement projects of comparable size and complexity comparable with this work. Provide the names

and telephone numbers of contact person at previous projects. Provide the final air monitoring decontamination fiber levels achieved.

b. Personnel: Provide the name(s) of "Competent Person" as defined by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.32(f) - Asbestos. Demonstrate the education and specialized training with successful completion of examination of an EPA approved course. Provide evidence of participation in five projects of complexity comparable with this project.

c. Licensing and Certification: The Contractor must hold a current, valid asbestos license issued by the State in which the work is to be performed.

G. Notices And Record Keeping

1. Contractor shall maintain for at least 30 years, a record for each asbestos project in which the Contractor engages. Each record shall include the following information: name, address, and social security number of all personnel involved with the project, the name address and social security number of the OSHA "Competent Person" who will supervise the work, the amount of asbestos material that was removed, repaired, encapsulated or disturbed, the commencement and completion date of the work, copies of Hazardous Waste Manifest(s), personal air monitoring results and any other appropriate information.
2. The Contractor shall send written notification as required by USEPA National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS) Asbestos Regulations (40 CFR 61, Subpart M) to the Owner, at least 10 working days prior to beginning any work on asbestos-containing materials.
3. Include the following information:
   a. Name and address of the Owner or operator.
   b. Description of the facility being demolished or renovated, including the size, age, and prior use of the facility.
   c. Estimate of the approximate amount of asbestos material present in the facility in terms of linear feet of pipe, and surface area on other facility components. For facilities in which the amount of asbestos materials is less than 80 linear meters (260 linear feet) on pipes and less than 15 square meters (160 square feet) on other facility components, explain techniques of estimation.
   d. Location of the facility being demolished or renovated.
   e. Scheduled starting and completion dates of demolition or renovation.
   f. Nature of planned demolition or renovation and method(s) to be used.
   g. Procedures to be used to comply with the requirements of USEPA National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS) Asbestos Regulations (40 CFR 61 Subpart M).
   h. Name and location of the waste disposal site where the asbestos waste material will be deposited.
4. Prior to commencement of work, the Contractor shall submit the following documents to the Owner's Representative. No work will be allowed to start until these documents have been approved:
   a. The schedule of the work, including manpower, length and number of work shifts. Schedule shall be coordinated with the Owner's full occupancy of all areas of the building.
   b. Satisfactory proof that written notification has been provided to the EPA regional office and the Owner.
   c. Proof that all required permits, disposal site locations, and arrangements for transportation and disposal of asbestos-contaminated materials, supplies and the like have been obtained.
   d. Complete a worker certificate indicating that all employees have had instruction and training on the hazards of asbestos exposure, the use and fitting of respirators, protective dress, wet and dry decontamination procedures, entry and exit from work areas, and all aspects of work procedures and protective measures.
   e. Documentation indicating that all employees have received appropriate medical examinations and have successfully passed fit testing for the respirator to be worn. As a

minimum, medical exams must be consistent with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(K)(9)(viii)(G)-Asbestos Regulation.

f. Samples of signs to be used in and around the work area to comply with 0SHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(K)(9)(viii)(I)- Asbestos regulations and as required by federal, state and municipal regulations.

g. Material Safety Data Sheets (OSHA form 174 or equivalent) for all chemicals used during work performed under this section.

h. Encapsulation data and encapsulation procedures.

i. Design of pressure differential system including calculation used to arrive at the number of machines necessary to achieve one air change per every 10 minutes.

j. Location of personnel and material decontamination units for each work area.

5. Contractor shall provide written notification to the Owner's Representative of its intent to start work at least five days in advance. In no case will the Contractor start work until authorization to proceed is given.

6. During the work, Contractor shall maintain a daily log which will be kept at the job site. Items to be included in the daily log shall include but are not limited to the following:

a. Meetings, purpose, attendees, discussions, items of resolution.

b. Visitations, authorized and unauthorized.

c. Sign-in sheets of all personnel entering and leaving the work area.

d. Special or unusual events (i.e., barrier breeching equipment failures).

e. Personal air monitoring results.

f. Two copies of the daily log are required for Project Closeout.

H. Terminology (Definitions)

1. Abatement - Procedures to control fiber release from asbestos-containing materials. Includes removal, enclosure or encapsulation.

2. Air Lock - A system for permitting ingress or egress without permitting air movement between any two adjacent areas consisting of two curtained doorways. The air lock must be maintained in an uncontaminated condition at all times.

3. Air Monitoring; - The process of measuring the asbestos fiber content of a specific volume of air in a stated period of time using methods approved or recommended by OSHA, EPA, NIOSH or other method approved by the Owner or the Owner's Representative.

4. Amended water - Water to which a surfactant has been added.

5. Asbestos - A generic name given to a number of naturally occurring hydrated mineral silicates that possess a unique crystalline structure, are incombustible in air, and are separable into fibers. Asbestos includes the asbestiform varieties of Chrysotile (serpentine), Crocidolite (Riebeckite), Amosite (Cummingtonite-Grunente), Anthophyllite, Actinolite, and Tremolite.

6. Asbestos-containing. material (ACM) - Any material that contains more than 1 percent asbestos by weight as determined by Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM).

7. Authorized Visitor - the Owner or its designated representative, or a representative of any regulatory or other agency having jurisdiction over the project.

8. Class I - Asbestos work means activities involving the removal of thermal systems insulation (TSI) and surfacing ACM and PACM.

9. Class II - Asbestos work means activities involving the removal of ACM which is not TSI or surfacing material. This includes, but is not limited to, the removal of asbestos-containing wallboard, floor tile and sheeting, roofing and siding shingles, and construction mastics.

10. Class III - Asbestos work means repair and maintenance operations where "ACM" including TSI and surfacing ACM and PACM is likely to be disturbed.

11. Class IV - Asbestos work means maintenance and custodial activities during which employees contact but do not disturb ACM or PACM and activities to clean-up dust, waste and debris resulting from Class I, II and III activities.

12. Critical Barrier - A unit of temporary construction which provides the only separation between an asbestos work area and an adjacent, potentially occupied, space. The critical barrier is composed of at least one intact sheet of polyethylene sheeting.

13. Decontamination Enclosure System - A series of connected rooms with curtained doorways between any two adjacent rooms, for the decontamination of workers or of materials and equipment. A decontamination system contains at least two air locks.
14. Disposal - All procedures necessary to transport and deposit the asbestos-contaminated material stripped and removed from the building in a waste disposal site in compliance with applicable federal, state, and local regulations.
15. Disposal Site - A site approved by the EPA for the disposal of asbestos-containing wastes.
16. Encapsulant - A liquid which can be applied to asbestos-containing materials and which controls the possible release of fibers from the materials.
17. Encapsulation - The use of an agent to seal the surface (bridging encapsulant) or penetrate the bulk (penetrating encapsulant) of the asbestos-containing material.
18. HEPA -High Efficiency Particulate Air - A type of filter which is 99.97% efficient at filtering particles of 0.3 micrometers in diameter.
19. HEPA Vacuum Equipment - Vacuuming equipment equipped with a HEPA filter in the exhaust outlet, and so designed and maintained that 99.97% of all particles of 0.3 micrometer in diameter in the inlet air are collected and retained.
20. Negative Pressure Respirators - Respirators which function by the wearer breathing in air through a filter.
21. NIOSH - National Institute of Occupational Safety and Heath.
22. the Owner's Representative - Authorized Consultants
23. Permissible Exposure Level (PEL) - A level of airborne fibers specified by OSHA as an occupational exposure standard for asbestos. It is 0.1 f/cc of air, eight-hour TWA, as measured by Phase Contrast Microscopy.
24. Repair - The restoration of damaged or deteriorated asbestos-containing material to intact condition.
25. Respirator Protection Program - A set of procedures and equipment required by OSHA if employees wear negative pressure respirators or if fiber levels are above the PEL.
26. Surfactant - Chemical wetting agent added to water to improve penetration, thus reducing the amount of water required for a given operation or area, and enhancing the effect of the water in reducing fiber release.
27. Thermal Systems Insulation - Material applied to pipes, fittings, boilers, breeching, tanks, ducts or other interior structural components to prevent heat loss or gain, or water condensation, or for other purposes.
28. Wet Cleaning - The process of eliminating asbestos contamination from building surfaces and objects by using cloths and mops or other cleaning tools that have been dampened with clean water and afterwards disposing of these cleaning tools as asbestos-contaminated waste.

I. Permits And Licenses:
1. The Contractor must maintain current licenses as required by applicable state or local jurisdictions for the removal, transporting, disposal or other regulated activity relative to the work of this contract.

J. Regulations
1. This section sets forth governmental regulations and industry standards which are included and incorporated herein by reference and made a part of the specifications. This section also sets forth those notices and permits which are known to the Owner and which either must be applied for and received, or which must be given to governmental agencies before start of work.
2. Except to the extent that more explicit or more stringent requirements are written directly into the contract documents, all applicable codes, regulations, and standards have the same force and effect (and are made a part of the contract documents by reference) as if copied directly into the contract documents, or as if published copies are bound herewith.
3. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility and liability for the compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local regulations pertaining to work practices, hauling, disposal, and protection of workers, visitors to the site, and persons occupying areas adjacent to the site. The Contractor

is responsible for providing medical examinations and maintaining medical records of personnel as required by the applicable federal, state, and local regulations. The Contractor shall hold the Owner and the Owner's Representative harmless for failure to comply with any applicable work, hauling, disposal, safety, health or other regulation on the part of itself, its employees, or its Sub-Contractors.

4. Federal requirements which govern asbestos abatement work or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials include but are not limited to the following regulations:
   a. U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, (OSHA), including but not limited to:
      1) U.S. Department of Labor, OSHA, including, but not limited to:
         a) Occupational Exposure to Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite and Actinolite; Final Rules
            Title 29, Part 1910, Section 1001
            Part 1926, Section 1101 of the Code of Federal Regulations
         b) Respiratory Protection
            Title 29, Part 1910, Section 134 of the Code of Federal Regulations
         c) Construction Industry
            Title 29, Part 1926.1011, of the Code of Federal Regulation
         d) Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records
            Title 29, Part 1910, Section 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations
         e) Hazard Communication
            Title 29, Part 1910, Section 1200 of the Code of Federal Regulations
         f) Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs and Tags
            Title 29, Part 1910, Section 145 of the Code of Federal Regulations
      2) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) including, but not limited to:
         a) Asbestos Abatement Projects Rule
            40 CFR Part 762
            CPTS 62044, FRL 2843-9
            Federal Register, Vol. 50 No. 134, July 12,1985
            P28530-28540
         b) Regulation for Asbestos
            Title 40, Part 61, Subpart A of the Code of Federal Regulations
         c) National Emission Standard for Asbestos
            Title 40, Part 61, Subpart M (Revised Subpart B) of the Code of Federal Regulations
      3) State requirements which govern asbestos abatement work and/or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials.
      4) Contractor shall abide by all local requirements which govern asbestos abatement work or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials including the following:
         a) American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
            1430 Broadway
            New York, NY 10018
            (212) 354-3300
         b) Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems Publication Z9.2-79
         c) Practices for Respiratory Protection Publication Z288.2-80
         d) American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
            1916 Race Street
            Philadelphia, PA 19103
            (215) 299-5400
         e) Specification for Encapsulants for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials
         f) Safety and Health Requirements Relating to Occupational Exposure to Asbestos

K. the Owner's Representative
   1. the Owner's Representative is authorized by the Owner to perform the following:
      a. Have free access to all asbestos work areas.
      b. To assist in interpretation of procedures.
      c. To advise on all provisions of the contract documents pertaining to the control of asbestos.
      d. To stop work if, in the course of performing their monitoring duties, an instance of substantial nonconformance with the contract documents is observed.
      e. To stop work if a situation presenting a health hazard to workers or the Owner's employees or occupants of the building is observed.
      f. To act as the Owner's liaison in technical matters involving the asbestos-related work.
      g. To perform air sampling inside and outside the asbestos work area during the project. The Contractor shall cooperate fully with the Owner's Representative, its agents and employees, and ensure cooperation of its workers during collection of air samples and work area inspections.
      h. the Owner's Representative role in advising the Owner on environmental health matters does not relieve the Contractor's obligation to comply with all applicable health and safety regulations. Air monitoring results generated by the Owner's Representative shall not be used by the Contractor to represent compliance with regulatory agency requirements for monitoring of worker's exposure to airborne asbestos, nor shall any other activity on the part of the Owner's Representative represent the Contractor's compliance with applicable health and safety regulations.

L. Pre-Construction Conference
   1. An initial progress meeting recognized as "Pre-Construction Conference" shall be held prior to start of any work. Contractor shall meet at project site, with General Superintendent, the Owner, the Owner's Representative, and other entities concerned with asbestos abatement work. Record discussions and agreements and furnish copy to each participant. Provide at least 72 hours advance notice to all participants prior to convening Pre-Construction Conference.
   2. This is an organizational meeting, to review responsibilities and personnel assignments, to locate the containment and decontamination areas; and temporary facilities including power, light, water, etc.
   3. Submit waivers on forms, and executed in a manner acceptable to the Owner. Administrative requirements that must proceed or coincide with Contractor's submittal for final payment shall consist of the following:
      a. Completion of project closeout requirements.
      b. Completion of items specified for completion beyond time of Final Completion (regardless of whether special payment application was previously made).
      c. Assurance, satisfactory to the Owner, that unsettled claims will be settled and that work not actually completed and accepted will be completed without undue delay.
      d. Transmittal of required project construction records to the Owner.
      e. Landfill receipts for all asbestos-containing material.
      f. Proof, satisfactory to the Owner, that taxes, fees and similar obligations of Contractor have been paid.
      g. Removal of temporary facilities, services, surplus materials, rubbish and similar elements.
      h. Consent of surety for final payment.

M. Project Closeout
   1. Project closeout is the term used to describe certain collective project requirements that indicate completion of the work to be fulfilled near the end of the contract time. Also, in preparation for final acceptance of the work by the Owner, as well as, final payment to the Contractor and the normal termination of the Contract.
   2. Include supporting documentation for completion as indicated in these contract documents.
   3. Submit a statement on accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
   4. Advise the Owner of pending insurance change-over requirements.

5. Submit specific warranties, workmanship and maintenance bonds, maintenance agreements, final certifications and similar documents.
6. Obtain and submit releases enabling the Owner's full, unrestricted use of the work area and access to services and utilities. Where required, include occupancy permits, operating certificates and similar releases.
7. Results of the completed inspection will form the initial "punch-list" for final acceptance.
8. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all personal air monitoring results.
9. Complete the following cleaning operations as outlined in Paragraph “Decontamination Procedures” before requesting the Owner's Representative inspection for certification of Final Completion.
    a. Remove exposed labels in finished spaces which are not required as permanent labels on materials supplied as part of the work, except for "Asbestos", "Asbestos Free", or Thermal Insulation Labels specified elsewhere.
    b. Clean transparent materials, affected by the work including mirrors and window/door glass, to a polished condition, removing substances which are noticeably vision-obscuring materials. Replace broken glass and damaged transparent materials.
    c. Clean exposed hard-surfaced finishes affected by the work, to a dirt-free condition, free of dust, stains, films and similar distracting substances. Except as otherwise indicated, avoid disturbance of natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to original reflective condition.
    d. Clean plumbing fixtures affected by the work to a sanitary condition, free of stains including those resulting from water exposure.
    e. Replace all HVAC filters using materials supplied by the Owner or clean non-replaceable filters after minimum of two days of operation of HVAC equipment.
    f. Clean light fixtures and lamps, which have been affected by the work so as to function with full efficiency. Replace lamps where inoperable.
    g. Repair any damage to wall, ceiling and floor surfaces caused by installation and removal of the polyethylene sheeting.

N. Personnel Protection
1. Prior to commencement of work, the workers shall be instructed and be knowledgeable in the areas described in Paragraph "Submittals and Notices" having to do with employees.
2. Worker Protection - shall comply with 29 CFR 1910.134 (Respiratory Protection).
    a. Because there is no known safe level of exposure to asbestos, it is prudent to reduce worker's exposures to as low a level as possible. Proper respiratory protection is critical in minimizing exposure.
    b. Workers shall be provided, as a minimum, with personally issued and marked respirators equipped with high efficiency particulate filters approved by NIOSH to be worn in the designated work area and/or whenever a potential exposure to asbestos exists. Sufficient filters shall be provided for replacement as required by the workers or applicable regulations. Disposable respirators shall not be used.
    c. No worker shall be exposed to levels greater than 0.01 f/cc as determined by the protection factor of the respirator worn and the work area fiber levels.
    d. Whenever powered purifying respirator protection is used, a sufficient supply of replacement batteries and HEPA filter cartridges shall be provided to the workers.
    e. Air monitoring required by OSHA is work of the Contractor and not covered in this specification. Contractor shall post, on a daily basis, results of the air monitoring results from the previous shift. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all personal air monitoring tests and results will be furnished to the Owner and the Owner's Representative prior to Contractor's Request for Final Payment.
    f. During encapsulation operations or usage of other organic base aerosols (e.g., spray glue, expanding foam), workers shall be provided with combination cartridges consisting of organic vapor and HEPA sections.

g. Workers shall be provided with sufficient sets of protective full-body clothing to be worn in the designated work area and/or whenever potential exposure to asbestos exists. Such clothing shall include, but not be limited to, full-body coveralls, headgear and gloves. Workers shall assure that hoods covering their hair are worn in the designated work areas at all times. Eye protection and hard hats shall be provided as required by applicable safety regulations. Eye protection shall be worn during encapsulation operations. Non-disposable type protective clothing and footwear shall be left in the work area until the end of the asbestos abatement work, at which time such items will be disposed of as asbestos waste.

h. Non-skid footwear shall be provided to all abatement workers. Disposable clothing shall be adequately sealed to the footwear to prevent body contamination.

i. Protective clothing shall not be worn in lieu of street clothing outside the work area.

j. Visitor Clothing: The Contractor shall provide authorized visitors with suitable respirator, protective clothing, headgear, eye protection, and footwear as described herein, whenever they enter the work area.

3. Decontamination and Work Procedures: The decontamination and work procedures to be followed by workers shall be posted as described in these specifications.

4. Worker and Authorized Visitor Protection Procedures:

a. Each worker and authorized visitor shall, upon entering the job site, remove street clothes in a designated clean change area and put on a respirator with new filters and clean protective clothing before entering the work area.

b. The Contractor's employees shall perform a positive/negative respirator fit test each time it enters the work area. If leakage occurs, the respirator must be re-adjusted or replaced.

c. Workers shall maintain their respirators in a safe operating condition. The condition of respirators shall be checked daily.

d. Workers and visitors shall complete the decontamination procedures as outlined in the specification upon exiting the work area.

e. Workers shall not eat, drink, smoke, or chew gum or tobacco in or near the asbestos work areas.

f. Workers shall be fully protected with respirators and protective clothing immediately prior to the first disturbance of asbestos-containing or contaminated materials and until final cleanup is completed.

O. Air Monitoring

1. The airborne fiber counts outside the work area will be monitored to detect faults in the work area isolation such as contamination of the building outside of the work areas with airborne asbestos fibers, failure of filtration or rupture in the negative pressure system.
Should any of the above occur, the Contractor shall immediately cease asbestos abatement activities until the fault is corrected. Work shall not recommence until authorized by the Owner's Representative. In the case of mini-enclosures the Owner's Representative will monitor air in a remote location of the residence to determine the baseline of asbestos.

2. The airborne fiber counts in the work area will be monitored. The purpose of this air monitoring will be to detect airborne fiber counts which may significantly challenge the ability of the work area isolation procedures to protect the balance of the building or outside of the building from contamination by airborne fibers. In the case of mini-enclosures the Owner's representative may monitor air outside of several enclosures if they are in close proximity.

3. Contractor shall maintain an average airborne count inside the work area of less than 0.5 f/cc. If the fiber counts rise above this figure for any sample taken, revise work procedures to lower fiber counts. If the TWA fiber count for any work shift or eight-hour period exceeds 0.5 f/cc, stop all work, leave pressure differential system in operation and notify the Owner's Representative. Do not recommence work until authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.

4. If airborne fiber counts exceed 1.0 f/cc for any period of time cease all work until fiber counts fall below 0.5 f/cc and notify the Owner's Representative. Do not recommence work until authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.

5. If any air sample taken outside of the work area exceeds the 0.01 f/cc of air, Contractor shall immediately and automatically stop all work. If this air sample was taken inside the building and outside of critical barriers around the work area, immediately erect new critical barriers to isolate the affected area from the balance of the building. Erect Critical Barriers at the next existing structural isolation of the involved space (e.g., wall, ceiling, and floor). Leave Critical Barriers in place until completion of work and insure that the operation of the negative pressure system in the work area results in a flow of air from the balance of the building into the affected area.
6. If the exit from the clean room of the personnel decontamination unit enters the affected area, establish a temporary decontamination facility consisting of a shower room and changing room. After cleaning and decontamination of the affected area remove the shower room and leave the changing room in place as an air lock.
7. After certification of visual inspection in the work area, remove critical barriers separating the work area from the affected area. Final air samples will be taken within the entire area.
8. The following procedure will be used to resolve any disputes regarding fiber types when a project has been stopped due to excessive airborne fiber counts. "Airborne Fibers" referred to above include all fibers regardless of composition as counted in the Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) NIOSH 7400 Method procedures. If work has stopped due to high airborne fiber counts, air samples will be secured in the same area by the Owner's Representative for analysis by electron microscopy. "Airborne fibers" counted in samples analyzed by Scanning or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) shall be only asbestos fibers, but of any diameter and length. Subsequent to analysis by Electron Microscopy the number of airborne fibers shall be determined by multiplying the number of fibers, regardless of composition, counted by the PCM NIOSH 7400 Method procedure by a number equal to asbestos fibers counted divided by all fibers counted in the electron microscopy analysis.
9. If electron microscopy is used to arrive at the basis for determining airborne fiber counts in accordance with the above paragraph, and if the average of airborne asbestos fibers in all samples taken exceeds 0.1 f/cc, or if any one sample exceeds 0.2 f/cc, then the cost of such analysis will be born by the Contractor, at no additional cost to the Owner.
10. the Owner's Representative will secure at least the following air samples to establish a base line before start of work involving large enclosures:

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Analysis Method	Detection Limit f/cc	Minimum Volume Liters	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Outside Each Work Area	1-3	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16

11. Base Line is an action level expressed in f/cc, which is ten percent greater than the largest of the following:
    a. Average of the samples collected on cellulose ester filters outside each work area.
    b. Average of the samples collected on cellulose ester filters outside the building.
    c. 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter.
12. Daily: From start of work of Paragraph "Temporary Enclosure" through the work of Paragraph "Project Decontamination," the Owner may be taking the following samples on a daily basis. The location of each air sample will be determined by the Owner's Representative.
    a. Baseline
    b. Work Area
13. For larger enclosures samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with the following filter medial:
    PCM: 0.8 micrometer mixed cellulose ester.

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Analysis Method	Detection Limit f/cc	Minimum Volume Liters	Rate LPM

Each Work Area	2	PCM	0.01	1,900 as required by conditions	2-16
Outside Each Work Area Critical Barrier	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Clean Room	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Equip Decon	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16

14. Additional samples may be taken at the Owner or the Owner's Representative discretion. If airborne fiber counts exceed allowed limits, additional samples will be taken as necessary to monitor fiber levels.
15. The services of a testing laboratory will be employed by the Owner to perform laboratory analysis of the air samples. Samples will be sent daily so that verbal reports on air samples can be obtained in a timely manner. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all air monitoring tests and results will be furnished to the Owner's Representative, the Owner and the Contractor.
16. Air samples may be analyzed on site by the Owner's Representative, if they are to be analyzed by the NIOSH 7400 Method.
17. Cellulose ester filters will be analyzed using the PCM NIOSH 7400 Method. Thus analysis will be carried out at a laboratory located off the job site.
18. At the completion of the work in occupied areas and prior to the dismantling of the isolation system, final air clearance will be conducted by the Owner's Representative.
19. Decontamination of the work area will be considered complete when all samples indicate fiber levels are less than 0.0l f/cc of air as analyzed by PCM NIOSH 7400 Method or an average of less than 70 structures per square millimeter of filter area as analyzed by TEM; Level II AHERA Method.
20. The Contractor may conduct its own air monitoring and laboratory testing. If it elects to do this the cost of such air monitoring and laboratory testing shall be included in the Contract Sum.

P. Equipment Removal Procedures
1. Clean all external surfaces of contaminated waste containers and equipment thoroughly by wet sponging or HEPA vacuuming before moving such items into the equipment decontamination enclosure system washroom for final cleaning and removal to uncontaminated areas. Ensure that personnel do not leave the work areas through the equipment decontamination enclosure system.

Q. Disposal Activities
1. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to comply with current federal, state and local regulations concerning the waste handling, transportation, and disposal of asbestos-containing material (ACM) and accompanying solvents or residues.
2. The Contractor will document actual disposal of the waste at the designated landfill by completing Disposal Certificate or submitting proof of landfill receipt.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. All Contractor's equipment delivered to the site shall be free of asbestos contamination.
2. Store all materials subject to damage off the ground, away from wet or damp surfaces, and under cover sufficient to prevent damage or contamination.
3. Damaged or deteriorating materials shall not be used and shall be removed from the premises. Materials that become contaminated shall be disposed of in accordance with applicable regulations.

4. Polyethylene flame retardant sheet of 6-mil thickness shall be used unless otherwise specified. Polyethylene sheeting shall be sized to minimize the frequency of joints. Polyethylene sheeting must satisfy the National Fire Prevention Association Standard 701, "Small Scale Fire Test for Flame Resistant Textile and Film."
5. Adhesive tape shall be capable of sealing joints of adjacent sheets of polyethylene and for use in attachment of polyethylene sheet to finished or unfinished surfaces of similar materials and shall be capable of adhering under dry and wet conditions, including use of amended water. Contractor shall use adhesive tape compatible with finished surfaces.
6. Protective devices such as, but not limited to, disposable clothing, respirators, gloves, hard hats, etc. shall be used.
7. Wetting agent shall be a mixture of 50/50 polyoxyethylene ether and polyglycol ester or equivalent commercial product.
8. Encapsulant materials shall be the bridging and penetrating type and conform with the following characteristics:
    a. Encapsulants shall not be solvent-based or utilize a hydrocarbon in the liquid in which the solid parts of the encapsulant are suspended.
    b. Encapsulant shall not be flammable.
9. A non-hardening lagging sealer for enclosing and sealing raw exposed edges and surfaces of asbestos-containing materials.
10. Pre-mixed or job mixed insulating plaster manufactured for use on plumbing equipment shall be used when repairing damaged thermal insulation material.
11. Non-woven fibrous glass mat and open weave glass fiber mat cloth for repair of thermal systems insulation.
12. Fire retardant sealant shall prevent fire, smoke, water and toxic fumes from penetrating through sealants. Sealant shall have a flame spread, smoke and fuel contribution of zero, and shall be ASTM and Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) rated for three hours for standard method of fire test for fire stop systems.

B. Tools And Equipment
1. Provide suitable tools for repair and encapsulation of asbestos-containing materials and for removal of asbestos-containing materials that are beyond repair. Wire brushes shall not be used as a means of removing or cleaning asbestos-containing materials from surfaces, if they are used as the surface is being sprayed with water or amended water.
2. Provide sufficient number of HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaners equipped with pick-up adapters, steel floor wands, crevice tools, and carpet tools.
3. Airless sprayers capable of spraying amended water shall be provided in sufficient number to allow continuous uninterrupted work.
4. Asbestos filtration devices shall utilize high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration systems.
5. Transportation equipment, as required, shall be suitable for loading, temporary storage, and unloading of contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property, and shall be quiet in motion if used within the building.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Safety Procedures For Power And Lighting
1. The use of wet methods for removal, repair, encapsulation or cleaning procedures increases the potential for electrical shock when working around electrical panels, conduit, light fixtures, alarm systems, junction boxes, transformers, etc. In coordination with the Owner, de-energize as much electrical equipment as possible to prevent electrical shock to employees performing the work. The Contractor shall use the following precautions:
    a. Use non-conductive tools and vacuum attachments.
    b. Utilize "hot line" covers over energized cables and power lines when possible.

c. Ensure all electrical equipment in use is properly grounded before the job starts. Check outlets, wiring, extension cords and power pickups.
d. Avoid stringing wiring across floors. Elevate wiring if possible.
e. Ensure electrical outlets are tightly sealed and taped to avoid water spray.
f. Determine operating voltages of equipment and lines before working on or near energized parts.
g. Energized parts must be insulated or guarded from employee contact and other conductive objects. Extension cords must be three-wire type and connected to a Ground Fault Interrupter (GFI) circuit.
h. Lock or secure de-energized circuits at panel and post warning signs.
i. Seal heating vents with two layers of polyethylene sheeting prior to the start of work. The Contractor shall repair any damage caused by Contractor's operations to duct work, grilles, dampers, louvers or HVAC equipment at the completion of the work at Contractor's expense. Coordinate all lock out and or de-energizing with the Owner.

B. Temporary Facilities
1. Use qualified tradesmen for installation of temporary services and facilities. Locate temporary services and facilities where they will serve the entire project adequately and result in minimum interference with the performance of the work and operations of the building. Coordinate all installations and shut downs with building owner.
2. Relocate, modify and extend services and facilities as required during the course of work so as to accommodate the entire work of the project.
3. Provide new or used materials and equipment that are undamaged and in serviceable condition. Provide only materials and equipment that are recognized as being suitable for the intended use, by compliance with appropriate standards.
4. During the erection and/or moving of scaffolding, care must be exercised so that the polyethylene floor covering is not damaged.
5. Clean, as necessary, debris from non-slip surfaces.
6. At the completion of abatement work, clean all construction aids within the work area, wrap in one layer of 6-mil polyethylene sheet and seal before removal from the work area.
7. Temporary water service connections to the Owner's water system shall include back flow protection. Valves shall be temperature and pressure rated for operation of the temperatures and pressures encountered.
8. Employ heavy-duty abrasion-resistant hoses with a pressure rating 50 percent greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system to provide water into each work area and to each Decontamination Unit. Provide fittings as required to allow for connection to existing wall hydrants or spouts, as well as temporary water heating equipment, branch piping, showers, shut-off nozzles and equipment.
9. Electrical Services shall comply with applicable NEMA, NECA and UL standards and governing regulations for materials and layout of temporary electric service.
10. Provide a weatherproof, grounded temporary electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics to accommodate performance of work during the construction period. Install temporary lighting adequate to provide sufficient illumination for safe work and traffic conditions in every area of work.
11. Provide receptacle outlets equipped with ground fault circuit interrupters, reset button and pilot light, for plug-in connection of power tools and equipment.
12. Use only grounded extension cords; use "hard-service" cords where exposed to abrasion and traffic. Use single lengths or use waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electric cords, if single lengths will not reach areas of work. All cords shall be elevated off the floor inside the containment area.
13. Temporary wiring in the work area shall be type UL non-metallic sheathed cable located overhead and exposed for surveillance. Do not wire temporary lighting with plain, exposed (insulated) electrical conductors. Provide liquid tight enclosures or boxes for wiring devices.

14. Provide Type "A" fire extinguishers for temporary offices and similar spaces where there is minimal danger of electrical or grease-oil-flammable liquid fires. In other locations provide type "ABC" dry chemical extinguishers, or a combination of several extinguishers of NFPA recommended types for the exposures in each case.
15. Use of the Owner's existing toilet facilities, as indicated, will be permitted, so long as these facilities are properly cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to the condition prevalent at the time of initial use. All provisions of these specifications regarding leaving the work area must be met.
16. When mini-enclosures area being used all of the requirements above will be enforced by the Owner's Representative. The construction and set-up of the mini-enclosures may be done by the Abatement Contractor.

C. Pressure Differential System
1. Before start of work Contractor shall submit design of pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not begin work until system has been approved by the Owner's Representative. Include in the submittal the following:
   a. Number of pressure differential machines required and the calculations necessary to determine the number of machines.
   b. Description of projected air-flow within work area and methods required to provide adequate air flow in all portions of the work area.
2. If the enclosure is not a mini-enclosure, the Contractor must supply the required number of asbestos air filtration units to the site in accordance with these specifications. Each unit shall include the following:
   a. Cabinet constructed of steel or other durable materials able to withstand damage from rough handling and transportation. The width of the cabinet should be less than 30 inches to fit through standard-size doorways. Cabinet shall be factory sealed to prevent asbestos-containing dust from being released during use, transport, or maintenance. Access to and replacement of all air filters shall be from intake end. Unit shall be mounted on casters or wheels.
   b. Rate capacity of fan according to useable air-moving capacity under actual operating conditions. Use centrifugal-type fan.
   c. The final filter shall be the HEPA type. The filter media (folded into closely pleated panels) must be completely sealed on all edges with a structurally rigid frame.
   d. A continuous rubber gasket shall be located between the filter and the filter housing to form a tight seal.
   e. Provide HEPA Units that are individually tested and certified on site by an independent testing agency to have an efficiency of not less than 99.97 percent when challenged with 0.3 m dioctylphthlaate (DOP) particles when tested in accordance with Military Standard Number 2182 and Army Instruction Manual 136-300-175A. Provide filters that bear a UL586 label to indicate ability to perform under specified conditions.
   f. Pre-filters, which protect the final filter by removing the larger particles, are required to prolong the operating life of the HEPA filter. Two stages of pre-filtration are required. The first-stage pre-filter shall be a low-efficiency type (e.g., for particles 10 microns and larger). The second-stage (or intermediate) filter shall have a medium efficiency (e.g., effective for particles down to 5 microns). Pre-filters and intermediate filters shall be installed either on or in the intake grid of the unit and held in place with special housings or clamps.
   g. Each unit shall be equipped with a Magnahelic gauge or manometer to measure the pressure drop across filters and indicate when filters have become loaded and need to be changed. A table indicating the useable air-handling capacity for various static pressure readings on the Magnahelic gauge shall be affixed near the gauge for reference, or the Magnahelic reading indicating at what point the filters should be changed, noting Cubic Feet per Minute (CFM) air delivery at that point. Provide units equipped with an elapsed time meter to show the total accumulated hours of operation.

h. The unit shall have an electrical (or mechanical) lockout to prevent fan from operating without a HEPA filter. Units shall be equipped with automatic shutdown system to stop fan in the event of a major rupture in the HEPA filter or blocked air discharge. Warning lights are required to indicate normal operation, too high a pressure drop across the filters (i.e., filter overloading), and too low of a pressure drop (i.e., major rupture in HEPA filter or obstructed discharge).

i. Electrical components shall be approved by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) and Underwriters' Laboratories (UL). Each unit shall be equipped with overload protection sized for the equipment. The motor, fan, fan housing, and cabinet shall be grounded.

j. If a mini-enclosure is used the air filtration unit may be a HEPA filtered vacuum with a flow rate of at least 100 cubic feet per minute (CFM).

3. Provide a fully operational pressure differential system within the work area maintaining continuously a pressure differential across work area enclosures of 0.02 inches of water for glove bag operations and mini-containments**.** Demonstrate to the Owner's Representative the pressure differential by use of pressure differential meter or a manometer, before disturbance of any asbestos-containing materials. In the case of a mini-enclosure visual evidence of pressure differential through the use of a smoke generation tube shall be sufficient as in paragraph C.13 of this section.
4. Continuously monitor and record the pressure differential between the work area and the building outside of the work area.
5. Provide fully operational negative pressure systems supplying a minimum of one air change every ten minutes (six changes per hour), less in the instance of a mini-enclosure. Determine the volume in cubic feet of the work area by multiplying floor area by ceiling height. Determine total ventilation requirement in cubic feet per minute (cfm) for the work area by dividing this volume by the air change rate.
6. Ventilation Required (CFM) = Volume of work area (cu. ft.)/10 min.
7. Determine number of units needed to achieve ten-minute change rate by dividing the ventilation requirement (CFM) above capacity of exhaust unit(s) used. Capacity of a unit for purposes of this section is the capacity in cubic feet per minute with fully loaded filters (pressure differential which causes loaded filter warning light to come on) in the machines labeled operating characteristics.
8. Add one additional unit as a backup in case of equipment failure or machine shutdown for filter changing.
9. Locate exhaust unit(s) so that makeup air enters work area primarily through decontamination facilities and traverses work area as much as possible. This may be accomplished by positioning the unit(s) at a maximum distance from the worker access opening or other makeup air sources.
10. Vent to outside of building, unless authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.
11. Each unit shall be serviced by a dedicated minimum 115v-20A circuit with overload device tied into an existing building electrical panel which has sufficient spare capacity to accommodate the load of all pressure differential units connected. Dedication of an existing circuit may be accomplished by shutting down existing loads on the circuit.
12. Test pressure differential system before any asbestos-containing material is wetted or removed. After the work area has been prepared, the decontamination facility set up, and the exhaust unit(s) installed, start the unit(s) (one at a time). Demonstrate operation and testing of pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative.
13. Demonstrate of operations of the pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative will include, but not be limited to, the following:
    a. Plastic barriers and sheeting move lightly in toward work area.
    b. Curtain of decontamination units move lightly in toward work area.
    c. There is a noticeable movement of air through the decontamination unit. Use stroke tube to demonstrate air movement from clean room, and from equipment room to work area.
    d. Use smoke tubes to demonstrate a positive motion of air across all area in which work is to be performed.

e. Use a differential pressure meter or manometer to demonstrate a pressure difference of at least 0.02 inches (as allowed) of water across every barrier separating the work area from the balance of the building or outside. This is not required in the case of a mini enclosure.

14. Start exhaust units before beginning work (before any asbestos-containing material is disturbed). After abatement work has begun, run units continuously to maintain a constant negative pressure until decontamination of the work area is complete. Do not turn off units at the end of the work shift or when abatement operations temporarily stop.
15. Do not shut down pressure differential system during encapsulating procedures, unless authorized by the Owner's Representative in writing. Start abatement work at a location farthest from the exhaust units and proceed toward them. If an electric power failure occurs, immediately stop all abatement work and do not resume until power is restored and exhaust units are operating again.
16. At completion of abatement work, allow exhaust units to run as specified to remove airborne fibers that may have been generated during abatement work and cleanup and to purge the work area with clean makeup air. The units may be required to run for a longer time after decontamination, if dry or only partially wetted asbestos material was encountered during any abatement work. In the case of a mini-enclosure the vacuum may be removed and the entrance sealed following encapsulation until the clearance sample is collected.
17. Prior to final air test, remove pre-filter and wipe out inside lip of negative air machine.
18. When a final inspection and the results of final air tests indicate that the area has been decontaminated, exhaust units may be removed from the work area. Before removal from the work area, remove and properly dispose of pre-filter, and seal Intake to the machine with 6-mil polyethylene to prevent environmental contamination from the filters.

D. Work Area Preparation

1. The work area is the location where asbestos-abatement work occurs. It is a variable of the extent of work of the contract. It may be a portion of a room, a single room, or a complex of rooms. A "work area" is considered contaminated during the work, and must be isolated from the balance of the building, and decontaminated at the completion of the asbestos-control work.
2. Pre-clean fixed objects, walls and floor surfaces within the proposed work areas using HEPA filtered vacuum equipment and wet cleaning methods as appropriate.
3. Seal all openings, supply and exhaust vents, and convectors within ten feet of the work area with 6-mil polyethylene sheeting secured and completely sealed with plastic adhesion tape.
4. Contact fire control agencies to review procedures prior to start of work.
5. Provide flame resistant polyethylene sheeting that conforms to requirements set forth by the National Fire Protection Association Standard 701, Small Scale Fire Test for Flame-resistant Textiles and Films. Provide largest size possible to minimize seams, four- or six- mils thick, frosted or black.
6. Provide spray adhesive in aerosol cans which is specifically formulated to stick tenaciously to sheet polyethylene and supporting surface.
7. Completely isolate the work area from other parts of the building so as to prevent asbestos-containing dust or debris from passing beyond the isolated area. Should the area beyond the work area(s) become contaminated with asbestos-containing dust or debris as a consequence of the work, clean those areas in accordance with the procedures indicated in Paragraph "Decontamination Procedures." All such required cleaning or decontamination shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner.
8. Place all tools (i.e., scaffolding, staging) necessary for the work in the area to be isolated prior to erection of plastic sheeting temporary enclosure.
9. Disable ventilation systems or any other system bringing air into or out of the work area. Disable system by disconnecting wires, removing circuit breakers, by lockable switch or other positive means that will prevent accidental premature restarting of equipment.
10. Remove and dispose of all electrical and mechanical items, such as lighting fixtures, clocks, diffusers, registers, escutcheon plates, etc., which cover any part of the surface on which work is to be performed.

11. All general construction items such as cabinets, casework, doors and window trim, moldings, ceilings, trim, etc., which cover the surface of the work as required to prevent interference with the work. To be performed by the Owner: clean, decontaminate and reinstall all such materials, upon completion of all removal work with materials, finishes, and workmanship to match existing installations before start of work.
12. Permit Access to the work area only through the Decontamination Unit. All other means of access shall be closed off and sealed and warning signs displayed on the clean side of the sealed access.
13. Provide Warning Signs at each visual and physical barriers reading as follows in both English and Spanish:

Legend	Notation
KEEP OUT	3" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
BEYOND THIS POINT	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
ASBESTOS ABATEMENT WORK	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
IN PROGRESS	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
BREATHING ASBESTOS DUST MAY BE HAZARDOUS TO YOUR HEALTH	14 Point Gothic

14. Alternate methods of containing the work area may be submitted to the Owner's Representative for approval. Do not proceed with any such method(s) without prior written approval of the Owner's Representative.
15. Individually seal all ventilation openings (supply and exhaust), lighting fixtures, clocks, doorways, windows, convectors and speakers, and other openings into the work area with plastic adhesion tape alone or with polyethylene sheeting at least 4-mil in thickness, taped securely in place with plastic adhesion tape. Maintain seal until all work including Project Decontamination is completed. Take care in sealing off lighting fixtures to avoid melting or burning of sheeting.
16. Provide sheet plastic barriers at least 6-mil in thickness as required to completely seal openings from the work area into adjacent areas. Seal the perimeter of all sheet plastic barriers with plastic adhesion tape or spray cement.
17. Where applicable, construct framing of the containment out of fire treated wood or aluminum studs. Mini-enclosure frames may be constructed of Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) tubing.
18. Cover all walls in work area extending to the underside of the ceiling grid system with one layer of polyethylene sheeting, at least 6-mil in thickness, mechanically supported and sealed with plastic adhesion tape or spray-glue in the same manner as "Critical Barrier" sheet plastic barriers. Tape all joints with plastic adhesion tape. Contractor shall be responsible for repair of damaged wall finishes.
19. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting (exclude for floor tile and adhesive).
20. Provide Pressure Differential System per Paragraph “Pressure Differential System.”
21. If the enclosure barrier is breached in any manner that could allow the passage of asbestos debris or airborne fibers, then add the affected area to the work area, enclose it as required by this section of the specification and decontaminate it as described in Paragraph “Decontamination Procedures.”
22. Establishing a Mini-Containment area:
    a. Establish work area so that unauthorized entry is prevented; Construct a two-compartment fire treated wood frame around work area; install one layer 6-mil polyethylene sheeting to structural members and two layers 6 mil polyethylene sheeting to the floor. Exception: no floor required if mini-containment is being constructed to perform a floor tile activity. Seal all edges to wall, ceiling, and floor surfaces with duct tape. Install viewing inspection windows, where feasible.
    b. Seal all penetrations with duct tape such as pipes, electrical conduit, or ducts contained within the mini-containment.

c. Install triple 6-mil polyethylene flaps at both doorways. Place portable sprayer with clean water, disposable towels, and pre-labeled disposal bag in air lock.
d. Install appropriate signs on outside of mini-containment area.
e. Install HEPA vacuum; extend hose into mini-containment area for general vacuuming, negative air, and cleaning of disposal suit.
f. Accumulate all loose materials for disposal. Place in approved container. Apply appropriate labels. Adequately wet clean all wall, floor, tool and equipment surfaces.
g. Abatement worker must wear two disposable suits. Remove outer suit in work area and place in a plastic bag. Enter air lock.
h. In air lock, wet wipe respirator and wash hands with clean water. Remove respirator and place in a clean plastic bag. Proceed to remote shower unit where inner suit may be removed.

E. Worker Protection
1. This section describes the equipment and procedures required for protecting workers against asbestos contamination and other work place hazards except for respiratory protection.
2. Respiratory Protection is specified in Paragraph “Respiratory Protection.”
3. Train in accordance with EPA’s Model Accreditation Plan, 40 CFR 763 - Asbestos, all workers in the dangers inherent in handling asbestos and breathing asbestos dust and in proper work procedures and personal and area protective measures. Include but do not limit the topics covered in the course to the following:
   a. Methods of recognizing asbestos.
   b. Health effects associated with asbestos.
   c. Relationship between smoking and asbestos in producing lung cancer.
   d. Nature of operations that could result in exposure to asbestos.
4. Importance of and instruction in the use of necessary protective controls, practices and procedures to minimize exposure including:

   Engineering controls
   Work practices
   Respirators
   Housekeeping procedures
   Hygiene facilities
   Protective clothing
   Decontamination procedures
   Emergency procedures
   Waste disposal procedures
   Appropriate work practices for the work
   Requirements of medical surveillance program
   Review of OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(G) - Asbestos
   Pressure differential systems
   Work practices including hands on or on job training
   Personal decontamination procedures
   Air monitoring, personal and area

5. Provide medical examinations for all workers who may encounter an airborne fiber level of 0.1 f/cc or greater for an 8 hour time weighted average. In the absence of specific airborne fiber data, provide medical examination for all workers who will enter the work area for any reason. Examination shall, at minimum, meet OSHA requirements as set forth in 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(G) - Asbestos. In addition, provide an evaluation of the individual’s ability to work in environments capable of producing heat stress in the worker.
6. Before start of work Contractor shall submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until receipt of the Owner’s Representative.

a. An original signed copy of the Certificate of Worker's Acknowledgement found at the end of this specification, for each worker who is to be at the job site or enter the work area.
b. Courses outline or name of institution providing the worker training course.
c. Report from medical examination conducted within last 12 months as part of compliance with OSHA medical surveillance requirements for each worker who is to enter the work area.

7. Provide disposable full-body coveralls and disposable head covers, and require that they be worn by all workers in the work area. Provide a sufficient number for all required changes, for all workers in the work area.
8. Provide work boots with non-skid soles, and where required by OSHA, foot protectives, for all workers. Provide boots at no cost to workers. Paint uppers of all boots red with water proof enamel. Do not allow boots to be removed from the work area for any reason, after being contaminated with asbestos-containing material. Dispose of boots as asbestos contaminated waste at the end of the work.
9. Provide head protectives (hard hats) as required by OSHA for all workers, and provide four spares for use by the Owner's Representative, and the Owner. Label hats with same warning labels as used on disposal bags. Require hard hats to be worn at all times that work is in progress that may potentially cause head injury. Provide hard hats with plastic strap type suspension. Require hats to remain in the work area throughout the work. Thoroughly clean, decontaminate and bag hats before removing them from work area at the end of the work.
10. Provide eye protectives (goggles) as required by OSHA for all workers involved in scraping, spraying, or any other activity which may potentially cause eye injury.
11. Provide work gloves to all workers and require that they be worn at all times in the work area. Do not remove gloves from work area. Dispose of gloves as asbestos contaminated waste at the end of the work.
12. Respirators, disposable coveralls, head covers, and footwear covers shall be provided by the contractor for the Owner, the Owner's Representative, and other authorized representatives who may inspect the job site.
13. Provide worker protection as required by the most stringent OSHA and/or EPA standards applicable to the work. The following procedures are minimums to be adhered to regardless of fiber count in the work area.
14. Each time work is entered, remove <u>all</u> street clothes in the changing room of the Personnel Decontamination Unit and put on new disposable coverall, new head cover, and a clean respirator. Proceed through shower room to equipment room and put on work boots.
15. In the event a mini-enclosure is used refer to Paragraph "Work Area Preparation" for personal decontamination procedures.

F. Respiratory Protection

1. Instruct and train each worker involved in asbestos abatement or maintenance and repair of friable asbestos-containing materials in proper respiratory use and require that each worker always wear a respirator, properly fitted on the face in the work area from the start of any operation which may cause airborne asbestos fibers until the work area is completely decontaminated. Use respiratory protection appropriate for the fiber level encountered in the work place or as required for other toxic or oxygen-deficient situations encountered.
2. Except to the extent that more stringent requirements are written directly into the Contract Documents, the following regulations and standards have the same force and effect (and are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference) as if copied directly into the Contract Documents, or as if published copies were bound herewith. Where there is a conflict in requirements set forth in these regulations and standards meet the more stringent requirement.
   a. OSHA - U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Safety and Health Standards 29 CFR 1910, Section 1001 and Section 1910.134.29 CFR 1926.
   b. ANSI - American National Standard Practices for Respiratory Protection. ANSI Z88.2-1980.
   c. NIOSH - National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.

d. MSHA - Mine Safety and Health Administration.

G. Type Of Respiratory Protection Required

1. Provide Respiratory Protection as indicated in paragraph below. Where paragraph below does not apply, determine the proper level of protection by dividing the expected or actual airborne fiber count in the work area by the "protection factors" given below. The level of respiratory protection which supplies an airborne fiber level inside the respirator, at the breathing zone of the wearer, at or below 0.01 fibers/cubic centimeter is the minimum level of protection allowed.
2. Eight-hour Time Weighted Average (TWA) of asbestos fibers to which any worker may be exposed shall not exceed 0.1 fibers/cubic centimeter.
3. For purposes of this section fibers are defined as all fibers regardless of composition as counted in the OSHA Reference Method (ORM), NIOSH P&CAM 239 or 7400 procedure, or asbestos fibers of any size as counted using either a scanning or transmission electron microscope.
4. Require that respiratory protection be used at all times that there is any possibility of disturbance of asbestos-containing materials whether intentional or accidental.
5. Require that a respirator be worn by anyone in a work area at all tunes, regardless of activity, during a period that starts with any operation which could cause airborne fibers until the area has been cleared for re-occupancy.

H. Respiratory Protection Factor

Respirator Type	Protection Factor
Air purifying: Negative pressure respirator High efficiency filter Half facepiece	10
Air purifying: Negative pressure respirator High efficiency filter Full facepiece	50
Powered-air purifying (PAPR): Positive pressure respirator High efficiency filter Half or Full facepiece	100
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator continuous-flow Half or full facepiece	100
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator pressure demand Full facepiece	1000
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator pressure demand Full facepiece Equipped with an auxiliary positive pressure Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA)	over 1000
Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA): Positive Pressure respirator	over 1000

Pressure demand
Full facepiece

I. Air Purifying Respirator
   1. Provide half face or full face type respirators. Equip full-face respirators with a nose cup or other anti-fogging device as would be appropriate for use in air temperatures less than 32 degrees Fahrenheit.
   2. Provide, at a minimum, HEPA type filters labeled with NIOSH and MSHA certification for "Radionuclides, Radon Daughters, Dust, Fumes, Mists including Asbestos-Containing Dusts and Mists" and color coded in accordance with ANSI Z228.2 (1980). In addition, a chemical cartridge section may be added, if required, for solvents, etc., in use. In this case, provide cartridges that have each section of the combination canister labeled with the appropriate color code and NIOSH/MSHA Certification.
   3. Supply with a sufficient quantity of respirator filters approved for asbestos, so that workers can change filters during the work day. Require that respirators be wet-rinsed, and filters discarded, each time a worker leaves the work area. Require that new filters be installed each time a worker re-enters the work area. Store respirators and filters at the job site in the changing room and protect totally from exposure to asbestos prior to their use. Do not use single use, disposable or quarterface respirators.

J. Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR)
   1. Provide full-facepiece type respirators. Provide nose-cups for full-facepiece respirators. Provide, at a minimum, HEPA type cartridges approved by NIOSH/MSHA and certified for use in atmospheres containing asbestos dusts.
   2. Provide, at a minimum, one extra battery pack for each respirator so that one can be charging while one is in use.
   3. Provide non-cloth belts capable of being decontaminated in shower.
   4. Supply with a sufficient quantity of high efficiency respirator filters approved for asbestos so that workers can change filters at any time that flow through the face piece decreases to the level at which the manufacturer recommends filter replacement. Require that regardless of flow, filter cartridges be replaced after 40 hours of use. Require that HEPA elements in filter cartridges be protected from wetting during showering. Require entire exterior housing of respirator including blower unit, filter cartridges, hoses, battery pack, face mask, belt, and cords to be washed each time a worker leaves the work area. Caution should be used to avoid shorting battery pack during washing.

K. Required Respiratory Protection
   1. Regardless of airborne fiber levels, require the following minimum level of respiratory protection:
      a. Half-face air purifying respirators may be used during set-up of the containment and removal of the material so long as fiber counts inside the respirator do not exceed .01 f/cc fibers per cubic centimeter.

L. Decontamination Units -Three-Stage
   1. Provide a Personnel Decontamination Unit consisting of a serial arrangement of rooms or spaces, Changing Room, Shower Room, Equipment Room adjacent to each full containment area.
   2. Require all persons without exception to pass through this decontamination unit for entry into and exiting from the work area for any purpose. Do not remove equipment or materials through Personnel Decontamination Unit.
   3. Changing (Clean) Room:
      a. Provide a room that is physically and visually separated from the rest of the building for the purpose of changing into protective clothing.
      b. Locate so that access to work area from changing room is through shower room.

c. Separate changing room from the building by a double-sheeted polyethylene flapped doorway.
d. Provide sub-panel at changing room to accommodate all removal equipment. Power sub-panel directly from a building electrical panel. Connect all electrical branch circuits in decontamination unit and particularly any pumps in shower room to a ground-fault circuit protection device.

4. Shower Room:
   a. Provide a completely water tight operational shower to be used for transit by cleanly dressed workers heading for the work area from the changing room, or for showering by workers headed out of the work area after undressing in the equipment room.
   b. Construct room by providing a shower pan and two shower walls in a configuration that will cause water running down walls to drip into pan. Install a freely draining wood floor in shower pan at elevation of top of pan.
   c. Separate this room from rest of building, drying room and airlock with airtight walls fabricated of 6-mil polyethylene.
   d. Provide splash proof entrances to Drying Room and Airlock.
5. Equipment Room (contaminated area):
   a. Require work equipment, footwear and additional contaminated work clothing to be left here. This is a change and transit area for workers. Separate this room from the work area by a 6-mil polyethylene flap doorway.
   b. Separate this room from the rest of the building, the shower room and work area with air tight walls fabricated of 6-mil polyethylene.
6. Clean Room: Provide Clean Room to isolate the holding room from the building exterior.
7. Load-out Area:
   a. The load-out area is the transfer area from the building to a truck or dumpster.
   b. Wet wipe bags before they are passed through the equipment decon-chamber.
   c. When cleaning is complete pass items into holding room. Close all doorways except the doorway between the holding room and the Clean Room.
   d. Workers from the area outside the containment area enter holding area and remove decontaminated equipment and/or containers for disposal.
   e. Require these workers to wear full protective clothing and appropriate respiratory protection.
   f. At no time is a worker from an uncontaminated area to enter the enclosure when a removal worker is inside.
   g. Post an approximately 20 inch x 14 inch manufactured caution sign at each entrance to the work area displaying the following legend with letter sizes and styles of a visibility required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(J) - Asbestos.

LEGEND
DANGER

ASBESTOS

CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING ARE REQUIRED
IN THIS AREA

   h. Provide spacing between respective lines at least equal to the height of the respective upper line.
   i. Additional Signage: Shall also be posted in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(J) - Asbestos

DANGER
ASBESTOS
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD

AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING
ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA
DANGER
ASBESTOS
CANCER AND LUNG HAZARD
KEEP OUT

j. Post an approximately 10 inch by 14 inch manufactured sign at each entrance to each work area displaying the following legend with letter sizes and styles of a visibility at least equal to the following:

LEGEND	NOTATION
No Food, Beverages or Tobacco Permitted	3/4 inch Block
All Persons Shall Don Protective Clothing (Coverings) Before Entering the Work Area	3/4 inch Block
All Persons Shall Shower Immediately After Leaving Work Area and Before Entering the Changing Area	3/4 inch Block

M. Decontamination Procedures

1. Contractor shall require all workers and visitors to adhere to the following personal decontamination procedures whenever they leave the work area:

a. Require that all workers use the following decontamination procedure as a minimum requirement whenever leaving the work area.
b. When exiting area, remove disposable coveralls, disposable head covers, and disposable footwear covers or boots in the Equipment Room.
c. Still wearing respirators, proceed to showers. Showering is mandatory. Care must be taken to follow reasonable procedures in removing the respirator to avoid asbestos fibers while showering. The following procedure is required as a minimum:
   1) Thoroughly wet body including hair and face. If using a PAPR, hold blower unit above head to keep canisters dry.
   2) With respirator still in place thoroughly wash body, hair, respirator face piece, and all parts of the respirator except the blower unit and battery pack on a PAPR. Pay particular attention to seal between face and respirator and under straps.
   3) Take a deep breath, hold it and/or exhale slowly, completely wet hair, face, and respirator. While still holding breath, remove respirator and hold it away from face before starting to breathe.
   4) Carefully wash face-piece of respirator inside and out.
d. If using PAPR, shut down in the following sequence, first cap inlets to filter cartridges, then turn off blower unit (this sequence will help keep debris which has collected on the inlet side of filter from dislodging and contaminating the outside of the unit). Thoroughly wash blower unit and hoses. Carefully wash battery pack with wet rag. Be extremely cautious of getting water in battery pack as this will short out and destroy battery.
   1) Shower completely with soap and water.
   2) Rinse thoroughly.
   3) Rinse shower room walls and floor prior to exit.
   4) Proceed from shower to changing room and change into street clothes or into new disposable work items.

e. Require that all workers use the following decontamination procedure as a minimum requirement whenever leaving the work area with a half or full face cartridge type respirator:
   1) When exiting area, remove disposable coveralls, disposable headcovers, and disposable footwear covers or boots in the equipment room.
   2) Still wearing respirators, proceed to showers. Showering is mandatory. Care must be taken to follow reasonable procedures in removing the respirator and filters to avoid asbestos fibers while showering. The following procedure is required as a minimum:
   3) Thoroughly wet body from neck down.
   4) Wet hair as thoroughly as possible without wetting the respirator filter if using an air purifying type respirator.
   5) Take a deep breath, hold it and/or exhale slowly, complete wetting of hair, thoroughly wetting face, respirator and filter (air purifying respirator). While still holding breath, remove respirator and hold it away from face before starting to breath.
   6) Dispose of wet filters from air purifying respirator.
   7) Carefully wash facepiece of respirator inside and out.
   8) Shower completely with soap and water.
   9) Rinse thoroughly.
   10) Rinse shower room walls and floor prior to exit.
   11) Proceed from shower to changing room and change into street clothes or into new disposable work items.

N. Project Decontamination
1. If the asbestos abatement work is on damaged or friable materials, then the building space is deemed contaminated before start of the work and in need of decontamination. In this case, the procedure includes two cleanings of the primary barrier plastic prior to its removal and two cleanings of the room surfaces to remove any new or existing contamination.
2. Work of this section includes the decontamination of air in the work area which has been, or may have been contaminated by the elevated airborne asbestos fiber levels generated during abatement activities, or which may previously have had elevated fiber levels due to friable materials in the space.
3. Work of this section also includes the cleaning, decontamination, and removal of temporary facilities installed prior to abatement work and decontamination of all surfaces (ceiling, walls, floor) of the work area, and all furniture or equipment in the work area.
4. First Cleaning
   a. Carry out a first cleaning of all surfaces of the work area including items of remaining sheeting, tools, scaffolding and/or staging by use of damp-cleaning and mopping, and/or a HEPA filtered vacuum. (Note: A HEPA vacuum will fail if used with wet material). Do not perform dry dusting or dry sweeping. Use each surface of a cleaning cloth one time only and then dispose as contaminated waste. Continue this cleaning until there is no visible debris from removed materials on plastic sheeting or other surfaces. Upon authorization of the Owner's Representative proceed with encapsulation of substrate.
   b. Perform encapsulation of substrate where required at this time. Maintain pressure differential system in operation during encapsulation work. Allow encapsulant to dry before proceeding with removal of Secondary layer of plastic.
5. Second Cleaning
   a. Upon authorization of the Owner's Representative, remove all Primary Barrier sheeting and Material Decontamination Unit, if there is one, leaving only the following:
      1) Critical Barrier which forms the sole barrier between the work area and other portions of the building or outside.
      2) Critical Barrier Sheeting over lighting fixtures and clocks, ventilation openings, doorways, convectors, speakers and other openings.

3) Personnel Decontamination Unit.
4) Pressure Differential System in continuous operation.

b. Remove all filters in Air Handling System(s) and dispose of as asbestos-containing waste.

6. Final Cleaning: Carry out a final cleaning of all surfaces in the work in the same manner as the first cleaning immediately after removal of primary plastic. This cleaning is now being applied to existing room surfaces. Take care to avoid water marks or other damage to surfaces.
7. Visual Inspection: Perform a complete visual inspection with the Owner's Representative of the entire work area including decontamination unit, all plastic sheeting, seals over ventilation openings, doorways, windows, and other openings; look for debris from any sources, residue on surfaces, dust or other matter. If any such debris, residue, dust or other matter is found repeat cleaning and continue decontamination procedure from that point. When the area is visually clean, complete the certification at the end of this section.
8. Final Air Sampling
   a. After the work area is found to be visually clean, air samples will be taken and analyzed in accordance with the procedures set forth in Paragraph “Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR).
   b. If Release Criteria are not met, repeat cleaning and continue decontamination procedure from that point.
   c. If Release Criteria is met, remove the interior of the decontamination unit leaving in place only the Critical Barriers separating the work area from the rest of the building and the operating negative pressure system.
   d. Any small quantities of residual material found upon removal of the plastic sheeting shall be removed with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner and local area protection. If significant quantities, as determined by the Owner's Representative, are found then the entire area affected shall be decontaminated as specified herein for the cleaning.

O. Work Area Clearance
1. Air Monitoring
   a. Visual Inspection is required as a prerequisite of air testing.
   b. To determine if the elevated airborne asbestos structure concentration during abatement operations have been reduced to the specified level, the Owner's Representative will secure samples and analyze them according to the following procedures.
2. Aggressive Sampling
   a. All air samples will be taken using aggressive sampling techniques as follows. (There are no standards available for flow rate of leaf blowers or large fans. However, this information is not critical to the success of the procedure).
   b. Before sampling pumps are started, the exhaust from forced-air equipment (leaf blower with at least 1 horsepower electric motor) will be swept against all walls, ceilings, floors, ledges and other surfaces in the room. This procedure will be continued for five minutes per 10,000 cubic feet of room volume.
   c. Air samples will be collected in areas subject to normal air circulation away from room corners, obstructed locations, and sites near windows, doors or vents.
3. Schedule of Air Samples
   a. General: The number and volume of air samples taken and analytical methods used by the Owner's Representative will be in accordance with the following schedule. Sample volumes given may vary depending upon the analytical instruments used. In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples will be taken and analyzed by either PCM of TEM analysis.
   b. Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) Samples:
      1) In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples will be taken and analyzed by either PCM or TEM analysis as follows:
      2) Samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with filter media: TEM - 0.45 micrometer mixed cellulose ester or 0.40 micrometer polycarbonate, with 5.0 micron mixed cellulose ester backing filter.

Location **Sampled**	Number of **Samples**	Detection **Limit** (f/cc)	**Minimum** Volume (Liters)	**Rate** LPM
Each Work Area	5	0.005	1,300	2-10

3) TEM Analysis will be performed using the analysis method set forth in the AHERA Regulation 40 CFR Part 763 Appendix A.
4) Asbestos Structures referred to in this Section include asbestos fibers, bundles, clusters, or matrices, as defined by method of analysis.
5) Decontamination of the work site is complete when all the sample results are below 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeters (f/cc) of air or 70 structures per square millimeter.

c. Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) Samples:
1) In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples may be taken and analyzed as follows:
2) Samples will be analyzed by PCM for clearance in areas where ceiling tile and/or pipe insulation are removed
3) Samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with filter media: PCM - 0.8 micrometer mixed cellulose ester.

Location Sampled	**Number of Samples**	**Detection Limit** (s/cc)	**Minimum Volume** (Liters)	**Rate** LPM
Each Work Area	1-5	0.01	2,400	2-10

4) PCM Analysis: Fibers on each filter will be measured using the NIOSH 7400 Method entitled "Fibers" published in the NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods, 3rd Edition, Second Supplement, August 1987.
5) Fibers: Referred to in this section include fibers regardless of composition as counted by the phase contrast microscopy method used
6) Decontamination of the work site is complete when all the sample results are below 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeters (f/cc) of air or 70 structures per square millimeter.

4. Failure of Clearance Sampling: Should results from analysis of final clearance air samples not meet the specified criteria, Contractor will be responsible for the payment of all costs, including Consultant's time for subsequent clearance air sampling. The costs associated with subsequent re-sampling for final clearance shall be deducted from the Contractor's final payment of the contract amount.

P. Removal Of Pipe Insulation
1. The work of this section applied to the removal of asbestos-containing Pipe Insulation.
a. Place one layer of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting directly below the work. The sheet shall be of sufficient size to completely wrap the pipe once it has been removed.
b. Thoroughly wet the ends of the pipe with amended water and scrape off a minimum of 6 inches of asbestos wrap from both ends of the pipe. Immediately place the wetted material into pre-labeled asbestos disposal bag(s).
c. Detach the pipe at each scraped end and place the pipe onto one sheet of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Wrap the pipe with the 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Contractor shall wrap the pipe with a second sheet of 6-mil, fire retardant polyethylene sheeting and label as asbestos-containing material. Dispose of the bag(s) and duct in accordance with the Paragraph "Handling and Disposal of Asbestos Contaminated Waste" of this specification.
d. Upon clearance from the Owner's Representative, Contractor shall remove the 6-trail, fire retardant polyethylene sheeting from the openings.

Q. Glove Bag Removal

1. The work of this section applies to full containment or glovebag removal.
2. Isolate the area in accordance with Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
3. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area.
4. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph "Pressure Differential System."
    a. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, Contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method.
    b. Thoroughly wet to satisfaction of the Owner's Representative, asbestos-containing insulation to be removed prior to stripping and/or tooling to reduce fiber dispersal into the air. Accomplish wetting by a fine spray (mist) of amended water or removal encapsulant. Saturate material sufficiently to wet the substrate without causing excess dripping. Allow time for removal encapsulant to penetrate material thoroughly. If amended water is used, spray material repeatedly during the work process to maintain a continuously wet condition. If a removal encapsulant is used, apply in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. If insulation is covered with canvas, Contractor will wet the exterior covering and slice it with utility knife while saturating the material.
    c. Mist work area continuously with amended water whenever necessary to reduce airborne fiber levels using commercially available "foggers."
    d. Remove saturated asbestos-containing material in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As it is removed, simultaneously pack material while still wet into disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside and move to wash down station adjacent to material decontamination unit.
    e. Evacuate air from disposal bags with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner before sealing.
    f. Contractor must always clean area of visible asbestos debris prior to end of shift.
5. These procedures shall be followed to remove pipe insulation elbows:
    a. Install critical barriers to isolate the work site. Install 2 or 3 Stage Decontamination Units.
    b. HEPA vacuum the work site.
    c. Provide negative air machine in addition to those required, in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 2-inch diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
    d. Locate intake of duct so that airflow is horizontally and slightly downward into intake. Replace primary filter on negative air machine at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes. Allow no more than one scraping or brushing activity per negative air machine.
    e. Check pipe where the work will be performed. Wrap damaged (broken lagging, hanging, etc.), pipe in 6 mil plastic and "candy-stripe" with duct tape. Place one layer of duct tape around undamaged pipe at each end where the glovebag will be attached.
    f. Place necessary tools into pouch located inside glovebag. This will usually include: bone saw, utility knife, rags, scrub brush, wire cutters, tin snips and pre-wetted cloth.
    g. Place one strip of plastic adhesion tape along the edge of the open top slit of glove bag for reinforcement.
    h. Place the glove bag around section of pipe to be worked on and staple top together through reinforcing tape. Next, tape the ends of glovebag to pipe itself, where previously covered with plastic or tape.
    i. Use smoke tube and aspirator bulb to test seal. Place tube into water sleeve (two-inch opening to glovebag) squeezing bulb and filling bag with visible smoke. Remove smoke tube and twist water sleeve closed. While holding the water sleeve tightly, gently squeeze glovebag and by using a flashlight, look for smoke leaking out, (especially at the top and ends of the glovebag). If leaks are found, tape closed using plastic adhesion tape and re-test.
    j. Insert wand from garden sprayer through water sleeve. Plastic adhesion tape water sleeve tightly around the wand to prevent leakage.

k. One person places its hands into the long-sleeved gloves while the second person directs garden sprayer at the work.
l. Use bone saw, if required, to cut insulation at each end of the section to be removed. A bone saw is a serrated heavy gauge wire with ring-type handles at each end. Throughout this process, spray amended water or removal encapsulant on the cutting area to keep dust to a minimum.
m. Remove insulation using putty knives or other tools. Place pieces in bottom of bag without dropping.
n. Rinse all tools with water inside the bag and place back into pouch.
o. Using scrub brush, rags and water, scrub and wipe down the exposed pipe. (Inexpensive horse rub-down mittens work well for this).
p. Remove water wand from water sleeve and attach the small nozzle from HEPA-filtered vacuum. Turn on the vacuum only briefly to collapse the bag.
q. Remove the vacuum nozzle, twist water sleeve closed and seal with plastic adhesion tape.

R. Handling And Disposal Of Asbestos-Containing Waste
1. All waste and asbestos contaminated waste shall be double bagged in pre-labeled 6-mil airtight puncture resistant bags. Labeling shall be in accordance with OSHA and EPA requirements.
a. Bags of asbestos-containing waste shall be sealed with tape in the work area. Asbestos waste shall not be allowed to dry out prior to sealing bags. While in the work area, bags shall be decontaminated of any bulk debris by wet wiping. Bags shall be pre-labeled in accordance with OSHA and EPA.
b. The Contractor shall ensure that the sealed bags are transported to the waste disposal site.
2. The Contractor shall establish a manifest system to enable the Owner to report the quantity of asbestos waste being deposited at the landfill. Contractor shall report the quantity of waste in pounds or tons as appropriate. The Contractor must be able to demonstrate custody over all asbestos waste from the time it is removed from the work area until it is deposited at the land fill.
a. Copies of the manifest and any receipts generated during the handling and disposal process shall be provided to the Owner's Representative and the Owner.
b. Final manifest and documents must be provided to the Owner's Representative and the Owner within two weeks of the removal of the asbestos materials from the site by the waste hauler.

S. Encapsulation Of Asbestos-Containing Materials
1. General provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01, apply to work of this section.
a. The work includes the sealing of all piping or vessels from which asbestos-containing insulation has been removed with one coat of a lock down encapsulant.
b. Where repair work is being performed, the end will be sealed with a minimum of one coat of bridging encapsulant.
2. Submittals
a. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information including label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
b. Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions with specific project requirements noted.
c. Performance Warrantee: Submit manufacturer's performance guarantee.
d. Certification: Submit written approval of entity installing the encapsulant from encapsulant manufacturer.
e. Material Safety Data Sheet: Submit the Material Safety Data Sheet, or equivalent, in accordance with the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200) for each surfactant and encapsulating material proposed for use on the work. Include a separate attachment for each sheet indicating the specific worker protective equipment proposed for use with the material indicated.

3. Deliver materials to the job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:
   a. Name or title of material
   b. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture
   c. Manufacturer's name
   d. Thinning Instructions
   e. Application Instructions
4. Deliver materials together with a copy of the OSHA Material Safety Data Sheet for the material.
5. Job Conditions
   a. Apply encapsulating materials only when environmental conditions in the work area are as required by the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Quality Assurance
   a. Installation of Spray-on Encapsulation Materials: Install spray-on materials by a firm and personnel approved by the manufacturer of the primary materials.
   b. Testing: Test material to be encapsulated using methods set forth in ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants Spray-or-Trowel-Applied for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials."
   c. Performance Warranty: Submit written Performance Warranty, executed by the manufacturer and co-signed by the Contractor, agreeing to repair/replace spray-on work which has cracked, fallen from substrate, or otherwise deteriorated to a condition where it would not perform effectively for its intended purposes due substantially to defective materials or workmanship and not due to abuse by occupants, improper maintenance, non-foreseeable ambient exposures or other causes beyond anticipated conditions and manufacturer's/contractor's control.
   d. Compatibility: Selection and use of encapsulant shall be compatible with replacement materials. Submit manufacturer's data indicating compatibility with replacement materials.
7. Product Selection
   a. Encapsulants: Provide penetrating or bridging type encapsulants specifically designed for application to asbestos-containing material.
   b. Standards: Product shall be rated as acceptable for use intended when field tested in accordance with ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants Spray-or-Trowel-Applied for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials."
   c. Fire Safety: Use only materials that have a flame spread index of less than 25, when dry, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
8. Manufacturers
   a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products, which may be incorporated in the work, include, but are not limited to the following:
      1) Penetrating Encapsulants: As currently accepted by the EPA. Refer to most recent EPA approval list.
      2) Bridging Encapsulants: As currently accepted by the EPA. Refer to most recent EPA approval list.
9. General
   a. Prior to applying any encapsulating material, ensure that application of the sealer will not cause the base material to fail and allow the sealed material to fall of its own weight or separate from the substrate. Should Contractor doubt the ability of the installation to support the sealant, request direction from the Owner's Representative before proceeding with the encapsulating work.
   b. Do Not Commence Application of encapsulating materials until all removal work within the work area has been completed.
10. Worker Protection
    a. Before beginning work with any material for which a Material Safety Data Sheet has been submitted, provide workers with the required protective equipment. Require that appropriate protective equipment be used at all times.

b. In addition to protective breathing equipment required by OSHA requirements or by this specification, use painting pre-filters on respirators to protect the dust filters when organic solvent based encapsulants are used.

11. Substrate
    a. Apply lock down encapsulant to all substrate after all asbestos-containing materials have been removed. Apply in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions for use of the encapsulation as an asbestos coating. Any deviations from such printed instructions shall be approved by the Owner's Representative in writing prior to commencing work.
    b. Apply encapsulant with an airless spray gun with air pressure and nozzle orifice as recommended by the encapsulant manufacturer.

T. Removal Of Floor Tile
1. This section applies to the removal of floor tile.
    a. Prior to start of work, wet wipe all surfaces including floor tile to remove any visible dust.
    b. Isolate the room by sealing hallway or doors and installing critical barriers on all ducting, windows and other penetrations of the room, in the specified area. Install a splash guard a minimum of 4 feet high on the walls of the room with one layer of 6-mil fire retardant poly.
    c. Install a two-stage decontamination configuration contiguous (under certain conditions may be remote) with the work in accordance with Paragraph “Decontamination Units.”
    d. Using water or amended water in a Hudson-type sprayer or garden sprayer, lightly mist the area where the material is to be removed. This may take several passes with the hose of the sprayer. Allow time for the water to soak into the material.
    e. Immediately place individual tiles in proper asbestos disposal bags. Vacuum collapse the bag, twist the neck of the bag, tape with duct tape, fold the twisted portion over onto itself and tape again. Wipe the outside of the bag with clean damp cloths and place the bag into a second prelabeled disposal bag. Tape shut the second bag.

U. Removal Of Fireproofing
1. The work of this section applies to the removal of all asbestos containing fireproofing including all over-spray that may be located on concrete block, columns, metal deck, beams, fixtures conduit and ducting.
    a. Isolate the floor per Paragraph “Temporary Enclosure.”
    b. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph “Decontamination Units” and attach to the work area.
    c. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph “Temporary Pressure Differential and Air Circulation System.”
    d. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method.
    e. Pre-clean columns, beams, electrical, mechanical and plumbing systems in the work area using wet wipe and HEPA vacuuming methods. Mask off with flame retardant polyethylene sheeting to protect from contamination during bulk abatement.
    f. Thoroughly wet to satisfaction of the Owner's Representative, asbestos-containing fireproofing to be removed prior to stripping and/or tooling to reduce fiber dispersal into the air. Accomplish wetting by a fine spray (mist) of amended water or removal encapsulant. Saturate material sufficiently to wet the substrate without causing excess dripping. Allow time for removal encapsulant to penetrate material thoroughly. If amended water is used, spray material repeatedly during the work process to maintain a continuously wet condition. If a removal encapsulant is used, apply in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
    g. Mist work area continuously with amended water whenever necessary to reduce airborne fiber levels using commercially available "foggers."
    h. Remove saturated asbestos-containing material in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As it is removed, simultaneously pack material while still wet into

disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside and move to wash down station adjacent to material decontamination unit.

i. Evacuate air from disposal bags with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner before sealing.

j. Provide Pressure Differential Machine in addition to those required in Paragraph “Pressure Differential System,” in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 12" diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.

k. Locate intake of duct so that air flow is horizontally and slightly down-ward into intake. Replace primary filter on pressure differential machine at an interval of no greater that 30 minutes. Allow no more than one scraping or brushing activity per pressure differential machine.

V. Removal Of Wall Plaster: HEPA vacuum work site.

1. Place two layers of 6-mil flame retardant polyethylene sheeting on the floor adjacent to the wall to be demolished. Pull the wall down in manageable sections onto the polyethylene sheeting. Control dust and fiber release by misting the air and lightly wetting the material with amended water from a Hudson-type sprayer or garden sprayer as it is demolished.
2. Wrap the first layer of polyethylene sheeting around the material and seal with duct tape. Wrap the second layer of polyethylene sheeting around the bundle and seal with duct tape.
3. Label and dispose of the entire bundle.
4. Provide Pressure Differential Machine in addition to those required in Paragraph “Pressure Differential System,” in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is unto the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 12-inch diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
5. Locate intake of duct so that air flow is horizontally and slightly down-ward into intake. Replace primary filter on negative air machine at an interval of no greater that 30 minutes.

W. Clean-Up Of Asbestos-Containing Debris On Ceiling Tile Or Solid Ceiling

1. This section applies to the decontamination of the entire plaster ceiling, removal of existing fiberglass on duct work and removal of all batt insulation covering the existing plaster ceiling.
   a. Isolate the floor per Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
   b. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area. General Contractor will give direction regarding exact location of decontamination unit(s).
   c. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph "Temporary Pressure Differential and Air Circulation System."
   d. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method:
2. These procedures shall be followed to for clean up of asbestos-containing debris on existing plaster ceiling:
   a. This work will be performed prior to the removal of fireproofing. The isolation of the work area is considered essential to the pre-cleaning activities for the total area. Isolate the area in accordance with Paragraph “Temporary Facilities.”
   b. Remove asbestos-containing debris and fiberglass batt and duct insulation and decontaminate the area using the following procedures:
      1) Remove all small debris with the HEPA vacuum.
      2) Gently mist all fiberglass insulation, remove from ducts and ceiling and place into pre-labeled hazardous disposal bags and dispose of in accordance with Paragraph “Disposal of Asbestos Containing Waste Material.”
      3) Exposure of ducting will expose all fireproofing overspray, this material may be removed during the removal of fireproofing from decks and beams.

4) Pick up all large visible debris on the ceiling or any horizontal surfaces and place in the bottom of a 6-mil polyethylene disposal bag conforming to the requirements of Paragraph “Disposal of Asbestos-Containing Waste.” Place pieces in the bag without dropping and avoiding unnecessary disturbance and release of material.
5) HEPA vacuum the entire plaster ceiling surface.

c. Upon completion of the decontamination of the area request a visual inspection of the ceiling and other horizontal surfaces. This area will be considered a portion of work area for the duration of the work and will be included in the final encapsulation of the area.

X. Removal Of Adhesive: This section applies to the removal of all asbestos-containing floor tile and adhesive, sheet vinyl flooring, vinyl floor tile, and baseboard adhesive, etc.

1. Ensure that workers are equipped with proper respiratory protection. In addition to the HEPA cartridges, respirators must also be equipped with organic solvent cartridges.
2. Provide HEPA filtered fan units in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that units exhaust outside the building. Replace primary filters on HEPA filtered fan units at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes.
3. Apply adhesive removal solvent as recommended by manufacturer after removal of floor tile has been completed.
4. Provide tile adhesive (mastic) remover that meets the following criteria:
   a. Flash Point: 122E or greater.
   b. Special Precautions: No heavy smoke generated if ignited.
   c. Health Effects: Limited to mild skin rash or eye irritation.
   d. Respiratory Protection: MSHA - NIOSH approved Organic vapor cartridges in conjunction with standard HEPA filters.
   e. Petroleum Distillates: None.
   f. Odor: Pine, Citrus or none.

Use of diesel fuel in the removal of tile and baseboard adhesive is strictly prohibited.

5. Remove adhesive in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As adhesive is removed, simultaneously pack rags contaminated with adhesive material into disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside of bag and move to material decontamination unit.
6. Upon completion of adhesive removal, thoroughly clean bare substrate of all solvent residue.
7. Place adhesive residue in proper asbestos disposal bags. Vacuum collapse the bag, twist the neck of the bag, tape with duct tape, fold the twisted portion over onto itself and tape again. Wipe the outside of the bag with clean damp cloths and place bag into second prelabeled disposal bag. Tape shut the second bag.

CERTIFICATE OF WORKER'S ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

PROJECT NAME: _____

PROJECT ADDRESS: _____

CONTRACTOR: _____

WORKING WITH ASBESTOS CAN BE DANGEROUS. INHALING ASBESTOS FIBERS HAS BEEN LINKED WITH VARIOUS TYPES OF CANCER IF YOU SMOKE AND INHALE ASBESTOS FIBERS, THE CHANCE THAT YOU WILL DEVELOP LUNG CANCER IS GREATER THAN THAT OF THE NON-SMOKING PUBLIC.

Your employer's contract with the Owner for the above project requires that: You be supplied with the proper respirator and be trained in its use. You be trained in safe work practices and in the use of the equipment found on the job. You receive a medical examination. These things are to have been done at no cost to you. By signing this certification you are assuring the Owner that your employer has met these obligations to you.

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION: I have been trained in the proper use of respirators, and informed ofthe type respirator to be used on the above referenced project. I have a copy of the written respiratory protection manual issued by my employers. I have been equipped at no cost with the respirator to be used on the above project.

TRAINING COURSE: I have been trained in the dangers inherent in handling asbestos and breathing asbestos dust and in proper work procedures and personal and area protective measures. The topics covered in the course included the following:

- Physical characteristics of asbestos
- Health hazards associated with asbestos
- Respiratory protection
- Use of protective equipment
- Pressure differential systems
- Work practices including hands-on or on-the-job training
- Personal decontamination procedures
- Air monitoring, personal and area

MEDICAL EXAMINATION: I have had a medical examination within the last 12 months which was paid for by my employer. This examination included: health history, pulmonary function tests and may have included an evaluation of a chest x-ray.

Signature _____ Witness _____

Printed Name _____ Social Security Number _____

CERTIFICATION OF VISUAL INSPECTION

AREA _____

In accordance with Paragraph "Project Decontamination" the Contractor hereby certifies that it has visually inspected the work area (all surfaces including pipes, beams, ledges, walls, ceiling and floor, Decontamination Unit, sheet plastic, etc.) and has found no dust, debris or residue.

By: _____

Signature _____ Date _____

Print Name _____

Print Title _____

OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE CERTIFICATION

the Owner's Representative hereby certifies that it has accompanied the Contractor on its visual inspection and verifies that this inspection has been thorough and to the best of its knowledge and belief, the Contractor's certification above is a true and honest one.

Signature _____ Date _____

Print Name _____

Print Title _____

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION PROGRAM

Project Name _____

Location _____

Date _____

Based upon airborne asbestos-fiber counts encountered on previous projects of similar type working on materials similar to those found on the above referenced project. The following level of respiratory protection is proposed for the indicated operations to maintain an Airborne Fiber Count (as measured by the NIOSH 7400 Method) below the specified Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) inside the respirator face piece.

Operation	Anticipated f/cc	Respiratory Protection	Protection Factor	f/cc in Mask
Installing sheet plastic				
Removing trim in contact with asbestos-containing material				
Removal of architectural finish or fireproofing				
Removal of pipe insulation				
Removal of fitting insulation				
Encapsulation of pipe and boiler insulation				
Gross debris removal				
Cleaning "primary" sheet plastic				
Cleaning "critical" barrier				
Removing Decontamination Unit				
Other				

The Contractor certifies that to the best of its knowledge and belief the above represent a true and accurate representation of Airborne Fiber Counts to be expected for the operations indicated, and are based upon airborne fiber data from past projects with similar materials and operations.

Contractor _____

Signature _____ Date _____

Print Name _____ Title _____

END OF SECTION 02 82 33 00

SECTION 02 82 33 00a - REMOVAL OF NONFRIABLE ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of nonfriable asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Definitions

1. ACM: Asbestos Containing material which is any material containing more than one percent asbestos.
2. Amended Water: Water containing a wetting agent or surfactant with a maximum surface tension of 2.9 Pa 29 dynes per centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1331.
3. Area Sampling: Sampling of asbestos fiber concentrations which approximates the concentrations of asbestos in the theoretical breathing zone but is not actually collected in the breathing zone of an employee.
4. Asbestos: The term asbestos collectively refers to a naturally occurring mineral known by the following specific names: chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite.
5. Asbestos control Area: That area where asbestos removal operations are performed. The area shall be isolated by physical boundaries to assist in the prevention of the uncontrolled access by non-qualified persons.
6. Asbestos Fibers: Those fibers having an aspect ratio of at least 3:1 and longer than-5 micrometers as determined by National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) Method 7400.
7. Asbestos Permissible Exposure Limit: 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter of air as an e-hour time weighted average measured in the breathing zone as by defined 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other Federal legislation having legal jurisdiction for the protection of workers health.
8. Background: The ambient airborne asbestos concentration in an uncontaminated area as measured prior to any asbestos hazard abatement efforts. Background concentrations for contaminated areas are measured in similar but asbestos free locations.
9. Contractor: The Contractor is that individual, or entity under contract to the Owner to perform the herein listed work.
10. Contractor/Supervisor (Asbestos abatement): A person who has successfully completed training and is therefore accredited as a Contractor/Supervisor under a State Model Accreditation Plan or EPA Model Accreditation Plan as described in 40 CFR 763.
11. Critical Barrier: The layer of polyethylene sheeting that covers an opening or penetration in a room or area that is to become a negative pressure enclosure.
12. Encapsulation: The abatement of an asbestos hazard through the appropriate use of chemical encapsulants.
13. Encapsulants: Specific materials in various forms used to chemically or physically entrap asbestos fibers in various configurations to prevent these fibers from becoming airborne. There are four types of encapsulants as follows which must comply with performance requirements as specified herein.
    a. Removal Encapsulant (can be used as a wetting agent)
    b. Bridging Encapsulant (used to provide a tough, durable surface coating to asbestos containing material)
    c. Penetrating Encapsulant (used to penetrate the asbestos containing material encapsulating all asbestos fibers and preventing fiber release due to routine mechanical damage)
    d. Lock-Down Encapsulant (used to seal off or "lock-down" minute asbestos fibers left on surfaces from which asbestos containing material has been removed).

14. Friable Asbestos Material: Any material containing more than one percent asbestos that can be crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by hand pressure when dry.
15. Glovebag Technique: Those asbestos removal and control techniques put forth in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
16. HEPA Filter Equipment: High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtered vacuum and/or exhaust ventilation equipment with a filter system capable of collecting and retaining asbestos fibers. Filters shall retain 99.97 percent of particles 0.3 microns or larger as indicated in UL 586.
17. the Owner: That qualified person employed directly by the Owner to monitor, sample, inspect the work, and advise the Owner.
18. Negative Pressure Enclosure (NPE): That engineering control technique described as a negative pressure enclosure in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
19. Non-friable Asbestos Material: Material that contains asbestos in which the fibers have been immobilized by a bonding agent, coating, binder, or other material so that the asbestos is well bound and will not normally release asbestos fibers during any appropriate use, handling, storage or transportation. It is understood that asbestos fibers may be released under other conditions such as demolition, renovation, removal, or mishap.
20. Personal Sampling: Air sampling which is performed to determine asbestos fiber concentrations within the breathing zone of a specific employee, as performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.
21. Competent Person (CP): A person who has successfully completed training and is therefore accredited under a legitimate State Model Accreditation Plan or EPA Model Accreditation Plan as described in 40 CFR 763 as a Contractor/Supervisor and shall be appropriately licensed according to the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed.
22. TEM: Refers to Transmission Electron Microscopy.
23. Time Weighted Average (TWA): The TWA is an 8-hour time weighted average airborne concentration of asbestos fibers.
24. Wetting Agent: A chemical added to water to reduce the water's surface tension thereby increasing the water's ability to soak into the material to which it is applied. An equivalent wetting agent must have a surface tension of at most 2.9 Pa 29 dynes per centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1331.

C. Requirements
1. Description of Work: The work covered by this section includes the handling and control of asbestos containing materials and describes some of the resultant procedures and equipment required to protect workers, the environment and occupants of the building or area, or both, from contact with airborne asbestos fibers. The work also includes the disposal of any asbestos containing materials generated by the work. More specific operational procedures shall be outlined in the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan called for elsewhere in this specification. The asbestos work includes the use of non-friable removal technique(s) which is governed by 40 CFR 763 as indicated. Provide non-friable removal technique(s) as outlined in this specification for the locations indicated.
2. Medical Requirements: Provide medical requirements including but not limited to medical surveillance and medical record keeping as listed in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
    a. Medical Examinations: Before exposure to airborne asbestos fibers, provide workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other pertinent State or local directives. This requirement must have been satisfied within the 12 months prior to the start of work on this contract. The same medical examination shall be given on an annual basis to employees engaged in an occupation involving asbestos and within 30 calendar days before or after the termination of employment in such occupation. Specifically identify x-ray films of asbestos workers to the consulting radiologist and mark medical record jackets with the word "ASBESTOS."
    b. Medical Records: Maintain complete and accurate records of employees' medical examinations, medical records, and exposure data for a period of 30 years after termination of employment and make records of the required medical examinations and

exposure data available for inspection and copying to: The Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health (OSHA), or authorized representatives of them, and an employee's physician upon the request of the employee or former employee.

c. Medical Certification: Submit written certification for each worker and contractor/supervisor, signed by a licensed physician indicating that the worker and contractor/supervisor has met or exceeded all of the medical prerequisites listed herein and in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and 29 CFR 1910.134 as prescribed by law.

3. Training: Train all personnel involved in the asbestos control work in accordance with United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) training criteria or State training criteria whichever is more stringent. The Contractor shall document the training by providing a copy of a current training certification to the the Owner for each person assigned to work on this project. Furnish each employee with respirator training and fit testing documentation as required by 29 CFR 1910.134. Provide instruction on the engineering and other hazard control techniques and procedures to be used on this project.
   a. Employee Training: Submit copies of training certificates for each employee indicating that the employee has received training at the appropriate level in accordance with 40 CFR 763.
4. Permits, Licenses, and Notifications: Notify the local air pollution control district/agency and the the Owner in writing 10 working days prior to commencement of work in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M or applicable state and local regulations. Obtain necessary permits or licenses in conjunction with asbestos removal, encapsulation, hauling, and disposal. Post the permit and/or license at the work site, visible from a non-controlled area. Notify the local fire department 3 days prior to removing fire-proofing material from the building including notice that the material contains asbestos.
5. Environment, Safety and Health Compliance: Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART A, and 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M or applicable State or local regulations regarding handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of asbestos waste materials. Submit matters of interpretation of standards to the appropriate administrative agency for resolution before starting the work. Where the requirements of this specification, applicable regulations, or referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirement shall apply.
   a. Site Inspection: While performing asbestos engineering control work, the Contractor shall be subject to on-site inspection by the Federal, State, or local regulatory agencies and the Contracting Officer or its designated representative. If the work is found to be in violation of Federal, State, or local regulations or this specification, the Contracting Officer or its representative will issue a stop work order to be in effect immediately and until the violation is resolved. All related costs including standby time required to resolve the. violation shall be at the Contractor's expense.
6. Respiratory Protection Program: Establish and implement a respirator program as required by ANSI 288.2 and 29 CFR 1910.134. Submit a written program manual or operating procedure including methods of compliance with regulatory statutes.
   a. Respirator Program Records: Submit records of the respirator program as required by ANSI 288.2 and 29 CFR 1910.134.
7. Contractor/Supervisor (Asbestos Abatement): The Contractor shall be represented on-site by a trained contractor/Supervisor. This person shall be on-site at all times when asbestos work is in progress. The Qualified Person, as defined herein, can be the Contractor/Supervisor.
8. Hazard Communication: Adhere to all parts of 29 CFR 1910.1200 and 29 CFR 1926.59. Provide the Contracting Officer with a copy of the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials brought to the site. Review the Asbestos Survey Report(s) provided by the the Owner, if any.
9. Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan: Submit a detailed plan of the safety precautions such as lockout, tag-out, tryout, fall protection, and confined space entry procedures and equipment and work procedures to be used in the removal of materials containing asbestos. The plan shall be prepared by the Contractor (and reviewed and signed by an asbestos consultant (LAC) licensed according to the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed) for review and

recommendation for approval by the the Owner. The plan shall be forwarded to the the Owner for final approval at least 10 days prior to beginning abatement activities. The plan shall include but not be limited to the detailed description of personal protective equipment and work practices to be used including, but not limited to, respiratory protection, type of whole-body protection , the location of asbestos control areas including clean and dirty areas, buffer zones, showers, storage areas, change rooms, removal method, interface of trades involved in the construction, sequencing of asbestos related work, disposal plan, type of wetting agent and asbestos encapsulant to be used, locations of local exhaust equipment, planned air sampling strategies, and a detailed description of the method to be employed in order to control environmental pollution. The plan shall also include both fire and medical emergency response plans. The Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan must be approved in writing prior to starting any asbestos work.

10. Testing Laboratory: Submit the name, address, and telephone number of each testing laboratory selected for the sampling, analysis, and reporting of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers along with evidence that each laboratory selected holds the appropriate State license and/or permits and certification that each laboratory is American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) accredited and that persons counting the samples have been judged proficient by current inclusion on the AIHA Asbestos Analysis Registry (AAR) and successful participation of the laboratory in the Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT) Program. Where analysis to determine asbestos content in bulk materials or transmission electron microscopy is required, submit evidence that the laboratory is accredited by the National Institute of Science and Technology (NIST) under National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for asbestos analysis.
11. Landfill Approval: Submit written evidence that the landfill for disposal is approved for asbestos disposal by the USEPA and State and local regulatory agency(s).
12. Waste Shipment Records/Asbestos Waste Manifest: Submit waste shipment records and/or asbestos manifest records, prepared in accordance with applicable Federal, State, or local regulations, signed and dated by an agent of the landfill, certifying the amount of asbestos materials delivered to the landfill, within 3 days after delivery.
13. Negative Exposure Assessment: Submit objective data demonstrating that the method(s) used for the specified non-friable ACM removal does not release airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers exceeding the TWA PEL or excursion limit. This data may be from previous work within the last 12 months or from initial exposure assessments on this project. Data from previous work must have been gathered by the firm employed on this contract, using workers trained to the same level, with the ACM and workplace conditions "closely resembling" the conditions for this contract.
14. Contractor Daily Reports: Prepare a written report for each day that asbestos work is being accomplished. The report should be submitted to the the Owner monthly. The report as a minimum shall include the following, where applicable:
    a. Daily Visual Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report documenting compliance with the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan and Federal, State, or local regulations.
    b. Air Sampling Reports: Complete fiber counting within 24 hours of the "time off" of the sample pump. Notify the the Owner immediately of any airborne levels of asbestos fibers in excess of the acceptable limits. Sampling results shall be submitted to the the Owner the day following receipt. The affected employees will be provided copies of the results where required by law within 3 working days. These results shall be signed by the air sampler and the testing laboratory employee that analyzed the sample.
    c. Pressure Differential Recordings for Local Exhaust System-Not Used
    d. Asbestos Disposal Quantity Report: The Contractor shall record and report daily the amount of asbestos containing material removed and the amount transported for disposal. Deliver the report for the previous day and cumulative totals with amounts of material removed reported in linear meters or square meters linear feet or square feet as described initially in this specification and the amounts of material transported for disposal reported in cubic meters yards.

D. Submittals
1. Submit the following in accordance with Section "Submittal Procedures."
a. Vacuums and tools
b. Respirators
c. Wetting Agent
d. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials proposed for transport to the project site
e. Local exhaust system
f. Pressure differential automatic recording instrument
g. Daily Reports
h. Asbestos hazard abatement plan
i. Testing laboratory
j. Training Certificates
k. Landfill approval
l. Employee training
m. Medical certification requirements
n. Waste shipment records/Asbestos waste manifest
o. Respiratory Protection Program
p. Negative Exposure Assessment
q. Local Exhaust system
r. Show compliance with ANSI Z9.2 by providing manufacturers' certifications.
s. Permits, licenses, and Notifications
t. Rental equipment
u. Respirator program records
v. Protective clothing decontamination quality control records
w. Protective clothing decontamination facility notification.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Glovebags-Not Used
2. Rental Equipment: Provide a copy of the written notification to the rental company concerning the intended use of the equipment and the possibility of asbestos contamination of the equipment.
3. Protective Clothing Decontamination Quality Control Records: Provide all records that document quality control for the decontamination of reusable outer protective clothing.
4. Protective Clothing Decontamination Facility Notification: Submit written evidence that persons who decontaminate, store, or transport asbestos contaminated clothing used in the performance of this contract were duly notified in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Encapsulants
1. See Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-suppression Water-service Piping".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Equipment
1. Respirators: Select respirators from those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH). Provide personnel engaged in pre-cleaning, cleanup, handling, and removal of asbestos containing materials with the appropriate respiratory protection as specified in 29 CFR 1910.134.
2. Exterior Whole Body Protection

a. Outer Protective Clothing: Provide personnel exposed to asbestos with disposable "non-breathable," or reusable "non-breathable" whole body outer protective clothing, head coverings, gloves, and foot coverings. Provide disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Cloth gloves may be worn inside the plastic or rubber gloves for comfort, but shall not be used alone. Make sleeves secure at the wrists, make foot coverings secure at the ankles, and make clothing secure at the neck by the use of tape. Reusable whole body outer protective clothing shall be either disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste upon exiting from the asbestos regulated work area or be properly decontaminated.

b. Work Clothing-Not Used

c. Decontamination of Reusable Outer Protective Clothing: When reusable outer protective clothing is used, transport the double bagged clothing to a previously notified commercial/industrial decontamination facility for decontamination. Perform non-destructive testing to determine the effectiveness of asbestos decontamination. If representative sampling is used, ensure the statistical validity of the sampling results. If representative sampling is used, reject any entire batch in which any of the pieces exceed 40 fibers per square millimeter. Inspect reusable protective clothing prior to use to ensure that it will provide adequate protection and is not or is not about to become ripped, torn, deteriorated, or damaged, and that it is not visibly contaminated. Notify, in writing, all personnel involved in the decontamination of reusable outer protective clothing as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101.

d. Eye Protection: Provide goggles to personnel engaged in asbestos abatement operations when the use of a full face respirator is not required.

3. Warning Signs and Labels: Provide bilingual warning signs printed in English and Spanish at all approaches to asbestos control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary protective steps required before entering the area. Provide labels and affix to all asbestos materials, scrap, waste, debris, and other products contaminated with asbestos.

a. Warning Sign: Provide vertical format conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101 minimum 20 by 14 inches (500 by 355 mm) displaying the following legend in the lower panel:

DANGER
ASBESTOS
MAY CAUSE CANCER
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
WEAR RESPIRATORY PROTECTION AND
PROTECTIVE CLOTHING IN THIS AREA

b. Warning Labels: Provide labels conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101 of sufficient size to be clearly legible, displaying the following legend:

DANGER
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS
MAY CAUSE CANCER
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS
DO NOT BREATHE DUST
AVOID CREATING DUST

c. Provide the following asbestos labels, of sufficient size to be clearly legible, for display on waste containers (bags or drums) which will be used to transport asbestos contaminated

material in accordance with United States Department of Transportation 49 CFR Parts 171 and 172.

NA2212, (WASTE) ASBESTOS, 9, PGIII

4. Vacuums and Tools: Vacuums shall be leak proof to the filter and equipped with HEPA filters. Filters on vacuums shall conform to ANSI Z9.2 and UL 586. Do not use power tools to remove asbestos containing materials unless the tool is equipped with effective, integral HEPA filtered exhaust ventilation systems. Remove all residual asbestos from reusable tools prior to storage or reuse.

B. General
1. Pre-Asbestos Work Conference: The Contractor and the Contractor/Supervisor shall meet with the Contracting officer prior to beginning work, to discuss in detail the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan, including work procedures and safety precautions. Once approved by the Owners Engineer, the plan will be enforced as if a part of this specification. Any changes required in the specification as a result of the plan shall be identified specifically in the plan to allow for free discussion and approval by the Owners Engineer prior to starting work.
2. Asbestos Control Area Requirements: The Contractor shall demarcate the asbestos control area(s) using physical barriers and signs to prevent access by unauthorized personnel. This area is defined by 29 CFR 1926.1101 as the regulated area.
3. Work Procedure: Perform asbestos related work in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, applicable State or local regulation, and as specified herein. Use wet removal procedures. Personnel shall wear and utilize protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. Eating, smoking, drinking, chewing gum or tobacco, or applying cosmetics shall not be permitted in the asbestos control area(s). Personnel of other trades not engaged in the removal of asbestos containing material shall not be exposed at any time to airborne concentrations of asbestos. If an asbestos fiber release or spill, stop work immediately, correct the condition to the satisfaction of the Owners Engineer, including clean-up and clearance sampling, if appropriate, prior to resumption of work.
4. Furnishings: Furniture will be removed from the area of work by the Owner before asbestos work begins.
5. Pre-cleaning: Wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces potentially contaminated with asbestos prior to establishment of an enclosure.

C. Removal Procedures: Wet asbestos containing material with a fine spray of amended water during removal, cutting, or other handling so as to reduce the emission of airborne fibers. Remove material and immediately place in 0.15 mm 6 mil plastic disposal bags. Remove asbestos containing material in a gradual manner, with continuous application of the amended water in such a manner that no asbestos material is disturbed prior to being adequately wetted. Where unusual circumstances prohibit the use of 0.15 mm 6 mil plastic bags, submit an alternate proposal for containment of asbestos fibers to the Owner's Engineer for approval. Asbestos containing material shall be containerized while wet. At no time shall asbestos containing material be allowed to accumulate or become dry. Handle asbestos containing material as indicated in 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, applicable State or local regulation, and 29 CFR 1926.1101.
1. Exposed Pipe Insulation Edges-Not Used
2. Negative Pressure Enclosure: Block and seal openings in areas where the release of airborne asbestos fibers can be expected. Establish an asbestos negative pressure enclosure with the use of curtains, portable partitions, or other enclosures in order to prevent the escape of asbestos fibers from the contaminated asbestos work area.
   a. Personnel/Equipment Decontamination Unit: Provide a temporary facility with a separate equipment/dirty change room and clean change room. Provide a shower that complies with 29 CFR 1926.51 in between the dirty room and clean room for personnel required to wear whole body protective clothing. Provide two separate lockers for each asbestos worker, one in each locker room. Keep street clothing and street shoes in the clean locker. HEPA

vacuum and remove asbestos contaminated disposable protective clothing while still wearing respirators at the boundary of the asbestos work area and seal in impermeable bags or containers for disposal. Do not wear work clothing between home and work. All employees shall shower before changing into street clothes. Collect used shower water and filter with approved water filtration equipment to remove asbestos contamination. Dispose of filters and residue as asbestos waste. Discharge clean water to the sanitary system. Dispose of asbestos contaminated work clothing as asbestos contaminated waste or properly decontaminate as specified in the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan.

b. Waste Load-Out Unit: Provide a separate temporary area expressly for short-term storage of bagged asbestos containing material that is ready for disposal. The unit shall be the only port used to transfer waste to a truck, dumpster, or other approved on-site storage facility. It shall not be used for personnel egress. A waste load-out unit shall be integral to each negative pressure enclosure.

3. Non-friable Removal Procedures:
   a. Under normal conditions EPA Category II, non-friable asbestos containing materials may not be considered hazardous; however, this material may release airborne asbestos fibers during demolition and removal; therefore it must be handled in a manner to prevent the release of asbestos fibers. At no time will this material be mechanically chipped, sawed, sanded, or ground.
   b. Prior to beginning removal, establish an Asbestos Control Area and install Critical Barriers as specified elsewhere in this section. Submit a Negative Exposure Assessment which is less than 12 months old to the the Owner for approval or conduct air sampling as specified elsewhere in this section to establish the exposure levels for the exact removal method being used. The Contractor will establish the correct level of Personal Protective Equipment required.
   c. Acceptable methods of removal include, but are not limited to, the use of dry ice, a heat gun or lamp, citrus-based solvents, and hand tools with amended water. Removal shall be accomplished to keep the ACM substantially intact. Breakage into small pieces is an unacceptable work practice. The method shall-be detailed in the Asbestos Abatement Plan and shall not be changed during the removal without Contracting Officer approval.
   d. Upon completion of the removal and clean-up, but prior to removal of critical barriers, the Contractor Testing company shall conduct a visual inspection of all areas affected by the removal. Re-clean as required.

D. Field Quality Control Requirements
1. Visual Inspections: The the Owner will conduct periodic inspections of all areas where asbestos removal and activities are in progress to ensure compliance with the approved Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan and Federal/State regulatory requirements. This inspection shall include confirmation of proper control/containment/enclosure, worker protection, housekeeping, exhaust equipment operation, decontamination procedures, proper wetting and disposal, and inspection of work progress and work practices. Each activity will be documented as acceptable or noted as unacceptable with justification for the non-compliance.
2. Air Sampling: Sampling of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers shall be performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101 and as specified herein. Unless otherwise specified, use NIOSH Method 7400 for sampling and analysis. Air Sampling may be duplicated by the Government at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. If the air sampling results obtained by the Government differ from those results obtained by the Contractor, the Government will determine which results predominate.
   a. Sampling Prior to Asbestos Work (Not Used)
   b. Sampling During Asbestos Work
      1) The Contractor's testing company shall perform area sampling as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and governing environmental regulations. Perform area sampling at least once every week close to the work inside the enclosure, outside the personnel/equipment decontamination unit entrance to the enclosure.

2) If sampling outside the enclosure shows airborne levels have exceeded background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop all work, correct the condition(s) causing the fiber release, and notify the the Owner immediately. Determine by testing if adjacent areas are contaminated. If so the Contractor shall clean the contaminated areas, visually inspect, and sample the areas as specified herein.

3) The Contractor shall conduct personal sampling of at least 25% of the workers engaged in asbestos handling (removal, disposal, transport and other associated work) throughout the duration of the project. If the quantity of airborne asbestos fibers monitored at the breathing zone of the workers at any time exceeds 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter, notify the PQP immediately, evaluate work practices, and take corrective action to reduce airborne asbestos fibers.

E. Clean-Up And Disposal

1. Housekeeping

a. Essential parts of asbestos dust control are housekeeping and clean-up procedures. Maintain surfaces of the asbestos control area free of accumulations of asbestos fibers. Give meticulous attention to restricting the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the general area. Use HEPA filtered vacuum cleaners. DO NOT BLOW DOWN THE SPACE WITH COMPRESSED AIR. All asbestos waste shall be placed in an approved on-site storage facility or transported for disposal daily. When asbestos removal is complete, all asbestos waste is removed from the work-site, and final clean-up is completed, the PQP shall visually inspect the asbestos control area for cleanliness. After final clean-up and acceptable pre-clearance airborne concentrations are attained but before the local exhaust system is turned off and the negative pressure enclosure removed), remove all pre-filters on the building HVAC system and provide new pre-filters.

b. Dispose of filters as asbestos contaminated materials. Reestablish HVAC,. mechanical, and electrical systems in proper working order.

2. Title to Materials: All waste materials, except as specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of as specified in applicable Federal, State, and local regulations and herein.

3. Disposal of Asbestos

a. Collect all removed asbestos containing material, contaminated materials, contaminated water, scrap, debris, bags, containers, expendable equipment, and asbestos contaminated clothing which may produce airborne asbestos fibers and place in sealed fiber-proof, waterproof, non-returnable containers (e.g. double plastic bags 0.15 mm 6 mils thick, cartons, drums or cans). Wastes within the containers must be adequately wet in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Affix a warning and Department of Transportation (DOT) label to each container including the bags or use at least 0.15 mm 6 mils thick bags with the approved warnings and DOT labeling preprinted on the bag.

b. Each container or bag shall clearly indicate that the waste generator is the Owner and the development at which the waste is generated, and the Job Order number of the project.

c. Prevent contamination of the transport vehicle (especially if the transport vehicle is a rented truck likely to be used in the future for non-asbestos purposes). These precautions include lining the vehicle cargo area with plastic sheeting (similar to work area enclosure) and thorough cleaning of the cargo area after transport and unloading of asbestos debris is complete. Dispose of waste asbestos material at an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) or State-approved asbestos landfill off the Owner's property. For temporary storage, store sealed impermeable bags in asbestos waste drums or skids. An area for interim storage of asbestos waste-containing drums or skids will be coordinated with the the Owner. Procedure for hauling and disposal shall comply with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, State, regional, and local standards. Sealed plastic bags may be dumped from drums into the burial site unless the bags have been broken or damaged. Damaged bags shall remain

in the drum and the entire contaminated drum shall be buried. Uncontaminated drums may be recycled. Workers unloading the sealed drums shall wear appropriate respirators and personal protective equipment when handling asbestos materials at the disposal site.

END OF SECTION 02 82 33 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 82 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
02 82 33 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials
02 82 33 00	02 82 16 00	Encapsulation (Lock-Down) Of Asbestos-Containing Materials

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 83 19 13 - LEAD PAINT RELATED ABATEMENT PROCEDURES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lead paint related abatement procedures. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. General Provisions
1. The site of this work will be occupied while work is being done. Perform the abatement work with the least inconvenience to the residents.
2. Take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the the Owner and its residents. Damaged property shall be repaired and restored to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new materials to match existing, at the Contractor's expense.
3. Hazardous waste generated during the abatement process (including lead-base paint) when carted away from the developments shall not be transferred from one vehicle to another except at a licensed transfer station.
4. Develop a work plan to be performed as requested by the the Owner. The detailed plan shall include sequencing of abatement work in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the non-work areas in the building. The plan should also include emergency procedures in case of fire.
5. The Contractor shall include all supplementary miscellaneous items not specified but implied or required in order to complete the work.
6. Workmanship required in the execution of the work herein specified shall be of good quality and subject to the approval of the the Owner.
7. Make in a timely fashion all applicable and necessary notifications to relevant Federal, State and Local authorities. The Contractor shall indemnify the the Owner and the the Owner's representative from, and pay all claims resulting from failure to adhere to these provisions.
8. the Owner may retain an independent Monitoring Contractor to monitor the abatement contract and conduct all wipe sampling and clearance tests.
9. Contractor performing lead-based paint abatement or renovation activities involving lead-based paint shall be a Certified Lead Abatement Contractor and shall ensure that supervisors and workers are trained and certified by U.S. EPA approved state program or equivalent, to perform lead paint removal operations.
10. Establish and implement a Chemical Hazard Communication Program as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.59.
11. Provide workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.62 before exposure to lead contaminated dust. The medical examination shall be conducted to approve use of appropriate respirators and shall include biological monitoring NIOSH/MSHA approved respirators shall be utilized.
12. For employees required to wear a negative pressure respirators: conduct a respirator fit test at the time of initial fitting and at least once every six (6) months thereafter as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.62.
13. Determine if any worker will be exposed to lead at or above the action level in accordance with OSHA regulation 29 CFR 1926.62 and 29 CFR 1910.1025. Conduct an exposure assessment to identify the level of exposure a worker would be subjected to without respiratory protection. Assess the exposure level by obtaining personal monitoring samples representative of a full shift of at least an 8-hour TWA.
14. Furnish appropriate respirators approved by NIOSH/MSHA for use in atmospheres containing lead aerosols. Instruct workers in all aspects of respiratory protection. Maintain an adequate supply of HEPA filter elements and spare parts on site for all types of respirators in use.

15. For manual demolition, scraping, sanding, use of heat gun or power tool paint removal with HEPA collection systems, workers shall minimally use the half-mask negative pressure respirator with high efficiency filters (for airborne concentrations not in excess of 500µg/m³).
16. Ensure that work area preparation, work practices, and clean-up procedures comply with these specifications and applicable Federal, State and Local regulations.
17. Notify all applicable agencies five days prior to the date the abatement will begin and provide evidence of notifications to the the Owner at the pre-start meeting.

C. Submissions
1. Within ten (10) consecutive calendar days calculated from the date of the the Owner's Job Order, the Contractor shall tender all required submissions. Six (6) sets of each submission are required. Where physical samples are required two (2) physical samples shall be submitted for each item. In general, items shall include but not be restricted to the following:
   a. Paint remover - corner cutter/Vac-Pac System by Pentek Inc; Decontamination Products Division 1026 Fourth Avenue, Corapolis, PA. 15108. Telephone No. (412) 262-0725 or approved equal.
   b. Description of removal method to be used on each substrate condition including manufacturer's operating instructions and recommendation for equipment usage.
   c. Copies of current training certificates of Staff to be assigned to the contract.
   d. List of three previous lead abatement jobs performed successfully by Contractor and name, address, and telephone number of contact person for verification.
2. In the event that all or any portion of the submitted material is rejected by the the Owner, the Contractor shall tender new submissions. All submissions returned for corrections shall be resubmitted with the required corrections within ten(10) consecutive calendar days calculated from the date of rejection, until final submissions are obtained that require no further correction. In no event shall the Contractor be permitted to tender submissions hereunder beyond twenty (20) days from the the Owner's Job Order, unless duly extended in writing by the the Owner.
3. No work shall begin, nor shall the materials be ordered or delivered to the site until final approval of all submissions.

D. Applicable Regulations
1. 24 CFR Part 35
2. HUD ”Guidelines For the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing”
3. Abatement work shall also be in accordance with applicable regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Occupational Safety & Health Agency (OSHA) and any State or Local LBP standards. Where there is a conflict between Federal, State or Local regulations, the more stringent requirement shall prevail.
4. OSHA Standards
   a. 29 CFR 1926.20 General safety and health provisions;
   b. 29 CFR 1926.21 Safety training and education;
   c. 29 CFR 1925.25 Housekeeping;
   d. 29 CFR 1926-28 Personal protective equipment;
   e. 29 CFR 1926.51(f) Washing facilities;
   f. 29 CFR 1926.55 Gases, vapors, fumes, dusts, and mists;
   g. 29 CFR 1926.57 Ventilation
   h. 29 CFR 1926.59 Hazardous Communication Standards;
   i. 29 CFR 1926.103 Respiratory protection, and
   j. 29 CFR 1926.62 Lead in Construction
5. The Contractor must comply with all applicable requirements of the Resource Conservation & Recovery Act (RCRA) of 1976 as amended in 1980 and 1984 by the Hazardous & Solid Waste Amendments (HSWA).
6. These Specifications refer to many requirements found in the preceding references but in no way is it intended to cite or reiterate all provisions therein or elsewhere. It is the Contractor's responsibility to obtain a copy, and know, understand and abide by all such regulations, guidelines and common practices.

1.2 PRODUCTS – (not used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Abatement
1. Have risk assessment or paint inspection performed by certified risk assessor or a certified inspector technician who is independent of the abatement contractor.
2. Develop a site specific lead hazard control plan, reviewed and signed by an asbestos consultant (LAC) who is licensed in the State in which the work is to be performed, and submit for review and approval to the the Owner.
3. Obtain any necessary building or waste permits, notify local authorities as required by applicable codes and laws.
4. Select specific building component replacement items, enclosure materials, paint removal equipment and/or chemicals, tools, and cleaning supplies. Consider waste management and historical preservation implications of selected treatment.
5. Develop project specific specifications.
6. Schedule other work so that leaded surfaces are not inadvertently disturbed and unprotected workers are not place at risk. Include time for clearance examinations and laboratory dust sample analysis in the scheduling process.
7. Select a certified abatement subcontractor.
8. Conduct a pre-construction conference to ensure that the subcontractor fully understands the work involved.
9. Notify residents of the dwelling and adjacent dwellings of the work and date it will begin. Coordinate this with the the Owner.
10. Correct any existing conditions that could impede the abatement work (i.e. trash removal, structural deficiencies).
11. Post warning signs and restrict entry to work area to authorized personnel. Implement worksite preparation procedures.
    a. Place proper warning signs required by OSHA regulations at all entrances to the work area. Signage shall be minimum of 12" x 20" and shall state the following:

WARNING
LEAD WORK AREA
POISON
NO SMOKING OR EATING

12. Coordinate test, pilot or sample portion approach to the project with the Owner.
13. Shut-down forced air heating, ventilation and air conditioning systems and cover all vents, diffusers, windows etc., with a single layer six-mil polyethylene sheet secured with duct tape. Exceptions shall be for minor disturbances of area less than 2 square feet and where if vents, diffusers, and windows are more than 5 feet away from surface being disturbed, they need not be covered.
14. Collect preabatement soil samples, which may not have to be analyzed until post abatement soil samples have been collected, analyzed, and compared to clearance standards. If postabatement soil levels are below applicable limits, the preabatement samples need not be analyzed.
15. Cover entrances to the work area with a single layer of 6 mil polyethylene sheets taped to the top and weighted at bottom.
16. Rig a containment non-flammable polyethylene sheet underneath the work area. This containment method should catch all stripped paint for proper disposal.
17. Execute abatement work.
18. Avoid spreading dust and debris outside the work area.
19. Store all waste in a secure area and make sure it is properly labeled with an accumulation start date.
20. Conduct daily and final cleanup.
21. Execute waste disposal procedures.

22. Maintain appropriate records.

B. Paint Removal
1. Do not use the following prohibited paint removal methods:
   a. Dry scraping or sanding (except for limited areas)
   b. Use of heat gun over 1,100°F
   c. Open flame burning or torching
   d. Machine sanding or grinding without HEPA vacuum exhaust tool
   e. Abrasive blasting or sandblasting without HEPA vacuum exhaust tool
   f. Uncontained hydro blasting or high-pressure wash
   g. Use of chemical strippers containing Methylene chloride.
2. Select the appropriate worksite preparation level.
3. For heat gun work, provide fire extinguishers in the work area and ensure that adequate electrical power is available. Use for limited areas only. Train workers to avoid gouging or abrading the substrate.
4. For mechanical removal methods, use tools equipped with HEPA exhaust capability. Be sure workers keep the shroud against the surface being treated. Vacuum blasting and needle guns should not be used on wood, plaster, drywall, or other soft substrates. Observe all manufacturers directions for the amount of vacuum airflow required.
5. For wet scraping, use a spray bottle or wet sponge attached to the scraper to keep the surface wet while scraping. Apply enough water to moisten the surface completely, but not so much that large amounts of water run onto the ground or floor. Do not moisten areas near electrical circuits.
6. For chemical paint removers, determine if the building component can be removed and stripped offsite. Offsite stripping is generally preferred to onsite paint removal. Observe all manufacturers' directions for use of paint removers.
7. For offsite stripping, determine how to remove the component. Score the edges with a knife or razor blade to minimize the damage to adjacent surfaces. Punch or tag the building component, if similar building components are also being stripped offsite (i.e. doors). This will ensure that the individual component is reinstalled in the same location. Inform the offsite paint remover that the lead-based paint component is present for shipping. Wrap the component in plastic and send to the offsite stripping location. Clean all surfaces before reinstallation and remove any lead residue by HEPA vacuuming all surfaces, cleaning with other lead-specific cleaners, or phosphate detergents, and HEPA vacuuming again.
8. For onsite paint removal, first test the product on a small area to determine its effectiveness. Chemical paint removers may not be effective or desirable on exterior, deteriorated wood surfaces, aluminum, and glass. Provide neoprene, nitrile, rubber, or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) gloves (or other type of glove recommended by the manufacture); face shields; respirators with combination filter cartridges for lead dust and organic vapors(if appropriate); and chemically resistant clothing. Be sure to select the right type of organic vapor filter cartridge, gloves, and clothing for the specific chemical being used. Portable eyewash stations capable of providing a 15-minute flow must be on-site. Apply the chemical and wait the required period of time. Securely store chemical s overnight. For caustic chemical paint removers, neutralize the surface before repainting using glacial acetic acid (not vinegar). Repaint.
9. Make sure all debris is caught in the containment sheet for proper disposal.
10. Mark and legally dispose of waste in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations. Most wastes from paint removal projects, such as paint chips and paint remover sludge, will need to be managed as hazardous waste.
11. Conduct clean-up
12. Have a certified risk assessor or inspector technician conduct a clearance examination and provide documentation and a Statement of Lead-Based Paint Compliance.

C. Building Component Replacement
1. Prepare work area by selecting proper worksite preparation level.
2. Prepare the hazardous material building component for removal. Turn off and disconnect any electrical circuits inside or near the building component to be removed.

3. Lightly mist the component to be removed (unless electrical circuits are located nearby).
4. Score all painted seams with a sharp knife.
5. Remove any screw, nails, or other fasteners.
6. Use flat pry instrument and hammer to pry component from the substrate.
7. Remove or bend back all nails.
8. Wrap and seal all bulk components in plastic and take them to a covered truck or secured waste storage area along a pathway covered in plastic. Shovel any debris. Dispose of properly.
9. HEPA vacuum any dust or chips in the area where the component was located.
10. Conduct cleaning and clearance activities.

D. Soil and Exterior Dust Abatement
1. Determine if soil lead hazard exists. For hazard to exist, a total of at least 9 square feet of soil in a single yard or area must be bare and soil concentrations must exceed 2,000µg/gram lead for the yard or building perimeter or 400µg/gram of lead for small, high-contact play areas (pending the development of an EPA soil standard). Bare soil above these levels shall be treated by either interim controls or abatement. Soil abatement is most appropriate when levels of lead are extraordinarily high (greater than 5,000µg/gram lead) and when use patterns indicate contact frequency and exposure will be high.
2. Collect Preabatement soil samples to determine baseline levels. These samples need not be analyzed if post abatement samples are below applicable clearance levels.
3. Determine the method of soil abatement (soil removal and replacement, soil cleaning, or paving). Soil cultivation (rototilling or turning over the soil) is not permitted.
4. If paving, use a high quality concrete or asphalt. Observe normal precautions associate with traffic load weight and thermal expansion and contraction. Obtain necessary permits. Keep soil cultivation to a minimum.
5. If removing and replacing soil.
    a. Determine if waste soil will be placed in an offsite burial pit. Prepare vehicle operation and soil movement plan. Test new replacement soil (should not contain more than 200 µg/gram lead).
    b. Contact local utilities to determine location of underground utilities including water, gas, cable TV, electric, telephone, and sewer. Mark all locations to be avoided
    c. Remove fencing, if necessary to allow equipment access and define set limits with temporary fencing, signs, or yellow caution tape.
    d. Tie and protect existing trees, shrubs, and bushes.
    e. Have enough tools to avoid handling clean soil with contaminated tools.
    f. Remove soil.
    g. Clean all walkways, driveways, and street areas near abatement area.
    h. Replace soil at proper grade to allow drainage. Replacement soil should be at least 2 inches above existing grade to allow for settling.
    i. Install new soil covering (grass or sod) and maintain it through the growing season.
    j. Determine if soil waste is hazardous and manage it accordingly
    k. Conduct clean-up and clearance.
    l. Provide walk-off doormats.
    m. Maintain proper documentation.

E. Encapsulation
1. Determine if the applicable regulations aloe encapsulates to be used. Do not encapsulate the following surfaces:
    a. Friction surfaces, such as window jambs and door jambs.
    b. Surfaces that fail patch tests.
    c. Surfaces with substrates or existing coatings that have a high level of deterioration.
    d. Surfaces I which there is a known incompatibility between two existing paint layers.
    e. Surfaces that cannot support the additional weight stress of encapsulation due to existing paint thickness.
    f. Metal surfaces that are prone to rust or corrosion.
2. Conduct field tests of surfaces to be encapsulated for paint film integrity.

3. Consider special use and environmental requirements (i.e. abrasion resistance and ability to span base substrate cracks).
4. Provide to the the Owner encapsulant test data provided by the manufacturer.
5. Conduct at least one test patch on each type of building component where the encapsulant will be used. Report the results to the the Owner.
6. For both nonreinforced and reinforced coatings, use a 6" x 6" test patch area. Prepare the surface in the manner selected to complete the job. Prepared surfaces for patch testing should be at least 2" larger in each direction than the patch area.
7. For fiber-reinforced wall coverings, use 3" x 3" patch. For rigid coatings that cannot be cut with a knife, use soundness test. For all encapsulants, carry out the appropriate adhesion tests.
8. For liquid coating encapsulants, allow coating to cure, then visually examine it for wrinkling, blistering, cracking, bubbling, or other chemical reaction with the underlying paint.
9. Record results of all patch tests and provide to the the Owner.
10. Implement proper work site preparation level.
11. Repair all building components and substrates as needed (i.e. caulk cracks and repair sources of water leaks).
12. Prepare surfaces. Remove all dirt, grease, chalking paint, mildew and other surface contaminants, remnants of cleaning solutions, and loose paint. All surfaces should be deglossed, as needed.
13. Ventilate the contaminated area whenever solvents or chemicals are used.
14. During encapsulant application or installation, monitor temperature and humidity. For liquid coatings monitor coating thickness to ensure that the encapsulant manufacturer's installation/application specifications are followed.
15. Conduct clean up and clearance.
16. Provide the the Owner information on how to care for the encapsulation system properly.
17. Maintain records on the exact detailed locations of encapsulant applications, patch test specifications and results, product name, subcontractor, date of application, a copy of the product label and material Data Safety sheet (MSDS) for the product and provide to the the Owner.

F. Enclosure
1. Stamp, label or stencil all lead-based painted surfaces that will be enclosed with a warning approximately every 2 feet both horizontally and vertically on all components. The Warning shall read "**Danger Lead-Based Paint**". Deteriorated paint should not be removed from the surface to be enclosed.
2. Select the proper worksite preparation level.
3. Attach a durable drawing to the utility room closet showing where lead-based paint has been enclosed in the dwelling.
4. An independent inspector or technician or risk assessor should evaluate the integrity of the enclosure.
5. Repair any unsound substrates and structural members that will support the enclosure, if necessary.
6. Utilize appropriate enclosure material (drywall or fiberboard, wood paneling, laminated products, ridged tile and brick veneers, vinyl, aluminum m, or plywood).
7. Install extension rings for all electrical switches and outlets that will penetrate the enclosure.
8. If enclosing floors, remove all dirt with a HEPA vacuum to avoid small lumps in the new flooring.
9. Seal and back-caulk all seams and joints. Back-caulk means applying caulk to the underside of the enclosure.
10. When installing enclosure directly to painted surfaces, use adhesive and then anchor with mechanical fasteners (screws or nails).
11. Conduct clean up and clearance activities.
12. Maintain proper records and submit a Statement of Lead-Based Paint Compliance.

G. Final Cleaning Procedures
1. Use the following step-by-step procedures

a. Assign responsibilities to specific workers for cleaning and for maintaining the cleaning equipment.
b. Have sufficient cleaning equipment and supplies before beginning work.
c. If contamination is extensive, conduct precleaning of the dwelling unit.
d. Conduct ongoing cleaning during the job, including regular removal of large and small debris and dust. Decontamination of all tools, equipment and worker protection gear is required before it leaves contaminated areas. Electrical equipment should be wiped and high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) vacuumed, not wetted down, to minimize electrocution hazards.
e. Schedule sufficient time (usually 30 minutes to an hour) for complete daily cleaning, starting at the same time near the end of every workday after lead hazard control activity has stopped.
f. For final cleaning, wait at least 1 hour after active lead hazard control activity has ceased to let dust particles settle.
g. Use a vacuum cleaner equipped with a HEPA exhaust filter. HEPA vacuum all surfaces in the room (ceilings, walls, trim, and floors). Start with the ceiling and work down, moving toward the entry door. Completely clean each room before moving on.
h. Wash all surfaces with lead-specific detergent, high-phosphate detergent, or other suitable cleaning agent to dislodge any ground-in contamination, then rinse. Change the cleaning solution after every room is cleaned.
i. Repeat step g above. To meet clearance standards consistently, a HEPA vacuum, wet wash, and HEPA vacuum cycle is recommended. For interim control projects involving dust removal only, the final HEPA vacuuming step is usually not needed. Other cleaning methods are acceptable, as long as clearance criteria are met and workers are not over exposed.
j. After final cleaning perform visual examination to ensure that all surfaces requiring lead hazard control have been addressed and all visible dust and debris have been removed. Record findings and correct any incomplete work.
k. If other construction work will disturb the lead-based paint surfaces, it should be completed at this point. If those surfaces are disturbed, repeat the final cleaning step after construction work has been completed.
l. Paint and otherwise seal treated surfaces and interior floors.
m. Conduct clearance examination.
n. If clearance is not achieved, repeat final cleaning.
o. Continue clearance testing and repeated cleanings until dwelling unit achieves compliance with all clearance standards. The cost of repeated cleaning, after failure to achieve clearance is to be borne by the contractor.
p. Do not allow residents to enter work area until final cleaning is completed and clearance is established.
q. Cleaning equipment list is as follows:
    1) HEPA Vacuums
    2) Detergent
    3) Waterproof gloves
    4) Rags
    5) Sponges
    6) Mops
    7) Buckets
    8) HEPA vacuum attachments (crevice tools, beater bar for cleaning rugs)
    9) 6-mil plastic bags
    10) Debris containers
    11) Waste water containers
    12) Shovels
    13) Rakes
    14) Water-misting sprayers
    15) 6-mil polyethylene sheeting (or equivalent)

2. Order of execution for final cleaning steps should be as follows:

a. As the first stage in final cleaning, floor plastic shall be misted and swept.
b. Upper level plastic, such as on cabinets and counters should be removed first, after it has been misted and cleaned. All plastic should be carefully folded from the corners/ends to the middle to trap any remaining dust. Next remove both layers of plastic from the floor.
c. Plastic sheets used to isolate contaminated rooms from noncontaminated rooms should remain in place until after cleaning and removal of other plastic sheeting, these sheets may then be misted, cleaned and removed last.
d. Removed plastic should be placed into double 4-mil or single 6-mil plastic bags, or plastic bags with equivalent (or better) performance characteristics, which are sealed and removed from the premises. As with daily cleanings, this plastic removal process usually requires workers to use protective clothing and respirators.
e. After plastic has been removed from the contaminated area, the entire area should be cleaned using the HEPA/wet wash/HEPA cycle.

H. Waste Testing And Disposal

1. General: All materials, whether hazardous or non-hazardous shall be properly disposed of. the Owner may hire an independent Monitoring Consultant to perform TCLP test to determine which of the wastes are hazardous. Contractor shall cooperate in this test. If less than 100kg (200 lbs) or 1/2 of a 55 gallon drum of hazardous waste per month will be generated, it is considered "conditionally exempt" abatement waste, and may be managed as solid non-hazardous waste. The RCRA hazardous waste manifest is not required when shipping this waste to an offsite disposal facility.
2. Separate Abatement Waste into The Following Four Categories:
   a. Category I. Low lead waste (typically non-hazardous) e.g. Filtered personal and commercial wash water.
   b. Category II. Architectural components - (painted finish carpentry items) e.g. Doors, windows, window trim and sills, baseboards, railings, moldings. (May do a TCLP to determine if they are hazardous).
   c. Category III. Concentrated lead waste e.g. sludge from stripping, lead-base paint chip and dust, HEPA vacuum debris and filter, unfiltered wash waste, any waste included in EPA's list of hazardous waste.
   d. Category IV. Material that cannot be determined to be either hazardous or non-hazardous must be tested by TCLP.

   If the hazardous waste generated is greater than 100kg per month, dispose according to the referenced guidelines and RCRA hazardous waste management requirements including those listed below.
3. Disposal Requirements: Contact the regional EPA, state, local and all other pertinent authorities to determine lead-based paint debris disposal requirements. Comply with requirements of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) and with applicable federal, state, county, or local waste requirements.
4. EPA ID Numbers: Obtain a Generator RCRA Hazardous Material ID number and coordinate this action through the State and secure any additional number as required.
5. Storage Requirements: Keep all hazardous items in a secure area or lockable container that is inaccessible to all persons other than the Contractor's personnel. Label all hazardous waste "Hazardous Waste" with the date that the Contractor began to collect the waste in that container. Keep hazardous and non-hazardous waste in separate containers. Until TCLP testing is completed, considered all items hazardous and store in a secured area or lockable container.
6. Waste Transportation: Transport hazardous waste using a RCRA/DOT/EPA certified Hazardous Waste Transporter. Submit names and qualifications of certified transporter/hauler for the Owner approval. The Contractor shall be responsible for all actions of the waste hauler as pertaining to waste removal and disposal under these procedures and all EPA, DOT and other applicable regulations.
7. Disposal Facility: Supply documents that detail the site(s) to be used for ultimate disposal. Submit documents from these sites proving that they are licensed/permitted to accept such waste and shall accept the waste proposed by the Contractor for treatment or ultimate disposal.

8. Waste Containers: Comply with EPA and DOT regulations for waste containers. Contact the state and local authorities to determine their criteria for containers. In the case of any conflict in regulations, the more stringent shall apply.
9. Emergencies: Contact local fire, police, hospitals or local emergency response teams and inform them of the type of hazardous waste activity and ask for assistance in the event of any accident. Additionally, the container shall provide the following:
    a. Keep and properly maintain a suitable fire extinguisher(s) on site.
    b. Have a immediate means of communication with the regulatory agency in the event of an emergency.
    c. Keep a list of phone numbers of regulatory agencies on site.
    d. Appoint an emergency coordinator and ensure the coordinator is on site to supervise emergency procedures to be carried out in the event of an emergency.
    e. Keep and maintain a "right to know" manual that is in an easily accessible location and in an area that is known to all employees.
10. Transporting Waste: Provide certifications that the transporter is registered with the U.S. Department of Transportation is required by 49 CFR Part 107(a) transport hazardous waste.
    a. Provide certifications that each vehicle dedicated to haul hazardous waste has been assigned a "U.S. DOT Hazardous Material Registration Number" as required by 49 CFR Part 107.
    b. Be responsible for all other applicable permits pertaining to hauling, transport, reduction, and disposal of hazardous waste as they may apply to this project.
    c. Vehicle: Ensure that all non-hazardous waste is transported in covered vehicles to a landfill, or lined landfill, if required.
    d. Container Handling: Carefully place the containers into the truck or dumpster used for disposal. At no time shall debris or containers be thrown or dropped.
    e. Liquid Wastes: Contain and properly dispose of all liquid wastes, including lead-contaminated wash water.
    f. Containers: HEPA vacuum the exterior of all waste containers prior to removing the waste containers from the work area. Wet wipe the containers to ensure that there is no residual contamination. Then move containers out of the work area into the designated storage area.

I. Clearance
1. Clearance on all abatement projects must be done by an independent certified risk assessor or inspector technician. Follow all jurisdictional law with regard to licensure requirements for personnel conducting clearance activities.
2. Clearance step-by-step procedures are as follows:
    a. Finish the lead hazard control clean-up effort. Seal floors before clearance (if necessary).
    b. Wait 1 hour to allow any airborne dust to settle. Do not enter work area during that hour.
    c. Conduct visual examination
        1) Determine if all required work has been completed and all lead-based paint hazards have been controlled.
        2) Determine if there is visible settled dust, paint chips, or debris in the interior or around the exterior.
    d. Complete the Visual Clearance Form required by the the Owner; if all work is not completed inform the the Owner and order completion of the work and repeat cleanup, if necessary.
    e. Conduct clearance dust sampling of the floors, interior window sills, and window troughs using approved protocol.
    f. Conduct soil sampling if bare soil is present that was not sampled previously, or if exterior paint work was completed as part of the lead hazard control effort. Whenever exterior work has been don, it may be necessary to take samples from the soil that is not bare to determine if contamination has occurred. If results are above 1,000 µg/g (or 400 µg/g in high contact play area), compare the results to baseline soil sampling results to determine what additional measures are needed.
    g. Complete the Dust and Soil Sampling Clearance Form required by the the Owner.

h. Submit samples to a U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) recognized laboratory participating in the National Lead Laboratory Accreditation program (NLLAP) for analysis.
i. Interpret results by comparing them to Interim Clearance Standards as listed below:
   1) Floors 400 µg/ft2
   2) Window sills 250 µg/ft2
   3) Window Troughs 800 µg/ft2
   4) Soils (Play area with children under 6 years of age) 400 µg/gram
j. If clearance is achieved go to step N.
k. Order repeated cleanings or soil treatments if results are above applicable standards. Clean all surfaces the sample represents.
l. Continue sampling and repeated cleanings until the dwelling achieves compliance with all applicable clearance standards.
m. Complete any related construction work that does not disturb a surface with lead-based paint (all work that does disturb painted surfaces or that could generate lead dust should be completed as part of the lead hazard control effort).
n. Issue any necessary statements of lead-based paint compliance or releases and maintain appropriate records.

J. Labels
1. Use the following labels on drums used for disposal.


HAZARDOUS WASTE

FEDERAL LAW PROHIBITS IMPROPER DISPOSAL.

IF FOUND, CONTACT THE NEAREST POLICE OR PUBLIC SAFETY AUTHORITY OR THE U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY.

GENERATOR INFORMATION:

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____ PHONE _____

CITY _____ STATE ____ ZIP _____

EPA ID NO. / MANIFEST DOCUMENT NO. _____ / _____

ACCUMULATION START DATE _____ EPA WASTE NO. _____

HAZARDOUS WASTE, SOLID, N.O.S.

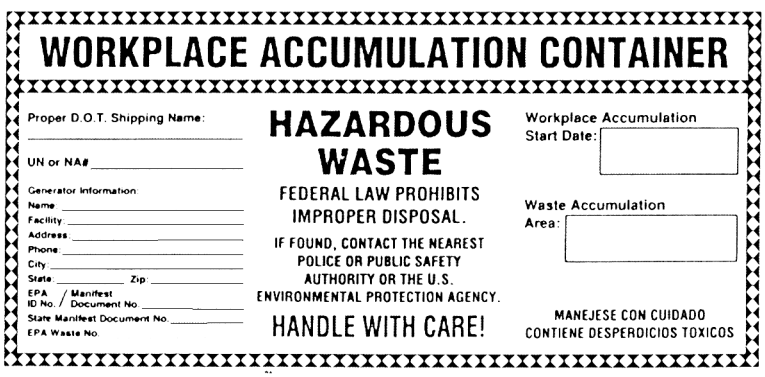
( )

NA3077

D.O.T. PROPER SHIPPING NAME AND UN OR NA NO. WITH PREFIX

HANDLE WITH CARE!

STYLE HWM12



WORKPLACE ACCUMULATION CONTAINER

Proper D.O.T. Shipping Name: _____

UN or NA# _____

Generator Information:
Name: _____
Facility: _____
Address: _____
Phone: _____
City: _____
State: _____ Zip: _____
EPA ID No. / Manifest Document No. _____
State Manifest Document No. _____
EPA Waste No.

HAZARDOUS WASTE

FEDERAL LAW PROHIBITS IMPROPER DISPOSAL.

IF FOUND, CONTACT THE NEAREST POLICE OR PUBLIC SAFETY AUTHORITY OR THE U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY.

HANDLE WITH CARE!

Workplace Accumulation Start Date: _____

Waste Accumulation Area: _____

MANEJESE CON CUIDADO
CONTIENE DESPERDICIOS TOXICOS

K. Disposal of lead-based paint waste.

1. Follow the RCRA and HUD recommended practices as defined in the table below:

Waste Management Practices	Category I: Low Lead Waste	Category II: Architectural Components	Category III: Concentrated Lead Waste	Category IV: Other waste
RCRA Requirements	Manage as nonhazardous Waste	Depending upon knowledge or TCLP testing results, manage as solid hazardous or nonhazardous waste	If more than 100 kg/ month, manage as hazardous waste. If less than 100 kg/month manage as solid waste.	Use TCP to determine if waste is hazardous.
HUD Recommended Practices	Applicable	Applicable, if knowledge or TCLP testing indicates that it is nonhazardous.	Applicable if less than 100 kg/month otherwise subject to full RCRA regulations	Only applicable if TCLP testing shows waste is nonhazardous
Wrapped in plastic; seal all seams with tape (if acceptable to the disposal facility).	X	X	X	X
Stored in designated, secure area.	X	X	X	X
Covered During Transport	X	X	X	X
Prohibit cutting/breaking outside work area.	X	X	X	X
Cover ground with 6-mil plastic if handling outside.	X	X	X	X
Prohibit disposal in solid waste incinerators and reuse recycling for mulch	X	X	X	X
Recommended disposal in State licensed/permitted	X	X	If appropriate.	X

solid waste landfill.				

L. Safety Requirements
1. To protect the health and safety of all persons involved, it is of the utmost importance that deleading is safely and correctly done in a timely manner. The following specific safety requirements are the responsibility of the Deleading Contractor.

K. General Safety:
1. General
   a. NO ONE is to be allowed in the work area without an approved respirator except for methods that have been documented not requiring a respirator.
   b. Each work area must be sealed from the remainder of the dwelling by taping plastic sheets (6 mil thick). Work areas must remain sealed off until both work and clean-up are completed.
   c. Cover all floors, carpets, furniture and appliances with 6 mil plastic within the work area. Use automotive masking tape (2 inches wide) to seal all edges and seams.
   d. Make certain all electrical connections are properly grounded.
   e. At least three days prior to the start of any deleading work, post appropriate warning signs at all entrances and exits of work areas and leave in place until all clearance testing indicates that these areas are safe for re-occupancy. The signs must include the following phrase: "CAUTION LEAD HAZARD-KEEP OUT". Post bilingual signs when necessary.
2. Worker Safety: The Deleading Contractor shall take the following minimum precautions to protect the health of all individuals involved in the deleading process.
   a. Pre-Abatement Medical Exam: Each employee shall undergo a medical examination to determine both respiratory fitness capability and also pre-existing/current blood lead level. Said results shall be provided to the employee and also to the Owner within 3 days of receipt of same, and in all cases, prior to employee's commencement to active abatement. Records of same are required to be kept by the Contractor for 40 years.
   b. Medical Surveillance is the monitoring of worker blood levels. It is required that the Contractor have blood level monitoring of all active abatement and clean-up workmen and on-site supervisors performed and said results provided to the Owner.
      1) Before assignment to active abatement activity for each worker.
      2) 30 days after active abatement has begun.
      3) At least every two months during the first six months and every six months throughout the deleading job.
      4) At least every two months for each employee whose blood lead analysis indicated a blood lead level at or above 25 micrograms per deciliter. (20 micrograms per deciliter for women of child bearing age).
      5) At termination of employment.
      6) Contractor shall reassign any employee whose blood lead has reached 25 µg/dl (20 µg/dl for women of child bearing age) to a job function deemed safe from lead exposure. Said employee shall remain away from active abatement until such time as 2 consecutive months' blood tests indicate µg/dl below 20 µg/dl.
   c. Respiratory Protection Programs must be established by the Contractor in accordance with OSHA regulations and qualitative respirator fit testing must be conducted daily by the on-site supervisor. Medical examinations must be performed by a physician prior to fit testing and at anytime when a worker demonstrates any difficulty breathing during the use of or the fit testing of respirators. The following are minimal acceptable respiratory protection program requirements as set up and administered by the Contractor:
      1) Written standard operating procedures which oversees the selection and use of respirators.
      2) Selection of respirators on the basis of hazards to which the worker is exposed.
      3) Worker training on the limitations and use of respirators (includes fit testing).
      4) Individual workers assigned respirators for their exclusive use only.

5) Daily cleaning and disinfecting of respirators.
6) Proper storage of all respirators.
7) Proper inspection of all respirators for wear and tear.
8) Continual surveillance of work area conditions and level of worker exposure or stress.
9) Use of approved respirators only, modified as needed by the weekly exposure monitoring results.
10) Supply weekly report covering items 1-9 to the Owner or its Lead Consultant.

d. Exposure Monitoring is the measured concentration of lead in the workers breathing zones. The Contractor shall perform personnel monitoring during active abatement using the NIOSH 7072 method and-shall be responsible for:
1) Monitoring the level of worker protection needed during the abatement process;
2) Evaluating, modifying and improving any engineering and work practice control(s) as needed;
3) Evaluating each employee's personal quality of work and any need for additional worker training or safety instruction;
4) Providing the Owner results of all personnel monitoring tests within 10 days of testing; and
5) Providing half-face APR respirators with HEPA filters unless said monitoring test results dictate differently. OSHA guidelines shall be used to determine respirator PEL protection factors.

e. Protective Clothing Equipment must be provided to all workers to help assure that lead dust is contained to the work areas. The following must be supplied/enforced by the Deleading Contractor:
1) Full body protective clothing and shoe covers of appropriate sizes on a daily basis or as needed.
2) Clean changing areas separated from the dirty/contaminated clothes storage area.
3) Water and wash facilities for washing of hands and face and shower facilities if deemed necessary by the Owner's Lead Advisor.
4) Instructing worker on proper maintenance of clothing and equipment.
5) Proper disposal of disposable clothing and proper permanent work clothes.
6) Enforcing the removal of protective clothing at the end of each work day and before eating, drinking and smoking.
7) Enforcement of the removal of protective shoe covers before leaving work area.

3. Contractor/Worker Daily Safe-Work Procedures
a. Daily Start-Up:
1) Workers to put on protective gear prior to entering work areas.
2) All garment seams to be sealed with duct tape.
3) All non-working garments must be stored in designated changing area.
4) Respirators, as required, must be properly fitted before entering work area. Perform qualitative fit test.

b. Temporary depart:
1) All protective clothing to be HEPA vacuumed while still being worn.
2) All shoe covers to be removed and left in the work area (immediate departure upon removing).
3) Remove all protective gear in designated "contaminated" changing area before eating, drinking, and smoking or before leaving work site.
4) Wash hands and face.
5) Clean respirators.

c. Daily Shut-Down:
1) Dispose of protective clothing with abatement waste by sealing in a 6 mil poly bag.
2) Laundered clothes must be placed in closed container.
3) Wash hands and face.
4) Shower if facilities allow and circumstances dictate.
5) Clean all protective gear (respirators included).

4. Tenant's Safety: Temporary relocation of the tenants is necessary if the lead paint surface is broken. Temporary relocation of the tenants and their belongings is the responsibility of the Owner. However, the Contractor has the joint responsibility to administer and enforce the following safety practices on behalf of the occupants:
   a. Adults
      1) NO OCCUPANT is allowed to enter the work area during paint removal and initial clean-up. A three day clean-up and settlement period may be imposed depending upon the abatement procedures used, at the discretion of the Owner or their Lead Consultant.
      2) the Owner shall notify all occupants in writing when they are allowed to return to their post-abated residence. Contractor shall abide by these notices.
      3) Every resident who has received prior notice of abatement is responsible for placing all personal items (clothing, dishes, linens, etc.) in closed, easy to handle containers; and move such items to the center of each room as requested.
      4) As long as visible dust remains, occupants may not occupy dwelling, and all surfaces within the dwelling must be re-washed with trisodium phosphate and HEPA vacuumed by deleading contractor.
      5) Persons reoccupying dwellings following abatement are required to report any visible dust or debris to the Owner immediately for additional Contractor clean-up.
   b. Pregnant Women and Children
      1) Absolutely no pregnant women nor children under the age of twelve years of age may be allowed in the building while any part of the abatement process is going on.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 83 19 13a - REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF LEAD-CONTAINING PAINT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the removal and disposal of lead-based or lead-containing paint. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Definitions

1. Action Level: Employee exposure, without regard to use of respirators, to an airborne concentration of lead of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air averaged over an 8 hour period in an occupational/industrial environment.
2. Area Sampling: Sampling of lead concentrations within the lead control area and inside the physical boundaries which is representative of the airborne lead concentrations but is not collected in the breathing zone of personnel.
3. Competent Person (CP): As used in this section, refers to a person employed by the Contractor who is trained in the recognition and control of lead hazards in accordance with current federal, State, and local regulations. An industrial hygienist or safety professional certified for comprehensive practice by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene or by the Board of Certified Safety Professionals is the best choice.
4. Contaminated Room: Room for removal of contaminated personal protective equipment (PPE).
5. Decontamination Shower Facility: That facility that encompasses a clean clothing storage room, and a contaminated clothing storage and disposal rooms, with a shower facility in between.
6. Eight-Hour Time Weighted Average (TWA): Airborne concentration of lead to which an employee is exposed, averaged over an 8 hour workday as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62.
7. High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) Filter Equipment: HEPA filtered vacuuming equipment with a UL 586 filter system capable of collecting and retaining lead-contaminated paint dust. A high efficiency particulate filter means 99.97 percent efficient against 0.3 micron or larger size particles.
8. Lead: Metallic lead, inorganic lead compounds, and organic lead soaps.
9. Lead-Based Paint (LBP): Paint or other surface coating that contains lead in excess of 1.0 milligrams per centimeter squared or 0.5 percent by weight.
10. Lead-Based Paint Hazard (LBP Hazard): Any condition that causes exposure to lead from lead-contaminated dust, lead-contaminated soil, lead-based paint that is deteriorated or present in accessible surfaces, friction surfaces, or impact surfaces that would result in adverse human health effects.
11. Lead-Containing Paint (LCP): Lead-based paint or other similar surface coating containing lead or lead compound in excess of 0.06 percent by weight of the total nonvolatile content of the paint.
12. Lead Control Area: An enclosed area or structure, constructed as a temporary containment equipped with HEPA filtered local exhaust, which prevents the spread of lead dust, paint chips, or debris existing as a condition of lead-based paint removal operations. The lead control area is also isolated by physical boundaries to prevent unauthorized entry of personnel.
13. Lead Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL): Fifty micrograms per cubic meter of air as an 8 hour time weighted average as determined by 29 CFR 1926.62. If an employee is exposed for more than eight hours in a work day, the PEL shall be determined by the following formula:

    PEL (micrograms/cubic meter of air) = 400/No. hrs. worked per day.
14. Personal Sampling: Sampling of airborne lead concentrations within the breathing zone of an employee to determine the 8 hour time weighted average concentration in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. Samples shall be representative of the employees' work tasks. Breathing zone shall be considered an area within a hemisphere, forward of the shoulders, with a radius of 6 to 9 inches (150 to 225 mm) and centered at the nose or mouth of an employee.

15. Physical Boundary: Area physically roped or partitioned off around an enclosed lead control area to limit unauthorized entry of personnel. As used in this section, "inside boundary" shall mean the same as "outside lead control area but inside boundary."

C. Submittals: Submit the following:
   1. Product Data:
      a. Vacuum filters
      b. Respirators
   2. Test Reports
      a. Sampling results
      b. Assessment data report
   3. Certificates
      a. Qualifications of CP
      b. Testing laboratory</SUB> qualifications
      c. Third party consultant qualifications
      d. Lead-Based Paint/Lead-Containing Paint Removal Plan including CP approval (signature, date, and certification number)
      e. Rental equipment notification
      f. Respiratory protection program
      g. Hazard communication program
      h. EPA approved hazardous waste treatment or disposal facility for lead disposal
      i. Hazardous waste management plan
      j. Vacuum filters
   4. Manufacturer's Instructions
      a. Chemicals and equipment
      b. Materials
      c. Material safety data sheets for all chemicals
   5. Closeout Submittals
      a. Completed and signed hazardous waste manifest from treatment or disposal facility
      b. Certification of medical examinations
      c. Employee training certification

D. Qualifications Of CP
   1. Submit name, address, and telephone number of the CP selected to perform responsibilities specified in paragraph entitled "Competent Person (CP) Responsibilities." Provide previous experience of the CP. Submit proper documentation that the CP is trained and licensed and certified in accordance with Federal, State, and local laws.

E. Third Party Consultant Qualifications
   1. Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the third party consultant selected to perform the wipe sampling for determining concentrations of lead in dust or soil sampling. Submit proper documentation that the consultant is trained and certified as an inspector technician or inspector/risk assessor by the USEPA authorized State (or local) certification and accreditation program.

F. Testing Laboratory
   1. Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the testing laboratory selected to perform the air and wipe and soil sampling, testing, and reporting of airborne concentrations of lead. Use a laboratory accredited under the EPA National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program (NLLAP) by either the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA) or the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) and that is successfully participating in the Environmental Lead Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program to perform sample analysis.

G. Lead-Based Paint/Lead-Containing Paint Removal Plan (LBP/LCPRP)

1. Submit a detailed job-specific plan of the work procedures to be used in the removal of LBP/LCP. The plan shall include a sketch showing the location, size, and details of lead control areas, location and details of decontamination facilities, viewing ports, and mechanical ventilation system. Include in the plan, eating, drinking, smoking and sanitary procedures, interface of trades, sequencing of lead related work, collected waste water and paint debris disposal plan, air sampling plan, respirators, personal protective equipment, and a detailed description of the method of containment of the operation to ensure that airborne lead concentrations of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air and baseline lead dust/soil concentrations are not reached or exceeded outside of the lead control area. Include site preparation and cleanup procedures. Include occupational and environmental sampling, training and strategy, sampling methodology, frequency, duration of sampling, and qualifications of sampling personnel in the air sampling portion of the plan.

H. Occupational And Environmental Sampling Results
   1. Submit occupational and environmental sampling results to the the Owner within three working days of collection, signed by the testing laboratory responsible official, the employee that performed the sampling, and the CP.
      a. The sampling results shall represent each job classification, or if working conditions are similar to previous jobs by the same employer, provide previously collected exposure data that can be used to estimate worker exposures in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. The data shall represent the worker's regular daily exposure to lead.
      b. Submit worker exposure data conducted during the task based trigger operations of 29 CFR 1926.62.
      c. The initial monitoring shall determine the requirements for further monitoring and the need to fully implement the control and protective requirements including the compliance program (LBP/LCP) in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.

I. Occupational And Environmental Assessment Data Report:
   1. Some LBP/LCP removal work may not require full implementation of the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62. Based on the experience of the Contractor and/or the use of a specific process or method for performing the work, the Contractor may be able to provide historic data (previous 12 months) to demonstrate that airborne exposures are controlled below the action level. Such methods or controls shall be fully presented in the LBP/LCPRP. To reduce the full implementation of 29 CFR 1926.62, the Contractor shall provide documentation in an Assessment Data Report.
   2. Submit occupational and environmental assessment report to the the Owner prior to start of work, signed by the testing laboratory responsible official, and the CP.
      a. Submit a report that supports the determination regarding the reduction of the need to fully implement the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62 and supporting the LBP/LCP. The exposure assessment shall represent each job classification, or if working conditions are similar to previous jobs by the same employer, provide previously collected exposure data that can be used to estimate worker exposures in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. The data shall represent the worker's regular daily exposure to lead for stated work.
      b. Submit worker exposure data conducted during the task based trigger operations of 29 CFR 1926.62 with a complete process description in supporting a negative assessment.
      c. The initial assessment shall determine the requirement for further monitoring and the need to fully implement the control and protective requirements including the compliance program (LBP/LCPRP) in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.

J. Quality Assurance
   1. Medical Examinations: Initial medical surveillance as required by 29 CFR 1926.62 shall be made available to all employees exposed to lead at any time (1 day) above the action level. Full medical surveillance shall be made available to all employees on an annual basis who are or may be exposed to lead in excess of the action level for more than 30 days a year or as required by 29 CFR 1926.62. Adequate records shall show that employees meet the medical surveillance requirements of 29 CFR 1926.33, 29 CFR 1926.62, and 29 CFR 1926.103.

a. Medical Records: Maintain complete and accurate medical records of employees for a period of at least 30 years or for the duration of employment plus 30 years, whichever is longer.
b. Medical Surveillance: Provide medical surveillance to all personnel exposed to lead as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62.

2. Competent Person (CP) Responsibilities
   a. Certify training as meeting all federal, State, and local requirements.
   b. Review and approve lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan for conformance to the applicable referenced standards.
   c. Continuously inspect lead-based paint removal work for conformance with the approved plan.
   d. Perform air and wipe sampling.
   e. Ensure work is performed in strict accordance with specifications at all times.
   f. Control work to prevent hazardous exposure to human beings and to the environment at all times.
   g. Certify the conditions of the work as called for elsewhere in this specification.
3. Training: Train each employee performing paint removal, disposal, and air sampling operations prior to the time of initial job assignment and annually thereafter, in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.21, 29 CFR 1926.62, and State and local regulations.
   a. Training Certification: Submit a certificate for each employee, signed and dated by the approved training source, stating that the employee has received the required lead training.
4. Respiratory Protection Program
   a. Furnish each employee required to wear a negative pressure respirator or other appropriate type with a respirator fit test at the time of initial fitting and at least annually thereafter as required by 29 CFR 1926.62.
   b. Establish and implement a respiratory protection program as required by ANSI Z88.2, 29 CFR 1926.103, 29 CFR 1926.62, and 29 CFR 1926.55.
5. Hazard Communication Program: Establish and implement a Hazard Communication Program as required by 29 CFR 1926.59.
6. Hazardous Waste Management: The Hazardous Waste Management Plan shall comply with applicable requirements of federal, State, and local hazardous waste regulations and address:
   a. Identification and classification of hazardous wastes associated with the work.
   b. Estimated quantities of wastes to be generated and disposed of.
   c. Names and qualifications of each contractor that will be transporting, storing, treating, and disposing of the wastes. Include the facility location and operator and a 24-hour point of contact. Furnish two copies of EPA, or State and local hazardous waste permit applications or permits or manifests, as required, and EPA Identification numbers.
   d. Names and qualifications (experience and training) of personnel who will be working on-site with hazardous wastes.
   e. List of waste handling equipment to be used in performing the work, to include cleaning, volume reduction, and transport equipment.
   f. Spill prevention, containment, and cleanup contingency measures including a health and safety plan to be implemented in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.65.
   g. Work plan and schedule for waste containment, removal and disposal. Wastes shall be cleaned up and containerized daily.
   h. Unit cost for hazardous waste disposal according to this plan.
7. Environmental, Safety and Health Compliance: In addition to the detailed requirements of this specification, comply with laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations of Federal, State, and local authorities regarding removing, handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of lead waste materials. Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of 29 CFR 1926.62. Submit matters regarding interpretation of standards to the the Owner for resolution before starting work. Where specification requirements and the referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirement shall apply.

8. Pre-Construction Conference: Along with the CP, meet with the the Owner to discuss in detail the hazardous waste management plan and the lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan, including work procedures and precautions for the removal plan.

K. Equipment
1. Respirators: Furnish appropriate respirators approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Department of Health and Human Services, for use in atmospheres containing lead dust. Respirators shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62.
2. Special Protective Clothing: Furnish personnel who will be exposed to lead-contaminated dust with proper disposable uncontaminated, reusable protective whole body clothing, head covering, gloves, and foot coverings as required by 29 CFR 1926.62. Furnish proper disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Reduce the level of protection only after obtaining approval from the CP.
3. Rental Equipment Notification: If rental equipment is to be used during lead-based paint handling and disposal, notify the rental agency in writing concerning the intended use of the equipment. Furnish a copy of the written notification to the the Owner.
4. Vacuum Filters: UL 586 labeled HEPA filters.
5. Equipment for Owner's Personnel: Furnish the the Owner with two complete sets of personal protective equipment (PPE) daily, as required herein, for entry into and inspection of the paint removal work within the lead controlled area. Personal protective equipment shall include disposable whole body covering, including appropriate foot, head, and hand protection. PPE shall remain the property of the Contractor. Respiratory protection for the the Owner will be provided by the Owner.

L. Removal
1. Title to Materials: Materials resulting from demolition work, except as specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of in accordance with Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" OR "Structure Demolition", except as specified herein.

1.2 PRODUCT

A. Chemicals
1. Submit applicable Material Safety Data Sheets for all chemicals used in paint removal work. Use the least toxic product approved by the the Owner.

B. Materials
1. The soluble metal content and the total metal content shall not exceed values which would cause a material to be classified as a hazardous waste.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Protection
1. Notification: Notify the the Owner 20 days prior to the start of any paint removal work.
2. Lead Control Area Requirements
a. If LBP will be removed by means which will not likely create airborne, lead-containing dust (such as careful wet scraping or chemical stripping), establish a lead control area by situating critical barriers and physical boundaries around the area or structure where LBP/LCP removal operations will be performed.
b. If removal practice will create airborne, lead-containing dust (such as sanding, abrasive blasting, thermal cutting, demolition, or needle gun use), utilize full containment procedures - Contain removal operations by the use of critical barriers and HEPA filtered exhaust **OR** a negative pressure enclosure system with decontamination facilities and with HEPA filtered exhaust if required by the CP, **as directed**. For containment areas larger than 1,000 square feet (100 square meters) install a minimum of two 18 inch (450 mm) square viewing

ports. Locate ports to provide a view of the required work from the exterior of the enclosed contaminated area. Glaze ports with laminated safety glass.

3. Protection of Existing Work to Remain: Perform paint removal work without damage or contamination of adjacent areas. Where existing work is damaged or contaminated, restore work to its original condition or better.
4. Boundary Requirements: Provide physical boundaries around the lead control area by roping off the area designated in the work plan or providing curtains, portable partitions or other enclosures to ensure that airborne concentrations of lead will not reach 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
   a. Physical Boundary: Provide physical boundaries around the lead control area by roping off the area designated in the work plan or providing curtains, portable partitions or other enclosures to ensure that airborne concentrations of lead will not reach 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
   b. Warning Signs: Provide warning signs at approaches to lead control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary precautions before entering the area. Signs shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62.
5. Furnishings:
   a. The Owner will remove furniture and equipment from the building before lead-based paint removal work begins.

      OR

      Furniture and equipment will remain in the building. Protect and cover furnishings or remove furnishings from the work area and store in a location approved by the the Owner.

      OR

      Existing furniture and equipment is lead contaminated, decontaminate, dispose of as lead contaminated waste.
6. Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems: Shut down, lock out, and isolate HVAC systems that supply, exhaust, or pass through the lead control areas. Seal intake and exhaust vents in the lead control area with 6 mil (0.15 mm) plastic sheet and tape. Seal seams in HVAC components that pass through the lead control area. Provide temporary HVAC system for areas in which HVAC has been shut down outside the lead control area.
7. Decontamination Shower Facility: Provide clean and contaminated change rooms and shower facilities in accordance with this specification and 29 CFR 1926.62.
8. Eye Wash Station: Where eyes may be exposed to injurious corrosive materials, suitable facilities for quick drenching or flushing of the eyes shall be provided within the work area.
9. Mechanical Ventilation System
   a. Use adequate ventilation to control personnel exposure to lead in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.
   b. To the extent feasible, use fixed local exhaust ventilation connected to HEPA filters or other collection systems, approved by the CP. Local exhaust ventilation systems shall be designed, constructed, installed, and maintained in accordance with ANSI Z9.2.
   c. Vent local exhaust outside the building only and away from building ventilation intakes.
   d. Use locally exhausted, power actuated, paint removal tools.
10. Personnel Protection: Personnel shall wear and use protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. Eating, smoking, or drinking or application of cosmetics is not permitted in the lead control area. No one will be permitted in the lead control area unless they have been appropriately trained and provided with protective equipment.

B. Work Procedures: Perform removal of lead-based paint in accordance with approved lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan. Use procedures and equipment required to limit occupational and environmental exposure to lead when lead-based paint is removed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, except as specified herein. Dispose of removed paint chips and associated waste in compliance with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), federal, State, and local requirements.
   1. Personnel Exiting Procedures: Whenever personnel exit the lead-controlled area, they shall perform the following procedures and shall not leave the work place wearing any clothing or equipment worn during the work day:

a. Vacuum themselves off.
b. Remove protective clothing in the contaminated change room, and place them in an approved impermeable disposal bag.
c. Shower **OR** Wash hands and face at the site, **as directed**, don appropriate disposable or uncontaminated reusable clothing; move to an appropriate facility; shower.
d. Change to clean clothes prior to leaving the physical boundary designated around the lead control area.

2. Air and Wipe Sampling
   a. Air sample for lead in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and as specified herein. Air and wipe sampling shall be directed or performed by the CP.
      1) The CP shall be on the job site directing the air and non-clearance wipe sampling and inspecting the lead-based paint removal work to ensure that the requirements of the contract have been satisfied during the entire lead-based paint removal operation.
      2) Collect personal air samples on employees who are anticipated to have the greatest risk of exposure as determined by the CP. In addition, collect air samples on at least 25 percent of the work crew or a minimum of two employees, whichever is greater, during each work shift.
      3) Submit results of air samples, signed by the CP, within 72 hours after the air samples are taken. Notify the the Owner immediately of exposure to lead at or in excess of the action level of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
      4) For high profile, sensitive work such as present in family housing, child care facilities, administrative buildings, kitchens, barracks, etc., surface dust sampling to determine clearance (i.e., that the work has not contaminated surfaces within and adjacent to the control area) should be performed by a third party to reduce a conflict of interest. Samples must be conducted by an individual not paid or employed or otherwise compensated by the LBP/LCP removal Contractor. State or local regulations may require third party testing if the LBP/LCP removal operation is considered a lead hazard reduction activity.
      5) Before any work begins, collect and analyze baseline or soil wipe samples in accordance with methods defined in federal, State, and local standards inside and outside of the physical boundary to assess the degree of dust contamination in the facility prior to lead-based paint removal.
   b. Air Sampling During Paint Removal Work: Conduct area air sampling daily, on each shift in which lead-based paint removal operations are performed, in areas immediately adjacent to the lead control area. Sufficient area monitoring shall be conducted to ensure unprotected personnel are not exposed at or above 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air. If 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air is reached or exceeded, stop work, correct the conditions(s) causing the increased levels. Notify the the Owner immediately. Determine if condition(s) require any further change in work methods. Removal work shall resume only after approval is given by the CP and the the Owner. For outdoor operations, at least one sample on each shift shall be taken on the downwind side of the lead control area.

3. Lead-Based Paint Removal
   a. Manual or power sanding of interior and exterior surfaces is not permitted. Provide methodology for removing LBP in work plan. Remove paint within the areas designated on the drawings in order to completely expose the substrate. Take whatever precautions necessary to minimize damage to the underlying substrate.
   b. Avoid flash rusting or deterioration of the substrate. Provide surface preparations for painting in accord with Division 07.
   c. Provide methodology for removing LBP/LCP removal processes to minimize contamination of work areas outside the control area with lead-contaminated dust or other lead-contaminated debris/waste and to ensure that unprotected personnel are not exposed to hazardous concentrations of lead. Describe this LBP/LCP removal process in the LBP/LCPRP.

d. Indoor Lead Paint Removal: Perform manual **OR** mechanical **OR** thermal **OR** chemical, **as directed**, paint removal in lead control areas using enclosures, barriers, or containments and powered locally exhausted paint removal tools. Collect residue and/or debris for disposal in accordance with federal, State, and local requirements.

e. Outdoor Lead Paint Removal: Perform outdoor removal as indicated in federal, State, and local regulations and in the LBP/CPRP. The worksite preparation (barriers or containments) shall be job dependent and presented in the LBP/LCPRP.

f. Sampling After Paint Removal: After the visual inspection, conduct soil sampling if bare soil is present during external removal operations and collect air samples inside and outside the lead control area to determine the airborne levels of lead inside and outside the work area. Collect wipe samples according to the HUD protocol contained in HUD Guidelines to determine the lead content of settled dust and dirt in micrograms per square foot (square meter) of surface area and parts per million (ppm) or micrograms per gram (µg/g) for soil.

4. Cleanup and Disposal

a. Cleanup: Maintain surfaces of the lead control area free of accumulations of paint chips and dust. Restrict the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the work area. Do not dry sweep or use compressed air to clean up the area. At the end of each shift and when the paint removal operation has been completed, clean the area of visible lead paint contamination by vacuuming with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner, wet mopping the area and wet wiping the area as indicated by the CP. Reclean areas showing dust or residual paint chips or debris. After visible dust, chips and debris is removed, wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces in the work area. If adjacent areas become contaminated at any time during the work, clean, visually inspect, and then wipe sample all contaminated areas. The CP shall then certify in writing that the area has been cleaned of lead contamination before restarting work.

b. Clearance Certification

1) The CP shall certify in writing that the final air samples collected inside and outside the lead control area are less than 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air; the respiratory protection used for the employees was adequate; the work procedures were performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and 40 CFR 745; and that there were no visible accumulations of material and dust containing lead left in the work site. Do not remove the lead control area or roped off boundary and warning signs prior to the the Owner's acknowledgement of receipt of the CP certification.

2) A third party consultant shall certify surface wipe sample results collected inside and outside the work area are less than 100 micrograms per square foot (0.1 square meter) on uncarpeted floors, less than 500 micrograms per square foot (0.1 square meter) on interior window sills and less than 800 micrograms per square foot (0.1 square meter) on window troughs **OR** not significantly greater than the initial surface loading determined prior to work, **as directed**.

3) For exterior paint removal work, soil samples taken at the exterior of the work site shall be sued to determine if soil lead levels had increased at a statistically significant level (significant at the 95 percent confidence limit) from the soil lead levels prior to the work. If soil lead levels do show a statistically significant increase above any applicable Federal or State standard for lead in soil, the soil shall be remediated back to the pre-work level.

c. Testing of Lead-Based Paint Residue and Used Abrasive: Test paint residue and used abrasive in accordance with 40 CFR 261 for hazardous waste.

d. Disposal

1) Collect lead-contaminated waste, scrap, debris, bags, containers, equipment, and lead-contaminated clothing which may produce airborne concentrations of lead particles. Label the containers in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and 40 CFR 261. Dispose of lead-contaminated waste material at an EPA or State approved hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility off Owner’s property.

2) Store waste materials in U.S. Department of Transportation (49 CFR 178) approved 55 gallon (208 liter) drums. Properly label each drum to identify the type of waste (49 CFR 172) and the date the drum was filled. The the Owner or an authorized representative will assign an area for interim storage of waste-containing drums. Do not store hazardous waste drums in interim storage longer than 90 calendar days from the date affixed to each drum.
3) Handle, store, transport, and dispose lead or lead-contaminated waste in accordance with 40 CFR 260, 40 CFR 261, 40 CFR 262, 40 CFR 263, 40 CFR 264, and 40 CFR 265. Comply with land disposal restriction notification requirements as required by 40 CFR 268.
4) All material, whether hazardous or non-hazardous shall be disposed in accordance with laws and provisions and Federal, State, or local regulations. Ensure waste is properly characterized. The result of each waste characterization (TCLP for RCRA materials) will dictate disposal requirements.

5. Disposal Documentation: Submit written evidence that the hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility (TSD) is approved for lead disposal by the EPA and State or local regulatory agencies. Submit one copy of the completed manifest, signed and dated by the initial transporter in accordance with 40 CFR 262.
6. Payment for Hazardous Waste: Payment for disposal of hazardous waste will not be made until a signed copy of the manifest from the treatment or disposal facility certifying the amount of lead-containing materials delivered is returned and a copy is furnished to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 83 19 13b - XRF TESTING FOR LEAD-BASED PAINT

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for XRF testing for lead-based paint. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. The Contractor shall perform work in accordance with the latest HUD Guidelines, in accordance with all applicable regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Occupational Safety & Health Agency (OSHA) and any applicable State or Local standards that may be more stringent than the Federal Standards except, as such guidelines are modified by the Owner in writing in this contract or any contract pursuant to this contract.

B. Workmanship required in the execution of the work herein specified shall be of good quality and subject to the approval of the the Owner.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Notification Before Start of Work
   1. The Contractor shall send notices to the Project Superintendent, Residents, and the Department of Planning and Development 48 hours before the scheduled start of work. The Contractor shall make three (3) attempts to gain entry to each apartment, with proper 48 hour notification to the resident each time.
   2. The Contractor shall begin work no later than 48 hours after receiving a work proceed order.

B. Copies of the submissions listed below must be tendered with the bid:
   1. Ability to perform XRF testing and paint chip sampling by submitting evidence of the successful completion of lead inspector training by all staff to be assigned to the job including inspector technicians. Training must be provided through a State approved EPA-Model program. All staff assigned to the Contract must also demonstrate training in the use of the XRF testing machines to be dedicated to this contract. The serial number of such XRF machine shall be provided to the the Owner.
      a. Contractor or Subcontractor performing the work must have at least 3 years of satisfactory experience (documented) in performing XRF testing for a City, State or Federal Agency.
   2. Laboratory certification by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
   3. If a subcontractor will be used for any of the laboratory work of this contract, evidence of certification stated above must also be provided for the subcontractor.

C. XRF Testing Report Format

a. All XRF report must be made after a formal submittal and approval by the Owner.
b. A faxed summary report must be provided to the the Owner within 48 hours after completion of testing for a work Authorization. For XRF testing requiring confirmation by laboratory analysis of paint chip samples, the faxed summary report must be provided within 48 hours after the the Owner gives approval for testing of the collected paint chip samples.
c. A detailed report must be provided to the the Owner within 5 business days after completion of the testing.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The work shall consist of furnishing all labor, material, insurance and all other incidental items required to do the following:
1. XRF Testing
a. Random or comprehensive testing of various components in single family housing units, multi-family housing units, common areas and exterior sites, using any of the approved X-ray Fluorescence ("XRF") machines, to determine if the lead-based paint concentration is within permissible limits.
Note: Testing may be for entire apartments or selected rooms or components within the apartment.
b. The permissible limit shall be defined as a final reading showing a lead concentration of less than 1.0 mg/cm².
c. Refer to the Manufacturer's manual, as well as the "XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet" when determining calibration check tolerance, and other instrument specific information. Use the adjusted "XRF Performance Characteristic Sheets" in this contract when determining the inconclusive range.
d. In addition to the manufacturer's recommended warm up and quality control procedures, a set of three nominal XRF calibration check readings must be taken before the inspection begins and after the inspection has been completed in a particular unit, or every 4 hours, whichever occurs first. All reference material values and calibration check readings must be included in the report provided to the Owner.
e. Do not use the XRF to test highly curved or ornate surfaces, or surfaces inaccessible to the XRF, due to poor reliability of results. For such surfaces, laboratory analysis of paint chips must be done.
f. Only one XRF reading is required per testing combination. A unique testing combination is characterized by the room equivalent, the component, the substrate and the visible color of the paint. However, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type.
g. All inconclusive results must be treated according to the inspection rules using multi-family inspection or single family inspection rules as appropriate.
h. XRF field data sheets shall be filled out as they appear on completed Form 7.1(“Single-Family Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet”) and 7.5 (“"Multifamily Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet”) in HUD Guidelines.
i. Room equivalents or sections thereof that are not accessible for testing (i.e. locked bedrooms) shall be noted in the final report to the Owner.
2. Laboratory testing of paint chips.
a. Collection of paint chips from various painted components for laboratory analysis due to XRF substrate corrected inconclusive and/or positive readings as directed by the the Owner.

b. Laboratory preparation and testing by Flame Atomic Absorption Spectrometry (FAAS) or Graphite Furnace Atomic Absorption Spectrometry (GFAAS) to determine if the lead paint concentration is within permissible limits.
c. The permissible limit shall be defined as a lead concentration less than 0.5% by weight.
d. Collect paint chips in accordance with ASTM ES28-94.
e. Prepare paint chips in the laboratory for testing in accordance with ASTM ES37-94.
f. Repair and repaint areas from which paint chips have been collected, to match adjacent areas, unless notified by the the Owner in writing to utilize a temporary covering for the tested surfaces. The Contractor shall provide water based latex paint for this purpose. Colors shall be limited to white and off-white; and other colors if provided by the tenant.
g. Only one paint chip is required per testing combination. A unique testing combination is characterized by the room equivalent, the component, the substrate, and the visible color of the paint. However, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type.
h. Field data sheets and signed chain of custodies must be attached to the final report to the Owner.

B. Occupied Residences
1. Some of the work of this contract will be in occupied apartments. The Contractor shall perform all of the work of this contract with the least inconvenience to the tenants.
2. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the the Owner, its residents and the public. The contractor must repair any damaged property, whether of the the Owner, its residents, or the public, and restore such property to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new, that in the judgement of the the Owner, match the existing materials and are of equal quality and workmanship. All such repairs shall be at the Contractor's expense.

C. Applicable Regulations
1. ASTME Standards
a. ASTM E 1583 on evaluating laboratories used to determine lead levels;
b. ASTM E 1605 on terminology;
c. ASTM E 1613 on determining lead by atomic emission or atomic absorption spectroscopy;
d. ASTM E 1645 on laboratory preparation of paint-chip samples;
e. ASTM E 1775 on-site extraction and field portable stripping voltammetry analysis for lead;
f. ASTM PS 53 on identifying and managing lead in facilities;
g. ASTM PS 87 on ultrasonic extraction for later analysis for lead;
h. ASTM PS 88 on determining lead by portable electro analysis
2. OSHA Standards (without limitation), include:
a. 29 CFR 1926.20 - General safety and health provisions;
b. 29 CFR 1926.21 - Safety training and education;
c. 29 CFR 1925.25 - Housekeeping;
d. 29 CFR 1926.28 - Personal protective equipment;
e. 29 CFR 1926.51(f) - Washing facilities;
f. 29 CFR 1926.55 - Gases, vapors, fumes, dusts, and mists;
g. 29 CFR 1926.57 - Ventilations;
h. 29 CFR 1926.59 - Hazardous Communication Standards;
i. 29 CFR 1926.10 - Respiratory protection; and
j. 29 CFR 1926.62 - Lead in Construction
3. The Contractor must comply with all applicable requirements of the Resource Conservation & Recovery Act (RCRA) of 1976 as amended in 1980 and 1984 by the Hazardous & Solid Waste Amendments (HSWA).

4. The Contractor must follow the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet (PCS) for all inspection activities. XRF PCSs are available from the National Lead Information Center Clearinghouse or through the HUD website at http://www.hud.gov/offices/lead/lbp/hudguidelines/allpcs.pdf.

1.5 PRODUCTS

A. XRF Instruments and Testing Protocols
1. The Contractor shall use XRF instruments that are approved by the Owner.
2. XRFs must be used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet. If discrepancies exist between the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet, the HUD Guidelines and the manufacturer's instructions, the most stringent guidelines should be followed.

1.6 EXECUTION

A. Inspection and Testing
1. Single Family Testing Rules
a. If the housing development has less
1) than 10 units built between 1960-1970 or
2) 20 units built before 1960 or
3) the random testing rules in a multi-family development are not being used then single family testing rules must be followed.
b. List all testing combinations (see HUD Guidelines Table for an example) in all interior rooms, on all exterior building surfaces, and on surfaces in other exterior areas, such as fences, playground equipment, and garages. The “SingleFamily Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet” (see HUD Guidelines) or a comparable data collection instrument may be used for this purpose.
1) Test all room equivalents inside and outside the dwelling unit. The final report must include a final determination of the presence or absence of lead-based paint on each testing combination in each room equivalent.
2) Inspect each testing combination in each room equivalent, unless similar building component types with identical substrates (such as windows) are all found to contain lead-based paint in the first five interior room equivalents. In that case, testing of that component type in the remaining room equivalents may be discontinued, if and only if the Owner agrees beforehand to such a discontinuation. The inspector should then conclude that similar building component types in the rest of the dwelling unit also contain lead-based paint.
3) Painted furniture that is physically attached to the unit (for example, a desk or dresser that is built-in) should be included in the inspection as a testing combination.
4) Results of an inspection may be summarized by classifying component types across room equivalents if patterns or trends are supported by the data.
5) All substrates across all room equivalents should be grouped into one of the six substrate categories (brick, concrete, drywall, metal, plaster, or wood).
c. Number and Location of XRF Readings
1) XRF testing is required for at least one location per layers of paint should be included and the XRF probe testing combination, except for interior and exterior faceplate should be able to lie flat against the surface walls, where four readings should be taken, one on of the test location each wall.
2) For interior and exterior walls: take at least four readings (one of ea. wall). If there are more than four walls test the four largest walls, calculate the average of the

readings, round the result to same number of decimal places as the XRF instrument displays, and classify the remaining walls with the same painting history as the tested walls, based on this rounded average. When the remaining walls in a room equivalent clearly do not have the same painting history as that of the tested walls, test and classify the remaining walls individually.

3) Select areas of paint which are most likely to have old paint or coatings, where areas of paint appear thickest. Avoid testing where paint has worn away, chipped; or over pipes, electrical surfaces, nails, and any other possible interferences.

4) A numbering system, floor plan, sketch or other system may be used to document which testing combinations were tested and sufficiently detailed enough for another individual to find them.

a) Side identification Identify perimeter wall sides with letters A, B, C, and D (or numbers or Roman numerals). Side A for single-family housing is the street side for the address. Side A in multi-family housing is the apartment entry door side. Side B, C, and D are identified clockwise from Side A as one faces the dwelling; thus Wall B is to the left, Wall C is across from Side A, and Side D is to the right of Side A. Each room equivalent's side identification follows the scheme for the whole housing unit. Because a room can have two or more entries, sides should not be allocated based on the entry point. For example, giving a closet a side allocation based on how the room is entered would make it difficult for another person to make an easy identification, especially if the room had two closets and two entryways.

b) Room Equivalent Identification Room equivalents should be identified by both a number and a use pattern (for example, Room 5-Kitchen). Room 1 can always be the first room, at the A-D junction at the entryway, or it can be the exterior. Rooms are consecutively numbered clockwise. If multiple closets exist, they are given the side allocation: for example, Room 3, Side C Closet. The exterior is always assigned a separate room equivalent identifier.

c) Sides in a Room Sides in an interior room equivalent follow the overall housing unit side allocation. Therefore, when standing in any four-sided room facing Side C, the room's Side A will always be to the rear, Side B will be to the left, and Side D will be to the right.

d) Building Component Identification Individual building components are first identified by their room number and side allocation (for example, the radiator in Room 1, Side B is easily identified). If multiple similar component types are in a room (for example, three windows), they are differentiated from each other by side allocation. If multiple components are on the same wall side, they are differentiated by being numbered left to right when facing the components. For example, three windows on Wall D are identified as windows D1, D2, and D3, left to right. If window D3 has the only old original sash, it is considered a separate testing combination from the other two windows. Codes or abbreviations for building components and/or locations may be used in order to shorten the time needed for data entry. If codes or abbreviations are used, the inspection records and the inspection report must include a table showing their meaning.

d. XRF Instrument Reading Time

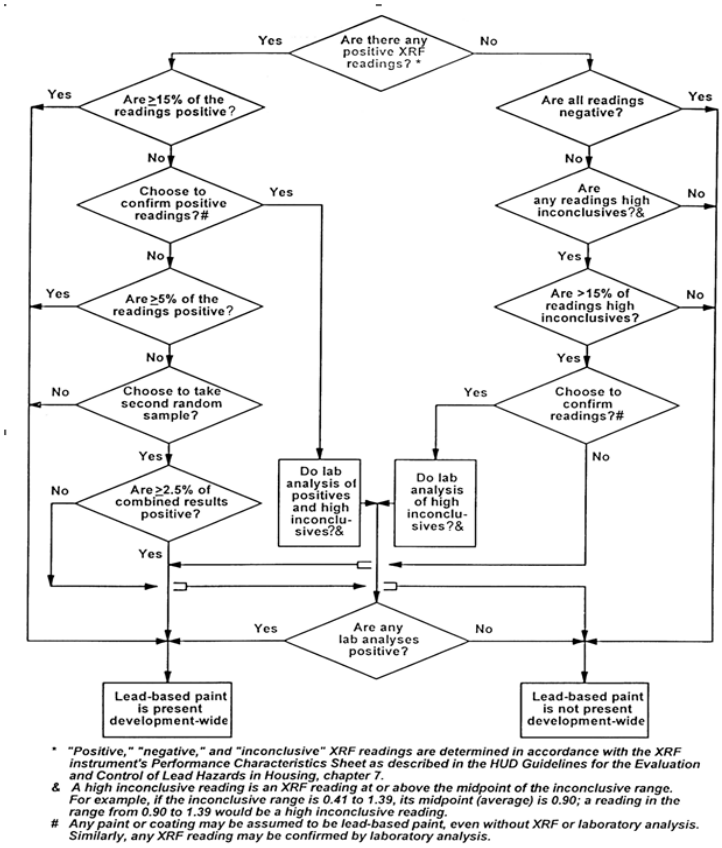
1) The recommended time to open an XRF instrument's shutter to obtain a single XRF result for a testing location depends on the specific XRF instrument model and the mode in which the instrument is operating. Follow manufacturer's instructions per HUD Guidelines.

e. XRF Calibration Check Readings

1) Follow manufacturer's instructions per HUD Guidelines.

f. Substrate Correction
   1) The XRF measurements, corrected for substrate contribution, if required by the Performance Characteristic Sheet ("PCS") for the particular type of instrument being used, should be sorted by the inspector by component type into the following categories:
      a) Positive- A positive XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
      b) Negative- A negative XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
      c) High Inconclusive- An inconclusive XRF reading equal to or greater than the midpoint of the XRF's inconclusive range, in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.

g. The following Decision analyses will be used to determine which components are positive, negative or inconclusive:



1)

2) All inconclusive results must be confirmed with laboratory analysis, or as an alternative must be classified as positive. the Owner may also wish to confirm positive XRF results with laboratory analysis. Therefore the Contractor must make a field determination of which XRF readings falls in the inconclusive or positive ranges and take paint chip samples during the XRF testing for possible laboratory analysis. If the majority of XRF readings are positive in the first few units, the inspector must consult with the Owner on whether to continue taking paint chip samples. Only the Owner may determine whether to submit collected paint chip samples for laboratory analysis or to classify the element as positive.

2. Multi-family Housing Testing Rules (Random Sampling)

a. In order to use the Multi-family housing testing rules, there must multi-family housing is defined as any group of more than four units that are similar in construction from unit to unit

b. Determine the number of randomly selected units to be tested in accordance with Table 7.3, below. Chapter 7 of the HUD Guidelines also describes how to select the units randomly. If a unit or units which were selected as part of the original random sample cannot be entered for a particular reason, a replacement unit(s) must be randomly selected in accordance with the HUD Guidelines.

Table 7.3 Number of Units to be Tested in Multi-family Building or Developments*

Number of Similar Units, Similar Common Areas, or Similar Exterior Sites	Pre-1960 or Unknown-Age Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *	1960-1977 Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *
1-10	All	All
11-13	All	10
14	All	11
15	All	12
16-17	All	13
18	All	14
19	All	15
20	All	16
21-26	20	16
27	21	17
28	22	18
29	23	18
30	23	19
31	24	19
32	25	19
33-34	26	19
35	27	19
36	28	19
37	29	19
38-39	30	20
40-48	31	21
49-50	31	22
51	32	22
52-53	33	22
54	34	22
55-56	35	22
57-58	36	22
59	37	23
60-69	38	23
70-73	38	24
74-75	39	24
76-77	40	24

Number of Similar Units, Similar Common Areas, or Similar Exterior Sites	Pre-1960 or Unknown-Age Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *	1960-1977 Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *
78-79	41	24
80-88	42	24
89-95	42	25
96-97	43	25
98-99	44	25
100-109	45	25
110-117	45	26
118-119	46	26
120-138	47	26
139-157	48	26
158-159	49	26
160-177	49	27
178-197	50	27
198-218	51	27
219-258	52	27
259-279	53	27
280-299	53	28
300-379	54	28
380-499	55	28
500-776	56	28
777-939	57	28
940-1004	57	29
1005-1022	58	29
1023-1032	59	29
1033-1039	59	30
1500	87	44
2000	116	58
2500	145	73
3000	174	87
3500	203	102
4000	232	116

* For brevity, "Number of Units" and "Number of Units to Test" are used, but the number to test is the same for similar units, similar common areas, and similar exterior sites.

c. An assessment on each tested component must note four attributes, also called a testing combination.
   1) The room equivalent (where the testing took place i.e. bedroom, bathroom, etc.)
   2) The component type (door, wall #1 - upper left, etc.)
   3) The substrate (brick, wood, concrete, drywall, plaster or metal).
   4) The color of the paint.

d. These attributes must be included as part of the report.

e. For each testing combination, the condition of the painted surfaces should be noted as either intact, fair or poor.

f. One reading with the X-ray fluorescence (XRF) instrument on each testing combination is all that is required.

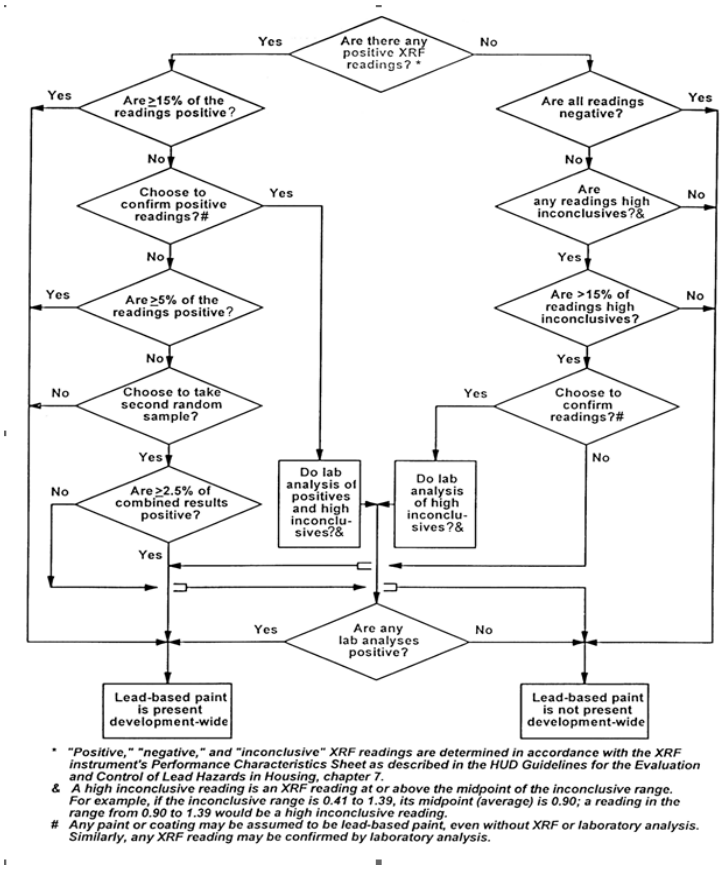
g. At least 40 components of a given type must be tested to obtain the desired level of confidence in the results throughout the multi-family development. If less than 40 components of a given type exist in the buildings to be tested i.e. they are unique components, then the measurement should be taken using single family testing rules (described below). If less than 40 components of a given type exist in the units to be tested, additional components of this type can be identified in other units in the complex and tested to bring the total up to 40 so that multi-family testing rules can be used. The decision of which option the Contractor should use will be made by the the Owner.

h. To increase the number of tested components of a given type, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type. For example, if "wood doors" is the component type, all wood doors tested for lead-based paint could belong to the same component type, regardless of color.

i. A component type may be differentiated by color as long as there are 40 tested and there is a good reason for differentiation.

j. The XRF measurements, corrected for substrate contribution, if required by the Performance Characteristic Sheet ("PCS") for the particular type of instrument being used, should be sorted by the inspector by component type into the following categories:
   1) Positive- A positive XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
   2) Negative- A negative XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
   3) High Inconclusive- An inconclusive XRF reading equal to or greater than the midpoint of the XRF's inconclusive range, in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.

k. The following Decision analyses will be used to determine which components are positive, negative or inconclusive:



* "Positive," "negative," and "inconclusive" XRF readings are determined in accordance with the XRF instrument's Performance Characteristics Sheet as described in the HUD Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead Hazards in Housing, chapter 7.

& A high inconclusive reading is an XRF reading at or above the midpoint of the inconclusive range. For example, if the inconclusive range is 0.41 to 1.39, its midpoint (average) is 0.90; a reading in the range from 0.90 to 1.39 would be a high inconclusive reading.

\# Any paint or coating may be assumed to be lead-based paint, even without XRF or laboratory analysis. Similarly, any XRF reading may be confirmed by laboratory analysis.

l. If there are readings on a component type(s) equal to or greater than 1.0 mg/cm² and paint chip samples are submitted to the laboratory, there are two possible results:

1) If all lab samples on a component type are below 0.5% lead by weight, the component type can be classified as negative throughout the development.
2) If one or more lab results are positive, (equal to or greater than 0.5% lead by weight for a component) the the Owner will take one of three options:
   a) Treat the component type as positive throughout the development, or
   b) Test the component type throughout the development, or
   c) If 5% or less of the component type are positive, take a second random sample, just testing that component type.
3) If option 2)c) above is selected by the Owner and the combined results of the first and second random sample are less than 2½% positive, the following additional options are available depending on the results.
   a) If no positives are found in the second sample, no further testing is necessary. Those positives in the first random sample will be monitored/abated (not by this Agreement), but the rest of the component type can be classified as negative.

b) If positives are found on a component type in the second sample, the the Owner has the option to classify the component type as positive throughout the development or comprehensively test it.

c) If the combined results of the two random samples are equal to or greater than 2½%, the the Owner also has the option to comprehensively test the remaining components of that type or classify them as positive.

m. Paint Chip Sample Size: The Paint chip samples should be taken from a 4 square inch (25 square centimeter) area that is representative of the paint on the testing combination, as close as possible to any XRF reading locations and, if possible, unobtrusive. This area may be a 2" x 2" (5 x 5 centimeters) square, or a 1" x 4" (2.5 x 10 centimeters) rectangle, or have any other dimensions that equal at least 4 square inches (25 square centimeters). Regardless of shape, the dimensions of the surface area must be accurately measured (to the nearest millimeter or 1/16th of an inch) so that the laboratory results can be reported in mg/cm$^{2.}$ Results should be reported as percent by weight if the surface area cannot be measured accurately or if all paint within the sampled area cannot be removed. In these cases, lead should be reported in ppm or percent weight, not in mg/cm^2. Smaller surface area can be used if acceptable to the laboratory. (See ASTME 1729). In all cases those who take the samples should consult with the NLAAP recognized laboratory selected regarding the requirements for the submission samples for lead-based paint analysis.

n. If the the Owner decides to test in search of these hard-to-find components coated with lead based paint, the inspector must use the single family testing rules described in the previous section.

3. Common Areas and Exterior Sites Testing Rules

a. Similar common areas and similar exterior sites must always be tested, but in some cases they can be sampled in much the same way that dwelling units are. Common areas and building exteriors typically have a similar painting history from one building to the next. In multifamily housing, each common area (such as building lobby, laundry room, or hallway) can be treated as a dwelling unit. If there are multiple similar common areas, they may be grouped for sampling purposes I exactly the same way as regular dwelling units. However, dwelling units, common areas and exterior sites cannot be all mixed together in a single group. All testing combinations within each common area or building exteriors selected for testing must be inspected. This includes playground equipment, benches and miscellaneous testing combinations located throughout the development. The specific common areas and building exteriors to test should be randomly selected, in much the same way as specific units are selected using random numbers. The number of common areas to be tested should be taken from table 7.3 (HUD Guidelines). In this instance, common areas and building exteriors can be treated in the same way as housing units (although they are not to be confused with true housing units).

4. Unit and Common Area Drawings

a. Mark-ups of as built drawings depicting room equivalents that are tested must be provided as part of the report.

b. The Contractor should test in a clockwise path starting from the door through the space and room equivalents so that the approximate location of each component tested can be easily established by referencing the room equivalent and sides.

c. Each space must have a reference point (side A, B, C, D or wall 1, 2, 3 or 4). The wall with the door should always be referenced as wall 1 or side A. If there is more than one door, wall 1 or side A should be used to refer to the wall with the door through which the room is first entered when moving in a clockwise fashion through the unit.

B. Evaluation of the Inspection by the the Owner

1. The Contractor will be required to carry out retesting at no additional cost to the the Owner, after completion of the Inspection at each the Owner's development as described in the HUD Guidelines, for single family housing, multi-family housing and common areas. The the Owner shall randomly select the testing combinations to be retested and the Contractor shall perform the retesting using the same XRF instrument(s) which was/were used to take the original readings. An the Owner's inspector shall be present to observe all retesting. The retesting shall be limited to ten (10) testing combinations, and if necessary to repeat the retest, the testing combinations randomly selected for repeating the retest shall also be limited to ten.
2. If the retest tolerance limit computed from the information provided in the "XRF Performance Characteristics Sheet" (see HUD Guidelines) is exceeded, the retest will be repeated as described in the HUD Guidelines for single family, multi-family housing and common areas. If the retest tolerance limit is exceeded again, the the Owner may require the Contractor to retest the entire development at no additional cost to the the Owner, or the the Owner may withhold all payments and terminate its agreement with the Contractor.

C. Option to do Laboratory Testing only
1. The the Owner may, for a specific testing assignment, request in writing that the Contractor, when utilizing the multi-family housing testing rules for random sampling, or the single family housing testing rules, do all testing through laboratory analysis of paint chips rather than through XRF Spectrum Analyzer testing with laboratory confirmation as needed. Please note that under the single family housing testing rules, only one paint chip must be taken and analyzed for each component type.

D. Waste Disposal
1. All waste generated must be legally disposed in accordance with Federal, State and Local regulations.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 83 19 13c - LEAD DUST WIPE, AIR AND TCLP SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lead dust wipe, air and TCLP sampling and analysis. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 GENERAL

A. Definitions: Unless otherwise specified the following definitions shall apply:
1. **"Approved"**: shall mean approved by all public agencies having jurisdiction, and the Owner.
2. **"The Owner"**: shall mean the Owner and its designated authorized representatives.
3. **"Contractor"**: shall mean the firm that is awarded this contract and is responsible to ensure compliance with Federal, State and City regulations as well as these Contract documents.
4. **"Development or Project"**: a group of buildings in one or more designated geographical locations, owned or operated by the Owner and referred to by a common name by the Owner.
5. **"Dust Cleaning Firm"**: shall mean the contractor under a separate contract or the Owner responsible for cleaning of lead dust, as directed by the Owner, until the clearance levels are achieved, as defined in the "Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing, June 1995" or latest edition published by the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD).
6. **"Equal or Approved Equal"**: shall mean equal in the opinion of the Owner.
7. **"HUD"**: the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development.
8. **"HUD Guidelines"**: shall mean Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing issued by HUD'S Office of Lead-Based Paint Abatement and Poisoning Prevention in June 1995 except as such guidelines are later modified by HUD and/or modified by the Owner in writing pursuant to this contract.
9. **"Inspector"**: an individual who has completed training from an accredited program and been licensed or certified by the appropriate State or local agency to (1) perform inspections to determine and report the presence of lead-based paint on a surface-by-surface basis through on-site testing, (2) report the findings of such an inspection, (3) collect environmental samples for laboratory analysis, (4) perform clearance testing, and (5) document successful compliance with lead-based paint hazard control requirements or standards.
10. **"Lead-Based Paint"**: any paint, varnish, shellac, or other coating that contains lead equal to or greater than 1.0 mg/cm² as measured by XRF or laboratory analysis, or 0.5 percent by weight (5,000 µg/g, 5,000 PPM, or 5,000 mg/kg) as measured by laboratory analysis.
11. **"Lead-Based Paint Hazard"**: a condition in which exposure to lead from lead-contaminated dust, lead-contaminated soil or deteriorated lead-based paint would have an adverse effect on human health (as established by the EPA Administrator under Title IV of the Toxic Substance Control Act). Lead-based paint hazards include for example, deteriorated lead-based paint, leaded dust levels above applicable standards and bare leaded soil above applicable standards.
12. **"Lead-Based Paint Hazard Control"**: activities to control or eliminate lead-based paint hazards, including interim controls and complete abatement.
13. **"Lead-Contaminated Dust"**: surface dust in residences that contain an area or mass concentration of lead in excess of the standard established by the EPA Administrator, pursuant to Title IV of the Toxic Substance Control Act. Until the EPA standards are set, the HUD recommended clearance and risk assessment standards for leaded dust are 40 µg/ft² on floors, 250 µg/ft² on interior window sills, and 800 µg/ft² on window troughs.

14. **"Monitoring"**: shall refer to inspection to ensure compliance with all Federal, State and City Standards or guidelines, and contractual specifications.
15. **"Provide"**: shall mean furnish and install.
16. **"Risk Assessor"**: a certified individual who has completed training with an accredited training program and who has been certified to (1) perform risk assessments, (2) identify acceptable abatement and interim control strategies for reducing identified lead-based paint hazards, (3) perform clearance testing and reevaluations, and (4) document the successful completion of lead-based paint hazard control activities.

B. Applicable Regulations/References

1. The work conducted shall comply with all applicable Federal, State and City regulations. Applicable guidelines and standards listed in the scope of work include, but are not limited to:

24 CFR Parts 35,36,37	HUD Lead-Based Paint Regulations
Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint in Housing (HUD Guidelines June 1995) & 1997 Revisions	
29 CFR 1910	General Industry Standard
29 CFR 1910.1025	Lead Standard for General Industry
29 CFR 1910.134	Respiratory Protection
29 CFR 1910.1200	Hazard Communication
29 CFR 1910.245	Specification for Accident Prevention
29 CFR 1926	Construction Industry Standards
29 CFR 1926.20	General Safety & Health Provisions
29 CFR 1926.21	Safety Training & Education
29 CFR 1926.25	Housekeeping
29 CFR 1926.28	Personal Protective Equipment
29 CFR 1926.51	Washing Facilities
29 CFR 1926.55	Gases, Vapors, Fumes, Dusts & Mists
29 CFR 1926.59	Hazard Communication Standard
29 CFR 1926.62	Construction Industry Lead Standard
29 CFR 1926.103	Respiratory Protection
40 CFR 61 Subpart A	General Provisions
40 CFR 241	Guidelines for the Land Disposal of Solid Waste
40 CFR 257	Criteria for the Land Disposal of Solid Waste
40 CFR 261/262	Waste Disposal Facilities & Practices
American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Z87.1	Eye Protection
ANSI Z88.2-80	Practices for Respiratory Protection
American Society For Testing Materials (ASTM)	All Applicable Standards

2. The contractor shall ensure that any programs, certifications, licenses or other documentation in accordance with the above and/or any other applicable Federal, State, and Local Regulations/Guidelines are provided.

C. Scope Of Work

1. The work shall consist of furnishing labor, materials, insurance and all other incidental items required to perform the following:
    a. Dust wipe sampling and analysis
        1) Collect dust wipe samples from various horizontal surfaces, such as floors, window sills, window troughs, etc., as directed by the Owner.
        2) Dust wipe samples shall be collected in accordance with ASTM ES30-94.

3) Analyze dust wipe sample in the laboratory using Flame Atomic Absorption Spectrometry ("FAAS") or Graphite Furnace Atomic Absorption Spectrometry("GFAAS").
4) Provide result of analysis in micrograms per square foot.
5) A faxed summary of results must be provided to the Owner within 24 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the laboratory analysis of the collected dust wipe sample. Contractor shall also have the ability to provide results in 4 hours for clearance, following lead-based paint abatement work, if requested by the Owner. The sampling result must be provided in a form approved by the Owner and must include for each dust wipe sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, the surface type, dimensions of sample areas, total micrograms, micrograms per square feet, and an indication of pass or fail.
6) Turn-around time for results shall be counted from the time the Contractor performs collection of dust wipe samples to the time the results are actually presented to the Owner. This includes travel time from the site to the laboratory of the Contractor and back to the site.
7) A detailed final report covering the results of all dust wipe samples taken and analyzed must be submitted within 5 days from the time the Owner authorizes the performance of the laboratory analysis. The sampling report must include for each dust wipe sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, the surface type, dimensions of sample areas, total micrograms, micrograms per square feet, and indicate pass or fail in a form approved by the Owner. Also include in the report the method of analysis, i.e. "FAAS" or "GFAAS", and the detection limits. The laboratory test results in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.
8) The sampling data report must contain all required data fields as specified by the Owner. The sampling data report shall be provided to the Owner on 3.5 inch high density diskettes in ASCII file form. The required data fields will be provided by the Owner to the Contractor.
9) The laboratory used for the analysis of the dust wipe samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.

b. Dust Spiked Samples
1) Provide dust spiked samples to the Owner. Dust spiked samples shall be prepared in accordance with the HUD Guidelines.

NOTE: These samples are separate from the ones required by the Contractor for its own QA/QC

2) Prepare dust spiked samples in a manner such that they are indistinguishable from the field samples.
3) Prepare dust spiked samples using the same lot as that to be used in the field.
4) Dust spiked samples shall be inserted into the sample stream, randomly, by the Owner Inspector.
5) Blind analysis of dust spiked samples must fall within 80%-120% of the true value. If the laboratory fails to obtain readings within these limits, two more spiked samples shall be sent immediately to the lab for analysis.
6) If the two additional spiked samples fail, the sample batch shall be considered invalid, and the Owner may, at its sole discretion, terminate this contract as well as withhold payment for services already rendered.

c. Air Sampling and Analysis

1) Collect area air samples at various locations and various projects for personal exposure assessment as directed by the Owner.
2) Air samples shall be collected in accordance with ASTM E1553-93.
3) Prepare air samples for analysis in accordance with ASTM E33-94
4) Analyze air samples using FAAS or GFAAS.
5) All equipment required for personal air sampling, including pumps shall be provided by the Contractor at no extra cost to the Owner.
6) Provide results of air samples in micrograms per cubic meter.
7) A faxed summary of result must be provided to the Owner within 24 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the laboratory analysis of the collected air sample. The sampling result must include for each air sample taken the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, and the reading.
8) Turn-around time shall start after collection of the air samples, and includes travel time to and from the laboratory.
9) A detailed final report covering the results of all air samples taken and analyzed must be submitted within 5 days from the time the Owner authorizes the performance of the laboratory analysis. The sampling report must include for each air sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, and the reading. The laboratory report contained in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.
10) The sampling data report must contain all required data fields as specified by the Owner. The sampling data report shall be provided to the Owner on 3.5 inch high density diskettes in ASCII file form. The required data fields will be provided by the Owner to the Contractor.
11) The laboratory used for the analysis of the dust wipe samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"),or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
12) Air sampling technician shall be present during the entire shift of the air sampling.

d. TCLP Sampling and Analysis
1) Take core samples of construction waste as directed by the Owner and analyze by TCLP testing to determine if waste is hazardous.
2) Waste shall be classified as hazardous if the concentration of lead is greater than 5 parts per million by TCLP testing.
3) The laboratory used for the analysis of the TCLP samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
4) A faxed summary of result must be provided to the Owner within 48 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the TCLP analysis of the waste. Provide results in parts per million (ppm).
5) Final results provided to the Owner by the Contractor must include written sample preparation procedure and laboratory specific written procedures for performing TCLP, including quality control procedures used for performing the TCLP, and a table listing the sample numbers, description of the construction waste, and the

result of the TCLP. The laboratory report contained in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.

6) Final report must also specify detection limits.
7) Final report must be provided within 5 days from the time the authorization to perform the TCLP is given by the Owner.

D. General Provisions
1. Some of the work of this contract may be in occupied apartments. The Contractor shall perform all of the work of this contract with the least inconvenience to the tenants.
2. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the Owner, its residents, and the public. The Contractor must repair any damaged property, whether of the Owner, its residents, or the public, and restore such property to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new, that in the judgment of the Owner, match the existing materials and/or of equal quality and workmanship. All such repairs shall be at the Contractor's expense.
3. The Contractor shall develop a work plan to be performed as requested by the Department of Planning and Development. The detailed plan shall include coordination of the monitoring and sampling work with the Contractor in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the non-work areas in the building. The plan should also include emergency procedures in case of fire.
4. The Contractor shall perform work in accordance with the latest HUD Guidelines, except as such Guidelines are modified by the Owner in writing in this Contract, or any Contract pursuant to this Contract, and in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations.
5. The Contractor shall include in the bid price all supplementary miscellaneous items not specified but implied or required in order to complete the work.

E. Submissions
1. Six (6) copies of the submissions listed below must be submitted to the Owner by the Contractor or Subcontractor performing the Work:
   a. Ability to perform lead dust wipe sampling by submitting evidence of the successful completion of lead inspector and/or risk assessor training by all staff to be assigned to the job including inspector technicians. As stated previously, training must be provided through an approved program.
   b. Laboratory certification by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) through its ELAP program and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided.
   c. If a subcontractor will be used for any of the laboratory work of this contract, evidence of certification stated in (2) above must also be provided for the subcontractor.

F. Waste Disposal
1. All waste generated must be legally disposed in accordance with the Federal, State and Local Regulations.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13c

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 83 19 13	02 82 33 00	Removal Of Friable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 83 19 13	02 82 33 00a	Removal Of Nonfriable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13a	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tclp Sampling And Analysis

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 84 16 00 - REMOVAL OF FLUORESCENT LIGHT BALLASTS/CAPACITORS AND FLUORESCENT LIGHT TUBES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent light tubes. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Before Start of Work: Submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until these submittals are returned with Owner's Representative's approval.
   a. Copy of State or local license for hazardous waste hauler;
   b. Certification of at least one on-site supervisor which has satisfactorily completed the OSHA 40 Hour Health and Safety Course for Handling Hazardous Materials;
   c. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed at least the OSHA 40-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials;
   d. List of employees scheduled to perform this work;
   e. Schedule of start and finish times and dates for this work;
   f. Name and address of landfill where these waste materials are to be deposited (include contact person and telephone numbers);
   g. Material Safety Data Sheets for all materials requiring removal;
   h. If contractor introduces any chemical into the work environmental, a MSDS for that chemical is required before use;
   i. Transporter must have notified the EPA and/or the appropriate local government agency in advance of its intentions to transport PCB's, mercury and cadmium, and receive an identification number pursuant to the Toxic Substance Control Act (TSCA); and
   j. Contingency Plan for handling emergency spills or leaks.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Polyethylene Sheet: A single polyethylene film in the largest sheet size possible to minimize seams, 4.0 and 6.0 mil thick, clear, frosted, or black.
2. Duct Tape: Provide duct tape in 3" widths, witty an adhesive which is formulated to stick aggressively to sheet polyethylene.
3. Spray Cement: Provide spray adhesive in aerosol cans which is specifically formulated to stick tenaciously to sheet polyethylene.
4. Disposal Bays: Provide 6 mil thick leak-tight polyethylene bags.
5. Labels: As required by the EPA and OSHA for handling, transportation, and disposal of hazardous waste.
6. **Drums:** Recovery or salvage drums acceptable for disposal of hazardous waste. Prior approval of drums is required. Drums or containers must meet the required OSHA EPA (40 CFR Parts 264265 and 300), and DOT regulations (49 CFR Parts 171-178). Use of damaged drums will not be allowed.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. General
   1. Where necessary, scaffolding shall be erected to fully access all applicable fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors and tubes. At no time will the ballasts/capacitors and tubes be allowed to drop onto the floor. Contractor must take care to protect from dropping the ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent tubes.
   2. Prior to removing ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent tubes, contractor shall ensure that all electrical service to lights has been shut off, and locked out. Temporary lighting shall be erected to adequately illuminate work areas.
   3. Depending on height of light fixtures, contractor shall utilize at least a 2-person per team system. The fluorescent light tubes shall be removed and passed to the appropriate number of workers required to lower the tubes to the floor without breaking them.
   4. The worker on the floor shall lay the tubes in cardboard boxes large enough to hold a small quantity of tubes. Worker shall take care to not damage the tubes while they are lowered into the box. Once the box is full, it shall be wrapped with two layers of 6 mil thick polyethylene sheeting and sealed with duct tape.
   5. Contractor may choose to either remove the fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors in-place or lower the lighting fixtures for easy access. The ballasts/capacitors shall be removed from the fixtures. Electrical wiring leading from the ballasts/capacitors shall be cut away. Ballasts/capacitors shall be placed in 55-gallon drums lined with at least two 6 mil thick polyethylene bags. Be careful not to overfill the drums so that they remain manageable. Once the drums have been filled to the acceptable level, seal the lid onto the top of the drum, and affix appropriate labels. Transport drums via hand dollies.

B. Worker Protection
   1. As a minimum, while working with the ballasts/capacitors and light tubes, workers shall utilize impervious gloves adequate for the use with hazardous materials. If light ballasts/capacitors and/or light tubes are damaged, and/or exposure to these materials may reach the OSHA PEL or AGGIH threshold limit value (TLV), the contractor shall be required to provide impervious full body protection and respiratory protection. However, contractor is required to verify the type of protection required prior to working with these materials, and have written approval by Owner's Representative prior to beginning.
   2. In addition, workers shall not smoke, drink or eat in these areas during work activities.

C. Storage Of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors And Light Tubes
   1. Once the containers holding the ballasts/capacitors and light tubes have been filled and sealed, they shall be stored in designated areas as agreed upon by the Owners Representative and Contractor. They shall not be allowed to be stored on-site in transportation vehicles until the time for them to be transported to the hazardous waste incinerators or landfill facility.

END OF SECTION 02 84 16 00

SECTION 02 84 16 00a - INTERIOR LIGHTING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interior lighting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
b. Emergency lighting units.
c. Exit signs.
d. Lighting fixture supports.
e. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.

C. Definitions
1. BF: Ballast factor.
2. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
3. CRI: Color-rendering index.
4. HID: High-intensity discharge.
5. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
6. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
7. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
a. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
b. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
c. Ballast, including BF.
d. Energy-efficiency data.
e. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles".
f. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles".
g. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
h. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
1) Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by manufacturer.
OR
Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
2. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

3. Samples: For each lighting fixture indicated in the Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule. Each Sample shall include the following:
   a. Lamps and ballasts, installed.
   b. Cords and plugs.
   c. Pendant support system.
4. Installation instructions.
5. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
   a. Lighting fixtures.
   b. Suspended ceiling components.
   c. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extends to within 12 inches (305 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
   d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
   e. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
   f. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
      1) Air outlets and inlets.
      2) Speakers.
      3) Sprinklers.
      4) Smoke and fire detectors.
      5) Occupancy sensors.
      6) Access panels.
   g. Perimeter moldings.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
7. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, from manufacturer.
8. Field quality-control reports.
9. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
   a. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
10. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

   OR

   Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910, complying with the IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. FM Global Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

F. Coordination
1. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Final Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
   b. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Final Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Lighting Fixtures And Components
1. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
2. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
3. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
4. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
5. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
6. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
7. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
8. Diffusers and Globes:
   a. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
      1) Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
      2) UV stabilized.
   b. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
9. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
   a. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
      1) "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
      2) Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12, etc.), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple, etc.), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
      3) Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
      4) Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start, etc.) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
      5) ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
      6) CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
10. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.
11. Air-Handling Fluorescent Fixtures: For use with plenum ceiling for air return and heat extraction and for attaching an air-diffuser-boot assembly specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
    a. Air-Supply Units: Slots in one or both side trims join with air-diffuser-boot assemblies.

b. Heat-Removal Units: Air path leads through lamp cavity.
c. Combination Heat-Removal and Air-Supply Unit: Heat is removed through lamp cavity at both ends of the fixture door with air supply same as for air-supply units.
d. Dampers: Operable from outside fixture for control of return-air volume.
e. Static Fixture: Air-supply slots are blanked off, and fixture appearance matches active units.

B. Ballasts For Linear Fluorescent Lamps
1. General Requirements for Electronic Ballasts:
a. Comply with UL 935 and with ANSI C82.11.
b. Designed for type and quantity of lamps served.
c. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless another BF, dimmer, or bi-level control is indicated.
d. Sound Rating: Class A **OR** Class A except Class B for T8/HO and T12/Slimline lamp ballasts, **as directed**.
e. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent.
f. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
g. Operating Frequency: 42 kHz or higher.
h. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
i. BF: 0.88 or higher.
j. Power Factor: 0.95 **OR** 0.98, **as directed**, or higher.
k. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts shall comply with ANSI C82.11 and shall be connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.
2. Luminaires controlled by occupancy sensors shall have programmed-start ballasts.
3. Electronic Programmed-Start Ballasts for T5 **OR** T8 **OR** T5HO **OR** T5 and T5HO, **as directed**, Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.11 and the following:
a. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit for T5 diameter lamps.
b. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
4. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1; energy saving, high-power factor, Class P, and having automatic-reset thermal protection.
a. Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.
5. Single Ballasts for Multiple Lighting Fixtures: Factory wired with ballast arrangements and bundled extension wiring to suit final installation conditions without modification or rewiring in the field.
6. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
a. Temperatures 0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C) and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
b. Temperatures Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C) and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
7. Ballasts for Residential Applications: Fixtures designated as "Residential" may use low-power-factor electronic ballasts having a Class B sound rating and total harmonic distortion of approximately 30 percent.
8. Ballasts for Low Electromagnetic-Interference Environments: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for consumer equipment.
9. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
a. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
b. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.
d. Control: Coordinate wiring from ballast to control device to ensure that the ballast, controller, and connecting wiring are compatible.
10. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.

a. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
   1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
   2) Low-Level Operation: 30 percent of rated lamp lumens.
b. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.

11. Ballasts for Tri-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
    a. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
       1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
       2) Low-Level Operation: 30 and 50 **OR** 30 and 60, **as directed**, percent of rated lamp lumens.
    b. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
    c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific tri-level control system and lamp type indicated.

C. Ballasts For Compact Fluorescent Lamps
1. Description: Electronic-programmed rapid-start type, complying with UL 935 and with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:
   a. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
   b. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
   c. Sound Rating: Class A.
   d. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
   e. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
   f. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
   g. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
   h. BF: 0.95 or higher unless otherwise indicated.
   i. Power Factor: 0.95 **OR** 0.98, **as directed**, except fixtures designated as "Residential" may use low-power-factor electronic ballasts, **as directed**, or higher.
   j. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.

D. Emergency Fluorescent Power Unit
1. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.
   a. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
   b. Nightlight Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously.
   c. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
      1) Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      2) Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
   d. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
   e. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
   f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.

g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more fluorescent lamps, remote mounted from lighting fixture. Comply with UL 924.
   a. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
   b. Nightlight Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp in a remote fixture continuously.
   c. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
   d. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
   e. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
   f. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
   g. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
   h. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
   i. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

E. Ballasts For HID Lamps
   1. Electromagnetic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
      a. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
      b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C) for single-lamp ballasts.
      c. Rated Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F (40 deg C).
      d. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
      e. Low-Noise Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard epoxy-encapsulated models designed to minimize audible fixture noise.
   2. Electronic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
      a. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 20 deg F (Minus 29 deg C) for single-lamp ballasts.
      b. Rated Ambient Operating Temperature: 130 deg F (54 deg C).
      c. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
      d. Sound Rating: Class A.
      e. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
      f. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
      g. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
      h. Power Factor: 0.90 or higher.
      i. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
      j. Protection: Class P thermal cutout.
      k. Bi-Level Dimming Ballast: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated fixture between high- and low-level and off.
         1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
         2) Low-Level Operation: 35 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent of rated lamp lumens.
         3) Compatibility: Certified by ballast manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
      l. Continuous Dimming Ballast: Dimming range shall be from 100 to 35 percent of rated lamp lumens without flicker.

1) Ballast Input Watts: Reduced to a maximum of 50 percent of normal at lowest dimming setting.

3. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type, with solid-state igniter/starter. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
   a. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
   b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C).

F. Quartz Lamp Lighting Controller
1. General Requirements for Controllers: Factory installed by lighting fixture manufacturer. Comply with UL 1598.
2. Standby (Quartz Restrike): Automatically switches quartz lamp on when a HID lamp in the fixture is initially energized and during the HID lamp restrike period after brief power outages.
3. Connections: Designed for a single branch -circuit connection.
4. Switching Off: Automatically switches quartz lamp off when HID lamp strikes.
   OR
   Switching Off: Automatically switches quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.

G. Exit Signs
1. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Internally Lighted Signs:
   a. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
      OR
      Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
   b. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
      1) Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
      2) Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
      3) Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
      4) Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      5) LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
      6) Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
      7) Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
   c. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
      1) Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply **OR** ballast **OR** battery, **as directed**, for power connection to remote unit.
      2) Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

3. Self-Luminous Signs: Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years.
   OR
   Self-Luminous Signs: Using strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Provide with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

H. Emergency Lighting Units
   1. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.
      a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
      b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
      c. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
      d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
      f. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
      g. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15 minutes when power is restored after an outage.
      h. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
      i. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

I. Fluorescent Lamps
   1. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of 48 inches (1220 mm), 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
   2. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 17 W maximum, nominal length of 24 inches (610 mm), 1300 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
   3. T5 rapid-start lamps, rated 28 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches (1150 mm), 2900 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 3000 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
   4. T5HO rapid-start, high-output lamps, rated 54 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches (1150 mm), 5000 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 4100 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Compact Fluorescent Lamps: 4-Pin, CRI 80 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, average rated life of 10,000 hours at three hours operation per start, and suitable for use with dimming ballasts, **as directed**.

J. HID Lamps
   1. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.

a. Dual-Arc Tube Lamps: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
2. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.43, with minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
3. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
4. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.
5. Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI 78.41, CRI 0, and color temperature 1800 K.

K. Lighting Fixture Support Components
1. Comply with Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
2. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
3. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
4. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
5. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
6. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
7. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

L. Retrofit Kits For Fluorescent Lighting Fixtures
1. Reflector Kit: UL 1598, Type I. Suitable for two- to four-lamp, surface-mounted or recessed lighting fixtures by improving reflectivity of fixture surfaces.
2. Ballast and Lamp Change Kit: UL 1598, Type II. Suitable for changing existing ballast, lamps, and sockets.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Lighting fixtures:
a. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
b. Install lamps in each luminaire.
2. Temporary Lighting: If it is necessary, and approved by the Owner, to use permanent luminaires for temporary lighting, install and energize the minimum number of luminaires necessary. When construction is sufficiently complete, remove the temporary luminaires, disassemble, clean thoroughly, install new lamps, and reinstall.
3. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and fixture shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.
4. Lay-in Ceiling Lighting Fixtures Supports: Use grid as a support element.
a. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, **as directed**, for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from lighting fixture corners.
b. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
c. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch (20-mm) metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
d. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
5. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
a. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.

b. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
c. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
d. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

6. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.
7. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

B. Identification
1. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

C. Field Quality Control
1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
2. Verify that self-luminous exit signs are installed according to their listing and the requirements in NFPA 101.
3. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

D. Startup Service
1. Burn-in all lamps that require specific aging period to operate properly, prior to occupancy by the Owner. Burn-in fluorescent and compact fluorescent lamps intended to be dimmed, for at least 100 hours at full voltage.

E. Adjusting
1. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting aimable luminaires to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required after dark.
a. Adjust aimable luminaires in the presence of the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 84 16 00a

SECTION 02 84 16 00b - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior lighting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
   b. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
   c. Poles and accessories.
   d. Luminaire lowering devices.

C. Definitions
1. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
2. CRI: Color-rendering index.
3. HID: High-intensity discharge.
4. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
5. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
6. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.
7. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

D. Structural Analysis Criteria For Pole Selection
1. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
2. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2224 N), distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
3. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.
4. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
   a. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 49.2 feet (15 m) in height is 100 mph (45 m/s) **OR** 90 mph (40 m/s), **as directed**.
      1) Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
      2) Minimum Design Life: 50 years.
      3) Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.
   b. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is 100 mph (45 m/s) **OR** 90 mph (40 m/s).
      1) Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
      2) Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
      3) Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
   a. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
   b. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
   c. Details of installation and construction.
   d. Luminaire materials.
   e. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.

1) Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
OR
Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

f. Photoelectric relays.
g. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
h. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
i. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
j. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
k. Anchor bolts for poles.
l. Manufactured pole foundations.

2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   b. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
   c. Design calculations, certified by a qualified professional engineer, indicating strength of screw foundations and soil conditions on which they are based.
   d. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: For products designated for sample submission in the Exterior Lighting Device Schedule. Each Sample shall include lamps and ballasts.
4. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles **OR** luminaire lowering devices, **as directed**, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
8. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
OR
Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
4. Comply with NFPA 70.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
2. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
3. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below ground line.

4. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.
5. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.
   a. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Final Completion.
   b. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Final Completion.
   c. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Final Completion.
   d. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Luminaires
1. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
   b. LER Tests Fluorescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
   c. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
2. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
3. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
4. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
5. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
6. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
7. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
8. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
9. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
10. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
    a. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
    b. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
    c. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
11. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
12. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
13. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
b. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

14. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
a. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
b. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
c. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
d. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
1) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black, **as directed**.

15. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
a. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
1) "USES ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
2) Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
3) Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
4) Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
5) ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
6) CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

B. Luminaire-Mounted Photoelectric Relays
1. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
2. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff, **as directed**.
a. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
b. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

C. Fluorescent Ballasts And Lamps
1. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
a. Temperatures 0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C) and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
b. Temperatures Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C) and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
2. Ballast Characteristics:
a. Power Factor: 90 percent, minimum.

b. Sound Rating: Class A **OR** Class A except Class B for T8/HO ballasts, **as directed**.
c. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent.
d. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1, energy-saving, high power factor, Class P, automatic-reset thermal protection.
e. Case Temperature for Compact Lamp Ballasts: 65 deg C, maximum.
f. Transient-Voltage Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.

3. Low-Temperature Lamp Capability: Rated for reliable starting and operation with ballast provided at temperatures 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) **OR** minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C), **as directed**, and higher.

D. Ballasts For HID Lamps
1. Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029 and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
a. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C).
c. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F (40 deg C).
d. Ballast Fuses: One in each ungrounded power supply conductor. Voltage and current ratings as recommended by ballast manufacturer.
2. Auxiliary, Instant-On, Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when momentary power outages occur. System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent of light output.
3. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type with solid-state igniter/starter and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
a. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
1) Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
2) Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac rms.
b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C).

E. HID Lamps
1. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), CCT color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
a. Dual-Arc Tube Lamp: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
2. Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.43.
3. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.43, with minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
4. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
5. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.

F. General Requirements For Poles And Support Components
1. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.
a. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
b. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
2. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.
3. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

a. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
b. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
c. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.

4. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws. Provide on all, except wood poles.
5. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
6. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
7. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4-M.

G. Steel Poles
1. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig (317 MPa); one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.
   a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
   b. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
2. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm **OR** Truss **OR** Davit, **as directed**, type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as pole.
3. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
   a. Adapter fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole mounted adapter, then bolted together with stainless **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel bolts.
   b. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
   c. Match pole material and finish.
4. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
5. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads, positioned for 15-inch (381-mm) vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole; first step at elevation 10 feet (3 m) above finished grade.
6. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weathertight, 3-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm) handhole located at midpoint of pole with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.
7. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
8. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported cable times a 5.0 safety factor.
9. Platform for Lamp and Ballast Servicing: Factory fabricated of steel with finish matching that of pole.
10. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
11. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
12. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
    a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

b. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
c. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

H. Aluminum Poles
1. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6 with access handhole in pole wall.
2. Poles: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 5052-H34 marine sheet alloy with access handhole in pole wall.
a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
b. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
3. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
4. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
5. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, with pole and adapter fittings of cast aluminum. Adapter fitting welded to pole and bracket, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
a. Tapered oval cross section, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
b. Finish: Same as pole **OR** luminaire, **as directed**.
6. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
7. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
a. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
b. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
c. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
d. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
1) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

I. Fiberglass Poles
1. Poles: Designed specifically for supporting luminaires, with factory-formed cable entrance and handhole. Not less than 65 percent fiberglass, with resin and pigment making up the remainder.
a. Resin Color: Dark bronze; provide uniform coloration throughout entire wall thickness.
b. Surface Finish: Pigmented polyurethane, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Polyurethane may be omitted if the surface layer of pole is inherently UV inhibited.

J. Decorative Poles
1. Pole Material:
a. Cast ductile iron.
b. Cast gray iron, according to ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30.
c. Cast aluminum.
d. Cast concrete.

e. Spun concrete.
f. Steel tube, covered with closed-cell polyurethane foam, with a polyethylene exterior.

2. Mounting Provisions:
   a. Bolted to concrete foundation.
   b. Embedded.
3. Fixture Brackets:
   a. Cast ductile iron.
   b. Cast gray iron.
   c. Cast aluminum.
4. Pole Finish: as directed by the Owner .

K. Laminated Wood Poles
1. Species and Grades for Structural Glulam Timber: Engineer and fabricate structural laminated wood poles, complying with ANSI A190.1. Use southern pine **OR** Douglas fir **OR** Alaska cedar **OR** any species listed in AITC 117, **as directed**, to withstand indicated structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stresses according to AITC 117.
2. Features: Include wood bracket **OR** wood crossarm **OR** pole-top adapter, **as directed**, for mounting luminaire(s), metal pole cap, **as directed**, and concealed raceway path connected to access handhole.
3. Mounting Provisions: Embedded.
4. Appearance Grade: Architectural appearance grade complying with AITC 110.
5. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat lumber before gluing according to AWPA C28 for waterborne preservatives. After dressing and end-cutting each member to final size and shape, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
6. Adhesive: Wet-use type complying with ASTM D 2559.
7. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
8. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.
9. Finish: Natural, unstained wood **OR** Semitransparent stain applied after erection **OR** Semitransparent stain applied at factory, **as directed**, color as selected.

L. Wood Poles
1. Poles: Douglas fir **OR** Southern yellow pine, **as directed**, machine trimmed by turning, **as directed**, complying with ANSI O5.1 and with AWPA C4 for wood species used; and bored, roofed, and gained before treatment.
   a. Mounting Provisions: Embedded.
2. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat poles with creosote **OR** pentachlorophenol **OR** ammoniacal copper arsenate, **as directed**, according to AWPA C1 and AWPA C4.
3. Luminaire Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.13.

M. Prestressed Concrete Poles
1. Poles: Manufactured by centrifugal spin-casting process **OR** of cast concrete, **as directed**.
   a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
   b. Mounting Provisions: Steel butt flange for bolted mounting to foundation or breakaway support **OR** Embedded, **as directed**.
   c. Finishing: Capped at top and plugged at bottom. Seat each steel reinforcing strand with epoxy adhesive.
   d. Grounding: Continuous copper ground wire cast into pole. Terminate at top of pole and attach to 24-inch (610-mm) lightning rod, **as directed**.
2. Cure with wet steam and age for a minimum of 15 days before installation.
3. Fabricate poles with a hard, nonporous surface that is resistant to water, frost, and road and soil chemicals and that has a maximum water-absorption rate of 3 percent.

4. Cast aluminum nameplate into pole wall at approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) above ground line, listing name of manufacturer, Project identifier, overall height, and approximate weight.
5. Pole Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.13.
6. Finish Color: Provided by color material complying with ASTM C 979, uniformly impregnated throughout the pole concrete. Color material shall provide a uniform, stable, permanent color and be as follows:
   a. Inert, and carbon free.
   b. Unaffected by environmental conditions and contaminants including, but not limited to, UV solar radiation, salts, and alkalis.
7. Finish Texture: Standard form **OR** Polished exposed aggregate **OR** Etched exposed aggregate, **as directed**.
   a. Exposed aggregate shall be of **Aggregate type selected from manufacturers' lists** as directed by the Owner type.

N. Pole Accessories
1. Duplex Receptacle: 120 V, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly complying with Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for ground-fault circuit-interrupter type.
   a. Surface mounted **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, 12 inches (300 mm) above finished grade.
   b. Nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, weatherproof in use, cover, that when mounted results in NEMA 250, Type 3R **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**, enclosure.
   c. With cord opening.
   d. With lockable hasp and latch that complies with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
2. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
3. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.
4. Transformer Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and accept ballast(s) **OR** indicated accessories, **as directed**.
5. Decorative accessories, supplied by decorative pole manufacturer, include the following:
   a. Banner Arms: as directed by the Owner .
   b. Flag Holders: as directed by the Owner .
   c. Ladder Rests: as directed by the Owner .

O. Lowering System For Luminaires
1. Arrange system to lower luminaire **OR** luminaire assembly, **as directed**, to a servicing position within 36 inches (900 mm) of finished grade in winds up to 30 mph (49 km/h) and to provide for manual plug connection to electrical power in the lowered position for testing.
2. Coordinate with luminaire and pole manufacturers for assembly details, wind-load and vibration analysis, and compatibility of materials for electrolysis-free attachment and connection for luminaire mounting assembly, lowering device, lowering cable, and portable winch.
3. Structural and Mechanical Design: Use a minimum safety factor of 5.0 for static and dynamic loads of load-bearing components, including cable.
4. Luminaire Mounting and Disconnect Arrangement: Multiple ring **OR** carriage, **as directed**,-mounted luminaires, arranged for lowering and rising as a group.
   a. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires manually disconnects inside pole base, using weatherproof multipin connector, and shall be arranged to move within the pole during lowering and rising of luminaire assembly.
      OR
      Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires automatically disconnects at a weatherproof multipin connector within the pole-top lowering head at the beginning of the lowering cycle and reconnects when luminaire or luminaire assembly is raised to the operating position.
5. Lowering Device: Weatherproof, cast-aluminum housing and multiple mechanical latches. Moving parts of latching assembly shall be located in the portion of the unit that is lowered to the servicing position. Positive latching in the operating position shall be indicated to the operator at the base of the pole by a clear visual signal, or by other means acceptable to the Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

6. Lowering Cable: Zinc-electroplated- or stainless-steel aircraft cable.
7. Portable Winch: Manual **OR** 120-V electric, **as directed**, type. One required.
   a. Winch Power Connection: Cord and plug.
   b. Winch Raise-Lower Control: Remote-control station with 15 feet (5 m) of cable.
8. Winch Transformer: Portable, totally enclosed, encapsulated, single-phase, dry type. Primary rated at lighting-circuit voltage; secondary rated at 120 V. Permanent, primary and secondary, twist-locking plug connectors on pigtails shall match pole-base power outlet and winch plug.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Luminaire Installation
   1. Install lamps in each luminaire.
   2. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
      a. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
   3. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation, **as directed**.

B. Pole Installation
   1. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
   2. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
      a. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: 60 inches (1520 mm).
      b. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet (3 m).
      c. Trees: 15 feet (5 m) from tree trunk.
   3. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
   4. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
      a. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
      b. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
      c. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
      d. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
   5. Embedded Poles with Tamped Earth Backfill: Set poles to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
      a. Dig holes large enough to permit use of tampers in the full depth of hole.
      b. Backfill in 6-inch (150-mm) layers and thoroughly tamp each layer so compaction of backfill is equal to or greater than that of undisturbed earth.
   6. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
      a. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
      b. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
      c. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
      d. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
   7. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent

concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.

8. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

C. Bollard Luminaire Installation
   1. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
   2. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

D. Installation Of Individual Ground-Mounting Luminaires
   1. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

E. Corrosion Prevention
   1. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
   2. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

F. Grounding
   1. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
      a. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
   2. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
      a. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
      b. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
      c. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.

G. Field Quality Control
   1. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
   2. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
      a. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
   3. Illumination Tests:
      a. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
         1) IESNA LM-5, "Photometric Measurements of Area and Sports Lighting Installations."
         2) IESNA LM-50, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Lighting Installations."
         3) IESNA LM-52, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Sign Installations."
         4) IESNA LM-64, "Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas."
         5) IESNA LM-72, "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data."
   4. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

H. Demonstration
   1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaire lowering devices.

END OF SECTION 02 84 16 00b

SECTION 02 84 33 00 - OVERHEAD ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for overhead electrical distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Conductors, connectors, and splices.
   b. Poles and crossarms.
   c. Hardware and accessories.
   d. Surge arresters.
   e. Cutouts, switches, and fuses.
   f. Pole-mounted distribution transformers.
   g. Primary metering equipment.

C. Definitions
1. BIL: Basic impulse level, stated in kilovolts.
2. RUS: Department of Agriculture, Rural Utilities Service.
3. Sag: The distance measured vertically from a conductor to the straight line joining its two points of support, measured at the midpoint of the span, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Final Sag: The sag of a conductor under specified conditions of loading and temperature applied after it has been subjected, for an appreciable period, to the loading prescribed for the loading district in which it is situated, or equivalent loading, and the loading removed. Final sag includes the effect of inelastic deformation (creep).
   b. Initial Unloaded Sag: The sag of a conductor before the application of an external load.
4. Secondary: Conductors and components for circuits operating at the utilization voltage of 600 V or less.
5. Service: Set of insulated conductors extending from a pole to the metering point or service entrance connection at the location of utilization of electricity.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Qualification Data: For qualified manufacturer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
3. Material Certificates: For the following items, from manufacturers:
   a. Wood poles.
   b. Concrete poles.
   c. Wood crossarms.
4. Listing Documentation: Indicate that products comply with RUS listing requirements specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
   a. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Illustrate optimum coordination of protective devices involved in the Work of this Section.
   b. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switches **OR** transformers, **as directed**, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
7. Survey records for locations of pole, anchors, and other features for inclusion in Project Record Documents.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Concrete Pole Manufacturer Qualifications: Certified by PCI as a qualified manufacturer of concrete utility poles of type and size indicated for this Project.
2. Inspection Agency Qualifications for Pole and Crossarm Inspection: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified to conduct inspections indicated.
3. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
4. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA or an NRTL.
5. Treatment Technician Qualifications for Field Treatment of Wood Poles and Crossarms: Certified by authorities having jurisdiction over environmental protection at the location of Project for field application of chemicals required.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
7. Overhead-Line Components, Devices, and Accessories: Currently listed in RUS Informational Publication 202-1 without restriction for the intended application.
8. Comply with IEEE C2 **OR** CPUC General Order 95, **as directed**, except where stricter requirements are indicated or where local requirements that are stricter apply.
9. Strength of Line and Line Components Selected by Contractor: Provide grades of construction and strength required by IEEE C2 for conditions encountered at Project site for heavy **OR** medium **OR** light, **as directed**, line loading unless otherwise indicated.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Wood Pole Storage and Handling: Comply with ATIS O5.1. Do not use pointed handling tools capable of producing indentations greater than 1 inch (25 mm).

G. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
   b. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

H. Coordination
1. Coordinate with utility supplying electricity to lines specified in this Section, and make final connections **OR** arrangements for final connections by utility, **as directed**.
2. Coordinate with those responsible for voice **OR** data **OR** video, **as directed**, systems that will have cables supported by poles installed according to this Section.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Conductors, Connectors, And Splices
1. Conductor Type AAC: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, all-aluminum, Alloy 1350-H19, complying with ASTM B 230/B 230M and ASTM B 231/B 231M.
   OR
   Conductor Type AAAC: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, all-aluminum-alloy, Alloy 6201-T81, complying with ASTM B 398/B 398M and ASTM B 399/B 399M.
   OR
   Conductor Type ACSR: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, aluminum conductor, steel reinforced, complying with ASTM B 232/B 232M.
   OR
   Conductor Type CU: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8.
2. Conductor Covering: UV resistant, complying with ICEA-S-70-547. HDPE **OR** XLP, **as directed**, 150 mils (3.81 mm) thick.

3. Self-Supported, Multiconductor, Insulated Medium-Voltage Wiring: Factory-assembled, messenger-supported type, listed under UL 1072 as sunlight-resistant Type MV cable for cable tray use.
   a. Conductors: Aluminum, Alloy 1350, complying with ASTM B 230/B 230M and ASTM B 231/B 231M **OR** Hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8, **as directed**; stranded for No. 2 AWG and larger.
   b. Conductor Insulation: XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 **OR** EPR, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658, **as directed**.
   c. Insulation Level: 100 **OR** 133, **as directed**, percent of rated circuit line-to-line voltage.
   d. Conductor Shield: Extruded, nonconducting, thermoset material, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658; 18-mil (0.046-mm) minimum thickness.
   e. Insulation Shield: Include the following two components:
      1) Nonmetallic conducting, material complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1072, extruded over, and free stripping from the insulation.
      2) Metallic Tape Shield: Bare copper, 5-mil (0.127-mm) minimum thickness, helically applied with a 15 percent minimum overlap.
   f. Conductor Jacket: Extruded, chlorosulfonated-polyethylene-based material, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
   g. Messenger: Copper **OR** Composite copper and copper, **as directed**,-clad steel.
   h. Conductor Support Strap: Copper strap, wound around conductors and messenger the full length of the cable.
4. Secondary-Voltage Line Conductors: Aluminum conductor, steel **reinforced**, complying with ASTM B 232/B 232M **OR** Covered aluminum conductor, steel reinforced, complying with ICEA S-70-547, with HDPE or XLP covering, **as directed**, 60 mils (1.52 mm) thick.
   OR
   Secondary-Voltage Line Conductors: Bare hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8 **OR** Covered hard-drawn copper, complying with ICEA S-70-547, with HDPE or XLP covering, **as directed**, 60 mils (1.52 mm) thick. Neutral-supported, secondary service-drop cable, **as directed**.
   OR
   Racked Secondary Conductors, 600 V and Less: Copper, insulated with XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658, **as directed**.
5. Neutral-Supported, Secondary Service-Drop Cable, 600 V and Less: Insulated conductors with bare neutral, complying with ICEA S-76-474, and using the following combination of materials:
   a. Conductors and Neutral: Copper with copper-clad-steel neutral **OR** Aluminum with bare Alloy 1350 aluminum neutral **OR** Aluminum with ACSR neutral, **as directed**.
   b. Insulation: XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 **OR** High-modular-weight, low-density polyethylene **OR** Weather-resistant polyolefin, complying with ICEA S-70-547, **as directed**.
6. Connectors, Splices, and Conductor Securing and Protecting Components: Items include wire clamps, ties, conductor armor, fittings, connectors, and terminals. Listed for the specific applications and conductor types and combinations of materials used. Descriptions as follows for various applications:
   a. Copper to Copper: Copper alloy, complying with UL 486A-486B.
   b. Aluminum Composition to Aluminum Composition: Aluminum alloy, complying with UL 486A-486B.
   c. Copper to Aluminum Composition: Type suitable for this purpose, complying with UL 486A-486B.
   d. Connectors and Splices for Secondary Conductors: Listed and labeled for the conditions and materials involved in each application.
   e. Taps for Medium-Voltage Line Conductors: Hot-line clamps, screw type, with concealed threads and bare, hard-drawn copper stirrups. Listed for the combination of materials being connected.
   f. Splices under Tension: Compression type with strength exceeding the conductors spliced.

g. Splices and Terminations for Covered Conductors: As recommended by conductor manufacturer for conductor and covering combination and for specific materials and physical arrangement of each splice.
h. Splices and Terminations for Insulated Medium-Voltage Conductors: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Cables".

B. Wood Poles
1. Comply with ATIS O5.1 and RUS Bulletin 1728F-700, for wood poles pressure treated with creosote **OR** pentachlorophenol, **as directed**, **OR** ammoniacal copper arsenate, **OR** ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate **OR** chromated copper arsenate, **as directed**.
2. Wood Species: Douglas fir **OR** Lodgepole pine **OR** Western larch **OR** Southern yellow pine, **as directed**.
3. Pole Marking:
a. Manufacturer's Mark: Comply with ATIS O5.1; locate 10 feet (3 m) from the pole butt for poles 50 feet (15 m) long or less.
b. Pole Number: Machine-embossed aluminum, alphanumeric characters not less than 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) high, with aluminum nails.
4. Factory Operations: Machine trim poles by turning smooth, full length. Roof, gain, and bore poles before pressure treatment.

C. Concrete Poles
1. Description: Spuncast prestressed concrete, complying with requirements of ASTM C 1089.
a. Comply with requirements of RUS Bulletin 1724E-216.
2. Design: Base design on calculation of strength required by IEEE C2 or indicated on Drawings, whichever is greater. Design shall be suitable for installation at a location where annual temperature range is between minus 4 deg F and plus 100 deg F (minus 20 deg C and plus 38 deg C). Include pole design for embedded attachments matching fittings, brackets, and other items installed in the field.
3. Shaft: Hollow, for poles at overhead-to-underground connections. Provide 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) minimum cable raceway capacity, with conduit elbow **OR** cable entry port, **as directed**, at base.
4. Water Absorption: Not more than 3 percent.
5. Surface: Smooth, hard, nonporous, and resistant to soil acids **OR** road salts **OR** frost and freezing damage, **as directed**.
6. Pole Marking:
a. Manufacturer's Mark: Comply with ATIS O5.1; locate 10 feet (3 m) from the pole butt for poles 50 feet (15 m) long or less.
b. Pole Number: Machine-embossed aluminum, alphanumeric characters not less than 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) high.

D. Crossarms
1. Description: Solid-wood distribution type, complying with RUS Bulletin 1728H-701 for specified construction grade **OR** Galvanized, steel angles, **as directed**, and complying with IEEE C2 for required climbing space and wire clearances.
2. Braces: Galvanized, flat, ferrous-metal units; 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 1-1/4 inches (30 mm) wide, minimum, with length to suit crossarm dimensions.

E. Guys And Anchors
1. Guy Strand Assemblies: Cable and attachment assemblies shall have uniform minimum breaking strength of the cable.
2. Cable: Seven strands. Zinc-coated steel, complying with ASTM A 475 **OR** Aluminum-clad steel, complying with ASTM B 416 **OR** Copper-clad steel, complying with ASTM B 228, **as directed**. Breaking strength shall be not less than 10,000 lb (45 kN).
3. Cable Termination:
1) Thimble eye.
OR

Hooks and guy strain plates, complying with IEEE C135.1.
2) Preformed galvanized-steel guy grips, matching material, galvanizing, and strength of the guy strand assembly.

4. Anchor and Anchor-Rod Assemblies: Hot-dip galvanized steel.
   a. Power-installed screw-type anchors.
      1) 15-inch (380-mm) screw; with rod 96 inches (2400 mm) long by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter. Rated at 10,000 lb (45 kN) when installed.
      2) Guy anchors shall have strength and holding area as required for anchor load and soil conditions at location of that anchor.
5. Strain Insulators: Epoxy-bonded fiberglass of length to meet clearance requirements specified in "Guy Installation" Article.
6. Guy Markers: Round, of vinyl or PVC material, white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, color, 96 inches (2440 mm) long. Shatter resistant at temperatures below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).

F. Hardware And Accessories
1. Description: Ferrous-metal items include, but are not limited to, bolts, nuts, washers, crossarm gains and braces, insulator pins, anchor rods, anchors, eyebolts, staples, and transformer brackets.
   a. Comply with IEEE C135.1, IEEE C135.2, ANSI C135.4, ANSI C135.22, and RUS Informational Publication 202-1 listings with the exception that base material shall be malleable iron or ductile iron, and finish shall be hot-dip galvanized, **as directed**.
2. Insulator Brackets: Hot-dip galvanized steel, style as indicated, designed to hold vertical-post-type or pin-type insulators, with one **OR** two, **as directed**,-bolt attachment to pole.
3. Secondary Insulator Racks: Hot-dip galvanized steel, style as indicated, with smooth, rounded 12-gage struts designed to support two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, spool insulators for attachment of secondary drop conductors. Spool spacing of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**.
4. Pole Riser Shields: Galvanized steel with boot **OR** backplate **OR** vent, **as directed**.
5. Padlocks: ASTM F 883.
   a. Class: PO1 **OR** PO2, **as directed**.
   b. Grade: 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4 **OR** 5 **OR** 6, **as directed**.
   c. Option: A **OR** B **OR** C **OR** D **OR** E **OR** F **OR** G, **as directed**.
6. Insulators: Units rated 6 kV and above shall be free from radio interference.
   a. Porcelain insulators shall be wet-process type, complying with the following:
      1) Pin: ANSI C29.5.
      2) Line Post: ANSI C29.7. Include mounting stud of length suitable for each mounting arrangement used.
      3) Suspension: ANSI C29.2.
      4) Guy Strain: ANSI C29.4.
      5) Secondary Spool: ANSI C29.3, Class 53-2.
   b. Polymer-composite, fiberglass-reinforced insulators shall comply with the following:
      1) Line Post: CEA LWIWG-02.
      2) Dead End/Suspension: CEA LWIWG-01.
      3) Guy Strain: Fiberglass reinforced, epoxy finished. Designed specifically for use in guy assemblies.
7. Grounding Materials: Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", using materials listed by RUS for the intended purpose without restriction.
   a. Conductors: No. 4 AWG, minimum; bare, solid, annealed copper, complying with ASTM B 8 unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Ground Conductor Protectors: PVC or half-round wood molding, fir, pressure treated according to AWPA C25 **OR** cypress **OR** cedar, **as directed**.

G. Surge Arresters
1. Distribution-Class Surge Arresters: Porcelain **OR** Polymer, **as directed**,-enclosed, gapless, metal-oxide type with automatic-indicating type, ground-lead disconnection feature, **as directed**, complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.

2. Intermediate-Class Surge Arresters: Porcelain **OR** Polymer, **as directed**,-enclosed, gapless, metal-oxide type, complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.
   a. Voltage Rating: 3 **OR** 6 **OR** 9 **OR** 10 **OR** 12 **OR** 15 **OR** 27 **OR** 30 **OR** 36, **as directed**, kV, at the altitude of Project, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Cutouts, Switches, And Fuses
1. Description: Medium-voltage disconnect, protective, and bypass, **as directed**, units shall be rated for the line-to-line voltage of the systems in which installed, unless higher ratings are indicated. BIL ratings are 45 **OR** 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, kV.
   a. Momentary Current Rating of Switching Devices: 20 **OR** 40, **as directed**, kA, asymmetrical at nominal system operating voltage.
   b. Fuse Characteristics: Time-current characteristics for each set of fuses selected according to written recommendations of manufacturer of component protected by the fuses and coordinated with upstream and downstream protective devices. Prepare time-current coordination curves according to IEEE 242 that illustrate optimum coordination of devices in this Project.
   c. Interrupting Rating of Fuses: **Value** as directed by the Owner symmetrical A at nominal system operating voltage.
2. Fuse Cutouts: Open **OR** enclosed, **as directed**, type, rated 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, A, continuous, complying with ANSI C37.42.
   a. Fuses: Enclosed link, Type K **OR** Type T, **as directed**, complying with ANSI C37.42.
   b. Fuse Current Rating: 150 percent of the transformer full-load current unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Switching Application: Include switch link instead of fuse.
   d. Switch Current Interrupting Rating: Transformer magnetizing current.
3. Fused Switches: Single-pole, manual units.
   a. Switch Rating: 400 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-A rms continuous and load-current interrupting.
   b. Fuses: Dropout-type power fuses.
4. Nonfused Switches: Single-pole, manual units, rated 100 **OR** 200 **OR** 400 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-A rms continuous.
5. Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches: Fused **OR** Nonfused, **as directed**, three-pole, single-throw units, manually operated by handle through insulated mechanical linkage.
   a. High-pressure contact type, complying with ANSI C37.32.
   b. Factory assembled to suit specific configuration and mounting conditions for this Project.
   c. Operating Handle: Padlock equipped.
   d. Current Interrupting Rating: Equal to continuous current rating of switch.
   e. Fuses: Nondropout power type.
6. Group-Operated, Air-Break (Nonloadbreak) Switches: Three-pole, single-throw units, manually operated by handle through insulated mechanical linkage.
   a. Comply with ANSI C37.32.
   b. Factory assembled to suit specific configuration and mounting conditions for this Project.
   c. Operating Handle: Padlock equipped.
   d. Suitable for field conversion to load-interrupter switch by adding interrupter modules.

I. Distribution Transformers
1. Description: Single-phase, two-winding, single **OR** two, **as directed**,-bushing, liquid-filled, self-cooled, pole-mounting distribution type, suitable for external fuse and surge suppressor protection; complying with IEEE C 57.12.00, and tested according to IEEE C 57.12.90 and with the following additional requirements, **as directed**:
   a. Cooling Class: OA.
   b. Temperature Rise: 65 deg C.
   c. Insulating Liquid: Mineral oil, ASTM D 3487, Type II.
      OR
      Insulating Liquid: High molecular weight, mineral oil based, and UL listed as less-flammable type.

OR

Insulating Liquid: Biodegradable insulating and cooling liquid, UL listed as less flammable type.

d. Identification: Label the transformer as "non-PCB" and place manufacturer's name and type of fluid on the nameplate.

2. BIL: 95 **OR** 75 **OR** 60, **as directed**, kV.
3. Taps: Two, 2.5 percent above and below **OR** Four, 2.5 percent below, **as directed**, high-voltage and full-load rated. Tap changer shall have an external operating handle, **as directed**.
4. Mounting Brackets: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, integral; suitable for pole mounting, individually or in cluster, or on crossarm.
5. Minimum Efficiency: Class 1, as defined by NEMA TP 1, based on test results that comply with requirements of NEMA TP 2.
6. Bushings: Creepage distance shall exceed nominal value standard for unit rating by at least 75 percent.
7. Hardware: Stainless steel.
8. Tank and Cover: Stainless steel, complying with ASTM A 167, Type 304 or 304L, with paint coating exterior finish system complying with IEEE C57.12.28, including manufacturer's standard color finish coat.
9. Show transformer kiloampere capacity using 2-1/2-inch (65-mm) numerals placed near the low-voltage bushings.

J. Primary Metering Equipment

1. Metering Transformers: Outdoor current and potential transformers, designed for crossarm mounting, complying with IEEE C57.13, and having the following features:
   a. BIL: 45 **OR** 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, kV.
   b. Secondary connection box arranged for conduit connection.
   c. Potential-Transformer Voltage Rating: 2.4 **OR** 4.16 **OR** 7.2 **OR** 12.0 **OR** 12.47, **as directed**, kV to 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
   d. Potential-Transformer Accuracy Class: Minimum 0.3 at 75-VA burden.
   e. Voltage Rating: 2.4 **OR** 4.16 **OR** 7.2 **OR** 12.0 **OR** 12.47, **as directed**, kV.
   f. Current Rating: as directed by the Owner to 5 A.
   g. Accuracy Class: Minimum 0.2 at 50-VA burden.
2. Watt-Hour Meter: Outdoor solid-state unit, with demand register, **OR** arranged for pulse initiation, **as directed**, complying with ANSI C12.10, and including the following ratings and features:
   a. Form: 8S **OR** 9S, **as directed**.
   b. Element: 2 **OR** 2-1/2 **OR** 3, **as directed**.
   c. Voltage: 120 V.
   d. Current: 2-1/2 A.
   e. Frequency: 60 Hz.
   f. Kilowatt-Hour Register: Five-digit type.
   g. Demand-Register Multiplier: A quantity in even hundreds, indicated on meter face.
   h. Demand-Register Interval: 15 **OR** 30, **as directed**, minutes.
   i. Mounting: On matching socket, complying with ANSI C12.7, and complete with automatic current short-circuiting device.
   j. Meter Test Block: Matched to meter, and furnished and equipped with open knife switches designed to isolate each metering component for test.
   k. Meter Cabinet: Galvanized steel; weatherproof enclosure with pole-mounting bracket and the following features:
      1) Hinged Door: Arranged for padlocking in closed position.
      2) Size: Adequate to house meter and other equipment indicated, but not less than 20 by 30 by 11 inches (510 by 760 by 280 mm) deep.

K. Source Quality Control

1. Factory Tests: Conduct routine tests of transformers **OR** medium-voltage switches **OR** metering equipment, **as directed**, according to referenced standards.

2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to inspect poles and crossarms before and after preservative treatment for compliance of wood poles and crossarms with requirements indicated. RUS quality mark "WQC" on each item is acceptable in place of inspection as evidence of compliance.
3. Poles and crossarms will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Right-Of-Way Clearance And Tree Trimming
1. Clear right of way according to Division 01 Section(s) "Temporary Tree And Plant Protection" AND Division 31 Section(s) "Site Clearing".
2. Clear right of way to maintain minimum clearances required by IEEE C2, unless Drawings indicate greater clearances or greater clearances are required by state or local codes or regulations. If no minimum requirements are mandated, maintain a minimum of 15 feet (4.5 m) on both sides horizontally and below medium-voltage conductors and 60 inches (1500 mm) on both sides horizontally and below secondary-voltage conductors. Remove overhanging branches.

B. General Installation Requirements
1. Install underground power and metering circuits and those circuits indicated to be in raceways according to Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems" and Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Cables", and make splices and terminations for those circuits according to the applicable Sections.
2. Engage the services of a licensed surveyor to verify dimensions by field measurement, to identify locations of poles, anchors, and other features, and to verify all clearances. The survey document shall also identify locations of connections to new and existing supply lines and to primary and secondary services. Notify the Owner of discrepancies and field conditions that are not indicated and that will affect installation.
3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Apply warning signs and equipment labels according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

C. Conductor Installation, General
1. Handle and string conductors to prevent cuts, gouges, scratches, kinks, flattening, or deformation. Remove damaged sections and splice conductors.
   a. String new conductors to "initial" sag values recommended by manufacturer for type and size of conductor except as otherwise indicated.
   b. Conductors Reinstalled or Resagged: String to "final" sag values recommended by manufacturer for type and size of conductor except as otherwise indicated.
2. Connections, Splices, and Terminations: Use kits listed for the specific type of connection and combination of materials in the connection or recommended for the specific use by manufacturer of material on which applied.
   a. Splice Location: Do not install within 10 feet (3 m) of a support.
   b. Line Conductors and Service Drops: Install so strength exceeds ultimate rated strength of conductor.
   c. Splices and Terminations of Covered Conductors: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   d. Splices and Terminations of Insulated Conductors of Self-Supported, Medium-Voltage Cable: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Medium-Voltage Line Conductor Installation
1. Application: Install bare conductors unless otherwise indicated.

2. Armor Rod: Install to protect conductors if line conductors are supported by insulators.
3. Flat Aluminum Armor Wire: Install to protect conductors if they are supported by, or attached to, galvanized or coated iron or steel clamps or fittings.
4. Support line conductors and taps as follows:
   a. Use wire ties for conductor attachment to pin and vertical post insulators unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Install wire ties tight against conductor and insulator, and turn ends back and flat against conductor, to eliminate exposed wire ends.
   c. Use wire clamps on horizontal post, dead end, and suspension insulators unless otherwise indicated.

E. Pole And Crossarm Installation
1. Pole Orientation: Align curve of curved wood poles with straight-line runs of three or more poles. Align gained surfaces perpendicular to runs.
2. Elevation of Line above Grade: Install poles with top at same elevation, unless grade changes dictate elevation change in poles, and according to the following:
   a. On level ground, set poles so tops of consecutive poles vary not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) in elevation.
   b. Shorten wood poles by cutting off the top and make cuts to shed water. Apply preservative to cuts.
3. Set poles according to the following:
   a. Make pole holes vertical, uniform in diameter, and large enough to permit effective use of tamping bars all around. Bore or excavate holes with an average diameter at grade less than twice the diameter of the pole at the same grade.
   b. Use minimum depths indicated, except at locations where hole is partly or entirely in rock and if hole is not vertical or has a diameter at grade more than two times the pole diameter at the same level; in these conditions, increase the depth of the hole by the following increments before setting the pole:
      1) Poles up to 35 Feet (10.6 m) Long: 24 inches (600 mm).
      2) Poles 36 to 60 Feet (11 to 18.3 m) Long: 30 inches (760 mm).
      3) Poles 61 to 75 Feet (18.6 to 22.9 m) Long: 36 inches (900 mm).
   c. For poles on slopes, indicated hole depth is from finished grade at lowest side of hole.
   d. Set poles in alignment and plumb except at dead ends, angles, and points of extra strain; rake poles against conductor strain 1 inch (25 mm) minimum, 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, (after conductors are installed at required tension) for each 10 feet (3 m) of pole length. Rake poles so they will not lean or bend in direction of strain when loaded.
   e. Backfill holes in 6-inch (150-mm) maximum lifts, and thoroughly tamp each layer before starting the next.
   f. Place surplus earth around pole in a conical shape, and tamp thoroughly to provide drainage away from pole.
   g. Set poles so alternate crossarm gains face in alternate directions, except at terminals and dead ends; place gains on last two poles on side facing terminal or dead end.
   h. Poles Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
4. Field treat factory-treated poles and crossarms as follows:
   a. Poles Treated More Than One Year before Installation: Treat portion from 24 inches (600 mm) above ground line to butt.
   b. Field-Bored Holes and Field-Cut Gains and Pole Tops: Treat cut portions.
   c. Unused Holes: Treat and plug with treated-wood-dowel drive pins.
   d. Engage the services of a technician certified according to "Quality Assurance" Article to apply treatment. Comply with requirements in AWPA standards that govern original factory treatment for field-applied treatment and application of chemicals.
5. Crossarm Installation: Set line crossarms at right angle to line for straight runs and for angles 45 degrees and more. Bisect angles less than 45 degrees.
   a. Buck Arms: Install at corners and junction poles unless otherwise indicated.

b. Double Crossarms: Install at dead ends, corners, angles, and line crossings.
c. Equipment Arms: Locate below lines and set parallel or at right angles to them, whichever provides best climbing space.
d. Gains: Install factory-cut or metal-pole gains only. Do not cut gains in field without specific written approval.

6. Locate pole numbers to provide maximum visibility from the road or patrol route.

F. Guy Installation
1. Install guys to resist unbalanced loads, including those developed at angles, corners, and dead ends. Install two or more guys if a single guy will not provide adequate strength. Install separate guys if unbalanced loads are separated by 36 inches (900 mm) or more. Comply with IEEE C2.
a. Unless a thimble eye is used, at the pole end, install a minimum of two guy hooks and two guy strain plates.
b. At the anchor end, attach guy strand assembly with preformed grips.
2. Protect guy strands from damage. Replace damaged guy strands. Install guy insulators where required to comply with IEEE C2 clearance requirements.
3. Install guys with a lead-to-height ratio of 1 to 1 unless otherwise indicated. The minimum lead-to-height ratio shall be 1/2 to 1. When less than 1 to 1, increase guy strength by the ratio of the sine of the lead angle indicated to the sine of the lead angle provided.
4. Install screw-type guy anchors aligned in soil with guy. Set with anchor rod pointing at guy attachment on pole and rod projecting 6 to 9 inches (150 to 230 mm) from ground.
5. Install strain insulators to provide a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) of clearance between the nearest energized surface and the strain insulator fitting farthest from the pole. When loaded to the tension indicated, fiberglass strain insulators shall be loaded to not more than two-thirds of manufacturer's published rating.
6. Guy Markers: Install at anchor end of guys to visually mark the guy wire at all accessible locations. Clamp to guy strand or anchor at top and bottom of marker.

G. Hardware And Accessories Installation
1. Install washers against wood and under nuts, including eyenuts and locknuts.
2. Install nuts and locknuts wrench-tight on threaded connections.

H. Insulator Installation
1. Medium-Voltage Line Application: Install pin **OR** post, **as directed**, type, except install suspension type at corners, angles, dead ends, and other locations where horizontal forces exceed rated values for pin or line-post-type units.
a. Install suspension insulators and hardware that have mechanical strength exceeding rated breaking strength of attached conductors.
b. Install horizontal line-post insulators for armless construction.
2. Post-Insulator Conductor Support: Where installed horizontally and for line angles more than 15 degrees, install clamp-top conductor clamps.
3. Install spool-type insulators for secondary lines mounted on clevis attachments or secondary racks.
4. Guy Strain Type: Install porcelain **OR** fiberglass-reinforced, **as directed**, units.

I. Surge Arresters
1. Install surge arresters to protect distribution **OR** metering equipment **OR** reclosers, **as directed**, group-operated, load-interrupter switches, **as directed**, aerial-to-underground transitions, **as directed**, and other items indicated.
a. Units Installed 6000 Feet (1800 m) or More above Sea Level: Use arresters specifically rated for this service.

J. Cutout, Switch, And Fuse Installation
1. Hook-Stick-Operated Switches: Install to maximize safe operating access.

2. Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches and Air-Break Switches: Install operating handle 42 inches (1067 mm) above finished grade.
   a. Locking Provisions: Install padlock at hasp.

K. Metering Component Installation
1. Current and Voltage Transformers: Install secondary conductors between transformers and cabinet in sleeves made of galvanized rigid steel **OR** intermediate metal **OR** PVC, **as directed**, conduit. Install to prevent collection of moisture in raceway and cabinet system.
2. Meter Cabinet: Mount on pole, 72 inches (1825 mm) above finished grade to center of cabinet.
   a. Make conduit connections with raintight hubs.
   b. Install metering transformer secondary leads without splices. Train leads at sides and bottom of enclosure, and secure with wire ties.
   c. Install meter and meter test block within cabinet.
   d. Install identical phase sequence, and color-code for both potential and current leads.
   e. Identify leads using designations consistent with marking on transformer terminals.

L. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Perform tests and inspections.
3. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Furnish instruments and equipment required for tests that comply with NETA Acceptance Testing Specification.
   b. Guy Anchors: Test one of each type and capacity installed, plus additional units specifically indicated for testing, **as directed**. Apply rated pull-out force in the same pull direction applied by the guy at the test location.
      1) Acceptable Test Results: Denoted by movement of less than 3/8 inch (10 mm) by the holding component of the anchor in the earth or other medium in which it is installed.
      2) Replace or reinstall, at the Owner 's option, all anchors of same type and capacity as anchor type that fails this test.
   c. Ground Resistance: Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems". Measure resistance of each separate grounding electrode, including pole grounds. Also measure resistance of separate grounding electrode systems before bonding together.
      1) Perform tests and obtain acceptable results before energizing any portion of overhead electrical distribution system.
      2) Results and Follow-up: If ground resistance for a single ground electrode or pole ground, tested individually, exceeds 25 ohms, add a ground electrode not less than 10 feet (3 m) away and interconnect with No. 2 AWG, minimum, bare conductor buried at least 12 inches (300 mm) below furnished grade.
   d. Aerial Conductor Sag and Tension: Observe procedures used by Contractor to verify that initial stringing sags and tensions comply with IEEE C2 and conductor manufacturer's product data and written recommendations.
   e. Self-Supported, Medium-Voltage Cable: After installation, while cable is isolated, and after terminations are installed and before connecting or energizing, apply dc voltage between each phase conductor and grounding connections of sheath or metallic shield. Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for method, voltage, duration, pass-fail performance, and other test criteria. Perform other field inspections and tests recommended by manufacturer.
   f. Neutral-Supported, Secondary Service-Drop Cable: Test for insulation resistance while cable is isolated, before connecting or energizing. Minimum acceptable resistance is 100 megohms.
   g. Existing Surge Arresters: Disconnect and measure resistance between line and ground terminals with a megger test rated 600 V or more. Acceptable resistance values are 300 megohms and more.

h. New Surge Arresters, Cutouts, and Switches: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring. Verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify that installation complies with requirements and that clearances of units and connecting wiring comply with IEEE C2 requirements.
   1) Verify proper grounding of metallic equipment parts.
   2) Fuses and Disconnect Links: Verify that ratings and characteristics match submittals and comply with system requirements.
   3) Switches:
      a) Manually operate each cutout and switch at least three times, to verify proper operation.
      b) Verify correct contact alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and arc interrupter operation.
   4) Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches and Air-Break Switches:
      a) Perform mechanical operator tests according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      b) Test resistance to ground of parts to be energized. Acceptable value is 200,000 megohms.
      c) Perform contact-resistance test across all switch blade contacts. Refer to manufacturer's data for acceptable contact resistance.
   5) Verify that clearances of energized parts and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2 requirements.

i. Distribution Transformers: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
   1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulators, leaks, tightness of connections, and overall mechanical and electrical integrity.
   2) Perform preenergizing inspections and tests recommended by manufacturer.
   3) Verify proper equipment grounding.
   4) Verify that clearances of terminals and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2.

j. Metering Transformers: Inspect after installation and connection to wires, and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
   1) Verify proper connections, tightness of bolted connections, and integrity of mounting provisions.
   2) Verify that required grounding and shorting connections provide good contact.
   3) Verify that clearances of terminals and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2.
   4) Perform electrical tests according to manufacturer's written instructions, including insulation-resistance tests, polarity tests, and turns-ratio and ratio-verification tests.

k. Meters: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
   1) Verify tightness of electrical connections.
   2) Verify accuracy at 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of full-rated load and verify all instrument multipliers according to manufacturer's written instructions.

4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

M. Adjusting
1. Distribution Transformers: Set voltage taps as directed by the Owner.

N. Cleaning
1. After completing equipment installation, inspect equipment. Remove spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish. For distribution transformer, use tank touchup paint provided by manufacturer.
   a. Clean enclosures internally, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

O. Demonstration
   1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead electrical distribution.

END OF SECTION 02 84 33 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 02 87 13 33 - MOLD REMEDIATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the removal and disposal of mold. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. List of all personnel to be involved in the work with their training and certifications.
2. List of all products and procedures proposed for use in performance of the work.
3. Test reports.
4. Certificates.

C. References
1. U.S. EPA “Mold Remediation in Schools and Commercial Buildings”
2. U.S. EPA “A Brief Guide to Mold, Moisture, and Your Home”

D. Quality Assurance
1. Conform to all Federal, State, and Local regulations which govern the handling and disposal of mold materials.

1.2 PRODUCT - (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Environmental Assessment: The presence of mold, water damage, or musty odors shall be addressed immediately. In all instances, any source(s) of water must be stopped and the extent of water damaged determined. Water damaged materials shall be dried and repaired. Mold damaged materials shall be remediated in accordance with this document.
1. Visual Inspection: A visual inspection is the most important initial step in identifying a possible contamination problem. The extent of any water damage and mold growth shall be visually assessed. This assessment is important in determining remedial strategies. Ventilation systems shall also be visually checked, particularly for damp filters but also for damp conditions elsewhere in the system and overall cleanliness. Ceiling tiles, gypsum wallboard (sheetrock), cardboard, paper, and other cellulosic surfaces shall be given careful attention during a visual inspection. The use of equipment such as a boroscope, to view spaces in ductwork or behind walls, or a moisture meter, to detect moisture in building materials, may be helpful in identifying hidden sources of fungal growth and the extent of water damage.
2. Bulk/Surface Sampling
a. Bulk or surface sampling is not required to undertake a remediation. Remediation of visually identified fungal contamination shall proceed without further evaluation.
b. Bulk or surface samples may need to be collected to identify specific fungal contaminants as part of a medical evaluation if occupants are experiencing symptoms which may be related to fungal exposure or to identify the presence or absence of mold if a visual inspection is equivocal (e.g., discoloration, and staining).
c. An individual trained in appropriate sampling methodology shall perform bulk or surface sampling. Bulk samples shall be collected from visibly moldy surfaces by scraping or cutting materials with a clean tool into a clean plastic bag. Surface samples shall be collected by wiping a measured area with a sterile swab or by stripping the suspect surface

with clear tape. Surface sampling is less destructive than bulk sampling. Other sampling methods may also be available. A laboratory specializing in mycology shall be consulted for specific sampling and delivery instructions.

3. Air Monitoring
   a. Air sampling for fungi shall not be part of a routine assessment. This is because decisions about appropriate remediation strategies can usually be made on the basis of a visual inspection. In addition, air-sampling methods for some fungi are prone to false negative results and therefore cannot be used to definitively rule out contamination.
   b. Air monitoring may be necessary if an individual(s) has been diagnosed with a disease that is or may be associated with a fungal exposure (e.g., pulmonary hemorrhage/hemosiderosis, and aspergillosis).
   c. Air monitoring may be necessary if there is evidence from a visual inspection or bulk sampling that ventilation systems may be contaminated. The purpose of such air monitoring is to assess the extent of contamination throughout a building. It is preferable to conduct sampling while ventilation systems are operating.
   d. Air monitoring may be necessary if the presence of mold is suspected (e.g., musty odors) but cannot be identified by a visual inspection or bulk sampling (e.g., mold growth behind walls). The purpose of such air monitoring is to determine the location and/or extent of contamination.
   e. If air monitoring is performed, for comparative purposes, outdoor air samples shall be collected concurrently at an air intake, if possible, and at a location representative of outdoor air. For additional information on air sampling, refer to the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists' document, "Bioaerosols: Assessment and Control."
   f. Personnel conducting the sampling shall be trained in proper air sampling methods for microbial contaminants. A laboratory specializing in mycology shall be consulted for specific sampling and shipping instructions.
4. Analysis of Environmental Samples
   a. Microscopic identification of the spores/colonies requires considerable expertise. These services are not routinely available from commercial laboratories. Documented quality control in the laboratories used for analysis of the bulk/surface and air samples is necessary. The American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) offers accreditation to microbial laboratories (Environmental Microbiology Laboratory Accreditation Program (EMLAP)). Accredited laboratories must participate in quarterly proficiency testing (Environmental Microbiology Proficiency Analytical Testing Program (EMPAT)).
5. Evaluation of bulk/surface and air sampling data shall be performed by an experienced health professional. The presence of few or trace amounts of fungal spores in bulk/surface sampling shall be considered background. Amounts greater than this or the presence of fungal fragments (e.g., hyphae, and conidiophores) may suggest fungal colonization, growth, and/or accumulation at or near the sampled location. Air samples shall be evaluated by means of comparison (i.e., indoors to outdoors) and by fungal type (e.g., genera, and species). In general, the levels and types of fungi found should be similar indoors (in non-problem buildings) as compared to the outdoor air. Differences in the levels or types of fungi found in air samples may indicate that moisture sources and resultant fungal growth may be problematic.

B. Remediation
1. General
   a. **In all situations, the underlying cause of water accumulation must be rectified or fungal growth will recur.** Any initial water infiltration shall be stopped and cleaned immediately. An immediate response (within 24 to 48 hours) and thorough clean up, drying, and/or removal of water damaged materials will prevent or limit mold growth. If the source of water is elevated humidity, relative humidity shall be maintained at levels below 60% to inhibit mold growth. Emphasis shall be on ensuring proper repairs of the building infrastructure, so that water damage and moisture buildup does not recur.
   b. Five different levels of abatement are described below. The size of the area impacted by fungal contamination primarily determines the type of remediation. The sizing levels below

are based on professional judgment and practicality; currently there is not adequate data to relate the extent of contamination to frequency or severity of health effects. **The goal of remediation is to remove or clean contaminated materials in a way that prevents the emission of fungi and dust contaminated with fungi from leaving a work area and entering an occupied or non-abatement area, while protecting the health of workers performing the abatement.** The listed remediation methods were designed to achieve this goal, however, due to the general nature of these methods it is the responsibility of the people conducting remediation to ensure the methods enacted are adequate. The listed remediation methods are not meant to exclude other similarly effective methods. Any changes to the remediation methods listed in these guidelines, however, shall be carefully considered prior to implementation.

c. Non-porous (e.g., metals, glass, and hard plastics) and semi-porous (e.g., wood, and concrete) materials that are structurally sound and are visibly moldy can be cleaned and reused. Cleaning shall be done using a detergent solution. Porous materials such as ceiling tiles and insulation, and wallboards with more than a small area of contamination shall be removed and discarded. Porous materials (e.g., wallboard, and fabrics) that can be cleaned, can be reused, but should be discarded if possible. A professional restoration consultant shall be contacted when restoring porous materials with more than a small area of fungal contamination. All materials to be reused shall be dry and visibly free from mold. Routine inspections shall be conducted to confirm the effectiveness of remediation work.

d. The use of gaseous, vapor-phase, or aerosolized biocides for remedial purposes is **not** recommended. The use of biocides in this manner can pose health concerns for people in occupied spaces of the building and for people returning to the treated space if used improperly. Furthermore, the effectiveness of these treatments is unproven and does not address the possible health concerns from the presence of the remaining non-viable mold. For additional information on the use of biocides for remedial purposes, refer to the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists' document, "Bioaerosols: Assessment and Control."

2. ***Level I***: **Small Isolated Areas** (10 sq. ft or less) - e.g., ceiling tiles, small areas on walls

a. Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).

b. Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.

c. The work area shall be unoccupied. Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons recovering from recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).

d. Containment of the work area is not necessary. Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.

e. Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in a sealed plastic bag. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.

f. The work area and areas used by remedial workers for egress shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.

g. All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.

3. ***Level II***: **Mid-Sized Isolated Areas** (10 - 30 sq. ft.) - e.g., individual wallboard panels.

a. Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).

b. Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.

c. The work area shall be unoccupied. Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
d. The work area shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and sealed with tape before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
e. Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
f. Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
g. The work area and areas used by remedial workers for egress shall be HEPA vacuumed (a vacuum equipped with a High-Efficiency Particulate Air filter) and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
h. All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.

4. ***Level III*: Large Isolated Areas** (30 - 100 square feet) - e.g., several wallboard panels.
   a. A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for the project.
   b. The following procedures *at a minimum* are recommended:
      1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials and equipped with respiratory protection, (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
      2) The work area and areas directly adjacent shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and taped before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
      3) Seal ventilation ducts/grills in the work area and areas directly adjacent with plastic sheeting.
      4) The work area and areas directly adjacent shall be unoccupied. Further vacating of people from spaces near the work area is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
      5) Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
      6) Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
      7) The work area and surrounding areas shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
      8) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
   c. If abatement procedures are expected to generate a lot of dust (e.g., abrasive cleaning of contaminated surfaces, demolition of plaster walls) or the visible concentration of the fungi is heavy (blanket coverage as opposed to patchy), then it is recommended that the remediation procedures for Level IV are followed.

5. ***Level IV*: Extensive Contamination** (greater than 100 contiguous square feet in an area)
   a. A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for the project. The following procedures are recommended:
      1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials equipped with:
         a) Full-face respirators with high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) cartridges
         b) Disposable protective clothing covering both head and shoes
         c) Gloves
      2) Containment of the affected area:

a) Complete isolation of work area from occupied spaces using plastic sheeting sealed with duct tape (including ventilation ducts/grills, fixtures, and any other openings)
b) The use of an exhaust fan with a HEPA filter to generate negative pressurization
c) Airlocks and decontamination room

3) Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
4) Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. The outside of the bags shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and a detergent solution or HEPA vacuumed in the decontamination chamber prior to their transport to uncontaminated areas of the building. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
5) The contained area and decontamination room shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop with a detergent solution and be visibly clean prior to the removal of isolation barriers.
6) Air monitoring shall be conducted prior to occupancy to determine if the area is fit to reoccupy.

6. ***Level V***: Remediation of HVAC Systems
   a. A Small Isolated Area of Contamination (<10 square feet) in the HVAC System
      1) Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
      2) Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
      3) The HVAC system shall be shut down prior to any remedial activities.
      4) The work area shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and sealed with tape before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
      5) Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
      6) Growth supporting materials that are contaminated, such as the paper on the insulation of interior lined ducts and filters, shall be removed. Other contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
      7) The work area and areas immediately surrounding the work area shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
      8) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
      9) A variety of biocides are recommended by HVAC manufacturers for use with HVAC components, such as, cooling coils and condensation pans. HVAC manufacturers shall be consulted for the products they recommend for use in their systems.
   b. Areas of Contamination (>10 square feet) in the HVAC System: A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for remediation projects involving more than a small isolated area in an HVAC system. The following procedures are recommended:
      1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials equipped with:
         a) Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended.
         b) Gloves and eye protection

c) Full-face respirators with HEPA cartridges and disposable protective clothing covering both head and shoes shall be worn if contamination is greater than 30 square feet.

2) The HVAC system shall be shut down prior to any remedial activities.

3) Containment of the affected area:
   a) Complete isolation of work area from the other areas of the HVAC system using plastic sheeting sealed with duct tape.
   b) The use of an exhaust fan with a HEPA filter to generate negative pressurization.
   c) Airlocks and decontamination room if contamination is greater than 30 square feet.

4) Growth supporting materials that are contaminated, such as the paper on the insulation of interior lined ducts and filters, shall be removed. Other contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned should be removed in sealed plastic bags. When a decontamination chamber is present, the outside of the bags shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and a detergent solution or HEPA vacuumed prior to their transport to uncontaminated areas of the building. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.

5) The contained area and decontamination room shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution prior to the removal of isolation barriers.

6) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.

7) Air monitoring shall be conducted prior to re-occupancy with the HVAC system in operation to determine if the area(s) served by the system are fit to reoccupy.

8) A variety of biocides are recommended by HVAC manufacturers for use with HVAC components, such as, cooling coils and condensation pans. HVAC manufacturers shall be consulted for the products they recommend for use in their systems.

7. Hazard Communication: When fungal growth requiring large-scale remediation is found, the building owner, management, and/or employer shall notify occupants in the affected area(s) of its presence. Notification shall include a description of the remedial measures to be taken and a timetable for completion. Group meetings held before and after remediation with full disclosure of plans and results can be an effective communication mechanism. Individuals with persistent health problems that appear to be related to bioaerosol exposure should see their physicians for a referral to practitioners who are trained in occupational/environmental medicine or related specialties and are knowledgeable about these types of exposures. Individuals seeking medical attention shall be provided with a copy of all inspection results and interpretation to give to their medical practitioners.

END OF SECTION 02 87 13 33

SECTION 02 87 16 13 - BIRD AND BIRD WASTE ABATEMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bird and bird waste abatement. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary Of Work
1. Work Included - Conventional Enclosure for Removal of Birds and Bird Waste
   a. Seal off penetrations on perimeter walls into the work area (critical barriers) and establish a decontamination facility for workers.
   b. Coordinate activities with the demolition and well capping activities.
2. Work Included - Removal and disposal of birds and bird waste.
   a. Establish work area by installing construction barrier tape around removal area.
   b. Remove and properly dispose of bulk contamination debris.
   c. Mist bird waste and contaminated material with Biocide or the equivalent (i.e. Sanogene, Oxine, or Envirocon).
   d. Remove and properly dispose of contaminated waste material from all building components.
   e. Utilize low pressure washers or scrub brushes to clean all wall surfaces of bird waste.

C. Quality Criteria
1. Qualifications for Performance of Work
   a. Contractor (or subcontractor engaged to perform the Work of this Section) shall:
      1) Be a licensed bird waste abatement contractor in accordance with the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed. Submit notarized documentation confirming current licensure.
      2) Have a record of not less than five years successful experience in bird waste removal or asbestos removal.
2. Reference Standards
   a. Acknowledge, by the executing of the Contract, awareness and familiarity with the contents and requirements of the following regulations, codes, and standards, and assume responsibility for the performance of the Work in strict compliance therewith and for every instance of failure to comply therewith.
   b. Where conflict among requirements or with the Contract Documents exists, the more stringent requirements shall apply.
      1) USEPA Regional National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS)
      2) U.S. Occupational and Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)
      3) U.S. EPA Office of Pesticide and Toxic Substances Guidance Document
      4) U.S. Department of Transportation, Hazardous Substances: Final Rule (49 CFR 171 and 172), Federal Register November 21, 1986 and corrected February 17, 1987.
      5) Statutes of the State in which the Work is to be Performed: Licensure for Asbestos Consultants and Contractors.
      6) All state, county, and city codes and ordinances as applicable. Make available for review at the site one copy of EPA, OSHA, and applicable State, County, and City Regulations governing the Work.
3. Patent/Copyright Compliance: Contractor shall determine the applicability of any process patents that may be employed and shall be responsible for the payment of all fees, royalties and licenses that may be required for the use of any patented or licensed process. Contractor shall hold the Owner, Engineer and Testing Laboratory harmless for failure to obtain any licenses and to pay any applicable fees and royalties.

D. Product Handling
   1. Deliver all materials in the original packages, containers, or bundles bearing the name of the manufacturer and the brand name.
   2. Store all materials subject to damage off the ground, away from wet or damp surfaces, and under cover sufficient to prevent damage or contamination.
   3. Remove from the premises all damaged or deteriorating materials. Dispose of materials that become contaminated with waste in accordance with applicable regulatory standards.

E. Worksite Conditions
   1. Worker and Visitor Procedures: The Contractor is hereby advised that the birds and bird wastes have been determined to cause diseases by inhalation and Contractor shall provide workers and qualified visitors with respirators that, as a minimum, shall meet the requirements of current applicable OSHA regulations, and protective clothing during preparation of system of enclosures, prior to commencing, during actual removal, and until final clean-up is completed. Also all personnel assigned to work on this project shall attend a training/awareness class for the purpose of explaining the hazards of improperly handling these materials and proper control measures to take in order to protect themselves.

F. Personnel Protection
   1. General
      a. Provide respiratory protection in accordance with OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1910-134 and in accordance with the following paragraphs.
         1) Prior to commencement of work, all workers shall be instructed by the Contractor and shall be knowledgeable in the appropriate procedures of personnel protection and waste removal.
         2) Where respirators with disposable filters are used, provide sufficient filters for replacement as necessary by the workers, or as required by applicable regulations.
         3) Permit no visitors, except for governmental inspectors having jurisdiction, or as authorized by Engineer or the Owner, in the work areas after commencement of waste disturbance or removal. Provide authorized visitors with suitable respirators.
         4) Provide workers with sufficient sets of protective disposable clothing, consisting of full-body coveralls, head covers, gloves, and foot covers, of sizes to properly fit individual workers.
         5) Provide authorized visitors with a set of suitable protective disposable clothing, headgear, eye protection, and/or footwear of sizes to properly fit visitors whenever they are required to enter the work area, to a maximum of six sets per day.
         6) Provide, in addition to respirators and protective clothing provided for authorized visitors, protective clothing and respirators for use by Testing Laboratory's representative. Furnish protective clothing in as many sets as required for full-time monitoring by Testing Laboratory.
         7) Provide and post the decontamination and work procedures to be followed by workers.
   2. Respiratory Protection Program
      a. Maintain a respiratory protection program that contains all the elements of the OSHA regulations. Provide a copy to the Engineer for approval.
      b. Appoint a respiratory protection program administrator, who shall be responsible for the program, maintaining all documentation, instructing workers and providing fit tests. Respiratory protection administrator is to be qualified under OSHA requirements and to have attended and passed, as a minimum, OSHA training institute 2-week course on respiratory protection or NIOSH course "Occupational Respiratory Protection." Respiratory protection program administer is to be on-site daily during abatement activities. All written programs and directions are to be in English and/or the language of the abatement workers if they are not fluent in English.
      c. The Contractor is advised that the minimum respiratory requirements as called for in this section and on any drawings/sketches shall be applied unless reported measures indicate

that a lower form of respiratory protection is acceptable according to the appropriate OSHA regulations and the more strict sections of the specification.

3. Respiratory Protection Requirements
   a. Workers shall be provided with respiratory protection equipment. The respirators are to be sanitized and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's specification. Appropriate respirator selection will be dependent upon the work to be performed and the level of exposure, as given below.
   b. For the clean-up, as a minimum, the use of full-faced air-purifying respirators is required for all preparation, removal and cleaning work.
   c. This specification requires that workers shall wear suitable respiratory protection at all times whenever a potential for exposure to bird and bird waste exists.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Polyethylene/Plastic sheeting shall be of the thicknesses specified, not less than 6 mil, in sizes to minimize the frequency of joints. Utilize reinforced plastic sheeting in specified thicknesses on floors.
2. Tape shall be glass fiber or other type capable of sealing joints of adjacent sheets of plastic and for attachment of plastic sheet to finished or unfinished surfaces of dissimilar materials under both dry and wet conditions.
3. Sodium Hypochlorite ("bleach")
4. Impermeable Containers shall be suitable to receive and retain contaminated materials until disposal at an approved site and shall be labeled in accordance with U.S. DOT 49 CFR 171 and 172, and containers shall be both air- and water-tight. Use a minimum of two types of impermeable containers: 1) six millimeter-thick (mil) plastic bags sized to fit within the drum; and 2) metal or fiber drums with tightly fitting lids.
5. Other Materials: Provide all other materials, such as lumber, nails, and hardware, that may be required to construct and dismantle the decontamination area and the barriers that isolate the work area(s).
6. Caulking shall be non-shrinking caulk to be used where insulated pipes continue through areas such as walls and ceilings. Contractor shall determine and submit proof that caulk proposed for use is compatible with the temperature conditions of the surfaces to which it is to be applied.
   a. Tools And Equipment
      1) Water Sprayer - utilize airless or other low pressure sprayer for amended water application.
      2) Air Purifying Equipment (for internal recirculation in the work area) shall be HEPA Filtration Systems or Electronic Precipitators. Ensure that no internal air movement system or purification equipment exhausts contaminated air from the work area(s) outside the work area.
      3) Diminished Air Pressure Equipment shall comply with ANSI 29.2-7, local exhaust ventilation.
      4) Scaffolding shall be as required to accomplish the specified work and shall meet all applicable safety regulations.
      5) Transportation - as required for loading, temporary storage, transit, and unloading of contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Procedures
1. All personnel assigned to perform the work shall attend a training/awareness class for the purpose of explaining the hazards of improperly handling the waste and the proper control measures to take in order to protect themselves. These work procedures shall be discussed with

each individual followed by the individual acknowledging receipt of this training by completing the pertinent information on a Hazardous Awareness Training Form

2. The majority of diseases related to bird waste is related to the inhalation of the airborne dust released by the waste. All personnel performing removal/decontamination waste shall therefore wear Powered Air Purifying Respirators (PAPR) equipped with combination Organic Vapor and High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filters while handling the waste.
3. Workers shall wear non-porous gloves and boots during all preparatory and removal operations.
4. When entering the building, the removal/decontamination personnel shall mist all surfaces having visible remnants of waste, using a diluted sodium hypochlorite ("bleach") and water solution. This solution shall be diluted at a ratio of 10 parts water to 1 part bleach for a 10 to 1 ration (10:1). The waste shall be continuously misted during occupancy in order to keep airborne dust emissions from the waste to a minimurn.
5. Remove all birds from the building and seal all openings into the building. The main purpose of this is to eliminate the availability for future bird access into the building. The openings may be temporarily sealed or closed up in many ways, including boarding up windows/doors, polyethylene sheeting, or other convenient and cost effective means. It is not the intention of this task to complete seal the building airtight.
6. Designate an area of the facility for the purpose of storing the waste prior to loading for transportation to the appropriate landfill. The area designated shall have easy access to the door which will be utilized as the waste load-out.

END OF SECTION 02 87 16 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 89 00 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13a	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tclp Sampling And Analysis
02 90 55 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 01 30 71 - CONCRETE REHABILITATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete rehabilitation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Removal of deteriorated concrete and reinforcement and subsequent replacement and patching.
   b. Floor joint repair.
   c. Epoxy crack injection.
   d. Corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
   e. Polymer overlays.
   f. Polymer sealers.
   g. Steel structural reinforcement.
   h. Composite structural reinforcement.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include material descriptions, chemical composition, physical properties, test data, and mixing, preparation, and application instructions.
2. Formwork and Shoring Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing formwork and temporary shoring and supports. Include schedule and sequence for erection and removal relative to removal of deteriorated concrete and reinforcement and subsequent repair and reinforcement.
3. Samples: Cured Samples of overlay and patching materials.
4. Rehabilitation Program: For each phase of rehabilitation process, including protection of surrounding materials and Project site during operations. Describe in detail materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the Work.
   a. If alternative materials and methods to those indicated are proposed for any phase of rehabilitation work, submit substitution request and provide a written description of proposed materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on other comparable projects, and a testing program to demonstrate their effectiveness for this Project.

D. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with type and name of products and manufacturers.
2. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature requirements and other conditions for storage.
3. Store cementitious materials off the ground, under cover, and in a dry location.
4. Store aggregates, covered and in a dry location, where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

E. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations for Epoxies: Do not apply when air and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by manufacturer. During hot weather, cool epoxy components before mixing, store mixed products in shade, and cool unused mixed products to retard setting. Do not apply to wet substrates unless approved by manufacturer.

a. Use only Class A epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 40 deg F (5 deg C) within 8 hours.
b. Use only Class A or B epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 60 deg F (16 deg C) within 8 hours.
c. Use only Class C epoxies when substrate temperatures are above and are expected to stay above 60 deg F (16 deg C) for 8 hours.

2. Cold-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials:
   a. Do not apply unless air temperature is above 40 deg F (5 deg C) and will remain so for at least 48 hours after completion of Work.
      OR
      Comply with the following procedures:
      1) When air temperature is below 40 deg F (5 deg C), heat patching material ingredients and existing concrete to produce temperatures between 40 and 90 deg F (5 and 32 deg C).
      2) When mean daily air temperature is between 25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C), cover completed Work with weather-resistant insulating blankets for 48 hours after repair or provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
      3) When mean daily air temperature is below 25 deg F (minus 4 deg C), provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
3. Hot-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Protect repair work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from patching materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply to substrates with temperatures of 90 deg F (32 deg C) and above.
4. Environmental Limitations for High-Molecular-Weight Methacrylate Sealers: Do not apply when concrete surface temperature is below 55 deg F (13 deg C) or above 75 deg F (24 deg C) **OR** 90 deg F (32 deg C), **as directed**. Apply only to dry substrates **OR** substrates that have been dry for at least 72 hours.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Bonding Agents
1. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Product that consists of water-insensitive epoxy adhesive, portland cement, and water-based solution of corrosion-inhibiting chemicals that forms a protective film on steel reinforcement.
2. Epoxy Bonding Agent: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type II **OR** V, **as directed**.
   a. Thin Film Open Time: Not less than two **OR** six **OR** 24, **as directed**, hours.
3. Latex Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type I **OR** II **OR** II at exterior locations and where indicated, Type I at other locations, **as directed**.
4. Mortar Scrub-Coat: 1 part portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III and 1 part fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 144, except 100 percent passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.

B. Patching Mortar
1. Patching Mortar, General:
   a. Overhead Patching Mortar: For overhead repairs, use patching mortar recommended by manufacturer for overhead use and as specified in this Article.
   b. Coarse Aggregate for Adding to Patching Mortar: Washed aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, Size No. 8, Class 5S. Add only as permitted by patching mortar manufacturer.
2. Job-Mixed Patching Mortar: 1 part portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III and 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 144, except 100 percent passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.

3. Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928.
4. Polymer-Modified, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928, that contains a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.
5. Polymer-Modified, Silica-Fume-Enhanced, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928, that contains silica fume complying with ASTM C 1240 and a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.

C. Concrete
1. Concrete Materials and Admixtures: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
2. Steel and Fiber Reinforcement and Reinforcement Accessories: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Form-Facing Materials: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
4. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
5. Preplaced Aggregate: Washed aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, Class 5S, with 95 to 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve, 40 to 80 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve, 20 to 45 percent passing a 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve, 0 to 10 percent passing a 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve, and 0 to 2 percent passing a 3/8-inch ((9.5-mm)) sieve **OR** 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve, 40 to 80 percent passing a 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve, 0 to 15 percent passing a 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve, and 0 to 2 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve, **as directed**.
6. Fine Aggregate for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: Fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, but with 100 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, 55 to 80 percent passing a No. 30 (0.6-mm) sieve, 30 to 55 percent passing a No. 50 (0.3-mm) sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve, 0 to 10 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve, and having a fineness modulus of 1.30 to 2.10.
7. Grout Fluidifier for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 937.
8. Portland Cement for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 150.
9. Pozzolans for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 618.

D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Epoxy Joint Filler: 2-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 per ASTM D 2240.
2. Polyurea Joint Filler: 2-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, polyurea resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 per ASTM D 2240.
3. Epoxy Crack Injection Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type I **OR** IV, **as directed**, Grade 1, except for gel time **OR** solvent free, **as directed**.
4. Capping Adhesive: Product manufactured for use with crack injection adhesive by same manufacturer.
5. Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment Materials: Water-based solution of alkaline corrosion-inhibiting chemicals that penetrates concrete by diffusion and forms a protective film on steel reinforcement.
6. Polymer Overlay: Epoxy adhesive complying with ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III.
7. Aggregate for Use with Polymer Overlay: Oven-dried, washed silica sand complying with ACI 503.3.
8. Polymer Sealer: Low-viscosity epoxy or high-molecular-weight methacrylate penetrating sealer recommended by manufacturer for application to exterior concrete traffic surfaces.
9. Methylmethacrylate Sealer/Brighteners: Clear low-viscosity sealer recommended by manufacturer for sealing exterior exposed-aggregate concrete, and formulated to bring out color of aggregates and give concrete a wet look.
10. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
    a. After fabricating, prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

b. For minimum protection to steel after preparation, apply one coat of lead- and chromate-free, modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#76 and one coat of alkyd-gloss enamel complying with MPI#96.
c. After preparation, apply two-coat high-performance coating system consisting of organic zinc-rich primer, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 and topcoat of high-build, urethane or epoxy coating recommended by manufacturer for application over specified zinc-rich primer. Comply with coating manufacturer's written directions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

11. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: Carbon steel; ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), for bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M), Grade A, for nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) for washers; hot-dip or mechanically zinc coated.
12. Postinstalled Anchors: Chemical or expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group A1 or A4) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to four times the load imposed, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
13. Composite Structural Reinforcement: Manufacturer's system consisting of carbon **OR** glass, **as directed**,-fiber reinforcement in the form of preimpregnated sheets or tow sheet with field-applied saturant, and epoxy primers, fillers, adhesives, saturants, and topcoats, designed for use as external structural reinforcement for concrete.

E. Mixes
1. Mix products, in clean containers, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
a. Add clean silica sand and coarse aggregates to products only as recommended by manufacturer.
b. Do not add water, thinners, or additives unless recommended by manufacturer.
c. When practical, use manufacturer's premeasured packages to ensure that materials are mixed in proper proportions. When premeasured packages are not used, measure ingredients using graduated measuring containers; do not estimate quantities or use shovel or trowel as unit of measure.
d. Do not mix more materials than can be used within recommended open time. Discard materials that have begun to set.
2. Mortar Scrub-Coat: Mix with enough water to provide consistency of thick cream.
3. Dry-Pack Mortar: Mix with just enough liquid to form damp cohesive mixture that can be squeezed by hand into a ball but is not plastic.
4. Concrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
5. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
6. Grout for Use with Preplaced Aggregate: Proportion according to ASTM C 938. Add grout fluidifier to mixing water followed by cementitious materials and then fine aggregate.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of dates when areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete and deteriorated reinforcing bars will be located.
2. Locate areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete using hammer or chain drag sounding and mark boundaries. Mark areas for removal by simplifying and squaring off boundaries. At columns and walls make boundaries level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Locate at least three reinforcing bars using a pachometer, and drill test holes to determine depth of cover. Calibrate pachometer, using depth of cover measurements, and verify depth of cover in removal areas using pachometer.

B. Preparation
1. Protect people, motor vehicles, equipment, surrounding construction, Project site, plants, and surrounding buildings from injury resulting from concrete rehabilitation work.
   a. Erect and maintain temporary protective covers over pedestrian walkways and at points of entrance and exit for people and vehicles, unless such areas are made inaccessible during the course of concrete rehabilitation work. Construct covers of tightly fitted, 3/4-inch (19-mm) exterior-grade plywood supported at 16 inches (405 mm) o.c. and covered with asphalt roll roofing.
   b. Protect adjacent equipment and surfaces by covering them with heavy polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape or a liquid strippable masking agent. If practical, remove items, store, and reinstall after potentially damaging operations are complete.
   c. Neutralize and collect alkaline and acid wastes according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and dispose of by legal means off the Owner's property.
   d. Dispose of runoff from wet operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.
   e. Collect runoff from wet operations and dispose of by legal means off the Owner's property.
2. Shoring: Install temporary supports before beginning concrete removal.
3. Concrete Removal:
   a. Saw-cut perimeter of areas indicated for removal to a depth of at least 1/2 inch (13 mm). Make cuts perpendicular to concrete surfaces and no deeper than cover on reinforcement.
   b. Remove deteriorated and delaminated concrete by breaking up and dislodging from reinforcement.
   c. Remove additional concrete, if necessary, to provide a depth of removal of at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) over entire removal area.
   d. Where half or more of the perimeter of reinforcing bar is exposed, bond between reinforcing bar and surrounding concrete is broken, or reinforcing bar is corroded, remove concrete from entire perimeter of bar and to provide at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance around bar.
   e. Test areas where concrete has been removed by tapping with hammer, and remove additional concrete until unsound and disbonded concrete is completely removed.
   f. Provide fractured aggregate surfaces with a profile of at least 1/8 inch (3 mm) that are approximately perpendicular or parallel to original concrete surfaces. At columns and walls, make top and bottom surfaces level, unless otherwise directed.
   g. Thoroughly clean removal areas of loose concrete, dust, and debris.
4. Reinforcing Bar Preparation: Remove loose and flaking rust from reinforcing bars by high-pressure water cleaning **OR** abrasive blast cleaning **OR** needle scaling **OR** wire brushing, **as directed**, until only tightly bonded light rust remains.
   a. Where section loss of reinforcing bar is more than 25 percent, or 20 percent in 2 or more adjacent bars, cut bars and remove and replace. Remove additional concrete as necessary to provide at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance at existing and replacement bars. Splice replacement bars to existing bars according to ACI 318 (ACI 318M), by lapping, welding, or using mechanical couplings.
5. Preparation of Floor Joints for Repair: Saw-cut joints full width to edges and depth of spalls, but not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, deep. Clean out debris and loose concrete; vacuum or blow clear with compressed air.
6. Surface Preparation for Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment: Clean concrete by low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing **OR** sand blasting, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to treatment application. Allow surface to dry before applying corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
7. Surface Preparation for Overlays: Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material. Roughen surface of concrete by sand blasting **OR** shot blasting **OR** scarifying **OR** needle scaling **OR** high-pressure water jetting **OR** scabbling **OR** flame blasting **OR** milling, **as directed**, to produce a surface profile matching CSP 3 **OR** 4 **OR** 5 **OR** 6 **OR** 7 **OR** 8 **OR** 9, **as directed**, per ICRI 03732. Sweep and vacuum roughened surface to remove debris followed by low-pressure water cleaning.

8. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Clean concrete by shot blasting **OR** low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to sealer application.
9. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Acid etch surface of concrete to produce a surface profile matching CSP 1 per ICRI 03732. Prepare surface for acid etching by detergent scrubbing to remove oils and films that may prevent acid penetration.
    a. Remove excess acid solution, reaction products, and debris by squeegeeing or vacuuming.
    b. Scrub surface with an alkaline detergent, rinse, and squeegee or vacuum.
    c. Check acidity of surface with pH test paper and continue rinsing until pH is acceptable.
    d. When pH is acceptable and surface is clean, vacuum dry.
10. Surface Preparation for Composite Structural Reinforcement: Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material. Clean concrete where reinforcement and epoxy patching mortar is to be applied by low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to epoxy application. Roughen surface of concrete by sand blasting.

C. Application
1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for application of products, including surface preparation.
2. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by stiff brush or hopper spray according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply to reinforcing bars in two coats, allowing first coat to dry two to three hours before applying second coat. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.
3. Epoxy Bonding Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by brush, roller, or spray according to manufacturer's written instructions, leaving no pinholes or other uncoated areas. Apply to reinforcing bars in at least two coats, allowing first coat to dry before applying second coat. Apply patching mortar or concrete while epoxy is still tacky. If epoxy dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
4. Latex Bonding Agent, Type II: Mix with portland cement and scrub into concrete surface according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply patching mortar or concrete while bonding agent is still wet. If bonding agent dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
5. Latex Bonding Agent, Type I: Apply to concrete by brush roller or spray. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.
6. Mortar Scrub-Coat: Dampen repair area and surrounding concrete 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repair area. Remove standing water and apply scrub-coat with a brush, scrubbing it into surface and thoroughly coating repair area. If scrub-coat dries, recoat before applying patching mortar or concrete.
7. Patching Mortar: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
    a. Wet substrate thoroughly and then remove standing water. Scrub a slurry of neat patching mortar mixed with latex bonding agent into substrate, filling pores and voids.
    b. Place patching mortar by troweling toward edges of patch to force intimate contact with edge surfaces. For large patches, fill edges first and then work toward center, always troweling toward edges of patch. At fully exposed reinforcing bars, force patching mortar to fill space behind bars by compacting with trowel from sides of bars.
    c. For vertical patching, place material in lifts of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, nor less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**. Do not feather edge.
    d. For overhead patching, place material in lifts of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, nor less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**. Do not feather edge.
    e. After each lift is placed, consolidate material and screed surface.
    f. Where multiple lifts are used, score surface of lifts to provide a rough surface for application of subsequent lifts. Allow each lift to reach final set before placing subsequent lifts.

g. Allow surfaces of lifts that are to remain exposed to become firm and then finish to a smooth **OR** rough, **as directed**, surface with a wood or sponge float **OR** broom or burlap drag, **as directed**.
h. Wet-cure cementitious patching materials, including polymer-modified, cementitious patching materials, for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.

8. Dry-Pack Mortar: Use for deep cavities and where indicated. Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
   a. Provide forms where necessary to confine patch to required shape.
   b. Wet substrate and forms thoroughly and then remove standing water.
   c. Place dry-pack mortar into cavity by hand, and compact into place with a hardwood drive stick and mallet or hammer. Do not place more material at a time than can be properly compacted. Continue placing and compacting until patch is approximately level with surrounding surface.
   d. After cavity is filled and patch is compacted, trowel surface to match profile and finish of surrounding concrete. A thin coat of patching mortar may be troweled into the surface of patch to help obtain required finish.
   e. Wet-cure patch for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
9. Concrete: Place according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" and as follows:
   a. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
   b. Apply latex bonding agent **OR** Type I, latex bonding agent **OR** mortar scrub-coat, **as directed**, to concrete substrate.
   c. Use vibrators to consolidate concrete as it is placed.
   d. At unformed surfaces, screed concrete to produce a surface that when finished with patching mortar will match required profile and surrounding concrete.
   e. Where indicated place concrete by form and pump method.
      1) Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to weight of wet concrete. Seal joints and seams in forms and junctions of forms with existing concrete.
      2) Pump concrete into place, releasing air from forms as concrete is introduced. When formed space is full, close air vents and pressurize to 14 psi (96 kPa).
   f. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
   g. Fill placement cavities with dry-pack mortar and repair voids with patching mortar. Finish to match surrounding concrete.
10. Shotcrete: Place according to Division 03 Section "Shotcrete" and as follows:
   a. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
   b. Apply latex bonding agent **OR** Type I, latex bonding agent **OR** mortar scrub-coat, **as directed**, to concrete substrate.
   c. Screed and finish shotcrete to produce a surface matching required profile and surrounding concrete.
11. Grouted Preplaced Aggregate Concrete: Use for column and wall repairs **OR** where indicated, **as directed**. Place as follows:
   a. Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to weight of wet grout. Seal joints and seams in forms and junctions of forms with existing concrete.
   b. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
   c. Place aggregate in forms, consolidating aggregate as it is placed. Pack aggregate into upper areas of forms to achieve intimate contact with concrete surfaces.
   d. Fill forms with water to thoroughly dampen aggregate and substrates. Drain water from forms before placing grout.

e. Pump grout into place at bottom of preplaced aggregate, forcing grout upward. Release air from forms at top as grout is introduced. When formed space is full and grout flows from air vents, close vents and pressurize to 14 psi (96 kPa).
f. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
g. Repair voids with patching mortar and finish to match surrounding concrete.

12. Joint Filler: Install in nonmoving floor joints where indicated.
    a. Install filler to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**. Use fine silica sand no more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep to close base of joint. Do not use sealant backer rods or compressible fillers below joint filler.
    b. Install filler so that when cured, it is flush at top surface of adjacent concrete. If necessary, overfill joint and remove excess when filler has cured.
13. Epoxy Crack Injection: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the following:
    a. Clean areas to receive capping adhesive of oil, dirt, and other substances that would interfere with bond, and clean cracks with oil-free compressed air or low-pressure water to remove loose particles.
    b. Place injection ports as recommended by epoxy manufacturer, spacing no farther apart than thickness of member being injected. Seal injection ports in place with capping adhesive.
    c. Seal cracks at exposed surfaces with a ribbon of capping adhesive at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 1 inch (25 mm) wider than crack.
    d. Inject cracks wider than 0.003 inch (0.075 mm) to a depth of 8 inches (200 mm) or to a width of less than 0.003 inch (0.075 mm), whichever is less.
    e. Inject epoxy adhesive, beginning at widest part of crack and working toward narrower parts. Inject adhesive into ports to refusal, capping adjacent ports when they extrude epoxy. Cap injected ports and inject through adjacent ports until crack is filled.
    f. After epoxy adhesive has set, remove injection ports and grind surfaces smooth.
14. Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray in two coats at manufacturer's recommended application rate. Remove film of excess treatment by high-pressure washing before patching treated concrete or applying a sealer or overlay.
15. Polymer Overlay: Apply according to ACI 503.3.
    a. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
16. Polymer Sealer: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
    a. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
17. Methylmethacrylate Sealer/Brighteners: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
    a. Apply to exterior concrete surfaces that are exposed to view, excluding traffic-bearing surfaces.
18. Composite Structural Reinforcement Using Preimpregnated Fiber Sheet: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
    a. Patch surface defects with epoxy mortar and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
    b. Apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) to prepared concrete surfaces in areas where composite structural reinforcement will be applied.
    c. Clean preimpregnated fiber sheet with acetone or other suitable solvent, and apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
    d. Apply adhesive-coated fiber sheet to adhesive-coated concrete within open time of epoxy adhesive, and roll with a hard rubber roller until fiber sheet is fully embedded in adhesive, air pockets are removed, and adhesive is forced out from beneath fiber sheet at edges.
    e. Apply additional layers as indicated using same procedure.
19. Composite Structural Reinforcement Using Fiber Tow Sheet and Saturant: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
    a. Apply epoxy primer using brush or short nap roller to prepared concrete surfaces in areas where composite structural reinforcement will be applied.

b. After primer has set, patch surface defects with epoxy filler and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
c. Apply epoxy saturant to fiber tow sheet or primed and patched surface with 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) nap roller. Apply fiber tow sheet to primed and patched surface while saturant is still wet, using pressure roller to remove air pockets. Remove paper backing from fiber tow sheet and apply additional epoxy as needed to fully saturate tow sheet.
d. Apply additional layers as indicated, fully saturating each with epoxy.
e. After saturant has cured, apply protective topcoat by brush, roller or spray.

D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to sample materials and perform tests as follows:
a. Patching Mortar, Packaged Mixes: <**Insert number**> randomly selected samples tested according to ASTM C 928.
b. Patching Mortar, Field Mixed: <**Insert number**> randomly selected samples tested for compressive strength according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
c. Concrete: As specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
d. Shotcrete: As specified in Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
e. Grouted Preplaced Aggregate: Tested for compressive strength of grout according to ASTM C 942.
1) Testing Frequency: One sample for each 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m) of grout or fraction thereof, but not less than one sample for each day's work.
f. Joint Filler: Core drilled samples to verify proper installation.
1) Testing Frequency: One sample for each 100 feet (30 m) of joint filled.
2) Where samples are taken, fill holes with joint filler.
g. Epoxy Crack Injection: Core drilled samples to verify proper installation.
1) Testing Frequency: 3 samples from mockup and 1 sample for each 100 feet (30 m) of crack injected.
2) Where samples are taken, fill holes with epoxy mortar.

END OF SECTION 03 01 30 71

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 01 30 71a - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for self-adhering sheet waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing.
   b. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing, fabric reinforced.
   c. Modified bituminous deck paving sheet waterproofing.
   d. Modified bituminous composite panel waterproofing.
   e. Adhesive-coated HDPE sheet waterproofing.
   f. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
   g. Insulation.
   h. Plaza deck pavers and paver pedestals.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for waterproofing.
4. Special warranties.
5. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Certificates for Credit MR 5: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include statement indicating distance to Project, cost for each regional material, and fraction by weight that is considered regional.
   b. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing and details of substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
      1) Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.
   c. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:
      1) 8-by-8-inch (200-by-200-mm) square of waterproofing and flashing sheet.
      2) 8-by-8-inch (200-by-200-mm) square of insulation.
      3) 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) square of drainage panel.
      4) Plaza-deck paver, 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) square **OR** full sized, **as directed**, in each color and texture required.
      5) Paver pedestal assembly.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

F. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.

G. Warranty
1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace waterproofing material that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
a. Warranty Period: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing
1. Modified Bituminous Sheet: Not less than 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 56 mils (1.4 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, polyethylene film with release liner on adhesive side and formulated for application with primer or surface conditioner that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
a. Physical Properties:
1) Tensile Strength: 250 psi (1.7 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
2) Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
3) Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
4) Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of 1/8-inch (3-mm) movement; ASTM C 836.
5) Puncture Resistance: 40 lbf (180 N) minimum; ASTM E 154.
6) Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 150 feet (45 m) minimum; ASTM D 5385.
7) Water Absorption: 0.15 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F (21 deg C); ASTM D 570.
8) Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.
2. Modified Bituminous Sheet, Fabric Reinforced: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of rubberized-asphalt membrane embedded in spun-bonded polyester or fiberglass nonwoven fabric reinforcement laminated to a 0.50-mil- (0.01-mm-) thick polyester film with release liner on adhesive side.
a. Physical Properties:
1) Pliability: No cracks when bent 180 degrees over a 1-inch (25-mm) mandrel at minus 25 deg F (minus 32 deg C); ASTM D 146.
2) Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 150 feet (45 m) minimum.
3) Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.

B. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet Waterproofing
   1. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet: Provide one of the products described below, **as directed**:
      a. 65-mil- (1.6-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of 53 to 56 mils (1.3 to 1.4 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a heat-resisting, 9- to 12-mil- (0.2- to 0.3-mm-) thick, woven polypropylene geotextile reinforcement with release liner on adhesive side.
      b. 70-mil- (1.8-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of rubberized asphalt embedded in inert fabric reinforcement laminated to a reflective geotextile protective topping with release liner on adhesive side.
      c. 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of rubberized asphalt embedded in nonwoven **OR** woven, **as directed**, fiberglass fabric reinforcement laminated to a 0.50-mil- (0.01-mm-) thick polyester mat with release liner on adhesive side.
      d. Physical Properties:
         1) Tensile Strength, Membrane: 50 lbf/in (8.75 kN/m) minimum; ASTM D 882.
         2) Pliability: Unaffected when bent 180 degrees over a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) mandrel at minus 15 deg F (minus 26 deg C); ASTM D 146.
         3) Puncture Resistance, Mesh: 200 lbf (890 N) minimum; ASTM E 154.

C. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel Waterproofing
   1. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel: 90-mil- (2.2-mm-) thick, multilaminated panel consisting of a protection course bonded to an asphalt saturated carrier sheet bonded to a rubberized asphalt waterproofing self-adhering membrane with release liner.

D. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet Waterproofing
   1. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet for Vertical Applications: 32-mil- (0.8-mm-) thick, uniform, flexible sheets consisting of 16-mil- (0.4-mm-) thick, HDPE sheet coated with a pressure-sensitive rubber adhesive, a protective adhesive coating, and a release liner with the following physical properties:
      a. Tensile Strength, Film: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412.
      b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 10 deg F (minus 23 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
      c. Peel Adhesion to Concrete: 5 lbf/in. (875 N/m); ASTM D 903, modified.
      d. Lap Adhesion: 2.5 lbf/in. (440 N/m); ASTM D 1876, modified.
      e. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 231 feet (70 m); ASTM D 5385, modified.
      f. Vapor Permeance: 0.01 perms (0.6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.
      g. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent; ASTM D 570.
   2. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet for Horizontal Applications: 46-mil- (1.2-mm-) thick, uniform, flexible sheets consisting of 30-mil- (0.76-mm-) thick, HDPE sheet coated with a pressure-sensitive rubber adhesive, a protective adhesive coating, a detackifying surface treatment, an uncoated self-adhering side lap strip, and a release liner with the following physical properties:
      a. Tensile Strength, Film: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412.
      b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 10 deg F (minus 23 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
      c. Peel Adhesion to Concrete: 5 lbf/in. (875 N/m); ASTM D 903, modified.
      d. Lap Adhesion: 2.5 lbf/in. (440 N/m); ASTM D 1876, modified.
      e. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 231 feet (70 m); ASTM D 5385, modified.
      f. Vapor Permeance: 0.01 perms (0.6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.
      g. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent; ASTM D 570.

E. Auxiliary Materials
   1. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
      a. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Primer: Liquid waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.
   3. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.

4. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, trowel grade or low viscosity.
5. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, asphalt-modified coating.
6. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt sheet strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.
7. Mastic, Adhesives, and Tape: Liquid mastic and adhesives, and adhesive tapes recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
    a. Detail Tape: Two-sided, pressure-sensitive, self-adhering reinforced tape, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) wide, with a tack-free protective adhesive coating on one side and release film on self-adhering side.
    b. Detail Strips: 62.5-mil- (1.58-mm-) thick, felt-reinforced self-adhesive strip, 9 inches (229 mm) wide, with release film on adhesive side.
8. Metal Termination Bars: Aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick, predrilled at 9-inch (229-mm) centers.
9. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:
    a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch (6 mm), nominal, elsewhere.
    b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
10. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced one side or both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm), with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
11. Protection Course: Unfaced, fan-folded, extruded-polystyrene board insulation, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm) with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621.
12. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
13. Protection Course: Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m) minimum density, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum thickness.

F. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m).

G. Insulation
1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
    a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive

strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels.

3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with 1 side having ribbed drainage channels.
5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.

H. Plaza Deck Pavers

1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-Block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-Based Stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength 7500 psi (52 mpa) **or** 6500 psi (45 mpa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
    a. Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**.
    b. Face Size: 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 12 by 24 inches (305 by 610 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) square **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    c. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, HDPE, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.
    a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Surface Preparation

1. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
3. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
4. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
5. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.

a. Install sheet strips and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or 1/8 inch (3 mm) for modified bituminous deck paving waterproofing.

6. Bridge and cover isolation joints, expansion joints, and discontinuous deck-to-wall and deck-to-deck joints with overlapping sheet strips.
   a. Invert and loosely lay first sheet strip over center of joint. Firmly adhere second sheet strip to first and overlap to substrate.
7. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners according to ASTM D 6135.
   a. Install membrane strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install 3/4-inch (19-mm) fillets of liquid membrane on horizontal inside corners and as follows:
      1) At footing-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane each direction from corner or install membrane strip centered over corner.
      2) At plaza deck-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane or sheet strips onto deck waterproofing and to finished height of sheet flashing.
8. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions according to ASTM D 6135.

B. Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing Application
1. Install modified bituminous sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and according to recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
2. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
3. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
   a. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C), install self-adhering, modified bituminous sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F (16 deg C).
4. Two-Ply Application: Install sheets to form a membrane with lap widths not less than 50 percent of sheet widths to provide a minimum of 2 thicknesses of sheet membrane over areas to receive waterproofing.
5. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets from low point to high point of decks to ensure that side laps shed water.
6. Apply continuous sheets over sheet strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
7. Seal exposed edges of sheets at terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with mastic.
8. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
9. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in all directions.
10. Install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing membrane immediately.
    a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer and installed immediately.
11. Correct deficiencies in or remove sheet waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.

C. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet Waterproofing Application
1. Install modified bituminous deck paving sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.

3. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over areas to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) minimum lap widths and 6-inch (150-mm) end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
4. Apply sheet waterproofing from low point to high point of decks to ensure that side laps shed water.
5. Apply continuous sheets over sheet strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
6. Seal edges of sheet waterproofing terminations with mastic.
7. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in all directions.
9. Correct deficiencies in or remove sheet waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.

D. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel Waterproofing Application
1. Install modified bituminous composite panels according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Apply primer to substrate at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
3. Install and firmly adhere composite panels over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align and butt vertical and horizontal joints.
4. Seal vertical and horizontal butt joints and exposed top, side, and bottom edges at composite panel waterproofing terminations with detail strips.
5. Correct deficiencies in or remove composite panel waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair detail strips.

E. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet Waterproofing Application
1. Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels over substrate. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity.
3. Vertical Applications: Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheet with HDPE face against substrate. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 3-inch- (75-mm-) minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger and tape end laps to ensure watertight installation. Mechanically fasten to substrate.
    a. Securely fasten top termination of membrane with continuous metal termination bar anchored into substrate and cover with detailing tape.
4. Horizontal Applications: Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheet with HDPE face against substrate. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 3-inch- (75-mm-) minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams. Overlap, stagger, and seal end laps with detail tape to ensure watertight installation.
5. Corners: Seal lapped terminations and cut edges of sheet waterproofing at inside and outside corners with detail tape.
6. Seal penetrations through sheet waterproofing to provide watertight seal with detail tape patches or wraps and a liquid-membrane troweling.
7. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to produce a continuous watertight tie into adjacent waterproofing.
8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Tape perimeter of damaged or nonconforming area extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in all directions. Apply a patch of sheet waterproofing and firmly secure with detail tape.
9. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.

F. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical

fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.

G. Insulation Installation

1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

H. Plaza Deck Paver Installation

1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**,-height paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
   a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
   a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.

I. Field Quality Control

1. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
   a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (51 mm) of clearance from top of sheet flashings.
   b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
   c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
2. Engage an independent testing agency to observe flood testing and examine underside of decks and terminations for evidence of leaks during flood testing.

J. Protection And Cleaning

1. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 03 01 30 71a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 01 30 71	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 05 13 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cast-in-place concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
   a. Footings.
   b. Foundation walls.
   c. Slabs-on-grade.
   d. Suspended slabs.
   e. Concrete toppings.
   f. Building frame members.
   g. Building walls.

C. Definitions
1. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
      1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
   b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
4. Shop Drawings: For steel reinforcement and formwork. Material test reports **OR** certificates, **as directed**.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
   a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
3. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
   a. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5 **OR** Sections 1 through 5 and Section 7, "Lightweight Concrete", **as directed**.
   b. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
4. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement, **as directed**.
2. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Form-Facing Materials
1. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
2. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
3. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
4. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
5. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
6. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.
7. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
8. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
    a. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
9. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
    a. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
    b. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter in concrete surface.
    c. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

B. Steel Reinforcement
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I **OR** II, **as directed**, zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
5. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M **OR** ASTM A 934/A 934M, **as directed**, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) bar length.
6. Stainless-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 955/A 955M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), Type 304 **OR** 316L, **as directed**, deformed.

7. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
8. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
9. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
10. Epoxy-Coated Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, Type 1 coated, as-drawn, plain-steel-wire **OR** deformed-steel wire, **as directed**, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) wire length.
11. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
12. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
13. Galvanized-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from galvanized steel wire into flat sheets.
14. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, Type 1, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, steel.

C. Reinforcement Accessories
1. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
2. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M epoxy coated.
3. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775/A 775M.
4. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780, zinc-based solder, paint containing zinc dust, or sprayed zinc.
5. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
   a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
   b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
   c. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

D. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
   a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** II **OR** I/II **OR** III **OR** V, **as directed**, gray **OR** white, **as directed**. Supplement with the following:
      1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C **OR** F, **as directed**.
      2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
   b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** I (PM), pozzolan-modified portland **OR** I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
2. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, graded, 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum coarse-aggregate size.
   a. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
4. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330, 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm) **OR** 1/2-inch (13-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable, **as directed**.

E. Admixtures
1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

2. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
   a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
   b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
   c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
   d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
   e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
   f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
3. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
4. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
5. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

F. Fiber Reinforcement
1. Carbon-Steel Fiber: ASTM A 820, deformed, minimum of 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 2.4 inches (60 mm), **as directed**, long, and aspect ratio of 35 to 40 **OR** 45 to 50 **OR** 60 to 65, **as directed**.
   a. Fiber: Type 1, cold-drawn wire **OR** 2, cut sheet, **as directed**.
2. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene micro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/ C 1116M , Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) **OR** 1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm)long.
3. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Polyolefin macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm) long.

G. Waterstops
1. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
   a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick), **as directed**; nontapered.
2. Chemically Resistant Flexible Waterstops: Thermoplastic elastomer rubber waterstops with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints; resistant to oils, solvents, and chemicals. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
   a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/16 inch thick (150 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/16 inch thick (225 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick), **as directed**; nontapered.
3. Flexible PVC Waterstops: CE CRD-C 572, with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.

a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
b. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick), **as directed**; nontapered.

4. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch (19 by 25 mm).
5. Self-Expanding Rubber Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, bentonite-free hydrophilic polymer modified chloroprene rubber, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/8 by 3/4 inch (10 by 19 mm).

H. Vapor Retarders
1. Plastic Vapor Retarder:
a. ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
b. ASTM E 1745, Class B. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
c. ASTM E 1745, Class C, or polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm) thick, **as directed**. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive joint tape.

2. Bituminous Vapor Retarder: 110-mil- (2.8-mm-) thick, semiflexible, 7-ply sheet membrane consisting of reinforced core and carrier sheet with fortified asphalt layers, protective weathercoating, and removable plastic release liner. Furnish manufacturer's accessories including bonding asphalt, pointing mastics, and self-adhering joint tape.
a. Water-Vapor Permeance: 0.00 grains/h x sq. ft. x inches Hg (0.00 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 154.
b. Tensile Strength: 140 lbf/in. (24.5 kN/m); ASTM E 154.
c. Puncture Resistance: 90 lbf (400N); ASTM E 154.

3. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.
4. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 448, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve, and at least 5 percent passing No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve; complying with deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.

I. Floor And Slab Treatments
1. Slip-Resistive Emery Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive, crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) **OR** No. 4 (4.75-mm) **OR** No. 8 (2.36-mm), **as directed**, sieve.
2. Slip-Resistive Aluminum Granule Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of not less than 95 percent fused aluminum-oxide granules.
3. Emery Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Pigmented **OR** Unpigmented, **as directed**, factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded emery aggregate, and plasticizing admixture; with emery aggregate consisting of no less than 60 percent of total aggregate content.
a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

4. Metallic Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Pigmented **OR** Unpigmented, **as directed**, factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded metallic aggregate, rust inhibitors, and plasticizing admixture; with metallic aggregate consisting of no less than 65 percent of total aggregate content.

a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

5. Unpigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Factory-packaged dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, and plasticizing admixture.
6. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.

J. Liquid Floor Treatments
1. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
2. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and is suitable for polished concrete surfaces.

K. Curing Materials
1. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
2. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
3. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
4. Water: Potable.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
6. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering, **as directed**.
7. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering, **as directed**.
8. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
9. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

L. Related Materials
1. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber **OR** ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork, **as directed**.
2. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 **OR** aromatic polyurea with a Type A shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95, **as directed**, per ASTM D 2240.
3. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
4. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
   a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
5. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- (0.55-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

6. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch (0.85 mm) thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

M. Repair Materials
1. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
   a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
   b. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
   c. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   d. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (29 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
2. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
   a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
   b. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
   c. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
   d. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

N. Concrete Mixtures, General
1. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
   a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
2. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent **OR** Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows, **as directed**
   a. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
   b. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
   c. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
   d. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
   e. Silica Fume: 10 percent.
   f. Combined Fly Ash, Pozzolans, and Silica Fume: 35 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
   g. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume: 50 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
3. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 **OR** 0.15 **OR** 0.30 **OR** 1.00, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
4. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Use water-reducing **OR** high-range water-reducing **OR** plasticizing, **as directed**, admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
   b. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

c. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
d. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

5. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

O. Concrete Mixtures For Building Elements

1. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
   b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.
   c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
   d. Air Content:
      1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
      2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
2. Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
   b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.
   c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
   d. Air Content:
      1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
      2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
3. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
   b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) **OR** 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) **OR** 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
   c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
   d. Air Content
      1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
      2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
      3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
   e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
   f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
4. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.

b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) **OR** 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) **OR** 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
d. Air Content:
   1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
   2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
   3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.

5. Suspended Slabs: Proportion structural lightweight concrete mixture as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
   b. Calculated Equilibrium Unit Weight: 115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m) **OR** 110 lb/cu. ft. (1762 kg/cu. m) **OR** 105 lb/cu. ft. (1682 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48.1 kg/cu. m) as determined by ASTM C 567.
   c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
   d. Air Content:
      1) 6 percent, plus or minus 2 percent at point of delivery for nominal maximum aggregate size greater than 3/8 inch (10 mm).
      2) 7 percent, plus or minus 2 percent at point of delivery for nominal maximum aggregate size 3/8 inch (10 mm) or less.
      3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
   e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
   f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
6. Concrete Toppings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
   b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) **OR** 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) **OR** 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
   c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
   d. Air Content:
      1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
      2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
      3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished toppings to exceed 3 percent.
   e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
   f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
7. Building Frame Members: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
   b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.

c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
d. Air Content:
1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.

8. Building Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.
c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
d. Air Content:
1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.

P. Fabricating Reinforcement
1. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

Q. Concrete Mixing
1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, **as directed**, and furnish batch ticket information.
a. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
a. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
b. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Formwork
1. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
2. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
3. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
a. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for smooth-formed finished surfaces.

b. Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** Class C, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Class D, 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, for rough-formed finished surfaces.

4. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
5. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
   a. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
   b. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
6. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
7. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
8. Chamfer **OR** Do not chamfer, **as directed**, exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
9. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
10. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
11. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
12. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

B. Embedded Items
   1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
      a. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
      b. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
      c. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

C. Removing And Reusing Forms
   1. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
      a. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of, **as directed**, its 28-day design compressive strength.
      b. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
   2. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
   3. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by the Owner.

D. Shores And Reshores

1. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
   a. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
2. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
3. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

E. Vapor Retarders
1. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Lap joints 6 inches (150 mm) and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
2. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Granular Course: Cover vapor retarder with granular fill **OR** fine-graded granular material, **as directed**, moisten, and compact with mechanical equipment to elevation tolerances of plus 0 inch (0 mm) or minus 3/4 inch (19 mm).
   a. Place and compact a 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick layer of fine-graded granular material over granular fill.

F. Steel Reinforcement
1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
   a. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
3. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
   a. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
4. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
5. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.
6. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.
7. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material according to ASTM A 780. Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated steel reinforcement.

G. Joints
1. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
2. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
   a. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
   b. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
   c. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
   d. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.

e. Space vertical joints in walls, **as directed**. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
f. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
g. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

3. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
   a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
   b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
4. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
   a. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", are indicated.
   c. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

H. Waterstops
1. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

I. Concrete Placement
1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
2. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by the Owner.
3. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
   a. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
4. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
   a. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
   b. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
   c. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6

inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

5. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
   a. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
   b. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
   c. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
   d. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
   e. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
6. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
   a. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
   b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
   c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
7. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
   a. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
   b. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

J. Finishing Formed Surfaces
1. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
   a. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
2. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
   a. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, **OR** to receive a rubbed finish, **OR** to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete, **as directed**.
3. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
   a. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
   b. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

c. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.

4. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

K. Finishing Floors And Slabs

1. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
2. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch (6 mm) in 1 direction.
   a. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to receive concrete floor toppings **OR** to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes, **as directed**.
3. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
   a. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated **OR** to receive trowel finish **OR** to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo, **as directed**.
4. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
   a. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated **OR** exposed to view **OR** to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system, **as directed**.
   b. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M), for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
      1) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and of levelness, F(L) 15.
      2) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
      3) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 15; for suspended slabs.
      4) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 45; and of levelness, F(L) 35; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 24.
   c. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-foot- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), **as directed**.
5. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated **OR** where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method, **as directed**. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
   a. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
6. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
   a. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with the Owner before application.

7. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granule, **as directed**, finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m) of dampened slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granules, **as directed**, over surface in 1 or 2 applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
   b. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
   c. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granules, **as directed**.
8. Dry-Shake Floor Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake floor hardener to surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Uniformly apply dry-shake floor hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m), **as directed**, unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer.
   b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake floor hardener over surface by hand or with mechanical spreader, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second dry-shake floor hardener application, uniformly distributing remainder of material, and embed by power floating.
   c. After final floating, apply a trowel finish. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake floor hardener manufacturer and apply immediately after final finishing.

L. Miscellaneous Concrete Items
1. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
2. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
3. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
4. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

M. Concrete Protecting And Curing
1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
2. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
3. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
4. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
5. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
   a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
      1) Water.
      2) Continuous water-fog spray.

3) Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
   1) Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
   2) Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
   3) Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
   1) After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

d. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

N. Liquid Floor Treatments
1. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
   b. Do not apply to concrete that is less than three **OR** seven **OR** 14 **OR** 28, **as directed**, days' old.
   c. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
2. Polished Concrete Floor Treatment: Apply polished concrete finish system to cured and prepared slabs to match.
   a. Machine grind floor surfaces to receive polished finishes level and smooth and to depth required to reveal aggregate to match.
   b. Apply penetrating liquid floor treatment for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions, allowing recommended drying time between successive coats.
   c. Continue polishing with progressively finer grit diamond polishing pads to gloss level to match approved mockup.
   d. Control and dispose of waste products produced by grinding and polishing operations.
   e. Neutralize and clean polished floor surfaces.
3. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

O. Joint Filling
1. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one **OR** six, **as directed**, month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

2. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
3. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches (50 mm) deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

P. Concrete Surface Repairs
1. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by the Owner. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to the Owner's approval.
2. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
3. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
    a. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
    b. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
    c. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by the Owner.
4. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
    a. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
    b. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
    c. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
    d. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
    e. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
    f. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
    g. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt,

and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

5. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to the Owner's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
6. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to the Owner's approval.

Q. Field Quality Control
1. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
2. Inspections:
   a. Steel reinforcement placement.
   b. Steel reinforcement welding.
   c. Headed bolts and studs.
   d. Verification of use of required design mixture.
   e. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
   f. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
   g. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
3. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
   a. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
      1) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
   b. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
   c. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete, **as directed**; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
   d. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
   e. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
   f. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
      1) Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
      2) Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
   g. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
      1) Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
      2) A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
   h. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
   i. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength

and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).

j. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

k. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

l. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by the Owner.

m. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

n. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate dos not comply with the Contract Documents.

4. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M) within 24 **OR** 48, **as directed**, hours of finishing.

R. Protection Of Liquid Floor Treatments

1. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.

END OF SECTION 03 05 13 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 11 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 11 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 11 16 13 - CAST-IN-PLACE ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cast-in-place architectural concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section specifies cast-in-place architectural concrete including form facings, reinforcement accessories, concrete materials, concrete mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

C. Definitions
1. Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete: Formed concrete that is exposed to view on surfaces of completed structure or building and that requires special concrete materials, formwork, placement, or finishes to obtain specified architectural appearance.
2. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.
3. Design Reference Sample: Sample designated by the Owner in the Contract Documents that reflects acceptable surface quality and appearance of cast-in-place architectural concrete.
4. Reveal: Projection of coarse aggregate from matrix or mortar after completion of exposure operations.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
      1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
   b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
   a. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
4. Formwork Shop Drawings: Show formwork construction including form-facing joints, rustications, construction and contraction joints, form joint-sealant details, form tie locations and patterns, inserts and embedments, cutouts, cleanout panels, and other items that visually affect cast-in-place architectural concrete.
5. Placement Schedule: Submit concrete placement schedule before start of placement operations. Include locations of all joints including construction joints.
6. Samples: For each of the following materials:
   a. Form-facing panel.
   b. Form ties.
   c. Form liners.
   d. Coarse- and fine-aggregate gradations.
   e. Chamfers and rustications.
7. Material test reports **OR** certificates, **as directed**.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
   a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
   a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
   b. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
3. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
   a. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5 **OR** Sections 1 through 5 and Section 6, "Architectural Concrete", **as directed**.
   b. ACI 303.1, "Specification for Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete."
4. Field Sample Panels: After approval of verification sample and before casting architectural concrete, produce field sample panels to demonstrate the approved range of selections made under sample submittals. Produce a minimum of 3 sets of full-scale panels, cast vertically, approximately 48 by 48 by 6 inches (1200 by 1200 by 150 mm) minimum, to demonstrate the expected range of finish, color, and texture variations.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Form-Facing Materials
1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for formwork and other form-facing material requirements.
2. Form-Facing Panels for As-Cast **OR** Exposed-Aggregate, **as directed**, Finishes: Steel, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, or other approved nonabsorptive panel materials that will provide continuous, true, and smooth architectural concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
3. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will provide surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
4. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
5. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface treatments of concrete.
6. Rustication Strips: Metal, rigid plastic, or dressed wood with sides beveled and back kerfed; nonstaining; in longest practicable lengths.
7. Chamfer Strips: Metal, rigid plastic, elastomeric rubber, or dressed wood, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum; nonstaining; in longest practicable lengths.
8. Form Joint Tape: Compressible foam tape; pressure sensitive; AAMA 800, "Specification 810.1, Expanded Cellular Glazing Tape"; minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
9. Form Joint Sealant: Elastomeric sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type M or S, Grade NS, that adheres to form joint substrates.
10. Sealer: Penetrating, clear, polyurethane wood form sealer formulated to reduce absorption of bleed water and prevent migration of set-retarding chemicals from wood.

11. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated colorless form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect architectural concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of those surfaces.
    a. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
12. Surface Retarder: Chemical liquid set retarder, for application on form-facing materials, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete surface to depth of reveal specified.
13. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic **OR** internally disconnecting **OR** removable, **as directed**, ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
    a. Furnish ties with tapered tie cone spreaders, **as directed**, that, when removed, will leave holes 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, in diameter on concrete surface.
    b. Furnish internally disconnecting ties that will leave no metal closer than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), after exposing aggregate, **as directed**, from the architectural concrete surface.
    c. Furnish glass-fiber-reinforced plastic ties, not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in diameter, of color to match the Owner's sample **OR** selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    d. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

B. Steel Reinforcement And Accessories
1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for steel reinforcement and other requirements for reinforcement accessories.
2. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
3. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire fabric in place; manufacture according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
    a. Where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use gray, all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1, gray, plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2, stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.

C. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
    a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** II **OR** I/II **OR** III, **as directed**, gray **OR** white, **as directed**. Supplement with the following:, **as directed**
        1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C **OR** F, **as directed**.
        2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
        3) Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
    b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** (PM), pozzolan-modified Portland **OR** I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
2. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 5S **OR** 5M **OR** 1N, **as directed**, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials, **as directed**.
    a. Maximum Coarse Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm), **as directed**.
    b. Gradation: Uniformly **OR** Gap, **as directed**, graded.
3. Normal-Weight Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33 **OR** ASTM C 144, **as directed**, manufactured or natural sand, from same source for entire Project.
4. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M except free of wash water from mixer washout operations.

D. Admixtures
   1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
   2. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
      a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
      b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
      c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
      d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
      e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
      f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
   3. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
      a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

E. Curing Materials
   1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
   2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
   3. Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
      a. For integrally colored concrete, curing compound shall be pigmented type, **as directed**, approved by color pigment manufacturer.
      b. For concrete indicated to be sealed, curing compound shall be compatible with sealer.

F. Repair Materials
   1. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
   2. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements.
      a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

G. Concrete Mixtures, General
   1. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of cast-in-place architectural concrete proportioned on basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
      a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed design mixtures based on laboratory trial mixtures.
   2. Proportion concrete mixtures as follows:
      a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**.
      b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.46.
      c. Slump Limit: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
      d. Air Content:
         1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
         2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
   3. Cementitious Materials: For cast-in-place architectural concrete exposed to deicers, limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica

fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent, **as directed**.

4. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 **OR** 0.15 **OR** 0.30 **OR** 1.00, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
5. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

H. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed or Site-Mixed Architectural Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and furnish batch ticket information.
   a. Clean equipment used to mix and deliver cast-in-place architectural concrete to prevent contamination from other concrete.
   b. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Formwork

1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for formwork, embedded items, and shoring and reshoring.
2. Limit deflection of form-facing panels to not exceed ACI 303.1 requirements.
3. In addition to ACI 303.1 limits on form-facing panel deflection, limit cast-in-place architectural concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
   a. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** C, 1/2 inch (13 mm), **as directed**.
4. Fabricate forms to result in cast-in-place architectural concrete that complies with ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
   a. In addition to ACI 117, comply with additional tolerances as directed by the Owner.
5. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-in-place surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical. Kerf wood rustications, keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
   a. Seal form joints and penetrations at form ties with form joint tape or form joint sealant to prevent cement paste leakage.
   b. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
6. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
7. Chamfer **OR** Do not chamfer, **as directed**, exterior corners and edges of cast-in-place architectural concrete.
8. Coat contact surfaces of wood rustications and chamfer strips with sealer before placing reinforcement, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
9. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
10. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
11. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
12. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
13. Coat contact surfaces of forms with surface retarder, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
14. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and attach securely to prevent deflection and maintain stability of liners during concreting.

Prevent form liners from sagging and stretching in hot weather. Seal joints of form liners and form liner accessories to prevent mortar leaks. Coat form liner with form-release agent.

B. Reinforcement And Inserts
   1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for fabricating and installing steel reinforcement. Securely fasten steel reinforcement and wire ties against shifting during concrete placement.
   2. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

C. Removing And Reusing Forms
   1. Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
      a. Schedule form removal to maintain surface appearance that matches approved field sample panels.
      b. Cut off and grind glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties flush with surface of concrete.
   2. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved 28-day design compressive strength **OR** at least 70 percent of 28-day design compressive strength, **as directed**. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
   3. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Do not use split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material. Apply new form-release agent.
   4. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for cast-in-place architectural concrete surfaces.

D. Joints
   1. Construction Joints: Install construction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of cast-in-place architectural concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
      a. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete, **as directed**. Align construction joint within rustications attached to form-facing material.
      c. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
      d. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
      e. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
      f. Use bonding agent **OR** epoxy-bonding adhesive, **as directed**, at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
   2. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of cast-in-place architectural concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.

E. Concrete Placement
   1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, form-release agent, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
   2. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by the Owner.
   3. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.

a. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

4. Deposit concrete continuously between construction joints. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
   a. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
   b. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 303.1.
   c. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. Do not permit vibrators to contact forms.
5. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
   a. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
   b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
   c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents.
   d. Do not use chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
6. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
   a. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
   b. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

F. Finishes, General
1. Architectural Concrete Finish: Match the Owner's design reference sample, identified and described as indicated, to satisfaction of the Owner.
2. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
   a. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Maintain uniformity of special finishes over construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.

G. As-Cast Formed Finishes
1. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
2. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Remove fins and other projections exceeding specified limits on formed-surface irregularities. Repair **OR** Do not repair, **as directed**, and patch tie holes and defects.
3. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-form-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
   a. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
   b. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland

cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match surrounding concrete. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

c. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match surrounding concrete. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.

4. Form-Liner Finish: Produce a textured surface free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, and of uniform appearance, color, and texture.

H. Exposed-Aggregate Finishes

1. Scrubbed Finish: After concrete has achieved a compressive strength of from 1000 to 1500 psi (6.9 to 10.3 MPa), apply scrubbed finish. Wet concrete surfaces thoroughly and scrub with stiff fiber or wire brushes, using water freely, until top mortar surface is removed and aggregate is uniformly exposed. Rinse scrubbed surfaces with clean water. Maintain continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Remove only enough concrete mortar from surfaces to match design reference sample.
2. High-Pressure Water-Jet Finish: Perform high-pressure water jetting on concrete that has achieved a minimum compressive strength of 4500 psi (31 MPa). Coordinate with formwork removal to ensure that surfaces to be high-pressure water-jet finished are treated at same age for uniform results.
   a. Surface Continuity: Perform high-pressure water-jet finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances in reveal projection to match design reference sample.
3. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Perform abrasive blasting after compressive strength of concrete exceeds 2000 psi (13.8 MPa). Coordinate with formwork removal to ensure that surfaces to be abrasive blasted are treated at same age for uniform results.
   a. Surface Continuity: Perform abrasive-blast finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances in depths of blast to match design reference sample.
   b. Abrasive Blasting: Abrasive blast corners and edges of patterns carefully, using backup boards, to maintain uniform corner or edge line. Determine type of nozzle, nozzle pressure, and blasting techniques required to match design reference sample.
   c. Depth of Cut: Use an abrasive grit of proper type and gradation to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces to match design reference sample, as follows:
      1) Brush: Remove cement matrix to dull surface sheen and expose face of fine aggregate; with no significant reveal.
      2) Light: Expose fine aggregate with occasional exposure of coarse aggregate and uniform color; with maximum reveal of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
      3) Medium: Generally expose coarse aggregate; with slight reveal, a maximum of 1/4 inch (6 mm).
      4) Heavy: Expose and reveal coarse aggregate to a maximum projection of one-third its diameter; with reveal range of 1/4 to 1/2 inch (6 to 13 mm).
4. Bushhammer Finish: Allow concrete to cure at least 14 days before starting bushhammer surface finish operations.
   a. Surface Continuity: Perform bushhammer finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances of cut as shown on Drawings or to match design reference sample or mockup.
   b. Surface Cut: Maintain required depth of cut and general aggregate exposure. Use power tool with hammer attachments for large, flat surfaces, and use hand hammers for small areas, at corners and edges, and for restricted locations where power tools cannot reach.
   c. Remove impressions of formwork and form facings with exception of tie holes.

I. Concrete Protecting And Curing
   1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
   2. Begin curing cast-in-place architectural concrete immediately after removing forms from **OR** applying as-cast formed finishes to, **as directed**, concrete. Cure according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods that will not mottle, discolor, or stain concrete:
      a. Moisture Curing: Keep exposed surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
         1) Water.
         2) Continuous water-fog spray.
         3) Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
      b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period; use cover material and waterproof tape.
      c. Curing Compound: Mist concrete surfaces with water. Apply curing compound uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

J. Field Quality Control
   1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for field quality-control requirements.

K. Repairs, Protection, And Cleaning
   1. Repair and cure damaged finished surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete when approved by the Owner. Match repairs to color, texture, and uniformity of surrounding surfaces and to repairs on approved mockups.
      a. Remove and replace cast-in-place architectural concrete that cannot be repaired and cured to the Owner's approval.
   2. Protect corners, edges, and surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete from damage; use guards and barricades.
   3. Protect cast-in-place architectural concrete from staining, laitance, and contamination during remainder of construction period.
   4. Clean cast-in-place architectural concrete surfaces after finish treatment to remove stains, markings, dust, and debris.
   5. Wash and rinse surfaces according to concrete finish applicator's written recommendations. Protect other Work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
      a. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of cast-in-place architectural concrete finishes.

END OF SECTION 03 11 16 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 11 16 13a - RUSTICATED CONCRETE FINISHES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of rusticated concrete finishes. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Sample: A sample of finish expected shall be erected on site. Completed work shall approximate the sample. Work determined by the contracting officer not to be similar shall be removed and replaced without further expense to the Owner.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Overlaid Plywood: DOC PS 1, B-B High Density Overlaid Concrete Form, Class I.

B. Plywood: DOC PS 1, B-B (Concrete Form) Plywood, Class I, Exterior Grade or better, mill-oiled and edge-sealed, with each piece bearing legible inspection mark.

C. Chamfer Strips: Clear white pine with surface against concrete to be planed, metal, PVC, or rubber.

D. Form Liners: Provide commercially available molds and form-facing materials of metal, plastic, mood, or another material that is nonreactive with concrete and dimensionally stable to produce repetitive concrete surfaces.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Form Construction: Forms shall be constructed to provide required sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions and to provide continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces. Forms shall be fabricated for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. The number of joints shall be minimized. Joints shall be made watertight to prevent leakage of cement paste. Provisions shall be made for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, inserts, and other features required in the work.

B. Form Coatings: Forms shall be oiled with form-coating compounds that will not bond with, stain, nor adversely effect concrete surfaces, and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

C. Finish: Fins and other projections shall be completely removed and smoothed. A smooth rubbed finish shall be provided not less than one day after form removal.

END OF SECTION 03 11 16 13a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 11 16 13	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 11 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 11 23 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 13 13	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 13 16	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
03 21 11 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 21 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 11 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 30 53 00 - MISCELLANEOUS CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for miscellaneous cast-in-place concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
   b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements. For each design mixture submitted, include an equivalent concrete mixture that does not contain portland cement replacements, to determine amount of portland cement replaced.
3. Other Action Submittal:
   a. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
2. Comply with the following sections of ACI 301 (ACI 301M), unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
   a. "General Requirements."
   b. "Formwork and Formwork Accessories."
   c. "Reinforcement and Reinforcement Supports."
   d. "Concrete Mixtures."
   e. "Handling, Placing, and Constructing."
   f. "Lightweight Concrete."
3. Comply with ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Formwork
1. Furnish formwork and formwork accessories according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

B. Steel Reinforcement
1. Recycled Content: Provide steel reinforcement with an average recycled content of steel products so that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
3. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn.

4. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
5. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.

C. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
   a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** Type II **OR** Type I/II **OR** Type III **OR** Type V, **as directed**. Supplement with the following, **as directed**:
      1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
      2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
   b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** Type IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** Type I (PM), pozzolan-modified portland **OR** Type I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
2. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, graded, 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
3. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330, 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
4. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
5. Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) long.

D. Admixtures
1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
2. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
   a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
   b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
   c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
   d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
   e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
   f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

E. Related Materials
1. Vapor Retarder: Plastic sheet, ASTM E 1745, Class A or B.
   OR
   Vapor Retarder: Polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm) thick; or plastic sheet, ASTM E 1745, Class C.
2. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

F. Curing Materials
1. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
2. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth or cotton mats.
3. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
4. Water: Potable.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
6. Clear, Waterborne **OR** Solvent-Borne, **as directed**, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

G. Concrete Mixtures
1. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for concrete mixtures.

2. Normal-Weight Concrete: Prepare design mixes, proportioned according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), as follows:
   a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
   b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45, **as directed**.
   c. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
   d. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
   e. Air Content: Maintain within range permitted by ACI 301 (ACI 301M). Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floor slabs to exceed 3 percent.
3. Structural Lightweight Concrete Mix: ASTM C 330, proportioned to produce concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) at 28 days and a calculated equilibrium unit weight of 110 lb/cu. ft. (1762 kg/cu. m) plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48.1 kg/cu. m), as determined by ASTM C 567. Concrete slump at point of placement shall be the minimum necessary for efficient mixing, placing, and finishing.
   a. Limit slump to 5 inches (125 mm) for troweled slabs and 4 inches (100 mm) for other slabs.
4. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mix at manufacturer's recommended rate but not less than a rate of 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.

H. Concrete Mixing
1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116, **as directed**, and furnish batch ticket information.
   a. When air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
   a. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
   b. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
   c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mix type, mix time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Formwork
1. Design, construct, erect, brace, and maintain formwork according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

B. Embedded Items
1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

C. Vapor Retarders
1. Install, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643; place sheets in position with longest dimension parallel with direction of pour.
   a. Lap joints 6 inches (150 mm) and seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive or joint tape.

D. Steel Reinforcement
   1. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
      a. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

E. Joints
   1. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
   2. Construction Joints: Locate and install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
   3. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness, as follows:
      a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with groover tool to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.
      b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
   4. Isolation Joints: Install joint-filler strips at junctions with slabs-on-grade and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
      a. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Concrete Placement
   1. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) for placing concrete.
   2. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
      OR
      Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement.
   3. Consolidate concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment.

G. Finishing Formed Surfaces
   1. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding 1/2 inch (13 mm).
      a. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view, **as directed**.
   2. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defective areas. Remove fins and other projections exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm).
      a. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, **OR** to receive a rubbed finish, **OR** to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete, **as directed**.
   3. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following rubbed finish, defined in ACI 301 (ACI 301M), to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
      a. Smooth-rubbed finish.
      b. Grout-cleaned finish.
      c. Cork-floated finish.
   4. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Finishing Unformed Surfaces

1. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
2. Screed surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on surface.
   a. Do not further disturb surfaces before starting finishing operations.
3. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and surfaces to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for ceramic or quarry tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded cementitious floor finishes, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Float Finish: Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to surfaces to receive trowel finish, and to floor and slab surfaces to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, fluid-applied or direct-to-deck-applied membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.
5. Trowel Finish: Apply a hard trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to floor and slab surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin film-finish coating system.
6. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a partial trowel finish, stopping after second troweling, to surfaces indicated and to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set methods. Immediately after second troweling, and when concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
7. Nonslip Broom Finish: Apply a nonslip broom finish to surfaces indicated and to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.

I. Concrete Protecting And Curing
   1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) for hot-weather protection during curing.
   2. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
   3. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
   4. Curing Methods: Cure formed and unformed concrete for at least seven days by one or a combination of the following methods:
      a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
         1) Water.
         2) Continuous water-fog spray.
         3) Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
      b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
      c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
      d. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

J. Field Quality Control
   1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
   2. Tests: Perform according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
      a. Testing Frequency: One composite sample shall be obtained for each day's pour of each concrete mix exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m) but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.
      OR
      Testing Frequency: One composite sample shall be obtained for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.

K. Repairs
   1. Remove and replace concrete that does not comply with requirements in this Section.

END OF SECTION 03 30 53 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 30 53 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 31 13 00 - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Coarse Aggregate:
1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:
1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:
1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.

2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Dowels shall be plain steel bars complying with ASTM A 499.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.

B. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.

C. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.

D. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.

E. Finishing:
1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
5. Burlap Drag Finishing: When most of the water glaze or sheen has disappeared and before the concrete becomes nonplastic, drag the surface of the pavement in the direction of the concrete placement with a multiple-ply burlap drag.
6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.

F. Concrete Curing and Protection:
1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.
2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00

SECTION 03 31 13 00a - STEEL REINFORCED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of steel reinforced Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Coarse Aggregate:
1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:
1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:

1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.
2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Steel Reinforcement: All reinforcement shall be free from loose flaky rust, loose scale, oil, grease, mud, or other coatings that might reduce bond. Bar mats shall comply with ASTM A 184. Welded steel wire fabric shall comply with ASTM A 1064. Tie bars shall be deformed bars in compliance with ASTM A 615, A 616, or A 617. Dowels shall be plain steel bars complying with ASTM A 499.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.

B. Reinforcement Steel shall be installed by the strike-off method wherein the concrete is deposited on the subgrade and struck to the indicated elevation of the steel. The reinforcement shall be laid upon the prestruck surface.

C. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.

D. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.

E. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.

F. Finishing:
1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
5. Burlap Drag Finishing: When most of the water glaze or sheen has disappeared and before the concrete becomes nonplastic, drag the surface of the pavement in the direction of the concrete placement with a multiple-ply burlap drag.
6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.

G. Concrete Curing and Protection:
1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.
2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 31 13 00b - FIBER REINFORCED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of fiber reinforced Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Coarse Aggregate:
1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:
1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:

1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.
2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Steel Fibers: The fibers shall be made from low carbon steel. The following sizes of steel are acceptable:
1. 0.010-inch x 0.022-inch flat steel fiber,
2. 0.010-inch x 0.50-inch round steel fiber,
3. 0.016-inch x 1.0-inch round steel fiber,
4. 0.016-inch x 0.75-inch round steel fiber with 0.010-inch x 0.020-inch flat section along the length of the fiber
5. 2.5-inch x 0.025-inch round steel fibers.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.

B. Reinforcement Steel shall be installed by the strike-off method wherein the concrete is deposited on the subgrade and struck to the indicated elevation of the steel. The reinforcement shall be laid upon the prestruck surface.

C. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.

D. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.

E. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.

F. Finishing:
1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
5. Broom Finishing: Burlap drag finishing will not be allowed as this brings the steel fibers to the surface. Finishing shall be accomplished using a stiff broom.
6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.

G. Concrete Curing and Protection:
1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.

2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 31 13 00c - CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cement concrete pavement. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Driveways.
   b. Roadways.
   c. Parking lots.
   d. Curbs and gutters.
   e. Walks.

C. Definitions
1. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
   b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements. For each design mixture submitted, include an equivalent concrete mixture that does not contain portland cement replacements, to determine amount of portland cement replaced.
3. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
4. Samples: For each type of product or exposed finish, prepared as Samples of size indicated below:
   a. Exposed Aggregate: 10-lb (4.5-kg) Sample of each mix.
   b. Wheel Stops: 6 inches (150 mm) long showing cross section; with fasteners.
   c. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices: 6 inches (150 mm) long showing cross section; with fasteners.
5. Other Action Submittals:
   a. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer of detectable warnings, ready-mix concrete manufacturer and testing agency.
7. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
   a. Cementitious materials.
   b. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
   c. Fiber reinforcement.
   d. Admixtures.
   e. Curing compounds.
   f. Applied finish materials.

g. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
h. Joint fillers.

8. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
   a. Aggregates. Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
9. Field quality-control reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Detectable Warning Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer of stamped concrete paving systems.
2. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
   a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
3. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
   a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
4. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
5. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) unless otherwise indicated.
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Project Conditions
1. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.
2. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for oil-based materials **OR** 55 deg F (12.8 deg C) for water-based materials, **as directed**, and not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C).

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Forms
1. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
   a. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet (30.5 m) or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
2. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

B. Steel Reinforcement
1. Recycled Content: Provide steel reinforcement with an average recycled content of steel so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, fabricated from as-drawn steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire into flat sheets.
3. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
4. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, plain steel.
5. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420); deformed.
6. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) deformed bars.

7. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) deformed bars.
8. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars; assembled with clips.
9. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
10. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.
11. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**.
12. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) plain-steel bars; zinc coated (galvanized) after fabrication according to ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I coating, **as directed**. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
13. Epoxy-Coated, Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars.
14. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
    OR
    Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against paving form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
15. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
    a. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
    b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
16. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.
17. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780.

C. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
    a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray **OR** white, **as directed**, portland cement Type I **OR** Type II **OR** Type I/II **OR** Type III **OR** Type V, **as directed**. Supplement with the following, **as directed**:
        1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or Class F.
        2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
    b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** Type IP, portland-pozzolan, **as directed**, cement.
2. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S **OR** Class 4M **OR** Class 1N, **as directed**, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service-record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar paving applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials, **as directed**.
    a. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
    b. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
3. Exposed Aggregate: Selected, hard, and durable; washed; free of materials with deleterious reactivity to cement or that cause staining; from a single source, with gap-graded coarse aggregate as follows:
    a. Aggregate Sizes: 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) **OR** 1/2 to 3/4 inch (13 to 19 mm) **OR** 3/8 to 5/8 inch (10 to 16 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
    b. Aggregate Source, Shape, and Color: A**s required to meet Project requirements**.
4. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
5. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

6. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
   a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
   b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
   c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
   d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
   e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
   f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
7. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

D. Fiber Reinforcement
1. Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete paving, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) long.

E. Curing Materials
1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) dry or cotton mats.
2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
3. Water: Potable.
4. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
6. White, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B, dissipating.

F. Related Materials
1. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork in preformed strips.
2. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
3. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
4. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
   a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** Types IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
5. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm).
6. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
7. Rock Salt: Sodium chloride crystals, kiln dried, coarse gradation with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve and 85 percent retained on a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.

G. Detectable Warning Materials

1. Detectable Warning Stamp: Semirigid polyurethane mats with formed underside capable of imprinting detectable warning pattern on plastic concrete; perforated with a vent hole at each dome.
   a. Size of Stamp: One piece matching detectable warning area shown on Drawings **OR** 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) **OR** 24 by 36 inches (610 by 914 mm) **OR** 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1220 mm) **OR** 26 by 26 inches (660 by 660 mm) **OR** 26 by 36 inches (660 by 914 mm), **as directed**.
2. Liquid Release Agent: Manufacturer's standard, clear, evaporating formulation designed to facilitate release of stamp mats.

H. Pavement Markings
1. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N **OR** Type F **OR** Type S, **as directed**; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.
   a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.
   a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
3. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than three **OR** 45, **as directed**, minutes.
   a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint.
   a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
5. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1 **OR** FS TT-B-1325, Type 1A, **as directed**.

I. Wheel Stops
1. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi (17.2-MPa) minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) high by 9 inches (225 mm) wide by 72 inches (1820 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.
   a. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter, 10-inch (254-mm) minimum length.
2. Wheel Stops: Solid, integrally colored, 96 percent recycled HDPE, or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled rubber or plastic; UV stabilized; 4 inches (100 mm) high by 6 inches (150 mm) wide by 72 inches (1820 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.
   a. Color: Black **OR** Yellow **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Blue, **as directed**.
   b. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter, 10-inch (254-mm) minimum length.
   c. Adhesive: As recommended by wheel stop manufacturer for application to concrete pavement.

J. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices
1. Speed Bumps **OR** Humps **OR** Cushions, **as directed**: Solid, integrally colored, 100 percent postconsumer or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled rubber or plastic; UV stabilized. Provide holes for anchoring to substrate.
   a. Bump Size: Modular 2 inches (50 mm) high by 10 inches (254 mm) wide by 72 inches (1800 mm) long, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
   b. Hump **OR** Cushion, **as directed**, Size: Modular assemblies 3 inches (75 mm) high by 12 feet (3.7 m) in overall width **OR** 4 inches (100 mm) high by 14 feet (4.3 m) in overall width, **as directed**, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
   c. Color: Black **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   d. Mounting Hardware: Galvanized-steel lag screw, shield, and washers; 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter, 8-inch (200-mm) minimum length **OR** hardware as standard with device manufacturer for use with concrete paving, **as directed**.
   e. Adhesive: As recommended by device manufacturer.

K. Concrete Mixtures
1. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
   a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
   b. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.
2. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
   a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45 **OR** 0.50, **as directed**.
   c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
3. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
   a. Air Content: 5-1/2 **OR** 4-1/2 **OR** 2-1/2, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
   b. Air Content: 6 **OR** 4-1/2 **OR** 3, **as diredcted**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
   c. Air Content: 6 **OR** 5 **OR** 3-1/2, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
4. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 **OR** 0.30, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
5. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Use water-reducing admixture **OR** high-range, water-reducing admixture **OR** high-range, water-reducing and retarding admixture **OR** plasticizing and retarding admixture, **as directed**, in concrete as required for placement and workability.
   b. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
6. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage by weight of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for concrete exposed to deicing chemicals **OR** as follows, **as directed**:
   a. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
   b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
   c. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
7. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
8. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

L. Concrete Mixing
1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, **as directed**. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
   a. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
   a. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.

b. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
2. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
a. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction, **as directed**. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
b. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes).
c. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

C. Edge Forms And Screed Construction
1. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
2. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

D. Steel Reinforcement
1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
3. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
4. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
5. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
6. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
7. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap of adjacent mats.

E. Joints
1. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
a. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.

2. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
   a. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
   c. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent **OR** epoxy bonding adhesive, **as directed**, at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
   d. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
   e. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
3. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
   a. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet (15.25 m) unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
   c. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
   d. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
   e. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
   f. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
4. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
   a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces, **as directed**.
      1) Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
   b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
      1) Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
   c. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
   d. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces, **as directed**.

F. Concrete Placement
   1. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
   2. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.

3. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
4. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
5. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
6. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
7. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M) by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
    a. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
8. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
9. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
10. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
11. Slip-Form Paving: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
    a. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.
12. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
    a. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
    b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
    c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
13. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
    a. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
    b. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
    c. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

G. Float Finishing
1. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
2. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
    a. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.

b. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
c. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

H. Special Finishes
1. Monolithic Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Expose coarse aggregate in paving surface as follows:
a. Immediately after float finishing, spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
b. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove when ready to continue finishing operations.
c. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.
d. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
2. Seeded Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Immediately after initial floating, spread a single layer of aggregate uniformly on paving surface. Tamp aggregate into plastic concrete and float finish to entirely embed aggregate with mortar cover of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
a. Spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
b. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove sheeting when ready to continue finishing operations.
c. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.
d. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
3. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Before final floating, spread slip-resistive aggregate finish on paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
a. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (19.5 kg/10 sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (29 kg/10 sq. m), **as directed**, of dampened, slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface in two applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface using a steel trowel, but do not force below surface.
b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface with mechanical spreader, allow to absorb moisture, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second slip-resistive aggregate application, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform coverage, and embed by power floating.
c. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by slip-resistive aggregate manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
d. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or abrasive stone and water to expose nonslip aggregate.
4. Rock-Salt Finish: After initial floating **OR** troweling **OR** brooming, **as directed**, uniformly spread rock salt over paving surface at the rate of 5 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.2 kg/10 sq. m).
a. Embed rock salt into plastic concrete with roller or magnesium float.
b. Cover paving surface with 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet and remove sheet when concrete has hardened and seven-day curing period has elapsed.
c. After seven-day curing period, saturate concrete with water and broom-sweep surface to dissolve remaining rock salt, thereby leaving pits and holes.
5. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

a. Uniformly spread dry-shake hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m), unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match paving color required.
b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over the concrete surface with mechanical spreader; allow hardener to absorb moisture and embed it by power floating. Follow power floating with a second application of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed hardener by final power floating.
c. After final power floating, apply a hand-trowel finish followed by a broom finish.
d. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.

I. Detectable Warnings
1. Blockouts: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of detectable paving units specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
   a. Tolerance for Opening Size: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
2. Stamped Detectable Warnings: Install stamped detectable warnings as part of a continuous concrete paving placement and according to stamp-mat manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Before using stamp mats, verify that the vent holes are unobstructed.
   b. Apply liquid release agent to the concrete surface and the stamp mat.
   c. Stamping: While initially finished concrete is plastic **OR** After application and final floating of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, **as directed**, accurately align and place stamp mats in sequence. Uniformly load, gently vibrate, and press mats into concrete to produce imprint pattern on concrete surface. Load and tamp mats directly perpendicular to the stamp-mat surface to prevent distortion in shape of domes. Press and tamp until mortar begins to come through all of the vent holes. Gently remove stamp mats.
   d. Trimming: After 24 hours, cut off the tips of mortar formed by the vent holes.
   e. Remove residual release agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, but no fewer than three days after stamping concrete. High-pressure-wash surface and joint patterns, taking care not to damage stamped concrete. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.

J. Concrete Protection And Curing
1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
2. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
3. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
4. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
5. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
   a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
      1) Water.
      2) Continuous water-fog spray.
      3) Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
   b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm) and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
   c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to

heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

K. Paving Tolerances
1. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
   a. Elevation: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
   b. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
   c. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- (3-m-) long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm).
   d. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches (13 mm per 300 mm) of tie bar.
   e. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch (25 mm).
   f. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
   g. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches (6 mm per 300 mm) of dowel.
   h. Joint Spacing: 3 inches (75 mm).
   i. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
   j. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), no minus.

L. Pavement Marking
1. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with the Owner.
2. Allow concrete paving to cure for a minimum of 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
3. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
4. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).
   a. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.
   b. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal. (0.72 kg/L).

M. Wheel Stops
1. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive applied as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Securely attach wheel stops to paving with not less than two steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, dowels located at one-quarter to one-third points. Install dowels in drilled holes in the paving and bond dowels to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

N. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices
1. Install preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, in bed of adhesive applied as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic.
2. Securely attach preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, to paving with hardware spaced as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic. Recess head of hardware beneath top surface.

O. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
   a. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) **OR** 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m), **as directed**, or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.

1) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

b. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.

c. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.

d. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when it is 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.

e. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

f. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.

1) A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.

3. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).

4. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

5. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

6. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner.

7. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

8. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

9. Prepare test and inspection reports.

P. Repairs And Protection

1. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by the Owner.

2. Drill test cores, where directed by the Owner, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.

3. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

4. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Final Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00c

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 31 13 00d - ROLLER COMPACTED CONCRETE PAVEMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of roller compacted concrete pavement. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Cementitious Materials:
1. Portland cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type I. Low alkali is to be used with aggregates when directed. In lieu of low-alkali cement, the Contractor may use a combination of Portland cement that does not meet the low-alkali requirement with a suitable pozzolan or ground granulated blast-furnace slag (GGBFS) provided the following requirement is met. The expansion of the proposed combination shall be equal to or less than the expansion of a low-alkali cement meeting the requirements of ASTM C 150 when tested in conformance with ASTM C 441. These two tests shall be performed concurrently at an independent certified laboratory at the Contractor's expense. the Owner reserves the right to confirm the test results and to adjust the percentage of pozzolan or GGBFS in the combination to suit other requirements at no additional cost to the Owner. Portland cement shall be furnished in bulk.
2. Pozzolan shall conform to ASTM C 618, and, in addition, limits in Table 2A, Uniformity Requirements (for air content) shall apply to all fly ash. Table 1A, Supplementary Optional Chemical Requirement for Maximum Alkalies, shall apply when it is to be used with aggregates listed to require low-alkali cement. Pozzolan shall be furnished in bulk.
3. The temperature of the cementitious materials as delivered to the site shall not exceed 150 degrees F.

B. Admixtures: All chemical admixtures furnished as liquids shall be in a solution of suitable viscosity and dilution for field use as determined by the Owner.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture (WRA) shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 494, Type D.
2. Air-entraining admixture shall conform to ASTM C 260.

C. Water for washing aggregates and for mixing and curing concrete shall be free from injurious amounts of oil, acid, salt, alkali, organic matter, or other deleterious substances and shall comply with COE CRD-C 400.

D. Aggregates
1. Composition: Fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sands. Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, air-cooled blast-furnace slag, or a combination thereof.
OR
All concrete mixtures will be proportioned by the Owner except that proportions for the slipformed facing concrete mixture will be selected by the Contractor. RCC shall be composed of cementitious materials, water, fine and coarse aggregates, and possibly admixtures. The cementitious material shall be portland cement, or portland cement in combination with pozzolan. An admixture when approved or directed will be a water-reducing/retarding admixture. Air-entraining admixture will be used in the bedding concrete and other conventional concrete.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Concrete Mixing Plant: A continuous mixing plant(s) shall be capable of producing RCC of the same quality and uniformity as would be produced in a conventional redi-mix batch plant and shall be capable of producing a uniform continuous product (at both maximum and minimum production rates) that is mixed so that complete intermingling of all ingredients occurs without balling, segregation, and wet or dry portions.

B. Trucks: Truck mixers or agitators used for transporting central-mixed conventional concrete shall conform to the applicable requirements of ASTM C 94. Truck mixers shall not be used to transport concrete with larger than 37.5 mm (1-1/2-inch) nominal maximum size aggregate (NMSA) or 2 inch slump, or less. Nonagitating trucks may be used for transporting conventional central-mixed concrete over a smooth road when the hauling time is less than 15 minutes and the slump is less than 3 inches. Bodies of nonagitating trucks shall be smooth, water-tight, metal containers specifically designed to transport concrete, shaped with rounded corners to minimize segregation.

C. Belt Conveyors: Belt conveyors shall be designed and operated to assure a uniform flow of concrete from mixer or delivery truck to final place of deposit without segregation of ingredients or loss of mortar and shall be provided with positive means for preventing segregation of the concrete or loss of mortar at transfer points and the point of placing. The NMSA required in mixture proportions furnished by the Owner will not be changed to accommodate the belt width.

D. Spreading and Remixing Equipment: The primary spreading procedure shall be accomplished by dozer. Graders or other equipment not specified may be used to facilitate the RCC spreading process only when approved. For open, unrestricted areas, the dozer shall be a minimum size and weight equivalent to a Caterpillar D-6. For restricted placement areas, such as placement of RCC near the dam crest or next to abutments, the dozer shall have as a minimum a size and weight equivalent to a Caterpillar D-4. There shall be a minimum of one operating dozer for each 200 cubic yards of RCC placed each hour. The dozers shall be equipped with well-maintained grousers. A front-end loader with operator shall be available to assist with deposition and spreading of RCC as needed in confined areas. The equipment shall be maintained in good operating condition. The equipment shall not leak or drip oil, grease, or other visible contaminants onto the RCC surface. All equipment used for spreading and remixing that leaves the surface of the structure for maintenance or repairs or, for any other reason, must be cleaned of all contaminants by an approved method before returning to the structure surface. Under no conditions shall a dozer or other tracked vehicle be operated on other than fresh uncompacted RCC except to facilitate startup operations for each lift and by approved procedures.

E. Compaction Equipment:
   1. Self-propelled vibratory rollers shall be used for primary rolling and shall be double-drum. They shall transmit a dynamic impact to the surface through a smooth steel drum by means of revolving weights, eccentric shafts, or other equivalent methods. The compactor shall have a minimum gross mass of 20,000 pounds and shall produce a minimum dynamic force of 350 pounds per linear inch of drum width. The operating frequency shall be variable in the approximate range of 1,700 to 3,000 cycles per minute. The amplitude shall be adjustable between 0.015 and 0.04 inches. The roller shall be capable of full compaction in both forward and reverse directions. The roller shall be operated at speeds not exceeding 2.2 ft/s. Within the range of the operating capability of the equipment, the Owner may direct or approve variations to the frequency, amplitude, and speed of operation which result in the specified density at the fastest production rate.
   2. Small vibratory rollers shall be used to compact the RCC where the larger vibratory rollers specified above cannot maneuver. The rollers shall compact the RCC to the required density and shall be so demonstrated during construction of the test section. Small vibratory rollers cannot compact the RCC to the same density and thickness as the primary rollers. When small rollers are used, total lift thickness of the RCC layer or lift shall be reduced to not over 6 inches

uncompacted thickness to permit adequate compaction. Rollers shall have independent speed and vibration controls and shall be capable of a wide range of speed adjustments.

3. The tampers shall compact the RCC to the required density and shall be so demonstrated during construction of the test section. Tampers cannot compact the RCC to the same density and thickness as the primary rollers. When tampers are used, thickness of each RCC layer that is to be compacted shall be reduced to not more than 6 inches uncompacted thickness to assure adequate compaction.

F. Placing During Rain: RCC shall not be placed during rainfall of 0.1 inch/hr or more. During periods of lesser rainfall, placement of RCC may continue if, in the opinion of the Owner, no damage to the RCC is occurring. Work shall commence only after excess free surface water and contaminated paste or RCC have been removed. The surface shall have gained sufficient strength (no less than 4 hours after the RCC placement was suspended) to prevent rutting, pumping, intermixing of rainwater with the RCC, or other damage to the RCC. When the RCC surface has been contaminated or damaged in any manner, the RCC surface shall be washed to break up and remove laitance and/or mud-like coatings from the surface. Any undercut coarse aggregate shall be removed. All waste shall be removed and disposed of in an approved manner.

G. Hot-Weather Placement: In hot-weather placement the temperature of the RCC shall be controlled so that it does not exceed 75.0 degrees F when placed. Placement shall be suspended as soon as the RCC temperature exceeds 75 degrees F. Measures that can be taken to prevent temperatures exceeding75 degrees F include, but are not limited to; 1.) chilling mixing water, 2.) sprinkling aggregate stockpiles, 3.) use of a canopy to shade the RCC placement areas, 4.) placing during nighttime and early morning hours, or 5.) restricting placements to cloudy days. Use of any of these systems shall not be reason for extension of completion dates specified in these specifications. In addition, to prevent potential damage to the RCC due to hot-weather related placement conditions, all RCC operation shall be suspended between June 15 and October 31, unless directed otherwise.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00d

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 31 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 19 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 35 23 00 - EXPOSED AGGREGATE SURFACE CONCRETE WALLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of exposed aggregate surface concrete walls. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Submit product data and manufacturer's application instruction.
2. Shop drawings shall be submitted for approval.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Concrete Materials and Mixing
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1 or 1A.
   a. Shrinkage-Compensating Cement: Portland cement containing a stable expansive chemical compound such as calcium sulfoaluminate.
   b. Aggregate: ASTM C 33; aggregate for exposed aggregate concrete shall match existing, if appropriate.
   c. Admixtures: Submit manufacturer's literature for all admixtures proposed for the work.
   d. Curing Compounds: ASTM C 309, Type 1.
   e. Epoxy Bonding Agent: Sika or approved equal.

B. Concrete Formwork, Reinforcement, and Accessories
1. Formwork: Plywood form and liners shall be minimum grade B-B High Density Concrete Form Overlay, Class I, complying with ANSI A199.1.
2. Reinforcement:
   a. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 40 or Grade 60.
   b. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064. Where welded wire fabric is needed, use No. 6 gauge wire at 6-inch spacing in each direction.
   c. Accessories for proper installation of reinforcement shall comply with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice for Reinforced Concrete Construction."
   d. Reinforcement fabrication shall comply with ACI 318 and ACI 315.

C. Curing and Climatic Conditions
1. Comply with ACI 306 and ACI 305 for protecting and curing concrete in cold and hot weather.
2. Immediately after finishing, begin curing flatwork by covering with constantly saturated moisture retaining fabrics, impervious sheeting, or membrane curing compounds.
3. Apply membrane curing compounds as required.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation when attaching to existing surfaces:
1. Remove all defective material by chipping and cutting to sound concrete in order to secure a solid foundation.
2. Square cut or undercut the edges to a minimum depth of one inch to form key.
3. Cut concrete out from behind exposed reinforcing bars and rods.
4. All exposed reinforcing shall be cleaned of rust and primed.

B. Installation
   1. Formwork requirements:
      a. Formwork shall comply with ACI 347. Joints in forms shall be horizontal or vertical.
      b. Use plywood, fiberglass, or metal forms.
   2. Reinforcement shall be repaired when rusted through. Rods at least l2 inches long shall be wired to the failed rods. In closing gaps, rods shall lap existing rods by at least 12 inches or 30 diameters, whichever is greater.
   3. Mixing and transporting concrete: Ready-mixed concrete shall be mixed and delivered to the project in compliance with ASTM C 94. Job-mixed concrete shall comply with the requirements of ACI 318.
   4. Mixing epoxy-resin patching mortar: Mix thoroughly with a power mixer at low speeds (150 - 400 rpm) until material attains uniform color and consistency (minimum time of two to three minutes at 70 F).

END OF SECTION 03 35 23 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 35 23 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 26 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 29 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 33 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 63 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 66 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 83 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 37 13 00 - SHOTCRETE

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for shotcrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes shotcrete applied by dry-mix or wet-mix process.

C. Definitions
1. Shotcrete: Mortar or concrete pneumatically projected onto a surface at high velocity.
2. Dry-Mix Shotcrete: Shotcrete with most of the water added at nozzle.
3. Wet-Mix Shotcrete: Shotcrete with ingredients, including mixing water, mixed before introduction into delivery hose.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For manufactured materials and products including reinforcement and forming accessories, shotcrete materials, admixtures, and curing compounds.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
      1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: For details of fabricating, bending, and placing reinforcement. Include support and anchor details, number and location of splices, and special reinforcement required for openings through shotcrete structures.
4. Samples: Approximately 24 by 24 by 2 inches (600 by 600 by 50 mm), to illustrate quality of finishes, colors, and textures of exposed surfaces of shotcrete.
5. Design Mixes: For each shotcrete mix.
6. Material Test Reports: For shotcrete materials.
7. Material Certificates: For each material item, signed by manufacturers.
8. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer employing nozzle operators for the Project, each of whom attains mean core grades not exceeding 2.5, according to ACI 506.2, on preconstruction tests **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Dry-Mix Process for Vertical Position **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Dry-Mix Process for Vertical and Overhead Positions **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Wet-Mix Process for Vertical Position **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Wet-Mix Process for Vertical and Overhead Positions as appropriate to the required shotcrete work**, as directed**.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
3. Comply with provisions of the following, unless more stringent requirements are indicated:
   a. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete."
   b. ACI 506.2, "Specification for Shotcrete."
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
5. Shotcrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design shotcrete mixtures.

F. Project Conditions
1. Cold-Weather Shotcreting: Protect shotcrete work from physical damage or reduced strength caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures according to ACI 306.1 and as follows:
   a. Discontinue shotcreting when ambient temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and falling. Uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a shotcrete shooting temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 90 deg F (32 deg C).
   b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
   c. Do not place shotcrete on frozen surfaces or surfaces containing frozen materials.
   d. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents.
2. Hot-Weather Shotcreting: Mix, place, and protect shotcrete according to ACI 305R when hot-weather conditions and high temperatures would seriously impair quality and strength of shotcrete, and as follows:
   a. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain shotcrete temperature at time of placement below 100 deg F (38 deg C) for dry mix or 90 deg F (32 deg C) for wet mix.
   b. Reduce temperature of reinforcing steel and receiving surfaces below 100 deg F (38 deg C) before shotcreting.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Form Materials
1. Forms: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, straight, smooth, concrete surfaces. Furnish panels in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

B. Reinforcing Materials
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed** percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II, zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending, as follows:
   a. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed.
5. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
6. Plain-Steel-Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, steel wire into flat sheets.
7. Deformed-Steel-Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
8. Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, ties, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing steel in place according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" and as follows:
   a. For uncoated reinforcement, use all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1, plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2, stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.
   b. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire **OR** all-plastic, **as directed**, bar supports.
   c. Retain paragraph and subparagraph below if devices are required to anchor, support, or space steel reinforcement.
9. Reinforcing Anchors: ASTM A 36/A 36M, unheaded rods or ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), hex-head bolts; carbon steel; and carbon-steel nuts.
   a. Finish: Plain, uncoated **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C, **as directed**.

C. Shotcrete Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** III, **as directed**. Use only one brand and type of cement for Project.

a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS **OR** IP **OR** I(PM) **OR** I(SM), **as directed**.
3. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
4. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, from a single source, and as follows:
   a. Aggregate Gradation: ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1 with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (10-mm) **OR** 2 with 100 percent passing 1/2-inch (13-mm), **as directed**, sieve.
   b. Coarse-Aggregate Class: 3S **OR** 3M **OR** 1N, **as directed**.
5. Lightweight Aggregates: ASTM C 330.
   a. Aggregate Gradation: ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1 with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (10-mm) **OR** 2 with 100 percent passing 1/2-inch (13-mm), **as directed** sieve.
6. Coloring Agent: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored, water-reducing admixtures, free of carbon black; color stable, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M, free from deleterious materials that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of shotcrete.
8. Carbon-Steel Fiber: ASTM C 1116, Type 1, carbon-steel fiber and ASTM A 820, Type 1, cold-drawn wire **OR** cut sheet, **as directed**, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) long.
9. Synthetic Fiber: Fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in shotcrete, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) long.
10. Ground Wire: High-strength steel wire, 0.8 to 1 mm in diameter.
11. Joint Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

D. Chemical Admixtures
1. General: ASTM C 1141, Class A or B, but limited to the following admixture materials. Provide admixtures for shotcrete that contains not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions. Certify compatibility of admixtures with each other and with other cementitious materials.
   a. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
   b. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
   c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
   d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
   e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
   f. Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.

E. Curing Materials
1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) dry.
2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
3. Water: Potable.
4. Clear, Waterborne **OR** Solvent-Borne, **as directed**, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

F. Shotcrete Mixtures, General
1. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of shotcrete.
   a. Limit use of fly ash **OR** ground granulated blast-furnace slag **OR** silica fume, **as directed**, to not exceed, in combination, 25 percent of portland cement by weight.
2. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement or cementitious materials permitted by ACI 301.
3. Admixtures: When included in shotcrete design mixes, use admixtures and retarding admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Carbon-Steel Fiber: Uniformly disperse in shotcrete mix, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (30 kg/cu. m) **OR** 100 lb/cu. yd. (60 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
5. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in shotcrete mix, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m) **OR** 5 lb/cu. yd. (3 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.

6. Design-Mix Adjustments: Subject to compliance with requirements, shotcrete design-mix adjustments may be proposed when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.

G. Shotcrete Mixtures
1. Proportion dry mixtures by field test data methods and wet mixtures according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301, using materials to be used on Project, to provide shotcrete with the following properties:
   a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa), **as directed**.
   b. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight, wet-mix shotcrete having an air content before pumping of 7 **OR** 8, **as directed**, percent with a tolerance of plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.

H. Shotcrete Equipment
1. Mixing Equipment: Capable of thoroughly mixing shotcrete materials in sufficient quantities to maintain continuous placement.
2. Dry-Mix Delivery Equipment: Capable of discharging aggregate-cement mixture into delivery hose under close control and maintaining continuous stream of uniformly mixed materials at required velocity to discharge nozzle. Equip discharge nozzle with manually operated water-injection system for directing even distribution of water to aggregate-cement mixture.
   a. Provide uniform, steady supply of clean, compressed air to maintain constant nozzle velocity while simultaneously operating blow pipe for cleaning away rebound.
   b. Provide water supply with uniform pressure at discharge nozzle to ensure uniform mixing with aggregate-cement mix. Provide water pump to system if line water pressure is inadequate.
3. Wet-Mix Delivery Equipment: Capable of discharging aggregate-cement-water mixture accurately, uniformly, and continuously.

I. Batching And Mixing
1. Dry-Mix Process: Measure mix proportions by weight batching according to ASTM C 94/C 94M or by volume batching complying with ASTM C 685/C 685M requirements.
   a. In volume batching, adjust fine-aggregate volume for bulking. Test fine-aggregate moisture content at least once daily to determine extent of bulking.
   b. Prepackaged shotcrete materials may be used at Contractor's option. Predampen prepackaged shotcrete materials and mix before use.
2. Wet-Mix Process: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver shotcrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, **as directed**, and furnish batch ticket information.
   a. Comply with ASTM C 685/C 685M when shotcrete ingredients are delivered dry and proportioned and mixed on-site.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Concrete or Masonry: Before applying shotcrete, remove unsound or loose materials and contaminants that may inhibit shotcrete bonding. Chip or scarify areas to be repaired to extent necessary to provide sound substrate. Cut edges square and 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep at perimeter of work, tapering remaining shoulder at 1:1 slope into cavity to eliminate square shoulders. Dampen surfaces before shotcreting.
   a. Abrasive blast or hydroblast existing surfaces that do not require chipping to remove paint, oil, grease, or other contaminants and to provide roughened surface for proper shotcrete bonding.
2. Earth: Compact and trim to line and grade before placing shotcrete. Do not place shotcrete on frozen surfaces. Dampen surfaces before shotcreting.

3. Rock: Clean rock surfaces of loose materials, mud, and other foreign matter that might weaken shotcrete bonding.
4. Steel: Clean steel surfaces by abrasive blasting according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

B. Forms
1. General: Design, erect, support, brace, and maintain forms, according to ACI 301, to support shotcrete and construction loads and to facilitate shotcreting. Construct forms so shotcrete members and structures are secured to prevent excessive vibration or deflection during shotcreting.
   a. Fabricate forms to be readily removable without impact, shock, or damage to shotcrete surfaces and adjacent materials.
   b. Construct forms to required sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions using ground wires and depth gages to obtain accurate alignment, location, and grades in finished structures. Construct forms to prevent mortar leakage but permit escape of air and rebound during shotcreting. Provide for openings, offsets, blocking, screeds, anchorages, inserts, and other features required in the Work.
2. Form openings, chases, recesses, bulkheads, keyways, and screeds in formwork. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.

C. Steel Reinforcement
1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials that weaken shotcrete bonding.
3. Securely embed reinforcing anchors into existing substrates, located as required.
4. Accurately position, support, and rigidly secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or shotcreting. Locate and support reinforcement by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as required.
5. Place reinforcement to obtain minimum coverage for shotcrete protection. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during shotcreting. Set wire ties with ends directed into shotcrete, not toward exposed shotcrete surfaces.
6. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

D. Joints
1. Construction Joints: Locate and install construction joints tapered to a 1:1 slope where joint is not subject to compression loads and square where joint is perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement through construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Contraction Joints: Construct contraction joints in shotcrete using saw cuts 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide-by-1/3 slab depth or joint-filler strips 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) wide-by-1/3 shotcrete depth, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. After shotcrete has cured, remove strip inserts and clean groove of loose debris.
   b. Space joints at 15 feet (4.5 m) o.c. **OR** centers indicated, **as directed**, horizontally and vertically.
   c. Tool edges round on each side of strip inserts if floated or troweled finishes are required.

E. Alignment Control
1. Ground Wires: Install ground wires to establish thickness and planes of shotcrete surfaces. Install ground wires at corners and offsets not established by forms. Pull ground wires taut and position adjustment devices to permit additional tightening.

F. Embedded Items

1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by shotcrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

G. Application
1. Apply temporary protective coverings and protect adjacent surfaces against deposit of rebound and overspray or impact from nozzle stream.
2. Moisten wood forms immediately before placing shotcrete where form coatings are not used.
3. Apply shotcrete according to ACI 506.2.
4. Apply dry-mix shotcrete materials within 45 minutes after predampening and wet-mix shotcrete materials within 90 minutes after batching.
5. Deposit shotcrete continuously in multiple passes, to required thickness, without cold joints and laminations developing. Place shotcrete with nozzle held perpendicular to receiving surface. Begin shotcreting in corners and recesses.
6. Remove and dispose of rebound and overspray materials during shotcreting to maintain clean surfaces and to prevent rebound entrapment.
7. Maintain reinforcement in position during shotcreting. Place shotcrete to completely encase reinforcement and other embedded items. Maintain steel reinforcement free of overspray and prevent buildup against front face during shotcreting.
8. Do not place subsequent lifts until previous lift of shotcrete is capable of supporting new shotcrete.
9. Do not permit shotcrete to sag, slough, or dislodge.
10. Remove hardened overspray, rebound, and laitance from shotcrete surfaces to receive additional layers of shotcrete; dampen surfaces before shotcreting.
11. Do not disturb shotcrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations.
12. Remove ground wires or other alignment control devices after shotcrete placement.
13. Shotcrete Core Grade: Apply shotcrete to achieve mean core grades not exceeding 2.5 according to ACI 506.2, with no single core grade exceeding 3.0.
14. Installation Tolerances: Place shotcrete without exceeding installation tolerances permitted by ACI 117R, increased by a factor of 2.

H. Surface Finishes
1. General: Finish shotcrete according to descriptions in ACI 506R for the following finishes:
2. Natural Finish:
   a. Gun Finish: Natural undisturbed finish.
   b. Rod Finish: Rough-textured finish obtained by cutting or screeding exposed face of shotcrete to plane by rod or straightedge after initial set, and wood-float finished **OR** and steel-trowel finished**as directed**.
   c. Broom Finish: Rough-textured finish obtained by screeding exposed face of shotcrete to required plane by rod, cutting screed, or trowel, and brooming after initial set.
3. Flash-Coat Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply up to 1/4-inch (6-mm) coat of shotcrete using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve to provide a finely textured finish.
4. Flash-Coat and Final Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply up to 1/4-inch (6-mm) coat of shotcrete using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and apply wood-float **OR** rubber-float **OR** brush-float **OR** steel-trowel, **as directed**, finish.
5. Finish-Coat Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply shotcrete finish coat, 1/4 to 1 inch (6 to 25 mm) thick, using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve to provide a finish of uniform texture and appearance.
6. Finish-Coat and Final Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply shotcrete finish coat, 1/4 to 1 inch (6 to 25 mm) thick, using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with

maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and apply wood-float **OR** rubber-float **OR** brush-float **OR** steel-trowel, **as directed**, finish.

I. Curing
   1. Protect freshly placed shotcrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
   2. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from shotcrete surface after placing and finishing.
   3. Curing Exposed Surfaces: Cure shotcrete by one of the following methods:
      a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for at least seven days with water, continuous water-fog spray, water-saturated absorptive covers, or moisture-retaining covers. Lap and seal sides and ends of covers.
      b. Curing Compound: Apply curing compound uniformly in continuous operation by power spray according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
         1) Apply curing compound to natural- or gun-finished shotcrete at rate of 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (1 L/2.5 sq. m).
   4. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed shotcrete surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.

J. Form Removal
   1. Forms not supporting weight of shotcrete may be removed after curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 consecutive hours after gunning, provided shotcrete is hard enough not to be damaged by form-removal operations and provided curing and protecting operations are maintained.
      a. Leave forms supporting weight of shotcrete in place until shotcrete has attained design compressive strength. Determine compressive strength of in-place shotcrete by testing representative field-cured specimens of shotcrete.
      b. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
   2. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing materials are unacceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-coating compound as specified for new formwork.

K. Field Quality Control
   1. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample materials, visually grade cores, perform tests, and submit reports during shotcreting.
   2. Air Content: ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method or ASTM C 231, pressure method; 1 test for each compressive-strength test for each mix of air-entrained, wet-mix shotcrete measured before pumping.
   3. Shotcrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; 1 test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and 1 test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
   4. Test Panels: Make a test panel, reinforced as in structure, for each shotcrete mix and for each workday or for every 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) of shotcrete placed; whichever is less. Produce test panels with dimensions of 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm) minimum and of average thickness of shotcrete, but not less than 4-1/2 inches (115 mm). From each test panel, testing agency will obtain six test specimens: one set of three specimens unreinforced and one set of three specimens reinforced.
      a. Test each set of unreinforced specimens for compressive strength according to ASTM C 1140 and construction testing requirements in ACI 506.2.
      b. Visually inspect each set of reinforced shotcrete cores taken from test panels and determine mean core grades according to ACI 506.2.

5. In-Place Shotcrete: Take a set of 3 unreinforced cores for each mix and for each workday or for every 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) of shotcrete placed; whichever is less. Test cores for compressive strength according to ACI 506.2 and ASTM C 42. Do not cut steel reinforcement.
6. Strength of shotcrete will be considered satisfactory when mean compressive strength of each set of 3 unreinforced cores equals or exceeds 85 percent of specified compressive strength, with no individual core less than 75 percent of specified compressive strength.
    a. Mean compressive strength of each set of 3 unreinforced cubes shall equal or exceed design compressive strength with no individual cube less than 88 percent of specified compressive strength.

L. Repairs
1. Remove and replace shotcrete that is delaminated or exhibits laminations, voids, or sand/rock pockets exceeding limits for specified core grade of shotcrete.
    a. Remove unsound or loose materials and contaminants that may inhibit bond of shotcrete repairs. Chip or scarify areas to be repaired to extent necessary to provide sound substrate. Cut edges square and 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep at perimeter of work, tapering remaining shoulder at 1:1 slope into cavity to eliminate square shoulders. Dampen surfaces and apply new shotcrete.
2. Repair core holes from in-place testing according to repair provisions in ACI 301 and match adjacent finish, texture, and color.

M. Cleaning
1. Remove and dispose of rebound and overspray materials from final shotcrete surfaces and areas not intended for shotcrete placement.

END OF SECTION 03 37 13 00

SECTION 03 37 13 00a - GLASS FIBER REINFORCED CONCRETE

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for glass-fiber-reinforced precast concrete panels. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes glass-fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) panels consisting of GFRC panel frames, anchors, and connection hardware.
   a. GFRC panels include wall units, window wall units, mullions, column covers, fascia units, cornices, and soffits.

C. Definitions
1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved GFRC color, finish, and texture; preapproved by the Owner.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Structural Performance: Provide GFRC panels, including panel frames, anchors, and connections, capable of withstanding the following design loads as well as the effects of thermal- and moisture-induced volume changes, according to load factors and combinations established in PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels."
   a. Design Loads: As required to meet Project requirements.
   b. Deflection Limits: Design panel frames to withstand design loads without lateral deflections greater than 1/240 of wall span.
   c. Thermal Movements: Provide for thermal movements resulting from annual ambient temperature changes of 100 deg F (56 deg C).
   d. Design panel frames and connections to accommodate deflections and other building movements.
   e. Design panel frames to transfer window loads to building structure.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include GFRC design mixes.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for GFRC panels including the following:
   a. Structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   b. Panel elevations, sections, and dimensions.
   c. Thickness of facing mix, GFRC backing, and bonding pads for typical panels.
   d. Finishes.
   e. Joint and connection details.
   f. Erection details.
   g. Panel frame details for typical panels including sizes, spacings, thickness, and yield strength of various members.
   h. Location and details of connection hardware attached to structure.
   i. Size, location, and details of flex, gravity, and seismic anchors for typical panels.
   j. Other items sprayed into panels.
   k. Erection sequence for special conditions.
   l. Relationship to adjacent materials.
   m. Description of loose, cast-in, and field hardware.

3. Samples: Representative of finished exposed face of GFRC showing the full range of colors and textures specified, 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm) and of actual thickness.
4. Qualification Data: For qualified GFRC manufacturer, including proof of current Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI) or Architectural Precast Association (APA) Plant Certification.
5. Welding certificates.
6. Steel Sheet Certification: For steel sheet used in cold-formed steel panel framing.
7. Mill Certificates: For structural-steel shapes and hollow structural sections used in panel framing.
8. Source Quality-Control Program: For GFRC manufacturer.
9. Source Quality-Control Test Reports: For GFRC, inserts, and anchors.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that participates in PCI's Plant Certification Program and is designated a PCI-Certified Plant for Group G - Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete or that participates in APA's Plant Certification Program and is certified for GFRC production.
   a. Manufacturer's responsibility includes fabricating and installing GFRC panels and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility for GFRC panels.
   b. Engineering responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis, based on GFRC production test values, by a qualified professional engineer experienced in GFRC design.
2. Steel Sheet Certifications: Obtain mill certificates signed by manufacturers of steel sheet, or test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating that steel sheet used in cold-formed metal panel framing complies with requirements including uncoated steel thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and galvanized-coating thickness.
3. Mill Certificates: Obtain certified mill test reports from manufacturer of structural-steel shapes and hollow structural sections used in panel framing indicating compliance of these products with requirements.
4. Source Limitations: Obtain GFRC panels from single source from single manufacturer.
5. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
6. PCI Manuals: Comply with requirements and recommendations in the following PCI manuals unless more stringent requirements are indicated:
   a. PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels."
   b. PCI MNL 130, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Products."
7. AISC Specifications: Comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design" **OR** "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" **OR** "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections," **as directed**, if using structural-steel shapes or hollow structural sections for panel frames.
8. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Handle and transport GFRC panels to avoid damage.
   a. Place nonstaining resilient spacers between panels.
   b. Support panels on nonstaining material during shipment.
   c. Protect panels from dirt and damage during handling and transport.
2. Store GFRC panels to protect from contact with soil, staining, and physical damage.
   a. Store panels with nonstaining resilient supports in same positions as when transported.
   b. Store panels on firm, level, and smooth surfaces.
   c. Place stored panels so identification marks are clearly visible.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Mold Materials
1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, nonabsorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true GFRC surfaces; nonreactive with GFRC and capable of producing required finish surfaces.
a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect GFRC surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of GFRC.
2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match GFRC design reference sample, **as directed**. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure that form liners remain in place during GFRC application. Use with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect GFRC surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of GFRC.
3. Surface Retarder: Chemical liquid set retarder capable of temporarily delaying hardening of newly placed GFRC face mix to depth of reveal specified.

B. GFRC Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150; Type I, II, or III.
a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, use gray **OR** white, **as directed**, of same type, brand, and source throughout GFRC production.
b. Metakaolin: ASTM C 618, Class N.
2. Glass Fibers: Alkali resistant, with a minimum zirconia content of 16 percent, 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) long, specifically produced for use in GFRC, and complying with PCI MNL 130.
3. Sand: Washed and dried silica, complying with composition requirements in ASTM C 144; passing No. 20 (0.85-mm) sieve with a maximum of 2 percent passing No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve.
4. Facing Aggregate: ASTM C 33, except for gradation, and PCI MNL 130, 1/4-inch (6-mm) maximum size.
a. Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match sample.
5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, nonfading, and alkali resistant.
6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of GFRC and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 130.
7. Polymer-Curing Admixture: Acrylic thermoplastic copolymer dispersion complying with PCI MNL 130.
8. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.
9. Chemical Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.

C. Anchors, Connectors, And Miscellaneous Materials
1. Stainless-Steel Plates: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
2. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M. Finish steel shapes and plates less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) thick as follows:
a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, or ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.
OR
Finish: Shop primed with MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
3. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
4. Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 108, AISI Grade 1018. Finish steel bars less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) thick as follows:
a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, or ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.

b. Finish: Shop primed with MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.

5. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/ A 47M, Grade 32510 (Grade 22010).
6. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205).
7. Bolts: ASTM A 307 or ASTM A 325 (ASTM F 568M or ASTM A 325M).
   a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, and ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.
8. Reglets: PVC extrusions **OR** Stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick, **as directed**.

D. Panel Frame Materials
1. Cold-Formed Steel Framing: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, complying with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members," minimum uncoated steel thickness of 0.053 inch (1.34 mm) of web depth indicated, with stiffened flanges, U-shaped steel track, and of the following steel sheet:
   a. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural-steel sheet, G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating, of grade required by structural performance of framing.
   b. Painted, Nonmetallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot rolled; or ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, cold rolled; nonmetallic coated according to ASTM A 1003/A 1003M; of grade required by structural performance of framing.
2. Hollow Structural Sections: Steel tubing, ASTM A 500, Grade B, or ASTM A 513. Finish hollow structural sections with wall thickness less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) as follows:
   a. Organic Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-Paint 20 on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Primer: MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
3. Steel Channels and Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M, finished as follows:
   a. Organic Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-Paint 20 on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Primer: MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.

E. GFRC Mixes
1. Backing Mix: Proportion backing mix of portland cement, glass fibers, sand, and admixtures to comply with design requirements. Provide nominal glass-fiber content of not less than 5 percent by weight of total mix.
2. Face Mix: Proportion face mix of portland cement, sand, facing aggregates, and admixtures to comply with design requirements.
3. Mist Coat: Portland cement, sand slurry, and admixtures; of same proportions as backing mix without glass fibers.
4. Polymer-Curing Admixture: 6 to 7 percent by weight of polymer-curing admixture solids to dry portland cement.
5. Air Content: 8 to 10 percent; ASTM C 185.
6. Coloring Admixture: Not to exceed 10 percent of cement weight.

F. Panel Frame Fabrication
1. Fabricate panel frames and accessories plumb, square, true to line, and with components securely fastened, according to Shop Drawings and requirements in this Section.
   a. Fabricate panel frames using jigs or templates.
   b. Cut cold-formed metal framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
   c. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

d. Fasten framing members of hollow structural sections, steel channels, or steel angles by welding. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
e. Weld flex, gravity, and seismic anchors to panel frames.

2. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies, if necessary, to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies in a manner that prevents damage or significant distortion.
3. Galvanizing Repair: Touch up accessible damaged galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.
4. Painting Repair: Touch up accessible damaged painted surfaces using same primer.

G. Mold Fabrication
1. Construct molds that will result in finished GFRC complying with profiles, dimensions, and tolerances indicated, without damaging GFRC during stripping. Construct molds to prevent water leakage and loss of cement paste.
   a. Coat contact surfaces of molds with form-release agent.
   b. Coat contact surfaces of molds with surface retarder.
2. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during GFRC application. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
3. Locate, place, and secure flashing reglets accurately.

H. GFRC Fabrication
1. Proportioning and Mixing: For backing mix, meter sand/cement slurry and glass fibers to spray head at rates to achieve design mix proportions and glass-fiber content according to PCI MNL 130 procedures.
2. Spray Application: Comply with general procedures as follows:
   a. Spray mist coat over molds to a nominal thickness of 1/8 inch (3 mm) on planar surfaces.
   b. Spray or place face mix in thickness indicated on Shop Drawings.
   c. Proceed with spraying backing mix before face mix **OR** mist coat, **as directed**, has set, using procedures that produce a uniform thickness and even distribution of glass fibers and matrix.
   d. Consolidate backing mix by rolling or other technique to achieve complete encapsulation of glass fibers and compaction.
   e. Measure thickness with a pin gage or other acceptable method at least once for each 5 sq. ft. (0.5 sq. m) of panel surface. Take not less than six measurements per panel.
3. Hand form and consolidate intricate details, incorporate formers or infill materials, and over spray before material reaches initial set to ensure complete bonding.
4. Attach panel frame to GFRC before initial set of GFRC backing, maintaining a minimum clearance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) from GFRC backing, and without anchors protruding into GFRC backing.
5. Build up homogeneous GFRC bonding pads over anchor feet, maintaining a minimum thickness of 1/2 inch (13 mm) over tops of anchor feet, before initial set of GFRC backing.
6. Inserts and Embedments: Build up homogeneous GFRC bosses or bonding pads over inserts and embedments to provide sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements.
7. Curing: Employ initial curing method that will ensure sufficient strength for removing units from mold. Comply with PCI MNL 130 procedures.
8. Panel Identification: Mark each GFRC panel to correspond with identification mark on Shop Drawings. Mark each panel with its casting date.

I. Fabrication Tolerances
1. Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC panels so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 130 for dimension, position, and tolerances.
   OR

Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC panels so each finished unit complies with the following dimensional tolerances. For dimensional tolerances not listed below, comply with PCI MNL 130.

a. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Adjacent to Mold: As follows:
   1) 10 feet (3 m) or less, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
   2) More than 10 feet (3 m), plus or minus 1/8 inch per 10 feet (3 mm per 3 m); 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum.
b. Edge Return Thickness: Plus 1/2 inch (13 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
c. Architectural Facing Thickness: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
d. Backing Thickness: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
e. Panel Depth from Face of Skin to Back of Panel Frame or Integral Rib: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
f. Angular Variation of Plane of Side Mold: Plus or minus 1/32 inch per 3 inches (0.8 mm per 75 mm) of depth or plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) total, whichever is greater.
g. Variation from Square or Designated Skew (Difference in Length of Two Diagonal Measurements): Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 72 inches (3 mm per 1800 mm) or plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) total, whichever is greater.
h. Local Smoothness: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
i. Bowing: Not to exceed L/240 unless unit meets erection tolerances using connection adjustments.
j. Length and Width of Block Outs and Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
k. Location of Window Opening within Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
l. Maximum Permissible Warpage of One Corner out of the Plane of the Other Three: 1/16 inch per 12 inches (1.5 mm per 305 mm) of distance from nearest adjacent corner.

2. Position Tolerances: Measured from datum line locations, as indicated on Shop Drawings.
   a. Panel Frame and Track: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
   b. Flashing Reglets at Edge of Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
   c. Inserts: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
   d. Special Handling Devices: Plus or minus 3 inches (75 mm).
   e. Location of Bearing Devices: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
   f. Blockouts: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. Panel Frame Tolerances: As follows:
   a. Vertical and Horizontal Alignment: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
   b. Spacing of Framing Member: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   c. Squareness of Frame: Difference in length of diagonals of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   d. Overall Size of Frame: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).

J. Finishes
1. Finish exposed-face surfaces of GFRC as follows to match approved design reference sample. Panel faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, or other obvious defects.
   a. Design Reference Sample: <Insert description and identify manufacturer and code number of sample>.
   b. As-Cast-Surface Finish: Provide free of sand streaks, honeycombs, and excessive air voids, with uniform color and texture.
   c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners to provide surfaces free of sand streaks, honeycombs, and excessive air voids, with uniform color and texture.
   d. Retarded Finish: Use chemical-retarding agents applied to concrete forms and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
   e. Sand- or Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
   f. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.

K. Source Quality Control
1. Quality-Control Testing: Establish and maintain a quality-control program for manufacturing GFRC panels according to PCI MNL 130.
a. Test materials and inspect production techniques.
b. Quality-control program shall monitor glass-fiber content, spray rate, unit weight, product physical properties, anchor pull-off and shear strength, and curing period and conditions.
c. Prepare test specimens and test according to ASTM C 1228, PCI MNL 130, and PCI MNL 128 procedures.
d. Test GFRC inserts and anchors according to ASTM C 1230 to validate design values.
e. Produce test boards at a rate not less than one per work shift per operator for each spray machine and for each mix design.
1) For each test board, determine glass-fiber content according to ASTM C 1229, and flexural yield and ultimate strength according to ASTM C 947.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine structure and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, true and level bearing surfaces, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Erection
1. Install clips, hangers, and other accessories required for connecting GFRC panels to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Lift GFRC panels and install without damage.
3. Install GFRC panels level, plumb, square, and in alignment. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of panels until permanent connections are completed.
a. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width.
b. Remove projecting hoisting devices.
4. Connect GFRC panels in position by bolting or welding, or both, as indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as possible after connecting is completed.
5. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.3 requirements for welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
a. Protect GFRC panels from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
6. At bolted connections, use lock washers or other acceptable means to prevent loosening of nuts.

C. Erection Tolerances
1. Erect GFRC panels to comply with the following noncumulative tolerances:
a. Plan Location from Building Grid Datum: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
b. Top Elevation from Nominal Top Elevation: As follows:
1) Exposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
2) Nonexposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3) Exposed Panel Relative to Adjacent Panel: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
4) Nonexposed Panel Relative to Adjacent Panel: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
c. Support Elevation from Nominal Elevation: As follows:
1) Maximum Low: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
2) Maximum High: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
d. Maximum Plumb Variation over the Lesser of Height of Structure or 100 Feet (30 m): 1 inch (25 mm).
e. Plumb in Any 10 Feet (3 m) of Element Height: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
f. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Edges: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
g. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Faces: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

h. Face Width of Joint: As follows (governs over joint taper):
   1) Panel Dimension 20 Feet (6 m) or Less: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
   2) Panel Dimension More Than 20 Feet (6 m): Plus or minus 5/16 inch (8 mm).
i. Maximum Joint Taper: 3/8 inch (10 mm).
j. Joint Taper in 10 Feet (3 m): 1/4 inch (6 mm).
k. Differential Bowing, as Erected, between Adjacent Members of Same Design: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

D. Repairs
1. Repairs will be permitted provided structural adequacy of GFRC panel and appearance are not impaired, as approved by the Owner.
2. Mix patching materials and repair GFRC so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces.
3. Prepare and repair accessible damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
4. Wire brush, clean, and paint accessible weld areas on prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
5. Remove and replace damaged GFRC panels when repairs do not comply with requirements.

E. Cleaning And Protection
1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to GFRC manufacturer's written instructions. Clean soiled GFRC surfaces with detergent and water, using soft fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Prevent damage to GFRC surfaces and staining of adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 37 13 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 37 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 37 16 00	03 11 16 13	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 39 13 00	03 11 16 13	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 39 23 23	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 51 13 00 - CEMENTITIOUS WOOD-FIBER DECK

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cementitious wood-fiber deck. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Monolithic cementitious wood-fiber units.
b. Composite cementitious wood-fiber units.
c. Insulated composite cementitious wood-fiber units.
d. Subpurlin tees.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cementitious wood-fiber deck. Include details at supports, reinforcement at openings, and attachment to other work.
3. Samples: Show texture, finish, and edge and end configurations of monolithic **OR** composite **OR** insulated composite, **as directed,** cementitious wood-fiber units, 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed,** long by width of unit.
a. Include unit with galvanized steel edge channel.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide cementitious wood-fiber units that comply with the following requirements:
a. Fire-response testing performed by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that performs testing and follow-up services.
b. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84.
c. Fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory," ITS's "Directory of Listed Products," or the listings of another testing and inspecting agency are identical in materials and construction to those tested per ASTM E 119.
d. Products are identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Protect cementitious wood-fiber units from moisture.
2. Store units on elevated platforms at the Project site in a dry, well-ventilated, covered space and stack according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
3. Handle units to prevent chipping, breaking, cracking, staining, soiling, warping, or other physical damage. Discard damaged units at time of installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units, General: Manufacturer's standard factory-cast structural units complying with the following requirements:

a. Composition: Chemically processed long wood fibers mixed with Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type III or magnesium oxysulfate hydraulic cement, pressure bonded to produce units of thicknesses and sizes indicated:
b. Properties: As follows, determined according to test method indicated:
1) Noise Reduction Coefficient: NRC 0.55 **OR** 0.60 **OR** 0.65 **OR** 0.70 **OR** 0.75 **OR** 0.80, **as directed**; ASTM C 423.
2) Light Reflectance: 60 percent; ASTM E 1349.
c. Finish: Manufacturer's standard natural or prime-painted finish.

2. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing: APA-rated sheathing, Exposure 1 complying with DOC PS 2.
3. Polyisocyanurate-Foam Insulation: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) nominal density, 35 lbf/sq. in. (240 kPa) compressive strength per ASTM D 1621.
4. Extruded-Polystyrene Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV.
5. Expanded-Polystyrene Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I.

B. Monolithic Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units
1. Tile: Manufacturer's standard rabbet-edged, cementitious wood-fiber units.
2. Plank: Manufacturer's standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber units.
3. Channel-Reinforced Plank: Manufacturer's standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber planks with factory-installed, cold-formed, 0.0598-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, galvanized steel channel set in grooved edge.
4. Concealed-Tee Plank: Manufacturer's standard cementitious wood-fiber units, with edges kerfed, back rabbeted, and beveled.

C. Composite Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units
1. Composite Tile: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a rabbet-edged, cementitious wood-fiber tile base and top layer of oriented-strand-board sheathing, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
2. Composite Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base and top layer of oriented-strand-board sheathing, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
3. Composite Channel-Reinforced Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base with factory-installed, cold-formed, 0.0598-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, galvanized steel channel set in grooved edge, and top layer of oriented-strand-board sheathing, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.

D. Insulated Composite Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units
1. Insulated Composite Tile: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a rabbet-edged, cementitious wood-fiber tile base, insulation, and top layer; and as follows:
a. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded polystyrene **OR** Expanded polystyrene, **as directed**.
b. Top Layer: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-free, glass-fiber-reinforced, black felt facing **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, oriented-strand board, **as directed**.
2. Insulated Composite Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base, insulation, and top layer; and as follows:
a. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded polystyrene **OR** Expanded polystyrene, **as directed**.
b. Top Layer: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-free, glass-fiber-reinforced, black felt facing **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, oriented-strand-board, **as directed**.
3. Insulated Composite Channel-Reinforced Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base with factory-installed, cold-formed, 0.0598-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, galvanized steel channel set in grooved edge, insulation, and top layer; and as follows:

a. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded polystyrene **OR** Expanded polystyrene, **as directed**.
b. Top Layer: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-free, glass-fiber-reinforced, black felt facing **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, oriented-strand board, **as directed**.

E. Subpurlins
1. Bulb-Tee Subpurlins: Hot-rolled steel bulb tees complying with ASTM A 499 of length required to span three support spacings; shop painted with metal primer.

F. Accessories
1. Gypsum Concrete Grout: Factory-packaged, gypsum concrete grout formulation recommended by cementitious wood-fiber unit manufacturer with a minimum compressive strength of 500 psi (3.45 MPa).
2. Anchor Clips: Manufacturer's standard formed anchor clips of 0.0478-inch- (1.21-mm-) thick minimum, galvanized steel sheet, of type and configuration required for deck system indicated.
3. Screws: Manufacturer's recommended corrosion-resistant screw fasteners and washers, self-drilling, self-tapping, of length required for deck and structural framing indicated.
4. Nails: Manufacturer's recommended corrosion-resistant nails of size and length required for deck and structural framing indicated.
5. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended construction adhesive complying with APA AFG-01.
6. Filler Strips: Insulation strips, same as used in manufacture of insulated composite cementitious wood-fiber units.
7. Polyethylene Film: 0.004 inch (0.10 mm) thick, complying with ASTM D 4397.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing cementitious wood-fiber deck.
a. Install fastenings according to manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
2. Deck Interruptions: Provide barrier seals or blocking at overhangs to form wind seals and at partitions and walls to form sound seals, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Form-Deck Installation
1. Tile and Subpurlin Form Deck: Space subpurlin members as indicated. Attach subpurlins to each support with 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) long minimum, fillet welds on both sides of flanges at ends of members and on alternate sides at intermediate structural supports.
a. Lay tile with rabbeted edges supported on subpurlins, and shim or block in place to prevent dislocation during placing of fill.
b. Lay tile with square-cut ends concealed and supported on cross subpurlins **OR** over supporting purlins or beams, **as directed**.
c. Lay tile with tongue-and-groove ends exposed in pattern indicated.
d. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of tile and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.
e. Provide shoring of sufficient strength to withstand weight of cast-in-place fill and construction traffic. Design, install, and remove shoring according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
2. Plank Form Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove edges and tightly butt end joints.
a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.

c. Provide shoring of sufficient strength to withstand weight of cast-in-place fill and construction traffic. Design, install, and remove shoring according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
d. Cover exposed edges and ends of form planks with polyethylene film before pouring cast-in-place fill to prevent paste or mixing water from penetrating deck and seeping through to bottom face. Remove exposed film after cast-in-place fill has set.

3. Concealed-Tee Plank Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Install flange of bulb tee into kerfed edge and tightly butt adjoining plank to engage other flange. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove **OR** butt square, **as directed,** end joints.
   a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
   b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.
   c. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of plank and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.
   d. Provide shoring of sufficient strength to withstand weight of cast-in-place fill and construction traffic. Design, install, and remove shoring according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

C. Roof Deck Installation
1. Tile and Subpurlin Roof Deck: Space subpurlin members as indicated. Attach subpurlins to each support with 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) long minimum, fillet welds on both sides of flanges at ends of members and on alternate sides at intermediate structural supports.
   a. Lay tile with rabbeted edges supported on subpurlins.
   b. Lay tile with square-cut ends concealed and supported on cross subpurlins **OR** over supporting purlins or beams, **as directed**.
   c. Lay tile with tongue-and-groove ends exposed in pattern indicated.
   d. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of tile and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.
   e. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top surface of cementitious wood-fiber base. Fill remainder of joint with filler strips of insulation.
2. Plank Roof Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove edges and tightly butt end joints.
   a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
   b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.
   c. Mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members.
   d. Adhesively and mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members. Apply adhesive to tongue-and-groove edges.
3. Concealed-Tee Plank Roof Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Install flange of bulb tee into kerfed edge and tightly butt adjoining plank to engage other flange. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove **OR** butt square, **as directed,** end joints.
   a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
   b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.
   c. Mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members.
   d. Adhesively and mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members. Apply adhesive to tongue-and-groove edges.
   e. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of plank and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.

D. Cleaning And Protection

1. Protect top surfaces of deck from damage caused by construction operations.
2. Protect exposed bottom surfaces of deck from soiling and damage during handling and construction.
3. Clean exposed bottom surfaces of completed deck and touch up minor damage to surfaces as approved.
4. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensures that cementitious wood-fiber deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.
5. Remove and replace deteriorated and damaged deck units.

END OF SECTION 03 51 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 51 16 00 - PRECAST LIGHWEIGHT ROOF SLABS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of precast lightweight roof deck concrete channels, concrete planks, and gypsum planks. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Channel Slabs: Slabs shall be composed of Portland cement and lightweight aggregate with minimum compressive strength 3,750 psi. Legs shall be reinforced with deformed bars; web shall have welded wire fabric reinforcement. Channels shall support a 30 psf live load plus a 20 psf superimposed dead load.

B. Concrete Planks: Planks shall be composed of Portland cement and lightweight aggregate with a minimum compressive strength of 3,750 psi. Planks shall be reinforced with welded wire fabric. Planks shall support a 30 psf live load plus a 20 psf superimposed dead load.

C. Gypsum Planks shall conform to ASTM C 956, factory-laminated to 2-inch thickness, 2-foot wide panels. Planks shall be continuously supported along sides.

D. Subpurlins shall be bulb-ties, ASTM A 440.

E. Grout shall be lightweight concrete or gypsum concrete.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Concrete Channels and Planks shall be securely attached to support steel or concrete by metal clips or other approved attachments; minimum support bearing shall be 4 inches. Open joints between channels or planks shall be filled with lightweight concrete grout. Planks with tongue and groove edges may not require grouting.

B. Gypsum Planks shall be snugly fit between bulb-tee subpurlins. Subpurlins shall be tack-welded or screw-attached to supporting steel or weld bar cast in supporting concrete. Joints at bulb-tees shall be grouted with gypsum grout.

END OF SECTION 03 51 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 51 16 00a - GYPSUM CONCRETE DECKS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of gypsum concrete decks. Products shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Gypsum Concrete: ASTM C 317, Class A.

B. Formboards:
1. Gypsum Board: ASTM C 318.
2. Mineral Fiber Board: ASTM C612.
3. Glass Fiber Board: Lightweight, rigid, composed of pressed glass fibers.

C. Bulb Tees: ASTM A 499, Grade 50.

D. Reinforcing Mesh:
1. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064, galvanized, 12 x 48-W0.5 x W0.5.
2. Woven Wire Fabric: ASTM A 82, galvanized, 19 gauge wire, 2-inch hexagonal mesh.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Support System: Sub-purlins shall be spaced to support formboards and rigidly attached to main supports. Formboards shall fit snugly at sub-purlins and at wall, curbs, and openings.

B. Reinforcement: Lay wire fabric continuously over sub-purlins. Do not lap side of reinforcement.

C. Gypsum Concrete: Gypsum concrete shall be placed continuously without interruption until entire panel or section is complete. Immediately after placement, screed, level, and trowel smooth.

END OF SECTION 03 51 16 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 51 16 00b - GYPSUM PLANK DECKING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for gypsum plank decking for interstitial decks **OR** fire rated interstitial decks, **as directed**, and roof decks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Fire Tests: Fire tests, data and certifications substantiating that Gypsum Plank Decking complies with fire rating requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show typical plank layouts, perimeter and framed opening supports and details of construction, installation, fastenings and grouting.
3. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Each item specified.
4. Load tables for sub-purlins.

C. Quality Control
1. Work performed by experienced, qualified installers approved by manufacturer of gypsum plank.
2. Gypsum materials products of one manufacturer.

D. Delivery And Storage
1. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles bearing brand name and name of manufacturer.
2. Store materials in a manner that prevents damage before use. When stored under tarpaulins, provide ventilation to prevent moisture accumulation under tarpaulin.
3. Store gypsum planks flat and off ground. Handle and stack in a manner to prevent damage to face, ends, and edges and keep dry until used.
4. Store gypsum concrete off ground and keep dry until used.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Structural Steel Tee Sub-purlins:
a. Open web truss-tees, hot-rolled bulb-tees or folded sheet metal tees as required by design loads, spans and fire ratings.
b. Flanges: Provide 5/8-inch (16 mm) minimum bearing for gypsum planks.
c. Galvanize or factory coat sub-purlins with manufacturer's standard primer.
d. Open web truss-tees: Fabricate from cold-formed steel wire conforming to ASTM A82.
e. Hot-rolled bulb-tees: Rail-shaped, fabricated from hot-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A499.
f. Folded sheet metal tees: Fabricate from sheet steel conforming to ASTM A653 and ASTM A568/A568M.
2. Cross-Tees:
a. Cold-Formed, Fabrication from sheet steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M or ASTM A568/A568M.
b. Size: 1-1/4-inches (30 mm) by 1/2-inch (13 mm) by 0.023-inch (0.6 mm) thick by 24-inches (600 mm) long.
c. Tees shall be galvanized or factory coated with manufacturer's standard primer.
3. Gypsum Deck Plank:
a. Fabricated of gypsum board: ASTM C442.

b. Nominal Size: 2-inches (50 mm) **OR** 2-5/8-inches (65 mm), **as directed**, thick by 24-inches (600 mm) wide by main purlin span. Where possible, length should span two main purlin spans.
c. Factory laminate from two 1-inch (25 mm) thick gypsum panels with top panel edge set back along sub-purlin edge not more than 1/2-inch (13 mm).
d. Offset edges encased in water-resistant paper.

4. Gypsum Deck Panels: ASTM C36, Type "X", 5/8-inch (16 mm) thick by 24-inches (600 mm) wide by main purlin span.
5. Grout: Gypsum Concrete: ASTM C317, Class A, 500 psi (3.5 MPa) minimum compressive strength.
6. Miscellaneous Materials: Adhesives, mastics, cements, tapes and primers shall be as recommended by the gypsum plank manufacturer and shall be compatible with the material to which they are to be bonded.

B. Deck System
1. Interstitial deck: Provide two-hour fire rating as tested by gypsum plank manufacturer under ASTM E119.
2. Roof Deck: Provide one hour **OR** 1-1/2 hour, **as directed**, fire rating per tested assembly by Underwriters' Laboratory Inc. or other testing.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Weld per AWS D1.1.
2. Sub-purlins:
a. Space at approximately 24-5/8-inches (650 mm) on center to provide minimum 5/8 inch (16 mm) continuous bearing for gypsum plank or deck.
b. Install framing of openings.
c. Touch up welds with same type of rust-inhibitive paint used for primer.
d. Interstitial Decks: Use 3/4-inch (19 mm) fillet welds on both sides of sub-purlins at math purlin.
e. Roof Decks: Use minimum 1/2-inch (13 mm) fillet welds on alternate sides of sub-purlins, both sides at end joints to main purlins.
f. For fire rated roof decks weld per fire test assembly.
3. For Two Hour fire rated interstitial decks **OR** fire-rated roof decks, **as directed**.
a. Place gypsum deck panels on bottom flanges of sub-purlins with 5/8-inch (16 mm) minimum continuous bearing.
b. Place gypsum deck plank over gypsum deck panels, with off-set edges "up" to form a "T" receptacle for gypsum grout.
c. Cut to fit around openings shown.
d. Install plank to conform to fire test assembly.
4. Gypsum Deck Plank for Roof Decks:
a. Place plank on lower flanges of sub-purlins or other framing with ends and edges supported.
b. Stagger joints in adjacent courses.
c. Support end joints with cross-tees not supported by framing.
d. Cut plank to fit at ends and framed openings.
5. Provide continuous 5/8-inch (16 mm) minimum bearing for plank support at deck perimeter, plank ends and openings exceeding 8-inches (200 mm).
6. Grout:
a. Mix gypsum concrete thoroughly using a minimum amount of water to form a thick, pourable consistency.
b. Fill edge joints to slight excess with single pour at sub-purlins.
1) Grout end joints on single span system against steel framing.

2) After initial set, strike of excess to form smooth, flush joint.
3) Form cant strips and curbs where shown.

c. Fill joints at roof ridges, hips and valleys.

7. Patching:
   a. Fill with grout and smooth any surface damage to gypsum plank.
   b. Remove and replace cracked, broken, and plank damaged beyond repair.
8. Cleaning and Protection:
   a. Upon completion of gypsum plank decking, remove, debris and sweep surface clean. Leave ready for subsequent work.
   b. Protect finished deck from weather and subsequent construction operations.
   c. Provide hardboard or plywood temporary protection over decking subject to repetitive impact or wheeled loads.

END OF SECTION 03 51 16 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 53 14 00 - CONCRETE FLOOR TOPPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete floor topping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Emery-aggregate concrete floor topping.
b. Iron-aggregate concrete floor topping.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product Test Reports.
3. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage, mixing with other components, and application.
2. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

F. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting concrete floor topping performance.
a. Place concrete floor topping only when ambient temperature and temperature of base slabs are between 50 and 86 deg F (10 and 30 deg C).
2. Close areas to traffic during topping application and, after application, for time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Concrete Floor Toppings
1. Emery-Aggregate Concrete Floor Topping: Factory-prepared and dry-packaged mixture of graded, crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide, not less than 24 percent ferric oxide, and not more than 8 percent silica; portland cement or blended hydraulic cement; plasticizers; and other admixtures to which only water needs to be added at Project site.
a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 10,000 psi (69 MPa); ASTM C 109/C 109M.
2. Iron-Aggregate Concrete Floor Topping: Factory-prepared and dry-packaged mixture of graded iron aggregate, portland cement, plasticizers, and other admixtures to which only water needs to be added at Project site.

a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 12,000 psi (83 MPa); ASTM C 109/C 109M.

B. Curing Materials
1. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
2. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
3. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
4. Water: Potable.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 25 percent solids content, minimum.

C. Related Materials
1. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of 80 **OR** aromatic polyurea with a Type A Shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95, **as directed**, per ASTM D 2240.
2. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
4. Sand: ASTM C 404, fine aggregate passing No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
5. Water: Potable.
6. Acrylic-Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
7. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type V, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements.

D. Mixing
1. Bonding Slurry: Mix portland cement with water to a thick paint consistency.
OR
Bonding Slurry: Mix 1 part portland cement and 1-1/2 **OR** 2 **OR** 2-1/2, **as directed**, parts sand with water and an acrylic-bonding agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, **as directed**, to a thick paint consistency.
2. Floor Topping: Mix concrete floor topping materials and water in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer or truck mixer according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance of concrete floor topping.
2. Verify that base concrete slabs comply with scratch finish requirements specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Verify that base slabs are visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by the plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
4. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Existing Concrete: Remove existing surface treatments and deteriorated and unsound concrete. Mechanically abrade base slabs to produce a heavily scarified surface profile with an amplitude of 1/4 inch (6 mm.)
a. Prepare and clean existing base slabs according to concrete floor topping manufacturer's written instructions. Fill voids, cracks, and cavities in base slabs.
b. Mechanically remove contaminants from existing concrete that might impair bond of floor topping.

c. Saw cut contraction and construction joints in existing concrete to a depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) and fill with semirigid joint filler.
d. To both sides of joint edges and at perimeter of existing base slab mechanically remove a 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide and 0- to 1-inch (0- to 25-mm-) deep, tapered wedge of concrete and retexture surface **OR** install concrete nails in manufacturer's recommended staggered pattern, **as directed**.

2. Install joint-filler strips where topping abuts vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
   a. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with topping surface, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Terminate full-width, joint-filler strips 1/2 inch (13 mm) below topping surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", are indicated.
   c. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

C. Floor Topping Application
1. Start floor topping application in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
2. Monolithic Floor Topping: After textured-float finish is applied to fresh concrete of base slabs specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete", place concrete floor topping while concrete is still plastic.
3. Deferred Floor Topping: Within 72 hours of placing base slabs, mix and scrub bonding slurry into dampened concrete to a thickness of 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm), without puddling. Place floor topping while slurry is still tacky.
4. Existing Concrete: Apply epoxy-bonding adhesive, mixed according to manufacturer's written instructions, and scrub into dry base slabs to a thickness of 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm), without puddling. Place floor topping while adhesive is still tacky.
5. Place concrete floor topping continuously in a single layer, tamping and consolidating to achieve tight contact with bonding surface. Do not permit cold joints or seams to develop within pour strip.
   a. Screed surface with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
   b. Slope surfaces uniformly where indicated.
   c. Begin initial floating using bull floats to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane free of humps or hollows.
6. Finishing: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats as soon as concrete floor topping can support equipment and operator. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until concrete floor topping surface has a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
   1) Hard Trowel Finish: After floating surface, apply first trowel finish and consolidate concrete floor topping by power-driven trowel without allowing blisters to develop. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is smooth and uniform in texture.
   2) Finish surfaces to specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and levelness, F(L) 15, and measure **OR** notify independent testing agency to permit measurement, **as directed**, within 24 hours according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M) for a randomly trafficked floor surface.
   3) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between surface and an unleveled freestanding 10-foot- (3-m-) long straightedge, resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface, does not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm).
7. Construction Joints: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete floor topping, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
   a. Coat face of construction joint with epoxy adhesive at locations where concrete floor topping is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete floor topping.
8. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete

floor topping when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before random contraction cracks develop.

a. Form joints in concrete floor topping over contraction joints in base slabs, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Construct contraction joints for a combined depth equal to topping thickness and not less than one-fourth of base-slab thickness.
c. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to one-half of concrete floor topping thickness, but not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep.

D. Protecting And Curing
1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete floor topping from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
2. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete floor topping surfaces in hot, dry, or windy conditions before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying floor topping, but before float finishing.
3. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete floor topping. Cure by one or a combination of the following methods, according to concrete floor topping manufacturer's written instructions:
a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than 7 days with water **OR** continuous water-fog spray **OR** absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover topping surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers, **as directed**.
b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in two coats in continuous operations by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

E. Joint Filling
1. Prepare and clean contraction joints and install semirigid joint filler, according to manufacturer's written instructions, once topping has fully cured.
2. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
3. Install semirigid joint filler full depth of contraction joints. Overfill joint and trim semirigid joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

F. Repairs
1. Defective Topping: Repair and patch defective concrete floor topping areas, including areas that have not bonded to concrete substrate.

G. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of completed applications of concrete floor toppings shall take place in successive stages, in areas of extent and using methods as follows:
a. Sample Sets: At point of placement, a set of 3 molded-cube samples shall be taken from the topping mix for the first 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m), plus 1 set of samples for each subsequent 5000 sq. ft. (464 sq. m) of topping, or fraction thereof, but not less than 6 samples for each day's placement. Samples shall be tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compliance with compressive-strength requirements.

b. Concrete floor topping shall be tested for delamination by dragging a steel chain over the surface.
c. Concrete floor topping shall be tested for compliance with surface flatness and levelness tolerances.

3. Remove and replace applications of concrete floor topping where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
4. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 03 53 14 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 53 19 00	03 53 14 00	Concrete Floor Topping

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 54 16 00 - CEMENT-BASED UNDERLAYMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydraulic cement-based underlayment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling underlayment for application below interior floor coverings.

C. Action Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: For priming and sealing coatings, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans indicating substrates, locations, and average depths of underlayment based on survey of substrate conditions.

D. Informational Submittals
1. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
2. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certifying that products are compatible.
3. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is approved by manufacturer for application of underlayment products required for this Project.
2. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certify in writing that products are compatible.
3. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
4. Sound Transmission Characteristics: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for STC and IIC ratings per ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 492 by a qualified testing agency.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

G. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ventilation, ambient temperature and humidity, and other conditions affecting underlayment performance.
   a. Place hydraulic-cement-based underlayments only when ambient temperature and temperature of substrates are between 50 and 80 deg F (10 and 27 deg C).

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Hydraulic-Cement-Based Underlayments
1. Underlayment: Hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thicknesses of 1/4 inch (6 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement, or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined by ASTM C 219.
b. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (28 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
c. Underlayment Additive: Resilient-emulsion product of underlayment manufacturer formulated for use with underlayment when applied to substrate and conditions indicated.
2. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm); or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
a. Provide aggregate when recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for underlayment thickness required.
3. Water: Potable and at a temperature of not more than 70 deg F (21 deg C).
4. Reinforcement: For underlayment applied to wood substrates, provide galvanized metal lath or other corrosion-resistant reinforcement recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
5. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended in writing for substrate, conditions, and application indicated.
6. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for metal substrates.

B. Accessories
1. Sound Mat
2. Sound Reduction Board

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
a. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. General: Prepare and clean substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
a. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
b. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
2. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond.
a. Moisture Testing: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates do not exceed a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/100 sq. m) in 24 hours.
3. Wood Substrates: Mechanically fasten loose boards and panels to eliminate substrate movement and squeaks. Sand to remove coatings that might impair underlayment bond and remove sanding dust.
a. Install underlayment reinforcement recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Metal Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, rust, foreign matter, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond. Apply corrosion-resistant coating compatible with underlayment if recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.

5. Nonporous Substrates: For ceramic tile, quarry tile, and terrazzo substrates, remove waxes, sealants, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond, and prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Adhesion Tests: After substrate preparation, test substrate for adhesion with underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Sound Control Mat and Board: Install sound control materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. Do not install mechanical fasteners that penetrate through the sound control materials.

C. Application
1. General: Mix and apply underlayment components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
    b. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.
    c. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
2. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
3. Apply underlayment to produce uniform, level surface.
    a. Apply a final layer without aggregate to product surface.
    b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
4. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
5. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
6. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.

D. Protection
1. Protect underlayment from concentrated and rolling loads for remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 03 54 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 61 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 03 62 13 00 - PLANT-PRECAST STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for plant-precast structural concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Precast structural concrete.
b. Precast structural concrete with thin-brick or stone facings.
c. Precast structural concrete with commercial architectural finish.

C. Definition
1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved precast structural concrete color, finish, and texture, preapproved by the Owner.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design precast structural concrete, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Precast structural concrete units and connections shall withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.
a. Fire-Resistance Rating: Select material and minimum thicknesses to provide indicated fire rating.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture. Include compressive strength and water-absorption tests.
4. Shop Drawings: Include member locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes and sections, openings, support conditions, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement. Detail fabrication and installation of precast structural concrete units.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For precast structural concrete indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For Installer **OR** fabricator **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
7. Welding certificates.
8. Material Certificates.
9. Material Test Reports.
10. Source quality-control reports.
11. Field quality-control and special inspection, **as directed**, reports.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering precast structural concrete units to comply with performance requirements. Responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
   a. Participates in PCI's Plant Certification program and is designated a PCI-certified plant as follows:
      1) Group C, Category C1 - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement) **OR** Category C2 - Prestressed Hollowcore and Repetitively Produced Products **OR** Category C3 - Prestressed Straight Strand Structural Members **OR** Category C4 - Prestressed Deflected Strand Structural Members, **as directed**.
      2) Group CA, Category C1A - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement) **OR** Category C2A - Prestressed Hollowcore and Repetitively Produced Products **OR** Category C3A - Prestressed Straight-Strand Structural Members **OR** Category C4A - Prestressed Deflected-Strand Structural Members, **as directed**.
2. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and design recommendations in PCI MNL 120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of precast structural concrete units indicated.
3. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and dimensional tolerances for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 116, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete Products."
4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D.1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   b. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
5. Fire-Resistance Calculations: Where indicated, provide precast structural concrete units whose fire resistance meets the prescriptive requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or has been calculated according to ACI 216.1/TMS 0216.1, "Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies," **OR** PCI MNL 124, "Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete," **as directed**, and is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Support units during shipment on nonstaining shock-absorbing material in same position as during storage.
2. Store units with adequate bracing and protect units to prevent contact with soil, to prevent staining, and to prevent cracking, distortion, warping or other physical damage.
   a. Store units with dunnage across full width of each bearing point unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Place adequate dunnage of even thickness between each unit.
   c. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible, and units can be inspected.
3. Handle and transport units in a position consistent with their shape and design in order to avoid excessive stresses that would cause cracking or damage.
4. Lift and support units only at designated points shown on Shop Drawings.

H. Coordination
1. Furnish loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction before starting that Work. Provide locations, setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Mold Materials

1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, non-absorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; nonreactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes.
   a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match those used for precast concrete design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
3. Surface Retarder: Chemical set retarder, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete mixture to depth of reveal specified.

B. Reinforcing Materials
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized, and chromate wash treated after fabrication and bending, **as directed**.
5. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M **OR** ASTM A 934/A 934M, **as directed**, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) bar length.
6. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
7. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire into flat sheets.
8. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
9. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, flat sheet, Type 1 bendable **OR** Type 2 nonbendable, **as directed**, coating.
10. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 116.

C. Prestressing Tendons
1. Pretensioning Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, Grade 250 (Grade 1720) or Grade 270 (Grade 1860), uncoated, 7-wire **OR** ASTM A 886/A 886M, Grade 270 (Grade 1860), indented, 7-wire, **as directed**, low-relaxation strand.
2. Unbonded Post-Tensioning Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, Grade 270 (Grade 1860), uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation strand.
   a. Coat unbonded post-tensioning strand with post-tensioning coating complying with ACI 423.6 and sheath with polypropylene tendon sheathing complying with ACI 423.6. Include anchorage devices and coupler assemblies.
3. Post-Tensioning Bars: ASTM A 722, uncoated high-strength steel bar.

D. Concrete Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, gray, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, mix gray with white cement, of same type, brand, and mill source.
2. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:
   a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
   b. Metakaolin Admixture: ASTM C 618, Class N.

c. Silica Fume Admixture: ASTM C 1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement.
d. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C 33, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S **OR** Class 5M **OR** Class 4S **OR** Class 4M, **as directed**. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.
   a. Face-Mixture-Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match selected finish sample.
      1) Gradation: Uniformly graded **OR** Gap graded **OR** To match design reference sample, **as directed**.
   b. Face-Mixture-Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand of same material as coarse aggregate unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
4. Lightweight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C 330, with absorption less than 11 percent.
5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic or natural mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, and nonfading.
6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 116.
7. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
8. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.
   a. Water-Reducing Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
   b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
   c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
   d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
   e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
   f. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
   g. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M.
9. Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.

E. Steel Connection Materials
1. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Carbon-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 108, AISI 1018 through AISI 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.
3. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A 283/A 283M.
4. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/A 47M.
5. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205).
6. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A 572/A 572M.
7. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
8. Wrought Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 675/A 675M, Grade 65 (Grade 450).
9. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A 496 or ASTM A 706/A 706M.
10. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F 844.
11. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M) or ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and hardened carbon-steel washers, ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M).
    a. Do not zinc coat ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M) bolts.
12. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, **as directed**, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M

or ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, Types 1 and 2, **as directed**.

a. For steel shapes, plates, and tubing to be galvanized, limit silicon content of steel to less than 0.03 percent or to between 0.15 and 0.25 percent or limit sum of silicon and 2.5 times phosphorous content to 0.09 percent.
b. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035B or SSPC-Paint 20.

13. Shop-Primed Finish: Prepare surfaces of nongalvanized-steel items, except those surfaces to be embedded in concrete, according to requirements in SSPC-SP 3, and shop apply lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer, complying with performance requirements in MPI 79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, according to SSPC-PA 1.
14. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
15. Precast Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic or steel shims, and other accessories required to install precast structural concrete units.

F. Stainless-Steel Connection Materials
1. Stainless-Steel Plate: ASTM A 666, Type 304, of grade suitable for application.
2. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM F 593, Alloy 304 or 316, hex-head bolts and studs; stainless-steel nuts; and flat, stainless-steel washers. Lubricate threaded parts of stainless-steel bolts with an antiseize thread lubricant during assembly.
3. Stainless-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 276, with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.

G. Bearing Pads
1. Provide one of the following bearing pads for precast structural concrete units as recommended by precast fabricator for application, **as directed**:
a. Elastomeric Pads: AASHTO M 251, plain, vulcanized, 100 percent polychloroprene (neoprene) elastomer, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, 50 to 70 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; minimum tensile strength 2250 psi (15.5 MPa), ASTM D 412.
b. Random-Oriented, Fiber-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, randomly oriented synthetic fibers set in elastomer. 70 to 90 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; capable of supporting a compressive stress of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) with no cracking, splitting, or delaminating in the internal portions of pad. Test 1 specimen for every 200 pads used in Project.
c. Cotton-Duck-Fabric-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, horizontally layered cotton-duck fabric bonded to an elastomer; 80 to 100 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; complying with AASHTO's "AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Specifications," Division II, Section 18.10.2; or with MIL-C-882E.
d. Frictionless Pads: Tetrafluoroethylene, glass-fiber reinforced, bonded to stainless- or mild-steel plate, of type required for in-service stress.
e. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.

H. Grout Materials
1. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144 or ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
2. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time.
3. Epoxy-Resin Grout: Two-component, mineral-filled epoxy resin; ASTM C 881/C 881M, of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.

I. Thin-Brick Units And Accessories

1. Thin-Brick Units: ASTM C 216, Type FBX or ASTM C 1088, Grade Exterior, Type TBX, not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick with a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), and as follows:
   a. Face Color and Texture: Match the Owner's samples **OR** Medium brown, wire cut **OR** Full-range red, sand molded **OR** Gray, velour, **as directed**.
   b. Face Size:
      1) 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 8 inches (203 mm) long.
      2) 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
      3) 2-3/4 to 2-13/16 inches (70 to 71 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
      4) 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
      5) 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) high by 11-1/2 to 11-5/8 inches (292 to 295 mm) long.
   c. Where indicated to "match existing," provide thin brick matching color, texture, and face size of existing adjacent brick work.
   d. Face Size:
      1) 57 mm high by 190 mm long.
      2) 70 mm high by 190 mm long.
      3) 90 mm high by 190 mm long.
      4) 90 mm high by 290 mm long.
   e. Special Shapes: Include corners, edge corners, and end edge corners.
   f. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute; ASTM C 67.
   g. Efflorescence: Tested according to ASTM C 67 and rated "not effloresced."
   h. Surface Coating: Thin brick with colors or textures applied as coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing; ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
   i. Back Surface Texture: Scored, combed, wire roughened, ribbed, keybacked, or dovetailed.
2. Sand-Cement Mortar: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 4 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement.
3. Latex-Portland Cement Pointing Grout: ANSI A118.6 and as follows:
   a. Dry-grout mixture, factory prepared, of portland cement, graded aggregate, and dry, redispersible, ethylene-vinyl-acetate additive for mixing with water; uniformly colored.
   b. Commercial portland cement grout, factory prepared, with liquid styrene-butadiene rubber or acrylic-resin latex additive; uniformly colored.
   c. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's samples **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

J. Stone Materials And Accessories
1. Stone facing for precast structural concrete is specified in Division 04 Section "Exterior Stone Cladding".
2. Anchors: Stainless steel, ASTM A 666, Type 304, of temper and diameter required to support loads without exceeding allowable design stresses.
   a. Fit each anchor leg with neoprene grommet collar of width at least twice the diameter and of length at least five times the diameter of anchor.
3. Sealant Filler: ASTM C 920, low-modulus, multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and that is nonstaining to stone substrate.
4. Epoxy Filler: ASTM C 881/C 881M, 100 percent solids, sand-filled nonshrinking, nonstaining of type, class, and grade to suit application.
   a. Elastomeric Anchor Sleeve: 1/2 inch (13 mm) long; 60 Shore, Type A durometer hardness; ASTM D 2240.

5. Bond Breaker: Preformed, compressible, resilient, nonstaining, nonwaxing, closed-cell polyethylene foam pad, nonabsorbent to liquid and gas, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick **OR** Polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, 6 to 10 mils (0.15 to 0.25 mm) thick, **as directed**.

K. Insulated Flat Wall Panel Accessories
1. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15 lb/cu. ft. (18 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m), **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.30 lb/cu. ft. (21 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VI, 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m), **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
3. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type I, 1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IV, 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type II, 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, unfaced, with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
4. Wythe Connectors: Glass-fiber connectors **OR** Vinyl-ester polymer connectors **OR** Polypropylene pin connectors **OR** Stainless-steel pin connectors **OR** Bent galvanized reinforcing bars **OR** Galvanized welded wire trusses **OR** Galvanized bent wire connectors **OR** Cylindrical metal sleeve anchors, **as directed**, manufactured to connect wythes of precast concrete panels.

L. Concrete Mixtures
1. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.
   a. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
   b. Limit use of fly ash to 25 percent replacement of portland cement by weight and granulated blast-furnace slag to 40 percent of portland cement by weight; metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
2. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at precast structural concrete fabricator's option.
3. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 (ACI 318M) or PCI MNL 116 when tested according to ASTM C 1218/C 1218M.
4. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion face mixtures **OR** face and backup mixtures **OR** full-depth mixture, **as directed,** by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
   a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
   b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
5. Water Absorption: 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to PCI MNL 116.
6. Lightweight Concrete Backup Mixtures: Proportion mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.2, with materials to be used on Project, to provide lightweight concrete with the following properties:
   a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
   b. Unit Weight: Calculated equilibrium unit weight of 115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m), plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), according to ASTM C 567.
7. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 116.
8. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
9. Concrete Mix Adjustments: Concrete mix design adjustments may be proposed if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.

M. Mold Fabrication
1. Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes and for prestressing and

detensioning operations. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement and prestressing tendons by release agent.

a. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during concrete placement. Coat form liner with form-release agent.

2. Maintain molds to provide completed precast structural concrete units of shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.
   a. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished work.
   b. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly chamfered **OR** radiused, **as directed**.

N. Thin-Brick Facings
1. Place form-liner templates accurately to provide grid for thin-brick facings. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners while placing thin bricks and during concrete placement.
2. Securely place thin-brick units face down into form-liner pockets and place concrete backing mixture.
3. Completely fill joint cavities between thin-brick units with sand-cement mortar, and place precast concrete backing mixture while sand-cement mortar is still fluid enough to ensure bond.
4. Mix and install pointing grout according to ANSI A108.10. Completely fill joint cavities between thin-brick units with pointing grout, and compress into place without spreading pointing grout onto faces of thin-brick units. Remove excess pointing grout immediately to prevent staining of brick.
   a. Tool joints to a slightly concave shape **OR** grapevine shape **OR** V-shape, **as directed**, when pointing grout is thumbprint hard.
5. Clean faces and joints of brick facing.

O. Stone Facings
1. Clean stone surfaces before placing in molds to remove soil, stains, and foreign materials. Use cleaning methods and materials recommended by stone supplier.
2. Accurately position stone facings to comply with requirements and in locations indicated on Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone in place. Keep concrete reinforcement a minimum of 3/4 inch (19 mm) from the back surface of stone. Use continuous spacers to obtain uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
   a. Stone to Precast Anchorages: Provide anchors in numbers, types and locations required to satisfy specified performance criteria, but not less than 2 anchors per stone unit of less than 2 sq. ft. (0.19 sq. m) in area and 4 anchors per unit of less than 12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m) in area; for units larger than 12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m) in area, provide anchors spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. horizontally and vertically. Locate anchors a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) from stone edge.
3. Fill anchor holes with sealant filler and install anchors **OR** epoxy filler and install anchors with elastomeric anchor sleeve at back surface of stone, **as directed**.
   a. Install polyethylene sheet to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface.
   b. Install 1/8-inch (3-mm) polyethylene-foam bond breaker to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface. Maintain minimum projection requirements of stone anchors into concrete substrate.

P. Fabrication
1. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.

a. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."

2. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing precast structural concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.
3. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in precast structural concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
4. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches (250 mm) in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or prestressing strand without the Owner's approval.
5. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 116 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
   a. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy the bond with concrete. When damage to epoxy-coated reinforcement exceeds limits specified, repair with patching material compatible with coating material and epoxy coat bar ends after cutting.
   b. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concrete-placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices to prevent exposure on finished surfaces.
   c. Place reinforcement to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum coverage. Increase cover requirements according to ACI 318 (ACI 318M) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
   d. Place reinforcing steel and prestressing strand to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum concrete cover. Increase cover requirements for reinforcing steel to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
   e. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh spacing and wire tie laps, where required by design. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
6. Reinforce precast structural concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses.
7. Prestress tendons for precast structural concrete units by either pretensioning or post-tensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 116.
   a. Delay detensioning or post-tensioning of precast, prestressed structural concrete units until concrete has reached its indicated minimum design release compressive strength as established by test cylinders cured under same conditions as concrete.
   b. Detension pretensioned tendons either by gradually releasing tensioning jacks or by heat cutting tendons, using a sequence and pattern to prevent shock or unbalanced loading.
   c. If concrete has been heat cured, detension while concrete is still warm and moist to avoid dimensional changes that may cause cracking or undesirable stresses.
   d. Protect strand ends and anchorages with bituminous, zinc-rich, or epoxy paint to avoid corrosion and possible rust spots.
   e. Protect strand ends and anchorages with a minimum of 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, nonmetallic, nonshrink, grout mortar and sack rub surface. Coat or spray the inside surfaces of pocket with bonding agent before installing grout.
8. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 116 and in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
9. Place face mixture to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch (25 mm) or 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcing cover specified.
10. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent seams or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.
    a. Place backup concrete mixture to ensure bond with face-mixture concrete.

11. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 116.
    a. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration according to PCI TR-6, "Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants."
12. Comply with ACI 306.1 procedures for cold-weather concrete placement.
13. Comply with PCI MNL 116 procedures for hot-weather concrete placement.
14. Identify pickup points of precast structural concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each precast structural concrete unit on a surface that will not show in finished structure.
15. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 116, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.
16. Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 116 and meet the Owner's approval.

Q. Casting Insulated Wall Panels
1. Cast and screed wythe supported by mold.
2. Place insulation boards abutting edges and ends of adjacent boards. Insert wythe connectors through insulation, and consolidate concrete around connectors according to connector manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cast and screed top wythe to meet required finish.

R. Fabrication Tolerances
1. Fabricate precast structural concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 116 product dimension tolerances.
2. Brick-Faced Precast Structural Concrete Units: Restrict the following misalignments to 2 percent of number of bricks in a unit:
    a. Alignment of Mortar Joints:
        1) Jog in Alignment: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
        2) Alignment with Panel Centerline: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
    b. Variation in Width of Exposed Mortar Joints: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
    c. Tipping of Individual Bricks from the Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm); minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than or equal to depth of form-liner joint.
    d. Exposed Brick Surface Parallel to Primary Control Surface of Panel: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm); minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
    e. Individual Brick Step in Face from Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm); minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than or equal to depth of form-liner joint.
3. Stone Veneer-Faced Precast Structural Concrete Units:
    a. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    b. Variation in Joint Width: 1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm) or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
    c. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) difference between planes of adjacent units.

S. Commercial Finishes
1. Commercial Grade: Remove fins and large protrusions and fill large holes. Rub or grind ragged edges. Faces must have true, well-defined surfaces. Air holes, water marks, and color variations are permitted. Limit form joint offsets to 3/16 inch (5 mm).

2. Standard Grade: Normal plant-run finish produced in molds that impart a smooth finish to concrete. Surface holes smaller than 1/2 inch (13 mm) caused by air bubbles, normal color variations, form joint marks, and minor chips and spalls are permitted. Fill air holes greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width that occur more than once per 2 sq. in (1300 sq. mm). Major or unsightly imperfections, honeycombs, or structural defects are not permitted. Limit joint offsets to 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. Grade B Finish: Fill air pockets and holes larger than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter with sand-cement paste matching color of adjacent surfaces. Fill air holes greater than 1/8 inch (3 mm) in width that occur more than once per 2 sq. in. (1300 sq. mm). Grind smooth form offsets or fins larger than 1/8 inch (3 mm). Repair surface blemishes due to holes or dents in molds. Discoloration at form joints is permitted.
4. Grade A Finish: Fill surface blemishes with the exception of air holes 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in width or smaller, and form marks where the surface deviation is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm). Float apply a neat cement-paste coating to exposed surfaces. Rub dried paste coat with burlap to remove loose particles. Discoloration at form joints is permitted. Grind smooth all form joints.
5. Screed or float finish unformed surfaces. Strike off and consolidate concrete with vibrating screeds to a uniform finish. Hand screed at projections. Normal color variations, minor indentations, minor chips, and spalls are permitted. Major imperfections, honeycombing, or defects are not permitted.
6. Smooth, steel trowel finish unformed surfaces. Consolidate concrete, bring to proper level with straightedge, float, and trowel to a smooth, uniform finish.
7. Apply roughened surface finish according to ACI 318 (ACI 318M) to precast concrete units that will receive concrete topping after installation.

T. Commercial Architectural Finishes
1. Manufacture member faces free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects with corners, including false joints, uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of precast concrete units to match approved design reference sample **OR** sample panels, **as directed**, and as follows:
   a. PCI's "Architectural Precast Concrete - Color and Texture Selection Guide," of plate numbers indicated.
   b. Smooth-Surface Finish: Provide surfaces free of excessive air voids, sand streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
   c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners or inserts to provide surfaces free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
   d. Bushhammer Finish: Use power or hand tools to remove matrix and fracture coarse aggregates.
   e. Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Use chemical-retarding agents applied to concrete molds and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
   f. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
   g. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces. Protect hardware, connections, and insulation from acid attach.
   h. Honed Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
   i. Polished Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
   j. Sand-Embedment Finish: Use selected stones placed in a sand bed in bottom of mold, with sand removed after curing.

U. Source Quality Control
1. Testing: Test and inspect precast structural concrete according to PCI MNL 116 requirements.
   a. Test and inspect self-consolidating concrete according to PCI TR-6.

2. Strength of precast structural concrete units will be considered deficient if units fail to comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements for concrete strength.
3. If there is evidence that strength of precast concrete units may be deficient or may not comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements, employ a qualified testing agency to obtain, prepare, and test cores drilled from hardened concrete to determine compressive strength according to ASTM C 42/C 42M.
    a. A minimum of three representative cores will be taken from units of suspect strength, from locations directed by the Owner.
    b. Cores will be tested in an air-dry condition or, if units will be wet under service conditions, test cores after immersion in water in a wet condition.
    c. Strength of concrete for each series of 3 cores will be considered satisfactory if average compressive strength is equal to at least 85 percent of 28-day design compressive strength and no single core is less than 75 percent of 28-day design compressive strength.
    d. Test results will be made in writing on same day that tests are performed, with copies to the Owner, Contractor, and precast concrete fabricator. Test reports will include the following:
        1) Project identification name and number.
        2) Date when tests were performed.
        3) Name of precast concrete fabricator.
        4) Name of concrete testing agency.
        5) Identification letter, name, and type of precast concrete unit(s) represented by core tests; design compressive strength; type of break; compressive strength at breaks, corrected for length-diameter ratio; and direction of applied load to core in relation to horizontal plane of concrete as placed.
4. Patching: If core test results are satisfactory and precast structural concrete units comply with requirements, clean and dampen core holes and solidly fill with same precast concrete mixture that has no coarse aggregate, and finish to match adjacent precast concrete surfaces.
5. Defective Units: Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including strength, manufacturing tolerances, and color and texture range. Chipped, spalled, or cracked units may be repaired, subject to the Owner's approval. the Owner reserves the right to reject precast units that do not match approved samples and sample panels.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting precast structural concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Erect precast structural concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary structural framing, supports, and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connection.
    a. Install temporary steel or plastic spacing shims or bearing pads as precast structural concrete units are being erected. Tack weld steel shims to each other to prevent shims from separating.
    b. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
    c. Remove projecting lifting devices and grout fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast surfaces when recess is exposed.
    d. For hollow-core slab voids used as electrical raceways or mechanical ducts, align voids between units and tape butt joint at end of slabs.
3. Connect precast structural concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.
    a. Do not permit connections to disrupt continuity of roof flashing.
4. Field cutting of precast units is not permitted without approval of the the Owner.

5. Fasteners: Do not use drilled or powder-actuated fasteners for attaching accessory items to precast, prestressed concrete units.
6. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4 for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    a. Protect precast structural concrete units and bearing pads from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
    b. Clean weld-affected steel surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and apply a minimum 4.0-mil- (0.1-mm-) thick coat of galvanized repair paint to galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.
    c. Clean weld-affected steel surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and reprime damaged painted surfaces.
    d. Remove, reweld, or repair incomplete and defective welds.
7. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.
    a. Where slotted connections are used, verify bolt position and tightness. For sliding connections, properly secure bolt but allow bolt to move within connection slot. For friction connections, apply specified bolt torque and check 25 percent of bolts at random by calibrated torque wrench.
8. Grouting: Grout connections and joints and open spaces at keyways, connections, and joints where required or indicated on Shop Drawings. Retain grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Pack spaces with stiff grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled.
    a. Place grout to finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete surfaces.
    b. Fill joints completely without seepage to other surfaces.
    c. Trowel top of grout joints on roofs smooth and uniform. Finish transitions between different surface levels not steeper than 1 to 12.
    d. Place grout end cap or dam in voids at ends of hollow-core slabs.
    e. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens.
    f. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set.

B. Erection Tolerances
1. Erect precast structural concrete units level, plumb, square, true, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 135.
2. Minimize variations between adjacent slab members by jacking, loading, or other method recommended by fabricator and approved by the Owner.

C. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
    a. Erection of precast structural concrete members.
2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
3. Field welds will be visually inspected and nondestructive tested according to ASTM E 165 or ASTM E 709. High-strength bolted connections will be subject to inspections.
4. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
5. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
6. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
7. Prepare test and inspection reports.

D. Repairs
1. Repair precast structural concrete units if permitted by the Owner.
    a. Repairs may be permitted if structural adequacy, serviceability, durability, and appearance of units has not been impaired.

2. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 feet (6 m).
3. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
4. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
5. Remove and replace damaged precast structural concrete units that cannot be repaired or when repairs do not comply with requirements as determined by the Owner.

E. Cleaning
1. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.
2. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.
   a. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's written recommendations. Clean soiled precast concrete surfaces with detergent and water, using stiff fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
   b. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 62 13 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 62 16 00	03 62 13 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 64 23 00	03 62 13 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 64 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 05 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 05 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 05 21 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for structural steel. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Structural steel.
b. Prefabricated building columns.
c. Grout.

C. Definitions
1. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
2. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
3. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
a. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
b. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
c. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
5. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Connections: Provide details of connections **OR** simple shear connections, **as directed**, required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering design by a qualified professional engineer, **as directed**, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
a. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
b. Use LRFD; data are given at factored-load level **OR** ASD; data are given at service-load level, **as directed**.
2. Moment Connections: Type PR, partially **OR** FR, fully, **as directed**, restrained.
3. Construction: Moment frame **OR** Braced frame **OR** Shear wall system **OR** Combined system of moment frame and braced frame **OR** Combined system of moment frame and shear walls **OR** Combined system of braced frame and shear walls **OR** Combined system of moment frame, braced frame, and shear walls, **as directed**.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
   a. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
   b. Include embedment drawings.
   c. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
   d. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
   e. Identify members and connections of the seismic-load-resisting system.
   f. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
   g. Identify demand critical welds.
   h. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural design data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, **as directed**.
4. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified **OR** qualified by testing, **as directed**, including the following:
   a. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
   b. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer **OR** fabricator **OR** professional engineer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
6. Welding certificates.
7. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
8. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
9. Product Test Reports: For the following:
   a. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
   b. Direct-tension indicators.
   c. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
   d. Shear stud connectors.
   e. Shop primers.
   f. Nonshrink grout.
10. Source quality-control reports.

F. Quality Assurance
   1. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
   2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE **OR** CSE, **as directed**.
   3. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1 **OR** P2 **OR** P3, **as directed**, or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
   4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
      a. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
   5. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
      a. AISC 303.
      b. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
      c. AISC 360.
      d. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
   6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
   a. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
2. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
   a. Fasteners may be repackaged provided the Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
   b. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
   c. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

H. Coordination
1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Structural-Steel Materials
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent.
   OR
   Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than the following:
   a. W-Shapes: 60 percent.
   b. Channels, Angles, M **OR** S, **as directed**,-Shapes: 60 percent.
   c. Plate and Bar: 25 percent.
   d. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: 25 percent.
   e. Steel Pipe: 25 percent.
   f. All Other Steel Materials: 25 percent.
2. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 913/A 913M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
3. Channels, Angles, M **OR** S, **as directed**,-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 913/A 913M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
4. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
5. Corrosion-Resisting Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50 (345).
6. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B **OR** C, **as directed**, structural tubing.
7. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847/A 847M, structural tubing.
8. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
   a. Weight Class: Standard **OR** Extra strong **OR** Double-extra strong, **as directed**.
   b. Finish: Black **OR** Galvanized **OR** Black except where indicated to be galvanized, **as directed**.

9. Steel Castings: ASTM A 216/A 216M, Grade WCB with supplementary requirement S11.
10. Steel Forgings: ASTM A 668/A 668M.
11. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

B. Bolts, Connectors, And Anchors
1. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
   a. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8), compressible-washer type with plain finish.
2. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends, **as directed**; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
   a. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490 (ASTM F 959M, Type 10.9), compressible-washer type with plain finish.
3. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
   a. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, **as directed**.
   b. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8), compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating **OR** mechanically deposited zinc coating, baked epoxy-coated, **as directed**, finish.
4. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex **OR** round, **as directed**, head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
   a. Finish: Plain **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, **as directed**.
5. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
6. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable **OR** ASTM A 354 **OR** ASTM A 449 **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 36/A 36M, **as directed**.
   a. Configuration: Straight **OR** Hooked, **as directed**.
   b. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
   c. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
   d. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
   e. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
7. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable **OR** ASTM A 354 **OR** ASTM A 449, **as directed**, straight.
   a. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
   b. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
   c. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
   d. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
8. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 193/A 193M, Grade B7 **OR** ASTM A 354, Grade BD **OR** ASTM A 449 **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
   a. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
   b. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened **OR** ASTM A 36/A 36M, **as directed**, carbon steel.
   c. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
9. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.
10. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.

11. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.
12. Structural Slide Bearings: Low-friction assemblies, of configuration indicated, that provide vertical transfer of loads and allow horizontal movement perpendicular to plane of expansion joint while resisting movement within plane of expansion joint.
    a. Mating Surfaces: PTFE and PTFE **OR** PTFE and mirror-finished stainless steel, **as directed**.
    b. Coefficient of Friction: Not more than 0.03 **OR** 0.04 **OR** 0.05 **OR** 0.06 **OR** 0.10 **OR** 0.12, **as directed**.
    c. Design Load: Not less than 2,000 psi (13.7 MPa) **OR** 5,000 psi (34 MPa) **OR** 6,000 psi (41 MPa), **as directed**.
    d. Total Movement Capability: 2 inches (50 mm).

C. Primer
1. Primer: Comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
   OR
   Primer: SSPC-Paint 25, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.
   OR
   Primer: SSPC-Paint 25 BCS, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.
   OR
   Primer: SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
   OR
   Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat, **as directed**.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.

D. Grout
1. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
2. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

E. Fabrication
1. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
    a. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
    b. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
    c. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
    d. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
    e. If shop priming is required, complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
2. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
    a. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
3. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, **as directed**, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
4. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
5. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning", **as directed**.
6. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

7. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.
8. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
9. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
    a. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning, **unless directed otherwise**.
    b. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
    c. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

F. Shop Connections
1. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
    a. Joint Type: Snug tightened **OR** Pretensioned **OR** Slip critical, **as directed**.
2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M, **as directed**, for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    a. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

G. Prefabricated Building Columns
1. Prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide prefabricated building column listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119.
    a. Fire-Resistance Rating: 4 hours **OR** 3 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

H. Shop Priming
1. If shop priming is required, shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
    a. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
    b. Surfaces to be field welded.
    c. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
    d. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
    e. Galvanized surfaces.
2. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
    a. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
    b. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
    c. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
    d. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
    e. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
    f. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    g. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
    h. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
    i. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
3. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5

mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
   a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
   b. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
4. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm).

I. Galvanizing
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
   a. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
   b. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles, and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

J. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   a. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
2. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
3. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected **OR** tested and inspected, **as directed**, according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
4. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
   a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
   b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
   c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
   d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
5. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
   a. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
   b. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
   a. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in

intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

a. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

C. Erection

1. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
2. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
   a. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
   b. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
   c. Snug-tighten **OR** Pretension, **as directed**, anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
   d. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts, **as directed**.
3. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
4. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
   a. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
   b. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
5. Splice members only where indicated.
6. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by the Owner. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
7. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
8. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Field Connections

1. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
   a. Joint Type: Snug tightened **OR** Pretensioned **OR** Slip critical, **as directed**.
2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M, **as directed**, for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
   a. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
   b. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
   c. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

E. Prefabricated Building Columns

1. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC 360, manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements of testing and inspecting agency that apply to the fire-resistance rating indicated.

F. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
2. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be inspected **OR** tested and inspected, **as directed**, according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
3. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
   a. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
      1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
      2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
      3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
      4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
   a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
   b. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
5. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

G. Repairs And Protection
1. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
2. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
   a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

   OR

   Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 07.

END OF SECTION 05 05 21 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 05 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 05 23 00	05 05 21 00	Structural Steel
05 05 23 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 12 23 00 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cold-formed metal framing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
   b. Interior load-bearing wall framing.
   c. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
   d. Floor joist framing.
   e. Roof trusses.
   f. Roof rafter framing.
   g. Ceiling joist framing.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
   a. Design Loads: **As directed.**
   b. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
      1) Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360 **OR** 1/600 **OR** 1/720, **as directed**, of the wall height.
      2) Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
      3) Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360 **OR** 1/600 **OR** 1/720, **as directed**, of the wall height.
      4) Floor Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/480 for live loads and l/360 for total loads of the span.
      5) Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the span.
      6) Scissor Roof Trusses: Horizontal deflection of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) <Insert dimension> at reactions.
      7) Roof Rafter Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the horizontally projected span.
      8) Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the span.
   c. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
   d. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
      1) Upward and downward movement of 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
2. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
   a. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."

b. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
c. Roof Trusses: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product and accessory indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
a. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Qualification data.
6. Product test reports.
7. Research/evaluation reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
2. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
3. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
4. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency**,** or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment, **as directed**, indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.
5. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
6. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
7. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
a. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
b. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
8. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings" as applicable.
9. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
2. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
   a. Grade: ST33H (ST230H) **OR** ST50H (ST340H) **OR** As required by structural performance, **as directed**.
   b. Coating: G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZ150), or GF30 (ZGF90) **OR** G90 (Z275) or equivalent, **as directed**.
3. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection **OR** Drift, **as directed**, Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
   a. Grade: 50 (340), Class 1 or 2 **OR** As required by structural performance, **as directed**.
   b. Coating: G90 (Z275).

B. Load-Bearing Wall Framing
1. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
2. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges.
3. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
4. Steel Double-L Headers: Manufacturer's standard L-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated.

C. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Framing
1. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
2. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
3. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass **OR** head, **as directed**, clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
4. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
5. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
   a. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
   b. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated, and as follows:
6. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure.

D. Floor Joist Framing
1. Steel Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel joists, of web depths indicated, unpunched, **OR** punched, **OR** punched, with enlarged service holes, **as directed**, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
2. Steel Joist Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel joist track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:

E. Roof Trusses
1. Roof Truss Members:

a. Manufacturer's standard-shape steel sections.
OR
Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges.

F. Roof-Rafter Framing
1. Steel Rafters: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges.
2. Built-up Members: Built-up members of manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel section, with stiffened flanges, nested into a U-shaped steel section joist track, with unstiffened flanges; unpunched; of web depths indicated.

G. Ceiling Joist Framing
1. Steel Ceiling Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, **OR** punched with enlarged service holes, **as directed**, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

H. Framing Accessories
1. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
2. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
a. Supplementary framing.
b. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
c. Web stiffeners.
d. Anchor clips.
e. End clips.
f. Foundation clips.
g. Gusset plates.
h. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
i. Joist hangers and end closures.
j. Hole reinforcing plates.
k. Backer plates.

I. Anchors, Clips, And Fasteners
1. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
2. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** 55, **as directed**, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts **OR** headless, hooked bolts **OR** headless bolts, with encased end threaded, **as directed**, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** mechanically deposition according to ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
3. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
4. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
5. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
a. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
6. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

J. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.
2. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
3. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
4. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
5. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

K. Fabrication
1. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
   a. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
   b. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
   c. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
      1) Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
      2) Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
   d. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
2. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
3. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
   a. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
   b. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
2. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
3. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
4. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

B. Installation, General
1. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

2. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
3. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
   a. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
4. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
   a. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
   b. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
      1) Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
      2) Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
5. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
6. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
7. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
8. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation", in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
9. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
10. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
    a. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

C. Load-Bearing Wall Installation
1. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
   a. Anchor Spacing: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** To match stud spacing **OR** As shown on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
2. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/8 inch (3 mm) between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
   a. Stud Spacing:
      1) 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      2) 300 mm **OR** 400 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
3. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
4. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
5. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
6. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.

7. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
   a. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
   b. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
8. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
   a. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
9. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced 48 inches (1220 mm) **OR** as indicated **OR** as indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**. Fasten at each stud intersection.
   a. Bridging:
      1) Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches (150 mm) deep.
         OR
         Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
         OR
         Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
10. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
11. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

D. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Installation
   1. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
   2. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom **OR** top and bottom, **as directed**, track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
      a. Stud Spacing:
         1) 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
         2) 300 mm **OR** 400 mm **OR** 480 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   3. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
   4. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
      a. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
      b. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
      c. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing **OR** infill, **as directed**, studs and anchor to building structure.
      d. Connect drift clips to cold formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
   5. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
      a. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**, of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or

stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

1) Install solid blocking at 96-inch (2440-mm) centers **OR** centers indicated **OR** centers indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.

b. Bridging:

1) Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.

OR

Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

OR

Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.

6. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

E. Joist Installation

1. Install perimeter joist track sized to match joists. Align and securely anchor or fasten track to supporting structure at corners, ends, and spacings indicated on Shop Drawings.
2. Install joists bearing on supporting frame, level, straight, and plumb; adjust to final position, brace, and reinforce. Fasten joists to both flanges of joist track.
   a. Install joists over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   b. Reinforce ends and bearing points of joists with web stiffeners, end clips, joist hangers, steel clip angles, or steel-stud sections as indicated on Shop Drawings.
3. Space joists not more than 2 inches (51 mm) from abutting walls, and as follows:
   a. Joist Spacing:
      1) 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      2) 300 mm **OR** 400 mm **OR** 480 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Frame openings with built-up joist headers consisting of joist and joist track, nesting joists, or another combination of connected joists if indicated.
5. Install joist reinforcement at interior supports with single, short length of joist section located directly over interior support, with lapped joists of equal length to joist reinforcement, or as indicated **OR** as indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
   a. Install web stiffeners to transfer axial loads of walls above.
6. Install bridging at intervals indicated **OR** indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**. Fasten bridging at each joist intersection as follows:
   a. Bridging:
      1) Joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated, secured to joist webs.

      OR

      Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated. Fasten flat straps to bottom flange of joists and secure solid blocking to joist webs.
7. Secure joists to load-bearing interior walls to prevent lateral movement of bottom flange.
8. Install miscellaneous joist framing and connections, including web stiffeners, closure pieces, clip angles, continuous angles, hold-down angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable joist-framing assembly.

F. Truss Installation

1. Install, bridge, and brace trusses according to Shop Drawings and requirements in this Section.
2. Truss Spacing:
   a. 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1220 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. 400 mm **OR** 480 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** 800 mm **OR** 1200 mm, **as directed**.

3. Do not alter, cut, or remove framing members or connections of trusses.
4. Erect trusses with plane of truss webs plumb and parallel to each other, align, and accurately position at spacings indicated.
5. Erect trusses without damaging framing members or connections.
6. Align webs of bottom chords and load-bearing studs or continuously reinforce track to transfer loads to structure. Anchor trusses securely at all bearing points.
7. Install continuous bridging and permanently brace trusses as indicated on Shop Drawings and designed according to LGSEA's Technical Note 551e, "Design Guide for Permanent Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses," **as directed**.

G. Field Quality Control
1. Testing: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
3. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
4. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
5. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

H. Repairs And Protection
1. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 12 23 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 12 23 00	05 05 21 00	Structural Steel
05 12 23 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 13 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 14 13 00 - STRUCTURAL ALUMINUM

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for structural aluminum. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Performance Requirements
1. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-aluminum fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
a. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and in accordance with minimum mechanical properties and applicable buckling formula constants published by The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-aluminum components.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Mill test reports.
5. Source quality-control test reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who has provided successful structural aluminum fabrication for a minimum of 5 years.
2. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. Comply with applicable provisions of The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Structural-Aluminum Materials
1. W-Shapes, Channels, Angles, Plate and Bar, Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections, and Pipe: Structural shapes indicating minimum mechanical properties and applicable buckling formula constants are listed in Table 3.3.1, Section 3, of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures," Construction Manual Series Section 1, as published by The Aluminum Association. Applicable ASTM Designations include B209, B210, B211, B221, B241, B247, B308, and B429
2. Allowable Stresses:
a. Building Type Structures: Basic allowable tensile stresses for buildings, structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, traffic signals and similar structures shall be the lesser of the minimum yield strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.65, or the minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.95. Other allowable stresses for buildings and similar structures shall be based upon the factors of safety shown in Table 3.3.3 of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures."
b. Bridge Type Structures: Basic allowable tensile stresses for bridge type structures shall be the lesser of the minimum yield strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.85, or the minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by a factor of safety of 2.2. Other allowable

stresses for bridge and similar structures shall be based upon the factors of safety shown in Table 3.3.3 of “Specifications for Aluminum Structures.”

3. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

B. Bolts and Connectors
   1. Rivets and Bolts:
      a. Aluminum alloys used for rivets and bolts shall be those listed in Tables 5.1.1b and 5.1.1c of “Specifications for Aluminum Structures.”
      b. Nuts:
         1) For bolts 1/4” and smaller: Alloy 2024-T4. For improved corrosion resistance, apply 0.0002” minimum thickness anodic coating.
         2) For bolts larger than 1/4”: 6061-T6 or 6262-T9.
         3) Flat Washers: Alclad 2024-T4.
         4) Spring Lock Washers: Alloy 7075-T6.
      c. Steel Bolts: Hot-dip galvanized, electro-galvanized, cadmium plated or aluminized steel bolts and Series 300 stainless steel bolts may be used instead of aluminum bolts. Plating thickness on steel shall be adequate to provide corrosion protection for the anticipated environ and service life.

C. Grout
   1. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404, Size No. 2. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
   2. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
   3. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

D. Fabrication
   1. Structural Aluminum: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to The Aluminum Association’s “Aluminum Construction Manual.”

E. Source Quality Control
   1. Engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports. Comply with testing and inspection requirements of Part 1.3, Article "Field Quality Control."
   2. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Erection
   1. Examination: Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with erector present, for compliance with requirements.
      a. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
   2. Set structural aluminum accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to The Aluminum Association’s “Aluminum Construction Manual.”
   3. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
      a. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.

b. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
c. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
d. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

4. Maintain erection tolerances of structural aluminum within The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."

B. Field Connections
1. Bolts: Shop install bolts according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.2 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
a. Comply with The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, and alignment.

C. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
2. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections shall be tested and inspected according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
3. Welded Connections: Field welds shall be visually inspected according to AWS D1.2.
a. In addition to visual inspection, field welds shall be tested according to AWS D1.2.
4. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate are not in compliance with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 05 14 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 14 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 15 16 00 - ORNAMENTAL METAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ornamental metal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Decorative window security bars.
b. Decorative mechanical grilles and frames.
c. Decorative-metal-clad, hollow-metal doors and frames.
d. Custom door pulls.
e. Combination hall push-button stations.
f. Metal reveals at wood paneling.
g. Cast-metal rosettes at marble joints.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including finishing materials.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative metal.
a. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
b. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
4. Patterns, Models, or Plaster Castings: Made from proposed patterns for each design of custom casting required.
5. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
a. Sections of linear shapes.
b. Full-size Samples of castings and forgings.
1) For custom castings, submit finished Samples showing ability to reproduce detail, cast-metal color, and quality of finish. Samples may be of similar previous work.
c. Samples of welded and brazed joints showing quality of workmanship and color matching of materials.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified fabricator **OR** organic-coating applicator **OR** anodic finisher **OR** powder-coating applicator, **as directed**.
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing decorative metal similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
2. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

3. Organic-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying organic coatings, of type indicated, to aluminum extrusions and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
4. Anodic Finisher Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying anodic finishes of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
5. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
6. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
   c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
   d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."
7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store decorative metal in a well-ventilated area, away from uncured concrete and masonry, and protected from weather, moisture, soiling, abrasion, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
2. Deliver and store cast-metal products in wooden crates surrounded by sufficient packing material to ensure that products will not be cracked or otherwise damaged.

F. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with decorative metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

G. Coordination
1. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General
1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. Provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

B. Aluminum
1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with strength and durability properties for each aluminum form required not less than that of alloy and temper designated below.
   a. Extruded Bars and Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
   b. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
   c. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M) or ASTM B 483/B 483M, Alloy 6063-T832.
   d. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003-H14 **OR** Alloy 5005-H32 **OR** Alloy 6061-T6, **as directed**.
   e. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), Alloy 6061-T6.
   f. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

C. Copper Alloys

1. Copper and Copper Alloys, General: Provide alloys indicated and temper to suit application and forming methods but with strength and stiffness not less than H01 (quarter-hard) for plate, sheet, strip, and bars and H55 (light-drawn) for tube and pipe.
2. Extruded Shapes, Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
3. Extruded Shapes, Brass: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C36000 (free-cutting brass).
4. Extruded Shapes, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C79600.
5. Seamless Pipe, Bronze: ASTM B 43, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
6. Seamless Tube, Bronze: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
7. Seamless Tube, Brass: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
8. Seamless Tube, Copper: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), Alloy UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high residual phosphorous copper).
9. Castings, Bronze: ASTM B 62, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (85-5-5-5 or No. 1 composition commercial red brass) or ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze).
10. Castings, Brass: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C85200 (high-copper yellow brass).
11. Castings, Copper: ASTM B 824, with a minimum of 99.9 percent copper.
12. Castings, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97300 (12 percent leaded nickel silver).
13. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Bronze: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
14. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Brass: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
15. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Copper: ASTM B 152/B 152M, Alloy UNS No. C11000 (electrolytic tough pitch copper) or UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high-residual phosphorous copper).

D. Stainless Steel
1. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304 **OR** Grade MT 316 **OR** Grade MT 316L, **as directed**.
2. Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304 **OR** Grade TP 316 **OR** Grade TP 316L, **as directed**.
3. Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20 **OR** Grade CF 8M or CF 3M, **as directed**.
4. Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
6. Wire Rope and Fittings:
   a. Wire Rope: 1-by-19 **OR** 7-by-7 **OR** 7-by-19, **as directed**, wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316.
   b. Wire-Rope Fittings: Connectors of types indicated, fabricated from stainless steel, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.

E. Steel And Iron
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513, Type 5 (mandrel drawn).
3. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
4. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
5. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M unless otherwise indicated.
6. Steel Sheet, Cold Rolled: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel or structural steel, exposed.

F. Titanium
1. Titanium Strip, Sheet, and Plate: ASTM B 265, Grade 1.
2. Titanium Bars: ASTM B 348, Grade 1.

G. Fasteners
1. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
   a. Aluminum Items: Aluminum **OR** Type 304 stainless-steel **OR** Type 316 stainless-steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
   b. Copper-Alloy (Bronze) Items: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed, muntz metal (Alloy 280) fasteners where exposed.
   c. Copper-Alloy (Brass) Items: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed, brass (Alloy 260 or 360) fasteners where exposed.
   d. Stainless-Steel Items: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
   e. Titanium Items: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
   f. Uncoated-Steel Items: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating where concealed, Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners where exposed.
   g. Galvanized-Steel Items: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
   h. Dissimilar Metals: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Unless otherwise indicated, select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring indicated items to other types of construction indicated.
3. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting components and for attaching decorative metal items to other work unless otherwise indicated **OR** exposed fasteners are unavoidable, **as directed**.
   a. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
4. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
5. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion type or chemical type.
   a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

H. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
   a. For aluminum, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
2. Brazing Rods: For copper alloys, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be brazed and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
3. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
4. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
5. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
6. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
7. Universal Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
8. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

9. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water-based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
10. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats for Steel: Provide products that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
11. Epoxy Intermediate Coat for Steel: Complying with MPI#77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
12. Polyurethane Topcoat for Steel: Complying with MPI#72 and compatible with undercoat.
13. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

I. Fabrication, General
1. Assemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
2. Make up wire-rope assemblies in the shop to field-measured dimensions with fittings machine swaged. Minimize amount of turnbuckle take-up used for dimensional adjustment so maximum amount is available for tensioning wire ropes. Tag wire-rope assemblies and fittings to identify installation locations and orientations for coordinated installation.
3. Form decorative metal to required shapes and sizes, true to line and level with true curves and accurate angles and surfaces. Finish exposed surfaces to smooth, sharp, well-defined lines and arris.
4. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the Work.
5. Form simple and compound curves in bars, pipe, tubing, and extruded shapes by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces.
6. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
7. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Cope or miter corner joints. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
8. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
9. Provide necessary rebates, lugs, and brackets to assemble units and to attach to other work. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
10. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in shop welding and brazing. Weld and braze behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed joints of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
    a. Where welding and brazing cannot be concealed behind finished surfaces, finish joints to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 Welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 Welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 Welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 Welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
11. Provide castings that are sound and free of warp, cracks, blowholes, or other defects that impair strength or appearance. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks.

J. Decorative Window Security Bars
1. General: Fabricate decorative window grilles to designs indicated from steel bars and shapes of sizes and profiles indicated. Form steel bars by bending, forging, coping, mitering, and welding.
2. Welding: Interconnect grille members with full-length, full-penetration welds unless otherwise indicated. Use welding method that is appropriate for metal and finish indicated and that

develops full strength of members joined. Finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth, flush, and blended to match adjoining surfaces.

3. Brackets, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, fittings, and anchors to connect decorative window grilles to other work unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices to connect decorative window grilles to concrete and masonry work. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
   b. Fabricate anchorage devices that are capable of withstanding loads indicated.

K. Decorative Mechanical Grilles
1. Fabricate decorative grilles from perforated aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, sheet or plate of thickness, size, and pattern indicated. Form perforations by punching, cutting, or drilling to produce openings of sizes and shapes indicated. Roll, press, and grind perforated metal to flatten and to remove burrs and deformations.
   a. Form perforations to match existing grilles.
      OR
      Drawings indicate perforated metal patterns required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Perforated metal patterns produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
2. Drill and countersink grilles for mounting screws at 2 inches (50 mm) from corners and at 10 inches (250 mm) or less o.c. Provide units with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping machine, **as directed**, screws.
3. Fabricate grille frames from extruded aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, of profiles, and to sizes and shapes indicated. Miter frame members at corners and connect with concealed splice plates welded **OR** brazed, **as directed**, to back of frames.
   a. Secure grilles in frames with 0.5-inch- (12-mm-) long welds **OR** brazing, **as directed**, along perimeter of grilles at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
   b. Provide frame profiles to match existing frames.
      OR
      Drawings indicate frame profiles required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Similar frame profiles produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
4. Drill and countersink frames for mounting screws at 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at 16 inches (400 mm) or less o.c. Provide units with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping machine, **as directed**, screws.

L. Decorative-Metal-Clad Doors And Frames
1. Laminate 0.0403-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, muntz-metal **OR** 0.0403-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, brass **OR** 0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm-) thick, stainless-steel **OR** 0.024-inch- (0.6-mm-) thick, titanium, **as directed**, sheets to outside face of hollow-metal doors and frames at locations and to comply with details indicated. Use adhesive recommended by metal fabricator that will fully bond metal to metal and that will prevent telegraphing and oil canning.
   a. Hollow-metal doors and frames are specified in Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames."

M. Custom Door Pulls
1. Fabricate custom door pulls from brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar stock of profile indicated, fabricated to shapes indicated. Form curves by bending to produce uniform curvature of radii indicated; maintain profile of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces. Where radii of bends are too small to avoid buckling, grind bars after bending to restore original profile. Drill and tap door pulls to receive through bolts for attachment to doors.
2. Fabricate backing plates for custom door pulls from 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet. Cut to shape indicated and bevel edges at a 45-degree angle for one-half thickness of metal. Drill and countersink holes where indicated for screws and bolts.

3. Provide units with oval-head through bolts for mounting pulls and with oval-head wood screws for mounting backing plates.

N. Combination Hall Push-Button Stations
   1. Fabricate units of brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, to comply with details indicated. Coordinate with requirements in Division 14 Section "Electric Traction Elevators" to provide integrated, closely fitted assemblies.
      a. Fabricate faceplates from 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick sheet with edges beveled at a 45-degree angle for one-half thickness of metal.
      b. Provide units with rectangular, split-bowl trash receptacle, designed for recess mounting in nominal 4-inch (100-mm) wall depth. Fabricate recessed cabinets, top rings, and split bowls of same metal as face of units; fabricate removable receptacles of drawn aluminum. Nominal dimensions of units are 10 by 10 by 3-1/2 inches (250 by 250 by 90 mm) in depth.
      c. Provide units with emergency pictorial signs and text, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that in fire emergency, elevators should not be used and that stairways should be used instead. Engrave pictorial sign and text into front surface of faceplates to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) with engraving painted red. Make signs 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 8 inches (200 mm) high.
      d. Provide cutouts in faceplates of units for push buttons of elevator hall push-button station, card reader, **as directed**, and elevator key switches. Coordinate locations and sizes of cutouts so additional faceplate is not required and so faces of push buttons are flush with fronts of faceplates and key switches project beyond faceplate only by depth of bezel.

O. Metal Reveals
   1. Fabricate metal reveals for wood paneling from 3/4-by-3/4-by-1/16-inch (19-by-19-by-3-mm) extruded-bronze **OR** 3/4-by-3/4-by-0.025-inch (19-by-19-by-0.6-mm) brake-formed, stainless-steel **OR** 3/4-by-3/4-by-0.015-inch (19-by-19-by-0.4-mm) brake-formed titanium, **as directed**, channels. Drill for mounting screws 6 inches (150 mm) from ends of channels and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Locate mounting screws at same heights for all channels. Provide black-finished, **as directed**, hex-socket, wafer-head screws for mounting reveals.

P. Cast-Metal Rosettes
   1. Fabricate cast-metal rosettes to design indicated from aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** nickel silver, **as directed**. Drill and tap castings for threaded mounting studs.
      a. Provide custom castings to match design indicated.
      b. Manufacturer's stock castings may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
      c. Drawings indicate cast-metal rosette designs required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Castings produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.

Q. Finishes, General
   1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
   2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

R. Aluminum Finishes
   1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
   2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
   3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.

a. Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.

4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

   OR

   High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**,-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

S. Copper-Alloy Finishes
1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Hand-Rubbed Finish: M31-M34 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed).
4. Medium-Satin Finish: M32 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin).
5. Fine-Matte Finish: M42 (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte).
6. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
   a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
7. Hand-Rubbed Finish, Lacquered: M31-M34-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
   a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
8. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
   a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
9. Fine-Matte Finish, Lacquered: M42-O6x (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):

a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

10. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide), with color matching the Owner's sample.
11. Patina Conversion Coating: M36-C12-C52 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, uniform; Chemical Finish: nonetched cleaned, degreased; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, ammonium sulfate), with color matching the Owner's sample.
12. Statuary Conversion Coating, Bright Relieved and Lacquered: M12-C55-M2x-O6x (Mechanical Finish: matte finish, as cast; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide; Mechanical Finish: buffed, as specified; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below), with color matching the Owner's sample:
    a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
13. Blackened, Bright Relieved, and Lacquered: M33-O60-M2x-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, coarse satin; Coating: black, air drying; Mechanical Finish: buffed, as specified; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below), with blackening and buffing matching the Owner's sample:
    a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

T. Stainless-Steel Finishes
1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
4. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
5. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
6. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
7. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.
8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
9. Sputter-Coated Finish: Titanium nitride coating deposited by magnetic sputter-coating process over indicated mechanical finish.
10. Colored, Oxide-Film Finish: Clear, oxide interference film produced by degreasing and then immersing in a mixture of chromic and sulfuric acids.
    a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide INCO colored stainless-steel finish as developed and licensed by International Nickel Co., Ltd.
    b. Color: Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected from finisher's full range, **as directed**.

U. Steel And Iron Finishes
1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize products made from rolled, pressed, and forged steel shapes, castings, plates, bars, and strips indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
    a. Hot-dip galvanize steel and iron hardware indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
    b. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
    c. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
2. Preparing Galvanized Items for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean decorative metal of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.

3. Preparing Nongalvanized Items for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
   a. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
4. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
   a. Shop prime uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
   b. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
5. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat nongalvanized ferrous metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Treat prepared metal with iron-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
   c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
   d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat galvanized metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Prepare galvanized metal by thoroughly removing grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter.
   b. Treat prepared metal with zinc-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
   c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
   d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

V. Titanium Finishes
1. General: Fabricate items from finished titanium stock, taking care not to damage finish during fabrication. Protect finish as needed during fabrication by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering.
2. Dull Matte Finish: Pickled and annealed.
3. Bright Matte Finish: Vacuum annealed.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative metal.

2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Installation, General
   1. Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where needed to secure decorative metal to in-place construction.
   2. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative metal. Set products accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
   3. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight, hairline joints or, where indicated, uniform reveals and spaces for sealants and joint fillers. Where cutting, welding, and grinding are required for proper shop fitting and jointing of decorative metal, restore finishes to eliminate evidence of such corrective work.
   4. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
   5. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, insulation, and flashings as work progresses.
   6. Restore protective coverings that have been damaged during shipment or installation. Remove protective coverings only when there is no possibility of damage from other work yet to be performed at same location.
      a. Retain protective coverings intact; remove coverings simultaneously from similarly finished items to preclude nonuniform oxidation and discoloration.
   7. Field Welding: Comply with applicable AWS specification for procedures of manual shielded metal arc welding and requirements for welding and for finishing welded connections in "Fabrication, General" Article. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
   8. Field Brazing: Comply with requirements for brazing and for finishing brazed connections in "Fabrication, General" Article. Braze connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop brazed because of shipping size limitations.
   9. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

C. Installing Decorative Window Security Bars
   1. Fasten security bar frames to concrete and masonry walls with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors. Peen exposed threads of anchors to prevent removal of security bars.

D. Installing Decorative Mechanical Grilles
   1. Mount decorative grilles at heights and in positions indicated, adjusting ductwork to be centered on grilles if any.
      a. Secure to framing and blocking with specified fasteners.
      b. On marble, brick, and other solid surfaces, secure with wood screws in lead plugs.

E. Installing Decorative-Metal-Clad, Hollow-Metal Doors And Frames
   1. Install doors and frames to comply with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors And Frames".

F. Installing Custom Door Pulls
   1. Install door pulls at heights and locations shown. Install with backing plates on both sides of doors. Fasten backing plates to doors with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping metal, **as directed**, screws and secure pulls through doors and backing plates with oval-head machine screws.

G. Installing Combination Hall Push-Button Stations
   1. Coordinate installation of combination hall push-button stations with installation of related elevator signal equipment components specified in Division 14 Section "Electric Traction Elevators". Secure units in place with faceplate overlapping surrounding wall finish and drawn into contact with surrounding wall finish at entire perimeter of faceplate.

H. Installing Metal Reveals At Wood Paneling
   1. Install metal reveals between wood panels as paneling is installed. Secure to wood grounds with specified screws.

I. Installing Cast-Metal Rosettes At Marble Joints
   1. Install cast-metal rosettes at intersections of marble joints where indicated. Install only after marble work is complete and joints are grouted. Secure to wall by drilling a 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) round hole at intersection of marble joints and by filling hole with molding plaster into which threaded stud is embedded. Angle drill and rotate so bottom of hole is larger than at surface.
      a. Secure rosettes in place with masking tape until plaster sets. After plaster has set, remove masking tape and adhesive residue.

J. Cleaning And Protection
   1. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.
   2. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.
   3. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
      a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

      OR

      Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
   4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
   5. Protect finishes of decorative metal from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by decorative metal fabricator. Remove protective covering at time of Final Completion.
   6. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 15 16 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 15 16 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 15 19 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 21 19 00 - STEEL JOISTS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steel joists. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. K-series steel joists.
b. KCS-type K-series steel joists.
c. K-series steel joist substitutes.
d. Long-span steel joists.
e. Joist girders.
f. Joist accessories.

C. Definitions
1. SJI "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."
2. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support nonuniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

D. Performance Requirements
1. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
2. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live load deflections no greater than the following:
a. Floor Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.
b. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Manufacturer Certificates
6. Mill Certificates: For bolts.
7. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For joists.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables of SJI "Specifications."

a. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.

2. SJI Specifications: Comply with standard specifications in SJI's "Specifications" that are applicable to types of joists indicated.
3. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
2. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

H. Sequencing
1. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into cast-in-place concrete and masonry construction.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for web and steel-angle chord members.
a. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 50 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
2. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
a. Finish: Plain, uncoated **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
4. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.
a. Finish: Plain, uncoated **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
5. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
6. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.

B. Primers
1. Primer:
a. SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.
OR
Provide shop primer that complies with Division 07.

C. K-Series Steel Joists
1. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
a. Joist Type: K-series steel joists **OR** KCS-type K-series steel joists, **as directed**.
2. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.
3. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
4. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.

5. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
6. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
7. Do not camber joists.
8. Camber joists according to SJI's "Specifications," **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
9. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

D. Long-Span Steel Joists
1. Manufacture steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; of joist type and end and top-chord arrangements as follows **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Joist Type: LH-series steel joists **OR** DLH-series steel joists, **as directed**.
   b. End Arrangement: Underslung **OR** Square, **as directed**.
   c. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel **OR** Pitched 1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96), 1 way **OR** Pitched 1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96), 2 ways, **as directed**.
2. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
3. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
4. Camber long-span steel joists according to SJI's "Specifications" **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
5. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

E. Joist Girders
1. Manufacture joist girders according to "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; with end and top-chord arrangements as follows **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
   a. End Arrangement: Underslung **OR** Underslung with bottom-chord extensions **OR** Square, **as directed**.
   b. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel **OR** Pitched 1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96), 1 way **OR** Pitched 1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96), 2 ways, **as directed**.
2. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
3. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joist girders.
4. Camber joist girders according to SJI's "Specifications" **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
5. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

F. Joist Accessories
1. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal **OR** diagonal, **as directed**, bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
2. Bridging: Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
3. Bridging: Fabricate as indicated and according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
4. Fabricate steel bearing plates with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint **OR** Hot-dip zinc coat according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, **as directed**.
5. Supply ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch (13 mm) of finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

G. Cleaning And Shop Painting
1. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 **OR** power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3, **as directed**.
2. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials, **as directed**.
3. Apply 1 coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick.
OR
Shop priming of joists and joist accessories is specified in Division 07.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
2. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
a. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
b. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
c. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
d. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads have been applied.
3. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
4. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.
OR
Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
5. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

B. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.
2. Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
3. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following procedures, as applicable:
a. Radiographic Testing: ASTM E 94.
b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709.
c. Ultrasonic Testing: ASTM E 164.
d. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
4. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.
5. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
6. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
7. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

C. Repairs And Protection

1. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Touchup Painting:
   a. After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
      1) Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
      2) Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 21 19 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 31 13 00 - STEEL DECK

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steel deck. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Roof deck.
b. Acoustical roof deck.
c. Cellular roof deck.
d. Acoustical cellular roof deck.
e. Composite floor deck.
f. Electrified cellular floor deck.
g. Noncomposite form deck.
h. Noncomposite vented form deck.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
4. Product Certificates.
5. Welding certificates.
6. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
7. Research/Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
a. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
b. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
3. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
4. Electrical Raceway Units: Provide UL-labeled cellular floor-deck units complying with UL 209 and listed in UL's "Electrical Construction Equipment Directory" for use with standard header ducts and outlets for electrical distribution systems.
5. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

6. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
2. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
a. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Roof Deck
a. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
b. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
c. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating.
d. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G60 (Z180) zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
e. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, AZ50 (AZ150) aluminum-zinc alloy coating.
f. Deck Profile: As indicated **OR** Type NR, narrow rib **OR** Type IR, intermediate rib **OR** Type WR, wide rib **OR** Type 3DR, deep rib **OR** Long span, **as directed**.
g. Cellular Deck Profile: As indicated **OR** Type WR, wide rib **OR** Type 3DR, deep rib **OR** Long span, **as directed**, with bottom plate.
h. Profile Depth: As indicated **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 7-1/2 inches (190 mm), **as directed**.
i. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated **OR** 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) **OR** 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm), **as directed**.
j. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated **OR** 0.0358/0.0358 inch (0.91/0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0358/0.0474 inch (0.91/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0474 inch (1.20/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0598 inch (1.20/1.52 mm) **OR** 0.0598/0.0474 inch (1.52/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598/0.0598 inch (1.52/1.52 mm), **as directed**.
k. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed**.
l. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR** Interlocking seam, **as directed**.

B. Acoustical Roof Deck
1. Acoustical Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:

a. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
   1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
b. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating.
c. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G60 (Z180) zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
   1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
d. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, AZ50 (AZ150) aluminum-zinc alloy coating.
e. Deck Profile: As indicated **OR** Type WR, wide rib **OR** Type 3DR, deep rib **OR** Long span, **as directed**.
f. Cellular Deck Profile: As indicated **OR** Type WR, wide rib **OR** Type 3DR, deep rib **OR** Long span, **as directed**, with bottom plate.
g. Profile Depth: As indicated **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 7-1/2 inches (190 mm), **as directed**.
h. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated **OR** 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) **OR** 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), **as directed**.
i. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated **OR** 0.0358/0.0358 inch (0.91/0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0358/0.0474 inch (0.91/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0358 inch (1.20/0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0474 inch (1.20/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0598 inch (1.20/1.52 mm) **OR** 0.0598/0.0474 inch (1.52/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598/0.0598 inch (1.52/1.52 mm), **as directed**.
j. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed**.
k. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR** Interlocking seam**, as directed**.
l. Acoustical Perforations: Deck units with manufacturer's standard perforated vertical webs **OR** Cellular deck units with manufacturer's standard perforated flat-bottom plate welded to ribbed deck, **as directed**.
m. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard premolded roll or strip of glass or mineral fiber.
   1) Factory install sound-absorbing insulation into cells of cellular deck.
   2) Installation of sound-absorbing insulation is specified in Division 07.
n. Acoustical Performance: NRC 0.65 **OR** 0.75 **OR** 0.80 **OR** 0.85 **OR** 0.90, **as directed**, tested according to ASTM C 423.

C. Composite Floor Deck
1. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
   a. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, minimum, with top surface phosphatized and unpainted and underside surface shop primed with manufacturers' standard gray **OR** white, **as directed**, baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
   b. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G30 (Z90) **OR** G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating.
   c. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G30 (Z90) **OR** G60 (Z180), **as directed**, zinc coating; with unpainted top surface and cleaned and pretreated bottom surface primed with manufacturer's standard gray **OR** white, **as directed**, baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.

d. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
e. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) **OR** 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), **as directed**.
f. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, a**s directed**.

D. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck
1. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Fabricate steel sheet cellular floor-deck panels, consisting of a ribbed top section welded to a lower flat-bottom sheet with interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck" in SDI Publication No. 30. Fabricate deck to the minimum section properties, width of panel, number and area of cells per panel indicated, and the following:
a. Cellular Deck Type: Composite **OR** Noncomposite, **as directed**.
b. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating.
c. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating; with underside surface cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard gray **OR** white, **as directed**, baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
d. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
e. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: 0.0358/0.0358 inch (0.91/0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0358/0.0474 inch (0.91/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0358/0.0598 inch (0.91/1.52 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0358 inch (1.20/0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0474 inch (1.20/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0474/0.0598 inch (1.20/1.52 mm) **OR** 0.0598/0.0474 inch (1.52/1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598/0.0598 inch (1.52/1.52 mm), **as directed**.
f. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed**.
g. Factory punch holes, of size and arrangement indicated, into each deck cell at preset inserts and header duct locations.

E. Noncomposite Form Deck
1. Noncomposite Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
a. Uncoated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, minimum.
b. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, minimum, with underside **OR** top and underside, **as directed**, surface shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
c. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G30 (Z90) **OR** G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating.
d. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G60 (Z180) zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
e. Profile Depth: 9/16 inch (14 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-5/16 inches (33 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

f. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0149 inch (0.38 mm) **OR** 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm) **OR** 0.0239 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) **OR** 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), **as directed**.
g. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed**.
h. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR** Interlocking seam, **as directed**.

F. Noncomposite Vented Form Deck
1. Noncomposite Vented Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed- and vented-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
a. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 40 (275) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G30 (Z90) **OR** G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating.
b. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) **OR** 80 (550), **as directed**, G30 (Z90) **OR** G60 (Z180), **as directed**, zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
c. Profile Depth: 9/16 inch (14 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-5/16 inches (33 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), a**s directed**.
d. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0149 inch (0.38 mm) **OR** 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm) **OR** 0.0239 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) **OR** 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) **OR** 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) **OR** 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), **as directed**.
e. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed**.
f. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR** Interlocking seam, **as directed**.
g. Vent Slot Area: Manufacturer's standard vent slots providing 1-1/2 percent open area.

G. Accessories
1. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
2. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
3. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 (4.8-mm) minimum diameter.
4. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
5. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
6. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile indicated **OR** recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth, **as directed**.
7. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.
9. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm), **as directed**, thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum diameter.
10. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- (76-mm-) wide flanges and level **OR** sloped, **as directed**, recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
11. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

12. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780 **OR** SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight, **as directed**.
13. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
2. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
3. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
4. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
   a. Align cellular deck panels over full length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.
5. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
6. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
7. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
8. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
9. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Roof-Deck Installation
1. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) long, and as follows:
   a. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
   b. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 18 inches (450 mm) apart, maximum **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) apart in the field of roof and 6 inches (150 mm) apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28 **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
   c. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
2. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 18 inches (450 mm) **OR** 36 inches (910 mm), **as directed**, and as follows:
   a. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
   b. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
   c. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) long welds.
3. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:
   a. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum **OR** Butted **OR** Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum or butted at Contractor's option, **as directed**.
4. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld **OR** mechanically fasten, **as directed**, flanges to top of deck. Space welds **OR** mechanical fasteners, **as directed**, not more than 12 inches (305 mm) apart with at least one weld **OR** fastener, **as directed**, at each corner.
   a. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld **OR** mechanically fasten, **as directed**.

5. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld **OR** Mechanically fasten, **as directed**, to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
   a. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.
7. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Installation into topside ribs of deck as specified in Division 07.

C. Floor-Deck Installation
1. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
   a. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
   b. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches (305 mm) apart, but not more than 18 inches (457 mm) apart.
      OR
      Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated.
   c. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
2. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches (910 mm), and as follows:
   a. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
   b. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
   c. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) long welds.
3. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:
   a. End Joints: Lapped **OR** Butted, **as directed**.
4. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.
6. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Install cellular floor system with deck assembled from all-cellular units **OR** alternating cellular units with noncellular composite units **OR** units indicated, **as directed**.
7. Install piercing hanger tabs at 14 inches (355 mm) apart in both directions, within 9 inches (228 mm) of walls at ends, and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from walls at sides, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
3. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
4. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
5. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

E. Repairs And Protection
1. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces **OR** top surface, **as directed**, of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
   a. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.

3. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 31 13 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 31 33 00	05 31 13 00	Steel Deck
05 36 00 00	05 31 13 00	Steel Deck
05 41 00 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 42 13 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 43 00 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 43 00 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 43 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 50 00 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal fabrications. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
   a. Steel framing and supports for ceiling-hung toilet compartments.
   b. Steel framing and supports for operable partitions.
   c. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
   d. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
   e. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
   f. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
   g. Steel framing and supports (outriggers) for window-washing equipment including mounting brackets and anchorages.
      OR
      Mounting brackets and anchorages for window-washing equipment.
   h. Elevator machine beams, hoist beams, and divider beams.
   i. Steel shapes for supporting elevator door sills.
   j. Steel girders for supporting wood frame construction.
   k. Steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction.
   l. Prefabricated building columns.
   m. Shelf angles.
   n. Metal ladders.
   o. Ladder safety cages.
   p. Alternating tread devices.
   q. Metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers.
   r. Metal floor plate and supports.
   s. Structural-steel door frames.
   t. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel angle corner guards, steel edgings, and loading-dock edge angles.
   u. Metal bollards.
   v. Pipe **OR** Downspout, **as directed**, guards.
   w. Abrasive metal nosings, treads, and thresholds.
   x. Cast-iron wheel guards.
   y. Metal downspout boots.
   z. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
2. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:
   a. Loose steel lintels.
   b. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
   c. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design ladders and alternating tread devices, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Aluminum Ladders: Aluminum ladders, including landings, shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI A14.3.
3. Structural Performance of Alternating Tread Devices: Alternating tread devices shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ICC's International Building Code.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
    a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
    a. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
    b. Prefabricated building columns.
    c. Metal nosings and treads.
    d. Paint products.
    e. Grout.
2. LEED Submittals:
    a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
    a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
4. Samples: For each type and finish of extruded nosing and tread.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.
9. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
    a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
    b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
    c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

F. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages and steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General
1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

B. Ferrous Metals
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
4. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
6. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
7. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallically bonded to steel.
8. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
9. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
10. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
    a. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches (41 by 41 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    b. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial steel, Type B **OR** structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), **as directed**, with G90 (Z275) coating; 0.108-inch (2.8-mm) (12 gage) **OR** 0.079-inch (2-mm) (14 gage) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.6-mm) (16 gage), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
    OR
    Material: Cold-rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B **OR** structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), **as directed**; 0.0966-inch (2.5-mm) (12 gage) **OR** 0.0677-inch (1.7-mm) (14 gage) **OR** 0.0528-inch (1.35-mm) (16 gage), **as directed**, minimum thickness; unfinished **OR** coated with rust-inhibitive, baked-on, acrylic enamel **OR** hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, **as directed**.
11. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Nonferrous Metals
1. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
2. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
3. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
4. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
5. Bronze Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
6. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
7. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).

8. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B 151/B 151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500.
9. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

D. Fasteners
1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
   a. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
   b. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
   c. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening nickel silver.
   d. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.
2. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
3. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3 (ASTM A 325M, Type 3); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3 (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S3); and, where indicated, flat washers.
4. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M); with hex nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**.
5. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
   a. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
6. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
7. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
8. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
9. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
10. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
11. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
12. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
13. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
14. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
   a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
15. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22 mm) by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long at not more than 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

E. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
7. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.
8. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
9. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

F. Fabrication, General
1. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
4. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
5. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
   a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   c. Remove welding flux immediately.
   d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
6. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
7. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
8. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
9. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
   a. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) embedment and 2-inch (50-mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

G. Miscellaneous Framing And Supports
1. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

2. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
   a. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
   b. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
3. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated **OR** recommended by partition manufacturer, **as directed**, with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated **OR** recommended by partition manufacturer, **as directed**. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
4. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
   a. Provide bearing plates welded to beams where indicated.
   b. Drill or punch girders and plates for field-bolted connections where indicated.
   c. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
5. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
   b. Unless otherwise indicated, provide 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) baseplates with four 5/8-inch (16-mm) anchor bolts and 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) top plates.
6. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
   OR
   Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**, where indicated.

H. Prefabricated Building Columns
1. General: Provide prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell. Fabricate connections to comply with details shown or as needed to suit type of structure indicated.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide prefabricated building columns listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119.
   a. Fire-Resistance Rating: 4 hours **OR** 3 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

I. Shelf Angles
1. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from ends and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
   b. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches (50 mm) larger than expansion or control joint.
2. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
3. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.
   OR
   Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
4. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

J. Metal Ladders

1. General:
   a. Comply with ANSI A14.3 unless otherwise indicated.
   b. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1.
2. Steel Ladders:
   a. Space siderails 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**, apart unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Space siderails of elevator pit ladders 12 inches (300 mm) apart.
   c. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch (9.5-by-64-mm) **OR** 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch (12.7-by-64-mm), **as directed**, steel flat bars, with eased edges.
   d. Rungs: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) square **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) diameter **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) square, **as directed**, steel bars.
   e. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
   f. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
   g. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallically bonded to rung.
   h. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
   i. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
   j. Galvanize ladders **OR** exterior ladders, **as directed**, including brackets and fasteners.
      OR
      Prime ladders **OR** exterior ladders, **as directed**, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Aluminum Ladders:
   a. Space siderails 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**, apart unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Siderails: Continuous extruded-aluminum channels or tubes, not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
   c. Rungs: Extruded-aluminum tubes, not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep and not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, with ribbed tread surfaces.
   d. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; fasten by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners or brackets and aluminum rivets.
   e. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from pressure-locked aluminum bar grating or extruded-aluminum plank grating, supported by extruded-aluminum framing. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
   f. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with welded or bolted aluminum brackets.
   g. Provide minimum 72-inch- (1830-mm-) high, hinged security door with padlock hasp at foot of ladder to prevent unauthorized ladder use.

K. Ladder Safety Cages
1. General:
   a. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3 **OR** OSHA regulations, **as directed**. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
   b. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. between primary hoops.
   c. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
2. Steel Ladder Safety Cages:
   a. Primary Hoops: 1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm) flat bar hoops.

b. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bar hoops.
c. Vertical Bars: 3/16-by-1-1/2-inch (4.8-by-38-mm) flat bars secured to each hoop.
d. Galvanize ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.
OR
Prime ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

3. Aluminum Ladder Safety Cages:
a. Primary Hoops: 1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm) flat bar hoops.
b. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bar hoops.
c. Vertical Bars: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bars secured to each hoop.

L. Alternating Tread Devices
1. Alternating Tread Devices: Fabricate alternating tread devices to comply with ICC's International Building Code. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
a. Fabricate from steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, and assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
b. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 05 Section "Pipe And Tube Railings".
2. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.
OR
Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

M. Metal Ships' Ladders And Pipe Crossovers
1. Provide metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers where indicated. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
a. Fabricate ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including railings from steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
b. Fabricate treads **OR** treads and platforms, **as directed**, from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked stainless-steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked aluminum bar grating **OR** extruded-aluminum plank grating, **as directed**. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
c. Fabricate treads **OR** treads and platforms, **as directed**, from rolled-steel floor plate **OR** rolled-stainless-steel floor plate **OR** rolled-aluminum-alloy tread plate **OR** abrasive-surface floor plate, **as directed**.
d. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 5 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
2. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.
OR
Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

N. Metal Floor Plate
1. Fabricate from rolled-steel floor **OR** rolled-stainless-steel floor **OR** rolled-aluminum-alloy tread **OR** abrasive-surface floor, **as directed**, plate of thickness indicated below:
a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 5/16 inch (8 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2. Provide grating sections where indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked stainless steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked aluminum bar grating

OR extruded-aluminum plank grating, **as directed**. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.

3. Provide steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, angle supports as indicated.
4. Include steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, angle stiffeners, and fixed and removable sections as indicated.
5. Provide flush steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, bar drop handles for lifting removable sections, one at each end of each section.

O. Structural-Steel Door Frames

1. Fabricate structural-steel door frames from steel shapes, plates, and bars of size and to dimensions indicated, fully welded together, with 5/8-by-1-1/2-inch (16-by-38-mm) steel channel stops, unless otherwise indicated. Plug-weld built-up members and continuously weld exposed joints. Secure removable stops to frame with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced at not more than 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. Reinforce frames and drill and tap as necessary to accept finish hardware.
   a. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for securing door frames into adjoining concrete or masonry.
2. Extend bottom of frames to floor elevation indicated with steel angle clips welded to frames for anchoring frame to floor with expansion shields and bolts.
3. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, frames.
   OR
   Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, frames with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

P. Miscellaneous Steel Trim

1. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
2. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
   a. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
3. Galvanize miscellaneous steel **OR** exterior miscellaneous steel, **as directed**, trim.
   OR
   Prime miscellaneous steel **OR** exterior miscellaneous steel, **as directed**, trim with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

Q. Metal Bollards

1. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe **OR** Schedule 80 steel pipe **OR** 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness rectangular steel tubing **OR** steel shapes, as indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate (not required if bollards are concrete filled).
   b. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide necessary cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
   c. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide necessary cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
2. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab (for mounting bollards on structural slab or on existing pavement). Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.
   a. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.
3. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe or tubing with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard.

4. Fabricate internal sleeves for removable bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe or 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness steel tubing with an OD approximately 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) less than ID of bollards. Match drill sleeve and bollard for 3/4 inch (19 mm) steel machine bolt.
5. Prime bollards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

R. Pipe Or Downspout Guards
1. Fabricate pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards from 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick by 12-inch-(300-mm-) wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with 2-inch (50-mm) clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.
2. Galvanize pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards.
   OR
   Prime pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

S. Abrasive Metal Nosings, Treads And Thresholds
1. Cast-Metal Units: Cast iron **OR** aluminum **OR** bronze (leaded red or semired brass) **OR** nickel silver (leaded nickel bronze), **as directed**, with an integral-abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
   a. Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 4 inches (100 mm) wide with 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 1-inch (25-mm), **as directed**, lip, for casting into concrete steps.
      OR
      Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), for casting into concrete curbs.
   b. Treads: Cross-hatched units, full depth of tread with 3/4-by-3/4-inch (19-by-19-mm) nosing, for application over bent plate treads or existing stairs.
   c. Thresholds: Fluted-saddle-type units, 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 1/2 inch (12 mm) high, with tapered edges.
      OR
      Thresholds: Fluted-interlocking- (hook-strip-) type units, 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 5/8 inch (16 mm) high, with tapered edge.
      OR
      Thresholds: Plain-stepped- (stop-) type units, 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 1/2 inch (12 mm) high, with 1/2-inch (12-mm) step.
2. Extruded Units: Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
   a. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above aluminum extrusion.
      OR
      Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
   b. Nosings: Square-back units, 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide, for casting into concrete steps.
      OR
      Nosings: Beveled-back units, 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide with 1-3/8-inch (35-mm) lip, for surface mounting on existing stairs.
      OR
      Nosings: Two-piece units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete steps.
   c. Treads: Square **OR** Beveled, **as directed**,-back units, full depth of tread with 1-3/8-inch (35-mm) lip, for application over existing stairs.
3. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.

4. Drill for mechanical anchors and countersink. Locate holes not more than 4 inches (100 mm) from ends and not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c., evenly spaced between ends, unless otherwise indicated. Provide closer spacing if recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Provide two rows of holes for units more than 5 inches (125 mm) wide, with two holes aligned at ends and intermediate holes staggered.
5. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units.
6. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units.

T. Cast-Iron Wheel Guards
1. Provide wheel guards made from cast iron, 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick, hollow-core construction, of size and shape indicated. Provide holes for countersunk anchor bolts and grouting.
2. Prime cast iron wheel guards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

U. Metal Downspout Boots
1. Provide downspout boots made from cast iron **OR** cast aluminum, **as directed**, in heights indicated with inlets of size and shape to suit downspouts. Provide units with flanges and holes for countersunk anchor bolts.
   a. Outlet: Vertical, to discharge into pipe **OR** Horizontal, to discharge into pipe **OR** At 35 degrees from horizontal, to discharge onto splash block or pavement, **as directed**.
2. Prime cast iron downspout boots with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

V. Loose Bearing And Leveling Plates
1. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
2. Galvanize plates.
   OR
   Prime plates with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

W. Loose Steel Lintels
1. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
2. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches (200 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
3. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.
4. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

X. Steel Weld Plates And Angles
1. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

Y. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
3. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

Z. Steel And Iron Finishes

1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
   a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
2. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized, **as directed**, unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Shop prime with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
3. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
   a. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   c. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   d. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
4. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
   a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

AA. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).
3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
2. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
3. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   c. Remove welding flux immediately.
   d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
4. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
5. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

6. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
   a. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
   b. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

B. Installing Miscellaneous Framing And Supports
1. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
2. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.
3. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
   a. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
4. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
   a. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

C. Installing Prefabricated Building Columns
1. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" and with requirements applicable to listing and labeling for fire-resistance rating indicated.

D. Installing Metal Bollards
1. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
   a. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
2. Anchor bollards to existing construction with expansion anchors **OR** anchor bolts **OR** through bolts, **as directed**. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches (100 mm) in concrete.
3. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete **OR** in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard, **as directed**. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) toward bollard.
4. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
5. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in concrete by inserting into pipe sleeves preset into concrete **OR** formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of sleeve, **as directed**. Fill annular space around internal sleeves solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) toward internal sleeve.
6. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align sleeves in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace sleeves in position until concrete has cured.
7. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 3/4-inch (19-mm) machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. the Owner will furnish padlocks.
8. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
   a. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

E. Installing Pipe Guards

1. Provide pipe guards at exposed vertical pipes in parking garage where not protected by curbs or other barriers. Install by bolting to wall or column with expansion anchors. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each pipe guard. Mount pipe guards with top edge 26 inches (660 mm) above driving surface.

F. Installing Nosings, Treads, And Thresholds
1. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
2. For nosings embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align nosings flush with riser faces and level with tread surfaces.
3. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.

G. Installing Cast-Iron Wheel Guards
1. Anchor wheel guards to concrete or masonry construction to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Fill cores solidly with concrete.

H. Installing Bearing And Leveling Plates
1. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
2. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
   a. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

I. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
   a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

   OR

   Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07.
2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00 00

SECTION 05 51 13 00 - METAL STAIRS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal stairs. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled, precast concrete, epoxy-resin-filled, and abrasive-coating-finished formed-metal treads.
b. Industrial-type stairs with steel floor plate and grating treads.
c. Ornamental steel-framed stairs.
d. Railings and Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.
e. Handrails and Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.
f. Railing gates at the level of exit discharge.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design metal stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
a. The following are based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC):
1) Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
2) Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
b. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above, **as applicable**.
c. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/240 **OR** L/360, **as directed**, or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less. Preassembled steel stair manufacturers usually design stairs to L/240; retaining L/360 will decrease bounce and may be required to prevent cracking of plaster or gypsum board soffits. If brittle materials such as marble, granite, or ceramic tiles are used on treads and platforms, deflection limit should be reduced to L/720.
3. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated. The following loads are based on the 2006 IBC.
a. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
1) Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
b. Infill of Guards:
1) Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
2) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Seismic Performance: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
a. Component Importance Factor is 1.5.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For metal stairs and the following:

a. Prefilled metal-pan stair treads.
b. Precast concrete treads.
c. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
d. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate finishes.
e. Abrasive nosings.
f. Metal floor plate treads.
g. Paint products.
h. Grout.

2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
4. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
   a. Precast concrete treads.
   b. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
   c. Stair treads with nonslip-aggregate surface finish.
   d. Metal floor plate treads.
   e. Grating treads.
   f. Abrasive nosings.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
7. Welding certificates.
8. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
9. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for stairs and railings.
   a. Test railings according ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
2. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for class of stair designated, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
   a. Preassembled Stairs:
      1) Commercial class - typical enclosed stair (welds are required to be smooth).
      2) Service class - economy enclosed stair.
   b. Industrial-Type Stairs: Industrial class - typical for exposed locations in industrial facilities or for exterior stairs.
   c. Ornamental Stairs: Architectural class - ornamental stairs in exposed locations (joints are required to be concealed to maximum extent possible).
3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

F. Coordination
1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items

with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

3. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

B. Ferrous Metals

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) **OR** ASTM A 513, **as directed**.
4. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
5. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallically bonded to steel.
6. Steel Bars for Grating Treads: ASTM A 36/A 36M or steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M or ASTM A 1018/A 1018M.
7. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
8. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 25 (Grade 170), unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
10. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 30 (Grade 205), unless another grade is required by design loads.
11. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), unless another grade is required by design loads.
12. Expanded-Metal, Carbon Steel: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 1 (uncoated).
    a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
13. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows **OR** with 1/8-by-1-inch (3.2-by-25.4-mm) round end slotted holes in staggered rows, **as directed**.
14. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
15. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).

C. Nonferrous Metals

1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
2. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
3. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
4. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).

5. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

D. Abrasive Nosings
   1. Cast-Metal Units: Cast iron **OR** aluminum **OR** bronze **OR** nickel silver, **as directed**, with an integral abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
      a. Configuration: Cross-hatched units, 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide without lip.
         OR
         Configuration: Cross-hatched angle-shaped units, same depth as bar-grating treads and 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm) wide.
   2. Extruded Units: Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, units with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
      a. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above aluminum extrusion.
         OR
         Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
      b. Nosings: Square-back units, 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide, without lip.
         OR
         Nosings: Two-piece units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete.
   3. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
   4. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units set into concrete.
   5. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units set into concrete.

E. Fasteners
   1. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
   2. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
   3. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
      a. Provide mechanically deposited or hot-dip, zinc-coated anchor bolts for exterior stairs **OR** stairs indicated to be galvanized **OR** stairs indicated to be shop primed with zinc-rich primer, **as directed**.
   4. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
   5. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
   6. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
   7. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
   8. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
      a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

F. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
7. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
8. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
9. Nonslip-Aggregate Concrete Finish: Factory-packaged abrasive aggregate made from fused, aluminum-oxide grits or crushed emery; rustproof and nonglazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
10. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm), W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Precast Concrete Treads
1. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 5000 psi (35 MPa) and a total air content of not less than 4 percent or more than 6 percent.
2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) by 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) diameter wire; comply with ASTM A 1064/A 1064M and ASTM A 82/A 82M, except for minimum wire size.

H. Fabrication, General
1. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings, **as directed**, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
   a. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
   c. Fabricate treads and platforms of exterior stairs so finished walking surfaces slope to drain.
2. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
3. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
4. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
5. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
6. Weld connections to comply with the following:
   a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   c. Remove welding flux immediately.
   d. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.

e. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.

7. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
8. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

I. Steel-Framed Stairs
1. Stair Framing:
   a. Fabricate stringers of steel plates **OR** channels **OR** tubes, **as directed**.
      1) Provide closures for exposed ends of channel **OR** tube, **as directed**, stringers.
   b. Construct platforms of steel plate **OR** channel **OR** tube, **as directed**, headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
   c. Weld or bolt, **as directed**, stringers to headers; weld or bolt, **as directed**, framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.
   d. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board **OR** gypsum board shaft-wall, **as directed**, assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below. Locate hanger rods and struts where they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
   e. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
2. Metal-Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Steel Sheet: Uncoated cold **OR** hot, **as directed**,-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
      OR
      Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet, where indicated.
   b. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subtreads where they will be concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.
      OR
      Attach risers and subtreads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
   c. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
   d. Attach abrasive nosings to risers.
   e. At Contractor's option, provide stair assemblies with metal-pan subtreads filled with reinforced concrete during fabrication.
   f. Provide epoxy-resin-filled treads, reinforced with glass fibers, with slip-resistant, abrasive surface.
   g. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subtreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.
      1) Smooth Soffit Construction: Construct subplatforms with flat metal under surfaces to produce smooth soffits.
3. Abrasive-Coating-Finished, Formed-Metal Stairs: Form risers, treads, and platforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than 0.097 inch (2.5 mm) **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Steel Sheet: Uncoated hot-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Directly weld risers and treads to stringers; locate welds on underside of stairs.

c. Provide platforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as treads. Weld platforms to platform framing.
d. Finish tread and platform surfaces with manufacturer's standard epoxy-bonded abrasive finish.

4. Metal Floor Plate Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from rolled-steel **OR** abrasive-surface, **as directed**, floor plate of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers of same material as treads.
      OR
      Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers from steel sheet not less than 0.097 inch (2.5 mm) thick, welded to tread nosings and stiffeners and to platforms.
      OR
      Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener, and with open risers.
   b. Weld steel supporting brackets to stringers and weld treads to brackets.
   c. Fabricate platforms with integral nosings matching treads and weld to platform framing.
5. Metal Bar-Grating Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from metal bar grating; fabricate to comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual."
   a. Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel grating with 1-1/4-by-3/16-inch (32-by-5-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c. **OR** 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-5-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (17 mm) o.c. **OR** 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3-mm) bearing bars at 7/16 inch (11 mm) o.c., **as directed**, and crossbars at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
      OR
      Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel grating with openings in gratings no more than 5/16 inch (8 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
   b. Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated, **as directed**.
   c. Finish: Shop primed **OR** Painted **OR** Galvanized, **as directed**.
   d. Fabricate grating treads with rolled-steel floor plate **OR** cast abrasive, **as directed**, nosing and with steel angle or steel plate carrier at each end for stringer connections. Secure treads to stringers with bolts.
   e. Fabricate grating platforms with nosing matching that on grating treads. Provide toeplates at open-sided edges of grating platforms. Weld grating to platform framing.

J. Stair Railings
1. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 05 Section(s) "Pipe And Tube Railings" OR "Decorative Metal Railings", **as directed**.
   a. Fabricate newels of square steel tubing and provide newel caps of pressed steel **OR** gray-iron castings, **as directed**, as shown.
   b. Rails may be bent at corners, rail returns, and wall returns, instead of using prefabricated fittings.
   c. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
2. Steel Tube Railings: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of tube, post spacings, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.
   a. Rails and Posts: 1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square, **as directed**, top and bottom rails and 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square posts.
   b. Picket Infill: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square pickets spaced less than 4 inches (100 mm) clear.
   c. Expanded-Metal Infill: Expanded-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from steel sheet not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** vertical, **as directed**.

d. Perforated-Metal Infill: Perforated-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.

e. Mesh Infill: Woven wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm) steel channel frames. Orient wire mesh with diamonds vertical **OR** wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail **OR** wires horizontal and vertical, **as directed**.

f. Intermediate Rails Infill: 1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square, **as directed**, intermediate rails spaced less than 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 21 inches (533 mm), **as directed**, clear.

g. Gates: Form gates from steel tube of same size and shape as top rails, with infill to match guards. Provide with cam-type, self-closing **OR** spring, **as directed**, hinges for fastening to wall and overlapping stop with rubber bumper to prevent gate from opening in direction opposite egress.

3. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
   a. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
4. Form changes in direction of railings as follows:
   a. As detailed.
      OR
      By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
      OR
      By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.
      OR
      By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.
      OR
      By inserting prefabricated elbow fittings **OR** flush-elbow fittings **OR** elbow fittings of radius indicated, **as directed**.
5. Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
6. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
7. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.
8. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting to concrete or masonry work.
   a. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
   b. For galvanized railings, provide galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous-metal components.
   c. For nongalvanized railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors embedded in exterior masonry and concrete construction.
9. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses and to produce adequate bearing area to prevent bracket rotation and overstressing of substrate.

K. Finishes

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
3. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
   a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
   b. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
4. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed products, **as directed**:
   a. Exterior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" for stairs that are to receive zinc-rich primer or primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings".
      OR
      Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
5. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
   a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
2. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
3. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
5. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
6. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
7. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete"
   a. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete. Center nosings on tread width.
8. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

B. Installing Metal Stairs With Grouted Baseplates
1. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of baseplates.
2. Set steel stair baseplates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After stairs have been positioned and aligned, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.

a. Use nonmetallic, nonshrink grout unless otherwise indicated.
b. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

C. Installing Railings
1. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
a. Anchor posts to steel by welding directly to steel supporting members.
b. Anchor handrail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with postinstalled anchors and bolts.
2. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt **OR** with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage, **as directed**. Provide bracket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements **OR** as follows, **as directed**:
a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
b. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
c. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
d. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.
OR
For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.
OR
For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

D. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
OR
Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 51 13 00

SECTION 05 51 13 00a - FABRICATED SPIRAL STAIRS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fabricated spiral stairs. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes fabricated spiral stairs with steel central-supporting columns and radiating treads.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design fabricated spiral stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Stairs: Fabricated spiral stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7:
   a. Uniform Load: 40 lbf/sq. ft. (1.92 kN/sq. m) **OR** 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m), **as directed**.
   b. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
   c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
   d. Railing Loads: Stairs shall withstand stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
3. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7:
   a. Handrails:
      1) Uniform load of 20 lbf/ft. (0.29 kN/m) **OR** 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m), **as directed**, applied in any direction.
      2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
      3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
   b. Top Rails of Guards:
      1) Uniform load of 20 lbf/ft. (0.29 kN/m) applied in any direction **oR** 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction **OR** 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied horizontally and concurrently, with 100 lbf/ft. (1.46 kN/m) applied vertically downward, **as directed**.
      2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
      3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
   c. Infill of Guards:
      1) Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) **OR** 200 lbf (0.89 kN), **as directed,** applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
      2) Uniform load of 25 lbf/sq. ft. (1.2 kN/sq. m) applied horizontally.
      3) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Seismic Performance: Fabricated spiral stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
   a. Component Importance Factor is 1.5 **OR** 1.0, **as directed**.
5. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
      1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings.
4. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
   a. Treads.
   b. Metal with painted finish.
   c. Railing members.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For fabricated spiral stairs indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Welding certificates.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
   c. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
2. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported item unless otherwise indicated.
3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
4. Steel Bars for Grating Treads and Platforms: ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
5. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
6. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or Grade D.
7. Steel Pipe Columns: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40. Provide Schedule 80 for columns larger than NPS 4 (DN 100) and where required to support loads.
8. Steel Pipe Railings: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40.
9. Steel Tubing: Either cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500 or mandrel-drawn mechanical tubing complying with ASTM A 513, Type 5.
10. Iron Castings: Either gray iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M or malleable iron complying with ASTM A 47/A 47M unless otherwise indicated or required by structural loads.
11. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
12. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
13. Aluminum Pipe and Structural Round Tubing: ASTM B 429, Alloy 6063-T6.
14. Extruded-Aluminum Tubing: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
15. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 319.0-F.
16. Extruded-Bronze Handrails: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
17. Seamless Bronze Tubing: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
18. Seamless Brass Tubing: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
19. Stainless-Steel Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304.

B. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Fasteners: For connecting stair components and for anchoring stairs to other construction, select fasteners of the type, grade, and class required to produce connections capable of withstanding design loadings.
   a. For aluminum, provide fasteners fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel.
   b. For steel and cast iron, use plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
2. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
3. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting" **as directed**.
4. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
5. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
6. Shop Primer for Aluminum: Primer formulated for use over aluminum and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
7. Wood for Stair Treads, Handrails, and Platforms: Unless directed otherwise, laminated red oak, sanded to 120-grit smoothness. Apply uniform coat of manufacturer's standard clear sealer.
8. Rubber Wearing Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard, 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, molded-rubber covering in pattern and color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's standard colors and patterns.

C. Fabrication
1. Assemble spiral stairs in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
2. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
4. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
5. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive hardware, screws, and similar items.
6. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
   a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   c. Remove flux immediately.
   d. Provide Type 1 **OR** Type 2 **OR** Type 3, **as directed**, welds according to NOMMA Guideline 1, "Joint Finishes."
   e. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and, except for fillet welds, welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
7. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
8. Fabricate center column from steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, pipe welded to baseplate for anchorage to floor structure. Brace column at upper floors by means of landings attached to column and floor structure unless otherwise indicated. Provide cap for column if top is exposed.
9. Provide cast-aluminum **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, treads and platforms, **as directed**, with integral frames, legs, and hubs.
   a. Provide treads and platforms, **as directed**, with abrasive surfaces.
10. Provide steel-bar grating treads and platforms, **as directed**, with welded hubs and as follows:
    a. Radial grating treads.

OR
Abrasive **OR** Rolled-steel, floor-plate, **as directed**, nosings.
OR
Straight flanges and welded-on legs.
OR
Tapered flanges without legs.

11. Provide formed steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**,-plate treads and platforms, **as directed**, welded to hubs or center column and as follows:
    a. Straight flanges and welded-on legs.
    OR
    Tapered flanges without legs.
    OR
    Pan treads without legs.
    OR
    One-piece treads and risers, without legs.
    OR
    Rolled-steel, floor-plate wearing surfaces.
    OR
    Aluminum-alloy, rolled tread-plate wearing surfaces.
    OR
    Smooth steel-plate wearing surfaces.
    OR
    Rubber wearing surfaces.
    OR
    Plywood subtread for covering with finish flooring specified in another Section.
12. Provide steel-framed treads and platforms, **as directed**, welded to hubs or center column and without legs; wearing surface as follows:
    a. Cast iron with integral abrasive.
    OR
    Smooth steel plate with integral abrasive.
    OR
    Wood.
    OR
    Plywood insert for covering with finish flooring specified in another Section.
13. Railings: Provide railing system indicated, uniformly bent to spiral shape, and continuing at top to form guardrail around floor opening.
    a. Space balusters less than 4 inches (102 mm), clear.
    OR
    Space balusters to provide one baluster per tread, but spaced less than 21 inches (533 mm), clear.
    b. Space intermediate rails less than 4 inches (101 mm) **OR** 21 inches (533 mm), **as directed,** clear.
    c. Locate bottom rail so that a 6-inch- (152-mm-) diameter sphere cannot pass between the stair and rail.
    d. Fabricate top rail from 1-1/4- to 2-inch- (32- to 51-mm-) OD steel pipe or round tubing.
    OR
    Fabricate top rail from steel of shape and size indicated.
    OR
    Fabricate top rail from 1-1/4- to 2-inch- (32- to 51-mm-) OD round aluminum **OR** bronze **OR** brass **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tubing.
    OR
    Fabricate top rail from extruded bronze of shape and size indicated.
    OR
    Fabricate top rail from wood of shape and size indicated.

e. Fabricate balusters from 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) OD **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) OD **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) OD steel pipe or round tubing.
OR
Fabricate balusters from 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) OD **OR** 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD round steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.
OR
Fabricate balusters from 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) **OR** 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-), **as directed**, square steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.
OR
Fabricate balusters from 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) OD, **as directed**, round aluminum tubing.

f. Fabricate intermediate rails from 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) OD **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) OD **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) OD, **as directed**, steel pipe or round tubing.
OR
Fabricate intermediate rails from steel pipe or round tubing same size as top rail.
OR
Fabricate intermediate rails from 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) OD, **as directed**, round steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.
OR
Fabricate intermediate rails from 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) OD **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) OD **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) OD, **as directed**, round aluminum tubing.
OR
Fabricate intermediate rails from round aluminum tubing same size as top rail.

D. Steel And Iron Finishes
1. Galvanized Finish: Hot-dip galvanize stairs after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
2. Preparation for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
3. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC's surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed stairs:
   a. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
4. Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of handrails and railing components unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

E. Aluminum Finishes
1. Conversion-Coated and Factory-Primed Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: shop primer).
   a. Apply shop primer with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
   a. Color and Gloss: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

F. Stainless-Steel Finishes
1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish indicated, free of cross scratches.
   a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
   b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
   c. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
   d. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.

e. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.

G. Copper-Alloy Finishes
1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
4. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
   a. Clear Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
5. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide).
   a. Color: Match the Owner's sample.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where needed for securing fabricated spiral stairs to in-place construction; include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors as required.
2. Assemble fabricated spiral stair components to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, with each component aligned and in correct relation to each other, securely anchored to the supporting column and adjacent structure.
3. Do not cut, alter, or drill stair components in the field that do not fit properly. Return components that do not fit to manufacturer for adjustment.
4. Install fabricated spiral stairs accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; level and plumb; and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Install fabricated spiral stairs by welding to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
6. Field Welding:
   a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   c. Remove welding flux immediately.
   d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.

B. Cleaning And Protection
1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint and paint exposed areas with same material.
2. For galvanized surfaces, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.
   a. Paint repaired areas with same material used for shop painting.
3. Protect finished tread surfaces during construction by covering with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick plywood secured with plastic strapping or another nonmarring fastening method.

END OF SECTION 05 51 13 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 51 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 19 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 51 19 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 51 33 13	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 13	05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings
05 51 33 16	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 23	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 23	05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 52 13 00 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for pipe and tube railings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Steel pipe and tube railings.
b. Aluminum pipe and tube railings.
c. Stainless-steel pipe and tube railings.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
a. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
b. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.
c. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
3. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated. Following loads are examples only and are based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC).
a. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
1) Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
b. Infill of Guards:
1) Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
2) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
5. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
a. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
b. Railing brackets.
c. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
   a. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
   b. Fittings and brackets.
   c. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
      1) Show method of finishing **OR** connecting, **as directed**, members at intersections.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency, .
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.
9. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
10. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
   c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

F. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination And Scheduling
1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
3. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General
1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
2. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

B. Steel And Iron

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
3. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
   a. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
4. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
5. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 1 (uncoated).
   a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
7. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
8. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows **OR** with 1/8-by-1-inch (3.2-by-25.4-mm) round end slotted holes in staggered rows, **as directed**.
9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).

C. Aluminum
1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
2. Extruded Bars and Tubing: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
   a. Provide Standard Weight (Schedule 40) pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M), Alloy 6063-T832.
5. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
6. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), Alloy 6061-T6.
7. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.
8. Perforated Metal: Aluminum sheet, ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6, 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.162-inch (4.1-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM B 211 (ASTM B 211M), Alloy 6061-T94.

D. Stainless Steel
1. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304 **OR** Grade MT 316L, **as directed**.
2. Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304 **OR** Grade TP 316L, **as directed**.
3. Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20 **OR** Grade CF 8M or CF 3M, **as directed**.
4. Plate and Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 3 (corrosion-resistant steel), made from stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
   a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
6. Perforated Metal: Stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
7. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

E. Fasteners
   1. General: Provide the following:
      a. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
      b. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
      c. Aluminum Railings: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
      d. Stainless-Steel Railings: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
   2. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads, **as directed**.
   3. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
      a. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
         OR
         Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
      b. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
      a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

F. Miscellaneous Materials
   1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
      a. For aluminum and stainless-steel railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
   2. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
   3. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
   4. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
   5. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
      a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
   6. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
   7. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
   8. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
   9. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI #77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
   10. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI #72 and compatible with undercoat.

11. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
12. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
13. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
    a. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

G. Fabrication
1. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
2. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
3. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
4. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
5. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
6. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
7. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded **OR** nonwelded, **as directed**, connections unless otherwise indicated.
8. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
    a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
    b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
    c. Remove flux immediately.
    d. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
9. Welded Connections for Aluminum Pipe: Fabricate railings to interconnect members with concealed internal welds that eliminate surface grinding, using manufacturer's standard system of sleeve and socket fittings.
10. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
    a. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
11. Form changes in direction as follows:
    a. As detailed.
       OR
       By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
       OR
       By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.
       OR
       By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.
12. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
13. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.

14. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.
15. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
    a. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
16. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
17. For railing posts set in concrete, provide steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sleeves not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
18. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
    a. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.
19. Expanded-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from expanded metal made from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
    a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as expanded metal and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick.
    b. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**.
20. Perforated-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from perforated metal made from steel **OR** galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel **OR** same metal as railings in which they are installed, **as directed**.
    a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick.
    b. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
21. Woven-Wire Mesh Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from woven-wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm) metal channel frames. Make wire mesh and frames from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
    a. Orient wire mesh with diamonds vertical **OR** wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail **OR** wires horizontal and vertical, **as directed**.
22. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

H. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
4. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

I. Steel And Iron Finishes
1. Galvanized Railings:

a. Hot-dip galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
OR
Hot-dip galvanize indicated steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
b. Comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
c. Comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
d. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
e. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

2. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
3. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
4. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
5. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
   a. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Railings Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   c. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   d. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
6. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
   a. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
   b. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
7. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

J. Aluminum Finishes
1. Mechanical Finish: AA-M12 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated).
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
   a. Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

5. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

   OR

   High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**,-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

K. Stainless-Steel Finishes
1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
3. 180-Grit Polished Finish: Oil-ground, uniform, directionally textured finish.
4. 320-Grit Polished Finish: Oil-ground, uniform, fine, directionally textured finish.
5. Polished and Buffed Finish: Oil-ground, 180-grit finish followed by buffing.
6. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
7. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

B. Installation, General
1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
2. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
   a. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
   b. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
   c. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).
3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
4. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
5. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

C. Railing Connections

1. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
2. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
3. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

D. Anchoring Posts
1. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches (125 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material **OR** attached to post with set screws, **as directed**.
   OR
   Leave anchorage joint exposed with 1/8-inch (3-mm) buildup, sloped away from post **OR** anchoring material flush with adjacent surface, **as directed**.
4. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
   a. For aluminum pipe railings, attach posts using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
   b. For stainless-steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to supporting surfaces.
   c. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
5. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

E. Attaching Railings
1. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
2. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
3. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
   a. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt **OR** predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage, **as directed**.
   b. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
4. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
   a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
   b. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
   c. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
   d. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.
      OR

For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.
OR
For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Clean aluminum and stainless steel by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.
2. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
   a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

G. Protection
1. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 52 13 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 52 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 53 13 00 - GRATINGS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for gratings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Metal bar gratings.
b. Expanded-metal gratings.
c. Formed-metal plank gratings.
d. Extruded-aluminum plank gratings.
e. Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic gratings.
f. Metal frames and supports for gratings.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design gratings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Gratings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
a. Loads in subparagraphs below are examples based on the 2006 International Building Code and ASCE/SEI 7. Adjust to local Project requirements.
1) Floors (light manufacturing): Uniform load of 125 lbf/sq. ft. (6.00 kN/sq. m) or concentrated load of 2000 lbf (8.90 kN), whichever produces the greater stress.
2) Floors (heavy manufacturing): Uniform load of 250 lbf/sq. ft. (11.97 kN/sq. m) or concentrated load of 3000 lbf (13.40 kN), whichever produces the greater stress.
3) Walkways and Elevated Platforms Other Than Exits: Uniform load of 60 lbf/sq. ft. (2.87 kN/sq. m).
4) Walkways and Elevated Platforms Used as Exits: Uniform load of 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
5) Sidewalks and Vehicular Driveways, Subject to Trucking: Uniform load of 250 lbf/sq. ft. (11.97 kN/sq. m) or concentrated load of 8000 lbf (35.60 kN), whichever produces the greater stress.
6) Limit deflection to L/240 **OR** L/360, **as directed**, or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less.
3. Seismic Performance: Provide gratings capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
a. Formed-metal plank gratings.
b. Extruded-aluminum plank gratings.
c. Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic gratings.
d. Clips and anchorage devices for gratings.
e. Paint products.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
6. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel sheet certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
7. Welding certificates.
8. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Metal Bar Grating Standards: Comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual" and NAAMM MBG 532, "Heavy-Duty Metal Bar Grating Manual."
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
   c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
   d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

F. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with gratings by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination
1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for gratings, grating frames, and supports. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Ferrous Metals
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Steel Bars for Bar Gratings: ASTM A 36/A 36M or steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M or ASTM A 1018/A 1018M.
4. Wire Rod for Bar Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
5. Uncoated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, structural steel, Grade 30 (Grade 205).
6. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural quality, Grade 33 (Grade 230), with G90 (Z275) coating.
7. Expanded-Metal Carbon Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 1.
8. Expanded-Metal Galvanized Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 2, Grade A.
9. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
10. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
11. Expanded-Metal Stainless Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 3, made from stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

B. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer for type of use indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
2. Extruded Bars and Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloys as follows:
   a. 6061-T6 or 6063-T6, for bearing bars of gratings and shapes.
   b. 6061-T1, for grating crossbars.
3. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 5052-H32.

C. Fasteners
1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
   a. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
   b. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
2. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
3. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and, where indicated, flat washers; ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M) for bolts and ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M) for nuts, Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**.
4. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
   a. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
5. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
6. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
7. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
   a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy that is welded.
2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

E. Fabrication
1. Shop Assembly: Fabricate grating sections in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling

limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

2. Cut, drill, and punch material cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form from materials of size, thickness, and shapes indicated, but not less than that needed to support indicated loads.
4. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
5. Welding: Comply with AWS recommendations and the following:
   a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   c. Remove welding flux immediately.
6. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space the anchoring devices to secure gratings, frames, and supports rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
   a. Fabricate toeplates to fit grating units and weld to units in shop unless otherwise indicated.
      OR
      Fabricate toeplates for attaching in the field.
   b. Toeplate Height: 4 inches (100 mm) unless otherwise indicated.

F. Metal Bar Gratings
1. Welded Steel Grating:
   a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) **OR** 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) **OR** 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   e. Grating Mark W-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   f. Grating Mark W-15-4 (1 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   g. Grating Mark W-19-4 (1-1/4 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/4-by-3/16-inch (32-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   h. Grating Mark W-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   i. Grating Mark W-19-4 (2 x 1/4) STEEL: 2-by-1/4-inch (51-by-6.4-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   j. Grating Mark W-30-4 (5 x 3/8) STEEL: 5-by-3/8-inch (127-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars at 1-7/8 inches (60 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   k. Grating Mark: As indicated.
   l. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   m. Steel Finish: Shop primed **OR** Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, **as directed**.
2. Pressure-Locked Steel Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars.

a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
f. Grating Mark P-15-4 (1-1/4 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-1/4-by-1/8-inch (32-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
h. Grating Mark: As indicated.
i. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
j. Steel Finish: Shop primed **OR** Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, **as directed**.

3. Riveted Steel Grating:
   a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1-1/8 inches (29 mm) **OR** 2-5/16 inches (59 mm), **as directed**, clear.
   b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   d. Rivet Spacing: 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** 7 inches (178 mm), **as directed**, o.c. along bearing bar.
   e. Grating Mark R-12-3-1/2 (1 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars with 3/4-inch (19-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
   f. Grating Mark R-18-7 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars with 1-1/8-inch (29-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 7 inches (178 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
   g. Grating Mark R-37-5 (4 x 1/4) STEEL: 4-by-1/4-inch (102-by-6.4-mm) bearing bars with 2-5/16-inch (59-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
   h. Grating Mark R-37-5 (5 x 3/8) STEEL: 5-by-3/8-inch (127-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars with 2-5/16-inch (59-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
   i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
   j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   k. Steel Finish: Shop primed **OR** Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, **as directed**.
4. Pressure-Locked, Stainless-Steel Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars, **as directed**.
   a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) **OR** 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) **OR** 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**, o.c.

b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STAINLESS STEEL: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
f. Grating Mark P-15-2 (1 x 1/8) STAINLESS STEEL: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 2 inches (51 mm) o.c.
g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STAINLESS STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
h. Grating Mark P-30-4 (3 x 3/8) STAINLESS STEEL: 3-by-3/8-inch (76-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars at 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
k. Finish: Mill finish **OR** Abrasive blasted **OR** Electropolished, **as directed**.

5. Pressure-Locked, Rectangular Bar Aluminum Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars.
   a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17.5 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   b. Bearing Bar Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   e. Grating Mark P-7-4 (1 x 1/8) ALUMINUM: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 7/16 inch (11 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   f. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   g. Grating Mark P-15-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   h. Grating Mark P-19-4 (2 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: 2-by-3/16-inch (51-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
   i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
   j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   k. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Class I, clear, anodized finish, **as directed**.
6. Pressure-Locked, Aluminum I-Bar Grating: Fabricated by swaging crossbars between bearing bars.
   a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   b. Bearing Bar Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   c. Bearing Bar Flange Width: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
   d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: 1-inch (25-mm) I-bar bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.

f. Grating Mark P-15-2 (1 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: 1-inch (25-mm) I-bar bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 2 inches (51 mm) o.c.
g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bar bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
h. Grating Mark: As indicated.
i. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Grooved **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
j. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Class I, clear, anodized finish, **as directed**.

7. Removable Grating Sections: Fabricate with banding bars attached by welding to entire perimeter of each section. Include anchors and fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for attaching to supports.
   a. Provide no fewer than four weld lugs for each heavy-duty grating section, with each lug shop welded to two bearing bars.
   b. Provide no fewer than four saddle clips for each grating section composed of rectangular bearing bars 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) or less in thickness and spaced 15/16 inch (24 mm) or more o.c., with each clip designed and fabricated to fit over two bearing bars.
   c. Provide no fewer than four weld lugs for each grating section composed of rectangular bearing bars 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) or less in thickness and spaced less than 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., with each lug shop welded to three or more bearing bars. Interrupt intermediate bearing bars as necessary for fasteners securing grating to supports.
   d. Provide no fewer than four flange blocks for each section of aluminum I-bar grating, with block designed to fit over lower flange of I-shaped bearing bars.
   e. Furnish threaded bolts with nuts and washers for securing grating to supports.
   f. Furnish self-drilling fasteners with washers for securing grating to supports.
   g. Furnish galvanized malleable-iron flange clamp with galvanized bolt for securing grating to supports. Furnish as a system designed to be installed from above grating by one person.
8. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.
   a. Edge-band openings in grating that interrupt four or more bearing bars with bars of same size and material as bearing bars.
9. Do not notch bearing bars at supports to maintain elevation.

G. Expanded-Metal Gratings
1. Provide expanded-metal gratings in material, finish, style, size, thickness, weight, and type indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for indicated applications and as needed to support indicated loads.
   a. Material: Steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
   b. Steel Finish: Unfinished, oiled **OR** Shop primed **OR** Galvanized, **as directed**.
   c. Stainless-Steel Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
   d. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
   e. Style Designation (for steel): 4.27 lb **OR** 3/4 number 9, **as directed**.
   f. Style Designation (for stainless steel): 1-1/2 number 9 **OR** 3/4 number 9, **as directed**.
   g. Size (for aluminum): 2 lb **OR** 3/4 0.188 **OR** 1-1/2 0.125, **as directed**.
   h. Type: I, expanded **OR** II, expanded and flattened, **as directed**.
2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations of sizes and at locations indicated. Cut openings neatly and accurately to size. Edge-band openings with bars having a thickness not less than overall grating thickness at contact points.
3. Where gratings are pierced by pipes, ducts, and structural members, cut openings neatly and accurately to size and weld a strap collar not less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick to the cut ends. Divide panels into sections only to extent required for installation where grating platforms and runways are to be placed around previously installed pipe, ducts, and structural members.

H. Formed-Metal Plank Gratings
1. C-shaped channels rolled from heavy sheet metal of thickness indicated, and punched in serrated diamond shape to produce raised slip-resistant surface and drainage holes.

a. Channel Width: 4-3/4 inches (121 mm) **OR** 7 inches (178 mm) **OR** 9-1/2 inches (241 mm) **OR** 11-3/4 inches (298 mm) **OR** 18-3/4 inches (476 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
b. Channel Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** As indicated **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
c. Material: 0.074-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick steel sheet, shop primed **OR** 0.104-inch- (2.65-mm-) thick steel sheet, shop primed **OR** 0.079-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet **OR** 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet **OR** 0.074-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.104-inch- (2.65-mm-) thick steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.080-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick aluminum sheet **OR** 0.100-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet, **as directed**.

2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations of sizes and at locations indicated. Cut openings neatly and accurately to size. Edge-band openings with metal sheet or bars having a thickness not less than grating material.
3. Where gratings are pierced by pipes, ducts, and structural members, cut openings neatly and accurately to size and weld a strap collar not less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick to the cut ends. Divide panels into sections only to extent required for installation where grating platforms and runways are to be placed around previously installed pipe, ducts, and structural members.

I. Extruded-Aluminum Plank Gratings
1. Provide extruded-aluminum plank gratings in type, size, and finish indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for indicated applications and as needed to support indicated loads.
a. Type: Extruded-aluminum planks approximately 6 inches (152 mm) wide with multiple flanges approximately 1.2 inches (30 mm) o.c., acting as bearing bars connected by a web that serves as a walking surface. Top surface has raised ribs to increase slip resistance.
b. Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
c. Perforations: None **OR** Rectangular, 19/32 by 3 inches (15 by 76 mm), with adjacent rows staggered **OR** 19/32 inch (15 mm) square, with adjacent rows aligned, **as directed**.
d. Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.

J. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings
1. Molded Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Gratings: Bar gratings made by placing glass-fiber strands that have been saturated with thermosetting plastic resin in molds in alternating directions to form interlocking bars without voids and with a high resin content.
a. Configuration: 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1 inch (25 mm) thick **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) thick **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick **OR** 2-inch- (51-mm-) square mesh, 2 inches (51 mm) thick **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, thickness as required to comply with structural performance requirements **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
b. Weight: 2.5 lb/sq. ft. (12.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 2.7 lb/sq. ft. (13.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.2 lb/sq. ft. (15.6 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.5 lb/sq. ft. (17.1 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.7 lb/sq. ft. (18.1 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.1 lb/sq. ft. (20.0 kg/sq. m) **OR** 5.0 lb/sq. ft. (24.4 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
c. Resin: Polyester **OR** Vinylester, **as directed**.
1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
2) U.S.D.A. Acceptance: Accepted for food-processing applications.
d. Color: Beige **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Orange **OR** Yellow **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
e. Traffic Surface: Plain, meniscus **OR** Applied abrasive finish **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

2. Pultruded Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Gratings: Bar gratings assembled from components made by simultaneously pulling glass fibers and extruding thermosetting plastic resin through a heated die under pressure to produce a product without voids and with a high glass-fiber content.
   a. Configuration: I4010; 1-inch (25-mm) I-bars spaced 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. (40 percent open) **OR** I6010; 1-inch (25-mm) I-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (60 percent open) **OR** I4015; 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bars spaced 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. (40 percent open) **OR** I6015; 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (60 percent open) **OR** T3320; 2-inch (51-mm) T-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (33 percent open) **OR** T5020; 2-inch (51-mm) T-bars spaced 2 inches (51 mm) o.c. (50 percent open) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
   b. Weight: 2.35 lb/sq. ft. (11.5 kg/sq. m) **OR** 2.83 lb/sq. ft. (13.8 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.10 lb/sq. ft. (15.1 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.41 lb/sq. ft. (16.6 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.10 lb/sq. ft. (20.0 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.13 lb/sq. ft. (20.2 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
   c. Resin Type: Polyester **OR** Vinylester, **as directed**.
      1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
      2) U.S.D.A. Acceptance: Accepted for food processing applications.
   d. Color: Beige **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Orange **OR** Yellow **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
   e. Traffic Surface: Plain, grooved **OR** Applied abrasive finish **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
3. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.

K. Grating Frames And Supports
1. Frames and Supports for Metal Gratings: Fabricate from metal shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive gratings. Miter and weld connections for perimeter angle frames. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware and similar items.
   a. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from same basic metal as gratings.
   b. Equip units indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry with integrally welded anchors. Unless otherwise indicated, space anchors 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. and provide minimum anchor units in the form of steel straps 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 8 inches (200 mm) long.
2. Frames and Supports for Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings: Fabricate from glass-fiber-reinforced plastic shapes of sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive gratings. Miter connections for perimeter angle frames. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware and similar items.
   a. Unless otherwise indicated, use shapes made from same resin as gratings.
   b. Equip units indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry with integral anchors.
3. Galvanize steel frames and supports in the following locations:
   a. Exterior.
   b. Interior, where indicated.

L. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

M. Steel Finishes
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Finish gratings, frames, and supports after assembly.
3. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.

a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

4. Shop prime gratings, frames and supports not indicated to be galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Shop prime with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
5. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
   a. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   b. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   c. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
   d. Other Items: SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
6. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
   1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing gratings to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
   2. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing gratings. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
   3. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete or masonry.
   4. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
      a. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade the surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
   5. Attach toeplates to gratings by welding at locations indicated.
   6. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
      a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
      b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
      c. Remove welding flux immediately.
   7. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

B. Installing Metal Bar Gratings
   1. General: Install gratings to comply with recommendations of referenced metal bar grating standards that apply to grating types and bar sizes indicated, including installation clearances and standard anchoring details.
   2. Attach removable units to supporting members with type and size of clips and fasteners indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by grating manufacturer for type of installation conditions shown.
   3. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding where both materials are same; otherwise, fasten by bolting as indicated above.

C. Installing Expanded-Metal Gratings
   1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings.
   2. Place units with straight edge of bond up and with long direction of diamond-shaped openings parallel to direction of span.
   3. Attach removable units to supporting members by bolting at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
   4. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding unless otherwise indicated. Space welds at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
   5. Attach aluminum units to steel supporting members by bolting at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
   6. Butt edges parallel to long direction of diamond-shaped openings and weld at every second bond point. Place individual grating sections so diamonds of one piece are aligned with those of adjacent sections.

D. Installing Metal Plank Gratings
   1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings. Use manufacturer's standard anchor clips and hold-down devices for bolted connections.
   2. Attach removable units to supporting members by bolting at every point of contact.
   3. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding unless otherwise indicated. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size and spacing of welds.
   4. Attach aluminum units to steel supporting members by bolting at side channels at every point of contact and by bolting intermediate planks at each end on alternate sides. Bolt adjacent planks together at midspan.

E. Installing Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings
   1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings. Use manufacturer's standard stainless-steel anchor clips and hold-down devices for bolted connections.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning
   1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
      a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

      OR

      Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07.
   2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 53 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 53 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 53 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 54 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 13 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 55 13 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 55 16 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 16 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 55 16 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 56 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 58 16 00 - ORNAMENTAL FORMED METAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ornamental formed metal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Beam wraps.
b. Closures and trim.
c. Column covers.
d. Decorative-metal-clad, hollow-metal doors and frames.
e. Elevator cab and entrance finishes.
f. Escalator enclosures.
g. Filler panels at demountable partitions and/or between dissimilar construction.
h. Heating-cooling unit enclosures.
i. Lighting coves.
j. Metal base.
k. Mullion cladding.
l. Pipe system covers.
m. Pockets for window treatment.
n. Window stools.
o. Exterior fins.
p. Exterior formed-metal-shaped panels.
q. Exterior sunshades.
r. Exterior trellises.
s. Exterior window covers.
t. Metal shapes as part of roof construction.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design exterior decorative formed metal items, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Decorative formed metal items, including anchors and connections, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses without exceeding the allowable design working stress of materials involved and without exhibiting permanent deformation in any components:
a. Wind Loads on Exterior Items: As indicated on Drawings **OR** 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa) **OR** As required to meet local Project requirements.
b. Live Loads on Heating-Cooling Unit Enclosures: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.8 kN/sq. m) or a concentrated load of 300 lbf (1.3 kN) on an area of 4 sq. in. (26 sq. cm), whichever produces the greater stress.
3. Seismic Performance: Exterior decorative formed metal items, including anchors and connections, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
a. Component Importance Factor is 1.0.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

5. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include finishing materials.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative formed metal.
   a. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
   b. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative formed metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples of metal of same thickness and material indicated for the Work.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Coordination Drawings: For decorative formed metal elements that house items specified in other Sections. Show dimensions of housed items, including locations of housing penetrations and attachments, and necessary clearances.
7. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, fabricator, organic-coating applicator, anodic finisher, powder-coating applicator and professional engineer.
8. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
9. Welding certificates.
10. Maintenance Data: For mirrorlike stainless-steel finish and statuary conversion coating copper-alloy finish to include in maintenance manuals.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing decorative formed metal similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
2. Organic-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying organic coatings of type indicated to metals of types indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
3. Anodic Finisher Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying anodic finishes of type indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
4. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated to metals of types indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
5. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
6. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
   c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
   d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver decorative formed metal products wrapped in protective coverings and strapped together in suitable packs or in heavy-duty cartons. Remove protective coverings before they stain or bond to finished surfaces.
2. Store products on elevated platforms in a dry location.

G. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, columns, beams, and other construction contiguous with decorative formed metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

H. Coordination
1. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative formed metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
2. Coordinate installation of decorative formed metal with adjacent construction to ensure that wall assemblies, flashings, trim, and joint sealants, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, and other causes.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sheet Metal
1. General: Provide sheet metal without pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.
2. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
3. Aluminum Sheet: Flat sheet complying with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.
4. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, either commercial steel or forming steel.
5. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, cold-rolled, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed or electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed.
6. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
7. Bronze Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper) or Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
8. Brass Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
9. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper.
10. Titanium Sheet: ASTM B 265, Grade 1.

B. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Gaskets: As required to seal joints in decorative formed metal and remain airtight **OR** weathertight, **as directed**; as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
   a. ASTM D 1056, Type 1, Class A, grade as recommended by gasket manufacturer to obtain seal for application indicated.
   b. Closed-cell polyurethane foam, adhesive on two sides, release paper protected.
2. Sealants, Exterior: ASTM C 920; elastomeric silicone **OR** polyurethane **OR** polysulfide, **as directed**, sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in

decorative formed metal and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.

3. Sealants, Interior: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining, latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834; of type and grade required to seal joints in decorative formed metal; and as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
   a. Use sealant that has a VOC content of not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Filler Metal and Electrodes: Provide type and alloy of filler metal and electrodes as recommended by producer of metal to be welded or brazed and as necessary for strength, corrosion resistance, and compatibility in fabricated items.
   a. Use filler metals that will match the color of metal being joined and will not cause discoloration.
5. Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with materials joined.
   a. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting decorative formed metal items and for attaching them to other work unless otherwise indicated **OR** exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method, **as directed**.
   b. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
6. Structural Anchors: For applications indicated to comply with certain design loads, provide chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
7. Nonstructural Anchors: For applications not indicated to comply with design loads, provide powder-actuated fasteners **OR** metal expansion sleeve anchors **OR** metal-impact expansion anchors, **as directed**, of type, size, and material necessary for type of load and installation indicated, as recommended by manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Anchor Materials:
   a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
9. Sound-Deadening Materials:
   a. Insulation: Unfaced, mineral-fiber blanket insulation complying with ASTM C 665, Type I, and passing ASTM E 136 test.
   b. Mastic: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
10. Backing Materials: Provided or recommended by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
11. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive recommended by metal fabricator that will fully bond metal to metal and that will prevent telegraphing and oil canning and is compatible with substrate and noncombustible after curing.
    a. Contact Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 80 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    b. Metal-to-Metal Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 30 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 70 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    d. Special-Purpose Contact Adhesive: (Contact adhesive used to bond melamine-covered board, metal, unsupported vinyl, ultrahigh molecular weight polyethylene, and rubber or wood veneer, 1/16 inch thick or less, to any surface): 250 g/L.
12. Isolation Coating: Manufacturer's standard alkali-resistant coating **OR** bituminous paint **OR** epoxy coating, **as directed**.

C. Paints And Coatings
1. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
3. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
4. Shop Primers: Comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. Universal Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
6. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
7. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water-based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
8. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

D. Fabrication, General
1. Shop Assembly: Preassemble decorative formed metal items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods of decorative formed metal items with those of adjoining construction to produce integrated assemblies with closely fitting joints and with edges and surfaces aligned unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form metal to profiles indicated, in maximum lengths to minimize joints. Produce flat, flush surfaces without cracking or grain separation at bends. Fold back exposed edges of unsupported sheet metal to form a 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide hem on the concealed side, or ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) and support with concealed stiffeners.
4. Increase metal thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners, backing materials, or both, as needed to provide surface flatness equivalent to stretcher-leveled standard of flatness and sufficient strength for indicated use.
   a. Support joints with concealed stiffeners as needed to hold exposed faces of adjoining sheets in flush alignment.
5. Build in straps, plates, and brackets as needed to support and anchor fabricated items to adjoining construction. Reinforce decorative formed metal items as needed to attach and support other construction.
6. Provide support framing, mounting and attachment clips, splice sleeves, fasteners, and accessories needed to install decorative formed metal items.
7. Where welding or brazing is indicated, weld or braze joints and seams continuously. Grind, fill, and dress to produce smooth, flush, exposed surfaces in which joints are not visible after finishing is completed.
   a. Use welding and brazing procedures that will blend with and not cause discoloration of metal being joined.

E. Beam Wraps
1. Form beam wraps from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction.
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Steel Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.

c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
   1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.

2. Fabricate with calk stop angle to retain backer rod and sealant.

F. Closures And Trim
1. Form closures and trim from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction, with weathertight joints at exterior installations.
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   c. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   d. Closures and trim may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view and not exposed to weather.
2. Conceal fasteners where possible; otherwise, locate where they are as inconspicuous as possible. Size fasteners to support closures and trim, with fasteners spaced to prevent buckling or waviness in finished surfaces.
3. Drill and tap holes needed for securing closures and trim to other surfaces.
4. Incorporate gaskets where indicated or needed for concealed, continuous seal at abutting surfaces.
5. Miter or cope trim members at corners and reinforce with bent metal splice plates to form tight joints.

G. Column Covers
1. Spackled-Seam Type: Form column covers from 0.125-inch (3.2-mm) aluminum, rolled to radii indicated. Taper edges of adjoining pieces of column covers, for taping and spackling, to 0.094-inch (2.4-mm) thickness in approximately 1 inch (25 mm) of width. Punch tapered edges for gypsum board screws at 1/2 inch (12 mm) o.c., and mill grooves in tapered edge to improve bond with joint compound.
   a. Support Framing: At vertical joints, provide 1-1/2-by-3-5/8-inch (38-by-89-mm) steel channel support posts formed from 0.040-inch (1.0-mm) galvanized steel.
   b. Joint Treatment Materials: Provide joint treatment compounds and reinforcing tape complying with requirements in Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board."
2. Snap-Together Type: Form column covers to shapes indicated from metal of type and minimum thickness indicated below. Return vertical edges and bend to form hook that will engage continuous mounting clips.
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Steel Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.

1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.

d. Bronze Sheet: 0.051 inch (1.29 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
   1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.

e. Brass Sheet: 0.051 inch (1.29 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
   1) Finish: Buffed **OR** Hand-rubbed, **as directed**, finish, lacquered.

f. Column covers may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.

g. Form returns at vertical joints to provide hairline V-joints.
   OR
   Form returns at vertical joints to provide 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) **OR** 3/4-inch- (18-mm-), **as directed**, wide reveal at joints. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals that leave reveals 1/2 inch (12 mm) deep **OR** flush, **as directed**.
   OR
   Form returns at vertical joints to accommodate backer rod and sealant.

h. Fabricate column covers with hairline horizontal V-joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.
   OR
   Fabricate column covers without horizontal joints.
   OR
   Fabricate column covers with horizontal butt joints, tightly fitted and backed with a sleeve for field splicing with adhesive.
   OR
   Fabricate column covers with 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide, **as directed**, reveals at horizontal joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals matching reveals at vertical joints. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.

i. Fabricate base **OR** ceiling, **as directed**, ring to match **OR** contrast with, **as directed**, column covers.

j. Fabricate with calk stop/stiffener ring.

k. Apply manufacturer's recommended sound-deadening insulation **OR** mastic, **as directed**, to backs of column covers.

H. Decorative-Metal-Clad Doors And Frames

1. Laminate metal sheets, of type and thickness indicated below, to faces of hollow-metal doors and frames and elevator entrances where indicated:
   a. Bronze Sheet: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
      1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, lacquered, **as directed**.
   b. Brass Sheet: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
      1) Finish: Buffed **OR** Hand-rubbed, **as directed**, finish lacquered.
   c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.038 inch (0.95 mm).
      1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
   d. Titanium Sheet: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).
      1) Finish: Dull **OR** Bright, **as directed**, matte.

I. Escalator Enclosures

1. Form escalator enclosures from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of enclosures, location of cutouts, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
   a. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
   b. Bronze Sheet: 0.081 inch (2.05 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.

1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.

J. Filler Panels
1. Form filler panels for closing ends of partition systems and for other applications indicated. Form from two sheets of metal of type and thickness indicated below, separated by channels formed from the same material, producing a panel of same thickness as partitions **OR** mullions, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated. Incorporate reveals, trim, and concealed anchorages for attaching to adjacent surfaces.
   a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.064 inch (1.63 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   b. Steel Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   c. Filler panels may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
2. Fill interior of panel with sound-deadening insulation permanently attached to inside panel faces.
3. Adhesively attach gaskets to filler panel edges where they abut mullions or glazing. Use 1-inch-(25-mm-) square material, unless otherwise indicated, set approximately 1/4 inch (6 mm) into channeled edge of filler panel.
   OR
   Attach gaskets to all edges of panels that abut adjacent surfaces to form a continuous seal. Use compressible gaskets or mastic sealing tape, applied to center of panel edges to be concealed from view, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Do not mechanically fasten filler panels to mullions.

K. Heating-Cooling Unit Enclosures
1. Fabricate heating-cooling unit enclosures from metal of type and thickness indicated below:
   a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet:
      1) Framing: 0.108 inch (2.74 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements.
      2) Sills and Stools: 0.079 inch (2.01 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      3) Front Panels and Bases: 0.064 inch (1.63 mm).
      4) Concealed Panels and Trim: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
      5) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   b. Steel Sheet:
      1) Framing: 0.105 inch (2.66 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      2) Sills and Stools: 0.075 inch (1.90 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      3) Front Panels and Bases: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm).
      4) Concealed Panels and Trim: 0.036 inch (0.91 mm).
      5) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
2. Weld seams and connections unless otherwise indicated or unless other methods are necessary for access to heating and cooling equipment.
3. Incorporate stiffeners or laminated backing using noncombustible materials as needed for strength and rigidity.
   a. Fill space between stiffeners with sound-deadening insulation attached to face sheet with insulation adhesive unless otherwise indicated.
      OR
      Coat concealed faces of metal panels more than 6 inches (150 mm) wide with a heavy coating of sound-deadening mastic applied at the minimum rate of 20 sq. ft./gal. (0.5 sq. m/L).

4. Provide louvers and grilles of size, type, and materials indicated.
   a. For removable grilles, use modular units with recessed openings formed into surfaces of enclosures and without blank filler panels between grilles, so face panels and stools are continuous. Fabricate removable grilles and openings to precise tolerances to produce well-fitted assemblies free of warp or rattle, with grilles supported continuously along parallel edges and with tops flush with top of enclosure.
5. Incorporate removable tops and fronts where indicated or needed for access to heating-cooling units and to piping, ductwork, controls, and electrical service, with panels and openings as follows:
   a. Fabricate with a fitting tolerance of not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) and not more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) at each edge, with face of panels flush with adjoining fixed surfaces of enclosure.
   b. Form panels for easy removal without interfering with adjoining construction or furniture. Hold panels in place with concealed clips and hardware that prevent warp and rattle.
6. Incorporate hinged access panels in enclosures for access to heating-cooling unit controls, as either separate elements or integrated with grille openings, as indicated or needed.
7. Coordinate construction, configuration, and dimensions of enclosures with those of heating-cooling units. Provide support for heating-cooling units and controls where indicated. Provide blind knockouts and supports for piping, ductwork, control lines, electrical conduit, and wiring where indicated or needed.
8. Locate fixed surfaces of enclosure to coincide precisely with window mullions and partition system terminations. Provide closures at ends of units, at recessed openings in base of units, and at other locations where needed to conceal unfinished wall or floor surfaces, piping, conduit, ductwork, or heating-cooling units.
   a. Provide built-in partitions (bulkheads) within enclosures between heating-cooling units, located to coincide with mullions and partition system terminations. Seal partitions to faces of enclosures with compressible gaskets or mastic sealing tape, and cover both sides of partitions with sound-deadening insulation attached to partitions with insulation adhesive.

L. Lighting Coves
1. Form lighting coves from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of coves, location of cutouts for electrical wiring, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   c. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   d. Fabricate light coves with hairline butt joints **OR** tapered edges for taping and spackling, **as directed**.
   e. Provide mitered corners, factory welded with backplates **OR** factory endcaps, **as directed**.
   f. Lighting coves may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.

M. Metal Base
1. Form metal base from metal of type and thickness indicated below:
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm).
      1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.

N. Mullion Cladding
1. Form mullion cladding from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction.
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm).
      1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.

O. Pipe System Covers
1. Form pipe system covers from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of covers, location of cutouts for piping, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
   a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   b. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.

P. Pockets For Window Treatment
1. Form pockets from metal of type and thickness indicated below, with end closures. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods with window treatment equipment, window frames, ceiling suspension system, and other related construction to produce a coordinated, closely fitting assembly.
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   c. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   d. Pockets for window treatment may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
2. Reinforce pockets for attaching window treatment equipment and hardware, or increase metal thickness.
3. Divide continuous pockets with built-in partitions located to separate adjoining drapery and blind units, to coincide with window mullions, and to receive filler panels at ends of partitions.

Q. Window Stools
1. Form window stools from metal of type and thickness indicated below, with end closures:
   a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
      1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
      1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 1.3 mm, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
   d. Bronze Sheet: 0.051 inch (1.29 mm).

1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.

2. Weld seams at end closures.
   OR
   Braze seams at end closures.
3. Apply sound-deadening insulation **OR** mastic, **as directed**, to underside of window stools.

R. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Complete mechanical finishes of flat sheet metal surfaces before fabrication where possible. After fabrication, finish all joints, bends, abrasions, and other surface blemishes to match sheet finish.
3. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
4. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
5. Finish items indicated on Drawings after assembly.
6. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

S. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
   a. Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

   OR

   High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**,-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

T. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes
   1. Preparing Galvanized Items for Factory Priming: Thoroughly clean galvanized decorative formed metal of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
   2. Preparing Galvanized Items for Factory Finishing: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
   3. Repairing Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
   4. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
   5. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
      a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   6. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
      a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   7. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
      a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   8. Siliconized-Polyester Coating: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
      a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   9. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

      OR

      High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**,-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

U. Steel Sheet Finishes
   1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
   2. Pretreatment: Immediately after cleaning, apply a conversion coating of type suited to organic coating applied over it.

3. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
4. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
    a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

V. Stainless-Steel Finishes
1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
4. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
5. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
6. Satin, Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
7. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8 finish.
8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

W. Copper-Alloy Finishes
1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Hand-Rubbed Finish: M31-M34 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed).
4. Medium-Satin Finish: M32 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin).
5. Fine-Matte Finish: M42 (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte).
6. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
    a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
7. Hand-Rubbed Finish, Lacquered: M31-M34-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
    a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
8. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
    a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
9. Fine-Matte Finish, Lacquered: M42-O6x (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).

a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

10. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide), with color matching the Owner's sample.
11. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish, Lacquered: M31-C55-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below) , with color matching the Owner's sample:
    a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

X. Titanium Finishes
1. General: Fabricate items from finished titanium sheet, taking care not to damage finish during fabrication. Protect finish as needed during fabrication by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering.
2. Dull Matte Finish: Pickled and annealed.
3. Bright Matte Finish: Vacuum annealed.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative formed metal.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Installation
1. Locate and place decorative formed metal items level and plumb and in alignment with adjacent construction. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative formed metal.
    a. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
2. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where needed to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
3. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.
4. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, insulation, sealants, and flashings, as the Work progresses, to make exterior decorative formed metal items weatherproof.
5. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, sealants, and insulation, as the Work progresses, to make interior decorative formed metal items soundproof or lightproof as applicable to type of fabrication indicated.
6. Corrosion Protection: Apply bituminous paint or other permanent separation materials on concealed surfaces where metals would otherwise be in direct contact with substrate materials that are incompatible or could result in corrosion or deterioration of either material or finish.
7. Install decorative-formed-metal-clad doors and frames to comply with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors And Frames".
8. Apply joint treatment at joints of spackled-seam-type metal column covers. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board".

C. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.

2. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.
3. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
   a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
4. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

D. Protection
   1. Protect finishes of decorative formed metal items from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 58 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 58 16 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 59 65 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 59 65 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 01 20 91 - WOOD RESTORATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood restoration. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Work Included
1. Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section including, but not limited to the following:
   a. Removal of exterior finish systems at areas of wood restoration or repair
   b. Preservation and sealing of seams and joints
   c. Removal of decayed and contaminated wood
   d. Installation of borate wood preservatives
   e. Installation of wood repair compound materials
2. Extent of wood restoration work is as required to meet Project requirements.

C. Submittals:
1. Product data, installation instructions, and general recommendations from manufacturer for types of repair required including technical data sheets defining performance properties.
2. Restoration Schedule: Submit schedule for each window, door, cornice, or area of wood trim to be restored, outlining in detail proposed restoration work to be performed on each component. Obtain written approval prior to commencement of repair work.
3. Certification that materials comply with local VOC limitations.
4. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the “Quality Assurance” article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include a list of completed projects with project name, address, names of Architects and Owners, and information specified.
   a. Five (5) business days after bid opening, submit a written qualification and experience of all lead personnel for work on the Project. List project manager or foreman’s name and experience relative to this Project.
   b. All work shall be performed by persons whose qualifications have been submitted and approved.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Restorations Specialist: Work must be performed by a firm having not less than (5) years successful experience in comparable wood restoration work including work on at least three (3) buildings listed in the National Register of Historic Places under the direction of federal and state preservation agencies in the last five (5) years and employing personnel skilled in the restoration process and operations indicated.
   a. Restoration Specialist firm must be acceptable to, or certified by, manufactured of primary restoration materials.
   b. Work associated with work of this section, including (but limited to) paint removal and substrate preparation, is to be performed by Installer of the work.
   c. Only skilled workers who are thoroughly trained and experienced in wood repairs and restoration work at areas as noted, have the skills required for the work of this section, and are completely familiar with the materials and methods specified shall be used for wood restoration work.
   d. At least one skilled worker shall be present at all times during the execution of the work and shall personally direct the wood repairs and restoration work.
   e. In acceptance or rejection of the wood restoration work, no allowance will be made for lack of skill on the part of the workers.

2. Manufacturer: Obtain primary repair materials from a single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials as recommended by the manufacturer of the primary materials.

E. Delivery Storage And Handling
1. Deliver all materials in original unopened containers labeled with the manufacturer's name, brand name, item name and installation instructions.
2. Store materials in compliance with the manufacturer's requirements for temperature, maximum and minimum, and other conditions. Keep all materials under cover and dry. Protect against exposure to the weather.
3. Discard and remove from the job site any materials damaged in handling or storage and any materials that have been subjected to conditions contrary to the manufacturer's recommendations or whose maximum shelf life has expired.

F. Project Conditions
1. Lead: Existing paint may contain lead. Take all necessary precautions to ensure the safety of all persons engaged in removing lead-based paint and dispose of all residues generated from lead-based paint stripping in a legal manner in accordance with all local, state and federal codes.
2. Coordination: Coordinate wood repair with paint stripping so that the effected surfaces are exposed for a minimal time to avoid further damage to bare wood. Coordinate with painting so that all restored surfaces are primed as soon as possible after repair.
3. Weather: Proceed with the work of this section only when existing and foreseen weather conditions permit the work to be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for temperature and humidity range, minimum and maximum.
4. Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with product applications until substrates have been inspected and are determined to be in satisfactory conditions. Substrate moisture content shall not be in excess of 18°/0 during preparation and application.
   a. Remove all decayed wood to a clean, sound, unaffected substrate.
   b. Remove all built up paints, and other debris to a clean sound substrate.
   c. Remove all wood sawdust to a clean sound substrate.
5. Protection:
   a. Use all necessary means to protect interior of building from all damage caused by precipitation and other environmental conditions during the work of the Section.
   b. Protect all adjacent building surfaces from damage, staining or deterioration resulting from wood restoration work.
   c. Protect the restoration work in progress to prevent further deterioration exposed wood surfaces. Protect the completed work until the time of final inspection and acceptance by the Owner.
6. Safety: Contractor shall use all means necessary to ensure that no person (whether involved in the work of the Section or not) is harmed or injured due to the work of this Section. Comply with all applicable laws codes and regulations.
7. Security: Coordinate work with the Owner's project manager to ensure that the building is secured at the end of each work period. Review security procedures with the Owner prior to proceeding with the work in this Section.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General
1. Compatibility: provide products recommended by the manufacturers to be fully compatible with indicated substrate.

B. Epoxy Repair Products
1. Epoxy repair materials shall consist of 2 separate systems, a 2 part low viscosity epoxy primer/coupling agent and a 2 part thixotropic paste meeting the manufacturer's criteria.
2. Manufacturer of Repair Products and Equipment

a. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide product of the following or approved equal.
   1) Advanced Repair Technology
      Cherry Valley, NY
   2) Window Care Systems
      Pembroke, MA
   3) or approved equal

C. Repair Products
   1. Low viscosity epoxy coupling/bonding agent
   2. Epoxy repair compound
   3. Injectable Borate gel
   4. Borate rods

D. Paint Strippers
   1. Chemical Stripping Agent. Methylene chloride based, Thixotropic stripper
   2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following, or approved equal
      a. 509 Stripper
      b. ProSoCo
      c. or approved equal
   3. Low Temperature heat gun or heat plate, no open flame.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Inspection
   1. Inspect all wood surfaces determine the extent of restoration and methods to be used.
      a. The decision regarding the extent of required repair, and extent of profile replication work shall be final.
      b. In wood surfaces where decay is present, determine the methods and treatment of repair.
      c. Areas that do not attach existing profiles, determine the level of restoration and replication to be achieved.
   2. Joints, Joinery and edges: Check wood members at joints, seams and edges for:
      a. Any open seams or failed conditions.
      b. Wood moisture content.
      c. The presence of wood decay, by probing surfaces.
   3. Sills and Trim
      a. Inspect wood surfaces for natural defects (knots) cracks and checks.
      b. Determine wood moisture content.
      c. Probe for the presence for wood decay.

B. Removal
   1. Removal of Finishes:
      a. Remove all peeling and loose paint by scraping, taking care not to damage sound wood and profiles.
      b. Strip all painted wood surface to bare wood, taking care not to damage sound wood and profiles by the application of stripping paste or by the use of a heat gun or plate
         1) Remove stripper and finishes as directed by manufacturer.
         2) Dispose of debris in accordance with approved methods.
      c. Wash all surfaces with recommended neutralizing agents to remove any foreign particle, dust and chemical residue, allow surface to thoroughly dry.

C. Preventative Systems
   1. Preservation and Sealing of seams and joints. Repair of wood “checking” due to weathering.
      a. Open or failed seams and checks shall be dilated to a width of 3/16” and depth of 1/2”.
      b. Remove all decayed, soft and weathered wood.

c. Check the moisture content and hardness of wood at and around the repair, maximum allowable moisture content 18°/0.
d. Sand bare wood to remove all loose fibers, paint, compounds. Remove all sawdust and dirt.
e. Pre-treat bare and sanded wood thoroughly with low viscosity epoxy coupling/bonding agent
f. Allow coupling agent to penetrate wood surface for a minimum of 10 minutes and maximum of 30 minutes, or as recommended by the manufacturer. Avoid applying in direct sunlight
g. Remove any excess bonding agent with absorbing paper
h. Apply epoxy repair compound over epoxy bonding agent while still tacky.
i. Epoxy compound shall have optimal contact with wood
j. Avoid inclusion of air pockets during application
k. Fill joints fill, even and smooth in one application
l. Allow full cure time as specified by manufacturer before application of paint or varnish.
m. After curing, sand surface even and smooth. Transitions and irregularities between wood and epoxy shall not be visible after sanding
n. If required, smooth any remaining irregularities with an additional application of epoxy repair compound. Always sand between coats.

D. Curative Systems
1. Preservation and Repair of Damaged/Decayed Wood:
a. Remove all paint and other coatings from area to be repaired.
b. Remove all decayed soft and discolored wood, to sound bright unaffected material
c. Check area of removal to determine complete elimination of decayed material.
1) Remaining wood should be even color without red-brown and/or gray spots.
2) No soft wood, existing brittle compound, or other previous repair materials should remain.
d. Check moisture content and hardness of the wood in and around the repair area
1) Moisture content of wood to be 18°/0 or less
e. Sand bare wood to remove all loose fibers, paint, compounds. Remove all sawdust and dirt.
f. Drill holes in effected area to receive borate gel and rods. Follow manufacturer's dose recommendations for dimensional lumber.
g. Inject recommended dose of borate gel. Gel should not come in contact with exposed wood surface.
h. Install borate rod in same hole as gel. Gel should not come in contact with exposed wood surface.
i. Pre-treat bare and sanded wood thoroughly with low viscosity epoxy coupling/bonding agent.
1) Allow coupling/bonding agent to penetrate wood surface for a minimum of 10 minutes and maximum of 30 minutes, or as recommended by the manufacturer. Avoid applying in direct sunlight
2) Remove any excess bonding agent with absorbing paper.
j. Apply epoxy repair compound over the uncured epoxy coupling agent.
1) Epoxy fill shall have optimal contact with wood
2) Avoid inclusion of air pockets during application
3) Fill joints fill, even and smooth in one application
4) Allow full cure time as specified by manufacturer before preparing for finishes.
k. After curing, sand surface even and smooth. Transitions and irregularities between wood and epoxy shall not be visible after sanding.
l. If required, smooth any remaining irregularities with an additional application of epoxy repair compound. Always sand between coats.

E. Adjustments: Repair or replace all defective work at no additional cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 06 01 20 91

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 05 23 00 - TIMBER BRIDGE COMPONENTS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of timber bridge components. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Timber for Bridges shall comply with the specifications for timber bridges contained in the standard specifications of the state in which the work occurs, AASHTO's "Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges," and National Forest Products Association's "National Design Specification for Wood Construction."

B. Preservative Treatment shall comply with the specifications for preservative treatment contained in the standard specifications of the state in which the work occurs, and American Wood-Preservers' Association's "Book of Standards." All timber shall be treated unless specified otherwise.

C. Hardware and Castings:
1. Castings: Cast steel shall comply with ASTM A 27, Grade 70-36, or gray iron castings shall comply with AASHTO M105 Class No. 30, unless otherwise specified.
2. Hardware:
a. Machine Bolts, Drift-Bolts, and Dowels may be either wrought iron or rolled steel. Machine bolts shall have the square heads and nuts unless otherwise specified.
b. Cast Washers shall be made of malleable or gray iron. The outside diameter shall not be less than 3 1/2 times the bolt diameter and its thickness equal to the bolt diameter. Plate washers shall be made of wrought iron or rolled steel. The outside diameter shall not be less than 3 1/2 times the bolt diameter, and they shall not be less than 1/4 inch thick.
c. Nails and Spikes shall be hot-dip zinc coated per ASTM A 153 or of Type 304 stainless steel.
d. Finish: Unless otherwise specified, all hardware for treated timber bridges shall be galvanized or cadmium-plated. Galvanizing shall comply with ASTM A 123 or A 153. Cadmium plating of steel shall comply with ASTM B 766.

D. Timber Connectors shall be ring type or plate type and shall be galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 123 or A 153.
1. Split Ring: Fabricated from hot rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M), Grade 33 of standard manufacture.
2. Tooth Ring: Stamped cold form 16-gauge steel sheet fabricated from hot rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M), Grade 33 standard manufacture.
3. Shear-Plate Timber Connectors:
a. Pressed Steel Type shall be fabricated from hot rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M), Grade 33. Shear plates shall be of standard manufacture.
b. Malleable Iron Type shall be ASTM A 47, Grade No. 32510 (ASTM A 47M, Grade 22010). Casting shall be of standard manufacture.

E. Structural Glue-Laminated Timber shall comply with DOC PS 20, American Structural Lumber Standard, AITC 190.1 and AITC 111. Lumber for laminating shall be of such stress grade as to provide glue-laminated members with allowable stress values of 2,000 psi in bending, 1,600 psi in tension, 1,500 psi in compression parallel to grain, and 385 psi in compression perpendicular to grain for dry condition of service.
   1. Adhesives shall meet requirements for wet condition of service.
   2. Surfaces of Members shall be sealed with a penetration sealer or sealed with a sealer coat.

F. Ties: Fabricate strap ties from hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M). Hot dip galvanize after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153 (ASTM A 153M).

G. Asphalt Cement shall comply with ASTM D946 for penetration-graded material.

H. Surface Coarse Aggregate shall be ASTM D 692, except the gradation shall be as follows:

Sieve Percent	Size Passing (Wt.)
1/2 in.	100
3/8 in.	94-100
No. 4	15-45
No. 16	0-4

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation:
   1. Traffic Control: When traffic is maintained on bridge under repair or is directed over a temporary run-around, furnish, erect, and maintain all barricades, flags, torches, lights, guardrails, temporary pavement markings, and traffic control signs required for the protection of the public and for the direction of traffic. Number, type, color, size and placement of all traffic control color, size, and placement of all traffic control devices and the use of a flagman shall comply with USDOT FHA MUTCD "Traffic Controls for Highway Construction and Maintenance Operations." All traffic control devices in advance of the construction limits shall also be the responsibility of the Contractor.
   2. Treated Timber: Give all cuts, abrasions, and holes made after treatment 2 applications of 60 percent creosote oil and 40 percent roofing pitch or brush coat with 2 applications of hot creosote oil and covered with hot roofing pitch. Any unfilled holes, after being treated with preservative oil, shall be plugged with treated plugs.

B. Erection:
   1. Holes:
      a. Drift Bolts and Dowels: Bore holes for round drift bolts and dowels with a bit 1/16 inch less in diameter than the bolt or dowel to be used. The diameter of holes for square drift bolts or dowels shall be equal to the least dimension of the bolt or dowel.
      b. Machine Bolts and Rods: Bore holes for field fabrication with a bit the same diameter as the bolt. Holes for fabrication prior to treatment shall be 1/16 inch larger than the bolt diameter.
      c. Lag Screws: Bore hole with a bit not larger than the body of the screw at the base of the thread.
   2. Nuts and Washers: Use a washer of the size and type specified under all bolt heads and nuts except carriage bolts. The nuts of all bolts shall be locked by scoring threads after they have been finally tightened.
   3. Countersinking: Paint all recesses in treated timber formed for countersinking with hot creosote oil. Fill recesses likely to collect injurious materials with hot pitch.
   4. Framing: All lumber and timber shall be accurately cut and framed to a close fit in such manner that the joints will have even bearing over the entire contact surfaces. Place stringers in position so that knots near edges will be in the top portions of the stringer. Screw type fastenings shall be

screwed into place for the entire length of the fastener. Install the split ring and the shear plate in grooves cut by the Contractor. Force the toothed ring into the contact surfaces of the timbers jointed by means of pressure equipment.

5. Nailing: Nails and spikes shall be driven with just sufficient force to set the heads flush with the surface of the wood.

C. Maintenance and Repair Methods:
   1. Timber Deck:
      a. Remove Existing Plank Floor Deck and Fasteners and replace with new planks and fasteners. Lay the floor planks at 45 degrees to centerline of roadway. When more than one length of plank is required, stagger joints between abutting ends at least 3 feet in any two adjacent lines of plank.
      b. Standard Wrought Washers shall be used under the heads of all lag screws and under the heads or nuts of all machine bolts. Where machine bolts are used for fastening the floor plank all nuts used shall be locknuts. Countersink heads of all lag screws and bolts in the surface of the floor. Fill recesses formed for countersinking with hot pitch.
      c. Bituminous Surface Coat: Clean the floor of foreign materials. Apply asphalt cement at a temperature of 275 F to 350 F and at a rate of approximately 1/4 gallon per square yard of surface. The deck shall be dry at the time of bitumen application. Cover the entire surface with a thin coating of aggregate in a sufficient quantity to take up any free bitumen.
   2. Hardware: Remove all corrosion by sandblasting or wire brushing. Replace all loose bolts and screws, adding washers as required. Replace deteriorated hardware.
   3. Metal Tread Plates: Remove and replace treads as directed. Before installing treads, remove high spots and rough spots in the plank floor so that the treads will be in contact with the floor for their full length and width. Treads shall be laid in a heavy mop coat of asphalt filler. Treads shall be laid with a space of 1/4 inch between adjacent ends and shall be fastened by means of 3/8-inch galvanized bolts. Where bolts cannot be used, use 3/8-inch by 3-inch galvanized lag screws.
   4. Timber Railroad Bridge Deck: Remove defective ties and guardrail, including fasteners, and replace with similar ties, guardrail, and fasteners as directed.
   5. Repair of Structural Timber Members: Repair, including removal and replacement, shall be as directed.

END OF SECTION 06 05 23 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 05 23 00a - MISCELLANEOUS CARPENTRY

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for miscellaneous carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Framing with dimension lumber.
b. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
c. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
d. Wood furring and grounds.
e. Wood sleepers.
f. Interior wood trim.
g. Wood shelving and clothes rods.
h. Plywood backing panels.

C. Definitions
1. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.
2. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
b. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
c. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
f. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
c. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
d. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
e. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.

c. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
   1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.

3. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
   a. Preservative-treated wood.
   b. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
   c. Power-driven fasteners.
   d. Powder-actuated fasteners.
   e. Expansion anchors.
   f. Metal framing anchors.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
   a. Dimension lumber framing.
   b. Miscellaneous lumber.
   c. Interior wood trim.
   d. Shelving and clothes rods.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
2. Deliver interior wood materials that are to be exposed to view only after building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work other than painting is dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and humidity at occupancy levels.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Wood Products, General
1. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
   a. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
   b. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
   c. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
   d. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials
1. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
   a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
   b. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

2. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
3. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
    a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
4. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry, unless otherwise indicated **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
    b. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
    c. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
    d. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas.
    e. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials
1. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood).
    a. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
    b. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
    c. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where indicated.
    d. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
3. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
4. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry, unless otherwise indicated **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    a. Framing for raised platforms.
    b. Concealed blocking.
    c. Roof construction.
    d. Plywood backing panels.

D. Dimension Lumber Framing
1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent **OR** 19 percent **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness, **as directed**.
2. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade of any species.
3. Other Framing: No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No., **as directed**, grade and any of the following species:
    a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
    b. Southern pine; SPIB.
    c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
    d. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
    f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
    g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.

h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

E. Miscellaneous Lumber
1. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
   a. Blocking.
   b. Nailers.
   c. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
   d. Cants.
   e. Furring.
   f. Grounds.
   g. Utility shelving.
2. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content of any species.
3. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
   a. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or 2 Common (Sterling) **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Mixed southern pine, No. 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
   c. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   d. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
4. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
   a. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
   b. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   c. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   d. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, Common grade; NELMA.
   e. Northern species, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, Common grade; NLGA.
   f. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
5. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
6. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
7. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

F. Interior Wood Trim
1. General: Provide kiln-dried finished (surfaced) material without finger-jointing, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Softwood Lumber Trim for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: Provide one of the following species and grade:
   a. Grade C Select **OR** D Select **OR** Finish **OR** Premium, **as directed**, eastern white pine; NeLMA or NLGA.
   b. Grade C Select (Choice) **OR** D Select (Quality) **OR** 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; NLGA or WWPA.

c. Grade Superior or C & Btr **OR** Prime or D, **as directed**, Finish Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
d. Clear Heart **OR** Grade A **OR** Grade B, **as directed**, western red cedar; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

3. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: Clear red oak **OR** white maple, **as directed**, selected for compatible grain and color, **as directed**.
4. Lumber Trim for Opaque (Painted) Finish: Either finger-jointed or solid lumber, of one of the following species and grades:
   a. Grade D Select **OR** Finish **OR** Premium, **as directed**, eastern white pine; NeLMA or NLGA.
   b. Grade D Select (Quality) **OR** 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; NLGA or WWPA.
   c. Grade A **OR** B, **as directed**, Finish aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, red alder, soft maple, sycamore, tupelo, or yellow poplar; NHLA.
5. Moldings: Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 7 and graded according to WMMPA WM 4.
   a. Moldings for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: N-grade eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine **OR** western red cedar **OR** Douglas fir **OR** red oak **OR** white maple, **as directed**, selected for compatible grain and color.
   b. Moldings for Opaque (Painted) Finish: P-grade eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine **OR** aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, tupelo, or yellow poplar **OR** primed medium-density fiberboard, **as directed**.

G. Shelving And Clothes Rods
1. Shelving: Made from one of the following materials, 3/4-inch (19-mm) thick. Do not use particleboard or medium-density fiberboard that contains urea formaldehyde.
   a. Melamine-faced particleboard with radiused and filled front edge.
   b. Particleboard with radiused and filled **OR** solid-wood, **as directed**, front edge.
   c. Medium-density fiberboard with radiused **OR** solid-wood, **as directed**, front edge.
   d. Wood boards of same species and grade indicated above for interior lumber trim for opaque **OR** transparent, **as directed**, finish.
2. Shelf Cleats: 3/4-by-3-1/2-inch (19-by-89-mm) boards **OR** 3/4-by-5-1/2-inch (19-by-140-mm) boards with hole and notch to receive clothes rods, **as directed**, of same species and grade indicated above for interior lumber trim for opaque finish.
3. Shelf Brackets: Prime-painted formed steel with provision to support clothes rod where rod is indicated.
4. Clothes Rods:
   a. 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) diameter, clear, kiln-dried hardwood rods **OR** clear, kiln-dried softwood rods; either Douglas fir or southern pine **OR** aluminum tubes, **as directed**.
      OR
      1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) diameter, chrome-plated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tubes.
5. Rod Flanges: Clear, kiln-dried hardwood turnings **OR** Clear, kiln-dried softwood turnings **OR** Aluminum **OR** Chrome-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.

H. Plywood Backing Panels
1. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch (13-mm) nominal thickness.

I. Fasteners
1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
   a. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** of Type 304 stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
5. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
6. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
7. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
8. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Material:
      1) Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
         OR
         Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

J. Metal Framing Anchors
1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.
   a. Use for interior locations where stainless steel is not indicated.
2. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
   a. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

K. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
   a. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
2. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
3. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
   a. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
6. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
   a. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
   b. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal- (38-mm actual-) thickness.

c. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m) and to solidly fill space below partitions.
d. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c.

7. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
8. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
   a. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
   b. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
9. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
   a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
   b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
   c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304 of the ICC's International Building Code.
   d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
   e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
   f. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code.
10. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Wood Ground, Sleeper, Blocking, And Nailer Installation
1. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
2. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

C. Wood Furring Installation
1. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
2. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-) size furring horizontally **OR** vertically **OR** horizontally and vertically, **as directed**, at 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 600 mm, **as directed**, o.c.
3. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board **OR** Plaster Lath, **as directed**: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal-(19-by-38-mm actual-) size furring vertically at 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 400 mm, **as directed**, o.c.

D. Wood Trim Installation
1. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches (610 mm) long except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
   a. Match color and grain pattern across joints.
   b. Install trim after gypsum board joint-finishing operations are completed.

c. Drill pilot holes in hardwood before fastening to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads and fill holes.
d. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2438 mm) for level and plumb. Install adjoining finish carpentry with 1/32-inch (0.8-mm) maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) maximum offset for reveal installation.

E. Protection
1. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
2. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 05 23 00a

SECTION 06 05 23 00b - HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for heavy timber construction. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes framing using timbers and round wood poles.

C. Definitions
1. Timbers: Lumber of 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) or greater in least dimension.
2. Poles: Round wood members, called either "poles" or "posts" in the referenced standards.
3. Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
   a. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
   b. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association.
   c. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
   d. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
   e. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
   f. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products and timber connectors.
   a. For preservative-treated wood products, include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
   b. For timber connectors, include installation instructions.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood products comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
      1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
3. Shop Drawings: For heavy timber construction. Show layout, dimensions of each member, and details of connections.
4. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed timber not marked with grade stamp.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Timber Standard: Comply with AITC 108, "Standard for Heavy Timber Construction."
2. Forest Certification: Provide wood products obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Schedule delivery of heavy timber construction to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
2. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Timber
1. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable.
   a. Factory mark each item of timber with grade stamp of grading agency.
   b. For exposed timber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, apply grade stamps to surfaces that will not be exposed to view, or omit grade stamps and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
2. Timber Species and Grade: Any species and grade that, for moisture content provided, complies with required structural properties.
   a. Allowable Stress Ratings for 12-Inch Nominal (286-mm Actual) Depth: Fb 1500 psi (10.3 MPa) and E 1,500,000 psi (10 340 MPa) **OR** Fb 1300 psi (9.0 MPa) and E 1,300,000 psi (8 960 MPa) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
3. Moisture Content: Provide timber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing or provide timber that is unseasoned at time of dressing but with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of installation, **as directed**.
4. Dressing: Provide dressed timber (S4S) **OR** timber that is rough sawn (Rgh), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
5. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
6. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

B. Round Wood Poles
1. Round Wood Poles: Clean-peeled wood poles complying with ASTM D 3200; with at least 80 percent of inner bark removed and with knots and limbs cut flush with the surface.

C. Preservative Treatment
1. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA C15 requirements for "sawn building poles and posts as structural members."
   a. Timber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated with inorganic boron (SBX) according to AWPA C31 instead of AWPA C15.
   b. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
2. Pressure treat poles with waterborne preservative to comply with AWPA C4.
   a. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
3. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium except for marine (saltwater) applications.
4. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
5. Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
6. After treatment, redry timber and poles to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
7. Mark treated timber and poles with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
   a. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
8. Application: Treat all heavy timber construction unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat items indicated on Drawings and the following, **as directed**:
   a. Sills and similar members in contact with masonry or concrete.
   b. Timber framing members less than 18 inches (460 mm) above grade.

D. Timber Connectors
1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:

a. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M.
b. Round steel bars complying with ASTM A 575, Grade M 1020.
c. Hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Structural Steel, Type SS, Grade 33.
d. Stainless-steel plate and flat bars complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
e. Stainless-steel bars and shapes complying with ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
f. Stainless-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

2. Fabricate beam seats from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with 0.239-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/16-inch (8-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (9.5-mm), **as directed**, bearing plates, 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter-by-12-inch- (300-mm-) long deformed bar anchors, and 0.239-inch (6-mm) side plates.
3. Fabricate beam hangers from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with 0.179-inch (4.6-mm) stirrups and 0.239-inch (6-mm) top plates.
4. Fabricate strap ties from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, 2-1/2 inches (63 mm) wide by 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) wide by 0.239 inch (6 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Fabricate tie rods from round steel bars with upset threads connected with forged-steel turnbuckles complying with ASTM A 668/A 668M.
6. Provide bolts, 3/4 inch (19 mm) unless otherwise indicated, complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); provide nuts complying with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, provide flat washers.
7. Provide shear plates, 2-5/8 inches (66.7 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, in diameter, complying with ASTM D 5933.
8. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, 2-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
9. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M.

E. Fabrication
1. Camber: Fabricate horizontal members and inclined members with a slope of less than 1:1, with natural convex bow (crown) up, to provide camber.
2. Shop fabricate members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
3. Predrill for fasteners and assembly of units.
4. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
   a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
   b. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
5. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
6. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing each unit, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for treated wood where the treatment included a water repellent.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. General: Erect heavy timber construction true and plumb. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
   a. Install heavy timber construction to comply with Shop Drawings.
   b. Install horizontal and sloping members with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches (102 mm) of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports if not continuous.

c. Handle and temporarily support heavy timber construction to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.

2. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry, bevel cut ends 3 inches (76 mm); do not embed more than 4 inches (102 mm) unless otherwise indicated.

3. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.

OR

Fit members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Predrill for fasteners and assembly of units.

a. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.

b. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.

c. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.

1) Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.

2) Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.

4. Install timber connectors as indicated.

a. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.

b. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by the Owner.

B. Adjusting

1. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged heavy timber construction if repairs are not approved by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 06 05 23 00b

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 05 23 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 05 73 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
06 05 73 33	06 05 23 00	Timber Bridge Components
06 05 73 33	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 05 73 33	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 05 73 33	06 05 23 00b	Heavy Timber Construction
06 05 73 33	06 15 13 00a	Wood Decking

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 10 00 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for rough carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Framing with dimension lumber.
   b. Framing with timber.
   c. Framing with engineered wood products.
   d. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
   e. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
   f. Wood furring and grounds.
   g. Wood sleepers.
   h. Utility shelving.
   i. Plywood backing panels.

C. Definitions
1. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
2. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.
3. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) or greater in least dimension.
4. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
   a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
   b. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
   c. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
   d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
   e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
   f. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
   a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
   b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
   c. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
   d. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
   e. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
2. LEED Submittals:

a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
c. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.

3. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
4. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
a. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
b. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
c. Engineered wood products.
d. Power-driven fasteners.
e. Powder-actuated fasteners.
f. Expansion anchors.
g. Metal framing anchors.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
a. Dimension lumber framing.
b. Timber.
c. Laminated-veneer lumber.
d. Parallel-strand lumber.
e. Prefabricated wood I-joists.
f. Rim boards.
g. Miscellaneous lumber.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Wood Products, General
1. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
a. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
b. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
c. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
d. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
    a. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Lumber
1. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
    a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
    b. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
2. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
3. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
    a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
4. Application: Treat all rough carpentry, unless otherwise indicated, **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
    b. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
    c. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
    d. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
    e. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials
1. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood).
    a. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
    b. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where indicated.
    c. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
3. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
4. Application: Treat all rough carpentry, unless otherwise indicated, **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    a. Framing for raised platforms.
    b. Concealed blocking.
    c. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.

d. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
e. Roof construction.
f. Plywood backing panels.

D. Dimension Lumber Framing
1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent **OR** 19 percent **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 19 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness, **as directed**.
2. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade of any species.
3. Exterior and Load-Bearing Walls **OR** Framing Other Than Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions **OR** Framing Other Than Interior Partitions, **as directed**: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,500,000 psi (10 350 MPa) **OR** 1,300,000 psi (8970 MPa) **OR** 1,100,000 psi (7590 MPa) **OR** 1,000,000 psi (6900 MPa) **OR** 900,000 psi (6210 MPa), **as directed**, and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1000 psi (6.9 MPa) **OR** 850 psi (5.86 MPa) **OR** 700 psi (4.83 MPa) **OR** 600 psi (4.14 MPa) **OR** 500 psi (3.45 MPa), **as directed**, for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and 12-inch nominal (286-mm actual) width for single-member use.
4. Ceiling Joists (Non-Load-Bearing): Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade of any species.
5. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,500,000 psi (10 350 MPa) **OR** 1,300,000 psi (8970 MPa) **OR** 1,100,000 psi (7590 MPa) **OR** 1,000,000 psi (6900 MPa) **OR** 900,000 psi (6210 MPa), **as directed**, and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1000 psi (6.9 MPa) **OR** 850 psi (5.86 MPa) **OR** 700 psi (4.83 MPa) **OR** 600 psi (4.14 MPa) **OR** 500 psi (3.45 MPa), **as directed**, for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and 12-inch nominal (286-mm actual) width for single-member use.
6. Exposed Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Framing Indicated to Receive a Stained or Natural Finish: Provide material hand-selected for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
   a. Species and Grade: As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type.
   b. Species and Grade: Hem-fir (north), Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA.
   c. Species and Grade: Southern pine, Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
   d. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB, or WWPA.
   e. Species and Grade: Mixed southern pine, Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
   f. Species and Grade: Spruce-pine-fir, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA.
   g. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-south; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WWPA.
   h. Species and Grade: Hem-fir; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB, or WWPA.
   i. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch (north); Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA.
   j. Species and Grade: Spruce-pine-fir (south), Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   k. Species and Grade: Eastern hemlock-balsam fir or eastern hemlock-tamarack; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
   l. Species and Grade: Beech-birch-hickory, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.

m. Species and Grade: Northern red oak, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
n. Species and Grade: Redwood, Clear Heart Structural **OR** Clear Structural **OR** Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; RIS.
o. Species and Grade: Mixed oak, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
p. Species and Grade: Mixed maple, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
q. Species and Grade: Western cedars, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB, or WWPA.

E. Timber Framing
1. Provide timber framing complying with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
a. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (north), or Douglas fir-south; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
b. Species and Grade: Eastern hemlock, eastern hemlock-tamarack, or eastern hemlock-tamarack (north); Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA or NLGA.
c. Species and Grade: Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
d. Species and Grade: Mixed maple, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
e. Species and Grade: Mixed oak, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
f. Species and Grade: Southern pine, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
g. Maximum Moisture Content: 20 **OR** 23, **as directed**, percent.
h. Additional Restriction: Free of heart centers.

F. Engineered Wood Products
1. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559 and containing no urea formaldehyde.
a. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 3100 psi (21.3 MPa) **OR** 2900 psi (20.0 MPa) **OR** 2600 psi (17.9 MPa) **OR** 2250 psi (15.5 MPa), **as directed**, for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
b. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 2,000,000 psi (13 700 MPa) **OR** 1,800,000 psi (12 400 MPa) **OR** 1,500,000 psi (10 300 MPa), **as directed**.
2. Parallel-Strand Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood strand elements with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559 and containing no urea formaldehyde.
a. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2900 psi (20 MPa) for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
b. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 2,200,000 psi (15 100 MPa).
3. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units, I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural panel webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Provide units complying with material requirements of and with structural capacities established and monitored according to ASTM D 5055.
a. Provide I-joists manufactured without urea formaldehyde.
b. Web Material: Either oriented strand board or plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 **OR** Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 **OR** Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1, Exterior grade, **as directed**.
c. Structural Properties: Provide units with depths and design values not less than those indicated.
d. Provide units complying with APA PRI-400, factory marked with APA trademark indicating nominal joist depth, joist class, span ratings, mill identification, and compliance with APA standard.

4. Rim Boards: Product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research/evaluation report for I-joists.
   a. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
   b. Material: All-veneer product **OR** glued-laminated wood **OR** product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers, **as directed**. Provide rim boards made without urea formaldehyde.
   c. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), **as directed**.
   d. Provide performance-rated product complying with APA PRR-401, rim board **OR** rim board plus, **as directed**, grade, factory marked with APA trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA standard.

G. Miscellaneous Lumber
1. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
   a. Blocking.
   b. Nailers.
   c. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
   d. Cants.
   e. Furring.
   f. Grounds.
   g. Utility shelving.
2. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed,** grade lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed,** percent maximum moisture content of any species.
3. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed,** percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species:
   a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
   b. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
   c. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
   d. Hem-fir; WCLIB, or WWPA.
   e. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   f. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
   g. Northern species; NLGA.
   h. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
4. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed,** percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
   a. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or 2 Common (Sterling) **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed,** grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Mixed southern pine, No. 1 **OR** 2, **as directed,** grade; SPIB.
   c. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   d. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
5. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed,** percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
   a. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed,** grade; SPIB.
   b. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed,** grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   c. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed,** grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   d. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed,** Common grade; NeLMA.
   e. Northern species, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed,** Common grade; NLGA.

f. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed,** grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

6. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
7. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
8. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

H. Plywood Backing Panels
1. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated**, as directed**, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch (13-mm) nominal thickness.

I. Fasteners
1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
   a. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** of Type 304 stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
5. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
6. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
7. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Material:
      1) Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
         OR
         Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

J. Metal Framing Anchors
1. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated **OR** of basis-of-design products, **as directed**. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.
   a. Use for interior locations where stainless steel is not indicated.
3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
   a. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
4. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- (50-mm-) long seat and 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
5. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- (50-mm-) long seat and 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) wide nailing flanges full depth of joist. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.
6. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
7. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.

8. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch (25 mm) above base and with 2-inch- (50-mm-) minimum side cover, socket 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick, and standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch (2.8 mm) thick.
9. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
10. Rafter Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) thick. Tie fastens to side of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
11. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) wide by 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
12. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) thick by 36 inches (914 mm) long.
13. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base.
14. Wall Bracing:
    a. T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 1-1/8 inches (29 mm) wide by 9/16 inch (14 mm) deep by 0.034 inch (0.85 mm) thick with hemmed edges.
       OR
       Wall Bracing: Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, 15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch (24 by 24 by 1 mm) thick with hemmed edges.

K. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Sill-Sealer Gaskets:
    a. Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch (25-mm) nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch (0.8 mm); selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
       OR
       Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
2. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
    a. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
2. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
3. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.

6. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
   a. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
7. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
   a. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
   b. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal- (38-mm actual-) thickness.
   c. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m) and to solidly fill space below partitions.
   d. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c.
8. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
9. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
   a. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
   b. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
10. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
    a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
    b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
    c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304, of ICC's International Building Code.
    d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
    e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
    f. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code.
11. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.
12. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
    a. Comply with approved **OR** indicated, **as directed,** fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.
    b. Use finishing nails, unless otherwise indicated. Do not countersink nail heads **OR** Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler, **as directed**.

B. Wood Ground, Sleeper, Blocking, And Nailer Installation
1. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
2. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

C. Wood Furring Installation
1. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
2. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-) size furring horizontally **OR** vertically **OR** horizontally and vertically, **as directed,** at 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 600 mm, **as directed,** o.c.
3. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board **OR** Plaster Lath, **as directed**: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-) size furring vertically at 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 400 mm, **as directed,** o.c.

D. Wall And Partition Framing Installation
1. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions and for load-bearing partitions where framing members bearing on partition are located directly over studs. Fasten plates to supporting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. For exterior walls, provide 2-by-6-inch nominal- (38-by-140-mm actual-) **OR** 2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-), **as directed,** size wood studs spaced 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 600 mm **OR** 400 mm, **as directed**, o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
   b. For interior partitions and walls, provide 2-by-6-inch nominal- (38-by-140-mm actual-) **OR** 2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-) **OR** 2-by-3-inch nominal- (38-by-64-mm actual-), **as directed**, size wood studs spaced 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 600 mm **OR** 400 mm, **as directed**, o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches (2438 mm) high, using members of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
2. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs, except that two studs may be used for interior non-load-bearing partitions.
3. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
   a. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and headers not less than 4-inch nominal (89-mm actual) depth for openings 48 inches (1200 mm) and less in width, 6-inch nominal (140-mm actual) depth for openings 48 to 72 inches (1200 to 1800 mm) in width, 8-inch nominal (184-mm actual) depth for openings 72 to 120 inches (1800 to 3000 mm) in width, and not less than 10-inch nominal (235-mm actual) depth for openings 10 to 12 feet (3 to 3.6 m) in width.
   b. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 60 inches (1500 mm) and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated or, if not indicated, according to Table R502.5(1) or Table R502.5(2), as applicable, in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
4. Provide diagonal bracing in exterior walls, at both walls of each external corner **OR** walls, at locations indicated, **as directed**, at 45-degree angle, full-story height, unless otherwise indicated. Use 1-by-4-inch nominal- (19-by-89-mm actual-) size boards, let-in flush with faces of studs **OR** metal wall bracing, let into studs in saw kerf, **as directed**.

E. Floor Joist Framing Installation
1. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal, or 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry. Attach floor joists as follows:
   a. Where supported on wood members, by toe nailing or by using metal framing anchors.

b. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers.

2. Fire Cuts: At joists built into masonry, bevel cut ends 3 inches (76 mm) and do not embed more than 4 inches (102 mm).
3. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches (1200 mm).
4. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to one-sixth depth of joist, one-third at ends. Do not bore holes larger than 1/3 depth of joist; do not locate closer than 2 inches (50 mm) from top or bottom.
5. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.
6. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than 4 inches (102 mm) or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness by depth of joist over supports.
7. Anchor members paralleling masonry with 1/4-by-1-1/4-inch (6.4-by-32-mm) metal strap anchors spaced not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c., extending over and fastening to 3 joists. Embed anchors at least 4 inches (102 mm) into grouted masonry with ends bent at right angles and extending 4 inches (102 mm) beyond bend.
8. Provide solid blocking between joists under jamb studs for openings.
9. Under non-load-bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above.
   a. Provide triple joists separated as above, under partitions receiving ceramic tile and similar heavy finishes or fixtures.
10. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c., between joists.
    a. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel-cut, 1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-64-mm actual-) size lumber, double-crossed and nailed at both ends to joists.
    b. Steel bridging installed to comply with bridging manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Ceiling Joist And Rafter Framing Installation
1. Ceiling Joists: Install ceiling joists with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
   a. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal- (19-by-184-mm actual-) size or 2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-) size stringers spaced 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.
2. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and toe nail or use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
   a. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches (50 mm) deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
   b. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches (50 mm) deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
3. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide 1-by-6-inch nominal- (19-by-140-mm actual-) size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.
4. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions, if any.

G. Timber Framing Installation

1. Install timber with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches (102 mm) of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members, unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.
2. Where beams or girders are framed into pockets of exterior concrete or masonry walls, provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) air space at sides and ends of wood members.
3. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
4. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

H. Stair Framing Installation
1. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
   a. Stringer Size: 2-by-12-inch nominal- (38-by-286-mm actual-) size, minimum.
   b. Stringer Material: Laminated-veneer lumber **OR** parallel-strand lumber **OR** solid lumber, **as directed**.
   c. Notching: Notch stringers to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) of effective depth.
   d. Stringer Spacing: At least 3 stringers for each 36-inch (914-mm) clear width of stair.
2. Provide stair framing with no more than 3/16-inch (4.7-mm) variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.

I. Protection
1. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
2. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 11 13 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 11 13 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 11 16 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY RENOVATION

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for rough carpentry renovation. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 GENERAL

A. Quality Assurance
   1. Regulatory Requirements:
      a. Fire Retardant Treated Lumber and Plywood: Bear UL FR-S classification label.
      b. Preservative Treated Wood: Provide all heart redwood, cedar, or cyprus; or preservative-treated wood at following conditions in accordance with applicable building code:
         1) Wood framing, woodwork, and plywood up to and including subflooring at first-floor level of structures having crawl spaces, when bottoms of such items are 150 mm (6 inches) or less from earth underneath.
         2) Exterior wood steps, platforms, and railings.
         3) Wood sills, soles, plates, furring, and sleepers that are less than 150 mm (6 inches) from earth, furring and nailers that are set into or in contact with concrete or masonry.
         4) Nailers, edge strips, crickets, curbs, and cants for roof decks.
         5) Furring strips used on walls or partitions below grade and exterior walls above grade.
         6) Wood members used for rough framing of openings in exterior concrete or masonry walls.

B. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
   1. General: Deliver material to site, off-load, and handle in manner that will not damage material. Store material off ground and cover with waterproof covering. Provide adequate ventilation.
      a. Interior Fire-Retardant Treated Wood: Keep dry at all times. Replace material that has become wet. Store off ground, in building, or covered with unbroken water-tight cover in storage yard, during transit, and at job site. Keep ventilated to avoid moisture condensation.

C. Project Conditions
   1. Environmental Requirements: Execute demolition and renovation in manner to limit unnecessary dust and noise, and in compliance with applicable codes and federal or state requirements. Burning of materials on site not allowed.
   2. Existing Conditions: See Detailed Scope of Work. Do not interfere with use of occupied buildings or portions of buildings. Maintain free and safe passage to and from occupied areas.
   3. Protection:
      a. Provide necessary temporary shoring and bracing to support and protect portions of existing buildings during demolition operations. Leave such shoring in place until permanent supports have been installed. Be solely responsible for design, safety, and adequacy of temporary shoring and bracing and its ability to carry load for which intended.
      b. Contractor: Protect grounds, plantings, buildings, and any other facilities or property from damage caused by construction operations.

4. Safety: Cease operations at endangered area, and notify the Owner immediately if safety of structure appears to be endangered. Take precautions to properly support structure. Do not resume work in endangered area until safety is restored.

D. Scheduling And Sequencing
   1. Scheduling and Completion: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.

1.3 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
   1. Materials for Patching, Extending, and Matching:
      a. Provide same products or types of construction as in existing structure, as needed to patch, extend, or match existing work.
         1) Generally, Contract Documents will not define products or standards of workmanship present in existing construction. Determine products by inspection and testing as necessary, and required workmanship by reference to existing as sample of comparison.
         2) Patching, extending, and matching existing work and systems shall result in complete, finished system.
      b. Presence of product, finish, or type of construction requires that patching, extending, or matching be performed as necessary to make work complete and consistent.
   2. Lumber: Each Piece of Lumber: Grade stamped by recognized association or independent inspection agency certified by American Lumber Standards Committee's Board of Review.
      a. New Replacement Studs and Joists: Match existing and complies with Reference Standards.
      b. Wood Studs and Joists: No. 2 Grade or better.
      c. Sill Plates on Concrete: All heart redwood, cedar, or cyprus: or preservative-treated wood.
      d. Blocking and Furring: Standard Grade or Better.
      e. Preservative-Treated: AWPB LP-2, pressure-treated with waterborne preservative. Penta or creosote not allowed.
         1) Treat drilled holes and cuts across grain in accordance with AWPA M4.
      f. Fire-Retardant Treated:
         1) Lumber: AWPA C20 Interior Type A.
         2) Plywood: AWPA C27 Interior Type A.
         3) Bear UL FR-S classification label.
      g. Pressure-Treated Lumber: Bear AWPA Quality Mark C-2.
      h. Seasoning: Kiln dry to following (including treated material):
      i. Lumber Up to 50 mm (2 inches): 19 percent or less moisture content.
      j. Preservative- and Fire-Retardant Treated Material: Mill or rip material parallel to grain prior to treatment.
   3. Plywood: PS-1: Each panel identified with APA grade trademark.
      a. Subfloor: APA Rated Sheathing, Tongue and groove, Exposure 1 (interior with exterior glue).
         1) Span Rating: Not less than spacing of framing members.
         2) Thickness: In accordance with APA Recommendations.
      b. Roof Sheathing: APA Rated Sheathing, Exposure 1 (interior with exterior glue).
         1) Span Rating: Not less than spacing of framing members.
         2) Thickness: In accordance with APA Recommendations.
      c. Wall Sheathing: APA CD, Exposure 1 (Interior with exterior glue).
         1) Span Rating: Not less than spacing of framing members.
         2) Thickness: As indicated.
      d. Panel Edge Clips: Extruded aluminum or hot-dipped galvanized steel, H-shaped clips to prevent differential deflection of roof sheathing.
      e. Fire-Retardant Treated Plywood: Bear UL FR-S classification label.

1) Interior Plywood Fire Retardant Treatment: AWPA C27 Interior Type A.
2) Exterior Plywood Fire Retardant Treatment: AWPA C27 Exterior Type.

f. Seasoning: Kiln dry plywood to 15 percent or less moisture content.
1) Pressure Treated Plywood: Kiln dry lumber after treatment.

g. Nails: Type and size as recommended by APA.

4. Metal Framing Anchors: Punched and formed for nailing so that nails will be stressed in shear only.
a. General: Provide with nails and bolts according to manufacturers requirements.
1) Nails: Zinc coated.
b. Types: As indicated and as required to accommodate framing.
c. Sizes: Of sufficient size and strength to develop full strength of supported member in accordance with applicable building code.
d. Metal Bridging: Minimum No. 16 U.S. Standard gage.
e. Finish: Hot-dipped galvanized.
5. Anchor Bolts: Furnish anchors to be built into concrete and masonry for anchorage of wood.
6. Rough Hardware: Provide necessary bolts, screws, nails, clips, plates, straps, hangers, etc., necessary for completion of renovation work. Provide correct material of proper size and strength for purpose intended, conforming to Reference Standards and applicable building codes.
a. Exterior Locations and for Fire-Retardant- and Preservative-Treated Wood: Provide galvanized rough hardware.
7. Vapor Barrier at Crawl Spaces: ASTM D 2103, 0.15 mm (6 mil) polyethylene sheeting.
8. Insulation: Type and R-value to comply with applicable codes and regulations.
a. Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665 fiberglass blankets. Exposed insulation shall be foil-faced with flame-spread rating of 25 or less in accordance with ASTM E 84, where required by applicable codes and regulations.

1.4 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Units, Spaces, and Areas to be Renovated: Comply with Detailed Scope of Work.
a. Verify that surfaces to receive rough carpentry are prepared to require grades and dimensions.

B. Preparation
1. Dust Protection: Comply with Detailed Scope of Work.
2. Building Occupation: Carry out demolition and renovation work to cause as little inconvenience to occupants as possible. See Detailed Scope of Work.
3. Protection: See Detailed Scope of Work.
4. Selective Demolition: Comply with Detailed Scope of Work.

C. Laying Out Work
1. Discrepancies: Verify dimensions and elevations indicated in layout of existing work.
a. Prior to commencing work, carefully compare and check Drawings (if any) for discrepancies in locations or elevations of work to be executed.
b. Refer discrepancies among Drawings (if any), Specifications, and existing conditions to the Owner for adjustment before work affected is performed.
1) Failure to make such notification shall place responsibility on Contractor to carry out work in satisfactory, workmanlike manner.
2. Contractor: Responsible for location and elevation of construction contemplated by Construction Documents.

D. Performance
1. Patching: Patch and extend existing work using skilled mechanics who are capable of matching existing quality of workmanship.

a. Quality of Patched or Extended Work: Not less than specified for new work. If similar new work is not specified, equal to existing work.

2. General: Perform in accordance with AF&PA National Design Specification for Wood Construction, latest Edition.
   a. Framing: Erect plumb, level and true and rigidly anchor in place. Cut framing square on bearings, closely fit, accurately set to required lines and levels.
   b. Nail or spike members in accordance with applicable codes.
   c. Framing: 400 mm (16 inches) OC unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Shims: Do not use shims for leveling on wood or metal bearings. Use steel or slate shims with full bearing on masonry or concrete.
   e. Do not splice framing members between bearing points.
   f. Metal Framing Anchors: Install where required for proper connections in accordance with manufacturer recommendations. Drive nail in each nail hole provided in anchor.
3. Wood Framing:
   a. Openings: Frame members for passage of pipes and ducts to avoid cutting structural members. Do not cut, notch, or bore framing members for passage of pipes or conduits without the Owner's permission. Reinforce framing members as directed where damaged by cuffing.
   b. Firestopping: Firestop concealed spaces in framing. No shutoff by framing members to prevent drafts from one space to another. Use 50 mm (2 inch) nominal thick accurately fit wood blocking to fill opening.
   c. Joists and Beams: Sizes and spacing as indicated.
      1) Set crown edge-up with 90 mm (3-1/2 inch) bearing unless noted otherwise.
      2) Toe nail joists to wood sills with 16d nails both sides or secure with metal connectors. Lap and spike joists over supports.
      3) Double joists to form headers and trimmers at openings over 1,200 mm (4 feet) and support with metal joist hangers.
      4) Provide joist hangers at joists framing into flush wood beams.
   d. Provide blocking or suitable edge support between members as necessary to support edges of sheathing.
   e. Replace warped lumber in walls and joists prior to installation of finish surface.
4. Anchors: Unless otherwise indicated, bolt plates firmly to concrete or masonry with anchor bolts in accordance with applicable code.
   a. In Masonry: Embed anchor bolts minimum 400 mm (16 inches) and provide each with nut and 50 mm (2 inch) diameter washer at bottom end. Grout bolts with mortar.
   b. In Concrete: Embed anchor bolts minimum 200 mm (8 inches) and provide each with nut and 50 mm (2 inch) diameter washer at bottom end. 90 degree bent end may be substituted for nut and washer.
5. Wood Studs: Install at 400 mm (16 inches) OC with single bottom plate and double top plate with joints staggered.
   a. Double studs at openings and triple at corners and intersections. Double headers with double trimmers over openings.
6. Plywood Sheathing: Install in accordance with APA Recommendations.
   a. Provide space at end and side joints as recommended by APA.
   b. Install panels with face grain perpendicular to supports with end-joints supported. Stagger ends of adjacent sheets 1 200 mm (4 feet) where possible.
   c. Where support spacing exceeds maximum span for unsupported edge, provide adequate blocking, tongue and groove edges, or panel edge clips, in accordance with APA E30-L.
   d. Nail in accordance with APA's Recommendations.
7. Preservative- and Fire-Retardant Material: Milling or ripping material parallel to grain not allowed unless material is treated after milling or ripping.
   a. Preservative-Treated Material: Treat drilled holes and cuts across grain in accordance with AWPA M4.

E. Flooring Work

1. Defective Joists and Subfloor: Remove defective joists and subfloor which no longer satisfy structural requirements with now material to fulfill their structural function.
    a. Remove ceiling, subfloor, and joists in safe manner and at minimum inconvenience to residents.
    b. Splice, strengthen, support, or replace rotted or otherwise defective joists to fulfill their anticipated structural function.
    c. New Replacement Joists: Comply with requirements of appropriate section specifying new flooring, including flooring manufacturer's recommendations.
    d. Ceiling Replacement: Include removal and replacement of ceiling finish to match existing.
        1) Glue and screw new ceiling material to bottom of joists.
        2) Paint entire ceiling of space affected by replacement matching color of existing walls in accordance with Division 9 Section "Painting."
    e. Crawl-Space Insulation: Replace insulation damaged by or removed during construction operations. If there is no existing insulation, provide new insulation, where required.
        1) Insulation: Type and R-value to comply with applicable codes and regulations.
    f. New Replacement Subfloor: Install in accordance with APA Recommendations and with requirements of appropriate section specifying new flooring, including flooring manufacturer's recommendations.
        1) Glue and nail new subfloor to joists.
        2) Nail in accordance with APA's Recommendations and sufficiently to avoid squeaking floors.
    g. Base at walls: Replace wood base (including coves and corner rounds) with new wood base to match existing.
2. Above-Grade Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring: Examine to ensure that vapor-barrier sheet is laid over ground, sheets lapped, edge joints sealed and sufficient cross ventilation exists to insure dryness.
    a. If vapor barrier does not cover ground in crawl space, install vapor barrier in accordance with applicable codes and regulations.
        1) Completely cover ground at crawl spaces with minimum 150 mm (6 inch) lapped joints.
        2) Tape all lapped joints with water-resistive tape in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
        3) Protect vapor barrier from puncture and displacement. Lay heavy objects such as pieces of masonry at intervals not over 1 200 mm (4 feet) OC at lapped joints to hold in place. If punctures occur in vapor barrier, repair by placing patches of vapor-barrier material over punctures and taping all lapped joints.
    b. If crawl space does not have enough ventilation, install additional vents in accordance with applicable codes and regulations.
3. Floors Damaged by Construction Operations: Patch floor damage to match existing floor surfaces, and comply with requirements for new flooring.

F. Roofing Work
1. Removal of Existing Roofing: Roofing may contain asbestos fibers. Comply with applicable codes, laws, and regulations regarding asbestos materials.
2. Defective Rafters and Sheathing: Remove defective rafters and sheathing which no longer satisfy structural requirements with new material to match existing.
    a. Remove sheathing and rafters in safe manner and at minimum inconvenience to residents.
    b. Splice, strengthen, support, or replace rotted or otherwise defective rafters to fulfill their anticipated structural function.
    c. New Replacement Sheathing: Install in accordance with APA Recommendations and with requirements of applicable Division 7 roofing Sections.
        1) Nail in accordance with APA s Recommendations.

G. Blocking And Furring
1. Blocking: Install wood blocking as required for proper support of hardware, bath accessories, cabinets, and other wall-mounted hems.

a. Set true to line, level, or plumb, well-secured in stud wall and flush with back of drywall or other wall finish.
b. Coordinate exact locations with other sections.

2. Rough Wood Bucks: Set true and plumb and anchor to concrete or masonry with steel straps extending into wall minimum 200 mm (8 inches). Place anchors near top and bottom of buck and space uniformly at maximum 600 mm (24 inches) OC. Provide nominal 50 mm (2 inch) thick if not indicated.
3. Wood Furring: Install wood furring on masonry or concrete walls in sizes and spacing as indicated on Drawings (if any). Provide minimum 25 mm by 75-mm (1 inch by 3 inch) nominal furring strips spaced at maximum of 400 mm (16 inches) OC if not indicated.
   a. Securely fasten wood furring at maximum 900 mm (3 feet) OC with toggle or expansion bolts, cut concrete nails or ramset anchors as required. Do not use wood plugs.
   b. Install furring around openings and at corners.
   c. Erect furring plumb and level, and shim out as required to provide true, even plane with surfaces suitable to receive required finish.

END OF SECTION 06 11 16 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 11 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
06 11 16 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 11 16 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 15 13 00 - EXTERIOR ROUGH CARPENTRY

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior rough carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Elevated decks including wood decking, plastic decking, stairs, railings, and support framing.
b. Wood benches.

C. Definitions
1. Boards: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) in thickness and 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater width.
2. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.
3. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) or greater in least dimension.
4. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
b. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
c. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
f. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products, plastic decking, and metal framing anchors.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood products comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
3. Material Certificates:
a. For lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
b. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
4. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from an approved organization/model code, as directed by the Owner:
a. Preservative-treated wood products.
b. Plastic decking.
c. Expansion anchors.
d. Metal framing anchors.
e. Decking fasteners.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Forest Certification: Provide wood products obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
2. Handle and store plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Lumber, General
1. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
a. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
b. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
c. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
d. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Dimension Lumber
1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent **OR** 19 percent **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 19 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness, **as directed**.
2. Deck and Stair Framing: Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
a. Hem-fir (North); NLGA.
b. Southern pine; SPIB.
c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
d. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
h. Douglas fir-larch (North); NLGA.
i. Spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

OR

Deck and Stair Framing: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,500,000 psi (10 350 MPa) **OR** 1,300,000 psi (8970 MPa) **OR** 1,100,000 psi (7590 MPa) **OR** 1,000,000 psi (6900 MPa) **OR** 900,000 psi (6210 MPa), **as directed**, and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1000 psi (6.9 MPa) **OR** 850 psi (5.86 MPa) **OR** 700 psi (4.83 MPa) **OR** 600 psi (4.14 MPa) **OR** 500 psi (3.45 MPa), **as directed**, for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and 12-inch nominal (286-mm actual) width for single-member use.
3. Dimension Lumber Posts: No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
d. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
e. Northern species; NLGA.
f. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

g. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

4. Dimension Lumber Decking and Stair Treads: No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
   a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
   d. Redwood; RIS.

   OR

   Dimension Lumber Decking and Stair Treads: Deck Heart or Construction Heart **OR** Deck Common or Construction Common, **as directed**, redwood; RIS.
5. Dimension Lumber Railing Members: Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
   a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
   d. Redwood; RIS.
   e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

   OR

   Dimension Lumber Railing Members: Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**, redwood; RIS.
6. Dimension Lumber for Benches: Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
   a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
   d. Redwood; RIS.
   e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

   OR

   Dimension Lumber for Benches: Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**, redwood; RIS.

C. Boards
1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent.
2. Board Decking and Stair Treads: 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) thick radius-edged decking of any of the following species and grades:
   a. Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-south, Patio 1 **OR** Patio 2, **as directed**, WWPA.
   b. Douglas fir-larch, Select Dex **OR** Commercial Dex, **as directed**, WCLIB.
   c. Douglas fir-larch (North), Select Patio **OR** Commercial Patio, **as directed**, NLGA.
   d. Hem-fir, Patio 1 **OR** Patio 2, **as directed**, WWPA.
   e. Hem-fir, Select Dex **OR** Commercial Dex, **as directed**, WCLIB.
   f. Hem-fir (North), Select Patio **OR** Commercial Patio, **as directed**, NLGA.
   g. Redwood, Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**; RIS.
   h. Southern pine, Premium **OR** Standard, **as directed**, SPIB.
   i. Western red cedar, Patio 1 **OR** Patio 2, **as directed**, WWPA.
   j. Western red cedar, Select Dex **OR** Commercial Dex, **as directed**, WCLIB.
   k. Western red cedar (North), Select Patio **OR** Commercial Patio, **as directed**, NLGA.
3. Railing Boards: Any of the following species and grades:
   a. Douglas fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Hem-fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   c. Redwood, Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**; RIS.
   d. Southern pine, B & B finish; SPIB.
4. Boards for Benches: Any of the following species and grades:
   a. Douglas fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Hem-fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   c. Redwood, Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**; RIS.

d. Southern pine, Edge Grain B & B finish **OR** Near Rift B & B finish **OR** B & B finish, **as directed**; SPIB.

D. Timber
1. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 percent **OR** No limit, **as directed**.
2. Dressing: Provide dressed timber (S4S) or timber that is rough sawn (Rgh) unless otherwise indicated.
3. Timber Posts:
   a. Balsam fir, Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), eastern hemlock tamarack (North), hem-fir, southern pine, western hemlock, or western hemlock (North); No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, NeLMA, NLGA, SPIB, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   b. Alaska cedar; No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, WCLIB.
   c. Southern pine; No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, SPIB.

E. Round Wood Poles
1. Round Wood Poles: Clean-peeled wood poles complying with ASTM D 3200; with at least 80 percent of inner bark removed and with knots and limbs cut flush with the surface.
2. Species: as directed by the Owner.

F. Preservative Treatment
1. Pressure treat boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA C2.
2. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA C15 requirements for "sawn building poles and posts as structural members."
   a. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
3. Pressure treat poles with waterborne preservative to comply with AWPA C4.
   a. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
4. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium except for timber posts **OR** except for poles, **as directed**.
5. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
   OR
   Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
6. After treatment, redry boards**,** dimension lumber, timber, and poles to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
7. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
   a. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
8. Application: Treat all exterior rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat items indicated on Drawings and the following, **as directed**:
   a. Framing members less than 18 inches (460 mm) above grade.
   b. Sills and ledgers.
   c. Members in contact with masonry or concrete.
   d. Posts.
   e. Round wood poles.
   f. Decking.
   g. Stair treads.

G. Plastic Decking
1. Plastic Lumber, General: Products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project for indicated occupancy and type of construction.

a. Allowable loads and spans, as documented in evaluation reports or in information referenced in evaluation reports, shall not be less than design loads and spans indicated.

2. Composite Plastic Lumber: Solid or hollow shapes made from a mixture of cellulose fiber and polyethylene or polypropylene.
   a. Configuration: Provide product with grooved edges designed for fastening with concealed splines.
   b. Surface Texture: Woodgrain **OR** Smooth **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
   c. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
3. All-Plastic Lumber: Solid or hollow shapes made from high-density polyethylene (HDPE) **OR** PVC **OR** polystyrene **OR** cellular PVC, **as directed**, with no cellulose fiber.
   a. Configuration: Provide product with grooved edges designed for fastening with concealed splines **OR** tongue-and-groove edges designed for concealed fastening, **as directed**.
   b. Surface Texture: Woodgrain **OR** Smooth **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
   c. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

H. Fasteners
1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into wood substrate.
   a. Use stainless steel **OR** fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless-steel fasteners.
   c. For plastic **OR** wood, **as directed**, decking, use stainless-steel fasteners where fasteners are exposed to view.
   d. For redwood, use brass/bronze **OR** stainless-steel **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
2. Nails: ASTM F 1667.
3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
5. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
6. Carbon-Steel Bolts: ASTM A 307 (ASTM F 568M) with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.
7. Stainless-Steel Bolts: ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M, Grade A1 or A4); with ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
8. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless-steel, chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

I. Metal Framing Anchors
1. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated on Drawings **OR** of basis-of-design products, **as directed**. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z270) **OR** G185 (Z550), **as directed**, coating designation.
3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
4. Joist Hangers: U-shaped, with 2-inch- (50-mm-) long seat and 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
5. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.

6. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch (25 mm) above base and with 2-inch- (50-mm-) minimum side cover, socket 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick, and standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch (2.8 mm) thick.
7. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.

J. Concealed Decking Fasteners
1. Deck Splines: Plastic splines designed to fit in grooves routed into the sides of decking material and be fastened to deck framing with screws. Splines provide uniform spacing of decking material. Splines are made from UV-resistant polypropylene.
2. Deck Clips: Black oxide coated stainless-steel clips designed to be fastened to deck framing with screws, and to secure decking material with teeth that also provide uniform spacing of decking material.
3. Deck Tracks: Formed metal strips designed to be fastened to deck framing and to secure decking material from underside with screws. Made from epoxy powder-coated, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
2. Prime lumber to be painted, including both faces and edges. Cut to required lengths and prime ends. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting".

B. Installation, General
1. Set exterior rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit exterior rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
2. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install wood decking and stair treads with crown up (bark side down).
4. Install plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Secure decking to framing with concealed decking fasteners.
6. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
8. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
9. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
10. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
    a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
    b. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
11. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
    a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
    b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
    c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304 of the ICC's International Building Code.
    d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
    e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members" and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
12. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view. Make tight connections

between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

13. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.

C. Elevated Deck Joist Framing Installation
   1. General: Install joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal, or 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry. Attach floor joists where framed into wood supporting members by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers. Do not notch joists.
   2. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches (1200 mm).
   3. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams or girders not less than 4 inches (102 mm) or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness by depth of joist over supports.
   4. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness by depth of joist at intervals of 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c., between joists.

D. Stair Installation
   1. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
      a. Stringer Size: 2 by 12 inches nominal (38 by 286 mm actual), minimum.
      b. Notching: Notch stringers to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) of effective depth.
      c. Stringer Spacing: At least three stringers for each 36-inch (914-mm) clear width of stair.
   2. Provide stair framing with no more than 3/16-inch (4.7-mm) variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
   3. Treads and Risers: Secure by gluing and nailing **OR** screwing, **as directed**, to carriages. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler. Extend treads over carriages and finish with bullnose edge.

E. Railing Installation
   1. Balusters: Fit to railings, glue, and nail **OR** screw, **as directed**, in place. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
   2. Newel Posts: Secure to stringers and risers with through bolts **OR** lag screws **OR** countersunk-head wood screws and glue, **as directed**.
   3. Railings: Secure wall rails with metal brackets. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts and glue.

END OF SECTION 06 15 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 15 13 00a - WOOD DECKING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood decking. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Solid-sawn wood roof and floor decking.
b. Glued-laminated wood roof and floor decking.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
a. For glued-laminated wood decking, include installation instructions and data on lumber, adhesives, and fabrication.
b. For preservative-treated wood products, include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For sealants and installation adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For laminating adhesive used for glued-laminated decking, indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Standard for Solid-Sawn Wood Decking: Comply with AITC 112.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Schedule delivery of wood decking to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
2. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings. Stack wood decking with surfaces that are to be exposed in the final Work protected from exposure to sunlight.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Wood Decking, General
1. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
2. Moisture Content: Provide wood decking with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.

B. Solid-Sawn Wood Decking
1. Decking Species: Alaska cedar **OR** Balsam fir **OR** Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-larch (North) **OR** Eastern spruce **OR** Hem-fir or hem-fir (North) **OR** Southern pine, **as directed**.
2. Decking Nominal Size: 2x6 **OR** 2x8 **OR** 3x6 **OR** 4x6, **as directed**.
3. Decking Grade:
a. Select(ed) **OR** Commercial, **as directed**, Decking.
OR

Dense Standard **OR** Dense Select **OR** Select **OR** Dense Commercial **OR** Commercial, **as directed**, Decking.

OR

Select(ed) Decking or Select Dex **OR** Commercial Decking or Commercial Dex, **as directed**.

4. Grade Stamps: Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency. Apply grade stamp to surfaces that will not be exposed to view.
5. Face Surface: Rough sanded or wire brushed **OR** Saw textured **OR** Smooth, **as directed**.
6. Edge Pattern: Beaded edge **OR** Bullnosed **OR** Channel grooved **OR** Vee grooved, **as directed**.
7. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat solid-sawn wood decking according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX) and redry wood to 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content.

C. Glued-Laminated Wood Decking

1. Face Species: Alaska cedar **OR** Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-larch (North) **OR** Ponderosa pine **OR** Southern pine **OR** Western cedars or western cedars (North), **as directed**.
2. Decking Nominal Size: 2x6 **OR** 2x8 **OR** 3x6 **OR** 3x8 **OR** 4x6 **OR** 4x8 **OR** 5x6 **OR** 5x8, **as directed**.
3. Decking Configuration: For glued-laminated wood decking indicated to be of diaphragm design and construction, provide tongue-and-groove configuration that complies with research/evaluation report.
4. Face Grade:
   a. Custom or Supreme: Clear face is required. Occasional pieces may contain a small knot or minor characteristic that does not detract from the overall appearance.

      OR

      Decorative: Sound knots and natural characteristics are allowed, including chipped edge knots, short end splits, seasoning checks, and some pin holes. Face knot holes, stain, end slits, skip, roller split, and planer burn are not allowed.

      OR

      Service: Face knot holes, stain, end splits, skip, roller split, planer burn, and other nonstrength-reducing characteristics are allowed. Strength-reducing characteristics are not allowed.
5. Face Surface: Rough sanded or wire brushed **OR** Saw textured **OR** Smooth, **as directed**.
6. Edge Pattern: Beaded edge **OR** Bullnosed **OR** Channel grooved **OR** Vee grooved, **as directed**.
7. Laminating Adhesive: Wet-use type complying with ASTM D 2559.
   a. Use adhesive that contains no urea-formaldehyde resins.
8. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat lumber before gluing according to AWPA C28 for aboveground use.
   a. Use oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.

      OR

      Use copper naphthenate in a light petroleum solvent.

      OR

      Use waterborne preservative that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that contains no arsenic or chromium. After treating, redry wood to 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content.

      OR

      Use preservative solution without water repellents or substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.

      OR

      After dressing and fabricating decking, apply copper naphthenate according to AWPA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

D. Accessory Materials

1. Fasteners for Solid-Sawn Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with decking standard for thickness of deck used.

2. Fasteners for Glued-Laminated Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with requirements in "Installation" Article for installing laminated decking.
3. Nails: Common; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type I, Style 10.
4. Spikes: Round; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type III, Style 3.
5. Fastener Material: Hot-dip galvanized **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel.
6. Bolts for Anchoring Decking to Walls:
   a. Carbon steel; complying with ASTM A 307 (ASTM F 568M) with ASTM A 563/A 563M hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers, all hot-dip zinc coated, **as directed**.
      OR
      Stainless steel; complying with ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M, Grade A1 or A4); with ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
7. Installation Adhesive: For glued-laminated wood decking indicated to be of diaphragm design and construction, provide adhesive that complies with research/evaluation report.
   a. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. Sealant: Latex sealant compatible with substrates **OR** Elastomeric joint sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for Use NT (nontraffic) and for Uses M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O joint substrates, **as directed**.
   a. Use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. Penetrating Sealer: Clear sanding sealer complying with Division 09 Section "Staining And Transparent Finishing" and compatible with topcoats specified for use over it.

E. Fabrication
1. Shop Fabrication: Where preservative-treated decking is indicated, complete cutting, trimming, surfacing, and sanding before treating.
2. Predrill decking for lateral spiking to adjacent units to comply with referenced decking standard.
3. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing decking, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer in fabrication shop, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install solid-sawn wood decking to comply with referenced decking standard.
   a. Locate end joints for two-span continuous lay-up **OR** combination simple and two-span continuous lay-up **OR** controlled random lay-up **OR** lay-up indicated, **as directed**.
2. Install laminated wood decking to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Locate end joints for two-span continuous lay-up **OR** combination simple and two-span continuous lay-up **OR** controlled random lay-up **OR** lay-up indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Nail each course of glued-laminated wood decking at each support with one nail slant nailed above the tongue and one nail straight nailed through the face.
      1) Use 12d nails for 2x6 and 2x8 decking.
      2) Use 30d nails for 3x6 and 3x8 decking.
      3) Use 60d nails for 4x6 and 4x8 decking. Predrill decking to prevent splitting.
      4) Use 30d tongue nails in bottom tongue and 3/8-inch (10-mm) face spikes for 5x6 and 5x8 decking. Predrill decking at spikes to prevent splitting.
   c. Slant nail each course of glued-laminated wood decking to the tongue of the adjacent course at 30 inches (750 mm) o.c. and within 12 inches (300 mm) of the end of each unit. Stagger nailing in adjacent courses 15 inches (380 mm).
      1) Use 6d nails for 2x6 and 2x8 decking.
      2) Use 8d nails for 3x6 and 3x8 decking.
      3) Use 10d nails for 4x6 and 4x8 decking.
      4) Use 16d nails for 5x6 and 5x8 decking.

d. Glue adjoining decking courses together by applying a 3/8-inch (10-mm) bead of adhesive on the top of tongues according to research/evaluation report.

3. Anchor wood roof decking, where supported on walls, with bolts as indicated.
4. Where preservative-treated decking must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
   a. For solid-sawn decking, use inorganic boron (SBX).
   b. For laminated decking, use copper naphthenate.
5. Apply joint sealant to seal roof decking at exterior walls at the following locations:
   a. Between decking and supports located at exterior walls.
   b. Between decking and exterior walls that butt against underside of decking.
   c. Between tongues and grooves of decking over exterior walls and supports at exterior walls.

B. Adjusting
1. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged decking if repairs are not approved by the Owner.

C. Protection
1. Provide temporary waterproof covering as the Work progresses to protect roof decking until roofing is applied.

END OF SECTION 06 15 13 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 15 13 00	06 11 16 00	Rough Carpentry Renovation
06 15 13 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 15 13 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 16 23 00 - SHEATHING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sheathing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Wall sheathing.
b. Roof sheathing.
c. Composite nail base insulated roof sheathing.
d. Subflooring.
e. Underlayment.
f. Building paper.
g. Building wrap.
h. Sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment.
i. Flexible flashing at openings in sheathing.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
c. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.
d. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
e. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
f. For building wrap, include data on air-/moisture-infiltration protection based on testing according to referenced standards.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
c. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
3. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
a. Preservative-treated plywood.
b. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.

c. Foam-plastic sheathing.
d. Building wrap.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
a. Plywood.
b. Oriented strand board.
c. Fiberboard wall sheathing.
d. Particleboard underlayment.
e. Hardboard underlayment.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Stack plywood and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Wood Panel Products, General
1. Plywood: DOC PS 1 **OR** Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated, **as directed**.
2. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.
3. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
4. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

B. Preservative-Treated Plywood
1. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C9.
a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
2. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Application: Treat all plywood, unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat items indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood
1. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27.
a. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
b. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
c. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for roof sheathing and where indicated.
d. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
3. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Application: Treat all plywood, unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat plywood indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
a. Roof and wall sheathing within 48 inches (1220 mm) of fire **OR** party, **as directed**, walls.

b. Roof sheathing.
c. Subflooring and underlayment for raised platforms.

D. Wall Sheathing
1. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I **OR** Exterior **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.
2. Oriented-Strand-Board Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.
3. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 79/C 79M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, gypsum sheathing; with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges.
   a. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.
   a. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Cellulose Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, gypsum sheathing.
   a. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Fiberboard Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 208, Type IV, Grade 1 (Regular) **OR** 2 (Structural), **as directed**, cellulosic fiberboard sheathing with square edges, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 25/32 inch (20 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Extruded-Polystyrene-Foam Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 578, Type IV, in manufacturer's standard lengths and widths with tongue-and-groove or shiplap long edges as standard with manufacturer.
   a. Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
8. Foil-Faced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1289, Type I, Class 2, aluminum-foil-faced, glass-fiber-reinforced, rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation. Foam-plastic core and facings shall have a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested individually.
   a. Thickness: 7/16 inch (11.1 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

E. Roof Sheathing
1. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I **OR** Exterior **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.
2. Oriented-Strand-Board Roof Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.

F. Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing
1. Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing: Rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation with oriented strand board laminated to one face complying with ASTM C 1289, Type V.
2. Vented, Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing:
   a. Rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation complying with ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, with oriented strand board adhered to spacers on one face.
      OR
      Rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation with oriented strand board laminated to one face complying with ASTM C 1289, Type V. Oriented-strand-board face has a second layer of oriented strand board adhered to it with spacers between.
      1) Polyisocyanurate-Foam Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**.
      2) Oriented-Strand-Board Nominal Thickness: 7/16 inch (11.1 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), **as directed**.
      3) Spacers: Wood furring strips or blocks not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick and spaced not more than 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 16 inches (400 mm) **OR** 24 inches (600 mm), **as directed**, o.c.

G. Subflooring And Underlayment
1. Plywood Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: DOC PS 1, Exterior, Structural I, C-C Plugged **OR** Exterior, C-C Plugged **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I, Underlayment **OR** Exposure 1, Underlayment, **as directed**, single-floor panels.
2. Oriented-Stand-Board Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: Exposure 1 single-floor panels.
3. Plywood Subflooring: Exterior, Structural I **OR** Exterior **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, single-floor panels or sheathing.
4. Oriented-Strand-Board Subflooring: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing **OR** single-floor panels or sheathing, **as directed**.
5. Underlayment, General: Provide underlayment in nominal thicknesses indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) over smooth subfloors and not less than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) over board or uneven subfloors.
6. Plywood Underlayment for Resilient Flooring: DOC PS 1, Exterior A-C **OR** Exterior B-C **OR** Exterior, C-C Plugged **OR** Exposure 1 Underlayment, **as directed**, with fully sanded face.
7. Plywood Underlayment for Ceramic Tile: DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged, not less than 5/8-inch (15.9-mm) nominal thickness, for ceramic tile set in organic **OR** epoxy, **as directed**, adhesive.
8. Plywood Underlayment for Carpet: DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged **OR** Exposure 1, Underlayment **OR** Interior, Underlayment, **as directed**.
9. Particleboard Underlayment: ANSI A208.1, Grade PBU **OR** M-2, Exterior Glue, complying with dimensional tolerances and thickness swell requirements of Grade PBU, **as directed**.
10. Hardboard Underlayment: AHA A135.4, Class 4 (Service), Surface S1S; with back side sanded.

H. Fasteners
1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
   a. For roof and wall, **as directed**, sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** of Type 304 stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
5. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
   a. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide screws with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
6. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
   a. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch (0.835 mm) thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 1002.
   b. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 954.
7. Screws for Fastening Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

I. Weather-Resistant Sheathing Paper
1. Building Paper:
   a. ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt-saturated organic felt), unperforated.
      OR

IBC Standard 1404.2, Grade D (water-vapor-permeable, kraft building paper), except that water resistance shall be not less than 1 hour and water-vapor transmission shall be not less than 75 g/sq. m x 24 h.

2. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air retarder; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 535 **OR** 152 **OR** 125 **OR** 63, **as directed**, g through 1 sq. m of surface in 24 hours per ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
   b. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
3. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

J. Sheathing Joint-And-Penetration Treatment Materials
1. Sealant for Paper-Surfaced **OR** Glass-Mat, **as directed**, Gypsum Sheathing Board:
   a. Elastomeric, medium-modulus, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant compatible with joint substrates formed by gypsum sheathing and other materials, recommended by sheathing manufacturer for application indicated, and complying with requirements for elastomeric sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
   OR
   Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing, and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
2. Sheathing Tape for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch (390 by 390 or 390 by 780 threads/m), of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing board and with a history of successful in-service use.
3. Sheathing Tape for Foam-Plastic Sheathing: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by sheathing manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in sheathing.

K. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 **OR** ASTM D 3498, **as directed**, that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.
   a. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) **OR** 0.030 inch (0.8 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**.
3. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General
1. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
2. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
   a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
   b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
   c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304 of the ICC's International Building Code.
   d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's "Standard Building Code."

e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."
f. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code."

4. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
5. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
6. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
7. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

B. Wood Structural Panel Installation
1. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30S, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
2. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
a. Combination Subfloor-Underlayment:
1) Glue and nail **OR** Nail, **as directed**, to wood framing.
2) Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
3) Space panels 1/8 inch (3 mm) apart at edges and ends.
b. Subflooring:
1) Glue and nail **OR** Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, to wood framing.
2) Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
3) Space panels 1/8 inch (3 mm) apart at edges and ends.
c. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
1) Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.
2) Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
3) Space panels 1/8 inch (3 mm) apart at edges and ends.
d. Underlayment:
1) Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, to subflooring.
2) Space panels 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) apart at edges and ends.
3) Fill and sand edge joints of underlayment receiving resilient flooring right before installing flooring.

C. Gypsum Sheathing Installation
1. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
a. Fasten gypsum sheathing to wood framing with nails **OR** screws, **as directed**.
b. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
c. Install boards with a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
d. Install boards with a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
2. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.
3. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent boards without forcing. Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud.

a. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of boards.
b. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.

4. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
   a. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of boards.
   b. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.

D. Fiberboard Sheathing Installation
1. Comply with ASTM C 846 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Fasten fiberboard sheathing panels to intermediate supports and then at edges and ends. Use galvanized roofing nails or galvanized staples, **as directed**; comply with manufacturer's recommended spacing and referenced fastening schedule. Drive fasteners flush with surface of sheathing and locate perimeter fasteners at least 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends.
3. Install sheathing vertically with long edges parallel to, and centered over, studs. Install solid wood blocking where end joints do not occur over framing. Allow 1/8-inch (3-mm) open space between edges and ends of adjacent units. Stagger horizontal joints if any.
4. Cover sheathing as soon as practical after installation to prevent deterioration from wetting.

E. Foam-Plastic Sheathing Installation
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Foam-Plastic Wall Sheathing: Install vapor-relief strips or equivalent for permitting escape of moisture vapor that otherwise would be trapped in stud cavity behind sheathing.

F. Particleboard Underlayment Installation
1. Comply with the National Particleboard Association's recommendations for type of subfloor indicated. Fill and sand gouges, gaps, and chipped edges. Sand uneven joints flush.
   a. Fastening Method: Glue and nail **OR** Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, underlayment to subflooring.

G. Hardboard Underlayment Installation
1. Comply with AHA's "Application Instructions for Basic Hardboard Products" and with hardboard manufacturer's written instructions for preparing and applying hardboard underlayment.
   a. Fastening Method: Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, underlayment to subflooring.

H. Weather-Resistant Sheathing-Paper Installation
1. General: Cover sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper as follows:
   a. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch (13 mm) on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
   b. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch (100-mm) overlap, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Building Paper: Apply horizontally with a 2-inch (50-mm) overlap and a 6-inch (150-mm) end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails.
3. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
   b. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

I. Sheathing Joint-And-Penetration Treatment
1. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.

a. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient quantity of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
b. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing board joints, and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.
c. Apply sheathing tape to joints between foam-plastic sheathing panels and at items penetrating sheathing. Apply at upstanding flashing to overlap both flashing and sheathing.

J. Flexible Flashing Installation
1. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.
a. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
b. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches (100 mm), except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
c. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
d. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
e. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

K. Protection
1. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: Protect sheathing by covering exposed exterior surface of sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper securely fastened to framing. Apply covering immediately after sheathing is installed.

END OF SECTION 06 16 23 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 16 23 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 16 23 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 16 33 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 16 33 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 16 33 00	06 16 23 00	Sheathing
06 16 43 00	06 11 16 00	Rough Carpentry Renovation
06 16 43 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 16 43 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 16 43 00	06 16 23 00	Sheathing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 01 50 81 - PREPARATION FOR RE-ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for preparation for re-roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Roof tear-off.
   b. Partial roof tear-off.
   c. Temporary roofing membrane.
   d. Roof re-cover preparation.
   e. Removal of base flashings.

C. Materials Ownership
1. Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, demolished materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

D. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Existing Membrane Roofing System: Built-up asphalt, Built-up coal-tar, EPDM, CSPE, PVC, TPO, APP-modified bituminous, or SBS-modified bituminous roofing membrane, roof insulation, surfacing, and components and accessories between deck and roofing membrane.
3. Roof Re-Cover Preparation: Existing roofing membrane that is to remain and be prepared for reuse.
4. Roof Tear-Off: Removal of existing membrane roofing system from deck.
5. Partial Roof Tear-Off: Removal of a portion of existing membrane roofing system from deck or removal of selected components and accessories from existing membrane roofing system.
6. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and reinstalled.
7. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not indicated to be removed.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Temporary Roofing: Include Product Data and description of temporary roofing system. If temporary roof will remain in place, submit surface preparation requirements needed to receive permanent roof, and submit a letter from roofing membrane manufacturer stating acceptance of the temporary membrane and that its inclusion will not adversely affect the roofing system's resistance to fire and wind or its FM Global rating, **as directed**.
3. Coal tar roofs can’t be mixed with asphalt roofs. Test materials in accordance with the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
4. Fastener pull-out test report.
5. Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including exterior and interior finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as having been damaged by reroofing operations. Submit before Work begins.
6. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes, such as asbestos-containing material, by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

7. Qualification Data: For Installer including certificate that Installer is licensed to perform asbestos abatement and is approved by warrantor of existing roofing system.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Installer of new membrane roofing system, licensed to perform asbestos abatement in the State or jurisdiction where Project is located, **as directed**, and approved by warrantor of existing roofing system to work on existing roofing, **as directed**.
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning membrane roofing removal. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Reroofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Project Conditions
1. the Owner will occupy portions of building immediately below reroofing area. Conduct reroofing so the Owner's operations will not be disrupted. Provide the Owner with not less than 72 hours' notice of activities that may affect the Owner's operations.
   a. Coordinate work activities daily with the Owner so the Owner can place protective dust or water leakage covers over sensitive equipment or furnishings, shut down HVAC and fire-alarm or -detection equipment if needed, and evacuate occupants from below the work area.
   b. Before working over structurally impaired areas of deck, notify the Owner to evacuate occupants from below the affected area. Verify that occupants below the work area have been evacuated before proceeding with work over the impaired deck area.
2. Protect building to be reroofed, adjacent buildings, walkways, site improvements, exterior plantings, and landscaping from damage or soiling from reroofing operations.
3. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
4. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
   a. A roof moisture survey of existing membrane roofing system is available for Contractor's reference.
   b. The results of an analysis of test cores from existing membrane roofing system are available for Contractor's reference.
   c. Construction Drawings and Project Manual for existing roofing system are provided for Contractor's reference. Contractor is responsible for conclusions derived from existing documents.
5. Limit construction loads on roof, as directed by the Owner. Rooftop equipment wheel loads and for uniformly distributed loads.
6. Weather Limitations: Proceed with reroofing preparation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering existing roofing system or building.
7. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials such as asbestos-containing materials will be encountered in the Work.
   a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work. Existing roof will be left no less watertight than before removal.
   b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner under a separate contract.

   OR

   Hazardous Materials: Present in building to be reroofed. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
   a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
   b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except according to procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

c. Coordinate with hazardous material remediation subcontractor to prevent water from entering existing roofing system or building.

H. Warranty
1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during reroofing, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing roofing system warranty. Notify warrantor before proceeding.
a. Notify warrantor of existing roofing system on completion of reroofing, and obtain documentation verifying that existing roofing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Infill Materials
1. Use infill materials matching existing membrane roofing system materials unless otherwise indicated.
a. Infill materials are specified in a Division 07.

B. Temporary Roofing Materials
1. Design and selection of materials for temporary roofing are responsibilities of Contractor.
2. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).
3. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet.
4. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.
5. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
6. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or IV.

C. Recover Boards
1. Recover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, cellulosic-fiber insulation board; 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
OR
Recover Board: Fan-folded, unfaced, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; 3/16-inch (5-mm) **OR** 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
OR
Recover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate; 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
OR
Recover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate; 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
OR
Recover Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board; 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners, No. 12 or 14, and metal or plastic plates listed in FM Approval's "Approval Guide," designed for fastening recover boards to deck.

D. Auxiliary Reroofing Materials
1. General: Auxiliary reroofing preparation materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with components of existing and new membrane roofing system.
2. Base Sheet Fasteners: Capped head, factory-coated steel fasteners, listed in FM Approval's "Approval Guide."
3. Metal Flashing Sheet: Metal flashing sheet is specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Protect existing membrane roofing system that is indicated not to be reroofed.
   a. Loosely lay 1-inch- (25-mm-) minimum thick, molded expanded polystyrene (MEPS) insulation over the roofing membrane in areas indicated. Loosely lay 15/32-inch (12-mm) plywood or OSB panels over MEPS. Extend MEPS past edges of plywood or OSB panels a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm).
   b. Limit traffic and material storage to areas of existing roofing membrane that have been protected.
   c. Maintain temporary protection and leave in place until replacement roofing has been completed. Remove temporary protection on completion of reroofing.
2. Coordinate with the Owner to shut down air-intake equipment in the vicinity of the Work. Cover air-intake louvers before proceeding with reroofing work that could affect indoor air quality or activate smoke detectors in the ductwork.
3. During removal operations, have sufficient and suitable materials on-site to facilitate rapid installation of temporary protection in the event of unexpected rain.
4. Maintain roof drains in functioning condition to ensure roof drainage at end of each workday. Prevent debris from entering or blocking roof drains and conductors. Use roof-drain plugs specifically designed for this purpose. Remove roof-drain plugs at end of each workday, when no work is taking place, or when rain is forecast.
   a. If roof drains are temporarily blocked or unserviceable due to roofing system removal or partial installation of new membrane roofing system, provide alternative drainage method to remove water and eliminate ponding. Do not permit water to enter into or under existing membrane roofing system components that are to remain.
5. Verify that rooftop utilities and service piping have been shut off before beginning the Work.

B. Roof Tear-Off
1. General: Notify the Owner each day of extent of roof tear-off proposed for that day and obtain authorization to proceed.
2. Remove aggregate ballast from roofing membrane. Store aggregate ballast for reuse, **as directed**.
3. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing using a power broom.
4. Remove pavers and accessories from roofing membrane. Store and protect pavers and accessories for reuse, **as directed**. Discard cracked pavers, **as directed**.
5. Remove protection mat and extruded-polystyrene insulation from protected roofing membrane.
   a. Discard extruded-polystyrene insulation that is wet and exceeds 8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m).
   b. Store extruded-polystyrene insulation for reuse and protect from physical damage.
6. Roof Tear-Off: Remove existing roofing membrane and other membrane roofing system components down to the deck.
   a. Remove cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**.
   b. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry. Remove unadhered bitumen and felts and wet felts.
   c. Remove excess asphalt from steel deck. A maximum of 15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.72 kg/sq. m) of asphalt is permitted to remain on steel decks.
   d. Remove fasteners from deck or cut fasteners off slightly above deck surface, **as directed**.
7. Partial Roof Tear-Off: Where indicated, remove existing roofing membrane and other membrane roofing system components down to the deck.
   a. Remove cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**.
   b. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry. Remove unadhered bitumen and felts and wet felts.
   c. Remove excess asphalt from steel deck. A maximum of 15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.72 kg/sq. m) of asphalt is permitted to remain on steel decks.
   d. Remove fasteners from deck or cut fasteners off slightly above deck surface, **as directed**.

OR

Partial Roof Tear-Off: Remove existing roofing membrane and immediately check for presence of moisture by visually observing cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**, that will remain.

a. Coordinate with the Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections immediately after membrane removal.
b. With an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter, spot check cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**, that will remain.
c. Remove wet or damp boards and roof insulation. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents, **as directed**.
d. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry. Remove unadhered bitumen and felts and wet felts.
e. Remove excess asphalt from steel deck. A maximum of 15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.72 kg/sq. m) of asphalt is permitted to remain on steel decks.
f. Remove fasteners from deck or cut fasteners off slightly above deck surface, **as directed**.

C. Deck Preparation

1. Inspect deck after tear-off **OR** partial tear-off, **as directed**, of membrane roofing system.
2. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263 or by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if moisture condenses under the plastic sheet or if asphalt test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
3. If broken or loose fasteners that secure deck panels to one another or to structure are observed or if deck appears or feels inadequately attached, immediately notify the Owner. Do not proceed with installation until directed by the Owner.
4. If deck surface is not suitable for receiving new roofing or if structural integrity of deck is suspect, immediately notify the Owner. Do not proceed with installation until directed by the Owner.
5. Provide additional deck securement as indicated on Drawings.
6. Replace deck as indicated on Drawings. Replacement deck is specified in Division 31 OR Division 03 OR Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes".

D. Infill Materials Installation

1. Immediately after removal of selected portions of existing membrane roofing system, and inspection and repair, if needed, of deck, fill in the tear-off areas to match existing membrane roofing system construction.
   a. Installation of infill materials is specified in Division 07.
   b. Install new roofing membrane patch over roof infill area. If new roofing membrane is installed the same day tear-off is made, roofing membrane patch is not required.

E. Temporary Roofing Membrane

1. Install approved temporary roofing membrane over area to be reroofed.

   OR

   Install temporary roofing membrane over area to be reroofed. Install two glass-fiber felts **OR** Mechanically fasten base sheet and install a glass-fiber felt, **as directed**, lapping each sheet 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding sheet. Embed glass-fiber felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within equiviscous temperature range. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt.
2. Remove temporary roofing membrane before installing new roofing membrane.

   OR

   Prepare the temporary roof to receive new roofing membrane according to approved temporary roofing membrane proposal **OR** by patching and repairing temporary roofing membrane, **as directed**. Restore temporary roofing membrane to watertight condition. Obtain approval for temporary roof substrate from roofing membrane manufacturer and the Owner before installing new roof.

F. Roof Re-Cover Preparation

1. Remove blisters, ridges, buckles, mechanically attached roofing membrane fastener buttons projecting above the membrane, **as directed**, and other substrate irregularities from existing roofing membrane that inhibit new recover boards from conforming to substrate.
   a. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
   b. Scarify the surface of sprayed polyurethane foam as necessary to achieve a sufficiently uniform plane to receive new recover boards.
   c. Broom clean existing substrate.
   d. Coordinate with the Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections before proceeding with installation of recover boards.
   e. Verify that existing substrate is dry before proceeding with installation of recover boards. Spot check substrates with an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter.
   f. Remove materials that are wet or damp. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
2. Remove blisters, ridges, buckles, mechanically attached roofing membrane fastener buttons projecting above the membrane, **as directed**, and other substrate irregularities from existing roofing membrane that inhibit new recover boards **OR** roofing membrane, **as directed**, from conforming to substrate.
   a. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
   b. Scarify the surface of sprayed polyurethane foam as necessary to achieve a sufficiently uniform plane to receive new recover boards **OR** roofing membrane, **as directed**.
   c. Broom clean existing substrate.
   d. Coordinate with the Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections.
   e. Verify that existing substrate is dry before proceeding with installation. Spot check substrates with an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter.
   f. Remove materials that are wet and damp. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
3. Remove blisters and areas of membrane not fully adhered.

   OR

   Remove mechanically attached roofing membrane fastener buttons projecting above the membrane and other, **as directed**, substrate irregularities that inhibit new recover boards from conforming to substrate.
   a. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
   b. Clean substrate of contaminants such as dirt, debris, oil, and grease that can affect adhesion of coated foamed roofing.
   c. Power vacuum the existing roof surface. If recommended by foam manufacturer, prime dried surface at recommended rate with recommended primer.
   d. Scarify the surface of coated polyurethane roofing as necessary to achieve a suitable substrate for new roofing.
   e. Provide additional uplift securement for existing roofing system with new screws and plates applied to each roof zone at the following densities:
      1) Field of roof, one fastener for each.
      2) Corners of roof, one fastener for each.
      3) Perimeters of roof, one fastener for each. Width of perimeter zone of roof as directed by the Owner.
   f. Verify that surface is dry by pressing litmus paper to surface areas most likely to retain moisture, such as shaded areas and low spots. If paper changes color, surface is too wet to apply foam.
   g. Build up isolated low spots on existing roofing membrane with sprayed foam specified in Division 07 Section "Coated Foamed Roofing" to prevent ponding.

G. Existing Base Flashings

1. Remove existing base flashings around parapets, curbs, walls, and penetrations.
   a. Clean substrates of contaminants such as asphalt, sheet materials, dirt, and debris.
2. Do not damage metal counterflashings that are to remain. Replace metal counterflashings damaged during removal with counterflashings of same metal, weight or thickness, and finish **OR** specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" **OR** specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Specialties", **as directed**.
3. Inspect parapet sheathing for deterioration and damage. If parapet sheathing has deteriorated, immediately notify the Owner.
4. Remove existing parapet sheathing and replace with new pressure-preservative **OR** exterior fire-retardant, **as directed**,-treated plywood sheathing, 19/32 inch (15 mm) thick. If parapet framing has deteriorated, immediately notify the Owner.
   a. Plywood parapet sheathing is specified in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.

H. Fastener Pull-Out Testing
1. Perform **OR** Retain independent testing and inspecting agency to conduct, **as directed**, fastener pull-out tests according to SPRI FX-1, and submit test report to the Owner **OR** roofing membrane manufacturer, **as directed**, before installing new membrane roofing system.
   a. Obtain the Owner's **OR** roofing membrane manufacturer's, **as directed**, approval to proceed with specified fastening pattern. the Owner **OR** Roofing membrane manufacturer, **as directed**, may furnish revised fastening pattern commensurate with pull-out test results.

I. Recover Board Installation
1. Install recover boards over roof insulation **OR** roofing membrane, **as directed**, with long joints in continuous straight lines and end joints staggered between rows. Loosely butt recover boards together and fasten to deck, **as directed**.
   a. Tape joints of recover boards if required by roofing membrane manufacturer.
   b. Fasten recover boards to resist wind-uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof specified in Division 07 Section "Built-up Asphalt Roofing".
   c. Install additional fasteners near board corners and edges as necessary to conform boards to substrate and to adjacent boards.

J. Disposal
1. Collect demolished materials and place in containers. Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
   a. Storage or sale of demolished items or materials on-site is not permitted.
2. Transport and legally dispose of demolished materials off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 07 01 50 81

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 01 50 81a - BUILT-UP COAL-TAR ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for built-up coal-tar roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Built-up coal-tar roofing.
   b. Vapor retarder.
   c. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to built-up roofing.
2. Bitumen: A generic term for either asphalt or coal-tar pitch.
3. Hot Coal-Tar Pitch: Coal-tar pitch heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 25 centipoise for either mopping or mechanical application, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.
4. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed built-up roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Built-up roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by built-up roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design (if built-up roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7): Provide built-up roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
   b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
   c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
4. FM Approvals Listing (if Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard): Provide built-up roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a built-up roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.

5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with the DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For built-up roofing. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Base flashings and built-up terminations.
   b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
   c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
   d. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
4. Samples: For the following products:
   a. Built-up roofing materials, including base sheet, ply sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
   b. Roof insulation.
   c. 3 lb (1.5 kg) of aggregate surfacing material in gradation and color indicated.
   d. Walkway pads.
   e. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that built-up roofing complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of built-up roofing.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of built-up roofing, from the ICC-ES **OR** other applicable model code organization, **as directed**.
9. Maintenance Data: For built-up roofing to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for built-up roofing identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications (if Project is FM Global insured and if a certified roofing installer is required): A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by built-up roofing manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations (if required to comply with FM Approvals, UL, or another building code, or to comply with provisions of manufacturer's special warranty): Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for built-up roofing from same manufacturer as built-up roofing or approved by built-up roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical built-up roofing materials

by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of built-up roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Special warranty includes built-up roofing membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, roof pavers, and other components of built-up roofing.
   b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Base-Sheet Materials
1. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).
2. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
   OR
   Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.
   OR
   Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

B. Roofing Membrane Plies
1. Ply Sheet: ASTM D 227, coal-tar-saturated organic felt.
   OR

Ply Sheet: ASTM D 4990, Type I, coal-tar-impregnated, glass-fiber felt and the physical properties of ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** VI, **as directed**.

C. Base Flashing Sheet Materials
   1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.
      OR
      Backer Sheet: Roofing manufacturer's standard spun-bonded, nonwoven, polyester-reinforced fabric, of standard color and weight, suitable for application method specified.
   2. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, polyester-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced base flashing; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
      a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
   3. Polyester Flashing Sheet: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-coated, polyester-reinforced fabric, base flashing, suitable for application method specified.
   4. Fabric Termination: Roofing manufacturer's standard polyester cloth, suitable for application and for reinforcing top seal of base flashing.

D. Bitumen Materials
   1. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
      OR
      Coal-Tar Primer: ASTM D 43.
   2. Coal-Tar Pitch: ASTM D 450, Type I.
   3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** IV **OR** III or IV as recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer for application, **as directed**.
      OR
      Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.

E. Auxiliary Built-Up Roofing Materials
   1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with built-up roofing.
      a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
      b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
         1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
         2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
         3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
         4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
         5) Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
         6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
         7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
         8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
         9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
   2. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with built-up base flashings.
   3. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing manufacturer for application.
   4. SBS-Modified Asphalt Flashing Cement: Roofing manufacturer's standard, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
   5. Coal-Tar Roofing Cement: ASTM D 5643, coal-tar-based roofing cement, asbestos free.
   6. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening built-up roofing components

to substrate, tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing manufacturer.

7. Metal Flashing Sheet: Metal flashing sheet is specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
8. Metal Termination Bars: Roofing manufacturer's standard predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
9. Roof Coatings: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.
   OR
   Roof Coatings: ASTM D 6083, acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces.
   a. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.
10. Aggregate Surfacing: ASTM D 1863, No. 6 or No. 67, clean, dry, opaque, water-worn gravel or crushed stone, free of sharp edges **OR** crushed slag, free of sharp edges, **as directed**.
11. Walkway Pads: Mineral-granule-surfaced, reinforced asphaltic composition **OR** Polymer-modified, reconstituted solid-rubber, surface-textured, **as directed**, slip-resisting pads, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to built-up roofing manufacturer, 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, thick, minimum.
12. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide miscellaneous accessories recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer.

F. Substrate Boards
   1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
      OR
      Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
      OR
      Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      OR
      Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
   2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

G. Vapor Retarder
   1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
      a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
         OR
         Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
   2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper/polyethylene laminate, two layers, reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, laminated and edge reinforced, with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
   3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold-applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
      OR
      Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s

x sq. m); cold-applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

4. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

H. Roof Insulation

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
3. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other surface.
   a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
4. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
5. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
6. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
7. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96) **OR** 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

I. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with built-up roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate and acceptable to roofing manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
6. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
   OR
   Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
7. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" **OR** "Miscellaneous Carpentry", **as directed**.
8. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
   OR
   Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
9. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   OR

Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
OR
Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
OR
Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.

10. Substrate Joint Tape: 6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-) wide, coated, glass fiber.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
   a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
   b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
   c. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."
   d. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
   e. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
   f. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
      1) Test for moisture by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
   g. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt **OR** coal-tar, **as directed**, primer at a rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
4. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof decks according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Substrate Board Installation
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
   a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to built-up roofing manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Vapor-Retarder Installation
   1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
      a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
   2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
      a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
         OR
         Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
   3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
   4. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
   5. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into built-up roofing system.

E. Insulation Installation
   1. Comply with built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
   2. Install one lapped base sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Nailer Strips: Mechanically fasten 4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-) width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck, spaced 16 feet (4.88 m) apart for roof slopes greater than 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) **OR** 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24), **as directed**.
   4. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of built-up roofing with vertical surfaces or angle changes greater than 45 degrees.
   5. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
   6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
      a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
   7. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
      a. Where installing composite and noncomposite board insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
   8. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
   9. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
   10. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
      a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
      b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
         OR

Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

OR

Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

11. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure, fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
12. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    b. If fastening is calculated from ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure, fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    c. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.

       OR

       Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

       OR

       Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
13. If cover boards will be field installed over roof insulation and immediately below built-up roofing, install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**. Tape joints if required by roofing manufacturer.
    a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

       OR

       Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    b. Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside and immediately bond cover board to substrate.

F. Built-Up Roofing Installation, General
1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
    a. Install roofing system BU-3 **OR** 4 **OR** 5, **as directed**,-N **OR** I **OR** C, **as directed**,-A-A, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and requirements in this Section.
2. For roofing that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install built-up roofing membrane according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing" and as follows:
    a. Deck Type: N (nailable) **OR** I (insulated) **OR** C (concrete or nonnailable), **as directed**.
    b. Base Sheet: 1 **OR** 1, installed over sheathing paper, **as directed**.
    c. Number of Organic Felt Ply Sheets: 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**.
    d. Number of Glass Fiber Ply Sheets: 1, top ply **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**.
    e. Surfacing Type: A (aggregate).

3. Start installation of built-up roofing in presence of manufacturer's technical personnel.
4. Where roof slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) **OR** 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24), **as directed**, install built-up roofing sheets parallel with slope.
   a. Backnail built-up roofing sheets to nailer strips **OR** substrate, **as directed**, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
6. Coordinate installation of built-up roofing so insulation and other components of built-up roofing not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
   a. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed built-up roofing sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt with joints and edges sealed.
   b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
   c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
7. Bitumen Heating: Do not raise bitumen temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed bitumen manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during bitumen heating. Do not heat bitumen within 25 deg F (14 deg C) of flash point. Discard bitumen maintained for more than 4 hours at a temperature exceeding 325 deg F (163 deg C) for coal-tar pitch or finished blowing temperature for roofing asphalt, **as directed**.
   a. Mopping Weights: For interply and other moppings, unless otherwise indicated, apply solid moppings of hot coal-tar pitch between ply sheets at a minimum rate of 20 lb/100 sq. ft. (1 kg/sq. m).
8. SEBS-Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
9. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent bitumen and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging built-up roofing components or adjacent building construction.

G. Roofing Membrane Installation
1. If sheathing paper is required over wood decks by built-up roofing manufacturer, loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
2. Install lapped base sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
   a. Mechanically fasten to substrate, for nailable substrate.
      OR
      Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.
      OR
      Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**, for nonnailable or insulated substrates.
3. Monolithic Membrane: Install two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, ply sheets starting at low point of roofing system. Align ply sheets without stretching. Shingle side laps of ply sheets uniformly to achieve required number of plies throughout thickness of roofing membrane. Shingle in direction to shed water. Extend ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants. Embed each ply sheet in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch to form a uniform membrane without ply sheets touching.
   OR
   Composite Membrane: Install two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, organic felt ply sheets starting at low point of roofing system. Align organic felt ply sheets without stretching. Shingle side laps of organic felt ply sheets uniformly to achieve required number of plies throughout thickness of roofing membrane. Shingle in direction to shed water.
   a. Install finish layer of one lapped coal-tar, glass-fiber ply sheet course over shingled organic felt ply sheets, starting at low point of built-up roofing. Offset laps from laps of preceding

ply sheets and align coal-tar, glass-fiber ply sheet without stretching. Lap in direction to shed water.

b. Extend ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants.

c. Embed each ply sheet in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch applied at rate required by built-up roofing manufacturer, to form a uniform membrane without ply sheets touching.

4. If delayed flood coating and aggregate surfacing of coal-tar, glass-fiber membrane or finish layer are permitted, glaze-coat roofing membrane surface with hot coal-tar pitch applied at a rate of 10 to 15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.5 to 0.75 kg/sq. m) if aggregate surfacing is not applied immediately.

5. Aggregate Surfacing: If surfacing roofing membrane with aggregate, promptly after installing and testing roofing membrane, base flashing, and stripping, flood-coat roof surface with 70 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.5 kg/sq. m) of hot coal-tar pitch. While flood coat is hot and fluid, cast the following average weight of aggregate in a uniform course:

a. Aggregate Weight: 400 lb/100 sq. ft. (20 kg/sq. m) for gravel or crushed stone or 300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m) for slag.

b. Sweep loose aggregate from roof surface and apply another flood coat of not less than 85 lb/100 sq. ft. (4.15 kg/sq. m) of hot coal-tar pitch. While flood coat is hot and fluid, apply a uniform course of aggregate at the following rate. Sweep away loose aggregate and fully embed aggregate by lightly rolling into finished roof surface.

1) Aggregate Weight: 300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m) for gravel or crushed stone 200 lb/100 sq. ft. (10 kg/sq. m) for slag, average.

6. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.

a. Sweep away loose aggregate surfacing and set walkway pads in additional flood coat of hot coal-tar pitch.

H. Flashing And Stripping Installation

1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloping and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by built-up roofing manufacturer.

b. Backer Sheet Application: Install single backer sheet and adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** asphalt roofing cement **OR** SBS-modified asphalt roofing cement **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.

OR

Backer Sheet Application: Install two **OR** three, **as directed**, backer sheets and adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.

c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C). Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing manufacturer.

OR

Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in SBS-modified asphalt roofing cement **OR** asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.

2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above built-up roofing and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of built-up roofing.

3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.

a. Securely fasten top termination of base flashing with continuous metal termination bar anchored into substrate.

b. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.

4. Apply roof coatings to smooth base flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.

5. Install stripping, according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, where metal flanges and edgings are set on built-up roofing.

a. Flashing-Sheet Stripping: Install flashing-sheet stripping in a cold-applied adhesive or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch and extend onto roofing membrane.

OR

Built-up Stripping: Install stripping of not less than two roofing membrane ply sheets, setting each ply in a continuous coal-tar roofing cement or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch, and extend onto roofing membrane 4 inches (100 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.

6. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch (760-by-760-mm) metal flashing in bed of asphalt roofing cement on completed built-up roofing. Cover metal flashing with built-up roofing cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of built-up roofing. Clamp built-up roofing, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
   a. Flashing-Sheet Stripping: Install flashing-sheet stripping in cold-applied adhesive or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch and extend onto roofing membrane.

      OR

      Built-up Stripping: Install stripping of not less than 2 roofing membrane ply sheets, setting each ply in a continuous coating of coal-tar roofing cement or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch, and extend onto roofing membrane 4 inches (100 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.

I. Field Quality Control
   1. Testing Agency: Perform roof tests and inspections, observe flood tests, and prepare test reports.
   2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of built-up roofing as follows:
      a. Approximate quantities of components within built-up roofing will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
      b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
      c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Flood Testing: Flood test each roofing membrane area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing roofing and flashing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
      a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance from top of base flashing.
      b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
      c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.
   4. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
      a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

J. Protecting And Cleaning
   1. Protect built-up roofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
   2. Correct deficiencies in or remove built-up roofing that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
   3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 01 50 81a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 01 50 81	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 01 50 81	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 05 13 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing
07 05 13 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 05 13 00	07 52 13 00	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 05 13 00	07 52 16 00	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 05 13 00	07 53 16 00	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 05 13 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 11 13 00 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bituminous dampproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hot-applied asphalt dampproofing.
2. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.
3. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: For dampproofing, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For dampproofing, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course, molded-sheet drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.

B. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise required.

2.2 HOT-APPLIED ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. Hot-Applied Asphalt: ASTM D 449, Type II **OR** Type III, **as directed**.

B. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.3 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 4586, Type I, Class 1, fibered.

B. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 4479, Type I, fibered or nonfibered.

C. VOC Content: 250 **OR** 300, **as directed,** g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.

B. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.

C. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1.

D. VOC Content: Zero **OR** 30 g/L or less, **as directed**.

E. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.

B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

C. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1. Primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D 1668, Type I.

E. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar **OR** Asbestos-free fibered mastic**, as directed,** of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.

F. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners.

G. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced on one side or both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm), with a compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.

H. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.

I. Protection Course: Smooth-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D 6380, Class S, Type III.

2.6 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Section 334600 "Subdrainage."

B. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side of the core; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, surface moisture, and other conditions affecting performance of bituminous dampproofing work.

1. Test for surface moisture according to ASTM D 4263.

B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.

B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to the dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any, as recommended in writing by prime material manufacturer.

C. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.

B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) over outside face of footing.

1. Extend dampproofing 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where shown as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.

C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.

1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
2. Lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto shelf angles supporting veneer.

D. Where dampproofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete and masonry single-wythe masonry walls, continue dampproofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by dampproofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

3.4 HOT-APPLIED ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. Do not apply hot asphalt when substrate condition causes foaming.

B. Kettle Temperature: Comply with dampproofing-material manufacturer's written instructions, and keep at least 25 deg F (14 deg C) below the flash point.

C. Prime masonry and other porous substrates.

D. Apply a uniform coat of hot asphalt by mopping or spraying at not less than 20 lb or 2.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (1 kg or 1 L/sq. m).

1. Apply a second coat to below-grade foundation walls and where first application has failed to produce a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage. Apply second coat at the rate specified for first coat.

3.5 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).

B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).

C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).

D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).

E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

3.6 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).

B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat primer and one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 5 gal./100 sq. ft. (2 L/sq. m).

C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).

D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).

E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

H. Interior Face of Exterior Concrete Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

I. Interior Face of Single-Wythe Exterior Masonry Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

3.7 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE

A. Where indicated, install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.

1. Support protection course over cured coating with spot application of adhesive type recommended in writing by protection-board manufacturer.
2. Install protection course on same day **OR** within 24 hours, **as directed,** of installation of dampproofing (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or other methods that do not penetrate dampproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

1. Install protection course before installing drainage panels.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 11 13 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 11 13 00	07 14 16 00	Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 13 13 00 - BITUMINOUS WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bituminous waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include recommendations for method of application, primer, number of coats, coverage or thickness, and protection course.

C. Delivery, Storage And Handling
1. Waterproofing materials shall be delivered to the project site in the original sealed containers bearing the name of the manufacturer, contents and brand name. Asphalt shall be protected from freezing in a weathertight enclosure. Reinforcement fabrics shall be protected from moisture damage and moisture absorption in a weathertight enclosure or shall be stored off the ground on pallets, and covered on top and all sides with breathable-type canvas tarpaulins. Plastic sheets cause condensation buildup and therefore shall not be used to cover waterproofing materials. Damaged or deteriorated materials shall be removed from project site.

D. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of waterproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until waterproofing has cured.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Asphalt Waterproofing
1. Primer: Primer for hot-applied asphalt waterproofing shall conform to ASTM D41, asbestos-free, non-fibrated, manufactured with highly ductile soft asphalts and selected hydrocarbons.
2. Above-Grade Hot-Applied Asphalt: For above-grade applications where asphalt will not be exposed to temperatures exceeding 122 degrees F (50 degrees C), hot-applied asphalt for membrane waterproofing system shall conform to ASTM D449, Type II. For above-grade applications where asphalt will be exposed to sunlight and temperatures exceeding 122 degrees F (50 degrees C), hot-applied asphalt shall conform to ASTM D449, Type III.
3. Below-Grade Hot-Applied Asphalt: Hot-applied asphalt for below-grade applications shall conform to ASTM D449, Type I, asbestos-free, manufactured from crude petroleum, suitable for use with membrane waterproofing systems.
4. Reinforcement Fabrics
a. Cotton Fabrics: Cotton fabrics shall be woven entirely of cotton conforming with ASTM D173, thoroughly and uniformly saturated with asphalt.
b. Woven Burlap Fabrics: Woven burlap fabrics shall be composed of 100 percent jute fiber and two cotton threads at each selvage conforming with ASTM D1327, thoroughly and uniformly saturated with asphalt. The fabric mesh shall not be completely closed or sealed by the process of saturation. Sufficient porosity shall be maintained to allow successive moppings of the plying asphalt to seep through. The surface shall not be coated or covered with talc or any other substances that will interfere with the adhesion between fabric and plying asphalt. The fabric surface shall be uniformly smooth and free of

irregularities, folds and knots. The finished woven burlap fabrics shall be free of ragged edges, untrue edges, breaks or cracks, and other visible external defects.

c. Glass Fabrics: Glass fabrics shall conform to ASTM D1668 Type I, asphalt-treated woven glass waterproofing fabrics coated with asphalt.

d. Flashing Cement: Flashing cement shall conform to ASTM D4586, Type I, trowel grade, asbestos free, manufactured from asphalts characterized as adhesive, healing and ductile.

B. Insulation Boards

1. Insulation boards shall conform to ASTM C208 cellulosic fiber boards, construction grade, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick, fibrous-felted homogeneous panel. Insulation boards shall be manufactured from ligno-cellulosic fibers (wood or cane) by a felting or molding process, asphalt-saturated or coated, with a density of 10 to 31 psf (49 to 151 kg/square meter). Surfaces of insulation boards shall be free of cracks, lumps, excessive departure from planeness, or other defects that adversely affect performance.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Surface Preparation

1. Surfaces scheduled for bituminous waterproofing shall be prepared in accordance with waterproofing manufacturer's recommendations. Surface preparation shall be approved prior to waterproofing application.
2. Protection of Surrounding Areas: Before starting the waterproofing work, the surrounding areas and surfaces shall be protected from spillage and migration of asphalt onto other work. Drains and conductors shall be protected from clogging with asphalt.
3. Masonry Surfaces: Surfaces shall be free of oil, grease, dirt, laitance, loose material, frost, debris and other contaminants. Mortar joints shall be flush and free of extraneous mortar and chipped or broken masonry.
4. Concrete Surfaces: Surfaces shall be properly cured, free of form release agents, oil, grease, dirt, laitance, loose material, frost, debris and other contaminants. Form ties shall be cut flush with surface. Sharp protrusions and form match lines shall be removed. Holes, voids, spalled areas and cracks which can damage waterproofing materials shall be repaired. Rough surfaces shall be parged with a well-adhering coat of cement mortar.
5. Metal Surfaces: Surfaces shall be dry and be free of rust, scale, loose paint, oil, grease, dirt, frost and debris.

B. Hot-Applied Asphalt Waterproofing

1. Asphalt waterproofing shall be applied when the ambient temperature is 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or above. Heating kettles and tanks shall be provided with automatic thermostatic control capable of maintaining asphalt temperature. Controls shall be calibrated and maintained in working order for duration of work. At time of application, asphalt shall not be heated above the equiviscous temperature (EVT) recommended by manufacturer. Immediately before use, temperature shall be measured with a portable thermometer at the point of application. EVT and flashpoint temperatures of asphalt in kettle shall be conspicuously posted on kettle. Asphalt with a temperature not conforming to the manufacturer's recommendations shall be returned to the kettle. Asphalt overheated by more than 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) for more than 1 hour shall be removed from site.
2. Below-Grade Wall Waterproofing: Waterproofing for foundation walls shall consist of a 1-ply **OR** 2-ply **OR** 3-ply **OR** 4-ply **OR** 5-ply, **as directed**, hot-applied asphalt membrane system. Fabrics shall be installed using the "shingle" method. Joints shall be caulked prior to primer applications. Primer shall be applied at a rate of 1/2 gallon per 100 square feet (0.2 L/square meter). Fabrics shall be overlapped at ends and staggered a minimum 10 inch (250 mm) for 1-ply **OR** 19 inch (480 mm) for 2-ply **OR** 24 inch (610 mm) for 3-ply **OR** 27 inch (685 mm) for 4-ply **OR** 30 inch (750 mm) for 5-ply, **as directed**, system. End-to-end taping is not acceptable. Each fabric shall be firmly embedded into a solid uniform coating of hot asphalt at a rate of 20 pounds per 100 square

feet (0.98 kg/square meter) by pressing with broom. Fabrics shall not touch fabrics. Hot asphalt shall penetrate each fabric to provide the required adhesion. Asphalt between fabrics shall not be excessive to prevent slippage. Waterproofing system consisting of two or more fabrics shall be provided with fabric reinforcement at corners, angles, over construction joints, and in locations where waterproofing fabrics are subject to unusual stress.

3. Floor Waterproofing: Primer shall be applied at a rate of 1/2 gallon per 100 square feet (0.2 L/square meter). Primer shall not be left in puddles. Primer shall be dry to the touch before application of asphalt. Where slab abuts walls, first reinforcing fabric shall extend 6 inches (150 mm) minimum on slab and 8 inches (200 mm) on wall. At vertical corners, first fabric shall extend minimum 5 inches (125 mm) from corner on each side. Second fabric shall lap the first fabric 2 inches (50 mm) minimum. At floor drains, and elsewhere as indicated, the fabric shall extend into a clamping device, set in a heavy coating of flashing cement, and securely clamped.

C. Flood Testing
   1. Prior to concealment, waterproofed floors over occupied spaces shall be tested for watertightness. Drains shall be plugged and floors shall be submerged with 3 inches (75 mm) of clean water. Water shall be permitted to stand for a minimum of 24 hours. If leaks occur, water shall be drained and repairs made. Upon completion of repairs, floors shall be flooded with 3 inches (75 mm) of clean water and flood testing shall be repeated for minimum of 24 hours from the time each leak is repaired. Waterproofing system shall be completely watertight, and shall be approved in writing before covering up with other materials. Additional coats of asphalt are not an acceptable method for repairing leaks.

D. Clean-Up
   1. Surfaces of other work which are stained with waterproofing materials shall be cleaned with a cleaner recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

E. Protection Of Completed Work
   1. Floor Waterproofing: The completed waterproofing work shall be protected from damage during and after construction. Protective covering shall be placed immediately before proceeding with the work which will conceal the waterproofing.
   2. Wall Waterproofing: Waterproofing against which backfill is to be placed shall be protected with a single layer of insulation board. Insulation boards shall be pressed into the final mopping while the asphalt is still hot, with edges of boards placed into moderate contact and joints staggered. For two-layer installation, joints in second layer shall be staggered over joints in first layer. Where surfaced insulation board is used, the surfaced side shall face outward. Boards shall be carefully and neatly fitted around projections, and shall cover the entire surface of the waterproofing materials. Waterproofing system not covered with protection board shall be protected to prevent damage from subsequent building operations. Installed boards shall not remain exposed at the end of a work day.

END OF SECTION 07 13 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 13 13 00	07 11 13 00	Bituminous Dampproofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 13 53 00 - ELASTOMERIC SHEET WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for elastomeric sheet waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Butyl rubber sheet waterproofing.
   b. EPDM rubber sheet waterproofing.
   c. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
   d. Insulation.
   e. Plaza deck pavers and paver pedestals.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product test reports.
4. Special warranties.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

F. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.

G. Warranty

1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace waterproofing material that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sheet Waterproofing
1. Butyl Rubber Sheet: ASTM D 6134, Type II, 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) **OR** 90-mil- (2.3-mm-) **OR** 120-mil- (3.0-mm-), **as directed**, thick flexible sheet, unreinforced, formed from isobutylene-isoprene rubber.
2. EPDM Rubber Sheet: ASTM D 6134, Type I, 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick flexible sheet, unreinforced, formed from EPDM.

B. Auxiliary Materials
1. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
   a. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Concealed Sheet Flashing: Same material, construction, and thickness as sheet waterproofing or 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, uncured EPDM as required by manufacturer.
3. Exposed Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick EPDM, cured or uncured, as required by manufacturer.
4. Bonding Adhesives: Adhesive for bonding polymeric sheets and sheet flashings to substrates and projections.
5. Splicing Cement and Cleaner: Single-component butyl splicing cement and solvent-based splice cleaner.
   a. Butyl Gum Tape: 30-mil- (0.76-mm-) thick-by-6-1/4-inch- (160-mm-) wide, uncured butyl with polyethylene release film.
6. Lap Sealant: Single-component sealant.
7. In-Seam Sealant: Single-component sealant.
8. Water Cutoff Mastic: Butyl mastic sealant.
9. Waterproofing and Sheet Flashing Accessories: Provide sealants, pourable sealers, cone and vent flashings, inside and outside corner flashings, termination reglets, and other accessories recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use.
10. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard aluminum bars, approximately 1 inch (25 mm) wide, prepunched, with zinc-alloy-body fasteners and stainless-steel pins.
11. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:
    a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch (6 mm), nominal, elsewhere.
    b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
12. Protection Course:
    a. Faced, fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation sandwiched between 2 sheets of plastic film, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm), with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
    b. Unfaced, fan-folded, extruded-polystyrene board insulation, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm) with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621.
    c. Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
    d. Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m) minimum density, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum thickness.

C. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
   1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
   2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
   3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m).

D. Insulation
   1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
      a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
      b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
      c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
      d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
   2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels.
   3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
   4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with 1 side having ribbed drainage channels.
   5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.

E. Plaza Deck Pavers
   1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
   2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
   3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
      a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
   5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, HDPE, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.
      a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Surface Preparation
1. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
3. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
4. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
5. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
6. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions.

B. Fully Adhered Sheet Installation
1. Install fully adhered sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in ASTM D 5843.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply bonding adhesive to substrates at required rate and allow to partially dry.
4. Apply bonding adhesive to sheets and firmly adhere sheets to substrates. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of sheet.
5. Install fully adhered sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
6. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.
7. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
    a. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal sheet waterproofing in place with clamping ring.

C. Partially Adhered Sheet Installation
1. Install partially adhered sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply bonding adhesive to the following areas of substrates and to each sheet at required rate and allow to partially dry:
    a. Upper 25 percent of length of each sheet and 18 inches (457 mm) around perimeter of each sheet.
4. Firmly adhere sheets to substrate. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of sheet.
5. Install partially adhered sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
6. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.

D. Compartmented, Loosely Laid Sheet Installation
1. Install compartmented, loosely laid sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply continuous beads of water cutoff mastic, of size recommended by waterproofing manufacturer, to substrates in a 60-by-60-inch (1500-by-1500-mm) grid pattern before installing sheet.

4. Apply sheets with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
5. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal sheet waterproofing in place with clamping ring.
6. Install compartmented, loosely laid sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
7. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.

E. Seam Installation
1. Cement Splice: Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement and in-seam sealant, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a splice not less than 6 inches (150 mm) wide and to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.
2. Cement and Tape Splice: Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement and butyl gum tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.

F. Sheet Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Form wall flashings using exposed sheet flashing.
3. Extend deck sheet waterproofing to form wall flashings.
   a. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with uncured sheet flashing.
   b. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
4. Cover expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall or deck-to-deck joints by extending deck sheet waterproofing over joints.
5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings with mechanically anchored termination bars.

G. Protection Course Installation
1. Install protection course over waterproofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions and before beginning subsequent construction operations. Minimize exposure of membrane.
   a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

H. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
   a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.

I. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
2. On vertical surfaces, place and secure insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

J. Plaza Deck Paver Installation
   1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
   2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**,-height paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
      a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
   4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
      a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
   5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
   6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.

K. Protection And Cleaning
   1. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
   2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
   3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
   4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 13 53 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 13 53 00	03 01 30 71a	Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 14 13 00 - HOT FLUID-APPLIED RUBBERIZED ASPHALT WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hot fluid-applied rubberized asphalt waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Rubberized-asphalt waterproofing membrane, unreinforced and reinforced.
   b. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
   c. Insulation.
   d. Plaza deck pavers.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins to adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
   a. Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.
3. Product test reports.
4. Sample warranties

D. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project and is eligible to receive special warranties specified.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
2. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
3. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

F. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, or when temperature is below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
   a. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
2. Maintain adequate ventilation during application and curing of waterproofing materials.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace waterproofing and sheet flashings that do not comply with requirements or that fail to remain watertight within five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Waterproofing Membrane
   1. Hot Fluid-Applied, Rubberized-Asphalt Waterproofing Membrane: Single component; 100 percent solids; hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt.

B. Flashing Sheet Materials
   1. Elastomeric Flashing Sheet: 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) minimum, uncured sheet neoprene as follows:
      a. Tensile Strength: 1400 psi (9.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C.
      b. Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412.
      c. Tear Resistance: 125 psi (860 kPa) minimum; ASTM D 624, Die C.
      d. Brittleness: Does not break at minus 30 deg F (34 deg C); ASTM D 2137.

C. Auxiliary Materials
   1. Primer: ASTM D 41, asphaltic primer.
   2. Elastomeric Sheet: 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) minimum, uncured sheet neoprene as follows:
      a. Tensile Strength: 1400 psi (9.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C.
      b. Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412.
      c. Tear Resistance: 125 psi (860 kPa) minimum; ASTM D 624, Die C.
      d. Brittleness: Does not break at minus 30 deg F (34 deg C); ASTM D 2137.
   3. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum termination bars; approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
   4. Sealants and Accessories: Manufacturer's recommended sealants and accessories.
   5. Reinforcing Fabric: Manufacturer's recommended, spun-bonded polyester fabric.
   6. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and nominal thickness of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**.
   7. Protection Course: Manufacturer's standard, 80- to 90-mil- (2.0- to 2.3-mm-) thick, fiberglass-reinforced rubberized asphalt or modified bituminous sheet.

D. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
   1. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve, laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm/ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
   2. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.43-mm) sieve, laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm/ft. (35 L/min. per m).

E. Insulation
   1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square **OR** shiplap, **as directed**, edged.
      a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
      b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
      c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
      d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
   2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.

3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven, geotextile filter fabric.
4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.
5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven, geotextile filter fabric.

F. Plaza Deck Pavers
1. Plaza Deck Pavers:
   a. Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
      OR
      Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
      OR
      Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
      1) Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**.
      2) Face Size: 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 12 by 24 inches (305 by 610 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) square, **as directed**.
      3) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
2. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
3. Paver Supports: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**.
   a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days, and air content of 6 percent.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean and prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for waterproofing application.
2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
3. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
4. Remove grease, oil, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.

a. Abrasive blast clean concrete surfaces uniformly to expose top surface of fine aggregate according to ASTM D 4259 with a self-contained, recirculating, blast-cleaning apparatus. Remove material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, or form-release agents. Remove remaining loose material and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.

5. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, and other voids.

B. Joints, Cracks, And Terminations

1. Prepare and treat substrates to receive waterproofing membrane, including joints and cracks, deck drains, corners, and penetrations according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Rout and fill joints and cracks in substrate. Before filling, remove dust and dirt according to ASTM D 4258.
   b. Adhere strip of elastomeric sheet to substrate in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Extend elastomeric sheet a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of moving joints and cracks or joints and cracks exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, and beyond deck drains and penetrations. Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over elastomeric sheet.
   c. Embed strip of reinforcing fabric into a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Extend reinforcing fabric a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of nonmoving joints and cracks not exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, and beyond roof drains and penetrations.
      1) Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over reinforcing fabric.
2. At expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall or deck-to-deck joints, bridge joints with elastomeric sheet extended a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of joints and adhere to substrates in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over elastomeric sheet.

C. Flashing Installation

1. Install elastomeric flashing sheets at terminations of waterproofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Prime substrate with asphalt primer.
3. Install elastomeric flashing sheet and adhere to deck and wall substrates in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt.
4. Extend elastomeric flashing sheet up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above plaza deck pavers and 6 inches (150 mm) onto deck to be waterproofed.
5. Install termination bars and mechanically fasten to top of elastomeric flashing sheet at terminations and perimeter of roofing.

D. Membrane Application

1. Apply primer, at manufacturer's recommended rate, over prepared substrate and allow to dry.
2. Heat and apply rubberized asphalt according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Heat rubberized asphalt in an oil- or air-jacketed melter with mechanical agitator specifically designed for heating rubberized asphalt.
3. Start application with manufacturer's authorized representative present.
4. Unreinforced Membrane: Apply hot rubberized asphalt to substrates and adjoining surfaces indicated. Spread to form a uniform, unreinforced, seamless membrane, 180-mil (4.5-mm) minimum thickness **OR** 180-mil (4.5-mm) average thickness, but not less than 125 mil (3.2 mm) thick, **as directed**.
5. Reinforced Membrane: Apply hot rubberized asphalt to substrates and adjoining surfaces indicated. Spread to a thickness of 90 mils (2.3 mm); embed reinforcing fabric, overlapping sheets 2 inches (50 mm); spread another 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick layer to provide a uniform, reinforced, seamless membrane 215 mils (5.5 mm) thick.
6. Apply waterproofing over prepared joints and up wall terminations and vertical surfaces to heights indicated or required by manufacturer.

7. Cover waterproofing with protection course with overlapped joints before membrane is subject to backfilling **OR** construction or vehicular traffic, **as directed**.

E. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
   1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use methods that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
      a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.

F. Insulation Installation
   1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
   2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units into rubberized asphalt according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

G. Plaza Deck Paver Installation
   1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
   2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Accurately install fixed-height **OR** adjustable-height, **as directed**, paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
      a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
   4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
      a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
   5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
   6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.

H. Cleaning And Protection
   1. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
   2. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
   3. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 14 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 14 16 00 - COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cold fluid-applied waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Single-component polyurethane waterproofing.
b. Two-component polyurethane waterproofing.
c. Polyester waterproofing.
d. Latex-rubber waterproofing.
e. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
f. Insulation.
g. Plaza deck pavers.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product test reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, shelf life, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

F. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above dew point.

G. Warranty

1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which waterproofing manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Single-Component Polyurethane Waterproofing
   1. Single-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
   2. Single-Component, Reinforced, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
   3. Single-Component, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

B. Two-Component Polyurethane Waterproofing
   1. Two-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
   2. Two-Component, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
   3. Two-Component, Reinforced, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

C. Polyester Waterproofing
   1. Two-Component, Reinforced, Unsaturated Polyester Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

D. Latex-Rubber Waterproofing
   1. Two-Component, Unreinforced, Latex-Rubber Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
   2. Two-Component, Reinforced, Latex-Rubber Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

E. Auxiliary Materials
   1. General: Provide auxiliary materials recommended by manufacturer to be compatible with one another and with waterproofing, as demonstrated by waterproofing manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
   2. Primer: Manufacturer's standard, factory-formulated polyurethane or epoxy primer.
   3. Sheet Flashing: 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) minimum, nonstaining, uncured sheet neoprene.
      a. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended contact adhesive.
   4. Membrane-Reinforcing Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched white polyester fabric, 6-oz./sq. yd. (200-g/sq. m) **OR** 5-oz./sq. yd. (169-g/sq. m) **OR** 3.2-oz./sq. yd. (109-g/sq. m) **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, weight.
   5. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Manufacturer's recommended fiberglass mesh or polyester fabric.
   6. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent polyurethane sealant, compatible with waterproofing, complying with ASTM C 920 Type M, Class 25; Grade NS for sloping and vertical applications or Grade P for deck applications; Use NT exposure; and as recommended by manufacturer for substrate and joint conditions.
      a. Backer Rod: Closed-cell polyethylene foam.

F. Protection Course
   1. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:

a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch (6 mm), nominal, elsewhere.
b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.

2. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced one or both side(s) with plastic film, nominal thickness of 1/4 inch (6 mm), with compressive strength not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621 and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
3. Protection Course: Unfaced, fan-folded, rigid, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; nominal thickness of 1/4 inch (6 mm) with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621.
4. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of molded-polystyrene board insulation faced both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness of 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm), **as directed**, with compressive strength not less than 12 psi (83 kPa) per ASTM D 1621 and water absorption by volume of less than 1 percent per ASTM C 272.
5. Protection Course: Unfaced, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
6. Protection Course: Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m) minimum density, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum thickness.

G. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.43-mm) sieve, laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m).

H. Insulation
1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
2. Unfaced, Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.
3. Geotextile-Faced, Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven-geotextile filter fabric.
4. Unfaced, Plaza Deck, Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.
5. Geotextile-Faced, Plaza Deck, Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven-geotextile filter fabric.

I. Plaza Deck Pavers
   1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
   2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
   3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength of 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
      a. Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**.
      b. Face Size: 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 9-by-18 inches (229-by-457 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 12-by-24 inches (305-by-610 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) square **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      c. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
   5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.
      a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Surface Preparation
   1. Clean and prepare substrate according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for waterproofing application.
   2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage or overspray affecting other construction.
   3. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
   4. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, acid residues, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
      a. Abrasive blast clean concrete surfaces uniformly to expose top surface of fine aggregate according to ASTM D 4259 with a self-contained, recirculating, blast-cleaning apparatus. Remove material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, or form-release agents. Remove remaining loose material and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
   5. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, and other voids.

B. Preparation At Terminations And Penetrations
   1. Prepare vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at expansion joints, drains, and sleeves according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Prime substrate unless otherwise instructed by waterproofing manufacturer.
   3. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications, and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

a. Provide sealant cants around penetrations and at inside corners of deck-to-wall butt joints when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

C. Joint And Crack Treatment
1. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks, complying with ASTM D 4258, before coating surfaces.
a. Comply with ASTM C 1193 for joint-sealant installation.
b. Apply bond breaker between sealant and preparation strip.
c. Prime substrate and apply a single thickness of preparation strip extending a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) along each side of joint. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat.
2. Install sheet flashing and bond to deck and wall substrates where indicated or required according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
a. Extend sheet flashings onto perpendicular surfaces and other work penetrating substrate according to ASTM C 898.

D. Waterproofing Application
1. Apply waterproofing according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Start installing waterproofing in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
3. Apply primer over prepared substrate.
4. Unreinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by spray, roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other application method suitable to slope of substrate.
a. Apply one or more coats of waterproofing to obtain a seamless membrane free of entrapped gases, with an average dry film thickness of 60 mils (1.5 mm) and a minimum dry film thickness of 50 mils (1.3 mm) at any point **OR** 120 mils (3 mm), **as directed**.
b. Apply waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
c. Verify wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).
5. Reinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other suitable application method.
a. Apply first coat of waterproofing, embed membrane-reinforcing fabric, and apply second coat of waterproofing to completely saturate reinforcing fabric and to obtain a seamless reinforced membrane free of entrapped gases, with an average dry film total thickness of 70 mils (1.8 mm) **OR** 80 mils (2 mm) **OR** 120 mils (3 mm)**as directed**, .
b. Apply reinforced waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
c. Verify wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).
6. Install protection course with butted joints over nominally cured membrane before starting subsequent construction operations.
a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

E. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile fabric to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.

F. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.

2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use type of adhesive recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer.
3. On horizontal surfaces, place insulation units unadhered according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

G. Plaza Deck Paver Installation
1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers, in locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**,-height paver pedestals in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
   a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
   a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.

H. Field Quality Control
1. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlaying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
   a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance from top of sheet flashings.
   b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
   c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
2. Engage an independent testing agency to observe flood testing and examine underside of decks and terminations for evidence of leaks during flood testing.

I. Curing, Protection, And Cleaning
1. Cure waterproofing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, taking care to prevent contamination and damage during application stages and curing.
   a. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to ultraviolet light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Immediately after installation, provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 14 16 00

SECTION 07 16 13 00 - MODIFIED CEMENT WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for modified cement waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes polymer-modified cement waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete, concrete unit masonry, and clay masonry.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for polymer-modified cement waterproofing.
2. Samples: For each type of polymer-modified cement waterproofing indicated.
3. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
4. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of polymer-modified cement waterproofing.
6. Field quality-control reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying polymer-modified cement waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit polymer-modified cement waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Field-Mixed, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing
1. Admixture for Field Mixing: Manufacturer's standard polymer admixture for mixing with portland cement and sand to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists positive-side **OR** negative-side, **as directed**, hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.

a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
c. Flexural Strength: Minimum 710 psi (4.8 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
d. Bond Strength: Minimum 220 psi (1.5 MPa) at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.

B. Prepackaged, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing
1. Negative-Side, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Manufacturer's proprietary blend of dry cementitious and other ingredients for mixing with potable water **OR** polymer admixture, **as directed**, to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists negative-side hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.
a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
c. Flexural Strength: Minimum 710 psi (4.8 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
d. Bond Strength: Minimum 220 psi (1.5 MPa) at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
e. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from full range **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.
2. Positive-Side, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Manufacturer's proprietary blend of dry cementitious and other ingredients for mixing with potable water or polymer admixture to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists positive-side hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.
a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
c. Flexural Strength: Minimum 710 psi (4.8 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
d. Bond Strength: Minimum 220 psi (1.5 MPa) at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
e. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from full range **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.

C. Accessory Materials
1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
4. Slurry-Coat and Protective-Topping Sand: ASTM C 144.

5. Trowel-Coat Sand: ASTM C 33, fine aggregate.
6. Polymer Admixture for Protective Topping: Polymer bonding agent and admixture designed to improve adhesion to prepared substrates and to not create a vapor barrier.
7. Water: Potable.

D. Mixes
1. Field-Mixed, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Add polymer admixture to portland cement and sand according to manufacturer's written instructions. Blend together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.
OR
Prepackaged, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Add prepackaged dry ingredients to mixing liquid according to manufacturer's written instructions. Mix together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.
2. Protective Topping: Measure, batch, and mix portland cement and sand in the proportion of 1:3 and water gaged with a polymer admixture. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

B. Preparation
1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
   a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
      1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
      2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
   b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
      1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.
      2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
   c. Clean clay masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 5703.

d. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Application
1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
   a. Saturate surface with water for several hours prior to application with water and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
   b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
   c. Number of Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**.
      1) Coating Thickness: Maximum application thickness of 47 mils (1.2 mm) per coat for total thickness as required for specified water permeability **OR** of 100 mils (2.5 mm), **as directed**.
      2) Apply first coat as a slurry with brush or roller, and apply subsequent coats with brush, roller, spray, or trowel.
      3) Vigorously work first coat onto the substrate, forcing the material into surface voids. Apply each subsequent coat into full contact with previous coat.
      4) Allow manufacturer's recommended time between coats. Dampen surface between coats.
2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth troweled **OR** Brushed **OR** Textured, **as directed**.
3. Curing: Air-cure waterproofing for not less than five days immediately after application and prior to being placed in service.
4. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for not less than three days immediately after application has set, followed by air drying prior to being placed in service unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
5. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
   a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
   b. Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of 24 inches (600 mm) for cast-in-place concrete and 48 inches (1200 mm) for masonry.
   c. Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of 12 inches (300 mm), where floors, but not walls, are treated.
   d. Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.
6. Protective Floor Topping: Apply 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick, protective topping over floor surfaces.

D. Field Quality Control
1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 13 00

SECTION 07 16 16 00 - CRYSTALLINE WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for crystalline waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes crystalline waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete and concrete unit masonry.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for crystalline waterproofing.
2. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
3. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
4. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for crystalline waterproofing.
5. Field quality-control reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying crystalline waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit crystalline waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Waterproofing Materials
1. Crystalline Waterproofing: Prepackaged, gray-colored **OR** white-colored, **as directed**, proprietary blend of portland cement, specially treated sand, and active chemicals that, when mixed with water and applied, penetrates into concrete and concrete unit masonry and reacts chemically with the byproducts of cement hydration in the presence of water to develop crystalline growth within substrate capillaries to produce an impervious, dense, waterproof substrate; that has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction; with properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.

a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

B. Accessory Materials
1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
4. Sand: ASTM C 144.
5. Polymer Admixture for Protective Topping: Polymer bonding agent and admixture designed to improve adhesion to prepared substrates and not to create a vapor barrier.
6. Water: Potable.

C. Mixes
1. Crystalline Waterproofing: Add prepackaged dry ingredients to water according to manufacturer's written instructions. Mix together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.
2. Protective Topping: Measure, batch, and mix portland cement and sand in the proportion of 1:3 and water gaged with a polymer admixture. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

B. Preparation
1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.

1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.

b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.
2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

c. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Application
1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
a. Saturate surface with water for several hours prior to application and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
c. Number of Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**.
d. Application Method: Brush **OR** Spray, **as directed**. Apply to ensure that each coat fills voids and is in full contact with substrate or previous coat.
e. Dampen surface between coats.
2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth **OR** Brushed **OR** Spray Textured, **as directed**.
3. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for three, **as directed**, days immediately after final coat has set, followed by air drying, unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
1) Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of 24 inches (600 mm) for cast-in-place concrete and 48 inches (1200 mm) for masonry.
2) Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of 12 inches (300 mm), where floors, but not walls, are treated.
3) Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.
5. Protective Topping: Apply 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick, protective topping over floor surfaces.

D. Field Quality Control
1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 16 19 00 - METAL-OXIDE WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal-oxide waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes metal-oxide waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete, concrete unit masonry, and clay masonry.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for metal-oxide waterproofing.
2. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
3. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
4. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for metal-oxide waterproofing.
5. Field quality-control reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying metal-oxide waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit metal-oxide waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Waterproofing Materials
1. Metal-Oxide Waterproofing Compound: A product specifically formulated for waterproofing concrete and masonry substrates; containing pulverized iron and a chemical oxidizing agent to cause the iron particles to rust and grow in size in the presence of water; with VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Accessory Materials
1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs,

reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
4. Sand: ASTM C 144.
5. Water: Potable.

C. Mixes
1. Metal-Oxide Coats: Add metal-oxide waterproofing compound to portland cement, sand, and water according to manufacturer's written instructions. Blend together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency for each coat.
2. Protection Coat: Field mix protection coat consisting of portland cement and sand as recommended by same manufacturer as metal-oxide waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions for application over waterproofing. Measure, batch, and mix materials with potable water. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

B. Preparation
1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
    a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
        1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
        2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
    b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
        1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.

2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

c. Clean clay masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 5703.

d. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Application

1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
   a. Saturate surface for several hours prior to application with water and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
   b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
   c. Number of Metal-Oxide Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**.
   d. Application Method: Brush apply the waterproofing, vigorously working first coat onto the substrate and forcing the material into surface voids. Brush each subsequent coat into full contact with previous coat.
   e. Dampen surface between coats.
   f. Allow each coat to set for 24 hours between coats.
   g. Protection Coat: Apply to a thickness of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**, for walls and 1 inch (25 mm) for floors.
2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth **OR** Brushed **OR** Textured, **as directed**.
3. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for three days immediately after final coat has set, followed by air drying prior to being placed in service, unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
   a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
   b. Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of 24 inches (600 mm) for cast-in-place concrete and 48 inches (1200 mm) for masonry.
   c. Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of 12 inches (300 mm), where floors, but not walls, are treated.
   d. Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.

D. Field Quality Control

1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 19 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 17 13 00 - BENTONITE WATERPROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bentonite waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Bentonite waterproofing.
   b. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
   c. Insulation.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include product specifications and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
2. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for interface with other work.
3. Samples: For each of the following products, in sizes indicated:
   a. Waterproofing: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
   b. Drainage Panels: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
   c. Insulation: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
4. Material Certificates: For each type of bentonite waterproofing, from manufacturer.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency **OR** a qualified testing agency, **as directed**, for bentonite waterproofing.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations: Obtain bentonite waterproofing system from single source from single manufacturer. Obtain accessory products used with bentonite waterproofing from sources acceptable to bentonite waterproofing manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original unopened and undamaged containers.
2. Store materials in a dry, well-ventilated space.
3. Remove and replace bentonite materials that have been prematurely exposed to moisture.

F. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit bentonite waterproofing to be installed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
   a. Do not apply waterproofing materials to surfaces where ice or frost is visible. Do not apply bentonite waterproofing materials in areas with standing water.
   b. Placing bentonite clay products in panel or composite form on damp surfaces is allowed if approved in writing by manufacturer.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Installer agree(s) to repair or replace components of bentonite waterproofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Geotextile/Bentonite Sheets
1. Geotextile/Bentonite Waterproofing: Minimum of 1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m) of bentonite clay granules between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together.
   a. Grab Tensile Strength: 95 lbf (422 N) according to ASTM D 4632.
2. Contaminant-Resistant Geotextile/Bentonite Waterproofing: Minimum of 1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m) of bentonite clay granules specially formulated for use in saltwater or contaminated ground water, between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together.
   a. Grab Tensile Strength: 95 lbf (422 N) according to ASTM D 4632.
3. Geotextile-Geomembrane/Bentonite Waterproofing: Minimum of 1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m) of bentonite clay granules between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together; and the woven fabric coated with a low-permeable polypropylene geomembrane.
   a. Grab Tensile Strength: 95 lbf (422 N) according to ASTM D 4632.
4. Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum of 1.1 lb/sq. ft. (5.4 kg/sq. m) of bentonite clay granules bonded to nonwoven geotextile polypropylene fabric, with HDPE bonded to surface of nonwoven fabric.
   a. Grab Tensile Strength: 120 lbf (534 N) according to ASTM D 4632.
   b. Puncture Resistance: 140 lbf (620 N) according to ASTM D 4833.
   c. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
5. Contaminant-Resistant Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum of 1.1 lb/sq. ft. (5.4 kg/sq. m) of bentonite clay granules specially formulated for use in saltwater or contaminated ground water, bonded to nonwoven geotextile polypropylene fabric, with HDPE bonded to surface of nonwoven fabric.
   a. Grab Tensile Strength: 120 lbf (534 N) according to ASTM D 4632.
   b. Puncture Resistance: 140 lbf (620 N) according to ASTM D 4833.
   c. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.

B. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane
1. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum 90-mil- (2.3-mm-) thick membrane consisting of a 12-mil- (0.5-mm-) thick, HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay granules 78 mils (1.9 mm) thick.
   a. Puncture Resistance: 169 lbf (752 N) according to ASTM E 154.
   b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
2. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane with Protective Facing: Minimum 170-mil- (4.3-mm-) thick membrane consisting of HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay granules and with a spun polypropylene facing.
   a. Puncture Resistance: 169 lbf (752 N) according to ASTM E 154.
   b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
3. Composite HDPE/Bentonite-Polymer Membrane: Minimum 200-mil- (5-mm-) thick membrane consisting of HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite-polymer clay granules.
   a. Puncture Resistance: 75 lbf (334 N) according to ASTM D 4833.
   b. Vapor Permeance: 0.005 perms according to ASTM E 96.
4. Composite Gastight HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum 150-mil- (3.8-mm-) thick membrane consisting of a 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay.

a. Puncture Resistance: 169 lbf (752 N) according to ASTM E 154.
b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.

5. Composite Saline/Alkaline HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum 150-mil- (3.8-mm-) thick membrane consisting of a 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay granules.
   a. Puncture Resistance: 169 lbf (752 N) according to ASTM E 154.
   b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.

C. Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane
1. Geotextile/Bentonite-Polymer Waterproofing: Minimum 250-mil- (6.4-mm-) thick membrane of bentonite-polymer clay granules between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together.
   a. Puncture Resistance: 75 lbf (334 N) according to ASTM D 4833.
   b. Vapor Permeance: 0.005 perms according to ASTM E 96.

D. Bentonite Panels
1. Standard Panels: 3/16-inch- (5-mm-) thick, corrugated kraft-paper panels with a minimum of 1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m) of bentonite confined in corrugations of boards.
2. Coated Panels: 3/16-inch- (5-mm-) thick, corrugated kraft-paper panels specially coated to resist premature hydration due to incidental moisture; filled with a minimum of 1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m) of bentonite.
3. Contaminant-Resistant Panels: 3/16-inch- (5-mm-) thick, corrugated kraft-paper panels with a minimum of 1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m) of contaminant-resistant granular bentonite specially formulated for use in contaminated ground-water conditions; confined in corrugations of boards.

E. Installation Accessories
1. Granular Bentonite: Sodium bentonite clay containing a minimum of 90 percent montmorillonite (hydrated aluminum silicate), with a minimum of 90 percent passing a No. 20 (0.85-mm) sieve.
2. Bentonite Mastic: Trowelable consistency, bentonite compound, specifically formulated for application at joints and penetrations.
3. Granular Bentonite Tubes: Manufacturer's standard 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter, water-soluble tube containing approximately 1.5 lb/ft. (2.2 kg/m) of bentonite; hermetically sealed; designed specifically for placing on wall footings at line of joint with exterior base of wall.
4. Termination Bar: Extruded-aluminum or formed-stainless-steel bars with upper flange to receive sealant.
5. Plastic Protection Sheet: Polyethylene sheeting complying with ASTM D 4397; thickness recommended by waterproofing manufacturer to suit application but at least 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick.
6. Cement Grout Patching Material: Manufacturer's recommended grout mix compatible with substrate being patched.
7. Masonry Fasteners: Case-hardened nails or hardened-steel, powder-actuated fasteners. Depending on manufacturer's written requirements, provide 1/2- or 1-inch- (13- or 25-mm-) diameter washers under fastener heads.
8. Sealants: As recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer. Comply with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
9. Tapes: Waterproofing manufacturer's recommended tape for joints between sheets, membranes, or panels.
10. Adhesive: Water-based adhesive used to secure waterproofing to both vertical and horizontal surfaces.
11. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners, and as follows:
    a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch (6 mm), nominal, elsewhere.
12. Geotextile Protection Course: As recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
13. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".

14. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per foot (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
15. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm per foot (35 L/min. per m).
16. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square **OR** shiplap, **as directed**, edged.
    a. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    b. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    c. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
17. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.
18. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
19. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate preparations affecting performance of bentonite waterproofing.
2. Verify that substrate is complete and that work that will penetrate waterproofing is complete and rigidly installed.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Coordinate work in the vicinity of waterproofing to ensure proper conditions for installing the waterproofing system and to prevent damage to waterproofing after installation.
2. Formed Concrete Surfaces: Remove fins and projections. Fill voids, rock pockets, form-tie holes, and other defects with bentonite mastic or cement grout patching material according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Horizontal Concrete Surfaces: Remove debris, standing water, oily substances, mud, and similar substances that could impair the bonding ability of concrete or the effectiveness of waterproofing. Fill voids, cracks greater than 1/8 inch (3 mm), honeycomb areas, and other defects with bentonite mastic or cement grout patching material according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Excavation Support and Protection System: If water is seeping, use plastic protection sheets or other suitable means to prevent wetting the bentonite waterproofing. Fill minor gaps and spaces 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider with wood, metal, concrete, or other appropriate filling material. Cover or fill large voids and crevices with cement mortar according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Installation, General
   1. Install waterproofing and accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      a. Apply granular bentonite around penetrations in horizontal surfaces and changes in plane according to manufacturer's details in preparation for granular bentonite tubes and mastic.
      b. Apply granular bentonite tubes, bentonite mastic, or both at changes of plane, construction joints in substrate, projections, and penetrations.
   2. Apply granular bentonite tubes continuously on footing against base of wall to be waterproofed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Protect waterproofing from damage and wetting before and during subsequent construction operations. Repair punctures, tears, and cuts according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   4. Install protection course before backfilling or placing overburden when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

D. Geotextile/Bentonite Sheet Installation
   1. General: Install a continuous layer of waterproofing sheets directly against concrete to be waterproofed. Lap ends and edges a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) on horizontal and vertical substrates. Stagger end joints between sheets a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm). Fasten seams by stapling to adjacent sheet or nailing to substrate.
   2. Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Place waterproofing sheets on compacted substrate with ends and edges lapped and stapled.
      a. Install a layer of waterproofing sheets under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) up or beyond perimeter slab forms.
   3. Concrete Walls: Starting at bottom of wall, apply waterproofing sheets horizontally with primary backing side against wall. Secure with masonry fasteners spaced according to manufacturer's written instructions. Extend to bottom of footing, grade beam, or wall, and secure.
      a. Termination at Grade: Extend waterproofing sheets to within 2 inches (50 mm) of finish grade unless otherwise indicated. Secure top edge with termination bar. Apply sealant to top edge of termination bar.

         OR

         Termination at Grade: Fasten top edge of waterproofing sheets to wall and protect top edge with sheet metal counterflashing. Cover waterproofing with a lapped course of plastic protection sheets if backfilling does not proceed immediately.
   4. Excavation Support and Protection (Permanent Shoring): Encase tieback rods, nuts, and plates, using bentonite mastic and waterproofing sheets, according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for each configuration.
      a. Install a layer of waterproofing sheets, with ends and edges lapped and nailed to shoring. Cover waterproofing with plastic protection sheets if needed for protection from precipitation; remove plastic sheets before placing concrete.
      b. Inspect and repair waterproofing after reinforcing steel has been placed. Coordinate and control concrete placement to avoid damage to waterproofing.

E. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane Installation
   1. General: Install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm). Stagger end joints between membranes. Seal joints with permanent seam tape.
   2. Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Apply waterproofing membrane with HDPE side down and staple ends and edges.
      a. Install under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) up or beyond perimeter slab forms.
      b. Protect waterproofing from damage caused by reinforcing bar supports with sharp edges.
   3. Slabs: Starting at lowest point, install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm).
   4. Vertical Concrete or Masonry Walls: Apply mastic around penetrations and form continuous 2-inch (50-mm) cant at intersection of footings and walls with mastic.

a. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane horizontally, extending a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) onto the footing. Lap membrane ends and edges a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm).
b. Secure membrane to wall with adhesive or washer-headed fasteners, and tape terminations of membrane at grade.

5. Excavation Support and Protection: Cut, clean, and treat tiebacks and similar projections. Encase tieback rods, nuts, and plates. If water is present, cover shoring and lagging with plastic protection sheets.
   a. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and nailed to shoring.
6. Horizontal Roofs, Plazas, and between Slabs: Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and taped a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
   a. Prime concrete substrates. Primer may be omitted on concrete surfaces that comply with requirements for dryness, surface texture, and freedom from imperfections.
   b. Install bentonite side of membrane against the material to be waterproofed.
   c. Terminations at Vertical Surfaces: Provide a fillet or cant at intersection of horizontal and vertical substrates. Extend waterproofing membrane to top of curb or to a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) above plane of waterproofing; secure with manufacturer's recommended tape.
   d. Cover waterproofing with a plastic slip-sheet.

F. Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane Installation
1. General: Install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm). Stagger end joints between membranes. Seal joints with permanent seam tape.
2. Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Apply waterproofing membrane with HDPE side down and staple ends and edges.
   a. Install under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) up or beyond perimeter slab forms.
   b. Protect waterproofing from damage caused by reinforcing bar supports with sharp edges.
3. Concrete Walls: Starting at bottom of wall, apply waterproofing membrane with HDPE side facing Installer; overlap sheets 3 inches (75 mm). Secure with powder-actuated fasteners or case-hardened nails. Extend to bottom of footing, grade beam, or wall, and secure.
   a. Termination at Grade: Extend waterproofing membrane to within 2 inches (50 mm) of finish grade unless otherwise indicated. Secure top edge with termination bar. Apply sealant to top edge of termination bar.
4. Excavation Support and Protection (Permanent Shoring): Cut, clean, and treat tiebacks and similar projections. Encase tieback rods, nuts, and plates. If water is present, cover shoring and lagging with plastic protection sheets; remove plastic sheets before placing concrete.
   a. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and mechanically secured to shoring.
   b. Inspect and repair waterproofing membrane after reinforcing steel has been placed. Coordinate and control concrete placement to avoid damage to waterproofing.
5. Horizontal Slabs, Roofs, and Plazas: Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and taped a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
   a. Clean overlap area and apply waterproof tape, rolling the exposed edge to seal to sheet below.
   b. Turn edges up and seal to vertical surfaces.
   c. Cover waterproofing with a plastic slip-sheet.

G. Bentonite Panel Installation

1. General: Install a continuous layer of bentonite waterproofing panels with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Stagger joints in adjoining panel rows.
   a. Install a double layer of waterproofing panels, with ends and edges butted instead of lapped and with second layer of joints staggered over first. Staple panels together to hold them in place.
2. Concrete Walls: Starting at bottom of wall, apply waterproofing panels with ends and edges lapped and with vertical joints staggered. Secure with fasteners or adhesive recommended in writing by manufacturer. Extend to bottom of footing, grade beam, or wall.
   a. Horizontal-to-Vertical Transitions: Install granular bentonite tubes immediately before backfilling and compact backfill over the joint.
   b. Termination at Grade: Extend waterproofing panels to within 2 inches (50 mm) of finish grade unless otherwise indicated. Secure top edge with termination bar. Apply sealant to top edge of termination bar.
      OR
      Termination at Grade: Fasten top edge of waterproofing panels to wall and protect top edge with sheet metal counterflashing.
   c. Cover waterproofing panels with a lapped course of plastic protection sheets; remove plastic sheets before backfilling.

H. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
   a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.

I. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

J. Field Quality Control
1. Inspection: Arrange for manufacturer's representative to inspect completed waterproofing installation before covering with other construction and provide written report that installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Remove and replace applications of bentonite waterproofing where inspection indicates that it does not comply with specified requirements.
2. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlaying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
   a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) but not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance from top of membrane flashings.
   b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48, **as directed**, hours.
   c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood test, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
3. Perform additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 17 13 00

SECTION 07 19 13 00 - WATER REPELLENTS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water repellents. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes penetrating and film-forming water-repellent coatings for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
   a. Concrete (unpainted).
   b. Cast stone.
   c. Brick masonry.
   d. Concrete unit masonry (unpainted and unglazed).
   e. Portland cement plaster (stucco).
   f. Stonework.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Performance Testing: Provide water repellents that comply with test-performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of tests performed by manufacturer **OR** based on Project-specific preconstruction testing, **as directed**, by a qualified independent testing agency on manufacturer's standard products applied to substrates simulating those on Project using same application methods to be used for Project.
   a. Engage testing agency to perform preconstruction tests on laboratory mockups.
   b. Select sizes and configurations of assemblies to adequately demonstrate capability of water repellents to comply with performance requirements.
   c. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of the dates and times when assemblies will be constructed.
2. Absorption: Minimum 80 **OR** 90, **as directed**, percent reduction of absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
   a. Brick: ASTM C 67.
   b. Stone: ASTM C 97.
   c. Concrete Unit Masonry: ASTM C 140.
   d. Hardened Concrete: ASTM C 642.
3. Water-Vapor Transmission: Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 96.
4. Permeability: Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM D 1653.
5. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Maximum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 514.
6. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water repellency after 2500 hours of weathering in comparison to specimens before weathering, per ASTM G 154.
   a. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
   b. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product test reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

F. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.
a. Warranty Period: Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Penetrating Water Repellents
1. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
2. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
3. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Pigmented, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
4. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with more than 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) of VOCs.
5. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomerous alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
6. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomerous alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
7. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomerous alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with more than 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) of VOCs.
8. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blends with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
9. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blends with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
10. Proprietary-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins (silanes or siloxanes), polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
11. Proprietary-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins (silanes or siloxanes), polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.

B. Film-Forming Water Repellents
1. Silicone Sealer, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, polymerized, silicone-resin water repellent for dense substrates; with a solvent- or water-based solution containing not less than 3 and up to 5 percent solids by weight; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
2. Silicone-Sealer, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, polymerized, silicone-resin water repellent for dense substrates; with a solvent- or water-based solution containing not less than 3 and up to 5 percent solids by weight; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
3. Proprietary-Blend, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins, acrylics, polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
4. Proprietary-Blend, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins, acrylics, polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.

5. Siliconate, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
6. Acrylic, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear **OR** Pigmented, **as directed**, breathing coating of acrylic resins; with a water-based, solvent-based, or acrylic emulsion solution containing less than 15 percent solids by volume; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
   a. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Acrylic, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Pigmented, with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
   a. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of substances that might interfere with penetration or performance of water repellents. Test for moisture content, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure that surface is dry enough.
   a. Cast-in-Place Concrete: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that could prevent adhesion or penetration of water repellents.
   b. Clay Brick Masonry: Clean clay brick masonry per ASTM D 5703.
2. Test for pH level, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure chemical bond to silicate minerals.
3. Protect adjoining work, including sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live plants and grass.
4. Coordination with Sealants: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.
   a. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those used in the work.
5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Application
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
2. Apply a heavy-saturation spray coating of water repellent on surfaces indicated for treatment using low-pressure spray equipment. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for using airless spraying procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Precast Concrete: At Contractor's option, first application of water repellent on precast concrete units may be completed before installing units. Mask sealant-bond surfaces to prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces.
3. Apply a second saturation spray coating, as directed, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

C. Cleaning
1. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Repair damage caused by water-repellent application. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 19 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 19 16 00	07 19 13 00	Water Repellents

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 21 13 13 - MODIFIED BITUMOUS PROTECTED MEMBRANE ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for modified bituminous protected membrane roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes APP-modified and SBS-modified bituminous protected membrane roofing.

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: If membrane roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7, provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
   b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
   c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
4. FM Approvals Listing: If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard, provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
   OR
   Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with the DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
   OR

Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance not less than 0.70 and Thermal Emittance not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
   b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
   c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
4. Samples: For the following products:
   a. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
   b. Roof insulation.
   c. 10 lb (4.5 kg) of aggregate ballast in gradation and color indicated.
   d. Roof paver, full sized, in each color and texture required.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES or applicable model code organization.
9. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, roof pavers, and other components of membrane roofing system.
   b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. APP-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials
1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
   OR
   Granule-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

B. SBS-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials
1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
   OR

Granule-Surface Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

OR

Metal-Foil-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.

C. Base-Sheet Materials

1. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
   a. Weight: 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m) **OR** 50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m) **OR** 75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, minimum.

   OR

   Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

   OR

   Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

D. Base-Ply Sheet Materials

1. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** Type VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

E. Base Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

   OR

   Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
3. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet (for use with APP-modified roofing membranes): ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester

fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

4. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet (for use with SBS-modified roofing membranes): ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
5. Metal-Foil-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

F. Auxiliary Roofing Membrane Materials
1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
   a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
      1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      2) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
      3) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
      4) Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
      5) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
      6) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
      7) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
      8) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** Type IV **OR** Type III or IV as recommended by roofing manufacturer for application, **as directed**.
   OR
   Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
4. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
5. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing manufacturer for application.
6. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen, nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate, tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
8. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
   OR
   Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
9. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

10. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated **OR** Slate, **as directed**, roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
11. Separator Sheet: Polyethylene sheet, 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, minimum.
12. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

G. Coating Materials
1. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified, fibered **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, filled or fibered, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, asbestos free.
OR
Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, nonfibered.
OR
Roof Coating: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** Type III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.
OR
Roof Coating: Acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces and complying with ASTM D 6083.
a. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.

H. Roof Insulation
1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type VI, 1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VII, 2.2 lb/cu. ft. (35 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, with two or four edges rabbeted.
3. Mortar-Faced, Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type VI, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m) minimum density, with tongue-and-groove edges on long dimension, and latex-modified cement mortar topping, 3/8 inch (9 mm) thick, 4.5 lb/sq. ft. (19.5 kg/sq. m) **OR** 15/16 inch (23 mm) thick, 11 lb/sq. ft. (53.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.

I. Insulation Accessories
1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.
3. Metal Securement System: Perimeter securement flashing and strapping fabricated from stainless steel, a minimum of 0.031 inch (0.8 mm) thick. Provide fasteners as recommended by mortar-faced insulation manufacturer.

J. Ballast
1. Aggregate Ballast: Washed, crushed stone or smooth stone that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation; of the following size:
a. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 5, ranging in size from 1/2 to 1 inch (13 to 25 mm).
b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm).
c. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm).
2. Interlocking Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled. Size and weight shall be as directed.
a. Compressive Strength: 2500 psi (17 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
b. Colors and Textures: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

3. Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
   a. Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm). Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
   b. Weight: Weight shall be as directed.
   c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum; ASTM C 140.
   d. Colors and Textures: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   e. Paver Supports: Integral corner pedestals.
      OR
      Paver Supports: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
   1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
      a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
      b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations.
      c. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
      d. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
         1) Test for moisture by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
      e. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
   2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
   1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
   2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
   3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.

C. Roofing Membrane Installation, General
   1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
      a. Install roofing system MBA **OR** S, **as directed**,-4-C-T **OR** M **OR** L, **as directed**,-P, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and requirements in this Section.

2. For roof system that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
   a. Membrane: A (APP) **OR** S (SBS), **as directed**.
   b. Deck Type: C (concrete or nonnailable).
   c. Adhering Method: T (torched) **OR** M (mopped) **OR** L (cold-applied adhesive), **as directed**.
   d. Base Sheet: One.
   e. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One.
   f. Number of Modified Asphalt Sheets: Two.
   g. Surfacing Type: P (protected).
3. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
4. Where roof slope exceeds 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24) **OR** 3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18), **as directed**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
   a. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
6. Coordinate installing roofing system so components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
   a. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt with joints and edges sealed.
   b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
   c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
7. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within 25 deg F (14 deg C) of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.
   OR
   Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

D. Base-Sheet Installation
   1. Install lapped base sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
      a. Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.
         OR
         Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.

E. Base-Ply Sheet Installation
   1. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend glass-fiber base-ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt, to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.

F. Modified Bituminous Membrane Installation

1. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane sheet and cap sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
   a. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
2. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
   a. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
   b. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
3. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.

G. Flashing And Stripping Installation
1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloping and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
   b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.
      OR
      Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer, **as directed**.
   c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C). Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above roofing membrane and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of roofing membrane.
3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
   a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
4. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch (760-by-760-mm) metal flashing in bed of roofing-manufacturer-approved asphaltic adhesive on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
   a. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Coating Installation
1. Apply coatings to base flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.

I. Insulation Installation
1. Loosely lay separator sheet over cooled roofing membrane, with minimum 2-inch (50-mm) side laps and 4-inch (150-mm) end laps.

2. Loosely lay board insulation units over roofing membrane, with long joints of insulation in continuous straight lines and with end joints staggered between rows. Abut edges and ends between units.
3. Install one or more layers of insulation to achieve required thickness over roofing membrane. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
   a. Where overall insulation thickness is 2 inches (50 mm) or more, install required thickness in two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered over joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
4. Install geotextile fabric over insulation, overlapping edges and ends at least 12 inches (300 mm). Do not lap ends of fabric sheets within 72 inches (1800 mm) of roof perimeter. Extend fabric 2 to 3 inches (50 to 75 mm) above ballast at perimeter and penetrations. Apply additional layer of fabric around penetrations to prevent aggregate from getting between penetration and insulation. Do not cover drains or restrict water flow to drains.

J. Ballast Installation
1. To roofed area, apply aggregate ballast uniformly over geotextile fabric at rate required by insulation manufacturer, but not less than the following, carefully spreading aggregate to not damage roofing membrane and base flashings. Install roof-paver ballast according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions, **as directed**. Apply ballast as insulation is installed, leaving roofing membrane insulated and ballasted at end of workday.
   a. Ballast (Dow's "Standard Design"): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 5 aggregate within 102 inches (2600 mm) of roof perimeter and corners and 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m), Size 5 aggregate elsewhere.
      1) If partially replacing aggregate ballast with roof pavers, install one row of roof pavers in lieu of aggregate ballast at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations.
   b. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #1"): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 4 aggregate within 102 inches (2600 mm) of roof perimeter and corners and 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 12 lb/sq. ft. (60 kg/sq. m), Size 4 aggregate elsewhere.
   c. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #1") (if combining aggregate ballast with roof pavers): 12 lb/sq. ft. (60 kg/sq. m), Size 4 aggregate to field of roof; install two rows of roof pavers at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
   d. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #2") (for aggregate ballast with roof pavers at corners): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 2 aggregate within 102 inches (2600 mm) of roof perimeter and 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), Size 2 aggregate to field of roof; and install three rows of roof pavers at corners of roof according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
   e. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #2") (if combining aggregate ballast with roof pavers at roof perimeters, corners, and penetrations): 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), Size 2 aggregate to field of roof and install three rows of concrete pavers at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first perimeter and perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
   f. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #3"): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 2 aggregate within 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), Size 2 aggregate to field of roof; and install four rows of roof pavers at roof perimeter and corners according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first two perimeter and perimeter corner rows of roof pavers.
2. Walkway Pavers: Install walkways formed from one row **OR** two rows, **as directed**, of roof pavers, loosely laid and butted.

K. Roof-Paver Installation
1. Interlocking Roof Pavers: Install interlocking roof pavers over roofed area according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #1", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
3. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #2", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten roof-paver metal straps to center of first perimeter and first perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
4. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #3", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten roof-paver metal straps to center of first two perimeters and first two perimeter corner rows of roof pavers.
5. Install roof pavers on pedestals set according to pedestal manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Mortar-Faced Board Insulation Installation
1. Install mortar-faced board insulation loosely laid, according to manufacturer's written instructions, with tongue-and-groove joints nested. Stagger end joints of adjoining rows and abut insulation.
   a. Mechanically fasten metal securement strapping at penetrations and at perimeter edges of mortar-faced board insulation.
   b. Over mortar-faced board insulation, install roof pavers on roof perimeter and corners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install one row **OR** two rows, **as directed**, of 24-inch- (600-mm-) wide roof pavers to roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to mortar-faced board insulation manufacturer's written instructions.

M. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Perform tests and inspections and to prepare reports.
2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
   a. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
   b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
   c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
   a. Notify the Owner and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
4. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
   a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

N. Protecting And Cleaning
1. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner and Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 21 13 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 21 13 13	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 52 13 00	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 52 16 00	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 53 16 00	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 52 13 00	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 52 16 00	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 53 16 00	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 52 13 00	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 52 16 00	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 53 16 00	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 21 16 00 - BUILDING INSULATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for building insulation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Perimeter insulation under slabs-on-grade.
b. Perimeter wall insulation (supporting backfill).
c. Cavity-wall insulation.
d. Concealed building insulation.
e. Exposed building insulation.
f. Loose-fill building insulation.
g. Self-supported, spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
h. Radiant barriers.
i. Vapor retarders.
j. Sound attenuation insulation.

C. Definitions
1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Plenum Rating: Provide glass-fiber **OR** slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber, **as directed**, insulation where indicated in ceiling plenums whose test performance is rated as follows for use in plenums as determined by testing identical products per "Erosion Test" and "Mold Growth and Humidity Test" described in UL 181, or on comparable tests from another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
a. Erosion Test Results: Insulation shows no visible evidence of cracking, flaking, peeling, or delamination of interior surface of duct assembly, after testing for 4 hours at 2500-fpm (13-m/s) air velocity.
b. Mold Growth and Humidity Test Results: Insulation shows no evidence of mold growth, delamination, or other deterioration due to the effects of high humidity, after inoculation with Chaetomium globosium on all surfaces and storing for 60 days at 100 percent relative humidity in the dark.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: Full-size units for each type of exposed insulation indicated.
3. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
4. Product test reports.
5. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
   b. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
   c. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
2. Protect plastic insulation as follows:
   a. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
   b. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
   c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation
1. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively:
   a. Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m), unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Type X, 1.30 lb/cu. ft. (21 kg/cu. m).
   c. Type VI, 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m).
   d. Type VII, 2.20 lb/cu. ft. (35 kg/cu. m).
   e. Type V, 3.00 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m).
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Drainage Panels: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below and fabricated with one side having a matrix of drainage and edge channels.
   a. Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m).
   b. Type VI, 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m).
   c. Type VII, 2.20 lb/cu. ft. (35 kg/cu. m).
3. Fabric-Faced, Extruded-Polystyrene Drainage Panels: ASTM C 578, Type VI, with a density of 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m), faced with insulation manufacturer's standard nonwoven filtration fabric and fabricated with 1 side having a matrix of drainage and edge channels.
4. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively:
   a. Type I, 0.90 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m).
   b. Type VIII, 1.15 lb/cu. ft. (18 kg/cu. m).
   c. Type II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m).
5. Foil-Faced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I, Class 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, based on tests performed on unfaced core on thicknesses up to 4 inches (101 mm).

B. Cellular-Glass Insulation
1. Cellular-Glass Insulation: ASTM C 552 Type I (flat block) **OR** IV (board) faced on both sides with manufacturer's special kraft-paper sheets laminated to glass block with asphalt, **as directed**, with unfaced insulation passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

C. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation

1. Unfaced, Flexible Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA; ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III; or ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
   a. Nominal density of 1.0 lb/cu. ft. (16 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 3.7 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (25.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. Nominal density of not less than 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m) nor more than 1.7 lb/cu. ft. (27 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
2. Foil-Faced, Flexible Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III; faced on 1 side with foil-scrim-kraft vapor retarder; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
   a. Nominal density of 1.0 lb/cu. ft. (16 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 3.7 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (25.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. Nominal density of not less than 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m) nor more than 1.7 lb/cu. ft. (27 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
3. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
   a. Nominal density of 2.25 lb/cu. ft. (36 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. Nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   c. Nominal density of 4.25 lb/cu. ft. (68 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   d. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.5 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
4. Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; faced on 1 side with foil-scrim-kraft or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
   a. Nominal density of 2.25 lb/cu. ft. (36 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. Nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   c. Nominal density of 4.25 lb/cu. ft. (68 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   d. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of not less than 4.34 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.1 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
5. Glass-Mat-Faced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; faced on 1 side with black glass-fiber mat or black polymer finish; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
   a. Nominal density of 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.1 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. Nominal density of 2.25 lb/cu. ft. (36 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   c. Nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   d. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.5 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (31.2 K x m/W at 24 deg C).

D. Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Board Insulation

1. Unfaced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and 0, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
   a. Nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m), Types IA and IB, thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), Type II, thermal resistivity of 4.16 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (28.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   c. Nominal density of 8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m), Type III, thermal resistivity of 4.35 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.2 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   d. Fiber Color: Regular color, unless otherwise indicated.
   e. Fiber Color: Darkened, where indicated.
2. Foil-Faced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612; faced on 1 side with foil-scrim or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 5, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
   a. Nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m), Types IA and IB, thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), Type II, thermal resistivity of 4.16 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (28.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
   c. Nominal density of 8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m), Type III, thermal resistivity of 4.35 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.2 K x m/W at 24 deg C).

E. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation
1. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
2. Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene **OR** polypropylene-scrim-kraft, **as directed**, vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.
3. Where glass-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt or roll form with thermal resistances indicated:
   a. 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C) **OR** 13 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (2.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C), **as directed**.
   b. 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
   c. 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 19 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
   d. 6-1/2 inches (165 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 21 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.7 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
   e. 9-1/2 inches (241 mm) **OR** 10 inches (254 mm) **OR** 10-1/4 inches (260 mm), **as directed,** thick with a thermal resistance of 30 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (5.2 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).

F. Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Blanket Insulation
1. Unfaced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
2. Faced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame spread of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.

3. Where slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt form with thermal resistances indicated:
   a. 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 6 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
   b. 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 13 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (2.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
   c. 4 inches (101 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 16 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (2.8 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
   d. 5-1/4 inches (133 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 19 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
   e. 6 inches (152 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 22 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).

G. Loose-Fill Insulation
   1. Cellulosic-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 739, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.
   2. Glass-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type I for pneumatic application or Type II for poured application; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5.

H. Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation
   1. Self-Supported, Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: ASTM C 1149, Type I (materials applied with liquid adhesive; suitable for either exposed or enclosed applications), **OR** Type II (materials containing a dry adhesive activated by water during installation; intended only for enclosed or covered applications), **OR** Type III (materials containing an adhesive mixed with water during application; intended for application on attic floors), **as directed**, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

I. Radiant Barriers
   1. Interior Radiation Control Coating: ASTM C 1321. Silver-colored, not thickness-dependent, low-emissivity solvent-based **OR** water-based, **as directed**, coating, formulated for adherence to substrates indicated and with a surface emittance value of 0.25 or less as measured per ASTM C 1371.
   2. Sheet Radiant Barriers: ASTM C 1313 and as follows:
      a. Sheet Construction: Foil on one side of substrate **OR** Foil on both sides of substrate **OR** Vacuum metallizing on substrate, **as directed**.
      b. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5 and 10, respectively.
      c. Water-Vapor Transmission: 1 perm, maximum **OR** 5 perms or greater, **as directed**.

J. Vapor Retarders
   1. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   2. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb/1000 sq. ft. (12 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.0507 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   3. Fire-Retardant, Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nonwoven grid of nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 22 lb/1000 sq. ft. (10 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.1317 perm (7.56 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 5 and 60, respectively.
   4. Foil-Polyester-Film Vapor Retarders: 2 layers of 0.5-mil- (0.013-mm-) thick polyester film laminated to an inner layer of 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick aluminum foil, with maximum water-vapor transmission rate in flat condition of 0.0 g/h x sq. m and with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5.

5. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
6. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.
7. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type I, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and Use O related to vapor-barrier-related substrates.
8. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and with demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.

K. Auxiliary Insulating Materials
1. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by insulation manufacturers for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor-retarder facings.
2. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.
3. Asphalt Coating for Cellular-Glass Block Insulation: Cutback asphalt or asphalt emulsion of type recommended by manufacturer of cellular-glass block insulation.
4. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide cross ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

L. Insulation Fasteners
1. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:
   a. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   b. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:
   a. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch- (0.762-mm-) thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   b. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) square or in diameter.
   a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
      1) Crawlspaces.
      2) Ceiling plenums.
      3) Attic spaces.
      4) Where indicated.
4. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm), **as directed**, between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.
5. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

B. Installation, General
   1. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
   2. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.
   3. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
   4. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.
   5. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

C. Installation Of Perimeter And Under-Slab Insulation
   1. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive recommended by insulation manufacturer.
      a. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) below exterior grade line.
   2. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
   3. Protect below-grade insulation on vertical surfaces from damage during backfilling by applying protection course with joints butted. Set in adhesive according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
   4. Protect top surface of horizontal insulation from damage during concrete work by applying protection course with joints butted.

D. Installation Of Cavity-Wall Insulation
   1. On units of foam-plastic board insulation, install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates indicated.
      a. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry".
   2. Install units of cellular-glass insulation with closely fitting joints using method indicated:
      a. Gob Method: Apply 4 gobs of adhesive per unit and set units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown. Apply gobs at each corner; spread gobs to form pads 4 inches (101 mm) in diameter by 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
      b. Serrated-Trowel Method: Apply adhesive to entire surface of each cellular-glass insulation unit with serrated trowel complying with insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
      c. Coat edges of insulation units with full bed of adhesive to seal joints between insulation and between insulation and adjoining construction.
      d. Coat exterior face (cold face) of installed cellular-glass block insulation course with asphalt coating.

E. Installation Of General Building Insulation
   1. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
   2. Seal joints between foam-plastic insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
   3. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm-in-winter side **OR** in location indicated, **as directed**, of construction, unless otherwise indicated.

a. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.

4. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
   a. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
   b. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
   c. Maintain 3-inch (76-mm) clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures.
   d. Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
   e. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches (2438 mm), support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
   f. For wood-framed construction, install mineral-fiber blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
      1) With faced blankets having stapling flanges, secure insulation by inset, stapling flanges to sides of framing members.
         OR
         With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
5. Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
   a. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
   b. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
   c. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
   d. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
6. Install board insulation in curtain-wall construction where indicated on Drawings according to curtain-wall manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Retain insulation in place by metal clips and straps or integral pockets within window frames, spaced at intervals recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer to hold insulation securely in place without touching spandrel glass. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated between insulation and glass.
   b. Install insulation where it contacts perimeter fire-containment system to prevent insulation from bowing under pressure from perimeter fire-containment system.
7. Place loose-fill insulation into spaces indicated, by pouring **OR** by machine blowing, **as directed**, to comply with ASTM C 1015. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.
   a. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with the Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association's Special Report #3, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."
8. Apply self-supported, spray-applied cellulosic insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make it flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

9. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).

F. Installation Of Insulation In Ceilings For Sound Attenuation
1. Install 3-inch- (76-mm-) thick, unfaced glass-fiber **OR** slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber, **as directed**, blanket insulation over suspended ceilings at partitions in a width that extends insulation 48 inches (1219 mm) on either side of partition.
OR
Install 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) thick, unfaced glass-fiber **OR** slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber, **as directed**, blanket insulation over suspended ceilings so that insulation extends over entire ceiling.

G. Installation Of Radiant Barriers
1. Install interior radiation control coating system according to ASTM C 1321.
2. Install sheet radiant barriers in locations indicated according to ASTM C 1158.

H. Installation Of Vapor Retarders
1. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
2. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than two wall studs. Fasten vapor retarders to wood framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
3. Before installing vapor retarder, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
4. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
5. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.
6. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.

I. Protection
1. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 21 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 21 23 00	07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 21 26 00	07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 21 29 00	07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 22 16 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 52 13 00	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 52 16 00	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 53 16 00	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 24 13 00 - POLYMER-BASED EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for polymer-based exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS). Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) applied over concrete, masonry, exterior cement board, gypsum sheathing, and plywood sheathing.
   b. Prefabricated panels consisting of EIFS applied over exterior cement board and gypsum sheathing on metal framing.
2. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors and other attachment devices to be cast in concrete and embedded in masonry assemblies.

C. System Description
1. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.

D. Performance Requirements
1. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:
   a. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
   b. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish.
2. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:
   a. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts (500 L) of sand when tested per ASTM D 968, Method A.
   b. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01.
   c. Accelerated Weathering: Five samples per ICC-ES AC219 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2000 hours when viewed under 5 times magnification per ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 154 **OR** ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 155, **as directed**.
   d. Freeze-Thaw: No surface changes, cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination, or indications of delamination between components when viewed under 5 times magnification after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01 **OR** 10 cycles per ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
   e. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch (50.8-by-50.8-mm) clean glass substrate, cured for 28 days, and showing no growth when tested per ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.

f. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ICC-ES AC219.
g. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested per EIMA 101.03 **OR** ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
h. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-)thick gypsum board, cured for 28 days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded-polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after 15 minutes at 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa) of air pressure difference or 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested per EIMA 101.02.
i. Water Resistance: Three samples, each consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for 14 days per ASTM D 2247.
j. Wind-Driven-Rain Resistance: Resist wind-driven rain according to ICC-ES AC219.
k. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested per EIMA 101.86; and meeting or exceeding the following:
    1) Standard Impact Resistance: 25 to 49 inch-lb (2.8 to 5.6 J).
    2) Medium Impact Resistance: 50 to 89 inch-lb (5.7 to 10.1 J).
    3) High Impact Resistance: 90 to 150 inch-lb (10.2 to 17 J).
    4) Ultra-High Impact Resistance: More than 150 inch-lb (17 J).
l. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC219 when tested per ASTM E 330.

3. Performance of Prefabricated Panels: Prefabricated panels shall be designed as follows and withstand the structural performance indicated for Class PB EIFS and thermal movement limits indicated below without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
    a. Delegated Design: Design prefabricated panels, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
    b. Structural Performance: EIFS shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7.
        1) Wind Loads: Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
    c. Deflection Limits: Design prefabricated panels to withstand design loads without deflections greater than 1/240.
    d. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
        1) Temperature Change (Range): 100 deg F (55 deg C).

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
    a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For EIFS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetration and termination, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, lifting points for prefabricated panels, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
4. Panel Schedule: For prefabricated panel fabrication.
5. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
6. Delegated-Design Submittal: For prefabricated panels indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
7. Material or product certificates.

8. Product test reports.
9. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: For joint sealants from sealant manufacturer indicating the following:
   a. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
   b. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
10. Field quality-control reports and special inspection reports.
11. Evaluation reports
12. Maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.
3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide EIFS and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical EIFS and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Per ASTM E 119.
   b. Full-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per IBC Standard.
   c. Full-Scale Diversified Fire Test: Per ASTM E 108 modified for testing vertical walls.
   d. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per NFPA 285 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
   e. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition of EIFS when tested according to NFPA 268.
   f. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
   g. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulation board, adhesives, base coats, and finish coats with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
2. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
   a. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
   b. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
   c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Compatibility: Provide adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.
2. Prefabricated Panels: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing" for metal framing and with requirements in Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing and weather-resistant sheathing paper.
3. Exterior Cement Board: Not less than 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-), **as directed**, thick, fiber cement board complying with ASTM C 1186, Type A, for exterior applications.
    a. Fasteners: Wafer-head or flat-head steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954, with an organic-polymer coating or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 500 hours per ASTM B 117.
        1) Size and Length: As recommended by sheathing manufacturer for type and thickness of sheathing board to be attached.
4. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner with VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), designed to seal substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate of type indicated and adhesive used for application of insulation.
5. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, fully self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
6. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate; with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24); and complying with one of the following:
    a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, and polymer-based adhesive specified for base coat.
    b. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
    c. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation designed for adhesive attachment of insulation to substrates of type indicated, as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
7. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; EIFS manufacturer's requirements; and EIMA's "EIMA Guideline Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Insulation Board" for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:
    a. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than six weeks or by another method approved by EIMA that produces equivalent results.
    b. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
    c. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1219 mm) and in thickness indicated, but not more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick or less than thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
    d. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
8. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
    a. Standard-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m).
    b. Intermediate-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 10 oz./sq. yd. (339 g/sq. m) **OR** 12.0 oz./sq. yd. (407 g/sq. m), **as directed**.
    c. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 15 oz./sq. yd. (509 g/sq. m).
    d. Heavy-Duty Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 20 oz./sq. yd. (678 g/sq. m).
    e. Strip Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 3.75 oz./sq. yd. (127 g/sq. m).
    f. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m).
    g. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 7.2 oz./sq. yd. (244 g/sq. m).

9. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with one of the following:
   a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
   b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
   c. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
   d. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation of polymer-emulsion adhesive and inert fillers that is ready to use without adding other materials.
10. Waterproof Adhesive/Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24) complying with one of the following:
   a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
   b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
11. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
12. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating **OR** standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance **OR** siliconized acrylic-based coating, **as directed**, complying with the following:
   a. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
   b. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, and fillers used with stone particles for embedding in finish coat to produce an applied-aggregate finish.
      1) Aggregate: Marble chips of size and color as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
   d. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
13. Water: Potable.
14. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; selected for properties of pullout, tensile, and shear strength required to resist design loads of application indicated; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board; and of the following description:
   a. For attachment to steel studs from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.
   b. For attachment to light-gage steel framing members not less than 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm) in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002.
   c. For attachment to wood framing members and plywood sheathing, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002, Type W.
   d. For attachment to masonry and concrete substrates, provide sheathing dowel in form of a plastic wing-tipped fastener with thermal cap, sized to fit insulation thickness indicated and to penetrate substrate to depth required to secure anchorage.
   e. For attachment, provide manufacturer's standard fasteners suitable for substrate.
15. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.
   a. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.

b. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
c. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
d. Window Sill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.
e. Parapet Cap Flashing: Type for both flashing and covering parapet top with design complying with ASTM C 1397.

B. Elastomeric Sealants
1. Elastomeric Sealant Products: Provide EIFS manufacturer's listed and recommended chemically curing, elastomeric sealant that is compatible with joint fillers, joint substrates, and other related materials, and complies with requirements for products and testing indicated in ASTM C 1481 and with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for products corresponding to description indicated below:
a. Multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant.
b. Single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing silicone sealant.
c. Provide sealants, used inside the weatherproofing system, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Preformed Foam Sealant Products: Provide sealant compatible with adjacent materials and complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
3. Sealant Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

C. Mixing
1. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

D. Panel Fabrication
1. Panel Framing: Fabricate panel framing to comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing".
a. Connect panel framing by welding unless otherwise indicated.
b. Connections: Provide connections capable of adjustment, complying with erection tolerance requirements, to anchor panels to structure.
2. Exterior Cement Board: Install on metal framing to comply with requirements in "Exterior Cement-Board Installation" Article.
3. EIFS Application: Apply EIFS to sheathed metal-framed panels to comply with requirements in "Trim Installation," "Insulation Installation," "Base-Coat Installation," and "Finish-Coat Installation" articles and as follows:
a. Wrap base coat and reinforcing mesh at edges of panels and extend coverage not less than 4 inches (100 mm) over backs of panels unless otherwise indicated.
b. Wrap base coat and reinforcing mesh at edges of panels and extend coverage not less than full thickness to cover edges of metal framing unless otherwise indicated.
c. Continue finish coat around corners at edges of panels, unless otherwise indicated, and extend to location indicated for sealant application. Do not extend finish coat over surfaces where sealant will be applied.
d. Continue finish coat around corners at edges of panels and extend over edges to cover base coat unless otherwise indicated.
4. Panel Fabrication Tolerances: Comply with the following:
a. Overall Height and Width: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
b. Cumulative Height and Width over Length of Building: Not more than 3/8 inch (9.6 mm).
c. Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for window and door frames.

d. Out of Square: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
e. Locations of Reveals and Architectural Features: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
f. Thickness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
g. Flatness: Not more than 1/8 inch in 8 feet (3.2 mm in 2.4 m) across face of panel.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
2. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
3. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.
a. Concrete Substrates: Provide clean, dry, neutral-pH substrate for insulation installation. Verify suitability of substrate by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

B. Exterior Cement-Board Installation
1. Exterior Cement Board: Install on metal framing to comply with cement-board manufacturer's written instructions and evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Install board with steel drill screws spaced no more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. along framing with perimeter fasteners at least 3/8 inch (9.6 mm) but less than 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) from edges of boards.

C. EIFS Installation, General
1. Comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

D. Substrate Protection Application
1. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing substrates to protect substrates from degradation and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.
2. Waterproof Adhesive/Base Coat: Apply over sloped surfaces **OR** window sills **OR** parapets **OR** where indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, to protect substrates from degradation.
3. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over weather-resistive barrier, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to protect wall assembly from degradation. Prime substrates, if required, and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

E. Trim Installation
1. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at window sills, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
a. Drip Screed/Track: Use at bottom edges of EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
b. Window Sill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
c. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
d. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.
e. Parapet Cap Flashing: Use where indicated on Drawings.

F. Insulation Installation
1. Board Insulation: Adhesively **OR** Mechanically **OR** Adhesively and mechanically, **as directed**, attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:

a. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to sheathing unless EIFS manufacturer's written instructions specify using primer/sealer with ribbon-and-dab method. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for factory mixed and not less than 3/8 inch (9.6 mm) for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.
b. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
c. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before installing mechanical fasteners, beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
d. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate by method complying with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
    1) Steel Framing: 5/16 inch (8 mm).
    2) Wood Framing: 1 inch (25 mm).
    3) Concrete and Masonry: 1 inch (25 mm).
e. Apply insulation over dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
f. Begin first course of insulation from a level base line and work upward.
g. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
h. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches (300 mm) wide or 6 inches (150 mm) high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from corners of window and door openings and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) from aesthetic reveals.
    1) Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from horizontal and 4 inches (100 mm) from vertical joints in sheathing.
    2) Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
i. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
j. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
k. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
l. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) **OR** 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), **as directed**, from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
m. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
n. Install foam shapes and attach to sheathing **OR** structure, **as directed**.
o. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
p. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
q. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between

casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.

r. After installing insulation and before applying reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges with strip reinforcing mesh. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

s. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
   1) Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
   2) Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
   3) At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.

t. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and EIFS protective-coating lamina.

2. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
   a. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
   b. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
   c. At floor lines in multilevel wood-framed construction.
   d. Where wall height or building shape changes.
   e. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.
   f. Where panels abut one another.

G. Base-Coat Installation
1. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam shapes in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) dry-coat thickness.
2. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated below in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches (204 mm) of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
   a. Standard-impact reinforcing mesh unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Intermediate-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
   c. High-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
   d. Heavy-duty reinforcing mesh where indicated.
3. Double-Layer Reinforcing Mesh Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat and second layer of standard-impact **OR** intermediate-impact, **as directed**, reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
4. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch (230-by-300-mm) strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches (100 mm) on each side of corners.
   a. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than 8 inches (200 mm) wide.
   b. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
5. Foam Shapes: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
6. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

H. Finish-Coat Installation
   1. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Finish Coat: Apply over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
      a. Texture: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
      b. Embed aggregate in finish coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
   3. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

I. Installation Of Prefabricated Panels
   1. General: Install panels according to Shop Drawings. Install by welding metal framing to structural-steel frame **OR** by welding to steel-weld plates anchored in concrete, **as directed**, to comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing" unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Lift panels only as indicated on Shop Drawings.
      b. Do not warp or stress panels by forcing alignment.
      c. Adjust connections to align panels and maintain correct and uniform joint widths.
      d. Install bracing as panels are erected. Weld securely to panel framing and to structure.
   2. Erection Tolerances: Install panels level, plumb, and true to line with no variation in plane or alignment exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) and no variation in position exceeding 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
      a. Maintain clearance between panels required for installing joint sealants.

J. Installation Of Joint Sealants
   1. Prepare joints and apply sealants, of type and at locations indicated, to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and in ASTM C 1481.
      a. Apply joint sealants after base coat has cured but before applying finish coat.
      b. Clean surfaces to receive sealants to comply with indicated requirements and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
      c. Apply primer recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for surfaces to be sealed.
      d. Install sealant backing to control depth and configuration of sealant joint and to prevent sealant from adhering to back of joint.
      e. Apply masking tape to protect areas adjacent to sealant joints. Remove tape immediately after tooling joints, without disturbing joint seal.
      f. Recess sealant sufficiently from surface of EIFS so an additional sealant application, including cylindrical sealant backing, can be installed without protruding beyond EIFS surface.

K. Field Quality Control
   1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
      a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
   2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
   3. EIFS Tests and Inspections: For the following:
      a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
   4. Prefabricated Panels: Test and inspect field welds.
   5. Remove and replace EIFS where test results indicate that EIFS do not comply with specified requirements.
   6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

L. Cleaning And Protection

1. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 07 24 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 24 13 00a - WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water drainage exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS). Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes water-drainage exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) applied over water-resistive coating over sheathing, weather-resistant sheathing paper over sheathing, weather-resistant sheathing paper over exterior cement board, and exterior cement board over weather-resistant sheathing paper.

C. System Description
1. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.
2. Water-Drainage EIFS: EIFS with a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.

D. Performance Requirements
1. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:
   a. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
   b. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into water-drainage EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish, and including a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.
2. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:
   a. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts (500 L) of sand when tested per ASTM D 968, Method A.
   b. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01.
   c. Accelerated Weathering: Five samples per ICC-ES AC235 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2000 hours when viewed under 5 times magnification per ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 154 **OR** ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 155, **as directed**.
   d. Freeze-Thaw: No surface changes, cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination, or indications of delamination between components when viewed under 5 times magnification after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01 **OR** 10 cycles per ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.

e. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch (50.8-by-50.8-mm) clean glass substrate, cured for 28 days, and showing no growth when tested per ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.
f. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ICC-ES AC235.
g. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested per EIMA 101.03 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
h. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board, cured for 28 days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after 15 minutes at 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa) of air pressure difference or 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested per EIMA 101.02.
i. Water Resistance: Three samples, each consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for 14 days per ASTM D 2247.
j. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested per EIMA 101.86; and meeting or exceeding the following:
    1) Standard Impact Resistance: 25 to 49 inch-lb (2.8 to 5.6 J).
    2) Medium Impact Resistance: 50 to 89 inch-lb (5.7 to 10.1 J).
    3) High Impact Resistance: 90 to 150 inch-lb (10.2 to 17 J).
    4) Ultra-High Impact Resistance: More than 150 inch-lb (17 J).
k. Drainage: According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
l. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC235 when tested per ASTM E 330.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
    a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For EIFS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetration and termination, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
4. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
5. Material or product certificates.
6. Product test reports.
7. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: For joint sealants from sealant manufacturer indicating the following:
    a. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
    b. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
8. Field quality-control reports and special inspection reports.
9. Evaluation reports
10. Maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.

3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide EIFS and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical EIFS and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Per ASTM E 119.
   b. Full-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per IBC Standard.
   c. Full-Scale Diversified Fire Test: Per ASTM E 108 modified for testing vertical walls.
   d. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per FPA 285 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
   e. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition of EIFS when tested according to NFPA 268.
   f. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
   g. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulation board, adhesives, base coats, and finish coats with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
2. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
   a. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
   b. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
   c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Compatibility: Provide water-resistive coating, adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.
2. Exterior Cement Board: Not less than 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-), **as directed** thick, fiber cement board complying with ASTM C 1186, Type A, for exterior applications.
   a. Fasteners: Wafer-head or flat-head steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954, with an organic-polymer coating or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 500 hours per ASTM B 117.
      1) Size and Length: As recommended by sheathing manufacturer for type and thickness of sheathing board to be attached.
3. Water-Resistive Coatings: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation and accessories for use as water/weather-resistive barriers, compatible with substrate, and complying with physical and performance criteria of ICC-ES AC209 **OR** ICC-ES AC212, **as directed**.
   a. Sheathing Joint Tape **OR** Compound and Tape, **as directed**: Type recommended by EIFS manufacturer for sealing joints between and penetrations through sheathing.

b. VOC Content of Coatings Used as Insulation Adhesive: 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

4. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner with VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), designed to seal substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate of type indicated and adhesive used for application of insulation.
5. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, fully self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
6. Drainage Mat: Three-dimensional, nonwoven, entangled filament, nylon or plastic **OR** Woven or fused, self-furring, PVC mesh lath, **as directed**, mat designed to drain incidental moisture by gravity; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant mechanical fasteners suitable for intended substrate.
7. Spacers: Closed-cell polyethylene **OR** Woven or fused, self-furring, PVC mesh lath, **as directed** furring strips; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant mechanical fasteners suitable for intended substrate.
8. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate; with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24); and complying with one of the following:
   a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, and polymer-based adhesive specified for base coat.
   b. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
   c. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation designed for adhesive attachment of insulation to substrates of type indicated, as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
9. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; EIFS manufacturer's requirements; and EIMA's "EIMA Guideline Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Insulation Board" for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:
   a. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than six weeks or by another method approved by EIMA that produces equivalent results.
   b. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
   c. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1219 mm) and in thickness indicated but not more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick or less than thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
   d. Channeled Board Insulation: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-fabricated profile with linear, vertical drainage channels, slots, or waves on the back side of board.
   e. Board Insulation Closure Blocks: EIFS manufacturer's standard density, size, and configuration.
   f. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
10. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multiend strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. (21 dN/cm) per ASTM E 2098 **OR** EIMA 105.01, **as directed**; complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
    a. Standard-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m).
    b. Intermediate-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 10 oz./sq. yd. (339 g/sq. m) **OR** 12.0 oz./sq. yd. (407 g/sq. m), **as directed**.
    c. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 15 oz./sq. yd. (509 g/sq. m).
    d. Heavy-Duty Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 20 oz./sq. yd. (678 g/sq. m).
    e. Strip Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 3.75 oz./sq. yd. (127 g/sq. m).
    f. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m).

g. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 7.2 oz./sq. yd. (244 g/sq. m).

11. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with one of the following requirements:
    a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
    b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
    c. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
    d. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation of polymer-emulsion adhesive and inert fillers that is ready to use without adding other materials.
12. Waterproof Adhesive/Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with one of the following:
    a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
    b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
13. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
14. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating **OR** standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance **OR** siliconized acrylic-based coating, **as directed**, complying with the following:
    a. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
    b. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, and fillers used with stone particles for embedding in finish coat to produce an applied-aggregate finish.
        1) Aggregate: Marble chips of size and as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
    c. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
    d. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
15. Water: Potable.
16. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; selected for properties of pullout, tensile, and shear strength required to resist design loads of application indicated; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board; and of the following description:
    a. For attachment to steel studs from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.
    b. For attachment to light-gage steel framing members not less than 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm) in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002.
    c. For attachment to wood framing members and plywood sheathing, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002, Type W.
    d. For attachment to masonry and concrete substrates, provide sheathing dowel in form of a plastic wing-tipped fastener with thermal cap, sized to fit insulation thickness indicated and to penetrate substrate to depth required to secure anchorage.
    e. For attachment, provide manufacturer's standard fasteners suitable for substrate.
17. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.

a. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
b. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
c. Weep Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with perforated face leg extended to form a drip and weep holes in track bottom, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg; designed to drain incidental moisture that gets into wall construction to the exterior at terminations of EIFS with drainage.
d. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
e. Window Sill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.
f. Parapet Cap Flashing: Type for both flashing and covering parapet top with design complying with ASTM C 1397.

B. Elastomeric Sealants
1. Elastomeric Sealant Products: Provide EIFS manufacturer's listed and recommended chemically curing, elastomeric sealant that is compatible with joint fillers, joint substrates, and other related materials, and complies with requirements for products and testing indicated in ASTM C 1481 and with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for products corresponding to description indicated below:
a. Multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant.
b. Single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing silicone sealant.
c. Provide sealants, for use inside the weatherproofing system, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Preformed Foam Sealant Products: Provide sealant compatible with adjacent materials and complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
3. Sealant Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

C. Mixing
1. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
2. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind drainage plane of EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
3. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.

B. Exterior Cement-Board Installation
1. Exterior Cement Board: Install on metal framing to comply with cement-board manufacturer's written instructions and evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Install

board with steel drill screws spaced no more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. along framing with perimeter fasteners at least 3/8 inch (9.6 mm) but less than 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) from edges of boards.

C. EIFS Installation, General
   1. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

D. Substrate Protection Application
   1. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing substrates to protect substrates from degradation and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.
   2. Water-Resistive Coatings: Apply over substrates to protect substrates from degradation and to provide water-/weather-resistive barrier.
      a. Tape and seal joints, exposed edges, terminations, and inside and outside corners of sheathing unless otherwise indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Waterproof Adhesive/Base Coat: Apply over sloped surfaces **OR** window sills **OR** parapets **OR** where indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, to protect substrates from degradation.
   4. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over weather-resistive barrier, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to protect wall assembly from degradation. Prime substrates, if required, and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

E. Trim Installation
   1. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at window sills, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
      a. Weep Screed/Track: Use at bottom termination edges, at window and door heads, and at floor line expansion joints of water-drainage EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
      b. Window Sill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
      c. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
      d. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.
      e. Parapet Cap Flashing: Use where indicated on Drawings.

F. Drainage Mat Installation
   1. Drainage Mat: Apply wrinkle free, continuously, with edges butted **OR** overlapped, **as directed**, and adhesively secured **OR** mechanically secured with fasteners, **as directed**, over water-/weather-resistive barrier according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Insulation Installation
   1. Board Insulation: Adhesively **OR** Mechanically **OR** Adhesively and mechanically, **as directed**, attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:
      a. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to sheathing unless EIFS manufacturer's written instructions specify using primer/sealer with ribbon-and-dab method. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for factory mixed and not less than 3/8 inch (9.6 mm) for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.
      b. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of drainage mat with adhesive once insulation is adhered to drainage mat.
      c. Apply adhesive to ridges on back of insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in full adhesive contact over the entire surface of ridges, leaving channels free of adhesive once insulation is adhered to substrate.

d. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
e. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before installing mechanical fasteners, beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
f. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate by method complying with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
    1) Steel Framing: 5/16 inch (8 mm).
    2) Wood Framing: 1 inch (25 mm).
    3) Concrete and Masonry: 1 inch (25 mm).
g. Apply insulation over drainage mat and dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
h. Begin first course of insulation from a level base line and work upward.
i. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
j. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches (300 mm) wide or 6 inches (150 mm) high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from corners of window and door openings and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) from aesthetic reveals.
    1) Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from horizontal and 4 inches (100 mm) from vertical joints in sheathing.
    2) Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
k. Place insulation with adhesive strips and channels, slots, or waves aligned in the vertical position for drainage. Align drainage channels, slots, or waves with channels, slots, or waves in insulation boards above and below.
l. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
m. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
n. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
o. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) **OR** 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), **as directed**, from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
p. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
q. Install foam shapes and attach to sheathing **OR** structure, **as directed**.
r. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
s. Install insulation closure blocks using ribbon-and-dab method to create air zones where indicated.
t. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
u. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.

v. After installing insulation and before applying field-applied reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
w. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
1) Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
2) Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
3) At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
x. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and water-/weather-resistive barrier.

2. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
a. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
b. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
c. At floor lines in multilevel wood-framed construction.
d. Where wall height or building shape changes.
e. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.

H. Base-Coat Installation
1. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam shapes in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) dry-coat thickness.
2. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated below in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches (204 mm) of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
a. Standard-impact reinforcing mesh unless otherwise indicated.
b. Intermediate-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
c. High-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
d. Heavy-duty reinforcing mesh where indicated.
3. Double-Layer Reinforcing Mesh Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat and second layer of standard-impact **OR** intermediate-impact, **as directed**, reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
4. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch (230-by-300-mm) strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches (100 mm) on each side of corners.
a. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than 8 inches (200 mm) wide.
b. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
5. Foam Shapes: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
6. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

I. Finish-Coat Installation
1. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Finish Coat: Apply over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
   a. Texture: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Embed aggregate in finish coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
3. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

J. Installation Of Joint Sealants
1. Prepare joints and apply sealants, of type and at locations indicated, to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and in ASTM C 1481.
   a. Apply joint sealants after base coat has cured but before applying finish coat.
   b. Clean surfaces to receive sealants to comply with indicated requirements and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
   c. Apply primer recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for surfaces to be sealed.
   d. Install sealant backing to control depth and configuration of sealant joint and to prevent sealant from adhering to back of joint.
   e. Apply masking tape to protect areas adjacent to sealant joints. Remove tape immediately after tooling joints, without disturbing joint seal.
   f. Recess sealant sufficiently from surface of EIFS so an additional sealant application, including cylindrical sealant backing, can be installed without protruding beyond EIFS surface.

K. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
   a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
3. EIFS Tests and Inspections: For the following:
   a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
4. Remove and replace EIFS where test results indicate that EIFS do not comply with specified requirements.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

L. Cleaning And Protection
1. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 07 24 13 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 26 13 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 31 13 13 - ASPHALT SHINGLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for asphalt shingles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Asphalt shingles.
b. Underlayment.

C. Definition
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and blend specified.
3. Product test reports.
4. Research/evaluation reports.
5. Maintenance data.
6. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide asphalt shingles and related roofing materials identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per test method below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
a. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A **OR** Class C, **as directed**; ASTM E 108 or UL 790, for application and roof slopes indicated.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store roofing materials in a dry, well-ventilated, weathertight location according to asphalt shingle manufacturer's written instructions. Store underlayment rolls on end on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
a. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to avoid significant or permanent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.
2. Protect unused underlayment from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
a. Material Warranty Period: 25 **OR** 30 **OR** 35 **OR** 40, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion, prorated, with first three **OR** five **OR** 12, **as directed**, years nonprorated.
b. Wind-Speed Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will resist blow-off or damage caused by wind speeds up to 60 mph (27 m/s) **OR** 75 mph (33 m/s) **OR** 80 mph (36 m/s) **OR** 100 mph (45 m/s), **as directed**, for five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

c. Algae-Discoloration Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will not discolor five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
d. Workmanship Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 12, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Asphalt Shingles
1. Laminated-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing.
a. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Notched **OR** Crenelated, **as directed**, cut.
b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
2. Laminated-Strip, SBS-Modified Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with UL 2218, Class IV.
a. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Notched **OR** Crenelated, **as directed**, cut.
b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
3. Multitab-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing.
a. Tab Arrangement: Three tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Four tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Five tabs, randomly spaced, **as directed**.
b. Cutout Shape: Square **OR** Tapered, **as directed**.
c. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Stagger, **as directed**, cut.
d. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
e. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
f. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
4. Three-Tab-Strip, SBS-Modified Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with UL 2218, Class IV.
a. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
b. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
c. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
5. No-Cutout-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, self-sealing, square, and single tab.
a. Butt Edge: Stagger **OR** Straight, **as directed**, cut.
b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
6. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles **OR** Site-fabricated units cut from asphalt shingle strips. Trim each side of lapped portion of unit to taper approximately 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.

B. Organic-Felt-Reinforced Asphalt Shingles
1. Laminated-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 225, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction, organic-felt reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with requirements in ASTM D 3161 for wind resistance.
a. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Notched **OR** Crenelated, **as directed**, cut.
b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

2. Multitab-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 225, organic-felt reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with requirements in ASTM D 3161 for wind resistance.
   a. Tab Arrangement: Three tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Four tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Six tabs, regularly spaced, scalloped edge, **as directed**.
   b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
   c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
   d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
3. No-Cutout-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 225, organic-felt reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, self-sealing, square, and single tab; complying with requirements in ASTM D 3161 for wind resistance.
   a. Butt Edge: Stagger **OR** Straight, **as directed**, cut.
   b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
   c. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
4. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles **OR** Site-fabricated units cut from asphalt shingle strips. Trim each side of lapped portion of unit to taper approximately 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.

C. Underlayment Materials
1. Felt: ASTM D 226 **OR** ASTM D 4869, **as directed**, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felts, nonperforated.
2. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 55-mil- (1.4-mm-) thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, High Temperature: Minimum of 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
   a. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
   b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
5. Granular-Surfaced Valley Lining: ASTM D 6380, Class M, organic-felt-based **OR** ASTM D 3909, mineral-granular-surfaced, glass-felt-based, **as directed**, asphalt roll roofing; 36 inches (914 mm) wide.

D. Ridge Vents
1. Rigid Ridge Vent: Manufacturer's standard, rigid section high-density polypropylene or other UV-stabilized plastic ridge vent with nonwoven geotextile filter strips and external deflector baffles; for use under ridge shingles.
2. Flexible Ridge Vent: Manufacturer's standard, compression-resisting, three-dimensional, open-nylon or polyester-mat filter bonded to a nonwoven, nonwicking, geotextile fabric cover.

E. Accessories
1. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
2. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667; aluminum, stainless-steel, copper, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire shingle nails, minimum 0.120-inch- (3-mm-) diameter, barbed **OR** smooth, **as directed**, shank, sharp-pointed, with a minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter flat head and of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch (19 mm) into solid wood decking or extend at least 1/8 inch (3 mm) through OSB or plywood sheathing.
   a. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.

3. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter.

F. Metal Flashing And Trim
   1. General: Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
      a. Sheet Metal: Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated copper **OR** Anodized aluminum **OR** Aluminum, mill finished, **as directed**.
   2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item.
      a. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, over and 4 inches (100 mm) beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches (150 mm) up the vertical surface.
      b. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a headlap of 2 inches (50 mm) and a minimum extension of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, over the underlying asphalt shingle and up the vertical surface.
      c. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) **OR** 24 inches (600 mm), **as directed**, beneath upslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches (150 mm) beyond each side of chimney **OR** skylight, **as directed**, and 6 inches (150 mm) above the roof plane.
      d. Open-Valley Flashings: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m) with 1-inch- (25-mm-) high, inverted-V profile at center of valley and equal flange widths of 10 inches (250 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**.
      e. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m) with 2-inch (50-mm) roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) fascia flange with 3/8-inch (9.6-mm) drip at lower edge.
   3. Vent Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof, and extending at least 4 inches (100 mm) from pipe onto roof.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Underlayment Installation
   1. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
   2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
      a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than 6 inches (150 mm) over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
      b. Install fasteners at no more than 36 inch (900 mm) o.c. where the basic wind speed is equal to or greater than 110 mph (176 km/h).
   3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a 19-inch- (485-mm-) wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses 19 inches (485 mm) in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.

a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water.
c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
d. Install fasteners at no more than 36 inch (900 mm) o.c. where the basic wind speed is equal to or greater than 110 mph (176 km/h).

4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm). Lap ends not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
   a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   b. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
   c. Rakes: Extend from edges of rake 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
   d. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches (450 mm) on each side.
   e. Hips: Extend 18 inches (450 mm) on each side.
   f. Ridges: Extend 36 inches (914 mm) on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot.
   g. Sidewalls: Extend beyond sidewall 18 inches (450 mm), and return vertically against sidewall not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
   h. Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend beyond penetrating element 18 inches (450 mm), and return vertically against penetrating element not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
   i. Roof Slope Transitions: Extend 18 inches (450 mm) on each roof slope.
5. Concealed, Woven **OR** Closed-Cut, **as directed**, Valley Lining: Comply with NRCA's recommendations. Install a 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Fasten to roof deck with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
   a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over valley felt underlayment at least 6 inches (150 mm).
   b. Install a 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide strip of granular-surfaced valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face up. Lap ends of strips at least 12 inches (300 mm) in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten to roof deck with roofing nails.
6. Metal-Flashed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install two layers of 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Stagger end laps between layers at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Lap ends of each layer at least 12 inches (300 mm) in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten each layer to roof deck with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
   a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over first layer of valley felt underlayment at least 6 inches (150 mm).
7. Granular-Surfaced, Open-Valley Lining: Comply with NRCA's recommendations. Install a 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Fasten to roof deck with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
   a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over valley felt underlayment at least 6 inches (150 mm).
   b. Install an 18-inch- (450-mm-) wide strip of valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face down. Install a second 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide strip of valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face up. Lap ends of each strip at least 12 inches (300 mm) in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Stagger end laps between succeeding strips at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten each strip to roof deck with roofing nails.

B. Metal Flashing Installation
   1. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
      a. Install metal flashings according to recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual" and asphalt shingle recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
   2. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and up the vertical surface.
   3. Step Flashings: Install with a headlap of 2 inches (50 mm) and extend over the underlying asphalt shingle and up the vertical surface. Fasten to roof deck only.
   4. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Install against the roof-penetrating element extending concealed flange beneath upslope asphalt shingles and beyond each side.
   5. Open-Valley Flashings: Install centered in valleys, lapping ends at least 8 inches (200 mm) in direction to shed water. Fasten upper end of each length to roof deck beneath overlap.
      a. Secure hemmed flange edges into metal cleats spaced 12 inches (300 mm) apart and fastened to roof deck.
      b. Adhere 9-inch- (225-mm-) wide strip of self-adhering sheet to metal flanges and to self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   6. Rake Drip Edges: Install rake drip edge flashings over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
   7. Eave Drip Edges: Install eave drip edge flashings below underlayment and fasten to roof sheathing.
   8. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and asphalt shingles. Fasten and seal to asphalt shingles as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Asphalt Shingle Installation
   1. General: Install asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions, recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual," and asphalt shingle recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
   2. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt shingle strip with tabs removed **OR** at least 7 inches (175 mm) wide, **as directed**, with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
      a. Extend asphalt shingles 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
      b. Install starter strip along rake edge.
   3. For Three-Tab- And Other Multitab-Strip Asphalt Shingles: Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with 4-inch (100-mm) **OR** 5-inch (125-mm) **OR** 6-inch (150-mm) **OR** 1/2-tab **OR** 1/3-tab **OR** manufacturer's recommended, **as directed**, offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
   4. For Laminated-Strip And No-Cutout-Strip Asphalt Shingles: Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
   5. Install asphalt shingles by single-strip column or racking method, maintaining uniform exposure. Install full-length first course followed by cut second course, repeating alternating pattern in succeeding courses.
   6. Fasten asphalt shingle strips with a minimum of four **OR** five **OR** six, **as directed**, roofing nails located according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      a. Where roof slope exceeds 20:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots after fastening with additional roofing nails.
      b. Where roof slope is less than 4:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
      c. When ambient temperature during installation is below 50 deg F (10 deg C), seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
   7. Woven Valleys: Extend succeeding asphalt shingle courses from both sides of valley 12 inches (300 mm) beyond center of valley, weaving intersecting shingle-strip courses over each other. Use one-piece shingle strips without joints in valley.

a. Do not nail asphalt shingles within 6 inches (150 mm) of valley center.

8. Closed-Cut Valleys: Extend asphalt shingle strips from one side of valley 12 inches (300 mm) beyond center of valley. Use one-piece shingle strips without joints in valley. Fasten with extra nail in upper end of shingle. Install asphalt shingle courses from other side of valley and cut back to a straight line 2 inches (50 mm) short of valley centerline. Trim upper concealed corners of cut-back shingle strips.
   a. Do not nail asphalt shingles within 6 inches (150 mm) of valley center.
   b. Set trimmed, concealed-corner asphalt shingles in a 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide bed of asphalt roofing cement.
9. Open Valleys: Cut and fit asphalt shingles at open valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shingle strips. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley **OR** Widen exposed portion of open valley 1/8 inch in 12 inches (1:96), **as directed**, from highest to lowest point.
   a. Set valley edge of asphalt shingles in a 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide bed of asphalt roofing cement.
   b. Do not nail asphalt shingles to metal open-valley flashings.
10. Ridge Vents: Install continuous ridge vents over asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
11. Ridge and Hip Cap Shingles: Maintain same exposure of cap shingles as roofing shingle exposure. Lap cap shingles at ridges to shed water away from direction of prevailing winds. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
    a. Fasten ridge cap asphalt shingles to cover ridge vent without obstructing airflow.

END OF SECTION 07 31 13 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 31 16 00 - METAL SHINGLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal shingles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Metal-shingle panels.
b. Individual metal shingles.
c. Underlayment.
d. Ridge vents.
e. Snow guards.

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Metal shingles shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
2. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal-shingle assemblies that comply with the following wind-uplift requirements.
a. Class: 15 **OR** 30 **OR** 60 **OR** 90, **as directed**, when tested according to UL 580.
b. Uplift Resistance: 75 lbf/sq. ft. (3.6 kPa) **OR** 120 lbf/sq. ft. (5.75 kPa) **OR** 165 lbf/sq. ft. (7.9 kPa), **as directed**, when tested according to UL 1897.
3. Impact Resistance: Class 3 **OR** Class 4, **as directed**, when tested according to UL 2218.
4. Energy Performance, Solar Reflectance (for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide shingles with Solar Reflectance Index not less than 29 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
5. Energy Performance, ENERGY STAR: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for steep-slope roof products.
6. Recycled Content: Provide metal shingles with recycled content so that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content constitutes a minimum of 50 percent by weight.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For metal shingles, documentation indicating compliance with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
b. Product Data for Credit(s) MR 4.1 and MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

3. Shop Drawings: For metal shingles. Show roof plans and wall elevations, **as directed**; sections at hips, gables, ridges, valleys, and eaves; details of metal shingles, flashing, trim, and accessories; and attachments to other work.
4. Samples: Full-size components of each type of metal shingle indicated, including visible accessories.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or performed by a qualified testing agency, for metal shingles, demonstrating compliance with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
6. Warranty: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations: Obtain metal shingles from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Fire-Test Exposure Rating: Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method UL 790 or ASTM E 108 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Do not store metal-shingle materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store metal-shingle materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect strippable protective covering on metal shingles from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of metal-shingle installation.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
    a. Install self-adhering sheet underlayment within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by manufacturer.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal shingles and accessories that fail in materials within specified warranty period.
    a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
        1) Structural failures including wind uplift.
        2) Water penetration and hail perforation.
        3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    b. Materials-Only Warranty Period: 15 **OR** 25 **OR** 50, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
2. Special Project Warranty: Roofing Installer's Warranty, signed by roofing Installer, covering Work of this Section, in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within the following warranty period:
    a. Warranty Period: Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
3. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal shingles that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
    a. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
        1) Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
        2) Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
        3) Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
    b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sheet Metal Materials
1. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
a. Mill Finish: Uncoated aluminum sheet.
b. High-Performance Organic Coating (Coil-Coated Finishes): Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
3) Concealed Surface: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat and with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 37 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 255); structural quality.
a. Mill Finish: Satin-finish, aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet without additional coating.
b. Granular-Coating Finish: Entire upper surface of shingle, including flange edges, coated with ceramic-colored quartz granules or crushed stone chips bonded to shingle with a resin adhesive and sealed with a clear overglaze.
3. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
a. Mill Finish: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet without additional coating **OR** with manufacturer's standard mill-phosphatized finish, **as directed**.
b. High-Performance Organic Coating, (Coil-Coated Finishes): Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
4. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370; Temper H00, cold rolled, unless Temper 060 is required for forming.
a. Mill Finish: Nonpatinated and exposed.
b. Pre-Patinated Finish: Dark brown **OR** Verdigris, **as directed**, pre-patinated according to ASTM B 882.
5. Zinc-Alloy Sheet: Alloy of 99.995 percent pure electrolytic high-grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08 to 0.20 percent), titanium (0.07 to 0.12 percent), and aluminum (0.015 percent) **OR** Zinc alloy consisting of 99 percent pure zinc with 0.08 to 1.00 percent copper, 0.06 to 0.20 percent titanium, and up to 0.015 percent aluminum, **as directed**; with manufacturer's standard factory-applied, flexible, protective back coating.
a. Bright-Rolled Finish: Uncoated, bright-rolled zinc-alloy sheet.
b. Preweathered Finish: Factory-applied preweathering to uniform color.

B. Metal Shingles
1. Aluminum Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels **OR** individual shingles, **as directed**.
a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes **OR** shingles **OR** Spanish tiles **OR** flat tiles **OR** scalloped tiles, **as directed**.

1) Material: Formed aluminum, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick **OR** thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard insert material in units to increase rigidity.
3) Exposure: 48 by 12 inches (1219 by 305 mm).
4) Finish: Mill **OR** High-performance organic coating.
5) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular **OR** Diamond, **as directed**, shingle units.
1) Material: Formed aluminum, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick **OR** thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard insert material in units to increase rigidity.
3) Exposure: 14 by 14 inches (356 by 356 mm).
4) Finish: Mill **OR** High-performance organic coating, **as directed**.
5) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

2. Steel Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels **OR** individual shingles, **as directed**.
a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes **OR** shingles **OR** Spanish tiles **OR** flat tiles **OR** scalloped tiles, **as directed**.
1) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated **OR** Zinc-coated (galvanized), **as directed**, steel sheet, nominal 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick **OR** 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick **OR** thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Exposure: 47-1/4 by 15-13/16 inches (1200 by 402 mm).
3) Finish: Mill **OR** Granular coating **OR** High-performance organic coating, **as directed**.
4) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular shingle units.
1) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy coated **OR** Zinc-coated (galvanized), **as directed**, steel sheet, nominal 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick **OR** 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick **OR** thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Exposure: 9 by 12 inches (229 by 305 mm).
3) Finish: Mill **OR** Granular coating **OR** High-performance organic coating, **as directed**.
4) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

3. Copper Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels **OR** individual shingles, **as directed**.
a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes **OR** shingles, **as directed**.
1) Material: Copper sheet, 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick) **OR** 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) **OR** weight (thickness) as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Exposure: 33-1/4 by 10 inches (845 by 254 mm).
3) Finish: Mill **OR** Pre-patinated dark brown **OR** Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.

b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular **OR** Diamond, **as directed**, shingle units.
1) Material: Copper sheet, 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick) **OR** 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm-thick) **OR** weight (thickness) as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Exposure: 9-1/2 by 7-1/4 inches (241 by 184 mm).
3) Finish: Mill **OR** Pre-patinated dark brown **OR** Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.

4. Zinc Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels **OR** individual shingles, **as directed**.
a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes **OR** shingles, **as directed**.
1) Material: Zinc-alloy sheet, 0.027 inch (0.70 mm) thick **OR** thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Exposure: 47-1/4 by 15-13/16 inches (1200 by 402 mm), **as directed**.
3) Finish: Bright rolled **OR** Preweathered gray **OR** Preweathered black, **as directed**.

b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular **OR** Diamond, **as directed**, shingle units.
   1) Material: Zinc-alloy sheet, 0.027 inch (0.70 mm) thick **OR** thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
   2) Exposure: 14 by 14 inches (356 by 356 mm).
   3) Finish: Bright rolled **OR** Preweathered gray **OR** Preweathered black, **as directed**.

C. Underlayment
1. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226 or ASTM D 4869, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
2. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, a minimum of 40-mil-(1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, High Temperature: A minimum of 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment and when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   a. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
   b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
4. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

D. Accessories
1. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other accessory items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by metal-shingle manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
2. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal-shingle manufacturer's flashing and trim components matching shingle material, color, and finish unless otherwise indicated or recommended in writing by metal-shingle manufacturer. Fabricate to sizes and configurations shown or required. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
3. Ridge Vents: Metal-shingle manufacturer's continuous vented ridge caps matching material and finish of metal shingles with insect screen or insect-resisting geotextile filter strips and with external deflector baffles; for use with specified metal shingles.
   a. Minimum Net Free Area: As required to satisfy Project requirements.
   b. Accessories: Splices, end caps, and other accessories matching metal and finish.
4. Snow Guards: Stop-type **OR** Bar-type, **as directed**, prefabricated aluminum **OR** copper **OR** cast-bronze **OR** zinc **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, units, designed to be installed without penetrating metal shingles.
   a. Attachment: Designed to be attached to surface of metal shingles using construction adhesive, silicone or polyurethane sealant, or adhesive tape **OR** mechanically anchored through predrilled holes concealed by the metal shingles, **as directed**.
   b. Finish: Matching the metal shingles.
5. Wood Battens: Pressure-preservative-treated wood complying with requirements in Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" **OR** "Miscellaneous Carpentry", **as directed**.
   a. Contoured Rigid Foam: Manufacturers standard rigid foam formed to match underside contour of metal shingles.
6. Metal Battens: Hat channels formed from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet; ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation, not less than 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) nominal thickness, and complying with requirements in Division 5 Section Cold-Formed Metal Framing."
7. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
8. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.

9. Sealant: ASTM C 920, one-part elastomeric polymer joint sealant as recommended by metal-shingle manufacturer for installation indicated; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal shingles and remain watertight. Where sealant will be exposed, provide in color matching shingle.
10. Sheet Metal Fasteners: Noncorrosive screws, nails, and anchors designed to withstand design loads as recommended in writing by metal-shingle manufacturer.
    a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of metal shingles using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed neoprene or EPDM washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of shingles.
    b. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    c. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    d. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
    e. Fasteners for Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated **OR** Zinc-Coated, **as directed**, Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, ASTM F 2329, or Series 300 stainless steel.
    f. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or Series 300 stainless steel.
    g. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, ASTM F 2329, or Series 300 stainless steel.
11. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter.
    a. Where nails are in contact with metal shingles or flashing, use nails made from same metal as metal shingles.
12. Wood Batten Nails: ASTM F 1667; common or box, steel wire, flat head, and smooth shank; hot-dip galvanized.

E. General Finish Requirements
1. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
2. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
    a. Examine roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing and blocking, that tops of fasteners are flush with surface, and that installation is within flatness tolerances.
    b. Verify that substrate is sound, dry to the maximum moisture content recommended by metal-shingle manufacturer, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored and that provision has been made for flashings and penetrations through metal shingles.
    c. Verify that vent stacks and other penetrations through metal shingles have been installed and are securely fastened.
2. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Underlayment Installation

1. General: Comply with metal-shingle and underlayment manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
    a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than 6 inches (152 mm) over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a 19-inch- (485-mm-) wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses 19 inches (485 mm) in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
    a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water.
    c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free; comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm). Lap ends not less than 6 inches (152 mm), staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
    a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
    b. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
    c. Rakes: Extend from edges of rakes 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
    d. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
    e. Hips: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
    f. Ridges: Extend 36 inches (914 mm) on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot.
    g. Sidewalls: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
    h. Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond penetrating elements and return vertically against penetrating elements not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
    i. Roof-Slope Transitions: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each roof slope.
5. Metal-Flashed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install one layer of 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment or self-adhering sheet underlayment centered in valley and running the full length of valley in addition to the underlayment required for metal shingles. Stagger end laps between layers and lap ends of each layer at least 12 inches (305 mm) in direction to shed water.
    a. Solidly cement valley felt underlayment with asphalt roofing cement to the underlayment required for metal shingles.
6. Apply slip sheet with adhesive or tape before installing metal flashing and shingles.

C. Metal-Shingle Installation
    1. General: Install metal shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated; install level, plumb, and true to line.

2. Felt Interlayment: Install 18-inch- (455-mm-) wide strip of felt underlayment over top portion of first and each succeeding course. Stagger fasten to roof deck with felt underlayment nails.
3. Maintain uniform exposure and coursing of metal shingles throughout roof.
4. Apply sealant between shingles, flashing, trim, and exposed fasteners to achieve a weathertight system.
5. Interlock and overlap shingles and stagger end joints from **OR** align joints of tile-form, **as directed**, shingle courses above and below.
6. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer of metal shingles or of the metals in contact.
   a. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

D. Accessory Installation
1. General: Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
2. Metal Flashings and Trim: Install metal flashings and trim according to recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
3. Ridge Vents: Install ridge vents with end closures at locations indicated.
4. Stop-Type Snow Guards: Install rows of snow guards at locations indicated. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter. Space snow guards apart in each row, offsetting by half this dimension between succeeding rows.
5. Bar-Type Snow Guards: Install rows of snow guards at locations indicated. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter.
6. Battens: Install battens according to metal-shingle manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to meet performance requirements.
   a. Wood Battens: Install nominal 2-by-2-inch (38-by-38-mm) wood battens horizontally over installed underlayment with ends separated by 1/2 inch (13 mm), at spacing required by metal-shingle manufacturer, and securely fasten to roof deck with wood batten nails.
   b. Metal Battens: Install 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) metal battens horizontally over installed underlayment with ends separated by 1/2 inch (13 mm), at spacing required by metal-shingle manufacturer, and securely fasten to roof deck with sheet metal fasteners.
   c. Intermediate Battens: Install nominal 1-inch- (19-mm-) thick wood battens with double strip of contoured rigid foam horizontally with ends separated by 1/2 inch (13 mm), at spacing required by metal-shingle manufacturer to uniformly support underside of metal shingles between main battens, and securely fasten to roof deck with wood batten nails.
7. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer of metal shingles or of the metals in contact.

E. Erection Tolerances
1. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal shingles within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
   OR
   Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal shingles within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

F. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Remove and replace damaged or deformed metal shingles or metal shingles that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace shingles with damaged or deteriorated finishes and other components of the Work that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

2. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as metal shingles are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
3. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of metal shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Remove excess sealants. Maintain metal shingles in a clean condition during construction.
4. Remove excess metal shingles and debris from Project site.

END OF SECTION 07 31 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 31 26 00 - SLATE SHINGLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for slate shingles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Slate shingles.
b. Underlayment.
c. Snow guards.

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples
a. Slate Shingle: Full size, of each color, size, texture, and shape.
b. Ridge Cap **OR** Vent, **as directed**: 12-inch- (305-mm-) long Sample.
c. Fasteners: Three fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
d. Exposed Valley Lining: 12 inches (305 mm) square.
e. Snow Guard: Full-size unit **OR** Base, bracket, and 12-inch- (300-mm-) long rail, **as directed**.
3. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations: Obtain each color of slate shingle from single quarry capable of producing slate of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store underlayment rolls on end, on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
a. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to avoid significant or permanent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.
2. Protect unused underlayment from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Standard form in which roofing Installer agrees to repair or replace slate roofing that fails in materials or workmanship within two **OR** five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Slate Shingles
1. Slate Shingles: ASTM C 406, Grade S1 **OR** Grade S2, **as directed**; hard, dense, and sound; chamfered edges, with nail holes machine punched or drilled and countersunk. No broken or

cracked slates, no broken exposed corners, and no broken corners on covered ends that could sacrifice nailing strength or laying of a watertight roof.

a. Thickness: Nominal 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 3/16 to 1/4 inch (5 to 6 mm) **OR** 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm) **OR** 3/8 to 1/2 inch (10 to 13 mm), **as directed**.
b. Surface Texture: Smooth **OR** Rough, **as directed**.
c. Size: 24 inches (610 mm) long by 14 inches (355 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed**, wide.
d. Size: 22 inches (560 mm) long by 14 inches (355 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 11 inches (280 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed**, wide.
e. Size: 20 inches (510 mm) long by 14 inches (355 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 11 inches (280 mm) **OR** 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed**, wide.
f. Size: 18 inches (455 mm) long by 14 inches (355 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 11 inches (280 mm) **OR** 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 9 inches (230 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed**, wide.
g. Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long by 14 inches (355 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 11 inches (280 mm) **OR** 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 9 inches (230 mm) **OR** 8 inches (205 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed**, wide.
h. Size: 14 inches (355 mm) long by 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 11 inches (280 mm) **OR** 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 9 inches (230 mm) **OR** 8 inches (205 mm) **OR** 7 inches (180 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed** wide.
i. Size: 12 inches (305 mm) long by 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 9 inches (230 mm) **OR** 8 inches (205 mm) **OR** 7 inches (180 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed**, wide.
j. Size: 10 inches (255 mm) by 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 9 inches (230 mm) **OR** 8 inches (205 mm) **OR** 7 inches (180 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** random widths, but not less than one-half-length, **as directed**, wide.
k. Nail Holes: Two **OR** Four, **as directed**, per shingle.
l. Butt Shape: Standard square cut.
m. Cut Butt Shape: Standard square cut and pointed **OR** deep bevel **OR** shallow bevel **OR** deep scallop **OR** shallow scallop **OR** round, **as directed**.
n. Color: Black **OR** Gray **OR** Purple **OR** Green **OR** Blue black **OR** Blue gray **OR** Mottled purple and green **OR** Red **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
o. Weather-Exposure Color Change: Unfading **OR** Weathering, **as directed**.

2. Starter Slate: Slate shingles with chamfered nail holes front-side punched.
   a. Length: Exposure of slate shingle plus head lap.
3. Ridge Slate: Slate shingles fabricated with vertical **OR** horizontal, **as directed**, grain orientation.

B. Underlayment Materials
1. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felt, unperforated.
2. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, mineral surfaced, unperforated.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 55-mil- (1.4-mm-) thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.
5. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, High Temperature: Minimum of 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to layer of butyl or

SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.

a. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.

C. Snow Guards
1. Snow-Guard Pads: Fabricated copper **OR** cast-bronze **OR** zinc **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, units, designed to be installed without penetrating slate shingles, and complete with predrilled holes or hooks for anchoring.
2. Snow-Guard Rails: Units fabricated from metal baseplate anchored to adjustable **OR** fixed, **as directed**, bracket and equipped with two **OR** three, **as directed**, bars.
   a. Brackets and Baseplate: Aluminum **OR** Bronze or brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   b. Bars: Aluminum, mill finished **OR** Aluminum, clear anodized **OR** Stainless steel, mill finished, **as directed**.

D. Accessories
1. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
2. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied.
3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** polysulfide **OR** silicone, **as directed**, polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in slate-shingle roofing and remain watertight.
4. Slating Nails: ASTM F 1667, copper, **OR** aluminum-alloy, **OR** stainless-steel, **OR** cut-brass, **as directed**, smooth shanked, wire nails; 0.135-inch (3.4-mm) minimum thickness; sharp pointed; with 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) minimum diameter flat head; of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 3/4 inch (19 mm) into sheathing.
   a. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.
5. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire nails with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter.
6. Wood Nailer Strips and Eave Cants: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
7. Ridge Cap **OR** Vent, **as directed**: Custom-fabricated metal covers with noncorrosive components complete with internal anchoring lag screws, compression plates, and snap-on caps and slate retention channels, **as directed**.
   a. Type: Cap, nonventilating **OR** Vent, with ventilating mesh providing net-free area of 18 sq. in./ft. (380 sq. cm/m) **OR** Vent, with ventilating mesh providing net-free area of 18 sq. in./ft. (380 sq. cm/m) and external baffles, **as directed**.
   b. Metal Components: Copper, 20-oz./sq. ft.- (0.7-mm-) thick sheet **OR** Aluminum, 0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick sheet, with manufacturer's standard two-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin on exposed surfaces, **as directed**.
   c. Accessories: Splices, end caps, and other accessories of matching metal and finish.
8. Track- and Clip-Attachment System: Custom-fabricated slate-shingle attachment system designed for use with notched-slate shingles consisting of extruded-aluminum, **OR** formed stainless-steel, **as directed**, perforated Z-track, screws, and spring clips for anchoring slate to roof deck.

E. Metal Flashing And Trim
1. General: Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   a. Sheet Metal: Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated copper **OR** Anodized aluminum **OR** Aluminum, mill finished, **as directed**.

2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
   a. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, over and 4 inches (100 mm) beyond each side of downslope slate shingles and 6 inches (152 mm) up the vertical surface.
   b. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and a minimum extension of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm), **as directed**, both horizontally and vertically.
   c. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, beneath upslope slate shingles and 6 inches (152 mm) beyond each side of chimney **OR** skylight, **as directed**, and 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof plane.
   d. Hip Flashings: Fabricate to length of slate shingle and to extend 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, beyond joint of hip shingle with adjoining roof shingle.
   e. Open-Valley Flashings: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m) with 1-inch- (25-mm-) high, inverted-V profile at center of valley and equal flange widths of 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Closed-Valley Flashings: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m) and equal flange widths of 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
   g. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m) with 2-inch (50-mm) roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) fascia flange with 3/8-inch (10-mm) drip at lower edge.
3. Vent-Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof and extending at least 4 inches (100 mm) from pipe onto roof.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Underlayment Installation
   1. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
   2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
      a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than 6 inches (152 mm) over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a 19-inch- (485-mm-) wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses 19 inches (485 mm) in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
      a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
      b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water.
      c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
   4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap

sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm). Lap ends not less than 6 inches (152 mm), staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.

a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
b. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
c. Rakes: Extend from edges of rakes 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
d. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
e. Hips: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
f. Ridges: Extend 36 inches (914 mm) on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot, **as directed**.
g. Sidewalls: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
h. Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond penetrating elements and return vertically against penetrating elements not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
i. Roof-Slope Transitions: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each roof slope.

5. Metal-Flashed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install two layers of 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Stagger end laps between layers at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Lap ends of each layer at least 12 inches (305 mm) in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten each layer to roof deck with felt underlayment nails.
   a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over first layer of valley felt underlayment at least 6 inches (152 mm).

B. Metal Flashing Installation
1. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   a. Install metal flashings according to recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
2. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope slate shingles and up the vertical surface.
3. Step Flashings: Install with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and extend both horizontally and vertically. Install with lower edge of flashing just upslope of, and concealed by, butt of overlying slate shingle. Fasten to roof deck only.
4. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Install against the roof-penetrating element, extending concealed flange beneath upslope slate shingles and beyond each side.
5. Hip Flashings: Install centrally over hip with lower edge of flashing concealed by butt of overlying slate shingle. Fasten to roof deck.
6. Open **OR** Closed, **as directed**,-Valley Flashings: Install centrally in valleys, lapping ends at least 8 inches (205 mm) in direction to shed water. Fasten upper end of each length to roof deck beneath overlap.
   a. Secure hemmed flange edges into metal cleats spaced 12 inches (305 mm) apart and fastened to roof deck.
   b. Adhere 9-inch- (230-mm-) wide strips of self-adhering sheet to metal flanges and to self-adhering sheet underlayment.
7. Rake Drip Edges: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
8. Eave Drip Edges: Install beneath underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
9. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and slate shingles. Fasten and seal to slate shingles.

C. Slate-Shingle Installation
1. General: Beginning at eaves, install slate shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions and to details and recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
   a. Install wood nailer strip cant at eave edges.

b. Install shingle starter course chamfered face down.

2. Install first and succeeding shingle courses with chamfered face up. Install full-width first course at rake edge.
   a. Offset joints of uniform-width slate shingles by half the shingle width in succeeding courses.
   b. Offset joints of random-width slate shingles a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) in succeeding courses.
3. Maintain a 3-inch- (75-mm-) **OR** 4-inch- (100-mm-), **as directed**, minimum head lap between succeeding shingle courses.
4. Maintain uniform exposure of shingle courses between eaves and ridge **OR** midway between eaves and ridge and increase head lap of succeeding shingle courses to ensure uniform exposure on remaining shingle courses, **as directed**.
5. Extend shingle starter course and first course 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, over fasciae at eaves.
6. Extend shingle starter course and succeeding courses 1 inch (25 mm) over fasciae at rakes.
7. Cut and fit slate neatly around roof vents, pipes, ventilators, and other projections through roof.
8. Hang slate with two **OR** four, **as directed**, slating nails for each shingle with nail heads lightly touching slate. Do not drive nails home drawing slates downward or leave nail head protruding enough to interfere with overlapping shingle above.
   a. For vented ridge, terminate slate shingles leaving uniform air space on each side of ridge apex.
9. Ridges: Install ridge slate in saddle **OR** strip saddle **OR** combing, **as directed**, configuration.
   a. Install and anchor wood nailer strips of thicknesses to match abutting courses of slate shingles, terminating nailer strip 3 to 4 inches (75 to 100 mm) from the eave. Cover with felt underlayment strip, extending to underlying slate but concealed by ridge slate.
   b. Lay ridge slate in bed of asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant, **as directed**.
   c. Anchor ridge slate to supporting wood nailer strip with two **OR** four, **as directed**, nails for each slate shingle without nails penetrating underlying slate.
   d. Extend combing slate over leeward ridge slate by 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm). Seal ridge joint with elastomeric sealant.
   e. Cover heads of exposed nails at final ridge shingle with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant, **as directed**.
10. Hips: Install and anchor slate hips in saddle **OR** mitered **OR** fantail, **as diorected**, configuration.
    a. Install and anchor wood nailer strips of thickness to match abutting courses of slate shingles. Cover nailer strip with felt underlayment strip, extending on to underlying slate but concealed by hip slate. Anchor hip slate to nailer strip with two nails located in upper third of hip-slate length.
    b. Notch starter shingle and first shingle course at hip to fit around nailer strips so no wood is exposed at ridge eave.
    c. Lay hip slate in bed of asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant, **as directed**.
    d. Seal hip centerline joint with elastomeric sealant.
11. Open Valleys: Cut slate shingles to form straight lines at open valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shingles. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley **OR** Widen exposed portion of open valley 1/8 inch in 12 inches (1:96), **as directed**, from highest to lowest point.
    a. Do not nail shingles to valley metal flashings.
12. Closed Valleys: Cut slate shingles to form straight lines at closed valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shingles. Maintain uniform gap at centerline of valley of 1/2 to 3/4 inch (13 to 19 mm) **OR** 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm), **as directed**.
    a. Do not nail shingles to valley metal flashings.

D. Snow-Guard Installation
   1. Snow-Guard Pads: Install rows of snow-guard pads at locations indicated according to manufacturer's written installation instructions. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter. Space snow guards apart in each row, offsetting by half this dimension between succeeding rows.

2. Snow-Guard Rails: Install rows of snow-guard rails at locations indicated according to manufacturer's written installation instructions. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter.

E. Accessories Installation
   1. Ridge Caps **OR** Vents, **as directed**: Install units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      a. Install slate shingles into retention channels, butting adjacent shingles.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning
   1. Remove and replace damaged or broken slate shingles.
   2. Remove excess slate and debris from Project site.

END OF SECTION 07 31 26 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 31 29 00 - WOOD SHINGLES AND SHAKES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood shingles and shakes. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Wood roof shingles and shakes.
b. Wood wall shingles and shakes.
c. Wood-shingle-clad panels.
d. Underlayment.

C. Definitions
1. CSSB: Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau.
2. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood shingles and shakes comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body. Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
3. Samples: For each type of wood shingle, shake, ridge and hip unit, and ridge vent indicated.
4. Research/Evaluation Reports: For wood shingles and shakes, from the ICC, **as directed**.
5. Maintenance Data: For wood shingles and shakes to include in maintenance manuals.
6. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Grading Agency Qualifications: An independent testing and inspecting agency recognized by authorities having jurisdiction as qualified to label wood shingles and shakes for compliance with referenced grading rules.
2. Forest Certification: Provide shingles and shakes produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
3. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide wood shingles and shakes and related roofing materials identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per test method below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
a. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; UL 790 or ASTM E 108 with ASTM D 2898, for application and roof slopes indicated.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store underlayment rolls on end, on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
a. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to avoid significant or permanent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.

2. Protect unused underlayment from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: CSSB's standard form in which CSSB agrees to repair or replace wood shingles and shakes that fail in materials within specified warranty period. Material failures include manufacturing defects that result in leaks.
   a. Materials-Only Warranty Period: 20 **OR** 25, **as directed**, years for shingles and shakes, and 20 years for manufactured ridge and hip units, from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Roof Shingles
1. Cedar Roof Shingles: Smooth-sawn western red cedar shingles.
   a. Grading Standards: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certigrade Red Cedar Shingles."
   b. Grade: No. 1, with starter courses of No. 1 **OR** No. 2 **OR** No. 3, **as directed**.
   c. Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) long; 0.50 inch (13 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
2. Ridge and Hip, **as directed**, Units: Manufactured **OR** Site-fabricated, **as directed**, units of same thickness as roof shingle, 7 inches (180 mm) wide; beveled, alternately overlapped, and nailed.
   a. Grade: No. 1.
   b. Length: 16 inches (405 mm) **OR** 18 inches (455 mm), **as directed**.
3. Fancy-Butt Roof Shingles: Clear heartwood red cedar, No. 1 grade, with butt shape indicated.
   a. Butt Shape: Diagonal **OR** Half Cove **OR** Diamond **OR** Round **OR** Hexagonal **OR** Octagonal **OR** Arrow **OR** Square **OR** Fish Scale, **as directed**.
   b. Grading Standards: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certigrade Red Cedar Shingles."
   c. Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 5 inches (127 mm) wide **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 5 inches (127 mm) wide, **as directed**, by manufacturer's standard thickness.

B. Roof Shakes
1. Cedar Roof Shakes: Handsplit and resawn western red cedar shakes; split face and sawn back.
   a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Split Resawn Cedar Shakes."
   b. Grade: Premium, **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, with starter courses of Premium **OR** No. 1, **as directed**.
   c. Length: 18 inches (455 mm), **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, with 15-inch- (380-mm-) long starter course.
   d. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, at butt.
2. Cedar Roof Shakes: Tapersawn western red cedar shakes; sawn both sides.
   a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Sawn Tapersawn Cedar Shakes."
   b. Grade: Premium, **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, with starter courses of Premium **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**.
   c. Length: 18 inches (455 mm), **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, with 15-inch- (380-mm-) long starter course.
   d. Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, at butt.
3. Cedar Roof Shakes: Tapersplit western red cedar shakes; handsplit.
   a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Split Resawn Cedar Shakes."
   b. Grade: Premium, with premium starter courses.
   c. Length: 24 inches (610 mm), with 15-inch- (380-mm-) long starter course.
   d. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm) at butt.
4. Cedar Roof Shakes: Straightsplit western red cedar shakes; machine split or handsplit.
   a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Split Resawn Cedar Shakes."
   b. Grade: Premium, with premium starter courses.

c. Length: 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, with 15-inch- (380-mm-) long starter course.
d. Thickness: 3/8 to 1/2 inch (10 to 13 mm) at butt.

5. Ridge and Hip, **as directed**, Units: Manufactured **OR** Site-fabricated, **as directed**, units of same grade as shake, 9 inches (230 mm) wide; beveled, alternately overlapped, and nailed.
   a. Type: Handsplit and resawn **OR** Tapersawn, **as directed**.
   b. Length: 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, at butt.

C. Wall Shingles
1. Cedar Wall Shingles: Smooth-sawn western red cedar shingles.
   a. Grading Standards: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certigrade Red Cedar Shingles."
   b. Grade: No. 1 **OR** No. 2 **OR** No. 3, **as directed**.
   c. Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) long; 0.50 inch (13 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
   d. Undercourse Shingle Grade: No. 3 **OR** Undercoursing, **as directed**.
   e. Undercourse Shingle Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
2. Cedar Wall Shingles: Rebutted and rejointed, smooth-sawn **OR** sanded, **as directed**, western red cedar shingles.
   a. Grading Standards: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certigrade Red Cedar Shingles."
   b. Grade: No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**.
   c. Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) long; 0.50 inch (13 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
   d. Undercourse Shingle Grade: No. 3 **OR** Undercoursing, **as directed**.
   e. Undercourse Shingle Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
3. Cedar Wall Shingles: Rebutted and rejoined, machine-grooved, smooth-sawn western red cedar.
   a. Grading Standards: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certigrade Red Cedar Shingles."
   b. Grade: No. 1.
   c. Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) long; 0.50 inch (13 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
   d. Undercourse Shingle Grade: No. 3 **OR** Undercoursing, **as directed**.
   e. Undercourse Shingle Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
4. Fancy-Butt Wall Shingles: Clear heartwood red cedar, No. 1 grade, with butt shape indicated.
   a. Butt Shape: Diagonal **OR** Half Cove **OR** Diamond **OR** Round **OR** Hexagonal **OR** Octagonal **OR** Arrow **OR** Square **OR** Fish Scale, **as directed**.
   b. Grading Standards: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certigrade Red Cedar Shingles."
   c. Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 5 inches (127 mm) wide **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 5 inches (127 mm) wide, **as directed**, by manufacturer's standard thickness.
5. Cedar Wall Shingle Finish: Unfinished **OR** Semitransparent penetrating stain, oil based, factory applied **OR** Semisolid penetrating stain, oil based, factory applied **OR** Oil-based primer, stain blocking, factory applied, **as directed**.

D. Wall Shakes
1. Cedar Wall Shakes: Handsplit and resawn western red cedar shakes; split face and sawn back.
   a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Split Resawn Cedar Shakes."
   b. Outer Course Grade: Premium **OR** No. 1, **as directed**.
   c. Starter Course **OR** Undercourse, **as directed**, Grade: No. 1 **OR** Standard, **as directed**.
   d. Length: 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
   e. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, at butt.
2. Cedar Wall Shakes: Tapersawn western red cedar shakes; sawn both sides.

a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Sawn Tapersawn Cedar Shakes."
b. Outer Course Grade: Premium **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**.
c. Starter Course **OR** Undercourse, **as directed**, Grade: No. 1 **OR** No. 2 **OR** No. 3, **as directed**.
d. Length: 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
e. Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, at butt.

3. Cedar Wall Shakes: Tapersplit western red cedar shakes; handsplit.
   a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Split Resawn Cedar Shakes."
   b. Grade: Premium.
   c. Length: 24 inches (610 mm).
   d. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm) at butt.
   e. Undercourse Shingle Grade: No. 3 **OR** Undercoursing, **as directed**.
   f. Undercourse Shingle Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
4. Cedar Wall Shakes: Straightsplit western red cedar shakes; machine split or handsplit.
   a. Grading Standard: CSSB's "Grading Rules for Certi-Split Resawn Cedar Shakes."
   b. Grade: Premium.
   c. Length: 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
   d. Thickness: 3/8 to 1/2 inch (10 to 13 mm) at butt.
   e. Undercourse Shingle Grade: No. 3 **OR** Undercoursing, **as directed**.
   f. Undercourse Shingle Size: 16 inches (405 mm) long; 0.40 inch (10 mm) thick **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) long; 0.45 inch (11 mm) thick, **as directed**, at butt.
5. Cedar Wall Shake Finish: Unfinished **OR** Semitransparent penetrating stain, oil based, factory applied **OR** Semisolid penetrating stain, oil based, factory applied **OR** Oil-based primer, stain blocking, factory applied, **as directed**.

E. Wood-Shingle-Clad Panels
1. Cedar Shingle Panels: Clear, vertical-grain, western red cedar shingles bonded with exterior-type adhesives to 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) thick, 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, DOC PS 1 Exterior C-D plywood panels.
   a. Number of Courses per Panel: One **OR** Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**.
   b. Butt Style: Straight line **OR** Staggered, **as directed**.
   c. Fancy-Butt Style: Diagonal **OR** Half Cove **OR** Diamond **OR** Round **OR** Hexagonal **OR** Octagonal **OR** Arrow **OR** Square **OR** Fish Scale, **as directed**.
   d. Exposure: 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** 7 inches (180 mm), **as directed**, per course.
2. Prefabricated Corners: Flush **OR** Flush, with staggered ends **OR** Add-on, **as directed**, type.

F. Wood Treatments
1. Fire-Retardant Treatment: Exterior-type pressure treatment complying with AWPA C1, **as directed**.
2. Pressure-Preservative Treatment: AWPA C34, chromated copper arsenate (CCA) pressure treatment; a minimum of 0.40 lb/cu. ft. (6.4 kg/cu. m).
3. Identification: Attach a label to each bundle of wood shingles or shakes; identify manufacturer, references to model-code approval, type of product, grade, dimensions, and approved grading agency.
   a. Include chemical treatment, method of application, purpose of treatment, and warranties available.

G. Underlayment Materials
1. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226 **OR** ASTM D 4869, **as directed**, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felt.
2. Felt Interlayment: ASTM D 226 **OR** ASTM D 4869, **as directed**, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felt.

3. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970, a minimum of 55-mil- (1.4-mm-) thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, a minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.

H. Ridge Vents
1. Rigid Ridge Vent: Manufacturer's standard rigid section, high-density polypropylene or other UV-stabilized plastic ridge vent with nonwoven geotextile filter strips and external deflector baffles, **as directed**; for use under ridge shingles and shakes.
2. Flexible Ridge Vent: Manufacturer's standard, compression-resisting, three-dimensional, open-nylon or polyester-mat filter bonded to a nonwoven, nonwicking, geotextile fabric cover, **as directed**; for use under roof shingles and shakes.

I. Accessories
1. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
2. Drainage Mat: Manufacturer's standard, compression-resisting, three-dimensional, nonwoven, entangled filament, nylon mat designed to permit air movement and drain incidental moisture by gravity.
3. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667, aluminum **OR** stainless-steel **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire nails, sharp pointed, and of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 3/4 inch (19 mm) into sheathing.
    a. Use box **OR** shingle, **as directed**,-type nails for wood shingles.
    b. Use box-type nails for wood shakes.
    c. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.
4. Roofing Staples: Type 304 or Type 316, stainless-steel staples, 0.05-inch (1.3-mm) thick, with a minimum of 7/16-inch (11-mm) crown width, of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 3/4 inch (19 mm) into sheathing.
5. Felt Underlayment and Interlayment, **as directed**, Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire nails; with 1-inch- (25-mm-) minimum diameter, low-profile capped heads or disc caps.
6. Wood Lath Strip: Western red cedar, clear heartwood, a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide.

J. Metal Flashing And Trim
1. General: Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim"
    a. Sheet Metal: Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated copper **OR** Anodized aluminum **OR** Aluminum, mill finished, **as directed**.
2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
    a. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, over and 4 inches (100 mm) beyond each side of downslope wood roofing and 6 inches (152 mm) up the vertical surface.
    b. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and a minimum extension of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm), **as directed**, both horizontally and vertically.
    c. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, beneath upslope wood roofing and 6 inches (152 mm) beyond each side of chimney **OR** skylight, **as directed**, and 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof plane.

d. Open-Valley Flashings: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m) with 1-inch- (25-mm-) high, inverted-V profile at center of valley and equal flange widths of 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
e. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m) with 2-inch (50-mm) roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) fascia flange with 3/8-inch (10-mm) drip at lower edge.

3. Vent-Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof and extending at least 4 inches (100 mm) from pipe onto roof.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Underlayment Installation
1. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
   a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than 6 inches (152 mm) over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a 19-inch- (485-mm-) wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses 19 inches (485 mm) in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
   a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water.
   c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm). Lap ends not less than 6 inches (152 mm), staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
   a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   b. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
   c. Rakes: Extend from edges of rakes 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
   d. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
   e. Hips: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
   f. Ridges: Extend 36 inches (914 mm) on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot, **as directed**.
   g. Sidewalls: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than 4 inches (100 mm).

h. Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond penetrating elements and return vertically against penetrating elements not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
i. Roof-Slope Transitions: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each roof slope.

5. Metal-Flashed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install two layers of 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Stagger end laps between layers at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Lap ends of each layer at least 12 inches (305 mm) in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten each layer to roof deck with felt underlayment nails.
   a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over first layer of valley felt underlayment at least 6 inches (152 mm).

B. Metal Flashing Installation
1. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   a. Install metal flashings according to recommendations for wood roofing in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
2. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope wood roofing and up the vertical surface.
3. Step Flashings: Install with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and extend both horizontally and vertically. Install with lower edge of flashing just upslope of, and concealed by, butt of overlying shingle or shake. Fasten to roof deck only.
4. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Install against the roof-penetrating element, extending concealed flange beneath upslope wood roofing and beyond each side.
5. Open-Valley Flashings: Install centrally in valleys, lapping ends at least 8 inches (205 mm) in direction to shed water. Fasten upper end of each length to roof deck beneath overlap.
   a. Secure hemmed flange edges into metal cleats spaced 12 inches (305 mm) apart and fastened to roof deck.
   b. Adhere 9-inch- (230-mm-) wide strip of self-adhering sheet to metal flanges and to self-adhering sheet underlayment.
6. Rake Drip Edges: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
7. Eave Drip Edges: Install beneath underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
8. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and wood roofing. Fasten and seal to wood roofing.

C. Roof-Shingle Installation
1. General: Install wood-shingle roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in CSSB's "New Roof Construction Manual" and NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
2. Install drainage mat perpendicular to roof slope in parallel courses, butting edges and ends to form a continuous layer, and fasten to roof deck.
3. Install single **OR** double, **as directed**,-layer wood-shingle starter course along lowest roof edge. Extend starter course 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, over fascia and 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, over rake edge.
   a. Offset joints of double-layer starter course a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
4. Install first course of wood shingles directly over starter course and in continuous straight-line courses across roof deck. Install second and succeeding courses of wood shingles in continuous straight-line courses across roof deck. Extend 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, over rake edge.
   a. Offset joints between shingles in succeeding courses a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Limit alignment of vertical joints in every third course to not exceed 10 percent of joints.
   b. Space shingles a minimum of 1/4 inch (6 mm) and a maximum of 3/8 inch (10 mm) apart.
   c. Fasten each shingle with two nails **OR** staples, **as directed**, spaced 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) from edge of shingle and 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) above butt line of succeeding course. Drive fasteners flush with top surface of shingles without crushing wood.

d. Maintain weather exposure of 5 inches (127 mm) for 16-inch- (405-mm-) **OR** 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) for 18-inch- (455-mm-) **OR** 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) for 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, long shingles.

5. Open Valleys: Cut and fit wood shingles at open valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shingles. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley **OR** Widen exposed portion of open valley 1/8 inch in 12 inches (1:96), **as directed**, from highest to lowest point.
6. Fancy-Butt Shingles: Install one **OR** two **OR** three, **as directed**, courses of fancy-butt shingles in continuous straight-line courses across roof deck. Center each shingle in succeeding courses between the two shingles below it with 1/8-inch (3-mm) space between shingles.
   a. Maintain weather exposure of 5 inches (127 mm).
7. Ridge Vents: Install continuous ridge vents over wood shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate roof sheathing.
8. Ridge and Hip, **as directed**, Units: Install units over wood shingles trimmed at apex. Maintain same exposure dimension of units as roof-shingle exposure. Lap units at ridges to shed water away from direction of prevailing winds. Alternate overlaps of units and fasten with concealed roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
   a. Install concealed strip of felt underlayment over apex shingles and fasten with felt underlayment nails.
   b. Fasten ridge units to cover ridge vent without obstructing airflow.

D. Roof-Shake Installation
1. General: Install wood-shake roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in CSSB's "New Roof Construction Manual" and NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
2. Install drainage mat perpendicular to roof slope in parallel courses, butting edges and ends to form a continuous layer, and fasten to roof deck.
3. Install single **OR** double, **as directed**,-layer wood-shake starter course along lowest roof edge. Extend starter course 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, over fascia and 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, over rake edge.
   a. Offset joints of double-layer starter course a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
4. Install first course of wood shakes directly over starter course and in continuous straight-line courses across roof deck. Install second and succeeding courses of wood shakes in continuous straight-line courses across roof deck. Extend 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, over rake edge.
   a. Install 18-inch- (455-mm-) wide strip of felt interlayment over top portion of first and each succeeding course. Set bottom edge of felt interlayment at a distance of twice the weather-exposure dimension above the shake butt. Stagger fasten to roof deck with felt underlayment nails.
   b. Offset joints between shakes in succeeding courses a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   c. Space shakes a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm) and a maximum of 5/8 inch (16 mm) apart.
   d. Fasten each shake with two nails **OR** staples, **as directed**, spaced 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) from edge of shake and 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) above butt line of succeeding course. Drive fasteners flush with top surface of shakes without crushing wood.
   e. Maintain weather exposure of 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) for 18-inch- (455-mm-) **OR** 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) for 18-inch- (455-mm-) **OR** 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) for 24-inch- (610-mm-) **OR** 10 inches (255 mm) for 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, long shakes.
5. Open Valleys: Cut and fit wood shakes at open valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shakes. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley **OR** Widen exposed portion of open valley 1/8 inch in 12 inches (1:96), **as directed**, from highest to lowest point.
6. Ridge Vents: Install continuous ridge vents over wood shakes according to manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
7. Ridge and Hip, **as directed**, Units: Install units over wood shakes trimmed at apex. Maintain same exposure dimension of units as roof-shake exposure. Lap units at ridges to shed water away from direction of prevailing winds. Alternate overlaps of units and fasten with concealed roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.

a. Install concealed strip of felt underlayment over apex shakes and fasten with felt underlayment nails.
b. Fasten ridge units to cover ridge vent without obstructing airflow.

E. Wall-Shingle Installation, Single Coursed
1. Install wood wall shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in CSSB's "Exterior and Interior Wall Manual."
2. Install drainage mat horizontally, in parallel courses, over surface to receive wood shingles, butting edges and ends to form a continuous layer; fasten to wall sheathing.
3. Install wood shingles, beginning at base of wall, with a double-layer starter course in a continuous straight line. Offset joints of double-layer starter course a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   a. Extend starter course 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, below top of foundation wall.
4. Install first course of wood shingles over starter course. Install second and succeeding courses of wood shingles. Offset joints between shingles in succeeding courses a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   a. Install shingles in continuous straight-line courses.
      OR
      Install shingle courses with butt lines staggered 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, from true butt line.
   b. Install primed shingles with sides abutting **OR** Space shingles 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) apart, **as directed**.
   c. Fasten each shingle with two concealed nails **OR** staples driven parallel to butt, **as directed**, spaced 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) from edge of shingle and 1 inch (25 mm) above butt line of succeeding course. For shingles wider than 8 inches (205 mm), add two concealed fasteners, spaced 1 inch (25 mm) apart, to the center of shingle. Drive fasteners flush with top surface of shingles without crushing wood.
   d. Maintain weather exposure of 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) for 16-inch- (405-mm-) **OR** 8-1/2 inches (215 mm) for 18-inch- (455-mm-) **OR** 11-1/2 inches (290 mm) for 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, long shingles.
   e. Interior Corner Treatment: Butted against wood stop **OR** Laced with flashing behind, **as directed**.
   f. Exterior Corner Treatment: Butted against corner boards **OR** Laced **OR** Mitered, **as directed**.
5. Fancy-Butt Shingles: Install fancy-butt shingles where indicated, in continuous straight-line courses along wall. Center each shingle in succeeding courses between the two shingles below it with primed shingles abutting **OR** 1/8-inch (3-mm) space between shingles, **as directed**.
   a. Maintain weather exposure of 7-1/2 inches (190 mm).
   b. Interior Corner Treatment: Butted against wood stop.
   c. Exterior Corner Treatment: Butted against corner boards **OR** Mitered, **as directed**.

F. Wall-Shingle Installation, Double Coursed
1. Install wood wall shingles in continuous straight-line courses according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in CSSB's "Exterior and Interior Wall Manual."
2. Install drainage mat horizontally, in parallel courses, over surface to receive wood shingles, butting edges and ends to form a continuous layer; fasten to wall sheathing.
3. Install double-layer undercourse of wood shingles beginning at base of wall. Offset joints of each undercourse layer a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Fasten with a single center-and-top nail **OR** staple driven parallel to butt, **as directed**.
   a. Extend undercourse 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, below top of foundation wall.
   b. Fasten two layers of lath wood strips at base of undercourse to match thickness of double-layer undercourse. Extend 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, below top of foundation wall.
4. Install succeeding undercourse layers against wood lath strip, **as directed**. Offset joints between undercourse and outer course a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

a. Fasten with a single center-and-top nail **OR** staple driven parallel to butt, **as directed**.

5. Install single wood lath strip on first and succeeding outer courses to match thickness of undercourse and at height that results in specified outer course weather exposure.
6. Install first and succeeding outer courses of wood shingles directly over undercourses, projecting 1/2 inch (13 mm) below undercourse **OR** lath strips, **as directed**. Offset joints between shingles and undercourse a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Offset joints between shingles in succeeding outer courses a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   a. Install primed outer shingles with sides abutting **OR** Space outer shingles 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) apart, **as directed**.
   b. Fasten each shingle with two exposed nails **OR** staples driven parallel to butt, **as directed**, spaced 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) from edge of shingle and 2 inches (50 mm) above butt line of succeeding course. For outer course shingles wider than 8 inches (205 mm), add two concealed fasteners, spaced 1 inch (25 mm) apart, to the center of shingle. Drive fasteners flush with top surface of shingles without crushing wood.
   c. Maintain weather exposure of 12 inches (305 mm) for 16-inch- (405-mm-) **OR** 14 inches (355 mm) for 18-inch- (455-mm-) **OR** 16 inches (405 mm) for 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, long shingles.
   d. Interior Corner Treatment: Butted against wood stop **OR** Laced with flashing behind, **as directed**.
   e. Exterior Corner Treatment: Butted against corner boards **OR** Laced **OR** Mitered, **as directed**.

G. Wall-Shake Installation, Single Coursed
1. Install wood wall shakes according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in CSSB's "Exterior and Interior Wall Manual."
2. Install drainage mat horizontally, in parallel courses, over surface to receive wood shakes, butting edges and ends to form a continuous layer; fasten to wall sheathing.
3. Install wood shakes, beginning at base of wall, with a double-layer starter course in a continuous straight line. Offset joints of double-layer starter course a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   a. Extend starter course 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, below top of foundation wall.
4. Install first course of wood shakes over starter course. Install second and succeeding course of wood shakes. Offset joints between shakes in succeeding courses a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
   a. Install shakes in continuous straight-line courses.
      OR
      Install shake courses with butt lines staggered 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, from true butt line.
   b. Install primed shakes with sides abutting **OR** Space shingles 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) apart, **as directed**.
   c. Fasten each shake with two concealed nails **OR** staples driven parallel to butt, **as directed**, spaced 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) from edge of shake and 1 inch (25 mm) above butt line of succeeding course. For shakes wider than 8 inches (205 mm), add two concealed fasteners, spaced 1 inch (25 mm) apart, to the center of shake. Drive fasteners flush with top surface of shakes without crushing wood.
   d. Maintain weather exposure of 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) for 16-inch- (405-mm-) **OR** 8-1/2 inches (215 mm) for 18-inch- (455-mm-) **OR** 11-1/2 inches (290 mm) for 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, long shakes.
   e. Interior Corner Treatment: Butted against wood stop **OR** Laced with flashing behind, **as directed**.
   f. Exterior Corner Treatment: Butted against corner boards **OR** Laced **OR** Mitered, **as directed**.

H. Wall-Shake Installation, Double Coursed

1. Install wood wall shakes in continuous straight-line courses according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in CSSB's "Exterior and Interior Wall Manual."
2. Install drainage mat horizontally, in parallel courses, over surface to receive wood shakes, butting edges and ends to form a continuous layer; fasten to wall sheathing.
3. Install double-layer undercourse of wood shingles beginning at base of wall. Offset joints of each undercourse layer a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Fasten with a single center-and-top nail **OR** staple driven parallel to butt, **as directed**.
    a. Extend undercourse 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, below top of foundation wall.
    b. Fasten two layers of lath wood strips at base of undercourse to match thickness of double-layer undercourse. Extend 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, below top of foundation wall.
4. Install succeeding undercourse layers against wood lath strip, **as directed**. Offset joints between undercourse and outer course a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
    a. Fasten with a single center-and-top nail **OR** staple driven parallel to butt, **as directed**.
5. Install single wood lath strip on first and succeeding outer courses to match thickness of undercourse and at height that results in specified outer course weather exposure.
6. Install first and succeeding outer courses of wood shakes directly over undercourses, projecting 1/2 inch (13 mm) below undercourse **OR** lath strips, **as directed**. Offset joints between shakes and undercourse shingles a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Offset joints between shakes in succeeding outer courses a minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
    a. Install primed outer shakes with sides abutting **OR** Space outer shakes 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm) apart, **as directed**.
    b. Fasten each shake with two exposed nails **OR** staples driven parallel to butt, **as directed**, spaced 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) from edge of shake and 2 inches (50 mm) above butt line of succeeding course. For shakes wider than 8 inches (205 mm), add two concealed fasteners, spaced 1 inch (25 mm) apart, to the center of shake. Drive fasteners flush with top surface of shake without crushing wood.
    c. Maintain weather exposure of 12 inches (305 mm) for 16-inch- (405-mm-) **OR** 14 inches (355 mm) for 18-inch- (455-mm-) **OR** 18 inches (455 mm) for 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, long shakes.
    d. Interior Corner Treatment: Butted against wood stop **OR** Laced with flashing behind, **as directed**.
    e. Exterior Corner Treatment: Butted against corner boards **OR** Laced **OR** Mitered, **as directed**.

I. Wood-Shingle-Clad Panel Installation
1. Install wood-shingle-clad panels and corner units, **as directed**, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install panels level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.
3. Install panels working from the lowest level to the top of the wall area.

END OF SECTION 07 31 29 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 31 29 13	07 31 29 00	Wood Shingles And Shakes
07 31 29 16	07 31 29 00	Wood Shingles And Shakes
07 31 29 19	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
07 31 29 19	07 31 29 00	Wood Shingles And Shakes

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 31 33 00 - COMPOSITE RUBBER SHINGLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for composite rubber shingles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.
2. Furnish and install this Majestic Slate Tile Roof System in strict accordance with specifications and drawings approved by EcoStar.
3. Metal flashing work is not covered in this specification since EcoStar does **NOT** warrant metal flashing. EcoStar advises that metal flashing and securement of metal should be to industry standards (SMACNA) to prevent the metal from pulling free or buckling. EcoStar also suggests that all flashing metal be copper, stainless steel or an equally long-term material.
4. EcoStar Attic Guard Ridge Ventilation product must be used on those projects that will be using a ridge ventilation system. If a ridge ventilation system is not to be used on the project, another form of ventilation may be used, but will not be covered by any EcoStar warranties. EcoStar advises that a ridge style venting system be utilized to insure the best possible air movement and to provide the best aesthetic appearance to the roofing system.

B. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

C. Submittals
1. Submit an “EcoStar Gold Star Project Survey” to EcoStar Technical Department for approval **PRIOR** to the job start to enable the Technical Department to approve and assign a job number to the project.
2. The “EcoStar Gold Star Project Survey Form” must be filled out completely and accurately to include any prior deviations approved from this specification, including a roof drawing showing all dimensions, all penetrations, and roof slope.
3. When an EcoStar Gold Star Warranty is desired, EcoStar must be contacted **PRIOR** to project bid and installation. Information may be required for wind design and slope requirements.
4. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
5. Samples: For the following products, of sizes indicated.
   a. Composite Rubber Shingle: Full size, of each color, size, texture, and shape.
   b. Ridge Vent System: 12 inches (300 mm) long.
   c. Fasteners: Three fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
   d. Underlayment: 12 inches (300 mm) square.

D. Quality Assurance
1. To qualify for an EcoStar Gold Star Warranty, an authorized EcoStar Gold Star Applicator must install system.
2. There shall be no deviation made from this specification without written approval from EcoStar prior to the start of the roofing project.
3. For an EcoStar Gold Star Warranty, upon completion of the installation, an inspection must be conducted by a Technical Representative of EcoStar to ascertain that the roofing system has been installed according to EcoStar’s most current published specifications and details. This inspection is not intended to be a Final Inspection for the benefit of the Owner, but for the benefit of EcoStar to determine whether a warranty shall be issued.
4. Class C Testing Requirements:
   a. Fire Resistance - UL 790 Test Standard
   b. Class 4 Impact Resistance - UL 2218 Test Standard

c. 110 mph wind load - PA100-95 Test Standard
d. Wind uplift - 105 lbs / sq ft - UL 1897 Test Standard

5. Class A Testing Requirements:
   a. Fire Resistance - UL 790 Test Standard
   b. Class 4 Impact Resistance - UL 2218 Test Standard

E. Product Delivery, Storage And Handling
1. Deliver materials in original unopened packages.
2. Packages shall be labeled with manufacturer's name, brand name, installation instructions and identification of various items.
3. All tile materials must be stored between 45^{O} F. and 80^{O} F. If exposed to lower temperatures, restore to 45^{O} F minimum temperature before using.
4. Store all materials in a dry protected area. Damaged materials must **NOT** be used. Installed materials found to be damaged shall be replaced at Gold Star Authorized Applicator's expense.

F. Job Conditions (Cautions And Warnings)
1. Contact EcoStar Technical Department for procedures when installing a Majestic Slate Tile Roof System during temperatures less than 45^{O} F.
2. Do not install the Majestic Slate Tile Roof System directly over existing asphalt shingles or existing tile roof systems. All existing roof materials **MUST** be removed prior to installation of the Majestic Slate Tile System.
3. Roofing surface must be free of ice, water, or snow prior to and during the roofing project.

G. Warranty
1. Roofing materials manufacturer will provide the warranty for those materials supplied by the manufacturer when the project is completed by a manufacturer's authorized applicator and all required materials have been utilized within the roof system.
2. Only when a manufacturer's technical representative has inspected and approved the completed installation will a warranty be issued.
3. The warranty is available for all types of buildings and structures.
4. The warranty period is expressed on the warranty certificate, which reflects the inclusive dates of coverage.
5. The warranty does NOT cover the aesthetic appearance of the Majestic Slate - Tiles. Care should be taken by the authorized applicator to ensure that proper blending of the tiles occurs. When improper blending occurs the aesthetic appearance of the roof can be effected negatively. Blending should occur from a minimum of seven bundles from each pallet. It is highly suggested that all material be on site to blend from.
6. Only products supplied by EcoStar, a Division of Carlisle SynTec Incorporated, are included in the warranty unless otherwise specified and approved in writing by EcoStar, a Division of Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturer
1. All Components of the Majestic Slate - Tile Roof System are to be products manufactured or supplied by EcoStar, a Division of Carlisle SynTec Incorporated, or approved equivalent.

B. Class C Tile Roofing System
1. Slate Tiles/Shingles: Tiles made of Starloy™, 100% recycled rubber and plastic compound, 12" wide by 18" long with a nominal thickness of 1/4". Weight shall be determined by the following acceptable tile exposures:
   7" 241 - 258 lbs per square
   6-1/2" 259 - 278 lbs per square
   6" 280 - 300 lbs per square

a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard colors, unless directed otherwise.

2. Underlayment
   a. AquaGuard - a roofing underlayment recognized for use as an alternative to Type 30 roofing underlayment, consisting of spunbonded polypropylene coated with a layer of U.V. stabilized polypropylene on both sides, meeting requirements of ASTM D2626, referred to as 30 lb and without perforations.
   b. Glacier Guard ice and water underlayment - Granular Surface (55 mil), Smooth Surface (40 mil), or Smooth Surface High Temperature (40 mil), a composite membrane consisting of fiberglass reinforced rubberized asphalt laminated to an impermeable polyethylene film layer (Smooth Surface and Smooth Surface High Temperature) or coated with a granular surface providing maximum skid resistance (Granular Surface).

C. Class A Tile Roofing System
1. Slate Tiles/Shingles: Tiles made of Starloy™, 100% recycled rubber and plastic compound, 12" wide by 18" long with a nominal thickness of 1/4". Weight shall be determined by the following acceptable tile exposures:
   7" 258 - 276 lbs per square
   6-1/2" 278 - 294 lbs per square
   6" 300 - 321 lbs per square
   a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard colors, unless directed otherwise.
2. Underlayment
   a. VersaShield - One layer of Elk VersaShield meeting or exceeding the requirements of ASTM D226.
   b. Glacier Guard ice & water underlayment - Granular Surface (55 mil), Smooth Surface (40 mil), or Smooth Surface High Temperature (40 mil), a composite membrane consisting of fiberglass reinforced rubberized asphalt laminated to an impermeable polyethylene film layer (Smooth Surface and Smooth Surface High Temperature) or coated with a granular surface providing maximum skid resistance (Granular Surface).

D. Fasteners
1. AquaGuard/VersaShield
   a. Roofing nails with one inch (1") diameter round or square head, plastic or metal, and 3/4" long shank. Metal parts of fastener are to be corrosion resistant.
2. Tile Fasteners
   a. EcoStar Roofing Nail with a 3/8" diameter head and a minimum of 1-1/2" long shank made from stainless steel. Nails can be supplied either as a hand drive style or in coils for use in pneumatic tools.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Substrate Criteria
1. The Building owner or the Owner's Representative is responsible for providing and determining that the substrate is suitable to receive the Majestic Slate Tile Roof System and the authorized EcoStar Gold Star Applicator should not proceed until all defects have been corrected.
2. The Majestic Slate Roof System may only be applied over:
   a. Minimum ½" plywood or OSB decking
   b. Minimum 1" tongue and groove wood decking
   c. Approved metal deck systems - for specifics contact roofing materials manufacturer.
3. Minimum slope of substrate for installation of Majestic Slate Roof System shall be a minimum of 3/12 for 6" exposure installation and a minimum of 6/12 for 7" exposure installation. Contact the EcoStar Technical Department for approval of applications on lower slopes or exceptions to this requirement.

B. Substrate Preparation

1. The Building Owner or the Owner's Representative is responsible for ensuring that all wet or damaged substrate has been removed in a re-roofing application.
2. Existing roof material **MUST** be removed and a clean substrate free of foreign material be provided prior to the installation of the Majestic Slate Tile Roof System. Majestic Slate Tiles may **NOT** be installed directly over any existing roof material or system.

C. Installation
1. Flashing and Sheet Metal:
   a. Install sheet metal and flashing metal in all valleys and where required on projections furnish in accordance with Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   b. Where required, install metal starter strip at all eaves and roof edges. Furnish metal in accordance with Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   c. The roofing materials manufacturer suggests that all metal work be made from copper, stainless steel or an equally long-term material.
2. Underlayment:
   a. AquaGuard:
      1) Apply 41.5" wide sheet over complete deck, lapping the area covered with Glacier Guard ice and water underlayment. Lap end joints 6" and side joints 4" and double through valleys.
      2) Do not leave exposed to weather more than 90 days after beginning of installation without written approval of the Owner.
      3) Do not leave any fastener heads exposed. Nail only in areas to be covered by lapping of underlayment.
   b. VersaShield:
      1) Apply 42" wide sheet over complete deck, covering the entire roof deck **INCLUDING** those areas with Glacier Guard Ice & Water underlayment. Lap end joints 4" and side joints 6".
      2) Lap the VersaShield 6" from both sides over all hips, valleys, and ridges.
      3) Where the roof meets a vertical surface, carry the VersaShield 3" to 4" up the surface.
      4) Do not leave exposed to weather more than **60** days after beginning of installation without written approval of the Owner.
      5) Do not leave any fastener heads exposed. Nail only in areas to be covered by lapping of underlayment.
   c. Glacier Guard Ice and water underlayment:
      1) Lap end joints 6" and side joints 3.5"
      2) Apply continuous 36" wide sheet in valley centered over valley.
      3) Apply rows of 36" wide sheets along all eaves and rakes. Lap end joints 6" and side joints 3.5".
      4) Apply rows of 36" wide sheets along and around all dormers and roof projections. Lap end joints 6" and side joints 3.5".
      5) When applicable install as far as it can be installed on any head walls or vertical walls a minimum of 12".
      6) Do not leave Glacier Guard Granular Surface exposed to weather more than 14 days after beginning of installation. Do not leave Glacier Guard Smooth Surface exposed to weather more than 30 days after beginning of installation. Do not leave Glacier Guard Smooth Surface High Temp exposed to the weather more than 60 days after the beginning of installation.
3. Tile/Shingle Installation
   a. After installing underlayment and before installing the tiles, clean the surface of debris and dirt.
   b. Beginning at the eave, install a layer of tiles gapped a minimum of 3/8" between tiles and any projections, with two roofing fasteners per tile (in location shown on tiles). This layer of tiles will become the starter row. Install another layer of tiles in the same manner as the first with the exception of the second layer having a 1/2 tile offset to the first layer.

c. Continue installing tiles per the chosen exposure.
d. Care must be taken to place tiles so color variations are evenly distributed over the entire roof area. Tiles between bundles and pallets **MUST** be shuffled to insure even distribution of color variations. "Patchy" or "Blotching" in appearance is not acceptable and the applicator will be required to correct. It is recommended that work not begin until all roofing materials have been delivered to the job site.
e. It is the responsibility of the applicator to ensure that all tiles are bent back in a downward curve prior to installation. **Do not install tiles with an upward curve**.
f. Either an open or closed valley design may be used.
    1) With an open valley design leave a minimum of 2" on each side of the center of the valley exposed and uncovered by the roof tiles. A V-Style or W-Style Valley metal may be used.
    2) With a closed valley design cut the tiles in a straight line to fit no closer than 3/8" against tile of adjoining roof slope.
g. Minimum Fastening - No less than 2 approved fasteners per tile, with a minimum length of 1-1/2", shall be used.
h. CAUTION: When using a pneumatic nailer, care shall be taken to ensure that nails are not over driven causing the tiles to curl upward. If tiles have been installed with over-driven nails causing the ends of the tile to curve upward, tiles will never lay flat. Over-driven tiles must be removed and re-nailed properly.
i. Install EcoStar Attic Guard ridge vent system per the manufacturer's application instructions, and then place the Majestic Slate - Universal Hip/Ridge Tile over the ridge vent. A minimum 2.5" stainless steel, hand-driven EcoStar fastener should be used on a ventilated hip/ridge to fasten the hip/ridge tile to the deck. A minimum 2" stainless steel, hand-driven EcoStar fastener should be used on an unventilated hip/ridge to fasten the hip/ridge tile to the deck. Place fasteners in the location marked on the tile. Majestic Slate - Universal Hip/Ridge Tile must be installed with 6" exposure.
j. Tiles may not be installed if the tiles have been stored in temperatures lower than 45^{O} F. If tiles have been stored in temperatures below 45^{O} F., tiles must be brought back to an ambient material temperature of 45^{O} F. As the temperature rises, tiles will expand beyond the designed installation pattern if the product is installed while cold or frozen.
k. Do not install tiles directly adjacent to each other. A minimum gap of 3/8" must be maintained between installed tiles.
l. After the initial row of tiles has been installed, it is recommended that a chalk line be placed parallel to the roof edge and running perpendicular to the first row of tiles. This chalk line will ensure that the tiles stay true and plumb to the roof edge throughout installation.
m. Care must be taken to minimize foot traffic over completed areas of the roof. Tiles will show mud and dirt and cause appearance problems. The removal of dirt and debris is the responsibility of the applicator.
n. Tiles can be slippery when wet, caution should be exhibited with early morning dew and after rain. The tile manufacturer suggests the use of toe boards and OSHA approved harnesses and safety equipment at all time.
o. Upon completion of the roof system installation, inspect and remove all debris from roof, sweep clean and wash with a mild, non-bleaching detergent.

END OF SECTION 07 31 33 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 31 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 32 13 00 - CLAY ROOF TILES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for clay roof tiles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Clay roof tiles.
b. Underlayment.
c. Snow guards.

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079, glossaries in TRI/WSRCA's "Concrete and Clay Roof Tile Design Criteria Installation Manual for Moderate Climate Regions," and NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For clay roof tiles, documentation indicating compliance with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
3. Samples: For each type of clay roof tile and accessory tile indicated.
4. Material test reports.
5. Research/evaluation reports.
6. Maintenance data.
7. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide clay roof tiles and related roofing materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
a. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; UL 790 or ASTM E 108, for application and roof slopes indicated.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store underlayment rolls on end, on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
a. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to avoid significant or permanent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.
2. Protect unused underlayment from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace clay roof tiles that fail in materials within specified warranty period.
a. Materials-Only Warranty Period: 50 years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Clay Roof Tiles
1. Clay Roof Tiles: ASTM C 1167, molded- or extruded-clay roof tile units of shape and configuration indicated, kiln fired to vitrification, and free of surface imperfections. Provide with fastening holes prepunched at factory before firing.
   a. Durability: Grade 1 **OR** Grade 2 **OR** Grade 3, **as directed**.
   b. High-Profile Shape: Type I, Spanish or "S" **OR** Type I, tapered mission, two piece **OR** Type I, straight mission, two piece **OR** Type I, straight barrel mission, two piece **OR** Type I, Greek, two piece **OR** Type I, Roman, two piece, **as directed**.
   c. Low-Profile Shape: Type II, French interlocking.
   d. Flat Shape: Type III, flat shingle **OR** Type III, flat interlocking, **as directed**.
      1) Provide clay roof tiles of diminishing widths for circular bays or round towers.
   e. Solar Reflectance Index: Provide clay roof tile with Solar Reflectance Index not less than 29 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing of identical products by a qualified testing agency.
   f. Finish and Texture: Matte, smooth **OR** Matte, striated **OR** Glazed, smooth, **as directed**.
   g. Color: Terra cotta **OR** Brown **OR** Red **OR** Blended red **OR** Buff, **as directed**.
   h. High **OR** Low, **as directed**,-Profile-Shape Accessory Tiles: Ridge, ridge vent, ridge end, hip and hip starter, header course, L-shaped rake edge, roll rake edge, starter, end band, terminal, eave closure, and top fixture, **as directed**, units, in color matching clay roof tiles.
   i. Flat-Shape Accessory Tiles: Ridge and closed ridge end, hip and hip starter, header course, L-shaped rake edge, starter, end band, and terminal, **as directed**, units, in color matching clay roof tiles.

B. Accessories
1. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
2. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied.
3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** silicone, **as directed**,-based joint sealant; Type M **OR** Type S, **as directed**, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, Use O.
4. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type IV.
5. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with underlayments.
6. Foam Adhesive: Two-component, polyurethane expanding adhesive recommended for application by clay roof tile manufacturer.
   OR
   Mortar: ASTM C 270, Type M, natural color **OR** with ASTM C 979, pigmented mortar matching the color of clay roof tiles for exposed-to-view mortar, and natural color for concealed-from-view mortar, **as directed**.
7. Eave Closure: Manufacturer's standard EPDM **OR** copper **OR** stainless-steel **OR** galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum, mill finish, **as directed**, eave closure formed to shape of clay roof tile.
8. Wood Nailers, Beveled Cant Strips and Wood Battens: Comply with requirements for pressure-preservative-treated wood in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
9. Mesh Fabric: 18-by-14 (1.1-by-1.4-mm) mesh of PVC-coated, glass-fiber thread.

C. Fasteners
1. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667, copper, 0.135-inch- (3.4-mm-) **OR** aluminum, 0.1055-inch- (2.7-mm-) **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel, 0.1055-inch- (2.7-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, sharp-pointed, conventional roofing nails with barbed shanks; minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter head; of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch (19 mm) into wood battens **OR** solid wood decking **OR** roof-deck sheathing, **as directed**.

a. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.

2. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter.
3. Wood Batten Nails: ASTM F 1667; common or box, steel wire, flat head, and smooth shank.
4. Wire Ties: Copper **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, 0.083-inch (2.1-mm) minimum diameter.
5. Twisted-Wire-Tie System: Continuously twisted, two-wire unit with loops formed 6 inches (152 mm) apart, minimum 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter brass wire and 0.06-inch- (1.5-mm-) diameter brass tie wires **OR** 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter copper wire and 0.06-inch- (1.5-mm-) diameter brass tie wires **OR** 0.083-inch- (2.1-mm-) diameter stainless-steel wire and 0.037-inch- (0.94-mm-) diameter stainless-steel tie wires **OR** 0.083-inch- (2.1-mm-) diameter galvanized-steel wire and 0.037-inch- (0.94-mm-) diameter galvanized-steel tie wires, **as directed**, with matching-metal folding clip anchors.
6. Single-Line, Wire-Tie System: Interconnecting eave-to-ridge system, minimum 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter brass **OR** 0.09-inch- (2.3-mm-) diameter galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire, preformed to accommodate clay roof tile type and application indicated.
7. Hook Nails: One-piece wind lock and clay roof tile fastener system, minimum 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter brass **OR** 0.09-inch- (2.3-mm-) diameter galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire, for direct deck nailing.
8. Tile Locks: Brass **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless-steel **OR** Hot-dip galvanized-steel, **as directed**, 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter wire device designed to secure butt edges of overlaid clay roof tiles.
9. Storm Clips: Brass **OR** Stainless-steel **OR** Hot-dip galvanized-steel, **as directed**, strap-type, 0.04-by-1/2-inch (1.0-by-13-mm), L-shaped retainer clips designed to secure side edges of clay roof tiles. Provide with two fastener holes in base flange.

D. Underlayment Materials
1. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226, Type II, asphalt-saturated organic felt, unperforated.
2. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides, unperforated.
3. Roll Roofing Underlayment: ASTM D 6380, Class M, Type II, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, mineral-granule surfaced.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970, a minimum of 55-mil- (1.4-mm-) thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.
5. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, a minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.

E. Snow Guards
1. Snow-Guard Pads: Fabricated copper **OR** cast-bronze **OR** zinc **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, units, designed to be installed without penetrating roof tiles, and complete with predrilled holes or hooks for anchoring.
2. Snow-Guard Rails: Units fabricated from metal baseplate anchored to adjustable **OR** fixed, **as directed**, bracket and equipped with two **OR** three, **as directed**, bars.
   a. Brackets and Baseplate: Aluminum **OR** Bronze or brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   b. Bars: Aluminum, mill finished **OR** Aluminum, clear anodized **OR** Stainless steel, mill finished, **as directed**.

F. Metal Flashing And Trim
1. General: Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   a. Sheet Metal: Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated copper **OR** Anodized aluminum **OR** Aluminum, mill finished, **as directed**.

2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
   a. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, over and 4 inches (100 mm) beyond each side of downslope tile roofing and 6 inches (152 mm) up the vertical surface.
   b. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and a minimum extension of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm), **as directed**, both horizontally and vertically.
   c. Channel Flashings: Fabricate with vertical surface extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm), **as directed**, above the clay roof tile and 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, beneath the tile roofing, with a 1-inch- (25-mm-) high vertical return to form a runoff channel.
   d. Rake Pan Flashings: Fabricate with vertical surface extending over fasciae and 6 inches (152 mm) beneath the tile roofing, with a 1-inch- (25-mm-) high vertical return to form a runoff channel.
   e. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, beneath upslope tile roofing, 6 inches (152 mm) beyond each side of chimney **OR** skylight, **as directed**, and 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof plane.
   f. Closed **OR** Open, **as directed**,-Valley Flashings: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m), with 1-inch- (25-mm-) high, inverted-V profile at center of valley and with equal flange widths of 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
   g. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m), with 2-inch (50-mm) roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) fascia flange with 3/8-inch (10-mm) drip at lower edge.
3. Sheet Metal Ridge Vent: Fabricate from 16-oz./sq. ft.- (0.55-mm-) thick copper sheet, terminating each side in V-shaped external baffles with venting holes producing net-free ventilating area of 2.65 sq. in./ft. (56 sq. cm/m).
4. Vent-Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof and extending at least 4 inches (100 mm) from pipe onto roof.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Underlayment Installation
   1. General: Comply with clay roof tile manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
      a. Cover ridge **OR** hip, **as directed**, wood nailers with underlayment strips.
   2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
      a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than 6 inches (152 mm) over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a 19-inch- (485-mm-) wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses 19 inches (485 mm) in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
      a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.

b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water.

4. Double-Layer Felt/Roll Roofing Underlayment:
   a. Install single layer of felt underlayment on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
   b. Install roll roofing underlayment, in parallel courses, in same direction as felt underlayment. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm).
      1) Mechanically fasten over felt underlayment.
      2) Adhere to felt underlayment with solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive **OR** uniform coating of asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
   c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, against chimneys, sidewalls, curbs, and other projections.
5. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free; comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm). Lap ends not less than 6 inches (152 mm), staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between succeeding courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
   a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   b. Extend self-adhering sheet underlayment over entire roof deck.
      OR
      Extend self-adhering sheet underlayment over roof deck as follows:
      1) Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
      2) Rakes: Extend from edges of rakes 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
      3) Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
      4) Hips: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
      5) Ridges: Extend 36 inches (914 mm) on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot, **as directed**.
      6) Sidewalls: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
      7) Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond penetrating elements and return vertically against penetrating elements not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
      8) Roof-Slope Transitions: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each roof slope.
6. Double-Layer Felt/Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment:
   a. Install single layer of felt underlayment on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
   b. Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free, on felt underlayment. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends not less than 6 inches (152 mm), staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between succeeding courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
7. Metal-Flashed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install two layers of 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Stagger end laps between layers at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Lap ends of each layer at least 12 inches (305 mm) in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten each layer to roof deck with felt underlayment nails.
   a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over first layer of valley felt underlayment at least 6 inches (152 mm).

B. Metal Flashing Installation
   1. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
      a. Install metal flashings according to clay roof tile manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
   2. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope tile roofing and up the vertical surface.
   3. Step Flashings: Install with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and extend both horizontally and vertically. Install with lower edge of flashing just upslope of, and concealed by, butt of overlying tile. Fasten to roof deck only.
   4. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Install against roof-penetrating elements, extending concealed flange beneath upslope tile roofing and beyond each side.
   5. Open-Valley Flashings: Install centrally in valleys, lapping ends at least 8 inches (205 mm) in direction to shed water. Fasten upper end of each length to roof deck beneath overlap.
      a. Secure hemmed flange edges into metal cleats spaced 12 inches (305 mm) apart and fastened to roof deck.
      b. Adhere 9-inch- (230-mm-) wide strips of self-adhering sheet to metal flanges and to self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   6. Channel Flashings: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
   7. Rake Pan Flashings: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
   8. Rake Drip Edges: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
   9. Eave Drip Edges: Install beneath underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
   10. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and tile roofing. Fasten and seal to tile roofing.
   11. Sheet Metal Ridge Vents: Install centrally, and mechanically fasten to wood ridge. Adhere each side to clay roof tile with elastomeric sealant.
      a. Install fabric mesh over roof-deck air ventilation gaps to prevent insect entry.

C. Wood Nailers And Battens, **as directed**
   1. Install wood nailers at ridges **OR** hips **OR** rakes, **as directed**, and securely fasten to roof deck.
   2. Install beveled wood cant at eaves and securely fasten to roof deck.
   3. Install nominal 1-by-2-inch (25-by-50-mm) wood battens horizontally over 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high, pressure-preservative-treated wood lath strips **OR** in 48-inch (1200-mm) lengths with ends separated by 1/2 inch (13 mm), **as directed**, at spacing required by clay roof tile manufacturer, and securely fasten to roof deck.
      a. Install nominal 1-by-2-inch (25-by-50-mm) wood counter battens vertically spaced 24 inches (610 mm) apart and securely fasten to roof deck.

D. Clay Roof Tile Installation
   1. General: Install clay roof tiles according to manufacturer's written instructions, to recommendations in TRI/WSRCA's "Concrete and Clay Roof Tile Design Criteria Installation Manual for Moderate Climate Regions," and to NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
      a. Maintain uniform exposure and coursing of clay roof tiles throughout roof.
      b. Extend tiles 2 inches (50 mm) over eave fasciae.
      c. Nail Fastening: Drive nails to clear the clay roof tile so the tile hangs from the nail and is not drawn up.
         1) Install wire through nail holes of cut tiles that cannot be nailed directly to roof deck, and fasten to nails driven into deck.
      d. Wire-Tie Fastening: Install wire-tie systems and fasten clay roof tiles according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      e. Foam-Adhesive **OR** Mortar, **as directed**, Setting: Install clay roof tile according to TRI/FRSA's "Concrete and Clay Roof Tile Installation Manual."
      f. Install storm clips to capture edges of longitudinal sides of clay roof tiles and securely fasten to roof deck.

g. Install clay roof tile locks to support and lock overlying tile butts to underlying tiles.
h. Cut and fit clay roof tiles neatly around roof vents, pipes, ventilators, and other projections through roof. Fill voids with mortar.
i. Install clay roof tiles with color blend approved by the Owner.

2. Flat Shingle Clay Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Maintain 2-inch (50-mm) head lap between succeeding courses of clay roof tiles.
   b. Offset joints by half the clay roof tile width in succeeding courses.
   c. Extend clay roof tiles 1 inch (25 mm) over fasciae at rakes.
   d. Install ridge tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Close voids where ridge tiles meet clay roof tiles with ridge closure tiles **OR** mortar struck with face of ridge cover tiles, **as directed**.
   e. Install hip tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Fill voids with mortar where hip tiles meet clay roof tiles, and strike mortar flush with face of hip cover tiles.
3. Flat Interlocking Clay Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Provide minimum 3-inch (75-mm) lap between succeeding courses of clay roof tiles.
   b. Offset joints by half the clay roof tile width in succeeding courses.
   c. Install L-shaped rake tiles.
   d. Install ridge tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Close voids where ridge tiles meet clay roof tiles with ridge closure tiles **OR** mortar struck with face of ridge cover tiles, **as directed**.
   e. Install hip tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Fill voids with mortar where hip tiles meet clay roof tiles, and strike mortar flush with face of hip cover tiles.
4. Low-Profile, Interlocking Clay Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Provide minimum 3-inch (75-mm) lap between succeeding courses of clay roof tiles.
   b. Install L-shaped rake tiles.
   c. Install ridge tiles with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
5. High-Profile Clay Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Install tile **OR** sheet metal **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, eave closure.
   b. Provide minimum 3-inch (75-mm) lap between succeeding courses of clay roof tiles.
   c. Install L-shaped **OR** roll, **as directed**, rake tiles.
   d. Install ridge tiles with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
6. Open Valleys: Cut clay roof tiles at open valleys to form straight lines. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley **OR** Widen exposed portion of open valley 1/8 inch in 12 inches (1:96), **as directed**, from highest to lowest point.
   a. Drill or notch cut valley tiles and wire-tie to fastener placed clear of valley metal flashings.
   b. Do not nail tiles to metal flashings.
7. Closed Valleys: Cut clay roof tiles at closed valleys to form straight lines, trimming upper concealed corners of tiles. Maintain uniform gap at centerline of valley of 1/2 to 3/4 inch (13 to 19 mm) **OR** 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm), **as directed**.
   a. Drill or notch cut valley tiles and wire-tie to fastener placed clear of valley metal flashings.
   b. Do not nail tiles to metal flashings.

E. Snow-Guard Installation
   1. Snow-Guard Pads: Install rows of snow-guard pads at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written installation instructions. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from

gutter. Space snow guards apart in each row, offsetting by half this dimension between succeeding rows.

2. Snow-Guard Rails: Install rows of snow-guard rails at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written installation instructions. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning
   1. Remove and replace damaged or broken clay roof tiles.
   2. Remove excess clay roof tiles and debris from Project site.

END OF SECTION 07 32 13 00

SECTION 07 32 16 00 - CONCRETE ROOF TILES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete roof tiles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Concrete roof tiles.
   b. Underlayment.
   c. Snow guards.

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079, glossaries in TRI/WSRCA's "Concrete and Clay Roof Tile Design Criteria Installation Manual for Moderate Climate Regions," and NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For concrete roof tiles, documentation indicating compliance with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
3. Samples: For each type of concrete roof tile and accessory tile indicated.
4. Material test reports.
5. Research/evaluation reports.
6. Maintenance data.
7. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide concrete roof tiles and related roofing materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; UL 790 or ASTM E 108, for application and roof slopes indicated.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store underlayment rolls on end, on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
   a. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to avoid significant or permanent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.
2. Protect unused underlayment from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace concrete roof tiles that fail in materials within specified warranty period.
   a. Materials-Only Warranty Period: 50 years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Concrete Roof Tiles
1. Concrete Roof Tiles: ASTM C 1492, molded- or extruded-concrete roof tile units of shape and configuration indicated, with integral color, and free of surface imperfections. Provide with fastening holes prepunched at factory.
   a. Weight: Normal **OR** Medium **OR** Light, **as directed**.
   b. High-Profile Shape: Type I, Spanish or "S".
   c. Medium-Profile Shape: Type II, French interlocking.
   d. Low-Profile Shape: Type III, flat shingle **OR** Type III, flat interlocking, **as directed**.
   e. Side Configuration: Interlocking **OR** Noninterlocking, **as directed**.
   f. Solar Reflectance Index: Provide concrete roof tiles with Solar Reflectance Index not less than 29 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing of identical products by a qualified testing agency.
   g. Colors, Blends, and Patterns: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   h. Finish and Texture: Matte, smooth **OR** Matte, striated **OR** Glazed, smooth, **as directed**.
   i. Color: Brown **OR** White **OR** Red **OR** Pale red **OR** Green **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.
   j. High **OR** Medium, **as directed**,-Profile-Shape Accessory Tiles: Ridge, ridge vent, ridge end, hip and hip starter, header course, L-shaped rake edge, roll rake edge, starter, end band, and terminal, **as directed**, units, in color matching concrete roof tiles.
   k. Low-Profile-Shape Accessory Tiles: Ridge and closed ridge end, hip and hip starter, header course, L-shaped rake edge, starter, end band, and terminal, **as directed**, units, in color matching concrete roof tiles.

B. Accessories
1. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
2. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied.
3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** silicone, **as directed**,-based joint sealant; Type M **OR** Type S, **as directed**, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, Use O.
4. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type IV.
5. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with underlayments.
6. Foam Adhesive: Two-component, polyurethane expanding adhesive recommended for application by concrete roof tile manufacturer.
   OR
   Mortar: ASTM C 270, Type M, natural color **OR** with ASTM C 979, pigmented mortar matching the color of concrete roof tiles for exposed-to-view mortar, and natural color for concealed-from-view mortar, **as directed**.
7. Eave Closure: Manufacturer's standard EPDM **OR** copper **OR** stainless-steel **OR** galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum, mill finish, **as directed**, eave closure formed to shape of concrete roof tiles.
8. Ridge Closure: Manufacturer's standard EPDM ridge closure, formed to shape of concrete roof tiles.
9. Wood Nailers, Beveled Cant Strips and Wood Battens: Comply with requirements for pressure-preservative-treated wood in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
10. Mesh Fabric: 18-by-14 (1.1-by-1.4-mm) mesh of PVC-coated, glass-fiber thread.

C. Fasteners
1. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667, copper, 0.135-inch- (3.4-mm-) **OR** aluminum, 0.1055-inch- (2.7-mm-) **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel, 0.1055-inch- (2.7-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, sharp-pointed, conventional roofing nails with barbed shanks; minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter head; of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4 inch (19 mm) into wood battens **OR** solid-wood decking **OR** roof-deck sheathing, **as directed**.

a. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.

2. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter.
3. Wood Batten Nails: ASTM F 1667; common or box, steel wire, flat head, and smooth shank.
4. Wire Ties: Copper **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, 0.083-inch (2.1-mm) minimum diameter.
5. Twisted-Wire-Tie System: Continuously twisted, two-wire unit with loops formed 6 inches (152 mm) apart, minimum 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter brass wire and 0.06-inch- (1.5-mm-) diameter brass tie wires **OR** 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter copper wire and 0.06-inch- (1.5-mm-) diameter brass tie wires **OR** 0.083-inch- (2.1-mm-) diameter stainless-steel wire and 0.037-inch- (0.94-mm-) diameter stainless-steel tie wires **OR** 0.083-inch- (2.1-mm-) diameter galvanized-steel wire and 0.037-inch- (0.94-mm-) diameter galvanized-steel tie wires, **as directed**, with matching-metal folding clip anchors.
6. Hook Nails: One-piece wind lock and concrete roof tile fastener system, minimum 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter brass **OR** 0.09-inch- (2.3-mm-) diameter galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire, for direct deck nailing.
7. Tile Locks: Brass **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless-steel **OR** Hot-dip galvanized-steel, **as directed**, 0.1-inch- (2.5-mm-) diameter wire device designed to secure butt edges of overlaid concrete roof tiles.
8. Storm Clips: Brass **OR** Stainless-steel **OR** Hot-dip galvanized-steel, **as directed**, strap-type, 0.04-by-1/2-inch (1.0-by-13-mm), L-shaped retainer clips designed to secure side edges of concrete roof tiles. Provide with two fastener holes in base flange.

D. Underlayment Materials
1. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226, Type II, asphalt-saturated organic felt, unperforated.
2. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides, unperforated.
3. Roll Roofing Underlayment: ASTM D 6380, Class M, Type II, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, mineral-granule surfaced.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970, a minimum of 55-mil- (1.4-mm-) thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.
5. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment, **as directed**.

E. Snow Guards
1. Snow-Guard Pads: Fabricated copper **OR** cast-bronze **OR** zinc **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, units, designed to be installed without penetrating roof tiles, and complete with predrilled holes or hooks for anchoring.
2. Snow-Guard Rails: Units fabricated from metal baseplate anchored to adjustable **OR** fixed, **as directed**, bracket and equipped with two **OR** three, **as directed**, bars.
   a. Brackets and Baseplate: Aluminum **OR** Bronze or brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   b. Bars: Aluminum, mill finished **OR** Aluminum, clear anodized **OR** Stainless steel, mill finished, **as directed**.

F. Metal Flashing And Trim
1. General: Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   a. Sheet Metal: Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated copper **OR** Anodized aluminum **OR** Aluminum, mill finished, **as directed**.

2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
   a. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, over and 4 inches (100 mm) beyond each side of downslope tile roofing and 6 inches (152 mm) up the vertical surface.
   b. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and a minimum extension of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm), **as directed**, both horizontally and vertically.
   c. Channel Flashings: Fabricate with vertical surface extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm), **as directed**, above the concrete roof tile and 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, beneath the tile roofing, with a 1-inch- (25-mm-) high vertical return to form a runoff channel.
   d. Rake Pan Flashings: Fabricate with vertical surface extending over fasciae and 6 inches (152 mm) beneath the tile roofing, with a 1-inch- (25-mm-) high vertical return to form a runoff channel.
   e. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of 18 inches (455 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, beneath upslope tile roofing, 6 inches (152 mm) beyond each side of chimney **OR** skylight, **as directed**, and 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof plane.
   f. Closed **OR** Open, **as directed**,-Valley Flashings: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m), with 1-inch- (25-mm-) high, inverted-V profile at center of valley and with equal flange widths of 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
   g. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m), with 2-inch (50-mm) roof-deck flange and 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) fascia flange with 3/8-inch (10-mm) drip at lower edge.
3. Vent-Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof and extending at least 4 inches (100 mm) from pipe onto roof.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Underlayment Installation
   1. General: Comply with concrete roof tile manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
      a. Cover ridge **OR** hip, **as directed**, wood nailers with underlayment strips.
   2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
      a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than 6 inches (152 mm) over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a 19-inch- (485-mm-) wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses 19 inches (485 mm) in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
      a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
      b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm) in direction to shed water.

4. Double-Layer Felt/Roll Roofing Underlayment:
   a. Install single layer of felt underlayment on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
   b. Install roll roofing underlayment, in parallel courses, in same direction as felt underlayment. Lap ends a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm).
      1) Mechanically fasten over felt underlayment.
      2) Adhere to felt underlayment with solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive **OR** uniform coating of asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
   c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, against chimneys, sidewalls, curbs, and other projections.
5. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free; comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm). Lap ends not less than 6 inches (152 mm), staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between succeeding courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
   a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
   b. Extend self-adhering sheet underlayment over entire roof deck.
      OR
      Extend self-adhering sheet underlayment over roof deck as follows:
      1) Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
      2) Rakes: Extend from edges of rakes 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
      3) Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
      4) Hips: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each side.
      5) Ridges: Extend 36 inches (914 mm) on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot, **as directed**.
      6) Sidewalls: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
      7) Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) beyond penetrating elements and return vertically against penetrating elements not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
      8) Roof-Slope Transitions: Extend 18 inches (455 mm) on each roof slope.
6. Double-Layer Felt/Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment:
   a. Install single layer of felt underlayment on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
   b. Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free, on felt underlayment. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Lap sides not less than 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) in direction to shed water. Lap ends not less than 6 inches (152 mm), staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between succeeding courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
7. Metal-Flashed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install two layers of 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Stagger end laps between layers at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Lap ends of each layer at least 12 inches (305 mm) in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten each layer to roof deck with felt underlayment nails.
   a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over first layer of valley felt underlayment at least 6 inches (152 mm).

B. Metal Flashing Installation

1. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
   a. Install metal flashings according to concrete roof tile manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
2. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope tile roofing and up the vertical surface.
3. Step Flashings: Install with a head lap of 3 inches (75 mm) and extend both horizontally and vertically. Install with lower edge of flashing just upslope of, and concealed by, butt of overlying tile. Fasten to roof deck only.
4. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Install against roof-penetrating elements, extending concealed flange beneath upslope tile roofing and beyond each side.
5. Open-Valley Flashings: Install centrally in valleys, lapping ends at least 8 inches (205 mm) in direction to shed water. Fasten upper end of each length to roof deck beneath overlap.
   a. Secure hemmed flange edges into metal cleats spaced 12 inches (305 mm) apart and fastened to roof deck.
   b. Adhere 9-inch- (230-mm-) wide strips of self-adhering sheet to metal flanges and to self-adhering sheet underlayment.
6. Channel Flashings: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
7. Rake Pan Flashings: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
8. Rake Drip Edges: Install over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
9. Eave Drip Edges: Install beneath underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
10. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and tile roofing. Fasten and seal to tile roofing.
11. Sheet Metal Ridge Vents: Install centrally, and mechanically fasten to wood ridge. Adhere each side to concrete roof tile with elastomeric sealant.
    a. Install fabric mesh over roof-deck air ventilation gaps to prevent insect entry.

C. Wood Nailers And Battens, **as directed**
1. Install wood nailers at ridges **OR** hips **OR** rakes, **as directed**, and securely fasten to roof deck.
2. Install beveled wood cant at eaves and securely fasten to roof deck.
3. Install nominal 1-by-2-inch (25-by-50-mm) wood battens horizontally over 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high, pressure-preservative-treated wood lath strips **OR** in 48-inch (1200-mm) lengths with ends separated by 1/2 inch (13 mm), **as directed**, at spacing required by concrete roof tile manufacturer, and securely fasten to roof deck.
   a. Install nominal 1-by-2-inch (25-by-50-mm) wood counter battens vertically spaced 24 inches (610 mm) apart and securely fasten to roof deck.

D. Concrete Roof Tile Installation
1. General: Install concrete roof tiles according to manufacturer's written instructions, to recommendations in TRI/WSRCA's "Concrete and Clay Roof Tile Design Criteria Installation Manual for Moderate Climate Regions," and to NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
   a. Maintain uniform exposure and coursing of concrete roof tiles throughout roof.
   b. Extend tiles 2 inches (50 mm) over eave fasciae.
   c. Nail Fastening: Drive nails to clear the concrete roof tile so the tile hangs from the nail and is not drawn up.
      1) Install wire through nail holes of cut tiles that cannot be nailed directly to roof deck, and fasten to nails driven into deck.
   d. Wire-Tie Fastening: Install wire-tie systems and fasten concrete roof tiles according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   e. Foam-Adhesive **OR** Mortar, **as directed**, Setting: Install concrete roof tiles according to TRI/FRSA's "Concrete and Clay Roof Tile Installation Manual."
   f. Install storm clips to capture edges of longitudinal sides of concrete roof tiles and securely fasten to roof deck.
   g. Install concrete roof tile locks to support and lock overlying tile butts to underlying tiles.

h. Cut and fit concrete roof tiles neatly around roof vents, pipes, ventilators, and other projections through roof. Fill voids with mortar.
i. Install concrete roof tiles with color blend approved by the Owner.

2. Flat Shingle Concrete Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Maintain 2-inch (50-mm) head lap between succeeding courses of concrete roof tiles.
   b. Offset joints by half the concrete roof tile width in succeeding courses.
   c. Extend concrete roof tiles 1 inch (25 mm) over fasciae at rakes.
   d. Install ridge tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Close voids where ridge tiles meet concrete roof tiles with ridge closure tiles **OR** mortar struck with face of ridge cover tiles, **as directed**.
   e. Install hip tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Fill voids with mortar where hip tiles meet concrete roof tiles, and strike mortar flush with face of hip cover tiles.
3. Flat Interlocking Concrete Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Provide minimum 3-inch (75-mm) lap between succeeding courses of concrete roof tiles.
   b. Offset joints by half the concrete roof tile width in succeeding courses.
   c. Install L-shaped rake tiles.
   d. Install ridge tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Close voids where ridge tiles meet concrete roof tiles with ridge closure tiles **OR** mortar struck with face of ridge cover tiles, **as directed**.
   e. Install hip tiles in V-ridge **OR** saddle **OR** mitered, **as directed**, configuration. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
      1) Fill voids with mortar where hip tiles meets concrete roof tiles, and strike mortar flush with face of hip cover tiles.
4. Low-Profile, Interlocking Concrete Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Provide minimum 3-inch (75-mm) lap between succeeding courses of concrete roof tiles.
   b. Install L-shaped rake tiles.
   c. Install ridge tiles with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
5. High-Profile Concrete Roof Tile Installation:
   a. Install tile **OR** sheet metal **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, eave closure.
   b. Provide minimum 3-inch (75-mm) lap between succeeding courses of concrete roof tiles.
   c. Install L-shaped **OR** roll, **as directed**, rake tiles.
   d. Install ridge tiles with laps facing away from prevailing wind. Seal laps with asphalt roofing cement **OR** butyl sealant **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
6. Open Valleys: Cut concrete roof tiles at open valleys to form straight lines. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley **OR** Widen exposed portion of open valley 1/8 inch in 12 inches (1:96), **as directed**, from highest to lowest point.
   a. Drill or notch cut valley tiles and wire-tie to fastener placed clear of valley metal flashings.
   b. Do not nail tiles to metal flashings.
7. Closed Valleys: Cut concrete roof tiles at closed valleys to form straight lines, trimming upper concealed corners of tiles. Maintain uniform gap at centerline of valley of 1/2 to 3/4 inch (13 to 19 mm) **OR** 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm), **as directed**.
   a. Drill or notch cut valley tiles and wire-tie to fastener placed clear of valley metal flashings.
   b. Do not nail tiles to metal flashings.

E. Snow-Guard Installation
   1. Snow-Guard Pads: Install rows of snow-guard pads at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written installation instructions. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter. Space snow guards apart in each row, offsetting by half this dimension between succeeding rows.

2. Snow-Guard Rails: Install rows of snow-guard rails at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written installation instructions. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Remove and replace damaged or broken concrete roof tiles.
2. Remove excess concrete roof tiles and debris from Project site.

END OF SECTION 07 32 16 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 34 00 00	07 31 13 13	Asphalt Shingles
07 34 00 00	07 31 16 00	Metal Shingles
07 34 00 00	07 31 26 00	Slate Shingles
07 34 00 00	07 31 29 00	Wood Shingles And Shakes
07 34 00 00	07 32 13 00	Clay Roof Tiles

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 41 13 00 - METAL ROOF PANELS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal roof panels. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Exposed-fastener, lap-seam metal roof panels.
   b. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal roof panels.
   c. Standing-seam metal roof panels.
   d. Batten-seam metal roof panels.
   e. Horizontal-seam (Bermuda-type) metal roof panels.
   f. Foamed-insulation-core metal roof panels.
   g. Metal soffit panels.

C. Definitions
1. Metal Roof Panel Assembly: Metal roof panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight roofing system.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Metal roof panels shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
2. Delegated Design: Design metal roof panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
3. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of roof area when tested according to ASTM E 1680 at the following test-pressure difference:
   a. Test-Pressure Difference (for roofs with slopes of 30 degrees or less): Negative 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
   b. Test-Pressure Difference (for roofs with slopes steeper than 30 degrees): Positive and negative 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
   c. Positive Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Greater than or equal to 15.0 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa) and the greater of 75 percent of building live load or 50 percent of building design positive wind-pressure difference.
   d. Negative Preload Test-Pressure Difference: 50 percent of design wind-uplift-pressure difference.
4. Water Penetration: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 at the following test-pressure difference:
   a. Test-Pressure Difference (for roofs with slopes of 30 degrees or less): 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa).
   b. Test-Pressure Difference (for roofs with slopes steeper than 30 degrees): 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) and not more than 12.0 lbf/sq. ft. (575 Pa).
   c. Positive Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Greater than or equal to 15.0 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa) and the greater of 75 percent of building live load or 50 percent of building design positive wind-pressure difference.
   d. Negative Preload Test-Pressure Difference: 50 percent of design wind-uplift-pressure difference.

5. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 2140.
6. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
   a. Uplift Rating: UL 30 **OR** UL 60 **OR** UL 90, **as directed**.
7. FMG Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FMG 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FMG's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FMG markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
8. Structural Performance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
   a. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
      1) Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa), **as directed**, acting inward or outward.
         OR
         Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
   b. Snow Loads: 25 lbf/sq. ft. (1197 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa) **OR** 35 lbf/sq. ft. (1676 Pa), **as directed**.
   c. Deflection Limits: Metal roof panel assemblies shall withstand wind and snow loads with vertical deflections no greater than 1/180 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.
9. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
10. Thermal Performance: Provide insulated metal roof panel assemblies with thermal-resistance value (R-value) indicated when tested according to ASTM C 518.
11. Energy Performance
    a. Provide roof panels with solar reflectance index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
       OR
       Energy Performance: Provide roof panels that are listed on the U.S. Department of Energy's ENERGY STAR Roof Products Qualified Product List for low-slope **OR** steep-slope, **as directed**, roof products.
       OR
       Energy Performance: Provide roof panels with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
   1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   2. LEED Submittals:
      a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof panels, indicating that panels comply with solar reflectance index requirement.
      b. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
         1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
   3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal roof panels; details of edge conditions, side-seam and endlap joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.
   4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal roof panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   a. Snow Retention System Calculations: Include calculation of number and location of snow guards based on snow load, roof slope, panel length and finish, and seam type and spacing.
6. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, based on input from installers of the items involved.
7. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that roof panels comply with energy performance requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of meeting performance requirements.
8. Product test reports.
9. Field quality-control reports.
10. Maintenance data.
11. Warranties: Samples of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide metal roof panels having insulation core material with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
   b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
3. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal roof panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
   b. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver components, sheets, metal roof panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal roof panels for protection during transportation and handling.
2. Unload, store, and erect metal roof panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
3. Stack metal roof panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal roof panels to ensure dryness. Do not store metal roof panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
4. Protect strippable protective covering on metal roof panels from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of metal roof panel installation.
5. Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:
   a. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
   b. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to Project site before installation time.
   c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within two years from date of Final Completion.

2. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal roof panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
3. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
4. Special Weathertightness Warranty for Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within 20 years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Panel Materials
1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Recycled Content: Provide steel sheet with average recycled content such that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
   b. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
   c. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
   d. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   e. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      1) 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      2) 3-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      3) 4-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. 3-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
      8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mil (0.97 mm) for topcoat.

f. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

2. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
   a. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   b. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      1) 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      2) 3-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      3) 4-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. 3-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
      8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mil (0.97 mm) for topcoat.
   c. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

3. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper.
   a. Exposed Finish: Apply the following finish, as specified or indicated on Drawings:
      1) Natural finish.
      2) Brushed Satin: CDA M32-06x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
      3) Mirror Polished: CDA M22-06x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
         a) Clear, Organic Coating: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
      4) Pre-patinated: ASTM B 882. Copper sheets artificially aged by chemical reaction to convert surface to inorganic crystalline structure with color range and durability of naturally formed patina.

4. Panel Sealants:

a. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
b. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal roof panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.
c. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

B. Field-Installed Thermal Insulation
1. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
2. Unfaced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type II, compressive strength of 35 psi (240 kPa), with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, based on tests performed.
3. Faced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I, Class 1 aluminum foil **OR** Type II, Class 1 or 2 felt or glass-fiber mat, Grade 3 **OR** Type V, oriented-strand-board facing, **as directed**, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, based on tests performed on unfaced core.
4. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.60-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) minimum density unless otherwise indicated; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively.
5. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.9 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively.
6. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; and with a nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m).
7. Mineral-Fiber-Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, type indicated below; consisting of fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
   a. Type I (blankets without membrane covering), passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
   b. Type II (blankets with nonreflective membrane covering), Category 1 (membrane is a vapor retarder), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less).
   c. Type III (blankets with reflective membrane covering), Category 1 (membrane is a vapor retarder), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less).
8. Metal Building Insulation: ASTM C 991, Type I, or NAIMA 202 **OR** ASTM C 991, Type II, **as directed**, glass-fiber-blanket insulation; 0.5-lb/cu. ft. (8-kg/cu. m) density; 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, continuous, vapor-tight edge tabs; and with a flame-spread index of 25 or less.
   a. Vapor-Retarder Facing: ASTM C 1136, with permeance not greater than 0.02 perm (1.15 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method:
      1) Composition: Polypropylene faced, scrim reinforced, and kraft-paper backing **OR** Foil faced, scrim reinforced, and kraft-paper backing with vapor-retarder coating **OR** Polypropylene faced, scrim reinforced, and foil backing **OR** Vinyl faced, scrim reinforced, and foil backing **OR** Vinyl faced, scrim reinforced, and polyester backing, **as directed**.
   b. Insulation Retainer Strips: 0.019-inch- (0.48-mm-) thick, formed, galvanized-steel or PVC retainer clips colored to match insulation facing.
   c. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Fabricated from extruded polystyrene, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

C. Underlayment Materials
1. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick minimum, consisting of slip-resisting, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   a. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 1970.

b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.

2. Felts: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30) **OR** Type I (No. 15), **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felts.
3. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

D. Substrate Boards
1. Gypsum Board: Type X, of thickness indicated, with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges. ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M; Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
3. Perlite Board: ASTM C 728, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4. Substrate-Board Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to substrate.

E. Miscellaneous Metal Framing
1. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 (Z120) hot-dip galvanized **OR** ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) hot-dip galvanized, **as directed**, or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
2. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 7/8 inch (22 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
3. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flange.
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with nominal thickness of 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
   d. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.22-mm-) diameter wire.
4. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm), **as directed**.
5. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

F. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal roof panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.
2. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

G. Exposed-Fastener, Lap-Seam Metal Roof Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching panels to supports using exposed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
2. Corrugated-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with alternating curved ribs spaced at 2.67 inches (68 mm) o.c. across width of panel.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

d. Panel Coverage: 21.3 inches (541 mm) **OR** 29.3 inches (744 mm) **OR** 34.67 inches (881 mm) **OR** 37.3 inches (947 mm) **OR** 42.67 inches (1084 mm) **OR** 45.3 inches (1151 mm), **as directed**.

e. Panel Height: 0.5 inch (13 mm) **OR** 0.875 inch (22 mm), **as directed**.

3. Tapered-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised, trapezoidal major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between major ribs.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

d. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
   1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.

e. Major-Rib Spacing: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**, o.c.

f. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**.

g. Panel Height: 0.625 inch (16 mm) **OR** 0.75 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.25 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

4. Vee-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised, V-shaped ribs and recesses that are approximately same size, evenly spaced across panel width, and with rib/recess sides angled at approximately 45 degrees.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Rib Spacing: 5.3 inches (135 mm) **OR** 7.2 inches (183 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   e. Panel Coverage: 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 40 inches (1016 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Panel Height: 1.375 inches (35 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1.75 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.
5. Box-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised, box-shaped ribs that are wider than recesses, evenly spaced across panel width, and with rib/recess sides angled 60 degrees or more.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Rib Spacing: 2.67 inches (68 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.3 inches (135 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   e. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 28 inches (711 mm) **OR** 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**.

f. Panel Height: 0.625 inch (16 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.

6. Deep-Box-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised, box-shaped ribs that are wider than recesses, evenly spaced across panel width, and with rib/recess sides angled more than 60 degrees.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Rib Spacing: 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
   e. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Panel Height: 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm).**as directed**.

H. Concealed-Fastener, Lap-Seam Metal Roof Panels
   1. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
   2. Tapered-Rib-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised, trapezoidal major rib at panel edge and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between major rib and panel edge.
      a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
      b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
      c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
e. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1.75 inches (44 mm), **as directed**.

3. Standing-Seam-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised, curved-top, standing-seam-shaped major rib at panel edge and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between major rib and panel edge.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
      1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.
   e. Panel Coverage: 10 inches (254 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.25 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

4. Batten-Seam-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised, batten-seam-shaped major rib at panel edge and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between major rib and panel edge.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Panel Coverage: 10 inches (254 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm) **OR** 15 inches (381 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**.

e. Panel Height: 0.75 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1.25 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
f. Batten Width: 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.

I. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
a. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1514.
b. Aluminum Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1637.
2. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.
a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
d. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**,.
1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.
e. Batten: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.
f. Clips: Fixed **OR** Floating to accommodate thermal movement, **as directed**.
1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
2) Material: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-), **as directed**, thick, stainless-steel sheet.
g. Panel Coverage: 10 inches (254 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
h. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1.75 inches (44 mm), **as directed**.
3. Vertical-Rib, Seamed-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and mechanically seaming panels together.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

d. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
   1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.

e. Batten: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.

f. Clips: Fixed **OR** Floating to accommodate thermal movement, **as directed**.
   1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
   2) Material: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-), **as directed**, thick, stainless-steel sheet.

g. Joint Type: Single folded **OR** Double folded **OR** As standard with manufacturer, **as directed**.

h. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 20 inches (508 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.

i. Panel Height: 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2.5 inches (64 mm), **as directed**.

4. Trapezoidal-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised trapezoidal ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 28-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Clips: Fixed **OR** Floating to accommodate thermal movement, **as directed**.
      1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.

d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
e. Panel Height: 3 inches (76 mm).

5. Trapezoidal-Rib, Seamed-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised trapezoidal ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and mechanically seaming panels together.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Clips: Fixed **OR** Floating to accommodate thermal movement, **as directed**.
      1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
   d. Joint Type: Single folded **OR** Double folded **OR** As standard with manufacturer, **as directed**.
   e. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Panel Height: 2.7 inches (69 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.

6. Integral-Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with integral ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
      1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.
   e. Clips: Fixed **OR** Floating to accommodate thermal movement, **as directed**.

1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
2) Material: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-), **as directed**, thick, stainless-steel sheet.

f. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.

g. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.

J. Batten-Seam Metal Roof Panels

1. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panel assembly designed to be installed by covering vertical side edges of adjacent panels with battens and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips. Include battens and accessories required for weathertight installation.
2. Narrow-Profile, Snap-on-Batten-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for independent installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under 1 side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and installation of 3/8-to-1/2-inch- (10-to-13-mm-) wide, snap-on battens over panel joints.
   a. Panel Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Panel Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Panel Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Panel Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
      1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.
   e. Batten Material: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.
   f. Clips: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, piece.
      1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed,** nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
      2) Material: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-), **as directed**, thick, stainless-steel sheet.
   g. Sealant: Factory applied in top **OR** on each side, **as directed**, of battens.
   h. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 20 inches (508 mm), **as directed**.
   i. Batten Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.25 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1.75 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.
3. Wide-Profile, Snap-on-Batten-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for independent installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located between and engaging edges of adjacent panels, and installing snap-on battens over panel joints.

a. Panel Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

b. Panel Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

c. Panel Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.024 inch (0.061 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

d. Panel Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
   1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.

e. Batten Material: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.

f. Clips: One piece.
   1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
   2) Material: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-), **as directed**, thick, stainless-steel sheet.

g. Sealant: Factory applied on each side of battens.

h. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 22 inches (559 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**.

i. Batten Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1.75 inches (44 mm) **OR** 1.88 inches (48 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.

4. Seamed-Batten Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** smooth, flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and installing mechanically seamed battens over panel joints.

a. Panel Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

b. Panel Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

c. Panel Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.024 inch (0.061 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

d. Panel Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
   1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.
e. Batten Material: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.
f. Clips: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, piece.
   1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) **OR** 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
   2) Material: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-), **as directed**, thick, stainless-steel sheet.
g. Sealant: Factory applied on each side of clips under battens.
h. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
i. Batten Height: 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2.375 inches (60 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.

K. Horizontal-Seam (Bermuda-Type) Metal Roof Panels
1. Horizontal-Seam (Bermuda-Type) Metal Roof Panels: Formed with horizontal seam at panel edges and smooth, flat pan; designed to be installed in sequential installation by engaging lower edge of each panel to upper edge of panel below and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under upper edge of panels.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
      1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.
   e. Clips: One piece.
      1) Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
      2) Material: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet.
   f. Seal: Factory-applied sealant or vinyl weatherseal in seam.
   g. Exposure: 9.5 inches (241 mm) **OR** 11 inches (279 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
   h. Seam Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

L. Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed and -assembled metal roof panels fabricated from two sheets of metal with insulation core foamed-in-place during fabrication with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
   a. Panel Performance:
      1) Flatwise Tensile Strength: 30 psi (200 kPa) when tested according to ASTM C 297/C 297M.

2) Humid Aging: Volume increase not greater than 6.0 percent and no delamination or metal corrosion when tested for 7 days at 140 deg F (60 deg C) and 100 percent relative humidity according to ASTM D 2126.
3) Heat Aging: Volume increase not greater than 2.0 percent and no delamination, surface blistering, or permanent bowing when tested for 7 days at 200 deg F (93 deg C) according to ASTM D 2126.
4) Cold Aging: Volume decrease not more than 1.0 percent and no delamination, surface blistering, or permanent bowing when tested for 7 days at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C) according to ASTM D 2126.
5) Fatigue: No evidence of delamination, core cracking, or permanent bowing when tested to a 20-lbf/sq. ft. (958-kPa) positive and negative wind load and with deflection of L/180 for 2 million cycles.
6) Autoclave: No delamination when exposed to 2-psi (13.8-kPa) pressure at a temperature of 212 deg F (100 deg C) for 2-1/2 hours.
7) Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Class A according to ASTM E 108.

b. Insulation Core: Modified isocyanurate or polyurethane foam using a non-CFC blowing agent, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively.
1) Closed-Cell Content: 90 percent when tested according to ASTM D 2856.
2) Density: 2.0 to 2.6 lb/cu. ft. (32 to 42 kg/cu. m) when tested according to ASTM D 1622.
3) Compressive Strength: Minimum 20 psi (140 kPa) when tested according to ASTM D 1621.
4) Shear Strength: 26 psi (179 kPa) when tested according to ASTM C 273.

2. Lap-Seam-Profile, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panels: Formed for lapping side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching to supports using exposed fasteners in side laps.
a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
3) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
a) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
4) Interior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
a) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

b. Batten: Same material, finish, and color as exterior facings of roof panels.
c. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 39.6 inches (1000 mm) **OR** 40 inches (1016 mm) **OR** 44.5 inches (1130 mm), **as directed**.
d. Panel Thickness: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2.5 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.

3. Standing-Seam-Profile, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical tongue-and-groove ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by interlocking tongue-and-groove panel edges and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located between and engaging edges of adjacent panels, and mechanically seaming panels together.
a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
3) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   a) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
4) Interior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   a) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

b. Joint Type: Single folded **OR** Double folded **OR** As standard with manufacturer, **as directed**.
c. Panel Coverage: 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 42 inches (1067 mm), **as directed**.
d. Panel Thickness: 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2.5 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.

4. Batten-Seam-Profile, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical or tapered tongue-and-groove ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between ribs; designed for sequential installation by interlocking tongue-and-groove panel edges and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located between and engaging edges of adjacent panels, and installing snap-on battens over panel joints.
   a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) nominal thickness.
      3) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
      4) Interior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Batten: Same material, finish, and color as exterior facings of roof panels.
   c. Clips: One piece; 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.50-mm-), **as directed**, nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
   d. Panel Coverage: 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 39.6 inches (1000 mm), **as directed**.
   e. Panel Thickness: 1.75 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2.5 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.

M. Metal Soffit Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
2. Metal Soffit Panels: Match profile and material of metal roof panels.
   a. Finish: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   b. Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.
3. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**, panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
   a. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal roof panels.

b. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

e. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
   1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.

f. Panel Coverage: 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 20 inches (508 mm), **as directed**.

g. Panel Height: 0.875 inch (22 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.

h. Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.

4. Reveal-Joint-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**, panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with recessed reveal joint between panels.
   a. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal roof panels.
   b. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   c. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

e. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
   1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.

f. Panel Coverage: 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 20 inches (508 mm), **as directed**.

g. Panel Height: 0.75 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

5. V-Groove-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**, panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm),flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with V-groove joint between panels.
   a. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal roof panels.
   b. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   c. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   d. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.024 inch (0.65 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal roof panels **OR** Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   e. Panel Coverage: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Panel Height: 0.375 inch (10 mm) **OR** 0.44 inch (11 mm) **OR** 0.50 inch (13 mm) **OR** 0.625 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.

N. Accessories
   1. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components approved by roof panel manufacturer and as required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal roof panels.

b. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

c. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.

2. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material as roof panels, prepainted with coil coating, minimum 0.018 inch (0.45 mm) thick. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal roof panels.

3. Gutters: Formed from same material roof panels. Match profile of gable trim, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches (900 mm) o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels **OR** roof fascia and rake trim, **as directed**.

4. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in 10-foot- (3-m-) long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual". Finish downspouts to match gutters.

5. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, minimum 0.048 inch (1.2 mm) thick; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles, and welded top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of minimum 0.0598-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads, of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.

a. Insulate roof curb with 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, rigid insulation.

O. Snow Guards

1. Snow Guards: Prefabricated, noncorrosive units designed to be installed without penetrating metal roof panels, and complete with predrilled holes, clamps, or hooks for anchoring.

a. Surface-Mounted, Plastic, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Clear **OR** Integral color, **as directed**, polycarbonate stops designed for attachment to pan surface of metal roof panels using construction adhesive, silicone or polyurethane sealant, or adhesive tape.

b. Surface-Mounted, Metal, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Cast-aluminum stops designed for attachment to pan surface of metal roof panel using construction adhesive, silicone or polyurethane sealant, or adhesive tape.

c. Surface-Mounted, Copper, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Bronze-alloy stops designed for attachment to pan surface of copper roof panel using solder.

d. Seam-Mounted, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Cast-aluminum **OR** Malleable-iron **OR** Clear polycarbonate **OR** Colored polycarbonate, **as directed**, stops designed for attachment to vertical ribs of standing-seam metal roof panels with stainless-steel set screws.

e. Seam-Mounted, Bar-Type Snow Guards: Aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, rods or bars held in place by stainless-steel clamps attached to vertical ribs of standing-seam metal roof panels.

1) Aluminum Finish: Mill **OR** Clear anodized, **as directed**.

2) Stainless-Steel Finish: Mill **OR** No. 2B **OR** No. 4, **as directed**.

P. Fabrication

1. Fabricate and finish metal roof panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

2. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

3. Fabricate metal roof panel side laps with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will seal weathertight and minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
4. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
   a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
   b. End Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
   c. End Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
   d. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
   e. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
   f. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of size and metal thickness recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or by metal roof panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

Q. Finishes
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.
2. Substrate Board: Install substrate boards over roof deck **OR** sheathing, **as directed**, on entire roof surface. Attach with substrate-board fasteners.
   a. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
   b. Comply with UL **OR** FMG, **as directed**, requirements for fire-rated construction.
3. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subpurlins, eave angles, furring, and other miscellaneous roof panel support members and anchorage according to metal roof panel manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Soffit Framing: Wire tie or clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

B. Underlayment Installation
1. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, a**s directed**, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Extend underlayment into gutter trough. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
   a. Roof perimeter for a distance up from eaves of 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior wall line.

b. Valleys, from lowest point to highest point, for a distance on each side of 18 inches (460 mm), **as directed**. Overlap ends of sheets not less than 6 inches (150 mm).
c. Rake edges for a distance of 18 inches (460 mm).
d. Hips and ridges for a distance on each side of 12 inches (300 mm).
e. Roof to wall intersections for a distance from wall of 18 inches (460 mm).
f. Around dormers, chimneys, skylights, and other penetrating elements for a distance from element of 18 inches (460 mm).

2. Felt Underlayment: Apply at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
   a. Apply over entire roof surface.
   b. Apply on roof not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap over edges of self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm), in shingle fashion to shed water.
3. Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.
4. Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".

C. Thermal Insulation Installation
1. Polyethylene Vapor Retarder: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Repair tears or punctures immediately before concealment by other work.
2. Board Insulation: Extend insulation in thickness indicated to cover entire roof. Comply with installation requirements in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation".
   a. Erect insulation and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 600 mm, **as directed**, o.c. Securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to roof deck with screws spaced 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
3. Blanket Insulation: Install insulation concurrently with metal roof panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire roof, according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm side **OR** in location indicated, **as directed**, of construction unless otherwise indicated. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces.
   b. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
   c. Install blankets straight and true in one-piece lengths with both sets of facing tabs sealed. Comply with the following installation method:
      1) Over-Framing Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular to top flange of secondary framing members. Hold in place by panels fastened to secondary framing.
      2) Between-Purlin Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder between purlins. Carry vapor-retarder facing tabs up and over purlin, overlapping adjoining facing of next insulation course maintaining continuity of retarder. Hold in place with bands and crossbands below insulation.
      3) Over-Purlin-with-Spacer-Block Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular to top flange of secondary framing members. Install layer of filler insulation over first layer to fill space formed by roof panel standoffs. Hold in place by panels fastened to standoffs.
      4) Two-Layers-between-Purlin-with-Spacer-Block Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder between purlins. Carry vapor-retarder facing tabs up and over purlins, overlapping adjoining facing of next insulation course maintaining continuity of retarder. Install layer of filler insulation over first layer to fill space between purlins formed by thermal spacer blocks. Hold in place with bands and crossbands below insulation.
   d. Retainer Strips: Install retainer strips at each longitudinal insulation joint, straight and taut, nesting with secondary framing to hold insulation in place.
   e. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Where metal roof panels attach directly to purlins, install thermal spacer blocks.

D. Metal Roof Panel Installation, General
   1. Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations.
   2. Thermal Movement. Rigidly fasten metal roof panels to structure at one and only one location for each panel. Allow remainder of panel to move freely for thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels for fasteners.
      a. Point of Fixity: Fasten each panel along a single line of fixing located at eave **OR** ridge **OR** center of panel length **OR** locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
      b. Avoid attaching accessories through roof panels in a manner that will inhibit thermal movement.
   3. Install metal roof panels as follows:
      a. Commence metal roof panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. (27.8 sq. m.) in presence of factory-authorized representative.
      b. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is not permitted.
      c. Install panels perpendicular to purlins.
      d. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
      e. Provide metal closures at rake edges **OR** rake walls, **as directed**, and each side of ridge **OR** ridge and hip, **as directed**, caps.
      f. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves, rakes, and perimeter of all openings.
      g. Install ridge **OR** ridge and hip, **as directed**, caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
      h. End Splices: Locate panel end splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel end splices to avoid a four-panel splice condition.
      i. Install metal flashing to allow moisture to run over and off metal roof panels.
   4. Fasteners:
      a. Steel Roof Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
      b. Aluminum Roof Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
      c. Copper Roof Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
   5. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
   6. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
      a. Coat back side of roof panels with bituminous coating where roof panels will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
   7. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal roof panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
      a. Seal metal roof panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
      b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

E. Metal Roof Panel Installation
   1. Lap-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
      a. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
      b. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation.
      c. Provide metal-backed neoprene or EPDM washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal roof panels.

d. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
e. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
f. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of metal roof panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
g. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to weather-side surface of fastenings on end laps, and on side laps of nesting-type panels; on side laps of corrugated nesting-type, ribbed, or fluted panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels weatherproof to driving rains.
h. At panel end splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch (150-mm) end lap, sealed with butyl-rubber sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

2. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
   b. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   c. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
   d. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
3. Batten-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each batten-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Install clips to supports with self-drilling fasteners.
   b. Apply battens to metal roof panel seams, fully engaged to provide weathertight joints.
4. Horizontal-Seam (Bermuda-Type) Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each horizontal-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Start at eave and work upward toward ridge.
   a. Install clips to supports with self-drilling fasteners.

F. Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panel Installation
1. General: Apply continuous ribbon of sealant to panel joint on concealed side of insulated metal roof panels as vapor seal; apply sealant to panel joint on exposed side of panels for weather seal.
2. Lap-Seam, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panels: Fasten insulated metal roof panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
   b. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of insulated metal roof panels.
   c. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
   d. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of insulated metal roof panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
   e. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to panel side laps and elsewhere as needed to make panels weatherproof to driving rains.
   f. Apply snap-on battens to insulated metal roof panel seams to conceal fasteners.
3. Standing-Seam, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panels: Fasten insulated metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.

b. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so cleat, insulated metal roof panel, and factory-applied side-lap sealant are completely engaged.

4. Batten-Seam, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Roof Panels: Fasten insulated metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each batten-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Apply battens to insulated metal roof panel seams, fully engaged to provide weathertight joints.

G. Metal Soffit Panel Installation
1. In addition to complying with requirements in "Metal Roof Panel Installation, General" Article, install metal soffit panels to comply with requirements in this article.
2. Metal Soffit Panels: Provide metal soffit panels full width of soffits. Install panels perpendicular to support framing.
   a. Flash and seal panels with weather closures where metal soffit panels meet walls and at perimeter of all openings.
3. Metal Fascia Panels: Align bottom of panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Flash and seal panels with weather closures where fasciae meet soffits, along lower panel edges, and at perimeter of all openings.

H. Accessory Installation
1. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
   a. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
2. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
   a. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
   b. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
3. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches (914 mm) o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.
4. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. in between.
   a. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.
   b. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
5. Roof Curbs: Install curbs at locations indicated on Drawings. Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.
6. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

I. Snow Guard Installation

1. Stop-Type Snow Guards: Attach snow guards to metal roof panels with adhesive, sealant, or adhesive tape, as recommended by manufacturer. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate metal roof panels.
   a. Provide rows of snow guards, at locations indicated on Drawings, spaced apart, beginning from gutter, with each snow guard centered between panel ribs.
2. Bar-Type Snow Guards: Attach bar supports to vertical ribs of standing-seam metal roof panels with clamps or set screws. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate metal roof panels.
   a. Provide rows of snow guards, at locations indicated on Drawings, spaced apart, beginning from gutter.

J. Erection Tolerances
1. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

K. Field Quality Control
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
2. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
3. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

L. Cleaning
1. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal roof panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal roof panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
2. Replace metal roof panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 41 13 00

SECTION 07 41 13 00a - SHEET METAL ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sheet metal roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Flat-seam metal roofing, custom fabricated.
b. Standing-seam metal roofing, custom fabricated **OR** on-site, roll formed, **as directed**.
c. Batten-seam metal roofing, custom fabricated **OR** on-site, roll formed, **as directed**.
d. Horizontal-seam (Bermuda-type) metal roofing, custom fabricated.

C. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Sheet metal roofing system including, but not limited to, metal roof panels, cleats, clips, anchors and fasteners, sheet metal flashing integral with sheet metal roofing, fascia panels, trim, battens, **as directed**, underlayment, and accessories shall comply with requirements indicated without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Sheet metal roofing shall remain watertight.
2. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal roofing that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
3. Energy Performance: Provide metal roofing with solar reflectance index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof panels, indicating that panels comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal roofing, including plans, elevations, expansion joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
a. Include details for forming, joining, and securing sheet metal roofing, including pattern of seams, termination points, fixed points, expansion joints, roof penetrations, edge conditions, special conditions, connections to adjoining work, and details of accessory items.
4. Samples: For each exposed product and for each finish specified.
5. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans drawn to scale with coordinated details for penetrations and roof-mounted items.
6. Portable Roll-Forming Equipment Certificate: Issued by UL for equipment manufacturer's portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing panels that comply with UL requirements.
7. Product test reports.
8. Maintenance data.
9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Roll-Formed Sheet Metal Roofing Fabricator Qualifications: Fabricator authorized by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to fabricate and install sheet metal roofing units required for this Project, and who maintains current UL certification of its portable roll-forming equipment.
2. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing roofing panels for sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for Class 30 **OR** Class 60 **OR** Class 90, **as directed**, wind-uplift resistance. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of sheet metal roofing work.
3. Sheet Metal Roofing Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
4. Copper Roofing Standard: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Do not store sheet metal roofing materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal roofing materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal roofing from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal roofing installation.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Warranty form at the end of this Section in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of sheet metal roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within two years from date of Final Completion.
2. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal roofing that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within 20 **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Roofing Sheet Metals
1. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
   b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
   c. Thickness: Nominal 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) **OR** 0.028 inch (0.71 mm), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
      1) Batten Caps: Nominal 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   d. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
   e. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat,

and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.

8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mils (0.97 mm) for topcoat.

f. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

g. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

3. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required.

a. Thickness: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.

1) Batten Caps: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.

b. As-Milled Finish: Mill **OR** One-side bright mill **OR** Standard one-side bright **OR** Standard two-side bright, **as directed**, finish.

c. Alclad Finish: Metallurgically bonded surfacing to both sides, forming a composite aluminum sheet with reflective luster.

d. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.

e. Factory Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is indicated, pretreat with white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).

f. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:

1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight

in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.

8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mil (0.97 mm) for topcoat.

g. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

h. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

4. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper, 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) **OR** 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.70 mm thick), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.

a. Batten Caps: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.70 mm thick).

b. Non-Patinated Exposed Finish: Mill

c. Non-Patinated Exposed, Lacquered Finish: Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."

1) Brushed Satin (Lacquered): M32-06x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; with clear organic coating); coating of "Incralac" waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, methyl methacrylate copolymer lacquer with UV inhibitor, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

2) Mirror Polished (Lacquered): M22-06x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, specular; with clear organic coating); coating of "Incralac" waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, air-drying, methyl methacrylate copolymer lacquer with UV inhibitor, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

d. Pre-Patinated Copper-Sheet Finish: Dark brown **OR** Verdigris, **as directed**, pre-patinated according to ASTM B 882.

5. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper, coated on both sides with a zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin).

a. Weight (Thickness): 16-oz./sq. ft. (0.55-mm) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. (0.70-mm), **as directed**, uncoated weight (thickness), with 0.787-mil (0.020-mm) coating thickness applied to each side.

1) Batten Caps: 20-oz./sq. ft. (0.70-mm) uncoated weight (thickness), with 0.787-mil (0.020-mm) coating thickness applied to each side unless otherwise indicated.

6. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed.

a. Thickness: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) **OR** 0.019 inch (0.48 mm), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.

1) Batten Caps: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.

b. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.

c. Finish: 2D (dull, cold rolled) **OR** 2B (bright, cold rolled) **OR** 3 (coarse, polished directional satin) **OR** 4 (polished directional satin), **as directed**.

1) Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.

2) Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.

3) When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

7. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, dead-soft, fully annealed stainless-steel sheet, coated on both sides with a zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin), with factory-applied gray preweathering.
    a. Thickness: 0.015-inch (0.38-mm) **OR** 0.018-inch (0.46-mm) **OR** 0.024-inch (0.61-mm), **as directed**, minimum uncoated thickness, with 0.787-mil (0.020-mm) coating thickness applied to each side.
        1) Batten Caps: 0.018-inch- (0.46-mm-) minimum uncoated thickness, with 0.787-mil (0.020-mm) coating thickness applied to each side unless otherwise indicated.
8. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 625/A 625M; single-reduced, black-steel sheet, coated on both sides with a zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin), with factory-applied shop coat, **as directed**.
    a. Thickness: 0.012-inch (0.31-mm) **OR** 0.014-inch (0.36-mm), **as directed**, uncoated thickness, with 0.787-mil (0.020-mm) coating thickness applied to each side.
        1) Batten Caps: 0.014-inch (0.36-mm) uncoated thickness, with 0.787-mil (0.020-mm) coating thickness applied to each side unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Manufacturer's standard two-coat fluoropolymer complying with performance requirements in AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
        1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
    c. Field-Applied Finish: Manufacturer's standard waterborne acrylic emulsion paint primer and finish coat.
        1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
9. Zinc Sheet: Zinc, 99 percent pure, alloyed with a maximum of 1 percent copper and titanium; with manufacturer's standard factory-applied, flexible, protective back coating.
    a. Thickness: 0.027 inch (0.70 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.80 mm), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
        1) Batten Caps: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) thick.
    b. Finish: Bright rolled **OR** Preweathered gray **OR** Preweathered black, **as directed**.
10. Titanium Sheet: ASTM B 265, Grade 1.
    a. Thickness: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
        1) Batten Caps: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
    b. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
    c. Finish: Low **OR** Medium, **as directed**, matte.
    d. Color Anodic Finish (Light-Interference Phenomenon): Silver **OR** Gold **OR** Purple **OR** Blue **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors and color densities, **as directed**.

B. Underlayment Materials
1. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
2. Felts: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30) **OR** Type I (No. 15), **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felts.
3. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
    a. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C).
    b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C).
4. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

C. Miscellaneous Materials

1. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by fabricator for sheet metal roofing.
2. Wood Battens: Lumber complying with requirements in Division 05 Section(s) "Maintenance Of Decorative Metal" OR Division 06 Section(s) "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**, and treated with exterior-type fire retardant.
3. Snap-On Seams: Provide snap-on seams integrated with panel-edge profile as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to produce sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
4. Snap-on Batten Caps: Provide batten clips integrated with snap-on caps as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to produce sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
5. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular-threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.
    a. General:
        1) Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal roofing using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
        2) Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
        3) Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    b. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated **OR** Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated, a**s directed**, Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, ASTM F 2329, or Series 300 stainless steel.
    c. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
    d. Fasteners for Copper **OR** Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper, **as directed**, Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or Series 300 stainless steel.
    e. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
    f. Fasteners for Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Steel **OR** Stainless-Steel, **as directed**, Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
    g. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, ASTM F 2329, or Series 300 stainless steel.
    h. Fasteners for Titanium Sheet: Titanium or Series 300 stainless steel.
6. Solder:
    a. For Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead or Grade Sn60, 60 percent tin and 40 percent lead.
    b. For Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
    c. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with an acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
    d. For Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Steel **OR** Stainless Steel **OR** Copper, **as directed**: ASTM B 32, 100 percent tin.
    e. For Zinc: ASTM B 32, 40 percent tin and 60 percent lead with low antimony, as recommended by manufacturer.
7. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
8. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** polysulfide **OR** silicone, **as directed**, polymer sealant as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer for installation indicated, **as directed**; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal roofing and remain watertight.
9. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

10. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

D. Accessories
1. Sheet Metal Accessories: Provide components required for a complete sheet metal roofing assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, metal closures, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of sheet metal roofing unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Provide accessories as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to produce sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
   b. Cleats: For mechanically seaming into joints and formed from the following materials:
      1) Metallic-Coated Steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, Roofing: 0.0250-inch- (0.64-mm-), **as directed**, thick stainless steel.
      2) Copper **OR** Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper, **as directed**, Roofing: 16-oz./sq. ft. (0.55-mm), **as directed**, copper sheet.
      3) Stainless-Steel **OR** Titanium, **as directed**, Roofing: 0.0250-inch- (0.64-mm-), **as directed**, thick stainless steel.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel **OR** Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Steel, **as directed**, Roofing: Manufacturer's preformed cleats or cleats fabricated from manufacturer's thickest flat-stock sheet.
      5) Zinc Roofing: Manufacturer's preformed stainless-steel cleats.
   c. Clips: Minimum 0.0625-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, stainless-steel panel clips designed to withstand negative-load requirements.
   d. Backing Plates: Plates at roofing splices, fabricated from material recommended by SMACNA.
   e. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible-closure strips; cut or premolded to match sheet metal roofing profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
   f. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material and with same finish as sheet metal roofing, minimum 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
2. Pipe Flashing: Premolded, EPDM pipe collar with flexible aluminum ring bonded to base.
3. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material and finish as sheet metal roofing, minimum thickness matching the sheet metal roofing; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles; with weatherproof top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of nominal 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped galvanized steel or stainless-steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
   a. Insulate curbs with 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, rigid insulation.
   b. Install wood nailers at tops of curbs.

E. Snow Guards
1. Snow Guards, General: Prefabricated, noncorrosive units designed to be installed without penetrating sheet metal roofing; complete with predrilled holes, clamps, or hooks for anchoring.
2. Surface-Mounted, Plastic, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Clear **OR** Integral-color, **as directed**, polycarbonate stops designed for attachment to panel surface of sheet metal roofing using construction adhesive, silicone or polyurethane sealant, or adhesive tape.
3. Surface-Mounted, Metal, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Cast-aluminum stops designed for attachment to panel surface of sheet metal roofing using construction adhesive, silicone or polyurethane sealant, or adhesive tape.
4. Surface-Mounted, Copper, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Bronze-alloy stops designed for attachment to panel surface of copper roofing using solder.
5. Seam-Mounted, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Cast-aluminum **OR** Malleable-iron **OR** Clear polycarbonate **OR** Colored polycarbonate, **as directed**, stops designed for attachment to vertical ribs of standing-seam sheet metal roofing with stainless-steel set screws.

6. Seam-Mounted, Bar-Type Snow Guards: Rail- or fence-type assembly consisting of aluminum or stainless-steel rods, bars, or pipe held in place by stainless-steel clamps attached to vertical ribs of standing-seam sheet metal roofing.
   a. Aluminum Finish: Mill **OR** Clear anodized, **as directed**.
   b. Stainless-Steel Finish: Mill **OR** Enamel, **as directed**.

F. Fabrication
1. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal roofing to comply with details shown and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions (panel width and seam height), geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of installation indicated. Fabricate sheet metal roofing and accessories at the shop to greatest extent possible.
   a. Flat-Seam Roofing: Form flat-seam panels from metal sheets 20 by 28 inches (510 by 710 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) notched and folded edges.
   b. Standing-Seam Roofing: Form standing-seam panels with finished seam height of 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
   c. Batten-Seam Roofing: Form batten-seam panels with sides turned up 2-1/8 inches (54 mm) **OR** as indicated, **as directed**, with 1/2-inch (13-mm) flange turned toward center of pan.
   d. Horizontal-Seam (Bermuda-Type) Roofing: Form horizontal-seam (Bermuda-type) panels with upper edges turned up and extending above batten 1/2 inch (13 mm).
2. General: Fabricate roll-formed sheet metal roofing panels with UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing roofing panels for sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article. Fabricate roll-formed sheet metal according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
3. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal roofing that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
4. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal roofing that is capable of installation to tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
5. Form exposed sheet metal work to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line and levels indicated; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
   a. Lay out sheet metal roofing so transverse seams, if required, are made in direction of flow with higher panels overlapping lower panels.
   b. Offset transverse seams from each other 12 inches (300 mm) minimum.
   c. Fold and cleat eaves and transverse seams in the shop.
   d. Form and fabricate sheets, seams, strips, cleats, valleys, ridges, edge treatments, integral flashings, and other components of metal roofing to profiles, patterns, and drainage arrangements shown on Drawings and as required for leakproof construction.
6. Expansion Provisions: Fabricate sheet metal roofing to allow for expansion in running work sufficient to prevent leakage, damage, and deterioration of the Work. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
7. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are indicated or required to produce weathertight seams, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant in compliance with SMACNA standards.
8. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator of sheet metal roofing or manufacturers of the metals in contact.
9. Sheet Metal Accessories: Custom fabricate flashings and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.

a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
b. Seams:
1) Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
OR
Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength, **as directed**.
c. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant.
d. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
e. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
10. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Lay out and nail battens to wood sheathing **OR** screw battens to wood sheathing **OR** screw battens to metal deck, **as directed**, before installation of sheet metal roofing.
a. Space fasteners not more than 18 inches (457 mm) o.c.
b. Space fasteners as required by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer for specified UL classification for wind-uplift resistance.
2. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Steel Roofing: For roofing with 3:12 slopes or less, paint underside of shop-coated, zinc-tin alloy-coated steel, before installation, with zinc-tin alloy-coated steel primer, applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.5 mils (0.06 mm). Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. This is in addition to the shop coating.

B. Underlayment Installation
1. Polyethylene Sheet: Install polyethylene sheet on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Use adhesive for anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal roofing. Apply at locations indicated on Drawings, in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped and taped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Use adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal roofing. Apply at locations indicated, in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
a. Apply from eave to ridge.
OR
Apply on roof not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges of self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm), in shingle fashion to shed water.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free, on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated, **as directed**, in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
a. Roof perimeter for a distance up from eaves of 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 36 inches (900 mm), **as directed**, beyond interior wall line.

b. Valleys, from lowest to highest point, for a distance on each side of 18 inches (460 mm). Overlap ends of sheets not less than 6 inches (150 mm).
c. Rake edges for a distance of 18 inches (460 mm).
d. Hips and ridges for a distance on each side of 12 inches (300 mm).
e. Roof to wall intersections for a distance from wall of 18 inches (460 mm).
f. Around dormers, chimneys, skylights, and other penetrating elements for a distance from element of 18 inches (460 mm).

4. Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
5. Apply slip sheet before installing sheet metal roofing.

C. Installation, General

1. General: Anchor sheet metal roofing and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Install fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by fabricator for sheet metal roofing.
   a. Field cutting of sheet metal roofing by torch is not permitted.
   b. Provide metal closures at peaks, rake edges, rake walls, eaves, and each side of ridge and hip caps, **as directed**.
   c. Flash and seal sheet metal roofing with closure strips at eaves, rakes, and perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
   d. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Predrill panels for fasteners.
   e. Install ridge **OR** ridge and hip, **as directed**, caps as sheet metal roofing work proceeds.
   f. Locate roofing splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger roofing splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition. Install backing plates at roofing splices.
   g. Install sealant tape where indicated.
   h. Lap metal flashing over sheet metal roofing to allow moisture to run over and off the material.
   i. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
2. Thermal Movement. Rigidly fasten metal roof panels to structure at only one location for each panel. Allow remainder of panel to move freely for thermal expansion and contraction.
   a. Point of Fixity: Fasten each panel along a single line of fixing located at eave **OR** ridge **OR** center of panel length **OR** locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   b. Avoid attaching accessories through roof panels in a manner that will inhibit thermal movement.
3. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws **OR** metal decking not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance, **as directed**.
4. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
   a. Coat back side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal roofing with bituminous coating where roofing will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
6. Fasciae: Align bottom of sheet metal roofing and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Flash and seal sheet metal roofing with closure strips where fasciae meet soffits, along lower panel edges, and at perimeter of all openings.

D. Custom-Fabricated Sheet Metal Roofing Installation
   1. Fabricate and install work with lines and corners of exposed units true and accurate. Form exposed faces flat and free of buckles, excessive waves, and avoidable tool marks, considering temper and reflectivity of metal. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant. Fold back sheet metal to form a hem on concealed side of exposed edges unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Install cleats to hold sheet metal panels in position. Attach each cleat with two fasteners to prevent rotation.
      b. Fasten cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Bend tabs over fastener head.
      c. Provide expansion-type cleats and clips for roof panels that exceed 30 feet (9.1 m) in length.
   2. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction. For roofing with 3:12 slopes or less, use cleats at transverse seams.
      a. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
      b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
   3. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
      a. Do not solder metallic-coated steel **OR** aluminum **OR** titanium sheet.
      b. Do not pre-tin zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel **OR** zinc-tin alloy-coated copper.
      c. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
      d. Stainless-Steel Roofing: Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
      e. Copper Roofing: Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets, using solder for copper.
   4. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum **OR** zinc, **as directed**, where indicated and where necessary for strength.
   5. Flat-Seam Roofing: Attach flat-seam metal panels to substrate with cleats, starting at eave and working upward toward ridge. After panels are in place, mallet seams and solder.
      a. Attach roofing panels with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.. Lock and solder panels to base flashing.
      b. Attach edge flashing to face of roof edge with continuous cleat fastened to roof substrate at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. Lock panels to edge flashing and solder **OR** apply sealant, **as directed**.
   6. Standing-Seam Roofing: Attach standing-seam metal panels to substrate with cleats, double fastened at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. Install panels reaching from eave to ridge before moving to adjacent panels. Before panels are interlocked, apply continuous bead of sealant to top of flange of lower panel. Lock standing seams by folding over twice so cleat and panel edges are completely engaged.
      a. Lock each panel to panel below with soldered **OR** sealed, **as directed**, transverse seam.
      b. Loose-lock panels at eave edges to continuous cleats and flanges at roof edge at gutters.
         OR
         Loose-lock panels at eave edges to continuous edge flashing exposed 24 inches (610 mm) from roof edge. Attach edge flashing to face of roof edge with continuous cleat fastened to roof substrate at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. Lock panels to edge flashing.
      c. Leave seams upright **OR** Fold over seams, **as directed**, after locking at ridges and hips.
   7. Batten-Seam Roofing: Attach batten-seam metal panels to substrate with cleats, starting at eave and working upward toward ridge. Hold cleats in place with battens and fold edges of cleats over to hold panels. After panels are in place and before batten cap is installed, apply continuous

bead of sealant to top of flanges of each panel. Install batten cap covering batten and panel edges and fold batten cap and panel together so batten cap and panel edges are completely engaged.

a. Hook each panel to panel below with soldered **OR** sealed, **as directed**, transverse seam.
b. Splay upturned edges of panels away from base of battens to provide expansion capability.
c. Close batten ends with metal closures. Fold together with panel edges and end of batten cap.
d. Loose-lock panels at eave edges to continuous cleats and flanges at roof edge at gutters.
OR
Loose-lock panels at eave edges to continuous edge flashing exposed 24 inches (610 mm) from roof edge. Attach edge flashing to face of roof edge with continuous cleat fastened to roof substrate at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. Lock panels to edge flashing.

8. Horizontal-Seam (Bermuda-Type) Roofing: Attach horizontal-seam metal panels to substrate with cleats, starting at eave and working upward toward ridge. Attach cleats to battens, spaced at 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. Lock lower edge of each panel to upper edge of panel below, folding seam over to engage cleat and panel edges. After first fold, mallet seams against batten, leaving joint slightly angled to form drip.
   a. Hook end of each panel to adjacent panel with soldered **OR** sealed, **as directed**, cross seam.
   b. Hook panel at eave edge to continuous cleat.
   c. Join ridges and hips with a standing seam and leave seams upright **OR** fold over seams, **as directed**, after locking.
9. Field Painting: Paint exposed surfaces of zinc-tin alloy-coated steel with one coat of zinc-tin alloy-coated steel primer and one coat of zinc-tin alloy-coated steel finish coat as soon as possible after installation; apply each coat at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.5 mils (0.06 mm). Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

E. On-Site, Roll-Formed Sheet Metal Roofing Installation
1. General: Install on-site, roll-formed sheet metal roofing fabricated from UL-certified equipment to comply with equipment manufacturer's written instructions for UL wind-uplift resistance class indicated. Provide sheet metal roofing of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise restricted by on-site or shipping limitations.
2. Standing-Seam Sheet Metal Roofing: Fasten sheet metal roofing to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, at spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer of portable roll-forming equipment.
   a. Install clips to substrate with self-tapping fasteners.
   b. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in equipment manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   c. Before panels are joined, apply continuous bead of sealant to top of flange of lower panel.
   d. Snap-On Seam: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging field-applied sealant.
   OR
   Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved motorized seamer tool so cleat, sheet metal roofing, and field-applied sealant are completely engaged.
3. Batten-Seam Sheet Metal Roofing: Fasten sheet metal roofing to supports with concealed clips at each batten-seam joint at location, at spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer of portable roll-forming equipment.
   a. Install clips to substrate with self-drilling fasteners.
   b. After panels are in place and before batten cap is installed, apply continuous bead of sealant to top of flange of each panel.
   c. Apply snap-on batten caps to sheet metal roofing seams, fully engaged to provide weathertight joints.
4. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction. For roofing with 3:12 slopes or less, use cleats at transverse seams.

a. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement either way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

F. Accessory Installation
1. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
a. Install components required for a complete sheet metal roofing assembly including trim, copings, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, metal closures, closure strips, and similar items.
b. Install accessories integral to sheet metal roofing that are specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" to comply with that Section's requirements.
2. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
a. Install flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers.
b. Install continuous strip of self-adhering underlayment at edge of continuous flashing overlapping self-adhering underlayment, where "continuous seal strip" is indicated in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual," and where indicated on Drawings.
c. Install exposed flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
d. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, and filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
3. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and sheet metal roofing. Fasten and seal to sheet metal roofing as recommended by SMACNA.
4. Roof Curbs: Install curbs at locations indicated on Drawings. Install flashing around bases where they meet sheet metal roofing.
5. Stop-Type Snow Guards: Attach snow guards to sheet metal roofing with adhesive or adhesive tape, as recommended by manufacturer. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate sheet metal roofing.
a. Provide rows of snow guards, at locations indicated on Drawings, spaced apart, beginning up from roof edge at gutter, with each snow guard centered between sheet metal roofing ribs, **as directed**.
6. Bar-Type Snow Guards: Attach bar supports to vertical ribs of standing-seam sheet metal roofing with clamps or set screws. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate sheet metal roofing.
a. Provide rows of snow guards, at locations indicated on Drawings, spaced apart, beginning up from roof edge at gutter.

G. Erection Tolerances
1. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal roofing within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

OR

Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal roofing within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

H. Cleaning And Protection
1. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
2. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
3. Clean off excess sealants.
4. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal roofing is installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal roofing installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal roofing manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal roofing in a clean condition during construction.
5. Replace sheet metal roofing components that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 41 13 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 41 33 00	07 41 13 00	Metal Roof Panels
07 42 13 00	07 41 13 00	Metal Roof Panels

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 42 13 19 - GLAZING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for glazing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
   a. Windows.
   b. Doors.
   c. Glazed curtain walls.
   d. Storefront framing.
   e. Glazed entrances.
   f. Sloped glazing.
   g. Skylights.
   h. Interior borrowed lites.

C. Definitions
1. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
2. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
3. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
2. Delegated Design: Design glass, including comprehensive engineering analysis according to ASTM E 1300 **OR** ICC's 2003 International Building Code, **as directed**, by a qualified professional engineer, using the following design criteria:
   a. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
      OR
      Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
      1) Basic Wind Speed: 85 mph (38 m/s) **OR** 90 mph (40 m/s) **OR** 100 mph (44 m/s) **OR** 110 mph (49 m/s), **as directed**.
      2) Importance Factor.
      3) Exposure Category: B **OR** C **OR** D, **as directed**.
   b. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   c. Vertical Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped 15 degrees or less from vertical, design glass to resist design wind pressure based on glass type factors for short-duration load.
   d. Sloped Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped more than 15 degrees from vertical, design glass to resist each of the following combinations of loads:
      1) Outward design wind pressure minus the weight of the glass. Base design on glass type factors for short-duration load.
      2) Inward design wind pressure plus the weight of the glass plus half of the design snow load. Base design on glass type factors for short-duration load.

3) Half of the inward design wind pressure plus the weight of the glass plus the design snow load. Base design on glass type factors for long-duration load.

e. Glass Type Factors for Wired, Patterned, and Sandblasted Glass:
1) Short-Duration Glass Type Factor for Wired Glass: 0.5.
2) Long-Duration Glass Type Factor for Wired Glass: 0.3.
3) Short-Duration Glass Type Factor for Patterned Glass: 1.0.
4) Long-Duration Glass Type Factor for Patterned Glass: 0.6.
5) Short-Duration Glass Type Factor for Sandblasted Glass: 0.5.

f. Thickness of Patterned Glass: Base design of patterned glass on thickness at thinnest part of the glass.

g. Probability of Breakage for Sloped Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped more than 15 degrees from vertical, design glass for a probability of breakage not greater than 0.001.

h. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is less.

i. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.

3. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Preconstruction Testing
1. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
a. Testing will not be required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
b. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
c. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
d. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
e. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

F. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For glazing sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass **OR** the following products, **as directed**; 12 inches (300 mm) square.
a. Tinted glass.
b. Patterned glass.
c. Coated glass.
d. Wired glass.
e. Fire-resistive glazing products.
f. Laminated glass with colored interlayer.
g. Insulating glass.
4. Glazing Accessory Samples: For gaskets, sealants and colored spacers, in 12-inch (300-mm) lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system, **as directed**.

5. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
6. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
7. Qualification Data: For installers, manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-e coatings, glass testing agency and sealant testing agency.
8. Product Certificates: For glass and glazing products, from manufacturer.
9. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for tinted glass, coated glass, insulating glass, glazing sealants and glazing gaskets.
    a. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
10. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
11. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

G. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified, **as directed**, by coated-glass manufacturer.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
3. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
4. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
5. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain ultraclear float glass, tinted float glass, coated float glass, laminated glass and insulating glass from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
6. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.
7. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
    a. GANA Publications: GANA's "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
    b. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR-A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
    c. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
    d. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
8. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC **OR** the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction **OR** the manufacturer, **as directed**. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
9. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-protection-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, test standard, whether glazing is for use in fire doors or other openings, whether or not glazing passes hose-stream test, whether or not glazing has a temperature rise rating of 450 deg F (250 deg C), and the fire-resistance rating in minutes.
10. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
11. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

H. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
2. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

I. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
   a. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

J. Warranty
1. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form in which coated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
   a. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Final Completion.
2. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which laminated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
   a. Warranty Period: Five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
3. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which insulating-glass manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
   a. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Glass Products, General
1. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.
   a. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.
   b. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
2. Strength: Where float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, Kind HS heat-treated float glass, or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article, **as directed**. Where heat-strengthened glass is indicated, provide Kind HS heat-treated float glass or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article, **as directed**. Where fully tempered glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass.
3. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Provide exterior glazing that passes basic **OR** enhanced, **as directed**,-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 1 **OR** Wind Zone 2 **OR** Wind Zone 3 **OR** Wind Zone 4, **as directed**, when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test

specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on the Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on the Project.

a. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade.
b. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located more than 30 feet (9.1 m) above grade.
OR
Large-Missile Test: For all glazing, regardless of height above grade.

4. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
   a. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick **OR** of thickness indicated, **as directed**.
   b. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
   c. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
   d. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
   e. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
   f. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

B. Glass Products
1. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Ultraclear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I, complying with other requirements specified and with visible light transmission not less than 91 percent and solar heat gain coefficient not less than 0.87, **as directed**.
3. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I; Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated; of kind and condition indicated.
   a. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
   b. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
   c. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other coated glass).
4. Pyrolytic-Coated, Self-Cleaning, Low-Maintenance Glass: Clear float glass with a coating on first surface having both photocatalytic and hydrophilic properties that act to loosen dirt and to cause water to sheet evenly over the glass instead of beading.
5. Uncoated Tinted Float Glass: Class 2, complying with other requirements specified.
   a. Tint Color: Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
   b. Visible Light Transmittance: as directed by the Owner.
6. Polished Wired Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II, Class 1 (clear), Form 1, Quality-Q6, complying with ANSI Z97.1, Class C.
   a. Mesh: M1 (diamond) **OR** M2 (square), **as directed**.
7. Film-Faced Polished Wired Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II, Class 1 (clear), Form 1, Quality-Q6 and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
   a. Mesh: M1 (diamond) **OR** M2 (square), **as directed**.
8. Patterned Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II, Class 1 (clear), Form 3; Quality-Q6, Finish F1 (patterned one side) **OR** Finish F2 (patterned both sides), **as directed**, Pattern P1 (linear) **OR** Pattern P2 (geometric) **OR** Pattern P3 (random) **OR** Pattern P4 (special), **as directed**.
9. Tempered Patterned Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Type II, Class 1 (clear), Form 3; Quality-Q6, Finish F1 (patterned one side) **OR** Finish F2 (patterned both sides), **as directed**, Pattern P1 (linear) **OR** Pattern P2 (geometric) **OR** Pattern P3 (random) **OR** Pattern P4 (special), **as directed**.
10. Patterned Wired Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II, Class 1 (clear), Form 2, Quality-Q6, Finish F1 (patterned one side) **OR** Finish F2 (patterned both sides), **as directed**, Mesh M1 (diamond), Pattern P1 (linear) **OR** Pattern P2 (geometric) **OR** Pattern P3 (random) **OR** Pattern P4 (special), **as directed**.

11. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: Heat-treated float glass, Condition C; with ceramic enamel applied by silk-screened process; complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in GANA's Tempering Division's "Engineering Standards Manual" and with other requirements specified.
    a. Glass: Clear float **OR** Ultraclear float **OR** Tinted float, **as directed**.
    b. Tint Color: Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
    c. Ceramic Coating Color and Pattern: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
12. Reflective-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C 1376, coated by pyrolytic process **OR** vacuum deposition (sputter-coating) process, **as directed**, and complying with other requirements specified.
    a. Kind: Kind CV (coated vision glass), except that Kind CO (coated overhead glass) may be used where the lower edge of the glass is more than 6 feet (1.8 m) above the adjacent floor level or cannot be approached closer than 10 feet (3.0 m).
    b. Coating Color: Gold **OR** Pewter **OR** Silver, **as directed**.
    c. Glass: Clear float **OR** Tinted float, **as directed**.
    d. Tint Color: Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
    e. Visible Light Transmittance:
    f. Outdoor Visible Reflectance: as directed by the Owner.
    g. Self-Cleaning, Low-Maintenance Coating: Pyrolytic coating on first surface.
13. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition B, Type I, Quality-Q3, and complying with other requirements specified.
    a. Glass: Clear float **OR** Ultraclear float **OR** Tinted float, **as directed**.
    b. Tint Color: Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
    c. Ceramic Coating Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
14. Silicone-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition C, Type I, Quality-Q3, and complying with other requirements specified.
    a. Glass: Clear float **OR** Ultraclear float **OR** Tinted float, **as directed**.
    b. Tint Color: Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
    c. Silicone Coating Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
15. Reflective-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1376, Kind CS; coated by pyrolytic process **OR** vacuum deposition (sputter-coating) process, **as directed**, and complying with other requirements specified.
    a. Coating Color: Gold **OR** Pewter **OR** Silver, **as directed**.
    b. Glass: Clear float **OR** Ultraclear float **OR** Tinted float, **as directed**.
    c. Tint Color: Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
    d. Visible Light Transmittance: as directed by the Owner.
    e. Outdoor Visible Reflectance: as directed by the Owner.

C. Laminated Glass
1. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials, and with other requirements specified. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
    a. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer or cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written recommendations.
    b. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
    c. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.
2. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials, with "Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance" Paragraph in "Glass Products, General" Article, and with other requirements specified. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
    a. Construction: Laminate glass with one of the following to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written recommendations:

1) Polyvinyl butyral interlayer.
2) Polyvinyl butyral interlayers reinforced with polyethylene terephthalate film.
3) Ionoplast interlayer.
4) Cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer.
5) Cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer reinforced with polyethylene terephthalate film.

b. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
c. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

3. Glass: Comply with applicable requirements in "Glass Products" Article as indicated by designations in "Laminated-Glass Types" Article.

D. Insulating Glass
1. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
a. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard **OR** polyisobutylene and polysulfide **OR** polyisobutylene and silicone **OR** polyisobutylene and hot-melt butyl **OR** polyisobutylene and polyurethane, **as directed**, primary and secondary.
b. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction **OR** Aluminum with mill or clear anodic finish **OR** Aluminum with black, color anodic finish **OR** Aluminum with bronze, color anodic finish **OR** Aluminum with powdered metal paint finish in color selected **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Polypropylene covered stainless steel in color selected **OR** Thermally broken aluminum **OR** Nonmetallic laminate **OR** Nonmetallic tube, **as directed**.
c. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
2. Glass: Comply with applicable requirements in "Glass Products" Article and in "Laminated Glass" Article, **as directed**, as indicated by designations in "Insulating-Glass Types" Article and in "Insulating-Laminated-Glass Types" Article, **as directed**.

E. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing
1. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing, General: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 for door assemblies and NFPA 257 for window assemblies.
2. Monolithic Ceramic Glazing: Clear, ceramic flat glass; 3/16-inch (5-mm) nominal thickness.
3. Film-Faced Ceramic Glazing: Clear, ceramic flat glass; 3/16-inch (5-mm) nominal thickness; faced on one surface with a clear glazing film; complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
4. Laminated Ceramic Glazing: Laminated glass made from 2 plies of clear, ceramic flat glass; 5/16-inch (8-mm) total nominal thickness; complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
5. Fire-Protection-Rated Tempered Glass: 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) **OR** 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) **OR** 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-), **as directed**, thick, fire-protection-rated tempered glass, complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
6. Fire-Protection-Rated Laminated Glass: 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) thick, fire-protection-rated laminated glass, complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
7. Laminated Glass with Intumescent Interlayers: Laminated glass made from multiple plies of uncoated, clear float glass; with intumescent interlayers; complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
8. Gel-Filled, Double Glazing Units: Double glazing units made from two lites of uncoated, clear, fully tempered float glass; with a perimeter metal spacer separating lites and dual-edge seal enclosing a cavity filled with clear, fully transparent, heat-absorbing gel; complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.

F. Glazing Gaskets

1. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
   a. Neoprene complying with ASTM C 864.
   b. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
   c. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
   d. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber complying with ASTM C 1115.
2. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned neoprene, EPDM, silicone or thermoplastic polyolefin rubber gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
   a. Application: Use where soft compression gaskets will be compressed by inserting dense compression gaskets on opposite side of glazing or pressure applied by means of pressure-glazing stops on opposite side of glazing.
3. Lock-Strip Gaskets: Neoprene extrusions in size and shape indicated, fabricated into frames with molded corner units and zipper lock-strips, complying with ASTM C 542, black.

G. Glazing Sealants
1. General:
   a. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
   b. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
   c. VOC Content: For sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D.
   d. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
2. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
3. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
4. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
5. Glazing Sealant: Acid-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
6. Glazing Sealants for Fire-Rated Glazing Products: Products that are approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing products with which they are used for applications and fire-protection ratings indicated.

H. Glazing Tapes
1. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
   a. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
   b. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
   c. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
2. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
   a. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
   b. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

I. Miscellaneous Glazing Materials
1. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
2. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
3. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
4. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
5. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
6. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.
7. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Product that is approved by testing agency that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing product with which it is used for application and fire-protection rating indicated.

J. Fabrication Of Glazing Units
1. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
3. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

K. Monolithic-Glass Types
1. Glass Type: Clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Provide safety glazing labeling.
2. Glass Type: Ultraclear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Provide safety glazing labeling.
3. Glass Type: Pyrolytic-coated, self-cleaning, low-maintenance, clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Provide safety glazing labeling.
4. Glass Type: Tinted float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   c. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   d. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Provide safety glazing labeling.
5. Glass Type: Polished wired glass.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
6. Glass Type: Patterned glass.
   a. Thickness: 4.0 **OR** 5.0 **OR** 6.0, **as directed**, mm.
7. Glass Type: Tempered patterned glass.
   a. Thickness: 4.0 **OR** 5.0 **OR** 6.0, **as directed**, mm.
   b. Provide safety glazing labeling.
8. Glass Type: Patterned wired glass.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.

9. Glass Type: Ceramic-coated vision glass, heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Coating Location: Second surface.
   c. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   d. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   f. Provide safety glazing labeling.
10. Glass Type: Reflective-coated vision glass, float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Coating Location: First **OR** Second, **as directed**, surface.
   c. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   d. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   f. Provide safety glazing labeling.
11. Glass Type: Ceramic-coated spandrel glass, heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Coating Location: Second surface.
   c. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   d. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Fallout Resistance: Passes fallout-resistance test in ASTM C 1048 for an assembly of glass and adhered reinforcing material.
12. Glass Type: Silicone-coated spandrel glass, heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Coating Location: Second surface.
   c. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   d. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Fallout Resistance: Passes fallout-resistance test in ASTM C 1048 for an assembly of glass and adhered reinforcing material.
13. Glass Type: Reflective-coated spandrel glass, heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
   b. Coating Location: First **OR** Second, **as directed**, surface.
   c. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   d. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Fallout Resistance: Passes fallout-resistance test in ASTM C 1048 for an assembly of glass and adhered reinforcing material.
   f. Factory apply manufacturer's standard opacifier of the following material to coated second surface of lites, with resulting products complying with Specification No. 89-1-6 in GANA's Tempering Division's "Engineering Standards Manual":
      1) Manufacturer's standard opacifier material.
         OR
         Polyester film laminated to glass with solvent-based adhesive.

L. Laminated-Glass Types
1. Glass Type: Clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass **OR** ultraclear float glass **OR** ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.

c. Provide safety glazing labeling.

2. Glass Type: Antireflective-coated clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass **OR** ultraclear float glass **OR** ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Visible Reflectance: Less than 2 percent.
   d. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   f.
   g. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   h.
   i. Provide safety glazing labeling.
3. Glass Type: Tinted laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**, with outer ply Class 2 (tinted) and inner ply Class 1 (clear).
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   d.
   e. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   f.
   g. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   h.
   i. Provide safety glazing labeling.
4. Glass Type: Tinted laminated glass with two plies of clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**, and tinted interlayer.
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Interlayer Color: Blue-green **OR** Bronze light **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
   d. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e.
   f. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g.
   h. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Provide safety glazing labeling.
5. Glass Type: Ceramic-coated, laminated vision glass with two plies of heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Coating Location: Second **OR** Third **OR** Fourth, **as directed**, surface.
   d. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e.
   f. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g.
   h. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   i.
   j. Provide safety glazing labeling.

6. Glass Type: Reflective-coated, laminated vision glass with two plies of heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**, with inner ply Class 1 (clear).
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Coating Location: First **OR** Second **OR** Third, **as directed**, surface.
   d. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e.
   f. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g.
   h. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Provide safety glazing labeling.
7. Glass Type: Low-e-coated, laminated vision glass with two plies of clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directedf**.
   c. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second **OR** Pyrolytic on third **OR** Sputtered on second **OR** Sputtered on third **OR** Pyrolytic or sputtered on second or third, **as directed**, surface.
   d. Visible Light Transmittance: as directed by the Owner.
   e.
   f. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i.
   j. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   k.
   l. Provide safety glazing labeling.
8. Glass Type: Reflective-coated, laminated spandrel glass with two plies of heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**, with inner ply Class 1 (clear).
   a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Coating Location: First **OR** Second **OR** Third, **as directed**, surface.
   d. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   e.
   f. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g.

M. Insulating-Glass Types
1. Glass Type: Clear insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Provide safety glazing labeling.

2. Glass Type: Ultraclear insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Ultraclear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Ultraclear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i.
   j. Provide safety glazing labeling.
3. Glass Type: Pyrolytic-coated, self-cleaning, low-maintenance, clear insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Pyrolytic-coated, self-cleaning, low-maintenance, clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Provide safety glazing labeling.
4. Glass Type: Low-e-coated, clear insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second **OR** Pyrolytic on third **OR** Sputtered on second **OR** Sputtered on third **OR** Pyrolytic or sputtered on second or third, **as directed**, surface.
   g. Visible Light Transmittance: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   k. Provide safety glazing labeling.
5. Glass Type: Tinted insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Provide safety glazing labeling.
6. Glass Type: Low-e-coated, tinted insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.

c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
e. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
f. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second **OR** Pyrolytic on third **OR** Sputtered on second **OR** Sputtered on third **OR** Pyrolytic or sputtered on second or third, **as directed**, surface.
g. Visible Light Transmittance: as directed by the Owner.
h. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
i. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
j. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
k. Provide safety glazing labeling.

7. Glass Type: Ceramic-coated, insulating vision glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Coating Location: Second **OR** Third **OR** Fourth, **as directed**, surface.
   g. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Provide safety glazing labeling.
8. Glass Type: Reflective-coated, clear insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Coating Location: First **OR** Second **OR** Third, **as directed**, surface.
   g. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Provide safety glazing labeling.
9. Glass Type: Reflective-coated, tinted insulating glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   f. Coating Location: First **OR** Second **OR** Third, **as directed**, surface.
   g. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Provide safety glazing labeling.
10. Glass Type: Ceramic-coated **OR** Silicone-coated, **as directed**, insulating spandrel glass.
    a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
    b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.

c. Outdoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
e. Indoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
f. Coating Location: Fourth surface.
g. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.

11. Glass Type: Ceramic-coated **OR** Silicone-coated, **as directed**, low-e, insulating spandrel glass.
a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
c. Outdoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
e. Indoor Lite: Float glass **OR** Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass **OR** Ultraclear float glass **OR** Ultraclear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Ultraclear fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
f. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second **OR** Pyrolytic on third **OR** Sputtered on second **OR** Sputtered on third **OR** Pyrolytic or sputtered on second or third, **as directed**, surface.
g. Opaque Coating Location: Fourth surface.
h. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
i. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.

12. Glass Type: Ceramic-coated **OR** Silicone-coated, **as directed**, tinted, insulating spandrel glass.
a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
b. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm.
c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
e. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
f. Coating Location: Fourth surface.
g. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.

N. Insulating-Laminated-Glass Types
1. Glass Type: Clear insulating laminated glass.
a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-3/16 inch (30 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
b. Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
c. Outdoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
e. Indoor Lite: Clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
1) Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2) Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
f. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
g. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
h. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
i. Provide safety glazing labeling.

2. Glass Type: Low-e-coated, clear insulating laminated glass.

a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-3/16 inch (30 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
b. Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
c. Outdoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass **OR** Fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
e. Indoor Lite: Clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   1) Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   2) Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
f. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second **OR** Pyrolytic on third **OR** Sputtered on second **OR** Sputtered on third **OR** Pyrolytic or sputtered on second or third, **as directed**, surface.
g. Visible Light Transmittance: as directed by the Owner.
h. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
i. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
j. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
k. Provide safety glazing labeling.

3. Glass Type: Tinted, insulating laminated glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-3/16 inch (30 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
      1) Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      2) Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   g. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Provide safety glazing labeling.
4. Glass Type: Low-e-coated, tinted, insulating laminated glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-3/16 inch (30 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
      1) Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      2) Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second **OR** Pyrolytic on third **OR** Sputtered on second **OR** Sputtered on third **OR** Pyrolytic or sputtered on second or third, **as directed**, surface.
   g. Visible Light Transmittance: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   k. Provide safety glazing labeling.

5. Glass Type: Reflective-coated, clear, insulating laminated glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-3/16 inch (30 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 6.0 mm.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Clear heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
      1) Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      2) Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Coating Location: First **OR** Second **OR** Third, **as directed**, surface.
   g. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Provide safety glazing labeling.
6. Glass Type: Reflective-coated, tinted, insulating laminated glass.
   a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-3/16 inch (30 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 6.0 mm.
   c. Outdoor Lite: Tinted heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
   d. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
   e. Indoor Lite: Clear laminated glass with two plies of float glass **OR** heat-strengthened float glass **OR** fully tempered float glass, **as directed**.
      1) Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      2) Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** 0.090 inch (2.29 mm), **asdrected**.
   f. Coating Location: First **OR** Second **OR** Third, **as directed**, surface.
   g. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   h. Summer Daytime U-Factor: as directed by the Owner.
   i. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Provide safety glazing labeling.

O. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing Types
1. Glass Type: 20-minute fire-rated glazing without hose-stream test; monolithic ceramic glazing **OR** film-faced ceramic glazing **OR** laminated ceramic glazing **OR** fire-protection-rated tempered glass **OR** fire-protection-rated laminated glass **OR** gel-filled, double glazing units, **as directed**.
   a. Provide safety glazing labeling.
2. Glass Type: 20-minute fire-rated glazing with hose-stream test; monolithic ceramic glazing **OR** film-faced ceramic glazing **OR** laminated ceramic glazing **OR** gel-filled, double glazing units, **as directd**.
   a. Provide safety glazing labeling.
3. Glass Type: 45-minute **OR** 60-minute **OR** 90-minute **OR** 120-minute, **as directed**, fire-rated glazing; monolithic ceramic glazing **OR** film-faced ceramic glazing **OR** laminated ceramic glazing **OR** laminated glass with intumescent interlayers **OR** gel-filled, double glazing units, **as directed**.
   a. Provide safety glazing labeling.
4. Glass Type: 45-minute **OR** 60-minute **OR** 90-minute **OR** 120-minute, **as directed**, fire-rated glazing with 450 deg F (250 deg C) temperature rise limitation; laminated glass with intumescent interlayers **OR** gel-filled, double glazing units, **as directed**.
   a. Provide safety glazing labeling.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
   a. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
   b. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
   c. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
   d. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
2. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that will leave visible marks in the completed work.

C. Glazing, General
1. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
2. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.
3. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
4. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
5. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
6. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
7. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).
   a. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
   b. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
8. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
9. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
10. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
11. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
12. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

D. Tape Glazing
1. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
2. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
3. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
4. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
5. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
6. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
7. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
8. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

E. Gasket Glazing (Dry)
1. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
2. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
3. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
4. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
5. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

F. Sealant Glazing (Wet)
1. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
2. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
3. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

G. Lock-Strip Gasket Glazing
1. Comply with ASTM C 716 and gasket manufacturer's written instructions. Provide supplementary wet seal and weep system unless otherwise indicated.

H. Cleaning And Protection
1. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
2. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
4. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
5. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Final Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13 19

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 42 63 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 42 93 00 - SIDING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for siding. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Aluminum, Fiber-cement, and Vinyl siding.
b. Aluminum, Fiber-cement, and Vinyl soffit.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
a. For vinyl siding, include VSI's official certification logo printed on product data.
2. Samples: For siding and soffit including related accessories.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified vinyl siding Installer.
4. Product certificates.
5. Product test reports.
6. Research/evaluation reports
7. Maintenance data.
8. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled according to ASTM C 1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Vinyl Siding Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs a VSI-Certified Installer on Project.
3. Vinyl Siding Certification Program: Provide vinyl siding products that are listed in VSI's list of certified products.
4. Source Limitations: Obtain each type, color, texture, and pattern of siding and soffit, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store materials in a dry, well-ventilated, weathertight place.

F. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace siding and/or soffit that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 25 **OR** 50, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Aluminum Siding
1. General: Formed and coated aluminum siding complying with AAMA 1402.
2. Horizontal Pattern: 8-inch (203-mm) exposure in plain, single-board **OR** beaded-edge, single-board **OR** plain, double-board, 4-inch (102-mm), **as directed**, style.
3. Horizontal Pattern: 10-inch (254-mm) exposure in plain, **OR** Dutch-lap, **as directed**, double, 5-inch (127-mm) board style.

4. Vertical Pattern: 12-inch (300-mm) exposure in board-and-batten, single-board style.
5. Vertical Pattern: 16-inch (400-mm) exposure in V-grooved, triple, 5-1/3-inch (135-mm) board style.
6. Texture: Smooth **OR** Wood grain, **as directed**.
7. Nominal Thickness: 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.6 mm), **as directed**.
8. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard integral insulation panels.
9. Finish: Manufacturer's standard three-coat PVDF **OR** primer and baked-on acrylic **OR** primer and baked-on polyester, **as directed**.
    a. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.

B. Fiber-Cement Siding
1. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    a. Horizontal Pattern: Boards 5-1/4 inches (133 mm) **OR** 6-1/4 to 6-1/2 inches (159 to 165 mm) **OR** 7-1/4 to 7-1/2 inches (184 to 190 mm) **OR** 8-1/4 to 8-1/2 inches (210 to 216 mm) **OR** 9-1/4 to 9-1/2 inches (235 to 241 mm), **as directed**, wide in plain **OR** beaded-edge, **as directed**, style.
        1) Texture: Smooth **OR** Rough sawn **OR** Wood grain, **as directed**.
    b. Vertical Pattern: 48-inch- (1200-mm-) wide sheets with wood-grain texture and grooves 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
    c. Shingle Pattern: 48-inch- (1200-mm-) wide, straight-edge notched **OR** staggered-edge notched, **as directed**, sheets with wood-grain texture.
    d. Panel Texture: 48-inch- (1200-mm-) wide sheets with smooth **OR** stucco **OR** wood-grain, **as directed**, texture.
    e. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

C. Vinyl Siding
1. General: Integrally colored vinyl siding complying with ASTM D 3679.
2. Horizontal Pattern: 6-1/2- or 7-inch (165- or 178-mm) exposure in beaded-edge, single-board style.
3. Horizontal Pattern: 8-inch (203-mm) exposure in plain, single-board **OR** double board, 4-inch (102-mm) **OR** triple board, 2-2/3-inch (68-mm), **as directed**, style.
4. Horizontal Pattern: 8-inch (203-mm) exposure in Dutch-lap, double, 4-inch (102-mm) board style.
5. Horizontal Pattern: 9-inch (229-mm) exposure in plain, double board, 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** triple board, 3-inch (76-mm), **as directed**, style.
6. Horizontal Pattern: 9-inch (229-mm) exposure in Dutch-lap, double, 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) board style.
7. Horizontal Pattern: 10-inch (254-mm) exposure in plain, **OR** Dutch-lap, **as directed**, double, 5-inch (127-mm) board style.
8. Vertical Pattern: 6-inch (152-mm) exposure in V-grooved, single-board style.
9. Vertical Pattern: 8-inch (203-mm) exposure in beaded-edge, double, 4-inch (102-mm) board style.
10. Vertical Pattern: 10-inch (254-mm) exposure in V-grooved, double, 5-inch (127-mm) board style.
11. Vertical Pattern: 12-inch (300-mm) exposure in V-grooved, double board, 6-inch (152-mm) **OR** triple board, 4-inch (102-mm), **as directed**, style.
12. Shingle Pattern: 48-inch- (1200-mm-) wide, straight-edge notched **OR** staggered-edge notched **OR** half-round edge **OR** octagon edge, **as directed**, sheets with wood-grain texture.
13. Texture: Smooth **OR** Wood grain, **as directed**.
14. Nominal Thickness: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) **OR** 0.044 inch (1.1 mm), **as directed**.
15. Minimum Profile Depth (Butt Thickness): 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
16. Nailing Hem: Double thickness.
17. Finish: Wood-grain print with clear protective coating containing not less than 70 percent PVDF.
    a. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.

D. Aluminum Soffit
1. General: Formed and coated aluminum soffit complying with AAMA 1402.
2. Pattern: 6-inch (152-mm) exposure in V-grooved, single-board style.
3. Pattern: 10-inch (254-mm) exposure in V-grooved, double, 5-inch (127-mm) board style.
4. Pattern: 12-inch (300-mm) exposure in V-grooved, double, 6-inch (152-mm) board style.
5. Pattern: 16-inch (400-mm) exposure in V-grooved, triple board, 5-1/3-inch (135-mm) **OR** quadruple board, 4-inch (102-mm), **as directed**, style.
6. Texture: Smooth **OR** Wood grain, **as directed**.
7. Ventilation: Provide perforated **OR** unperforated, **as directed**, soffit unless otherwise indicated.
8. Nominal Thickness: 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.6 mm), **as directed**.
9. Finish: Manufacturer's standard three-coat PVDF **OR** primer and baked-on acrylic **OR** primer and baked-on polyester, **as directed**.
    a. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range of industry colors **OR** Match adjacent siding, **as directed**.

E. Fiber-Cement Soffit
1. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
2. Pattern: 12-inch- (300-mm-) **OR** 16-inch- (400-mm-) **OR** 24-inch- (600-mm-), **as directed**, wide sheets with smooth **OR** wood-grain, **as directed**, texture.
3. Ventilation: Provide perforated **OR** unperforated, **as directed**, soffit unless otherwise indicated.
4. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

F. Vinyl Soffit
1. General: Integrally colored vinyl soffit complying with ASTM D 4477.
2. Pattern: 6-inch (152-mm) exposure in V-grooved, single-board **OR** beaded-edge, triple board, 2-inch (51-mm), **as directed**, style.
3. Pattern: 8-inch (203-mm) exposure in V-grooved, double, 4-inch (102-mm) board style.
4. Pattern: 10-inch (254-mm) exposure in V-grooved, double, 5-inch (127-mm) board style.
5. Pattern: 12-inch (300-mm) exposure in V-grooved, double board, 6-inch (152-mm) **OR** triple board, 4-inch (102-mm), **as directed**, style.
6. Texture: Smooth **OR** Wood grain, **as directed**.
7. Ventilation: Provide perforated **OR** unperforated, **as directed**, soffit unless otherwise indicated.
8. Nominal Thickness: 0.035 inch (0.9 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) **OR** 0.044 inch (1.1 mm), **as directed**.
9. Minimum Profile Depth: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
10. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range of industry colors **OR** Match adjacent siding, **as directed**.

G. Accessories
1. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.
    a. Provide accessories made from same material as **OR** matching color and texture of, **as directed**, adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.
2. Aluminum Accessories: Where aluminum accessories are indicated, provide accessories complying with AAMA 1402.
    a. Texture: Smooth **OR** Wood grain, **as directed**.
    b. Nominal Thickness: 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.6 mm), **as directed**.
    c. Finish: Manufacturer's standard three-coat PVDF **OR** primer and baked-on acrylic **OR** primer and baked-on polyester, **as directed**.
3. Vinyl Accessories: Integrally colored vinyl accessories complying with ASTM D 3679 except for wind-load resistance.
    a. Texture: Smooth **OR** Wood grain, **as directed**.

4. Decorative Accessories: Provide the following aluminum **OR** fiber-cement **OR** vinyl, **as directed**, decorative accessories as indicated:
   a. Corner posts with fluted faces, **as directed**.
   b. Door and window casings with fluted faces, **as directed**, and corner rosettes, **as directed**.
   c. Entrance and window head pediments.
   d. Pilasters with fluted faces, **as directed**.
   e. Shutters with paneled **OR** louvered, **as directed**, faces.
   f. Louvers.
   g. Lattice.
   h. Fasciae.
   i. Moldings and trim.
5. Colors for Decorative Accessories: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range of industry colors **OR** Match adjacent siding, **as directed**.
6. Flashing: Provide aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, flashing complying with Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
   a. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: Same as aluminum siding **OR** Siliconized polyester coating, same color as siding **OR** High-performance organic finish, same color as siding **OR** Factory-prime coating, **as directed**.
7. Fasteners:
   a. For fastening to wood, use siding nails **OR** ribbed bugle-head screws, **as directed**, of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) into substrate.
   b. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1/4 inch (6 mm), or three screw-threads, into substrate.
   c. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum fasteners. Where fasteners will be exposed to view, use prefinished aluminum fasteners in color to match item being fastened.
   d. For fastening fiber cement, use hot-dip galvanized **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
   e. For fastening vinyl, use aluminum **OR** hot-dip galvanized **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, fasteners. Where fasteners will be exposed to view, use prefinished aluminum fasteners in color to match item being fastened.
8. Insect Screening for Soffit Vents: Aluminum, 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh **OR** PVC-coated, glass-fiber fabric, 18-by-14 or 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.8- or 1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh **OR** Stainless steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, **as directed**.
9. Continuous Soffit Vents: Aluminum, hat-channel shape, with stamped louvers **OR** perforations, **as directed**; 2 inches (51 mm) wide and not less than 96 inches (2438 mm) long.
   a. Net-Free Area: 4 sq. in./linear ft. (280 sq. cm/m) **OR** 6 sq. in./linear ft. (420 sq. cm/m) **OR** 8 sq. in./linear ft. (560 sq. cm/m), **as directed**.
   b. Finish: Mill finish **OR** White paint **OR** Brown paint, **as directed**.
10. Round Soffit Vents: Stamped aluminum louvered vents, 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, in diameter, made to be inserted into round holes cut into soffit.
    a. Finish: Mill finish **OR** White paint **OR** Brown paint, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
   1. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

B. Installation
   1. General: Comply with siding and soffit manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
      a. Do not install damaged components.
      b. Center nails in elongated nailing slots without binding siding to allow for thermal movement.

2. Install aluminum siding and soffit and related accessories according to AAMA 1402.
   a. Install fasteners no more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
3. Install fiber-cement siding and soffit and related accessories.
   a. Install fasteners no more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
4. Install vinyl siding and soffit and related accessories according to ASTM D 4756.
   a. Install fasteners for horizontal vinyl siding no more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
   b. Install fasteners for vertical vinyl siding no more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
5. Install joint sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.
6. Where aluminum siding will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

C. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
2. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 07 42 93 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 46 16 00 - METAL PLATE WALL PANELS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal plate wall panels. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes metal plate wall panels.

C. Definition
1. Metal Plate Wall Panel Assembly: Metal plate wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall system.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Metal plate wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
2. Delegated Design: Design metal plate wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
3. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
   a. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa) which is equivalent to a 25-mph (40-km/h) wind.
4. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
   a. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) which is equivalent to a 50-mph (80-km/h) wind.
5. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) {which is equivalent to a 50-mph (80-km/h) wind} and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft. (575 Pa).
   a. Water Leakage: As defined according to AAMA 501.1.
      OR
      Water Leakage: Uncontrolled water infiltrating the system or appearing on system's normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.
6. Structural Performance: Provide metal plate wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:
   a. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
      1) Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa), **as directed**, acting inward or outward.
         OR
         Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
   b. Deflection Limits: Metal plate wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/180 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.

7. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
    a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal plate wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish among factory-, shop-, and field-assembled work.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal plate wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations, drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and wall-mounted items.
6. Product Test Reports.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Maintenance Data.
9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
3. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal plate wall panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver components, metal plate wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package panels for protection during transportation and handling.
2. Unload, store, and erect metal plate wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
3. Stack metal plate wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
4. Retain strippable protective covering on metal plate wall panel for period of installation.
5. Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:
    a. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
    b. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to Project site before installation time.
    c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal plate wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    a. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.

2. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal plate wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
   a. Finish Warranty Period:
      1) 20 years from date of Final Completion for fluoropolymer finish.
      2) 10 years from date of Final Completion for siliconized polyester.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Panel Materials
1. Aluminum Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M). Alloy and temper as recommended by manufacturer for application.
2. Copper Plate: ASTM B 152/B 152M, solid copper alloy.
3. Panel Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal plate wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.

B. Miscellaneous Metal Framing
1. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 (Z120) hot-dip galvanized **OR** ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) hot-dip galvanized, **as directed**, or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
2. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections, 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) nominal thickness.
3. Zee Clips: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness.
4. Base or Sill Angles **OR** Channels, **as directed**: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness.
5. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 7/8 inch (22 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
6. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flange.
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with nominal thickness of 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
   d. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.22-mm-) diameter wire.
7. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

C. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
2. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws; bolts and nuts; self-locking rivets and bolts; end-welded studs; and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

D. Metal Plate Wall Panels
1. Metal Plate Wall Panels: Provide factory-formed, metal plate wall panels fabricated from single sheets of metal formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment system components, panel stiffeners, and accessories required for weathertight system.

a. Material: Tension-leveled, smooth aluminum sheet, ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) **OR** 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) **OR** 0.1875 inch (4.76 mm) **OR** 0.190 inch (4.82 mm), **as directed**, thick.
b. Panel Depth: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
c. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Four-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

2. Attachment System Components: Formed from extruded aluminum.
a. Provide internal drainage system that allows individual panels to be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
b. Include manufacturer's standard subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, and drainage channels, panel stiffeners, panel clips and anchor channels, **as applicable**.
c. Alignment Pins: Stainless steel.

E. Accessories
1. Metal Plate Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal plate wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of panels unless otherwise indicated.
2. Flashing and Trim: Same material, finish, and color as adjacent metal plate wall panels, minimum 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick unless otherwise indicated.

F. Fabrication
1. General: Fabricate and finish metal plate wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
2. Fabricate metal plate wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
3. Metal Plate Wall Panels: Fabricate panels with panel stiffeners as required to comply with deflection limits. Weld and grind panel corners smooth. Fabricate panels to the following dimensional tolerances:
a. Length and Width: Plus or minus 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) up to 48 inches (1219 mm); 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) more than 48 inches (1219 mm).
b. Diagonal: Plus or minus 0.1875 inch (4.76 mm).
c. Panel Bow: Not more than 0.2 percent of panel width or length up to 0.1875 inch (4.76 mm) maximum.
d. Thickness: Plus or minus 0.008 inch (0.2 mm).
e. Squareness: 0.1875-inch (4.76-mm) difference between diagonal measurements.
f. Camber: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm).
4. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
b. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
c. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
d. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.

e. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
f. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal plate wall panel manufacturer.
1) Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal plate wall panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

G. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

H. Aluminum Finishes
1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
3. Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
4. Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
5. Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. 3-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
6. FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
7. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
8. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
9. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

I. Copper-Alloy Finishes
1. Exposed Finish: Mill.
2. Exposed Finish: Finish designations prefixed by CDA comply with the system established by the Copper Development Association for designating copper-alloy finish systems.
a. Brushed Satin: CDA M32-06x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):

1) Clear, Organic Coating: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products, applied by air spray in 2 coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

b. Mirror Polished: CDA M22-06x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):

1) Clear, Organic Coating: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products, applied by air spray in 2 coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous metal plate wall panel support members and anchorage according to ASTM C 754 and panel manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Metal Plate Wall Panel Installation

1. General: Install metal plate wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
   a. Commence metal plate wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. (27.8 sq. m) in presence of factory-authorized representative.
   b. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal plate wall panels.
   c. Flash and seal metal plate wall panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by panels are installed.
   d. Install flashing and trim as metal plate wall panel work proceeds.
   e. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
   f. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
2. Fasteners:
   a. Aluminum Plate Wall Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   b. Copper Plate Wall Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
3. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal plate wall panel manufacturer.
4. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall plate panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by panel manufacturer.
   a. Seal metal plate wall panel end laps with double beads of sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by panel manufacturer.
   b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
5. Attachment System, General: Install attachment system required to support metal plate wall panels and to provide a complete weathertight wall system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
   a. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
6. Flange-Attachment Installation: Attach metal plate wall panels, formed with extended perimeter flanges, to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.

a. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant according to requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
b. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent panels with manufacturer's standard gaskets.

7. Clip Installation: Attach panel clips to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach flanges of metal plate wall panels to panel clips with fasteners **OR** by welding, **as directed**, as recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent metal plate wall panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant according to requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
   b. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent metal plate wall panels with manufacturer's standard gaskets.
8. Subgirt-and-Spline Installation: Provide manufacturer's standard subgirts and splines that provide support and complete secondary drainage system, draining to the exterior at horizontal joints. Install support system at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach metal plate wall panels by interlocking perimeter extrusions attached to panels with subgirts and splines. Fully engage integral subgirt-and-spline gaskets and leave horizontal and vertical joints with open reveal. Terminate edge of panels flush with perimeter extrusions.
   a. Install metal plate wall panels to allow individual panels to be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
   b. Do not apply sealants to joints unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
9. Track-Support Installation: Provide manufacturer's standard horizontal tracks and vertical tracks **OR** drain channels, **as directed**, that provide support and complete secondary drainage system, draining to the exterior at horizontal joints through drain tube. Install support system at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach metal plate wall panels to tracks by interlocking panel edges with manufacturer's standard "T" clips.
   a. Install metal plate wall panels to allow individual panels to be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
   b. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent metal plate wall panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant according to requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
10. Rail-Support Installation: Provide manufacturer's standard interlocking rails that provide support and complete secondary drainage system, draining to the exterior at horizontal joints. Install rails at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach metal plate wall panels by overlapping and interlocking support rails with perimeter rails attached to panels. Apply sealant, foam sealant, and tape sealant at locations recommended by manufacturer. Leave horizontal and vertical joints with open reveal.
    a. Install metal plate wall panels to allow individual panels to be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
    b. Install backer plates before installing support rails.
    c. Do not apply sealants to joints unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
11. Rainscreen-Principle Installation: Provide manufacturer's standard pressure-equalized, rainscreen-principle system with vertical channel that provides support and complete secondary drainage system, draining at base of wall. Notch vertical channel to receive support pins. Install vertical channels supported by channel brackets or adjuster angles and at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach metal plate wall panels by engaging horizontal support pins into notches in vertical channels and into flanges of panels. Leave horizontal and vertical joints with open reveal.
    a. Install metal plate wall panels to allow individual panels to be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
    b. Do not apply sealants to joints unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

C. Accessory Installation

1. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
   a. Install components required for a complete metal plate wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
2. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
   a. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
   b. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

D. Erection Tolerances
1. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal plate wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), nonaccumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

E. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Water Penetration: Test areas of installed system indicated on Drawings for compliance with system performance requirements according to ASTM E 1105 at minimum differential pressure of 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure as defined by SEI/ASCE 7, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
3. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-foot- (23-m-) by-2-story minimum area of metal plate wall panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by the Owner.
4. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust completed metal plate wall panel installation, including accessories.
5. Metal plate wall panels will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
6. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
7. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Cleaning
1. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal plate wall panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal plate wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
2. After metal plate wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
3. Replace metal plate wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 46 16 00

SECTION 07 46 16 00a - METAL WALL PANELS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal wall panels. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Exposed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
   b. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
   c. Metal liner panels.
   d. Metal soffit panels.

C. Definition
1. Metal Wall Panel Assembly: Metal wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall system.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
2. Delegated Design: Design metal wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
3. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
   a. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
4. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
   a. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) which is equivalent to a 50-mph (80-km/h) wind.
5. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) (which is equivalent to a 50-mph (80-km/h) wind) and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft. (575 Pa).
   a. Water Leakage: As defined according to AAMA 501.1.
      OR
      Water Leakage: Uncontrolled water infiltrating the system or appearing on system's normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.
6. Structural Performance: Provide metal wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
   a. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
      1) Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa), **as directed**, acting inward or outward.
         OR
         Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.

b. Deflection Limits: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/180 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.

7. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory-, shop- and field-assembled work.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and wall-mounted items.
6. Product Test Reports.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Maintenance Data.
9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
3. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal wall panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
2. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
3. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
4. Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panel for period of metal wall panel installation.
5. Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:
   a. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
   b. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to Project site before installation time.
   c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

H. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.
2. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
   a. Finish Warranty Period:
      1) 20 years from date of Final Completion for fluoropolymer finish.
      2) 10 years from date of Final Completion for siliconized polyester.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Panel Materials
1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
   b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
   c. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   d. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      1) 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      2) 3-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      3) 4-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. 3-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      7) Siliconized-Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
      8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mil (0.97 mm) for topcoat.
   e. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

2. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
   a. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   b. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      1) 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      2) 3-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      3) 4-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. 3-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      7) Siliconized-Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
      8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mil (0.97 mm) for topcoat.
   c. Exposed Anodized Finish:
      1) Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
      2) Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
   d. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
3. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper.
   a. Exposed Finish: Apply the following finish, as specified or indicated on Drawings.
      1) Natural finish.
      2) Brushed Satin: CDA M32-06x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
         a) Clear, Organic Coating: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
      3) Mirror Polished: CDA M22-06x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
         a) Clear, Organic Coating: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products, applied by air spray in two coats per

manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).

4) Pre-patinated: ASTM B 882. Copper sheets artificially aged by chemical reaction to convert surface to inorganic crystalline structure with color range and durability of naturally-formed patina.

4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**, fully annealed.
   a. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
   b. Polished Finish: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
      1) Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
      2) When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
      3) Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
   c. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
5. Panel Sealants:
   a. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
   b. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.
   c. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

B. Field-Installed Thermal Insulation
1. Unfaced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type II, compressive strength of 35 psi (241 kPa), with maximum flame-spread index of 75 and smoke-developed index of 450.
2. Faced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I (foil facing), Class 1 or 2 **OR** Type II (asphalt felt or glass-fiber mat facing), Class 2 or 3, Grade 3, **as directed**, with maximum flame-spread index of 75 and smoke-developed index of 450, based on tests performed on unfaced core.
3. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.60-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m), with maximum flame-spread index of 75 and smoke-developed index of 450.
4. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.9 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, with maximum flame-spread index of 75 and smoke-developed index of 450.
5. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50, and with a nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m).
6. Mineral-Fiber-Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, type indicated below; consisting of fibers manufactured from glass **OR** slag or rock wool, **as directed**.
   a. Type I (blankets without membrane covering), passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
   b. Type II (blankets with nonreflective membrane covering), Category 1 (membrane is a vapor retarder), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less).
   c. Type III (blankets with reflective membrane covering), Category 1 (membrane is a vapor retarder), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less).
7. Metal Building Insulation: ASTM C 991, Type I; or NAIMA 202 **OR** ASTM C 991, Type II, **as directed**, glass-fiber-blanket insulation; 0.5-lb/cu. ft. (8-kg/cu. m) density; 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, continuous, vapor-tight edge tabs; and with a flame-spread index of 25 or less.
   a. Vapor-Retarder Facing: ASTM C 1136, with permeance not greater than 0.02 perm (1.15 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) when tested according to ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method:
      1) Composition: Polypropylene faced, scrim reinforced, and kraft-paper backing **OR** Foil faced, scrim reinforced, and kraft-paper backing with vapor-retarder coating **OR** Polypropylene faced, scrim reinforced, and foil backing **OR** Vinyl faced, scrim reinforced, and foil backing **OR** Vinyl faced, scrim reinforced, and polyester backing, **as directed**.

b. Insulation Retainer Strips: 0.019-inch- (0.48-mm-) thick, formed galvanized steel or PVC retainer clips colored to match insulation facing.

C. Miscellaneous Metal Framing
1. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 (Z120) hot-dip galvanized **OR** ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) hot-dip galvanized, **as directed**, or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
2. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections, 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) nominal thickness.
3. Zee Clips: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness.
4. Base or Sill Angles **OR** Channels, **as directed**: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness.
5. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 7/8 inch (22 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
6. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flange.
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) nominal thickness.
   d. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.22-mm-) diameter wire.
7. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm), **as directed**.
8. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

E. Exposed-Fastener, Lap-Seam Metal Wall Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by lapping side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching panels to supports using exposed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
2. Corrugated-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with alternating curved ribs spaced at 2.67 inches (68 mm) o.c. across width of panel.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm)**, as directed,** thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Panel Coverage: 21.3 inches (541 mm) **OR** 29.3 inches (744 mm) **OR** 34.6 inches (881 mm) **OR** 37.3 inches (947 mm) **OR** 42.6 inches (1084 mm) **OR** 45.3 inches (1151 mm), **as directed**.

e. Panel Height: 0.5 inch (13 mm) **OR** 0.875 inch (22 mm), **as directed**.

3. Tapered-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, trapezoidal major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between major ribs.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Major-Rib Spacing: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**, o.c.

e. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**.

f. Panel Height: 0.625 inch (16 mm) **OR** 0.75 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.25 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

4. Reverse-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with recessed, trapezoidal major valleys and intermediate stiffening valleys symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between major valleys.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Major-Rib Spacing: 12 inches (305 mm) o.c.
d. Panel Coverage: 36 inches (914 mm).
e. Panel Height: 1.25 inches (32 mm).

5. Vee-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, V-shaped ribs and recesses that are approximately same size, evenly spaced across panel width, and with rib/recess sides angled at approximately 45 degrees.
a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Rib Spacing: 5.3 inches (135 mm) **OR** 7.2 inches (183 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
e. Panel Coverage: 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 40 inches (1016 mm), **as directed**.
f. Panel Height: 1.375 inches (35 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1.75 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.

6. Box-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, box-shaped ribs, evenly spaced across panel width, and with rib/recess sides angled 60 degrees or more.
a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Rib Spacing: 2.67 inches (68 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.3 inches (135 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**, o.c.

e. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 28 inches (711 mm) **OR** 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**.

f. Panel Height: 0.625 inch (16 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.

7. Deep-Box-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, box-shaped ribs, evenly spaced across panel width, and with rib/recess sides angled more than 60 degrees.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Rib Spacing: 12 inches (305 mm) o.c.

e. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm).

f. Panel Height: 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm), **as directed**.

F. Concealed-Fastener, Lap-Seam Metal Wall Panels
   1. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
   2. Flush-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
      a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
      e. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
   3. Reveal-Joint, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with narrow reveal joint between panels.
      a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
         1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE

fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.

2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).

e. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

4. Wide-Reveal-Joint, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and stepped profile between panel edges resulting in wide reveal joint between panels.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.

2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.

2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.

2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).

e. Panel Height: 1.5 inches (38 mm).

5. V-Groove-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.

2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.

2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Panel Coverage: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.

d. Panel Height: 0.625 inch (16 mm) **OR** 1.25 inches (32 mm), **as directed**.

6. Tapered-Rib-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, trapezoidal major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between major ribs.

a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm), **as directed**.

d. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

7. Curved-Rib-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, curved-side major ribs and flat pan between major ribs; with reveal joint between panels.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samplesAs selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).
   e. Panel Height: 0.875 inch (22 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
8. Creased-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and center-creased pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
   a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).
e. Panel Height: 1.5 inches (38 mm).

9. Creased-Rib-Profile, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, center-creased, trapezoidal major ribs; with reveal joint between panels.
a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm).
e. Panel Height: 0.875 inch (22 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

G. Metal Liner Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed metal liner panels designed for interior side of metal wall panel assemblies and field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for a complete installation.
2. Flush-Profile Metal Liner Panels: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**, panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.

2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
   2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Panel Coverage: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**.

e. Panel Height: 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.

f. Acoustical Performance: Where sound-absorption requirement is indicated, fabricate interior liner panels with 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) diameter holes uniformly spaced approximately 1000 holes/sq. ft. (10 750 holes/sq. m).
   1) NRC of not less than 0.65 **OR** 0.85 **OR** 1.00, **as directed**, when tested according to ASTM C 423.

H. Metal Soffit Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
2. Metal Soffit Panels: Match profile and material of metal wall panels.
   a. Finish: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   b. Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.
3. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**, panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
   a. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal wall panels.
   b. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   c. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.

1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

e. Material: Copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.55-mm thickness) **OR** 20-oz./sq. ft. weight (0.68-mm thickness), **as directed**.
1) Exterior Finish: Brushed satin (lacquered) **OR** Mirror polished, **as directed**.

f. Panel Coverage: 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 20 inches (508 mm), **as directed**.

g. Panel Height: 0.875 inch (22 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.

h. Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.

4. Reveal-Joint-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**, panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with recessed reveal joint between panels.

a. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal wall panels.

b. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

c. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

e. Panel Coverage: 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 20 inches (508 mm), **as directed**.

f. Panel Height: 0.75 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

5. V-Groove-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**, panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced **OR** flat pan, **as directed**, between panel edges; with V-groove joint between panels.
   a. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal wall panels.
   b. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   c. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   d. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.024 inch (0.65 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      1) Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**
      2) Color: Match finish and color of metal wall panels **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   e. Panel Coverage: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 14 inches (356 mm), **as directed**.
   f. Panel Height: 0.375 inch (10 mm) **OR** 0.44 inch (11 mm) **OR** 0.50 inch (13 mm) **OR** 0.625 inch (16 mm), **as directed**.

I. Accessories
   1. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels, unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal wall panels.
      b. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
      c. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
   2. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.018-inch (0.46-mm) minimum thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.

J. Fabrication
1. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
2. Fabricate metal wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
3. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
4. Fabricate metal wall panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
5. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
   a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
   b. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
   c. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
   d. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
   e. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
   f. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
      1) Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

K. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal wall panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
   a. Soffit Framing: Wire-tie or clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

B. Thermal Insulation Installation
1. Board Insulation: Extend insulation in thickness indicated to cover entire wall. Comply with installation requirements in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation".

a. Erect insulation horizontally and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. Attach furring members to substrate with screws spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
b. Retain insulation in place by metal clips and straps or integral pockets within panels, spaced at intervals according to insulation manufacturer's instructions. Maintain cavity width between insulation and metal liner panel of dimension indicated.

2. Blanket Insulation: Install insulation concurrently with metal wall panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire wall, according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Set vapor-retarder-faced insulation with vapor-retarder facing building exterior **OR** building interior **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces, except for firestopping.
   b. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
   c. Install insulation straight and true in one-piece lengths. Comply with the following installation method:
      1) Over-Framing Installation: Extend insulation over and perpendicular to top flange of framing members.
   d. Retainer Strips: Install retainer strips at each longitudinal insulation joint, straight and taut, nesting with framing to hold insulation in place.

C. Metal Wall Panel Installation
1. General: Install metal wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
   a. Commence metal wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. (27.8 sq. m.) in presence of factory-authorized representative.
   b. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
   c. Flash and seal metal wall panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
   d. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
   e. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
   f. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
   g. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
   h. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
   i. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
   j. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
2. Fasteners:
   a. Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   b. Aluminum Wall Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   c. Copper Wall Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel or hardware-bronze fasteners.
   d. Stainless-Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
3. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
4. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.

a. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

5. Lap-Seam Metal Wall Panels: Fasten metal wall panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
   a. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
   b. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal wall panels.
   c. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
   d. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
   e. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of metal wall panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
   f. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to weather-side surface of fastenings on end laps; on side laps of nesting-type panels; on side laps of corrugated nesting-type, ribbed, or fluted panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels weathertight.
   g. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch (152-mm) end lap, sealed with butyl-rubber sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
6. Zee Clips: Provide Zee clips of size indicated or, if not indicated, as required to act as standoff from subgirts for thickness of insulation indicated. Attach to subgirts with fasteners.
7. Metal Liner Panels: Install panels on exterior side of girts with girts exposed to the interior **OR** interior side of girts with flush appearance on the inside **OR** girts as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
8. Fire-Rated Metal Wall Panel Assemblies: Install metal liner panels on exterior side of girts, fastening through faces of panels, with girts exposed to the interior. Install subgirts horizontally, fastened to legs of metal liner panels. Install substrate board as indicated in Division 06 Section "Sheathing", in number of layers required for fire rating, over subgirts, attached with board fasteners. Install second set of subgirts horizontally, fastened through substrate board into first set of subgirts. Install exterior metal wall panels, fastened to second set of subgirts.
   a. Comply with UL **OR** FMG, **as directed**, requirements for fire-rated construction.

D. Metal Soffit Panel Installation
1. In addition to complying with requirements of "Metal Wall Panel Installation, General" Article, install metal soffit panels to comply with the requirements of this article.
2. Metal Soffit Panels: Provide metal soffit panels full width of soffits. Install panels perpendicular to support framing.
   a. Flash and seal panels with weather closures where metal soffit panels meet walls and at perimeter of all openings.

E. Accessory Installation
1. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
   a. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
2. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
   a. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form

hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.

b. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (605 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

F. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports, **as directed by the Owner**.
2. Water Penetration: Test areas of installed system indicated on Drawings for compliance with system performance requirements according to ASTM E 1105 at minimum differential pressure of 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure as defined by SEI/ASCE 7, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
3. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-foot- (23-m-) by-2-story minimum area of metal wall panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by the Owner.
4. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect and test completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
5. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
6. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

G. Cleaning And Protection
1. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
2. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
3. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 46 16 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 46 16 00	07 41 13 00	Metal Roof Panels
07 46 16 00	07 42 93 00	Siding
07 46 19 00	07 41 13 00	Metal Roof Panels
07 46 19 00	07 46 16 00	Metal Plate Wall Panels
07 46 19 00	07 42 93 00	Siding
07 46 19 00	07 46 16 00a	Metal Wall Panels
07 46 23 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
07 46 23 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
07 46 23 00	06 16 23 00	Sheathing
07 46 29 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
07 46 29 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
07 46 29 00	06 16 23 00	Sheathing
07 46 33 00	07 42 93 00	Siding

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 46 46 00 - EXTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior standing and running trim.
2. Exterior frames and jambs.
3. Exterior shutters.
4. Exterior [**stairs**] [**and**] [**railings**].
5. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing exterior architectural woodwork items that are not concealed within other construction.
6. Shop priming of exterior architectural woodwork.
7. Shop finishing of exterior architectural woodwork.

B. Related Requirements:

1. [**Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry"**] for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing exterior architectural woodwork that are concealed within other construction before exterior architectural woodwork installation.
2. Section 062013 "Exterior Finish Carpentry" for exterior carpentry exposed to view that is not specified in this Section.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections, to ensure that exterior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at site location as directed by the Owner .

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Wood-Preservative Treatment:

a. Include data and warranty information from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
b. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
c. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material and manufacturer's written warranty.

2. Fire-Retardant Treatment: Include data and warranty information from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

3. Waterborne Treatments: For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. as directed by the Owner .

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Show [**large-scale**] [**full-size**] details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including blocking and reinforcement concealed by construction and specified in other Sections.
4. Apply [**AWI Quality Certification**] [**WI Certified Compliance**] Program label to Shop Drawings.

D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and finish specified.

1. Size:

a. Panel Products: 12 inches by 12 inches (300 mm by 300 mm).
b. Lumber Products: Not less than [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long**] [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long**], for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.

E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Size:

a. Panel Products: 12 inches by 12 inches (300 mm by 300 mm).
b. Lumber Products: Not less than [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long**] [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long**], for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.

F. Samples for Verification: For the following:

1. Lumber for Exterior Wood-Stain Finish: Not less than 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long, for each species, with one-half of exposed surface finished.
2. Lumber for Transparent Finish: Not less than [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long**] [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long**], for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
3. Lumber and Panel Products with Shop-Applied Opaque Finish: 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long for lumber and [**8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm)**] [**12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm)**] for panels, for each finish system and color.

a. Finish [**entire**] [**one-half of**] exposed surface.

4. Shutter Hardware: Full-size samples for each type and size of hardware in each finish, and color required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For [**architectural woodwork manufacturer**] [**and**] [**Installer**].

B. Evaluation Reports: For [**preservative-treated**] [**and**] [**fire-retardant-treated**] wood materials, from ICC-ES.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: [**AWI Quality Certification Program**] [**WI Certified Compliance Program**] certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in [**AWI's Quality Certification Program**] [**WI's Certified Compliance Program**].

B. Installer Qualifications: [**Fabricator of products**] [**Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program**] [**Licensed participant in WI's Certified Compliance Program**].

C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockups of [**typical exterior architectural woodwork as shown on Drawings**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 2.

B. Store woodwork in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1. Handle and store fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation of exterior architectural woodwork only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit work to be performed and at least one coat of specified finish to be applied without exposure to rain, snow, or dampness.

B. Field Measurements: Where exterior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

C. Established Dimensions: Where exterior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where woodwork is to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, as directed by the Owner .

2.2 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK, GENERAL

A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of exterior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. Provide [**labels**] [**and**] [**certificates**] from [**AWI**] [**WI**] certification program indicating that woodwork[**and installation**] complies with requirements of grades specified.

   a. This project has been registered with AWI as AWI Quality Certification Program Number or as directed by the Owner .
   b. Contractor is to register the Work under this Section with the AWI Quality Certification Program at www.awiqcp.org or by calling 800-345-0991.

2. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the Architectural Woodwork Standards. Comply with Contract Documents and the Architectural Woodwork Standards.

2.3 EXTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.

C. Wood Species: [**All-heart redwood**] [**Western red cedar**] [**Ponderosa pine or sugar pine**] [**Eastern white pine**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**9 to 15**] [**10 to 15**] [**7 to 12**] percent.

2.4 EXTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members, and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.

C. Wood Species: [**All-heart redwood**] [**Western red cedar**] [**Ponderosa pine or sugar pine**] [**Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine**] [**Any closed-grain hardwood**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**9 to 15**] [**10 to 15**] [**7 to 12**] percent.

2.5 EXTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Wood Species: [**Teak**] [**All-heart redwood**] [**Western red cedar**] [**White oak**] [**Ponderosa pine or sugar pine**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**9 to 15**] [**10 to 15**] [**7 to 12**] percent.

2.6 EXTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Wood Species: [**All-heart redwood**] [**Western red cedar**] [**Ponderosa pine**] [**Ponderosa pine or sugar pine**] [**Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine**] [**Any closed-grain hardwood**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**9 to 15**] [**10 to 15**] [**7 to 12**] percent.

2.7 EXTERIOR SHUTTERS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Wood Species: [**Teak**] [**African mahogany**] [**All-heart redwood**] [**Ponderosa pine or sugar pine**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**9 to 15**] [**10 to 15**] [**7 to 12**] percent.

2.8 EXTERIOR SHUTTERS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Wood Species: [**All-heart redwood**] [**Ponderosa pine**] [**Ponderosa pine or sugar pine**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**9 to 15**] [**10 to 15**] [**7 to 12**] percent.

2.9 EXTERIOR STAIRS AND RAILINGS

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Hand select wood for freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.

C. Stair Treads:

1. [**1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)**] [**1-inch- (25-mm-)**] thick, kiln-dried[**, pressure-preservative-treated**] stepping with half-round or rounded edge nosing, of any of the following:

   a. Douglas fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr VG (Vertical Grain) stepping.
   b. Hem-fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr VG (Vertical Grain) stepping.
   c. Southern pine, SPIB B & B stepping.

2. [**1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)**] [**1 inch- (25 mm-)**] actual thickness, kiln-dried with half-round or rounded edge nosing.

   a. Redwood, RIS [**Deck Heart or Construction Heart**] [**Deck Common or Construction Common**].
   b. Redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
   c. Western red cedar, WWPA [**Patio 1**] [**Patio 2**].
   d. Western red cedar, WCLIB [**Select Dex**] [**Commercial Dex**].
   e. Western red cedar (North), NLGAS [**Select Patio**] [**Commercial Patio**].

3. [**1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)**] [**1-inch- (25-mm-)**] [**3/4-inch- (19-mm-)**] actual thickness radius-edged S4S boards, with one face free of planer skip, machine burn, and torn or chipped grain.

   a. Species: [**Ipe**] [**Teak**] [**Cumaru**] [**Garapa**] [**Goncalo alves**] or as directed by the Owner .
   b. Grade Characteristics:

      1) Clear[**one face; small pin knots and worm holes allowed on back face**].
      2) Sound; small pin knots, worm holes, and fixed knots allowed.
      3) All heart[**one face**].
      4) Straight grained and parallel cut.
      5) Free of heart centers.
      6) No decay, incipient decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shakes, splits, or wane.
      7) No discoloration.

D. Stair Risers:

1. 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, kiln-dried[**, pressure-preservative-treated**] finish boards, of any of the following:

   a. Douglas fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr or Superior finish.
   b. Hem-fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr or Superior finish.
   c. Southern pine, SPIB B & B.

2. 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) actual thickness, kiln-dried with half-round or rounded edge nosing.

    a. Redwood, RIS [**Deck Heart or Construction Heart**] [**Deck Common or Construction Common**].
    b. Redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
    c. Western red cedar, WWPA [**Patio 1**] [**Patio 2**].
    d. Western red cedar, WCLIB [**Select Dex**] [**Commercial Dex**].
    e. Western red cedar (North), NLGAS [**Select Patio**] [**Commercial Patio**].

3. 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) actual thickness radius-edged S4S boards, with one face free of planer skip, machine burn, and torn or chipped grain.

    a. Species: [**Ipe**] [**Teak**] [**Cumaru**] [**Garapa**] [**Goncalo alves**] or as directed by the Owner .
    b. Grade Characteristics:

        1) Clear[**one face; small pin knots and worm holes allowed on back face**].
        2) Sound; small pin knots, worm holes, and fixed knots allowed.
        3) All heart[**one face**].
        4) Straight grained and parallel cut.
        5) Free of heart centers.
        6) No decay, incipient decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shakes, splits, or wane.
        7) No discoloration.

E. Railing Members:

1. Clear, kiln-dried, solid, [**yellow poplar**] [**pressure-preservative-treated Douglas fir**] [**pressure-preservative-treated southern pine**]; railing stock of pattern indicated on Drawings.
2. [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] [**No. 2**] [**Construction or No. 2**] grade and[**any of**] the following species:

    a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    d. Redwood; RIS.
    e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

3. Redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
4. [**Any of the following species and grades:**]

    a. Douglas fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr finish or C Select.
    b. Hem-fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr finish or C Select.
    c. Redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
    d. Southern pine, SPIM B & B finish.

5. Radius-edged [**Ipe**] [**Teak**] S4S boards, [**same grade as stair treads**] [**clear**] [**clear all heart**] [**, straight grained and parallel cut**].

F. Balusters:

1. 1-1/16-inch- (27-mm-) square, clear, kiln-dried, solid, [**yellow poplar**] [**pressure-preservative-treated Douglas fir**] [**pressure-preservative-treated southern pine**].
2. 1-1/16-inch- (27-mm-) square, [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] [**No. 2**] [**Construction or No. 2**] grade, and[**any of**] the following species:

    a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
d. Redwood; RIS.
e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

3. 1-1/16-inch- (27-mm-) square, redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
4. 1-1/16-inch- (27-mm-) square,[**and any of the following species and grades:**]

a. Douglas fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr finish or C Select.
b. Hem-fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr finish or C Select.
c. Redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
d. Southern pine, SPIM B & B finish.

5. 1-1/16-inch- (27-mm-) square, radius-edged [**Ipe**] [**Teak**] S4S boards, [**same grade as stair treads**] [**clear**] [**clear all heart**] [**, straight grained and parallel cut**].

G. Newel Posts:

1. 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) square, clear, kiln-dried, [**yellow poplar**] [**pressure-preservative-treated Douglas fir**] [**pressure-preservative-treated southern pine**], turned newel posts of pattern and size indicated on Drawings.
2. 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) square, [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] [**No. 2**] [**Construction or No. 2**] grade, and[**any of**] the following species:

a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
d. Redwood; RIS.
e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

3. 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) square, redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
4. 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) square,[**and any of the following species and grades:**]

a. Douglas fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr finish or C Select.
b. Hem-fir, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA C & Btr finish or C Select.
c. Redwood, RIS [**Heart Clear**] [**Heart B or Select Heart**].
d. Southern pine, SPIM B & B finish.

5. 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) square, radius-edged [**Ipe**] [**Teak**] S4S boards, [**same grade as stair treads**] [**clear**] [**clear all heart**] [**, straight grained and parallel cut**].

2.10 WOOD MATERIALS

A. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.

B. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, exterior[**, medium-density overlay**].

2.11 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED-WOOD MATERIALS

A. Preservative-Treated-Wood Materials: Provide with water-repellent preservative treatment complying with AWPA N1 (dip, spray, flood, or vacuum-pressure treatment).

1. Preservative Chemicals: 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate (IPBC)[**, combined with a compatible EPA-registered insecticide**].
2. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants in solution to distinguish treated material from untreated material.

B. Extent of Preservative-Treated Wood Materials: Treat wood materials [**unless otherwise indicated on Drawings**] [**except items indicated to be fire-retardant treated**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Items fabricated from the following wood species need not be treated:

a. [**Redwood**] [**All-heart redwood**].
b. [**Western red cedar**] [**All-heart western red cedar**].
c. White oak.
d. African mahogany.
e. Honduras mahogany.
f. Ipe.
g. Dark red meranti.
h. Teak.

2.12 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD MATERIALS

A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood Materials, General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products in accordance with test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

1. Use treated materials that comply with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards for the grade specified. Do not use materials that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency in the form of removable paper label or imprint on surfaces that will be concealed from view after installation.

B. Exterior Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 after being subjected to accelerated weathering in accordance with ASTM D2898, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

1. Kiln-dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent, respectively.
2. For items indicated to receive a stained, transparent, or natural finish, use organic resin chemical formulation.
3. Mill lumber after treatment within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking shop certified by testing and inspecting agency.
4. Mill lumber before treatment and implement procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.

C. Extent of Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood Materials:

1. Exterior architectural woodwork located more than 40 feet (12.192 m) above grade.
2. Exterior architectural woodwork in locations with a fire-separation distance of 5 feet (1.524 m) or less.

3. [**Where indicated on Drawings**] or as directed by the Owner .

2.13 SHUTTER HARDWARE

A. Offset Strap Hinges: For inset shutters and with tapered strap. Shutters can lift off pintles after installation. Provide top and bottom hinges for each shutter and matching wood screws for installation.

1. Offset: [**1/2 inch (13 mm)**] [**1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**] [**2-1/4 inches (57 mm)**] [**3-1/4 inches (83 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Strap Length: [**10 inches (254 mm)**] [**12 inches (300 mm)**] [**14 inches (356 mm)**] [**16 inches (406 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Strap Width: [**1-3/4 inches (45 mm)**] at widest point or as directed by the Owner .
4. Pintle Plate: [**3-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inches (89 by 38 by 3 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
5. Pintle Diameter: [**3/8 inch (10 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
6. Material and Finish: [**Zinc-chromate-plated steel with black finish**] or as directed by the Owner .

B. New York-Style Hinges: Offset type for full-inset shutters. Provide top and bottom hinges for each shutter and matching wood screws for installation.

1. Overall Hinge Dimensions: [**4-1/4 by 5 inches (108 by 127 mm)**] [**6 by 6-3/4 inches (152 by 172 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Offset: [**1-1/16 inches (27 mm)**] [**1-1/4 inches (32 mm)**] [**2-1/8 inches (54 mm)**] [**2-1/4 inches (57 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Pintle Plate: [**2 by 1-1/8 inches (51 by 29 mm)**] [**3-1/8 by 1-1/8 inches (79 by 29 mm)**] [**3-5/8 by 1-3/16 inches (92 by 30 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. Material and Finish: [**Cast iron with rust-inhibiting primer and black matte powder-coated polyurethane finish**] [**Galvanized steel**] [**Solid bronze with wax finish**] or as directed by the Owner .

C. L-Type Hinges: Offset type for inset shutters; with tapered long-leg of L-shape oriented horizontally. Shutters can lift off pintles after installation. Provide top and bottom hinges[**and matching middle, straight-plate hinge**] for each shutter and matching wood screws for installation.

1. L-Shape Plate: [**5-inch- (127-mm-) long vertical leg and 6-inch- (152-mm-) long horizontal leg**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Maximum Leg Width: [**1-3/8 inches (35 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Offset: [**1/2 inch (13 mm)**] [**1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**] [**2-1/4 inches (57 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. Pintle Plate: [**3-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch (89 by 38 by 3 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
5. Pintle Diameter: [**3/8 inch (10 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
6. Material and Finish: [**Zinc-chromate-plated steel with wrought-iron black finish**] or as directed by the Owner .

D. Connecticut-Style Hinges: Strap-type, loose-joint hinges with threaded pintle. Provide top and bottom hinges[**and matching middle hinge**] for each shutter and matching wood screws for installation.

1. Type: [**No offset**] [**1-1/4-inch (32-mm) offset**] [**2-3/16-inch (56-mm) offset**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Strap Dimensions: [**1 by 4-1/4 inches (25 by 108 mm)**] [**1 by 6-1/2 inches (25 by 165 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Pintle: [**2-3/8 inches (60 mm) long with 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) diameter thread**] [**2-3/4 inches (70 mm) long with 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter thread**] [**4-1/2 inches (114 mm) long with 3/8-inch-**

(10-mm-) diameter thread] [**4-1/2 inches (114 mm) long with 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) diameter thread**] or as directed by the Owner .

4. Material and Finish: [**Galvanized steel**] [**Stainless steel with black finish**] or as directed by the Owner .

E. Bermuda-Style Hinges: For top-hung shutters. Provide [**two**] hinges or as directed by the Owner and one matching, shutter stay per shutter. Provide matching wood screws for installation.

1. Overall Hinge Dimensions: [**6-3/16 by 3-1/2 inches (157 by 89 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Hinge Leg Width: Approximately [**1-1/16 inches (27 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Hinge Material Thickness: Approximately [**1/4 inch (6 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. Shutter Stay: [**24-inch- (610-mm-)**] long or as directed by the Owner .
5. Material and Finish: [**Cast iron and coated with a black textured powder coat**] or as directed by the Owner .

F. Shutter Dogs: For holding shutters in open position.

1. Type: [**Traditional scroll design**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Overall Dimensions: [**6-3/4 by 2-3/8 inches (172 by 60 mm)**] [**8-1/8 by 3-1/4 inches (206 by 83 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Material and Finish: [**Steel with rough black, rust-inhibiting finish**] or as directed by the Owner .

2.14 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into wood substrate.

1. Use [**stainless steel**] [**fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M**] unless otherwise indicated.
2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless steel fasteners.
3. For redwood, use [**brass/bronze**] [**stainless steel**] [**hot-dip galvanized-steel**] fasteners.

B. Nails: ASTM F1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: ICC-ES AC70.

D. Wood Screws and Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1, ASME B18.6.1, or ICC-ES AC233.

E. Carbon-Steel Bolts: ASTM A307 with ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.

F. Stainless Steel Bolts: ASTM F593, Alloy Group 1 or 2; with ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F836M, Grade A1 or Grade A4) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

G. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless steel, [**chemical**] [**or**] [**torque-controlled expansion**] anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Stainless steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F836M, Grade A1 or Grade A4).

2.15 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Blocking, Shims, and Nailers: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

1. Wood-Preservative Treatment: By pressure process, AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b.

a. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
b. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction[**and containing no arsenic or chromium**].
c. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review.

2. Fire-Retardant Treatment: Complying with requirements; provide [**where indicated on Drawings**] or as directed by the Owner .

2.16 FABRICATION

A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.

B. Fabricate exterior architectural woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.

1. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:

a. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
b. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

C. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site.

1. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.
2. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times exterior architectural woodwork fabrication will be complete.
4. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled.

a. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting.
b. Verify that parts fit as intended, and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on approved Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

2.17 SHOP PRIMING

A. Preparations for Finishing: Comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing exterior architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

B. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork.[**Apply two coats to surfaces installed in contact with concrete or masonry and to end-grain surfaces.**]

C. Exterior Architectural Woodwork for Opaque Finish: Shop prime all surfaces with one coat of wood primer as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

D. Exterior Architectural Woodwork for Transparent Finish:

1. Shop seal surfaces to be concealed
2. Shop seal exposed surfaces with stain (if specified), other required pretreatments, and first coat of finish as specified in Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing."

2.18 SHOP FINISHING

A. Finish exterior architectural woodwork [**with transparent finish**] [**indicated on Drawings**] at fabrication shop. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing exterior architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of exterior architectural woodwork. Apply two coats to end-grain surfaces.

C. Transparent Finish: Comply with Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing."

D. Opaque Finish: Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition exterior architectural woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions at Project site.

B. Before installing exterior architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion, and complete work as required, including removing packing and backpriming concealed surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Grade: Install exterior architectural woodwork to comply with same grade as item to be installed.

B. Assemble exterior architectural woodwork, and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed during shop fabrication.

C. Install exterior architectural woodwork level, plumb, true in line, and without distortion.

1. Shim as required with concealed shims.
2. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

D. Standing and Running Trim:

1. Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible.
2. Do not use pieces less than [**36 inches (900 mm)**] [**60 inches (1500 mm)**] [**96 inches (2400 mm)**] long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary.
3. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.

E. Scribe and cut exterior architectural woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.

F. Preservative-Treated Wood Materials: Where field cut or drilled, treat cut ends and drilled holes in accordance with AWPA M4.

G. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood Materials: Install fire-retardant-treated materials to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Anchor exterior architectural woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.

1. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
2. Use fine finishing nails[**or finishing screws**] for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with exterior architectural woodwork.
3. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced and with adjacent rows staggered.
4. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.

I. Stair and Railing Installation:

1. Treads and Risers:

a. Install stair tread with crown side up (bark side down).
b. Secure treads and risers by gluing and nailing to carriages.

1) Extend treads over carriages[**and finish with bullnose edge**].

c. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler.

2. Balusters:

a. Fit balusters to treads, glue, and nail in place.
b. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
c. Let into railings and glue in place.

3. Newel Posts: Secure newel posts to stringers and risers with [**through bolts**] [**lag screws**] [**countersunk-head wood screws and glue**].
4. Railings:

a. Secure wall rails with metal brackets.
b. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with glue and countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts.

5. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced and with adjacent rows staggered.
6. Install stairs with no more than 3/16-inch (4.7-mm) variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than 3/8-inch (10-mm) variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.

J. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of exterior architectural woodwork.

1. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
2. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.

K. Field Finishing: See [**Section 099113 "Exterior Painting"**] [**and**] [**Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing"**] for final finishing of installed exterior architectural woodwork.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspections: Provide inspection of installed Work through [**AWI's Quality Certification Program**] [**WI's Certified Compliance Program**] certifying that woodwork, including installation, complies with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards for the specified grade.

1. Inspection entity is to prepare and submit report of inspection.

3.4 REPAIR

A. Repair damaged and defective exterior architectural woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects[**and to result in exterior architectural woodwork being in compliance with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards for the specified grade**].

B. Where not possible to repair, replace defective woodwork.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean exterior architectural woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 07 46 46 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 46 46 00a - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior standing and running trim.
2. Closet and utility shelving.
3. Interior frames and jambs.
4. Interior stairs and railings.
5. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing interior architectural woodwork items that are not concealed within other construction.
6. Shop priming of interior architectural woodwork.
7. Shop finishing of interior architectural woodwork.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing interior architectural woodwork that are concealed within other construction before interior architectural woodwork installation.
2. Section 062023 "Interior Finish Carpentry" for interior carpentry exposed to view that is not specified in this Section.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections, to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at site location as directed by the Owner .

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Anchors.
2. Adhesives.
3. Shop finishing materials.
4. Wood-Preservative Treatment:

a. Include data and warranty information from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
b. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
c. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material and manufacturer's written warranty.

5. Fire-Retardant Treatment: Include data and warranty information from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
6. Waterborne Treatments: For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. as directed by the Owner.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include the following:

   a. Dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections.
   b. Attachment details.

2. Show [**large-scale**] [**full-size**] details.
3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including blocking and reinforcement concealed by construction and specified in other Sections.
4. Apply [**AWI Quality Certification**] [**WI Certified Compliance**] Program label to Shop Drawings.

D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each shop-applied color and finish specified.

1. Size:

   a. Panel Products: 12 inches by 12 inches (300 mm by 300 mm).
   b. Lumber Products: Not less than [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long**] [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long**], for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.

E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of shop-applied exposed finish.

1. Size:

   a. Panel Products: 12 inches by 12 inches (300 mm by 300 mm).
   b. Lumber Products: Not less than [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long**] [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long**], for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.

F. Samples for Verification: For the following:

1. Lumber for Transparent Finish: Not less than [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long**] [**5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long**], for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
2. Veneer Leaves: Representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished interior architectural woodwork.
3. Lumber and Panel Products with Shop-Applied Opaque Finish: 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long for lumber and [**8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm)**] [**12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm)**] for panels, for each finish system and color.

   a. Finish [**entire**] [**one-half of**] exposed surface.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For [**architectural woodwork manufacturer**] [**and**] [**Installer**].

B. Product Certificates: For the following:

1. Composite wood products.
2. Adhesives.

C. Evaluation Reports: For [**preservative-treated**] [**and**] [**fire-retardant-treated**] wood materials, from ICC-ES.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTLAS

A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: [**AWI Quality Certification Program**] [**WI Certified Compliance Program**] certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in [**AWI's Quality Certification Program**] [**WI's Certified Compliance Program**].
2. Installer Qualifications: [**Manufacturer of products**] [**and**] [**Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program**] [**Licensed participant in WI's Certified Compliance Program**].

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockups of [**typical interior architectural woodwork as shown on Drawings**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 2.

B. Do not deliver interior architectural woodwork until painting and similar finish operations that might damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas.

C. Store woodwork in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1. Handle and store fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install interior architectural woodwork until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install interior architectural woodwork until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between [**25 and 55**] [**43 and 70**] [**20 and 50**] percent or as directed by the Owner during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Field Measurements: Where interior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

D. Established Dimensions: Where interior architectural woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where woodwork is to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Frames: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.

2.2 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, as directed by the Owner .

2.3 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK, GENERAL

A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1. Provide [**labels**] [**and**] [**certificates**] from [**AWI**] [**WI**] certification program indicating that woodwork[**and installation**] complies with requirements of grades specified.

    a. This project has been registered with AWI as AWI Quality Certification Program Number as directed by the Owner .

2. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the Architectural Woodwork Standards. Comply with Contract Documents and Architectural Woodwork Standards.

2.4 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Hardwood Lumber:

1. Wood Species and Cut:[**Match species and cut indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building unless otherwise indicated.**]
2. Species: [**Red oak**] [**White oak**] [**White ash**] [**Hickory**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Cut: [**Plain sliced/plain sawn**] [**Rift cut/rift sawn**] [**Quarter cut/quarter sawn**].
4. Wood Moisture Content: [**5 to 10**] [**8 to 13**] [**4 to 9**] percent.
5. Provide split species on trim that faces areas with different wood species, matching each face of woodwork to species and cut of finish wood surfaces in areas finished.
6. For trim items[**other than base**] wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

    a. For veneered base, use hardwood lumber core, glued for width.

7. For base wider than available lumber, glue for width. Do not use veneered construction.
8. For rails thicker than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for thickness.

C. Softwood Lumber:

1. Wood Species and Cut:[**Match species and cut indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building unless otherwise indicated.**]
2. Species: [**Eastern white pine**] [**Sugar pine**] [**Western white pine**] [**Douglas fir**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Cut: [**Plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. Wood Moisture Content: [**5 to 10**] [**8 to 13**] [**4 to 9**] percent.
5. Provide split species on trim that faces areas with different wood species, matching each face of woodwork to species and cut of finish wood surfaces in areas finished.
6. For trim items[**other than base**] wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

    a. For veneered base, use softwood lumber core, glued for width.

7. For base wider than available lumber, glue for width. Do not use veneered construction.
8. For rails thicker than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for thickness.
9. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.

2.5 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

1. Wood Species: [**Any closed-grain hardwood**] [**Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**5 to 10**] [**8 to 13**] [**4 to 9**] percent.

2.6 CLOSET AND UTILITY SHELVING

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Shelf Material: 3/4-inch (19-mm) [**solid lumber**] [**veneer-faced panel product with solid-lumber edge**] [**veneer-faced panel product with veneer edge banding**] [**thermoset decorative panel with solid-lumber edge**] [**thermoset decorative panel with PVC T-mold edge**] [**MDF with solid-lumber edge**] [**particleboard with solid-lumber edge**] [**MDF with radiused edge**] [**particleboard with radiused and filled edge**].

C. Cleats: 3/4-inch (19-mm) [**solid lumber**] [**thermoset decorative panel**] [**panel product**].

D. Wood Species: [**Red oak**] [**Match species indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building unless otherwise indicated**] [**Match species indicated for door to closet where shelving is located**] [**Any closed-grain hardwood**] [**Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine**] or as directed by the Owner .

E. Wood Closet Rods: 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) diameter, [**red oak**] [**hardwood**] [**Douglas fir or southern pine**] or as directed by the Owner .

F. Metal Closet Rods: 1-5/16-inch- (33-mm-) diameter, [**aluminum**] [**chrome-plated-steel**] [**color-coated-steel**] [**stainless steel**] tubes complying with BHMA A156.16, L03131.

G. Wood Rod Flanges: Clear, kiln-dried, [**red oak**] [**hardwood**] [**Douglas fir or southern pine**] [**eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine**] or turnings as directed by the Owner .

H. Metal Rod Flanges: [**Aluminum**] [**Chrome-plated steel**] [**Stainless steel**].

I. Wood Finish: [**Transparent**] [**Opaque**] [**As indicated on Drawings or in schedules**] or as directed by the Owner .

2.7 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Wood Species and Cut:[**Match species and cut indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building unless otherwise indicated.**]

1. Species: [**Red oak**] [**White oak**] [**White ash**] [**Hickory**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Cut: [**Plain sliced/plain sawn**] [**Rift cut/rift sawn**] [**Quarter cut/quarter sawn**].
3. Wood Moisture Content: [**5 to 10**] [**8 to 13**] [**4 to 9**] percent.
4. Provide split species on frames and jambs that face areas with different wood species, matching each face of woodwork to species and cut of finish wood surfaces in areas finished.

C. For frames or jambs wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.

D. Fire-Rated Interior Frames and Jambs: Products fabricated from fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant MDF with veneered exposed surfaces and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with NFPA 252.

1. Fire Rating: 20 minutes.

2.8 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Wood Species: [**Any closed-grain hardwood**] [**Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**5 to 10**] [**8 to 13**] [**4 to 9**] percent.

C. Fire-Rated Interior Frames and Jambs: Products fabricated from fire-retardant particleboard with veneered exposed surfaces or fire-retardant MDF and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with NFPA 252.

1. Fire Rating: 20 minutes.

2.9 INTERIOR WOOD STAIRS AND RAILINGS

A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**].

B. Wood for Transparent Finish:

1. Species and cut:

a. Stringers: [**Red oak, plain sawn**] [**Red oak, quarter sawn**] [**Hard maple, plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .
b. Risers: [**Red oak, plain sawn**] [**Red oak, quarter sawn**] [**Hard maple, plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .
c. Treads: [**Red oak, plain sawn**] [**Red oak, quarter sawn**] [**Hard maple, plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .
d. Railings: [**Red oak, plain sawn**] [**Red oak, quarter sawn**] [**Hard maple, plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .
e. Balusters: [**Red oak, plain sawn**] [**Red oak, quarter sawn**] [**Hard maple, plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .
f. Newels: [**Red oak, plain sawn**] [**Red oak, quarter sawn**] [**Hard maple, plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .
g. Moldings: [**Red oak, plain sawn**] [**Red oak, quarter sawn**] [**Hard maple, plain sawn**] or as directed by the Owner .

2. Wood Moisture Content: [**5 to 10**] [**8 to 13**] [**4 to 9**] percent.

C. Wood for Opaque Finish:

1. Species: [**Any closed-grain hardwood**] [**Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine**] [**Any closed-grain hardwood, except that eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine may be used for risers, stringers, and moldings**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Wood Moisture Content: [**5 to 10**] [**8 to 13**] [**4 to 9**] percent.

D. Rough Carriage Stairs:

1. Laminated veneer lumber, made with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D2559, and with the following allowable design values as determined in accordance with ASTM D5456:

   a. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: [**3100 psi (21.3 MPa)**] [**2900 psi (20.0 MPa)**] [**2600 psi (17.9 MPa)**] [**2250 psi (15.5 MPa)**] or as directed by the Owner for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
   b. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: [**2,000,000 psi (13 800 MPa)**] [**1,800,000 psi (12 400 MPa)**] [**1,500,000 psi (10 300 MPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .

2. [**Select Structural**] [**No. 1**] [**No. 2**] grade, kiln-dried to 15 percent maximum moisture content:

   a. Acceptable Species:

      1) Hem-fir (north).
      2) Southern pine.
      3) Douglas fir-larch.
      4) Douglas fir-larch (north).
      5) Spruce-pine-fir.
      6) Hem-fir.
      7) Douglas fir-south.
      8) Spruce-pine-fir (south).

E. Finishes for Stair Parts:

1. Treads: [**Transparent**] [**Opaque**].
2. Risers: [**Transparent**] [**Opaque**].
3. Stringers: [**Transparent**] [**Opaque**].
4. Balusters: [**Transparent**] [**Opaque**].
5. Handrails: [**Transparent**] [**Opaque**].
6. Scotia, Cove, and Other Moldings: [**Transparent**] [**Opaque**].

F. Handrail Brackets: [**Cast nickel-silver**] [**Cast aluminum**] [**Cast bronze**] [**Cast stainless steel**] with wall flange drilled [**for exposed anchor**] [**and tapped for concealed hanger bolt**] and with support arm for screwing to underside of rail. Size to provide 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance between handrail and face of wall.

G. Handrail/Bumper Rail Brackets: Pairs of extruded-aluminum channels: one for fastening to back of rail and one for fastening to face of wall, assembled in overlapping fashion and fastened together at top and bottom with self-tapping screws. Size to provide 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance between handrail and wall.

2.10 HARDWOOD SHEET MATERIALS

A. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards for each type of interior architectural woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.

1. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, [**Grade 130**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, [**Grade M-2**] [**Grade M-2-Exterior Glue**].
3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1[**, medium-density overlay**].
4. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.

2.11 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED-WOOD MATERIALS

A. Preservative-Treated-Wood Materials: Provide with water-repellent preservative treatment complying with AWPA N1 (dip, spray, flood, or vacuum-pressure treatment).

1. Preservative Chemicals: 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate (IPBC) [**, combined with a compatible EPA-registered insecticide**].
2. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants in solution to distinguish treated material from untreated material.

B. Extent of Preservative-Treated Wood Materials: Treat [**interior architectural woodwork in contact with concrete or masonry**] or as directed by the Owner .

1. Items fabricated from the following wood species need not be treated:

a. [**Redwood**] [**All-heart redwood**].
b. [**Western red cedar**] [**All-heart western red cedar**].
c. White oak.
d. African mahogany.
e. Honduras mahogany.
f. Ipe.
g. Dark red meranti.
h. Teak.

2.12 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD MATERIALS

A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood Materials: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products in accordance with test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

1. Use treated materials that comply with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards. Do not use materials that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency in the form of removable paper label or imprint on surfaces that will be concealed from view after installation.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the

test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

1. Kiln-dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent, respectively.
2. For items indicated to receive a stained, transparent, or natural finish, use organic resin chemical formulation.
3. Mill lumber after treatment within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking shop certified by testing and inspecting agency.
4. Mill lumber before treatment, and implement procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.

C. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture, to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less in accordance with ASTM E84.

1. For panels 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick and less, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-2, except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1600 psi (11 MPa); modulus of elasticity, 300,000 psi (2070 MPa); internal bond, 80 psi (550 kPa); and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 225 lbf (1100 and 1000 N), respectively.
2. For panels 13/16 to 1-1/4 inches (20 to 32 mm) thick, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-1, except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1300 psi (9 MPa); modulus of elasticity, 250,000 psi (1720 MPa); linear expansion, 0.50 percent; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 175 lbf (1100 and 780 N), respectively.

D. Fire-Retardant Fiberboard: Medium-density fiberboard (MDF) panels complying with ANSI A208.2, made from softwood fibers, synthetic resins, and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture, to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 200 or less in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.13 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Nailers: [**Softwood or hardwood lumber**] [**Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber**], kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

1. Preservative Treatment: Provide softwood lumber treated by pressure process, AWPA U1; Use Category UC3b.

   a. Provide [**where indicated**] [**where in contact with concrete or masonry**] or as directed by the Owner .
   b. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
   c. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction[**and containing no arsenic or chromium**].
   d. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review.

2. Fire-Retardant Treatment: Complying with requirements; provide [**where indicated**] or as directed by the Owner .

B. Provide self-drilling screws for metal-framing supports, as recommended by metal-framing manufacturer.

C. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage.

1. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors.
2. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

D. Installation Adhesive: Product recommended by fabricator for each substrate for secure anchorage.

2.14 FABRICATION

A. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.

B. Fabricate interior architectural woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.

1. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:

a. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
b. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

C. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site.

1. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.
2. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times interior architectural woodwork fabrication will be complete.
4. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled.

a. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting.
b. Verify that parts fit as intended, and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on approved Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

D. Stairs: Cut rough carriages to accurately fit treads and risers.

1. Glue treads to risers, and glue and nail treads and risers to carriages.
2. House [**wall**] [**and**] [**face**] stringers, and glue and wedge treads and risers.
3. Fabricate stairs with treads and risers no more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from indicated position and no more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) out of relative position for adjacent treads and risers.

2.15 SHOP PRIMING

A. Preparations for Finishing: Comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing interior architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

B. Interior Architectural Woodwork for Opaque Finish: Shop prime with one coat of wood primer as specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork.[**Apply two coats to surfaces installed in contact with concrete or masonry and to end-grain surfaces.**]

C. Interior Architectural Woodwork for Transparent Finish: Shop-seal concealed surfaces with required pretreatments and first coat of finish as specified in Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing."

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork.[**Apply two coats to surfaces installed in contact with concrete or masonry and to end-grain surfaces.**]

2.16 SHOP FINISHING

A. Finish interior architectural woodwork [**with transparent finish**] [**indicated on Drawings**] at fabrication shop. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with Architectural Woodwork Standards, Section 5 for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing interior architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.

1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of interior architectural woodwork. Apply two coats to end-grain surfaces.

C. Transparent Finish:

1. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**] [**Same as item to be finished**].
2. Finish System - 1: Lacquer, Nitrocellulose.
3. Finish System - 2: Lacquer, Pre Catalyzed.
4. Finish System - 3: Lacquer, Post Catalyzed.
5. Finish System - 4: Latex Acrylic, Water Based.
6. Finish System - 5: Varnish, Conversion.
7. Finish: System - 6: Oil, Synthetic Penetrating.
8. Finish System - 7: Vinyl, Catalyzed.
9. Finish System - 8: Acrylic Cross Linking, Water Based.
10. Finish System - 9: UV Curable, Acrylated Epoxy, Polyester, or Urethane.
11. Finish System - 10: UV Curable, Water Based.
12. Finish System - 11: Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
13. Finish System - 12: Polyurethane, Water Based.
14. Finish System - 13: Polyester, Catalyzed.
15. Wash Coat for Closed-Grain Woods: Apply wash-coat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
16. Staining: [**None required**] [**Match approved sample for color**] [**Match Architect's sample**].
17. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
18. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods:[**After staining, apply wash-coat sealer and allow to dry.**] Apply paste wood filler and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
19. Sheen: [**Flat, 8-14**] [**Satin, 15-25**] [**Satin Gloss, 26-49**] [**Semigloss, 50-70**] [**Gloss, 71-90**] gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter in accordance with ASTM D523.

D. Opaque Finish:

1. Architectural Woodworking Standards Grade: [**Premium**] [**Custom**] [**Economy**] [**Same as item to be finished**].
2. Finish System - 1: Lacquer, Nitrocellulose.
3. Finish System - 2: Lacquer, Pre Catalyzed.
4. Finish System - 3: Lacquer, Post Catalyzed.
5. Finish System - 4: Latex Acrylic, Water Based.

6. Finish System - 5: Varnish, Conversion.
7. Finish System - 7: Vinyl, Catalyzed.
8. Finish System - 8: Acrylic Cross Linking, Water Based.
9. Finish System - 9: UV Curable, Acrylated Epoxy, Polyester, or Urethane.
10. Finish System - 10: UV Curable, Water Based.
11. Finish System - 11: Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
12. Finish System - 12: Polyurethane, Water Based.
13. Finish System - 13: Polyester, Catalyzed.
14. Color: [**As indicated by manufacturer's designations**] [**Match Architect's sample**] [**As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range**].
15. Sheen: [**Flat, 8-14**] [**Satin, 15-25**] [**Satin Gloss, 26-49**] [**Semigloss, 50-70**] [**Gloss, 71-90**] gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter in accordance with ASTM D523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before installation, condition interior architectural woodwork to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours prior to beginning of installation.

B. Before installing interior architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming of concealed surfaces.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Grade: Install interior architectural woodwork to comply with same grade as item to be installed.

B. Assemble interior architectural woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed during shop fabrication.

C. Install interior architectural woodwork level, plumb, true in line, and without distortion.

1. Shim as required with concealed shims.
2. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

D. Scribe and cut interior architectural woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.

E. Preservative-Treated Wood: Where cut or drilled in field, treat cut ends and drilled holes in accordance with AWPA M4.

F. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.

G. Anchor interior architectural woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.

1. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
2. Use fine finishing nails[**or finishing screws**] for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with interior architectural woodwork.
3. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.

H. Standing and Running Trim:

1. Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible.
2. Do not use pieces less than [**36 inches (900 mm)**] [**60 inches (1500 mm)**] [**96 inches (2400 mm)**] long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary.
3. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
4. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with [**plastic wood filler; sand smooth; and finish same as wood base if finished**] [**latex sealant, painted to match wall**].
5. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).

I. Stairs: Securely anchor carriages to supporting substrates.

1. Install stairs with treads and risers no more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from indicated position.
2. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
3. Use fine finishing nails [**or finishing screws**] for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with wood surface.

J. Railings:

1. Install rails with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) variation from a straight line.
2. Stair Rails: Glue and dowel or pin balusters to treads and railings, and railings to newel posts.

    a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
    b. Use fine finishing nails[**or finishing screws**] for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with wood surface.

3. Wall Rails: Support rails on wall brackets securely fastened to wall framing.

    a. Space rail brackets not more than **Dimension** o.c. as directed by the Owner .

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspections: Provide inspection of installed Work through [**AWI's Quality Certification Program**] [**WI's Certified Compliance Program**] certifying that woodwork, including installation, complies with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards for the specified grade.

1. Inspection entity is to prepare and submit report of inspection.

3.4 REPAIR

A. Repair damaged and defective interior architectural woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects [**and to result in interior architectural woodwork being in compliance with requirements of Architectural Woodwork Standards for the specified grade**].

B. Where not possible to repair, replace defective woodwork.

C. Shop Finish: Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of interior architectural woodwork.

1. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
2. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.

D. Field Finish: See [**Section 099123 "Interior Painting"**] [**and**] [**Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing"**] for final finishing of installed interior architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean interior architectural woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 07 46 46 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 46 46 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
07 46 46 00	07 42 93 00	Siding

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 46 63 00 - INSULATED-CORE METAL WALL PANELS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for insulated-core metal wall panels. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Foamed-insulation-core metal wall panels.
b. Laminated-insulation-core metal wall panels.
c. Honeycomb-core metal wall panels.

C. Definitions
1. Metal Wall Panel Assembly: Insulated-core metal wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall system.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
2. Delegated Design: Design metal wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
3. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
a. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa) which is equivalent to a 25-mph (40-km/h) wind.
4. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
a. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) which is equivalent to a 50-mph (80-km/h) wind.
5. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa) and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft. (575 Pa).
a. Water Leakage: As defined according to AAMA 501.1.
OR
Water Leakage: Uncontrolled water infiltrating the system or appearing on system's normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.
6. Structural Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand the effects the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:
a. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
1) Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (958 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa), **as directed**, acting inward or outward.
OR
Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.

b. Deflection Limits: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/180 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.

7. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
8. Thermal Performance: Provide insulated metal wall panel assemblies with thermal-resistance value (R-value) indicated when tested according to ASTM C 518.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory-, shop-, and field-assembled work.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and wall-mounted items.
6. Product Test Reports.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Maintenance Data.
9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide metal wall panels and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical panels and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Provide materials and construction tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119.
   b. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which wall panel is a part, complies with NFPA 285 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies.
   c. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition when tested according to NFPA 268.
   d. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
   e. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide wall panels with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
2. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
3. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for

drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

4. Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panels for period of metal wall panel installation.

H. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.
2. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
   a. Finish Warranty Period:
      1) 20 years from date of Final Completion for fluoropolymer finish.
      2) 10 years from date of Final Completion for siliconized polyester.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Panel Materials

1. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
   b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
   c. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   d. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

7) Siliconized-Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mil (0.097 mm) for topcoat.

e. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

2. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
   a. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   b. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes:
      1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      7) Siliconized-Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
      8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mil (0.097 mm) for topcoat.
   c. Exposed Anodized Finish:
      1) Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
      2) Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
   d. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

3. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper.
   a. Exposed Finish: Apply the following finish, as specified or indicated on Drawings.
      1) Natural finish.

2) Brushed Satin: CDA M32-06x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
   a) Clear, Organic Coating: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
3) Mirror Polished: CDA M22-06x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
   a) Clear, Organic Coating: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
4) Pre-patinated: ASTM B 882. Copper sheets artificially aged by chemical reaction to convert surface to inorganic crystalline structure with color range and durability of naturally-formed patina.

4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**, fully annealed.
   a. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
   b. Polished Finish: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
      1) Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
      2) When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
      3) Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
   c. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
5. Panel Sealants:
   a. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
   b. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.
   c. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

B. Insulation For Panel Cores
1. Polyisocyanurate Insulation: Closed cell, modified polyisocyanurate foam using a non-CFC blowing agent, foamed-in-place **OR** board, **as directed**, type, with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 450.
   a. Closed-Cell Content: 90 percent when tested according to ASTM D 2856.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.60-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) minimum density, unless otherwise indicated; with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 450.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.9 lb/cu. ft. (14 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m), Class 2 or 3, Grade 3, **as directed**, with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 450.

C. Miscellaneous Metal Framing
1. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 (Z120) hot-dip galvanized **OR** ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) hot-dip galvanized, **as directed**, or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
2. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections, 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) nominal thickness.
3. Zee Clips: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness.
4. Base or Sill Angles **OR** Channels, **as directed**: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness.
5. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:

a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**.
b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 7/8 inch (21 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.

6. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flange.
   a. Nominal Thickness: As indicated **OR** As required to meet performance requirements **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Depth: As indicated **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) nominal thickness.
7. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.52-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.22-mm-) diameter wire.
8. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws; bolts and nuts; self-locking rivets and bolts; end-welded studs; and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.
2. Backer Board: Hardboard complying with AHA A135.4, Class 1 tempered, 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**, thick unless otherwise indicated.

E. Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels
1. General: Provide factory-formed and -assembled metal wall panels fabricated from two metal facing sheets and insulation core foamed in place during fabrication, and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
   a. Panel Performance:
      1) Flatwise Tensile Strength: 30 psi (207 kPa) when tested according to ASTM C 297.
      2) Humid Aging: Volume increase not greater than 6.0 percent and no delamination or metal corrosion when tested for 7 days at 140 deg F (60 deg C) and 100 percent relative humidity according to ASTM D 2126.
      3) Heat Aging: Volume increase not greater than 2.0 percent and no delamination, surface blistering, or permanent bowing when tested for 7 days at 200 deg F (93 deg C) according to ASTM D 2126.
      4) Cold Aging: Volume decrease not more than 1.0 percent and no delamination, surface blistering, or permanent bowing when tested for 7 days at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C) according to ASTM D 2126.
      5) Fatigue: No evidence of delamination, core cracking, or permanent bowing when tested to a 20-lbf/sq. ft. (958-kPa) positive and negative wind load and with deflection of L/180 for 2 million cycles.
      6) Autoclave: No delamination when exposed to 2-psi (13.8-kPa) pressure at a temperature of 212 deg F (100 deg C) for 2-1/2 hours.
   b. Polyisocyanurate Insulation-Core Performance:
      1) Density: 2.0 to 2.6 lb/cu. ft. (32 to 42 kg/cu. m) when tested according to ASTM D 1622.
      2) Compressive Strength: Minimum 20 psi (138 kPa) when tested according to ASTM D 1621.
      3) Shear Strength: 26 psi (179 kPa) when tested according to ASTM C 273.
2. Exposed-Fastener, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with raised, trapezoidal major rib at panel edge and two intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced between major rib and panel edge; designed for lapping side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching to supports using exposed fasteners in side laps.
   a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.

1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
3) Backer Board: On back side of exterior facing.
4) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
   a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5) Interior Facing Finish: Manufacturer's standard white polyester.

b. Snap-On Batten: Same material, finish, and color as exterior facings of wall panels.
c. Panel Coverage: 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 40 inches (1016 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
d. Panel Thickness: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2.5 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm), **as directed**.
e. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): as directed by the Owner.

3. Concealed-Fastener, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with tongue-and-groove panel edges; designed for sequential installation by interlocking panel edges and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips or fasteners.
   a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      3) Material: Stainless-steel sheet, 0.031 inch (0.79 mm) **OR** 0.038 inch (0.97 mm), **as directed**, thick with No. 4 **OR** 2B, **as directed**, finish.
      4) Backer Board: On back side of exterior facing.
      5) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      6) Interior Facing Finish: Manufacturer's standard siliconized polyester.
      7) Exterior Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Striated **OR** Shallow ribs **OR** Shallow V grooves, **as directed**.
   b. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 39.37 inches (1000 mm) **OR** 42 inches (1067 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
   c. Panel Thickness: 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2.5 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.
   d. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): as directed by the Owner.

F. Laminated-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels
   1. General: Provide factory-formed and -assembled metal wall panels fabricated from two metal facing sheets and core material laminated or otherwise securely bonded to facing sheets during fabrication without use of contact adhesives, and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
      a. Panel Performance:
         1) Flatwise Tensile Strength: 27 psi (186 kPa) when tested according to ASTM C 297.
         2) Humid Aging: Volume increase not greater than 6.0 percent and no delamination or metal corrosion when tested for 7 days at 140 deg F (60 deg C) and 100 percent relative humidity according to ASTM D 2126.
         3) Heat Aging: Volume increase not greater than 2.0 percent and no delamination, surface blistering, or permanent bowing when tested for 7 days at 200 deg F (93 deg C) according to ASTM D 2126.

4) Cold Aging: Volume decrease not more than 1.0 percent and no delamination, surface blistering, or permanent bowing when tested for 7 days at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C) according to ASTM D 2126.
5) Fatigue: No evidence of delamination, core cracking, or permanent bowing when tested to a 20-lbf/sq. ft. (958-kPa) positive and negative wind load and with deflection of L/180 for 2 million cycles.
6) Autoclave: No delamination when exposed to 2-psi (13.8-kPa) pressure at a temperature of 212 deg F (100 deg C) for 2-1/2 hours.

b. Polyisocyanurate Insulation-Core Performance:
1) Density: 1.8 to 2.3 lb/cu. ft. (29 to 37 kg/cu. m) when tested according to ASTM D 1622.
2) Compressive Strength: Minimum 20 psi (138 kPa) when tested according to ASTM D 1621.
3) Shear Strength: 24 psi (164 kPa) when tested according to ASTM C 273.

2. Wrapped-Edge, Laminated-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with flush exterior panel facing wrapped over panel edges; designed for independent installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using staggered, concealed side clips engaging panel edges **OR** through extended panel edges to supports using concealed fasteners, **as directed**; with sealant **OR** gasketed, **as directed**, joints.
a. Exterior Facing:
1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** 0.080 inch (2.03 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4) Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
5) Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Interior Facing:
1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4) Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer or white polyester.

c. Core Material: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded-polystyrene **OR** Expanded-polystyrene, **as directed**, board insulation.
1) Backer Board: 0.125-inch- (3-mm-) **OR** 0.250-inch- (6-mm-), **as directed**, thick hardboard behind exterior facing for increased impact resistance.

d. Clips: Manufacturer's standard one piece, formed from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel **OR** aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
e. Gaskets: Extruded, dry seal silicone.
f. Sealant: Manufacturer's standard silicone.
g. Panel Thickness: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.
h. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): as directed by the Owner.

3. Shiplap-Edge, Laminated-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with flush exterior panel facing and with shiplap edges; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips and fasteners; with factory-applied sealant **OR** gaskets, **as directed**, in side laps.
   a. Exterior Facing:
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
      5) Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   b. Interior Facing:
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer or white polyester.
   c. Core Material: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded-polystyrene **OR** Expanded-polystyrene, **as directed**, board insulation.
      1) Backer Board: 0.125-inch- (3-mm-) **OR** 0.250-inch- (6-mm-), **as directed**, thick hardboard behind exterior facing for increased impact resistance.
   d. Clips: Manufacturer's standard one piece, formed from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel **OR** aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
   e. Gaskets: Extruded, dry seal silicone.
   f. Sealant: Manufacturer's standard silicone.
   g. Panel Thickness: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.
   h. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): as directed by the Owner.
4. Framed-Edge, Laminated-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with flush exterior panel facing and integral, extruded edge members; designed for independent installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports through edge framing using concealed fasteners; with gasketed joints.
   a. Exterior Facing:
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0-71 mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** 0.080 inch (2.03 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
      5) Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

b. Interior Facing:
   1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   4) Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer or white polyester.

c. Core Material: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded-polystyrene **OR** Expanded-polystyrene, **as directed**, board insulation.
   1) Backer Board: 0.125-inch- (3.18-mm-) **OR** 0.250-inch- (6-mm-), **as directed**, thick hardboard behind exterior facing for increased impact resistance.

d. Edge Members: Extruded aluminum, not less than 0.063-inch (1.60-mm) wall thickness.

e. Gaskets: Extruded, dry seal silicone.

f. Panel Thickness: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5.0 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6.0 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.

g. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): as directed by the Owner.

G. Honeycomb-Core Metal Wall Panels

1. General: Provide factory-formed and -assembled metal wall panels fabricated from two metal facing sheets and honeycomb-core material laminated or otherwise securely bonded to facing sheets during fabrication without use of contact adhesives or pinch rollers, and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
   a. Panel Performance:
      1) Fatigue: No evidence of delamination, core cracking, or permanent bowing when tested to a 20-lbf/sq. ft. (958-kPa) positive and negative wind load and with deflection of L/180 for 2 million cycles.
      2) Autoclave: No delamination when exposed to 2-psi (13.8-kPa) pressure at a temperature of 212 deg F (100 deg C) for 2-1/2 hours.

2. Wrapped-Edge, Honeycomb-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with flush exterior panel facing wrapped over panel edges; designed for independent installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using staggered, concealed side clips engaging panel edges **OR** through extended panel edges to supports using concealed fasteners, **as directed**; with sealant **OR** gasketed, **as directed**, joints.
   a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      5) Interior Facing Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer or polyester.
   b. Kraft-Paper Honeycomb Core: Manufacturer's standard phenolic-resin impregnated paper, with not less than 15 percent resin content by weight and chemically treated for fire resistance; with maximum 1/2-inch (13-mm) cell size.
   c. Aluminum Honeycomb Core: Manufacturer's standard 0.003-inch- (0.08-mm-) thick, commercial grade aluminum with maximum 3/4-inch (19-mm) cell size.

d. Clips: Manufacturer's standard one piece, formed from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel **OR** aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
e. Gaskets: Extruded, dry seal silicone.
f. Sealant: Manufacturer's standard silicone.
g. Panel Thickness: 0.25 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm), **as directed**.

3. Shiplap-Edge, Honeycomb-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with flush exterior panel facing and with shiplap edges; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips and fasteners; with factory-applied sealant **OR** gaskets, **as directed**, in side laps.
   a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
      3) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      5) Interior Facing Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer or polyester.
   b. Kraft-Paper Honeycomb Core: Manufacturer's standard phenolic-resin-impregnated paper, with not less than 15 percent resin content by weight and chemically treated for fire resistance; with maximum 1/2-inch (13-mm) cell size.
   c. Aluminum Honeycomb Core: Manufacturer's standard 0.003-inch- (0.08-mm-) thick, commercial grade aluminum with maximum 3/4-inch (19-mm) cell size.
   d. Clips: Manufacturer's standard one piece, formed from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel **OR** aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
   e. Gaskets: Extruded, dry seal silicone.
   f. Sealant: Manufacturer's standard silicone.
   g. Panel Thickness: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1.25 inches (32 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.

4. Framed-Edge, Honeycomb-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with flush exterior panel facing and integral, extruded edge members; designed for independent installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports through edge framing using concealed fasteners; with gasketed joints.
   a. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
      1) Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
      2) Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Exterior Facing Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 3-coat fluoropolymer **OR** 4-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Mica fluoropolymer **OR** Metallic fluoropolymer **OR** FEVE fluoropolymer **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** Plastisol **OR** Clear anodized **OR** Color anodized, **as directed**.
         a) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
      4) Interior Facing Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer or polyester.
   b. Kraft-Paper Honeycomb Core: Manufacturer's standard phenolic-resin-impregnated paper, with not less than 15 percent resin content by weight and chemically treated for fire resistance; with maximum 1/2-inch (13-mm) cell size.
   c. Aluminum Honeycomb Core: Manufacturer's standard 0.003-inch- (0.08-mm-) thick, commercial grade aluminum with maximum 3/4-inch (19-mm) cell size.

d. Edge Members: Extruded aluminum, not less than 0.063-inch (1.6-mm) wall thickness.
e. Gaskets: Extruded, dry seal silicone.
f. Panel Thickness: 1.0 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2.0 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3.0 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.

H. Accessories
1. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal wall panels.
   b. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
   c. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
2. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.018-inch- (0.46-mm-) minimum thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.

I. Fabrication
1. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
2. Fabricate metal wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
3. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
4. Fabricate metal wall panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
5. Honeycomb-Core Metal Wall Panels: Fabricate panels using manufacturer's standard thermosetting structural adhesive in a lamination process that bonds panel under minimum 10-psi (69-kPa) pressure. Use of contact adhesives with pinch-roll process is not acceptable.
   a. Panel Bow Tolerance: Not more than 0.5 percent of panel width or length.
6. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
   a. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
   b. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
   c. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
   d. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
   e. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.

f. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
   1) Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

J. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal wall panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Metal Wall Panel Installation, General
1. General: Install metal wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
   a. Commence metal wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. (27.9 sq. m.) in presence of factory-authorized representative.
   b. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
   c. Flash and seal metal wall panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
   d. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
   e. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
   f. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
   g. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
   h. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
   i. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
   j. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
2. Fasteners:
   a. Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   b. Aluminum Wall Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
   c. Copper Wall Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
   d. Stainless-Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
3. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.

4. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
   a. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
   b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

C. Insulated-Core Metal Wall Panel Installation
1. General: Apply continuous ribbon of sealant to panel joint on concealed side of insulated-core metal wall panels as vapor seal; apply sealant to panel joint on exposed side of panels for weather seal.
   a. Fasten insulated-core metal wall panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
   b. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
   c. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners on weather side of insulated metal wall panels.
   d. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
   e. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of insulated metal wall panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
   f. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to panel side laps and elsewhere as needed to make panels weathertight.
   g. Apply snap-on battens to exposed-fastener, insulated-core metal wall panel seams to conceal fasteners.
2. Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Fasten metal wall panels to supports with concealed clips at each joint at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Fully engage tongue and groove of adjacent panels.
   a. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
3. Laminated-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels:
   a. Wrapped-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels to supports using staggered, concealed side clips engaging wrapped panel edges. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners. Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.
   b. Wrapped-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels through extended edge of panels to supports using self-tapping fasteners. Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.
   c. Shiplap-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels to supports using staggered, concealed side clips engaging tongue-and-groove panel edges. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
      1) Horizontal Joints: Maintain reveal joint of consistent width **OR** Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** Seal joints with manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.
      2) Vertical Joints: Maintain reveal joint of consistent width **OR** Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** Seal joints with manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.
   d. Framed-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels through integral, extruded edge members to supports using self-tapping fasteners. Seal joints with manufacturer's standard gaskets.
4. Honeycomb-Core Metal Wall Panels:
   a. Wrapped-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels to supports using staggered, concealed side clips engaging wrapped panel edges. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners. Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.

b. Wrapped-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels through extended edge of panels to supports using self-tapping fasteners. Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.
c. Shiplap-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels to supports using staggered, concealed side clips engaging tongue-and-groove panel edges. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
   1) Horizontal Joints: Maintain reveal joint of consistent width **OR** Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** Seal joints with manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.
   2) Vertical Joints: Maintain reveal joint of consistent width **OR** Seal joints with backer rod and sealant **OR** Seal joints with manufacturer's standard gaskets, **as directed**.
d. Framed-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels through integral, extruded edge members to supports using self-tapping fasteners. Seal joints with manufacturer's standard gaskets.

D. Accessory Installation
1. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
   a. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
2. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
   a. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
   b. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (605 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

E. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Water Penetration: Test areas of installed system indicated on Drawings for compliance with system performance requirements according to ASTM E 1105 at minimum differential pressure of 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure as defined by SEI/ASCE 7, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa).
3. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-foot- (23-m-) by-2-story minimum area of metal wall panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by the Owner.
4. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect and test completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
5. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
6. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

F. Cleaning And Protection
1. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On

completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

2. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
3. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 46 63 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 46 63 00	07 46 16 00a	Metal Wall Panels

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 51 13 00 - BUILT-UP ASPHALT ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for built-up asphalt roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Built-up asphalt roofing.
   b. Vapor retarder.
   c. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to built-up roofing.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed built-up roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Built-up roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by built-up roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide built-up roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
4. FM Approvals Listing: Provide built-up roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a built-up roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance (for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For built-up roofing. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Base flashings and built-up terminations.
   b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
   c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
   d. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
4. Samples: For the following products:
   a. Built-up roofing materials, including base sheet, ply sheet, cap sheet, and flashing sheet, of color specified.
   b. Roof insulation.
   c. 3 lb (1.5 kg) of aggregate surfacing material in gradation and color indicated.
   d. Roof paver, full sized, in each color and texture required.
   e. Walkway pads.
   f. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that built-up roofing complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of built-up roofing.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of built-up roofing, from the ICC-ES.
9. Maintenance Data: For built-up roofing to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for built-up roofing identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by built-up roofing manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for built-up roofing from same manufacturer as built-up roofing or approved by built-up roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical built-up roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.

a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of built-up roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
a. Special warranty includes built-up roofing membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, roof pavers, and other components of built-up roofing.
b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
2. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of built-up roofing such as built-up roofing membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, vapor retarders, roof pavers, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
a. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Built-Up Roofing Manufacturers

B. Base-Sheet Materials
1. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).
2. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified, asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
a. Weight: 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m) **OR** 50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.0 kg/sq. m) **OR** 75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, minimum.

OR

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

OR

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

OR

Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

C. Roofing Membrane Plies
1. Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.
2. Cap Sheet: ASTM D 3909, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber cap sheet, with white coarse mineral-granule top surfacing and fine mineral surfacing on bottom surface.

D. Base Flashing Sheet Materials
   1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.
      OR
      Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
      OR
      Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
   2. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, polyester-reinforced **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, glass-fiber-reinforced **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, composite polyester-reinforced and glass-fiber-reinforced, **as directed**, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
      a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
   3. Metal-Foil-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, glass-fiber-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; metal-foil surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
      a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   4. Smooth-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, polyester-reinforced **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, composite polyester-reinforced and glass-fiber-reinforced, **as directed**, APP-modified asphalt sheet; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
      OR
      Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, polyester-reinforced **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, composite polyester-reinforced and glass-fiber-reinforced, **as directed**, APP-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
      a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
   5. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

E. Asphalt Materials
   1. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
   2. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** IV **OR** III or IV as recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer for application, **as directed**.
   3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.

F. Auxiliary Built-Up Roofing Materials
   1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with built-up roofing.
      a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
      b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
         1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
         2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
         3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
         4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
         5) Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
         6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
         7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
         8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
         9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.

2. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with built-up base flashings.
3. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing manufacturer for application.
4. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen, nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
5. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening built-up roofing components to substrate, tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing manufacturer.
6. Metal Flashing Sheet: Metal flashing sheet is specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
7. Aggregate Surfacing: ASTM D 1863, No. 6 or No. 67, clean, dry, opaque, water-worn gravel or crushed stone, free of sharp edges **OR** crushed slag, free of sharp edges, **as directed**.
8. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide miscellaneous accessories recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer.

G. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

H. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
      OR
      Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper/polyethylene laminate, two layers, reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, laminated and edge reinforced, with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold-applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
   OR
   Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold-applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
4. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

I. Roof Insulation
   1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
   2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
   3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578 Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
   4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
      a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
         OR
         Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
   6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other surface.
      a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
      b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
      c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
   7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
   8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
   9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
   10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
   11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

J. Insulation Accessories
   1. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with built-up roofing.
   2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate and acceptable to roofing manufacturer.
   3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
      OR
      Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
      OR
      Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
   4. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
   5. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.

6. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" **OR** "Miscellaneous Carpentry", **as directed**.
7. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
   OR
   Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
8. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
9. Substrate Joint Tape: 6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-) wide, coated, glass fiber.

K. Coating Materials
1. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type II Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified, fibered **OR** 2, chemically emulsified, filled or fibered, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, asbestos free.
   OR
   Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified **OR** 2, chemically emulsified, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, nonfibered.
   OR
   Roof Coating: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.
   OR
   Roof Coating: Acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces and complying with ASTM D 6083 **OR** the following, **as directed**:
   a. Initial Percent Elongation (Break): Not less than 60 percent at 0 deg F (-18 deg C) and 200 percent at 73 deg F (23 deg C) when tested according to ASTM D 2370.
   b. Initial Tensile Strength (Maximum Stress): Not less than 100 psi (1.38 MPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C) and 200 psi (2.76 MPa) at 0 deg F (-18 deg C) when tested according to ASTM D 2370.
   c. Final Percent Elongation (Break) after Accelerated Weathering 1000 hrs.: Not less than 40 percent at 0 deg F (-18 deg C) and 100 percent at 73 deg F (23 deg C) when tested according to ASTM D 2370.
   d. Permeance: Not more than 50 perms when measured according to ASTM D 1653.
   e. Accelerated Weathering 1000 hrs.: No cracking or checking when tested according to ASTM D 4798.
   f. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.

L. Walkways
1. Walkway Pads: Mineral-granule-surfaced, reinforced asphaltic composition **OR** Polymer-modified, reconstituted solid-rubber, surface-textured, **as directed**, slip-resisting pads, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to roofing manufacturer, 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, thick, minimum.
2. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, polyester-reinforced **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, glass-fiber-reinforced **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, composite polyester-reinforced and glass-fiber-reinforced, **as directed**, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
3. Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not

greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:

a. Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm). Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
b. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum; ASTM C 140.
c. Colors and Textures: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
c. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".
d. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
e. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing manufacturer has passed.
f. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
1) Test for moisture by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
g. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
4. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof decks according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Substrate Board Installation
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
OR
Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Vapor-Retarder Installation
1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.

   OR

   Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
   a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.

      OR

      Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.

   OR

   Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Seal laps by rolling.

   OR

   Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
2. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into built-up roofing.

E. Insulation Installation
1. Comply with built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
2. Install one lapped base sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Nailer Strips: Mechanically fasten 4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-) width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck at the following spacing:
   a. 16 feet (4.88 m) apart for roof slopes greater than 1 inch per 12 inches (1:12) but less than 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
   b. 48 inches (1220 mm) apart for roof slopes greater 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
4. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of built-up roofing with vertical surfaces or angle changes greater than 45 degrees.
5. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
   a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
   a. Where installing composite and noncomposite board insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
8. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
9. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
10. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
    a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.

b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
c. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
OR
Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

11. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure, fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
12. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure, fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
c. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
OR
Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
OR
Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
13. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**. Tape joints if required by roofing manufacturer.
a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
b. Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
c. Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside and immediately bond cover board to substrate.

F. Built-Up Roofing Installation, General
1. Install roofing membrane according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
a. Install roofing system BU-3 **OR** 4 **OR** 5, **as directed**,-N **OR** I **OR** C, **as directed**,-A-A **OR** S **OR** M, **as directed**, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and requirements in this Section.
OR
Install roofing membrane according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing" and as follows:
a. Deck Type: N (nailable) **OR** I (insulated) **OR** C (concrete or nonnailable), **as directed**.
b. Base Sheet: 1 **OR** 1, installed over sheathing paper, **as directed**.
c. Number of Ply Sheets: 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**.

d. Surfacing Type: A (aggregate) **OR** S (asphalt surfacing or coating) **OR** M (mineral-granule-surfaced cap sheet), **as directed**.
   1) Mineral-granule-surfaced cap sheet is in addition to number of ply sheets specified.

2. Start installation of built-up roofing in presence of manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Where roof slope exceeds 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24) **OR** 3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18), **as directed**, install built-up roofing sheets parallel with slope.
   a. Backnail built-up roofing sheets to nailer strips **OR** substrate, **as directed**, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing.
5. Coordinate installation of roofing so insulation and other components of built-up roofing not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
   a. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed built-up roofing sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt with joints and edges sealed.
   b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing.
   c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
6. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within 25 deg F (14 deg C) of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than 4 hours.
   OR
   Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging built-up roofing components or adjacent building construction.

G. Roofing Membrane Installation
1. Loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
2. Install lapped base sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
   a. Mechanically fasten to substrate.
      OR
      Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.
      OR
      Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, **as directed**.
3. Install two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, ply sheets starting at low point of roofing. Align ply sheets without stretching. Shingle side laps of ply sheets uniformly to achieve required number of plies throughout thickness of roofing membrane. Shingle in direction to shed water. Extend ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
   a. Embed each ply sheet in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at rate required by roofing manufacturer, to form a uniform membrane without ply sheets touching.
4. Cap Sheet: Install lapped granulated cap sheet starting at low point of roofing. Offset laps from laps of preceding ply sheets and align cap sheet without stretching. Lap in direction to shed water. Extend cap sheet over and terminate beyond cants.
   a. Embed cap sheet in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at rate required by built-up roofing manufacturer.
5. Aggregate Surfacing: Promptly after installing and testing roofing membrane, base flashing, and stripping, flood-coat roof surface with 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.0 kg/sq. m) of hot roofing asphalt. While flood coat is hot and fluid, cast the following average weight of aggregate in a uniform course:
   a. Aggregate Weight: 400 lb/100 sq. ft. (20 kg/sq. m) **OR** 300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.

b. If aggregate surfacing is delayed, promptly apply glaze coat of hot roofing asphalt at a rate of 10 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.5 kg/sq. m).

6. Glaze-coat roofing membrane surface with hot roofing asphalt applied at a rate of 10 to 15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.5 to 0.75 kg/sq. m).

H. Flashing And Stripping Installation

1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloping and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by built-up roofing manufacturer.
   b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over built-up roofing at cants in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.
      OR
      Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.
   c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C). Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above built-up roofing and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of built-up roofing.
3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
   a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement.
4. Install stripping, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, where metal flanges and edgings are set on built-up roofing.
   a. Flashing-Sheet Stripping: Install flashing-sheet stripping in a continuous coating of asphalt roofing cement or in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C), and extend onto roofing membrane.
      OR
      Flashing-Sheet Stripping: Install flashing-sheet stripping by heat welding and extend onto roofing membrane.
      OR
      Built-up Stripping: Install stripping of not less than two roofing membrane ply sheets, setting each ply in a continuous coating of asphalt roofing cement or in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, and extend onto roofing membrane 4 inches (100 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
5. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch (760-by-760-mm) metal flashing in bed of asphalt roofing cement on completed built-up roofing. Cover metal flashing with built-up roofing cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of built-up roofing. Clamp built-up roofing, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
   a. Install stripping according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.

I. Coating Installation

1. Apply coating to built-up roofing and base flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 20 mils (0.5 mm).

J. Walkway Installation
   1. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size, according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
      a. Set walkway pads in additional pour coat of hot roofing asphalt after sweeping away loose aggregate surfacing.
   2. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: Install walkway cap sheet strips, approximately 36 inches (900 mm) wide and in lengths not exceeding 10 feet (3 m), leaving a space of 6 inches (150 mm) between strips, over built-up roofing. Adhere in hot roofing asphalt.
   3. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions in locations indicated, to form walkways. Leave 3 inches (75 mm) of space between adjacent roof pavers.

K. Field Quality Control
   1. Testing Agency: Perform roof tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
   2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of built-up roofing as follows:
      a. Approximate quantities of components within built-up roofing will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
      b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
      c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Repair or remove and replace components of built-up roofing where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
      a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

L. Protecting And Cleaning
   1. Protect built-up roofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and the Owner.
   2. Correct deficiencies in or remove built-up roofing that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
   3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 51 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 51 13 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
07 51 13 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing
07 51 13 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 51 13 00	07 52 13 00	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 51 13 00	07 52 16 00	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 51 13 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 52 13 00 - APP-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for atactic-polypropylene (APP) modified bituminous membrane roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Atactic-polypropylene (APP) modified bituminous membrane roofing.
   b. Hybrid roofing system that combines built-up ply sheets with APP-modified bituminous membrane.
   c. Vapor retarder.
   d. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: If membrane roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7, provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
   b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
   c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
4. FM Approvals Listing: If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard, provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

OR

Energy Performance(for roofs that must comply with DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.

OR

Energy Performance(for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance not less than 0.70 and Thermal Emittance not less than 0.75 when tested according to Cool Roof Rating Council's CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
   b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
   c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
   d. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
4. Samples: For the following products:
   a. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
   b. Roof insulation.
   c. Walkway pads or rolls.
   d. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES **OR** applicable model code organization, **as directed**.
9. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, and other components of membrane roofing system.
   b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. APP-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials
1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
   OR
   Granule-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Granule Material: Mineral ceramic coated **OR** slate, **as directed**.
   b. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

B. Base-Sheet Materials
1. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).
2. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified, asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

a. Weight: 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m) **OR** 50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m) **OR** 75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, minimum.

OR

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

OR

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

OR

Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

C. Base-Ply Sheet Materials

1. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** Type VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

D. Base Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **a directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

   OR

   Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

E. Auxiliary Roofing Membrane Materials

1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
   a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
      1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
      4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
      5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.

6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.

2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** Type IV **OR** Type III or IV as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application, **as directed**.
   OR
   Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
4. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
5. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing system manufacturer for application.
6. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen; nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate; tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
8. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
9. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated **OR** Slate, **as directed**, roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
10. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

F. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

G. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
      OR
      Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating

of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

OR

Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

4. Glass-Fiber Felt: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

H. Roof Insulation
1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
   a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.

      OR

      Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board, as indicated below by type, on one major surface and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other surface.
   a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   c. Type VII, glass-mat-faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

I. Insulation Accessories
1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

OR

Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

OR

Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

4. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.

   OR

   Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
5. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
6. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.

   OR

   Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
7. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.

   OR

   Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.

   OR

   Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.

   OR

   Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
8. Substrate Joint Tape: 6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-) wide, coated, glass-fiber joint tape.

J. Coating Materials
   1. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified, fibered **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, filled or fibered, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, asbestos free.
   2. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, nonfibered.
   3. Roof Coating: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** Type III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.
   4. Roof Coating: Acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces and complying with ASTM D 6083.
      a. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.

K. Walkways
   1. Walkway Pads: Reinforced asphaltic composition pads with slip-resisting mineral-granule surface **OR** Polymer-modified, reconstituted rubber pads with slip-resisting textured surface, **as directed**, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer, 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, thick, minimum.
   2. Walkway Backer Strips: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
   3. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
      a. Granule Material: Mineral ceramic coated **OR** slate, **as directed**.
      b. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
   a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
   b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
   c. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".
   d. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
   e. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
      1) Test for moisture by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
   f. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
   g. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
4. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Substrate Board Installation
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
   a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Vapor-Retarder Installation
1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:

a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
OR
Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.

3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
4. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
5. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

E. Insulation Installation
1. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
2. If mechanically fastening base sheet to substrate before adhering first layer of insulation, install one lapped base-sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Nailer Strips: Mechanically fasten 4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-) width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck at the following spacing:
   a. 16 feet (4.88 m) apart for roof slopes steeper than 1 inch per 12 inches (1:12) but less than 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
   b. 48 inches (1220 mm) apart for roof slopes steeper than 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
4. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of roofing membrane system with vertical surfaces or angle changes more than 45 degrees.
5. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
   a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or more, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
   a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
8. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
9. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
10. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
    a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
    b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
    OR
    Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    OR
    Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
11. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.

a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored-design uplift pressure, fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

12. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    b. If fastening is calculated from ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored-design uplift pressure, fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
        1) Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
           OR
           Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
           OR
           Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    c. If cover boards will be field installed over roof insulation and immediately below roofing membrane, install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction from joints of insulation below. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**. Tape joints if required by roofing system manufacturer.
        1) Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
           OR
           Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
        2) Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside, and immediately bond cover board to substrate.

F. Roofing Membrane Installation, General
    1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
        a. Install roofing system MBA **OR** MBAH, **as directed**,-3 **OR** 4, **as directed**,-N **OR** I **OR** C, **as directed**,-T **OR** L, **as directed**,-S **OR** M, **as directed**, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and to requirements in this Section.
    2. For roof system that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
        a. Deck Type: N (nailable) **OR** I (insulated) **OR** C (concrete or nonnailable), **as directed**.
        b. Adhering Method: T (torched) **OR** L (cold-applied adhesive), **as directed**.
        c. Base Sheet: One **OR** One, installed over sheathing paper, **as directed**.
        d. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
        e. Number of APP-Modified Asphalt Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
        f. Surfacing Type: S (smooth) **OR** M (mineral-granule-surfaced cap sheet), **as directed**.

3. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
4. Where roof slope exceeds 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24) **OR** 3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18), **as directed**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
   a. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips **OR** substrate, **as directed**, according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
6. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
   a. At end of each day's work, provide tie-offs to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
   b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
   c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
7. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within 25 deg F (14 deg C) of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.
   OR
   Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

G. Base-Sheet Installation
   1. If sheathing paper is required over wood decks by roofing system manufacturer, loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   2. Install lapped base-sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
      a. Mechanically fasten to substrate, for nailable substrate.
         OR
         Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.
         OR
         Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**, for nonnailable or insulated substrates.

H. Base-Ply Sheet Installation
   1. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
      a. Shingle side laps of glass-fiber base-ply sheets uniformly to ensure that required number of glass-fiber base-ply sheets covers substrate at any point. Shingle in direction to shed water.
      b. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.

I. APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Installation
   1. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane cap sheet **OR** sheet and cap sheet, **as directed**, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants, installing as follows:

a. Adhere to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.
OR
Torch apply to substrate.
b. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.

2. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
a. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
b. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
3. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.

J. Flashing And Stripping Installation
1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloped and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof; secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, and as follows:
a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.
OR
Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer, **as directed**.
c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
OR
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
OR
Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above roofing membrane and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of roofing membrane.
3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
4. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch- (760-by-760-mm-) square metal flashing in bed of roofing-manufacturer-approved asphaltic adhesive on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
a. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

K. Coating Installation
1. Apply coating to roofing membrane **OR** roofing membrane and base flashings, **as directed**, according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 20 mils (0.5 mm), **as directed**.

L. Walkway Installation
1. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads in cold-applied adhesive, using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Walkway Strips: Install walkway cap sheet **OR** backer and cap sheet, **as directed**, strips over roofing membrane using same application method as used for roofing membrane cap sheet.

M. Field Quality Control
   1. Testing Agency: Perform tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
   2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
      a. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
      b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
      c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
      a. Notify the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
   4. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
      a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

N. Protecting And Cleaning
   1. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
   2. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
   3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 52 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 52 13 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 52 16 00 - SBS-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) modified bituminous membrane roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) modified bituminous membrane roofing.
   b. Hybrid roofing system that combines built-up ply sheets with SBS-modified bituminous membrane roofing.
   c. Vapor retarder.
   d. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: If membrane roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7, provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner .
   b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner .
   c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner .

4. FM Approvals Listing: If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard, provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.

5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance not less than 0.70 and Thermal Emittance not less than 0.75 when tested according to Cool Roof Rating Council's CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
   b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
   c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
   d. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
4. Samples: For the following products:
   a. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
   b. Roof insulation.
   c. 3 lb (1.5 kg) of aggregate surfacing material in gradation and color indicated.
   d. Walkway pads or rolls.
   e. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES **OR** applicable model code organization, **as directed**.
9. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, and other components of membrane roofing system.
   b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25 **OR** 30, **as directed,** years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. SBS-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials
1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
   OR
   Granule-Surface Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

3. Metal-Foil-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer-coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

B. Base-Sheet Materials
1. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).
2. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified, asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
   a. Weight: 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m) **OR** 50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m) **OR** 75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, minimum.

   OR

   Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

   OR

   Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

C. Base-Ply Sheet Materials
1. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** Type VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

D. Base Flashing Sheet Materials
1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

   OR

   Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

   OR

   Metal-Foil-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
   a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer-coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

E. Auxiliary Roofing Membrane Materials

1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
   a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
      1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
      4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
      5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
      6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
      7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
      8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
      9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** Type IV **OR** Type III or IV as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application, **as directed**.
   OR
   Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
4. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
5. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing system manufacturer for application.
6. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen; nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate; tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
8. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
9. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
10. Aggregate Surfacing: ASTM D 1863, No. 6 or No. 67, clean, dry, opaque, water-worn gravel or crushed stone, free of sharp edges **OR** crushed slag, free of sharp edges, **as directed**.
11. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

F. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

G. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
      OR
      Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
   OR
   Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
4. Glass-Fiber Felt: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

H. Roof Insulation
1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
   a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
      OR
      Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board, as indicated below by type, on one major surface and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other surface.
   a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   c. Type VII, glass-mat-faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.

10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

I. Insulation Accessories
1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
OR
Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
OR
Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
OR
Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
5. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
6. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
OR
Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
7. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
OR
Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
OR
Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
OR
Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
8. Substrate Joint Tape: 6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-) wide, coated, glass-fiber joint tape.

J. Walkways
1. Walkway Pads: Reinforced asphaltic composition pads with slip-resisting mineral-granule surface **OR** Polymer-modified, reconstituted rubber pads with slip-resisting textured surface, **as directed**, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer, 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, thick, minimum.
2. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
   a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
   b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
   c. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."
   d. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
   e. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
      1) Test for moisture by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
   f. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
   g. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
4. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof decks according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Substrate Board Installation
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
   a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Vapor-Retarder Installation
1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:

a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
OR
Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.

3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
4. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
5. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

E. Insulation Installation
1. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
2. Install one lapped base-sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Nailer Strips: Mechanically fasten 4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-) width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck at the following spacing:
   a. 16 feet (4.88 m) apart for roof slopes steeper than 1 inch per 12 inches (1:12) but less than 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
   b. 48 inches (1220 mm) apart for roof slopes steeper than 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
4. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of roofing membrane system with vertical surfaces or angle changes more than 45 degrees.
5. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
   a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or more, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
   a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
8. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
9. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
10. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
    a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
    b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
    OR
    Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    OR
    Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
11. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.

a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored design uplift pressure, fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

12. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.

13. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
14. If fastening is calculated from ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored design uplift pressure, fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    a. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
       OR
       Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
       OR
       Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

F. If cover boards will be field installed over roof insulation and immediately below roofing membrane, install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction from joints of insulation below. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**. Tape joints if required by roofing system manufacturer.
    a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
       OR
       Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    b. Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside, and immediately bond cover board to substrate.

G. Roofing Membrane Installation, General
    1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
       a. Install roofing system MBS **OR** MBSH, **as directed**,-2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**,-N **OR** I **OR** C, **as directed**,-T **OR** M **OR** L, **as directed**,-A **OR** M **OR** F, **as directed**, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and to requirements in this Section.
    2. For roof system that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
       a. Deck Type: N (nailable) **OR** I (insulated) **OR** C (concrete or nonnailable), **as directed**.
       b. Adhering Method: T (torched) **OR** M (mopped) **OR** L (cold-applied adhesive), **as directed**.
       c. Base Sheet: One **OR** One, installed over sheathing paper, **as directed**.
       d. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
       e. Number of SBS-Modified Asphalt Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.

f. Surfacing Type: A (aggregate) **OR** M (mineral-granule-surfaced cap sheet) **OR** F (foil-surfaced cap sheet), **as directed**.

3. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
4. Where roof slope exceeds 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24) **OR** 3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18), **as directed**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
   a. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips **OR** substrate, **as directed**, according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
6. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
   a. At end of each day's work, provide tie-offs to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
   b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
   c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
7. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within 25 deg F (14 deg C) of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.
   OR
   Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

H. Base-Sheet Installation
   1. Loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   2. Install lapped base-sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
      a. Mechanically fasten to substrate, for nailable substrate.
         OR
         Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.
         OR
         Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**, for nonnailable or insulated substrates.

I. Base-Ply Sheet Installation
   1. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
      a. Shingle side laps of glass-fiber base-ply sheets uniformly to ensure that required number of glass-fiber base-ply sheets covers substrate at any point. Shingle in direction to shed water.
      b. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.

J. SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Installation

1. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane cap sheet **OR** sheet and cap sheet, **as directed**, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants, installing as follows:
   a. Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C).
      OR
      Adhere to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.
      OR
      Torch apply to substrate.
   b. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
2. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
   a. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
   b. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
3. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.
4. Aggregate Surfacing: Promptly after installing and testing roofing membrane, base flashing, and stripping, flood-coat roof surface with 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (3 kg/sq. m) of hot roofing asphalt. While flood coat is hot and fluid, cast the following average weight of aggregate in a uniform course:
   a. Aggregate Weight: 400 lb/100 sq. ft. (20 kg/sq. m) for gravel or crushed stone or 300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m) for slag.

K. Flashing And Stripping Installation
1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloped and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof; secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, and as follows:
   a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
   b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.
      OR
      Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer, **as directed**.
   c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C). Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
      OR
      Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above roofing membrane and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of roofing membrane.
3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
   a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
4. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch- (760-by-760-mm-) square metal flashing in bed of asphalt roofing cement on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as**

directed, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
a. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Walkway Installation
1. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
a. Set walkway pads in cold-applied adhesive.
OR
Set walkway pads in additional pour coat of hot roofing asphalt after aggregate surfacing of modified bituminous roofing membrane.
2. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: Install walkway cap sheet strips over roofing membrane using same application method as used for roofing membrane cap sheet. Install walkway cap sheet strips before flood coat and aggregate surface is applied, **as directed**.

M. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Perform tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
a. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
a. Notify the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
4. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

N. Protecting And Cleaning
1. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 52 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 52 16 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 53 16 00 - CSPE MEMBRANE ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for chlorosulfonate-polyethylene (CSPE) roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Adhered CSPE membrane roofing system.
   b. Mechanically fastened CSPE membrane roofing system.
   c. Loosely laid and ballasted CSPE membrane roofing system.
   d. Vapor retarder.
   e. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
4. FM Approvals Listing, **as directed**: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120 **OR** Class 1A-135 **OR** Class 1A-150 **OR** Class 1A-165, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low **OR** steep, **as directed**,-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, documentation indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
4. Samples: For each product included in the roofing system.
5. Research/evaluation reports.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Maintenance data.
8. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
3. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
4. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. CSPE Membrane Roofing
1. CSPE: ASTM D 5019, Type 1, Grade 2, 45-mil- (1.1-mm-) thick, reinforced, flexible uncured sheet formed from CSPE, and as follows:
a. Exposed Face Color: White **OR** Blue **OR** Light gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

B. Auxiliary Membrane Roofing Materials
1. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, and compatible with membrane roofing.
a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
6) Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
10) Other Adhesives and Sealants: 250 g/L.
2. Sheet Flashing: 45-mil- (1.1-mm-) thick, reinforced and 55-mil- (1.4-mm-) thick, non-reinforced CSPE as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use.
3. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based, **as directed**.
4. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
5. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
6. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm thick), prepunched.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
8. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

C. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
OR
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
OR
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
OR
Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

D. Vapor Retarder

1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
   b. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

E. Roof Insulation
1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by CSPE membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
   a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
      OR
      Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other.
   a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

F. Insulation Accessories
1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
6. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

G. Asphalt Materials
   1. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or Type IV **OR** ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified, **as directed**.
   2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

H. Aggregate Ballast (for loosely laid and aggregate-ballasted installations)
   1. Aggregate Ballast: Provide aggregate ballast that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation, of the following type and size:
      a. Aggregate Type: Smooth, washed, riverbed gravel or other acceptable smooth-faced stone **OR** Crushed gravel or crushed stone, **as directed**.
      b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm).
         OR
         Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm).
         OR
         Size: ASTM D 448, Size 3, ranging in size from 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm).

I. Roof Pavers
   1. Lightweight Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled; and as follows:
      a. Size: 8 by 16 inches (200 by 400 mm) **OR** 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 12 by 16-1/2 inches (300 by 420 mm) **OR** 12 by 18 inches (300 by 450 mm), **as directed**.
      b. Weight: At least 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m) but not exceeding 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m).
      c. Compressive Strength: 2500 psi (17 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   2. Heavyweight Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:

a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

J. Walkways
1. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads **OR** rolls, **as directed**, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
2. Walkway Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
4. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking", according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

B. Substrate Board
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
OR
Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Vapor-Retarder Installation
1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.

2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
   a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
      OR
      Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
3. Built-Up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
4. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

D. Insulation Installation
1. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
2. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
3. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
4. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
   a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
5. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
   a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
   a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
   b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
   c. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
      OR
      Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
8. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
   a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
9. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
   a. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

OR

Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

b. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.

OR

Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

OR

Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

10. Loosely Laid Insulation: Loosely lay insulation units over substrate.
11. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**.
    a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

    OR

    Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
12. Install slip sheet over insulation **OR** cover board, **as directed**, and immediately beneath membrane roofing.

E. Adhered Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Adhere membrane **OR** fabric-backed membrane, **as directed**, roofing over area to receive roofing according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
5. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
6. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun. Weld seams as follows:
    a. Weld Method: Hot air **OR** Solvent, **as directed**.
    b. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
    c. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
    d. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.

F. Mechanically Fastened Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Mechanically fasten membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. For in-splice attachment, install membranes roofing with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.

2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
6. In-Seam Attachment: Secure one edge of CSPE sheet using fastening plates or metal battens centered within membrane seam and mechanically fasten CSPE sheet to roof deck.
7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun. Weld seams as follows:
   a. Weld Method: Hot air **OR** Solvent, **as directed**.
   b. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
   c. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
   d. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.

G. Loosely Laid And Ballasted Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Loosely lay membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Comply with requirements in SPRI RP-4 for System 1 **OR** System 2 **OR** System 3, **as directed**.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere perimeter of membrane roofing according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
   OR
   Mechanically fasten **OR** adhere, **as directed**, membrane roofing at corners, perimeters, and transitions according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
   a. At corners and perimeters, omit aggregate ballast leaving membrane roofing exposed.
   b. At corners and perimeters, adhere a second layer of membrane roofing.
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
6. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun. Weld seams as follows:
   a. Weld Method: Hot air **OR** Solvent, **as directed**.
   b. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
   c. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
   d. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
7. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
8. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing.
9. Install protection mat over membrane roofing, overlapping a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Install an additional protection mat layer at projections, pipes, vents, and drains, overlapping a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

10. Aggregate Ballast: Apply uniformly over membrane roofing at the rate required by membrane roofing system manufacturer, but not less than the following, spreading with care to minimize possibility of damage to membrane roofing system. Lay ballast as membrane roofing is installed, leaving membrane roofing ballasted at the end of the workday.
    a. Ballast Weight: Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
       OR
       Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), at corners and perimeter; Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m), elsewhere.
       OR
       Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).
11. Roof-Paver Ballast: Install lightweight **OR** heavyweight, **as directed**, roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    OR
    Roof-Paver and Aggregate Ballast: Install heavyweight roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions on roof corners and perimeter.
    a. Install Size 4 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
       OR
       Install Size 2 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).

H. Base Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
3. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
4. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun.
5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars, **as directed**.

I. Walkway Installation
1. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions in locations indicated, to form walkways. Leave 3 inches (75 mm) of space between adjacent roof pavers.

J. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform inspections.
2. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
3. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
4. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

K. Protecting And Cleaning
1. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for

deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Owner.

2. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 53 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 53 16 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing
07 53 16 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 53 16 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 53 16 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 53 23 00 - EPDM MEMBRANE ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ethylene-propylene-diene-monomer (EPDM) roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Adhered EPDM membrane roofing system.
   b. Mechanically fastened EPDM membrane roofing system.
   c. Loosely laid and ballasted EPDM membrane roofing system.
   d. Vapor retarder.
   e. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
4. FM Approvals Listing: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120 **OR** Class 1A-135 **OR** Class 1A-150 **OR** Class 1A-165, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance (for “cool-roof” performance): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency, **as directed**.
6. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low **OR** steep, **as directed**,-slope roof products, **as directed**.
7. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:

a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, documentation indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.

3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
4. Samples: For each product included in the roofing system.
5. Manufacturer Certificate: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that membrane roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
6. Research/evaluation reports.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Maintenance data.
9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
3. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
4. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. EPDM Membrane Roofing
1. EPDM: ASTM D 4637, Type I, non-reinforced, **OR** Type II, scrim or fabric internally reinforced, **as directed**, uniform, flexible EPDM sheet.
   a. Thickness: 45 mils (1.1 mm) **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm) **OR** 75 mils (1.9 mm) **OR** 90 mils (2.2 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
   b. Exposed Face Color: Black **OR** White on black, **as directed**.
2. Fabric-Backed EPDM: ASTM D 4637, Type III, non-reinforced, uniform, flexible EPDM sheet, laminated to a nonwoven polyester fabric backing except at selvages.
   a. Composite Thickness: 90 mils (2.3 mm) **OR** 100 mils (2.5 mm) **OR** 105 mils (2.7 mm) **OR** 115 mils (2.9 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
   b. Exposed Face Color: Black **OR** White on black, **as directed**.

B. Auxiliary Membrane Roofing Materials
1. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.
   a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
      1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
      4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
      5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
      6) Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
      7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
      8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
      9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
      10) Other Adhesives and Sealants: 250 g/L.
2. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
3. Protection Sheet: Epichlorohydrin or neoprene non-reinforced flexible sheet, 55- to 60-mil- (1.4- to 1.5-mm-) thick, recommended by EPDM manufacturer for resistance to hydrocarbons, non-aromatic solvents, grease, and oil.
4. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based, **as directed**.
5. Modified Asphaltic Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
6. Water-Based, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard water-based, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
7. Low-Rise, Urethane, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roof system manufacturer's standard spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
8. Seaming Material: Single-component, butyl splicing adhesive and splice cleaner **OR** Manufacturer's standard, synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film, **as directed**.
9. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant, colored to match membrane roofing, **as directed**.
10. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.
11. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
12. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm thick), prepunched.

13. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
14. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.
15. Liquid coating, specifically formulated for coating EPDM membrane roofing, as follows:
    a. Type: Acrylic emulsion **OR** Hypalon, **as directed**.
    b. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

C. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate panel to roof deck.

D. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
   b. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

E. Roof Insulation
1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by EPDM membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
   a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
      OR
      Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.

5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other.
   a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulation-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

F. Insulation Accessories
1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
6. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

G. Asphalt Materials
1. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or Type IV **OR** ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified, **as directed**.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

H. Aggregate Ballast (for loosely laid and aggregate-ballasted installations)

1. Aggregate Ballast: Provide aggregate ballast that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation, of the following type and size:
   a. Aggregate Type: Smooth, washed, riverbed gravel or other acceptable smooth-faced stone **OR** Crushed gravel or crushed stone, **as directed**.
   b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm).
      OR
      Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm).
      OR
      Size: ASTM D 448, Size 3, ranging in size from 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm).

I. Roof Pavers
1. Lightweight Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled; and as follows:
   a. Size: 8 by 16 inches (200 by 400 mm) **OR** 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 12 by 16-1/2 inches (300 by 420 mm) **OR** 12 by 18 inches (300 by 450 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Weight: At least 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m) but not exceeding 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m).
   c. Compressive Strength: 2500 psi (17 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
2. Rubber Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight rubber units, 24 by 24 by 2-1/4 inches (600 by 600 by 57 mm), 6 lb/sq. ft. (30 kg/sq. m) specially manufactured for use as roof ballast; with grooved back for four-way drainage, beveled and doweled; and as follows:
   a. Perimeter Securement Strip: Manufacturer's standard coated steel sheet channel **OR** aluminum sheet channel **OR** mill-finish aluminum sheet hold down **OR** coated aluminum sheet hold down, color as selected, **as directed**, and fasteners.
   b. Color: Black **OR** Gray **OR** Terra cotta, **as directed**.
3. Heavyweight Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
   a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
   b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
   c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

J. Walkways
1. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads **OR** rolls, **as directed**, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
2. Walkway Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
   a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
   b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
   c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
4. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking", according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

B. Substrate Board
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
   a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Vapor-Retarder Installation
1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
   a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
      OR
      Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
3. Built-Up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
4. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

D. Insulation Installation
1. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
2. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
3. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
4. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.

a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.

5. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
   a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
   a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
   b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
   c. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
      OR
      Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
8. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
   a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
9. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
   a. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
   b. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
      OR
      Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
      OR
      Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
10. Loosely Laid Insulation: Loosely lay insulation units over substrate.
11. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**.
    a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
       OR
       Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

E. Adhered Membrane Roofing Installation
   1. Adhere membrane **OR** fabric-backed membrane, **as directed**, roofing over area to receive roofing according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.

2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
5. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Apply a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt to substrate at temperature and rate required by manufacturer and install fabric-backed membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
   OR
   Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer and install fabric-backed membrane roofing.
6. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeters.
7. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
8. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
   a. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by membrane roofing system manufacturer.
9. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
10. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
11. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
12. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing membrane roofing to maintain weather-tightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
13. Adhere protection sheet over membrane roofing at locations indicated.

F. Mechanically Fastened Membrane Roofing Installation
   1. Mechanically fasten membrane roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.
      a. For in-splice attachment, install membrane roofing with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.
   2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
   3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
   4. Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
   5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
   6. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
      a. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by membrane roofing system manufacturer.
   7. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
   8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.

9. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
10. In-Splice Attachment: Secure one edge of membrane roofing using fastening plates or metal battens centered within membrane splice and mechanically fasten membrane roofing to roof deck. Field splice seam.
    OR
    Through-Membrane Attachment: Secure membrane roofing using fastening plates or metal battens and mechanically fasten membrane roofing to roof deck. Cover battens and fasteners with a continuous cover strip.
11. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weather-tightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
12. Adhere protection sheet over membrane roofing at locations indicated.

G. Loosely Laid And Ballasted Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Loosely lay membrane roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.
    a. Comply with requirements in SPRI RP-4 for System 1 **OR** System 2 **OR** System 3, **as directed**.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere perimeter of membrane roofing according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
    OR
    Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing at corners, perimeters, and transitions according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
    a. At corners and perimeters, omit aggregate ballast leaving membrane roofing exposed.
    b. At corners and perimeters, adhere a second layer of membrane roofing
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
6. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
    a. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by membrane roofing system manufacturer.
7. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
8. Leave seams uncovered until inspected by membrane roofing system manufacturer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
9. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
10. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
11. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weather-tightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
12. Adhere protection sheet over membrane roofing at locations indicated.
13. Install protection mat over membrane roofing, overlapping a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Install an additional protection mat layer at projections, pipes, vents, and drains, overlapping a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
14. Aggregate Ballast, **as directed**: Apply uniformly over membrane roofing at the rate required by membrane roofing system manufacturer, but not less than the following, spreading with care to minimize possibility of damage to membrane roofing system. Lay ballast as membrane roofing is installed, leaving membrane roofing ballasted at the end of the workday.

a. Ballast Weight: Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
OR
Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), at corners and perimeter; Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m), elsewhere.
OR
Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).

15. Roof-Paver Ballast: Install lightweight **OR** heavyweight, **as directed**, roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions.
OR
Roof-Paver Ballast: Install rubber roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions, in locations indicated.
a. Install perimeter paver edge securement.
OR
Roof-Paver and Aggregate Ballast: Install heavyweight roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions on roof corners and perimeter.
b. Install Size 4 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
OR
Install Size 2 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).

H. Base Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
3. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
4. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars, **as directed**.

I. Coating Installation
1. Apply coatings to membrane roofing **OR** base flashings, **as directed**, according to manufacturer's written recommendations, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.

J. Walkway Installation
1. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions in locations indicated, to form walkways. Leave 3 inches (75 mm) of space between adjacent roof pavers.

K. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform inspections.
2. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
3. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
4. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

L. Protecting And Cleaning

1. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 53 23 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 53 23 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing
07 53 23 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 53 23 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 53 29 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing
07 53 29 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 53 29 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 53 29 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 54 19 00 - POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for polyvinyl-chloride (PVC) roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Adhered PVC membrane roofing system.
   b. Mechanically fastened PVC membrane roofing system.
   c. Loosely laid and ballasted PVC membrane roofing system.
   d. Vapor retarder.
   e. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

C. Definitions
1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
4. FM Approvals Listing, **as directed**: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120 **OR** Class 1A-135 **OR** Class 1A-150 **OR** Class 1A-165, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low **OR** steep, **as directed**,-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance(for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
4. Samples: For each product included in the roofing system.
5. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
6. Research/evaluation reports.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Maintenance data.
9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
3. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
4. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. PVC Membrane Roofing
1. PVC Sheet: ASTM D 4434, Type II, Grade I, glass fiber reinforced, felt backed.
a. Thickness: 48 mils (1.2 mm), minimum **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm), nominal **OR** 72 mils (1.8 mm) **OR** 80 mils (2.0 mm) **OR** 96 mils (2.4 mm), **as directed**.
b. Exposed Face Color: Gray.

OR

PVC Sheet: ASTM D 4434, Type III, fabric reinforced and fabric backed, **as directed**.
a. Thickness: 45 mils (1.1 mm), minimum **OR** 48 mils (1.2 mm) **OR** 50 mils (1.27 mm) **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm), nominal **OR** 72 mils (1.8 mm) **OR** 80 mils (2.0 mm) **OR** 100 mils (2.5 mm), **as directed**.
b. Exposed Face Color: White **OR** Gray, **as directed**.

OR

PVC Sheet: ASTM D 4434, Type IV, fabric reinforced and fabric backed, **as directed**.
a. Thickness: 36 mils (0.9 mm), minimum **OR** 40 mils (1.0 mm), nominal **OR** 50 mils (1.27 mm) **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm), nominal **OR** 72 mils (1.8 mm) **OR** 80 mils (2.0 mm) **OR** 100 mils (2.5 mm), **as directed**.
b. Exposed Face Color: White **OR** Gray, **as directed**.

B. Auxiliary Membrane Roofing Materials
1. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, and compatible with membrane roofing.
a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
7) PVC Welding Compounds: 510 g/L.
8) Adhesive Primer for Plastic: 650 g/L
9) Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
10) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
11) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
12) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
2. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard sheet flashing of same material, type, reinforcement, thickness, and color as PVC sheet membrane.
3. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based, **as directed**.
4. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
5. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
6. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm) thick, prepunched.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
8. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

C. Substrate Boards

1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

D. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
      OR
      Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

E. Roof Insulation
1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by PVC membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
   a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
      OR
      Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other.
   a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.

8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

F. Insulation Accessories
1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
6. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
OR
Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
OR
Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
OR
Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

G. Asphalt Materials
1. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or Type IV **OR** ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified, **as directed**.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

H. Aggregate Ballast (for loosely laid and aggregate-ballasted installations)
1. Aggregate Ballast: Provide aggregate ballast that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation, of the following type and size:
a. Aggregate Type: Smooth, washed, riverbed gravel or other acceptable smooth-faced stone **OR** Crushed gravel or crushed stone, **as directed**.
b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm).
OR
Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm).
OR
Size: ASTM D 448, Size 3, ranging in size from 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm).

I. Roof Pavers
1. Lightweight Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled; and as follows:
   a. Size: 8 by 16 inches (200 by 400 mm) **OR** 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 12 by 16-1/2 inches (300 by 420 mm) **OR** 12 by 18 inches (300 by 450 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Weight: At least 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m) but not exceeding 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m).
   c. Compressive Strength: 2500 psi (17 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
2. Heavyweight Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
   a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
   b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
   c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

J. Walkways
1. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads **OR** rolls, **as directed**, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
2. Walkway Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
   a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
   b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
   c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
4. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking", according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

B. Substrate Board
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.

a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
OR
Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Vapor-Retarder Installation
1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
   a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
   OR
   Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
3. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
4. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

D. Insulation Installation
1. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
2. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
3. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
4. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
   a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
5. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
   a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
   a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
   b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
   c. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
   d. Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

8. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    OR
    Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
9. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    a. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    OR
    Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    b. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
    OR
    Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    OR
    Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
10. Loosely Laid Insulation: Loosely lay insulation units over substrate.
11. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**.
    a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    OR
    Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
12. Install slip sheet over insulation **OR** cover board, **as directed**, and immediately beneath membrane roofing.

E. Adhered Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Adhere membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. Install sheet according to ASTM D 5036.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
5. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
6. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
    a. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
    b. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
    c. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.

8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.

F. Mechanically Fastened Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Mechanically fasten membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Install sheet according to ASTM D 5082.
   b. For in-splice attachment, install membranes roofing with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
6. In-Seam Attachment: Secure one edge of PVC sheet using fastening plates or metal battens centered within membrane seam and mechanically fasten PVC sheet to roof deck.
7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
   a. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
   b. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
   c. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.

G. Loosely Laid And Ballasted Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Loosely lay membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Comply with requirements in SPRI RP-4 for System 1 **OR** System 2 **OR** System 3, **as directed**.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere perimeter of membrane roofing according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
   OR
   Mechanically fasten **OR** adhere, **as directed**, membrane roofing at corners, perimeters, and transitions according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
   a. At corners and perimeters, omit aggregate ballast leaving membrane roofing exposed.
      OR
      At corners and perimeters, adhere a second layer of membrane roofing.
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
6. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
   a. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
   b. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.

c. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.

7. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
8. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing.
9. Install protection mat over membrane roofing, overlapping a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Install an additional protection mat layer at projections, pipes, vents, and drains, overlapping a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
10. Aggregate Ballast: Apply uniformly over membrane roofing at the rate required by membrane roofing system manufacturer, but not less than the following, spreading with care to minimize possibility of damage to membrane roofing system. Lay ballast as membrane roofing is installed, leaving membrane roofing ballasted at the end of the workday.
    a. Ballast Weight: Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
       OR
       Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), at corners and perimeter; Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m), elsewhere.
       OR
       Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).
11. Roof-Paver Ballast: Install lightweight **OR** heavyweight, **as directed**, roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    OR
    Roof-Paver and Aggregate Ballast: Install heavyweight roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions on roof corners and perimeter.
    a. Install Size 4 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
       OR
       Install Size 2 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).

H. Base Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
3. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
4. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars, **as directed**.

I. Walkway Installation
1. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions in locations indicated, to form walkways. Leave 3 inches (75 mm) of space between adjacent roof pavers.

J. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
3. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

4. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

K. Protecting And Cleaning
1. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates; and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 54 19 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 54 19 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 54 23 00 - THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Adhered TPO membrane roofing system.
   b. Mechanically fastened TPO membrane roofing system.
   c. Loosely laid and ballasted TPO membrane roofing system.
   d. Vapor retarder.
   e. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

C. Definitions
1. TPO: Thermoplastic polyolefin.
2. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
4. FM Approvals Listing, **as directed**: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
   a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120 **OR** Class 1A-135 **OR** Class 1A-150 **OR** Class 1A-165, **as directed**.
   b. Hail Resistance: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low **OR** steep, **as directed**,-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
4. Samples: For each product included in the roofing system.
5. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
6. Research/evaluation reports.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Maintenance data.
9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
3. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
4. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. TPO Membrane Roofing
1. Fabric-Reinforced Thermoplastic Polyolefin Sheet: ASTM D 6878, internally fabric or scrim reinforced, uniform, flexible fabric backed, **as directed**, TPO sheet.
   a. Thickness: 45 mils (1.1 mm) **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
   b. Exposed Face Color: Black **OR** Gray **OR** Tan **OR** White, **as directed**.

B. Auxiliary Membrane Roofing Materials
1. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, and compatible with membrane roofing.
   a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
      1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
      4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
      5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
      6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
      7) Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
      8) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
      9) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
      10) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
2. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced thermoplastic polyolefin sheet flashing, 55 mils (1.4 mm) thick, minimum, of same color as sheet membrane.
3. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based, **as directed**.
4. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
5. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
6. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm thick), prepunched.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
8. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

C. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR
   Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   OR

Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.

2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

D. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
   a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
      OR
      Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

E. Roof Insulation
1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
   a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
      OR
      Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other.
   a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

F. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
6. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.
   OR
   Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

G. Asphalt Materials
1. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or Type IV **OR** ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified, **as directed**.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

H. Aggregate Ballast (for loosely laid and aggregate-ballasted installations)
1. Aggregate Ballast: Provide aggregate ballast that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation, of the following type and size:
   a. Aggregate Type: Smooth, washed, riverbed gravel or other acceptable smooth-faced stone **OR** Crushed gravel or crushed stone, **as directed**.
   b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm).
      OR
      Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm).
      OR
      Size: ASTM D 448, Size 3, ranging in size from 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm).

I. Roof Pavers
1. Lightweight Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled; and as follows:
   a. Size: 8 by 16 inches (200 by 400 mm) **OR** 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 12 by 16-1/2 inches (300 by 420 mm) **OR** 12 by 18 inches (300 by 450 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Weight: At least 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m) but not exceeding 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m).
   c. Compressive Strength: 2500 psi (17 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2. Heavyweight Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
   a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
   b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
   c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

J. Walkways
1. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads **OR** rolls, **as directed**, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
2. Walkway Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
   a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
   b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
   c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
4. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking", according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

B. Substrate Board
1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
   a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Vapor-Retarder Installation

1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
   a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
   a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
      OR
      Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
3. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
4. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

D. Insulation Installation
1. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
2. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
3. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
4. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
   a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
5. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
   a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
   a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
   b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
   c. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
   d. Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
8. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
   a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      OR
      Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

9. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    a. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    OR
    Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    b. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
    OR
    Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    OR
    Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
10. Loosely Laid Insulation: Loosely lay insulation units over substrate.
11. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**.
    a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    OR
    Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
12. Install slip sheet over insulation **OR** cover board, **as directed**, and immediately beneath membrane roofing.

E. Adhered Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Adhere membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
5. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
6. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
    a. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
    b. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
    c. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system, **as directed**.

F. Mechanically Fastened Membrane Roofing Installation

1. Mechanically fasten membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. For in-splice attachment, install membranes roofing with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
6. In-Seam Attachment: Secure one edge of TPO sheet using fastening plates or metal battens centered within membrane seam and mechanically fasten TPO sheet to roof deck.
7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
   a. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
   b. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
   c. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.

G. Loosely Laid And Ballasted Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Loosely lay membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Comply with requirements in SPRI RP-4 for System 1 **OR** System 2 **OR** System 3, **as directed**.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere perimeter of membrane roofing according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
   OR
   Mechanically fasten **OR** adhere, **as directed**, membrane roofing at corners, perimeters, and transitions according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
   a. At corners and perimeters, omit aggregate ballast leaving membrane roofing exposed.
      OR
      At corners and perimeters, adhere a second layer of membrane roofing.
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
6. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
   a. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
   b. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
   c. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
7. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
8. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing.
9. Install protection mat over membrane roofing, overlapping a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Install an additional protection mat layer at projections, pipes, vents, and drains, overlapping a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

10. Aggregate Ballast: Apply uniformly over membrane roofing at the rate required by membrane roofing system manufacturer, but not less than the following, spreading with care to minimize possibility of damage to membrane roofing system. Lay ballast as membrane roofing is installed, leaving membrane roofing ballasted at the end of the workday.
    a. Ballast Weight: Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
       OR
       Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), at corners and perimeter; Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m), elsewhere.
       OR
       Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).
11. Roof-Paver Ballast: Install lightweight **OR** heavyweight, **as directed**, roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    OR
    Roof-Paver and Aggregate Ballast: Install heavyweight roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions on roof corners and perimeter.
    a. Install Size 4 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).
       OR
       Install Size 2 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).

H. Base Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
3. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
4. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars, **as directed**.

I. Walkway Installation
1. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions in locations indicated, to form walkways. Leave 3 inches (75 mm) of space between adjacent roof pavers.

J. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
3. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
4. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

K. Protecting And Cleaning
1. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.

2. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates; and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 54 23 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 54 23 00	07 01 50 81	Preparation for Re-Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 56 00 00 - COATED FOAMED ROOFING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for coated foamed roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Spray-applied, polyurethane foam insulation.
b. Elastomeric roof coatings.
c. Mineral granules.
d. Aggregate.
e. Walkways.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Watertightness: Provide coated foamed roofing that is watertight and will not permit the passage of water.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide polyurethane foam, elastomeric coatings, and miscellaneous roofing materials that are compatible with one another and able to bond to substrate under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by coated foamed roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide a coated foamed roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to SEI/ASCE 7.
4. FMG Listing: Provide roofing system and component materials that comply with requirements in FMG 4450 for steel roof decks and FMG 4470 for roof covers as part of a foamed roofing system and that are listed in FMG's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FMG markings.
a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** 75 **OR** 90 **OR** 105 **OR** 120, **as directed**.
b. Hail-Resistance Classification: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, documentation indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
3. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
4. Research/evaluation reports.
5. Maintenance data.
6. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
7. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who is approved, authorized, or licensed by roof coating manufacturer for installation of manufacturer's product over polyurethane foam.

a. Engage an installer who participates in and who has fulfilled requirements of the SPFA Accreditation Program for company accreditation and individual applicator accreditation for personnel assigned to work on Project.

2. Source Limitations: Obtain polyurethane foam materials from single source or producer and coating products from single, coated foamed roofing manufacturer.
3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide coated foamed roofing systems with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical systems per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively; ASTM E 84.
   b. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108; Class A.
   c. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119, determined for coated polyurethane foam roofing as part of a roof assembly.
4. Comply with recommendations in NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing."
5. Comply with recommendations in SPFA AY 104, "Spray Polyurethane Foam Systems for New and Remedial Roofing."
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, shelf life, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.
3. Remove and replace material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Coated foamed roofing manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace coated foamed roofing that does not comply with requirements or that does not remain watertight within five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Polyurethane Foam
1. Polyurethane Foam: Rigid cellular polyurethane, spray applied, produced by the catalyzed chemical reaction of polyisocyanates with polyhydroxyls, with stabilizers, fire retardants, and blowing agents added; and complying with ASTM C 1029, Type III, as certified by a qualified independent testing agency.
   a. In-Place Density: 2.8 to 3.0 lb/cu. ft. (44.9 to 48.1 kg/cu. m); ASTM D 1622.
   b. Surface-Burning Characteristic: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      1) Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.

B. Urethane Coatings
1. Urethane Coatings: Liquid urethane elastomeric coating system, specifically formulated for coating spray polyurethane roofing, of the following composition, coat type, and topcoat color and complying with specified performance and physical requirements.
   a. Base-Coat Composition and Type: One-component **OR** Two-component, **as directed**, aromatic urethane.

b. Topcoat Composition and Type: One-component **OR** Two-component, **as directed**, aromatic **OR** aliphatic, **as directed**, urethane.
c. Topcoat Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan **OR** Copper **OR** Black, **as directed**.
d. Topcoat Color at Walkways: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan **OR** Copper **OR** Black, **as directed**.
e. Tensile Strength: 400 psi (2.8 MPa) per ASTM D 412.
f. Elongation: 300 percent at 75 deg F (24 deg C) per ASTM D 412.
g. Permanent Set at Break: 30 percent maximum per ASTM D 412.
h. Tear Resistance: 100 lbf/inch (17.5 kN/m) per ASTM D 1004.
i. Water Absorption: 3 percent maximum by weight, 168 hours at 75 deg F (24 deg C) per ASTM D 471.
j. Permeance:
1) Minimum 0.7 perms (40.2 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) at 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick per ASTM E 96.
OR
Minimum 5.0 perms (286 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) at 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick per ASTM E 96.

C. Silicone Coatings
1. Silicone Coatings: Liquid silicone elastomeric coating system, complying with ASTM D 6694 and specifically formulated for coating spray polyurethane roofing.
a. Base-Coat and Topcoat Composition: One-component **OR** Two-component, **as directed**, silicone.
b. Topcoat Color: White **OR** Gray,**as directed** .
c. Topcoat Color at Walkways: White **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
d. Permeance: Minimum 5.0 perms (286 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) at 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick per ASTM E 96.

D. Acrylic Coatings
1. Acrylic Coatings: Liquid acrylic elastomeric emulsion coating system, complying with ASTM D 6083 and specifically formulated for coating spray polyurethane roofing.
a. Topcoat Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.
b. Topcoat Color at Walkways: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.
c. Permeance: Minimum 5.0 perms (286 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) at 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick per ASTM E 96.

E. Substrate Board
1. Thermal Barrier:
a. Glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board, ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), Type X, **as directed**.
b. ASTM C 36/C 36M, 5/8-inch (16-mm) gypsum board base, Type X.
2. Recovery Board and Fasteners: As recommended by polyurethane foam manufacturer, and meeting the requirements of Division 07 Section "Preparation For Re-roofing".
3. Thermal-Barrier Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, and designed and sized for fastening thermal barrier to substrate.

F. Auxiliary Materials
1. Primer: Polyurethane foam manufacturer's standard factory-formulated primer.
2. Vapor Retarder: Fluid applied **OR** Bituminous membrane **OR** As recommended by coated foamed roofing manufacturer, **as directed**.
3. Mineral Granules: Ceramic-coated roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and 98 percent of mass retained by No. 40 (0.42-mm) sieve.
a. Color: Buff white **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Red, **as directed**.
4. Aggregate: Coarse mineral aggregate, 3/4 inch (19 mm) maximum, ASTM D 1863, No. 7 or No. 67 gradation.

5. Reinforcement: Flexible polyester or fiberglass mat of weight, type, and composition recommended by roof coating manufacturer for embedment in liquid coating.
6. Walkway Pads: Factory formed of nonwoven PVC strands, porous, UV stabilized, of 5/16-inch (8-mm) nominal thickness, and approved by roof coating manufacturer. Provide pad sizes indicated.
   a. Color: Yellow **OR** Gray **OR** Blue **OR** Orange **OR** Green, **as directed**.
7. Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Use NT, Grade NS, Type M, multicomponent urethane **OR** Type S, one-component, neutral- or acid-curing silicone, **as directed**, and as recommended by coated foamed roofing manufacturer for substrate and joint conditions and for compatibility with roofing materials.
8. Sheet Flashing and Accessories: Types recommended by coated foamed roofing manufacturer, provided at locations indicated and as recommended by coated foamed roofing manufacturer.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Substrate Board
   1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
      a. Fasten thermal barrier to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FMG's "Approval Guide" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
      b. Fasten thermal barrier to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
      c. Install recovery board according to coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions and the requirements of Division 07 Section "Preparation For Re-roofing". Fasten through existing roofing to roof structure as indicated. Space fasteners for wind-uplift conditions at Project site **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.

B. Surface Preparation
   1. Clean and prepare substrate according to coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, dew-free, and dry substrate for coated foamed roofing application.
   2. Remove grease, oil, form-release agents, curing compounds, and other contaminants from substrate.
   3. Prepare substrate for recovering according toDivision 07 Section "Preparation For Re-roofing" and to coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
   4. Cover and mask adjoining surfaces not receiving coated foamed roofing to prevent overspray or spillage affecting other construction. Close off roof drains, removing roof-drain plugs when no work is being done or when rain is forecast.
      a. Remove masking after polyurethane foam application and remask adjoining substrates before coating.
   5. Prime substrate if recommended by coated foamed roofing manufacturer.
   6. Fill, cover, or tape joints and cracks in substrate that exceed a width of 1/4 inch (6 mm). Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks before applying polyurethane foam.
   7. Install vapor retarder according to coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Polyurethane Foam Application
   1. General: Mix and apply polyurethane foam according to ASTM D 5469 and coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
      a. Fill irregularities and areas of ponding.
      b. Apply the required full thickness of polyurethane foam in any specific area on same day.
      c. Apply only the area of polyurethane foam that can be covered on same day with required base coating.
      d. Apply polyurethane foam to avoid overspray beyond immediate area of work.

2. Apply polyurethane foam in lift thicknesses not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) and not more than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
3. Uniformly apply total thickness of polyurethane foam indicated, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm), to a surface tolerance of plus 1/4 inch (6 mm) and no minus.
4. Apply polyurethane foam to roof penetrations, terminations, and vertical surfaces as indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, extend polyurethane foam at least 4 inches (100 mm) above elevation of adjacent roof field.
5. Surface Finish: Provide finished surface of polyurethane foam within the following range of surface textures as defined by ASTM D 5469:
   a. Texture: Smooth to orange peel **OR** coarse orange peel **OR** rippling verge of popcorn, **as directed**.
6. Remove and replace polyurethane foam not complying with minimum surface-texture limitations. Remove defective thickness and prepare and reapply polyurethane foam with acceptable, uniform results.

D. Coating Application
1. Allow polyurethane foam substrate to cure for a minimum of two hours and remove dust, dirt, water, and other contaminants before applying coating.
2. Apply coating system to polyurethane foam, in two or more coats and according to roof coating manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.
3. Apply base coat and one or more topcoats to obtain a uniform, seamless membrane free of blisters and pinholes. Apply each coat at right angles to preceding coat, using contrasting colors for successive coats.
   a. Apply base coat on same day as polyurethane foam is applied and allow it to cure.
   b. Apply topcoat(s) after removing dust, dirt, water, and other contaminants from base coat.
   c. Urethane Coating: Apply base coat and topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness recommend by coated foamed roofing manufacturer **OR** of 25 mils (0.64 mm) **OR** of 30 mils (0.76 mm) **OR** of 35 mils (0.89 mm), **as directed**.
   d. Silicone Coating: Apply base coat and topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness recommend by coated foamed roofing manufacturer **OR** of 20 mils (0.50 mm) **OR** of 22 mils (0.56 mm) **OR** of 26 mils (0.66 mm) **OR** of 30 mils (0.76 mm), **as directed**.
   e. Acrylic Coating: Apply base coat and topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness recommend by coated foamed roofing manufacturer **OR** of 25 mils (0.64 mm) **OR** of 28 mils (0.71 mm) **OR** of 32 mils (0.81 mm), **as directed**.
4. Apply coating system at wall terminations and vertical surfaces to extend beyond polyurethane foam by 4 inches (100 mm), minimum.
5. Mineral Granules: Apply mineral granules over wet topcoat using pressure equipment at the rate of 0.5 lb/sq. ft. (2.45 kg/sq. m). Remove excess granules after topcoat has cured.
6. Sealant: Apply sealant to perimeter and other terminations where indicated or required by coated foamed roofing manufacturer.
7. Walkways: Install roof walkways in pattern and locations indicated. Mask off completed roof coating adjacent to walkways and apply one or two additional topcoats to achieve a minimum dry film thickness recommended by coated foamed roofing manufacturer. Spread mineral granules uniformly at a rate of 0.5 lb/sq. ft. (2.45 kg/sq. m) into final wet coating. Remove masking and excess granules after topcoat has cured.
8. Walkways: Install roof walkways in pattern and locations indicated. Mask off completed roof coating adjacent to walkways and apply one additional topcoat to achieve a minimum dry film thickness recommended by coated foamed roofing manufacturer. Lay reinforcing fabric into wet coating and apply another topcoat, completely filling fabric. Spread mineral granules uniformly at a rate of 0.5 lb/sq. ft. (2.45 kg/sq. m) into final wet coating. Remove masking and excess granules after topcoat has cured.
9. Walkways: Install walkway pads in pattern and locations indicated. Adhere walkway pads to substrate with compatible adhesive according to coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
10. Aggregate: Apply aggregate uniformly over coated polyurethane foam at coated foamed roofing manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 6 lb/sq. ft. (29 kg/sq. m) and a minimum

thickness of 3/4 inch (19 mm). Spread with care to prevent puncturing coating and to minimize damage to substrate foam.

E. Field Quality Control
1. Correct deficiencies in, or remove, foam or coatings that do not comply with requirements; fill and repair substrates and reapply materials.
2. Additional testing, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with requirements.
3. Refill cores, repair slits, and recoat test areas.

F. Repair And Recoating
1. Repair and recoat coated foamed roofing according to ASTM D 6705 and coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Curing, Protecting, And Cleaning
1. Cure coatings according to coated foamed roofing manufacturer's written instructions, taking care to prevent contamination and damage during application stages and curing. Do not permit traffic on uncured coatings.
2. Protect coated foamed roofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 56 00 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 56 00 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 56 00 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 56 00 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 57 13 00	07 56 00 00	Coated Foamed Roofing
07 58 00 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 62 13 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sheet metal flashing and trim. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Manufactured Products:
1) Manufactured through-wall flashing and counterflashing.
2) Manufactured reglets and counterflashing.
b. Formed Products:
1) Formed roof drainage sheet metal fabrications.
2) Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
3) Formed steep-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
4) Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
5) Formed equipment support flashing.
6) Formed overhead-piping safety pans.

C. Performance Requirements
1. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
2. Fabricate and install roof edge flashing and copings capable of resisting the following forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49:
a. Wind Zone 1: For velocity pressures of 10 to 20 lbf/sq. ft. (0.48 to 0.96 kPa): 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.92-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 60-lbf/sq. ft. (2.87-kPa) corner uplift force, and 20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.96-kPa) outward force.
b. Wind Zone 1: For velocity pressures of 21 to 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1.00 to 1.44 kPa): 60-lbf/sq. ft. (2.87-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 90-lbf/sq. ft. (4.31-kPa) corner uplift force, and 30-lbf/sq. ft. (1.44-kPa) outward force.
c. Wind Zone 2: For velocity pressures of 31 to 45 lbf/sq. ft. (1.48 to 2.15 kPa): 90-lbf/sq. ft. (4.31-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 120-lbf/sq. ft. (5.74-kPa) corner uplift force, and 45-lbf/sq. ft. (2.15-kPa) outward force.
d. Wind Zone 3: For velocity pressures of 46 to 104 lbf/sq. ft. (2.20 to 4.98 kPa): 208-lbf/sq. ft. (9.96-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 312-lbf/sq. ft. (14.94-kPa) corner uplift force, and 104-lbf/sq. ft. (4.98-kPa) outward force.
3. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.

a. Include details for forming, joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including pattern of seams, termination points, fixed points, expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, edge conditions, special conditions, and connections to adjoining work.

3. Samples: For each exposed product and for each finish specified.
4. Maintenance data.
5. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
2. Copper Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
3. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
   a. Build mockup of typical roof eave, including built-in gutter, fascia, fascia trim, and apron flashing, approximately 10 feet (3.0 m) long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within 20 **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sheet Metals
1. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
2. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 or H01 temper.
   a. Non-Patinated Exposed Finish: Mill.
   b. Non-Patinated, Exposed, Lacquered Finish: Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
      1) Brushed Satin (Lacquered): M32-06x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; with clear organic coating); coating of "Incralac," waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, methyl methacrylate copolymer lacquer with UV inhibitor, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
      2) Mirror Polished (Lacquered): M22-06x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, specular; with clear organic coating); coating of "Incralac," waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, air-drying, methyl methacrylate copolymer lacquer with UV inhibitor, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
   c. Pre-Patinated Copper-Sheet Finish: Dark brown **OR** Verdigris, **as directed**, pre-patinated according to ASTM B 882.

3. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required.
   a. As-Milled Finish: Mill **OR** One-side bright mill **OR** Standard one-side bright **OR** Standard two-side bright, **as directed**, finish.
   b. Alclad Finish: Metallurgically bonded surfacing to both sides, forming a composite aluminum sheet with reflective luster.
   c. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
   d. Factory Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is indicated, pretreat with white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
   e. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
   f. Color Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
      1) Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black, **as directed**.
      2) Color Range: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
   g. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes:
      1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
      2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
      3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats.
      4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
      5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
      6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat.
      7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
      8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mils (0.97 mm) for topcoat.
   h. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   i. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed.
   a. Finish: 2D (dull, cold rolled) **OR** 2B (bright, cold rolled) **OR** 3 (coarse, polished directional satin) **OR** 4 (polished directional satin), **as directed**.
   b. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
5. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, dead-soft, fully annealed stainless-steel sheet of minimum uncoated thickness indicated; coated on both sides with a zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin), with factory-applied gray preweathering.
6. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper, of minimum uncoated weight (thickness) indicated; coated on both sides with a zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin).
7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.

a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; structural quality.
b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
c. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, and mill phosphatized for field painting **OR** and with manufacturer's standard clear acrylic coating on both sides, **as directed**.
d. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
    2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
    3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats.
    4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
    5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
    6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat.
    7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
    8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 3.8 mils (0.97 mm) for topcoat.
e. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
f. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

8. Zinc Sheet: Zinc, 99 percent pure, alloyed with a maximum of 1 percent copper and titanium; with manufacturer's standard factory-applied, flexible, protective back coating.
    a. Finish: Bright rolled **OR** Preweathered gray **OR** Preweathered black, **as directed**.

B. Underlayment Materials
1. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
2. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
3. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
    a. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C).
    b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C).
4. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

C. Miscellaneous Materials
1. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
2. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
    a. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.

1) Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
2) Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
3) Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.

b. Fasteners for Copper **OR** Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper, **as directed**, Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze or Series 300 stainless steel.
c. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
d. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
e. Fasteners for Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
f. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) **OR** Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated, **as directed**, Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 or Series 300 stainless steel.
g. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 or Series 300 stainless steel.

3. Solder:
a. For Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
b. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with an acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
c. For Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel **OR** Copper, **as directed**: ASTM B 32, 100 percent tin.
d. For Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead or Grade Sn60, 60 percent tin and 40 percent lead.
e. For Zinc: ASTM B 32, 40 percent tin and 60 percent lead with low antimony, as recommended by manufacturer.

4. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
5. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** polysulfide **OR** silicone, **as directed**, polymer sealant; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
6. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
7. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
8. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
9. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

D. Manufactured Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim
1. Through-Wall Ribbed Sheet Metal Flashing: Manufacture through-wall sheet metal flashing for embedment in masonry with ribs at 3-inch (75-mm) intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond. Manufacture through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face to receive counterflashing **OR** interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet, **as directed**.
a. Copper: 10 oz. (0.34 mm thick) minimum for fully concealed flashing; 16 oz. (0.55 mm thick) elsewhere.
b. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
2. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile indicated, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions **OR** with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet, **as directed**.
a. Material: Stainless steel, 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick **OR** Copper, 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) **OR** Aluminum, 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick **OR** Galvanized steel, 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick, **as directed**.

b. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
c. Stucco Type: Provide with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
d. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
e. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
f. Accessories:
1) Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
2) Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
g. Finish: Mill **OR** With manufacturer's standard color coating, **as directed**.

E. Fabrication, General
1. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item indicated. Fabricate items at the shop to greatest extent possible.
a. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
b. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
c. Form sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
d. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces exposed to view.
2. Fabrication Tolerances:
a. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
OR
Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant.
4. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and by FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49, **as directed**, for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
7. Seams:
a. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
OR
Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
8. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.

9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

F. Roof Drainage Sheet Metal Fabrications
1. Hanging Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections. Furnish flat-stock gutter spacers and gutter brackets fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by SMACNA but not less than twice the gutter thickness. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, gutter bead reinforcing bars, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters.
   a. Gutter Style: SMACNA designation A **OR** B **OR** C **OR** D **OR** E **OR** F **OR** G **OR** H **OR** I **OR** J **OR** K **OR** L, **as directed**.
   b. Expansion Joints: Lap type **OR** Butt type **OR** Butt type with cover plate **OR** Built in, **as directed**.
   c. Accessories: Continuous removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen **OR** Wire ball downspout strainer **OR** Valley baffles, **as directed**.
   d. Gutters with Girth up to 15 Inches (380 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      2) Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
      5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      6) Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
      7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
      8) Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Gutters with Girth 16 to 20 Inches (410 to 510 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      2) Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
      5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      6) Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
      7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
      8) Zinc: 0.039 inch (1.00 mm) **OR** 0.048 inch (1.25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   f. Gutters with Girth 21 to 25 Inches (530 to 640 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).
      2) Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
      5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).
      6) Galvanized Steel: 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
      7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
      8) Zinc: 0.048 inch (1.25 mm) **OR** 0.059 inch (1.50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   g. Gutters with Girth 26 to 30 Inches (660 to 760 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
      2) Aluminum: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless Steel: 0.031 inch (0.79 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
      5) Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
      6) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
   h. Gutters with Girth 31 to 35 Inches (790 to 890 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
      2) Stainless Steel: 0.038 inch (0.95 mm) thick.
      3) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 25 oz./sq. ft. (0.87 mm thick).
      4) Galvanized Steel: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) thick.
      5) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) thick.

2. Built-in Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, with riveted and soldered joints, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections. Fabricate expansion joints and accessories from same metal as gutters unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Fabricate gutters with built-in expansion joints and gutter-end expansion joints at walls.
   b. Accessories: Continuous removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen **OR** Bronze wire ball downspout strainer **OR** Wire ball downspout strainer, **as directed**.
   c. Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      2) Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
      3) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      5) Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3. Downspouts: Fabricate round **OR** rectangular **OR** open-face, **as directed**, downspouts complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
   a. Fabricated Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation 1-35A **OR** 1-35B **OR** 1-35C **OR** 1-35D **OR** 1-35E **OR** 1-35F **OR** 1-35G **OR** 1-35H **OR** 1-35I **OR** 1-35J, **as directed**.
   b. Manufactured Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation 1-34A **OR** 1-34B **OR** 1-34C **OR** 1-34D **OR** 1-34E, **as directed**.
   c. Hanger Style: <**Insert description**>.
   d. Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      2) Aluminum: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
      5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
      6) Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
      7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
      8) Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers of dimensions required with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper. Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated complete with outlet tubes, exterior flange trim, and built-in overflows. Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:

a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
b. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
f. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.

G. Low-Slope Roof Sheet Metal Fabrications
1. Roof-Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 10-foot- (3-m-) long, sections. Furnish with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, joint cover plates.
   a. Joint Style: Lap, 4 inches (100 mm) wide **OR** Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate **OR** Butt, with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates **OR** Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate and 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates, **as directed**.
   b. Fabricate with scuppers spaced 10 feet (3 m) apart, of dimensions required with 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide flanges and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper.
   c. Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).
      2) Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
      5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).
      6) Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
      7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
      8) Zinc: 0.048 inch (1.25 mm) **OR** 0.059 inch (1.50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
2. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 10-foot- (3-m-) long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, seal, and solder or weld watertight.
   a. Coping Profile: SMACNA figure designation 3-4A **OR** 3-4B **OR** 3-4C **OR** 3-4D **OR** 3-4E **OR** 3-4F **OR** 3-4G, **as directed**.
   b. Joint Style: Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate **OR** Butt, with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates **OR** Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate and 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates, **as directed**.
   c. Fabricate from the following materials:
      1) Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
      2) Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
      4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
      5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
      6) Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
      7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
      8) Zinc: 0.048 inch (1.25 mm) **OR** 0.059 inch (1.50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3. Roof and Roof to Wall Transition **OR** Roof to Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) Transition **OR** Roof to Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap Transition, **as directed,** Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)>.
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.

4. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick)>.
   b. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick)>.
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)>.
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   e. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   g. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
8. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick).
   b. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.

H. Steep-Slope Roof Sheet Metal Fabrications
1. Apron, Step, Cricket, and Backer Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
2. Valley Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).

e. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
g. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.

3. Drip Edges: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Eave, Rake, Ridge, and Hip Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)>.
   e. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   g. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.

I. Wall Sheet Metal Fabrications
1. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12-foot- (3.6-m-) long, sections, under copings, at shelf angles, and where indicated. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches (150 mm) beyond each side of wall openings. Form with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams where flashing is discontinuous. Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.

c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
e. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.

2. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches (100 mm) beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3. Wall Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   f. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) **OR** 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), **as directed**, thick.

J. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Fabrications
1. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
   c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   e. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
   f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
2. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
   a. Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
   b. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
   c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
   d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
   e. Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
   f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Underlayment Installation
1. General: Install underlayment as indicated on Drawings.
2. Polyethylene Sheet: Install polyethylene sheet with adhesive for anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped and taped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not

less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

B. Installation, General
1. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
   a. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
   b. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
   c. Space cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
   d. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
   e. Install sealant tape where indicated.
   f. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
   g. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
2. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
   a. Coat back side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
   b. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or install a course of polyethylene sheet.
3. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
4. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws **OR** metal decking not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance, **as directed**.
5. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction.
   a. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
   b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
6. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
   a. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
   b. Pre-tinning is not required for zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel and zinc-tin alloy-coated copper.
   c. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

d. Stainless-Steel Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets using solder recommended for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
e. Copper Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper.

7. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum **OR** zinc, **as directed**, where indicated and where necessary for strength.

C. Roof Drainage System Installation

1. General: Install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.
2. Hanging Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered joints or with lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchored gutter brackets **OR** straps **OR** twisted straps, **as directed**, spaced not more than 36 inches (900 mm) apart. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Slope to downspouts.
   a. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
   b. Loosely lock straps to front gutter bead and anchor to roof deck.
   c. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat **OR** eave or apron flashing, **as directed**.
   d. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart.
   e. Anchor gutter with spikes and ferrules spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 30 inches (750 mm), **as directed**, apart.
   f. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, 50 feet (15.24 m) apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
   g. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, removable **OR** hinged to swing open, **as directed**, for cleaning gutters.
3. Built-in Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Slope to downspouts. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
   a. Install felt underlayment layer in built-in gutter trough and extend to drip edge at eaves and under felt underlayment on roof sheathing. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with roofing nails. Install slip sheet over felt underlayment.
   b. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat **OR** eave or apron flashing, **as directed**.
   c. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart.
   d. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, 50 feet (15.24 m) apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
4. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) telescoping joints.
   a. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. in between.
   b. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
   c. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
5. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in asphalt roofing cement **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**, compatible with roofing membrane.
6. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers where indicated through parapet. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
   a. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and solder or seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
   b. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.

c. Solder or seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.

7. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor head rim 1 inch (25 mm) below scupper **OR** gutter, **as directed**, discharge.
8. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated. Lap joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) in direction of water flow.

D. Roof Flashing Installation
1. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
2. Roof Edge Flashing:
   a. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch (75-mm) centers.
      OR
      Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 24-inch (600-mm) **OR** 16-inch (400-mm), **as directed**, centers.
3. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as indicated.
   a. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 24-inch (600-mm) **OR** 16-inch (400-mm), **as directed**, centers.
   b. Anchor interior leg of coping with washers and screw fasteners through slotted holes at 24-inch (600-mm) centers.
4. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated.
   a. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 24-inch (600-mm) **OR** 16-inch (400-mm), **as directed**, centers.
   b. Anchor interior leg of coping with screw fasteners and washers at 24-inch (600-mm) **OR** 20-inch (500-mm), **as directed**, centers.
5. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
6. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and bed with sealant. Secure in a waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant **OR** interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant **OR** anchor and washer at 36-inch (900-mm) centers, **as directed**.
7. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric **OR** butyl, **as directed**, sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

E. Wall Flashing Installation
1. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
2. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Division 04 Section(s) "Unit Masonry" OR "Stone Masonry", **as directed**.
3. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Division 03 Section(s) "Cast-in-place Concrete" OR Division 04 Section(s) "Unit Masonry", **as directed**.

4. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches (100 mm) beyond wall openings.

F. Miscellaneous Flashing Installation
1. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans independent from structure above as indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.
2. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

G. Erection Tolerances
1. Installation Tolerances:
a. Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
OR
Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

H. Cleaning And Protection
1. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
2. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
3. Clean off excess sealants.
4. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
5. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 62 13 00

SECTION 07 63 00 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for fire suppression. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
b. Mechanical sleeve seals.
c. Sleeves.
d. Escutcheons.
e. Grout.
f. Fire-suppression equipment and piping demolition.
g. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
h. Painting and finishing.
i. Concrete bases.
j. Supports and anchorages.

C. Definitions
1. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
5. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
6. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
a. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
a. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
b. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

D. Submittals
1. Welding certificates.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

3. Electrical Characteristics for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipe, Tube, And Fittings
1. Refer to individual Division 28 for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
2. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Joining Materials
1. Refer to individual Division 28 for special joining materials not listed below.
2. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
   b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
6. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
8. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Plastic Piping: ASTM F 493.

C. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
   a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
   b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
   c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

D. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

3. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
   a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
5. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
6. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
7. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Escutcheons
1. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

F. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
   a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
   b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
   c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Fire-Suppression Demolition
1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
   a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
   b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
   c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
   d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
   e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

B. Piping Systems - Common Requirements
1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 28 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
3. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
7. Install piping at indicated slopes.
8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
10. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
11. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
12. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
    a. New Piping:
        1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
        2) Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
        3) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
        4) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type.
        5) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
        6) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
        7) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type.

            One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
        8) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
    b. Existing Piping: Use the following:

    c. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    d. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
    e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
        1) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
        OR
        Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.

f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
   1) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
      OR
      Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
   1) Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
      OR
      Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.
h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
   1) Split-casting, cast-brass type.
      OR
      Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
i. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

13. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
14. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
15. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
16. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
    a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
       1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
    b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
    c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
       1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
       2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
       3) Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
          a) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
    d. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
17. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    a. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
    b. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
    c. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
18. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    a. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

19. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
20. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
21. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

C. Piping Joint Construction
1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 28 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Para. 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
10. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.

D. Painting
1. Painting of fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" AND "Interior Painting".
2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

E. Concrete Bases
1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
    a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
    b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
    c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
    d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
    f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

F. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages
1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

G. Erection Of Wood Supports And Anchorages
1. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
2. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
3. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

H. Grouting
1. Mix and install grout for fire-suppression equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
7. Place grout around anchors.
8. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 07 63 00 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 63 00 00a - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for plumbing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
   b. Transition fittings.
   c. Dielectric fittings.
   d. Mechanical sleeve seals.
   e. Sleeves.
   f. Escutcheons.
   g. Grout.
   h. Plumbing demolition.
   i. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
   j. Painting and finishing.
   k. Concrete bases.
   l. Supports and anchorages.

C. Definitions
1. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
5. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
6. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
   a. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
   b. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
   c. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
   d. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
   a. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
   b. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

D. Submittals
1. Welding certificates.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

2. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
   a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
   b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
3. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipe, Tube, And Fittings
1. Refer to individual Division 14 for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
2. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Joining Materials
1. Refer to individual Division 14 for special joining materials not listed below.
2. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
   b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
6. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
8. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
   a. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
   b. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
   c. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
   d. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
9. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

C. Transition Fittings
1. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
   a. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.

b. Underground Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
c. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.

2. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
3. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
4. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
5. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

D. Dielectric Fittings
1. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
3. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
4. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
5. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
   a. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
6. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
7. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

E. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
   a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
   b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
   c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

F. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
3. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
   a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
5. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
6. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

7. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

G. Escutcheons
1. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

H. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
   a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
   b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
   c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Plumbing Demolition
1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
   a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
   b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
   c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
   d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
   e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

B. Piping Systems - Common Requirements
1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 14 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

3. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
7. Install piping at indicated slopes.
8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
10. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
11. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
12. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
    a. New Piping:
        1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
        2) Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
        3) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
        4) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type.
        5) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
        6) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
        7) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
        8) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
    b. Existing Piping: Use the following:
        1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
        2) Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
        3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
        4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
        5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
            a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
            OR

Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.

6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
   a) Split-casting, cast-brass type.
      OR
      Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

13. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
14. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
15. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
16. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
    a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
       1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
    b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
    c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
       1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
       2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
       3) Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
          a) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
    d. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
17. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    a. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
    b. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
    c. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
18. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    a. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
19. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
20. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
21. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

C. Piping Joint Construction
1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 14 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Para. 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   b. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
   c. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
   d. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
   e. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
   f. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
10. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
11. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
12. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
   a. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
   b. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
13. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Piping Connections
1. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   c. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
   d. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

E. Equipment Installation - Common Requirements
1. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

2. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
4. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

F. Painting
1. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" AND "Interior Painting".
2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

G. Concrete Bases
1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
   a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
   b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
   c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
   g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

H. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages
1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

I. Erection Of Wood Supports And Anchorages
1. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
2. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
3. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

J. Grouting
1. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
7. Place grout around anchors.
8. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 07 63 00 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 63 00 00b - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for HVAC. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
b. Transition fittings.
c. Dielectric fittings.
d. Mechanical sleeve seals.
e. Sleeves.
f. Escutcheons.
g. Grout.
h. HVAC demolition.
i. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
j. Painting and finishing.
k. Concrete bases.
l. Supports and anchorages.

C. Definitions
1. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
5. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
6. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
a. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
b. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
c. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
a. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
b. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

D. Submittals
1. Welding certificates.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

3. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipe, Tube, And Fittings
1. Refer to individual Division 21 for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
2. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Joining Materials
1. Refer to individual Division 21 for special joining materials not listed below.
2. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
6. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
8. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
a. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
b. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
9. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

C. Transition Fittings
1. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
2. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
3. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.

D. Dielectric Fittings
   1. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
   2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
   3. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
   4. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
   5. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
      a. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
   6. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
   7. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

E. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
   1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
      a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
      b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
      c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

F. Sleeves
   1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
   2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
   3. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
      a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
   5. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
   6. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
   7. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

G. Escutcheons
   1. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
   2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
   3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
      a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
   4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
      a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.

5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

H. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
   a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
   b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
   c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. HVAC Demolition
1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
   a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
   b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
   c. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
   d. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
   e. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
   f. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
   g. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

B. Piping Systems - Common Requirements
1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
3. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
7. Install piping at indicated slopes.
8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

10. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
11. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
12. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
    a. New Piping:
        1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
        2) Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
        3) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
        4) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type.
        5) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
        6) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
        7) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
            a) One-piece, cast-brass type.
            OR
            One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
        8) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
    b. Existing Piping: Use the following:
        1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
        2) Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
        3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
        4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
            a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
            OR
            Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
        5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
            a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
            OR
            Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.
        6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
            a) Split-casting, cast-brass type.
            OR
            Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
        7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
13. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
14. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.

15. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
16. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
    a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
        1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
    b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
    c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
        1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
        2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
        3) Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
            a) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
    d. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
17. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    a. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
    b. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
    c. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
18. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    a. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
19. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
20. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
21. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

C. Piping Joint Construction
    1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
    2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
    3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
    4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
    5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Para. 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
   c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
   d. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
10. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
11. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
12. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    a. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    b. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
13. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Piping Connections
   1. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
      a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
      b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
      c. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
      d. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

E. Equipment Installation - Common Requirements
   1. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
   2. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
   4. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

F. Painting
   1. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" AND "Interior Painting".
   2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

G. Concrete Bases
   1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
      a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
      b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
      c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
      d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
      e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
      f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
      g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

H. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages
   1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
   2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
   3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

I. Erection Of Wood Supports And Anchorages
   1. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
   2. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
   3. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

J. Grouting
   1. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
   2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
   3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
   4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
   5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
   6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
   7. Place grout around anchors.
   8. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 07 63 00 00b

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 63 00 00	07 62 13 00	Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim
07 65 16 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 65 16 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 65 16 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 65 16 00	07 56 00 00	Coated Foamed Roofing
07 71 13 00	07 62 13 00	Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 71 23 00 - MISCELLANEOUS ORNAMENTAL METALS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of Trap Pit Doors; Access to Pipe Trenches; Subway Type Gratings; Manhole, Catch and Retention Basins, Hoods; Iron Fences and Railways, Wicket Guard and Fence; Pipe Railings; Chimney Caps; Cast Iron Sills; Expansion Joints; Chimney Cleanout Doors; Ladders; Ladder Rungs; Retractable Ladders and Balconies, Staircases and Counter-Balanced Stairs; Vent Back Frames in Exhaust Opening of Toilet Rooms; Grilles in Exhaust Openings in Toilet Rooms; Access Doors, Dressing Compartment Seat Frames; Stainless Steel; Lumber Rack; Ganging Rods; Auditorium Loudspeaker Grilles; Bronze Saddles (Exterior), Bronze Expansion Saddles (Interior); Bronze Pipe and Tubes; Aluminum Hat and Coat Racks and Hook Strips; Aluminum Angles for Showers; Aluminum Railings; Miscellaneous Ornamental Metal Work; Hardware.

B. Submittals/Shop Drawings
1. Show all locations, markings, quantities, materials, sizes and shapes.
2. Indicate all methods of connecting, anchoring, fastening, bracing and attaching work of other trades.
3. Do not fabricate until approval of Shop Drawing.
4. Product Design Data: For each type of product indicated in 1.2.

C. Quality Assurance
1. Retractable Ladders, Balconies, and Staircases: For use as a supplemental escape device up to 30 feet (9144 mm), comply with requirements of:
   a. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. for use as a supplementary means of egress; provide UL listing data.
   b. ICC International Building Code.
   c. ICC International Fire Code.
2. For use as a mechanical equipment ladder, comply with requirements of ICC International Mechanical Code.
3. Provide Evaluation Reports showing compliance.

D. Product Handling
1. Before shipment to the job, all finished shall be adequately protected for transporting and erecting periods.
2. Replace damaged items with the approval of the Owner and at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Frame and Covers
1. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, 6063-T6.
2. Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy C 38500.
3. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167, Type 304.

B. Gratings
1. Aluminum Grating, Banding, and Kick Plate: Rectangular, pressure-locked bearing bars, ASTM B 221, 6063-T6, mill finish.
2. Steel Grating:
3. Grating: Rectangular, welded, ASTM A 569.
4. Bands and Kick Plate: ASTM A 36.
5. Finish: Galvanized, ASTM A 386, or painted with fabricator's standard shop primer.

C. Castings (Frames, Covers, Steps, and Sills)
   1. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 30. Malleable Iron, ASTM A 47.
   2. Steel: ASTM A 36; Galvanized, ASTM A 386.
   3. Aluminum: ASTM B 26, 356-T6.
   4. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 743, Grade CF8 or CF20
   5. Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy C38500 and ASTM B 135, Alloy C2800.
   6. Corner Protection: Steel angles with anchors, ASTM A 36; Galvanized, ASTM A 386.
   7. Ventilation Boxes: Extruded Aluminum, ASTM B 221, 6063-T6.

D. Pipe and Tube Railings and Ladders
   1. Post and rails: Steel pipe, ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B, Schedule 40.
   2. Bars and Rungs: ASTM A 36.
   3. Finish: Galvanized, ASTM A 386 or shop primer, Fed. Spec. TT-P-86, Type I or II; TT-P-615, Type I, II, or V; TT-P-645.
   4. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, 6063-T6, T-52.
   5. Steel: ASTM A 36, A 500, A 501.
   6. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 544, Grade MT304; ASTM A 312, Grade TP304; ASTM A 167, Type 304.

E. Retractable Ladders and Balconies
   1. Ladders
      a. Maintenance-free, aluminum and stainless steel construction.
      b. Rungs: Extruded aluminum, 6005-T5 and 6005-T6 alloy.
      c. Stiles: Extruded aluminum, 6063-T6 alloy.
      d. Support 1,000 pounds (454 kg) per rung individually and 200 pounds per 6 feet (90 kg per 1.83 m) of length simultaneously.
      e. Ground support of gravity loads; building wall support for lateral stability.
      f. Provide deployment handle at each access level.
      g. Provide removable deployment handle at lower access point; provide locking hub and padlock.
      h. Provide dual safety rails at ladders with access from both sides.
      i. Provide reinforcement channel where ladders extend beyond wall support, such as at parapets and roof tops, or where ladder spans open areas in excess of 5 feet (1524 mm) between attachment points.
      j. Height: As directed.
   2. Balconies
      a. Aluminum, 6063-T6 alloy.
      b. Provide aluminum access balconies at locations as directed.
      c. Size: As directed.
      d. Railing: 42-inch (1,067 mm) rail 2 sides, restraining chain 1 side.
      e. Platform Capacity: 100 pounds per square foot (488 kg/square m), unless directed otherwise.
      f. Railing Capacity: Uniform load of not less than 50 pounds per lineal foot (74.5 kg per lineal m), unless directed otherwise.
      g. Balustrade: Not less than 36 inches (914 mm) high.
      h. Pickets and Rails: Configured not to pass a sphere 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter. Exception; triangular openings formed by riser, tread, and rail, configured not to pass a sphere 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
   3. Factory Finish: Clear anodized **OR** Manufacturer's standard shop-applied enamel **OR** As selected from manufacturer's standard colors **OR** Match paint sample supplied by the Owner, **as directed**.

F. Staircases and Counter-Balanced Stairs
   1. Provide aluminum staircases, platforms, and counter-balanced stairs at locations indicated on the drawings.
   2. Platform Capacity: 100 pounds per square foot (488 kg/square m), unless directed otherwise.

3. Railing Capacity: Uniform load of not less than 50 pounds per lineal foot (74.5 kg per lineal m), unless directed otherwise.
4. Required Width: Minimum 36 inches (914 mm).
5. Stair Rise: 4 inches (102 mm) minimum, 10 inches (254 mm) maximum.
6. Treads: 10 inches (254 mm) in depth.
7. Balustrade: Not less than 36 inches (914 mm) high.
8. Pickets and Rails: Configured not to pass a sphere 4 inches (101.6 mm) in diameter.
   a. Exception: Triangular openings formed by riser, tread, and rail configured not to pass a sphere 6 inches (152.4 mm) in diameter.
   b. Rail Projection: 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) maximum from each side of stairway into required width.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Trap Pit Doors
1. Furnish and set trap pit doors and frames flush with the finish floors, pavement, grade or as otherwise required. Doors for interior pits shall be of 1/4 inch checkered steel plate set in angle frames having mitered and welded corners and angle seat for covers, provided with bronze lifting handles. Doors and frames for exterior pits shall be of cast iron and hinged with 3-1/2 x 5 inch extra heavy bronze hinges. All doors shall be provided with locking devices.

B. Access to Pipe Trenches
1. Checkered or flat steel plate access doors to pipe trenches below cellar floors shall be made in accordance with detail. Include angle iron frame, anchors, hardware, etc., complete. The steel plate access doors shall be flush with the adjoining floors. Hinges shall be approved bronze flush type. Provide bronze lift handle and approved locking device for each access door.
2. Doors shall be covered with resilient tile where required. Where cement floors occur, top of steel cover shall be flush, but depressed for other finishes as required by the thickness of floor finish. **See other Sections of Specifications for Finish.**
3. All doors under this section unless otherwise specified, shall be secured in place with bronze square shank locking device and brass deck plate with slot and socket holes. Furnish six (6) wrenches for brass deck plates for each different size of locking device.

C. Manhole, Catch and Retention Basins, Hoods
1. Furnish cast iron manhole covers, catch basin covers and cast iron hoods for masonry, manholes, catch basins and retention basins furnished and installed under Division 22 OR Division 28.
2. Manhole covers and frames for catch basins shall be of cast iron, with locking device and key, equal to Flockhart Company No. 35-139.
3. Covers and frames for catch basins shall be of cast iron, with locking device and key, equal to Flockhart Company No. 35-328.
4. Covers and frames for catch basins shall be of cast iron, with locking device and key, equal to Flockhart Company No. 18-919.
5. Cast iron hoods for catch basins and manhole shall be equal to Flockhart Company pattern number indicated.

D. Iron Fences and Railings
1. Furnish and erect iron railings, fences, and gates. Materials of fences and railings shall be medium steel, shapes as required.
2. Posts and braces shall be leaded into cast-iron shoes, which shall be embedded in the concrete pavements or blocks. Center picket of each panel of 6 foot fence shall be leaded 2 inches into curb or pavement. Fences and railings on stone copings, platforms, steps or check blocks shall be leaded into sockets cut in same. Gates shall be hung with hinges. Provide all hasps required for locking gates in both open and closed positions. Double and quadruple gates shall also be furnished with sliding lever bolts and galvanized, malleable iron catches having pipe anchor and

drain embedded in concrete. Gates shall be locked open or closed with Type C Padlocks. Rivet the padlocks to the gates as required. Single gates require 1 padlock; double gates, 2 padlocks; quadruple gates, 4 padlocks.

3. Furnish cast-iron shoes for fence posts and set them at the proper time so that they may be cast into the concrete footing and pavements with top flush with finished surfaces.
4. Folding swing gates shall have fast pin to hold in closed position.
5. Unless otherwise required center rails and side rails on outside steps shall be made of 1-1/4 inch solid posts with 2-1/2 inch by 1/2 inch horizontal flats spaced as required, with top rail of two bronze, aluminum or steel channels and steel stiffener. Post at upper level of center railings shall be of malleable cast iron of height required, tapering from 1-3/4 inches at bottom to 1-1/4 inches at top, with finial. All posts shall be leaded-in 4 inches in cheeks and steps.

E. Wicket Guard and Fence

1. Furnish and install wicket guard fence 12 inches high constructed of 1/2 inch round bent steel rods welded together, to form a continuous wicket fence around the concrete curbing at seeded and planted areas. This guard fence shall be set in concrete footing specified under Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

F. Pipe Railings

1. Furnish and erect wrought iron or steel pipe railings and hand rails together with all fittings, flanges, collars, brackets, bolts, etc. of sizes required, all put together and secured in place in a thorough manner. All pipe railings shall be welded assembly, with continuous "V" joints, full thickness of pipe wall, welds filled solid and ground smooth. All radii, curves, sweeps, bends, etc., as indicated on details for pipe fitting assembly shall be maintained in the welded assembly. For pipe handrails in connection with stairs, see Division 05 Section "Pipe And Tube Railings".
2. Center pipe rails and free standing end pipe railings on outside concrete steps shall be made of 1-1/2 inch nominal diameter pipe and have pipe uprights with cast-iron collar and cap fittings secured in place with tap screws. The uprights shall be leaded-in pipe sleeves. Upright at upper level of center radii shall be of 2 inch nominal diameter pipe with approved cap.
3. Handrails at side of outside steps against walls shall be 1 inch nominal diameter pipes, with returns against wall at ends, and supported on galvanized cast-iron brackets and wall plates same as specified for egress stair.
4. Handrails at side of outside steps against iron fences shall be 1 inch nominal diameter, with returns at ends and supported on wrought iron brackets and plates. Handrails at area walls shall be 1-1/4 inch nominal diameter.
5. All outside pipe railings and handrails including fittings, etc., shall be galvanized after fabrication.
6. Furnish the combined pipe sleeve and base plate and turn over same for setting in concrete work.
7. Exterior barrier rails (at areaways, etc.) shall be of 1-1/2 inch nominal diameter pipe; interior barrier rails (at pits, changes in floor levels, etc.) shall be 1-1/4 inch nominal diameter.

G. Chimney Caps

1. Chimneys shall be provided with cast-iron caps.

H. Cast-Iron Sills

1. Furnish cast-iron sills for exterior doors of bulkheads, etc. The sills shall be set in a bed of cement and be substantially secured with bolts or expansion bolts.

I. Expansion Joints

1. Furnish and install all rolled steel members with required anchors at structural expansion joints through slabs. Items cast in concrete shall be furnished when required for setting. Provide bronze plates as required; top surfaces of plates shall be "BRONZOGRIT" or approved equal.

J. Chimney Cleanout Doors

1. Furnish to the mason proper cleanout doors of sizes indicated for chimneys, of 10 gauge steel plate and steel flats. The doors shall have angle-iron frames with strap anchors. Hang door with two 4 x 4 inch steel hinges and secure door with a latch.

K. Ladders
1. Furnish and set ladders 18 inches wide, constructed with steel plate stringers, 3/4 inch diameter single rung treads let in and welded to stringers, angle and flat braces, and when required shall have pipe hand rails all riveted together. Secure ladders with angle clip and expansion bolts at top, bottom and elsewhere as required.

L. Ladder Rungs
1. When ladder rungs are indicated built into mason work, furnish to the mason 5/8 inch galvanized wrought-iron ladder rungs.
2. Ladder rungs in concrete shall be 15 inches wide and shall be built into concrete every 14 inches in height projecting into walls 4 inches on each side.
3. Ladder rungs in brickwork of chimney shall be 18 inches wide, and shall be built into brickwork every 5 courses in height, project 8 inches beyond face of wall and continue 8 inches into wall with a 2 inch return. First rung shall start 10 feet above roof level at chimney.

M. Retractable Ladders, Staircases and Counter-Balanced Stairs
1. Fabrication: Shop fabricate and assemble to maximum extent practicable for installation on-site with minimal labor.
2. Accessories
   a. Provide brackets, spacers, etc, necessary for a complete installation.
      1) Brackets: 6063-T6 aluminum alloy.
      2) Pivot Pins, Springs, Masonry Bolts, Fasteners, and Base Plates: Stainless steel.
   b. Provide removable deployment handle at lower access point of retractable ladders.
      OR
      Provide removable deployment handle at lower access point of retractable ladders and locking hub and padlock.
   c. Fasteners for securement to wood construction: Stainless steel lag bolts; 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) diameter, 4-inches (100 mm) minimum embedment.
   d. Fasteners for securement to steel construction: Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers; 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) diameter.
3. Footing: Install concrete footing in accordance with manufacturer's requirements, and in compliance with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
4. Install components in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions.
5. Adjust And Clean
   a. Adjust operating parts for smooth deployment and storage.
   b. Remove scraps and debris; leave project site in clean and orderly condition.
   c. Instruct Owner's representative in proper operation.

N. Vent Back Frames in Exhaust Opening of Toilet Rooms
1. Furnish and install 12 gauge bent steel frames in exhaust openings in partitions of toilet rooms. Frames shall be set plumb in partitions to receive the vent grilles. Baffle plates are not required.

O. Grilles in Exhaust Openings
1. Furnish and set in frames at exhaust openings in toilet partitions, approved pressed steel bar type grilles with baked on primer, as manufactured by Tuttle and Bailey, Catalog No. T-80, or approved equal. Grilles shall be secured with tap screws to the frame. The bars of grilles shall be fixed and of rigid construction and shall be set at the angle required. Submit sample of grille for approval.
2. Furnish and install individually adjustable shutters attached to grille frames, in certain toilets where required. Grilles shall be bar type, equal to Register and Grille Mfg. Co. No. 3311 or Tuttle and Bailey No. A-77.

3. In general, vent openings are provided in partitions of all toilet rooms back of water closets; however, certain smaller toilets, are mechanically vented by means of vent openings in ceiling or in partitions close to ceilings.

P. Access Doors
1. Access doors and frames that are to be furnished and installed as part of the work of this Contract shall be furnished and installed under Division 08 Section "Access Doors And Frames".
2. Access doors and frames that are to be furnished and installed in metal lath and plaster walls and ceilings as part of the work of this Contract shall be constructed of high grade sheet steel with 16 gauge frames and 14 gauge doors. Doors shall be equipped with concealed hinges and cylinder locks all keyed alike (furnish six (6) keys); doors in ceilings may have screwdriver operated type of lock. Doors shall have one piece plain trim set flush with finish surface. Stock doors manufactured by Columbia Metal Product Co., Karp Metal Products Co., or approved equal complying with the specifications, may be accepted. Submit sample for approval if not already approved.

Q. Dressing Compartment Seat Frames
1. Where seats are indicated in dressing compartments, furnish and set 1/4 x 1-1/2 inch flat galvanized bent steel brackets.

R. Stainless Steel
1. Stainless Steel and Cabinet Top Supports: Furnish and install adjustable, stainless steel tubing forming legs to support the tops of sinks and cabinets together with the stainless steel screens, collars, plates, etc., of sizes required. The screens shall be wrapped around and tap screwed to the legs of sink tubing.
2. Stainless Steel Jambs at Dressing Compartments: Furnish and install 14 gauge stainless steel tube jambs at doors to dressing compartments adjoining shower stalls. These jambs shall be anchored to the structural facing tile partition with 14 gauge stainless steel straps.
3. Package Slide: Furnish and install stainless steel half round strips and anchors (type 304 (18-8)) for package slide to Receiving Room. Strips shall be plug welded to anchors.
4. Angle and Channel Guards: Furnish and install angle and channel guards in the kitchen and auxiliary areas. Guards shall be 12 gauge stainless steel satin finish of length and dimensions required, secured in place with oval head stainless steel bolts in expansion shields.
5. Stainless Steel Shelf: Furnish and install stainless steel shelves complete with brackets, of gauges required, generally in helps' locker room, over sinks in locker rooms, in eraser cleaning closets, art room and medical office.
   Note: All stainless steel shall be chrome nickel cold rolled alloy designated by trade name Stainless Steel 18-8, No. 4 Finish; it shall contain a minimum of 18% chromium, 8% nickel, and not more than 0.12% carbon, non-magnetic (straight chrome iron not accepted).

S. Lumber Rack
1. Furnish a lumber rack for the woodworking room and general crafts shop, constructed with angles and provided with chains and hoods as required.

T. Hanging Rods
1. Furnish and erect hanging rods of diameters required of wrought-iron or steel pipe supported on approved hangers, brackets or flanges cabinets, closets and elsewhere throughout the building where required.

U. Auditorium Loudspeaker Grilles
1. Furnish and install complete, two (2) loudspeaker grilles in Auditorium. Grilles shall be equal to Blumcraft Deluxe-Line. Grille facets shall have a bronze anodized finish on faces and brushed finish on backs. Supporting bars #258 to have dull black anodized finish.
2. Frame of grilles shall be equal to Blumcraft's trim section WF-4, anodized black, and be secured to masonry with stainless steel screws (slack painted heads) in expansion shields.

3. Sub-frame shall be formed from 1/4" thick aluminum bar with corners mitered, continuously welded and ground smooth and firmly secured in place. Provide continuous piano hinge with 3/16" stop angle.
4. The inside surface of grille shall be entirely covered with black grille cloth equal to "Acousticloth", as manufactured by Merlang or "Lumite", as manufactured by Chicopee. Grille cloth shall be fastened in place. Submit samples for approval.
5. Include continuous angles and all other angles, plates, bars and reinforcing channels, all as required.
6. Contractor is to verify all dimensions at job before fabricating any of the work.
7. Loudspeaker enclosure and sound absorbing blanket will be furnished and installed as part of the work of Division 27 Section "Public Address And Mass Notification Systems".

V. Bronze Saddles (Exterior)
1. All exterior door saddles shall be of bronze unless otherwise indicated. White bronze shall be provided for aluminum doors. Finish shall be "Bronzogrit" or an approved equal.

W. Bronze Expansion Saddles (Interior)
1. Furnish and install bronze expansion saddles generally in the following areas: doors opening off auditorium platform or stage; gymnasium; dance room. None required in store room. Saddles shall consist of bronze flats, plates, and angle clips. Installation shall allow for 3/4 inch expansion. Exposed surfaces of plates and flats shall be "Bronzogrit" or approved equal.

X. Bronze Pipe and Tubes
1. Furnish 1 inch square bronze tubes in toilet rooms and pipe spaces. Tubes shall be turned over to mason for installation. Tubes shall be of proper length (not less than full thickness of wall) and provided with bronze wire bars at one end.

Y. Aluminum Hat and Coat Racks and Hook Strips
1. Furnish and install hat and coat racks and hook strips in locations required. Racks and hook strips shall be constructed of aluminum channels, flats and tubing of sizes required, toggle or expansion bolted to walls to suit conditions. Aluminum shall have alumilite finish.
2. Submit shop drawings for approval.

Z. Aluminum Angles for Showers
1. Furnish and install aluminum angle bracing as required. Angles shall have alumilite finish. Submit shop drawings for approval prior to fabrication.

AA. Aluminum Railings
1. Center and side rails and wall handrails shall be of aluminum when required. Posts and horizontal members shall be solid. Posts shall be 1-1/2 inches square, extend through intermediate rails, secured to top rail with 3/8 inch stud bolts; posts at upper level shall be of height indicated, tapering from 1-3/4 inches at bottom to 1-1/4 inches at top, with finial. Posts shall be solidly set with molten sulphur or other approved non-electrolytic material into a combination 1/4 inch pipe sleeve and base plate welded to same, sleeve shall be welded to stair stringer or tread to suit condition, or set in concrete sub-stair.
2. Exterior Aluminum Railings shall be constructed required. Aluminum posts shall be solid 1-1/2 inches square, extend through bottom rail, let into top rail and continuously welded. Center railing shall have tapered aluminum post of size and taper as required for "center rail". Rails shall be formed to shape indicated from, 3" x 1" solid aluminum flats with rounded edges.
3. Roof railing shall be as required.
4. Grab bars in toilets where indicated.
5. All aluminum railings shall have finish equal to 204-C2 Aluminum Co. of America.

BB. Miscellaneous Ornamental Metal Work
1. Include all other ornamental metal work. Submit shop drawings for approval.

CC. Hardware
1. All hardware specified under Ornamental Metal Work shall match the approved samples in the office of the Owner. One sample of each item shall be submitted for approval of the Owner.
2. The key to all locks furnished under Ornamental Metal Work shall be provided with brass tags attached to the key with a strong metal ring or link and be similar to the tags specified under Hardware. The tags shall have stamped upon them the letters the Owner and the name or number of the room, closets, etc., for which the keys are intended.
3. All type C padlocks mentioned in this Section will be furnished as specified under Hardware. The Contractor for Ornamental Metal Work shall rivet padlock chains referred to in this Section in place.

DD. Painting
1. All Ornamental Metal Work and cast-iron work excepting cast-iron work to be set in concrete and galvanized items shall be thoroughly cleaned and painted one shop coat specified in Division 07.
2. After installation, all damaged surfaces of shop coat and all rough surfaces shall be scraped or sanded smooth and then touched up.

END OF SECTION 07 71 23 00

SECTION 07 71 23 00a - MANUFACTURED ROOF SPECIALTIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for manufactured roof specialties. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Copings.
   b. Roof-edge flashings.
   c. Roof-edge drainage systems.
   d. Reglets and counterflashings.

C. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
2. FM Approvals' Listing (if Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals' requirements set a minimum quality standard): Manufacture and install copings and roof-edge flashings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-60 **OR** Class 1-75 **OR** Class 1-90 **OR** Class 1-105 **OR** Class 1-120, **as directed**. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
3. SPRI Wind Design Standard (if Project is governed by the IBC or if SPRI ES-1 sets a minimum quality standard): Manufacture and install copings and roof-edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
   a. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As directed.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
   a. Details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
   b. Pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
   c. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
   d. Details of special conditions.
3. Samples: For copings **OR** roof-edge flashings **OR** roof-edge drainage systems **OR** reglets and counterflashings, **as directed**, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components including fasteners, cover joints, accessories, and attachments.
4. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for copings and roof-edge flashings.

5. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.
6. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof specialties installation.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
   a. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
      1) Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
      2) Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
      3) Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
   b. Finish Warranty Period: 20 **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Exposed Metals
1. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 or H01 temper.
   a. Non-Patinated Exposed Finish: Mill.
   b. Pre-Patinated Copper-Sheet Finish: Pre-patinated according to ASTM B 882.
2. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
   a. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   b. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
   c. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
      2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
      3) Concealed Surface: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
   d. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
   e. Color Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
3. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, finished as follows:
   a. Exposed High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

b. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
c. Color Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
5. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.
   a. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, finish.
   b. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.
   c. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
      1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
      2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

B. Concealed Metals
1. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.
2. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.
3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
4. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.

C. Underlayment Materials
1. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
2. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   a. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C).
   b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C).
3. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
4. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
2. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
   b. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
   c. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
   d. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

e. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** silicone, **as directed**, polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
4. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
5. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
6. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
7. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, lead-free solder **OR** Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead, **as directed**.

E. Copings

1. Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of formed-metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), concealed anchorage; corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with same finish as coping caps.
   a. Coping-Cap Material: Copper, 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick) **OR** weight (thickness) as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Non-patinated, mill **OR** Pre-patinated dark brown **OR** Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.

      OR

      Coping-Cap Material: Formed **OR** Extruded, **as directed**, aluminum, 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick **OR** 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) thick **OR** 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) thick **OR** thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Mill **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
      2) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

      OR

      Coping-Cap Material: Zinc-coated steel, nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) thickness **OR** thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Mill phosphatized for field painting **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer, **as directed**.
      2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   b. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered **OR** continuously welded **OR** mechanically clinched and sealed watertight, **as directed**.
   c. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections **OR** Arched sections **OR** Bullnose face leg **OR** Two-way sloped coping cap, **as directed**.
   d. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on **OR** Face leg hooked to continuous cleat with back leg fastener exposed, **as directed**, fabricated from coping-cap material.
   e. Snap-on-Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, 12 inches (300 mm) wide, with integral cleats.

      OR

      Face Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

F. Roof-Edge Flashings

1. Canted Roof-Edge and Fascia **OR** Fascia and Gravel Stop, **as directed**: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on **OR** compression-clamped, **as directed**, metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) and a continuous formed

galvanized-steel sheet cant, 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick, minimum, with extended vertical leg terminating in a drip-edge cleat. Provide matching corner units.

a. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
   1) Formed Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick **OR** Thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
   2) Extruded Aluminum: 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) thick **OR** Thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
   3) Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) thickness **OR** thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.

b. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered **OR** continuously welded **OR** mechanically clinched and sealed watertight, **as directed**.

c. Splice Plates: Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.

d. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections **OR** Arched sections **OR** Bullnose fascia cover **OR** Cornice fascia cover **OR** Cove fascia cover, **as directed**.

e. Fascia Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats **OR** Wall cap **OR** Soffit trim **OR** Overflow scuppers **OR** Overflow scuppers with perforated screens **OR** Spillout scuppers **OR** Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters **OR** Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters and perforated screens, **as directed**.

2. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) and a continuous formed- or extruded-aluminum anchor bar with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover. Provide matching corner units.

   a. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
      1) Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick **OR** Thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
      2) Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick **OR** 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick **OR** thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.

   b. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered **OR** continuously welded **OR** mechanically clinched and sealed watertight, **as directed**.

   c. Splice Plates: Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.

   d. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections **OR** Arched sections **OR** Bullnose fascia cover **OR** Cornice fascia cover **OR** Cove fascia cover, **as directed**.

   e. Fascia Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats **OR** Wall cap **OR** Soffit trim **OR** Overflow scuppers **OR** Overflow scuppers with perforated screens **OR** Spillout scuppers **OR** Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters **OR** Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters and perforated screens, **as directed**.

3. One-Piece Gravel Stops: Manufactured, one-piece, metal gravel stop in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), with a horizontal flange and vertical leg, drain-through, **as directed**, fascia terminating in a drip edge, **as directed**, and concealed splice plates of same material, finish, and shape as gravel stop. Provide matching corner units.

   a. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
      1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) **OR** Weight (thickness) as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
      2) Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick **OR** Thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
      3) Extruded Aluminum: 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) thick **OR** Thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.

4) Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick **OR** Thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
5) Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) thickness **OR** thickness as required to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.

b. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered **OR** continuously welded **OR** mechanically clinched and sealed watertight, **as directed**.
c. Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats **OR** Wall cap **OR** Soffit trim, **as directed**.

4. Copper Finish: Non-patinated, mill **OR** Pre-patinated dark brown **OR** Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.
5. Aluminum Finish: Mill **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   a. Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. Stainless-Steel Finish: No. 2B (bright, cold rolled) **OR** No. 3 (coarse, polished directional satin) **OR** No. 4 (bright, polished directional satin), **as directed**.
7. Zinc-Coated Steel Finish: Mill phosphatized for field painting **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer, **as directed**.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

G. Roof-Edge Drainage Systems
1. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch (25 mm) above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
   a. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
      1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) **OR** 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick), **as directed**.
      2) Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, thickness.
   b. Gutter Profile: Style A **OR** Style B **OR** Style F **OR** Style G **OR** Style H **OR** Style I **OR** Style K **OR** Style K highback **OR** Half-round single bead **OR** Half-round highback **OR** Quarter round **OR** Ogee **OR** As indicated, **as directed**, according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
   c. Embossed Surface: Embossed with design as indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
   d. Applied Fascia Cover (Concealed Gutter): Exposed, formed copper, 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) **OR** aluminum, 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick, **as directed**, with factory-mitered corners, ends, and concealed splice joints.
   e. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered **OR** continuously welded **OR** mechanically clinched and sealed watertight, **as directed**.
   f. Gutter Supports: Gutter brackets **OR** Straps **OR** Spikes and ferrules **OR** Manufacturer's standard supports as selected by the Owner, **as directed**, with finish matching the gutters.
   g. Special Fabrications: Radiussed sections.
   h. Gutter Accessories: Continuous screened leaf guard with sheet metal frame **OR** Continuous hinged leaf guard of solid metal designed to shed leaves **OR** Continuous snap-in plastic leaf guard **OR** Bronze wire ball downspout strainer **OR** Wire ball downspout strainer **OR** Flat ends **OR** Bullnose ends for half-round gutter, **as directed**.
2. Downspouts: Plain round **OR** Corrugated round **OR** Plain rectangular **OR** Corrugated rectangular **OR** Open-face rectangular, **as directed**, complete with machine-crimped **OR** mitered **OR**

smooth-curve, **as directed**, elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
b. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.60 mm), **as directed**, thick.
c. Extruded Aluminum: 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) thick.
d. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) **OR** 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), **as directed**, thickness.

3. Parapet Scuppers: Manufactured with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scuppers, **as directed**.
a. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
2) Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
3) Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
4) Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness.

4. Conductor Heads: Manufactured conductor heads, each with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated, complete with outlet tube that nests into upper end of downspout, exterior flange trim, **as directed**, and built-in overflow, **as directed**.
a. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
1) Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
2) Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
3) Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
4) Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness.

5. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
b. Formed Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
d. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) thickness.

6. Copper Finish: Non-patinated, mill **OR** Pre-patinated dark brown **OR** Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.

7. Aluminum Finish: Mill **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
a. Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full rang, **as directed**.

8. Stainless-Steel Finish: No. 2B (bright, cold rolled, unpolished) **OR** No. 3 (coarse, polished directional satin) **OR** No. 4 (bright, polished directional satin), **as directed**.

9. Zinc-Coated Steel Finish: Mill phosphatized for field painting **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer, **as directed**.
a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

H. Reglets And Counterflashings
1. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:
a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
b. Formed Aluminum: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm), **as directed**, thick.
d. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm), **as directed**, thickness.
e. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered **OR** continuously welded **OR** mechanically clinched and sealed watertight, **as directed**.
f. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.

g. Stucco Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
h. Concrete Type, Embedded: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
i. Masonry Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
j. Multiuse Type, Embedded: For multiuse embedment in cast-in-place concrete **OR** masonry mortar joints, **as directed**.

2. Counterflashings: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches (100 mm) and in lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) designed to snap into reglets or through-wall-flashing receiver and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
   a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
   b. Formed Aluminum: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) **OR** 0.025 inch (0.64 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal 0.022-inch (0.56-mm) **OR** 0.028-inch (0.71-mm), **as directed**, thickness.
3. Accessories:
   a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where reglet is provided separate from metal counterflashing.
   b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
4. Copper Finish: Non-patinated, mill **OR** Pre-patinated dark brown **OR** Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.
5. Aluminum Finish: Mill **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   a. Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. Stainless-Steel Finish: No. 2B (bright, cold rolled, unpolished) **OR** No. 3 (coarse, polished directional satin) **OR** No. 4 (bright, polished directional satin), **as directed**.
7. Zinc-Coated Steel Finish: Mill phosphatized for field painting **OR** Two-coat fluoropolymer **OR** Three-coat fluoropolymer, **as directed**.
   a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

I. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
3. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Underlayment Installation
   1. Felt Underlayment: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
   2. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water. Overlap edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
   3. Polyethylene Sheet: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped and taped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
   4. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).

C. Installation, General
   1. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
      a. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
      b. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
      c. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
      d. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
      e. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
   2. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
      a. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
      b. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet **OR** self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment **OR** polyethylene sheet, **as directed**.
      c. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
   3. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
      a. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet (3.6 m) with no joints within 18 inches (450 mm) of corners or intersections unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
      b. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
   4. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for nails and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) for wood screws **OR** substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance, **as directed**.
   5. Seal joints with elastomeric **OR** butyl, **as directed**, sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
   6. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
   7. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work. Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow

solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

D. Coping Installation
1. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
2. Anchor copings to meet performance requirements.
   a. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at 30-inch (760-mm) centers **OR** 40-inch (1015-mm) centers **OR** manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements, **as directed**.
   b. Interlock face leg drip edge into continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 24-inch (600-mm) centers **OR** 16-inch (400-mm) centers **OR** manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements, **as directed**. Anchor back leg of coping with screw fasteners and elastomeric washers at 24-inch (600-mm) centers **OR** 16-inch (400-mm) centers **OR** manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements, **as directed**.

E. Roof-Edge Flashing Installation
1. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
2. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

F. Roof-Edge Drainage-System Installation
1. General: Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.
2. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 30 inches (762 mm), **as directed**, apart. Attach ends with rivets and seal with sealant **OR** solder, **as directed**, to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
   a. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet (15.2 m) apart. Install expansion joint caps.
   b. Install continuous leaf guards on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, removable **OR** hinged to swing open, **as directed**, for cleaning gutters.
3. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c.
   a. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
      OR
      Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
4. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in asphalt roofing cement **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.
5. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers through parapet where indicated. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
   a. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal or solder to scupper.
   b. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
   c. Seal or solder exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
6. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor top edge 1 inch (25 mm) below scupper **OR** gutter, **as directed**, discharge.

G. Reglet And Counterflashing Installation
1. General: Coordinate installation of reglets and counterflashings with installation of base flashings.

2. Embedded Reglets: See Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" and Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for installation of reglets.
3. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counterflashings overlap 4 inches (100 mm) over top edge of base flashings.
4. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches (100 mm) over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and bed with elastomeric **OR** butyl, **as directed**, sealant. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

H. Cleaning And Protection
1. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
2. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
3. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
4. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 71 23 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 71 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
07 71 23 00	07 62 13 00	Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim
07 71 26 00	07 62 13 00	Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 72 13 00 - INTAKE AND RELIEF VENTILATORS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for intake and relief ventilators. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Louvered-penthouse ventilators.
   b. Roof hoods.
   c. Goosenecks.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design ventilators, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Ventilators shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of ventilator components, noise or metal fatigue caused by ventilator blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
   a. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
      OR
      Wind Loads: Determine loads based on a uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (960 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1440 Pa), as directed by the Owner , acting inward or outward.
      OR
      Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures indicated below:
      1) Corner Zone: as directed by the Owner .
      2) Other Than Corner Zone: as directed by the Owner .
3. Seismic Performance: Ventilators, including attachments to other construction, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes, without buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects.
   a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
5. Water Entrainment: Limit water penetration through unit to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. For louvered-penthouse ventilators specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62., Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
3. Shop Drawings: For gravity ventilators. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, ventilator attachments to curbs, and curb attachments to roof structure.

a. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.

4. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For shop-fabricated ventilators indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   a. Detail fabrication and assembly of shop-fabricated ventilators.
6. Coordination Drawings: Roof framing plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
   a. Structural members to which roof curbs and ventilators will be attached.
   b. Sizes and locations of roof openings.
7. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For ventilators, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
8. Welding certificates.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
   b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

F. Coordination
1. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.
2. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
3. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, with No. 4 **OR** 6, **as directed**, finish.
5. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.
   a. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
   b. Use Phillips flat **OR** hex-head or Phillips pan, **as directed**,-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
6. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
7. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

B. Fabrication, General
1. Factory or shop fabricate gravity ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

2. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
3. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.
4. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
5. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

C. Louvered-Penthouse Ventilators
1. Construction: All-welded assembly with 4-inch (100-mm) **OR** 6-inch (150-mm), **as directed**,- deep louvers, mitered corners, and aluminum **OR** galvanized-steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet roof with mineral-fiber insulation and vapor barrier, **as directed**.
2. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Extruded aluminum, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.080 inch (2.0 mm) for frames and 0.080 inch (2.0 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), **as directed**, for blades with condensate deflectors, **as directed**.
   a. AMCA Seal: Mark units with the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
   b. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades **OR** mitered blades with concealed close-fitting splices, **as directed**, and with fully recessed **OR** semirecessed, **as directed**, mullions at corners.
3. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.052 inch (1.3 mm) for frames and 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) **OR** 0.052 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.064 inch (1.6 mm), **as directed**, for blades with condensate deflectors, **as directed**.
   a. AMCA Seal: Mark units with the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
   b. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades **OR** mitered blades with concealed close-fitting splices, **as directed**, and with fully recessed **OR** semirecessed, **as directed**, mullions at corners.
4. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Stainless-steel sheet, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.57 mm), **as directed**, with grain running parallel **OR** perpendicular, **as directed**, to length of blades and frame members with condensate deflectors, **as directed**.
   a. AMCA Seal: Mark units with the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
   b. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades **OR** mitered blades with concealed close-fitting splices, **as directed**, and with fully recessed **OR** semirecessed, **as directed**, mullions at corners.
5. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
   a. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with **OR** Built-in cant and **OR** Built-in raised cant and, **as directed**, mounting flange.
   b. Overall Height: 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 9-1/2 inches (240 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 16 inches (400 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**.
6. Bird Screening: Galvanized-steel, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.041-inch (1.04-mm) wire **OR** Aluminum, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.063-inch (1.6-mm) wire **OR** Flattened, expanded aluminum, 3/4 by 0.050 inch (19 by 1.27 mm) thick **OR** Stainless-steel, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.047-inch (1.19-mm) wire, **as directed**.
   OR
   Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh, 0.012-inch (0.30-mm) **OR** Stainless-steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm), **as directed**, wire.
7. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:
   a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
   b. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.

c. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
   1) Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

8. Accessories:
   a. Dampers:
      1) Location: Penthouse neck **OR** Inside louver face, **as directed**.
      2) Control: Manual **OR** Motorized, **as directed**.

D. Roof Hoods
1. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figures 5-6 and 5-7.
2. Materials: Galvanized-steel sheet, minimum 0.064-inch- (1.62-mm-) thick base and 0.040-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick hood **OR** Aluminum sheet, minimum 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick base and 0.050-inch- (1.27-mm-) thick hood, **as directed**; suitably reinforced.
3. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
   a. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with **OR** Built-in cant and **OR** Built-in raised cant and, **as directed**, mounting flange.
   b. Overall Height: 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 9-1/2 inches (240 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 16 inches (400 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**.
4. Bird Screening: Galvanized-steel, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.041-inch (1.04-mm) wire **OR** Aluminum, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.063-inch (1.6-mm) wire **OR** Flattened, expanded aluminum, 3/4 by 0.050 inch (19 by 1.27 mm) thick **OR** Stainless-steel, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.047-inch (1.19-mm) wire, **as directed**.
   OR
   Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh, 0.012-inch (0.30-mm) **OR** Stainless-steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm), **as directed**, wire.
5. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:
   a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
   b. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
   c. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
      1) Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

E. Goosenecks
1. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 5-5; with a minimum of 0.052-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
2. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
   a. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with **OR** Built-in cant and **OR** Built-in raised cant and, **as directed**, mounting flange.
   b. Overall Height: 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 9-1/2 inches (240 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 16 inches (400 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**.

3. Bird Screening: Galvanized-steel, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.041-inch (1.04-mm) wire **OR** Aluminum, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.063-inch (1.6-mm) wire **OR** Flattened, expanded aluminum, 3/4 by 0.050 inch (19 by 1.27 mm) thick **OR** Stainless-steel, 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) square mesh, 0.047-inch (1.19-mm) wire, **as directed**.
   OR
   Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh, 0.012-inch (0.30-mm) **OR** Stainless-steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm), **as directed**, wire.
4. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:
   a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
   b. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
   c. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
      1) Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
   1. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
   2. Install goosenecks on curb base where throat size exceeds 9 by 9 inches (230 by 230 mm).
   3. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.
   4. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
   5. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.
   6. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
   7. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.
   8. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

B. Connections
   1. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

C. Adjusting
   1. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION 07 72 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 72 13 00a - PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:
   a. Direct-expansion cooling.
   b. Heat-pump refrigeration components.
   c. Hot-gas reheat.
   d. Electric-heating coils.
   e. Gas furnace.
   f. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
   g. Integral, space temperature controls.
   h. Roof curbs.

C. Definitions
1. DDC: Direct-digital controls.
2. ECM: Electrically commutated motor.
3. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the outdoor-air stream to reject heat during cooling operations and to absorb heat during heating operations. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.
4. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant-Coil Fan: The outdoor-air refrigerant-coil fan in RTUs. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.
5. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.
6. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.
7. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.
8. VVT: Variable-air volume and temperature.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design RTU supports to comply with wind and seismic, **as directed**, performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Wind-Restraint Performance:
   a. Basic Wind Speed: as directed by the Owner .
   b. Building Classification Category: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.
   c. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by the maximum area of the mechanical component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
3. Seismic Performance: RTUs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit EA 4: Documentation required by Credit EA 4 indicating that equipment and refrigerants comply.
   b. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
3. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints, **as directed**, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
   b. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
   c. Wind- and Seismic-Restraint Details, **as directed**: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind and seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.
5. Manufacturer Wind Loading Qualification Certification: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
   b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
6. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that RTUs, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and maintenance data.
9. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

F. Quality Assurance
1. ARI Compliance:
   a. Comply with ARI 210/240 and ARI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
   b. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
2. ASHRAE Compliance:
   a. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
   b. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.

c. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

3. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
4. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
5. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
   b. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five **OR** 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
   c. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Final Completion.
   d. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Casing

1. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
2. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
   a. Exterior Casing Thickness: 0.052 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.0626 inch (1.6 mm) **OR** 0.079 inch (2.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3. Inner Casing Fabrication Requirements:
   a. Inside Casing: Galvanized steel, 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) **OR** 0.028 inch (0.7 mm), **as directed**, thick, perforated 40 percent free area, **as directed**.
4. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
   a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
   b. Thickness: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Liner materials shall have air-stream surface coated with an erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
   d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
5. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of galvanized-steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1, **as directed**.
   a. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
   b. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple both sides of drain pan, **as directed**.
   c. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Corrosion-resistant compound for galvanized-steel drain pans.
6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Fans

1. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved **OR** backward inclined, **as directed**, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, multispeed **OR** ECM, **as directed**, motor resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

OR

Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, single-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the casing. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

2. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.
3. Relief-Air Fan: Propeller **OR** Forward curved **OR** Backward inclined, **as directed**, shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor.
4. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate fan section, internal mounting frame and attachment to fans, fan housings, motors, casings, accessories, and other fan section components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" when fan-mounted frame and RTU-mounted frame are anchored to building structure.
5. Fan Motor: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

C. Coils

1. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
   a. Aluminum-plate **OR** Copper-plate, **as directed**, fin and seamless internally grooved, **as directed**, copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
   b. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
   c. Coil Split: Interlaced.
   d. Baked phenolic **OR** Cathodic epoxy, **as directed**, coating.
   e. Condensate Drain Pan: Galvanized steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1, **as directed**.
2. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
   a. Aluminum-plate **OR** Copper-plate, **as directed**, fin and seamless internally grooved, **as directed**, copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
   b. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
   c. Baked phenolic **OR** Cathodic epoxy, **as directed**, coating.
3. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coil:
   a. Aluminum-plate **OR** Copper-plate, **as directed**, fin and seamless internally grooved, **as directed**, copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
   b. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
   c. Baked phenolic **OR** Cathodic epoxy, **as directed**, coating.
4. Electric-Resistance Heating:
   a. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium, supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame. Terminate elements in stainless-steel machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.
   b. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically reset, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box.
   c. Overcurrent Protection: Manual-reset thermal cutouts, factory wired in each heater stage.
   d. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection. Include the following controls:
      1) Magnetic **OR** Mercury, **as directed**, contactors.
      2) Step Controller: Pilot lights and override toggle switch for each step.
      3) SCR Controller: Pilot lights operate on load ratio, a minimum of five steps.
      4) Time-delay relay.
      5) Airflow proving switch.

D. Refrigerant Circuit Components
   1. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
   2. Compressor: Hermetic, reciprocating **OR** Semihermetic, reciprocating **OR** Hermetic, scroll, **as directed**, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater, **as directed**.
   3. Refrigeration Specialties:
      a. Refrigerant: R-407C **OR** R-410A, **as directed**.
      b. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
      c. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
      d. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
      e. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
      f. Minimum off-time relay.
      g. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
      h. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
      i. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.
      j. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
      k. Hot-gas bypass solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.
      l. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.

E. Air Filtration
   1. Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.
      a. Glass Fiber: Minimum 80 percent arrestance, and MERV 5.
      b. Pleated: Minimum 90 percent arrestance, and MERV 7.

F. Gas Furnace
   1. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.
      a. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
   2. Burners: Stainless steel.
      a. Fuel: Natural **OR** Propane, **as directed**, gas.
      b. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
      c. High-Altitude Model **OR** Kit, **as directed**: For Project elevations more than 2000 feet (610 m) above sea level.
   3. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.
   4. Venting: Gravity vented with vertical extension, **as directed**.
      OR
      Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve with vertical extension, **as directed**.
   5. Safety Controls:
      a. Gas Control Valve: Single stage **OR** Two stage **OR** Modulating, **as directed**.
      b. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

G. Dampers
   1. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 25 percent outdoor air, with manual **OR** motorized, **as directed**, damper filter.
   2. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.
      a. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
      b. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, with bird screen and hood.

H. Electrical Power Connection

1. Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit, **as directed**, and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

I. Controls
   1. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
   2. Basic Unit Controls:
      a. Control-voltage transformer.
      b. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
         1) Heat-cool-off switch.
         2) Fan on-auto switch.
         3) Fan-speed switch.
         4) Manual **OR** Automatic, **as directed**, changeover.
         5) Adjustable deadband.
         6) Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**, set point.
         7) Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**, indication.
         8) Degree F **OR** Degree C, **as directed**, indication.
         9) Unoccupied-period-override push button.
         10) Data entry and access port to input temperature and humidity, **as directed**, set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature and humidity, **as directed**, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.
      c. Wall-mounted humidistat or sensor with the following features:
         1) Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**, set point.
         2) Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**, indication.
      d. Remote Wall **OR** Unit, **as directed**,-Mounted Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
         1) Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
         2) DDC controller or programmable timer and interface with HVAC instrumentation and control system.
         3) Digital display of outdoor-air temperature, supply-air temperature, return-air temperature, economizer damper position, indoor-air quality, and control parameters.
   3. Electronic **OR** DDC, **as directed**, Controller:
      a. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
      b. Safety Control Operation:
         1) Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
         2) Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F (54 deg C) enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
         3) Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in Division 28 Section(s) "Digital, Addressable Fire-alarm System" OR "Zoned (dc Loop) Fire-alarm System", **as directed.**
         4) Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply air temperature is less than 40 deg F (4 deg C).
         5) Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
      c. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day **OR** 365-day, **as directed**, clock with a minimum of two **OR** four, **as directed**, programmable periods per day.
      d. Unoccupied Period:
         1) Heating Setback: 10 deg F (5.6 deg C).
         2) Cooling Setback: System off.
         3) Override Operation: Two hours.
      e. Supply Fan Operation:

1) Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.

f. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
1) Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors, and operate hot-gas bypass, **as directed**, to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room **OR** discharge, **as directed**, temperature and humidity, **as directed**. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Compressors off **OR** Cycle compressors and condenser fans for heating to maintain setback temperature, **as directed**.
3) Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.

g. Hot-Gas Reheat-Coil Operation:
1) Occupied Periods: Humidistat opens hot-gas valve to provide hot-gas reheat, and cycles compressor.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Reheat not required.

h. Gas Furnace Operation:
1) Occupied Periods: Cycle **OR** Stage **OR** Modulate, **as directed**, burner to maintain room **OR** discharge, **as directed**, temperature.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.

i. Electric-Heating-Coil Operation:
1) Occupied Periods: Cycle **OR** Stage **OR** Modulate, **as directed**, coil to maintain room **OR** discharge, **as directed**, temperature.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Energize coil to maintain setback temperature.
3) Operate supplemental electric heating coil with compressor for heating with outdoor temperature below 25 deg F (minus 4 deg C).

j. Fixed Minimum Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
1) Occupied Periods: Open to 25 percent.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Close the outdoor-air damper.

k. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
1) Occupied Periods: Open to 10 **OR** 25, **as directed**, percent fixed minimum intake, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity to comply with ASHRAE Cycle II. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air is less than 60 deg F (15 deg C). Use outdoor-air temperature **OR** mixed-air and outdoor-air temperature **OR** outdoor-air enthalpy **OR** mixed-air temperature and select between outdoor-air and return-air enthalpy, **as directed**, to adjust mixing dampers. Start relief-air fan with end switch on outdoor-air damper, **as directed**. During economizer cycle operation, lock out cooling.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.
3) Outdoor-Airflow Monitor: Accuracy maximum plus or minus 5 percent within 15 and 100 percent of total outdoor air. Monitor microprocessor shall adjust for temperature, and output shall range from 2- to 10-V dc **OR** 4 to 20 mA, **as directed**.

l. Carbon Dioxide Sensor Operation:
1) Occupied Periods: Reset minimum outdoor-air ratio down to minimum 10 percent to maintain maximum 1000-ppm concentration.
2) Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.

m. VVT Relays:
1) Provide heating- and cooling-mode changeover relays compatible with VVT terminal control system required in Division 23 Section(s) "Air Terminal Units" AND "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".

4. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
a. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
b. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
c. Provide BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
1) Adjusting set points.

2) Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
3) Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, **as directed**, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity, **as directed**.
4) Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
5) Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
6) Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
7) Monitoring cooling load.
8) Monitoring economizer cycles.
9) Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

J. Accessories
1. Electric heater with integral thermostat maintains minimum 50 deg F (10 deg C) temperature in gas burner compartment.
2. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open, **as directed**.
3. Low-ambient kit using staged **OR** damper on **OR** variable-speed, **as directed**, condenser fans for operation down to 35 deg F (1.7 deg C).
4. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.
5. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.
6. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
7. Concentric diffuser with white louvers and polished aluminum return grilles, insulated diffuser box with mounting flanges, and interior transition.

K. Roof Curbs
1. Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind or seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
OR
Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
a. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1) Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
2) Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
b. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
1) Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
2) Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
3) Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
4) Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
2. Curb Height: 14 inches (355 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (910 mm), **as directed**.
3. Wind and Seismic Restraints: Metal brackets compatible with the curb and casing, painted to match RTU, used to anchor unit to the curb, and designed for loads at Project site. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" for wind-load requirements.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
   a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger than supported equipment and minimum 6 inches (150 mm) above finished ground elevation.
   b. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   d. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
   e. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
2. Equipment Mounting: Install RTUs on concrete base using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
   a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.

   OR

   Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts" **OR** ARI Guideline B, **as directed**. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories". Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.
3. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs **OR** pilings, **as directed**. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.
4. Install wind and seismic restraints according to manufacturer's written instructions. Wind and seismically restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".

B. Connections
1. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
2. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
   a. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section(s) "Facility Natural-gas Piping" OR "Facility Liquefied-petroleum Gas Piping", **as directed**. Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
3. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
   a. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
   b. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
   c. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories".
   d. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
   e. Install normal-weight, 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), compressive strength (28-day) concrete mix inside roof curb, 4 inches (100 mm) thick. Concrete, formwork, and reinforcement are specified in Division 31.

C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
   b. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.

c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Startup Service
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
2. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:
a. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
b. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
c. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
d. Inspect internal insulation.
e. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
f. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
g. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
h. Verify that filters are installed.
i. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
j. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
k. Connect and purge gas line.
l. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
m. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
n. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
o. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
p. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
q. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1) Start refrigeration system.
2) Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
3) Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
r. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
s. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
t. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
1) Measure gas pressure on manifold.
2) Inspect operation of power vents.
3) Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
4) Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
5) Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
6) Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
u. Calibrate thermostats.
v. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
w. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
x. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F (8 deg C) above return-air temperature:
1) Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
2) Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
3) Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
4) Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
y. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
z. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.

1) Supply-air volume.
2) Return-air volume.
3) Relief-air volume.
4) Outdoor-air intake volume.

aa. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
1) Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
2) Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.

bb. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
1) High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
2) Low-temperature safety operation.
3) Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
4) Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
5) Relief-air fan operation.
6) Smoke and firestat alarms.

cc. After startup and performance testing and prior to Final Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

E. Cleaning And Adjusting
1. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
2. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

F. Demonstration

G. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 07 72 13 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 72 23 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for roof accessories. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Roof curbs.
   b. Equipment supports.
   c. Roof hatches.
   d. Dropout-type heat and smoke vents.
   e. Hatch-type heat and smoke vents.
   f. Gravity ventilators.
   g. Roof supports.
   h. Roof walkways.
   i. Preformed flashings.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roof accessories.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed factory-applied color finish required and for each type of roof accessory indicated, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing indicated.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Pack, handle, and ship roof accessories properly labeled in heavy-duty packaging to prevent damage.

F. Warranty
1. Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within 20 years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metal Materials
1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coated and mill phosphatized for field painting.
2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, AZ50 (AZM150) coated.
3. Prepainted, Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Steel sheet metallic coated by hot-dip process and prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
   a. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coated.
   b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coated.

c. Exposed Finishes: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight.

4. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and mill finish. Coil-coat finish as follows:
   a. Factory-Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is indicated, provide pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
   b. Clear **OR** Color, **as directed**, Anodic Finish: Architectural Class II, complying with AAMA 611.
      1) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** Champagne, **as directed**.
   c. Baked-Enamel Finish: Organic Coating: Thermosetting, modified-acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm), medium gloss.
      1) Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   d. High-Performance Organic Finish: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight.
      1) Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   e. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, electrostatically apply manufacturer's standard baked-polymer thermosetting powder finish.
      1) Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
5. Stainless-Steel Shapes or Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 or Type 316, No. 2D finish.
6. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use, mill finished.
7. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube, baked-enamel finished.
9. Galvanized Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube, hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
10. Galvanized Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M.

B. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Acrylic Glazing: ASTM D 4802, thermoformable, monolithic sheet, category as standard with manufacturer, Type UVA (formulated with UV absorber), Finish 1 (smooth or polished).
2. Polycarbonate Glazing: Thermoformable, monolithic polycarbonate sheets manufactured by extrusion process, burglar-resistance rated per UL 972 with an average impact strength of 12 to 16 ft-lbf/in. (640 to 854 J/m) of width when tested according to ASTM D 256, Method A (Izod).
3. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
7. Security Grilles: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M steel bars spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. in 1 direction and 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. in the other; factory primed.
   a. Factory Finish:
      1) Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
      2) Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
      3) Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer; selected for resistance to normal atmospheric

corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.

8. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
9. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
10. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
    a. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized paper, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).
11. Fasteners: Same metal as metals being fastened, or nonmagnetic stainless steel or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners.
12. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC; or flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
13. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, polyurethane **OR** polysulfide **OR** silicone, **as directed**, sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
14. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant, polyisobutylene plasticized, and heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
15. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, nonasbestos, fibrated asphalt cement designed for trowel application or other adhesive compatible with roofing system.

C. Roof Curbs
1. Roof Curbs: Provide metal roof curbs, internally reinforced and capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported on roof curbs. Fabricate with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, with integral metal cant, **OR** stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, **as directed**, and integral formed mounting flange at perimeter bottom. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
    a. Load Requirements: As required to satisfy local code requirements.
    b. Material:
        1) Galvanized **OR** Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated, **as directed**, steel sheet, 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.079 inch (2.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        2) Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
        3) Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
    c. Finish:
        1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
        2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
    d. Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
    e. Factory install wood nailers at tops of curbs.
    f. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
    g. Factory insulate curbs with 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) thick, cellulosic-fiber **OR** glass-fiber, **as directed**, board insulation.
    h. Curb height may be determined by adding thickness of roof insulation and minimum base flashing height recommended by roofing membrane manufacturer. Fabricate units to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
    i. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb units with water diverter or cricket and with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

D. Equipment Supports
1. Equipment Supports: Provide metal equipment supports, internally reinforced and capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported. Fabricate with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, with integral metal

cant **OR** stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, **as directed**, and integral formed mounting flange at perimeter bottom. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

a. Load Requirements: As required to satisfy local code requirements.
b. Material:
   1) Galvanized **OR** Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated, **as directed**, steel sheet, 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.079 inch (2.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   2) Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
   3) Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
c. Finish:
   1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
d. Factory-install continuous wood nailers 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 5-1/2 inches (140 mm), **as directed**, wide at tops of equipment supports.
e. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard removable counterflashing, fabricated of same metal and finish as equipment support.
f. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
g. Fabricate units to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
h. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb units with water diverter or cricket and with height tapered to match slope to level tops of units.

E. Roof Hatches

1. Roof Hatches: Fabricate roof hatches with insulated double-wall lids and insulated single-wall **OR** double-wall, **as directed**, curb frame with integral deck mounting flange and lid frame counterflashing. Fabricate with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints. Provide continuous weathertight perimeter gasketing and equip with corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware.
   a. Loads: Fabricate roof hatches to withstand 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9-kPa) external and 20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.95-kPa) internal loads.
   b. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 30 by 36 inches (750 by 900 mm) **OR** 30 by 54 inches (750 by 1370 mm) **OR** 30 by 96 inches (750 by 2440 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Type and Size: Double-leaf lid, 72 by 96 inches (1830 by 2440 mm).
   d. Curb and Lid Material:
      1) Galvanized **OR** Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated, **as directed**, steel sheet, 0.079 inch (2.0 mm) thick.
      2) Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
      3) Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
   e. Finish:
      1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
      2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
   f. Insulation: Cellulosic-fiber **OR** Glass-fiber **OR** Polyisocyanurate, **as directed**, board.
   g. Interior Lid Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
   h. Exterior Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as metal curb.
   i. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
   j. Fabricate units to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
   k. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate hatch curbs with height constant **OR** tapered to match slope to level tops of units, **as directed**.
   l. Hardware: Galvanized steel **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, spring latch with turn handles, butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
      1) Provide 2-point latch on covers larger than 84 inches (2130 mm).
      2) Provide remote-control operation.

m. Ladder Safety Post: Manufacturer's standard ladder safety post. Post to lock in place on full extension. Provide release mechanism to return post to closed position.
n. Safety Railing System: Manufacturer's standard complete system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and all accessories required for a complete installation.

F. Heat And Smoke Vents
1. Dropout-Type Heat and Smoke Vents: Manufacturer's standard gravity-operated, automatic smoke and heat vents with integral double-wall insulated curbs and frame with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, integral condensation gutter, cap flashing, and heat-sensitive dome glazing that will deform and drop out of vent opening within 5 minutes of exposure to a simulated fire represented by a time-temperature gradient that reaches an air temperature of 500 deg F (260 deg C) within 5 minutes.
a. Loads: Fabricate heat and smoke vents to withstand a minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9-kPa) external live load and 30-lbf/sq. ft. (1.4-kPa) uplift.
1) Dome glazing shall have a thickness capable of resisting 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9-kPa) external and 20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.95-kPa) internal loads.
b. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with UL 793 and NFPA 204.
c. Heat and Smoke Vent Compliance: Provide units that have been tested and UL listed **OR** FMG approved, **as directed**.
d. Integral Curb and Framing Material:
1) Galvanized **OR** Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated, **as directed**, steel sheet, 0.079 inch (2.0 mm) thick.
2) Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
3) Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
e. Finish:
1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
2) Finish: Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
f. Insulation: Cellulosic-fiber **OR** Glass-fiber **OR** Polyisocyanurate, **as directed**, board.
g. Exterior Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as metal curb.
h. Fabricate integral curbs to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
i. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curbs with height constant **OR** tapered to match slope to level tops of units, **as directed**.
j. Dome Glazing: Single **OR** Double, **as directed,** acrylic **OR** polycarbonate, **as directed**, glazing.
1) Single-Dome Color: Colorless, transparent **OR** White, translucent **OR** Gray tinted, transparent **OR** Bronze tinted, transparent, **as directed**.
2) Outer Double-Dome Color: Colorless, transparent **OR** White, translucent **OR** Gray tinted, transparent **OR** Bronze tinted, transparent, **as directed**.
3) Inner Double-Dome Color: Colorless, transparent **OR** White, translucent **OR** Gray tinted, transparent **OR** Bronze tinted, transparent, **as directed**.
2. Hatch-Type Heat and Smoke Vents: Manufacturer's standard single-leaf **OR** double-leaf, **as directed**, hatch-type heat and smoke vents with integral double-wall insulated curbs and frame, with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints, integral condensation gutter, and cap flashing. Fabricate with insulated double-wall lid, continuous weathertight perimeter lid gaskets, and equip with automatic self-lifting mechanisms, UL-listed fusible links rated at 165 deg F (74 deg C) **OR** fire-suppression system **OR** smoke-detection system, **as directed**, and corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware including hinges, hold-open devices, and independent manual-release devices for inside and outside operation of lids.
a. Loads: Fabricate heat and smoke vent to withstand a minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.9-kPa) external live load and 30-lbf/sq. ft. (1.4-kPa) uplift.
1) When release is actuated, lid shall open against 10-lbf/sq. ft. (0.5-kPa) snow or wind load and lock in position.

b. Regulatory Requirements: UL 793 and NFPA 204.
c. Heat and Smoke Vent Compliance: Provide units that have been tested and UL listed **OR** FMG approved, **as directed**.
d. Fire Resistance of Lids: UL Class A rating.
e. Integral Curb, Framing, and Lid Material:
   1) Galvanized **OR** Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated, **as directed**, steel sheet, 0.079 inch (2.0 mm) thick.
   2) Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
   3) Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
f. Finish:
   1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
   2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
g. Insulation: Cellulosic-fiber **OR** Glass-fiber **OR** Polyisocyanurate, **as directed**, board.
h. Fabricate integral curbs to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
i. Sloping Roofs: Where slope of roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curbs with height constant **OR** tapered to match slope to level tops of units, **as directed**.

G. Gravity Ventilators
1. Low-Profile, Cylindrical-Style Gravity Ventilators: Manufacturer's standard unit fabricated from the following materials, with manufacturer's standard welded or sealed mechanical joints:
   a. Provide integral base flange, vent cylinder, cylinder bird screen, and rain cap **OR** hood, **as directed**.
   b. Dimensions: As indicated.
   c. Style: As indicated.
   d. Bird Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
   e. Insect Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
   f. Vent Cylinder, Base Flange, and Rain-Cap **OR** Hood, **as directed** Material: Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, of manufacturer's standard thickness.
   g. Finish:
      1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
      2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
2. Low-Profile, Louvered Penthouse-Style Gravity Ventilators: Manufacturer's standard unit fabricated from the following materials, with manufacturer's standard welded or sealed mechanical joints:
   a. Provide integral frame with base flange, weathertight cap, louver bird screen, and weatherproof sidewall louvers.
   b. Dimensions: As indicated.
   c. Style: As indicated.
   d. Bird Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
   e. Insect Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
   f. Integral Frame, Base Flange, Weathertight Cap, and Louver Material: Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, of manufacturer's standard thickness.
   g. Finish:
      1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
      2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
3. Directional Louvered Pedestal-Style Gravity Ventilators: Manufacturer's standard unit fabricated from the following materials, with manufacturer's standard welded or sealed mechanical joints:
   a. Provide integral weathertight base cap, integral outlet duct, weathertight sidewalls, bird screen, and weatherproof sidewall louver.

b. Dimensions: As indicated.
c. Style: As indicated.
d. Bird Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
e. Insect Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
f. Weathertight Base Cap, Outlet Duct, Sidewall, and Louver Material: Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, of manufacturer's standard thickness.
g. Finish:
1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.

4. Turbine-Style Gravity Ventilators: Manufacturer's standard unit fabricated from the following materials, with manufacturer's standard welded or sealed mechanical joints:
a. Provide integral weathertight base cap, outlet duct, and rotating louvered turbine.
b. Dimensions: As indicated.
c. Style: As indicated.
d. Bird Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
e. Insect Screens: Manufacturer's standard mesh with rewireable frame.
f. Weathertight Base Cap, Outlet Duct, and Turbine Material: Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, sheet, of manufacturer's standard thickness.
g. Finish:
1) Prime painted **OR** Baked enamel **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
2) Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.

H. Roof Supports
1. Pipe Roof Supports: Adjustable height, extruded-aluminum tube, urethane insulation filled, 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter, with aluminum base plates and manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure **OR** structural roof deck, **as directed**, and extruded-aluminum carrier assemblies, suitable for quantity of pipe runs and sizes, with EPDM end caps. Include manufacturer's standard hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck.
a. Pipe Support Height: As indicated.
b. Pipe Roller Assembly: Stainless-steel roller assembly sized for supported pipes with extruded aluminum.
c. Pipe Support Flashing: Insulated **OR** Uninsulated, **as directed**, sleeve flashings with integral base flange, and EPDM grommetted top seal and base seals.
1) Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.064 inch (1.6 mm) thick **OR** Copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm) thick, **as directed**.

2. Terrace Lighting Roof Supports: Epoxy-coated hollow structural section steel pipe support, urethane insulation filled, with epoxy-coated steel base plates and manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure **OR** structural roof deck, **as directed**, 14 inches (356 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**, high, with galvanized threaded cap.
a. Lighting Pole Mounting: Stainless-steel lighting pole adapter **OR** Epoxy-coated steel plate with stainless-steel studs, **as directed**.
b. Pipe Support Flashing: Insulated **OR** Uninsulated, , metal sleeve flashings with integral base flange, and EPDM grommetted top seal and base seals.
1) Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.064 inch (1.6 mm) thick **OR** Copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm) thick, **as directed**.

3. Light-Duty Pipe Roof Supports: Extruded-aluminum base assembly and Type 304 stainless-steel roller assembly for pipe sizes indicated, including manufacturer's standard hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck.
4. Duct Roof Supports: 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter, extruded-aluminum, urethane-insulated supports, including manufacturer's standard hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck.

I. Roof Walkways

1. Roof Walkway: Multiple C-shaped-channel formed-metal planks, as follows, with upper surface punched in serrated diamond or rectangular shapes to produce raised slip-resistant surface and drainage holes. Provide support framing, brackets, connectors, nosings, and other accessories and components needed for complete installation. Include step units for changes in elevation.
   a. Plank Width: 4-3/4 inches (121 mm) **OR** 7 inches (178 mm) **OR** 9-1/2 inches (241 mm) **OR** 11-3/4 inches (298 mm) **OR** 18-3/4 inches (476 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Walkway Width: As indicated.
   c. Channel Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** As indicated., **as directed**
   d. Metal Material: -0.079-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet **OR** 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.078-inch- (1.98-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) thick, mill-finished aluminum sheet **OR** 0.100-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, mill-finished aluminum sheet, **as directed**.
   e. Provide isolation pads attached to supports so supports are completely isolated from roof membrane surface.

J. Preformed Flashings
   1. Exhaust Vent Flashings: Double-wall metal flashing sleeve, urethane insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches (300 mm) high, with removable metal hood and slotted **OR** perforated, **as directed**, metal collar, and as follows:
      a. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.064 inch (1.6 mm) thick, mill finished **OR** Copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm thick), **as directed**.
      b. Diameter: As indicated.
   2. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, with integral deck flange, uninsulated, and as follows:
      a. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.064 inch (1.6 mm) thick, mill finished **OR** Copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm thick), **as directed**.
      b. Height: As indicated..
      c. Diameter: As indicated.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
   1. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof accessories securely in place and capable of resisting forces specified. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for completing roof accessory installation. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.
   2. Install roof accessories to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
   3. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
      a. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
      b. Underlayment: Where installing exposed-to-view components of roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
      c. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by roof accessory manufacturers for waterproof performance.
   4. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.

5. Seal joints with elastomeric **OR** butyl, **as directed**, sealant as required by manufacturer of roof accessories.

END OF SECTION 07 72 23 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 72 23 00	07 72 13 00	Intake and Relief Ventilators
07 72 26 00	07 72 23 00	Roof Accessories
07 72 33 00	07 72 23 00	Roof Accessories
07 72 36 00	07 72 23 00	Roof Accessories
07 72 53 00	07 31 13 13	Asphalt Shingles
07 72 53 00	07 72 23 00	Roof Accessories

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 72 56 00 - HEAT TRACING FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes heat tracing for freeze prevention of fire-suppression piping with self-regulating, parallel-resistance electric heating cables.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220533 "Heat Tracing for Plumbing Piping."
2. Section 230533 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.

B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables and controls to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: [**Three**] [**Five**] [**10**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain all heat tracing from one manufacturer.

B. Standard: IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel [**No. 16**] [**No. 18**] AWG, [**tinned**] [**nickel-coated**], stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.

E. Grounding Cover: [**Copper**] [**Tinned-copper**] braid.

F. Cable Cover: Polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.

G. Terminate cable with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable is to be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.

H. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): [**150 deg F (65 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

I. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): [**185 deg F (85 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

J. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled for fire protection use as defined in NFPA 70 and NFPA 13 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application. All heating cable used on branch sprinkler piping is to be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency specifically for this use.

K. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Maximum Heat Output: [**3 W/ft. (9.8 W/m)**] [**5 W/ft. (16.4 W/m)**] [**8 W/ft. (26 W/m)**] [**10 W/ft. (32.8 W/m)**] [**12 W/ft. (39.4 W/m)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Piping Diameter: as directed by the Owner .
3. Number of Parallel Cables: as directed by the Owner .
4. Spiral Wrap Pitch: as directed by the Owner .
5. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection:

    a. Volts: [**120**] [**208**] [**240**] [**277**] [**480**] V or as directed by the Owner .
    b. Phase: as directed by the Owner .
    c. Hertz: as directed by the Owner .
    d. Full-Load Amperes: as directed by the Owner .
    e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: as directed by the Owner .
    f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: as directed by the Owner .

2.2 CONTROLS

A. Control Panel:

1. [**Microprocessor-based**] [**Automatic**] control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.

2. Remote temperature sensor senses outside air temperature; programmable to energize the cable when temperature falls below [**34 to 44 deg F (1 to 7 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and temperature sensors.
4. Minimum 30 A contactor to energize cable or close other contactors.
5. Ground-fault protection.
6. Single-point control of heat tracing for freeze protection.
7. Provide communication ports with contacts, RS485, or Ethernet interface for remote monitoring and alarm by fire-alarm system. Coordinate type of connection ports with [**Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."**] [**Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems."**]

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Warning Labels: See Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."

C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.

1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum.
2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) or Larger: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install electric heating cable at locations indicated and install in accordance with NFPA 70 and NFPA 13.

B. Install electric heating cable across expansion, construction, and control joints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions; use cable-protection conduit and slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.

C. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.

D. Install electric heating cables in accordance with IEEE 515.1.

E. Install insulation over piping with electric cables in accordance with Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."

F. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.

G. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

H. Install temperature-control units in an accessible location and according to manufacturer's written instructions. Locate sensing bulbs to sense outside air temperature in a location where it will not be affected by direct sunlight or other heat sources.

I. Install control panels and distribution panels where indicated and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Install and connect outside air and pipe temperature sensors.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Connect heat-tracing controls to fire-alarm system in accordance with NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in [**Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."**] [**Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems."**]

D. Connect temperature-control unit to interrupt power supply to electric heating cable when outside air is above set point.

E. Connect remote electronic temperature sensors.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections[**with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:

1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings, such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.

D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.

E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage.

B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 07 72 56 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 72 56 00a - HEAT TRACING FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes heat tracing of plumbing piping for freeze prevention [**and, domestic hot-water-temperature maintenance**] with self-regulating, parallel-resistance electric heating cables:

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping."
2. Section 230533 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.

B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables and controls to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: [**Three**] [**Five**] [**10**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain all heat tracing from one manufacturer.

B. Standard: IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel [**No. 16**] [**No. 18**] AWG, [**tinned**] [**nickel-coated**], stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.

E. Grounding Cover: [**Copper**] [**Tinned-copper**] braid.

F. Cable Cover: Polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.

G. Terminate cable with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable is to be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.

H. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): [**150 deg F (65 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

I. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): [**185 deg F (85 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

J. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

K. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Maximum Heat Output: [**3 W/ft. (9.8 W/m)**] [**5 W/ft. (16.4 W/m)**] [**8 W/ft. (26 W/m)**] [**10 W/ft. (32.8 W/m)**] [**12 W/ft. (39.4 W/m)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Piping Diameter: as directed by the Owner .
3. Number of Parallel Cables: as directed by the Owner .
4. Spiral Wrap Pitch: as directed by the Owner .
5. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection:

    a. Volts: [**120**] [**208**] [**240**] [**277**] [**480**] V or as directed by the Owner .
    b. Phase: as directed by the Owner .
    c. Hertz: as directed by the Owner .
    d. Full-Load Amperes: as directed by the Owner .
    e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: as directed by the Owner .
    f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: as directed by the Owner .

2.2 CONTROLS

A. Pipe-Mounted Thermostats for Freeze Protection:

1. Remote bulb temperature control unit with adjustable range from [**30 to 50 deg F (minus 1 to plus 10 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

2. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
3. Remote temperature-sensing bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing outside air or pipe-wall temperature.
4. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

B. Control Panel:

1. [**Microprocessor-based**] [**Automatic**] control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.
2. Remote temperature sensor senses outside air temperature; programmable to energize the freeze-protection cable when temperature falls below [**34 to 44 deg F (1 to 7 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Remote temperature sensor senses domestic hot water temperature: programmable to control the domestic hot water temperature at [**110 to 120 deg F (47 to 53 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and temperature sensors.
5. Minimum 30 A contactor to energize cable or close other contactors.
6. Ground-fault protection.
7. Single-point control of heat tracing for freeze protection[**and domestic hot-water-temperature maintenance**].
8. Provide communication ports with contacts, RS485, or Ethernet interface for remote monitoring and alarm by central HVAC-control system. Coordinate type of connection ports with Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

C. Programmable Timer for Domestic Hot-Water-Temperature Maintenance:

1. Microprocessor based.
2. Minimum of four separate schedules.
3. Minimum 24-hour battery carryover.
4. On-off-auto switch.
5. 365-day calendar with 20 programmable holidays.
6. Relays with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, and for interface with central HVAC-control system.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Warning Labels: See Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.

1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum.
2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) or Larger: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install electric heating cable at locations indicated and in accordance with NFPA 70.

B. Install electric heating cable across expansion, construction, and control joints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions; use cable-protection conduit and slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.

C. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.

D. Install electric heating cables in accordance with IEEE 515.1.

E. Install insulation over piping with electric cables in accordance with Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

F. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.

G. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

H. Install temperature-control units in an accessible location and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Locate sensing bulbs to sense outside air temperature in a location where it will not be affected by direct sunlight or other heat sources.

I. Install control panels and distribution panels where indicated and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Install and connect outside air and pipe temperature sensors.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Connect temperature-control unit for freeze protection to interrupt power supply to electric heating cable when outside air is above set point.

D. Connect temperature-control unit for domestic hot-water-temperature maintenance to interrupt power supply to electric heating cable when hot water is above set point.

E. Connect remote electronic temperature sensors.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections[**with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:

1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings, such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.

D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.

E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage.

B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 07 72 56 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 72 56 00b - HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes heat tracing for freeze prevention of HVAC piping with self-regulating, parallel-resistance, electric heating cables:

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping."
2. Section 220533 "Heat Tracing for Plumbing Piping."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.

B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables and controls to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: [**Three**] [**Five**] [**10**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain all heat tracing from one manufacturer.

B. Standard: IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel [**No. 16**] [**No. 18**] AWG, [**tinned**] [**nickel-coated**], stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.

E. Grounding Cover: [**Copper**] [**Tinned-copper**] braid.

F. Cable Cover: [**Tinned-copper**] [**Stainless steel**] braid[**and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor**].

G. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable is to be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.

H. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): [**150 deg F (65 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

I. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): [**185 deg F (85 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

J. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

K. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Maximum Heat Output: [**3 W/ft. (9.8 W/m)**] [**5 W/ft. (16.4 W/m)**] [**8 W/ft. (26 W/m)**] [**10 W/ft. (32.8 W/m)**] [**12 W/ft. (39.4 W/m)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Piping Diameter: as directed by the Owner .
3. Number of Parallel Cables: as directed by the Owner .
4. Spiral Wrap Pitch: as directed by the Owner .
5. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection:

    a. Volts: [**120**] [**208**] [**240**] [**277**] [**480**] V or as directed by the Owner .
    b. Phase: [**1**] [**3**] or as directed by the Owner .
    c. Hertz: [**60 Hz**] Hz or as directed by the Owner .
    d. Full-Load Amperes: as directed by the Owner .
    e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: as directed by the Owner .
    f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: as directed by the Owner .

2.2 CONTROLS

A. Pipe-Mounted Thermostats for Freeze Protection:

1. Remote bulb temperature-control unit with adjustable range from [**30 to 50 deg F (minus 1 to plus 10 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .

2. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
3. Remote temperature-sensing bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing ambient air or pipe-wall temperature.
4. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

B. Control Panel:

1. [**Microprocessor-based**] [**Automatic**] control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.
2. Remote temperature sensors sense outside air temperature; programmable to energize the cable when temperature falls below [**34 to 44 deg F (1 to 7 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and precipitation and temperature sensors.
4. Minimum 30 A contactor to energize cable or close other contactors.
5. Ground-fault protection.
6. Single-point control of heat tracing for freeze protection.
7. Provide communication ports with contacts, RS485, or Ethernet interface for remote monitoring and alarm by central HVAC-control system. Coordinate type of connection ports with Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Warning Labels: See Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.

1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum.
2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) or Larger: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install electric heating cable at locations indicated and in accordance with NFPA 70.

B. Install electric heating cable across expansion, construction, and control joints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions; use cable-protection conduit and slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.

C. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.

D. Install electric heating cables in accordance with IEEE 515.1.

E. Install insulation over piping with electric cables in accordance with Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

F. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.

G. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

H. Install temperature-control units in an accessible location and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Locate sensing bulbs to sense outside air temperature in a location where it will not be affected by direct sunlight or other heat sources.

I. Install control panels and distribution panels where indicated and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Install outside air and pipe temperature sensors.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Connect temperature-control unit to interrupt power supply to electric heating cable when outside air is above set point.

D. Connect remote electronic temperature sensors.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections[**with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:

1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings, such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.

D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.

E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage.

B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 07 72 56 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 72 56 00c - RADIANT-HEATING ELECTRIC CABLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for radiant-heating electric cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes electric heating cables for ceiling or floor radiant heating, snow and ice melting on pavement, and freezer-floor frost-heave prevention with the following electric heating cables:
   a. Mineral insulated, series resistance.
   b. Plastic insulated, series resistance.
   c. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated.
   a. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.
2. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable. Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data.
5. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

E. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Mineral-Insulated, Series-Resistance Heating Cables
1. Heating Element: Single- or dual-conductor resistor wire. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled nonheating leads with connectors at both ends.
2. Electrical Insulating Mineral: Magnesium oxide.
3. Cable Cover: Copper/nickel alloy and high-density polyethylene outer jacket, **as directed**.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 300 deg F (150 deg C).

B. Plastic-Insulated, Series-Resistance Heating Cables
1. Comply with UL 1673.
2. Heating Element: Single- or dual-stranded resistor wire. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled nonheating leads with connectors at both ends.

3. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Minimum 4.0-mil (0.10-mm) Kapton with silicone jacket or Tefzel.
4. Cable Cover: Aluminum braid and silicone or Hylar outer jacket, **as directed**.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 300 deg F (150 deg C).
6. Heating Cable Mats: Factory-fabricated cable and fiberglass or plastic mesh with uniform 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 3-inch (76-mm), **as directed**, cable spacing, in 18-inch (457-mm) **OR** 36-inch (914-mm), **as directed**, widths.

C. Self-Regulating, Parallel-Resistance Heating Cables
1. Comply with UL 1673.
2. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 16 **OR** 18, **as directed**, AWG, tinned **OR** nickel-coated, **as directed**, stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.
3. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.
4. Cable Cover: Tinned-copper **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, braid, and polyolefin outer jacket with UV inhibitor, **as directed**.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F (65 deg C).
6. Heating Cable Mats: Factory-fabricated cable and fiberglass or plastic mesh with uniform 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 3-inch (76-mm), **as directed**, cable spacing, in 18-inch (457-mm) **OR** 36-inch (914-mm), **as directed**, widths.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 300 deg F (150 deg C).

D. Controls
1. Refer to Division 23 Section(s) "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" AND "Sequence Of Operations For Hvac Controls".
2. Wall-Mounting Thermostats for Ceiling and Floor Heating Cables:
   a. Minimum temperature range from 50 to 90 deg F (10 to 32 deg C).
   b. Manually operated with on-off switch.
3. Precipitation and Temperature Sensor for Snow Melting on Pavement:
   a. Microprocessor-based **OR** Automatic, **as directed**, control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.
   b. Precipitation and temperature sensors shall sense the surface conditions of pavement and shall be programmed to energize the cable as follows:
      1) Temperature Span: 34 to 44 deg F (1 to 7 deg C).
      2) Adjustable Delay Off Span: 30 to 90 minutes.
      3) Energize Cables: Following two-minute delay if ambient temperature is below set point and precipitation is detected.
      4) De-Energize Cables: On detection of a dry surface plus time delay.
   c. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and precipitation and temperature sensors.
   d. Minimum 30-A contactor to energize cable or close other contactors.
   e. Precipitation sensor shall be mounted in pavement.
   f. Provide relay with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, for interface with central HVAC control system workstation.

E. Accessories
1. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Applications

1. Install the following types of electric heating cable for the applications described:
   a. Ceiling Radiant Heating: Plastic-insulated, series-resistance **OR** Self-regulating, parallel-resistance, **as directed**, heating cable.
   b. Floor Radiant Heating: Plastic-insulated, series-resistance **OR** Self-regulating, parallel-resistance, **as directed**, heating cable.
   c. Snow and Ice Melting on Pavement: Mineral-insulated, series-resistance **OR** Plastic-insulated, series-resistance **OR** Self-regulating, parallel-resistance, **as directed**, heating cable.
   d. Freezer-Floor Frost-Heave Prevention: Plastic-insulated, series-resistance **OR** Self-regulating, parallel-resistance, **as directed**, heating cable.

B. Installation
1. Install electric heating cable or mats across expansion, construction, and control joints according to manufacturer's written recommendations using cable protection conduit and slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.
2. Do not energize cables embedded in concrete or plaster until those assemblies are cured.
3. Electric Heating Cable Installation for Ceiling Radiant Heating: Install heating cable with heat-conductive fill materials such as plaster, to ensure direct contact with finished radiant surfaces.
4. Electric Heating Cable Installation for Floor Radiant Heating: Install heating cable with heat-conductive fill materials such as concrete, to ensure direct contact with finished radiant surfaces.
5. Electric Heating Cable Installation for Snow and Ice Melting on Pavement:
   a. Install heating cable with heat-conductive fill materials such as asphalt or concrete, to ensure direct contact with finished radiant surfaces.
   b. Install cables or mats after applying bituminous binder course to lower base; ensure that second bituminous binder course is applied to cables before pouring finish topping.
6. Electric Heating Cable Installation for Freezer-Floor Frost-Heave Prevention: Install electric heating cable below insulation in subsoil.
7. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
8. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage.

C. Connections
1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing: Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
   a. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
   b. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.
2. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying finished surface on heating cables.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 07 72 56 00c

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 72 63 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
07 73 00 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 73 00 00	07 01 50 81a	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 73 00 00	07 52 13 00	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 73 00 00	07 52 16 00	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 73 00 00	07 53 16 00	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 73 00 00	07 53 23 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 76 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 81 16 00 - SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTIVE MATERIALS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sprayed fire-resistive materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Concealed SFRM.
   b. Exposed SFRM.
   c. Exposed intumescent mastic fire-resistive coatings.

C. Definitions
1. SFRM: Sprayed fire-resistive material.
2. Concealed: Fire-resistive materials applied to surfaces that are concealed from view behind other construction when the Work is completed and have not been defined as exposed, **as directed**.
3. Exposed: Fire-resistive materials applied to surfaces that are exposed to view when the Work is completed, that are accessible through suspended ceilings **OR** that are in elevator shafts and machine rooms **OR** that are in mechanical rooms **OR** that are in air-handling plenums **OR** and that are identified as exposed on Drawings, **as directed**.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show extent of sprayed fire-resistive material for each construction and fire-resistance rating, applicable fire-resistive design designations of a qualified testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and minimum thicknesses.
3. Product certificates **OR** test reports, **as directed**.
4. Compatibility and adhesion test reports.
5. Research/evaluation reports.
6. Field quality-control test and special inspection, **as directed**, reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer approved by SFRM manufacturer to install manufacturer's products. A manufacturer's willingness to sell its SFRM to Contractor or to an installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on the buyer.
2. SFRM Testing: By a qualified testing and inspecting agency engaged by Contractor or manufacturer to test for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods.
   a. SFRMs are randomly selected for testing from bags bearing the applicable classification marking of UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Testing is performed on specimens of SFRMs that comply with laboratory testing requirements specified in Part 2 and are otherwise identical to installed fire-resistive materials, including application of accelerant, sealers, topcoats, tamping, troweling, rolling, and water overspray, if any of these are used in final application.
   c. Testing is performed on specimens whose application the independent testing and inspecting agency witnessed during preparation and conditioning. Include in test reports a full description of preparation and conditioning of laboratory test specimens.

3. Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to test for compliance with requirements for specified performance and test methods.
   a. Test for bond per ASTM E 736 and requirements in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" for coating materials. Provide bond strength indicated in referenced fire-resistance design, but not less than minimum specified in Part 2.
   b. Verify that manufacturer, through its own laboratory testing or field experience, has not found primers or coatings to be incompatible with SFRM.
4. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide products identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency.
   b. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
5. Provide products containing no detectable asbestos as determined according to the method specified in 40 CFR 763, Subpart E, Appendix E, Section 1, "Polarized Light Microscopy."
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver products to Project site in original, unopened packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, shelf life if applicable, and fire-resistance ratings applicable to Project.
2. Use materials with limited shelf life within period indicated. Remove from Project site and discard materials whose shelf life has expired.
3. Store materials inside, under cover, and aboveground; keep dry until ready for use. Remove from Project site and discard wet or deteriorated materials.

G. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply SFRM when ambient or substrate temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) or lower unless temporary protection and heat are provided to maintain temperature at or above this level for 24 hours before, during, and for 24 hours after product application.
2. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces during and after application of SFRM. Use natural means or, if they are inadequate, forced-air circulation until fire-resistive material dries thoroughly.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Contractor and by Installer, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SFRMs that fail in materials or workmanship within two years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Concealed SFRM
1. Material Composition: Manufacturer's standard product, as follows **OR** either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Concealed Cementitious SFRM: Factory-mixed, dry formulation of gypsum or portland cement binders, additives, and lightweight mineral or synthetic aggregates mixed with water at Project site to form a slurry or mortar for conveyance and application.
   b. Concealed Sprayed-Fiber Fire-Resistive Material: Factory-mixed, dry formulation of inorganic binders, mineral fibers, fillers, and additives conveyed in a dry state by pneumatic equipment and mixed with water at spray nozzle to form a damp, as-applied product.
2. Physical Properties: Minimum values, unless otherwise indicated, or higher values required to attain designated fire-resistance ratings, measured per standard test methods referenced with each property as follows:

a. Dry Density: 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m) for average and individual densities, or greater if required to attain fire-resistance ratings indicated, per ASTM E 605 or AWCI Technical Manual 12-A, Section 5.4.5, "Displacement Method."
b. Thickness: Minimum average thickness required for fire-resistance design indicated according to the following criteria, but not less than 0.375 inch (9 mm), per ASTM E 605:
   1) Where the referenced fire-resistance design lists a thickness of 1 inch (25 mm) or more, the minimum allowable individual thickness of SFRM is the design thickness minus 0.25 inch (6 mm).
   2) Where the referenced fire-resistance design lists a thickness of less than 1 inch (25 mm) but more than 0.375 inch (9 mm), the minimum allowable individual thickness of SFRM is the greater of 0.375 inch (9 mm) or 75 percent of the design thickness.
   3) No reduction in average thickness is permitted for those fire-resistance designs whose fire-resistance ratings were established at densities of less than 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m).
c. Bond Strength: 150 lbf/sq. ft. (7.2 kPa) minimum per ASTM E 736 based on laboratory testing of 0.75-inch (19-mm) minimum thickness of SFRM.
d. Compressive Strength: 5.21 lbf/sq. in. (35.9 kPa) minimum per ASTM E 761. Minimum thickness of SFRM tested shall be 0.75 inch (19 mm) and minimum dry density shall be as specified but not less than 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m).
e. Corrosion Resistance: No evidence of corrosion per ASTM E 937.
f. Deflection: No cracking, spalling, or delamination per ASTM E 759.
g. Effect of Impact on Bonding: No cracking, spalling, or delamination per ASTM E 760.
h. Air Erosion: Maximum weight loss of 0.025 g/sq. ft. (0.270 g/sq. m) in 24 hours per ASTM E 859. For laboratory tests, minimum thickness of SFRM is 0.75 inch (19 mm), maximum dry density is 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m), test specimens are not prepurged by mechanically induced air velocities, and tests are terminated after 24 hours.
i. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide SFRM with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
   1) Flame-Spread Index: 10 or less.
   2) Smoke-Developed Index: 0.
j. Fungal Resistance: No observed growth on specimens per ASTM G 21.

B. Exposed SFRM
1. Material Composition: Manufacturer's standard product, as follows:
   a. Exposed Cementitious SFRM: Factory-mixed, dry, cement aggregate formulation; or chloride-free formulation of gypsum or portland cement binders, additives, and inorganic aggregates mixed with water at Project site to form a slurry or mortar for conveyance and application.
   b. Exposed Sprayed-Fiber Fire-Resistive Material: Factory-mixed, dry formulation of inorganic binders, mineral fibers, fillers, and additives conveyed in a dry state by pneumatic equipment and mixed with water at spray nozzle to form a damp, as-applied product.
2. Physical Properties: Minimum values, unless otherwise indicated, or higher values required to attain designated fire-resistance ratings, measured per standard test methods referenced with each property as follows:
   a. Dry Density: Values for average and individual densities as required for fire-resistance ratings indicated, per ASTM E 605 or AWCI Technical Manual 12-A, Section 5.4.5, "Displacement Method," but with an average density of not less than 22 lb/cu. ft. (352 kg/cu. m).
   b. Bond Strength: 434 lbf/sq. ft. (21 kPa) minimum per ASTM E 736.
   c. Compressive Strength: 51 lbf/sq. in. (351 kPa) minimum per ASTM E 761.
   d. Dry Density: Values for average and individual densities as required for fire-resistance ratings indicated, per ASTM E 605 or AWCI Technical Manual 12-A, Section 5.4.5, "Displacement Method," but with an average density of not less than 39 lb/cu. ft. (625 kg/cu. m).
   e. Bond Strength: 1000 lbf/sq. ft. (48 kPa) minimum per ASTM E 736.

f. Compressive Strength: 300 lbf/sq. in. (2067 kPa) minimum per ASTM E 761.
g. Corrosion Resistance: No evidence of corrosion per ASTM E 937.
h. Deflection: No cracking, spalling, or delamination per ASTM E 759.
i. Effect of Impact on Bonding: No cracking, spalling, or delamination per ASTM E 760.
j. Air Erosion: Maximum weight loss of 0.025 g/sq. ft. (0.270 g/sq. m) per ASTM E 859.
k. Combustion Characteristics: Passes ASTM E 136.
l. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide SFRM with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
    1) Flame-Spread Index: 10 or less.
    2) Smoke-Developed Index: 0.
m. Fungal Resistance: No observed growth on specimens per ASTM G 21.
n. For exterior applications of SFRM, provide formulation listed and labeled by testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for surfaces exposed to exterior.

C. Exposed Intumescent Mastic Fire-Resistive Coatings
1. Fire-Resistive, Intumescent Mastic Coating: Factory-mixed formulation.
    a. Water-Based Formulation: Approved by manufacturer and authorities having jurisdiction and investigated for Interior General **OR** Conditioned Interior Space, **as directed**, Purpose by UL.
    b. Non-Water-Based Formulation: Approved by manufacturer and UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and investigated for Interior General Purpose by UL **OR** investigated for Interior General Purpose and Exterior Use by UL **OR** tested per ASTM E 1529 **OR** tested per UL 1709, **as directed**.
    c. Multicomponent system consisting of intumescent base coat and topcoat.
2. Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

D. Auxiliary Fire-Resistive Materials
1. General: Provide auxiliary fire-resistive materials that are compatible with SFRM and substrates and are approved by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use in fire-resistance designs indicated.
2. Substrate Primers: For use on each substrate and with each sprayed fire-resistive product, provide primer that complies with one or more of the following requirements:
    a. Primer's bond strength complies with requirements specified in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" for coating materials based on a series of bond tests per ASTM E 736.
    b. Primer is identical to those used in assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics of SFRM per ASTM E 119 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Adhesive for Bonding Fire-Resistive Material: Product approved by manufacturer of SFRM.
4. Metal Lath: Expanded metal lath fabricated from material of weight, configuration, and finish required to comply with fire-resistance designs indicated and fire-resistive material manufacturer's written recommendations. Include clips, lathing accessories, corner beads, and other anchorage devices required to attach lath to substrates and to receive SFRM.
5. Reinforcing Fabric: Glass- or carbon-fiber fabric of type, weight, and form required to comply with fire-resistance designs indicated; approved and provided by manufacturer of SFRM.
6. Reinforcing Mesh: Metallic mesh reinforcement of type, weight, and form required to comply with fire-resistance designs indicated; approved and provided by manufacturer of intumescent mastic coating fire-resistive material. Include pins and attachment.
7. Sealer for Sprayed-Fiber Fire-Resistive Material: Transparent-drying, water-dispersible, tinted protective coating recommended in writing by manufacturer of sprayed-fiber fire-resistive material.
8. Topcoat: Type recommended in writing by manufacturer of each SFRM for application over concealed **OR** exposed, **as directed**, SFRM.

9. Cement-Based Topcoat: Factory-mixed, cementitious hardcoat formulation recommended in writing by manufacturer of SFRM for trowel or spray application over concealed **OR** exposed, **as directed**, SFRM.
10. Veneer-Plaster Topcoat: Factory-mixed formulation of a latex-modified, portland cement-based veneer plaster recommended in writing by manufacturer of SFRM for trowel or spray application over concealed **OR** exposed, **as directed**, SFRM.
11. Water-Based Permeable Topcoat: Factory-mixed formulation recommended in writing by manufacturer of SFRM for brush, roller, or spray application over concealed **OR** exposed, **as directed**, SFRM. Provide application at a rate of 120 sq. ft./gal. (3 sq. m/L) **OR** 60 sq. ft./gal. (1.5 sq. m/L) **OR** 30 sq. ft./gal. (0.75 sq. m/L), **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Cover other work subject to damage from fallout or overspray of fire-resistive materials during application.
2. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of fire-resistive material, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, rolling compounds, mill scale, loose scale, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.
3. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer unless compatible shop primer has been applied and is in satisfactory condition to receive SFRM.
4. For exposed applications, repair substrates to remove surface imperfections that could affect uniformity of texture and thickness in finished surface of SFRM. Remove minor projections and fill voids that would telegraph through fire-resistive products after application.

B. Application, General
1. Comply with fire-resistive material manufacturer's written instructions for mixing materials, application procedures, and types of equipment used to mix, convey, and spray on fire-resistive material, as applicable to particular conditions of installation and as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
2. Apply SFRM that is identical to products tested as specified in Part 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article and substantiated by test reports, with respect to rate of application, accelerator use, sealers, topcoats, tamping, troweling, water overspray, or other materials and procedures affecting test results.
3. Install metal lath and reinforcing fabric, as required, to comply with fire-resistance ratings and fire-resistive material manufacturer's written recommendations for conditions of exposure and intended use. Securely attach lath and fabric, as required, to substrate in position required for support and reinforcement of fire-resistive material. Use anchorage devices of type recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer. Attach accessories where indicated or required for secure attachment of lath and fabric, as required, to substrate.
4. Coat substrates with bonding adhesive before applying fire-resistive material where required to achieve fire-resistance rating or as recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer for material and application indicated.
5. Extend fire-resistive material in full thickness over entire area of each substrate to be protected. Unless otherwise recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer, install body of fire-resistive covering in a single course.
6. Spray apply fire-resistive materials to maximum extent possible. Following the spraying operation in each area, complete the coverage by trowel application or other placement method recommended in writing by SFRM manufacturer.
7. For applications over encapsulant materials, including lockdown (post-removal) encapsulants, apply SFRM that differs in color from that of encapsulant over which it is applied.
8. Where sealers are used, apply products that are tinted to differentiate them from SFRM over which they are applied.

C. Application, Concealed SFRM

1. Apply concealed SFRM in thicknesses and densities not less than those required to achieve fire-resistance ratings designated for each condition, but apply in greater thicknesses and densities if specified in Part 1.2 "Concealed SFRM" Article.
2. Apply water overspray to concealed sprayed-fiber fire-resistive material as required to obtain designated fire-resistance rating and where indicated.
3. Cure concealed SFRM according to product manufacturer's written recommendations.
4. Apply sealer to concealed SFRM where indicated.
5. Apply topcoat to concealed SFRM where indicated.

D. Application, Exposed SFRM
1. Apply exposed SFRM in thicknesses and densities not less than those required to achieve fire-resistance ratings designated for each condition, but apply in greater thicknesses and densities if indicated.
   a. For steel beams and bracing, provide a thickness of not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
   b. For metal floor or roof decks, provide a thickness of not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm).
2. Provide a uniform finish complying with description indicated for each type of material and matching the Owner's sample or, if none, finish approved for field-erected mockup.
3. Apply exposed cementitious SFRM to produce the following finish:
   a. Spray-textured finish with no further treatment.
   b. Even, spray-textured finish, produced by rolling flat surfaces of fire-protected members with a damp paint roller to remove drippings and excessive roughness.
   c. Skip-troweled finish with leveled surface, smoothed-out texture, and neat edges.
   d. Smooth, troweled finish with surface markings eliminated and edges squared.
4. Apply exposed sprayed-fiber fire-resistive material to produce the following finish:
   a. Spray-textured finish.
   b. Sealer where indicated.
   c. Topcoat where indicated\.
5. Cure exposed SFRM according to product manufacturer's written recommendations.

E. Application, Exposed Intumescent Mastic Fire-Resistive Coatings
1. Apply exposed intumescent mastic fire-resistive coatings in thicknesses and densities not less than those required to achieve fire-resistance ratings designated for each condition.
2. Apply intumescent mastic fire-resistive coating as follows:
   a. Install reinforcing fabric as required to obtain designated fire-resistance rating and where indicated.
   b. Finish: Spray-textured finish with no further treatment.
   c. Finish: Even, spray-textured finish produced by lightly rolling flat surfaces of fire-protected members before fire-resistive material dries, to smooth out surface irregularities and to seal in surface fibers.

F. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   a. Testing and inspecting agency will interpret tests and state in each report whether tested work complies with or deviates from requirements.
2. Tests and Inspections: Testing and inspecting of completed applications of SFRM shall take place in successive stages, in areas of extent and using methods as follows. Do not proceed with application of SFRM for the next area until test results for previously completed applications of SFRM show compliance with requirements. Tested values must equal or exceed values indicated and required for approved fire-resistance design.
   a. Thickness for Floor, Roof, and Wall Assemblies: For each 1000-sq. ft. (93-sq. m) area, or partial area, on each floor, from the average of 4 measurements from a 144-sq. in. (0.093-sq. m) sample area, with sample width of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) per ASTM E 605.

b. Thickness for Structural Frame Members: From a sample of 25 percent of structural members per floor, taking 9 measurements at a single cross section for structural frame beams or girders, 7 measurements of a single cross section for joists and trusses, and 12 measurements of a single cross section for columns per ASTM E 605.
c. Density for Floors, Roofs, Walls, and Structural Frame Members: At frequency and from sample size indicated for determining thickness of each type of construction and structural framing member, per ASTM E 605 or AWCI Technical Manual 12-A, Section 5.4.5, "Displacement Method."
d. Bond Strength for Floors, Roofs, Walls, and Structural Framing Members: For each 10,000-sq. ft. (929 sq. m) area, or partial area, on each floor, cohesion and adhesion from one sample of size indicated for determining thickness of each type of construction and structural framing member, per ASTM E 736.
    1) Field test SFRM that is applied to flanges of wide-flange, structural-steel members on surfaces matching those that will exist for remainder of steel receiving fire-resistive material.
    2) If surfaces of structural steel receiving SFRM are primed or otherwise painted for coating materials, perform series of bond tests specified in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory." Provide bond strength indicated in referenced UL fire-resistance criteria, but not less than 150 lbf/sq. ft. (7.2 kPa) minimum per ASTM E 736.
e. If testing finds applications of SFRM are not in compliance with requirements, testing and inspecting agency will perform additional random testing to determine extent of noncompliance.

3. Remove and replace applications of SFRM that do not pass tests and inspections for cohesion and adhesion, for density, or for both and retest as specified above.
4. Apply additional SFRM, per manufacturer's written instructions, where test results indicate that thickness does not comply with specified requirements, and retest as specified above.

G. Cleaning, Protecting, And Repair
1. Cleaning: Immediately after completing spraying operations in each containable area of Project, remove material overspray and fallout from surfaces of other construction and clean exposed surfaces to remove evidence of soiling.
2. Protect SFRM, according to advice of product manufacturer and Installer, from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so fire protection will be without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.
3. Coordinate application of SFRM with other construction to minimize need to cut or remove fire protection. As installation of other construction proceeds, inspect SFRM and patch any damaged or removed areas.
4. Repair or replace work that has not successfully protected steel.

END OF SECTION 07 81 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 81 23 00	07 81 16 00	Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials
07 81 33 00	07 81 16 00	Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 84 13 16 - FIRESTOPPING

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for firestopping. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 GENERAL

A. System Description
   1. Performance Requirements: Comply with following:
      a. Firestopping: Consist of material or combination of materials to form effective barrier against spread of flame, smoke, and gases, and maintain integrity of fire-resistance rated walls, partitions, floors, and ceiling-floor assemblies at penetrations.
         1) Penetrations: Include annular space around pipes, ducts, chimneys, tubes, conduit, wires, cables, and vents.

B. Submittals
   1. Product Data:
      a. Composition and performance characteristics.
      b. List of FM, UL, or WH classification number of systems installed.
   2. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
      a. Test Reports: If not FM, UL, or WH listed, submit certified test results for ASTM E 814 tests by UL, FM, WH, or other accredited independent laboratory demonstrating compliance of firestopping with specified requirements.
      b. Manufacturers installation instructions.

C. Quality Assurance
   1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable building-code requirements for firestopping.

D. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
   1. Packing, Shipping, Handling, and Unloading: Deliver in original, unopened containers with manufacturer's labels.
      a. Products: FM, UL, or WH labeled and FM, UL, or WHI listed.
   2. Storage and Protection: Store firestopping materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.3 PRODUCTS

A. Fire-Rated Penetration Sealant Systems
   1. Firestopping Materials: Commercially manufactured asbestos-free products complying with following minimum requirements:
      a. Material:
         1) Flame Spread: ASTM E 84 or UL 723, 25 or less.
         2) Smoke Developed Rating: ASTM E 84 or UL 723, 50 or less.
         3) Material: Approved firestopping material as listed in UL 05, FM P7825, or WH Certified Listing.
      b. Material Properties:

1) Contain no flammable or toxic solvents and have no dangerous or flammable outgassing during the drying or curing of products.
2) Non-toxic to human beings at all stages of application and during fire conditions.
3) Water-resistant after drying or curing and unaffected by high humidity, condensation, or transient water exposure.

c. Devices and systems requiring heat activation to seal opening created by burning or melting of penetrant shall exhibit demonstrated ability to function as required for floors and walls of construction and thickness similar to those to be firestopped.

2. Firestopping System Requirements: Materials from single manufacturer capable of maintaining effective barrier against flame, smoke, and gases in accordance with ASTM E 814 and UL 1479.
   a. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal or greater than fire-resistance rating of assembly in which it is being placed.
   b. F Ratings: Equal to or greater than fire-resistance rating of assembly penetrated.
   c. T Ratings: Equal to or greater than fire-resistance rating of assembly penetrated at following locations:
      1) Penetrations located outside of wall cavities.
      2) Penetrations located outside of fire-resistive shaft enclosures.
      3) Penetrations located in enclosures with doors required to have temperature-rise rating.
      4) Penetrations with penetrating hems larger than 100 mm (4 inch) diameter nominal pipe or 10 320 sq. mm (16 square inches) in cross-sectional area.
   d. System: Listed in UL 05, FM 7825, or WH Certified Listing, or tested by approved laboratory in accordance with ASTM E 814.
   e. System: Suitable for firestopping of penetrations made by steel, glass, plastic. and insulated pipe.
   f. Penetration by Insulated Pipe: Does not require removal of insulation.

1.4 EXECUTION

A. Examination
   1. Verification of Conditions:
      a. Existing Conditions: Examine penetrations before beginning installation.
      b. Do not proceed with installation until conditions are satisfactory.

B. Installation
   1. Fire-Rated Penetration Sealant Systems: Install in accordance with UL 05, FM P7825, or WH systems and manufacturers recommendations to maintain required fire-separation rating.
      a. Preparation: Clean surfaces in contact with firestopping materials that may affect proper fitting or required fire rating. Prime if required. Dam void if required.
      b. Penetrations: Completely fill void with sealant materials to smooth surface, flush with adjacent surfaces and in contact with surfaces formed by openings and penetrating items ensuring adhesion. Provide sealant in thickness to achieve required fire rating and smoke barrier.
      c. Firestopping at Voids 100 mm (4 inches) or More in Any Direction: Capable of supporting same load as floor is designed to support or protected by permanent barrier.
      d. Remove any excess sealant from adjacent surfaces.
   2. Firestopping: Provide at following locations:
      a. Penetrations of duct, chimney, conduit, tubing, cable, and pipe through floors and through fire-resistance rated walls, partitions, and ceiling-floor assemblies.
      b. Penetrations of vertical shafts such as pipe chases, elevator shafts, and utility chutes.
      c. Gaps at intersection of fire-rated floor stabs and walls.
      d. Gaps at perimeter of fire-rated walls and partitions, such as between top of walls and bottom of floor or roof decks.
      e. Construction joints in fire-rated floors, walls, and partitions.

f. Other locations where required to maintain fire-resistance rating of the construction.
g. Other locations as indicated on Drawings (if any).

C. Field Quality Control
1. Inspection: Examine areas to be firestopped prior to concealing or enclosing to ensure proper installation.
a. Keep areas of firestopping work accessible until inspection by authorities having jurisdiction over work.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 84 13 16a - THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEMS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for through-penetration firestop systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes through-penetration firestop systems for penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.

C. Performance Requirements
1. General: For penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated.
2. Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with the following ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479:
   a. F-Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
   b. T-Rated Systems: For the following conditions, provide through-penetration firestop systems with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, where systems protect penetrating items exposed to potential contact with adjacent materials in occupiable floor areas:
      1) Penetrations located outside wall cavities.
      2) Penetrations located outside fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosures.
   c. L-Rated Systems: Where through-penetration firestop systems are indicated in smoke barriers, provide **OR** Provide, **as directed**, through-penetration firestop systems with L-ratings indicated **OR** of not more than, **as directed**, 3.0 cfm/sq. ft (0.01524cu. m/s x sq. m) at both ambient temperatures and 400 deg F (204 deg C).
3. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that, after curing, do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.
   a. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
   b. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches (100 mm) in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved, either by installing floor plates or by other means.
   c. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
4. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For each through-penetration firestop system, submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency, showing each type of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and type of penetrating item.

a. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular through-penetration firestop condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.
2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article:
a. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL **OR** OPL **OR** ITS, **as directed**, or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Part 1.1 Performance Requirements" Article. Provide rated systems bearing classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
3. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.
4. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until each installation has been examined by the Owner's inspecting agency and building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life if applicable, qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
2. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Firestopping
1. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another; with the substrates forming openings; and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated. Accessories include, but are not limited to, the following items:
a. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
1) Slag-/rock-wool-fiber insulation.
2) Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
3) Fire-rated form board.
4) Fillers for sealants.
b. Temporary forming materials.
c. Substrate primers.

d. Collars.
e. Steel sleeves.

B. Fill Materials
1. General: Provide through-penetration firestop systems containing the types of fill materials indicated in the Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule at the end of Part 1.3 by referencing the types of materials described in this Article. Fill materials are those referred to in directories of referenced testing and inspecting agencies as "fill," "void," or "cavity" materials.
2. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
3. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that after cure do not re-emulsify during exposure to moisture.
4. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
5. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized steel sheet.
6. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
7. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
8. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
9. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives.
10. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
11. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
    a. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping, gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.
    b. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
    c. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces.

C. Mixing: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Through-Penetration Firestop System Installation
1. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems to comply with Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article and with firestop system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

2. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
    a. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
3. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
    a. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
    b. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
    c. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.
4. Identification: Identify through-penetration firestop systems with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches (150 mm) of edge of the firestop systems so that labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestop systems. Use mechanical fasteners for metal labels. Include the following information on labels:
    a. The words "Warning - Through-Penetration Firestop System - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
    b. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
    c. Through-penetration firestop system designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
    d. Date of installation.
    e. Through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's name.
    f. Installer's name.

B. Field Quality Control
1. Inspecting Agency: Engage an independent inspecting agency to inspect through-penetration firestops. Independent inspecting agency shall comply with ASTM E 2174 requirements including those related to qualifications, conducting inspections, and preparing test reports.
2. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace through-penetration firestop systems so they comply with requirements.
3. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and firestop installations comply with requirements.

C. Cleaning And Protecting
1. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
2. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

D. Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule
1. Choices in the following paragraphs which are contained within brackets shall be as required to satisfy building and local code requirements.
2. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to alpha-alpha-numeric designations listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
3. Where OPL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to alpha-numeric design numbers in OPL's "Directory of Listed Building Products, Materials, & Assemblies."
4. Where ITS-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in ITS's "Directory of Listed Products," "Firestop Systems" Section.

5. Firestop Systems with No Penetrating Items:
   a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [C-BJ-] [F-A-] [W-J-] [W-L-] [0001-0999] or as directed by the Owner .
   b. OPL-Classified Systems: FS [F] [W] or as directed by the Owner , Penetrating Item Type G.
   c. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) or as directed by the Owner .
   d. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
      1) Latex sealant.
      2) Silicone sealant.
      3) Intumescent putty.
      4) Mortar.
6. Firestop Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing:
   a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [C-BJ-] [C-BK-] [F-A-] [F-B-] [F-C-] [W-J-] [W-K-] [W-L-] [1001-1999] or as directed by the Owner .
   b. OPL-Classified Systems: FS [F] [W] or as directed by the Owner , Penetrating Item Type A.
   c. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) or as directed by the Owner .
   d. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
      1) Latex sealant.
      2) Silicone sealant.
      3) Intumescent putty.
      4) Mortar.
7. Firestop Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing:
   a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [C-BJ-] [F-A-] [F-B-] [F-C-] [W-J-] [W-L-] [2001-2999] or as directed by the Owner .
   b. OPL-Classified Systems: FS [F] [W] or as directed by the Owner , Penetrating Item Type B.
   c. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) or as directed by the Owner .
   d. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
      1) Latex sealant.
      2) Silicone sealant.
      3) Intumescent putty.
      4) Intumescent wrap strips.
      5) Firestop device.
8. Firestop Systems for Electrical Cables:
   a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [C-BJ-] [F-A-] [F-B-] [F-C-] [W-J-] [W-L-] [3001-3999] or as directed by the Owner .
   b. OPL-Classified Systems: FS [F] [W] or as directed by the Owner , Penetrating Item Type D.
   c. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) as directed by the Owner .
   d. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
      1) Latex sealant.
      2) Silicone sealant.
      3) Intumescent putty.
      4) Silicone foam.
      5) Pillows/bags.
9. Firestop Systems for Cable Trays:
   a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [C-BJ-] [F-A-] [F-B-] [F-C-] [W-J-] [W-K-] [W-L-] [4001-4999] or as directed by the Owner .
   b. OPL-Classified Systems: FS [F] [W] or as directed by the Owner , Penetrating Item Type D.
   c. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) as directed by the Owner .
   d. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
      1) Latex sealant.
      2) Intumescent putty.
      3) Silicone foam.

4) Pillows/bags.
5) Mortar.

10. Firestop Systems for Insulated Pipes:
    a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [C-BJ-] [F-A-] [F-C-] [W-J-] [W-L-] [5001-5999] or as directed by the Owner .
    b. OPL-Classified Systems: FS [F] [W] or as directed by the Owner , Penetrating Item Type C.
    c. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) as directed by the Owner .
    d. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
        1) Latex sealant.
        2) Intumescent putty.
        3) Silicone foam.
        4) Intumescent wrap strips.
11. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants:
    a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [F-A-] [W-L-] [6001-6999] or as directed by the Owner .
    b. OPL-Classified Systems: FS [F] [W] or as directed by the Owner , Penetrating Item Type E.
    c. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) or as directed by the Owner .
    d. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
        1) Latex sealant.
        2) Intumescent putty.
        3) Mortar.
12. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrants:
    a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [F-C-] [W-J-] [W-L-] [7001-7999] or as directed by the Owner .
    b. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) as directed by the Owner .
    c. Type of Fill Materials: One or both of the following:
        1) Latex sealant.
        2) Mortar.
13. Firestop Systems for Groupings of Penetrants:
    a. UL-Classified Systems: [C-AJ-] [C-BJ-] [F-A-] [F-C-] [W-J-] [W-L-] [8001-8999] or as directed by the Owner .
    b. ITS-Listed Systems: ITS design number(s) as directed by the Owner .
    c. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
        1) Latex sealant.
        2) Mortar.
        3) Intumescent wrap strips.
        4) Firestop device.
        5) Intumescent composite sheet.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13 16a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 84 13 16	07 84 43 00	Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
07 84 13 19	07 84 13 16	Firestopping
07 84 13 19	07 84 13 16a	Through-Penetration Firestop Systems
07 84 13 19	07 84 43 00	Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
07 84 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 84 43 00 - FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fire-resistive joint systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes fire-resistive joint systems for the following:
   a. Floor-to-floor joints.
   b. Floor-to-wall joints.
   c. Head-of-wall joints.
   d. Wall-to-wall joints.
   e. Perimeter fire-resistive joint systems consisting of floor-to-wall joints between perimeter edge of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and exterior curtain walls.

C. Performance Requirements
1. General: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly in which fire-resistive joint systems are installed.
2. Joint Systems in and between Fire-Resistance-Rated Constructions: Provide systems with assembly ratings equaling or exceeding the fire-resistance ratings of construction that they join, and with movement capabilities and L-ratings indicated as determined by UL 2079.
   a. Load-bearing capabilities as determined by evaluation during the time of test.
3. Perimeter Fire-Resistive Joint Systems: For joints between edges of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and exterior curtain walls, provide systems of type and with ratings indicated below and those indicated in the Fire-Resistive Joint System Schedule at the end of Part 1.3, as determined by IBC Standard **OR** NFPA 285, **as directed,** and UL 2079.
   a. UL-Listed, Perimeter Fire-Containment Systems: Integrity ratings equaling or exceeding fire-resistance ratings of floor or floor/ceiling assembly forming one side of joint.
   b. OPL-Listed, Perimeter Fire-Barrier Systems: F-ratings equaling or exceeding fire-resistance ratings of floor or floor/ceiling assembly forming one side of joint.
4. For fire-resistive systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For each fire-resistive joint system.
3. Qualification Data: For Installer.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Evaluation Reports: Evidence of fire-resistive joint systems' compliance with ICBO ES AC30, from the ICBO Evaluation Service.
6. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fire-resistive joint system.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FMG according to FMG 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors."
2. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.
3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:

a. Fire-resistance tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL **OR** OPL, **as directed**, or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for fire-resistive joint systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per methods indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and comply with the following:
1) Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
2) Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by referencing system designations of the qualified testing and inspecting agency.

4. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.
5. Do not cover up fire-resistive joint system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until inspecting agency and building inspector of authorities having jurisdiction have examined each installation.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver fire-resistive joint system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project and with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
2. Store and handle materials for fire-resistive joint systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
1. Compatibility: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are compatible with joint substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for systems indicated.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article and fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated.
2. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

B. Field Quality Control
1. Inspecting Agency: Engage a qualified independent inspecting agency to inspect fire-resistive joint systems and prepare inspection reports.
2. Testing Services: Inspecting of completed installations of fire-resistive joint systems shall take place in successive stages as installation of fire-resistive joint systems proceeds. Do not proceed with installation of joint systems for the next area until inspecting agency determines completed work shows compliance with requirements.

a. Inspecting agency shall state in each report whether inspected fire-resistive joint systems comply with or deviate from requirements.

3. Remove and replace fire-resistive joint systems where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
4. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and fire-resistive joint systems comply with requirements.

C. Fire-Resistive Joint System Schedule
1. Designation System for Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Constructions: Alphanumeric systems listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under Product Category XHBN.
2. Designation System for Joints at the Intersection of Fire-Resistance-Rated Floor or Floor/Ceiling Assembly and an Exterior Curtain-Wall Assembly: Alphanumeric systems listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under Product Category XHDG **OR** OPL's "Directory of Listed Building Products, Materials, & Assemblies" as perimeter fire-barrier systems, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 07 84 43 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 84 43 00	07 84 13 16	Firestopping
07 84 43 00	07 84 13 16a	Through-Penetration Firestop Systems

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 84 56 13 - BOARD FIRE PROTECTION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for board fire protection. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Calcium silicate board fire protection.
b. Mineral-fiber board fire protection.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Structural framing plans indicating the following:
a. Locations and types of surface preparations required before applying board fire protection.
b. Extent of board fire protection for each construction and fire-resistance rating, including the following:
1) Applicable fire-resistance design designations of a qualified testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
a) For steel joist assemblies, include applicable fire-resistance design designations, with each steel joist tested with same maximum tensile stress as each steel joist indicated on Drawings **OR** in a schedule, **as directed**. Design designations with steel joists tested at lower maximum tensile stress than those indicated are not permitted.
2) Minimum thicknesses needed to achieve required fire-resistance ratings of structural components and assemblies.
3) Treatment of sprayed fire-resistive material after application.
3. Product Certificates: For each type of board fire protection, from manufacturer.
4. Research/Evaluation Reports: For board fire protection.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations: Obtain board fire-protection materials from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" **OR** UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency, **as directed**, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for board fireproofing serving as direct-applied protection tested per ASTM E 119.

E. Coordination
1. Coordinate installation of board fire protection with other construction specified in other Sections.
a. Do not install board fire protection on structural members until piping and other construction behind fire-resistive materials have been completed, uninterrupted coverage of fire-resistive materials can be provided, and the need for subsequent cutting and patching of fire-resistive materials has been eliminated.
b. Do not install enclosing or concealing construction until after board fire protection has been applied and inspected by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Board Fire Protection
1. Calcium Silicate Board: Rigid board containing no asbestos and consisting primarily of lime, silica, inert fillers, and cellulosic reinforcing fibers; of thickness required to produce fire-resistance rating indicated; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of zero per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
   a. Finish: Sanded finish on both sides **OR** one side, **as directed**.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: Unfaced **OR** Foil-faced **OR** Fiberglass mat-faced, **as directed**, rigid board produced by combining slag-wool-/rock-wool fibers with thermosetting resin binders passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; of thickness required to produce fire-resistance rating indicated.
   a. Maximum Density: 8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m) **OR** 10 lb/cu. ft. (160 kg/cu. m) **OR** 12 lb/cu. ft. (192 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, per ASTM C 612.
   b. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 **OR** zero, **as directed**, and 5 **OR** zero, **as directed**, respectively, per ASTM E 84.

B. Accessories
1. Anchorage Accessories: Provide manufacturer's standard board-anchorage components complying with related design of UL or of another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Joint Treatment and Finishing Materials: For exposed calcium silicate board applications, provide joint treatment tape and joint compounds recommended in writing by board manufacturer for finishing surfaces.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Remove rust and scale from steel substrates at welded steel stud anchorage locations.

B. Installation
1. Install board fire protection according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install board fire protection to comply with requirements for layer thicknesses and number, construction of joints and corners, and anchorage methods applicable to fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated.
3. Finish exposed calcium silicate board to comply with board manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   a. At joints in calcium silicate board, embed tape in joint compound and apply first, fill, and finish coats of joint compounds over tape, fastener heads, and accessories.
   b. Apply a thin, uniform skim coat of joint compound over entire surface.
   c. Touch up and sand between coats and after last coat as needed to produce a surface free of visual defects, tool marks, and ridges.

C. Protection
1. Replace or repair board fire protection that has been cut away to facilitate other construction. Maintain complete coverage of full thickness on members and substrates protected by board fire protection.
   a. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to Installer, manufacturer, and authorities having jurisdiction to ensure that board fire protection is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 07 84 56 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 84 56 13	07 81 16 00	Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 91 23 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for joint sealants. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Silicone joint sealants.
b. Urethane joint sealants.
c. Polysulfide joint sealants.
d. Latex joint sealants.
e. Solvent-release-curing joint sealants.
f. Preformed joint sealants.
g. Acoustical joint sealants.

C. Preconstruction Testing
1. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
a. Use ASTM C 1087 **OR** manufacturer's standard test method, **as directed**, to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
b. Submit not fewer than eight pieces of each kind of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
c. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
d. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
e. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
2. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
a. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by the Owner.
b. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:
1) Each kind of sealant and joint substrate indicated.
c. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
d. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
1) Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
a) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
e. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
f. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with

requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Samples: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
4. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
   a. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
   b. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
   c. Joint-sealant formulation.
   d. Joint-sealant color.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.
6. Product Certificates: For each kind of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
7. Sealant, Waterproofing, and Restoration Institute (SWRI) Validation Certificate: For each sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.
8. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
9. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
   a. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
   b. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
10. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
11. Field-Adhesion Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
12. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
3. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
   a. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
   b. Test according to SWRI's Sealant Validation Program for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920 for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement, adhesion-in-peel, and indentation hardness.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Project Conditions
1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
   a. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C, **as directed**.
   b. When joint substrates are wet.
   c. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.

d. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

G. Warranty
1. Special Installer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
a. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.
2. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
a. Movement of the structure caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
b. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
c. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
d. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials, General
1. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide sealants and sealant primers for use inside the weatherproofing system that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Part 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
a. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
b. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
c. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
3. Liquid-Applied Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied joint sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
a. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
5. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
6. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

B. Silicone Joint Sealants
1. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use NT.
2. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
3. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
4. Single-Component, Nonsag, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.

5. Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use T.
6. Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, for Use T.
7. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
8. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 100/50, for Use T.
9. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
10. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.

C. Urethane Joint Sealants
1. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use NT.
2. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
3. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
4. Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920. Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T.
5. Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
6. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
7. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
8. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use T.
9. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T.
10. Immersible, Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
11. Immersible, Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
12. Immersible Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
13. Immersible Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920. Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T and I.

D. Polysulfide Joint Sealants
1. Single-Component, Nonsag, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
2. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
3. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T.
4. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
5. Immersible, Multicomponent Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T and Use I.

E. Latex Joint Sealants
1. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

F. Solvent-Release-Curing Joint Sealants
1. Acrylic-Based Joint Sealant: ASTM C 1311.
2. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

G. Preformed Joint Sealants
1. Preformed Silicone Joint Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealant consisting of precured low-modulus silicone extrusion, in sizes to fit joint widths indicated, combined with a neutral-curing silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.
2. Preformed Foam Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard preformed, precompressed, open-cell foam sealant manufactured from urethane foam with minimum density of 10 lb/cu. ft. (160 kg/cu. m) and impregnated with a nondrying, water-repellent agent. Factory produce in precompressed sizes in roll or stick form to fit joint widths indicated; coated on one side with a pressure-sensitive adhesive and covered with protective wrapping.

H. Acoustical Joint Sealants
1. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

I. Joint Sealant Backing
1. General: Provide sealant backings of material that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
2. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) **OR** Type O (open-cell material) **OR** Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) **OR** or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, **as directed**, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
3. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

J. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
2. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
3. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

a. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
b. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    1) Concrete.
    2) Masonry.
    3) Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
    4) Exterior insulation and finish systems.
c. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
d. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    1) Metal.
    2) Glass.
    3) Porcelain enamel.
    4) Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

2. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
3. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

C. Installation Of Joint Sealants
1. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
2. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
3. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
    a. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
    b. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
    c. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
4. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
5. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
    a. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
    b. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
    c. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
6. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
    a. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.

b. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
c. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
d. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
e. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
1) Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

7. Installation of Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Comply with the following requirements:
a. Apply masking tape to each side of joint, outside of area to be covered by sealant system.
b. Apply silicone sealant to each side of joint to produce a bead of size complying with preformed silicone-sealant system manufacturer's written instructions and covering a bonding area of not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm). Hold edge of sealant bead 1/4 inch (6 mm) inside masking tape.
c. Within 10 minutes of sealant application, press silicone extrusion into sealant to wet extrusion and substrate. Use a roller to apply consistent pressure and ensure uniform contact between sealant and both extrusion and substrate.
d. Complete installation of sealant system in horizontal joints before installing in vertical joints. Lap vertical joints over horizontal joints. At ends of joints, cut silicone extrusion with a razor knife.

8. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping. Do not pull or stretch material. Produce seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures, apply heat to sealant in compliance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

9. Acoustical Sealant Installation: At sound-rated assemblies and elsewhere as indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.

D. Field Quality Control
1. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
a. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
1) Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
2) Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.
b. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
c. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
1) Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
2) Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
3) Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
d. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
e. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

2. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

E. Cleaning
1. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

F. Protection
1. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Final Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

G. Joint-Sealant Schedule
1. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
   a. Joint Locations:
      1) Control and expansion joints in brick pavers.
      2) Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
      3) Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete paving units.
      4) Joints in stone paving units, including steps.
      5) Tile control and expansion joints.
      6) Joints between different materials listed above.
      7) Other joints as indicated.
   b. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, traffic grade, neutral curing **OR** Single component, pourable, traffic grade, neutral curing **OR** Multicomponent, pourable, traffic grade, neutral curing, **as directed**.
   c. Urethane Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, traffic grade **OR** Single component, pourable, traffic grade **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade, Class 50 **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade, Class 25, **as directed**.
   d. Polysulfide Joint Sealant: Multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade **OR** Multicomponent, pourable, traffic grade, **as directed**.
   e. Preformed Joint Sealant: Preformed foam sealant.
   f. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors, **as directed**.
2. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces subject to water immersion.
   a. Joint Locations:
      1) Joints in pedestrian plazas.
      2) Joints in swimming pool decks.
      3) Other joints as indicated.
   b. Urethane Joint Sealant: Immersible, single component, nonsag, traffic grade **OR** Immersible, single component, pourable, traffic grade **OR** Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade **OR** Immersible, multicomponent, pourable, traffic grade, **as directed**.
   c. Polysulfide Joint Sealant: Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade.
   d. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors, **as directed**.
3. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
   a. Joint Locations:
      1) Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
      2) Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
      3) Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
      4) Joints in dimension stone cladding.

5) Joints in glass unit masonry assemblies.
6) Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
7) Joints between metal panels.
8) Joints between different materials listed above.
9) Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
10) Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
11) Other joints as indicated.

b. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Class 100/50 **OR** Single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Class 50 **OR** Single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Class 25 **OR** Single component, nonsag, acid curing **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag, neutral curing, **as directed**.

c. Urethane Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, Class 100/50 **OR** Single component, nonsag, Class 50 **OR** Single component, nonsag, Class 25 **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag,, Class 50 **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag,, Class 25, **as directed**.

d. Polysulfide Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag, **as directed**.

e. Preformed Joint Sealant: Preformed silicone **OR** Preformed foam, **as directed**.

f. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors, **as directed**.

4. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
   a. Joint Locations:
      1) Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
      2) Control and expansion joints in stone flooring.
      3) Control and expansion joints in brick flooring.
      4) Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
      5) Other joints as indicated.
   b. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, traffic grade, neutral curing **OR** Single component, pourable, traffic grade, neutral curing **OR** Multicomponent, pourable, traffic grade, neutral curing, **as directed**.
   c. Urethane Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, traffic grade **OR** Single component, pourable, traffic grade **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade, Class 50 **OR** Multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade, Class 25, **as directed**.
   d. Polysulfide Joint Sealant: Multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade **OR** Multicomponent, pourable, traffic grade, **as directed**.
   e. Preformed Joint Sealant: Preformed foam.
   f. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors, **as directed**.
5. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
   a. Joint Locations:
      1) Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
      2) Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
      3) Tile control and expansion joints.
      4) Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry and concrete walls and partitions.
      5) Joints on underside of plant-precast structural concrete beams and planks.
      6) Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
      7) Other joints as indicated.
   b. Joint Sealant: Latex **OR** Acrylic based **OR** Butyl rubber based, **as directed**.
   c. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors, **as directed**.
6. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
   a. Joint Sealant Location:
      1) Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.

2) Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
3) Other joints as indicated.

b. Joint Sealant: Mildew resistant, single component, nonsag, neutral curing, Silicone **OR** Single component, nonsag, mildew resistant, acid curing, **as directed**.

c. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors, **as directed**.

7. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior acoustical joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
   a. Joint Location:
      1) Acoustical joints where indicated.
      2) Other joints as indicated.
   b. Joint Sealant: Acoustical.
   c. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

END OF SECTION 07 91 23 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 91 26 00	07 91 23 00	Joint Sealants
07 92 13 00	07 91 23 00	Joint Sealants
07 92 19 00	07 91 23 00	Joint Sealants

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 95 13 13 - ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for architectural joint systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.
2. See Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for cast-in architectural-joint-system frames furnished, but not installed, in this Section.

B. Definitions
1. Maximum Joint Width: Widest linear gap a joint system tolerates and in which it performs its designed function without damaging its functional capabilities.
2. Minimum Joint Width: Narrowest linear gap a joint system tolerates and in which it performs its designed function without damaging its functional capabilities.
3. Movement Capability: Value obtained from the difference between widest and narrowest widths of a joint opening typically expressed in numerical values (mm or inches) or a percentage (plus or minus) of nominal value of joint width.
4. Nominal Joint Width: The width of the linear opening specified in practice and in which the joint system is installed.

C. Submittals
1. Shop Drawings: Provide placement drawings, including line diagrams and details, and a tabular schedule of architectural joint systems.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG)" and ICC A117.1.
2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide architectural joint system and fire-barrier assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per UL 2079 or ASTM E 1966 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Hose Stream Test: Wall-to-wall and wall-to-ceiling assemblies shall be subjected to hose stream testing.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Aluminum: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.
   a. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.
   b. Mill Finish.
   c. Clear Anodic Finish: Class II, clear anodic coating **OR** Class I, clear anodic coating, **as directed**, complying with AAMA 611.
   d. Color Anodic Finish: Class II, color anodic coating **OR** Class I, color anodic coating, **as directed**, complying with AAMA 611.
   e. High-Performance Organic Finish (Two-Coat Fluoropolymer): Comply with AAMA 2604 and with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304 for plates, sheet, and strips.
3. Brass: ASTM B 36/B 36M, UNS Alloy C26000 for half hard sheet and coil.

4. Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy C38500 for extrusions; Alloy C23000 red brass for plates.
5. Moisture Barrier: PVC , minimum 30 mils thick **OR** EPDM, minimum 45 mils thick **OR** Santoprene, **as directed**.
6. Elastomeric Seals: Preformed elastomeric membranes or extrusions to be installed in metal frames.
7. Compression Seals: ASTM E 1612; preformed rectangular elastomeric extrusions having internal baffle system and designed to function under compression.
8. Strip Seals: ASTM E 1783; preformed elastomeric membrane or tubular extrusions having an internal baffle system and secured in or over a joint by a metal locking rail.
9. Cellular Foam Seals: Extruded, compressible foam designed to function under compression.
10. Elastomeric Concrete: Modified epoxy or polyurethane extended into a prepackaged aggregate blend, specifically designed for bonding to concrete substrates.
11. Fire Barriers: Any material or material combination, when fire tested after cycling, designated to resist the passage of flame and hot gases through a movement joint and to meet performance criteria for required rating period.
12. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, fasteners, and other accessories as required for complete installations.

B. Architectural Joint Systems, General
   1. General: Provide joint systems of design indicated.
      a. Furnish in longest practicable lengths to minimize splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where joint changes direction.
      b. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces to provide continuous joint systems.
   2. Design architectural joint systems for the following size and movement characteristics:
      a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As scheduled, **as directed**.
      b. Movement Capability: Plus or minus 25 percent **OR** Plus or minus 50 percent **OR** Plus or minus 100 percent **OR** As indicated on Drawings **OR** As scheduled, **as directed**.
      c. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As scheduled **OR** Thermal **OR** Seismic **OR** Wind sway, **as directed**.

C. Architectural Joint Systems For Building Interiors
   1. Floor-to-Floor and Floor-to-Wall Joint Systems:
      a. Type: Cover plate **OR** Center plate **OR** Glide plate **OR** Hidden sightline **OR** Pan **OR** Surface mounted, **as directed**.
         1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
            a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No, 4, **as directed**.
            b) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
      b. Type: Elastomeric **OR** Dual elastomeric, **as directed**, seal.
         1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
            a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No, 4, **as directed**.
            b) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
         2) Seal Material: Santoprene.
            a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
      c. Cover-Plate Design:
         1) Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Abrasive filled, **as directed**.
         2) Recessed to accept field-applied finish materials.
            a) Recess Depth: To accommodate adjacent flooring.
      d. Attachment Method: Mechanical anchors **OR** Cast in, **as directed**.
      e. Load Capacity: Standard **OR** Heavy **OR** Extra heavy, **as directed**, duty.
      f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Match adjacent construction.
      g. Moisture Barrier: Manufacturer's standard.
   2. Wall-to-Wall and Wall Corner Joint Systems:

a. Type: Vertical cover plate **OR** Glide plate **OR** Hidden sightline **OR** Snap-on cover **OR** Clip-in cover, **as directed**.
   1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
      a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No, 4, **as directed**.
      b) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

b. Type: Elastomeric seal **OR** Dual elastomeric seal **OR** Accordion, **as directed**.
   1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
      a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No, 4, **as directed**.
      b) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   2) Seal Material: Santoprene **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
      a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

c. Type: Flat seal.
   1) Seal Material: Santoprene.
      a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

d. Fire-Resistance Rating: Match adjacent construction.

e. Moisture Barrier: Manufacturer's standard.

3. Wall-to-Ceiling and Ceiling-to-Ceiling Joint Systems:
   a. Type: Cover plate **OR** Glide plate **OR** Snap-on cover **OR** Clip-in cover, **as directed**.
      1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
         a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No, 4, **as directed**.
         b) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   b. Type: Elastomeric seal **OR** Dual elastomeric seal **OR** Accordion, **as directed**.
      1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
         a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
         b) Seal Material: Santoprene **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
         c) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   c. Type: Flat seal.
      1) Seal Material: Santoprene.
         a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   d. Fire-Resistance Rating: Match adjacent construction.
   e. Moisture Barrier: Manufacturer's standard.

D. Architectural Joint Systems For Building Exteriors
   1. Architectural Joint Systems for Exterior Walls and Soffits:
      a. Type: Vertical cover-plate.
         1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
            a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** Class I, color anodic **OR** Class II, color anodic **OR** High-performance organic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No. 4, **as directed**.
            b) Color: As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities.
         2) Secondary Seal: Manufacturer's standard extruded-elastomeric seal designed to prevent water and moisture infiltration.
      b. Type: Flat seal.
         1) Seal Material: Santoprene.
            a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
         2) Secondary Seal: Manufacturer's standard extruded-elastomeric seal designed to prevent water and moisture infiltration.
         3) Pantograph Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard nylon pantographic wind-load support mechanism with stainless-steel fasteners.
      c. Type: Preformed cellular foam.

1) Foam Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Non-extruded, low-density, crosslinked, nitrogen-blown, ethylene-vinyl-acetate copolymer **OR** Polyurethane, **as directed**.
a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

d. Fire-Resistance Rating: Match adjacent construction.

E. Architectural Joint Systems For Open-Air Structures

1. Slab-to-Slab Joint Systems for Parking Structures **OR** Plaza Decks **OR** Stadiums, **as directed**:
a. Type: Metal plate.
1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** Class I, color anodic **OR** Class II, color anodic **OR** High-performance organic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No. 4, **as directed**.
b) Color: As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities.
b. Type: Sealant T-joint **OR** Rubber pad **OR** Compression seal **OR** Strip seal **OR** Winged seal **OR** Epoxy-bonded seal **OR** Split-slab membrane, **as directed**.
1) Seal Material: Santoprene **OR** Neoprene **OR** Silicone **OR** EPDM **OR** PVC **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
c. Attachment Method: Mechanical anchors **OR** Cast in **OR** Elastomeric concrete header **OR** Compressed, epoxy adhered **OR** Compressed, lubricant adhesive adhered, **as directed**.
d. Load Capacity: Heavy **OR** Extra heavy, **as directed**, duty.
e. Fire-Resistance Rating: Match adjacent construction.
f. Gutter: Flexible, fabric-reinforced neoprene gutter system with drain tubes.

2. Slab-to-Wall Joint Systems for Parking Structures **OR** Plaza Decks **OR** Stadiums, **as directed**:
a. Type: Metal plate.
1) Exposed Metal: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
a) Finish: Manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Mill **OR** Class I, clear anodic **OR** Class II, clear anodic **OR** Class I, color anodic **OR** Class II, color anodic **OR** High-performance organic **OR** No. 2B **OR** No. 4, **as directed**.
b) Color: As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities.
b. Type: Sealant T-joint **OR** Rubber pad **OR** Compression seal **OR** Strip seal **OR** Winged seal **OR** Epoxy-bonded seal **OR** Split-slab membrane, **as directed**.
1) Seal Material: Santoprene **OR** Neoprene **OR** Silicone **OR** EPDM **OR** PVC **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
c. Attachment Method: Mechanical anchors **OR** Cast in **OR** Elastomeric concrete header **OR** Compressed, epoxy adhered **OR** Compressed, lubricant adhesive adhered, **as directed**.
d. Fire-Resistance Rating: Match adjacent construction.
e. Gutter: Flexible, fabric reinforced neoprene gutter system with drain tubes.

3. Wall-to-Wall Joint Systems for Parking Structures **OR** Plaza Decks **OR** Stadiums, **as directed**:
a. Type: Compression seal.
1) Seal Material: Santoprene **OR** Neoprene **OR** Silicone **OR** EPDM **OR** PVC **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
b. Type: Preformed cellular foam.
1) Foam Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Non-extruded, low-density, crosslinked, nitrogen-blown, ethylene-vinyl-acetate copolymer **OR** Polyurethane, **as directed**.
a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
c. Attachment Method: Mechanical anchors **OR** Cast in **OR** Compressed, epoxy adhered **OR** Compressed, lubricant adhesive adhered, **as directed**.
d. Fire-Resistance Rating: Match adjacent construction.

F. Finishes

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing architectural joint assemblies and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
2. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install joint systems.
   a. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
   b. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation.
   c. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
   d. Locate in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
   e. Support underside of frames continuously to prevent vertical deflection when in service.
   f. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) from each end and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
3. Seals in Metal Frames: Install elastomeric seals in frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.
   a. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
   b. Seal transitions according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Compression Seals: Apply adhesive or lubricant adhesive as recommended by manufacturer to both frame interfaces **OR** sides of slabs, **as directed**, before installing compression seals.
5. Foam Seals: Install with adhesive recommended by manufacturer.
6. Epoxy-Bonded Seals: Pressurize seal for time period and to pressure recommended by manufacturer. Do not overpressurize.
7. Terminate exposed ends of joint assemblies with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.
8. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Coordinate so complete assemblies comply with assembly performance requirements.
   a. Fire Barriers: Install fire barriers to provide continuous, uninterrupted fire resistance throughout length of joint, including transitions and field splices.
9. Water Barrier: Provide water barrier at exterior joints and where called for on Drawings.

B. Protection
1. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete.
2. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections.

END OF SECTION 07 95 13 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 95 13 16 - ROOF EXPANSION ASSEMBLIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for roof expansion assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Metal-flanged, bellows-type roof expansion assemblies.
   b. Aluminum roof expansion assemblies.
   c. Seismic roof expansion assemblies.

C. Performance Requirements
1. General: Provide roof expansion assemblies that, when installed, remain watertight within movement limitations specified by manufacturer.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, joints, splices, locations of joints and splices, intersections, transitions, fittings, and attachments to other work. Where joint assemblies change planes, provide isometric drawings depicting how components interconnect to achieve continuity.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed factory-applied finish required, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.
4. Research/Evaluation Reports: For roof expansion assemblies.
5. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fire-barrier assemblies with fire-test-response characteristics not less than that of adjacent construction, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Assemblies shall be capable of anticipated movement while maintaining fire rating. Identify assemblies with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Fire-Resistance Ratings: UL 2079 **OR** ASTM E 119, **as directed**.

F. Warranty
1. Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace roof expansion assemblies that leak, deteriorate in excess of rates specified in manufacturer's published product literature, or otherwise fail to perform within Two years from date of Final Completion.
2. Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied fluoropolymer finishes within 20 years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals

1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, hot-dip zinc-coating designation G90 (Z275), stretcher-leveled standard of flatness and either commercial or forming steel, minimum 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
2. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness, minimum 0.015 inch (0.4 mm) thick.
3. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, Temper H00 (cold rolled) unless Temper 060 is required for forming, minimum 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
4. Sheet Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M); Alloy 3003-H14, 5052-H32, or 6061-T6; minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick.
5. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5 or 6063-T52, minimum 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
6. Aluminum Finishes:
    a. Mill Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated; no other applied finish unless buffing is required to removed scratches, welding, or grinding produced in fabrication process).
    b. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
    c. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
    d. Class II, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A32/A34 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.010 mm or thicker).
    e. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
        1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
    f. High-Performance Organic Finish (2-Coat Fluoropolymer): AA-C12C40R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: conversion coating; Organic Coating: manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with AAMA 2604 and with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
        1) Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

B. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Roof Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II.
2. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** polysulfide **OR** silicone, **as directed,** polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and to remain watertight.
3. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: ASTM C 665.
4. Flexible Cellular Sponge or Expanded Rubber: ASTM D 1056.
5. Silicone Extrusions: Classified according to ASTM D 2000, UV stabilized, and do not propagate flame.
6. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to withstand design loads.
    a. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.

C. Fire Barriers
1. Fire Barriers: Devices complying with requirements specified in Part 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article for fire-test-response characteristics and designed for dynamic structural movement

without material degradation or fatigue when tested according to ASTM E 1399. Provide roof expansion assemblies with manufacturer's continuous, standard, flexible fire-barrier seals in back of joint system at locations indicated to provide fire-resistance rating not less than rating of adjacent construction.

D. Bellows-Type Roof Expansion Assemblies
   1. Metal-Flanged, Bellows-Type Roof Expansion Assemblies: Provide manufacturer's standard assemblies of sizes and types indicated, with prefabricated units for corner and joint intersections and horizontal and vertical transitions including those to other building expansion joints, splicing units, adhesives, coatings, and other components as recommended by roof expansion assembly manufacturer for complete installation. Fabricate assemblies specifically for roof-to-roof **OR** roof-to-wall **OR** curb-to-curb **OR** curb-to-wall, **as directed,** applications.
   2. Provide assemblies consisting of exposed polymeric sheet over foam bellows, securely anchored at both edges to 3- to 4-inch- (76- to 100-mm-) wide sheet metal nailing flanges, either flat or angle formed to fit cant or curbs as required. Insulate bellows with closed-cell, flexible rubber or plastic foam not less than 5/16 inch (8 mm) thick; adhere bellows to underside of polymeric sheet.
      a. Polymeric Sheet: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Neoprene, 60 mils (1.5 mm) thick **OR** EPDM, 60 mils (1.5 mm) thick, black **OR** EPDM, 60 mils (1.5 mm) thick, white **OR** Reinforced chlorinated polyethylene, 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick **OR** Chlorosulfonated polyethylene, 36 mils (0.9 mm) thick **OR** Glass-reinforced PVC, 40 to 50 mils (1.0 to 1.3 mm) thick, **as directed**.
      b. Metal Flanges: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel, minimum 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) thick **OR** Copper, minimum 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) **OR** Stainless steel, minimum 0.015 inch (0.4 mm) thick **OR** Sheet aluminum, minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, mill finish, **as directed**.
         1) Mortar Flanges: Where flanges will be embedded in concrete or mortar, provide manufacturer's standard perforated-metal mortar flanges.
      c. Moisture Barrier: Manufacturer's standard, flexible, continuous, polymeric moisture barrier looped under roof expansion assemblies at locations indicated. Fill space with blanket-type, mineral-fiber insulation.
      d. Fire Barrier: Provide manufacturer's standard fire barrier.

E. Aluminum Roof Expansion Assemblies
   1. Aluminum Roof Expansion Assemblies: Provide assemblies consisting of aluminum base members with sloped cants and provisions for anchoring and sealing to roofing membrane or flashing in a waterproof-sealed joint. Provide free-to-move, extruded-aluminum cover plate anchored against displacement and waterproofed by integral seals. Provide prefabricated units for corner and joint intersections and horizontal and vertical transitions, including those to other building expansion joints, splicing units, adhesives, coatings, and other components as recommended by roof expansion assembly manufacturer for complete installation. Fabricate assemblies specifically for curb-to-curb **OR** wall, **as directed,** applications.
      a. Base Frame Members: Extruded aluminum with mill **OR** anodic **OR** high-performance organic, **as directed,** finish.
      b. Extruded-Aluminum Covers: Minimum 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.125 inch (3 mm), **as directed,** thick, with mill **OR** clear anodic **OR** color anodic **OR** high-performance organic, **as directed,** finish.
      c. Formed-Aluminum Covers: Minimum 0.078 inch (2 mm) thick, with mill **OR** clear anodic **OR** color anodic **OR** high-performance organic, **as directed,** finish.
      d. Moisture Barrier:
         1) Semiconcealed, captive, polymeric sheet bellows unit of neoprene, EPDM, reinforced chlorinated polyethylene, or PVC, not less than 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
         2) Semiconcealed, captive gaskets at both curb members, of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC, with spring-loaded mechanism to maintain positive pressure between gaskets and curb cap.
      e. Fire Barrier: Provide manufacturer's standard fire barrier.

F. Seismic Roof Expansion Assemblies
1. General: Provide manufacturer's assemblies designed to accommodate seismic movement. Provide prefabricated units for corner and joint intersections and horizontal and vertical transitions including those to other building expansion joints, splicing units, inner seals, adhesives, coatings, and other components as recommended by roof expansion assembly manufacturer for complete installation. Fabricate assemblies specifically for roof-to-roof **OR** roof-to-wall **OR** curb-mounted, **as directed,** applications.
2. Extruded Seals: Two continuous, single-layered elastomeric profiles made of a vinyl inner seal and silicone **OR** neoprene **OR** Santoprene, **as directed,** outer seal, both seals retained in a pair of compatible extruded-aluminum frames.
   a. Exterior Seal Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
3. Aluminum Roof Expansion Assemblies: Assemblies consisting of pairs of aluminum curb units with sloped cants and provisions for anchoring and sealing to roofing membrane or flashing in a waterproof-sealed joint. Provide free-to-move, extruded-aluminum curb cap anchored against displacement and waterproofed by integral seals, with interior of expansion joint filled with blanket-type mineral-fiber insulation.
   a. Base Frame Members: Extruded aluminum with mill **OR** clear anodic **OR** color anodic **OR** high-performance organic, **as directed,** finish.
   b. Extruded-Aluminum Covers: Minimum 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.125 inch (3 mm), **as directed,** thick, with mill **OR** clear anodic **OR** color anodic **OR** high-performance organic, **as directed,** finish.
   c. Formed-Aluminum Covers: Minimum 0.078 inch (2 mm) thick, with mill **OR** clear anodic **OR** color anodic **OR** high-performance organic, **as directed,** finish.
   d. Moisture Barrier:
      1) Semiconcealed, captive, polymeric sheet bellows unit of neoprene, EPDM, reinforced chlorinated polyethylene, or PVC, not less than 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
      2) Semiconcealed, captive gaskets at both curb members, of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC, with spring-loaded mechanism to maintain positive pressure between gaskets and curb cap.
   e. Fire Barrier: Provide manufacturer's standard fire barrier.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling and installing roof expansion assemblies and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
2. Coordinate installation of roof expansion assembly materials and associated work so complete assemblies comply with assembly performance requirements.
3. Install fire barriers to provide continuous, uninterrupted fire resistance throughout length of roof expansion assembly, including transitions and end joints.
4. Extend roof expansion assemblies over curbs, parapets, cornices, gutters, valleys, fasciae, and other elements in the construction profile, with factory-fabricated intersections and transitions to provide continuous, uninterrupted, waterproof roof expansion assemblies.
   a. Install factory-fabricated transitions between roof expansion assemblies and building architectural joint systems, specified in Division 07 Section "Expansion Control", to provide continuous, uninterrupted, watertight construction.
5. Splice roof expansion assemblies with materials provided by roof expansion assembly manufacturer for this purpose, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to provide continuous, uninterrupted, waterproof roof expansion assemblies.
6. Provide uniform profile of roof expansion assembly throughout length of each installation; do not stretch polymeric sheets.
7. Install mineral-fiber blanket insulation to fill joint space within joint and moisture barrier.
8. Bed anchorage flanges in cement or sealant recommended by manufacturer and securely nail to curbs and cant strips as recommended by manufacturer but not less than 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

9. Anchor roof expansion assemblies complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
10. Embed flanges not less than 4 inches (100 mm) in bituminous membranes, with hot bitumen or roof cement. Cover with stripping material and install according to requirements in roofing section.
11. On single-ply roofing, install roof expansion assemblies complying with manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor to cants or curbs and seal to membrane with sealant compatible with roofing membrane and roof expansion assembly. Cover flanges with stripping or flashing and install according to requirements in roofing section.

B. Protection
1. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensures that roof expansion assemblies are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 07 95 13 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 95 13 16	07 95 13 13	Architectural Joint Systems

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 01 11 61 - STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for steel doors and frames. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Standard hollow metal doors and frames.
b. Custom hollow metal doors and frames.

C. Definitions
1. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.
2. Standard Hollow Metal Work: Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
3. Custom Hollow Metal Work: Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include elevations, door edge details, frame profiles, metal thicknesses, preparations for hardware, and other details.
3. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.
4. Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings.
5. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.
6. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of hollow metal door and frame assembly.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure **OR** as close to neutral pressure as possible, **as directed**, according to NFPA 252 **OR** IBC Standard 716.5, **as directed**, or UL 10B**OR** UL 10C, **as directed**.
a. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
b. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated **OR** At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, **as directed**, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
2. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9 **OR** IBC Standard 716.5, **as directed**. Label each individual glazed lite.
3. Smoke-Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105 or UL 1784 **OR** IBC Standard 716.5, **as directed**.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
   a. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished units.
2. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
3. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- (102-mm-) high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
   a. Provide minimum 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
2. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
3. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum A40 (ZF120) **OR** G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180), **as directed**, metallic coating.
4. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
   a. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
5. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
6. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal frames of type indicated.
7. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches (102 mm), as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
8. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool with 6- to 12-lb/cu. ft. (96- to 192-kg/cu. m) density; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-development indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
9. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing".
10. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat.

B. Standard Hollow Metal Doors
1. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
   a. Design: Flush panel **OR** Embossed panel **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
   b. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core.
      1) Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
      2) Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 4.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (0.704 K x sq. m/W) **OR** 6.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (1.057 K x sq. m/W) **OR** 12.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (2.166 K x sq. m/W), **as directed**, when tested according to ASTM C 1363.
         a) Locations: Exterior doors and interior doors where indicated, **as directed**.

c. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Beveled edge **OR** Square edge **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
   1) Beveled Edge: 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
d. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch (54-mm) radius.
e. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
f. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

2. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
   a. Level 1 and Physical Performance Level C (Standard Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless), **as directed**.
      1) Width: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm) **OR** 1-3/8 inches (34.9 mm) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   b. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless), **as directed**.
   c. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless) **OR** Model 3 (Stile and Rail), **as directed**.
   d. Level 4 and Physical Performance Level A (Maximum Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless), **as directed**.
3. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
   a. Level 1 and Physical Performance Level C (Standard Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless), **as directed**.
      1) Width: 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm) **OR** 1-3/8 inches (34.9 mm) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
   b. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless), **as directed**.
   c. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless) **OR** Model 3 (Stile and Rail), **as directed**.
   d. Level 4 and Physical Performance Level A (Maximum Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush) **OR** Model 2 (Seamless), **as directed**.
4. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
5. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.

C. Standard Hollow Metal Frames
1. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.
2. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet.
   a. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
   b. Fabricate frames as knocked down **OR** face welded **OR** full profile welded, **as directed,** unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Frames for Level 1 Steel Doors: 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick steel sheet.
   d. Frames for Level 2 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
   e. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
   f. Frames for Level 4 Steel Doors: 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet.
3. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated.
   a. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
   b. Fabricate frames as knocked down **OR** face welded **OR** full profile welded, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Fabricate knocked-down, drywall slip-on frames for in-place gypsum board partitions**, as directed**.

d. Frames for Level 1 Steel Doors: 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick steel sheet.
e. Frames for Level 2 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
f. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
g. Frames for Level 4 Steel Doors: 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet.
h. Frames for Wood Doors: 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) **OR** 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) **OR** 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-), **as directed**, thick steel sheet.
i. Frames for Borrowed Lights: 0.042-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick steel sheet **OR** 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet **OR** 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet **OR** Same as adjacent door frame, **as directed**.

4. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.

D. Custom Hollow Metal Doors
1. General: Provide doors not less than 1-3/4 inches (44.5 mm) thick, of seamless hollow construction unless otherwise indicated. Construct doors with smooth surfaces without visible joints or seams on exposed faces. Comply with ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861.
2. Exterior Door Face Sheets: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum 0.053 inch (1.3 mm) thick.
3. Interior Door Face Sheets: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated, minimum 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
4. Core Construction: Provide thermal-resistance-rated cores for exterior doors and interior doors where indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Steel-Stiffened Core: 0.026-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, steel vertical stiffeners of same material as face sheets extending full-door height, with vertical webs spaced not more than 6 inches (152 mm) apart, spot welded to face sheets a maximum of 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. Spaces filled between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.
      1) Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
      2) Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 4.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (0.704 K x sq. m/W) **OR** 6.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu (1.057 K x sq. m/W), **as directed,** when tested according to ASTM C 1363.
5. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Beveled 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
6. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch (54-mm) radius.
7. Top and Bottom Channels: Closed with continuous channels, minimum 0.053 inch (1.3 mm) thick, of same material as face sheets and spot welded to both face sheets.
8. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.

E. Custom Hollow Metal Frames
1. General: Fabricate frames of construction indicated. Close contact edges of corner joints tight with faces mitered and stops butted or mitered. Continuously weld faces and soffits and finish faces smooth. Comply with ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861.
   a. Door Frames for Openings 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide or Less: Fabricated from 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
   b. Door Frames for Openings More Than 48 Inches (1219 mm) Wide: Fabricated from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick steel sheet.
   c. Sidelight and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
   d. Borrowed-Light Frames: Fabricated from 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick steel sheet.
2. Exterior Frames: Formed from metallic-coated steel sheet.
3. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated.
4. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861 with reinforcing plates from same material as frame.

5. Head Reinforcement: Provide minimum 0.093-inch- (2.3-mm-) thick, steel channel or angle stiffener for opening widths more than 48 inches (1219 mm).

F. Frame Anchors
   1. Jamb Anchors:
      a. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide by 10 inches (250 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch (4.5 mm) thick.
      b. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
      c. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
      d. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
   2. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, and as follows:
      a. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
      b. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (50-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

G. Hollow Metal Panels
   1. Provide hollow metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as specified for adjoining hollow metal work.

H. Stops And Moldings
   1. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
   2. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch (16 mm) high unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed.
   4. Terminated Stops: Where indicated on interior door frames, terminate stops 6 inches (152 mm) above finish floor with a 45-degree **OR** 90-degree, **as directed**, angle cut, and close open end of stop with steel sheet closure. Cover opening in extension of frame with welded-steel filler plate, with welds ground smooth and flush with frame.

I. Louvers
   1. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, that comply with SDI 111C, with blades or baffles formed of 0.020-inch- (0.5-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick steel frame.
      a. Sightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted V-shaped or Y-shaped blades.
      b. Lightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with baffles to prevent light from passing from one side to the other, any angle.
      c. Fire-Rated Automatic Louvers: Louvers constructed with movable blades closed by actuating fusible link, and listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies of type and fire-resistance rating indicated by same testing and inspecting agency that established fire-resistance rating of door assembly.

J. Accessories
   1. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
   2. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 1/4-inch-thick by 1-inch- (6.4-mm-thick by 25.4-mm-) wide steel.
   3. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick.

K. Fabrication
1. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
2. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117 **OR** ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861, **as directed**.
3. Hollow Metal Doors:
   a. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
   b. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
   c. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.
4. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
   a. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
   b. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
   c. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
   e. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
   f. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
      1) Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
         a) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) high.
         b) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
         c) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches (2286 to 3048 mm) high.
         d) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 120 inches (3048 mm) high.
      2) Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
         a) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) high.
         b) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) high.
         c) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) high.
         d) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof above 96 inches (2438 mm) high.
         e) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches (1066 mm) wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
      3) Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each jamb.
      4) Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches (660 mm) o.c.
   g. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
      1) Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
      2) Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

5. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
6. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
   a. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8 **OR** ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861.
   b. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
   c. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
   d. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26.
7. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
   a. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
   b. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
   c. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
   d. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
   e. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.

L. Steel Finishes
1. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
   a. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
2. Factory-Applied Paint Finish: Manufacturer's standard, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.3 for performance and acceptance criteria.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11 **OR** HMMA 840, **as directed**.
   a. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
      1) At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
      2) Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
      3) Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
      4) Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
      5) Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
      6) Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.

7) Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that are filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.

b. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
   1) Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.

c. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.

d. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.

e. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with grout. Take precautions, including bracing frames, to ensure that frames are not deformed or damaged by grout forces.

f. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

g. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

h. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to overhead structural supports or substrates above frame unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.

i. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
   1) Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
   2) Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
   3) Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
   4) Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs at floor.

3. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
   a. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
      1) Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
      2) Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (3 mm) plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
      3) Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
      4) Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch (19 mm).
   b. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
   c. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105 **OR** IBC Standard 716.5, **as directed**.
4. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c. and not more than 2 inches (50 mm) o.c. from each corner.

B. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
2. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.

3. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
4. Metallic-Coated Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08 01 11 61

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 01 11 61a - STEEL ENTRY DOORS

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steel entry doors. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 GENERAL

A. Definitions
1. Supply and Delivery Only: Include supply and delivery to site(s) FOB destination freight prepaid. Unless otherwise specified or scheduled, unloading and handling at site is by the Owner.

B. System Description
1. Door Assemblies: Include doors, frames, and hardware
a. Provide with fire rating as indicated or specified.
b. Door and Frame Assemblies: Comply with dimensional requirements of SDI 100.
c. Exterior Doors: Sealed, weatherstripped and provided with thresholds.
2. Insulated Entry Door System (Assembly) Performance Requirements:
a. Mechanical Properties: Comply with ANSI/SDI A151.1, Level C (250,000 cycles).
b. Air Infiltration: ANSI/ISDSI 101 and ASTM E 283, not exceed 0.029 cu m/s/mm (0.20 CFM/foot) of crack length at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
c. Water Resistance: ANSI/ISDSI 104 and ASTM E 331, no leakage at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
d. Thermal Performance: ANSI/ISDSI 107, minimum acceptance criteria as defined in standard except U-Value of 1.42 W/sq. m C (0.25 BTU/HR/SF degree F).
e. Acoustical Performance: ANSI/ISDSI 103, Minimum Sound Transmission Class (STC) of 24.
3. Hollow Core Heavy Duty System (Assembly) Performance Requirements:
a. Mechanical Properties: Comply with ANSI/SDI A151.1, Level B (500,000 cycles).
b. Air Infiltration: SDI 116 and ASTM E 283, not exceed 0.072 cu m/s/mm (0.50 CFM/foot) of crack length at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
c. Water Resistance: ASTM E 331, no leakage at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
4. Insulated Heavy Duty Door System (Assembly) Performance Requirements:
a. Mechanical Properties: Comply with ANSI/SDI A151.1, Level B (500,000 cycles).
b. Air Infiltration: ANSI/ISDSI 101/ASTM E 283, not exceed 0.029 cu m/s/mm (0.20 CFM/foot) of crack length at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
c. Water Resistance: ANSI/ISDSI 104 and ASTM E 331, no leakage at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
d. Thermal Performance: ANSI/ISDSI 107, minimum acceptance criteria as defined in standard except U-Value of 1.42 W/sq. m C (0.25 BTU/HR SF degree F) is required.
e. Acoustical Performance: ANSI/ISDSI 103, Minimum Sound Transmission Class (STC) of 24.
5. Security Door System (Assembly) Performance Requirements:
a. Mechanical Properties: Comply with ANSI/SDI A151.1, Level A (1,000,000 cycles).
b. Air Infiltration: SDI 116 and ASTM E 283, not exceed 0.72 cu m/s/mm (0.50 CFM/foot) of crack length at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
c. Water Resistance: ASTM E 331, no leakage at test pressure of 75 Pa (1.57 PSF).
d. Forced Entry: ASTM F 476, Grade 40.

C. Submittals
   1. Product Data.
   2. Shop Drawings:
      a. Include details showing recommendations for installation of doors. Include size of fasteners, spacing, minimum penetration of fasteners into load-bearing material and maximum clearance between frame and rough opening.
   3. Samples: Submit full set of finish color samples for color selection.
      a. For Supply and Deliver Only Contract: Submit one full size sample of each type of steel entry door with specified finish for acceptance.
   4. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
      a. Test Reports: Results of testing by accredited independent laboratory demonstrating compliance of door systems with specified performance requirements.
         1) Indicate that tests were performed in accordance with standard referenced.
         2) Weak Link Testing. Submit reports for each model door in its weakest condition in order to quality superior variations of same model.
      b. Certificates: Manufacturer's written certification that door systems meet or exceed specified requirements.
      c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
   5. Closeout Submittals:
      a. Operation and maintenance data.
      b. Special warranty.

D. Quality Assurance
   1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with following:
      a. Fire Rated Label: Determined using ASTM E 152 and bear label of UL or other recognized fire rating program.
      b. Glazing Materials: Comply with CPSC 16 CFR 1201 or ANSI Z97.1.
      c. Accessibility:
         1) Architectural Barriers Act of 1968 as amended (42 USC 4151-4157) and HUD implementing regulations (24 CFR Part 40).
            a) Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS).
         2) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 as amended (29 USC 794) and HUD implementing regulations 24 CFR Part 8.
         3) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines (24 CFR Chapter 1).
         4) Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (42 USC §§ 12101, et seq.) and implementing regulations (28 CFR Part 35).
   2. Certifications:
      a. Door Systems: Meet or exceed performance requirements and other requirements specified and be labeled under HUD accepted Materials Releases.
      b. Some Material Releases (MR) do not include all of performance requirements specified. Therefore, additional testing, certification may be required for submission with HUD Material Releases.
         1) Material Releases are part of HUD Technical Suitability of Building Products Program. Contact: Department of Housing and Urban Development, Manufactured Housing and Construction Standards, 451 7th Street, SW, Washington, D.C. 20410-8000.
   3. Mock-ups: Install one mock-up of each type of entry door system including doors, frames, hardware, weatherstripping, thresholds, and accessories.
      a. Location: As directed.
      b. Approved Mock-up: Standard for rest of work.
      c. Approved Mock-up: May remain part of completed project.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
   1. Packing, Shipping, Handling, and Unloading: Pack materials at manufacturing plant to prevent damage during shipping.

2. Acceptance at Site: Inspect door systems upon delivery. Replace damaged or defective materials before installation.

F. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Field measure openings for door systems before start of fabrication.

G. Scheduling And Sequencing
1. Scheduling and Completion: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Provide one year written warranty covering materials and installation for steel entry doors.
   a. Warranty: Include coverage of hardware.
      1) Glazing not included.
      2) Defects resulting from vandalism not included.
   b. For Supply and Delivery Only Contract:
      1) Contractor: Agrees to supply and deliver to the Owner, free of charge, any required replacement parts that can be readily installed by the Owner without special tools.
      2) Contractor: Agrees to supply and deliver free of charge, complete replacement door, when defective part or parts cannot be installed without use of special tools.
   c. For Supply and Install Contract:
      1) Contractor: Agrees to supply and install, free of charge, any required replacement parts or complete replacement door.

1.3 PRODUCTS

A. Doors
1. Doors: Consist of two steel face sheets, wood or steel stiles and rails with full support lock reinforcement.
   a. Thickness: Nominal 44.4 mm (1-3/4 inch)
   b. Steel Face: Minimum of 24 gage (0.57 mm) galvanized and bonderized steel.
   c. Wood Stiles and Rails: Kiln dried clear Ponderosa Pine, Douglas Fir, or equal.
   d. Embossed Designs: Emboss 24 gage (0.57 mm) doors and 18 gage (1.07 mm) doors to achieve scheduled or indicated designs.
2. Hollow Core Heavy Duty Doors: Fabricated of 18 gage (1.07 mm) minimum steel face sheets, stiles, top and bottom closures.
   a. Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
   b. Fire Rating: When required, provide B Label, 1-1/2 hour fire rating.
3. Insulated Heavy Duty Doors: Fabricated of 18 gage (1.07 mm) minimum steel face sheets, stiles, top and bottom closures.
   a. Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
   b. Fire Rating: When required, provide B Label, 1-1 /2 hour fire rating.
4. Security Doors: Comply with SDI 100, Models 1, 1A, 2, or 2A, minimum 16 gage (1.35 mm) steel face sheets .
   a. Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
   b. Fire Rating: When required, provide B Label, 1-1/2 hour fire rating.
5. Hardware Preparation:
   a. Door System: Facilitate installation of standard cylindrical and/or full mortise locks with multiple point throw if specified.
   b. 24 gage (0.57 mm) Doors: Prepare to receive three 102 mm (4 inch) full mortise or bun hinges flush with edge of door.
   c. 18 Gage (1.07 mm) and Heavier Doors: Prepare to receive three 114 mm (4-1/2 inch) full mortise or butt hinges flush with edge of door.
6. Insulated Doors: Solid foam core of polyurethane, or polystyrene.
   a. Core: Fully adhere to steel face sheets, stiles, rails and lock block and completely fill void.

B. Frames
   1. Wood Frames: Kiln dried Ponderosa Pine, toxic treated, and primed.
   2. Steel Frames and/or Adapter Frames: Minimum of 18 gage (1.07 mm) galvanized bonderized steel, pre-drilled and reinforced for hinges as required.
      a. Shape of Frame: Generally L-shaped.
   3. Hollow Core Heavy Duty Door Frames: Fabricated of 16 gage (1.35 mm) minimum thickness.
      a. When required, provide B Label, 1-1/2 hour fire rating.
   4. Insulated Heavy Duty Door Frames: Fabricated of 16 gage (1.35 mm) minimum thickness.
      a. When required, provide B Label, 1-1/2 hour fire rating.
   5. Security Door Frames: Comply with SDI 100, minimum of 14 gage (1.70 mm) galvanized bonderized steel, pre-drilled and reinforced for hinges as required.
      a. When required, provide B Label, 1-1/2 hour fire rating.
      b. Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
   6. Frames: Weatherstripped at head, jambs and threshold.

C. Hardware
   1. General: Comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.1 and applicable accessibility regulatory requirements and perform functions for which it was intended.
   2. Butts and Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1, as scheduled.
      a. Install non-rising pins (NRP) on out-swing doors.
      b. Self Closing: ANSI/BHMA A156.17.
      c. Security Door Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
   3. Fire Rate Doors Hardware: Comply with NFPA 80.
      a. Exit Doors: Comply with NFPA 101 (Life Safety Code) for exit doors, as well as other requirements specified.
      b. Labeling and Listing: Listed in UL Building Materials Directory.
         1) In Lieu of UL Labeling and Listing: Test reports from nationally recognized testing agency showing that hardware has been tested in accordance with UL test methods and conforms to NFPA requirements.
      c. Install minimum latch throw as specified on label of individual door.
      d. Provide hardware listed by UL, except where heavier materials, larger sizes or higher grades are specified.
      e. Closers: ANSI/BHMA A156.4.
   4. Lock Sets: As scheduled. Comply with following standards:
      a. Bored and Preassembled Locks and Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Grade 2.
      b. Dead Bolt: ANSI/BHMA Al 56.5.
      c. Mortise Locks and Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Grade 1 or Security Grade, single or multiple throw.
      d. Interconnected Deadlock and Passage Set: ANSI/BHMA A156.12, Grade 2.
      e. Cylindrical Lock: Grade 2, cylindrical deadbolt lock/passage set combination.
      f. Security Door Locksets: ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Security Grade or UL 437 Key locks.
         1) Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
      g. Keys: Provide two keys for each lock provided. Provide master keying and keying alike on any locks as directed at no additional charge.
      h. Locks: Provide with interchangeable cores.
   5. Door Viewers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16.

D. Accessories
   1. Glazing Materials: Comply with CPSC 16 CFR 1201 or ANSI Z97.1.
      a. Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, Glazing B Quality.
         1) Fire Rated Doors: ASTM C 1036, Type 11, Class 1, Glazing Quality, wired glass.
      b. Tempered Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT. Condition A, Type 1, Class 1, Glazing B Quality.
      c. Plastic: Extruded polycarbonate clear sheets, minimum 3 mm (0.118 inch) thick with following characteristics:
         1) Impact Resistance: ASTM D 256, Method A, 12-18 foot-pound per inch.

2) Elongation/Modulus of Elasticity: ASTM D 638, 110 percent maximum/340,000 PSI.
3) Heat Deflection: ASTM D 648, 132.2 degrees C (270 degrees F) at 264 PSI.
4) Abrasion Resistance: Coated on both surfaces to produce abrasion resistance of 3-19 percent maximum haze increase for 500 revolutions of CS-1 OF wheel per ASTM D 1044.

d. Insulating Glass Units: HUD UM 82 and ASTM E 774, Class C.
1) Provide insulating glass units in insulated doors and insulated heavy duty doors.

e. Glass Thickness: In accordance with AAMA 1002.10 Appendix, minimum 5 mm (3/16 inch).
1) Design Wind Pressures: Determined in accordance with applicable codes and regulations.

f. Glass: Labeled to show name of manufacturer and type.

2. Joint Sealants:
a. Exterior Joint Sealant: AAMA 800, Type 808.3 Exterior Perimeter Sealing Compound.
b. Back-up Material: Standard preformed and pre-compressed foam material, round rod or semi-circular type, permanently elastic, mildew resistant, nonmigratory, nonstaining, and compatible with joint substrates and with sealant.
1) Materials impregnated with oil, solvents, or bituminous materials not allowed.
2) Provide type as recommended by sealant manufacturer for particular installation.
3) Material: Neoprene, butyl, polyurethane, vinyl, or polyethylene rod.
c. Interior Joint Sealant: ASTM C 834, latex acrylic.

3. Weatherstripping and Thresholds: Comply with FS 00-A-200-9D, Alloy 6063-T-5; ASTM D 2287, Grade as required; MIL-S-6855, Class 11, Grade 40 (Solid neoprene); and MIL-R-6130C, Type 11, Grade C (Sponge neoprene).
a. Weatherstripping for Doors and Frames: Adjustable types with replaceable contact stops. Types are listed below:
1) Type A1 (for bottom of door with threshold greater than 6 mm (1/4 inch)): Solid neoprene or vinyl strips mounted in extruded aluminum retainers.
2) Type B (for bottom of door with thresholds less than 6 mm (1/4 inch) in height): Curved vinyl strips with extruded aluminum retainers.
3) Type C (for door frame heads and jambs): Extruded aluminum retainer with extruded solid vinyl insert.
4) Type D1 (for door frame heads and jambs): Closed cell sponge neoprene or vinyl strip with leveled edge mounted in extruded aluminum retainer.
b. Rain Drips: Extruded aluminum with sufficient projection.
c. Fasteners: Cad plated steel, brass plated steel, black oxide plated steel, or stainless steel.
1) Threshold to Concrete: Provide lead expansion shields.
2) Exposed Finish: Match finish of weatherstrip.

E. Finishes
1. Entry Door System: Clean and free from serious surface blemishes.
a. Exposed Surfaces: ASTM A 525 hot dipped galvanized, minimum A40 (or G60) Electrolytic Class B coating weight.
b. Primer: Factory final finished including primer meeting performance requirements of ANSI A224.1.
c. Finish Coat: One of the following as specified or scheduled:
1) Factory Finished: Electrostatically factory applied baked on enamel finish.
a) Color: As selected from manufacturers' list of colors.
2) Field painted under Division 9 Section "Painting."

F. Source Quality Control
1. Testing: Performed by accredited independent testing laboratory.
2. Shop Tests:
a. Mechanical Properties Tests: ANSI/SDI A151.1, perform on lightest gage frame and leaf.
1) Security Doors: ASTM F 476.
2) Doors with Glass Lites: Mechanical test not required.

b. Air Infiltration and Water Resistance Tests: Perform on door with largest glass lite. Retest variations in frame to leaf sealing system.
   1) Air Infiltration Tests: ANSI/ISDSI 101, SDI 116, and ASTM E 283.
   2) Water Resistance Tests: ANSI/ISDSI 104 and ASTM E 331.
c. Thermal Performance Tests: Perform on heaviest gage frame and leaf with largest area of glass. Retest variation in thermal design aspects of door such as different insulation, type of thermal break, or type of frame.
   1) Thermal Performance Tests: ANSI/ISDSI 107 and SDI 113.
d. Test Sample Size for Door System: Minimum 914 mm (36 inches) by 1 727 mm (68 inches), complete with hardware and subframe.

1.4 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Site Verification of Conditions:
   a. Field Measurements: Verify field measurements are as indicated on Shop Drawings.
   b. Existing Conditions: Examine openings before beginning installation.
   c. Do not proceed with installation until conditions are satisfactory.

B. Preparation
1. Protection: Protect adjacent elements from damage and disfiguration in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
   a. Contractor: Responsible for damage to grounds, plantings, buildings and any other facilities or property caused by construction operations.
   b. Adequately enclose and protect against weather any interior space where installation is incomplete at end of working day.
   c. Repair or replace damaged elements in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
2. Existing Entry Doors: Remove existing entry doors and debris from site in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
3. Prepare existing openings in accordance with ANSI/ISDSI 102, SDI 105, ASTM E 737, manufacturer’s recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.

C. Installation
1. General: Install in accordance with ANSI/ISDSI 102, SDI 105, ASTM E 737, manufacturer's recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.
   a. Install doors and frames securely, water tight, straight, plumb and level without distortion.
2. Weatherstripping and Thresholds: Accurately cut, fit, align, and secure to maintain weatherproof seal without hampering operation of door.
   a. Rain Drips: Install on door heads which are not protected by canopy or soffit.
   b. Secure thresholds to concrete with stainless screws or equal and lead expansion shields.
   c. Blocking: Provide as necessary to secure hardware. Prime cut wood surfaces with wood sealer before weatherstripping is installed.
3. Joint Sealants: Apply in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.
   a. Surfaces to be Sealed: Clean, dry and free of any foreign matter that would degrade adhesion. Remove existing caulking and joint sealants from areas to receive new joint sealant.
   b. Prime cleaned surfaces in accordance with sealant manufacturer’s recommendations.
   c. Protect surfaces adjacent to joints by masking tape before applying sealant. Remove tape upon finishing sealing work.
   d. Seal door frames and thresholds where joining other materials on exterior and interior with joint sealant to accomplish weather-tight installation.
   e. Maximum Width of Sealed Joint: 13 mm (1/2 inch).

D. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Adjusting: At completion of job, check, adjust, and lubricate hardware as required and leave doors and hardware in proper operating condition.
2. Cleaning: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.
   a. Clean doors, after installation is completed, to remove foreign matter and surface blemishes.
   b. Scratched or Abraded Surfaces: Touch-up with rust inhibitor primer and enamel paint compatible with factory finish.

E. Protection
   1. Installed Work: Protect doors from damage after installation.

END OF SECTION 08 01 11 61a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 01 52 61 - WOOD WINDOWS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for wood windows. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes fixed and operable wood-framed windows of the following type:
   a. Unfinished.
   b. Aluminum clad.
   c. Vinyl clad.

C. Definitions
1. Performance class designations according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS:
   a. AW: Architectural.
   b. HC: Heavy Commercial.
   c. C: Commercial.
   d. LC: Light Commercial.
   e. R: Residential.
2. Performance grade number according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS:
   a. Design pressure number in pounds force per square foot (pascals) used to determine the structural test pressure and water test pressure.
3. Structural Test Pressure: For uniform load structural test, is equivalent to 150 percent of the design pressure.
4. Minimum Test Size: Smallest size permitted for performance class (gateway test size). Products must be tested at minimum test size or at a size larger than minimum test size to comply with requirements for performance class.

D. Performance Requirements
1. General: Provide wood windows capable of complying with performance requirements indicated, based on testing manufacturer's windows that are representative of those specified, and that are of test size required by AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS.
2. Structural Performance: Provide wood windows capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads based on testing units representative of those indicated for Project that pass AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Uniform Load Structural Test:
   a. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour (meters per second) at 33 feet (10 m) above grade, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
      1) Basic Wind Speed: 85 mph (38 m/s) **OR** 90 mph (40 m/s), **as directed**.
      2) Importance Factor: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.
      3) Exposure Category: A **OR** B **OR** C **OR** D, **as directed**.
   b. Deflection: Design glass framing system to limit lateral deflections of glass edges to less than 1/175 of glass-edge length or 3/4 inch (19 mm), whichever is less, at design pressure based on testing performed according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Uniform Load Deflection Test or structural computations.
3. Windborne-Debris Resistance: Provide glazed windows capable of resisting impact from windborne debris, based on the pass/fail criteria as determined from testing glazed windows identical to those specified, according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 **OR** AAMA 506, **as directed**, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of wood window indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood windows comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
      1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware, attachments to other work, operational clearances, installation details.
4. Samples: For each exposed finish.
5. Product Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
6. Product test reports.
7. Maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer: A qualified installer, approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.
2. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer who is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
3. Forest Certification: Provide windows made with not less than 70 percent of wood products **OR** all wood products, **as directed**, obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
4. Fenestration Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, "North American Fenestration Standard Voluntary Performance Specification for Windows, Skylights and Glass Doors," for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
   a. Provide AAMA-certified **OR** WDMA-certified, **as directed**, wood windows with an attached label.
5. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass manufacturers and with GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace wood windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period:
      1) Window: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
      2) Glazing: Five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
      3) Metal Finish: Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Wood: Clear ponderosa pine or another suitable fine-grained lumber; kiln dried to a moisture content of 6 to 12 percent at time of fabrication; free of visible finger joints, blue stain, knots, pitch pockets, and surface checks larger than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) deep by 2 inches (51 mm) wide; water-repellent preservative treated.
2. Aluminum Extrusions and Rolled Aluminum for Cladding: Manufacturer's standard formed sheet or extruded-aluminum cladding, mechanically bonded to exterior exposed wood members. Provide aluminum alloy and temper recommended by wood window manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, but not less than 22,000-psi (150-MPa) ultimate tensile strength, and not less than 16,000-psi (110-MPa) minimum yield strength.
   a. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

b. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
c. Baked-Enamel Finish for Extrusions and Sheet: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel complying with AAMA 2603 and paint manufacturer's written specifications for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.
    1) Color: White **OR** Bronze **OR** Brown **OR** Beige **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** Custom color as selected, **as directed**.
d. High-Performance Organic Finish for Extrusions and Sheet: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    1) Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard two-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2604.
        a) Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
e. Baked-Enamel Finish for Coil: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel complying with AAMA 620 and paint manufacturer's written specifications for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.
    1) Color: White **OR** Bronze **OR** Brown **OR** Beige **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** Custom color as selected, **as directed**.

3. Vinyl for Cladding: Consisting of a rigid PVC sheath, made from PVC complying with ASTM D 4726, not less than 35-mil (0.9-mm) average thickness, in permanent, integral color, white **OR** bronze **OR** tan, **as directed**, finish, mechanically bonded to exterior wood sash and frame members.
4. Wood Trim and Glazing Stops: Material and finish to match frame members.
5. Clad Trim and Glazing Stops: Hollow extrusions **OR** Roll-formed sheet material **OR** Clad-wood material, **as directed**, and finish to match clad frame members.
6. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, epoxy adhesive, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be noncorrosive and compatible with wood window members, cladding, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
    a. Exposed Fasteners: Unless unavoidable for applying hardware, do not use exposed fasteners. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish of member or hardware being fastened, as appropriate.
7. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
8. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, or nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel complying with ASTM B 456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
9. Compression-Type Weather Stripping: Provide compressible weather stripping designed for permanently resilient sealing under bumper or wiper action and for complete concealment when wood window is closed.
    a. Weather-Stripping Material:
        1) Elastomeric cellular preformed gaskets complying with ASTM C 509.
        2) Dense elastomeric gaskets complying with ASTM C 864.
        3) Manufacturer's standard system and materials complying with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS.
10. Sliding-Type Weather Stripping: Provide woven-pile weather stripping of wool, polypropylene, or nylon pile and resin-impregnated backing fabric. Comply with AAMA 701/702.
    a. Weather Seals: Provide weather stripping with integral barrier fin or fins of semirigid, polypropylene sheet or polypropylene-coated material. Comply with AAMA 701/702.
11. Replaceable Weather Seals: Comply with AAMA 701/702.

B. Window
   1. Window Type: Casement **OR** Double hung **OR** Fixed **OR** Horizontal sliding **OR** Projected awning **OR** Single hung **OR** Bay **OR** Bow **OR** Specialty product **OR** As indicated on Drawings **OR** As indicated in a schedule, **as directed**.
   2. AAMA/WDMA Performance Requirements: Provide wood windows of performance indicated that comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS unless more stringent performance requirements are indicated.
      a. Performance Class and Grade: R15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25, **as directed**.
      b. Performance Class and Grade: LC25 **OR** 30 **OR** 35, **as directed**.
      c. Performance Class and Grade: C30 **OR** 35 **OR** 40, **as directed**.
      d. Performance Class and Grade: HC40 **OR** 45 **OR** 50, **as directed**.
      e. Performance Class and Grade: AW40 **OR** 45 **OR** 50, **as directed**.
      f. Performance Class and Grade: As indicated.
   3. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide wood windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of 45 **OR** 52, **as directed**.
   4. Thermal Transmittance: Provide wood windows with a whole-window, U-factor maximum indicated at 15-mph (24-km/h) exterior wind velocity and winter condition temperatures when tested according to AAMA 1503 **OR** ASTM E 1423 **OR** NFRC 100, **as directed**.
      a. U-Factor: 0.35 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.0 W/sq. m x K) **OR** 0.40 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.3 W/sq. m x K) **OR** 0.43 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.5 W/sq. m x K) **OR** 0.60 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.4 W/sq. m x K), **as directed**, or less.
   5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Provide wood windows with a whole-window SHGC maximum of 0.40 **OR** 0.50 **OR** 0.55, **as directed**, determined according to NFRC 200 procedures.
   6. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Provide glazed windows rated for not less than 26 **OR** 30 **OR** 35, **as directed**, STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.
   7. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Air Infiltration Test.
      a. Maximum Rate:
         1) 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (5 cu. m/h x sq. m) of area at an inward test pressure of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa) which is equivalent to 25-mph (40-km/h) wind speed and is typically used to test R, C, and LC performance classes.
         2) 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (5 cu. m/h x sq. m) of area at an inward test pressure of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) which is equivalent to a 50-mph (80-km/h) wind speed and is typically used to test HC and AW performance classes.
      b. Water Resistance: No water leakage as defined in AAMA/WDMA referenced test methods at a water test pressure equaling that indicated, when tested according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Water Resistance Test.
      c. Test Pressure:
         1) 15 percent of positive design pressure, but not less than 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (140 Pa) or more than 15 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa).
         2) 20 percent of positive design pressure, but not more than 15 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa).
   8. Forced-Entry Resistance: Comply with Performance Grade 10 **OR** 20 **OR** 30 **OR** 40, **as directed**, requirements when tested according to ASTM F 588.
   9. Life-Cycle Testing: Test according to AAMA 910 and comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS.
   10. Operating Force and Auxiliary (Durability) Tests: Comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS for operating window types indicated.

C. Glazing
   1. Glass and Glazing Materials: Refer to Division 08 Section "Glazing"" for glass units and glazing requirements applicable to glazed wood window units.
   2. Glass: Clear, insulating-glass units **OR** Clear, insulating-glass units, with low-E coating pyrolytic on second surface or sputtered on second or third surface, **OR** Clear, insulating-glass units,

argon gas filled, with low-E coating pyrolytic on second surface or sputtered on second or third surface, **as directed**, complying with Division 08 Section "Glazing".

3. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal **OR** Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal and complies with requirements for windborne-debris resistance **OR** Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system as indicated in Division 08 Section "Glazing", **as directed**.
4. Dual-Glazing System for Venetian Blinds: Manufacturer's standard dual-glazing system with 2 lites of clear float glass, complying with ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality q3, glazed independently into the sash and separated by a minimum dead-air space of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
5. Triple-Glazing System for Venetian Blinds: Manufacturer's standard insulated glass of type specified, combined with an auxiliary lite of clear float glass, complying with ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality q3, retained in a separate glazing channel or frame and separated from insulated-glass unit by a minimum dead-air space of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

D. Hardware
1. General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricated from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with wood and aluminum cladding, **as directed**; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock wood windows, and sized to accommodate sash or ventilator weight and dimensions. Do not use aluminum in frictional contact with other metals. Where exposed, provide solid bronze **OR** extruded, cast, or wrought aluminum **OR** die-cast zinc with special coating finish **OR** nonmagnetic stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Counterbalancing Mechanism: Comply with AAMA 902.
    a. Sash-Balance Type: Concealed, tape-spring **OR** spiral-tube **OR** spring-loaded, block-and-tackle, **as directed**, type, of size and capacity to hold sash stationary at any open position.
3. Sill Cap/Track: Extruded-aluminum track with natural anodized finish **OR** Rigid PVC or other weather-resistant plastic track with manufacturer's standard integral color, **as directed**, of thickness, dimensions, and profile indicated; designed to comply with performance requirements indicated and to drain to the exterior.
4. Locks and Latches: Designed to allow unobstructed movement of the sash across adjacent sash in direction indicated and operated from the inside only. Provide custodial locks, **as directed**.
5. Roller Assemblies: Low-friction design.
6. Push-Bar Operators: Provide telescoping-type, push-bar operator designed to open and close ventilators with fixed screens.
7. Gear-Type Rotary Operators: Comply with AAMA 901 when tested according to ASTM E 405, Method A.
    a. Operation Function: All ventilators move simultaneously and securely close at both jambs without using additional manually controlled locking devices.
8. Four- or Six-Bar Friction Hinges: Comply with AAMA 904.
    a. Locking mechanism and handles for manual operation.
    b. Friction Shoes: Provide friction shoes of nylon or other nonabrasive, nonstaining, noncorrosive, durable material.
9. Limit Devices: Provide concealed friction adjustor, adjustable stay bar **OR** concealed support arms with adjustable, limited, hold-open, **as directed**, limit devices designed to restrict sash or ventilator opening.
    a. Safety Devices: Limit clear opening to 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, for ventilation; with custodial key release.
10. Pole Operators: Tubular-shaped anodized aluminum; with rubber-capped lower end and standard push-pull hook at top to match hardware design; of sufficient length to operate window without reaching more than 60 inches (1500 mm) above floor; 1 pole operator and pole hanger per room that has operable windows more than 72 inches (1800 mm) above floor.

E. Insect Screens
1. General: Design windows and hardware to accommodate screens in a tight-fitting, removable arrangement, with a minimum of exposed fasteners and latches. Fabricate insect screens to fully

integrate with window frame. Locate screens on inside **OR** outside, **as directed**, of window and provide for each operable exterior sash or ventilator.

a. Aluminum Tubular Frame Screens: Comply with SMA 1004, "Specifications for Aluminum Tubular Frame Screens for Windows," Residential R-20 **OR** Architectural C-24 **OR** Monumental M-32, **as directed**, class.

2. Aluminum Insect Screen Frames: Manufacturer's standard aluminum alloy complying with SMA 1004. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped joints or corner extrusions, concealed fasteners, adjustable rollers, **as directed**, and removable PVC spline/anchor concealing edge of frame.
   a. Aluminum Tubular Framing Sections and Cross Braces: Roll formed from aluminum sheet with minimum wall thickness as required for class indicated.
   b. Finish:
      1) Anodized aluminum **OR** Baked-on organic coating, **as directed**, in manufacturer's standard color **OR** in color selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
         OR
         Manufacturer's standard.
3. Glass-Fiber Mesh Fabric: 18-by-14 (1.1-by-1.4-mm) or 18-by-16 (1.0-by-1.1-mm) **OR** 20-by-20 (0.85-by-0.85-mm) or 20-by-30 (0.85-by-0.42-mm), **as directed**, mesh of PVC-coated, glass-fiber threads; woven and fused to form a fabric mesh resistant to corrosion, shrinkage, stretch, impact damage, and weather deterioration; in the following color. Comply with ASTM D 3656.
   a. Mesh Color: Charcoal gray **OR** Silver gray **OR** Aquamarine, **as directed**.
4. Aluminum Wire Fabric: 18-by-16 (1.1-by-1.3-mm) mesh of 0.011-inch- (0.28-mm-) diameter, coated aluminum wire.
   a. Wire-Fabric Finish: Natural bright **OR** Charcoal gray **OR** Black, **as directed**.
5. Wickets: Provide sliding **OR** hinged, **as directed**, wickets, framed and trimmed for a tight fit and for durability during handling.

F. Accessories
1. Dividers (False Muntins): Provide dividers in designs indicated for each sash lite, one per sash, removable from the exposed surface of interior lite of the sash **OR** two per sash, removable from the exposed surfaces of interior and exterior lites of the sash, **as directed**, and one permanently located between glazing lites in the airspace, **as directed**.
   a. Material: Extruded, rigid PVC **OR** Prefinished wood, **as directed**.
   b. Design: Rectangular **OR** Diamond, **as directed**.
   c. Color: White **OR** Bronze, **as directed**.
2. Storm Panels: Provide removable auxiliary glazing panels of clear float glass for each fixed and operating sash of window units. Glass shall comply with ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality q3. Provide glass of thickness required to comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing". Frame, preglaze, and attach storm windows to the sash according to manufacturer's published standards. Omit storm panels on sash glazed with insulating glass, **as directed**.
3. Integral Louver Blinds: Provide remotely operated horizontal louver blinds in the space between two panes of glass. Construct blinds of aluminum slats, approximately 1 inch (25 mm) wide, with polyester fiber cords, equipped for tilting, raising, and lowering by standard operating hardware located on inside face of sash.

G. Fabrication
1. Fabricate wood windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
2. Fabricate wood windows that are reglazable without dismantling sash or ventilator framing.
3. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash and ventilator, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Double-Hung Windows: Provide weather stripping only at horizontal rails of operable sash.
4. Factory machine windows for openings and for hardware that is not surface applied.
5. Mullions: Provide mullions and cover plates as shown, matching window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances

and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections, as indicated. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design loads of window units.

6. Factory-Glazed Fabrication: Except for light sizes in excess of 100 united inches (2500 mm width plus length), glaze wood windows in the factory where practical and possible for applications indicated. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS.
7. Glazing Stops: Provide nailed or snap-on glazing stops coordinated with Division 08 Section "Glazing" and glazing system indicated. Provide glazing stops to match sash and ventilator frames.
8. Bow **OR** Bay, **as directed**, Windows: Provide wood windows in configuration indicated. Provide window frames, fixed and operating sash, operating hardware, and other trim and components necessary for a complete, secure, and weathertight installation, including the following:
   a. Angled mullion posts with interior and exterior trim.
   b. Angled interior and exterior extension and trim.
   c. Clear pine head and seat boards.
   d. Top and bottom plywood platforms.
   e. Exterior head and sill casings and trim.
   f. Support brackets.
9. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Allow for scribing, trimming, and fitting at Project site.

H. Wood Finishes
1. Factory-Primed Windows: Provide manufacturer's standard factory-prime coat complying with WDMA T.M. 11 on exposed exterior **OR** interior **OR** exterior and interior, **as directed**, wood surfaces.
2. Factory-Finished Windows: Provide manufacturer's standard factory finish complying with WDMA T.M. 12. Apply finish to exposed exterior and interior wood surfaces.
   a. Color: White **OR** Brown **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Comply with Drawings, Shop Drawings, and manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components.
2. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction.
3. Set sill members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, for weathertight construction.
4. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

B. Adjusting, Cleaning, And Protection
1. Adjust operating sashes and ventilators, screens, hardware, and accessories for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
2. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
3. Clean factory-glazed glass immediately after installing windows. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for final cleaning and maintenance. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
4. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

5. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. In addition, monitor window surfaces adjacent to and below exterior concrete and masonry surfaces during construction for presence of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, stains, or other contaminants. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 08 01 52 61

Task	Specification	Specification Description
08 01 81 10	07 42 13 19	Glazing

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 05 13 00 - WOOD DOORS

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood doors. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 GENERAL

A. Definitions
1. Supply-and-Delivery-Only Contract: Includes supply and delivery to site FOB destination. Freight prepaid. Unless otherwise specified or scheduled, unloading and handling at site is by the Owner.
2. Supply-and-Install Contract: Includes supply, delivery to site FOB destination, freight prepaid, unloading and handling at site, and installation.

B. System Description
1. Door Assemblies: Include doors, frames, and hardware.
a. Provide with fire rating as indicated or specified.
2. Security Entry Door System (Assembly) Performance Requirements:
a. Forced Entry: ASTM F 476, Grade 40.

C. Submittals
1. Shop Drawings:
a. Indicate location, size, elevation, details of construction, marks used to identify doors, location and extent of hardware blocking, fire rating, factory preparation requirements for each door type. Drawings shall include catalog cuts or descriptive data for weatherstripping and thresholds to be used.
2. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
a. Test Reports: Results of testing by accredited independent laboratory demonstrating compliance of door systems with specified performance requirements.
1) Indicate that tests were performed in accordance with standard referenced.
b. Certificates: Manufacturer's written certification that door systems meet or exceed specified requirements.
c. Manufacturer’s installation instructions.
3. Closeout Submittals:
a. Operation and maintenance data.
b. Special warranty.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with following:
a. Fire-Rated Label: Determined using ASTM E 152, and bear label of UL or other recognized fire-rating program acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction,
1) If any door or frame scheduled to be fire-rated cannot qualify for appropriate labeling because of Its design, hardware, or any other reason, advise the Owner prior to submission of bids.
b. Accessibility: (Required for accessible units only, including main building entrances.)
1) Architectural Barriers Act of 1968 as amended (42 USC 4152-4157) and HUD implementing regulations (24 CFR Part 40).
a) Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS).

2) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 as amended (29 USC 794) and HUD implementing regulations (24 CFR Part 8).
3) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines (24 CFR Chapter 1).
4) Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (28 CFR Part 35).

2. Mock-ups: Install one mock-up of each type of door system, including doors, frames, hardware, thresholds, and accessories.
   a. Location: As directed.
   b. Approved Mock-up: Standard for rest of work, and may remain part of completed project.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Packing, Shipping, Handling, and Unloading: Pack materials at manufacturing plant to prevent damage during shipping.
   a. Delivery: Do not deliver doors to building until it is entirely enclosed, drywall and concrete work is completed, and humidity in building has reached average relative humidity of locality.
   b. Storage: Stack doors flat and off floor in manner to prevent warping or twisting, and to provide ventilation. Do not drag doors across one another.
   c. Protection: Protect doors during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration, and from extremes in temperature and humidity. Comply with “On-site Care" recommendations of NWWDA Care and Finishing of Wood Doors, and with manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Acceptance at Site: Inspect door systems upon delivery. Replace damaged or defective materials before installation.

F. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Field measure openings for door systems before start of fabrication.

G. Scheduling And Sequencing
1. Scheduling and Completion: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty:
   a. Swinging Doors and Standard Closet Doors Warranty: Provide one-year written warranty covering materials and installation for wood doors.
      1) Include coverage of hardware.
      2) Cover warping (bow, cup, or twist), photographing of construction below face veneers, tolerance limitations of NWWDA I.S. 1-A.
      3) Cover delamination.
      4) Glazing not included.
      5) Defects resulting from vandalism not included.
   b. Heavy-Duty Closet Doors Warranty: Provide manufacturer's five-year written warranty covering materials and installation for bifold closet doors.
   c. For Supply-and-Delivery-Only Contract:
      1) Contractor: Agrees to supply and deliver to the Owner, free of charge, any required replacement parts that can be readily installed by the Owner without special tools.
      2) Contractor: Agrees to supply and deliver to the Owner, free of charge, complete replacement door, when defective part or parts cannot be installed without use of special tools.
   d. For Supply-and-Install Contract: Contractor: Agrees to supply and install. free of charge, any required replacement parts or complete replacement door.

1.3 PRODUCTS

A. Door Frames

1. Wood Frames: Kiln dried Ponderosa Pine, toxic-treated, and primed.
   a. Applied stops are permitted, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Steel Frames:
   a. Steel: ASTM A 366 cold rolled steel.
   b. Steel Frames and/or Adapter Frames: Minimum of 18 gage (1.07 mm) galvanized bonderized steel, pre-drilled and reinforced for hinges as required.
      1) Shape of Frame: Generally L-shaped.
   c. Heavy-Duty Door Frames: 16 gage (1.35 mm) minimum thickness.
      1) When required, provide B-Label, 1-1 /2 hour fire rating.
   d. Security Door Frames: Comply with SDI 100, minimum of 14 gage (1.70 mm) galvanized bonderized steel, pre-drilled and reinforced for hinges as required.
      1) When required, provide B-Label, 1-1 /2 hour fire rating.
      2) Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
   e. Preparation for Hardware: Machine and reinforce frames for attachment of hardware, including mortising, drilling, and tapping for hinges and mortised hardware.
   f. Frame Anchors: Provide jamb anchors as suitable for wall conditions and floor anchors, minimum 18 gage.
      1) Provide welded type frames with temporary spreader bars.

B. Interior Wood Swinging Doors
1. Standard Products: Doors shall be of type, size, and design indicated, and shall be standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in manufacture of wood doors.
   a. Marking: Each door shall bear stamp, brand. or other identifying mark indicating quality and construction of door. Identifying mark or separate certification shall include identification of standard on which construction of door is based, and identity of manufacturing plant.
2. Interior Wood Doors: NWWDA I.S. 1-A.
   a. Thickness: 44.4 mm (1-3/4 inch) unless otherwise indicated or scheduled.
   b. Adhesives: NWWDA I.S. 1-A, Type II.
   c. Prefitting: Provide doors prefitted or unfitted at option of Contractor.
   d. Faces. stiles. and rails bonded to cores.
3. Core Construction:
   a. Solid Core Door NWWDA Construction Type: One of following (as specified):
      1) PC-5 or PC-7 (5- or 7-ply) with particleboard core, bonded.
         a) Stiles: Full core thickness and minimum 34 mm (1-3/8 inch) face width.
      2) SLC-5 or SLC-7 (5- or 7-ply) provide with glued wood-block core, bonded.
         a) Stiles: Full core thickness and minimum 19 mm (3/4 inch) face width.
      3) Stiles and Rails: Top and bottom rails for particleboard and wood-block core doors shall have minimum 29 mm (1-1/8 inch) face width by full core thickness.
   b. Hollow-Core Doors: NWWDA IHC (Institutional Hollow Core) or SHC (Standard Hollow Core), as specified.
      1) Provide with heavy-duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware.
      2) Hinge Stile: Minimum 25 mm (1 inch) minimum thick.
   c. Stile Edge Bands: Mill option specie.
      1) No visible finger-joints acceptable in stile edge bands.
      2) When used, locate finger-joints under hardware.
   d. Fire-Rated Door NWWDA Construction Type: As required for fire rating indicated or scheduled.
      1) Mineral Core Doors: Provide with heavy duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks, and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware including closers and exit devices.
         a) Reinforcement Blocking: In compliance with manufacturer's labeling requirements.
      2) Provide factory prefitting and premachining as required for fire-rated labels.

3) Means of Egress Fire Doors: Provide doors with maximum 232 degrees C (450 degree F) temperature rise rating in 30 minutes of fire exposure.

e. Wood Stiles, Rails, Lock Blocks, and Other Reinforcement: Wood:
1) Rail Blocks: Not less than 125 mm (5 inches) wide by full core thickness.
2) Split Resistance: NWWDA TM-5, average of ten test samples shall be not less than 225 load kilograms (500 load pounds).
3) Direct Screw Withdrawal: NWWDA TM-10, average of ten test samples shall be not less than 315 load kilograms (700 load pounds) when tested for direct screw withdrawal using steel, fully threaded wood screw.
4) Cycle/Swing: NWWDA TM-7. 200,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure.

f. Under Cutting: Preserve full bottom rail.

4. Face Panels:
a. Painted Finish: NWWDA I.S. 1-A, minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
b. Plastic Laminate Finish: NEMA LD 3, high pressure decorative laminate, Grade GP50, 1.3 mm (0.050 inch) thick.
1) Faces: Adhesively apply over minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
2) Edges: Adhesively apply plastic laminate matching face panels.
3) Color and Pattern: As selected.

C. Hardware
1. General: Comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.1 and applicable accessibility regulatory requirements and perform functions for which It was intended.
2. Butts and Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1, as scheduled.
a. Install non-rising pins (NRP) on out-swing residential unit entry doors.
b. Self Closing: ANSI/BHMA A156.17.
c. Security Door: Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
3. Fire-Rated Door Hardware: Comply with NFPA 80.
a. Exit Doors: Comply with NFPA 101 (Life Safety Code) for exit doors, as well as other requirements specified.
b. Labeling and Listing: Listed in UL Building Materials Directory.
1) In Lieu of UL Labeling and Listing: Test reports from nationally recognized testing agency showing that hardware has been tested in accordance with UL test methods and conforms to NFPA requirements.
c. Install minimum latch throw as specified on label of individual door.
d. Provide hardware listed by UL, except where heavier materials, larger sizes, or higher grades are specified.
e. Closers: ANSI/BHMA A156.4.
4. Lock Sets and Passage Sets: As scheduled. Comply with following standards:
a. Bored and Preassembled Locks and Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Grade 2.
b. Dead Bolt: ANSI/BHMA A156.5.
c. Mortise Locks and Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Grade 1 or Security Grade, single or multiple throw.
d. Interconnected Deadlock and Passage Set: ANSI/BHMA A156.12, Grade 2.
e. Cylindrical Lock: Grade 2 cylindrical deadbolt lock/passage set combination.
f. Security Door Locksets: ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Security Grade or UL 437 Key locks.
1) Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
g. Keys: Provide two keys for each lock provided. Provide master keying and keying alike on any locks as directed at no additional charge.
h. Locks: Provide with interchangeable cores.
5. Door Viewers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16.

D. Factory Fitting And Machining
1. Doors: Prefit, bevel, mortise, and machine doors at factory in accordance with NWWDA I.S. 1-A.

a. Comply with hardware schedules and door frame Shop Drawings with hardware templates to ensure proper fit of doors and hardware.
   1) Take accurate field measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before proceeding with machining in factory.
b. Machine doors for hardware requiring cutting of doors.
c. Fit doors to frame bevel lock edge of doors (1/8 inch) for each (2 inches) of door thickness.
d. Finish all surfaces, including both faces, top and bottom and edges of doors smooth to touch.

2. Edge Sealing: Seal wood end grain exposed at edges and cutouts of doors against moisture penetration prior to shipment.
   a. Sealer: Two coats of spar varnish or other sealer recommended by door manufacturer.
3. Tolerances: Comply with NWWDA tolerance requirements for prefitting.

E. Door Assemblies
1. Prehung Swinging Doors: Prehung door with matching wood frame complete with hinges, lockset or passage set, and other hardware, as indicated or specified.
2. Fire-Rated Doors and Frames: NFPA 80 and bear identifying label of UL or nationally recognized testing agency qualified to perform certification programs indicating that units conform to requirements for class indicated.
   a. Labels: Metal with raised or incised markings.
   b. Hardware: As required to maintain fire rating and receive label.
3. Security Entry Frames and Doors:
   a. Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
   b. Fire Rating: When required, provide B-Label, 1-1/2 hour fire rating.

F. Closet Doors
1. Heavy-Duty Bifold Closet Doors: Particleboard bifold doors, prime painted, factory premachined, complete with manufacturer's standard hardware to provide complete operating bifold doors.
   a. Panels: 721 kg/ cubic m (45 PCF) industrial-grade particle board, 19.1 mm (3/4 inch) thick.
      1) Long Edges: Plasticized.
      2) Room Side: Filled and prime painted.
      3) Closet Side: Prime painted.
      4) Exposed Surfaces Finish: Painted or plastic laminate as indicated or scheduled.
   b. Track: No. 6063-T6 extruded aluminum, 20.5 mm (13/16 inch) by 32 mm (1-1/4 inch).
      1) Track Guides: Delrin.
   c. Hardware: Factory-applied to doors and track.
      1) Pivot and Mounting Hardware: 14 gage cold-rolled steel, carbonized for strength and durability.
      2) Top Pivot and Guide Pins: 75 mm (3 inch) removable compensating pins.
      3) Toggle Pivot: Ensure doors remain in place.
      4) Spring Enclosure: Provide positive closing with little effort and keep doors closed.
      5) Bottom Pivot: Carry weight of door, floor-mounted, and designed for vertical and horizontal adjustment.
      6) Panel Brackets: Wrap-around feature to eliminate unnecessary stress on screws.
      7) Panels: Hinged together with continuous piano hinges inserted into routed grooves and secured with tempered pins.
      8) Pulls: As selected from manufacturer's standards.
   d. Doors: Comply with accessibility requirements (as specified).
2. Standard Bifold Closet Doors: Provide complete manufacturer’s standard hardware, including tracks, hinges, guides, and pulls to provide complete operating bifold doors.
   a. Hollow-Core Doors: NWWDA I.S. 1-A and NWWDA IHC (Institutional Hollow Core).
      1) Provide with heavy-duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware.
   b. Doors: 34.9 mm (1-3/8 inch) thick unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Surface-Mounted Pulls: As selected from manufacturer standards.

3. Standard Sliding Closet Doors: Provide complete manufacturer's standard hardware, including tracks, guides, and pulls to provide complete operating sliding doors.
   a. Hollow-Core Doors: NWWDA I.S. 1-A and NWWDA IHC (Institutional Hollow Core).
      1) Provide with heavy-duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware.
   b. Doors: 34.9 mm (1-3/8 inch) thick unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Recessed Pulls: As selected from manufacturer standards.
4. Standard Closet Door Face Panels:
   a. Painted Finish: NWWDA I.S. 1-A, minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
   b. Plastic Laminate Finish: NEMA LD 3, high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade GP50, 1.3 mm (0.050 inch) thick.
      1) Faces: Adhesively apply over minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
      2) Edges: Adhesively apply plastic laminate matching face panels.
      3) Color and Pattem: As selected.

G. Finishes
1. Painted Wood Finish: One of following as indicated or scheduled:
   a. Factory Finish: NWWDA System No. 10-Conversion Varnish.
      1) Color: As selected.
   b. Field Finish: Factory primed for field paint under Division 9 Section "Painting."
2. Painted Steel Finish: Clean and free from serious surface blemishes.
   a. Exposed Surfaces: ASTM A 591 electrolytic zinc-coated steel, Class A.
   b. Primer: ANSI A224.1, factory-applied primer.
   c. Finish Coat: One of following as specified or scheduled:
      1) Factory Finish: Electrostatically factory applied baked-on enamel finish.
         a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's list of colors.
      2) Field Finish: Factory-primed for field paint under Division 9 Section "Painting."

1.4 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Site Verification of Conditions:
   a. Existing Conditions: Examine openings before beginning installation.
   b. Field Measurements: Verify field measurements are as indicated on Shop Drawings.
   c. Before installation of doors, verify that frames are proper size, location, type, and swing characteristics for door, and are installed with plumb jambs and level heads as required for proper installation of doors.
   d. Reject doors with defects.
   e. Do not proceed with installation until conditions are satisfactory.

B. Preparation
1. Protection: Protect adjacent elements from damage and disfiguration in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
   a. Contractor: Responsible for damage to buildings and any other facilities or property caused by construction operations.
   b. Repair or replace damaged elements in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
2. Existing Doors: Remove existing doors and debris from site in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
3. Preparation: Prepare existing openings in accordance with ASTM E 737, manufacturer's recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.
4. Wood Door Preparation:
   a. Conditioning: Condition wood doors to average humidity in installation area prior to hanging.

b. Prefitting: Prefit wood doors to frames and machine for hardware to whatever extent not previously worked at factory as required for proper fit and uniform clearance at each edge.
c. Sealing: Before installation of hardware on wood doors, brush apply sealer to all job site cut or planed surfaces.

C. Door Frame Installation
1. Door Frames: Install in accordance with ASTM E 737, manufacturer's recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.
a. Set frames accurately in accordance with details, straight and free of twist with head level, jambs plumb, and without distortion. Rigidly anchor to walls and partitions and securely brace until surrounding work is completed.
2. Wood Frames: Set plumb and square, and rigidly anchor In place using finish type nails. Provide double wedge blocking near top, bottom, and midpoint of each jamb.
3. Steel Frames: Comply with SDI 105:
a. Fire-Rated Openings: Place frames and provide clearances in accordance with NFPA 80 and GA 253.
b. Field Welds: Make welds full length of joints. Remove splatter, and grind exposed welds to match adjacent surfaces. Provide the Owner with ample notice to review welds before finish operations begin.
c. Wherever possible, leave spreader bars in place until frames are securely anchored.

D. Wood Door Installation
1. General: Install doors in accordance with NWWDA I.S. 1-A, ASTM E 737, manufacturer's recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.
a. Install doors and frames securely, straight, plumb, and level without distortion.
2. Wood Doors: Install wood doors in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.
a. Prefit Doors: Fit to frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
b. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted with fire-rated doors.
c. Hanging: After sizing doors, fit and machine for hardware as scheduled.
1) Hang doors to be free of binding, with hardware functioning properly.
d. Clearances for Nonfire-Rated Doors:
1) Jamb: 3 mm (1/8 inch), 3 mm (1/8 inch) bevel in 50 mm (2 inches).
2) Head: 3 mm (1/8 inch).
3) Bottom at Decorative Floor Finish or Covering: 13 mm (1/2 inch).
4) Bottom at Threshold: 6 mm (1/4 inch) between bottom of door and top of threshold.
e. Clearances for Fire Rated Doors: Comply with NFPA 80 and local code.
1) Bevel fire-rated doors 3 mm in 50 mm (1/8 inch in 2 inches) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
f. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining as specified above.
3. Fire-Rated Doors:
a. Installation, Hardware, and Operational Characteristics: Comply with NFPA 80, NFPA 101, and manufacturer's recommendations.
b. Factory-Applied Labels: Remain intact where installed. Do not trim labeled hinge stile edge and top edge of door.
1) Do not paint over labels.
c. Clearances for Fire-Rated Doors: Comply with NFPA 80 and local code.
1) Lockstile Edge and Bottom Edge: May be trimmed only to extent recommended by door manufacturer.
2) Bevel fire-rated doors 3 mm in 50 mm (1/8 inch in 2 inches) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
d. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining as specified above.

E. Hardware Installation

1. General: Install hardware in accordance with SDI 109, DHI recommended locations, and manufacturers recommendations.
2. Fastening: Furnish items of hardware with attachment screws, bolts. nuts. etc., as required to attach hardware to type of material involved and with finish to match adjacent hardware.
    a. Make attachments to metal by template machine screws.
    b. Through-bolt hardware such as door closers, forearm shoes of closers, holding devices, and panic hardware mounted on doors or panels.
    c. Attach hardware to masonry or concrete with expansion bolts or similar drilled anchors to develop full strength of attached device. Set expansion anchors in solid masonry, not mortar joints.
3. Accessories:
    a. Smoke Seals and Sound-stripping: Run full height of both jambs and full width of head.
    b. Thresholds: Run full width of opening. Install thresholds with continuous threshold anchors cast into slab and set in sealant.

F. Door Assemblies Installation
1. Prehung Wood Doors in Frames with Hardware: Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Bifold Closet Doors with Hardware: Install in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.
3. Sliding Closet Doors with Hardware: Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Adjusting: At completion of job, check, adjust. and lubricate hardware as required, and leave doors and hardware in proper operating condition.
    a. Operation: Rehang or replace doors which do not swing or operate freely.
2. Cleaning: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.
    a. Clean doors after installation to remove foreign matter and surface blemishes.
    b. Scratched or Abraded Painted Surfaces: Touch-up with primer and enamel paint compatible with factory finish.

H. Protection
1. Installed Work: Protect doors from damage after installation. as recommended by door manufacturer. to ensure that doors will be without damage or deterioration at project completion.
2. Replacement: Refinish or replace doors damaged during installation.
    a. Causes for Rejection of Wood Doors: Include warp, chips, scratches, or gouges of veneer. and finish defects.

END OF SECTION 08 05 13 00

SECTION 08 05 13 00a - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for flush wood doors. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Solid-core doors and transom panels with wood-veneer, medium-density-overlay, hardboard or MDF, and plastic-laminate faces.
b. Hollow-core doors with wood-veneer, hardboard or MDF, and plastic-laminate faces.
c. Shop priming and Factory finishing flush wood doors.
d. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of door indicated. Include factory-finishing specifications.
2. LEED Submittals:
a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that flush wood doors comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For adhesives and composite wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
3. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
a. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
b. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
c. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
d. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
e. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
4. Samples: For plastic-laminate door faces and factory-finished doors.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
2. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated" **OR** WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors" **OR** WI's "Manual of Millwork", **as directed**.
3. Forest Certification: Provide doors made with cores **OR** veneers **OR** not less than 70 percent of wood products **OR** all wood products, **as directed**, obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
4. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure **OR** as close to neutral pressure as possible, **as directed**, according to NFPA 252 **OR** IBC Standard 716.5 **OR** UL 10B **OR** UL 10C, **as directed**.
a. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.

b. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated **OR** At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, **as directed**, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons **OR** cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting, **as directed**.
3. Mark each door on bottom **OR** top and bottom, **as directed**, rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

F. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
a. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Exterior Doors: Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
b. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.
c. Warranty Period for Hollow-Core Interior Doors: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, year(s) from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Door Construction, General
1. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide doors made with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.
2. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:
a. Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated.
b. Extra Heavy Duty: Classrooms, public toilets, janitor's closets, assembly spaces, exits, patient rooms, and where indicated.
c. Standard Duty: Closets (not including janitor's closets), private toilets, and where indicated.
3. Particleboard-Core Doors:
a. Particleboard:
1) ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1 **OR** Grade LD-2, **as directed**, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin, **as directed**.
OR
Straw-based particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2 or M-2, except for density.
b. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
c. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave **OR** structural-composite-lumber, **as directed**, cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.
4. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:
a. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
1) Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf (3100 N).
2) Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf (1780 N).
5. Fire-Protection-Rated Doors: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
a. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

b. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals, **as directed**. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
OR
Pairs: Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals, **as directed**.
1) Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel same color as doors, **as directed**.
OR
Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).

6. Mineral-Core Doors:
   a. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
   b. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
   c. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
7. Hollow-Core Doors:
   a. Construction: Institutional **OR** Standard, **as directed**, hollow core.

B. Veneered-Faced Doors For Transparent Finish
1. Exterior Solid-Core Doors:
   a. Grade: Premium, with Grade AA faces **OR** Premium, with Grade A faces **OR** Custom (Grade A faces) **OR** Economy (Grade B faces), **as directed**.
   b. Species: Anigre **OR** Select white ash **OR** Figured select white ash **OR** Select white birch **OR** Cherry **OR** Select red gum **OR** Figured select red gum **OR** Select white maple **OR** Red oak **OR** Persimmon **OR** Sapele **OR** Sycamore **OR** Walnut **OR** White oak **OR** Ucuuba (Virola Duckei) **OR** Cupiuba (Goupia glabra), **as directed**.
   c. Cut: Rotary cut **OR** Plain sliced (flat sliced) **OR** Quarter sliced **OR** Rift cut, **as directed**.
   d. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book **OR** Slip **OR** Pleasing, **as directed**, match.
   e. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance **OR** Balance **OR** Running, **as directed**, match.
   f. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions, **as directed**.
   g. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species **OR** Same species as faces **OR** Applied wood-veneer edges of same species as faces and covering edges of faces **OR** Applied wood edges of same species as faces and covering edges of crossbands, **as directed**.
   h. Core: Particleboard **OR** Glued wood stave **OR** Structural composite lumber**, as directed**.
   i. Construction: Five **OR** Five or seven, **as directed**, plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press, **as directed**.
   j. Adhesives: Type I per WDMA TM-6.
2. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
   a. Grade: Premium, with Grade AA faces **OR** Premium, with Grade A faces **OR** Custom (Grade A faces) **OR** Economy (Grade B faces), **as directed**.
   b. Species: Anigre **OR** Select white ash **OR** Figured select white ash **OR** Select white birch **OR** Cherry **OR** Select red gum **OR** Figured select red gum **OR** Select white maple **OR** Red oak **OR** Persimmon **OR** Sapele **OR** Sycamore **OR** Walnut **OR** White oak **OR** Ucuuba (Virola Duckei) **OR** Cupiuba (Goupia glabra), **as directed**.
   c. Cut: Rotary cut **OR** Plain sliced (flat sliced) **OR** Quarter sliced **OR** Rift cut, **as directed**.
   d. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book **OR** Slip **OR** Pleasing, **as directed**, match.
   e. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance **OR** Balance **OR** Running, **as directed**, match.

f. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions, **as directed**.
g. Room Match:
1) Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet (3 m) **OR** 20 feet (6 m), **as directed**, or more.
OR
Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
h. Transom Match: Continuous match **OR** End match **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
i. Blueprint Match: Where indicated, provide doors with faces produced from same flitches as adjacent wood paneling and arranged to provide blueprint match with wood paneling. Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Interior Architectural Woodwork" OR "Wood Paneling", **as directed**.
j. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species **OR** Same species as faces **OR** Applied wood-veneer edges of same species as faces and covering edges of faces **OR** Applied wood edges of same species as faces and covering edges of crossbands, **as directed**.
k. Core: Particleboard **OR** Glued wood stave **OR** Nonglued wood stave **OR** Structural composite lumber**, as directed**.
l. Construction:
1) Five **OR** Five or seven, **as directed**, plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press, **as directed**.
OR
Seven plies, either bonded or nonbonded construction.

3. Interior Hollow-Core Doors:
a. Grade: Premium, with Grade AA faces **OR** Premium, with Grade A faces **OR** Custom (Grade A faces) **OR** Economy (Grade B faces), **as directed**.
b. Species: Anigre **OR** Select white ash **OR** Figured select white ash **OR** Select white birch **OR** Cherry **OR** Select red gum **OR** Figured select red gum **OR** Select white maple **OR** Red oak **OR** Persimmon **OR** Sapele **OR** Sycamore **OR** Walnut **OR** White oak **OR** Ucuuba (Virola Duckei) **OR** Cupiuba (Goupia glabra), **as directed**.
c. Cut: Rotary cut **OR** Plain sliced (flat sliced) **OR** Quarter sliced **OR** Rift cut, **as directed**.
d. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book **OR** Slip **OR** Pleasing, **as directed**, match.
e. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance **OR** Balance **OR** Running, **as directed**, match.
f. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions, **as directed**.
g. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species **OR** Same species as faces **OR** Applied wood-veneer edges of same species as faces and covering edges of faces **OR** Applied wood edges of same species as faces and covering edges of crossbands, **as directed**.
h. Construction: Seven plies.

C. Doors For Opaque Finish
1. Exterior Solid-Core Doors:
a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
b. Faces: Medium-density overlay **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option, **as directed**.
1) Apply medium-density overlay to standard-thickness, closed-grain, hardwood face veneers **OR** directly to high-density hardboard crossbands, **as directed**.
c. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
d. Core: Particleboard **OR** Glued wood stave **OR** Structural composite lumber, **as directed**.

e. Construction: Five **OR** Five or seven, **as directed**, plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press, **as directed**.
f. Adhesives: Type I per WDMA TM-6.

2. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
b. Faces: Medium-density overlay **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option **OR** Hardboard or MDF, **as directed**.
1) Apply medium-density overlay to standard-thickness, closed-grain, hardwood face veneers **OR** directly to high-density hardboard crossbands, **as directed**.
2) Hardboard Faces: AHA A135.4, Class 1 (tempered) or Class 2 (standard).
3) MDF Faces: ANSI A208.2, Grade 150 or 160.
c. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
d. Core: Particleboard **OR** Glued wood stave **OR** Nonglued wood stave **OR** Structural composite lumber, **as directed**.
e. Construction:
1) Three **OR** Five **OR** Five or seven, **as directed**, plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press, **as directed**.
OR
Three **OR** Seven, **as directed**, plies, either bonded or nonbonded construction.

3. Interior Hollow-Core Doors:
a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
b. Faces: Medium-density overlay **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option **OR** Hardboard or MDF, **as directed**.
1) Hardboard Faces: AHA A135.4, Class 1 (tempered) or Class 2 (standard).
2) MDF Faces: ANSI A208.2, Grade 150 or 160.
c. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
d. Construction: Three **OR** Seven, **as directed**, plies.

D. Plastic-Laminate-Faced Doors
1. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
b. Plastic-Laminate Faces: High-pressure decorative laminates complying with NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS **OR** Grade HSH, **as directed**.
c. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As indicated **OR** As selected from laminate manufacturer's full range of products, **as directed**.
d. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Hardwood edges for staining to match faces **OR** Hardwood edges for painting **OR** Plastic laminate that matches faces, applied before faces **OR** Impact-resistant polymer edging, applied after faces, **as directed**.
1) Polymer Edging Color: Beige **OR** Brown **OR** Same color as faces, **as directed**.
e. Core: Particleboard **OR** Glued wood stave **OR** Structural composite lumber, **as directed**.
f. Construction:
1) Three plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before faces are applied. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press, **as directed**.
OR
Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before faces and crossbands are applied. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press, **as directed**.

2. Interior Hollow-Core Doors:
a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
b. Plastic-Laminate Faces: High-pressure decorative laminates complying with NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS **OR** Grade HSH, **as directed**.
c. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As indicated **OR** As selected from laminate manufacturer's full range of products, **as directed**.

d. Exposed Vertical **OR** Vertical and Top, **as directed**, Edges: Hardwood edges for staining to match faces **OR** Hardwood edges for painting **OR** Plastic laminate that matches faces, applied before faces **OR** Impact-resistant polymer edging, applied after faces, **as directed**.
   1) Polymer Edging Color: Beige **OR** Brown **OR** Same color as faces, **as directed**.

e. Construction: Plastic-laminate faces glued directly to core.

E. Louvers And Light Frames

1. Wood Louvers: Door manufacturer's standard solid-wood louvers unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Wood Species: Same species as door faces **OR** Species compatible with door faces **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood, **as directed**.
2. Metal Louvers:
   a. Blade Type: Vision-proof, inverted V **OR** Vision-proof, inverted Y **OR** Darkroom-type, double inverted V, **as directed**.
   b. Metal and Finish:
      1) Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, factory primed for paint finish **OR** with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish, **as directed**.
         OR
         Extruded aluminum with Class II, clear anodic finish, AA-M12C22A31.
         OR
         Extruded aluminum with light bronze **OR** medium bronze **OR** dark bronze **OR** black, **as directed**, Class II, color anodic finish, AA-M12C22A32/A34.
3. Louvers for Fire-Rated Doors: Metal louvers with fusible link and closing device, listed and labeled for use in doors with fire-protection rating of 1-1/2 hours and less.
   a. Metal and Finish: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, factory primed for paint finish **OR** with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish, **as directed**.
4. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads as follows unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Wood Species: Same species as door faces **OR** Species compatible with door faces **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood, **as directed**.
   b. Profile: Flush rectangular beads **OR** Recessed tapered beads **OR** Recessed tapered beads with exposed banding **OR** Lipped tapered beads **OR** Manufacturer's standard shape, **as directed**.
   c. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.
5. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.
6. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; factory primed for paint finish **OR** with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish, **as directed**; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated.

F. Fabrication

1. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
2. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
   a. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
   b. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

3. Transom and Side Panels: Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors. Finish bottom edges of transoms and top edges of rabbeted doors same as door stiles.
   a. Fabricate door and transom panels with full-width, solid-lumber, rabbeted, **as directed**, meeting rails. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal door frames.
4. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors in factory.
   a. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
   b. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing".
   c. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.
5. Exterior Doors: Factory treat exterior doors with water repellent after fabrication has been completed but before shop priming **OR** factory finishing, **as directed**.
   a. Flash top of outswinging doors (with manufacturer's standard metal flashing).

G. Shop Priming
1. Doors for Opaque Finish: Shop prime doors with one coat of wood primer specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting", **as directed**. Seal all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises with primer.
2. Doors for Transparent Finish: Shop prime doors with stain (if required), other required pretreatments, and first coat of finish as specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting" OR "Staining And Transparent Finishing", **as directed**. Seal all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises with first coat of finish.

H. Factory Finishing
1. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
   a. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom **OR** top and bottom, **as directed**, edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
2. Finish doors at factory.
   OR
   Finish doors at factory that are indicated to receive transparent finish. Field finish doors indicated to receive opaque finish.
   OR
   Finish doors at factory where indicated in schedules or on Drawings as factory finished.
3. Transparent Finish:
   a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom, **as directed**.
   b. Finish:
      1) AWI conversion varnish **OR** catalyzed polyurethane, **as directed**, system.
         OR
         WDMA TR-4 conversion varnish **OR** TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane, **as directed**.
         OR
         WI System 4 clear conversion varnish **OR** 5 catalyzed polyurethane **OR** 8 UV-curable coating, **as directed**.
   c. Staining: Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** None required, **as directed**.
   d. Effect: Open-grain finish **OR** Filled finish **OR** Semifilled finish, produced by applying an additional finish coat to partially fill the wood pores, **as directed**.
   e. Sheen: Satin **OR** Semigloss, **as directed**.
4. Opaque Finish:
   a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom, **as directed**.
   b. Finish:
      1) AWI conversion varnish **OR** catalyzed polyurethane, **as directed**, system.
         OR
         WDMA OP-4 conversion varnish **OR** OP-6 catalyzed polyurethane, **as directed**.

OR

WI System 4 conversion varnish **OR** 5 catalyzed polyurethane **OR** 8 UV-curable coating, **as directed**.

c. Color: Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

d. Sheen: Satin **OR** Semigloss **OR** Gloss, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Hardware: For installation, see Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
2. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
   a. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
3. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
   a. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
      1) Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
   b. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
   c. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
4. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
5. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

B. Adjusting

1. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
2. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08 05 13 00a

SECTION 08 05 13 00b - SOUND CONTROL DOORS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for sound-control door assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Steel sound-control doors.
   b. Wood sound-control doors.
   c. Steel frames and sound-control seals.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include sound ratings, construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance rating, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood doors comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body, **as directed**.
   b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For adhesives and composite wood products, indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
3. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
   a. Elevations of each door design.
   b. Details of sound-control seals, door bottoms, and thresholds.
   c. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
   d. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
   e. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
   f. Details of each different wall opening condition.
   g. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
   h. Details of accessories.
   i. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
   j. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
4. Samples:
   a. Finishes: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than 3 by 5 inches (75 by 125 mm).
   b. Doors: Include section of vertical-edge, top, and bottom construction; automatic door bottom or gasket; core construction; glazing; and hinge and other applied hardware reinforcement.
   c. Frames: Include profile, corner joint, floor and wall anchors, and seals. Include separate section showing fixed sound panels if applicable.
5. Schedule: Provide a schedule of sound-control door assemblies prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with the Door Hardware Schedule.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer, and acoustical testing agency.
7. Product Certificates: For each type of sound-control door assembly, from manufacturer.
8. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of sound-control door assembly.
9. Field quality-control reports.
10. Maintenance Data: For sound-control door assemblies to include in maintenance manuals.

11. Warranty: Samples of special warranty.

D. Quality Assurance
   1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
   2. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
   3. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency accredited as an acoustical laboratory according to the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program of NIST.
   4. Source Limitations: Obtain sound-control door assemblies, including doors, frames, sound-control seals, hinges (when integral for sound control), thresholds, and other items essential for sound control, from single source from single manufacturer.
   5. Sound Rating: Provide sound-control door assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested as sound-retardant units by an acoustical testing agency, and have the following minimum rating:
      a. STC Rating: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As indicated in the Door Schedule, **as directed**, as determined by ASTM E 413 when tested in an operable condition according to ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 1408.
   6. Forest Certification: Provide doors made with cores **OR** veneers **OR** not less than 70 percent of wood products **OR** all wood products, **as directed**, obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
   7. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
      a. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
   8. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where indicated **OR** At corridors, smoke barriers, and smoke partitions, **as directed**, provide assemblies tested according to UL 1784.
      a. Air-Leakage Rate: Maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m/m x sq. m) at the tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
   9. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
   1. Deliver doors and frames palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
      a. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished wood doors.
   2. Shipping Spreaders: Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded or mechanically attached to jambs and mullions.
   3. Store doors and frames under cover at Project site. Place units in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- (100-mm-) high, wood blocking. Avoid using nonvented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber.
      a. If wrappers on doors become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide a minimum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

F. Project Conditions
   1. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wood sound-control wood doors until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
   2. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination

1. Coordinate installation of anchorages for sound-control door assemblies. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sound-control door assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
1) Failure to meet sound rating requirements.
2) Faulty operation of sound seals.
3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use or weathering.
4) Wood doors that are warped (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section, or show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 75-mm) span.
b. Warranty Period for Steel Doors: Five years from date of Final Completion.
c. Warranty Period for Wood Doors: Two years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Steel Sound-Control Doors
1. Description: Provide flush-design sound-control doors, 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick, of seamless construction; with manufacturer's standard sound-retardant core as required to provide STC **OR** STC and fire, **as directed**, rating indicated. Construct doors with smooth, flush surfaces without visible joints or seams on exposed faces or stile edges. Fabricate according to ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 865.
a. Exterior Doors: Fabricate from metallic-coated steel sheet 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) nominal thickness, or thicker as required to provide STC rating indicated.
b. Interior Doors: Fabricate from cold-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated, 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal thickness, or thicker as required to achieve STC rating indicated.
c. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Doors: Same material as face sheets.
d. Top and Bottom Channels: Closed with continuous channels of same material as face sheets, spot welded to face sheets not more than 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
e. Hardware Reinforcement: Same material as face sheets.
2. Materials:
a. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
b. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
c. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, with G60 (Z180) zinc (galvanized) or A40 (ZF120) zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.
d. Glazing: As required by sound-control door assembly manufacturer to comply with sound-control **OR** sound-control and fire-rated-door labeling, **as directed**, requirements.
3. Finishes:
a. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
1) Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
b. Factory-Applied Paint Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer and finish coats, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.3 for performance and acceptance criteria.

1) Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

B. Wood Sound-Control Doors
1. Description: Provide flush-design sound-control doors, 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick; with manufacturer's standard sound-retardant core as required to provide STC **OR** STC and fire, **as directed**, rating indicated. Fabricate according to WDMA 1.S.1-A.
2. Materials: Comply with Division 08 Section(s) "Flush Wood Doors" OR "Stile And Rail Wood Doors", **as directed**, for grade, faces, veneer matching, fabrication, finishing, and other requirements unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Glazing: As required by sound-control door assembly manufacturer to comply with sound-control **OR** sound-control and fire-rated-door labeling, **as directed**, requirements.
3. Finishes:
   a. Factory finish sound-control wood doors to match doors specified in Division 08 Section(s) "Flush Wood Doors" OR "Stile And Rail Wood Doors", **as directed**.

C. Sound-Control Panels
1. Provide sound-control panels of same materials, construction, sound rating, and finish as specified for adjoining sound-control steel **OR** wood, **as directed**, doors.

D. Sound-Control Frames
1. Description: Fabricate sound-control door frames with corners mitered, reinforced, and continuously welded full depth and width of frame. Fabricate according to ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 865.
   a. Weld frames according to NAAMM-HMMA 820.
   b. Exterior Frames: Fabricate from metallic-coated steel sheet 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness, or thicker as required to provide STC rating indicated.
   c. Interior Frames: Fabricate from cold-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated, 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal thickness, or thicker as required to provide STC rating indicated.
   d. Sound-Control Panel Stops: Formed integral with frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch (16 mm) high, unless otherwise indicated.
   e. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 865 of same material as face sheets.
   f. Head Reinforcement: Reinforce frames with metallic-coated steel channel or angle stiffener, 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal thickness, welded to head.
   g. Jamb Anchors:
      1) Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) nominal thickness metallic-coated steel with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide by 10 inches (250 mm) long; or wire anchors not less than 0.156 inch (4.0 mm) thick.
      2) Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal thickness uncoated steel unless otherwise indicated.
      3) Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter, metallic-coated steel bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
   h. Floor Anchors: Not less than 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal thickness metallic-coated steel, and as follows:
      1) Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
      2) Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch (50-mm) height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.
   i. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 3/8-inch-thick by 2-inch- (9.5-mm-thick by 50-mm-) wide uncoated steel unless otherwise indicated.
   j. Plaster Guards: Metallic-coated steel sheet, not less than 0.026 inch (0.6 mm) thick.

2. Materials:
   a. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
   b. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
   c. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, with G60 (Z180) zinc (galvanized) or A40 (ZF120) zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.
   d. Supports and Anchors: After fabricating, galvanize units to be built into exterior walls according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
   e. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Provide items to be built into exterior walls, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
   f. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching sound-control door frames of type indicated.
   g. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers.
3. Finishes:
   a. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
      1) Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
   b. Factory-Applied Paint Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer and finish coats, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.3 for performance and acceptance criteria.
      1) Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

E. Sound-Control Hardware
1. Description: Provide manufacturer's standard sound-control system, including head and jamb seals, door bottoms, cam-lift hinges, and thresholds, as required by testing to achieve STC **OR** STC and fire, **as directed**, rating indicated.
   a. Compression Seals: One-piece units; consisting of closed-cell sponge neoprene seal held in place by metal retainer; with retainer cover of same material as door frame; attached to door frame with concealed screws.
      OR
      Magnetic Seals: One-piece units; consisting of closed-cell sponge neoprene seal and resiliently mounted magnet held in place by metal retainer; with retainer cover of same material as door frame; attached to door frame with concealed screws.
   b. Automatic Door Bottoms: Neoprene or silicone gasket, held in place by metal housing, that automatically drops to form seal when door is closed; mounted to bottom edge of door with screws.
      1) Mounting: Mortised or semimortised into bottom of door or surface mounted on face of door as required by testing to achieve STC rating indicated.
      OR
      Door Bottoms: Neoprene or silicone gasket held in place by metal housing; mortised into bottom edge of door.
   c. Cam-Lift Hinges: Full-mortise template type that raises door 1/2 inch (13 mm) when door is fully open; with hardened pin; fabricated from stainless steel.
   d. Thresholds: Flat, smooth, unfluted type as recommended by manufacturer; fabricated from aluminum **OR** stainless steel **OR** solid wood matching wood door faces, **as directed**.
      1) Finish: Clear **OR** Color, **as directed**, anodic finish.
      2) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
2. Other Hardware: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

F. Sound-Control Accessories
   1. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing"
   2. Grout: Comply with ASTM C 476, with a slump of not more than 4 inches (102 mm) as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
   3. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

G. Fabrication
   1. Sound-Control Steel Door Fabrication: Sound-control doors to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal.
      a. Seamless Edge Construction: Fabricate doors with faces joined at vertical edges by welding; welds shall be ground, filled, and dressed to make them invisible and to provide a smooth, flush surface.
      b. Exterior Doors: Close top edges flush and seal joints against water penetration. Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
      c. Glazed Lites: Factory install glazed lites according to requirements of tested assembly to achieve STC rating indicated. Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of door.
      d. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare sound-control doors to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping, according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in "Door Hardware".
         1) Reinforce doors to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
         2) Locate door hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to NAAMM-HMMA 831, "Recommended Hardware Locations for Custom Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."
      e. Tolerances: Fabricate doors to tolerances indicated in ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 865.
   2. Sound-Control Wood Door Fabrication: Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with uniform clearances and bevels according to referenced quality standard, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with final door hardware schedules and hardware templates.
      a. Comply with clearance requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
      b. Locate door hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
         1) Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in steel frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
   3. Sound-Control Frame Fabrication: Fabricate sound-control frames to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
      a. Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated from same thickness metal as frames.
      b. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
      c. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
      d. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
         1) Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
            a) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) in height.
            b) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) in height.

c) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) in height.
d) Four anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof more than 96 inches (2438 mm) in height.

2) Stud Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches (457 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches (813 mm) o.c. and as follows:
a) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches (1524 mm) in height.
b) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches (1524 to 2286 mm) in height.
c) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches (2286 to 2438 mm) in height.
d) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches (610 mm) or fraction thereof more than 96 inches (2438 mm) in height.
e) Two anchors per head for frames more than 42 inches (1066 mm) wide and mounted in metal stud partitions.

3) Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches (660 mm) o.c.

e. Head Reinforcement: For frames more than 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, provide continuous head reinforcement for full width of opening, welded to back of frame at head.

f. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare sound-control frames to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping, according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
1) Reinforce frames to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
2) Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to NAAMM-HMMA 831, "Recommended Hardware Locations for Custom Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."

g. Plaster Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware cutouts and glazing-stop screw and sound-control seal preparations to close off interior of openings in frames to be grouted.

h. Tolerances: Fabricate frames to tolerances indicated in ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 865.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of sound-control door assemblies.
2. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of sound-control door frame connections before frame installation.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
2. Prior to installation and with installation spreaders in place, adjust and securely brace sound-control door frames to the following tolerances:
a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.

3. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

C. Installation
   1. General: Install sound-control door assemblies plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Frames: Install sound-control door frames in sizes and profiles indicated.
      a. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
         1) At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
         2) At openings requiring smoke and draft control, install frames according to NFPA 105.
         3) Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, and dress; make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
         4) Install sound-control frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
         5) Remove temporary braces only after frames or bucks have been properly set and secured.
         6) Check squareness, twist, and plumbness of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
         7) Apply corrosion-resistant coatings coating to backs of frames to be filled with mortar, grout, and plaster containing antifreezing agents.
      b. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
         1) Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors, if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
      c. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.
      d. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
      e. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
      f. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to supporting construction above, unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction above. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
      g. Grouted Frames: Solidly fill space between frames and substrate with grout. Take precautions, including bracing frames, to ensure that frames are not deformed or damaged by grout forces.
      h. Installation Tolerances: Adjust sound-control door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
         1) Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
         2) Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
         3) Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
         4) Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
   3. Doors: Fit sound-control doors accurately in frames, within clearances indicated below. Shim as necessary.

a. Non-Fire-Rated Doors: Fit non-fire-rated doors accurately in frames with the following clearances:
   1) Jambs: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
   2) Head with Butt Hinges: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
   3) Head with Cam-Lift Hinges: As required by manufacturer, but not more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
   4) Sill: Manufacturer's standard.
   5) Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

b. Fire-Rated Doors: Install fire-rated doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.

4. Sound-Control Seals: Where seals have been prefit and preinstalled in the factory and subsequently removed for shipping, reinstall seals and adjust according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Cam-Lift Hinges: Install hinges according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
7. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with sound-control door assembly manufacturer's written instructions.
   a. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches (230 mm) o.c., and not more than 2 inches (50 mm) o.c. from each corner.

D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Testing Services: Acoustical testing and inspecting agency shall select one sound-control door at random from sound-control door assemblies that are completely installed and perform testing for verification that assembly complies with STC rating requirements.
   a. Field tests shall be conducted according to ASTM E 336, with results calculated according to ASTM E 413. Acceptable field STC values shall be within 5 dB of laboratory STC values.
   b. Inspection Report: Acoustical testing agency shall submit report in writing to the Owner and Contractor within 24 hours after testing.
   c. If tested door fails, replace or rework all sound-control door assemblies to bring them into compliance at Contractor's expense.
      1) Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
3. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Final Adjustments: Check and adjust seals, door bottoms, and other sound-control hardware items right before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition.
2. Remove and replace defective work, including defective or damaged sound seals and doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
   a. Adjust gaskets, gasket retainers, and retainer covers to provide contact required to achieve STC rating.
3. Clean grout off sound-control door frames immediately after installation.
4. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.
5. Metallic-Coated Surfaces: Clean abraded areas of doors and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08 05 13 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
08 05 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
08 05 13 00	08 01 11 61	Steel Doors And Frames

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 31 13 00 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for access doors and frames. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
b. Floor access doors and frames.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Samples: For each door face material in specified finish.
4. Schedule: Types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 that are identical to access door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per the following test method and that are listed and labeled by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
a. NFPA 252 or UL 10B for vertical access doors and frames.
b. ASTM E 119 or UL 263 for horizontal access doors and frames.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Steel Materials
1. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
a. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
b. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
2. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
a. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products
b. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
3. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 591/A 591M with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
4. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS) with A60 (ZF180) zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating or G60 (Z180) mill-phosphatized zinc coating.
5. Steel Finishes: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
a. Surface Preparation for Steel Sheet: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
b. Surface Preparation for Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds,

mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.
1) Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

c. Factory-Primed Finish: Apply shop primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
d. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
e. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.

6. Drywall Beads: Edge trim formed from 0.0299-inch (0.76-mm) zinc-coated steel sheet formed to receive joint compound and in size to suit thickness of gypsum board.
7. Plaster Beads: Casing bead formed from 0.0299-inch (0.76-mm) zinc-coated steel sheet with flange formed out of expanded metal lath and in size to suit thickness of plaster.

B. Stainless-Steel Materials
1. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793, manufacturer's standard finish.
2. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316 **OR** Type 317LMN **OR** 904L, **as directed**. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
a. Finish: Directional Satin Finish, No. 4 **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.

C. Aluminum Materials
1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6, mill finish.
2. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6, mill finish.
3. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
a. Mill Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).
b. Anodic Finish: Class II, clear anodic coating complying with AAMA 611 **OR** Class I, clear anodic coating complying with AAMA 611, **as directed**.
c. Baked-Enamel Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

D. Access Doors And Frames For Walls And Ceilings
1. Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed,** thick sheet metal, set flush with exposed face flange of frame.
c. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-) **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-), **as directed**, wide, surface-mounted trim.
d. Hinges: Spring-loaded, concealed-pin type **OR** Continuous piano, **as directed**.
e. Latch: Cam latch **OR** Slam latch **OR** Self-latching bolt, **as directed**, operated by screwdriver **OR** knurled knob **OR** hex head wrench **OR** pinned hex head wrench **OR** spanner head wrench **OR** flush key **OR** ring turn, **as directed**, with interior release.
f. Lock: Cylinder **OR** Mortise cylinder, **as directed**.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

2. Flush Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal, set flush with surrounding finish surfaces.

c. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal with drywall **OR** plaster, **as directed**, bead flange.
d. Hinges: Spring-loaded, concealed-pin type **OR** Continuous piano, **as directed**.
e. Latch: Cam latch **OR** Slam latch **OR** Self-latching bolt, **as directed**, operated by screwdriver **OR** knurled knob **OR** hex head wrench **OR** pinned hex head wrench **OR** spanner head wrench **OR** flush key **OR** ring turn, **as directed**, with interior release.
f. Lock: Cylinder **OR** Mortise cylinder, **as directed**.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

3. Recessed Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed,** thick sheet metal in the form of a pan recessed 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, for gypsum board **OR** plaster **OR** acoustical tile, **as directed**, infill.
c. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal with drywall bead for gypsum board surfaces **OR** with plaster bead for plaster surfaces **OR** designed for insertion into acoustical tile ceiling, **as directed**.
d. Hinges: Spring-loaded, concealed-pin type **OR** Concealed pivoting rod hinge, **as directed**.
e. Latch: Cam latch **OR** Slam latch **OR** Self-latching bolt, **as directed**, operated by screwdriver **OR** knurled knob **OR** hex head wrench **OR** pinned hex head wrench **OR** spanner head wrench **OR** flush key **OR** ring turn, **as directed**, with interior release.
f. Lock: Cylinder **OR** Mortise cylinder, **as directed**.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

4. Aluminum Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from aluminum sheet and extruded-aluminum shapes.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.080-inch- (2.0-mm-), **as directed**, thick aluminum sheet.
c. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick extruded aluminum with 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) wide rolled flange.
d. Hinges: Concealed continuous aluminum.
e. Latch: Screwdriver-operated cam latch.

5. Lightweight Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from lightweight metal.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.018-inch- (0.45-mm-) thick steel sheet.
c. Frame: Minimum 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick extruded aluminum with 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) wide rolled flange.
d. Hinges: Continuous piano.
e. Latch: Screwdriver-operated cam latch.

6. Plastic Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick high-impact plastic with UV stabilizer.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Flush to frame with rounded corners.
c. Frame: 1 piece, 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep.
d. Latch: Snap latch.
e. Finish: White with textured exposed surfaces.

7. Exterior Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Weatherproof with extruded door gasket.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.040-inch- (1.0-mm-), **as directed**, thick, metallic-coated steel sheet; flush panel construction with manufacturer's standard 2-inch- (50-mm-) thick fiberglass insulation.
c. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick extruded aluminum.
d. Hinges: Continuous piano, zinc plated.

e. Lock: Dual-action handles with key lock.

8. Fire-Rated, Insulated, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
   a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
   b. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated **OR** that of adjacent construction **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 1 hour **OR** 1-1/2 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** 3 hours, **as directed**.
   c. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes.
   d. Door: Flush panel with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.036 inch (0.9 mm), **as directed**.
   e. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-), **as directed,** wide, surface-mounted trim.
   f. Hinges: Concealed-pin type **OR** Continuous piano, **as directed**.
   g. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
   h. Latch: Self-latching device operated by knurled knob **OR** flush key **OR** ring turn, **as directed**, with interior release.
   i. Lock: Self-latching device with cylinder **OR** mortise cylinder, **as directed**, lock.
      1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
9. Fire-Rated, Insulated, Flush Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
   a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
   b. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated **OR** that of adjacent construction **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 1 hour **OR** 1-1/2 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** 3 hours, **as directed**.
   c. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes.
   d. Door: Flush panel with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.036 inch (0.9 mm), **as directed**.
   e. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal with drywall **OR** plaster, **as directed**, bead.
   f. Hinges: Concealed-pin type **OR** Continuous piano, **as directed**.
   g. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
   h. Latch: Self-latching device operated by knurled knob **OR** flush key **OR** ring turn, **as directed**, with interior release.
   i. Lock: Self-latching device with cylinder **OR** mortise cylinder, **as directed**, lock.
      1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
10. Fire Rated, Uninsulated, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
    a. Locations: Wall surfaces.
    b. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated **OR** that of adjacent construction **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 1 hour **OR** 1-1/2 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** 3 hours, **as directed**.
    c. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal, flush construction.
    d. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-), **as directed**, thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-) **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-), **as directed**, wide, surface-mounted trim.
    e. Hinges: Concealed-pin type **OR** Continuous piano, **as directed**.
    f. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
    g. Latch: Self-latching device operated by knurled knob **OR** flush key **OR** ring turn, **as directed**, with interior release.
    h. Lock: Self-latching device with cylinder **OR** mortise cylinder, **as directed**, lock.
       1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
11. Medium-Security, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
    a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
    b. Door: Minimum 0.105-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick sheet metal, flush construction.

c. Frame: Minimum 0.105-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-) **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-), **as directed**, wide, surface-mounted trim.
d. Hinges: Concealed continuous piano.
e. Lock: Detention.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

12. Medium-Security, Flush Access Doors with Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed**, surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.105-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick sheet metal, flush construction.
c. Frame: Minimum 0.105-inch- (2.7-mm-) thick sheet metal with drywall **OR** plaster, **as directed**, bead.
d. Hinges: Concealed continuous piano.
e. Lock: Detention.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

13. High-Security, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed,** sheet and angles.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed,** surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.135-inch- (3.4-mm-) thick sheet metal, flush construction.
c. Frame: Minimum 3/16-by-2-by-2-inch (4.7-by-50-by-50-mm) angle welded with joints ground smooth.
d. Hinges: Heavy-duty steel welded to door and frame.
e. Lock: Heavy-duty, detention deadbolt.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

14. Maximum-Security, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet and angles.
a. Locations: Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Wall and ceiling, **as directed,** surfaces.
b. Door: Minimum 0.180-inch- (4.55-mm-) thick sheet metal, flush construction.
c. Frame: Minimum 3/16-by-2-by-2-by-3-inch (4.7-by-50-by-50-by-76-mm) angle welded with joints ground smooth.
d. Hinges: Heavy-duty steel welded to door and frame.
e. Lock: Heavy-duty detention deadbolt.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

15. Fire-Rated, Insulated, Medium-Security, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed,** sheet.
a. Locations: Wall surfaces.
b. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated **OR** that of adjacent construction **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 1 hour **OR** 1-1/2 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** 3 hours, **as directed**.
c. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes.
d. Door: Flush panel with a core of 2-inch- (50-mm-) thick, mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.075 inch (1.9 mm).
e. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with 1-inch- (25-mm-) **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-), **as directed**, wide, surface-mounted trim.
f. Hinges: Concealed-pin type **OR** Continuous piano, **as directed**.
g. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
h. Lock: Self-latching device with detention lock.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

16. Fire-Rated, Insulated, Medium-Security, Flush Access Doors with Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel **OR** metallic-coated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed,** sheet.
a. Locations: Wall surfaces.
b. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated **OR** that of adjacent construction **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 1 hour **OR** 1-1/2 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** 3 hours, **as directed**.

c. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes.
d. Door: Flush panel with a core of 2-inch- (50-mm-) thick, mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.075 inch (1.9 mm).
e. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with drywall **OR** plaster, **as directed**, bead.
f. Hinges: Concealed-pin type **OR** Continuous piano, **as directed**.
g. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
h. Lock: Self-latching device with detention lock.
1) Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

E. Floor Access Doors And Frames
1. Floor Doors, General: Equip each door with adjustable counterbalancing springs, heavy-duty hold-open arm that automatically locks door open at 90 degrees, release handle with red vinyl grip that allows for one-handed closure, and recessed lift handle.
2. Aluminum Floor Door: Single **OR** Double, **as directed,**-leaf opening. Extruded-aluminum angle frame with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick, diamond-pattern, aluminum tread plate door; nonwatertight; loading capacity to support 150-lbf/sq. ft. (7.2-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live load **OR** 300-lbf/sq. ft. (14.4-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live load **OR** AASHTO H20 concentrated wheel load, without impact, **as directed**.
3. Watertight Aluminum Floor Door: Single **OR** Double, **as directed,**-leaf opening. Extruded-aluminum gutter frame with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) drainage coupling and 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick, diamond-pattern, aluminum tread plate door; watertight; loading capacity to support 150-lbf/sq. ft. (7.2-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live load **OR** 300-lbf/sq. ft. (14.4-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live load **OR** AASHTO H20 concentrated wheel load, without impact, **as directed**.
4. Steel Angle-Frame Floor Door: Single **OR** Double, **as directed,**-leaf opening. Prime-painted structural **OR** Galvanized structural **OR** Stainless, **as directed**,-steel frame with 3/16- or 1/4-inch- (4.8- or 6.4-mm-) **OR** 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, thick, diamond-pattern, prime-painted structural **OR** galvanized structural **OR** stainless, **as directed,**-steel tread plate door; nonwatertight; loading capacity to support 150-lbf/sq. ft. (7.2-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live **OR** 300-lbf/sq. ft. (14.4-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live **OR** AASHTO H20 concentrated wheel, **as directed**, load.
a. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated **OR** that of adjacent construction **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 1 hour **OR** 1-1/2 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** 3 hours, **as directed**.
b. Finish painted in yellow with wording "FIRE DOOR - DO NOT STORE MATERIALS ON SURFACE."
5. Watertight Steel Gutter-Frame Floor Door: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**,-leaf opening. Prime-painted structural **OR** Galvanized structural **OR** Stainless, **as directed**,-steel channel frame forming gutter with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) drainage coupling and 3/16- or 1/4-inch- (4.8- or 6.4-mm-) **OR** 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, thick, diamond-pattern, prime-painted structural **OR** galvanized structural **OR** stainless, **as directed**,-steel tread plate door; watertight; loading capacity to support 150-lbf/sq. ft. (7.2-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live **OR** 300-lbf/sq. ft. (14.4-kN/sq. m) pedestrian live **OR** AASHTO H20 concentrated wheel, **as directed**, load.
a. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated **OR** that of adjacent construction **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 1 hour **OR** 1-1/2 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** 3 hours, **as directed**.
b. Finish painted in yellow with wording "FIRE DOOR - DO NOT STORE MATERIALS ON SURFACE."
6. Hardware: Provide the following:
a. Hinges: Heavy-duty, zinc-coated steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel **OR** brass, **as directed**, butt hinges with stainless-steel pins.
b. Latch: Stainless-steel slam latch.
c. Lock: Staple for a padlock **OR** Recessed hasp **OR** Keyed deadlock bolt **OR** Hasp and staple, **as directed**.

d. Hardware Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Stainless steel, including latch and lifting mechanism assemblies, hold-open arms, and all brackets, hinges, pins, and fasteners, **as directed**.

7. Insulation: Fiberglass **OR** Urethane, **as directed**, with liner pan.
8. Safety Accessories: Safety chains **OR** net **OR** railing, **as directed**.

F. Fabrication

1. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
2. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
3. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.
4. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling.
5. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
   a. For cylinder lock, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
   b. For recessed panel doors, provide access sleeves for each locking device. Furnish plastic grommets and install in holes cut through finish.
6. Extruded Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
2. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.
3. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

B. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.
2. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 31 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 62 00 00 - ROOF WINDOWS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for roof windows. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Fixed (nonoperable) roof windows for exterior locations with aluminum-clad, copper-clad and fiberglass-clad exterior exposed surfaces and wood interior exposed surfaces.
b. Venting (with operable sash) roof windows for exterior locations with aluminum-clad, copper-clad and fiberglass-clad exterior exposed surfaces and wood interior exposed surfaces.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Structural Performance: Provide roof windows capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
a. Wind Loads: Compliance is based on testing units representative of those indicated for Project that pass AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, Uniform Load Structural Test.
1) Basic Wind Speed: 85 mph (38 m/s) **OR** 90 mph (40 m/s), **as directed**.
2) Importance Factor.
3) Exposure Category: B **OR** C **OR** D, **as directed**.
b. Deflection Limits: Design glass framing system to limit lateral deflections of glass edges to less than 1/175 of glass-edge length or 3/4 inch (19 mm), whichever is less, at design pressure based on testing performed according to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, Uniform Load Deflection Test, or structural computations.
c. Snow Loads.
2. Windborne-Debris Resistance: Provide glazed roof windows capable of resisting impact from windborne debris, based on the pass/fail criteria as determined from testing glazed roof windows identical to those specified, according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 **OR** AAMA 506, **as directed**, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, finishes, and operating instructions.
a. Motors: Show nameplate data, ratings, characteristics, and mounting arrangements.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware, attachments to other work, operational clearances, installation details, and the following:
a. Mullion details, including reinforcement and stiffeners.
b. Joinery details.
c. Expansion provisions.
d. Flashing and drainage details.
e. Weather-stripping details.
f. Glazing details.
g. Accessories.
h. Window cleaning provisions.
i. Window System Operators: Show locations, mounting, and details for installing operator components and controls.

j. Window System Operators: Show locations and details for installing operator components, switches, and controls. Indicate motor size, electrical characteristics, drive arrangement, mounting, and grounding provisions.
k. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

3. Samples: For roof windows and components required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
   a. Main Framing Member: 12-inch- (300-mm-) long section with weather stripping, **as directed**, glazing bead and factory-applied color finish.
   b. Hardware: Full-size units with factory-applied finish.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For roof windows indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation and used to determine the following:
   a. Structural test pressures and design pressures from loads indicated.
   b. Deflection limitations of glass framing systems.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer and professional engineer.
6. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed within the last four years by a qualified testing agency, for each class, grade, and size of roof window.
7. Maintenance Data: For weather stripping, operable sash, operating hardware, and finishes to include in maintenance manuals.
8. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating roof windows that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by inclusion in lists and by labels, test reports, and calculations.
2. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to roof window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
   a. Installer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility including preparation of data for roof windows, including Shop Drawings and Designated Design Submittal, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
3. Fenestration Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, "Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors, and Unit Skylights," for minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication. Comply with more stringent requirements if indicated.
   a. Provide WDMA-certified units with an attached label.
4. Glazing Publication: Comply with published recommendations of glass manufacturers and with GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Protect roof windows during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration. Store off ground and covered in a clean, dry, well-ventilated, protected space. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace roof windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) Failure to meet performance requirements.
      2) Structural failures including excessive deflection.
      3) Water leakage or air infiltration.
      4) Faulty operation of movable panels and hardware.
      5) Deterioration of wood, metals, vinyl, other materials, and finishes beyond normal weathering.

6) Deterioration of insulating glass and laminated glass, **as directed**, as defined in Division 08 Section "Glazing".

b. Warranty Period:
1) Roof Window: Five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
2) Glazing: 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
3) Exterior Finish: Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Wood: Clear fir or pine or another suitable fine-grained lumber; kiln-dried to a moisture content of 6 to 12 percent at time of fabrication; free of visible finger joints, blue stain, knots, pitch pockets, and surface checks larger than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) deep by 2 inches (51 mm) wide; water-repellent preservative treated.
a. Finish: Unfinished **OR** Manufacturer's standard transparent finish **OR** Manufacturer's standard prime-painted finish complying with WDMA T.M. 11 **OR** Manufacturer's standard opaque finish complying with WDMA T.M. 12, **as directed**.
2. Aluminum: Manufacturer's standard formed sheet or extruded aluminum. Provide aluminum alloy and temper recommended by roof window manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish.
a. Baked-Enamel Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
1) Color and Gloss: White **OR** Bronze **OR** Brown **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
b. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 620 **OR** AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
1) Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
3. Copper: ASTM B 370; Temper H00, cold rolled unless Temper 060, soft is required for forming; not less than 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
a. Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
4. Reinforced Thermoset Fiberglass: AAMA 305 with manufacturer's standard finish.
a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Trim and Glazing Stops: Material and finish to match wood frame members.
6. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be noncorrosive for SC 3 severe service conditions and compatible with roof window members, cladding, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
a. Exposed Fasteners: Unless unavoidable for applying hardware, do not use exposed fasteners. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish of member or hardware being fastened, as appropriate.
7. Anchors, Clips, Mounting Brackets, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 456 or ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
8. Mullions: Provide mullions and mullion casing and cover plates as shown, matching roof window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of roof window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of roof window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections, as indicated. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design loads of roof window units.

9. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, nickel/chrome-plated steel complying with ASTM B 456 or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
10. Compression-Type Weather Stripping: Provide compressible weather stripping designed for permanently resilient sealing under bumper or wiper action, and completely concealed when roof window is closed.
    a. Weather-Stripping Material: Closed-cell elastomeric, preformed gaskets complying with ASTM C 509.
       OR
       Weather-Stripping Material: Dense elastomeric gaskets complying with ASTM C 864.
       OR
       Weather-Stripping Material: Manufacturer's standard system and materials complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
11. Flashing: Manufacturer's standard flashing system for application indicated.
    a. Material: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Flexible EPDM flashing, **as directed**.
    b. Rigid aluminum **OR** copper, **as directed**, nailing flange formed into frame.
    c. Auxiliary Water Diverter: Provide at roof window head as back flashing.

B. Roof Window
1. AAMA/WDMA/CSA Performance Requirements: Provide roof windows of performance indicated that comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 unless more stringent performance requirements are indicated.
    a. Performance Class and Grade: R15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25, **as directed**.
    b. Performance Class and Grade: C30 **OR** 35 **OR** 40, **as directed**.
    c. Performance Class and Grade: As indicated.
2. Thermal Transmittance: Provide roof windows with a whole fenestration product U-factor maximum indicated, when tested according to AAMA 1503 **OR** determined according to ASTM E 1423 **OR** determined according to NFRC 100, **as directed**.
    a. U-Factor: 0.35 **OR** 0.40 **OR** 0.65, **as directed**, Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
    b. U-Factor: 0.60 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K) (this is the maximum U-factor allowed by the IECC 2006 for skylights in all but climate zones 1 to 3).
3. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Provide roof windows with a whole-window SHGC maximum of 0.40 **OR** 0.50 **OR** 0.55, **as directed**, determined according to NFRC 200.
4. Air-Leakage Resistance: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, Air Leakage Resistance Test.
    a. Maximum Rate: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (1.5 L/s x sq. m) of area at an inward test pressure of 1.6 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa) (equivalent to 25-mph (40-km/h) wind speed and typically used to test R and C performance classes).
5. Water-Penetration Resistance: No water leakage as defined in AAMA/WDMA/CSA referenced test methods at a water test pressure equaling that indicated, when tested according to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, Water Penetration Resistance Test.
    a. Test Pressure: 15 percent of positive design pressure, but not less than 2.9 lbf/sq. ft. (140 Pa) or more than 12 lbf/sq. ft. (580 Pa).
6. Forced-Entry Resistance: Comply with Performance Grade 10 (lowest recognized by ASTM F 588 and is mandatory if AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 is the method selected for specifying roof window performance) requirements when tested according to ASTM F 588.
7. Operating Force and Auxiliary (Durability) Tests: According to and complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

C. Glazing
1. Glass and Glazing System: Comply with Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glass, insulating-glass units, laminated glass, and glazing requirements applicable to glazed roof windows.

D. Hardware
1. Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for fixed skylights.

2. General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware, fabricated from a corrosion-resistant material compatible with wood and aluminum cladding **OR** and copper cladding, **as directed**, complying with AAMA 907; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock sliding wood-framed roof windows; and sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions. Do not use aluminum in frictional contact with other metals.
   a. Hardware Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Match cladding appearance, **as directed**.
3. Gear-Type Rotary Operators: Comply with AAMA 901 when tested according to ASTM E 405, Method A.
4. Pole Operator: Manufacturer's standard manual **OR** motorized, **as directed**, pole for operating venting units that are more than 72 inches (1800 mm) above floor.
5. Motor Operator: Manufacturer's standard electric motor and remote control for operating venting units that are more than 72 inches (1800 mm) above floor.
   a. Provide rain sensor that automatically closes venting unit when water is detected.
      OR
      Provide motor operator with wireless remote-control device.
6. Roof Window Operation:
   a. Operator and Control: Gear-type rotary operator with plastic or metal cable that uncoils and stiffens to open sash; with locking mechanism.
      1) Operation: Crank handle **OR** Pole, **as directed**, for manual operation.
      2) Operation: Electric.
      OR
      Operator and Control: Gear-type rotary operator with arm(s) that scissors or swings to open sash; with locking mechanism.
      1) Operation: Crank handle **OR** Pole, **as directed**, for manual operation.
      2) Operation: Electric.
      OR
      Operator and Control: Spring-assisted, counter-balanced operator that allows sash to remain open in any position; with lever-handle-operated latches and lock for manual operation.
   b. Hinge: Continuous.
      OR
      Hinges: Pivot **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**; two per operable sash.

E. Accessories
1. Insect Screens: Manufacturer's standard removable screen; aluminum or vinyl frame with mitered or coped joints and with ASTM D 3656 mesh of plastic-coated glass-fiber threads. Provide frame in manufacturer's standard finish and mesh in manufacturer's standard color.
2. Shades: Manufacturer's standard of type indicated and in color and pattern selected from manufacturer's full range.
   a. Type: Pleated **OR** Venetian blind **OR** Roll up, **as directed**.
   b. Pole Operation: Provide manual **OR** motorized, **as directed**, pole for operating shades that are more than 72 inches (1800 mm) above floor.
      OR
      Motorized Operation: Provide manufacturer's standard electric motor and remote control for operating shades with wireless remote-control device, **as directed**.

F. Fabrication
1. Fabricate roof windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring and flashing windows.
2. Fabricate roof windows that are reglazable without dismantling sash framing.
3. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash.
4. Provide condensation gutter or other means to hold condensed moisture or drain it to exterior.
5. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Allow for scribing, trimming, and fitting at Project site.

6. Factory-Glazed Fabrication: Glaze roof windows in the factory. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work. Verify rough opening dimensions, slope of roof construction, and operational clearances. Examine roof decks, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure a coordinated, weathertight roof window installation.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Installation
1. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for installing roof windows, hardware, **as directed**, motor operators, **as directed**, accessories, and other components.
2. Install roof windows square, true, and without distortion, warp, or rack of frames and sash. Securely anchor windows to structural support without impeding thermal movement and in proper relation to adjacent construction.
3. Install flashing to provide a watertight and weathertight seal.
4. Separate aluminum, copper, and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials according to recommendations in ASTM E 2112.

C. Adjusting, Cleaning, And Protection
1. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
2. Adjust operating sash, operators, **as directed**, screens, and accessories for a tight fit at contact points and for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
3. Adjust hardware for proper alignment, smooth operation, and proper latching without unnecessary force or excessive clearance.
4. Adjust shades to hang true to line without rack. Provide unencumbered operation.
5. Clean frame surfaces immediately after installing roof windows. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for final cleaning and maintenance. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes.
6. Inspect drainage holes for blockage. Clean and free holes of any obstructions to allow drainage.
7. Clean glass immediately after installing roof windows. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for final cleaning and maintenance. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
8. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
9. Protect roof window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If contaminating substances contact roof window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written instructions.
10. Refinish or replace roof windows that have damaged finishes.
11. Replace damaged components.

END OF SECTION 08 62 00 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
08 62 23 00	08 62 00 00	Roof Windows
08 63 13 00	08 62 00 00	Roof Windows

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 66 00 00 - UNIT SKYLIGHTS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for unit skylights. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Self-flashing unit skylights with integral curb.
b. Unit skylights mounted on prefabricated **OR** site-built, **as directed**, curbs.

C. Performance Requirements
1. AAMA/WDMA Performance Requirements: Provide unit skylights of performance class and grade indicated that comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS unless more stringent performance requirements are indicated.
a. Performance Class and Grade:
1) SKG-R15/15-1200x1200 **OR** SKP-R15/15-1200x1200, **as directed**.
2) SKG-C30/30-1200x1200 **OR** SKP-C30/30-1200x1200, **as directed**.
3) SKG-HC40/40-1200x2500 **OR** SKP-HC40/40-1200x2500, **as directed**.
4) As indicated.
2. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistance Performance: Provide unit skylights that pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 **OR** AAMA 506, **as directed**.
a. Large-Missile Impact: For unit skylights located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade.
b. Small-Missile Impact: For unit skylights located more than 30 feet (9.1 m) above grade.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of unit skylight indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For unit skylight work. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and connections to supporting structure and other adjoining work.
a. Unit Skylight Operating System: Show locations, mounting, and details for installing operator components and controls.
b. Unit Skylight Operating System: Show locations and details for installing operator components, switches, and controls. Indicate motor size, electrical characteristics, drive arrangement, mounting, and grounding provisions.
c. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring for electric motors of operable unit skylights.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required, in a representative section of each unit skylight in manufacturer's standard size.
4. Qualification Data.
5. Product Test Reports.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Maintenance Data: For unit skylights and unit skylight operating system to include in maintenance manuals.
8. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating unit skylights that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by inclusion in lists and by labels, test reports, and calculations.

2. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to unit skylight manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
3. Surface-Burning Characteristics of Plastic Glazing: Provide plastic glazing sheets identical to those tested for fire-exposure behavior per test method indicated below by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Self-Ignition Temperature: 650 deg F (343 deg C) or more for plastic sheets in thickness indicated when tested per ASTM D 1929.
   b. Smoke-Production Characteristics: Comply with either requirement below:
      1) Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less when tested per ASTM E 84 on plastic sheets in manner indicated for use.
      2) Smoke Density: 75 or less when tested per ASTM D 2843 on plastic sheets in thickness indicated for use.
   c. Burning Characteristics: Tested per ASTM D 635.
      1) Acrylic Glazing: Class CC2, burning rate of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) per minute or less for nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) or thickness indicated for use.
      2) Polycarbonate Glazing: Class CC1, burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less for nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) or thickness indicated for use.
      3) Polycarbonate-Insulating-Panel Glazing: Class CC2, burning rate of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) per minute or less for nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm) or thickness indicated for use.
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. Unit Skylight Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, "North American Fenestration Standard Voluntary Performance Specification for Windows, Skylights and Glass Doors," for minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication. Comply with more stringent requirements if indicated.
   a. Provide AAMA-certified unit skylights with an attached label.
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of unit skylights that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Aluminum Components:
   a. Sheets: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper to suit forming operations and finish requirements but with not less than the strength and durability of alclad Alloy 3005-H25.
   b. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper to suit structural and finish requirements but with not less than the strength and durability of Alloy 6063-T52.
2. Fasteners: Same metal as metal being fastened, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by manufacturer. Finish exposed fasteners to match material being fastened.
   a. Where removal of exterior exposed fasteners might allow access to building, provide nonremovable fastener heads.

B. Glazing
1. Acrylic Glazing: ASTM D 4802, thermoformable, monolithic sheet, category as standard with manufacturer, Finish 1 (smooth or polished), Type UVF (formulated with UV absorber).
   a. Single-Glazing Profile: Dome, 25 percent rise **OR** Pyramid, 30-degree slope, **as directed**.

1) Thickness: As indicated **OR** Not less than thickness required to exceed performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Color: Colorless, transparent **OR** White, translucent **OR** Bronze-tinted, transparent **OR** Gray-tinted, transparent, **as directed**.

b. Double-Glazing Profile: Dome, 25 percent rise **OR** Pyramid, 30-degree slope, **as directed**.
1) Thicknesses: As indicated **OR** Not less than thicknesses required to exceed performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Outer Glazing Color: Colorless, transparent **OR** White, translucent **OR** Bronze-tinted, transparent **OR** Gray-tinted, transparent, **as directed**.
3) Inner Glazing Color: Colorless, transparent **OR** White, translucent **OR** Bronze-tinted, transparent **OR** Gray-tinted, transparent, **as directed**.

2. Polycarbonate Glazing: Thermoformable, extruded monolithic sheets, UV resistant, burglar-resistance rated per UL 972, and with average impact strength of 12 to 16 ft-lb/in. (640 to 854 J/m) of width when tested per ASTM D 256, Test Method A (Izod).
a. Single-Glazing Profile: Dome, 25 percent rise **OR** Pyramid, 30-degree slope, **as directed**.
1) Thickness: As indicated **OR** Not less than thickness required to exceed performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors, **as directed**.

b. Double-Glazing Profile: Dome, 25 percent rise **OR** Pyramid, 30-degree slope, **as directed**.
1) Thicknesses: As indicated **OR** Not less than thicknesses required to exceed performance requirements, **as directed**.
2) Inner Glazing Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors, **as directed**.
3) Outer Glazing Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors, **as directed**.

3. Insulating Glass: Clear, sealed units that comply with Division 08 Section "Glazing", in manufacturer's standard overall thickness.
a. Exterior Lite: 1/4-inch (6-mm) clear **OR** tinted, **as directed,** heat-strengthened **OR** fully tempered, **as directed**, glass.
b. Interior Lite:
1) Laminated glass; 2 plies of 1/8-inch (3-mm) clear heat-strengthened glass with 0.030-inch (0.762-mm) clear polyvinyl butyral interlayer.
2) 1/4-inch (6-mm) clear **OR** tinted, **as directed,** heat-strengthened **OR** fully tempered **OR** wire, **as directed**, glass.
c. Interspace Content: Air **OR** Argon, **as directed**.
d. Low-Emissivity Coating: Manufacturer's standard.

4. Polycarbonate-Insulating-Panel Glazing: Manufacturer's standard polycarbonate sheet with cellular cross section that provides isolated airspaces and that is coextruded with a UV-protective layer.
a. Thickness: As indicated **OR** Not less than thickness required to exceed performance requirements, **as directed**.
b. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors, **as directed**.

5. Fiberglass-Sandwich-Panel Glazing: Manufacturer's standard with uniformly colored, translucent, fiberglass-reinforced-polymer face sheets permanently adhered to a grid core.
a. Thickness: As indicated **OR** Not less than thickness required to exceed performance requirements, **as directed**.
b. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors, **as directed**.

6. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard **OR** EPDM, neoprene, partially vulcanized butyl tape, or liquid-applied elastomeric sealant, **as directed**.

C. Installation Materials
1. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic, nominally free of sulfur and containing no asbestos fibers, formulated for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coating.

2. Joint Sealants: As specified inDivision 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
3. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, nondrying, nonmigrating sealant.
4. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, designed for trowel application or other adhesive compatible with roofing system.

D. Unit Skylights
1. General: Provide factory-assembled unit skylights that include glazing, extruded-aluminum glazing retainers, gaskets, and inner frames and that are capable of withstanding performance requirements indicated.
2. Integral Curb: Extruded-aluminum **OR** Vinyl **OR** Reinforced-thermoset-fiberglass profile, **as directed**, self-flashing type.
   a. Height: As indicated **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 9 inches (225 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Construction: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, wall.
   c. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard rigid or semirigid type.
3. Prefabricated Curb: As specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories".
4. Site-Built Curb: As indicated.
5. Unit Shape and Size: As indicated **OR** Square, 40-by-40-inch (1016-by-1016-mm) inside curb **OR** Rectangular, 40-by-48-inch (1016-by-1220-mm) inside curb **OR** Circular, 40-inch- (1016-mm-) diameter inside curb, **as directed**.
6. Condensation Control: Fabricate unit skylights with integral internal gutters and non-clogging weeps to collect and drain condensation to the exterior.
7. Thermal Break: Fabricate unit skylights with thermal barrier separating exterior and interior metal framing.
8. Operable Unit Skylight System: Equip vent-type unit skylights with manufacturer's standard hinges, chain-driven operating hardware, and weather-sealing gaskets.
   a. Manual Operator: Manufacturer's standard, rotary-crank extension device.
      1) Pole Operator: Manual, 60 inches (1524 mm) long **OR** Manual, telescoping to 144 inches (3658 mm) **OR** Rechargeable-motor power-driven type, telescoping to 144 inches (3658 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Motor Operator: Manufacturer's standard electronic control, including switch, transformer, low-voltage motor, cover, and mounting hardware.
      1) Provide motor of size and capacity recommended by unit skylight manufacturer to suit unit skylight indicated.
      2) Provide rain sensor that automatically closes venting unit when water is detected.
      3) Provide motor operator with portable remote-control device.
9. Security Grilles: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter, hardened steel bars spaced not more than 5 inches (130 mm) o.c. in 1 direction and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in other direction **OR** 5 inches (130 mm) o.c. in both directions, **as directed**.
10. Protective Screens: Manufacturer's standard to protect interior glazing lite from breakage **OR** personnel from falls **OR** against windborne debris **OR** against hail, **as directed**.

E. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

F. Aluminum Finishes
1. Mill Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.

a. Color: As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities.

4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. High-Performance Organic Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Organic Finish: 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**,-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
   a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Coordinate installation of unit skylight with installation of substrates, vapor retarders, roof insulation, roofing membrane, and flashing as required to ensure that each element of the Work performs properly and that combined elements are waterproof and weathertight.
2. Comply with recommendations in AAMA 1607 and with manufacturer's written instructions for installing unit skylights.
3. Install unit skylights level, plumb, and true to line, without distortion.
4. Anchor unit skylights securely to supporting substrates.
5. Where metal surfaces of unit skylights will contact incompatible metal or corrosive substrates, including preservative-treated wood, apply bituminous coating on concealed metal surfaces, or provide other permanent separation recommended in writing by unit skylight manufacturer.
6. Set unit skylight flanges in thick bed of roofing cement to form a seal unless otherwise indicated.
7. Where cap flashing is indicated, install to produce waterproof overlap with roofing or roof flashing. Seal with thick bead of mastic sealant except where overlap is indicated to be left open for ventilation.

B. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. After completion of installation and nominal curing of sealant and glazing compounds but before installation of interior finishes, test for water leaks according to AAMA 501.2.
3. Perform test for total area of each unit skylight.
4. Work will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
5. Additional testing and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

C. Cleaning
1. Clean exposed unit skylight surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Touch up damaged metal coatings and finishes.
2. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
3. Remove and replace glazing that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
4. Protect unit skylight surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.

5. Unit Skylight Operating System: Clean and lubricate joints and hardware. Adjust for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 08 66 00 00

SECTION 08 90 00 00 - LOUVERS AND VENTS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for louvers and vents. Product shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Fixed, extruded-aluminum and formed-metal louvers.
b. Adjustable, extruded-aluminum and formed-metal louvers.
c. Adjustable, extruded-aluminum and formed-metal insulated louvers.
d. Fixed, formed-metal acoustical louvers.
e. Wall vents (brick vents).

C. Definitions
1. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
2. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades; i.e., the axes of the blades are horizontal.
3. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades; i.e., the axes of the blades are vertical.
4. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
5. Storm-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven rain performance, as determined by testing according to AMCA 500-L.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors.
a. Wind Loads:
1) Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
OR
Determine loads based on a uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa), **as directed**, acting inward or outward.
3. Seismic Performance: Louvers, including attachments to other construction, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
a. Design earthquake spectral response acceleration, short period (Sds) for Project is **as directed.**
b. Component Importance Factor is 1.5 **OR** 1.0, **as directed**.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes, without buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects.
a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
5. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

6. Acoustic Performance: Provide acoustical louvers complying with ratings specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those specified, except for length and width for airborne sound-transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 **OR** outdoor-indoor sound-transmission loss according to ASTM E 966, **as directed**.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   a. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
2. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
3. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on tests performed according to AMCA 500-L.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
   b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
   c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."
2. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.
3. UL and NEMA Compliance: Provide motors and related components for motor-operated louvers that are listed and labeled by UL and comply with applicable NEMA standards.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
2. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
3. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 319.
4. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
5. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, No. 2B finish **OR** No. 2D finish **OR** No. 4 finish, with grain running parallel to length of blades and frame members **OR** No. 4 finish, with grain running perpendicular to length of blades and frame members **OR** No. 4 finish, with grain running perpendicular to length of blades and parallel to length of frame members **OR** No. 6 finish, **as directed**.
6. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
   a. Use Phillips flat-head **OR** hex-head or Phillips pan-head **OR** tamper-resistant, **as directed**, screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
   b. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
   c. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized steel or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
   d. For fastening stainless steel, use 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
   e. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
7. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed, for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
8. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

B. Fabrication, General
   1. Assemble louvers in factory to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
   2. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions, reinforced with splice plates.
      a. Continuous Vertical Assemblies: Fabricate units without interrupting blade-spacing pattern unless horizontal mullions are indicated **OR** where indicated, **as directed**.
      b. Horizontal Mullions: Provide horizontal mullions at joints unless continuous vertical assemblies are indicated **OR** where indicated, **as directed**.
   3. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, **as directed**, to produce uniform appearance.
   4. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
      a. Frame Type: Channel **OR** Exterior flange **OR** Interior flange, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
   6. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches (1830 mm) o.c., whichever is less.
      a. Fully Recessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions fully recessed behind louver blades. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
      b. Semirecessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions partly recessed behind louver blades so louver blades appear continuous. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with interlocking split mullions and close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
      c. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and contraction.
      d. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades **OR** blades with concealed close-fitting splices, **as directed**, and with fully recessed **OR** semirecessed, **as directed**, mullions at corners.
   7. Provide subsills made of same material as louvers **OR** extended sills, **as directed**, for recessed louvers.
   8. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view **OR** welds, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

C. Fixed, Extruded-Aluminum Louvers
   1. Horizontal Storm-Resistant Louver:
      a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 7 inches (175 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 9 inches (225 mm), **as directed**.
      b. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) for blades and 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) for frames, **as directed**.
      c. Louver Performance Ratings:
         1) Free Area: Not less than 5.0 sq. ft. (0.46 sq. m) **OR** 6.0 sq. ft. (0.56 sq. m) **OR** 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
         2) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 600-fpm (3.0-m/s) **OR** 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) **OR** 800-fpm (4.1-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.

3) Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99 **OR** 95 **OR** 80, **as directed**, percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of 3 inches (75 mm) per hour and a wind speed of 29 mph (13 m/s) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) per hour and a wind speed of 50 mph (22.4 m/s), **as directed**, at a core-area intake velocity of 300 fpm (1.5 m/s) **OR** 400 fpm (2.0 m/s) **OR** 500 fpm (2.5 m/s), **as directed**.

d. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

2. Vertical Storm-Resistant Louver:
   a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 9 inches (225 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) for blades and 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) for frames, **as directed**.
   c. Louver Performance Ratings:
      1) Free Area: Not less than 5.0 sq. ft. (0.46 sq. m) **OR** 6.0 sq. ft. (0.56 sq. m) **OR** 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m) **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
      2) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 600-fpm (3.0-m/s) **OR** 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) **OR** 800-fpm (4.1-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.
      3) Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99 percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of 3 inches (75 mm) per hour and a wind speed of 29 mph (13 m/s) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) per hour and a wind speed of 50 mph (22.4 m/s), **as directed**, at a core-area intake velocity of 300 fpm (1.5 m/s) **OR** 400 fpm (2.0 m/s) **OR** 500 fpm (2.5 m/s), **as directed**.
   d. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
3. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade Louver:
   a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) for blades and 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) for frames, **as directed**.
   c. Mullion Type: Exposed.
   d. Louver Performance Ratings:
      1) Free Area: Not less than 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m) **OR** 7.5 sq. ft. (0.70 sq. m) **OR** 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m) **OR** 8.5 sq. ft. (0.79 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
      2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 900 fpm (4.6 m/s) **OR** 950 fpm (4.8 m/s) **OR** 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s) **OR** 1050 fpm (5.3 m/s) **OR** 1100 fpm (5.6 m/s), **as directed**.
      3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) **OR** 750-fpm (3.8-m/s) **OR** 800-fpm (4.1-m/s) **OR** 850-fpm (4.3-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.
      4) Air Performance: Not more than 0.15-inch wg (37-Pa) static pressure drop at 900-fpm (4.6-m/s) **OR** 950-fpm (4.8-m/s) **OR** 1000-fpm (5.1-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.
   e. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
4. Horizontal, Continuous-Line, Drainable-Blade Louver: Drainable-blade louver with blade gutters (drains) in rear two-thirds of blades only and with semirecessed mullions capable of collecting and draining water from blades.
   a. Louver Depth: 6 inches (150 mm).
   b. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm).
   c. Louver Performance Ratings:
      1) Free Area: Not less than 7.8 sq. ft. (0.72 sq. m) for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
      2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 850 fpm (4.3 m/s).
      3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 800-fpm (4.1-m/s) free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.
5. Horizontal, Sightproof, Drainable-Blade Louver:

a. Louver Depth: 5 inches (125 mm).
b. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) for blades and 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) for frames, **as directed**.
c. Mullion Type: Exposed.
d. Louver Performance Ratings:
1) Free Area: Not less than 8.3 sq. ft. (0.77 sq. m) for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 750 fpm (3.8 m/s) **OR** 950 fpm (4.8 m/s), **as directed**.
3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 550-fpm (2.8-m/s) free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.

6. Horizontal, Nondrainable-Blade Louver:
a. Louver Depth: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
b. Blade Profile: Plain blade without **OR** Blade with, **as directed**, center baffle.
c. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) for blades and 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) for frames, **as directed**.
d. Mullion Type: Exposed **OR** Semirecessed **OR** Fully recessed, **as directed**.
e. Louver Performance Ratings:
1) Free Area: Not less than 7.5 sq. ft. (0.70 sq. m) **OR** 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m) **OR** 8.5 sq. ft. (0.79 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 700 fpm (3.6 m/s) **OR** 750 fpm (3.8 m/s) **OR** 800 fpm (4.1 m/s) **OR** 850 fpm (4.3 m/s) **OR** 900 fpm (4.6 m/s) **OR** 950 fpm (4.8 m/s), **as directed**.
3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 650-fpm (3.3-m/s) **OR** 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) **OR** 750-fpm (3.8-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.

7. Vertical, Sightproof, Louver:
a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm).
b. Blade Profile: Chevron **OR** Y **OR** Labyrinth, **as directed**,-shaped blade.
c. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) for blades and 0.080 inch (2.03 mm) for frames, **as directed**.
d. Blade Spacing: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
e. Mullion Type: Exposed **OR** Semirecessed **OR** Fully recessed, **as directed**.

D. Fixed, Formed-Metal Louvers
1. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade Louver:
a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
b. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) for frames and 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) for blades **OR** 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
c. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**.
d. Mullion Type: Exposed.
e. Louver Performance Ratings:
1) Free Area: Not less than 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m) **OR** 7.5 sq. ft. (0.70 sq. m) **OR** 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m) **OR** 8.5 sq. ft. (0.79 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 800 fpm (4.1 m/s) **OR** 850 fpm (4.3 m/s) **OR** 900 fpm (4.6 m/s) **OR** 950 fpm (4.8 m/s) **OR** 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s), **as directed**.
3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) **OR** 750-fpm (3.8-m/s) **OR** 800-fpm (4.1-m/s) **OR** 850-fpm (4.3-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.

4) Air Performance: Not more than 0.15-inch wg (37-Pa) static pressure drop at 900-fpm (4.6-m/s) **OR** 950-fpm (4.8-m/s) **OR** 1000-fpm (5.1-m/s), **as directed**, free-area velocity.

f. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

2. Horizontal, Nondrainable-Blade Louver:
   a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Blade Profile: Plain blade without **OR** Blade with, **as directed**, center baffle.
   c. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) for frames and 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) for blades **OR** 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   d. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**.
   e. Mullion Type: Exposed **OR** Semirecessed **OR** Fully recessed, **as directed**.
   f. Louver Performance Ratings:
      1) Free Area: Not less than 6.5 sq. ft. (0.60 sq. m) **OR** 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m) **OR** 7.5 sq. ft. (0.70 sq. m) **OR** 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
      2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 550 fpm (2.8 m/s) **OR** 600 fpm (3.0 m/s) **OR** 650 fpm (3.3 m/s) **OR** 700 fpm (3.6 m/s), **as directed**.
      3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 550-fpm (2.8-m/s) **OR** 600-fpm (3.0-m/s) **OR** 650-fpm (3.3-m/s) **OR** 700-fpm (3.6-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.

E. Adjustable, Extruded-Aluminum Louvers
   1. Louver Construction and Operation: Provide adjustable louvers with extruded-aluminum frames and blades not less than 0.080-inch (2.03-mm) nominal thickness, and with operating mechanisms to suit louver sizes.
      a. Hand operation with push bars.
      b. Crank operation with removable-crank operator in sill or jamb.
      c. Chain operation with tension spring, wall clip, pull chain, and 160 deg F (71 deg C) fusible link.
      d. Motor operation with 2-position, spring-return application (with power on, motor opens louver; with power off, spring closes louver); 110-V, 60-Hz motor and limit switch **OR** 2-direction, 110-V, 60-Hz motor and limit switches, **as directed**; equipped with frame-mounted switch **OR** remote-mounted switch with indicator light **OR** terminals for controlling devices, **as directed**.
      e. Pneumatic piston operation for use with 80- to 100-psi (550- to 690-kPa) compressed air for 2-position **OR** modulating, **as directed**, operation; power open, power close with spring-return fail-safe, **as directed**.
   2. Dual-Blade, Drainable-Blade, Adjustable Louver: Fixed drainable blades and adjustable plain blades combined in single frame.
      a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, overall.
      b. Louver Performance Ratings:
         1) Free Area: Not less than 6.0 sq. ft. (0.56 sq. m) **OR** 6.5 sq. ft. (0.60 sq. m) **OR** 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m) **OR** 7.5 sq. ft. (0.70 sq. m) **OR** 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
         2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 750 fpm (3.8 m/s) **OR** 800 fpm (4.1 m/s) **OR** 850 fpm (4.3 m/s) **OR** 900 fpm (4.6 m/s) **OR** 950 fpm (4.8 m/s) **OR** 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s), **as directed**.
         3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 750-fpm (3.8-m/s) **OR** 800-fpm (4.1-m/s) **OR** 850-fpm (4.3-m/s) **OR** 900-fpm (4.6-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.
         4) Air Leakage: Not more than 1.5 cfm/sq. ft. (7.6 L/s per sq. m) of louver gross area at a differential static pressure of 0.15-inch wg (37 Pa) with adjustable louver blades closed.

c. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

3. Single-Blade, Adjustable Louver:
   a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Blade Type: Drainable **OR** Plain, **as directed**.
   c. Accessories: Equip louvers as follows:
      1) Vinyl blade-edge gaskets for each louver blade.
      2) Stainless-steel jamb seals **OR** vinyl blade-end gaskets, **as directed**.
   d. Louver Performance Ratings:
      1) Free Area: Not less than 6.5 sq. ft. (0.60 sq. m) **OR** 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m) **OR** 7.5 sq. ft. (0.70 sq. m) **OR** 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
      2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) **OR** 600 fpm (3.0 m/s) **OR** 700 fpm (3.6 m/s) **OR** 800 fpm (4.1 m/s) **OR** 900 fpm (4.6 m/s) **OR** 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s), **as directed**.
      3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 500-fpm (2.5-m/s) **OR** 600-fpm (3.0-m/s) **OR** 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) **OR** 800-fpm (4.1-m/s) **OR** 900-fpm (4.6-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.
      4) Air Leakage: Not more than 3.5 cfm/sq. ft. (17.8 L/s per sq. m) of louver gross area at a differential static pressure of 0.15-inch wg (37 Pa) with adjustable louver blades closed.
   e. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

F. Adjustable, Formed-Metal Louvers
1. Louver Operation: Provide adjustable louvers with operating mechanisms to suit louver sizes.
   a. Hand operation with push bars.
   b. Crank operation with removable-crank operator in sill or jamb.
   c. Chain operation with tension spring, wall clip, pull chain, and 160 deg F (71 deg C) fusible link.
   d. Motor operation with 2-position, spring-return application (with power on, motor opens louver; with power off, spring closes louver); 110-V, 60-Hz motor and limit switch **OR** 2-direction, 110-V, 60-Hz motor and limit switches, **as directed**; equipped with frame-mounted switch **OR** remote-mounted switch with indicator light **OR** terminals for controlling devices, **as directed**.
   e. Pneumatic piston operation for use with 80- to 100-psi (550- to 690-kPa) compressed air for 2-position **OR** modulating, **as directed**, operation; power open, power close with spring-return fail-safe, **as directed**.
2. Dual-Blade, Drainable-Blade, Adjustable Louver: Fixed drainable blades and adjustable plain blades combined in single frame.
   a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, overall.
   b. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) for frames and 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) for blades **OR** 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**.
   d. Louver Performance Ratings:
      1) Air Leakage: Not more than 1.5 cfm/sq. ft. (7.6 L/s per sq. m) of louver gross area at a differential static pressure of 0.15-inch wg (37 Pa) with adjustable louver blades closed.
   e. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
3. Single-Blade, Adjustable Louver:
   a. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Blade Type: Drainable **OR** Plain, **as directed**.
   c. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) for frames and 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) for blades **OR** 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.

d. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**.
e. Accessories: Equip louvers as follows:
   1) Vinyl blade-edge gaskets for each louver blade.
   2) Stainless-steel jamb seals **OR** vinyl blade-end gaskets, **as directed**.
f. Louver Performance Ratings:
   1) Free Area: Not less than 6.5 sq. ft. (0.60 sq. m) **OR** 7.0 sq. ft. (0.65 sq. m) **OR** 7.5 sq. ft. (0.70 sq. m) **OR** 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m), **as directed**, for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
   2) Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 500 fpm (2.5 m/s) **OR** 600 fpm (3.0 m/s) **OR** 700 fpm (3.6 m/s) **OR** 800 fpm (4.1 m/s) **OR** 900 fpm (4.6 m/s) **OR** 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s), **as directed**.
   3) Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg (25-Pa) static pressure drop at 500-fpm (2.5-m/s) **OR** 600-fpm (3.0-m/s) **OR** 700-fpm (3.6-m/s) **OR** 800-fpm (4.1-m/s) **OR** 900-fpm (4.6-m/s), **as directed**, free-area exhaust **OR** intake, **as directed**, velocity.
   4) Air Leakage: Not more than 3.5 cfm/sq. ft. (17.8 L/s per sq. m) of louver gross area at a differential static pressure of 0.15-inch wg (37 Pa) with adjustable louver blades closed.
g. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

G. Adjustable, Insulated Louvers
1. Louver Operation: Provide adjustable louvers with operating mechanisms to suit louver sizes.
   a. Hand operation with push bars.
   b. Crank operation with removable-crank operator in sill or jamb.
   c. Chain operation with tension spring, wall clip, pull chain, and 160 deg F (71 deg C) fusible link.
   d. Motor operation with 2-position, spring-return application (with power on, motor opens louver; with power off, spring closes louver); 110-V, 60-Hz motor and limit switch **OR** 2-direction, 110-V, 60-Hz motor and limit switches, **as directed**; equipped with frame-mounted switch **OR** remote-mounted switch with indicator light **OR** terminals for controlling devices, **as directed**.
   e. Pneumatic piston operation for use with 80- to 100-psi (550- to 690-kPa) compressed air for 2-position **OR** modulating, **as directed**, operation; power open, power close with spring-return fail-safe, **as directed**.
2. Adjustable, Insulated, Extruded-Aluminum Louver: Single-blade, adjustable louver with gasketed, insulated blades. Frames and blade frames have urethane thermal break. Frames are extruded aluminum, not less than 0.080-inch (2.03-mm) nominal thickness. Blade facings are aluminum sheet, not less than 0.032-inch (0.81-mm) nominal thickness.
   a. Louver Depth: 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 9 inches (225 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene foam, 2 inches (50 mm) thick **OR** Foamed-in-place polyurethane, **as directed**.
3. Adjustable, Insulated, Formed-Metal Louver: Single-blade, adjustable louver with gasketed, insulated blades.
   a. Louver Depth: 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Frame Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Frame Material and Nominal Thickness: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**.
   d. Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) **OR** 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), **as directed**.
   e. Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) **OR** 0.038 inch (0.95 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**.

f. Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene foam, 1 inch (25 mm) thick **OR** Rigid, glass-fiber-board insulation, 1 inch (25 mm) thick **OR** Foamed-in-place polyurethane, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick, **as directed**.

H. Fixed, Acoustical Louvers
1. Fixed, Formed-Metal Acoustical Louver: Louver with formed-metal blades filled on interior with mineral-fiber, rigid-board, acoustical insulation retained by perforated metal sheet of same material and finish as blade.
   a. Louver Depth: 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Frame Material: Extruded-aluminum or aluminum sheet, not less than 0.080-inch (2.03-mm) nominal thickness.
   c. Frame Material: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   d. Blade Material: Aluminum sheet, not less than 0.063-inch (1.60-mm) **OR** 0.080-inch (2.03-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   e. Blade Material: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034-inch (0.86-mm) **OR** 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   f. Blade Shape: Straight **OR** Airfoil **OR** Chevron, **as directed**.
   g. Blade Angle: 45 degrees unless otherwise indicated.
   h. Blade Spacing: 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. for 6-inch- (150-mm-) deep louvers.
   i. Blade Spacing: 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**, o.c. for 8-inch- (200-mm-) deep louvers.
   j. Blade Spacing: 9 inches (225 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, o.c. for 12-inch- (300-mm-) deep louvers.
   k. Free Area: Not less than 4 sq. ft. (0.37 sq. m) for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.
   l. Airborne Sound-Transmission Loss: STC 10 per ASTM E 413, determined by testing per ASTM E 90.
   m. Outdoor-Indoor Sound-Transmission Loss: OITC 10 per ASTM E 1332, determined by testing per ASTM E 966.

I. Louver Screens
1. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver **OR** louvers indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
   b. Screen Location for Adjustable Louvers: Interior **OR** Exterior, **as directed**, face unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Screening Type: Bird screening **OR** Bird screening except where insect screening is indicated **OR** Insect screening, **as directed**.
2. Secure screen frames to louver frames with stainless-steel machine screws **OR** machine screws with heads finished to match louver, **as directed**, spaced a maximum of 6 inches (150 mm) from each corner and at 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
3. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
   a. Metal: Same kind and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips, **as directed**.
   b. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached **OR** Mill finish unless otherwise indicated, **as directed**.
   c. Type: Rewirable frames with a driven spline or insert **OR** Non-rewirable, U-shaped frames, **as directed**.
4. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
   a. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square mesh, 0.063-inch (1.60-mm) wire.
   b. Bird Screening: Stainless steel, 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square mesh, 0.047-inch (1.19-mm) wire.
   c. Bird Screening: Flattened, expanded aluminum, 3/4 by 0.050 inch (19 by 1.27 mm) thick.
   d. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh, 0.012-inch (0.30-mm) wire.

e. Insect Screening: Stainless steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm) wire.

5. Louver Screening for Galvanized-Steel Louvers:
   a. Bird Screening: Galvanized steel, 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square mesh, 0.041-inch (1.04-mm) wire.
   b. Bird Screening: Stainless steel, 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square mesh, 0.047-inch (1.19-mm) wire.
   c. Insect Screening: Galvanized steel, 18-by-14 (1.4-by-1.8-mm) mesh, 0.011-inch (0.28-mm) wire.
   d. Insect Screening: Stainless steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm) wire.
6. Louver Screening for Stainless-Steel Louvers:
   a. Bird Screening: Stainless steel, 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square mesh, 0.047-inch (1.19-mm) wire.
   b. Insect Screening: Stainless steel, 18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm) mesh, 0.009-inch (0.23-mm) wire.

J. Blank-Off Panels
1. Uninsulated, Blank-Off Panels: Metal sheet attached to back of louver.
   a. Aluminum sheet for aluminum louvers, not less than 0.050-inch (1.27-mm) nominal thickness.
   b. Galvanized-steel sheet for galvanized-steel louvers, not less than 0.040-inch (1.02-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
   c. Stainless-steel sheet for stainless-steel louvers, not less than 0.038-inch (0.95-mm) **OR** 0.050-inch (1.27-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness, with grain running in same direction as grain of louver blades.
   d. Panel Finish: Same finish applied to louvers **OR** Same type of finish applied to louvers, but black color, **as directed**.
   e. Attach blank-off panels with clips **OR** sheet metal screws, **as directed**.
2. Insulated, Blank-Off Panels: Laminated panels consisting of insulating core surfaced on back and front with metal sheets and attached to back of louver.
   a. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Metal Facing Sheets: Aluminum sheet, not less than 0.032-inch (0.81-mm) nominal thickness.
   c. Metal Facing Sheets: Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
   d. Metal Facing Sheets: Stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch (0.79-mm) nominal thickness.
   e. Insulating Core: Rigid, glass-fiber-board insulation **OR** extruded-polystyrene foam, **as directed**.
   f. Edge Treatment: Trim perimeter edges of blank-off panels with louver manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum-channel frames, not less than 0.080-inch (2.03-mm) nominal thickness **OR** channel frames, **as directed**, with corners mitered and with same finish as panels.
   g. Seal perimeter joints between panel faces and louver frames with gaskets or sealant.
   h. Panel Finish: Same finish applied to louvers **OR** Same type of finish applied to louvers, but black color, **as directed**.
   i. Attach blank-off panels with clips **OR** sheet metal screws, **as directed**.

K. Wall Vents (Brick Vents)
1. Extruded-Aluminum Wall Vents:
   a. Extruded-aluminum louvers and frames, not less than 0.125-inch (3.18-mm) nominal thickness, assembled by welding; with 18-by-14- (1.4-by-1.8-mm-) mesh, aluminum insect screening on inside face; incorporating weep holes, continuous drip at sill, and integral waterstop on inside edge of sill; of load-bearing design and construction.

b. Dampers: Aluminum blades and frames mounted on inside of wall vents; operated from exterior with Allen wrench in socket-head cap screw. Fabricate operating mechanism from Type 304 stainless-steel components.
c. Finish: Mill finish.

2. Cast-Aluminum Wall Vents:
a. One-piece, cast-aluminum louvers and frames; with 18-by-14- (1.4-by-1.8-mm-) mesh, aluminum insect screening on inside face; incorporating integral waterstop on inside edge of sill; of load-bearing design and construction.
b. Dampers: Aluminum blades and frames mounted on inside of wall vents; operated from exterior with Allen wrench in socket-head cap screw. Fabricate operating mechanism from Type 304 stainless-steel components.
c. Finish: Mill finish.

L. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

M. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish louvers after assembly.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
a. Color: As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities.
4. Conversion-Coated Finish: AA-C12C42 (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating).
5. Conversion-Coated and Factory-Primed Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below).
a. Organic Coating: Air-dried primer of not less than 2-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
6. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. High-Performance Organic Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. High-Performance Organic Finish: 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**,-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

N. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes
1. Finish louvers after assembly.
2. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair according to ASTM A 780.
3. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard 2-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting

topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).

a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

O. Stainless-Steel Sheet Finishes

1. Repair sheet finish by grinding and polishing irregularities, weld spatter, scratches, and forming marks to match surrounding finish.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Locate and place louvers and vents level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
2. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
3. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
4. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
5. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
6. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
7. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

B. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Test operation of adjustable louvers and adjust as needed to produce fully functioning units that comply with requirements.
2. Clean exposed surfaces of louvers and vents that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
3. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
4. Restore louvers and vents damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by the Owner, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
   a. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 08 90 00 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
08 91 16 00	08 90 00 00	Louvers And Vents
08 95 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
08 95 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
08 95 16 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
08 95 16 00	07 71 23 00	Miscellaneous Ornamental Metals

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 01 40 81 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for plumbing fixtures. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:
   a. Faucets for lavatories, bathtubs, bathtub/showers, showers, and sinks.
   b. Laminar-flow faucet-spout outlets.
   c. Flushometers.
   d. Toilet seats.
   e. Protective shielding guards.
   f. Fixture supports.
   g. Interceptors.
   h. Shower receptors.
   i. Dishwasher air-gap fittings.
   j. Disposers.
   k. Hot-water dispensers.
   l. Water closets.
   m. Urinals.
   n. Bidets.
   o. Lavatories.
   p. Commercial sinks.
   q. Shampoo bowls.
   r. Wash fountains.
   s. Bathtubs.
   t. Individual showers.
   u. Group showers.
   v. Whirlpool bathtubs.
   w. Kitchen sinks.
   x. Service sinks.
   y. Service basins.
   z. Laundry trays.
   aa. Sacristy sinks.

C. Definitions
1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
3. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
4. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.
5. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.
6. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
7. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
8. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

9. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit WE 2, 3.1, and 3.2: Documentation indicating flow and water consumption requirements.
3. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Operation and maintenance data
5. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities" **OR** Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act", **as directed**; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
3. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
4. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
5. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
6. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
   a. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
   b. Plastic Bathtubs: ANSI Z124.1.
   c. Plastic Lavatories: ANSI Z124.3.
   d. Plastic Laundry Trays: ANSI Z124.6.
   e. Plastic Mop-Service Basins: ANSI Z124.6.
   f. Plastic Shower Enclosures: ANSI Z124.2.
   g. Plastic Sinks: ANSI Z124.6.
   h. Plastic Urinal Fixtures: ANSI Z124.9.
   i. Plastic Whirlpool Bathtubs: ANSI Z124.1 and ASME A112.19.7M.
   j. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
   k. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
   l. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
   m. Stainless-Steel Commercial, Handwash Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
   n. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
   o. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
   p. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
   q. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
   r. Whirlpool Bathtub Fittings: ASME A112.19.8M.
7. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
   a. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
   b. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
   c. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
   d. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
   e. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
   f. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
   g. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.

h. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
i. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
j. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
k. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
l. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.

8. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for bathtub, bathtub/shower, and shower faucets:
   a. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
   b. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
   c. Deck-Mounted Bath/Shower Transfer Valves: ASME 18.7.
   d. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
   e. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
   f. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
   g. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
   h. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
   i. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
   j. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
   k. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
   l. Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
9. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
   a. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
   b. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
   c. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
   d. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
   e. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
   f. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
   g. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
10. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
    a. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
    b. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
    c. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
    d. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
    e. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
    f. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
    g. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
    h. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
    i. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
    j. Plastic Shower Receptors: ANSI Z124.2.
    k. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
    l. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.
    m. Whirlpool Bathtub Equipment: UL 1795.

F. Warranty
1. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of whirlpools that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period for Commercial Applications: One **OR** Three, **as directed**, year(s) from date of Final Completion.
   b. Warranty Period for Residential Applications of Shells: Five **OR** 20 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
   c. Warranty Period for Residential Applications of Pumps and Blowers: Five **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

d. Warranty Period for Residential Applications of Electronic Controls: Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Lavatory Faucets
1. Description: Single-control mixing **OR** Single-control nonmixing **OR** Two-handle mixing, **as directed**, valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass **OR** General-duty, solid brass **OR** General-duty, solid brass or copper or brass underbody with brass cover plate **OR** General-duty, copper or brass underbody with brass cover plate **OR** Residential, nonmetallic underbody with brass cover plate **OR** Residential, nonmetallic underbody with nonmetallic cover plate, **as directed**.
b. Finish: Polished chrome plate **OR** Polished brass **OR** Nonmetallic, **as directed**.
c. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm (1.5 L/min.) **OR** 2.2 gpm (8.3 L/min.) **OR** 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.), **as directed**.
OR
Maximum Flow: 0.25 gal. (0.95 L).
d. Centers: 3-3/8 inches (86 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** Single hole **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**.
e. Mounting: Deck, exposed **OR** Deck, concealed **OR** Back/wall, exposed **OR** Back/wall, concealed, **as directed**.
f. Valve Handle(s): Lever **OR** Knob **OR** Knob, nonmetallic **OR** Cross, four arm **OR** Wrist blade, 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** Elbow, 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** Push button **OR** Not applicable, **as directed**.
g. Inlet(s): NPS 3/8 (DN 10) tubing, plain end **OR** NPS 3/8 (DN 10) tubing, with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) male adaptor **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15) male shank **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15) female shank, **as directed**.
h. Spout: Rigid **OR** Swing **OR** Rigid, gooseneck **OR** Swivel, gooseneck, **as directed**, type.
i. Spout Outlet: Aerator **OR** Spray **OR** Laminar flow **OR** Plain end **OR** Spray, 0.5 gpm (1.5 L/min.), **as directed**.
j. Operation: Compression, manual **OR** Noncompression, manual **OR** Sensor **OR** Self-closing, metering, **as directed**.
k. Drain: Not required **OR** Pop up **OR** Stopper with chain **OR** Grid **OR** Lift and turn, **as directed**.
l. Tempering Device: Mechanical **OR** Thermostatic **OR** Pressure balance **OR** Not required, **as directed**.

B. Bathtub Faucets
1. Description: Single-control mixing **OR** Two-handle mixing **OR** Three-handle mixing **OR** Push-button, metering, nonmixing, **as directed**, valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators and tub spout. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies.
a. Body Material: Solid brass.
b. Finish: Polished chrome plate **OR** Polished brass, **as directed**.
c. Mounting: Deck **OR** Exposed, over rim **OR** Wall, **as directed**.
d. Valve Handle(s): Lever **OR** Knob **OR** Knob, nonmetallic **OR** Cross, four arm **OR** Not applicable, **as directed**.
e. Bathtub Spout: Chrome-plated brass with diverter, **as directed**.
f. Operation: Compression, manual **OR** Noncompression, manual **OR** Sensor, **as directed**.
g. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), union **OR** Sweat, **as directed**.

C. Bathtub/Shower Faucets

1. Description: Single-handle pressure-balance **OR** thermostatic **OR** thermostatic/pressure-balance, **as directed**, valve for bathtub and for shower. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; tub spout; and shower head, arm, and flange. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies; coordinate outlet with diverter valve.
   a. Body Material: Solid brass with nonmetallic trim, **as directed**.
   b. Finish: Polished chrome plate **OR** Polished brass, **as directed**.
   c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.), unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Diverter Valve: Integral **OR** Not integral, **as directed**, with mixing valve.
   e. Mounting: Wall.
   f. Bathtub Spout: Chrome-plated brass with diverter, **as directed**.
   g. Operation: Compression, manual **OR** Noncompression, manual **OR** Sensor, **as directed**.
   h. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve **OR** Separate unit, **as directed**.
   i. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
   j. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), union **OR** Sweat, **as directed**.
   k. Backflow Protection Device for Hand-Held Shower: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   l. Shower Head Type: Ball joint **OR** Without ball joint **OR** Ball joint and head integral with mounting flange **OR** Integral with mounting flange **OR** Hand held, slide-bar mounted **OR** Hand held, hook mounted, **as directed**.
   m. Shower Head Material: Metallic **OR** Nonmetallic **OR** Combined, metallic and nonmetallic, **as directed**, with chrome-plated finish.
   n. Spray Pattern: Fixed **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**.
   o. Integral Volume Control: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   p. Shower-Arm Flow-Control Fitting: Not required **OR** 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/min.) **OR** 2.0 gpm (7.6 L/min.), **as directed**.

D. Shower Faucets
   1. Description: Single-handle pressure-balance **OR** thermostatic **OR** thermostatic and pressure-balance, **as directed**, valve. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and shower head, arm, and flange. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and outlet with diverter valve.
      a. Body Material: Solid brass with nonmetallic trim, **as directed**.
      b. Finish: Polished chrome plate **OR** Polished brass, **as directed**.
      c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.), unless otherwise indicated.
      d. Diverter Valve: Not required **OR** Integral with mixing valve **OR** Not integral with mixing valve, **as directed**.
      e. Mounting: Exposed **OR** Concealed, **as directed**.
      f. Backflow Protection Device for Hand-Held Shower: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      g. Operation: Compression, manual **OR** Noncompression, manual **OR** Sensor, **as directed**.
      h. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve **OR** Separate unit **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      i. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
      j. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), union **OR** Sweat, **as directed**.
      k. Shower Head Type: Ball joint **OR** Without ball joint **OR** Ball joint and head integral with mounting flange **OR** Integral with mounting flange **OR** Hand held, slide-bar mounted **OR** Hand held, hook mounted, **as directed**.
      l. Shower Head Material: Metallic **OR** Nonmetallic **OR** Combined, metallic and nonmetallic, **as directed**, with chrome-plated finish.
      m. Spray Pattern: Fixed **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**.
      n. Integral Volume Control: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      o. Shower-Arm Flow-Control Fitting: Not required **OR** 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/min.) **OR** 2.0 gpm (7.6 L/min.), **as directed**.

p. Temperature Indicator: Not required **OR** Integral with faucet, **as directed**.

E. Sink Faucets
1. Description: Kitchen faucet with spray, three-hole fixture **OR** Kitchen faucet with spray, four-hole fixture **OR** Kitchen faucet without spray **OR** Laundry tray faucet **OR** Service sink faucet with stops in shanks, vacuum breaker, hose-thread outlet, and pail hook **OR** Bar sink faucet, **as directed**. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
   a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass **OR** General-duty, solid brass **OR** General-duty, solid brass or copper or brass underbody with brass cover plate **OR** General-duty, copper or brass underbody with brass cover plate **OR** Residential, nonmetallic underbody with brass cover plate **OR** Residential, nonmetallic underbody with nonmetallic cover plate, **as directed**.
   b. Finish: Polished chrome plate **OR** Polished brass **OR** Nonmetallic **OR** Polished or rough brass **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
   c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.), unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Mixing Valve: Single control **OR** Two-lever handle, **as directed**.
   e. Backflow Protection Device for Hose Outlet: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   f. Backflow Protection Device for Side Spray: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   g. Centers: 3-3/8 inches (86 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** Single hole **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**.
   h. Mounting: Deck **OR** Back/wall, **as directed**, exposed **OR** concealed, **as directed**.
   i. Handle(s): Lever **OR** Knob **OR** Knob, nonmetallic **OR** Cross, four arm **OR** Wrist blade, 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** Elbow, 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** Not applicable, **as directed**.
   j. Inlet(s): NPS 3/8 (DN 10) plain-end tubing **OR** NPS 3/8 (DN 10) tubing with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) male adapter **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15) male shank **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15) female shank, **as directed**.
   k. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass **OR** Rigid, solid brass with wall brace **OR** Swing, round tubular **OR** Swing, shaped tube **OR** Swing, solid brass **OR** Rigid gooseneck **OR** Swivel gooseneck, **as directed**.
   l. Spout Outlet: Aerator **OR** Swivel aerator/spray **OR** Spray **OR** Laminar flow **OR** Hose thread **OR** Plain end, **as directed**.
   m. Vacuum Breaker: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   n. Operation: Compression, manual **OR** Noncompression, manual **OR** Sensor, **as directed**.
   o. Drain: Not required **OR** Pop up **OR** Stopper with chain **OR** Grid **OR** Lift and turn, **as directed**.

F. Laminar-Flow Faucet-Spout Outlets
1. Description: Chrome-plated-brass faucet-spout outlet that produces non-aerating, laminar stream. Include male or female thread that mates with faucet outlet for attachment to faucets where indicated and flow-rate range that includes flow of faucet.

G. Flushometers
1. Description: Flushometer for urinal-type **OR** water-closet-type, **as directed**, fixture. Include brass body with corrosion-resistant internal components, non-hold-open feature, **as directed**, control stop with check valve, vacuum breaker, copper or brass tubing, and polished chrome-plated finish on exposed parts.
   a. Internal Design: Diaphragm **OR** Piston, **as directed**, operation.
   b. Style: Exposed **OR** Concealed, **as directed**.
   c. Inlet Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1 (DN 25), **as directed**.
   d. Trip Mechanism: Oscillating, lever-handle actuator **OR** Mechanical, push-button actuator with stainless-steel access plate **OR** Hydraulic, push-button actuator **OR** Foot-pedal actuator **OR** Hard-wired, electric-sensor actuator **OR** Battery-operated sensor actuator, **as directed**.

e. Consumption: 0.5 gal./flush (1.9 L/flush) **OR** 1.0 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush) **OR** 1.5 gal./flush (5.7 L/flush) **OR** 1.6 gal./flush (6.0 L/flush) **OR** 3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush), **as directed**.
f. Tailpiece Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, and standard, **as directed**, length to top of bowl.

H. Toilet Seats
1. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture.
a. Material: Molded, solid plastic with antimicrobial agent, **as directed**.
b. Configuration: Closed **OR** Open, **as directed**, front with **OR** without, **as directed**, cover.
c. Size: Elongated **OR** Regular, **as directed**.
d. Hinge Type: CK, check **OR** SS, self-sustaining **OR** SC, self-sustaining, check **OR** SR, self-raising, **as directed**.
e. Class: Residential **OR** Standard commercial **OR** Heavy-duty commercial, **as directed**.
f. Color: White **OR** Black, **as directed**.

I. Protective Shielding Guards
1. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
a. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply **OR** hot- and cold-water supplies, **as directed**, and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
2. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
a. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

J. Fixture Supports
1. Water-Closet Supports:
a. Description: Combination carrier designed for accessible **OR** standard, **as directed**, mounting height of wall-mounting, water-closet-type fixture. Include single or double, vertical or horizontal, hub-and-spigot or hubless waste fitting as required for piping arrangement; faceplates; couplings with gaskets; feet; and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.
2. Urinal Supports:
a. Description: Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture **OR** Type II, urinal carrier with hanger and bearing plates, **as directed**, for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
b. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.
3. Lavatory Supports:
a. Description: Type I, lavatory carrier with exposed arms and tie rods **OR** Type II, lavatory carrier with concealed arms and tie rod **OR** Type III, lavatory carrier with hanger plate and tie rod, **as directed**, for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
b. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.
4. Sink Supports:
a. Description: Type I, sink carrier with exposed arms and tie rods **OR** Type II, sink carrier with hanger plate, bearing studs, and tie rod **OR** Type III, sink carrier with hanger plate and exposed arms, **as directed**, for sink-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.

K. Interceptors
1. Hair Interceptors:
a. Description: Manufactured unit with removable screen or strainer and removable cover; designed to trap and retain hair.
1) Material: Brass **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, body.
2) Pipe Connections: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**.
2. Sediment Interceptors:

a. Description: Manufactured unit with removable screens or strainer and removable cover; designed to trap and retain waste material.
   1) Material: Cast-iron or steel body with acid-resistant lining and coating **OR** Carbon-steel body with acid-resistant lining and coating **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**.
   2) Pipe Connections: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50), **as directed**.

L. Shower Receptors
1. Description: Cast-polymer **OR** FRP **OR** PMMA **OR** Precast-terrazzo **OR** Solid-surface, **as directed**, base for built-up-type shower fixture.
   1) Type: Standard, residential **OR** Handicapped/wheelchair, **as directed**.
   2) Size: 32 by 32 inches (813 by 813 mm) **OR** 36 by 36 inches (914 by 914 mm) **OR** 32 by 42 inches (813 by 1067 mm) **OR** 48 by 60 inches (1219 by 1524 mm), **as directed**.
   3) Color: White.
   4) Outlet: Cast-in-floor drain **OR** Drain, **as directed**, with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50) **OR** NPS 3 (DN 80), **as directed**, outlet.

M. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings
1. Description: Fitting suitable for use with domestic dishwashers and for deck mounting; with plastic body, chrome-plated brass cover, **as directed**; and capacity of at least 5 gpm (0.32 L/s); and inlet pressure of at least 5 psig (35 kPa) at a temperature of at least 140 deg F (60 deg C). Include 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) ID inlet and 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) ID outlet hose connections.
2. Hoses: Rubber and suitable for temperature of at least 140 deg F (60 deg C).
   a. Inlet Hose: 5/8-inch (16-mm) ID and 48 inches (1219 mm) long.
   b. Outlet Hose: 7/8-inch (22-mm) ID and 48 inches (1219 mm) long.

N. Disposers
1. Description: Batch-feed **OR** Continuous-feed, **as directed**, household, food-waste disposer. Include reset button; wall switch; corrosion-resistant chamber with jam-resistant, cutlery- or stainless-steel grinder or shredder; NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) outlet; quick-mounting, stainless-steel sink flange; antisplash guard; and combination cover/stopper.
   a. Type: Batch-feed **OR** Continuous-feed, **as directed**, household.
   b. Model: Not applicable **OR** Sound-insulated chamber **OR** Sound-insulated chamber and stainless-steel outer shell, **as directed**.
   c. Motor: 115-V ac, 1725 rpm, 1/3 **OR** 1/2 **OR** 3/4 **OR** 1, **as directed**, hp with overload protection.

O. Hot-Water Dispensers
1. Description: Gooseneck spout with lever-handle **OR** Spout with twist-knob or push-button, **as directed**, flow control, household-type dispenser with instant on-off control; insulated, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank that is open to atmosphere; electric heating element; chrome-plated faucet or spout; removable strainer; thermostat control for water temperature up to 190 deg F (88 deg C); and thermal-overload protection.
   a. Storage Tank Capacity: 0.5 gal. (1.5 L).
   b. Heating Element: 750 W minimum, 115-V ac.

P. Water Closets
1. Water Closets, Wall-Mounting, Back-Outlet Type:
   a. Description Accessible, wall-mounting **OR** Wall-mounting, **as directed**, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer-tank **OR** gravity-type tank **OR** flushometer valve, **as directed**, operation.
      1) Style: Close coupled **OR** One piece, **as directed**.
         a) Bowl Type: Elongated **OR** Round front, **as directed**, with siphon-jet design.
         b) Design Consumption: 1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush) **OR** 3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush), **as directed**.

c) Tank: Gravity type with trim **OR** Flushometer-tank type with trim and pressurized tank, **as directed**. Include cover.
d) Trip Mechanism: Lever-handle **OR** Push-button, **as directed**, actuator.
e) Color: White.

2) Supply: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or copper with wheel-handle **OR** screwdriver **OR** loose-key, **as directed**, stop.
3) Style: Flushometer valve.
a) Bowl Type: Elongated **OR** Round front, **as directed**, with siphon-jet **OR** blowout, **as directed**, design.
b) Design Consumption: 1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush) **OR** 3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush), **as directed**.
c) Color: White.
4) Fixture Support: Water-closet support <Insert designation> combination carrier.

2. Water Closets, Floor-Mounting, Floor-Outlet Type:
a. Description: Accessible, floor-mounting **OR** Floor-mounting, **as directed**, floor-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for gravity-type tank **OR** flushometer tank **OR** flushometer valve, **as directed**, operation.
1) Style: Close coupled **OR** One piece, **as directed**.
a) Bowl Type: Elongated **OR** Round front, **as directed**, with siphon-jet design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
b) Height: Standard **OR** Accessible **OR** Juvenile **OR** Child, **as directed**.
c) Design Consumption: 1 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush) **OR** 1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush) **OR** 3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush), **as directed**.
d) Tank: Gravity type with trim **OR** Flushometer-tank type with trim and pressurized tank, **as directed**. Include cover.
e) Trip Mechanism: Lever-handle **OR** Push-button, **as directed**, actuator.
f) Color: White.
2) Supply: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, chrome-plated brass or copper with wheel-handle **OR** screwdriver **OR** loose-key, **as directed**, stop.
3) Style: Flushometer valve.
a) Bowl Type: Elongated **OR** Round front, **as directed**, with siphon-jet **OR** reverse-trap **OR** blowout **OR** siphon-vortex **OR** siphon-wash **OR** washdown, **as directed**, design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
b) Height: Standard **OR** Accessible **OR** Juvenile **OR** Child, **as directed**.
c) Design Consumption: 1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush) **OR** 3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush), **as directed**.
d) Color: White.

3. Water Closets, Floor-Mounting, Back-Outlet Type:
a. Description Accessible, floor-mounting **OR** Floor-mounting, **as directed**, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for gravity-tank **OR** flushometer-tank **OR** flushometer-valve, **as directed**, operation.
1) Style: Close coupled.
a) Bowl Type: Elongated with siphon-jet design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
b) Height: Standard **OR** Accessible, **as directed**.
c) Design Consumption: 1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush).
d) Tank: Gravity type with trim. Include cover.
e) Trip Mechanism: Lever-handle actuator.
f) Color: White.
2) Supply: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or copper with wheel-handle **OR** screwdriver **OR** loose-key, **as directed**, stop.
3) Style: Flushometer valve.
a) Bowl Type: Elongated with siphon-jet design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
b) Height: Standard **OR** Accessible, **as directed**.

c) Design Consumption: 1.6 gal./flush (6 L/flush) **OR** 3.5 gal./flush (13.3 L/flush), **as directed**.
d) Color: White.

4) Wall Support: Manufactured waste fitting with seal and fixture bolts.

Q. Urinals

1. Urinals, Wall-Mounting, Back-Outlet Type:
   a. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting **OR** Wall-mounting, **as directed**, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
      1) Type: Blowout **OR** Siphon jet **OR** Blowout with extended shields **OR** Siphon jet with extended shields **OR** Washout with extended shields, **as directed**.
      2) Strainer or Trapway: Integral cast strainer **OR** Separate removable strainer **OR** Open trapway, **as directed**, with integral trap.
      3) Design Consumption: 0.5 gal./flush (1.9 L/flush) **OR** 1 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush) **OR** 1.5 gal./flush (5.7 L/flush), **as directed**.
      4) Color: White.
      5) Supply Spud Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**.
      6) Outlet Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50) **OR** NPS 3 (DN 80), **as directed**.
      7) Fixture Support: Urinal chair carrier.
2. Urinals, Wall-Mounting, Bottom-Outlet Type:
   a. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting **OR** Wall-mounting, **as directed**, bottom-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
      1) Type: Washout **OR** Washdown, **as directed**.
      2) Strainer or Trapway: Integral cast strainer **OR** Separate removable strainer **OR** Open trapway, **as directed**.
      3) Design Consumption: 0.5 gal./flush (1.9 L/flush) **OR** 1 gal./flush (3.8 L/flush), **as directed**.
      4) Color: White.
      5) Supply Spud Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
      6) Outlet Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
      7) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
      8) Flushing Device: Fixture manufacturer's standard matching fixture.
      9) Flushometer: **As directed.**
      10) Fixture Support: Urinal chair carrier.
3. Urinals, Stall-Type, Bottom-Outlet:
   a. Description Stall-type, bottom-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for flushometer valve operation.
4. Urinals, Wall-Mounting, Bottom-Outlet, Trough-Type:
   a. Description: Wall-mounting, bottom-outlet, trough-type, enameled, cast-iron fixture modified for flushometer valve operation.
      1) Style: Similar to wash sink with back and without pedestal.
      2) Size: 36 inches (915 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1219 mm) **OR** 60 inches (1525 mm) **OR** 72 inches (1830 mm), **as directed**.
      3) Color: White.
      4) Drain: Separate removable dome strainer.
      5) Design Consumption: Not applicable.
      6) Supply: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
      7) Outlet Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
      8) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
      9) Flushing Device: Fixture manufacturer's standard, with washdown pipe, matching fixture.

10) Fixture Support: Sink chair carrier.

5. Urinals, Wall-Mounting, Back-Outlet Dry Type:
   a. Description Accessible, wall-mounting **OR** Wall-mounting, **as directed**, back-outlet dry, plastic **OR** vitreous-china, **as directed**, fixture designed for liquid-trap-seal operation.
      1) Type: Without water supply.
      2) Trap-Seal Method: Proprietary cartridge or trap system.
      3) Color: White.
      4) Outlet Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50), **as directed**. Include transition coupling, if required.
      5) Trap-Sealing Liquid: Proprietary.
      6) Fixture Support: Urinal chair carrier.

R. Bidets
1. Description: Floor-mounting, vitreous-china fixture with fittings.
   a. Type: With spray **OR** flushing rim **OR** spray and flushing rim, **as directed**, and overflow. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
   b. Faucet Hole Punching: One **OR** Two **OR** Three **OR** Four **OR** No, **as directed**, hole(s).
   c. Color: White.
   d. Faucet: Fixture manufacturer's standard, or two-valve supply, provided by fixture supplier, with vacuum breaker, diverter, submerged spray, **OR** over-rim filling, **as directed**, pop-up waste, and chrome-plated finish.
   e. Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, chrome-plated copper with stops.
   f. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) **OR** 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-), **as directed**, thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.

S. Lavatories
1. Lavatories, Wall-Mounting Type:
   a. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting **OR** Wall-mounting **OR** Wall-and-pedestal-mounting, **as directed**, enameled, cast-iron **OR** vitreous-china, **as directed**, fixture.
      1) Type: With back **OR** Ledge back **OR** Shelf back **OR** Slab **OR** Pedestal, **as directed**.
      2) Size: 18 by 15 inches (457 by 381 mm) **OR** 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm) **OR** 20 by 18 inches (508 by 457 mm) **OR** 24 by 20 inches (610 by 508 mm), **as directed**, rectangular.
      3) Faucet Hole Punching: One hole **OR** Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers **OR** Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers, **as directed**.
      4) Faucet Hole Location: Top **OR** Front wall **OR** Inclined panel, **as directed**.
      5) Pedestal: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
      6) Color: White.
      7) Faucet: Lavatory with pop-up waste **OR** for separate drain, **as directed**.
      8) Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
      9) Drain: See faucet **OR** Grid **OR** Grid with offset waste, **as directed**.
         a) Location: Not applicable **OR** Near back of bowl, **as directed**.
      10) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) **OR** 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-), **as directed**, thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
          OR
          Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
          a) Exception: Omit P-trap if hair interceptor is required.
      11) Hair Interceptor: Not required.
      12) Protective Shielding Guard(s): **As directed**.

13) Fixture Support: Lavatory.

2. Lavatories, Counter-Mounting Type:
   a. Description: Accessible **OR** Counter-mounting **OR** Undercounter-mounting, **as directed**, enameled, cast-iron **OR** FRP **OR** PMMA **OR** porcelain-enameled, formed-steel **OR** solid-surface **OR** stainless-steel **OR** vitreous-china, **as directed** fixture.
      1) Type: Flat rim with ledge **OR** Self-rimming, **as directed**.
      2) Rectangular Lavatory Size: 18 by 15 inches (457 by 381 mm) **OR** 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm) **OR** 20 by 18 inches (508 by 457 mm) **OR** 24 by 20 inches (610 by 508 mm), **as directed**.
      3) Oval Lavatory Size: 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm) **OR** 20 by 17 inches (508 by 432 mm), **as directed**.
      4) Round Lavatory Size: 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 19 inches (483 mm), **as directed**, in diameter.
      5) Faucet Hole Punching: One hole **OR** Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers **OR** Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers, **as directed**.
      6) Faucet Hole Location: Top **OR** Front wall **OR** Inclined panel, **as directed**.
      7) Color: White.
      8) Faucet: Lavatory with pop-up waste **OR** for separate drain, **as directed**.
      9) Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
      10) Drain: See faucet **OR** Grid **OR** Grid with offset waste, **as directed**.
         a) Location: Not applicable **OR** Near back of bowl, **as directed**.
      11) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) **OR** 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-), **as directed**, thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
         OR
         Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
         a) Exception: Omit P-trap if hair interceptor is required.
      12) Hair Interceptor: Not required.
      13) Protective Shielding Guard(s): **As directed**.
3. Lavatories, Countertop With Integral Bowl Type:
   a. Description: Countertop **OR** Accessible countertop, **as directed**, with integral bowl fixtures for mounting on base unit.
      1) Backsplash: Integral with countertop **OR** Separate, same material as countertop **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      2) Overall Rectangular Top Size: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 432 mm) **OR** 31 by 19 inches (787 by 483 mm) **OR** 49 by 22 inches (1245 by 559 mm) **OR** 73 by 22 inches (1854 by 559 mm), **as directed**, with 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**, bowl(s).
         a) Bowl Size: Oval 19 by 16 inches (483 by 406 mm) **OR** 20 by 17 inches (508 by 432 mm), **as directed**.
      3) Faucet Hole Punching: One hole **OR** Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers **OR** Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers, **as directed**.
      4) Faucet Hole Location: Countertop.
      5) Color: White.
      6) Faucet(s): Lavatory with pop-up waste **OR** with separate drain, **as directed**, for each bowl.
      7) Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
      8) Drain(s): See faucets **OR** Grid **OR** Grid with offset waste, **as directed**.
         a) Location: Not applicable **OR** Near back of bowl, **as directed**.
      9) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) **OR** 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-), **as directed**, thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.

OR

Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.

10) Hair Interceptor(s): **As directed** for bowls as indicated.
11) Protective Shielding Guard(s): **As directed** for bowls as indicated.

4. Lavatories, For Wheelchair-Bound Persons:
   a. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting, vitreous-china fixture designed for people in wheelchairs.
      1) Type: Ledge back **OR** Shelf back **OR** Slab, **as directed**.
      2) Size: 20 by 26 inches (508 by 660 mm) minimum; rectangular.
      3) Faucet Hole Punching: One hole **OR** Three holes, 2-inch (51-mm) centers **OR** Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers **OR** Three holes, 8-inch (203-mm) centers **OR** Three holes, 12-inch (305-mm) centers, **as directed**.
      4) Color: White.
      5) Faucet: Lavatory for separate drain.
      6) Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
      7) Drain: Grid **OR** Grid with offset waste, **as directed**.
      8) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.

         OR

         Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 by DN 40), **as directed**, P-trap; NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed**, tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
      9) Fixture Support: Lavatory.

T. Commercial Sinks
   1. Commercial Sinks, Counter-Mounting Type:
      a. Description: One-compartment **OR** Two-compartment **OR** Three-compartment, **as directed**, counter-mounting, stainless-steel commercial sink with backsplash.
         1) Metal Thickness: 0.050 inch (1.3 mm).
         2) Compartment (for single-compartment sink):
            a) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste, **as directed**.
               i. Location: Centered in compartment **OR** Near back of compartment **OR** Near left side of compartment **OR** Near right side of compartment, **as directed**.
         3) Each Compartment (for multiple-compartment sink):
            a) Drains: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste, **as directed.**
               i. Location: Centered in compartment **OR** Near back of compartment, **as directed**.
         4) Faucet(s): Sink.
            a) Number Required: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
            b) Mounting: Deck.
         5) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 3/4 (DN 20), **as directed**, chrome-plated copper with stops or shutoff valves.
         6) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50), **as directed**, chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass **OR** copper pipe, **as directed**, waste to wall; continuous waste, **as directed**; and wall escutcheon(s).
   2. Commercial Sinks, Freestanding Type:

a. Description: One-compartment **OR** Two-compartment **OR** Three-compartment, **as directed**, freestanding, stainless-steel commercial sink with backsplash.
   1) Metal Thickness: 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.063 inch (1.6 mm), **as directed**.
   2) Compartment (for single-compartment sink):
      a) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste, **as directed**.
         i. Location: Centered in compartment **OR** Near back of compartment **OR** Near left side of compartment **OR** Near right side of compartment, **as directed**.
   3) Each Compartment (for multiple-compartment sink):
      a) Drains: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece and twist drain **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with stopper **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece with pop-up waste, **as directed**.
         i. Location: Centered in compartment **OR** Near back of compartment, **as directed**.
   4) Drainboard(s): Not required **OR** Both **OR** Left **OR** Right, **as directed**, side(s).
      a) Dimensions Each: Not applicable.
   5) Supports: Adjustable-length, steel legs.
   6) Faucet(s): Sink.
      a) Number Required: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
      b) Mounting: In backsplash.
   7) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 3/4 (DN 20), **as directed**, chrome-plated copper with stops or shutoff valves.
   8) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50), **as directed**, chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass **OR** copper pipe, **as directed**, waste to wall; continuous waste, **as directed**; and wall escutcheon(s).

3. Commercial Sinks, Handwash Type:
   a. Description: Wall-mounting, stainless-steel, commercial, handwash-sink fixture.
      1) Type: Basin with radius corners, back for faucet, and support brackets.
      2) Size; Approximately 17 by 16 by 5 inches (432 by 406 by 127 mm).
      3) Faucet: Back-mounting, chrome-plated, solid-brass, gooseneck type with individual valves.
      4) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated copper with stops.
      5) Drain: Grid.
      6) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
      7) Fixture Support: Sink for wall-mounting installation.

U. Shampoo Bowls
   1. Description: Enameled, cast-iron **OR** PMMA, **as directed**, fixture shaped for head rest. Include vacuum breaker, faucet, hose and spray, drain, and mounting brackets.
      a. Color: White.
      b. Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, chrome-plated copper with stops.
      c. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
         OR
         Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap; tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
      d. Hair Interceptor: **As directed**
      e. Fixture Support for Counter Mounting: Brackets or forms.
         OR
         Fixture Support for Wall Mounting: Sink.

V. Wash Fountains
1. Wash Fountains, Freestanding Type:
a. Description: Accessible, Circular, freestanding-design, wash-up fixture.
1) Arrangement: Wash-up stations facing central spray head.
2) Receptor Material: Precast terrazzo **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Solid surface, **as directed**, on base.
3) Receptor Color or Finish: Not applicable.
4) Size: 36- to 39-inch (914- to 990-mm) **OR** 54-inch (1370-mm), **as directed**, diameter.
5) Number of Stations: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four **OR** Five **OR** Six **OR** Eight, **as directed**.
6) Control: Collective **OR** Individual, **as directed**, push-button **OR** foot-pedal **OR** sensor, **as directed**, actuation with thermostatic valve and check stops or field-installed check valves.
7) Liquid Soap Dispensers: Manual **OR** Sensor, **as directed**, for each station.
8) Mounting: Floor.
9) Supplies: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1 (DN 25), **as directed**, copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves from bottom **OR** top, **as directed**.
10) Shroud: Not required **OR** Stainless steel of size to cover supplies and vent piping, **as directed**.
11) Drain: Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) tailpiece.
12) Trap Fitting: Not required **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50) trap with waste and vent connections, **as directed**.
13) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50), **as directed**, waste to floor.
14) Vent Piping: Not required **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) to ceiling, **as directed**.
2. Wash Fountains, Semicircular Or Corner Type:
a. Description: Accessible, Semicircular **OR** Corner, **as directed**, design, wash-up fixture.
1) Arrangement: Wash-up stations facing central spray head.
2) Receptor Material: Precast terrazzo **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Solid surface, **as directed**, on base.
3) Receptor Color or Finish: Not applicable.
4) Size: 36- to 39-inch (914- to 990-mm) **OR** 54-inch (1370-mm), **as directed**, diameter.
5) Number of Stations: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**.
6) Control: Collective **OR** Individual, **as directed**, push-button **OR** foot-pedal **OR** sensor, **as directed**, actuation with thermostatic valve and check stops or field-installed check valves.
7) Liquid Soap Dispensers: Manual **OR** Sensor, **as directed**, for each station.
8) Mounting: Floor and flush-to-wall with wall bracket.
9) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 3/4 (DN 20), **as directed**, copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves.
10) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50), **as directed**, tailpiece.
11) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50), **as directed**, P-trap, waste to wall, and wall flange.
3. Wash Fountains, Wall-Mounting Type:
a. Description: Accessible, **as directed**, Flush-to-wall, **as directed**, linear design, wash-up fixture.
1) Arrangement: Wash-up stations facing spray heads.
2) Receptor Material: Precast terrazzo **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Solid surface, **as directed**, on base.
3) Receptor Color or Finish: Not applicable.
4) Number of Stations: One **OR** Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**.
5) Control: Collective **OR** Individual, **as directed**, push-button **OR** sensor, **as directed**, actuation with thermostatic valve and check stops or field-installed check valves.
6) Liquid Soap Dispensers: Manual **OR** Sensor, **as directed**, for each station.

7) Mounting: Floor mounting with bracket for attaching to wall.
8) Faucet(s): Push-button **OR** Sensor-actuated, **as directed**, mixing valve with check stops.
9) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves.
10) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece.
11) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap, waste to wall, and wall flange.

W. Bathtubs
1. Description: Enameled, cast-iron **OR** FRP **OR** PMMA **OR** Porcelain-enameled, formed-steel, **as directed**, fixture.
a. Bathing Surface: Slip resistant.
b. Size: 48 by 30 inches (1220 by 765 mm) **OR** 60 by 30 inches (1525 by 765 mm) **OR** 66 by 30 inches (1680 by 765 mm), **as directed**, with front apron **OR** drop-in type, **as directed**.
c. Color: White.
d. Drain Location: Left **OR** Right, **as directed**, end.
e. Accessibility Options: Include grab bar and bench.
f. Faucet: Bathtub **OR** Bathtub/shower, **as directed**.
g. Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves.
h. Drain: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40); chrome-plated exposed parts; brass pop-up waste and overflow.
i. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) cast-brass P-trap and waste.
OR
Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap and waste.

X. Individual Showers
1. Individual Showers, Enclosure Type:
a. Description: Accessible, **as directed**, FRP **OR** PMMA, **as directed**, shower enclosure with slip-resistant bathing surface and shower rod with curtain.
1) Size: 36 by 34 inches (915 by 865 mm) **OR** 42 by 36 inches (1065 by 915 mm) **OR** 43 by 39 inches (1090 by 990 mm) **OR** 48 by 34 inches (1220 by 865 mm) **OR** 52 by 36 inches (1320 by 915 mm) **OR** 60 by 36 inches (1525 by 915 mm) **OR** 72 by 36 inches (1830 by 915 mm), **as directed**.
2) Surround: One piece or sealed, multiple piece, **as directed**.
OR
Surround: One piece.
3) Color: White.
4) Drain Location: Left side **OR** Center **OR** Right side, **as directed**.
5) Accessibility Options: Include grab bar and bench.
6) Faucet: Shower.
7) Drain: Grid, NPS 2 (DN 50).
2. Individual Showers, Built-Up Type:
a. Description: Components for built-up shower.
1) Receptor: Not required.
3. Individual Showers, Cabinet Type:
a. Description: Factory-fabricated, accessible, **as directed**, cabinet type with faucet and receptor.
1) Size: 30 by 30 inches (760 by 760 mm) **OR** 32 by 32 inches (815 by 815 mm) **OR** 36 by 36 inches (915 by 915 mm) **OR** 36 by 39 inches (915 by 990 mm) **OR** 45 by 39 inches (1145 by 990 mm), **as directed**.
2) Material: Steel **OR** Composite **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, front **OR** corner **OR** front and rear, **as directed**, access.
3) Color: Not applicable.
4) Accessibility Options: Grab bar and bench.
5) Faucet: Shower.

6) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves, **as directed**.
7) Drain: Grid, NPS 2 (DN 50).

Y. Group Showers
1. Group Showers, Column Type:
a. Description: Stainless-steel column fixture with two **OR** three **OR** four **OR** five **OR** six, **as directed**, individual showers.
1) Height to Shower Heads: 66 inches (1675 mm) **OR** 72 inches (1830 mm), **as directed**.
2) Control: Thermostatic **OR** Pressure-balance, **as directed**, valve with individual hot- and cold-water mixing valve operation.
OR
Control: Thermostatic valve with individual tempered-water supply and push-button **OR** sensor, **as directed**, operation.
3) Flow Control: 2 gpm (7.6 L/min.) **OR** 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.), **as directed**, for each shower head.
4) Liquid Soap Dispenser: For each shower.
5) Mounting: Floor flange.
6) Supplies: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1 (DN 25), **as directed**, copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves from bottom **OR** top, **as directed**.
7) Shroud: Not required **OR** Stainless steel of size to cover supplies and vent piping, **as directed**.
8) Drain Fitting: NPS 3 (DN 80) **OR** NPS 4 (DN 100), **as directed**, outlet with NPS 2 (DN 50) vent, integral with base of column.
9) Vent Piping: Not required **OR** NPS 2 (DN 50) to ceiling, **as directed**.
2. Group Showers, Wall-Mounting Type:
a. Description: Wall-mounting fixture with stainless-steel surface enclosure with two **OR** three, **as directed**, individual showers.
1) Control: Thermostatic **OR** Pressure-balance, **as directed**, valve with individual hot- and cold-water mixing valve operation.
OR
Control: Thermostatic valve with individual tempered-water supply and push-button **OR** sensor, **as directed**, operation.
2) Flow Control: 2 gpm (7.6 L/min.) **OR** 2.5 gpm (9.5 L/min.), **as directed**, for each shower head.
3) Liquid Soap Dispenser: For each shower.
4) Mounting: Wall bracket.
5) Supplies: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves.
3. Group Showers, Freestanding, Plastic Type:
a. Description: Freestanding, plastic group-shower fixture.
1) Number of Shower Stations: One **OR** Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, with individual self-closing control valve(s).
2) Number of Foot Wash Stations: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, with individual self-closing control valve(s).
3) Hose Bibb: Not **OR** One, **as directed**, required.
4) Control-Valve Mounting Height: 50 inches (1270 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1219 mm), **as directed**.
5) Material: Cast-filled-polymer plastic.
6) Color: Gray.
7) Internal Piping: Factory installed.
8) Mounting: Base flange with bolt holes.
4. Group Showers, Freestanding, Steel Type:
a. Description: Freestanding, steel group-shower fixture.
1) Number of Shower Stations: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, with individual self-closing control valve(s).

2) Number of Foot Wash Stations: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, with individual self-closing control valve(s).
3) Material: Painted steel pipe.
4) Color: Blue.
5) Internal Piping: Factory installed.
6) Mounting: Base flange with bolt holes.

Z. Whirlpool Bathtubs
1. Whirlpool Bathtubs, Water-Circulation Hydromassage Type:
a. Description: Packaged, enameled, cast-iron **OR** FRP **OR** PMMA **OR** porcelain-enameled, formed-steel, **as directed**, hydromassage bathtub with air-entrained-water jet nozzles and water circulation.
1) Seating Capacity: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, person(s).
2) Bathing Surface: Slip resistant.
3) Size: 60 by 30 inches (1525 by 765 mm) **OR** 66 by 30 inches (1680 by 765 mm) **OR** 60 by 42 inches (1525 by 1065 mm), **as directed**.
4) Base for Drop-in Unit: <**Insert description**> with access panel.
OR
Apron: Matching unit, covering exposed front and sides, and with access panel.
5) Color: White.
6) Drain Location: Left **OR** Right, **as directed**, end.
7) Controls: For pump, timer, **as directed**, and water heater, **as directed**.
8) Faucet: Fixture manufacturer's individual valves **OR** mixing valve, **as directed**, with over-rim tub filler.
9) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves.
10) Drain: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40); chrome-plated exposed parts; brass pop-up waste and overflow.
11) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) cast-brass P-trap and waste.
OR
Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap and waste.
12) Water-Circulating System: Electric circulating pump and plastic piping.
13) Water Heater: Electric, inline, **as directed**.
2. Whirlpool Bathtubs, Airmassage Type:
a. Description: Packaged, PMMA airmassage bathtub with air-injection nozzles.
1) Seating Capacity: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, person(s).
2) Bathing Surface: Slip resistant.
3) Size: 60 by 30 inches (1525 by 765 mm) **OR** 66 by 30 inches (1680 by 765 mm) **OR** **OR** 60 by 42 inches (1525 by 1065 mm), **as directed**.
4) Base for Drop-in Unit: <**Insert description**> with access panel.
OR
Apron: Matching unit, covering exposed front and sides, and with access panel.
5) Color: White.
6) Drain Location: Left **OR** Right, **as directed**, end.
7) Controls: For blower, timer, **as directed**, and water heater, **as directed**.
8) Faucet: Fixture manufacturer's individual valves **OR** mixing valve, **as directed**, with over-rim tub filler.
9) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves.
10) Drain: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40); chrome-plated exposed parts; brass pop-up waste and overflow.
11) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) cast-brass P-trap and waste.
OR
Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap and waste.

12) Air-Injection System: Electric, blower **OR** combination blower/heater, **as directed**, and plastic piping.

AA. Kitchen Sinks
1. Kitchen Sinks:
a. Description: One-bowl **OR** Two-bowl **OR** Three-bowl, **as directed**, residential, counter-mounting, enameled, cast-iron **OR** PMMA **OR** porcelain-enameled, formed-steel **OR** solid-surface **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, kitchen sink.
1) Metal Thickness: 0.038 inch (1.0 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.3 mm), **as directed**.
2) Bowl (single bowl):
a) Drain: 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) crumb cup **OR** grid **OR** grid with offset waste **OR** outlet for disposer, **as directed**.
i. Location: Centered in bowl **OR** Near back of bowl, **as directed**.
3) Left Bowl:
a) Drain: 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) crumb cup **OR** grid **OR** grid with offset waste **OR** outlet for disposer, **as directed**.
i. Location: Centered in bowl **OR** Near back of bowl, **as directed**.
4) Right Bowl:
a) Drain: 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) crumb cup **OR** grid **OR** grid with offset waste **OR** outlet for disposer, **as directed**.
i. Location: Centered in bowl **OR** Near back of bowl, **as directed**.
5) Center Bowl:
a) Drain: 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 3-1/2-inch (89-mm), **as directed**, crumb cup **OR** grid **OR** grid with offset waste, **as directed**.
i. Location: Centered in bowl.
6) Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated copper with stops.
7) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; continuous waste, **as directed**; and wall escutcheon(s).
OR
Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap; tubular waste to wall; continuous waste, **as directed**; and wall escutcheon(s).
8) Disposer: Not required.
9) Dishwasher Air-Gap Fitting: Required **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
10) Hot-Water Dispenser: Not required.
2. Bar Sinks:
a. Description: Single-bowl, residential, counter-mounting, enameled, cast-iron **OR** PMMA **OR** stainless-steel **OR** porcelain-enameled, cast-iron **OR** solid-surface, **as directed**, bar sink.
1) Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, chrome-plated copper with stops.
2) Drain: 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 3-1/2-inch (89-mm), **as directed**, crumb cup **OR** grid **OR** grid with offset waste, **as directed**.
3) Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
OR
Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap; tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.
4) Protective Shielding Guard(s): **As directed.**

BB. Service Sinks
1. Service Sinks, Standard Type:
a. Description: Trap-standard- and wall-mounting, enameled, cast-iron fixture with roll-rim **OR** vitreous-china fixture, **as directed**, with plain **OR** two faucet holes in, **as directed**, back and rim guard on front and sides.

1) Size (cast-iron fixture): 22 by 18 inches (560 by 460 mm) **OR** 24 by 20 inches (610 by 510 mm), **as directed**.
2) Size (vitreous-china fixture): 19 by 16 inches (480 by 405 mm) **OR** 22 by 20 inches (560 by 510 mm), **as directed**.
3) Color: White.
4) Faucet: Sink type. Polished OR rough, as directed, chrome-plated, solid-brass faucet. Include integral stops in shanks, vacuum breaker, hose-thread outlet, and pail hook. Provide type with wall brace if faucet will be mounted above back.
5) Drain: Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) **OR** NPS 3 (DN 80), **as directed**, outlet.
6) Trap Standard: NPS 2 (DN 50) **OR** NPS 3 (DN 80), **as directed**, enameled, cast iron with cleanout and floor flange.
7) Fixture Support: Sink.

2. Service Sinks, Floor-Mounting Type:
   a. Description: Floor-mounting, enameled, cast-iron fixture with front apron, raised back, and coated, wire rim guard. (This type of service sink requires a drainage piping trap under the fixture. This trap is not part of fixture fittings)
      1) Size: 28 by 28 inches (710 by 710 mm).
      2) Color: White.
      3) Faucet: Sink type. Polished OR rough, as directed, chrome-plated, solid-brass faucet with wall brace. Include integral stops in shanks, vacuum breaker, hose-thread outlet, and pail hook..
      4) Drain: Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) **OR** NPS 3 (DN 80), **as directed**, outlet.

CC. Service Basins
1. Description: Flush-to-wall, floor-mounting, precast terrazzo **OR** cast-polymer, **as directed**, fixture with rim guard. (This type of fixture requires a drainage piping trap under the fixture. This trap is not part of fixture fittings.)
   a. Shape: Square **OR** Rectangular **OR** Five sided **OR** Radial front, **as directed**.
   b. Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) **OR** 28 by 28 inches (710 by 710 mm) **OR** 24 by 36 inches (610 by 915 mm) **OR** 32 by 32 inches (815 by 815 mm) **OR** 36 by 36 inches (915 by 915 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Height: 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 10 inches (255 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) with dropped front, **as directed**.
   d. Tiling Flange: Not required **OR** On one side **OR** On two sides **OR** On three sides, **as directed**.
   e. Rim Guard: On front **OR** all, **as directed**, top surfaces.
   f. Color: Not applicable.
   g. Faucet: Sink type. Polished OR rough, as directed, chrome-plated, solid-brass faucet with wall brace. Include integral stops in shanks, vacuum breaker, hose-thread outlet, and pail hook.
   h. Drain: Grid with NPS 2 (DN 50) **OR** NPS 3 (DN 80), **as directed**, outlet.

DD. Laundry Trays
1. Description: Stand-mounting **OR** Counter-mounting, **as directed**, enameled, cast-iron **OR** plastic, **as directed**, laundry trays.
   a. Size: 24 by 21 inches (610 by 535 mm) **OR** 25 by 22 inches (635 by 560 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Color: Not applicable.
   c. Faucet: Sink type, polished, chrome-plated, solid brass, for fixture-ledge **OR** wall **OR** counter, **as directed**, mounting.
   d. Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated copper with stops **OR** copper tubing with ball, gate, or globe valves, **as directed**.
   e. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) outlet.
   f. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; 0.045-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.

OR

Drain Piping: Schedule 40 ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) P-trap; tubular waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.

g. Stand: Not required **OR** Painted steel, **as directed**.

EE. Sacristy Sinks

1. Description: Two-bowl, counter-mounting, stainless-steel fixture.
   a. Size: Approximately 22 by 42 inches (560 by 1070 mm).
   b. Cover: Hinged with lock on left **OR** right, **as directed**, bowl.
   c. Supplies: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated copper with stops.
   d. Drains: One with stopper and one with grid.
   e. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) chrome-plated, tubular-brass waste. Include one trap, one direct waste without trap, separate waste piping, and wall flanges.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
   a. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
   b. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
   c. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
3. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
4. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
5. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
6. Install floor-mounting, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.
7. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
8. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
9. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
   a. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
10. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
11. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
12. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
13. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
14. Install toilet seats on water closets.
15. Install trap-seal liquid in dry urinals.
16. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
17. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
18. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
19. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
20. Install traps on fixture outlets.
    a. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.

b. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.

21. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
22. Install dishwasher air-gap fitting at each sink indicated to have air-gap fitting. Install in sink deck **OR** on countertop at sink, **as directed**. Connect inlet hose to dishwasher and outlet hose to disposer.
23. Install hot-water dispensers in back top surface of sink or in countertop with spout over sink.
24. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
25. Set bathtubs, shower receptors, and service basins in leveling bed of cement grout. Grout is specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
26. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

B. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

C. Field Quality Control
1. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
2. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
3. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
4. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
5. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

D. Adjusting
1. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
2. Operate and adjust disposers, hot-water dispensers, and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units and controls.
3. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
4. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
5. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

E. Cleaning
1. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
   a. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
   b. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
2. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

F. Protection
   1. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
   2. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 01 40 81

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 01 40 81a - EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for emergency plumbing fixtures. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following emergency plumbing fixtures:
   a. Emergency showers.
   b. Eyewash equipment.
   c. Self-contained eyewash equipment.
   d. Personal eyewash equipment.
   e. Eye/face wash equipment.
   f. Hand-held drench hoses.
   g. Combination units.
   h. Water-tempering equipment.

C. Definitions
1. Accessible Fixture: Emergency plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
2. Plumbed Emergency Plumbing Fixture: Fixture with fixed, potable-water supply.
3. Self-Contained Emergency Plumbing Fixture: Fixture with flushing-fluid-solution supply.
4. Tepid: Moderately warm.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include flow rates and capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ANSI Standard: Comply with ANSI Z358.1, "Emergency Eyewash and Shower Equipment."
3. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
4. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.

1.2 PRODUCTS

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with ANSI/ISEA Z358.1 for emergency plumbing fixtures including third-party certification of fixtures.

B. Comply with ASSE 1071 for temperature-actuated mixing valves for plumbed emergency fixtures.

C. Comply with ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 for water-supply fittings.

D. Comply with ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for plumbing waste fittings.

E. Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.

F. Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1 for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

H. Emergency Showers:
   1. Description: Plumbed, single-shower-head horizontal, wall-mounting **OR** vertical, ceiling-mounting **OR** freestanding, **as directed,** emergency shower.
      a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 20 gpm (76 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
      b. Supply Piping: NPS 1 (DN 25) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) **OR** galvanized steel **OR** chrome-plated brass or stainless steel **OR** PVC, **as directed,** with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
      c. Control-Valve Actuator: Pull rod **OR** chain, **as directed**.
      d. Shower Head: 8-inch (200-mm) minimum diameter, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel **OR** plastic, **as directed**.
   2. Description: Plumbed, multiple-spray emergency shower with eight **OR** 12 **OR** 16, **as directed,** small shower heads or nozzles.
      a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 20 gpm (76 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
      b. Supply Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum galvanized **OR** chrome-plated brass or stainless, **as directed,** steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
      c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle **OR** Treadle, **as directed**.
   3. Description: Plumbed, freeze-protected, freestanding emergency shower.
      a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 20 gpm (76 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
      b. Supply Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) galvanized steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
      c. Control-Valve Actuator: Pull rod **OR** chain, **as directed**.
      d. Shower Head: 8-inch (200-mm) minimum diameter, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel **OR** plastic, **as directed**.
      e. Heating System: 120 **OR** 240, **as directed**,-V ac electric; and insulation with protective jacket.

I. Eyewash Equipment
   1. Description: Plumbed, freestanding eyewash equipment.
      a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
      b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
      c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle **OR** Push bar **OR** Treadle, **as directed**.
      d. Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel **OR** Plastic, **as directed,** bowl.
      e. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum, chrome-plated brass, receptor drain, P-trap, waste to wall, and wall flange complying with ASME A112.18.2 **OR** Omit drain piping **OR** Include galvanized-steel indirect connection to drainage system, **as directed**.
   2. Description: Plumbed, accessible, **as directed**, wall-mounting eyewash equipment with receptor and wall bracket.

a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
d. Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel **OR** Plastic, **as directed,** bowl.
e. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum, chrome-plated brass, receptor drain, P-trap, waste to wall, and wall flange complying with ASME A112.18.2.

3. Description: Plumbed, accessible, **as directed**, wall-mounting eyewash equipment with wall bracket.
   a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
   b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
   c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle **OR** Movement sensor, **as directed**.
4. Description: Plumbed, adjacent-to-sink, swivel, counter-mounting eyewash equipment.
   a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
   b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
   c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.

J. Self-Contained Eyewash Equipment:
1. Description: Portable, pressurized, self-contained eyewash equipment.
   a. Capacity: Deliver flushing fluid at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
   b. Tank: 10 gal. (3.8 L), stainless steel, cylindrical, and suitable for on-floor installation.
   c. Flushing Fluid: Medically acceptable solution manufactured and labeled according to applicable regulations.
   d. Piping: Chrome-plated copper alloy or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
   e. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
   f. Spray Heads: Twin with covers.
2. Description: Static, nonpressurized, self-contained eyewash equipment.
   a. Capacity: Deliver flushing fluid at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
   b. Tank: 14 gal. (53 L) minimum, plastic, and suitable for shelf mounting.
   c. Flushing Fluid: Medically acceptable solution manufactured and labeled according to applicable regulations.
   d. Actuator: Pull-down front panel.
   e. Spray Heads: Protected, twin.
3. Description: Freeze-protected, static, nonpressurized, self-contained eyewash equipment with heating system.
   a. Capacity: Deliver flushing fluid at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
   b. Tank: 14 gal. (53 L) minimum **OR** 20 gal. (76 L) minimum, **as directed**, plastic, and suitable for shelf mounting.
   c. Flushing Fluid: Medically acceptable solution manufactured and labeled according to applicable regulations.
   d. Actuator: Pull-down front panel.
   e. Spray Heads: Protected, twin.
   f. Heating System: Electric, 120-V ac; and insulation with protective jacket.

K. Personal Eyewash Equipment:
1. Description: Portable, pressurized, personal eyewash equipment with spray heads.
   a. Capacity: Deliver flushing fluid at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.), **as directed**.

b. Tank: 5 gal. (19 L), stainless steel, cylindrical, and with base suitable for on-floor installation.
c. Flushing Fluid: Medically acceptable solution manufactured and labeled according to applicable regulations.
d. Piping: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
e. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
f. Spray Heads: Twin with covers.

2. Description: Portable, pressurized, personal eyewash equipment with spray heads and drench hose.
a. Capacity: Deliver flushing fluid at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.), **as directed**.
b. Tank: 5 gal. (19 L), stainless steel, cylindrical, and with base suitable for on-floor installation.
c. Flushing Fluid: Medically acceptable solution manufactured and labeled according to applicable regulations.
d. Piping: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
e. Spray-Head, Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
f. Spray Heads: Twin with covers.
g. Drench Hose: Rubber or plastic.
1) Control-Valve Actuator: Hand-held squeeze valve.
2) Spray Head: Single with cover.

L. Eye/Face Wash Equipment:
1. Description: Plumbed, freestanding, pedestal eye/face wash equipment.
a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle **OR** Push bar **OR** Treadle, **as directed**.
d. Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel **OR** Plastic, **as directed,** bowl.
e. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum, chrome-plated brass, receptor drain, P-trap, waste to wall, and wall flange complying with ASME A112.18.2. Include galvanized-steel indirect connection to drainage system.
2. Description: Plumbed, accessible, **as directed**, wall-mounting eye/face wash equipment with receptor and wall bracket.
a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
d. Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel **OR** Plastic, **as directed,** bowl.
e. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum, chrome-plated brass, receptor drain, P-trap, waste to wall, and wall flange complying with ASME A112.18.2.
3. Description: Plumbed, accessible, **as directed**, wall-mounting eye/face wash equipment without receptor and with wall bracket.
a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
4. Description: Plumbed, adjacent-to-sink, swivel, counter-mounting eye/face wash equipment.
a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.

b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.

M. Hand-Held Drench Hoses:
1. Description: Plumbed, wall-mounting, hand-held drench hose with wall bracket.
a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
d. Hose: Coiled **OR** Plain, **as directed**, rubber or plastic.
e. Spray Heads: Single **OR** Twin, **as directed**.
2. Description: Plumbed, counter-mounting, hand-held drench hose.
a. Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
b. Supply Fitting: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) brass with flow regulator.
c. Hose: Rubber or plastic.
d. Control-Valve Actuator: Hand-held squeeze valve.
e. Spray Heads: Single **OR** Twin, **as directed**.

N. Combination Units:
1. Description: Plumbed, accessible, **as directed,** freestanding, with emergency shower and eyewash **OR** eye/face wash **OR** drench hose, **as directed,** equipment.
a. Piping: Galvanized steel **OR** Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
1) Unit Supply: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed,** from top **OR** side, **as directed**.
2) Unit Drain: Outlet at side near bottom.
3) Shower Supply: NPS 1 (DN 25) with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
4) Eyewash **OR** Eye/Face Wash **OR** Drench Hose, **as directed,** Supply: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
b. Shower Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 20 gpm (76 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
1) Control-Valve Actuator: Pull rod **OR** Pull chain **OR** Treadle, **as directed**.
2) Shower Head: 8-inch (200-mm) minimum diameter, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel **OR** plastic, **as directed**.
c. Eyewash Equipment: With capacity to deliver potable water at rate not less than 0.4 gpm (1.5 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
1) Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle **OR** Push bar, **as directed**.
2) Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel **OR** Plastic, **as directed,** bowl.
d. Eye/Face Wash Equipment: With capacity to deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
1) Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle **OR** Push bar, **as directed**.
2) Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel **OR** Plastic, **as directed,** bowl.
e. Hand-Held Drench Hose: With capacity to deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.
1) Hose: Rubber or plastic.
2) Control-Valve Actuator: Hand-held squeeze valve.
3) Spray Head(s): Single **OR** Twin, **as directed**.
2. Description: Plumbed, accessible, **as directed,** freeze-protected, freestanding, with emergency shower and eye/face wash equipment.
a. Piping: Galvanized steel.
1) Unit Supply: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum **OR** NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), **as directed,** from top **OR** side **OR** bottom, **as directed**.
2) Shower Supply: NPS 1 (DN 25) with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.

3) Eye/Face Wash Supply: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.

b. Heating System: Electric, 120 **OR** 240, **as directed**,-V ac; and insulation with protective jacket.

c. Shower Capacity: Deliver potable water at rate not less than 20 gpm (76 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.

1) Control-Valve Actuator: Pull rod **OR** Pull chain **OR** Treadle, **as directed**.

2) Shower Head: 8-inch (200-mm) minimum diameter, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel **OR** plastic, **as directed**.

d. Eye/Face Wash Equipment: With capacity to deliver potable water at rate not less than 3.0 gpm (11.4 L/min.) for at least 15 minutes.

1) Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle **OR** Push bar, **as directed**.

O. Water-Tempering Equipment:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, hot- and cold-water-tempering equipment with thermostatic mixing valve.
   a. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Designed to provide 85 deg F (29 deg C) tepid, potable water at emergency plumbing fixtures, to maintain temperature at plus or minus 5 deg F (3 deg C) throughout required 15-minute test period, and in case of unit failure to continue cold-water flow, with union connections, controls, metal piping, and corrosion-resistant enclosure.
2. Description: Factory-fabricated, steam and cold-water, water-tempering equipment with thermostatic mixing valve.
   a. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Designed to provide 85 deg F (29 deg C) tepid, potable water at emergency plumbing fixtures, to maintain temperature at plus or minus 5 deg F (3 deg C) throughout required 15-minute test period, and in case of unit failure to continue cold-water flow, with union connections, steam controls, heat exchanger, high-temperature-limit and freeze-protection devices, metal piping, and corrosion-resistant enclosure.
3. Description: Factory-fabricated, water-tempering equipment with electric heating.
   a. Heating System: Electric, designed to provide 85 deg F (29 deg C) tepid, potable water at emergency plumbing fixtures, to maintain temperature at plus or minus 5 deg F (3 deg C) throughout required 15-minute test period, and in case of unit failure to continue cold-water flow, with union connections, controls, heating coils, high-temperature-limit device, metal piping, and corrosion-resistant enclosure.
      1) Electrical Characteristics: 208-V ac, 38 **OR** 220-V ac, 40 **OR** 277-V ac, 32, **as directed,** A, single phase, 60 Hz.

1.4 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Assemble emergency plumbing fixture piping, fittings, control valves, and other components.
2. Install fixtures level and plumb.
3. Fasten fixtures to substrate.
4. Install shutoff valves in water-supply piping to fixtures. Use ball, gate, or globe valve if specific type valve is not indicated. Install valves chained or locked in open position if permitted. Install valves in locations where they can easily be reached for operation. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
   a. Exception: Omit shutoff valve on supply to group of plumbing fixtures that includes emergency plumbing fixture.
   b. Exception: Omit shutoff valve on supply to emergency equipment if prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Install shutoff valve and strainer in steam piping and shutoff valve in condensate return piping.

6. Install dielectric fitting in supply piping to fixture if piping and fixture connections are made of different metals. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
7. Install thermometers in supply and outlet piping connections to water-tempering equipment. Thermometers are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
8. Install trap and waste to wall on drain outlet of fixture receptors that are indicated to be directly connected to drainage system.
9. Install indirect waste piping to wall on drain outlet of fixture receptors that are indicated to be indirectly connected to drainage system. Drainage piping is specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping".
10. Install escutcheons on piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
11. Fill self-contained fixtures with flushing fluid.
12. Install equipment nameplates or equipment markers on fixtures and equipment signs on water-tempering equipment. Identification materials are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
13. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
14. Connect cold-water-supply piping to plumbed emergency plumbing fixtures not having water-tempering equipment.
15. Connect hot- and cold-water-supply piping to hot- and cold-water-tempering equipment. Connect output from water-tempering equipment to emergency plumbing fixtures.
16. Connect cold-water and steam supply and condensate return piping to steam and cold-water-tempering equipment. Connect output from water-tempering equipment to emergency plumbing fixtures.
17. Connect cold water and electrical power to electric heating water-tempering equipment.
18. Directly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors with trapped drain outlet to sanitary drainage and vent piping.
19. Indirectly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors without trapped drain outlet to sanitary or storm drainage piping.
20. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
21. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

B. Field Quality Control
   1. Electrical-Component Testing: After electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
      a. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
   2. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.

C. Adjusting
   1. Adjust or replace fixture flow regulators for proper flow.
   2. Adjust equipment temperature settings.

END OF SECTION 22 01 40 81a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 13 00 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common motor requirements for plumbing equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

C. Coordination
1. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
   a. Motor controllers.
   b. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
   c. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
   d. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Motor Requirements
1. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in plumbing equipment schedules or Sections.
2. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
3. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

B. Motor Characteristics
1. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
2. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

C. Polyphase Motors
1. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
2. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
3. Service Factor: 1.15.
4. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   a. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
   b. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
5. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
6. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
7. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
8. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
9. Insulation: Class F.
10. Code Letter Designation:
    a. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.

b. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

11. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

D. Polyphase Motors With Additional Requirements

1. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
2. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
   a. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
   b. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
   c. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
   d. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
3. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

E. Single-Phase Motors

1. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
   a. Permanent-split capacitor.
   b. Split phase.
   c. Capacitor start, inductor run.
   d. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
2. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
3. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
4. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
5. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

1.3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 22 05 13 00

SECTION 22 05 19 00 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for meters and gages for plumbing piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
   b. Filled-system thermometers.
   c. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
   d. Light-activated thermometers.
   e. Thermowells.
   f. Dial-type pressure gages.
   g. Gage attachments.
   h. Test plugs.
   i. Test-plug kits.
   j. Sight flow indicators.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Bimetallic-Actuated Thermometers
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
3. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
4. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**, with unified-inch screw threads.
5. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
6. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
7. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Stainless steel.
9. Element: Bimetal coil.
10. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**, percent of scale range.

B. Filled-System Thermometers
1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
   c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.

d. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, **as directed**, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
g. Window: Glass or plastic.
h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
g. Window: Glass or plastic.
h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
g. Window: Glass or plastic.
h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.

d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
g. Window: Glass or plastic.
h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
   1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

C. Liquid-In-Glass Thermometers
1. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
   c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
   e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   f. Window: Glass or plastic.
   g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
2. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Case: Plastic; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
   c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
   e. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   f. Window: Glass or plastic.
   g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
3. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
   e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   f. Window: Glass or plastic.
   g. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

4. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Case: Plastic; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
   e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   f. Window: Glass or plastic.
   g. Stem: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel, **as directed**, and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

D. Light-Activated Thermometers
1. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
   a. Case: Plastic **OR** Metal, **as directed**; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   c. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
   d. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   e. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   f. Display: Digital.
   g. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).
2. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
   a. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
   b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   c. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.
      1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   d. Display: Digital.
   e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).

E. Thermowells
1. Thermowells:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
   c. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
   d. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES **OR** CSA, **as directed**.
   e. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
   f. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
   g. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   h. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
   i. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
   j. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
   k. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
2. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

F. Pressure Gages

1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   b. Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure relief, **as directed**, type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
   c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
   e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
   f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
   g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
   h. Window: Glass or plastic.
   i. Ring: Metal **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   j. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
   c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
   e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
   f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
   g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
   h. Window: Glass or plastic.
   i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   b. Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, type; cast aluminum or drawn steel **OR** metal, **as directed**; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
   c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
   e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
   f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
   g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
   h. Window: Glass or plastic.
   i. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   j. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.

c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
h. Window: Glass or plastic.
i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.

G. Gage Attachments
1. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston **OR** porous-metal, **as directed**,-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
2. Valves: Brass ball **OR** Brass or stainless-steel needle, **as directed**, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

H. Test Plugs
1. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
2. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
3. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) or NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
4. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C).
5. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

I. Test-Plug Kits
1. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one **OR** two, **as directed**, thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C).
3. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C).
4. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa).
5. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

J. Sight Flow Indicators
1. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
2. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1034 kPa), **as directed**.
4. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
5. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
6. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid **OR** one-third of pipe diameter **OR** to center of pipe, **as directed**, and in vertical position in piping tees.
2. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
3. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
4. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
5. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
6. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
7. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
8. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
9. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
10. Install test plugs in piping tees.
11. Install thermometers in the following locations:
    a. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
    b. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
    c. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
    d. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
12. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
    a. Building water service entrance into building.
    b. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
    c. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

B. Connections
1. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

C. Adjusting
1. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

D. Thermometer Schedule
1. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
    a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
    b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**,-case, vapor-actuated type.
    c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**,-style, liquid-in-glass type.
    d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, light-activated type.
    e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
2. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
    a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
    b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**,-case, vapor-actuated type.
    c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**,-style, liquid-in-glass type.
    d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, light-activated type.
    e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
3. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
    a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.

b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**,-case, vapor-actuated type.
c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**,-style, liquid-in-glass type.
d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, light-activated type.
e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.

4. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**,-case, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**,-style, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**,-mounted, light-activated type.
   e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
5. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

E. Thermometer Scale-Range Schedule
1. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
2. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
3. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
4. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
5. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
6. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
7. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
8. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.

F. Pressure-Gage Schedule
1. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**,-mounted, metal case.
   b. Sealed, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**,-mounted, plastic case.
   c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
2. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**,-mounted, metal case.
   b. Sealed, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**,-mounted, plastic case.
   c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
3. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**,-mounted, metal case.
   b. Sealed, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**,-mounted, plastic case.

c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.

G. Pressure-Gage Scale-Range Schedule
1. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
2. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
3. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
4. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
5. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
6. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
7. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 22 05 19 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 23 00 - ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Architecturally exposed structural steel (AESS).
2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" requirements that also apply to AESS.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for [**steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame**] [**miscellaneous steel fabrications**] [**and**] [**other metal items**] not defined as structural steel.
2. [**Section 099113 "Exterior Painting"**] [**Section 099123 "Interior Painting"**] [**and**] [**Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings"**] for surface preparation and priming requirements.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. AESS: Architecturally exposed structural steel.

B. Category AESS 1: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 1 and may be designated AESS 1 or Category AESS 1 in the Contract Documents.

C. Category AESS 2: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 2 and is designated as AESS 2 or Category AESS 2 in the Contract Documents.

D. Category AESS 3: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 3 and is designated as AESS 3 or Category AESS 3in the Contract Documents.

E. Category AESS 4: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 4 and is designated as AESS 4 or Category AESS 4 in the Contract Documents.

F. Category AESS C: Structural steel with custom characteristics that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS C and is designated as AESS C or Category AESS C in the Contract Documents.

G. SEAC/RMSCA Guide Specification: SEAC/RMSCA's "Sample Specification, Section 05 02 13: Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel."

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate surface preparation requirements for shop-primed items.

B. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at [**Project site**] <**Insert location**>.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
2. Corrosion-resisting (weathering steel), tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
3. Filler.
4. Primer.
5. Galvanized-steel primer.
6. Etching cleaner.
7. Galvanized repair paint.

B. Sustainable Design Submitals:

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for EPDs and HPDs.>
2. <Double click here to insert sustainable design text for Health Product Declaration.>
3. <Double click here to insert sustainable design text for sourcing of raw materials.>

C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of AESS components.[**Shop Drawings for structural steel may be used for AESS.**]

1. Identify AESS category for each steel member and connection, including transitions between AESS categories and between AESS and non-AESS.
2. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
3. Include embedment Drawings.
4. Indicate orientation of mill marks and HSS seams.
5. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.[**Indicate grinding, finish, and profile of welds.**]
6. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections. Indicate orientation and location of bolt heads.
7. Indicate exposed surfaces and edges and surface preparation being used.
8. Indicate special tolerances and erection requirements.
9. Indicate weep holes for HSS [**and vent holes for galvanized HSS**].
10. Indicate surface preparation, primer, and coating requirements, including systems specified in other Sections.

D. Samples: Submit Samples to set quality standards for AESS.

1. Two steel plates, 3/8 by 8 by 4 inches (9.5 by 200 by 100 mm), with long edges joined by a groove weld[**and with weld ground smooth**].
2. Steel plate, 3/8 by 8 by 8 inches (9.5 by 200 by 200 mm), with one end of a short length of rectangular steel tube, 4 by 6 by 3/8 inches (100 by 150 by 9.5 mm), welded to plate with a continuous fillet weld[**and with weld ground smooth and blended**].
3. Round steel tube or pipe, minimum 8 inches (200 mm) in diameter, with end of another round steel tube or pipe, approximately 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter, welded to its side at a 45-degree angle with a continuous fillet weld[**and with weld ground smooth and blended**].

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For [**Installer**] [**fabricator**] [**shop-painting applicator**].

B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU, or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (AC 172) and is experienced in fabricating AESS similar to that indicated on this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program, is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, [**Category ACSE**] [**Category CSE**], and is experienced in erecting AESS similar to that indicated on this Project.

C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint [**Endorsement P1**] [**Endorsement P2**] [**Endorsement P3**] or SSPC-QP 3.

D. Mockups: Build mockups of AESS to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical portion of AESS as shown on Drawings.
2. Coordinate painting requirements with [**Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."**] [**Section 099123 "Interior Painting."**]
3. Coordinate high-performance coatings requirements with Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Use special care in handling AESS to prevent twisting, warping, nicking, and other damage during fabrication, delivery, and erection. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep AESS members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect AESS members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

1. Do not store AESS materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Where AESS is indicated to fit against other construction, verify actual dimensions by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements of ANSI/AISC 303, Sections 1 through 9 and as modified in Section 10, "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel."

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. Tension-Control, High-Strength, Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852, Type 1, round-head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A563, Grade DH, (ASTMA563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.

1. Finish: [**Plain**] [**Mechanically deposited zinc coating**].

B. Corrosion-Resisting (Weathering) Steel, Tension-Control, High-Strength, Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852, Type 3, round-head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A563, Grade DH3, (ASTM A563M, Class 10S3) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 3, hardened carbon-steel washers.

2.3 FILLER

A. Polyester filler intended for use in repairing dents in automobile bodies.

2.4 PRIMER

A. Steel Primer:

1. Comply with [**Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."**] [**Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."**] [**Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."**]
2. SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
3. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: [**MPI#26**] [**MPI#80**] [**MPI#134**].

1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: [**MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20**] [**ASTM A780/A780M**].

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Shop fabricate and assemble AESS to the maximum extent possible. Locate field joints at concealed locations if possible. Detail assemblies to minimize handling and to expedite erection.

1. Use special care handling and fabricating AESS before and after shop painting to minimize damage to shop finish.

B. Category AESS 1:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.

C. Category AESS 2:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
12. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance to one-half that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
13. Limit as-fabricated curved structural steel tolerance to that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
14. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance of welded built-up members to one-half that permitted by AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
15. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
16. Make welds uniform and smooth.

D. Category AESS 3:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.

3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
12. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance to one-half that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
13. Limit as-fabricated curved structural steel tolerance to that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
14. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance of welded built-up members to one-half that permitted by AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
15. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
16. Make welds uniform and smooth.
17. Cut out mill marks from mill material or hide these markings from view in the completed structure. Where neither method is possible, remove mill marks by grinding and filling surfaces as approved by Architect.
18. Grind butt and plug welds smooth or fill, removing weld splatter exposed to view.
19. Orient HSS seams as indicated or away from view.
20. Align and match abutting member cross sections.
21. At visible open joints of copes, miters, and cuts, maintain uniform clear gaps of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). At closed joints, maintain uniform contact within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
22. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and of surface quality approved by Architect.

E. Category AESS 4:

1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) closure plates.
6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
12. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance to one-half that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
13. Limit as-fabricated curved structural steel tolerance to that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
14. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance of welded built-up members to one-half that permitted by AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

15. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
16. Make welds uniform and smooth.
17. Cut out mill marks from mill material or hide these markings from view in the completed structure. Where neither method is possible, remove mill marks by grinding and filling surfaces as approved by Architect.
18. Grind butt and plug welds smooth or fill, removing weld splatter exposed to view.
19. Orient HSS seams as indicated or away from view.
20. Align and match abutting member cross sections.
21. At visible open joints of copes, miters, and cuts, maintain uniform clear gaps of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). At closed joints, maintain uniform contact within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
22. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and of surface quality approved by Architect.
23. Treat HSS seams to appear seamless.
24. Contour and blend welds and weld transitions between members, removing splatter exposed to view.
25. Fill surface imperfections with filler and sand smooth to achieve surface quality approved by Architect.
26. Minimize weld show-through and distortion on the opposite side of exposed connections by grinding to a smooth profile aligned with adjacent material.

F. Erection marks, painted marks, and other marks are permitted on [**galvanized-**] [**corrosion-resisting (weathering)**] steel surfaces of completed structure.

G. Cleaning Corrosion-Resisting (Weathering) AESS: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: [**Snug tightened**] [**Pretensioned**] [**Slip critical**].

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M[**and AWS D1.8/D1.8M**] for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

2.7 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A123/A123M.

1. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
2. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
3. Galvanize AESS [**lintels**] <**Insert description**> attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

2.8 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Surfaces to be field welded.

3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Corrosion-resisting (weathering) steel surfaces.
5. Galvanized surfaces [**unless indicated to be painted**].

B. Surface Preparation: Clean nongalvanized surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2.
2. SSPC-SP 3.
3. SSPC-SP 7 (WAB)/NACE WAB-4.
4. SSPC-SP 14 (WAB)/NACE WAB-8.
5. SSPC-SP 11.
6. SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
7. SSPC-SP 10 (WAB)/NACE WAB-2.
8. SSPC-SP 5 (WAB)/NACE WAB-1.
9. SSPC-SP 8.

C. Preparing Galvanized Steel for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner [**or according to SSPC-SP 16**].

D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and eased edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify, with steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.

B. Examine AESS for twists, kinks, warping, gouges, and other imperfections before erecting.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep AESS secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Take special care during erection to avoid marking or distorting the AESS and to minimize damage to shop painting. Set AESS accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.

1. Remove welded tabs that were used for attaching temporary bracing and safety cabling and that are exposed to view in the completed Work. Take care to avoid any blemishes, holes, or unsightly surfaces resulting from the use or removal of temporary elements.
2. Grind tack welds smooth.
3. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
4. Orient bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
5. Remove erection bolts in [**Category AESS 4**] <**Insert category**> AESS, fill holes with weld metal or filler, and grind or sand smooth to achieve surface quality approved by Architect.
6. Fill weld access holes in [**Category AESS 4**] <**Insert category**> AESS with weld metal or filler and grind, or sand smooth to achieve surface quality as approved by Architect.
7. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.

B. In addition to ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10 requirements, comply with the following.

1. Erection of [**Category AESS 1**] [**and Category AESS 2**]:

a. Erect AESS to the standard frame tolerances specified in ANSI/AISC 303 for non-AESS.
b. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
c. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
d. Grind off butt and plug weld projections larger than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
e. Continuous welds are to be of uniform size and profile.
f. Ream holes that must be enlarged. Use of drift pins or burning is not permitted. Replace misaligned connection plates where holes cannot be aligned with acceptable appearance.
g. Splice members only where indicated on Drawings.
h. No torch cutting or field fabrication is permitted.

2. Erection of Category AESS 3:

a. Erect AESS to the standard frame tolerances specified in ANSI/AISC 303 for non-AESS.
b. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
c. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
d. Grind off butt and plug weld projections larger than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
e. Continuous welds are to be of uniform size and profile.
f. Ream holes that must be enlarged. Use of drift pins or burning is not permitted. Replace misaligned connection plates where holes cannot be aligned with acceptable appearance.
g. Splice members only where indicated on Drawings.
h. No torch cutting or field fabrication is permitted.
i. Weld profiles, quality, and finish are be as approved by Architect.
j. Make joint welds, including tack welds, appear continuous by filling intermittent welds.

3. Erection of Category AESS 4:

a. Erect AESS to the standard frame tolerances specified in ANSI/AISC 303 for non-AESS.
b. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
c. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
d. Grind off butt and plug weld projections larger than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

e. Continuous welds are to be of uniform size and profile.
f. Ream holes that must be enlarged. Use of drift pins or burning is not permitted. Replace misaligned connection plates where holes cannot be aligned with acceptable appearance.
g. Splice members only where indicated on Drawings.
h. No torch cutting or field fabrication is permitted.
i. Weld profiles, quality, and finish are be as approved by Architect.
j. Make joint welds, including tack welds, appear continuous by filling intermittent welds.
k. Grind welds smooth.
l. Minimize weld show-through and distortion on the opposite side of exposed connections by grinding to a smooth profile aligned with adjacent material.
m. Oversize welds where ground, contoured, or blended, and grind to provide a smooth transition, matching profile approved by Architect.

4. Erection of Category AESS C:

a. <**Insert requirements**>.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: [**Snug tightened**] [**Pretensioned**] [**Slip critical**].

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M[**and AWS D1.8/D1.8M**] for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

3.5 REPAIR

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and touchup galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

B. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting, to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

2. Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in [**Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."**] [**Section 099123 "Interior Painting."**] [**Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."**]

C. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to inspect AESS as specified in Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing." The testing agency is not responsible for enforcing requirements relating to aesthetic effect.

B. Architect will observe AESS in place to determine acceptability relating to aesthetic effect.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 23 00a - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of general-duty valves for plumbing piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Bronze angle valves.
b. Brass ball valves.
c. Bronze ball valves.
d. Iron ball valves.
e. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
f. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
g. Bronze lift check valves.
h. Bronze swing check valves.
i. Iron swing check valves.
j. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
k. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
l. Iron, center-guided check valves.
m. Iron, plate-type check valves.
n. Bronze gate valves.
o. Iron gate valves.
p. Bronze globe valves.
q. Iron globe valves.
r. Lubricated plug valves.
s. Chainwheels.

C. Definitions
1. CWP: Cold working pressure.
2. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
3. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
4. NRS: Nonrising stem.
5. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
6. RS: Rising stem.
7. SWP: Steam working pressure.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
2. ASME Compliance:
a. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
b. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
c. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
3. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
   a. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
   b. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
   c. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
   d. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
   e. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
   f. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
2. Use the following precautions during storage:
   a. Maintain valve end protection.
   b. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
3. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Valves
   1. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
   2. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
   3. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Valve Actuator Types:
      a. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
      b. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
      c. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves, **as directed**.
      d. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish the Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 **OR** 10, **as directed**, plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
      e. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
   5. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
      a. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
      b. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
      c. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
   6. Valve-End Connections:
      a. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
      b. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
      c. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
      d. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
   7. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

B. Bronze Angle Valves
   1. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
         2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
         3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
         4) Ends: Threaded.
         5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
         6) Packing: Asbestos free.
         7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
   2. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

3. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
6) Packing: Asbestos free.
7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

4. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

C. Brass Ball Valves
1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
3) Body Design: One piece.
4) Body Material: Forged brass.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
7) Stem: Brass.
8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9) Port: Reduced.

2. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Forged brass.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Brass.
9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
10) Port: Full.

3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.

2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Forged brass.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Stainless steel.
9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10) Port: Full.

4. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Two piece.
      5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Brass.
      9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      10) Port: Regular.
5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Two piece.
      5) Body Material: Brass or bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      10) Port: Regular.
6. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Brass.
      9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      10) Port: Full.
7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Stainless steel.

9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10) Port: Full.

D. Bronze Ball Valves
1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
3) Body Design: One piece.
4) Body Material: Bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
7) Stem: Bronze.
8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9) Port: Reduced.
2. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
3) Body Design: One piece.
4) Body Material: Bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
7) Stem: Stainless steel.
8) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
9) Port: Reduced.
3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Bronze.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Bronze.
9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
10) Port: Full.
4. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Bronze.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Stainless steel.
9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10) Port: Full.
5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.

5) Body Material: Bronze.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Bronze.
9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
10) Port: Regular.

6. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Two piece.
      5) Body Material: Bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      10) Port: Regular.
7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Bronze.
      9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      10) Port: Full.
8. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      10) Port: Full.

E. Iron Ball Valves
   1. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-72.
         2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
         3) Body Design: Split body.
         4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
         5) Ends: Flanged.
         6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
         7) Stem: Stainless steel.
         8) Ball: Stainless steel.
         9) Port: Full.

F. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves
1. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
2. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: NBR.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
3. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
4. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: NBR.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
5. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Stainless steel.
6. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).

3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Seat: NBR.
6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Stainless steel.

G. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves
1. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
4) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
5) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
6) Seal: EPDM.
2. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
2) NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) NPS 10 (DN 250) and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
4) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
5) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
6) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
7) Seal: EPDM.

H. Bronze Lift Check Valves
1. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Disc: Bronze.
2. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

I. Bronze Swing Check Valves
1. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Disc: Bronze.
2. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
a. Description:

1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.

3. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
      2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      5) Ends: Threaded.
      6) Disc: Bronze.
4. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
      2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      5) Ends: Threaded.
      6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.

J. Iron Swing Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Bronze.
      7) Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Composition.
      7) Seat Ring: Bronze.
      8) Disc Holder: Bronze.
      9) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      10) Gasket: Asbestos free.
3. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Bronze.
      7) Gasket: Asbestos free.

K. Iron Swing Check Valves With Closure Control

1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Bronze.
      7) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      8) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.
2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Weight-Closure Control:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Bronze.
      7) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      8) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

L. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves
1. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      2) Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      3) Seal: EPDM.
      4) Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

M. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      4) Style: Compact wafer.
      5) Seat: Bronze.
2. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Seat: Bronze.
3. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      4) Style: Compact wafer.
      5) Seat: Bronze.
4. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.

2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
5) Ends: Flanged.
6) Seat: Bronze.

5. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      5) Seat: Bronze.
6. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Seat: Bronze.
7. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      5) Seat: Bronze.
8. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Seat: Bronze.
9. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      4) Style: Compact wafer.
      5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
10. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
       2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
       3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
       4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
       5) Ends: Flanged.
       6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
11. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
       2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
       3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
       4) Style: Compact wafer.

5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.

12. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
        3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
        5) Ends: Flanged.
        6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
13. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
        3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
        4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
        5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
14. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
        3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
        4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
        5) Ends: Flanged.
        6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
15. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
        3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
        5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
16. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
        3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
        5) Ends: Flanged.
        6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.

N. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: API 594.
        2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
        3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
        4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
        5) Seat: Bronze.
2. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: API 594.
        2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
        3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
        4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        5) Seat: Bronze.

3. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      5) Seat: Bronze.
4. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: Bronze.
5. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
6. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
7. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
8. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
9. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
10. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: API 594.
       2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
       3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
       4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
       5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.

O. Bronze Gate Valves
1. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

P. Iron Gate Valves
1. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
4) Ends: Flanged.
5) Trim: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge.
7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.

2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
4) Ends: Flanged.
5) Trim: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge.
7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

3. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      4) Ends: Flanged.
      5) Trim: Bronze.
      6) Disc: Solid wedge.
      7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
4. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      4) Ends: Flanged.
      5) Trim: Bronze.
      6) Disc: Solid wedge.
      7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

Q. Bronze Globe Valves
1. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
      5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
      6) Packing: Asbestos free.
      7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
      5) Stem: Bronze.
      6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      7) Packing: Asbestos free.
      8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded.
      5) Stem: Bronze.
      6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      7) Packing: Asbestos free.
      8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

R. Iron Globe Valves
1. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      4) Ends: Flanged.
      5) Trim: Bronze.
      6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      4) Ends: Flanged.
      5) Trim: Bronze.
      6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

S. Lubricated Plug Valves
1. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
2. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
3. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
4. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
5. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).

3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

6. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
7. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
8. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

T. Chainwheels
1. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
   a. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
   b. Attachment: For connection to ball **OR** butterfly **OR** plug, **as directed**, valve stems.
   c. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron **OR** Cast iron **OR** Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating, **as directed**.
   d. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Valve Installation
1. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
2. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
3. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
4. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
5. Install chainwheels on operators for ball **OR** butterfly **OR** gate **OR** globe **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.
6. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
   a. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
   b. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
   c. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

B. Adjusting
   1. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

C. General Requirements For Valve Applications
   1. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
      a. Shutoff Service: Ball **OR** butterfly **OR** gate **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves.
      b. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
      c. Throttling Service: Globe **OR** angle **OR** ball **OR** butterfly, **as directed**, valves.
      d. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
         1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
         2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**,-seat check valves.
         3) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
   2. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
   3. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
      a. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
      b. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
      c. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
      d. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
      e. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
      f. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
      g. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

D. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Valve Schedule (150 psig (1035 kPa) Or Less)
   1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
      a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
      b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
      c. Bronze Lift Check Valves: Class 125, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
      d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
      e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
   2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
      a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
      b. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
      c. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
      d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
      e. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
      f. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
      g. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.

h. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**,.

E. High-Pressure, Compressed-Air Valve Schedule (150 to 200 psig (1035 to 1380 kPa))
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
c. Bronze Lift Check Valves: Class 125, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
c. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
e. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
f. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
g. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
h. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.

F. Domestic, Hot- And Cold-Water Valve Schedule
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**,.
f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
d. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
e. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
f. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
g. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
h. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.

i. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
j. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
k. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.

G. Sanitary-Waste And Storm-Drainage Valve Schedule
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
c. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
d. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
e. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
g. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
h. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23 00a

SECTION 22 05 23 00b - WATER DISTRIBUTION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service **OR** fire-service mains **OR** combined water service and fire-service mains, **as directed**.
2. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

C. Definitions
1. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene terpolymer rubber.
2. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
3. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.
4. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
5. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
6. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. RTRF: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) fittings.
8. RTRP: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) pipe.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.
   a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring for alarms.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Regulatory Requirements:
   a. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
   b. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
   c. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
2. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
4. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.
5. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
6. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.
7. NSF Compliance:

a. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic potable-water-service piping. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.
b. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
a. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
b. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
c. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
2. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
a. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
b. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
3. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
4. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
5. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
6. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
7. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

G. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
b. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without the Owner's written permission.

H. Coordination
1. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Copper Tube And Fittings
1. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed,** water tube, annealed temper.
a. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
b. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**, water tube, drawn temper.
a. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
b. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:

1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.

3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

B. Ductile-Iron Pipe And Fittings
1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
   a. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   b. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
2. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
   a. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   b. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
3. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with cut, rounded-grooved ends.
   a. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe Appurtenances:
      1) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
      2) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.
4. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

C. PE Pipe And Fittings
1. PE, ASTM Pipe: ASTM D 2239, SIDR No. 5.3, 7, or 9; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OE** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
   a. Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D 2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.
   b. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
2. PE, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C906, DR No. 7.3, 9, or 9.3; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
   a. PE, AWWA Fittings: AWWA C906, socket- or butt-fusion type, with DR number matching pipe and PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
3. PE, Fire-Service Pipe: ASTM F 714, AWWA C906, or equivalent for PE water pipe; FMG approved, with minimum thickness equivalent to FMG Class 150 and Class 200.
   a. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.

D. PVC Pipe And Fittings
1. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
   a. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466.
2. PVC, Schedule 80 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
   a. PVC, Schedule 80 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2467.
   b. PVC, Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.
3. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.
   a. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.

b. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
c. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 150, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
d. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   1) Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
e. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   1) Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

E. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings
1. AWWA RTRP: AWWA C950, Class 150 **OR** Class 200 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, Grade 1, epoxy **OR** Grade 2, polyester, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot ends for bonded **OR** with gasket or seal for gasketed, **as directed**, joints. Liner is optional, unless otherwise indicated. Include FMG approval if used for fire-service mains.
   a. RTRF: AWWA C950, similar to pipe in material, pressure class, and joining method.
2. UL RTRP: UL 1713, Class 150 **OR** Class 200 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot ends with gasket or seal for gasketed joints. Liner is optional, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. RTRF: Similar to pipe in material, pressure class, and joining method.

F. Special Pipe Fittings
1. Ductile-Iron Rigid Expansion Joints:
   a. Description: Three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
      1) Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
      2) Expansion Required: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
2. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints:
   a. Description: Compound, ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections. Assemble components for offset and expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
      1) Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
      2) Offset: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
      3) Expansion Required: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
3. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:
   a. Description: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and 1 or 2 flexing sections for up to 15-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
      1) Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.

G. Joining Materials
1. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.
2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series.
3. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
4. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Piping Specialties

1. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
2. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
   a. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
      1) Standard: AWWA C219.
      2) Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
      3) Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
      4) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      5) Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
3. Split-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
   a. Description: Metal, bolted, split-sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
      1) Standard: AWWA C219.
      2) Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
      3) Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.
      4) Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber, unless otherwise indicated.
      5) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      6) Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
4. Flexible Connectors:
   a. Nonferrous-Metal Piping: Bronze hose covered with bronze wire braid; with copper-tube, pressure-type, solder-joint ends or bronze flanged ends brazed to hose.
   b. Ferrous-Metal Piping: Stainless-steel hose covered with stainless-steel wire braid; with ASME B1.20.1, threaded steel pipe nipples or ASME B16.5, steel pipe flanges welded to hose.
5. Dielectric Fittings: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, or plain end types; and matching piping system materials.
   a. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated union assembly, designed for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C). Include insulating material that isolates dissimilar metals and ends with inside threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
   b. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure to suit system pressures.
   c. Dielectric-Flange Insulation Kits: Field-assembled companion-flange assembly, full-face or ring type. Components include neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
      1) Provide separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure to suit system pressures.
   d. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel couplings with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining, with threaded ends and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
   e. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipples with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining, with combination of plain, threaded, or grooved end types, and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

I. Corrosion-Protection Piping Encasement
   1. Encasement for Underground Metal Piping:
      a. Standards: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
      b. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
      c. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness.
      d. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness, or high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.

e. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.
f. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

J. Gate Valves
1. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:
a. Nonrising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:
1) Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with cast-iron or bronze double-disc gate, bronze gate rings, bronze stem, and stem nut.
a) Standard: AWWA C500.
b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
d) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
b. Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
1) Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
a) Standard: AWWA C509.
b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
d) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
c. Nonrising-Stem, High-Pressure, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
1) Description: Ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
a) Standard: AWWA C509.
b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
c) End Connections: Push on or mechanical joint.
d) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
d. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:
1) Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with cast-iron double disc, bronze disc and seat rings, and bronze stem.
a) Standard: AWWA C500.
b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c) End Connections: Flanged.
e. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
1) Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, and bronze stem.
a) Standard: AWWA C509.
b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
c) End Connections: Flanged.
2. UL/FMG, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:
a. UL/FMG, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:
1) Description: Iron body and bonnet with flange for indicator post, bronze seating material, and inside screw.
a) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
c) End Connections: Flanged.
b. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:
1) Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.
a) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
c) End Connections: Flanged.
3. Bronze Gate Valves:
a. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:
1) Description: Bronze body and bonnet and bronze stem.
a) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.

b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
c) End Connections: Threaded.

b. Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:
1) Description: Class 125, Type 1, bronze with solid wedge, threaded ends, and malleable-iron handwheel.
a) Standard: MSS SP-80.

K. Gate Valve Accessories And Specialties
1. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:
a. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.
1) Standard: MSS SP-60.
2) Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
3) Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**,-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.
2. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
a. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.
3. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FMG-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.

L. Check Valves
1. AWWA Check Valves:
a. Description: Swing-check type with resilient seat. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550 and ends to match piping.
1) Standard: AWWA C508.
2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
2. UL/FMG, Check Valves:
a. Description: Swing-check type with pressure rating; rubber-face checks, unless otherwise indicated; and ends matching piping.
1) Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.

M. Detector Check Valves
1. Detector Check Valves:
a. Description (with water meter): Galvanized cast-iron body, bolted cover with air-bleed device for access to internal parts, and flanged ends. Include one-piece bronze disc with bronze bushings, pivot, and replaceable seat. Include threaded bypass taps in inlet and outlet for bypass meter connection. Set valve to allow minimal water flow through bypass meter when major water flow is required.
1) Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
3) Water Meter: AWWA C700, disc type, at least one-fourth size of detector check valve. Include meter, bypass piping, gate valves, check valve, and connections to detector check valve.
b. Description (without water meter): Iron body, corrosion-resistant clapper ring and seat ring material, flanged ends, with connections for bypass and installation of water meter.
1) Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).

N. Butterfly Valves
1. AWWA Butterfly Valves:

a. Description: Rubber seated.
1) Standard: AWWA C504.
2) Body: Cast or ductile iron.
3) Body Type: Wafer **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
4) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).

2. UL Butterfly Valves:
a. Description: Metal on resilient material seating.
1) Standards: UL 1091 and FMG approved.
2) Body: Cast or ductile iron.
3) Body Type: Wafer **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
4) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).

O. Plug Valves
1. Plug Valves:
a. Description: Resilient-seated eccentric.
1) Standard: MSS SP-108.
2) Body: Cast iron.
3) Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1207-kPa) minimum CWP.
4) Seat Material: Suitable for potable-water service.

P. Corporation Valves And Curb Valves
1. Service-Saddle Assemblies: Comply with AWWA C800. Include saddle and valve compatible with tapping machine.
a. Service Saddle: Copper alloy with seal and AWWA C800, threaded outlet for corporation valve.
b. Corporation Valve: Bronze body and ground-key plug, with AWWA C800, threaded inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
c. Manifold (if utility company requires multiple connections): Copper fitting with two to four inlets as required, with ends matching corporation valves and outlet matching service piping material.
2. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
3. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: Similar to AWWA M44 requirements for cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter.
a. Shutoff Rods: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.

Q. Water Meters
1. Water meters will be furnished by utility company.
NOTE: If water meters are specified in this Section, delete paragraph above and retain and edit paragraphs and subparagraphs below.
2. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
a. Description: With bronze main case.
1) Standard: AWWA C700.
2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
3. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
a. Description:
1) Standard: AWWA C701.
2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
4. Compound-Type Water Meters:
a. Description:
1) Standard: AWWA C702.
2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.

5. Remote Registration System:
   a. Description: Utility company standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      1) Standard: AWWA C706.
      2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
6. Remote Registration System:
   a. Description: Utility company standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      1) Standard: AWWA C707.
      2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
      3) Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.
         OR
         Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.

R. Detector-Type Water Meters
1. Detector-Type Water Meters
2. Description: Main line, proportional meter with second meter on bypass. Register flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
   a. Standards: AWWA C703, UL listed, and FMG approved.
   b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   c. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine **OR** AWWA C702, compound, **as directed**,-type, bronze case.
      1) Size: At least one-half nominal size of main-line meter.
3. Description: Main-line turbine meter with strainer and second meter on bypass. Register flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
   a. Standards: AWWA C703, UL listed, and FMG approved.
   b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
   c. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine-type, bronze case.
      1) Size: At least NPS 2 (DN 50).
4. Remote Registration System:
   a. Description: Utility company standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      1) Standard: AWWA C706.
      2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
5. Remote Registration System:
   a. Description: Utility company standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      1) Standard: AWWA C707.
      2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
      3) Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.
         OR
         Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.

S. Pressure-Reducing Valves
1. Water Regulators:
   a. Standard: ASSE 1003.
   b. Pressure Rating: Initial pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   c. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   d. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   e. Design Inlet Pressure: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   f. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.

g. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish, **as directed**, for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
h. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
i. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).

2. Water Control Valves:
   a. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
      1) Pressure Rating: Initial pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
      2) Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
         a) Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         b) Pattern: Angle **OR** Globe, **as directed**,-valve design.
         c) Trim: Stainless steel.
      3) Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
      4) Design Inlet Pressure: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
      5) Design Outlet Pressure Setting: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
      6) End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

T. Relief Valves
   1. Air-Release Valves:
      a. Description: Hydromechanical device to automatically release accumulated air.
         1) Standard: AWWA C512.
         2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
         3) Body Material: Cast iron, **as directed**.
         4) Trim Material: Stainless steel, brass, or bronze, **as directed**.
         5) Water Inlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         6) Air Outlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         7) Orifice Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         8) Design Air-Release Capacity: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   2. Air/Vacuum Valves:
      a. Description: Direct-acting, float-operated, hydromechanical device with large orifice to automatically release accumulated air or to admit air during filling of piping.
         1) Standard: AWWA C512.
         2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
         3) Body Material: Cast iron, **as directed**.
         4) Trim Material: Stainless steel, brass, or bronze\, **as directed**.
         5) Inlet and Outlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         6) Orifice Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         7) Design Air Capacity: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   3. Combination Air Valves:
      a. Description: Float-operated, hydromechanical device to automatically release accumulated air or to admit air.
         1) Standard: AWWA C512.
         2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
         3) Body Material: Cast iron, **as directed**.
         4) Trim Material: Stainless steel, brass, or bronze, **as directed**.
         5) Inlet and Outlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         6) Orifice Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
         7) Design Air Capacity: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.

U. Vacuum Breakers
1. Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly:
a. Standard: ASSE 1020.
b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
c. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa), **as directed,** maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
h. Accessories: Ball valves on inlet and outlet.

V. Backflow Preventers
1. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:
a. Standard: ASSE 1013 **OR** AWWA C511, **as directed**.
b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
c. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa), **as directed,** maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
h. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
i. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
j. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through **OR** vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet **OR** vertical, **as directed**, flow.
k. Accessories:
1) Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
2) Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.
2. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
a. Standard: ASSE 1015 **OR** AWWA C510, **as directed**.
b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
c. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
h. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
i. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

j. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through, **as directed**, flow.
k. Accessories: Ball valves with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; OS&Y gate valves with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

3. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection Backflow Preventer Assemblies:
   a. Standards: ASSE 1047 and UL listed or FMG approved.
   b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
   c. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
   d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   e. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   f. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   g. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   h. End Connections: Flanged.
   i. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through **OR** vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet **OR** vertical, **as directed**, flow.
   j. Accessories:
      1) Valves: UL 262, FMG-approved, OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
      2) Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.
      3) Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
4. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
   a. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL listed or FMG approved.
   b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
   c. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
   d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
   h. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   i. End Connections: Flanged.
   j. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through **OR** vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet **OR** vertical, **as directed**, flow.
   k. Accessories:
      1) Valves: UL 262, FMG-approved, OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
      2) Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
5. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:
   a. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

W. Water Meter Boxes
1. Description: Cast-iron body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.

a. Option: Base section may be cast-iron, PVC, clay, or other pipe.

2. Description: Cast-iron body and double cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in top cover; and with separate inner cover; air space between covers; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
3. Description: Polymer-concrete body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping. Include vertical and lateral design loadings of 15,000 lb minimum over 10 by 10 inches (6800 kg minimum over 254 by 254 mm) square.
   a. Use of this meter box is permitted in walks or unpaved areas away from traffic; do not use in roadways.

X. Concrete Vaults
1. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857 and made according to ASTM C 858.
   a. Ladder: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel or polyethylene-encased steel steps.
   b. Manhole: ASTM A 48/A 48M Class No. 35A minimum tensile strength, gray-iron traffic frame and cover.
      1) Dimension: 24-inch (610-mm) minimum diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Manhole: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron traffic frame and cover.
      1) Dimension: 24-inch- (610-mm-) minimum diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Drain: ASME A112.6.3, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

Y. Protective Enclosures
1. Freeze-Protection Enclosures:
   a. Description: Insulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from freezing and damage, with heat source to maintain minimum internal temperature of 40 deg F (4 deg C) when external temperatures reach as low as minus 34 deg F (minus 36 deg C).
      1) Standard: ASSE 1060.
      2) Class I: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
      3) Class I-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.
         a) Housing: Reinforced-aluminum **OR** -fiberglass, **as directed**, construction.
            i. Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
            ii. Drain opening for units with drain connection.
            iii. Access doors with locking devices.
            iv. Insulation inside housing.
            v. Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.
         b) Electric heating cable or heater with self-limiting temperature control.
2. Weather-Resistant Enclosures:
   a. Description: Uninsulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from weather and damage.
      1) Standard: ASSE 1060.
      2) Class III: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
      3) Class III-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.
         i. Housing: Reinforced-aluminum **OR** -fiberglass, **as directed**, construction.
         ii. Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
         iii. Drain opening for units with drain connection.

iv. Access doors with locking devices.
v. Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.

3. Expanded-Metal Enclosures:
   a. Description: Enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from damage.
      1) Material: ASTM F 1267, expanded metal side and top panels, of weight and with reinforcement of same metal at edges as required for rigidity.
      2) Type: Type I, expanded **OR** II, expanded and flattened, **as directed**.
      3) Class: Class 1, uncoated carbon steel **OR** 2, hot-dip, zinc-coated carbon steel **OR** 3, corrosion-resisting steel, **as directed**.
      4) Finish: Manufacturer's enamel paint.
      5) Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
      6) Locking device.
      7) Lugs or devices for securing enclosure to base.
4. Enclosure Bases:
   a. Description: 4-inch- (100-mm-) **OR** 6-inch- (150-mm-), **as directed**, minimum thickness precast concrete, of dimensions required to extend at least 6 inches (150 mm) beyond edges of enclosure housings. Include openings for piping.

Z. Fire Hydrants
1. Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants:
   a. Description (for AWWA dry-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, 5-1/4-inch (133-mm) main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
      1) Standard: AWWA C502.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
      3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
      4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
      5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valve by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
      6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Description (for UL/FMG, dry-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, 5-1/4-inch (133-mm) main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
      1) Standards: UL 246, FMG approved.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
      3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
      4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
      5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valve by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
      6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants:
   a. Description (for AWWA wet-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, NPS 6 (DN 150) threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550.
      1) Standard: AWWA C503.

2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valves by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.

b. Description (for UL/FMG, wet-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, NPS 6 (DN 150) threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet.
1) Standards: UL 246 and FMG approved.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valves by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.

AA. Flushing Hydrants
1. Post-Type Flushing Hydrants:
a. Description: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.
1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
2) Outlet: One, with horizontal discharge.
3) Hose Thread: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65), with NFPA 1963 external hose thread for use by local fire department, and with cast-iron cap with brass chain.
4) Barrel: Cast-iron or steel pipe with breakaway feature.
5) Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure, and automatic draining.
6) Security: Locking device for padlock.
7) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.
8) Inlet: NPS 2 (DN 50) minimum.
9) Operating Wrench: One for each unit.
2. Ground-Type Flushing Hydrants:
a. Description: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.
1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
2) Outlet: One, with vertical **OR** angle, **as directed**, discharge.
3) Hose Thread: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65), with NFPA 1963 external hose thread for use by local fire department, and with cast-iron cap with brass chain.
4) Barrel: Cast-iron or steel pipe.
5) Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure, and automatic draining.
6) Inlet: NPS 2 (DN 50) minimum.
7) Hydrant Box: Cast iron with cover, for ground mounting.
8) Operating Wrench: One for each unit.
3. Post-Type Sampling Station:
a. Description: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.
1) Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum.
2) Sampling Outlet: One unthreaded nozzle with handle.
3) Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure. Include operating handle.
4) Drain: Tubing with separate manual vacuum pump.
5) Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) minimum.
6) Housing: Weatherproof material with locking device. Include anchor device.
7) Operating Wrench: One for each unit.

BB. Fire Department Connections
1. Fire Department Connections:
a. Description: Freestanding, with cast-bronze body, thread inlets according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department hose threads, and threaded bottom outlet. Include lugged caps, gaskets, and chains; lugged swivel connection and drop clapper for each hose-connection inlet; 18-inch- (460-mm-) high brass sleeve; and round escutcheon plate.
1) Standard: UL 405.
2) Connections: Two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one NPS 4 (DN 100) **OR** NPS 6 (DN 150), **as directed**, outlet.
3) Connections: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one NPS 6 (DN 150) outlet.
4) Connections: Six NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one NPS 6 (DN 150) **OR** NPS 8 (DN 200), **as directed**, outlet.
5) Inlet Alignment: Inline, horizontal **OR** Square, **as directed**.
6) Finish Including Sleeve: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough chrome-plated **OR** Polished bronze, **as directed**.
7) Escutcheon Plate Marking: "AUTO SPKR" **OR** “STANDPIPE” **OR** “AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE."

CC. Alarm Devices
1. Alarm Devices, General: UL 753 and FMG approved, of types and sizes to mate and match piping and equipment.
2. Water-Flow Indicators (can be used with wet-barrel fire hydrants): Vane-type water-flow detector, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) working pressure; designed for horizontal or vertical installation; with 2 single-pole, double-throw circuit switches to provide isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal when cover is removed.
3. Supervisory Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal valve in other than fully open position. Mount on stem of OS&Y gate valves and on indicator posts.
4. Pressure Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal increase in pressure. Mount on barrel of dry-barrel fire hydrants.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Applications
1. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
2. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
4. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
5. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 (DN 20 to DN 80), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following, **as directed**:
a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
b. PE, ASTM pipe; insert fittings for PE pipe; and clamped **OR** molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion, **as directed**, joints.
c. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

d. NPS 1 to NPS 3 (DN 25 to DN 80) fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
e. Fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.

6. Underground water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following, **as directed**:
   a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M,Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
   b. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed **OR** mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical **OR** grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved, **as directed**, joints.
   c. PE, AWWA pipe; PE, AWWA fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
   d. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
   e. NPS 4 and NPS 6 (DN 100 and DN 150): NPS 6 (DN 150) PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe; PVC, AWWA Class 150 fabricated **OR** molded, **as directed**, fittings; and gasketed joints.
   f. NPS 8 (DN 200): PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe; PVC, AWWA Class 200 fabricated **OR** push-on-joint, ductile-iron **OR** mechanical-joint, ductile-iron, **as directed**, fittings; and gasketed joints.
   g. Fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
7. Water Meter Box Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 2 (DN 20 to DN 50), **as directed**, shall be same as underground water-service piping.
8. Aboveground and Vault, **as directed**, Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 (DN 20 to DN 80), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:

NOTE: Water-service piping materials listed in subparagraphs below are for potable-water service. They may not be suitable for fire-service mains.

   a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented **OR** threaded fittings; and threaded, **as directed**, joints.
   c. NPS 1 to NPS 2 (DN 25 to DN 50) fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
9. Aboveground and vault, **as directed**, water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:
   a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
   b. Ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron, grooved-end appurtenances; and grooved joints.
   c. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented **OR** threaded fittings; and threaded, **as directed**, joints.
   d. Fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
10. Underground Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:

NOTE: Fire-service-main piping materials listed in subparagraphs below are for fire-protection water service. They may not be suitable for potable-water service.

   a. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed **OR** mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical **OR** grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved, **as directed**, joints.
   b. PE, Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.

c. PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 150 fabricated or molded fittings; and gasketed joints.
d. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 200 fabricated fittings; and gasketed joints.
e. Fiberglass, AWWA, FMG-approved RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**; RTRF; and gasketed joints.
f. Fiberglass, UL RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and gasketed joints.

11. Aboveground and Vault, **as directed**, Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
12. Underground Combined Water-Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:
    a. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed **OR** mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical **OR** grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved, **as directed**, joints.
    b. PVC, AWWA Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC fabricated or molded fittings of same class as pipe; and gasketed joints.
    c. Fiberglass, AWWA, FMG-approved RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**; RTRF; and gasketed joints.
13. Aboveground and Vault, **as directed**, Combined Water Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

C. Valve Applications
1. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FMG, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller installation.
2. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
    a. Underground Valves, NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, metal **OR** resilient **OR** high-pressure, resilient, **as directed**,-seated gate valves with valve box.
    b. Underground Valves, NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger, for Indicator Posts: UL/FMG, cast-iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator post.
    c. Use the following for valves in vaults and aboveground:
        1) Gate Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze, nonrising **OR** rising, **as directed**, stem.
        2) Gate Valves, NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, metal seated **OR** AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, resilient seated **OR** UL/FMG, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, **as directed**.
        3) Check Valves: AWWA C508 **OR** UL/FMG, **as directed**, swing type.
    d. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to control water pressure.
    e. Relief Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground.
        1) Air-Release Valves: To release accumulated air.
        2) Air/Vacuum Valves: To release or admit large volume of air during filling of piping.
        3) Combination Air Valves: To release or admit air.
    f. Detector Check Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to detect unauthorized use of water.

D. Piping Systems - Common Requirements
1. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for piping-system common requirements.

E. Piping Installation
1. Water-Main Connection (if tap is made by utility company): Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
2. Water-Main Connection (if tap is made by Contractor): Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
3. Make connections larger than NPS 2 (DN 50) with tapping machine according to the following:
   a. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
   b. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
   c. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
   d. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
4. Make connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:
   a. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards.
   b. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
   c. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
   d. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
   e. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
   f. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.
5. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
   a. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
   b. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
6. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
   a. If required, install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
7. Install PE pipe according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 645.
8. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645 and AWWA M23.
9. Install fiberglass AWWA pipe according to AWWA M45.
10. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches (750 mm), **as directed**, with top at least 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
    a. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches (910 mm), **as directed**, cover over top.
    b. Under Railroad Tracks: With at least 48 inches (1220 mm), **as directed**, cover over top.
    c. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, additional cover.
11. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
12. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
    a. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
13. Sleeves are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
14. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
15. For piping with gasketed joints: Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
16. See Division 21 Section "Common Work Results For Fire Suppression" for fire-suppression-water piping inside the building.
17. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for potable-water piping inside the building.

F. Joint Construction
1. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for basic piping joint construction.
2. Make pipe joints according to the following:
   a. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use proprietary crimping tool and procedure recommended by copper, pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer.
   b. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
   c. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
   d. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions.
   e. PE Piping Insert-Fitting Joints: Use plastic insert fittings and fasteners according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
   f. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
   g. Fiberglass Piping Bonded Joints: Use adhesive and procedure recommended by piping manufacturer.
   h. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD, and with system working pressure. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for joining piping of dissimilar metals.

G. Anchorage Installation
1. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
   a. Concrete thrust blocks.
   b. Locking mechanical joints.
   c. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
   d. Bolted flanged joints.
   e. Heat-fused joints.
   f. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
2. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
   a. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
   b. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
   c. Bonded-Joint Fiberglass, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M45.
   d. Fire-Service-Main Piping: According to NFPA 24.
3. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

H. Valve Installation
1. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
2. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
3. UL/FMG, Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
4. UL/FMG, Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
5. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
6. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.
7. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Install in vault or aboveground between shutoff valves. Install full-size valved bypass, **as directed**.
8. Relief Valves: Comply with AWWA C512. Install aboveground with shutoff valve on inlet.

I. Detector-Check Valve Installation

1. Install in vault or aboveground.
2. Install for proper direction of flow. Install bypass with water meter, gate valves on each side of meter, and check valve downstream from meter.
3. Support detector check valves, meters, shutoff valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.

J. Water Meter Installation
1. If water meters are provided by the Contractor: Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.
2. Water Meters: Install displacement **OR** turbine, **as directed**,-type water meters, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, in meter boxes with shutoff valves on water meter inlets. Include valves on water meter outlets and valved bypass around meters unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Water Meters: Install compound **OR** turbine, **as directed**,-type water meters, NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger, in meter vaults. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets and valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
4. Water Meters: Install detector-type water meters in meter vault according to AWWA M6. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets and full-size valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.

K. Roughing-In For Water Meters
1. If Contractor is to rough-in for water meters to be installed by utility company: Rough-in piping and specialties for water meter installation according to utility company's written instructions.

L. Vacuum Breaker Assembly Installation
1. Install pressure vacuum breaker assemblies of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Do not install pressure vacuum breaker assemblies in vault or other space subject to flooding.

M. Backflow Preventer Installation
1. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
4. Support NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.

N. Water Meter Box Installation
1. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.
2. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, above surface.

O. Concrete Vault Installation
1. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.

P. Protective Enclosure Installation
1. Install concrete base level and with top approximately 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, above grade.
2. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.
3. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.

Q. Fire Hydrant Installation
1. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.

2. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants: Install with valve below frost line. Provide for drainage.
3. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.
4. UL/FMG Fire Hydrants: Comply with NFPA 24.

R. Flushing Hydrant Installation
1. Install post-type flushing hydrants with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Support in upright position. Include separate gate valve or curb valve and restrained joints in supply piping.
2. Install ground-type flushing hydrants with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Install hydrant box flush with grade. Include separate gate valve or curb valve and restrained joints in supply piping.
3. Install sampling stations with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Attach weather-resistant housing and support in upright position. Include separate curb valve in supply piping.

S. Fire Department Connection Installation
1. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire department connection to mains.
2. Install protective pipe bollards on two sides of **OR** on three sides of, **as directed**, each fire department connection. Pipe bollards are specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications".

T. Alarm Device Installation
1. General: Comply with NFPA 24 for devices and methods of valve supervision. Underground valves with valve box do not require supervision.
2. Supervisory Switches: Supervise valves in open position.
   a. Valves: Grind away portion of exposed valve stem. Bolt switch, with plunger in stem depression, to OS&Y gate-valve yoke.
   b. Indicator Posts: Drill and thread hole in upper-barrel section at target plate. Install switch, with toggle against target plate, on barrel of indicator post.
3. Locking and Sealing: Secure unsupervised valves as follows:
   a. Valves: Install chain and padlock on open OS&Y gate valve.
   b. Post Indicators: Install padlock on wrench on indicator post.
4. Pressure Switches: Drill and thread hole in exposed barrel of fire hydrant. Install switch.
5. Water-Flow Indicators: Install in water-service piping in vault. Select indicator with saddle and vane matching pipe size. Drill hole in pipe, insert vane, and bolt saddle to pipe.
6. Connect alarm devices to building fire alarm system. Wiring and fire-alarm devices are specified in Division 28.

U. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
3. Connect water-distribution piping to utility water main **OR** existing water main, **as directed**. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve **OR** service clamp and corporation valve, **as directed**.
4. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water **OR** fire-suppression, **as directed**, piping.
5. Connect waste piping from concrete vault drains to sanitary sewerage system. See Division 22 for connection to sanitary-sewer **OR** storm-drainage system. See Division 23 for connection to storm-sewer, **as directed**, piping.
6. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
7. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

V. Field Quality Control

1. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
2. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
   a. Increase pressure in 50-psig (350-kPa) increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig (0 kPa). Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts (1.89 L) per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
3. Prepare reports of testing activities.

W. Identification
1. Install continuous underground detectable, **as directed**, warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
2. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for identifying devices.

NOTE: Delete paragraph above if metallic water-service piping without electrically insulated fittings will be used.

X. Cleaning
1. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
   a. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
   b. If fire-protection-water piping is not connected to potable-water supply, use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
   c. If fire-protection-water piping is connected to potable-water supply, use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
      1) Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours **OR** Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours, **as directed**.
      2) After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
      3) Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
2. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 23 00c - PIPED UTILITIES BASIC MATERIALS AND METHODS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for piped utilities - basic materials and methods. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Piping joining materials.
b. Transition fittings.
c. Dielectric fittings.
d. Sleeves.
e. Identification devices.
f. Grout.
g. Flowable fill.
h. Piped utility demolition.
i. Piping system common requirements.
j. Equipment installation common requirements.
k. Painting.
l. Concrete bases.
m. Metal supports and anchorages.

C. Definitions
1. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
2. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
3. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
4. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
5. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
6. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
a. Dielectric fittings.
b. Identification devices.
2. Welding certificates.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Steel Piping Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
3. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Piping Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
7. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
a. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
b. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
c. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
d. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
8. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

B. Transition Fittings
1. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
2. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller:
a. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
b. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.
3. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger:
a. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
4. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
a. Description: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint or threaded end.
5. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
a. Description: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass or stainless-steel threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
6. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping:
a. Description: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

C. Dielectric Fittings
   1. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
   2. Dielectric Unions:
      a. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
         1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
         2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded ferrous.
   3. Dielectric Flanges:
      a. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) and larger.
         1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
         2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
   4. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
      a. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
         1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
         2) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
         3) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
         4) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
   5. Dielectric Couplings:
      a. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller.
         1) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
         2) End Connections: Threaded.
   6. Dielectric Nipples:
      a. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
         1) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
         2) End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

D. Sleeves
   1. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
   2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
   3. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
   4. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Molded PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
   6. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
   7. Molded PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Identification Devices
   1. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
      a. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
      b. Location: Accessible and visible.
   2. Stencils: Standard stencils prepared with letter sizes complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1. Minimum letter height is 1-1/4 inches (30 mm) for ducts, and 3/4 inch (20 mm) for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
      a. Material: Fiberboard **OR** Brass, **as directed**.

b. Stencil Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd-gloss black enamel, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
c. Identification Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Snap-on Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure-Sensitive Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, color-coded, pressure-sensitive-vinyl type with permanent adhesive.
5. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): Full-band pipe markers, extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
6. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
7. Lettering: Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by the Owner.
8. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
   a. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions of flow, or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
9. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive vinyl tape, at least 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick.
   a. Width: 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than 6 inches (150 mm); 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) for larger pipes.
   b. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
10. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) sequenced numbers. Include 5/32-inch (4-mm) hole for fastener.
    a. Material: 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick, polished brass **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
    b. Material: 0.0375-inch- (1-mm-) thick stainless steel.
    c. Material: 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick plastic laminate with 2 black surfaces and a white inner layer.
    d. Material: Valve manufacturer's standard solid plastic.
    e. Size: 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) in diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
    f. Shape: As indicated for each piping system.
11. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link or beaded chain; or brass S-hooks.
12. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
    a. Engraving: Engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
    b. Thickness: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), for units up to 20 sq. in. (130 sq. cm) or 8 inches (200 mm) in length, and 1/8 inch (3 mm) for larger units.
    c. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type permanent adhesive.
13. Plastic Equipment Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:
    a. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
    b. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.
    c. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
    d. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet criteria above.
    e. Hazardous Equipment: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
    f. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible. Include the following:
       1) Name and plan number.
       2) Equipment service.
       3) Design capacity.
       4) Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.

g. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches (65 by 100 mm) for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches (115 by 150 mm) for equipment.

14. Plasticized Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with mat finish suitable for writing.
    a. Size: 3-1/4 by 5-5/8 inches (83 by 143 mm).
    b. Fasteners: Brass grommets and wire.
    c. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.
15. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in piped utility identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of piped utility systems and equipment.
    a. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

F. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
    a. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
    b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
    c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

G. Flowable Fill
1. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
    a. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, portland.
    b. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft. (1840- to 2325-kg/cu. m).
    c. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse
    OR
    Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine with admixture, ASTM C 618, fly-ash mineral.
    d. Water: Comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
    e. Strength: 100 to 200 psig (690 to 1380 kPa) at 28 days.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Piped Utility Demolition
1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
    a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
    c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
    d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational.
    e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

B. Dielectric Fitting Applications
1. Dry Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
    a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric unions.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Dielectric flanges or dielectric flange kits.

2. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric couplings **OR** dielectric nipples, **as directed**.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Dielectric nipples.
   c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 65 to DN 200): Dielectric nipples or dielectric flange kits.
   d. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): Dielectric flange kits.

C. Piping Installation
1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 33 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
4. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
5. Install piping at indicated slopes.
6. Install piping free of sags and bends.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
8. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
9. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes, unless directed otherwise.
10. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves, unless directed otherwise.
11. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
    a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
       1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
    b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
       1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
       2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
12. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
13. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

D. Piping Joint Construction
1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 33 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
5. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
6. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
7. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

8. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B 32.
9. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
10. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
11. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    b. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
    c. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    d. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
    e. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
    f. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
12. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
13. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
14. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    a. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    b. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
15. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Piping Connections
1. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    c. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

F. Equipment Installation
1. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
3. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

G. Painting
1. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09.
2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

H. Identification
1. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
    a. Stenciled Markers: According to ASME A13.1.
    b. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot noninsulated piping.
    c. Locate pipe markers on exposed piping according to the following:
        1) Near each valve and control device.

2) Near each branch, excluding short takeoffs for equipment and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch if flow pattern is not obvious.
3) Near locations where pipes pass through walls or floors or enter inaccessible enclosures.
4) At manholes and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5) Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.

2. Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of equipment.
   a. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) high for name of unit if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (610 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) high for distances up to 72 inches (1800 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths of size of principal lettering.
   b. Text of Signs: Provide name of identified unit. Include text to distinguish among multiple units, inform user of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
3. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices that become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.

I. Concrete Bases
1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
   a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
   b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of base.
   c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
   g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

J. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages
1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor piped utility materials and equipment.
3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

K. Grouting
1. Mix and install grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
7. Place grout around anchors.
8. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23 00c

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 05 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
22 05 23 00	23 05 23 00	General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 29 00 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
   b. Trapeze pipe hangers.
   c. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
   d. Metal framing systems.
   e. Fiberglass strut systems.
   f. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
   g. Fastener systems.
   h. Pipe stands.
   i. Pipe positioning systems.
   j. Equipment supports.

C. Definitions
1. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
   b. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
   c. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
   a. Trapeze pipe hangers.
   b. Metal framing systems.
   c. Fiberglass strut systems.
   d. Pipe stands.
   e. Equipment supports.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   a. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.

b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

4. Welding certificates.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metal Pipe Hangers And Supports

1. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
   a. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
   b. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
   c. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
   d. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
   e. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
   a. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
   b. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
   c. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
3. Copper Pipe Hangers:
   a. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
   b. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

B. Trapeze Pipe Hangers

1. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

C. Fiberglass Pipe Hangers

1. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
   a. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
   b. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of fiberglass, polyurethane or stainless steel.
2. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
   a. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
   b. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

D. Metal Framing Systems

1. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
   a. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
   b. Standard: MFMA-4.

c. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
d. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
e. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
f. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc **OR** Hot-dipped galvanized **OR** Mill galvanized **OR** In-line, hot galvanized **OR** Mechanically-deposited zinc, **as directed**.
OR
Paint Coating: Vinyl **OR** Vinyl alkyd **OR** Epoxy **OR** Polyester **OR** Acrylic **OR** Amine **OR** Alkyd, **as directed**.
OR
Plastic Coating: PVC **OR** Polyurethane **OR** Epoxy **OR** Polyester, **as directed**.
OR
Combination Coating: **Coating materials in order of application** as directed by the Owner .

2. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
a. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
b. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
c. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
d. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
e. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
f. Coating: Zinc **OR** Paint **OR** PVC, **as directed**.

E. Fiberglass Strut Systems
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
a. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass or other plastic channel with inturned lips.
b. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
c. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of fiberglass **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts
1. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
2. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig (688-kPa), ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
3. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
4. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
5. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

G. Fastener Systems
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated **OR** stainless-, **as directed**, steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

H. Pipe Stands
1. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
2. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
3. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
4. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
   a. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
   b. Base: Plastic **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   c. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
   d. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
5. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
   a. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
   b. Bases: One or more; plastic.
   c. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
   d. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
   e. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
6. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

I. Pipe Positioning Systems
1. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

J. Equipment Supports
1. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

K. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
2. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
   a. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
   b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
2. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

a. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
b. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
4. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
7. Fastener System Installation:
   a. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
   b. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Pipe Stand Installation:
   a. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
   b. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
9. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. See Division 15 plumbing fixture Sections for requirements for pipe positioning systems for plumbing fixtures.
10. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
11. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
12. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
13. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
14. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
15. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
16. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
17. Insulated Piping:
    a. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
       1) Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
       2) Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
       3) Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
    b. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
       1) Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

c. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
   1) Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
d. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
   1) NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
   2) NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
   3) NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
   4) NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
   5) NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
e. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
f. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

B. Equipment Supports
1. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
2. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
3. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

C. Metal Fabrications
1. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
2. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
   a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   c. Remove welding flux immediately.
   d. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

D. Adjusting
1. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
2. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

E. Painting
1. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
   a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

   OR

   Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 9 painting Sections **OR** Section "High-Performance Coatings", **as directed**.

2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

F. Hanger And Support Schedule
1. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
2. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
3. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
4. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
5. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports**,** metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
6. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
7. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
8. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
9. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
10. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
    b. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
    c. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
    d. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
    e. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
    f. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
    g. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
    h. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
    i. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
    j. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
    k. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
    l. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
    m. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
    n. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
    o. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.

p. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
q. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
r. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
s. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
t. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
u. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

11. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
    b. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
12. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
    b. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
    c. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
    d. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
    e. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
13. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
    b. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
    c. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
    d. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
    e. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
    f. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
    g. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
    h. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
    i. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
    j. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.

k. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
l. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    1) Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    2) Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
    3) Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
m. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
n. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
o. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

14. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    b. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
    c. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
15. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
    b. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
    c. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
    d. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
    e. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
    f. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
    g. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
    h. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
        1) Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
        2) Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
        3) Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
16. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
17. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
18. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
19. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 48 13 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of vibration and seismic controls for plumbing piping and equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Isolation pads.
   b. Isolation mounts.
   c. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
   d. Freestanding and Restrained spring isolators.
   e. Housed spring mounts.
   f. Elastomeric hangers.
   g. Spring hangers.
   h. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
   i. Pipe riser resilient supports.
   j. Resilient pipe guides.
   k. Seismic snubbers.
   l. Restraining braces and cables.
   m. Steel and Inertia, vibration isolation equipment bases.

C. Definitions
1. IBC: International Building Code.
2. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
3. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
   a. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: A **OR** B **OR** C **OR** D **OR** E **OR** F, **as directed**.
   b. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: I **OR** II **OR** III**,** as directed.
      1) Component Importance Factor: 1.0 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**.
      2) Component Response Modification Factor: 1.5 **OR** 2.5 **OR** 3.5 **OR** 5.0, **as directed**.
      3) Component Amplification Factor: 1.0 **OR** 2.5, **as directed**.
   c. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): Percentage as directed.
   d. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period: Percentage as directed.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each product indicated.
2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint calculations and details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
5. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
2. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproved by ICC-ES, or preapproved by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Vibration Isolators
   1. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
      a. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene **OR** rubber **OR** hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, **as directed**.
   2. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
      a. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
      b. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
   3. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
      a. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
      b. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
   4. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
      a. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
      b. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
      c. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
      d. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
      e. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
      f. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
   5. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
      a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.

b. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
c. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
d. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
e. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
f. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

6. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
   a. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
   b. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
   c. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
7. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
8. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
   a. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
   b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
   c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
   d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
   e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
   f. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
   g. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
9. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
   a. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
   b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
   c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
   d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
   e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
   f. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
   g. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
   h. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
10. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig (3.45 MPa) and for equal resistance in all directions.
11. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion

and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

B. Vibration Isolation Equipment Bases
   1. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
      a. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
         1) Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
      b. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
      c. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
   2. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
      a. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
         1) Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
      b. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
      c. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
      d. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

C. Seismic-Restraint Devices
   1. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
      a. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
   2. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
      a. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
      b. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
      c. Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick resilient cushion.
   3. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
   4. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel **OR** ASTM A 492 stainless-steel, **as directed**, cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
   5. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections **OR** Reinforcing steel angle clamped, **as directed**, to hanger rod.
   6. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

7. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
8. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
9. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
10. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

D. Factory Finishes
1. Finish:
a. Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
OR
Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
1) Powder coating on springs and housings.
2) All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3) Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4) Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Applications
1. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
2. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
3. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

B. Vibration-Control And Seismic-Restraint Device Installation
1. Equipment Restraints:
a. Install seismic snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
b. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inches (3.2 mm).
c. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, providing required submittals for component.
2. Piping Restraints:
a. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
b. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.

c. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).

3. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
4. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, providing required submittals for component.
5. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
6. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
7. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
8. Drilled-in Anchors:
   a. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
   b. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
   c. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
   d. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
   e. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
   f. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

C. Accommodation Of Differential Seismic Motion
   1. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for piping flexible connections.

D. Field Quality Control
   1. Perform tests and inspections.
   2. Tests and Inspections:
      a. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
      b. Schedule test with the Owner before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
      c. Obtain approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
      d. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected.
      e. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
      f. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
      g. Measure isolator deflection.
      h. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
      i. Air-Mounting System Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

j. Air-Mounting System Operational Test: Test the compressed-air leveling system.
k. Test and adjust air-mounting system controls and safeties.
l. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Adjusting
1. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
2. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
3. Adjust active height of sprint isolators.
4. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 22 05 48 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 53 00 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for identification for plumbing piping and equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Equipment labels.
b. Warning signs and labels.
c. Pipe labels.
d. Stencils.
e. Valve tags.
f. Warning tags.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Equipment Labels
1. Metal Labels for Equipment:
a. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) **OR** Aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
b. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
c. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
d. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets **OR** self-tapping screws, **as directed**.
e. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
2. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
a. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), **as directed**, thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
b. Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
c. Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
d. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
e. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
f. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
g. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets **OR** self-tapping screws, **as directed**.
h. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

3. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
4. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

B. Warning Signs And Labels
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), **as directed**, thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
3. Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets **OR** self-tapping screws, **as directed**.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
9. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

C. Pipe Labels
1. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
2. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover **OR** cover full, **as directed,** circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
3. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
4. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
    a. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
    b. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

D. Stencils
1. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
    a. Stencil Material: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Fiberboard, **as directed**.
    b. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel **OR** acrylic enamel, **as directed**, black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
    c. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel **OR** acrylic enamel, **as directed**, in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

E. Valve Tags
1. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
    a. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) **OR** Aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.

b. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain **OR** beaded chain **OR** S-hook, **as directed**.

2. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
   a. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

F. Warning Tags
1. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
   a. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum **OR** Approximately 4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire **OR** Reinforced grommet and wire or string, **as directed**.
   c. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
   d. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

B. Equipment Label Installation
1. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
2. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

C. Pipe Label Installation
1. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Interior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
2. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles **OR** complying with ASME A13.1, **as directed**, on each piping system.
   a. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
   b. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
3. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
   a. Near each valve and control device.
   b. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
   c. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
   d. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
   e. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
   f. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
   g. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
4. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
   a. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   b. Medium-Pressure, Compressed-Air Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.

2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.

c. Domestic Water Piping:
   1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.

d. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
   1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.

D. Valve-Tag Installation

1. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
2. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
   a. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
      1) Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      2) Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      3) Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      4) High-Pressure Compressed Air: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
   b. Valve-Tag Color:
      1) Cold Water: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
      2) Hot Water: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
      3) Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
      4) High-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
   c. Letter Color:
      1) Cold Water: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      2) Hot Water: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      3) Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      4) High-Pressure Compressed Air: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.

E. Warning-Tag Installation

1. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53 00

SECTION 22 05 76 00 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for storm drainage piping specialties. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Roof drains.
b. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
c. Cleanouts.
d. Backwater valves.
e. Trench drains.
f. Channel drainage systems.
g. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
h. Flashing materials.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metal Roof Drains
1. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
b. Body Material: Cast iron.
c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch (357-mm) diameter.
d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
e. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
g. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
h. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
i. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
j. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
k. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
l. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
m. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
n. Water Dam: Not required **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) high, **as directed**.
2. Cast-Iron, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
b. Body Material: Cast iron.
c. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch (203- to 305-mm) diameter.
d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
e. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
g. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.

h. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
i. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
j. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
k. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** Copper **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
l. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
m. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
n. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
o. Water Dam: Not required **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) high, **as directed**.

3. Copper, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
   b. Body Material: Copper.
   c. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch (203- to 305-mm) diameter.
   d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   e. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
   g. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   h. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   i. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   j. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   k. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** Copper **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   l. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   m. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   n. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   o. Water Dam: Not required **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) high, **as directed**.
4. Cast-Iron, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
   b. Body Material: Cast iron.
   c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
   d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   e. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
   f. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   g. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   h. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   i. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   j. Dome Material: Cast iron.
   k. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   l. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
5. Copper, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
   b. Body Material: Copper.
   c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
   d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   e. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
   f. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   g. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   h. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   i. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   j. Dome Material: Cast iron.
   k. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
   l. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
6. Metal, Cornice and Gutter Roof Drains:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for cornice and gutter roof drains.
   b. Body Material: Metal.

c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 6-inch (152-mm) diameter.
d. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side **OR** 45-degree angle, **as directed**.
e. Dome Material: Bronze.
f. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.

7. Metal, Parapet Roof Drains:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for parapet roof drains.
   b. Body Material: Cast iron.
   c. Outlet: Back **OR** Angle, **as directed**.
   d. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directd**.
   e. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
8. Metal, Large-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
   b. Body Material: Cast iron.
   c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch (357-mm) diameter.
   d. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 14 inches (357 mm) square.
   e. Outlet: Bottom.
   f. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directed**.
   g. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   h. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   i. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   j. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   k. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
9. Metal, Medium-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
   b. Body Material: Cast iron.
   c. Dimension of Body: 11- to 12-inch (280- to 305-mm) diameter.
   d. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 12 inches (305 mm) square.
   e. Outlet: Bottom.
   f. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directed**.
   g. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   h. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   i. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   j. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
   k. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
10. Metal, Small-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains:
    a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
    b. Body Material: Cast iron.
    c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
    d. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 8 inches (203 mm) square.
    e. Outlet: Bottom.
    f. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directed**.
    g. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    h. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    i. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    j. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    k. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
11. Metal, Medium-Sump, Deck Roof Drains:
    a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for deck roof drains; ASME A112.6.3, for floor drains.
    b. Body Material: Metal.
    c. Flange: Anchor **OR** Anchor with weep holes **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
    d. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    e. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** End **OR** Side, **as directed**.
    g. Grate Material: Cast iron.
    h. Grate Finish: Painted **OR** Not required, **as directed**.

i. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 14 inches (357 mm) round **OR** square, **as directed**.
j. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty, **as directed**.
k. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.

12. Metal, Small-Sump, Deck Roof Drains:
    a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for deck roof drains; ASME A112.6.3, for floor drains.
    b. Body Material: Metal.
    c. Flange: Anchor **OR** Anchor with weep holes **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
    d. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    e. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** End **OR** Side, **as directed**.
    g. Grate Material: Cast iron.
    h. Grate Finish: Painted **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
    i. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 8 inches (203 mm) round **OR** square, **as directed**.
    j. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty, **as directed**.
    k. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.

B. Plastic Roof Drains
1. Plastic Roof Drains:
    a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for plastic roof drains.
    b. Body Material: ABS or PVC.
    c. Sump Diameter: as directed by the Owner
    d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    e. Outlet: Bottom.
    f. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    g. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    h. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    i. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    j. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    k. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.

C. Miscellaneous Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
1. Downspout Adaptors:
    a. Description: Manufactured, gray-iron casting, for attaching to horizontal-outlet, parapet roof drain and to exterior, sheet metal downspout.
    b. Size: Inlet size to match parapet drain outlet.
2. Downspout Boots:
    a. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 (DN 100) outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
    b. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 (DN 100) outlet.
3. Conductor Nozzles:
    a. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
    b. Size: Same as connected conductor.

D. Cleanouts
1. Floor Cleanouts:
    a. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for adjustable housing **OR** cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule **OR** heavy-duty, adjustable housing **OR** threaded, adjustable housing, **as directed**, cleanouts.
    b. Size: Same as connected branch.
    c. Type: Adjustable housing **OR** Cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule **OR** Heavy-duty, adjustable housing **OR** Threaded, adjustable housing, **as directed**.
    d. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.

e. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
f. Outlet Connection: Inside calk **OR** Spigot **OR** Threaded, **as directed**.
g. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket **OR** Brass plug with tapered threads **OR** Cast-iron plug **OR** Plastic plug, **as directed**.
h. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, with threads **OR** set-screws or other device, **as directed**.
i. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy **OR** Painted cast iron **OR** Polished bronze **OR** Rough bronze **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
j. Frame and Cover Shape: Round **OR** Square, **as directed**.
k. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty, **as directed**.
l. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy **OR** Service, **as directed**, class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

2. Test Tees:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
   b. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
   c. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
   d. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head, brass.
   e. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
3. Wall Cleanouts:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
   b. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
   c. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch **OR** Hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee, **as directed**, as required to match connected piping.
   d. Closure: Countersunk **OR** Countersunk or raised-head **OR** Raised-head, **as directed**, drilled-and-threaded **OR** brass **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, plug.
   e. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
   f. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze **OR** flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel, **as directed**, cover plate with screw.
   g. Wall Access: Round **OR** Square, **as directed**, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.
4. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:
   a. Size: Same as connected branch.
   b. Body Material: PVC.
   c. Closure Plug: PVC.
   d. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

E. Backwater Valves
1. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
   b. Size: Same as connected piping.
   c. Body Material: Cast iron.
   d. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
   e. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
   f. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed **OR** open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition, **as directed**.
   g. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
2. Cast-Iron, Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:
   a. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
   b. Body Material: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
   c. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
   d. Inlet: Threaded.

e. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

3. Plastic, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
   a. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
   b. Size: Same as connected piping.
   c. Body Material: ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
   d. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
   e. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
   f. End Connections: Socket type.

F. Trench Drains
   1. Trench Drains:
      a. Standard: ASME A112.6.3, for trench drains.
      b. Body Material: Cast iron.
      c. Flange: Anchor **OR** Anchor with weep holes **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      d. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
      e. Outlet: Bottom **OR** End **OR** Side, **as directed**.
      f. Grate Material: Ductile iron or gray iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
      g. Grate Finish: Painted **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      h. Dimensions of Frame and Grate: as directed by the Owner .
      i. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty, **as directed**.

G. Channel Drainage Systems
   1. Narrow, Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems:
      a. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
         1) Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
            a) Dimensions: 4-inch (102-mm) inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
            b) Frame: Galvanized steel or gray iron for grates **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
         2) Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty" **OR** “medium duty", **as directed**, with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
            a) Material: Ductile iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
            b) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
         3) Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
         4) Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
         5) Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
   2. Narrow, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems:
      a. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
         1) Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 (DN 100) outlets in number and locations indicated.
            a) Dimensions: 5-inch (127-mm) inside width and 9-3/4-inch (248-mm) depth. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.

b) Frame: Galvanized steel or gray iron for grates **OR** Not required, **as directed**.

2) Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty" **OR** "medium duty", **as directed,** with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
   a) Material: Ductile iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   b) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
3) Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
4) Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
5) Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

3. Wide, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems:
   a. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
      1) Channel Sections: Wide, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include flat or rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
         a) Dimensions: 8-inch (203-mm) inside width and 13-3/4-inch (350-mm) depth. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
         b) Frame: Galvanized steel or gray iron for grates **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      2) Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty" **OR** "medium duty", **as directed**, with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
         a) Material: Ductile iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
         b) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      3) Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
      4) Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
      5) Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

H. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies
   1. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:
      a. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
      b. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
      c. Size: Same as connected pipe.
      d. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
      e. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
      f. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

I. Flashing Materials
   1. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).

2. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
3. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.
4. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
5. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
6. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 7 Sections.
   a. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
   b. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
   c. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
2. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
3. Install downspout boots at grade with top 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**, above grade. Secure to building wall.
4. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
5. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
   b. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
   c. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
   d. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
6. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
7. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
8. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
9. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
10. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
11. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
12. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
13. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
14. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.
15. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

B. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

C. Flashing Installation

1. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
   a. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
   b. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
2. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
   a. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm) and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
   b. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
   c. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.
3. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
4. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
5. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

D. Protection
   1. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
   2. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 05 76 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 76 00a - SANITARY SEWERAGE

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sanitary sewerage. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Pipe and fittings.
b. Nonpressure and pressure couplings.
c. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
d. Backwater valves.
e. Cleanouts.
f. Encasement for piping.
g. Manholes.

C. Definitions
1. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
a. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
b. Backwater valves.
2. Shop Drawings: For manholes. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.
3. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sewer system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
4. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles to horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet (1:500) and to vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet (1:50). Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
5. Product Certificates: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
6. Field quality-control reports.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
2. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
3. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

F. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
b. Do not proceed with interruption of service without the Owner written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Hub-And-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings
   1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class **OR** Service and Extra-Heavy classes **OR** Extra-Heavy class, **as directed**.
   2. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
   3. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

B. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings
   1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
   2. CISPI-Trademark, Shielded Couplings:
      a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
   3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded Couplings:
      a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540, with stainless-steel shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
   4. Cast-Iron, Shielded Couplings:
      a. Description: ASTM C 1277 with ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
   5. Unshielded Couplings:
      a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1461, rigid, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling, with integral, center pipe stop, molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material; with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

C. Ductile-Iron, Gravity Sewer Pipe And Fittings
   1. Pipe: ASTM A 746, for push-on joints.
   2. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
   3. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron, for push-on joints.
   4. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

D. Ductile-Iron, Pressure Pipe And Fittings
   1. Push-on-Joint Piping:
      a. Pipe: AWWA C151.
      b. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
      c. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153.
      d. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber, of shape matching pipe and fittings.
   2. Mechanical-Joint Piping:
      a. Pipe: AWWA C151, with bolt holes in bell.
      b. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, with bolt holes in bell.
      c. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, with bolt holes in bells.
      d. Glands: Cast or ductile iron; with bolt holes and high-strength, cast-iron or high-strength, low-alloy steel bolts and nuts.
      e. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber, of shape matching pipe, fittings, and glands.

E. ABS Pipe And Fittings
   1. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
      a. NPS 3 to NPS 6 (DN 80 to DN 150): SDR 35.
      b. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): SDR 42.
   2. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

F. PVC Pipe And Fittings

1. PVC Cellular-Core Sewer Piping:
   a. Pipe: ASTM F 891, Sewer and Drain Series, PS 50 minimum stiffness, PVC cellular-core pipe with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
   b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC socket-type fittings.
2. PVC Corrugated Sewer Piping:
   a. Pipe: ASTM F 949, PVC corrugated pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
   b. Fittings: ASTM F 949, PVC molded or fabricated, socket type.
   c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
3. PVC Profile Sewer Piping:
   a. Pipe: ASTM F 794, PVC profile, gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
   b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
   c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
4. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping:
   a. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC Type PSM sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
   b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
   c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
5. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:
   a. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 679, T-1 **OR** T-2, **as directed**, wall thickness, PVC gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends and with integral ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals for gasketed joints.
6. PVC Pressure Piping:
   a. Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 100 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, PVC pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
   b. Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 100 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, PVC pipe with bell ends.
   c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
7. PVC Water-Service Piping:
   a. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
   b. Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 **OR** ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC, socket type.

G. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings
1. Fiberglass Sewer Pipe: ASTM D 3262, RTRP, for gasketed joints fabricated with Type 2, polyester **OR** Type 4, epoxy, **as directed**, resin.
   a. Liner: Reinforced thermoset **OR** Nonreinforced thermoset **OR** Thermoplastic **OR** No liner, **as directed**.
   b. Grade: Reinforced, surface layer matching pipe resin **OR** Nonreinforced, surface layer matching pipe resin **OR** No surface layer, **as directed**.
   c. Stiffness: 9 psig (62 kPa) **OR** 18 psig (124 kPa) **OR** 36 psig (248 kPa) **OR** 72 psig (496 kPa), **as directed**.
2. Fiberglass Nonpressure Fittings: ASTM D 3840, RTRF, for gasketed joints.
   a. Laminating Resin: Type 1, polyester **OR** Type 2, epoxy, **as directed**, resin.
   b. Reinforcement: Grade with finish compatible with resin.
3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

H. Concrete Pipe And Fittings
1. Nonreinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 14 (ASTM C 14M), Class 1 **OR** Class 2 **OR** Class 3, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot **OR** tongue-and-groove, **as directed**, ends for gasketed joints with ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber gaskets.
2. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76 (ASTM C 76M).
   a. Bell-and-spigot **OR** tongue-and-groove, **as directed**, ends for gasketed joints, with ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber gaskets.
   b. Class II, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.

c. Class III, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
d. Class IV, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
e. Class V, Wall A **OR** Wall B, **as directed**.

I. Nonpressure-Type Transition Couplings
1. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
2. Sleeve Materials:
a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
b. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber.
c. For Fiberglass Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
d. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
e. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
3. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:
a. Description: Elastomeric sleeve, with stainless-steel shear ring, **as directed**, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
4. Shielded, Flexible Couplings:
a. Description: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings:
a. Description: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.
6. Nonpressure-Type, Rigid Couplings:
a. Description: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling, molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material; with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

J. Pressure-Type Pipe Couplings
1. Tubular-Sleeve Couplings: AWWA C219, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.
2. Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig (1035-kPa) **OR** 200-psig (1380-kPa), **as directed**, minimum pressure rating and ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
3. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
4. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
5. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

K. Expansion Joints And Deflection Fittings
1. Ductile-Iron, Flexible Expansion Joints:
a. Description: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
2. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints:
a. Description: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.
3. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:

a. Description: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.

L. Backwater Valves
1. Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
a. Description: ASME A112.14.1, gray-iron body and bolted cover, with bronze seat.
b. Horizontal type; with swing check valve and hub-and-spigot ends.
c. Combination horizontal and manual gate-valve type; with swing check valve, integral gate valve, and hub-and-spigot ends.
d. Terminal type; with bronze seat, swing check valve, and hub inlet.
2. PVC Backwater Valves:
a. Description: Horizontal type; with PVC body, PVC removable cover, and PVC swing check valve.

M. Cleanouts
1. Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
a. Description: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
b. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Extra-Heavy Duty, **as directed**.
c. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
2. PVC Cleanouts:
a. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

N. Encasement For Piping
1. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
2. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) **OR** high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
3. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

O. Manholes
1. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes:
a. Description: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
b. Diameter: 48 inches (1200 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
c. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
d. Base Section: 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch (100-mm) minimum thickness for walls and base riser section; with separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
e. Riser Sections: 4-inch (100-mm) minimum thickness, of length to provide depth indicated.
f. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated; with top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
g. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
h. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
i. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor

steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).

j. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.

OR

Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

2. Designed Precast Concrete Manholes:
   a. Description: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
   b. Ballast: Increase thickness of one or more precast concrete sections or add concrete to manhole as required to prevent flotation.
   c. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
   d. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
   e. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
   f. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.

      OR

      Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
3. Fiberglass Manholes:
   a. Description: ASTM D 3753.
   b. Diameter: 48 inches (1200 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete base as required to prevent flotation.
   d. Base Section: Concrete, 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness.
   e. Resilient Pipe Connectors (if required): ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
   f. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
   g. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.

      OR

      Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
4. Manhole Frames and Covers:

a. Description: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser, with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum-width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
b. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile **OR** ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 35 gray, **as directed**, iron unless otherwise indicated.

5. Manhole-Cover Inserts:
a. Description: Manufactured, plastic form, of size to fit between manhole frame and cover and designed to prevent stormwater inflow. Include handle for removal and gasket for gastight sealing.
b. Type: Solid **OR** Drainage with vent holes **OR** Valve, **as directed**.

P. Concrete
1. General: Cast-in-place concrete complying with ACI 318, ACI 350/350R (ACI 350M/350RM), and the following:
a. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
b. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
c. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
d. Water: Potable.
2. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
a. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
b. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.
3. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
a. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
1) Invert Slope: 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, percent through manhole.
b. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
1) Slope: 4 **OR** 8, **as directed**, percent.
4. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
a. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
b. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

B. Piping Installation
1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
3. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
4. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

5. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
6. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
   a. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, percent unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Install piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
   c. Install piping with 36-inch (915-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1220-mm) **OR** 60-inch (1520-mm) **OR** 72-inch (1830-mm), **as directed**, minimum cover.
   d. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
   e. Install hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
   f. Install ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to ASTM A 746.
   g. Install ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
   h. Install PVC cellular-core sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
   i. Install PVC corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
   j. Install PVC profile sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
   k. Install PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
   l. Install PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
   m. Install fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 3839 and ASTM F 1668.
   n. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
   o. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
7. Install force-main, pressure piping according to the following:
   a. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
   b. Install piping with 36-inch (915-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1220-mm) **OR** 60-inch (1520-mm) **OR** 72-inch (1830-mm), **as directed**, minimum cover.
   c. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
   d. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
   e. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 or to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
   f. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
8. If required to provide protection for metal piping, install corrosion-protection piping encasement over the following underground metal piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105:
   a. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
   b. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
   c. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
   d. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
9. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

C. Pipe Joint Construction
1. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
   a. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
   b. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
   c. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.

d. Join ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
e. Join ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 2751 for elastomeric-seal joints.
f. Join PVC cellular-core sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.
g. Join PVC corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.
h. Join PVC profile sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
i. Join PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
j. Join PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
k. Join fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 4161 for elastomeric-seal joints.
l. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 (ASTM C 14M) and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
m. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
n. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible **OR** rigid, **as directed**, couplings.

2. Join force-main, pressure piping according to the following:
   a. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
   b. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
   c. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
   d. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855.
   e. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.
3. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Use nonpressure flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
      1) Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, flexible **OR** rigid, **as directed**, couplings for pipes of same or slightly different OD.
      2) Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible **OR** rigid, **as directed**, couplings for pipes with different OD.
      3) Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
   b. Use pressure pipe couplings for force-main joints.

D. Manhole Installation
1. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
2. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
3. Install FRP manholes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
5. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches (76 mm) above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
6. Install manhole-cover inserts in frame and immediately below cover.

E. Concrete Placement
1. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

F. Backwater Valve Installation
1. Install horizontal-type backwater valves in piping manholes or pits.
2. Install combination horizontal and manual gate valves in piping and in manholes.
3. Install terminal-type backwater valves on end of piping and in manholes. Secure units to sidewalls.

G. Cleanout Installation
1. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts, and use cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
   a. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth **OR** unpaved foot-traffic, **as directed**, areas.
   b. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
   c. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
   d. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.
2. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches (450 by 450 by 300 mm) deep. Set with tops 1 inch (25 mm) above surrounding grade.
3. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

H. Connections
1. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping".
2. Connect force-main piping to building's sanitary force mains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping". Terminate piping where indicated.
3. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
   a. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye fitting plus 6-inch (150-mm) overlap with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
   b. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20 (DN 100 to DN 500). Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
   c. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 (DN 525) or larger, or to underground manholes by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches (76 mm) of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or manhole wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches (300 mm) to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
      1) Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
      2) Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
   d. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
4. Connect to grease **OR** oil **OR** sand, **as directed**, interceptors specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Interceptors".

I. Closing Abandoned Sanitary Sewer Systems
1. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
   a. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch- (203-mm-) thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
   b. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
2. Abandoned Manholes: Excavate around manhole as required and use either procedure below:
   a. Remove manhole and close open ends of remaining piping.

b. Remove top of manhole down to at least 36 inches (915 mm) below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.

3. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

J. Identification

1. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving". Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
   a. Use warning tape **OR** detectable warning tape, **as directed**, over ferrous piping.
   b. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground manholes.

K. Field Quality Control

1. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches (600 mm) of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
   a. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
   b. Defects requiring correction include the following:
      1) Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
      2) Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
      3) Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
      4) Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
      5) Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
   c. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
   d. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
2. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
   a. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
   b. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   c. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
   d. Submit separate report for each test.
   e. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
      1) Fill sewer piping with water. Test with pressure of at least 10-foot (3-m) head of water, and maintain such pressure without leakage for at least 15 minutes.
      2) Close openings in system and fill with water.
      3) Purge air and refill with water.
      4) Disconnect water supply.
      5) Test and inspect joints for leaks.

      OR

      Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
      6) Option: Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
      7) Option: Test concrete gravity sewer piping according to ASTM C 924 (ASTM C 924M).
   f. Force Main: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      1) Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
      2) PVC Piping: Test according to AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
   g. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969 (ASTM C 969M).
3. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

4. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

L. Cleaning
1. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping. Flush with potable water.

END OF SECTION 22 05 76 00a

SECTION 22 07 19 00 - FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS INSULATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fire-suppression systems insulation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Insulation Materials:
1) Calcium silicate.
2) Cellular glass.
3) Flexible elastomeric.
4) Mineral fiber.
5) Phenolic.
6) Polyisocyanurate.
7) Polyolefin.
8) Polystyrene.
b. Insulating cements.
c. Adhesives.
d. Mastics.
e. Lagging adhesives.
f. Sealants.
g. Factory-applied jackets.
h. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
i. Field-applied cloths.
j. Field-applied jackets.
k. Tapes.
l. Securements.
m. Corner angles.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings:
a. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
b. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
c. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
d. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
e. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
f. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
g. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
h. Detail field application for fire-suppression water storage tanks.
4. Field quality-control reports.

D. Quality Assurance

1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   b. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Insulation Materials
1. Comply with requirements in Part 1.3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
2. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
3. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
4. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
5. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
6. Calcium Silicate:
   a. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   b. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
7. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   a. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
   b. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
   c. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
   d. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
   e. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL, **as directed**: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
   f. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
8. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
9. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
10. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied FSK jacket, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
11. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
    a. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied

jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

b. Type II, 1200 deg F (649 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

12. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ **OR** FSK jacket, **as directed**, complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
13. Phenolic:
    a. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
    b. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
    c. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
        1) Preformed Pipe Insulation: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
        2) Board for Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
14. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.
    a. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
    b. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
    c. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
        1) Pipe Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
        2) Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
15. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
16. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

B. Insulating Cements
1. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
2. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
3. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

C. Adhesives
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).
    a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
5. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).
7. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Mastics
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
   a. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of **Value g/L** as directed by the Owner when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.
3. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.
4. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms (2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 93 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.

E. Lagging Adhesives
1. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   a. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of **Value g/L** as directed by the Owner when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   b. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 82 deg C).

d. Color: White.

F. Sealants
1. Joint Sealants:
   a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   b. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
   d. Color: White or gray.
   e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
   d. Color: Aluminum.
   e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
   d. Color: White.
   e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

G. Factory-Applied Jackets
1. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
   a. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   b. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   c. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
   d. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   e. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms (0.007 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   f. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

H. Field-Applied Fabric-Reinforcing Mesh
1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
2. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering equipment.
3. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave.

I. Field-Applied Cloths

1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

J. Field-Applied Jackets
   1. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      a. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
      b. Color: White **OR** Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by the Owner, **as directed**.
      c. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
         1) Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
      d. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
   3. Metal Jacket:
      a. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
         1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
         2) Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
         3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
         4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
         5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
            a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
            b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
            c) Tee covers.
            d) Flange and union covers.
            e) End caps.
            f) Beveled collars.
            g) Valve covers.
            h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
      b. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
         1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
         2) Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
         3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
         4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
         5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
            a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
            b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
            c) Tee covers.
            d) Flange and union covers.
            e) End caps.
            f) Beveled collars.
            g) Valve covers.

h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

K. Tapes
1. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 2 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
   f. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
2. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 2 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
   f. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
3. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
   a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
   b. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 500 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
4. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
   b. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 5 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.
5. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm).
   c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
   d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.
6. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Film Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
   c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
   d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

L. Securements
1. Bands:
   a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
   b. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
   c. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

2. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
   a. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
      1) Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
      2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
      3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
   b. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
      1) Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
      2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
      3) Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
   c. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
      1) Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
3. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
4. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
   OR
   Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
   a. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
   b. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
3. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

B. General Installation Requirements

1. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
2. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
3. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
4. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
5. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
6. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
7. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
8. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
9. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
10. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
    a. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
    b. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
    c. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
    d. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
11. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
12. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
    a. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
    b. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
    c. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
        1) For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
    d. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
    e. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
13. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
14. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
15. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
16. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
    a. Vibration-control devices.
    b. Testing agency labels and stamps.
    c. Nameplates and data plates.
    d. Manholes.
    e. Handholes.
    f. Cleanouts.

C. Penetrations
   1. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
      a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
      b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
      c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
      d. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
   2. Insulation Installation at Below-Grade Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
   3. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
      a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
      b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
      c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
      d. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
   4. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
   5. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
      a. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
   6. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
      a. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
      b. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

D. Equipment, Tank, And Vessel Insulation Installation
   1. Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
      a. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
      b. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
      c. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
      d. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
         1) Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
         2) Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
         3) On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
         4) Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
         5) Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
         6) Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
         7) Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

e. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
f. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
g. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).
h. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
i. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
j. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
a. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
b. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

E. General Pipe Insulation Installation
1. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
2. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
a. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
c. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
d. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
e. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
f. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
g. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for

above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.

h. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

i. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

3. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

4. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

a. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

b. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

c. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.

d. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

e. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

F. Calcium Silicate Insulation Installation

1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

c. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

d. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.

b. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
c. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
a. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
b. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
c. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

G. Cellular-Glass Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
b. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
a. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Installation
1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
a. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    a. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
    b. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
    d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

I. Mineral-Fiber Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    a. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
    b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
    c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
    d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
    c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
    d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
    b. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
    b. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
    c. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    d. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

J. Phenolic Insulation Installation
1. General Installation Requirements:
    a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
    b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
   b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

K. Polyisocyanurate Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
   b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
   c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
3. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
   b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

L. Polyolefin Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
   b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
   b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

M. Polystyrene Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
   b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
   c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
   b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

N. Field-Applied Jacket Installation
1. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   a. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
   b. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   c. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
2. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   a. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   b. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.

c. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
d. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
e. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   a. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
4. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.
5. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   a. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
   b. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
   c. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
   d. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
   e. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

O. Finishes
1. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 07.
   a. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      1) Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
3. Color: Final color as selected by the Owner. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
4. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

P. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
   b. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of

inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

3. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

Q. Equipment Insulation Schedule
   1. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
   2. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
   3. Fire-suppression water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
      a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
      d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

R. Piping Insulation Schedule, General
   1. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
   2. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
      a. Indoor fire-suppression piping.
      b. Underground piping.

S. Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule
   1. Indoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:
      a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
         1) Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         2) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   2. Indoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

T. Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule
   1. Outdoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:
      a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
         1) Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         2) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   2. Outdoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   3. Outdoor Fire-Suppression Piping Filled with Water:
      a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
         1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
         7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

U. Indoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule
1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Piping, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Piping, Exposed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

V. Outdoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule
1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Equipment, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

5. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Outdoor Exposed Piping:
   a. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm) **OR** 40 mils (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, ,**as directed** with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19 00

SECTION 22 07 19 00a - PLUMBING INSULATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for plumbing insulation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Insulation Materials:
1) Calcium silicate.
2) Cellular glass.
3) Flexible elastomeric.
4) Mineral fiber.
5) Phenolic.
6) Polyisocyanurate.
7) Polyolefin.
8) Polystyrene.
b. Insulating cements.
c. Adhesives.
d. Mastics.
e. Lagging adhesives.
f. Sealants.
g. Factory-applied jackets.
h. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
i. Field-applied cloths.
j. Field-applied jackets.
k. Tapes.
l. Securements.
m. Corner angles.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings:
a. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
b. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
c. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
d. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
e. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
f. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
g. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
h. Detail field application for each equipment type.
4. Field quality-control reports.

D. Quality Assurance

1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   b. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Insulation Materials
1. Comply with requirements in Part 1.3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
2. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
3. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
4. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
5. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
6. Calcium Silicate:
   a. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   b. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   c. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
7. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   a. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
   b. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
   c. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
   d. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
   e. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL, **as directed**: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
   f. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
8. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
9. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
10. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.
11. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation

without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied FSK jacket, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

12. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.
13. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
    a. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
14. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ **OR** FSK jacket, **as directed**, complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
15. Phenolic:
    a. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
    b. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
    c. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
        1) Preformed Pipe Insulation: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
        2) Board for Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
16. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.
    a. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
    b. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
    c. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
        1) Pipe Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
        2) Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
17. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
18. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

B. Insulating Cements
1. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
2. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
3. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

C. Adhesives
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).

a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
5. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).
7. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
   a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Mastics
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
   a. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of **Value g/L** as directed by the Owner when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.
3. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.
4. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.
5. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms (2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 93 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.

E. Lagging Adhesives

1. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    a. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of **Value g/L** as directed by the Owner when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    b. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
    c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 82 deg C).
    d. Color: White.

F. Sealants
1. Joint Sealants:
    a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    b. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
    d. Color: White or gray.
    e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
    a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
    d. Color: Aluminum.
    e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
    a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
    d. Color: White.
    e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

G. Factory-Applied Jackets
1. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
    a. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
    b. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
    c. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
    d. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    e. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms (0.007 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    f. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

H. Field-Applied Fabric-Reinforcing Mesh

1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
2. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering equipment.
3. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for equipment and pipe.

I. Field-Applied Cloths
1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

J. Field-Applied Jackets
1. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    a. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
    b. Color: White **OR** Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by the Owner, **as directed**.
    c. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
        1) Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
    d. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
3. Metal Jacket:
    a. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
        1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
        2) Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
        3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
        4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
        5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
            a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
            b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
            c) Tee covers.
            d) Flange and union covers.
            e) End caps.
            f) Beveled collars.
            g) Valve covers.
            h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
    b. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
        1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
        2) Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
        3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.

4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
   a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
   b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
   c) Tee covers.
   d) Flange and union covers.
   e) End caps.
   f) Beveled collars.
   g) Valve covers.
   h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

4. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

K. Tapes
1. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 2 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
   f. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
2. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 2 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
   f. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
3. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
   a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
   b. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 500 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
4. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
   b. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 5 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.
5. PVDC Tape: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm) **OR** 6 mils (0.15 mm), **as directed**.
   c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
   d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

L. Securements
1. Bands:

a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
b. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
c. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

2. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
   a. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) **OR** 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   b. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) **OR** 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
   c. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
      1) Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
      2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
      3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
   d. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
      1) Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
      2) Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
      3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
   e. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
      1) Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
      2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
      3) Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
   f. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
      1) Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

g. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

3. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
4. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel, **as directed**.

M. Corner Angles
1. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
2. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.
3. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
OR
Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
a. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
b. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
3. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

B. General Installation Requirements
1. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
2. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
3. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
4. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
5. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
6. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
7. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
8. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
9. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

10. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
    a. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
    b. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
    c. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
    d. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
11. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
12. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
    a. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
    b. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
    c. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
        1) For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
    d. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
    e. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
13. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
14. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
15. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
16. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
    a. Vibration-control devices.
    b. Testing agency labels and stamps.
    c. Nameplates and data plates.
    d. Manholes.
    e. Handholes.
    f. Cleanouts.

C. Penetrations
1. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
    a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
    b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
    c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
    d. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

3. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
   a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
   d. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
4. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
5. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
   a. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
6. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   a. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
   b. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

D. Equipment, Tank, And Vessel Insulation Installation
1. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
   a. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
   b. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
   c. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
   d. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
      1) Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
      2) Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
      3) On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
      4) Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
      5) Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
      6) Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
      7) Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
   e. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
   f. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
   g. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).

h. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
i. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
j. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
   a. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   b. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
3. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
   a. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch (150-mm) centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
   b. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, at least 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.6 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

E. General Pipe Insulation Installation
1. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
2. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
   a. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
   c. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
   d. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
   e. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
   f. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
   g. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for

above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.

h. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

i. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

3. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

4. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

a. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

b. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

c. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.

d. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.

e. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

F. Calcium Silicate Insulation Installation

1. Insulation Installation on Domestic Water Boiler Breechings:

a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.

b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

c. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.

b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

c. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   b. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
   c. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.
5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   b. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   c. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

G. Cellular-Glass Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
   b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
   c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
   d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
   d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   b. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
   b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Installation
1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
   b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
   b. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

I. Mineral-Fiber Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
   b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
   c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
   d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
   d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
   b. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
   b. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
   c. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   d. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

J. Phenolic Insulation Installation
   1. General Installation Requirements:
      a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
      b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
   2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
      a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
      b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
      c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
      d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
   3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
      a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
      b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
      c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
   4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
      a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
      a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
      c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

K. Polyisocyanurate Insulation Installation
   1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
      a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
      b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
      c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
   2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
      a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
      b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
      c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
   3. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:
      a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

a. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

L. Polyolefin Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
a. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
a. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
a. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

M. Polystyrene Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
a. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
a. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

N. Field-Applied Jacket Installation
1. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   a. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
   b. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   c. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
2. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   a. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   b. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   c. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   d. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
   e. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   a. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
4. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.
5. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   a. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
   b. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
   c. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
   d. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
   e. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

O. Finishes
1. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 07.
   a. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      1) Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

3. Color: Final color as selected by the Owner. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
4. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

P. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
   b. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
3. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

Q. Domestic Water Boiler Breeching Insulation Schedule
1. Round, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
2. Round, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
3. Rectangular, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
4. Rectangular, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.

R. Equipment Insulation Schedule
1. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
3. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for domestic water heating service) insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.

c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

4. Steam-to-hot-water converter insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
5. Domestic water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6. Domestic chilled-water (potable) pump insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
7. Domestic hot-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
8. Domestic water, domestic chilled-water (potable), and domestic hot-water hydropneumatic tank insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
   b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
9. Domestic hot-water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following, of thickness to provide an R-value of 12.5:
   a. Cellular glass.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-fiber pipe and tank.
   d. Phenolic.
10. Domestic water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
11. Domestic chilled-water (potable) storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

12. Piping system filter-housing insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

S. Piping Insulation Schedule, General
1. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
a. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
b. Underground piping.
c. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

T. Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule
1. Domestic Cold Water:
a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6) Polyolefin: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
b. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

2. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6) Polyolefin: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4. Stormwater and Overflow:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      3) Polyolefin: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
7. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      4) Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
8. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
9. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.

4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6) Polyolefin: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.

10. Hot Service Drains:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
11. Hot Service Vents:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

U. Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule
1. Domestic Water Piping:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
3. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        3) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        4) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
4. Hot Service Drains:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5. Hot Service Vents:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

V. Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule
1. Loose-fill insulation, for belowground piping, is specified in Division 28.
2. Sanitary Waste Piping, All Sizes, Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
3. Chilled Water, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

W. Indoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule

1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Equipment, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. None.
   b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Piping, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Piping, Exposed:

a. None.
b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
d. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

X. Outdoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule
1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Equipment, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed** with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Piping, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.

c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
d. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

7. Piping, Exposed:
   a. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm) **OR** 40 mils (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, ,**as directed,** with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

Y. Underground, Field-Installed Insulation Jacket
   1. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19 00a

SECTION 22 11 16 00 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for domestic water piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
b. Encasement for piping.
c. Specialty valves.
d. Flexible connectors.
e. Water meters furnished by utility company for installation by Contractor.
OR
Water meters.
f. Escutcheons.
g. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
h. Wall penetration systems.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Domestic water piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Field quality-control reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
2. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic, potable domestic water piping and components. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping, **as directed**.
3. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.

F. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
b. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Piping Materials

1. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

B. Copper Tube And Fittings
   1. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, drawn temper.
      a. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
      b. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
      c. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
      d. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
      e. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
         1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
         2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
      f. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
         1) Description: Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22; with stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.
      g. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:
         1) Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
      h. Grooved-Joint Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
         1) Copper Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M) copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
         2) Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
   2. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, annealed temper.
      a. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
      b. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
         1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
         2) NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

C. Ductile-Iron Pipe And Fittings
   1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
      a. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
      b. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
         1) Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
   2. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
      a. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
         1) Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
      b. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
         1) Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
   3. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151.
      a. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
         1) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.

2) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Couplings: AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe And Fittings
1. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Standard Weight. Include ends matching joining method.
a. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
b. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
c. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface, and female threaded ends.
d. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
e. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
1) Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
2) Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

E. CPVC Piping
1. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
a. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 and ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80.
b. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F 437, Schedule 80.
2. CPVC Piping System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, pipe and socket fittings.
3. CPVC Tubing System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, tube and socket fittings.

F. PEX Tube And Fittings
1. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 877, SDR 9 tubing.
a. Fittings for PEX Tube: ASTM F 1807, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp rings and matching PEX tube dimensions.
b. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal assembly complying with ASTM F 877; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet.

G. PVC Pipe And Fittings
1. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
a. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80.
b. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.

H. Piping Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
4. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
5. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.
a. Use CPVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

7. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

I. Encasement For Piping
1. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
2. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) **OR** LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) **OR** High-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

J. Specialty Valves
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves, drain valves, backflow preventers, and vacuum breakers.
3. CPVC Union Ball Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
      2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      3) Body Material: CPVC.
      4) Body Design: Union type.
      5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
      6) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
      7) Ball: CPVC; full port.
      8) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
      9) Handle: Tee shaped.
4. PVC Union Ball Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
      2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      3) Body Material: PVC.
      4) Body Design: Union type.
      5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
      6) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
      7) Ball: PVC; full port.
      8) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
      9) Handle: Tee shaped.
5. CPVC Non-Union Ball Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
      2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      3) Body Material: CPVC.
      4) Body Design: Non-union type.

5) End Connections: Socket or threaded.
6) Ball: CPVC; full or reduced port.
7) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
8) Handle: Tee shaped.

6. PVC Non-Union Ball Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
      2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      3) Body Material: PVC.
      4) Body Design: Non-union type.
      5) End Connections: Socket or threaded.
      6) Ball: PVC; full or reduced port.
      7) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
      8) Handle: Tee shaped.
7. CPVC Butterfly Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      2) Body Material: CPVC.
      3) Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
      4) Seat: EPDM rubber.
      5) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
      6) Disc: CPVC.
      7) Stem: Stainless steel.
      8) Handle: Lever.
8. PVC Butterfly Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      2) Body Material: PVC.
      3) Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
      4) Seat: EPDM rubber.
      5) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
      6) Disc: PVC.
      7) Stem: Stainless steel.
      8) Handle: Lever.
9. CPVC Ball Check Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      2) Body Material: CPVC.
      3) Body Design: Union-type ball check.
      4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
      5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
      6) Ball: CPVC.
      7) Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.
10. PVC Ball Check Valves:
    a. Description:
       1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
       2) Body Material: PVC.
       3) Body Design: Union-type ball check.

4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
6) Ball: PVC.
7) Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.

11. CPVC Gate Valves:
    a. Description:
        1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
        2) Body Material: CPVC.
        3) Body Design: Nonrising stem.
        4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Socket **OR** Threaded, **as directed**.
        5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Socket **OR** Threaded **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
        6) Gate and Stem: Plastic.
        7) Seals: EPDM rubber.
        8) Handle: Wheel.
12. PVC Gate Valves:
    a. Description:
        1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
        2) Body Material: PVC.
        3) Body Design: Nonrising stem.
        4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Socket **OR** Threaded, **as directed**.
        5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Socket **OR** Threaded **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
        6) Gate and Stem: Plastic.
        7) Seals: EPDM rubber.
        8) Handle: Wheel.

K. Transition Fittings
1. General Requirements:
    a. Same size as pipes to be joined.
    b. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
    c. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
4. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
    a. Description: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket threaded, **as directed**, end.
5. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
    a. Description: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, four-part union. Include brass or stainless-steel, **as directed**, threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded, **as directed**, plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.

L. Dielectric Fittings
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
2. Dielectric Unions:

a. Description:
1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:
a. Description:
1) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

4. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
a. Description:
1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

5. Dielectric Couplings:
a. Description:
1) Galvanized-steel coupling.
2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
3) End Connections: Female threaded.
4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.

6. Dielectric Nipples:
a. Description:
1) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
3) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

M. Flexible Connectors
1. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
a. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
b. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
c. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
2. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
a. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
b. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
c. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

N. Water Meters
1. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
a. Description:
1) Standard: AWWA C700.
2) Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
3) Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility.
5) Case: Bronze.
6) End Connections: Threaded.
2. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

a. Description:
1) Standard: AWWA C701.
2) Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
3) Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
5) Case: Bronze.
6) End Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
7) End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

3. Compound-Type Water Meters:
a. Description:
1) Standard: AWWA C702.
2) Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
3) Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
5) Case: Bronze.
6) Pipe Connections: Flanged.

4. Fire-Service-Type Water Meters:
a. Description:
1) Standard: AWWA C703 and UL listing.
2) Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) working pressure.
3) Body Design:
a) Proportional, Detector-Type Water Meters: With meter on bypass.
i. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine **OR** AWWA C702, compound, **as directed**, type with bronze case; size not less than one-half nominal size of main-line meter.
b) Turbine-Type Water Meters: With strainer, and with meter on bypass.
i. Strainer: Full size, matching water meter.
ii. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine type with bronze case; not less than NPS 2 (DN 50).
4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
5) Case: Bronze.
6) Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
7) Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

5. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
OR
Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

O. Escutcheons
1. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
2. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish with setscrews.
3. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
4. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with setscrew **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
5. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
6. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, setscrew **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
7. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners, **as directed**.

8. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

P. Sleeves
1. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
2. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
3. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
4. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
5. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
6. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
7. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
   a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

Q. Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
   a. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
   b. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel **OR** Plastic **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

R. Wall Penetration Systems
1. Description: Wall-sleeve assembly, consisting of housing and gland, gaskets, and pipe sleeve.
   a. Carrier-Pipe Deflection: Up to 5 percent without leakage.
   b. Housing: Ductile-iron casting with hub, waterstop, anchor ring, and locking devices. Include gland, bolts, and nuts.
   c. Housing-to-Sleeve Gasket: EPDM rubber **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
   d. Housing-to-Carrier-Pipe Gasket: AWWA C111, EPDM rubber **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
   e. Pipe Sleeve: AWWA C151, ductile-iron pipe **OR** ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, zinc-coated steel pipe, **as directed**.

S. Grout
1. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
3. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

3. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
4. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
5. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.
6. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
7. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
8. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain **OR** without pitch, **as directed**, and plumb.
9. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
10. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
11. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
12. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
13. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
14. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
15. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
16. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
17. Install piping free of sags and bends.
18. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
19. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
20. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
21. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
22. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
23. Install thermometers on inlet **OR** inlet and outlet, **as directed**, piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

C. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
4. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.

5. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
6. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
7. Copper-Tubing, Push-on Joints: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
8. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
9. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll groove end of tube. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for roll-grooved joints.
10. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
11. Steel-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut **OR** Roll, **as directed**, groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
12. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
13. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
    b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    c. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
14. PEX Piping Joints: Join according to ASTM F 1807.
15. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

D. Valve Installation
1. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
2. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties".
    a. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
    b. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
4. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.
5. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

E. Transition Fitting Installation
1. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
2. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:

a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

3. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings **OR** unions, **as directed**.

F. Dielectric Fitting Installation
1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings **OR** nipples **OR** unions, **as directed**.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges **OR** flange kits **OR** nipples, **as directed**.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

G. Flexible Connector Installation
1. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump, **as directed**.
2. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.
3. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.

H. Water Meter Installation
1. Rough-in domestic water piping for water meter installation, and install water meters, **as directed**, according to utility company's requirements.
2. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility company.
OR
Install water meters according to AWWA M6 and utility company's requirements.
3. Install displacement-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
OR
Install turbine-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
OR
Install compound-type water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on valved bypass around meter. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
OR
Install fire-service water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on full-size valved bypass around meter. Support meter, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
4. Install remote registration system according to standards of utility company and of authorities having jurisdiction.

I. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
a. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
b. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
1) 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
2) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
3) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
c. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
d. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
3. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

4. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
5. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   g. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
6. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
7. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   g. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   h. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
8. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
9. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
10. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches (1500 mm) for NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller, and every 72 inches (1800 mm) for NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and larger.
11. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 32 inches (815 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
12. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
13. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    c. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
    d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
    e. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
14. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
15. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Connections
   1. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
   2. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.

3. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
4. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
   a. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
   b. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
   c. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section(s) "Plumbing Fixtures" OR "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" OR "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" OR "Security Plumbing Fixtures", **as directed**, for connection sizes.
   d. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

K. Escutcheon Installation
1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
2. Escutcheons for New Piping:
   a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
   b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
   c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.
   d. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
   e. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
   f. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
3. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
   a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
   b. Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
   c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
   d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
   e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
   f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
   g. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

L. Sleeve Installation

1. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
2. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
3. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
4. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
5. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
6. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
7. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
8. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals **OR** wall penetration systems, **as directed**, specified in this Section.
9. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
10. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
11. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
    a. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Molded PE **OR** Molded PVC **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**.
    b. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Steel pipe **OR** Stack sleeve fittings, **as directed**.
        1) Extend sleeves 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
        2) For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
    c. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Gypsum-Board Partitions:
        1) PVC pipe **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**, sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
        2) Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger.
        3) Exception: Sleeves are not required for water supply tubes and waste pipes for individual plumbing fixtures if escutcheons will cover openings.
    d. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Molded PE **OR** Molded PVC **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**.
    e. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
        1) Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
        2) Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger.
        3) Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
        4) Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
    f. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
        1) PVC pipe **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**, sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
        2) Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger.
12. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.

M. Sleeve Seal Installation
1. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
2. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe

and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

N. Wall Penetration System Installation
1. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
2. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.

O. Identification
1. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
2. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

P. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Piping Inspections:
   a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
      2) Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
   c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
   d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Piping Tests:
   a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
   b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
   c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
   e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
   f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
4. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

Q. Adjusting
1. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
   a. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
   b. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
   c. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
   d. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.

1) Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
2) Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

e. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
f. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
g. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
h. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

R. Cleaning

1. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable, **as directed**, domestic water piping as follows:
   a. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
   b. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
      1) Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
      2) Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
         a) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
         b) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
      3) Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
      4) Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
2. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
   a. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
   b. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
      1) Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
      2) Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
3. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
4. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

S. Piping Schedule

1. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
2. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
3. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
4. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
   a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
5. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger, shall be one of the following:

a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
b. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
c. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
d. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
e. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

6. Under-building slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), shall be one of the following:
   a. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
   b. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
   c. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
7. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
   a. Hard **OR** Soft, **as directed**, copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
8. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
   a. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
   b. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; cast-copper **OR** wrought-copper, **as directed**, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   c. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B, **as directed**; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   d. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR**, **as directed**; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
   e. CPVC, Schedule 40 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
   f. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
   g. CPVC Tubing System: CPVC tube; CPVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and NPS 2 (DN 50) CPVC pipe with CPVC socket fittings may be used instead of tubing.
   h. PEX Tube, NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller; fittings for PEX tube; and crimped joints.
   i. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
9. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
   a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; cast-copper **OR** wrought-copper, **as directed**, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   b. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B, **as directed**; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

d. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
e. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
f. CPVC, Schedule 40 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
g. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
h. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

10. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200), shall be one of the following:
    a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; cast-copper **OR** wrought-copper, **as directed**, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
    b. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
    c. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
    d. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
    e. CPVC, Schedule 40 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
    f. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
    g. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
11. Aboveground, combined domestic-water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN300), shall be one of the following:
    a. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
    b. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
    c. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

T. Valve Schedule
1. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
    a. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
    b. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
    c. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated **OR** Memory-stop, **as directed**, balancing valves.
    d. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
2. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
3. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.
4. CPVC and PVC valves matching piping materials may be used.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 00a - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for storm drainage piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes:
a. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
b. Special pipe fittings.
c. Encasement for underground metal piping.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working-pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
a. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
b. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
2. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of seismic events determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow **OR** siphonic roof drainage system, as directed by the Owner. Include calculations, plans, and details. Controlled-Flow Storm Drainage System: Include calculations, plans, and details.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For storm drainage piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
b. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
5. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
2. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

F. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Storm-Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm-drainage service.

b. Do not proceed with interruption of storm-drainage service without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Piping Materials
1. Refer to Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

B. Hub-And-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy class(es).
2. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
3. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

C. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
2. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
   a. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
   b. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
   c. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
3. Rigid, Unshielded Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe And Fittings
1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Standard Weight or Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
2. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, **as directed**, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
3. Pressure Fittings:
   a. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
   b. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
   c. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, **as directed**, standard pattern.
   d. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
   e. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125, galvanized, **as directed**.
4. Grooved-Joint Systems:
   a. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, galvanized, **as directed**, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106, galvanized-steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, galvanized, **as directed**, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
   b. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

E. Ductile-Iron, Pipe and Fittings
1. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping
   a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
   b. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.

c. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A121.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

2. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint,
   a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
   b. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   c. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
3. Ductile Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:
   a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
   b. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
      1) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe. AWWA C110/A21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
      2) Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys, EPMD-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

F. Copper Tube And Fittings
1. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
2. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.
3. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M (ASTM B 88M, Types B and C), water tube, drawn temper.
4. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, annealed temper.
5. Copper Pressure Fittings:
   a. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
   b. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
6. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
   a. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
   b. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
7. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

G. ABS Pipe And Fittings
1. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
2. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
3. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
4. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235
   a. Use ABS solvent cement that has a VOC content of 325 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

H. PVC Pipe And Fittings
1. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
2. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
3. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
4. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
   a. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
5. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

I. Specialty Pipe Fittings
1. Transition Couplings:
a. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
b. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
c. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
1) Standard: ASTM C 1173.
2) Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
3) Sleeve Materials:
a) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
b) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
c) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
d. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
1) Standard: ASTM C 1460.
2) Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
e. Pressure Transition Couplings:

f. Standard: AWWA C219.
g. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
h. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed.**
i. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
j. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
2. Dielectric Fittings:
a. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
b. Dielectric Unions:
1) Description:
a) Standard: ASSE 1079.
b) Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa) OR 250 psig (1725 kPa)** at 180 deg F (82 deg C), **as directed.**
c) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
c. Dielectric Flanges:
1) Description:
a) Standard: ASSE 1079.
b) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
c) Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa) OR 175 psig (1200 kPa)** minimum **OR 300 psig (2070 kPa), as directed.**
d) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
d. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1) Description:
a) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.

b) Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa)**
c) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
d) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
e) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.

e. Dielectric Nipples:
1) Description:
a) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
b) Pressure Rating: **300 psig (2070 kPa)** at **225 deg F (107 deg C)**.
c) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
d) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

J. Encasement For Underground Metal Piping
1. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105
2. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) **OR** LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
3. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earth Moving
1. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
2. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
5. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
6. Install piping at indicated slopes.
7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
9. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
10. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
11. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
12. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
13. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
a. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent **OR** 2 percent, **as directed**, downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent **OR** 2 percent**, as directed,** downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.

b. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: **2 percent** downward in direction of flow.

14. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
    a. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
15. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
16. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
17. Install aboveground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2661.
18. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
19. Install underground ABS and PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
20. Install engineered controlled-flow **OR** siphonic**, as directed,** drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
21. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to storm sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
    a. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
22. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
    a. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
23. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
24. Plumbing Specialties:
    a. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".
    b. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".
    c. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".
25. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
26. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
27. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
28. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

C. Joint Construction
1. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
2. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
3. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
4. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
5. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

6. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828 procedure. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
7. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fittings. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
8. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
9. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    b. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
    c. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

D. Specialty Pipe Fitting Installation
1. Transition Couplings:
    a. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
    b. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed** nonpressure transition couplings.
    c. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    d. In Underground Force-Main Piping:
        1) NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
        2) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
2. Dielectric Fittings:
    a. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
    b. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples **OR** unions, **as directed**.
    c. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Use dielectric flanges **OR** flange kits **OR** nipples, **as directed.**
    d. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

E. Valve Installation
1. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
2. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
    a. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
    b. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
4. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
    a. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
    c. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties".

F. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
2. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
    a. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
    b. Install stainless-steel **OR** fiberglass pipe hangers, **as directed,** for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
    c. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.

d. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
e. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
f. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
   1) 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
   2) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
   3) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m), if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
g. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
h. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

3. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
4. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
5. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
6. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
   f. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).
7. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
8. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 3 (DN 80): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   g. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   h. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
9. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
10. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    b. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    d. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    e. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
    f. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
11. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
12. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    a. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    b. NPS 3 (DN 80): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    c. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
    d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
    e. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
13. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).

14. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Connections
1. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
3. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
   a. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
   b. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor **OR** in pit with pit cover flush with floor, **as directed.**
   c. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties".
4. Connect force-main piping to the following:
   a. Storm Sewer: To exterior force main or storm manhole.
   b. Sump Pumps: To sump pump discharge.
5. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
6. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

H. Identification
1. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

I. Field Quality Control
1. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
   b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
2. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
3. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
   a. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
   b. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   c. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, **as directed**, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
   d. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
   e. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

5. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
   a. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   b. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
   c. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
   d. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

J. Cleaning
1. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
2. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
3. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

K. Piping Schedule
1. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
2. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller shall be any of the following:
   a. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
   b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty,** hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
   c. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
   d. Copper tube and fittings in first subparagraph below are only available in NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 8 (DN 32 to DN 200).
   e. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
   f. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core ABS pipe, **as directed**, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
   g. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core PVC pipe, **as directed,** PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
   h. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed,** nonpressure transition couplings.
3. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger shall be any of the following:
   a. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
   b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty,** hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
   c. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
   d. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
   e. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core PVC pipe, **as directed**, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
   f. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.
4. Underground storm drainage piping **NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller** shall be **any of** the following:
   a. Extra Heavy **OR** Service class, **as directed,** cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed **OR** calking materials; and calked joints, **as directed.**
   b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty, cast-iron,** hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
   c. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core ABS pipe, **as directed**, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
   d. **Solid-wall OR Cellular-core** PVC pipe, **as directed**, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

e. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.

5. Underground, storm drainage piping **NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger** shall be **any of** the following:
   a. Extra Heavy **OR** Service class, **as directed**, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed **OR** calking materials; and calked joints **as directed**,.
   b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty, cast-iron,** hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
   c. **Solid-wall OR Cellular-core** PVC pipe, **as directed**, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
   d. Cellular-core, sewer and drain series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
   e. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: **Unshielded OR Shielded**, **as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.
6. Aboveground storm drainage force mains **NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50)** shall be **any of** the following:
   a. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.
   b. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
7. Aboveground storm drainage force mains **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150)** shall be any of the following:
   a. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.
   b. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
   c. Grooved-end, galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
   d. Fitting-type transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.
8. Underground storm drainage force mains NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
   a. Hard **OR** Soft**, as directed** copper tube; **wrought-**copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
   b. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
   c. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
   d. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
   e. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.
9. Underground storm drainage force mains NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
   a. Hard copper tube; **wrought-**copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
   b. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
   c. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
   d. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
   e. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 00b - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work:
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for general-service compressed-air piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes piping and related specialties for general-service compressed-air systems operating at 200 psig (1380 kPa) or less.

C. Definitions
1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
3. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
4. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
5. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
6. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
7. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
8. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures between 150 and 200 psig (1035 and 1380 kPa).
9. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures of 150 psig (1035 kPa) or less.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Compressed-air piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of seismic events determined according to SEI/ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.".

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
   a. Plastic pipes, fittings, and valves.
   b. Dielectric fittings.
   c. Flexible pipe connectors.
   d. Safety valves.
   e. Pressure regulators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
   f. Automatic drain valves.
   g. Filters. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
   h. Lubricators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
   i. Quick couplings.
   j. Hose assemblies.
2. Brazing **OR** Welding, **as directed**, certificates.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or to AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
2. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

3. ASME Compliance:
   a. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping," for high-pressure compressed-air piping.
   b. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for low-pressure compressed-air piping.

G. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Compressed-Air Service: Do not interrupt compressed-air service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary compressed-air service according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of compressed-air service.
   b. Do not proceed with interruption of compressed-air service without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings
1. Schedule 40, Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B, black or hot-dip zinc coated with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
   a. Steel Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
   b. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
   c. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
   d. Steel Flanges: ASME B16.5, Class 150 or 300, carbon steel, threaded.
   e. Wrought-Steel Butt-Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9, Schedule 40.
   f. Steel Flanges: ASME B16.5, Class 150 or 300, carbon steel.
   g. Grooved-End Fittings and Couplings:
      1) Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with grooves according to AWWA C606 and dimensions matching steel pipe.
      2) Couplings: AWWA C606 or UL 213, for steel-pipe dimensions and rated for 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for compressed air, and bolts and nuts. Provide EDPM gaskets for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR gaskets if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.
2. Schedule 5, Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135, carbon steel with plain ends and zinc-plated finish.
   a. Pressure-Seal Fittings: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency and FMG-approved, carbon-steel, pressure-seal housing with O-ring end seals suitable for compressed-air piping and rated for 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure. Provide EDPM seals for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR seals if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.
3. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L (ASTM B 88M, Type A or B) and ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) seamless, drawn-temper, water tube.
   a. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, wrought copper with dimensions for brazed joints.
   b. Cast-Copper-Alloy Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150 or 300.
   c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123.
   d. Press-Type Fittings, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
   e. Press-Type Fittings, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
   f. Extruded-Tee Outlets: Procedure for making branch outlets in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

g. Grooved-End Fittings and Couplings:
   1) Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze castings.
   2) Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for compressed air, and bolts and nuts. Provide EDPM gasket for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR gasket if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.

4. Transition Couplings for Metal Piping: Metal coupling or other manufactured fitting same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
5. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
   a. PVC Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40, socket type.
6. Blue ABS Piping System: Made of ASTM D 3965, ABS-resin modified to provide shatter-resistant pipe for compressed-air service. Pipe and fittings are light blue and sizes are in millimeters.
   a. Transition Fittings, 20 to 63 mm: Composite union with ABS socket end, CR O-ring, and malleable-iron union nut and threaded end; with construction similar to MSS SP-107, transition union.
   b. Transition Fittings, 90 to 110 mm: Flange assembly with ABS flange, CR gasket, and metal flange of material matching piping to be connected.
   c. Valves, 20 to 63 mm: ABS union ball valve with socket ends.
   d. Valves, 90 to 110 mm: ABS butterfly valve with lever handle.
7. Green ABS Piping System: Made of ASTM D 3965, ABS-resin modified to provide shatter-resistant pipe for compressed-air service. Pipe and fittings are dark green with SDR of 9.0 and same OD as ASTM A 53/A 53M, steel pipe.
   a. Transition Fittings, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 15 to DN 50): Composite union with ABS socket end, CR O-ring, ABS union nut, and brass solder-joint end; with construction similar to MSS SP-107, transition union.
   b. Transition Fittings, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): ABS flange, CR gasket, and metal flange of material matching piping to be connected.
   c. Valves, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 15 to DN 50): Union ball valve with socket ends.
   d. Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Union ball valve with flanged ends. Include safety exhaust feature in Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article if required.
8. HDPE Piping System: Made of ASTM D 1248, HDPE resin to provide shatter-resistant pipe for compressed-air service. Pipe and fittings are dark blue with pipe dimensions about the same OD as ASTM D 3035, PE pipe.
   a. Transition Fittings, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 15 to DN 50): HDPE adapter with one socket end and one end with threaded brass insert.
   b. Transition Fittings, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): HDPE flange, CR gasket, and metal flange of material matching piping to be connected.
   c. Valves, NPS 1/2 to NPS 3 (DN 15 to DN 80): HDPE union ball valve with socket ends.

B. Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for compressed-air piping system contents.
   a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
7. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:

a. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
b. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.

C. Valves
1. Metal Ball, Butterfly, Check, Gate, and Globe Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".

D. Dielectric Fittings
1. General Requirements for Dielectric Fittings: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with insulating material; suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature. Include threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
2. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
3. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
4. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
a. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

E. Flexible Pipe Connectors
1. Bronze-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
b. End Connections, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
c. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
2. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
b. End Connections, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel pipe nipple.
c. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

F. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

G. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.

6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

H. Specialties
1. Safety Valves: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," construction; National Board certified, labeled, and factory sealed; constructed of bronze body with poppet-type safety valve for compressed-air service.
   a. Pressure Settings: Higher than discharge pressure and same or lower than receiver pressure rating.
2. Air-Main Pressure Regulators: Bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Type: Pilot operated.
3. Air-Line Pressure Regulators: Diaphragm **OR** Pilot, **as directed**, operated, bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
   OR
   Air-Line Pressure Regulators: Diaphragm operated, aluminum alloy or plastic body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
5. Coalescing Filters: Coalescing type with activated carbon capable of removing water and oil aerosols; with color-change dye to indicate when carbon is saturated and warning light to indicate when selected maximum pressure drop has been exceeded. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
6. Mechanical Filters: Two-stage, mechanical-separation-type, air-line filters. Equip with deflector plates, resin-impregnated-ribbon-type filters with edge filtration, and drain cock. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
7. Air-Line Lubricators: With drip chamber and sight dome for observing oil drop entering air stream; with oil-feed adjustment screw and quick-release collar for easy bowl removal. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Provide with automatic feed device for supplying oil to lubricator.

I. Quick Couplings
1. General Requirements for Quick Couplings: Assembly with locking-mechanism feature for quick connection and disconnection of compressed-air hose.
2. Automatic-Shutoff Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with O-ring or gasket seal and stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
   a. Socket End: With one-way valve and threaded inlet for connection to piping or threaded hose fitting.
   b. Plug End: Flow-sensor-bleeder, check-valve **OR** Straight-through, **as directed**, type with barbed outlet for attaching hose.
3. Valveless Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
   a. Socket End: With O-ring or gasket seal, without valve, and with barbed inlet for attaching hose.
   b. Plug End: With barbed outlet for attaching hose.

J. Hose Assemblies
1. Description: Compatible hose, clamps, couplings, and splicers suitable for compressed-air service, of nominal diameter indicated, and rated for 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated.

a. Hose: Reinforced single **OR** double, **as directed**,-wire-braid, CR-covered hose for compressed-air service.
b. Hose Clamps: Stainless-steel clamps or bands.
c. Hose Couplings: Two-piece, straight-through, threaded brass or stainless-steel O-ring or gasket-seal swivel coupling with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.
d. Hose Splicers: One-piece, straight-through brass or stainless-steel fitting with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.

K. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Piping Applications
1. Compressed-Air Piping between Air Compressors and Receivers: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 5, galvanized-steel pipe; pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
c. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
d. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
e. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
f. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
g. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
h. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
i. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
j. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
k. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
l. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
m. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Grooved-end, Type K or L (ASTM B 88M Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
2. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 5, galvanized-steel pipe; pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
c. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

d. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
e. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 63-mm and smaller, blue ABS pipe and fittings; transition fittings; valves; and solvent-cemented joints.
f. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Green ABS pipe and fittings, transition fittings, and valves; and solvent-cemented joints.
g. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: HDPE pipe, fittings, and valves; and heat-fusion joints.
h. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
i. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
j. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
k. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
l. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
m. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): 90- and 110-mm, blue ABS pipe and fittings; transition fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. Include butterfly valves and flanged joints.
n. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100), green ABS pipe and fittings; transition fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. Include ball valves and flanged joints.
o. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100), HDPE pipe and fittings; valves; and heat-fusion joints.
p. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
q. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
r. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.

3. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
   b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 5, galvanized-steel pipe; pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
   d. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   e. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
   f. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
   g. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
   h. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   i. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
   j. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
   k. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
   l. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.

m. NPS 8 (DN 200): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.

4. Drain Piping: Use one of the following piping materials:
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type M (Type C) copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
   b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: PVC pipe and fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

B. Valve Applications
1. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for metal general-duty valves. Use metal valves, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Metal General-Duty Valves: Use valve types specified in "Valve Applications" Article in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" according to the following:
      1) Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for low-pressure compressed air.
      2) High-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for medium-pressure compressed air.
      3) Equipment Isolation NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Safety-exhaust, copper-alloy ball valve with exhaust vent and pressure rating at least as great as piping system operating pressure.
      4) Grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping and grooved joints.
   b. Plastic General-Duty Valves: Provide valves, made by piping manufacturer, that are compatible with piping. Do not use plastic valves between air compressors and receivers.
      1) Blue ABS Piping System: Ball and butterfly valves.
      2) Green ABS Piping System: Ball valves.
      3) HDPE Piping System: Ball valves.

C. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and to coordinate with other services occupying that space.
5. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
6. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
7. Install nipples, flanges, unions, transition and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Equipment and Specialty Flanged Connections:
   a. Use steel companion flange with gasket for connection to steel pipe.
   b. Use cast-copper-alloy companion flange with gasket and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joint for connection to copper tube. Do not use soldered joints for connection to air compressors or to equipment or machines producing shock or vibration.
9. Flanged joints may be used instead of specified joint for any piping or tubing system.
10. Extended-tee outlets with brazed branch connection may be used for copper tubing, within extruded-tee connection diameter to run tube diameter ratio for tube type, according to Extruded Tee Connections Sizes and Wall Thickness for Copper Tube (Inches) Table in ASTM F 2014.
11. Install eccentric reducers where compressed-air piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
12. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.

13. Install thermometer and pressure gage on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
14. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
15. Install piping free of sags and bends.
16. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
17. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

D. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
4. Welded Joints for Steel Piping: Join according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.
5. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
6. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Join according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
7. Extruded-Tee Outlets for Copper Tubing: Form branches according to ASTM F 2014, with tools recommended by procedure manufacturer, and using operators qualified according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Use asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket suitable for compressed air. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9 for bolting procedure.
9. Grooved Joints: Assemble couplings with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join according to AWWA C606 for grooved joints. Do not apply lubricant to prelubricated gaskets.
10. Heat-Fusion Joints for PE Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657 for socket-fusion joints.
11. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer, using operators qualified according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
12. Solvent-Cemented Joints for ABS Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join according to the following:
   a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   b. Join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2235 Appendix.
13. Solvent-Cemented Joints for PVC Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join according to the following:
   a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2672.
14. Dissimilar Metal Piping Material Joints: Use dielectric fittings.

E. Valve Installation
1. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
2. Install shutoff valves and unions or flanged joints at compressed-air piping to air compressors.
3. Install shutoff valve at inlet to each automatic drain valve, filter, lubricator, and pressure regulator.
4. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of compressed-air flow to and from compressed-air piping specialties and equipment.

F. Dielectric Fitting Installation
1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges.
4. NPS 5 (DN 125)and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

G. Flexible Pipe Connector Installation
1. Install flexible pipe connectors in discharge piping and in inlet air piping from remote air-inlet filter, **as directed**, of each air compressor.
2. Install bronze-hose flexible pipe connectors in copper compressed-air tubing.
3. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible pipe connectors in steel compressed-air piping.

H. Specialty Installation
1. Install safety valves on receivers in quantity and size to relieve at least the capacity of connected air compressors.
2. Install air-main pressure regulators in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors.
3. Install air-line pressure regulators in branch piping to equipment and tools, **as directed**.
4. Install automatic drain valves on aftercoolers, receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate onto nearest floor drain.
5. Install coalescing filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and upstream from mechanical filters. Mount on wall at locations indicated, **as directed**.
6. Install mechanical filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and downstream from coalescing filters. Mount on wall at locations indicated, **as directed**.
7. Install air-line lubricators in branch piping to machine tools. Mount on wall at locations indicated, **as directed**.
8. Install quick couplings at piping terminals for hose connections.
9. Install hose assemblies at hose connections.

I. Connections
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.

J. Sleeve Installation
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.
   OR
   Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
   a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
4. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
5. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
   a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
   b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum board partitions.
   c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to

2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.

6. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

K. Escutcheon Installation
1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
   a. New Piping:
      1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
      2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
      3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split-casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.
      4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
   b. Existing Piping:
      1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
      2) Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
      3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
      4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
      5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

L. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
   a. 100 Feet (30 m) or Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.

5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
7. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
8. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
9. Install hangers for Schedule 40, steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 1/2 (DN 8 to DN 15): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/4 (DN 20 to DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 2 (DN 50): 13 feet (4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 3 (DN 80): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   g. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   h. NPS 4 (DN 100): 17 feet (5.2 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   i. NPS 5 (DN 125): 19 feet (5.8 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   j. NPS 6 (DN 150): 21 feet (6.4 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   k. NPS 8 (DN 200): 24 feet (7.3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
   l. NPS 10 (DN 250): 26 feet (7.9 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
   m. NPS 12 (DN 300): 30 feet (9.1 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
10. Install supports for vertical, Schedule 40, steel piping every 15 feet (4.6 m).
11. Install hangers for Schedule 5, steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
12. Install supports for vertical, Schedule 5, steel piping every 10 feet (3 m).
13. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
14. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
15. Install vinyl-coated hangers for ABS piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. All Sizes: Install continuous support for piping with compressed air at normal operating temperature above 100 deg F (38 deg C).
   b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 30 inches (760 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.

c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 38 inches (975 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 40 inches (1015 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 45 inches (1140 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 52 inches (1330 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 58 inches (1470 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
h. NPS 3 (DN 80): 68 inches (1730 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
i. NPS 4 (DN 100): 76 inches (1900 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.

16. Install supports for vertical ABS piping every 48 inches (1220 mm).
17. Install vinyl-coated hangers for HDPE piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    a. All Sizes: Install continuous support for piping with compressed air at normal operating temperature above 100 deg F (38 deg C).
    b. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): 30 inches (760 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 35 inches (890 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 40 inches (1015 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 43 inches (1090 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 49 inches (1245 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 55 inches (1400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    h. NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100): 96 inches (2440 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
18. Install supports for vertical HDPE piping every 48 inches (1220 mm).

M. Labeling And Identification
1. Install identifying labels and devices for general-service compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

N. Field Quality Control
1. Perform field tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
    a. Piping Leak Tests for Metal Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
    b. Piping Leak Tests for ABS Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen, at temperature of 110 deg F (43 deg C) or less, to pressure of 40 psig (275 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 80 psig (550 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa), **as directed**, or more than 120 psig (825 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
    c. Piping Leak Tests for HDPE Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen, at temperature of 100 deg F (38 deg C) or less, to pressure of 40 psig (275 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, or more than 180 psig (1240 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
    d. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    e. Inspect filters, lubricators, and pressure regulators for proper operation.
3. Prepare test reports.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 00c - COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING FOR LABORATORY AND HEALTHCARE FACILITIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for compressed-air piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Compressed-air piping and specialties for nonmedical laboratory facilities, designated "laboratory air," operating at 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa), **as directed**.
   b. Medical air piping and specialties, designated "medical air," operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
   c. Dental air piping and specialties, designated "dental air," operating at 80 to 100 psig (550 to 690 kPa).
   d. Gas-powered-tool air piping and specialties, designated "instrument air," operating at 175 psig (1200 kPa).
   e. Healthcare laboratory air piping and specialties, designated "medical laboratory air," operating at 100 psig (690 kPa).

C. Definitions
1. D.I.S.S.: Diameter-index safety system.
2. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
3. Medical Compressed-Air Piping Systems: Include medical air, dental air, instrument air, and medical laboratory air piping systems.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
   a. Compressed-air tubes and fittings.
   b. Compressed-air valves and valve boxes.
   c. Medical compressed-air service connections.
   d. Medical compressed-air pressure control panels.
   e. Medical compressed-air manifolds.
   f. Medical compressed-air alarm system components.
2. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Piping Material Certification: Signed by Installer certifying that medical compressed-air piping materials comply with NFPA 99 requirements.
4. Brazing certificates.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications:
   a. Medical Compressed-Air Piping Systems for Healthcare Facilities: Qualify installers according to ASSE Standard #6010.
   b. Pressure-Seal Joining Procedure for Copper Tubing: Qualify operators according to training provided by Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.

2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the vacuum piping testing indicated, that is a member of the Medical Gas Professional Healthcare Organization **OR** is an NRTL, **as directed**, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Qualify testing personnel according to ASSE Standard #6020 for inspectors and ASSE Standard #6030 for verifiers.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain compressed-air service connections of same type and from same manufacturer as service connections provided for in Division 22 Section "Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities".
4. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
6. ASME Compliance:
   a. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping," for laboratory compressed-air piping operating at more than 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   b. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for laboratory compressed-air piping operating at 150 psig (1035 kPa) or less.
7. Comply with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities," for medical compressed-air system materials and installation in healthcare facilities.

F. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Laboratory and Medical Compressed-Air Service(s): Do not interrupt laboratory or medical compressed-air service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of laboratory and medical compressed-air service(s).
   b. Do not proceed with interruption of laboratory and medical compressed-air service(s) without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings
1. Copper Medical Gas Tube: ASTM B 819, Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, seamless, drawn temper, that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for medical gas service or according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service. Include standard color marking "OXY," "MED," "OXY/MED," "OXY/ACR," or "ACR/MED" in green for Type K tube and in blue for Type L tube.
   a. General Requirements for Copper Fittings: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
   b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, with dimensions for brazed joints.
   c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
   d. Press-Type Fittings:
      1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2. Memory-Metal Couplings: Cryogenic compression fitting made of ASTM F 2063, nickel-titanium, shape-memory alloy, and that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.

3. Copper Water Tube: ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), seamless, drawn temper.
   a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type.
   b. Press-Type Fittings:
      1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
4. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
   a. PVC Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40, socket type.

B. Joining Materials
1. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
3. Threaded-Joint Tape: PTFE.
4. Solvent Cement for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.

C. Valves
1. General Requirements for Valves: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service.
2. Ball Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece body, brass or bronze.
   a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
   b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
   c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
   d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
   e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
   f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
3. Check Valves: In-line pattern, bronze.
   a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
   b. Operation: Spring loaded.
   c. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
4. Zone Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece-body, brass or bronze ball valve with gage.
   a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
   b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
   c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
   d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
   e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
   f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
   g. Pressure Gage: Manufacturer installed on one copper-tube extension.
5. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed steel with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
   a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
   b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Satin-chrome finish steel **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
   c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.

   OR

   Zone Valve Boxes: Formed or extruded aluminum with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.

a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.

6. Safety Valves: Bronze-body, ASME-construction, poppet, pressure-relief type with settings to match system requirements.
7. Pressure Regulators: Bronze body and trim; spring-loaded, diaphragm-operated relieving type; manual pressure-setting adjustment; rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum inlet pressure; and capable of controlling delivered air pressure within 0.5 psig for each 10-psig (5.0 kPa for each 100-kPa) inlet pressure.
8. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket where wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.

D. Medical Compressed-Air Service Connections
1. Connection Devices: For specific medical compressed-air pressure and service listed. Include roughing-in assemblies, finishing assemblies, and cover plates. Individual cover plates are not required if service connection is in multiple unit or assembly with cover plate. Furnish recessed-type units made for concealed piping unless otherwise indicated.
a. Roughing-in Assembly:
1) Steel outlet box for recessed mounting and concealed piping.
2) Brass-body outlet block with secondary check valve that will prevent gas flow when primary valve is removed.
3) Double seals that will prevent air leakage.
4) ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper outlet tube brazed to valve with service marking and tube-end dust cap.
b. Finishing Assembly:
1) Brass housing with primary check valve.
2) Double seals that will prevent air leakage.
3) Cover plate with gas-service label.
c. Quick-Coupler Service Connections: Pressure outlet with noninterchangeable keyed indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment, and with positive-locking ring that retains equipment stem in valve during use.
d. D.I.S.S. Service Connections: Pressure outlets, complying with CGA V-5, with threaded indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment.
1) Medical Air Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1160.
2) Instrument Air Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1160.
e. Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent, color-coded, identifying label matching corresponding service.

E. Medical Compressed-Air Pressure Control Panels
1. Description: Steel box and support brackets for recessed roughing in with stainless-steel or anodized-aluminum cover plate with printed operating instructions. Include manifold assembly consisting of inlet supply valve, inlet supply pressure gage, line-pressure control regulator, outlet supply pressure gage, D.I.S.S. service connection, and piping outlet for remote service connection.
a. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
b. Line-Pressure Control Regulator: Self-relieving diaphragm type with precision manual adjustment.
c. Pressure Gages: 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) range.

d. Service Connection: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1160, instrument air outlet.
e. Before final assembly, provide temporary dust shield and U-tube for testing.
f. Label cover plate "Air Pressure Control."

F. Medical Compressed-Air Manifolds
1. General Requirements for Medical Compressed-Air Manifolds: Comply with NFPA 99, Ch. 5, "Manifolds for Gas Cylinders without Reserve Supply."
2. Central Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, pressure changeover switch, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
3. Manifold and Headers: Duplex, nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated, divided into two equal banks. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure. Include cylinder bank headers with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
4. Compressed-Air Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of compressed-air cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.
5. Operation: Automatic, pressure-switch-activated changeover from one cylinder bank to the other when first bank becomes exhausted, without line-pressure fluctuation or resetting of regulators and without supply interruption by shutoff of either cylinder bank header.
6. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and headers **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.
7. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying compressed air and system operating pressure.
8. Medical Air Manifolds: For 4 cylinders and 1250-cu. ft./h (9.85-L/s) **OR** 8 cylinders and 2500-cu. ft./h (19.7-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure.
9. Instrument Air Manifolds: For 8 cylinders and 2000-cu. ft./h (15.7-L/s) **OR** 12 cylinders and 3000-cu. ft./h (23.6-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum line pressure.

G. Medical Compressed-Air-Piping Alarm Systems
1. Panels for medical compressed-air piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical vacuum and medical gas piping systems.
2. Components: Designed for continuous service and to operate on power supplied from 120 **OR** 240 **OR** 277, **as directed**,-V ac power source to alarm panels and with connections for low-voltage wiring to remote sensing devices. Include step-down transformers if required.
3. Dew Point Monitors: Continuous line monitoring, having panel with gage or digital display, pipeline sensing element, electrical connections for alarm system, factory- or field-installed valved bypass, and visual and cancelable audio signal for dryer site and master alarm panels. Alarm signals when pressure dew point rises above 39 deg F (4 deg C) at 55 psig (380 kPa).
   a. Operation: Chilled-mirror method **OR** Chilled-mirror method or hygrometer moisture analyzer with sensor probe **OR** Hygrometer moisture analyzer with sensor probe, **as directed**.
4. Pressure Switches or Transducer Sensors: Continuous line monitoring with electrical connections for alarm system.
   a. Low-Pressure Operating Range: 0- to 100-psig (0- to 690-kPa).
   b. High-Pressure Operating Range: Up to 250-psig (1725-kPa).
5. Carbon Monoxide Monitors: Panel with gage or digital display, pipeline sensing element, electrical connections for alarm system, and factory- or field-installed valved bypass. Alarm signals when carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm.
6. General Requirements for Medical Compressed-Air Alarm Panels: Factory wired with audible and color-coded visible signals to indicate specified functions.
   a. Mounting: Exposed, surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, installation.
   b. Enclosures: Fabricated from minimum 0.047-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick steel or minimum 0.05-inch- (1.27-mm-) thick aluminum, with knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
7. Master Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.

a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
   1) Medical Air: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), backup air compressor is in operation, pressure drop across filter assembly increases more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), dew point rises above 39 deg F (4 deg C) at 55 psig (380 kPa), carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm, and high water level is reached in receiver for liquid-ring, medical air compressor systems.
   2) Dental Air: Pressure drops below 65 psig (450 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa), backup air compressor is in operation, pressure drop across filter assembly increases more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), dew point rises above 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 125 psig (860 kPa), and carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm.
   3) Instrument Air: Pressure drops below 165 psig (1140 kPa) or rises above 185 psig (1275 kPa).
   4) Medical Laboratory Air: Pressure drops below 90 psig (630 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa).

8. Anesthetizing-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Medical Air: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
      2) Instrument Air: Pressure drops below 165 psig (1140 kPa) or rises above 185 psig (1275 kPa).
9. Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
      1) Medical Air: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
10. Dental-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Dental Air: Pressure drops below 65 psig (450 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa), backup air compressor is in operation, pressure drop across filter assembly increases more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), dew point rises above 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 125 psig (860 kPa), and carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm.
      2) Instrument Air: Pressure drops below 165 psig (1140 kPa) or rises above 185 psig (1275 kPa).
11. Medical Laboratory Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages,; and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
      1) Medical Laboratory Air: Pressure drops below 90 psig (630 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa).

H. Computer Interface Cabinet
   1. Description: Wall-mounting, welded-steel control cabinet with gasketed door, mounting brackets, grounding device, and white-enamel finish for connection of medical compressed-air- piping-system alarms to facility computer. Include factory-installed signal circuit boards, power transformer, circuit breaker, wiring terminal board, and internal wiring capable of interfacing 20, **as directed**, alarm signals.

I. Compressed-Air-Cylinder Storage Racks
   1. Wall Storage Racks: Fabricate racks with chain restraints for upright cylinders as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured wall racks.
   2. Freestanding Storage Racks: Fabricate racks as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured storage racks.

J. Flexible Pipe Connectors
1. Description: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
b. End Connections: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.

K. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

L. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

M. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

N. Nitrogen
1. Description: Comply with USP 28 - NF 23 for oil-free dry nitrogen.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Piping Applications
1. Connect new tubing to existing tubing with memory-metal couplings.
2. Laboratory Air Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
3. Medical Air Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.

4. Dental Air Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
5. Instrument Air Piping:
   a. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Smaller: Use Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
   b. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90) and Larger: Use Type K, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
6. Medical Laboratory Air Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
7. Drain Piping: Use one of the following piping materials:
   a. Copper water tube, cast- or wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** press-type fittings, and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. PVC pipe, PVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

B. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Comply with ASSE Standard #6010 for installation of compressed-air piping.
3. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
6. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
7. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
8. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
9. Install eccentric reducers, if available, where compressed-air piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
10. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
11. Install thermometer and pressure gage on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
12. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
13. Install piping free of sags and bends.
14. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
15. Install medical compressed-air piping to medical compressed-air service connections specified in this Section, to medical compressed-air service connections in equipment specified in Division 22 Section "Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities", and to equipment specified in other Sections requiring medical compressed-air service.
16. Install seismic restraints on compressed-air piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
17. Install compressed-air service connections recessed in walls. Attach roughing-in assembly to substrate; attach finishing assembly to roughing-in assembly.
18. Connect compressed-air piping to air compressors and to compressed-air outlets and equipment requiring compressed-air service.
19. Install unions in copper compressed-air tubing adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

C. Valve Installation
1. Install shutoff valve at each connection to and from compressed-air equipment and specialties.
2. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of compressed-air flow from compressed-air equipment.
3. Install valve boxes recessed in wall and anchored to substrate. Single boxes may be used for multiple valves that serve same area or function.
4. Install zone valves and gages in valve boxes. Rotate valves to angle that prevents closure of cover when valve is in closed position.
5. Install safety valves on compressed-air receivers where required by NFPA 99 and where recommended by specialty manufacturers.
6. Install pressure regulators on compressed-air piping where reduced pressure is required.
7. Install automatic drain valves on equipment, specialties, and piping with drain connection. Run drain piping to floor drain so contents spill over or into it.
8. Install flexible pipe connectors in discharge piping and in inlet air piping from remote air-inlet filter, **as directed**, of each air compressor.

D. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of PVC pipes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside of cleaned tubing and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Apply appropriate tape to external pipe threads.
4. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter. Continuously purge joint with oil-free dry nitrogen during brazing.
5. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to tube end. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828.
6. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and press-type fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
7. Memory-Metal Coupling Joints: Join new copper tube to existing tube according to procedures developed by fitting manufacturer for installation of memory-metal coupling joints.
8. Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join PVC pipe and fittings according to the following:
    a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints, and ASTM D 2672.

E. Compressed-Air Service Component Installation
1. Install compressed-air pressure control panel in walls. Attach to substrate.
2. Install compressed-air manifolds on concrete base, **as directed**, anchored to substrate.
3. Install compressed-air cylinders and connect to manifold piping.
4. Install compressed-air manifolds with seismic restraints as indicated.
5. Install compressed-air-cylinder wall storage racks attached to substrate.

F. Medical Compressed-Air-Piping Alarm System Installation
1. Alarm panels for medical compressed-air piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical vacuum piping systems and medical gas piping systems.
2. Install alarm system components for medical compressed-air-piping according to and in locations required by NFPA 99.
3. Install area and master alarm panels for medical compressed-air piping system where indicated.
4. Install computer interface cabinet with connection to medical compressed-air-piping alarm system and to facility computer.

G. Sleeve Installation
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.

3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.
   a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

   OR

   Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
4. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
   a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
   b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger penetrating gypsum board partitions.
   c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
      1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

H. Escutcheon Installation
   1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
      a. New Piping:
         1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
         2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
         3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.
         4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
         5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
         6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
      b. Existing Piping:
         1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
         2) Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
         3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.

4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

I. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
   a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel, clevis hangers.
   b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable, roller hangers.
5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for trapeze hangers.
6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
7. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
8. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
9. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
   h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
   m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
   n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
10. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

J. Labeling And Identification
1. Install identifying labels and devices for nonmedical laboratory compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
2. Install identifying labels and devices for medical compressed-air piping systems according to NFPA 99. Use the following or similar captions and color-coding for piping products where required by NFPA 99:
   a. Medical Air: Black letters on yellow background.

b. Dental Air: Black letters on yellow-and-white diagonal stripe background.
c. Instrument Air: White letters on red background.
d. Medical Laboratory Air: Black letters on yellow-and-white checkerboard background.

K. Field Quality Control For Compressed-Air Piping In Nonmedical Laboratory Facilities
1. Perform tests and inspections of compressed-air piping in nonmedical laboratory facilities and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Piping Leak Tests for Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
b. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
c. Inspect filters and pressure regulators for proper operation.

L. Field Quality Control For Medical Compressed-Air Piping In Healthcare Facilities
1. Perform tests and inspections of medical compressed-air piping systems in healthcare facilities and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Medical Compressed-Air Testing Coordination: Perform tests, inspections, verifications, and certification of medical compressed-air piping systems concurrently with tests, inspections, and certification of medical vacuum piping and medical gas piping systems.
b. Preparation: Perform the following Installer tests according to requirements in NFPA 99 and ASSE Standard #6010:
1) Initial blowdown.
2) Initial pressure test.
3) Cross-connection test.
4) Piping purge test.
5) Standing pressure test for positive-pressure medical compressed-air piping.
6) Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
c. System Verification: Comply with requirements in NFPA 99, ASSE Standard #6020, and ASSE Standard #6030 for verification of medical compressed-air piping systems and perform the following tests and inspections:
1) Standing pressure test.
2) Individual-pressurization **OR** Individual-pressurization or pressure-differential **OR** Pressure-differential, **as directed**, cross-connection test.
3) Valve test.
4) Master and area alarm tests.
5) Piping purge test.
6) Piping particulate test.
7) Piping purity test.
8) Final tie-in test.
9) Operational pressure test.
10) Medical air purity test.
11) Verify correct labeling of equipment and components.
d. Testing Certification: Certify that specified tests, inspections, and procedures have been performed and certify report results. Include the following:
1) Inspections performed.
2) Procedures, materials, and gases used.
3) Test methods used.
4) Results of tests.
3. Remove and replace components that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00c

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 00d - VACUUM PIPING FOR LABORATORY AND HEALTHCARE FACILITIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for vacuum piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Laboratory low-vacuum piping and specialties, designated "laboratory low vacuum" operating at 12 inches mercury (40.6 kPa vacuum) **OR** 20 inches mercury (67.7 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
   b. Laboratory high-vacuum piping and specialties, designated "laboratory high vacuum" operating at 24 inches mercury (81.3 kPa vacuum) **OR** 29 inches mercury (98.2 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
   c. Medical surgical vacuum piping and specialties, designated "medical vacuum" operating at 15 inches mercury (380 mm mercury or 50.7 kPa vacuum) **OR** 20 inches mercury (510 mm mercury or 67.7 kPa vacuum) **OR** 30 inches mercury (760 mm mercury or 101.4 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
   d. Waste anesthetic gas disposal piping and specialties, designated "WAGD evacuation" operating at 14 inches mercury (355 mm mercury or 47.2 kPa vacuum) **OR** 15 inches mercury (380 mm mercury or 50.7 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
   e. Dental vacuum piping and specialties, designated "dental vacuum" operating at 10 inches mercury (255 mm mercury or 33.8 kPa vacuum) **OR** 12 inches mercury (305 mm mercury or 40.6 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
   f. Oral-evacuation piping and specialties, designated "HVE" operating at 5 inches mercury (127 mm mercury or 16.9 kPa vacuum) **OR** 8 inches mercury (203 mm mercury or 27.0 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
   g. Healthcare laboratory vacuum piping and specialties, designated "medical laboratory vacuum" operating at 12 inches mercury (40.6 kPa vacuum) **OR** 20 inches mercury (67.7 kPa vacuum) **OR** 24 inches mercury (81.3 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.

C. Definitions
1. D.I.S.S.: Diameter-index safety system.
2. HVE: High-volume (oral) evacuation.
3. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
4. WAGD: Waste anesthetic gas disposal.
5. Medical vacuum piping systems include medical vacuum, WAGD evacuation, dental vacuum, HVE, and medical laboratory vacuum piping systems.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
   a. Vacuum pipes **OR** tubes, **as directed**, and fittings.
   b. Vacuum valves and valve boxes.
   c. Medical vacuum service connections and vacuum-bottle brackets.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

4. Piping Material Certification: Signed by Installer certifying that medical vacuum piping materials comply with NFPA 99 requirements.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
6. Brazing certificates.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications:
   a. Medical Vacuum Piping Systems for Healthcare Facilities: Qualify installers according to ASSE Standard #6010.
   b. Extruded-Tee Outlet Procedure: Qualify operators according to training provided by T-DRILL Industries Inc., for making branch outlets.
   c. Pressure-Seal Joining Procedure for Copper Tubing: Qualify operators according to training provided by Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the vacuum piping testing indicated, that is a member of the Medical Gas Professional Healthcare Organization or is an NRTL, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Qualify testing personnel according to ASSE Standard #6020 for inspectors and ASSE Standard #6030 for verifiers.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain vacuum service connections of same type and from same manufacture as service connections provided for in Division 22 Section "Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities".
4. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
6. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for vacuum piping in laboratory facilities.
7. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities," for medical vacuum system materials and installation in healthcare facilities.

F. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Laboratory or Medical Vacuum Service(s): Do not interrupt laboratory or medical vacuum service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of laboratory or medical vacuum service(s).
   b. Do not proceed with interruption of laboratory or medical vacuum service(s) without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings
1. Copper Medical Gas Tube: ASTM B 819, Type L, seamless, drawn temper that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for medical gas service or according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service. Include standard color marking "OXY," "MED," "OXY/MED," "OXY/ACR," or "ACR/MED" in blue.
   a. General Requirements for Copper Fittings: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.

b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, with dimensions for brazed joints.
c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
d. Press-Type Fittings:
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.

2. Copper Water Tube: ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), seamless, drawn temper.
a. Cast-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, solder-joint pressure type.
b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type.
c. Cast-Copper-Alloy Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
d. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
e. Press-Type Fittings:
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.

3. Extruded-Tee Outlets: ASTM F 2014 procedure for making branch outlets in copper tube.
4. Memory-Metal Couplings: Cryogenic compression fitting made of ASTM F 2063, nickel-titanium, shape-memory alloy, and that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
5. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
a. PVC Pressure Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80; socket type.

B. Joining Materials
1. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
3. Threaded-Joint Tape: PTFE.
4. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness, full-face type.
5. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel.
6. Solvent Cement for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.
a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Valves
1. General Requirements for Valves: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service.
a. Exception: Factory cleaning and bagging are not required for valves for WAGD service.
2. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece body, brass or bronze.
a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
3. Bronze Check Valves: In-line pattern.
a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
b. Operation: Spring loaded.

c. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.

4. Zone Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece-body, brass or bronze ball valve with gage.
   a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
   b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
   c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
   d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
   e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
   f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
   g. Vacuum Gage: Manufacturer installed on one copper-tube extension.
5. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed steel with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with vacuum gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
   a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
   b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Satin-chrome finish steel **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
   c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.
6. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed or extruded aluminum with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with vacuum gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
   a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
   b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
   c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.
7. PVC Ball Valves: MSS SP-122, with union ends and 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating and suitable for vacuum service.
8. PVC Butterfly Valves: Lug type with lever handle and 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating and suitable for vacuum service.
9. PVC Check Valves: Ball-, in-line-, piston-, or swing-check design with flanged or union ends and 70-psig (480-kPa) **OR** 100-psig (690-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working-pressure rating and suitable for vacuum service.
10. Safety Valves: Bronze-body, ASME-construction, pressure-relief type with settings to match system requirements.
11. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket where wall mounting is indicated.

D. Medical Vacuum Service Connections
   1. Connection Devices: For specific medical vacuum service listed. Include roughing-in assemblies, finishing assemblies, and cover plates. Individual cover plates are not required if service connection is in multiple unit or assembly with cover plate. Furnish recessed-type units made for concealed piping unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Roughing-in Assembly:
         1) Steel outlet box for recessed mounting and concealed piping.
         2) Brass-body inlet block.
         3) Seals that will prevent vacuum leakage.
         4) ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper outlet tube brazed to valve with service marking and tube-end dust cap.
      b. Finishing Assembly:
         1) Brass housing with primary check valve.
         2) Seals that will prevent vacuum leakage.
         3) Cover plate with gas-service label.

c. Quick-Coupler Service Connections: Suction inlets for medical vacuum **OR** medical vacuum and WAGD evacuation **OR** WAGD evacuation, **as directed**, service outlets with noninterchangeable keyed indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment, and with positive-locking ring that retains equipment stem in valve during use.

d. D.I.S.S. Service Connections: Suction inlets, complying with CGA V-5, with threaded indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment.
   1) Medical Vacuum Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1220.
   2) WAGD Evacuation Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 2220.

e. Vacuum Bottle Brackets: One piece, with pattern and finish matching corresponding service cover plate.

f. Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent, color-coded, identifying label matching corresponding service.

E. Medical Vacuum Piping Alarm Systems

1. Panels for medical vacuum piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical compressed-air and medical gas piping systems.
2. Components: Designed for continuous service and to operate on power supplied from 120-V **OR** 240-V **OR** 277-V, **as directed**, ac power source to alarm panels and with connections for low-voltage wiring to remote sensing devices. Include step-down transformers if required.
3. Vacuum Switches or Transducer Sensors: Continuous line monitoring with electrical connections for alarm system.
   a. Vacuum Operating Range: 0- to 30-in. Hg (0- to 101-kPa vacuum).
4. General Requirements for Medical Vacuum Alarm Panels: Factory wired with audible and color-coded visible signals to indicate specified functions.
   a. Mounting: Exposed, surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, installation.
   b. Enclosures: Fabricated from minimum 0.047-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick steel or minimum 0.05-inch- (1.27-mm-) thick aluminum, with knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
5. Master Alarm Panels: With separate trouble alarm signals, vacuum gages, and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum pump is in operation.
      2) WAGD Evacuation: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
      3) Dental Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 6-in. Hg (20 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.
      4) HVE: 4-in. Hg (13 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.
      5) Medical Laboratory Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 10-in. Hg (34 kPa vacuum).
6. Anesthetizing-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
      2) WAGD Evacuation: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
7. Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
      1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
8. Dental Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Dental Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 6-in. Hg (20 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.
      2) HVE: 4-in. Hg (13 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.

9. Medical Laboratory Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
    a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
        1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).

F. Computer Interface Cabinet
1. Description: Wall-mounting, welded-steel, control cabinet with gasketed door, mounting brackets, grounding device, and white-enamel finish for connection of medical vacuum piping system alarms to facility computer. Include factory-installed signal circuit boards, power transformer, circuit breaker, wiring terminal board, and internal wiring capable of interfacing 20 alarm signals.

G. Flexible Pipe Connectors
1. Description: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
    a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
    b. End Connections: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.

H. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

I. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
    a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
    a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

J. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
    a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
    b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
    c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

K. Nitrogen
1. Description: Comply with USP 28 - NF 23 for oil-free dry nitrogen.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Cleaning of Medical Gas Tubing: If manufacturer-cleaned and -capped fittings or tubing are not available or if precleaned fittings or tubing must be recleaned because of exposure, have supplier or separate agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction perform the following procedures:
   a. Clean medical gas tube and fittings, valves, gages, and other components of oil, grease, and other readily oxidizable materials as required for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1, "Cleaning Equipment for Oxygen Service."
   b. Wash medical gas tubing and components in hot, alkaline-cleaner-water solution of sodium carbonate or trisodium phosphate in proportion of 1 lb (0.453 kg) of chemical to 3 gal. (11.3 L) of water.
      1) Scrub to ensure complete cleaning.
      2) Rinse with clean, hot water to remove cleaning solution.

B. Piping Applications
1. Connect new copper tubing to existing tubing with memory-metal couplings.
2. Nonhealthcare Laboratory Low Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
   a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
3. Nonhealthcare Laboratory High Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
   a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
4. Medical Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
   a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
   b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
5. WAGD Evacuation Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
   a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
   b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
6. Dental Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
   a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
7. HVE Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:

a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
c. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Schedule 40 PVC pipe, Schedule 40 PVC fittings **OR** Schedule 80 PVC pipe, Schedule 80 PVC fittings, **as directed**, and solvent-cemented joints.
d. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
e. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Schedule 40 PVC pipe, Schedule 40 PVC fittings **OR** Schedule 80 PVC pipe, Schedule 80 PVC fittings, **as directed**, and solvent-cemented joints.

8. Medical Laboratory Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
   a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
   b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
   c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
9. Drain Piping: Use one of the following piping materials:
   a. Copper water tube, cast- or wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** press-type fittings, and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. PVC pipe, PVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

C. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of vacuum piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Comply with ASSE Standard #6010 for installation of vacuum piping.
3. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
6. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
7. Install vacuum and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
8. Install nipples, unions, and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than piping pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
9. Install eccentric reducers, if available, where vacuum piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
10. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
11. Install thermometer and vacuum gage on inlet piping to each vacuum producer and on each receiver and separator, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
12. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
13. Install piping free of sags and bends.
14. Install fittings for changes in direction and for branch connections. Extruded-tee branch outlets in copper tubing may be made where specified.
15. Install medical vacuum piping to medical vacuum service connections specified in this Section and to equipment specified in other Sections requiring medical vacuum service.

16. Install seismic restraints on vacuum piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
17. Install medical vacuum service connections recessed in walls. Attach roughing-in assembly to substrate; attach finishing assembly to roughing-in assembly.
18. Install medical vacuum bottle bracket adjacent to each wall-mounted medical vacuum service connection suction inlet.
19. Connect vacuum piping to vacuum producers and to equipment requiring vacuum service.
20. Install unions, in copper vacuum tubing adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
21. Install unions, in PVC vacuum piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
22. Install flanges, in PVC vacuum piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

D. Valve Applications
1. Valves for Copper Vacuum Tubing: Use copper alloy ball and bronze check types.
2. Valves for PVC Vacuum Piping:
   a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Use copper alloy ball and bronze **OR** PVC ball, butterfly, and, **as directed**, check types.
   b. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use PVC butterfly and check types.

E. Valve Installation
1. Install shutoff valve at each connection to and from vacuum equipment and specialties.
2. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of vacuum flow to vacuum-producing equipment.
3. Install valve boxes recessed in wall and anchored to substrate. Single boxes may be used for multiple valves that serve same area or function.
4. Install zone valves and gages in valve boxes. Rotate valves to angle that prevents closure of cover when valve is in closed position.
5. Install safety valves on vacuum receivers, where required by NFPA 99, and where recommended by specialty manufacturers.
6. Install automatic drain valves on equipment, specialties, and piping with drain connection. Run drain piping to floor drain, so contents spill over or into it.
7. Install flexible pipe connectors in suction inlet piping to each vacuum producer.

F. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside of cleaned tubing and fittings before assembly.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Threaded Joints: Apply appropriate tape to external pipe threads.
5. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter. Continuously purge joint with oil-free dry nitrogen during brazing.
6. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to tube end. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828.
7. Extruded-Tee Outlets: Form branches in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014, with tools recommended by procedure manufacture.
8. Flanged Joints:
   a. Copper Tubing: Install flange on copper tubes. Use pipe-flange gasket between flanges. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9 for bolting procedure.
   b. PVC Piping: Install PVC flange on PVC pipes. Use pipe-flange gasket between flanges. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9 for bolting procedure.
9. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper and copper-alloy fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
10. Memory-Metal Coupling Joints: Join new copper tube to existing tube according to procedures developed by fitting manufacturer for installation of memory-metal coupling joints.
11. Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join PVC pipe and fittings according to the following:

a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2672.

G. Medical Vacuum Piping Alarm System Installation
1. Panels for medical vacuum piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical compressed-air piping systems and medical gas piping systems.
2. Install medical vacuum piping system alarm system components in locations required by and according to NFPA 99.
3. Install medical vacuum piping system area and master alarm panels where indicated.
4. Install computer interface cabinet with connection to medical vacuum piping alarm system and to facility computer.

H. Sleeve Installation
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.
   a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

   OR

   Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
4. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
   a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
   b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum board partitions.
   c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
      1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

I. Escutcheon Installation
1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
   a. New Piping:
      1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
      2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
      3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One-piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.

4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

b. Existing Piping:
1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
2) Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

J. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
2. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
3. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel, clevis hangers.
b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable, roller hangers.
4. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for trapeze hangers.
5. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
6. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
7. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
8. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.

m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.

9. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
10. Install hangers **OR** vinyl-coated hangers, **as directed**, for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 30 inches (760 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    b. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 40 to DN 50): 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    c. NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80): 42 inches (1150 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    d. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1220 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    e. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 54 inches (1350 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
11. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches (1220 mm).

K. Labeling And Identification
1. Install identifying labels and devices for laboratory vacuum piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
2. Install identifying labels and devices for medical vacuum piping systems according to NFPA 99. Use the following or similar captions and color-coding for piping products where required by NFPA 99:
    a. Medical Vacuum: Black letters on white background.
    b. WAGD: White letters on violet background.
    c. Dental Vacuum: Black boxed letters on white-and-black diagonal stripe background.
    d. HVE: Black boxed letters on white-and-black diagonal stripe background.
    e. Medical Laboratory Vacuum: Black boxed letters on white-and-black checkerboard background.

L. Field Quality Control For Laboratory Facility Nonmedical Vacuum Piping
1. Perform tests and inspections of vacuum piping in nonmedical laboratory facilities.
2. Tests and Inspections:
    a. Piping Leak Tests for Vacuum Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill vacuum piping with oil-free, dry nitrogen. Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
        1) Test Pressure for Copper Tubing: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
        2) Test Pressure for PVC Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa), **as directed**.
    b. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    c. Inspect filters for proper operation.
3. Prepare test reports.

M. Field Quality Control For Healthcare Facility Medical Vacuum Piping
1. Perform tests and inspections of medical vacuum piping systems in healthcare facilities and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
    a. Medical Vacuum Testing Coordination: Perform tests, inspections, verifications, and certification of medical vacuum piping systems concurrently with tests, inspections, and certification of medical compressed-air piping and medical gas piping systems.
    b. Perform the following Installer tests according to requirements in NFPA 99 and ASSE Standard #6010:
        1) Initial blow down.
        2) Initial pressure test.
        3) Cross-connection test.
        4) Piping purge test.

5) Standing pressure test for vacuum systems.
6) Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

c. System Verification: Comply with requirements in NFPA 99, ASSE Standard #6020, and ASSE Standard #6030 for verification of medical vacuum piping systems and perform the following tests and inspections:
1) Standing pressure test.
2) Individual-pressurization **OR** Pressure-differential, **as directed**, cross-connection test.
3) Valve test.
4) Master and area alarm tests.
5) Piping purge test.
6) Final tie-in test.
7) Operational vacuum test.
8) Verify correct labeling of equipment and components.

d. Testing Certification: Certify that specified tests, inspections, and procedures have been performed and certify report results. Include the following:
1) Inspections performed.
2) Procedures, materials, and gases used.
3) Test methods used.
4) Results of tests.

3. Remove and replace components that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

N. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain medical vacuum alarm systems.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00d

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 00e - GAS PIPING FOR LABORATORY AND HEALTHCARE FACILITIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Carbon dioxide piping and specialties designated "medical carbon dioxide" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
   b. Helium piping, designated "medical helium" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
   c. Nitrogen piping and specialties designated "medical nitrogen" operating at 160 to 185 psig (1100 to 1275 kPa) **OR** higher than 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
   d. Nitrous oxide piping and specialties designated "medical nitrous oxide" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
   e. Oxygen piping and specialties designated "medical oxygen" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).

C. Definitions
1. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
2. D.I.S.S.: Diameter-index safety system.
3. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
4. Medical gas piping systems include medical carbon dioxide, medical helium, medical nitrogen, medical nitrous oxide, and medical oxygen nonflammable gas for healthcare facility patient care or for healthcare laboratory applications.
5. Specialty Gas: Gas, other than medical gas, for nonmedical laboratory facility applications.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Gas manifolds, Bulk gas storage tanks, Gas manifolds and bulk gas storage tanks, and piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
   a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For the following:
   a. Tubes and fittings.
   b. Valves and valve boxes.
   c. Medical gas service connections.
   d. Electrical service connections.
   e. Patient service consoles.
   f. Medical nitrogen pressure control panels.
   g. Ceiling columns. Include integral service connections.
   h. Ceiling hose assemblies. Include integral service connections.
   i. Gas manifolds.
   j. Bulk gas storage tanks. Include rated capacities and operating weights.
   k. Medical gas alarm system components.
   l. Gas cylinder storage racks.
2. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

3. Piping Material Certification: Signed by Installer certifying that medical gas piping materials comply with NFPA 99 requirements.
4. Brazing certificates.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that gas manifolds and bulk gas storage tanks, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment". Include the following:
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
6. Certificates of Shop Inspection and Data Report for Bulk Gas Storage Tanks: As required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications:
   a. Medical Gas Piping Systems for Healthcare Facilities: Qualify installers according to ASSE Standard #6010 for installers.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the medical gas piping testing indicated, that is a member of the Medical Gas Professional Healthcare Organization or is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Qualify testing personnel according to ASSE Standard #6020 for inspectors and ASSE Standard #6030 for verifiers.
3. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications"; or AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
5. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label bulk medical gas storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
6. NFPA Compliance:
   a. Comply with NFPA 50, "Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites," for bulk oxygen storage tanks.
   b. Comply with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities," for medical gas piping system materials and installation.
7. CGA Compliance: Comply with CGA G-8.1, "Nitrous Oxide Systems at Consumer Sites," for bulk nitrous oxide storage tanks.
8. UL Compliance:
   a. Comply with UL 498, "Attachment Plugs and Receptacles," for electrical service connections.
   b. Comply with UL 544, "Medical and Dental Equipment," for medical gas specialties.

G. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Specialty and Medical Gas Service(s): Do not interrupt specialty or medical gas service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of specialty and medical gas service(s).
   b. Do not proceed with interruption of specialty and medical gas service(s) without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings
1. Copper Medical Gas Tube: ASTM B 819, Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, seamless, drawn temper that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for medical gas service or according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service. Include standard color marking "OXY," "MED," "OXY/MED," "OXY/ACR," or "ACR/MED" in green for Type K tube and blue for Type L tube.
a. General Requirements for Copper Fittings: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, with dimensions for brazed joints.
c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
d. Press-Type Fittings:
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
e. Memory-Metal Couplings: Cryogenic compression fitting made of ASTM F 2063, nickel-titanium, shape-memory-alloy, and that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
2. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
a. PVC Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 **OR** ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, **as directed**; socket type.

B. Joining Materials
1. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys.
2. Threaded-Joint Tape: PTFE.
3. Solvent Cement for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.

C. Valves
1. General Requirements for Valves: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service.
2. Ball Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece body, brass or bronze.
a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
3. Check Valves: In-line pattern, bronze.
a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
b. Operation: Spring loaded.
c. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
4. Zone Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece-body, brass or bronze ball valve with gage.
a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
g. Pressure Gage: Manufacturer-installed on one copper-tube extension.
5. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed steel with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.

b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Satin-chrome finish steel **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.

OR

Zone Valve Boxes: Formed or extruded aluminum with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.

6. Emergency Oxygen Connections: Low-pressure oxygen inlet assembly for connection to building oxygen piping systems.
a. Enclosure: Weatherproof hinged locking cover with caption similar to "Emergency Low-Pressure Gaseous Oxygen Inlet."
b. Inlet: Manufacturer-installed, NPS 1 or NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 or DN 32), ASTM B 819, copper tubing with NPS 1 (DN 25) minimum ball valve and plugged inlet.
c. Safety Valve: Bronze-body, pressure relief valve set at 75 or 80 psig (520 or 550 kPa).
d. Instrumentation: Pressure gage.
7. Safety Valves: Bronze-body, ASME-construction, poppet, pressure-relief type with settings to match system requirements.
8. Pressure Regulators: Bronze **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, body and trim; spring-loaded, diaphragm-operated, relieving type; manual pressure-setting adjustment; rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum inlet pressure; and capable of controlling delivered gas pressure within 0.5 psig for each 10-psig (5.0 kPa for each 100-kPa) inlet pressure.

D. Medical Gas Service Connections
1. General Requirements for Medical Gas Service Connections: For specific medical gas pressure and suction service listed. Include roughing-in assemblies, finishing assemblies, and cover plates. Individual cover plates are not required if service connection is in multiple unit or assembly with cover plate. Furnish recessed-type units made for concealed piping unless otherwise indicated.
a. Roughing-in Assembly:
1) Steel outlet box for recessed mounting and concealed piping.
2) Brass-body outlet block with secondary check valve that will prevent gas flow when primary valve is removed. Suction inlets to be without secondary valve.
3) Double seals that will prevent gas leakage.
4) ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper outlet tube brazed to valve with service marking and tube-end dust cap.
b. Finishing Assembly:
1) Brass housing with primary check valve.
2) Double seals that will prevent gas leakage.
3) Cover plate with gas-service label.
c. Quick-Coupler Service Connections: Pressure outlets for carbon dioxide, nitrous xide, oxygen, and **Medical gas** or as directed by the Owner service connections with noninterchangeable keyed indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment, and with positive-locking ring that retains equipment stem in valve during use.
d. D.I.S.S. Service Connections: Pressure outlets, complying with CGA V-5, with threaded indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment.
1) Medical Carbon Dioxide Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1080.

2) Medical Helium Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1060.
3) Medical Nitrogen Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1120.
4) Medical Nitrous Oxide Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1040.
5) Medical Oxygen Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1240.

e. Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent, color-coded, identifying label matching corresponding service.

E. Electrical Service Connections
1. Power Outlets: UL 498, Hospital Grade, 125-V receptacles; color selected. Include the following configurations complying with NEMA WD 1:
   a. L5-20R, locking type, 20 A, single or duplex.
   b. L5-20R, isolated ground, locking type, 20 A, single or duplex.
   c. Explosion proof, 20 A, 2 pole, 3 wire, single; suitable for Class I, Group C hazardous location and interchangeable with receptacles used in nonhazardous areas; flush mounted.
   d. 5-20R, straight blade, 20 A, duplex.
   e. 5-20R, isolated ground, straight blade, 20 A, duplex.
2. Electrical Accessory Outlets: Provide the following configured receptacles in color selected:
   a. Patient Equipment Ground Jack: Single pole, 30 A.
   b. Patient Monitoring: Single, 5 and 37 pin.
3. Wall Outlet Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent identifying label.

F. Patient Service Consoles
1. General Requirements for Patient Service Consoles: Recessed- or semirecessed-mounting wall units with medical gas service connections as specified in "Medical Gas Service Connections" Article and electrical service connections as specified in "Electrical Service Connections" Article, **as directed**. Include labels indicating services, and the following:
   a. Recessed- or semirecessed-mounting steel console box or mounting bracket.
   b. Concealed supplies.
   c. Cover Plate: One piece, anodized aluminum **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, and permanent identifying label with service connections for the following:
      1) Medical Air: Quick-coupler pressure outlet.
      2) Medical Oxygen: Quick-coupler pressure outlet.
      3) Medical Vacuum: Quick-coupler suction inlet.
      4) Medical vacuum bottle bracket.
      5) L5-20R, locking type, 20 A, single **OR** duplex, **as directed**.

G. Medical Nitrogen Pressure Control Panels
1. Description: Steel box and support brackets for recessed roughing-in with stainless-steel or anodized-aluminum cover plate with printed operating instructions. Include manifold assembly consisting of inlet supply valve, inlet supply pressure gage, line-pressure control regulator, outlet supply pressure gage, D.I.S.S. service connection, and piping outlet for remote service connection.
   a. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
   b. Line-Pressure Control Regulator: Self-relieving diaphragm type with precision manual adjustment.
   c. Pressure Gages: 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) range.
   d. Service Connection: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1120, nitrogen outlet.
   e. Before final assembly, provide temporary dust shield and U-tube for testing.
   f. Label cover plate "Nitrogen Pressure Control."

H. Ceiling Columns
1. General Requirements for Ceiling Columns: Ceiling-mounting units with medical gas service connections as specified in "Medical Gas Service Connections" Article and electrical service

connections as specified in "Electrical Service Connections" Article, **as directed**. Include labels indicating services, and the following:

a. Ceiling-Mounting Plate: Manufacturer's standard plate or roughing-in assembly.
b. Exposed Surfaces: Minimum 0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm-) thick stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 directional polish.
c. Servicing: Include access panels or means of removing shroud.
d. Blank cover plates for cutouts not having service connections.
e. ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper-tube extensions for connection to medical gas systems.
f. Service Connections: Type and number indicated.
g. Dust Covers: For medical gas service connection.

2. Rigid Ceiling Columns: 44-inch- (1120-mm-) long, rectangular fixed column section with 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, double intravenous medication hooks. Include 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel bottom plate with the following service connections:
   a. Instrument Air: One D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet(s).
   b. Medical Air: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
   c. Medical Carbon Dioxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
   d. Medical Helium: One D.I.S.S. No. 1060, pressure outlet(s).
   e. Medical Nitrogen: One D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet(s).
   f. Medical Nitrous Oxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
   g. Medical Oxygen: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlets.
   h. Medical Vacuum: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlets.
   i. Vacuum Bottle Brackets: Two.
   j. WAGD Evacuation: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet(s).
   k. Power: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single receptacles.
   l. Patient Equipment: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, ground-jack, single-pole, 30-A receptacles.
3. Retractable Ceiling Columns: Manually adjustable using release and lock handles capable of locking column in all positions from fully retracted to fully extended; 15-inch- (380-mm-) long, rectangular counterbalanced telescoping section with 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, double intravenous medication hooks; and 36-inch- (915-mm-) long, fixed column section. Include 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel bottom plate with the following service connections:
   a. Instrument Air: One D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet(s).
   b. Medical Air: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
   c. Medical Carbon Dioxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
   d. Medical Helium: One D.I.S.S. No. 1060, pressure outlet(s).
   e. Medical Nitrogen: One D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet(s).
   f. Medical Nitrous Oxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
   g. Medical Oxygen: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlets.
   h. Medical Vacuum: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlets.
   i. Vacuum Bottle Brackets: Two.
   j. WAGD Evacuation: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet(s).
   k. Power: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single receptacles.
   l. Patient Equipment: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, ground-jack, single-pole, 30-A receptacles.

I. Ceiling Hose Assemblies
1. Ceiling Hose Assemblies, General: Ceiling-mounting units with medical gas service connections as specified in "Medical Gas Service Connections" Article and electrical service connections as specified in "Electrical Service Connections" Article, **as directed**. Include labels indicating services, and the following:
   a. Ceiling-Mounting Plate: Manufacturer's standard plate or roughing-in assembly.

b. Exposed Surfaces: Minimum 0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm-) thick stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 directional polish.
c. Servicing: Include access panels or means of removing shroud.
d. Blank cover plates for cutouts not having service connections.
e. ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper-tube extensions for connection to medical gas systems.
f. Service Connections: Type and number indicated.
g. Dust Covers: For medical gas service connection.

2. Hose-Reel Service Assemblies: Individual, concealed, retractable hose-reel units with stainless-steel face plates, steel mounting boxes, factory- or field-fabricated mounting brackets, and color-coded service hoses with adjustable stops and service connections matching hoses. Include 15 feet (4.5 m) minimum of conductive, CR, 1/4- or 5/16-inch- (6.4- or 7.9-mm-) ID, medical gas hoses rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, and the following service connections:
   a. Instrument Air Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet.
   b. Medical Air Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   c. Medical Carbon Dioxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   d. Medical Nitrogen Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet.
   e. Medical Nitrous Oxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   f. Medical Oxygen Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   g. Medical Vacuum Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
   h. WAGD Evacuation Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
   i. Power: L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single, power receptacle.
3. Fixed Hose Service Assemblies: Individual, concealed hose connection with stainless-steel face plates, steel mounting boxes, factory- or field-fabricated mounting brackets, and color-coded service hoses with retractor device and service connections matching hoses. Include 72 inches (1830 mm) of conductive, CR, 1/4- or 5/16-inch- (6.4- or 7.9-mm-), ID, medical gas hoses rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, and the following service hose connections:
   a. Instrument Air Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet.
   b. Medical Air Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   c. Medical Carbon Dioxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   d. Medical Nitrogen Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet.
   e. Medical Nitrous Oxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   f. Medical Oxygen Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
   g. Medical Vacuum Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
   h. WAGD Evacuation Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
   i. Power: L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single, power receptacle.

J. Gas Manifolds
1. Simplex Specialty Gas Manifolds:
   a. Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
   b. Manifold and Header: Nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure. Include cylinder bank header with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
   c. **Specialty gas** as directed by the Owner Manifold: For **Number cylinders** as directed by the Owner capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure, with electric heater or orifice design that will prevent freezing during high demand.
   d. Specialty Gas Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of medical gas cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.

e. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying specialty gas type and system operating pressure.
f. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and header **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.

2. Duplex Specialty Gas Manifolds:
   a. Central Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
   b. Manifold and Headers: Duplex, nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated, divided into two equal banks. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure. Include cylinder bank headers with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
   c. Operation: Automatic, pressure-switch-activated changeover from one cylinder bank to the other when first bank becomes exhausted, without line-pressure fluctuation or resetting of regulators and without supply interruption by shutoff of either cylinder bank header.
   d. **Specialty gas** as directed by the Owner Manifold: For **Number cylinders** as directed by the Owner capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure, with electric heater or orifice design that will prevent freezing during high demand.
   e. Specialty Gas Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of medical gas cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.
   f. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying specialty gas type and system operating pressure.
   g. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and headers **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.

3. Medical Gas Manifolds: Comply with NFPA 99, Ch. 5, for high-pressure medical gas cylinders.
   a. Central Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, pressure changeover switch, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
   b. Manifold and Headers: Duplex, nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated, divided into two equal banks. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure, except nitrous oxide manifolds may be designed for 800 psig (5520 kPa) and carbon dioxide manifolds may be designed for 1500 psig (10.35 MPa). Include cylinder bank headers with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
   c. Operation: Automatic, pressure-switch-activated changeover from one cylinder bank to the other when first bank becomes exhausted, without line-pressure fluctuation or resetting of regulators and without supply interruption by shutoff of either cylinder bank header.
   d. Medical Carbon Dioxide Manifolds: For 2 cylinders and 250-cfh (1.97-L/s) **OR** 4 cylinders and 500-cfh (3.94-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure.
   e. Medical Helium Manifolds: For 2 cylinders and 250-cfh (1.97-L/s) **OR** 4 cylinders and 500-cfh (3.94-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure.
   f. Medical Nitrous Oxide Manifolds: For 8 cylinders and 1333-cfh (10.5-L/s) **OR** 12 cylinders and 2000-cfh (15.7-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure, with electric heater or orifice design that will prevent freezing during high demand.
   g. Medical Nitrogen Manifolds: For 8 cylinders and 2000-cfh (15.7-L/s) **OR** 12 cylinders and 3000-cfh (23.6-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 180-psig (1240-kPa) **OR** higher than 200-psig (1380-kPa), **as directed**, line pressure.
   h. Medical Oxygen Manifolds: For 12 cylinders and 1500-cfh (11.8-L/s) **OR** 20 cylinders 2500-cfh (19.7-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa), **as directed**, line pressure.
   i. Medical Gas Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of medical gas cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.
   j. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying medical gas type and system operating pressure.

k. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and headers **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.

K. Bulk Gas Storage Tanks
1. Bulk Specialty Gas Storage Tanks:
2. Bulk Medical Gas Storage Tanks:
   a. Bulk Medical Gas Storage Tank Systems: Bulk storage tank with connections for alarm system, continuous supply, and reserve supply that will operate only during emergencies, complying with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities."
   b. Controls: Include actuating switch for alarm system connection and means for automatic actuating of reserve supply.
   c. Bulk Medical Gas Storage Tanks: Vertical mounting, double-wall construction with inner vessel fabricated according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for unfired pressure vessels and suitable for medical gas service. Include insulation and vacuum seal between walls. Fabricate outer shell from carbon steel with factory-applied manufacturer's standard protective paint finish suitable for exterior installation. Include the following features, specialties, and components:
      1) Safety Valves: ASME construction with pressure setting to correspond to tank working pressure and as required for component or system being protected.
      2) Pressure Gages: For tank pressure and facility service line pressure.
      3) Contents Gage: High- and low-level indicator with electric signal circuit connection.
      4) Drain Valves: For piping, inner vessel, and outer shell.
      5) Fill Assembly: Fill connection, piping, valves, relief devices, and controls.
      6) Facility Service Assembly: Piping, valves, relief devices, vaporizer, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, line shutoff valve or check valve, and reserve supply connection for connection to building service piping.
      7) Include permanent label showing medical gas type, storage tank capacity, tank pressure rating, vaporizer capacity, and operating instructions.
      8) Liquid Oxygen Storage Tank: Nickel-steel or stainless-steel inner vessel with 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure. Include electric **OR** steam **OR** ambient vaporizer, **as directed**.
      9) Liquid Nitrous Oxide Storage Tank: Steel-alloy inner vessel with 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure. Include electric **OR** steam, **as directed**, vaporizer.
   d. Oxygen Reserve Supply: Manifold header for high-pressure cylinders, fabricated from copper-tube or brass pipe and fittings and suitable for pressures up to 4000 psig (27.6 MPa). Include header inlet connections complying with CGA V-1, with individual inlet check valves, header shutoff valve, header pressure regulator, line shutoff valve or check valve, pressure gage, and inlet connections for number of cylinders indicated.
   e. Nitrous Oxide Reserve Supply: Manifold header for high-pressure cylinders, fabricated from copper-tube or brass pipe and fittings and suitable for pressures up to 4000 psig (27.6 MPa). Include header inlet connections complying with CGA V-1, with individual inlet check valves, header shutoff valve, header pressure regulator, line shutoff valve or check valve, pressure gage, inlet connections for number of cylinders indicated, and electric heater.

L. Medical Gas Piping Alarm Systems
1. Panels for medical gas piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical compressed-air and medical vacuum piping systems.
2. Components: Designed for continuous service and to operate on power supplied from 120 **OR** 240 **OR** 277, **as directed**,-V ac power source to alarm panels and with connections for low-voltage wiring to remote sensing devices. Include step-down transformers if required.
3. Pressure Switches or Pressure Transducer Sensors: Continuous line monitoring with electrical connections for alarm system.
   a. Low-Pressure Operating Range: 0- to 100-psig (0- to 690-kPa).
   b. High-Pressure Operating Range: Up to 250-psig (1725-kPa).

4. General Requirements for Medical Gas Alarm Panels: Factory wired with audible and color-coded visible signals to indicate specified functions.
   a. Mounting: Exposed, surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, installation.
   b. Enclosures: Fabricated from minimum 0.047-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick steel or minimum 0.05-inch- (1.27-mm-) thick aluminum, with knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
5. Master Alarm Panels: With separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Medical Carbon Dioxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
      2) Medical Helium: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
      3) Medical Nitrogen: Pressure drops below 145 psig (1000 kPa) or rises above 200 psig (1380 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
      4) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for bulk oxygen storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, and reserve level is low.
      5) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for nitrous oxide manifold system): Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
      6) Medical Oxygen (for bulk oxygen storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, reserve level is low, and reserve pressure is low.
      7) Medical Oxygen (for oxygen manifold system): Pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
6. Anesthetizing-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Medical Carbon Dioxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
      2) Medical Helium: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
      3) Medical Nitrous Oxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
      4) Medical Nitrogen: Pressure drops below 145 psig (1000 kPa) or rises above 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      5) Medical Oxygen: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
7. Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure and vacuum gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Oxygen: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
8. Dental Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure and vacuum gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Medical Nitrogen: Pressure drops below 145 psig (1000 kPa) or rises above 200 psig (1380 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
      2) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for bulk nitrous oxide storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, and reserve level is low.

3) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for nitrous oxide manifold system): Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
4) Medical Oxygen (for bulk oxygen storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, reserve level is low, and reserve pressure is low.
5) Medical Oxygen (for nitrous oxide manifold system): Pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.

9. Medical Laboratory Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure and vacuum gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
   a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      1) Medical Carbon Dioxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
      2) Medical Helium: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
      3) Medical Oxygen: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).

M. Computer Interface Cabinet
1. Description: Wall-mounting, welded-steel, control cabinet with gasketed door, mounting brackets, grounding device, and white-enamel finish for connection of medical gas system alarms to facility computer. Include factory-installed signal circuit boards, power transformer, circuit breaker, wiring terminal board, and internal wiring capable of interfacing 20, **as directed**, alarm signals.

N. Gas Cylinder Storage Racks
1. Wall Storage Racks: Fabricate racks with chain restraints for upright cylinders as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured wall racks.
2. Freestanding Storage Racks: Fabricate racks as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured storage racks.

O. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
   a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

P. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

Q. Grout

1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
   a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
   b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
   c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

R. Nitrogen
1. Description: Comply with USP 28 - NF 23 for oil-free dry nitrogen.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling and for underground warning tapes.

B. Piping Applications
1. Nonhealthcare, Specialty Gas Piping: Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** press-type fittings and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
2. Nonhealthcare, Specialty Gas Piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Smaller: Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** press-type fittings and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
3. Nonhealthcare, Specialty Gas Piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Type K, copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** press-type fittings and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
4. Medical Gas Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
5. Medical Gas Piping Except Nitrogen: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
6. Medical Nitrogen Piping: Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
7. Medical Nitrogen Piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Smaller: Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
8. Medical Nitrogen Piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Type K, copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
9. Protective Conduit: Use PVC pipe, PVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

C. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of gas piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Comply with ASSE Standard #6010 for installation of medical gas piping.
3. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
6. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
7. Install nipples, unions, and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
8. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
9. Install piping free of sags and bends.
10. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

11. Install medical gas piping to medical gas service connections specified in this Section, to medical gas service connections in equipment specified in this Section, and to equipment specified in other Sections requiring medical gas service.
12. Install exterior, buried medical gas piping in protective conduit fabricated with PVC pipe and fittings. Do not extend conduit through foundation wall.
13. Install seismic restraints on gas piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
14. Install medical gas service connections recessed in walls. Attach roughing-in assembly to substrate; attach finishing assembly to roughing-in assembly.
15. Connect gas piping to gas sources and to gas outlets and equipment requiring gas service.
16. Install unions, in copper tubing adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and specialty.

D. Valve Installation
1. Install shutoff valve at each connection to gas laboratory and healthcare equipment and specialties.
2. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of gas flow from laboratory and healthcare gas supplies.
3. Install valve boxes recessed in wall and anchored to substrate. Single boxes may be used for multiple valves that serve same area or function.
4. Install zone valves and gages in valve boxes. Rotate valves to angle that prevents closure of cover when valve is in closed position.
5. Install pressure regulators on gas piping where reduced pressure is required.
6. Install emergency oxygen connection with pressure relief valve and full-size discharge piping to outside, with check valve downstream from pressure relief valve and with ball valve and check valve in supply main from bulk oxygen storage tank.

E. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of PVC pipes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside of cleaned tubing and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Apply appropriate tape to external pipe threads.
4. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter. Continuously purge joint with oil-free, dry nitrogen during brazing.
5. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and press-type fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
6. Memory-Metal Coupling Joints: Join new copper tube to existing tube according to procedures developed by fitting manufacturer for installation of memory-metal coupling joints.
7. Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join PVC pipe and fittings according to the following:
    a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2672.

F. Gas Service Component Installation
1. Assemble patient service console with service connections. Install with supplies concealed, in walls. Attach console box or mounting bracket to substrate.
2. Install nitrogen pressure-control panels in walls. Attach to substrate.
3. Assemble ceiling columns and install anchored to substrate. Provide structural steel, hanger rods, anchors, and fasteners in addition to components furnished with specialties necessary to fabricate supports.
4. Assemble ceiling assemblies and install anchored to substrate. Provide structural steel, hanger rods, anchors, and fasteners in addition to components furnished with specialties necessary to fabricate supports.
5. Install gas manifolds on concrete base, **as directed**, anchored to substrate.
6. Install gas cylinders and connect to manifold piping.

7. Install gas manifolds with seismic restraints as indicated.
8. Install bulk gas storage tanks and reserve supply tanks level on concrete bases. Set tanks and connect gas piping to tanks according to applicable requirements in NFPA 50 for bulk oxygen storage systems, **as directed**. Install tanks level and plumb, firmly anchored to concrete bases; maintain NFPA 50 and tank manufacturer's recommended clearances. Orient tanks so controls and devices are accessible for servicing.
9. Install bulk gas storage tanks and reserve supply tanks with seismic restraints.

G. Medical Gas Piping Alarm System Installation
1. Install medical gas alarm system components in locations required by and according to NFPA 99.
2. Install medical gas area and master alarm panels where indicated.
3. Install computer interface cabinet with connection to medical gas piping alarm system and facility computer.

H. Sleeve Installation
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.
   a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

   OR

   Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
4. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
   a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
   b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum board partitions.
   c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
      1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

I. Escutcheon Installation
1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
   a. New Piping:
      1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
      2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
      3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.

4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

b. Existing Piping:
1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
2) Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

J. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel, clevis hangers.
b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable, roller hangers.
5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for trapeze hangers.
6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
7. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
8. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
9. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.

k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.

10. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

K. Labeling And Identification
1. Install identifying labels and devices for specialty gas piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
2. Install identifying labels and devices for healthcare medical gas piping systems according to NFPA 99. Use the following or similar captions and color-coding for piping products where required by NFPA 99:
a. Carbon Dioxide: Black or white letters on gray background.
b. Helium: White letters on brown background.
c. Nitrogen: White letters on black background.
d. Nitrous Oxide: White letters on blue background.
e. Oxygen: White letters on green background or green letters on white background.

L. Field Quality Control For Laboratory Facility Specialty Gas
1. Perform field tests and inspections of specialty gas piping for nonhealthcare laboratory facilities and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Piping Leak Tests for Specialty Gas Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill specialty gas piping with oil-free, dry nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
b. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
c. Inspect specialty gas regulators for proper operation.

M. Field Quality Control For Healthcare Facility Medical Gas
1. Perform tests and inspections of medical gas piping systems in healthcare facilities and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Medical Gas Piping Testing Coordination: Perform tests, inspections, verifications, and certification of medical gas piping systems concurrently with tests, inspections, and certification of medical compressed-air piping and medical vacuum piping systems.
b. Preparation: Perform the following Installer tests according to requirements in NFPA 99 and ASSE Standard #6010:
1) Initial blow down.
2) Initial pressure test.
3) Cross-connection test.
4) Piping purge test.
5) Standing pressure test for positive pressure medical gas piping.
6) Standing pressure test for vacuum systems.
7) Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
c. System Verification: Comply with requirements in NFPA 99, ASSE Standard #6020, and ASSE Standard #6030 for verification of medical gas piping systems and perform the following tests and inspections:
1) Standing pressure test.
2) Individual-pressurization **OR** Pressure-differential, **as directed**, cross-connection test.
3) Valve test.
4) Master and area alarm tests.
5) Piping purge test.

6) Piping particulate test.
7) Piping purity test.
8) Final tie-in test.
9) Operational pressure test.
10) Medical gas concentration test.
11) Medical air purity test.
12) Verify correct labeling of equipment and components.
13) Verify the following source equipment:
    a) Medical gas supply sources.

d. Testing Certification: Certify that specified tests, inspections, and procedures have been performed and certify report results. Include the following:
1) Inspections performed.
2) Procedures, materials, and gases used.
3) Test methods used.
4) Results of tests.

3. Remove and replace components that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00e

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 00f - STEAM AND CONDENSATE PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steam and condensate piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following for LP and HP steam and condensate piping:
   a. Pipe and fittings.
   b. Strainers.
   c. Flash tanks.
   d. Safety valves.
   e. Pressure-reducing valves.
   f. Steam traps.
   g. Thermostatic air vents and vacuum breakers.
   h. Steam and condensate meters.

C. Definitions
1. HP Systems: High-pressure piping operating at more than 15 psig (104 kPa) as required by ASME B31.1.
2. LP Systems: Low-pressure piping operating at 15 psig (104 kPa) or less as required by ASME B31.9.
3. RTRF: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) fittings.
4. RTRP: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) pipe.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressures and temperatures:
   a. HP Steam Piping: <**Insert psig (kPa)**.>
   b. LP Steam Piping: <**Insert psig (kPa).**>
   c. Condensate Piping: <**Insert psig (kPa)**> at 250 deg F (121 deg C).
   d. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
   e. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.
   f. Air-Vent and Vacuum-Breaker Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.
   g. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of the following:
   a. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
   b. Pressure-reducing and safety valve.
   c. Steam trap.
   d. Air vent and vacuum breaker.
   e. Flash tank.
   f. Meter.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail, 1/4 inch equals 1 foot (1:50) scale, flash tank assemblies and fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, pipe, multiple pipes, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops and their attachment to the building structure. Detail locations of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

3. Welding certificates.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For valves, safety valves, pressure-reducing valves, steam traps, air vents, vacuum breakers, and meters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to the following:
   a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
   b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
3. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **AND/OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping", **as directed**, for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp flash tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Copper Tube And Fittings
1. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), **as directed**.
2. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).
3. Wrought-Copper Fittings and Unions: ASME B16.22.

B. Steel Pipe And Fittings
1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, plain ends, Type, Grade, and Schedule as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
2. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125, 150, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
3. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3; Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
4. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
5. Cast-Iron Threaded Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.
6. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
7. Wrought-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
   a. Material Group: 1.1.
   b. End Connections: Butt welding.
   c. Facings: Raised face.
8. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel of same Type, Grade, and Schedule as pipe in which installed.
9. Stainless-Steel Bellows, Flexible Connectors:
   a. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforced, protective jacket.
   b. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
   c. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
   d. CWP Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa).
   e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

C. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings

1. RTRP: ASTM D 2996 filament-wound pipe with tapered bell and spigot ends for adhesive joints.
2. RTRF: Compression or spray-up/contact molded fittings of same material, pressure class, and joining method as pipe.
3. Flanges: ASTM D 4024 full-face gaskets suitable for the service, minimum 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, 60-70 durometer. ASTM A 307, Grade B, hex head bolts with washers.
4. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.

D. Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
4. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
5. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 (AWS D10.12M) for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
6. Welding Materials: Comply with Section II, Part C, of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and for chemical analysis of pipe being welded.

E. Dielectric Fittings
1. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
3. Dielectric Unions:
   a. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
4. Dielectric Flanges:
   a. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
5. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
   a. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
   b. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

F. Valves
1. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
2. Stop-Check Valves:
   a. Body and Bonnet: Malleable iron.
   b. End Connections: Flanged.
   c. Disc: Cylindrical with removable liner and machined seat.
   d. Stem: Brass alloy.
   e. Operator: Outside screw and yoke with cast-iron handwheel.
   f. Packing: Polytetrafluoroethylene-impregnated packing with two-piece packing gland assembly.
   g. Pressure Class: 250.

G. Strainers
1. Y-Pattern Strainers:

a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B cast iron, with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
b. End Connections: Threaded ends for strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for strainers NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
c. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20 mesh strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
d. Tapped blowoff plug.
e. CWP Rating: 250-psig (1725-kPa) working steam pressure.

2. Basket Strainers:
a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B cast iron, with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
b. End Connections: Threaded ends for strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for strainers NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
c. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20 mesh strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
d. CWP Rating: 250-psig (1725-kPa) working steam pressure.

H. Flash Tanks
1. Shop or factory fabricated of welded steel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, for 150-psig (1035-kPa) rating; and bearing ASME label. Fabricate with tappings for low-pressure steam and condensate outlets, high-pressure condensate inlet, air vent, safety valve, and legs.

I. Safety Valves
1. Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**, Safety Valves:
a. Disc Material: Forged copper alloy.
b. End Connections: Threaded inlet and outlet.
c. Spring: Fully enclosed steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff, factory set and sealed.
d. Pressure Class: 250.
e. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and outlet with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
f. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

2. Cast-Iron Safety Valves:
a. Disc Material: Forged copper alloy with bronze nozzle.
b. End Connections: Raised-face flanged inlet and threaded or flanged outlet connections.
c. Spring: Fully enclosed cadmium-plated steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff, factory set and sealed.
d. Pressure Class: 250.
e. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet, outlet, and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
f. Exhaust Head: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
g. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

J. Pressure-Reducing Valves
1. Size, Capacity, and Pressure Rating: Factory set for inlet and outlet pressures indicated.
2. Description: Pilot-actuated, diaphragm type, with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff.
3. Body: Cast iron.
4. End Connections: Threaded connections for valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and flanged connections for valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
5. Trim: Hardened stainless steel.
6. Head and Seat: Replaceable, main head stem guide fitted with flushing and pressure-arresting device cover over pilot diaphragm.
7. Gaskets: Non-asbestos materials.

K. Steam Traps
   1. Thermostatic Traps:
      a. Body: Bronze angle-pattern body with integral union tailpiece and screw-in cap.
      b. Trap Type: Balanced-pressure.
      c. Bellows: Stainless steel or monel.
      d. Head and Seat: Replaceable, hardened stainless steel.
      e. Pressure Class: 125.
   2. Thermodynamic Traps:
      a. Body: Stainless steel with screw-in cap.
      b. End Connections: Threaded.
      c. Disc and Seat: Stainless steel.
      d. Maximum Operating Pressure: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
   3. Float and Thermostatic Traps:
      a. Body and Bolted Cap: ASTM A 126, cast iron.
      b. End Connections: Threaded.
      c. Float Mechanism: Replaceable, stainless steel.
      d. Head and Seat: Hardened stainless steel.
      e. Trap Type: Balanced pressure.
      f. Thermostatic Bellows: Stainless steel or monel.
      g. Thermostatic air vent capable of withstanding 45 deg F (25 deg C) of superheat and resisting water hammer without sustaining damage.
      h. Vacuum Breaker: Thermostatic with phosphor bronze bellows, and stainless steel cage, valve, and seat.
      i. Maximum Operating Pressure: 125 psig (860 kPa).
   4. Inverted Bucket Traps:
      a. Body and Cap: Cast iron.
      b. End Connections: Threaded.
      c. Head and Seat: Stainless steel.
      d. Valve Retainer, Lever, and Guide Pin Assembly: Stainless steel.
      e. Bucket: Brass or stainless steel.
      f. Strainer: Integral stainless-steel inlet strainer within the trap body.
      g. Air Vent: Stainless-steel thermostatic vent.
      h. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).

L. Thermostatic Air Vents And Vacuum Breakers
   1. Thermostatic Air Vents:
      a. Body: Cast iron, bronze or stainless steel.
      b. End Connections: Threaded.
      c. Float, Valve, and Seat: Stainless steel.
      d. Thermostatic Element: Phosphor bronze bellows in a stainless-steel cage.
      e. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (861 kPa) **OR** 300 psig (2068 kPa), **as directed**.
      f. Maximum Temperature Rating: 350 deg F (177 deg C).
   2. Vacuum Breakers:
      a. Body: Cast iron, bronze, or stainless steel.
      b. End Connections: Threaded.
      c. Sealing Ball, Retainer, Spring, and Screen: Stainless steel.
      d. O-ring Seal: EPR.
      e. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (861 kPa) **OR** 300 psig (2068 kPa), **as directed**.
      f. Maximum Temperature Rating: 350 deg F (177 deg C).

M. Steam Meters
   1. Meters shall have a microprocessor to display totalizer flow, flow rate, temperature, pressure, time, and date; alarms for high and low flow rate and temperature.
      a. Computer shall have 4 to 20-mA or 2 to 10 volt output for temperature, pressure, and contact closure for flow increments.
      b. Independent timers to store four peak flow rates and total flow.

c. Interface compatible with central workstation described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
d. Microprocessor Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.

2. Sensor:
   a. Venturi, of stainless-steel **OR** carbon-steel, **as directed**, construction, for insertion in pipeline between flanges. At least 10:1 turndown with plus or minus 1 percent accuracy over full-flow range.
   b. Vortex type with stainless-steel wetted parts and wafer **OR** flange, **as directed**, connections; and with a piezoelectric sensor removable and serviceable without shutting down the process. At least 10:1 turndown with plus or minus 1 percent accuracy over full-flow range.
   c. Spring-loaded, variable-area flowmeter type; density compensated with stainless-steel wetted parts and wafer **OR** flange, **as directed**, connections. At least 10:1 turndown with plus or minus 2 percent accuracy over full-flow range.

N. Condensate Meters
1. Body: Cast iron, bronze, or brass.
2. Turbine: Copper, brass, or stainless steel.
3. Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).
4. Totalizer: Meters shall have a microprocessor to display flow, flow rate, time, and date; alarms for high and low flow rate, pressure, and temperature.
   a. Computer shall have 4- to 20-mA or 2- to 10-volt output for temperature, pressure, and contact closure for flow increments.
   b. Independent timers to store four peak flow rates and total flow.
   c. Interface compatible with central workstation specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
   d. Microprocessor Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
5. Pressure Rating: Atmospheric.
6. Maximum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

1.3 EXECUTION

A. LP Steam Piping Applications
1. LP Steam Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
2. LP Steam Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12 (DN 65 through DN 300): Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
3. LP Steam Piping, NPS 14 through NPS 18 (DN 350 through DN 450): Schedule 30, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
4. LP Steam Piping, NPS 20 (DN 500) and Larger: Schedule 20, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
5. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
6. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
7. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:

a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

8. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

B. HP Steam Piping Applications
1. HP Steam Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
2. HP Steam Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12 (DN 65 through DN 300): Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
3. HP Steam Piping, NPS 14 through NPS 18 (DN 350 through DN 450): Schedule 30, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
4. HP Steam Piping, NPS 20 (DN 500) and Larger: Schedule 20, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
5. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
6. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
7. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
8. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

C. Ancillary Piping Applications
1. Makeup-water piping installed above grade shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
   a. Drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings, and solvent welded joints.
2. Makeup-Water Piping Installed below Grade and within Slabs: Annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
3. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
4. Air-Vent Piping:
   a. Inlet: Same as service where installed.
   b. Outlet: Type K (A) annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
5. Vacuum-Breaker Piping: Outlet, same as service where installed.
6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed.

D. Valve Applications

1. Install shutoff duty valves at branch connections to steam supply mains, at steam supply connections to equipment, and at the outlet of steam traps.
2. Install safety valves on pressure-reducing stations and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

E. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Use indicated piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
5. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
6. Install piping free of sags and bends.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
8. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
9. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
10. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
11. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) full port-ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
12. Install steam supply piping at a minimum uniform grade of 0.2 percent downward in direction of steam flow.
13. Install condensate return piping at a minimum uniform grade of 0.4 percent downward in direction of condensate flow.
14. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side down.
15. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed, **as directed**, tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to top of main pipe.
16. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
17. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
18. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
19. Install strainers on supply side of control valves, pressure-reducing valves, traps, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and full port ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).
20. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Hvac Piping".
21. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
22. Install drip legs at low points and natural drainage points such as ends of mains, bottoms of risers, and ahead of pressure regulators, and control valves.
    a. On straight runs with no natural drainage points, install drip legs at intervals not exceeding 300 feet (90 m).
    b. Size drip legs same size as main. In steam mains NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, drip leg size can be reduced, but to no less than NPS 4 (DN 100).
23. Flash Tank:

a. Pitch condensate piping down toward flash tank.
b. If more than one condensate pipe discharges into flash tank, install a check valve in each line.
c. Install thermostatic air vent at tank top.
d. Install safety valve at tank top.
e. Install full-port ball valve, and swing check valve on condensate outlet.
f. Install inverted bucket or float and thermostatic trap at low-pressure condensate outlet, sized for three times the calculated heat load.
g. Install pressure gage on low-pressure steam outlet according to Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

F. Steam-Trap Installation
1. Install steam traps in accessible locations as close as possible to connected equipment.
2. Install full-port ball valve, strainer, and union upstream from trap; install union, check valve, and full-port ball valve downstream from trap unless otherwise indicated.

G. Pressure-Reducing Valve Installation
1. Install pressure-reducing valves in accessible location for maintenance and inspection.
2. Install bypass piping around pressure-reducing valves, with globe valve equal in size to area of pressure-reducing valve seat ring, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install gate valves on both sides of pressure-reducing valves.
4. Install unions or flanges on both sides of pressure-reducing valves having threaded- or flanged-end connections respectively.
5. Install pressure gages on low-pressure side of pressure-reducing valves after the bypass connection according to Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".
6. Install strainers upstream for pressure-reducing valve.
7. Install safety valve downstream from pressure-reducing valve station.

H. Steam Or Condensate Meter Installation
1. Install meters with lengths of straight pipe upstream and downstream according to steam meter manufacturer's instructions.
2. Provide data acquisition wiring. Refer to Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".

I. Safety Valve Installation
1. Install safety valves according to ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," **as directed**
2. Pipe safety-valve discharge without valves to atmosphere outside the building.
3. Install drip-pan elbow fitting adjacent to safety valve and pipe drain connection to nearest floor drain.
4. Install exhaust head with drain to waste, on vents equal to or larger than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).

J. Hangers And Supports
1. Install hangers and supports according to Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Comply with requirements below for maximum spacing.
2. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
3. Install the following pipe attachments:
a. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
b. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
c. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
d. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
4. Install hangers with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).

b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
c. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
d. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 13 feet (4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
e. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
f. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 15 feet (4.6 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
g. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 17 feet (5.2 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
h. NPS 6 (DN 150): Maximum span, 21 feet (6.4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
i. NPS 8 (DN 200): Maximum span, 24 feet (7.3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
j. NPS 10 (DN 250): Maximum span, 26 feet (8 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (19 mm).
k. NPS 12 (DN 300): Maximum span, 30 feet (9.1 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (22 mm).
l. NPS 14 (DN 350): Maximum span, 32 feet (9.8 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
m. NPS 16 (DN 400): Maximum span, 35 feet (10.7 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
n. NPS 18 (DN 450): Maximum span, 37 feet (11.3 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
o. NPS 20 (DN 500): Maximum span, 39 feet (11.9 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).

5. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 4 feet (1.2 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
   b. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
   c. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
   d. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   e. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   f. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   g. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
6. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.
7. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.

K. Pipe Joint Construction
1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube ends. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12 (AWS D10.12M), using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
9. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Terminal Equipment Connections

1. Size for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
2. Install traps and control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
3. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
4. Install vacuum breakers downstream from control valve, close to coil inlet connection.
5. Install a drip leg at coil outlet.

M. Field Quality Control
1. Prepare steam and condensate piping according to ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **AND/OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," **as directed,** and as follows:
   a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
   b. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
   c. Flush system with clean water. Clean strainers.
   d. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
2. Perform the following tests on steam and condensate piping:
   a. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
   b. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength.
   c. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
3. Prepare written report of testing.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00f

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 00g - REFRIGERANT PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for refrigerant piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
   a. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig (793 kPa).
   b. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig (1551 kPa).
   c. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig (1551 kPa).
2. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
   a. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig (1586 kPa).
   b. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig (2620 kPa).
   c. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig (2620 kPa).
3. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
   a. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig (2068 kPa).
   b. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig (3689 kPa).
   c. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig (3689 kPa).

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
   a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
   b. Solenoid valves.
   c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
   d. Filter dryers.
   e. Strainers.
   f. Pressure-regulating valves.
2. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
   a. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot (1:50).
   b. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

2. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
3. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

F. Product Storage And Handling
1. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Copper Tube And Fittings
1. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L (ASTM B 88M, Type A or B) **OR** ASTM B 280, Type ACR, **as directed**.
2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
3. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
6. Flexible Connectors:
   a. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
   b. End Connections: Socket ends.
   c. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
   d. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig (3450 kPa).
   e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

B. Steel Pipe And Fittings
1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; Type, Grade, and wall thickness as selected in Part 3 piping applications articles.
2. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.
3. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.
4. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
5. Flanged Unions:
   a. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 (DN 25 to DN 40) and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3 (DN 50 to DN 80). Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
   b. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
   c. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
   d. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.
   e. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
   f. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig (2760 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg F (165 deg C).
6. Flexible Connectors:
   a. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket
   b. End Connections:
      1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
   c. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
   d. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig (3450 kPa).

e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

C. Valves And Specialties
1. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
   a. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
   b. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
   c. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
   d. Seat: Nylon.
   e. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
   f. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
2. Packed-Angle Valves:
   a. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
   b. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
   c. Operator: Rising stem.
   d. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
   e. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
   f. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
   g. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
   h. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
3. Check Valves:
   a. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
   b. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
   c. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
   d. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
   e. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
   f. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
   g. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig (3.4 kPa).
   h. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
   i. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
4. Service Valves:
   a. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
   b. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
   c. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
   d. End Connections: Copper spring.
   e. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
5. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   a. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
   b. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
   c. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
   d. End Connections: Threaded.
   e. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter, and 24 **OR** 115 **OR** 208, **as directed**,-V ac coil.
   f. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
   h. Manual operator.
6. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   a. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
   b. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
   c. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
   d. End Connections: Threaded.
   e. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
   f. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
7. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.

a. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
b. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
c. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
d. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
e. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).
f. Superheat: Adjustable **OR** Nonadjustable, **as directed**.
g. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
h. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
i. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig (4820 kPa) **OR** 450 psig (3100 kPa), **as directed**.

8. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   a. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
   b. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
   c. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
   d. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
   e. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
   f. Equalizer: Internal **OR** External, **as directed**.
   g. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter, and 24 **OR** 115 **OR** 208, **as directed**,-V ac coil.
   h. End Connections: Socket.
   i. Set Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
   j. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig (34 kPa).
   k. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
   l. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
9. Straight-Type Strainers:
   a. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
   b. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
   c. End Connections: Socket or flare.
   d. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
   e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
10. Angle-Type Strainers:
    a. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
    b. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
    c. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
    d. End Connections: Socket or flare.
    e. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    f. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
11. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
    a. Body: Forged brass.
    b. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
    c. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
    d. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
    e. End Connections: Socket or flare.
    f. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
12. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
    a. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
    b. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
    c. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina **OR** charcoal, **as directed**.
    d. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
    e. End Connections: Socket.
    f. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
    g. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig (14 kPa).

h. Rated Flow: as directed by the Owner.
i. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
j. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

13. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
    a. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
    b. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
    c. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina **OR** charcoal, **as directed**.
    d. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
    e. End Connections: Socket.
    f. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
    g. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig (14 kPa).
    h. Rated Flow: as directed by the Owner.
    i. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    j. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
14. Mufflers:
    a. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
    b. End Connections: Socket or flare.
    c. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    d. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
15. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.
    a. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
    b. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
    c. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
    d. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
    e. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
    f. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
16. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.
    a. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
    b. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
    c. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    d. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).

D. Refrigerants
1. ASHRAE 34, R-134a: Tetrafluoroethane.
2. ASHRAE 34, R-407C: Difluoromethane/Pentafluoroethane/1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane.
3. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Piping Applications For Refrigerant R-134a
1. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed,** joints.
   OR
   Suction Lines NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller **OR** NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100), **as directed**, for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed,** joints.
2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed,** joints.
   OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**:

a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed,** joints.

OR

NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

3. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

OR

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

OR

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

OR

NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

B. Piping Applications For Refrigerant R-407c

1. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings

OR

Suction Lines NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller **OR** NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100), **as directed**, for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**:

a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

OR

NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

c. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

OR

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B**)**, **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

OR

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered joints.

OR

NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

c. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

C. Piping Applications For Refrigerant R-410a

1. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

OR

Suction Lines NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90) and Smaller **OR** NPS 2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 50 to DN 90), **as directed**, for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed,** drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

OR

Suction Lines NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed** Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**:

a. NPS 5/8 (DN 18) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 (DN 20 to DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.

d. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 40 to DN 50): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

OR

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**, NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

3. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   OR
   Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   OR
   Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
   OR
   Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.
   OR
   Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:
   a. NPS 5/8 (DN 18) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   b. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 (DN 20 to DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
   c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
   d. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 40 to DN 50): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

   OR
   Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

D. Valve And Specialty Applications
   1. Install diaphragm packless **OR** packed-angle, **as directed**, valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
   2. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
   3. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
   4. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless **OR** packed-angle, **as directed**, valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
   5. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
   6. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
   7. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
      a. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
      b. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
      c. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
   8. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
   9. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
   10. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
      a. Solenoid valves.
      b. Thermostatic expansion valves.

c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
d. Compressor.

11. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor, **as directed**.
12. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
13. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

E. Piping Installation

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
2. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
3. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
9. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
10. Refer to Division 23 Section(s) "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" AND "Sequence Of Operations For Hvac Controls" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
11. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
12. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors And Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
13. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
14. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
15. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
    a. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
    b. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
    c. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
    d. Liquid lines may be installed level.
16. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
17. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
    a. Shot blast the interior of piping.
    b. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
    c. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
    d. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
    e. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.

f. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.

18. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.
19. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
20. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
21. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.
22. Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and methods.
23. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".

F. Pipe Joint Construction

1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
4. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
   a. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
   b. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.
8. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.
9. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

G. Hangers And Supports

1. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
2. Install the following pipe attachments:
   a. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
   b. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
   c. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
   d. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
   e. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
3. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
   b. NPS 5/8 (DN 18): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
   c. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 72 inches (1800 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).

d. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
e. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
f. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
g. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 108 inches (2700 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
h. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
i. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).

4. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
   b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
   c. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
   d. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
5. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

H. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
   b. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
   c. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
      1) Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
      2) System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
      3) Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
      4) Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

I. System Charging
1. Charge system using the following procedures:
   a. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
   b. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers (67 Pa). If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
   c. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig (14 kPa).
   d. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

J. Adjusting
1. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
2. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
3. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
4. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
   a. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
   b. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
   c. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
   d. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
   e. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
5. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00g

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 11 16 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
22 11 16 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 11 16 00	22 13 16 00	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
22 11 16 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
22 11 16 00	23 21 13 23d	Hydronic Piping

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 19 00 - ELECTRONIC AIR CLEANERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electronic air cleaners. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Electronic air cleaners.
b. Side-service housings.
c. Front- and rear-access filter frames.
d. Filter gages.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
3. Shop Drawings: For each electronic air cleaner. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
a. Show filter assembly, dimensions, materials, and methods of assembly of components.
b. Include setting drawings, templates, and requirements for installing anchor bolts and anchorages.
c. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Field quality-control reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and housing to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. ASHRAE Compliance:
a. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
b. Comply with ASHRAE 52.1 for arrestance and with ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.
3. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
4. Comply with ARI 850.
5. Comply with UL 867.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Electronic Air Cleaners
1. Description: Factory-fabricated electronic air cleaner operating by electrostatic precipitation principles.

2. Prefilter Media: Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, alternate layers of galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, flat and herringbone-crimp screen.
3. Prefilter: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Particulate Air Filtration" for flat **OR** pleated **OR** ring, **as directed**, panel. Size and airflow capacity shall match those of electronic air cleaners.
   a. Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
   c. Arrestance: 85 percent when tested according to ASHRAE 52.1.
   d. MERV: 8 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.
4. Final Filter: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Particulate Air Filtration" for supported bag **OR** unsupported bag **OR** rigid-cell box **OR** V-bank cell **OR** self-supported pocket, **as directed**. Size and airflow capacity shall match those of gas-phase filters.
   a. Depth: 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm) **OR** 24 inches (600 mm),**as directed**.
   b. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
   c. Arrestance: 85 percent when tested according to ASHRAE 52.1.
   d. MERV: 13 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.
5. Collection Cells: Aluminum, independently supported and nested.
   a. Ionizing Section: Alternately spaced grounded struts and charged ionizing wires.
   b. Collecting Section: Alternately grounded and charged plates, with insulators located out of airstream.
6. Power Pack: Self-contained, prewired rectifying unit to convert 120 **OR** 208/240 **OR** 480, **as directed**,-V ac, single-phase, 60-Hz power to approximately 12,000-V dc for ionizer and 6000-V dc for collector; include overload protection, on-off switch, pilot light showing operating status, and access door interlock.
7. Safety Accessories: Manual-reset safety switches and warning lights for filter plenum access doors, signal lights and safety switching upstream and downstream from unit within duct, and enameled high-voltage warning signs.
8. Collection Section Cleaning System:
   a. Detergent Reservoir Tank: 30 gal. (110 L) **OR** 55 gal. (200 L), **as directed**, with pump, motor, solenoid valve, level sensor, backflow preventer, wye-strainer, and ball valve.
   b. Detergent.
   c. Dispensing System: Motor-driven oscillating copper manifolds with brass spray nozzles on each side of the collector.
9. Mist Eliminators: Upstream **OR** Upstream and downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
10. Controls: Programmable logic controller in remotely mounted NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure; with integral time clock and manual override.
    a. Contacts for enable-disable control by building automation system.
11. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Fan Section
   1. Fan: Forward curved, belt driven.
   2. Motor:
      a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
      b. Type: Permanent-split capacitor with SCR for speed adjustment **OR** Electronically commutated motor, **as directed**.
      c. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
      d. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled, and explosion proof **OR** dust-ignition proof, **as directed**.
      e. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron **OR** Cast aluminum **OR** Rolled steel, **as directed**.
      f. Motor Bearings: Sealed ball.
      g. Unusual Service Conditions:
         1) Ambient Temperature: as directed by the Owner .

2) Altitude: as directed by the Owner above sea level.
3) High humidity.

h. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
i. NEMA Design: as directed by the Owner .
j. Service Factor: as directed by the Owner .
k. Motor Speed: Single speed **OR** Multispeed, **as directed**.
1) Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.

C. Cabinet
1. Description: 16-gage galvanized steel with epoxy powder finish for suspended, wall, frame, or duct mounting.

D. Side-Service Housings
1. Description: Factory-assembled, side-service housings, with bottom drain, **as directed**, constructed of galvanized steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, and configured for stacking, with flanges to connect to duct or casing system.
2. Access Doors: Hinged with continuous **OR** Continuous, **as directed**, gaskets on perimeter and positive-locking devices.
3. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing gasket material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
4. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Front- And Rear-Access Filter Frames
1. Framing System: Galvanized-steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, framing members with access for either upstream (front) or downstream (rear) filter servicing, cut to size and prepunched for assembly into modules with bottom drain, **as directed**, and configured for stacking. Vertically support filters to prevent deflection of horizontal members without interfering with either filter installation or operation.
2. Prefilters: Incorporate a separate track with spring clips, **as directed**, removable from front or back, **as directed**.
3. Final Filters: Integral tracks to accommodate particulate **OR** gas-phase, **as directed**, disposable filters.
4. Sealing: Factory-installed, positive-sealing device for each row of filters to ensure seal between gasketed filter elements to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
5. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

F. Filter Gages
1. Diaphragm type, with dial and pointer in metal case, vent valves, black figures on white background, and front recalibration adjustment.
a. Diameter: 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
b. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5-Inch wg (125 Pa) or Less: 0- to 0.5-inch wg (0 to 125 Pa).
c. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5- to 1-Inch wg (125 to 250 Pa) or Less: 0- to 1.0-inch wg (0 to 250 Pa).
d. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 1.0- to 2.0-Inch wg (250 to 500 Pa) or Less: 0- to 2.0-inch wg (0 to 500 Pa).
e. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 2.0- to 3.0-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) or Less: 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa).
f. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 3.0- to 4.0-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) or Less: 0- to 4.0-inch wg (0 to 1000 Pa).
2. Manometer-Type Filter Gage: Molded plastic, with epoxy-coated aluminum scale, logarithmic-curve tube gage, with integral leveling indicator, graduated to read from 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa), and accurate within 3 percent of full-scale range.
3. Accessories: Static-pressure tips, tubing, gage connections, and mounting bracket.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.
2. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
3. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
4. Operate electronic air cleaners for 24 hours as part of startup before filters are put into operation.
5. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Install filter gages on filter banks with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in an accessible position. Adjust and level inclined gages.
6. Install and connect water-supply and drainage piping.
7. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

B. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections: Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.
3. Air filter will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

C. Cleaning
1. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new prefilter and final-filter media.

END OF SECTION 22 11 19 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 11 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
22 11 19 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
22 11 19 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 11 19 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
22 11 19 00	22 11 16 00f	Steam And Condensate Piping
22 11 19 00	22 05 23 00b	Water Distribution
22 11 19 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 23 13 - WATER DISTRIBUTION PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for domestic water pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
c. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
d. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

C. Definitions
1. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
2. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
3. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

G. Coordination
1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. In-Line, Sealless Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
2. Pump Construction:
a. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
b. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
c. Impeller: Plastic.
d. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Horizontally Mounted, In-Line, Separately Coupled Centrifugal Pumps
   1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontal.
   2. Pump Construction:
      a. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 (DN 50) pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) pipe connections.
      b. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
      c. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
      d. Coupling: Flexible.
      e. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
      f. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
      g. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
   3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently **OR** rigidly, **as directed**, mounted to pump casing.

C. Horizontally Mounted, In-Line, Close-Coupled Centrifugal Pumps
   1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.
   2. Pump Construction:
      a. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 (DN 50) pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) pipe connections.
      b. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
      c. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
      d. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
      e. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
      f. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
   3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.

D. Vertically Mounted, In-Line, Close-Coupled Centrifugal Pumps
   1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.
   2. Pump Construction:
      a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 (DN 50) pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) pipe connections. Include pump manufacturer's base attachment for mounting pump on concrete base, **as directed**.
      b. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
      c. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
      d. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
      e. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
      f. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.
   3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and rigidly mounted to pump casing.

E. Motors

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
   a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
   b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.

F. Controls
1. Pressure Switches: Electric, adjustable for control of water-supply pump.
   a. Type: Water-immersion pressure sensor, for installation in piping.
   b. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
   c. Operation of Pump: On or off.
   d. Transformer: Provide if required.
   e. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
   f. Settings: Start pump at as directed by the Owner and stop pump at as directed by the Owner .
2. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
   a. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
   b. Range: 50 to 125 deg F (10 to 52 deg C) **OR** 65 to 200 deg F (18 to 93 deg C) **OR** 100 to 240 deg F (38 to 116 deg C), **as directed**.
   c. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
   d. Operation of Pump: On or off.
   e. Transformer: Provide if required.
   f. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
   g. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F (41 deg C) **OR** 110 deg F (43 deg C) **OR** 115 deg F (46 deg C), **as directed**, and stop pump at 120 deg F (49 deg C) **OR** 125 deg F (52 deg C), **as directed**.
3. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
   a. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
   b. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 suitable for wall mounting.
   c. Operation of Pump: On or off.
   d. Transformer: Provide if required.
   e. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
   f. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.
4. Time-Delay Relays: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump between water heater and connected hot-water storage tank.
   a. Type: Adjustable time-delay relay.
   b. Range: Up to five minutes.
   c. Setting: Five minutes.
   d. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
   e. Operation of Pump: On or off.
   f. Transformer: Provide if required.
   g. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
   h. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Limit pump operation to periods of burner operation plus maximum five minutes after the burner stops.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

B. Pump Installation
1. Comply with HI 1.4.

2. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled and close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
4. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.
5. Pump Mounting: Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
    a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
    b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
    c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
    d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers **OR** spring hangers with vertical-limit stop, **as directed**, of size required to support pump weight.
    a. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment". Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
    b. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
7. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.
8. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
9. Install timers on wall in engineer's office, **as directed**.
10. Install time-delay relays in piping between water heaters and hot-water storage tanks.

C. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
    a. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
        1) Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
        2) Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
        3) Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
        4) Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
    b. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties".
    c. Install pressure gage and snubber, **as directed**, at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber, **as directed**, at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
4. Comply with Division 22 for electrical connections, and wiring methods.
5. Connect pressure switches, thermostats, time-delay relays, and timers to pumps that they control.
6. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

D. Identification
   1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for identification of pumps.

E. Startup Service
   1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform **OR** Perform, **as directed**, startup service.
      a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      b. Check piping connections for tightness.
      c. Clean strainers on suction piping.
      d. Set pressure switches, thermostats, timers, and time-delay relays for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
      e. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
         1) Verify bearing lubrication.
         2) Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
         3) Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
      f. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
      g. Start motor.
      h. Open discharge valve slowly.
      i. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
      j. Adjust timer settings.

F. Adjusting
   1. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Adjust initial temperature set points.
   3. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 23 13a - PACKAGED BOOSTER PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for packaged booster pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Simplex, constant-speed booster pumps.
b. Multiplex, constant-speed booster pumps.
c. Simplex, variable-speed booster pumps.
d. Multiplex, variable-speed booster pumps.

C. Definitions
1. VFC: Variable-frequency controller(s).

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Booster pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
a. The term "withstand" means "the booster pump will remain in place without separation of any parts from the booster pump when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the booster pump will be fully operational after the seismic event."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components and profiles **OR** Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories, **as directed**.
2. Shop Drawings: For booster pumps. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For booster pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For booster pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9 for piping.
3. UL Compliance for Packaged Pumping Systems:
a. UL 508, "Industrial Control Equipment."

b. UL 508A, "Industrial Control Panels."
c. UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps."
d. UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment."

4. Booster pumps shall be listed and labeled as packaged pumping systems by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Retain protective coatings and flange's protective covers during storage.

H. Coordination
1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Simplex, Constant-Speed Booster Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pump, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
2. Pump:
a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **s directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
e. Seal: Mechanical.
f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.
3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings, and directly mounted to pump casing. Select motor that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
4. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.
5. Valves:
a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.
b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.
c. Check Valve NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Silent or swing type in pump discharge piping.
d. Check Valve NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in pump discharge piping.
e. Control Valve: Adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting, pressure-reducing type in pump discharge piping.
f. Control Valve: Combination adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting pressure-reducing-and-check type in pump discharge piping.
g. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump discharge piping.
6. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
7. Hydropneumatic Tank: Precharged, ASME-construction, **as directed**, diaphragm or bladder tank made of materials complying with NSF 61.
8. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for single-pump, constant-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
a. Control Logic: Electromechanical system with switches, relays **OR** Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, **as directed**, and other devices in the controller.

b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, general-purpose, Class A, full-voltage, combination-magnetic type with undervoltage release feature, motor-circuit-protector-type disconnect, and short-circuit protective device.
   1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
c. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, solid-state, reduced-voltage type.
   1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
d. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
e. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
f. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
g. Pump Operation: Current- or pressure- sensing method.
   1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
h. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
i. Light: Running light for pump.
j. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
k. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.
l. High-suction-pressure cutout.
m. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
n. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
o. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:
   1) On-off status of pump.
   2) Alarm status.

9. Base: Structural steel.

B. Multiplex, Constant-Speed Booster Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pumps, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
2. Pumps:
   a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
   b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
   c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
   d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
   e. Seal: Mechanical.
   f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.

   OR

   Pumps:
   a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, frame-mounted, separately coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump. Include back-pullout design, **as directed**.
   b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
   c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
   d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
   e. Seal: Mechanical.
   f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
   g. Coupling: Flexible, with metal guard.

   OR

   Pumps:

a. Type: In line, single stage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
e. Seal: Mechanical.
f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.

OR

Pumps:

a. Type: Vertical, multistage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, multistage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
b. Casing: Cast-iron or steel base and stainless-steel chamber.
c. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
e. Seal: Mechanical.
f. Bearing: Water-lubricated sleeve type.

OR

Pumps:

a. Type: Vertical, can, as defined in HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3 for in-line, barrel or can, lineshaft, vertical pump.
b. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
c. Bowls: Epoxy-coated cast iron **OR** Cast iron, **as directed**.
d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
e. Seals: Mechanical and stuffing-box types.
f. Bearings: Water-lubricated bushing type.

3. Motors: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings. Select motors that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
4. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.
5. Valves:
   a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping.
   b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping and in inlet and outlet headers, **as directed**.
   c. Check Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Silent or swing type in each pump's discharge piping.
   d. Check Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
   e. Control Valves: Adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting, pressure-reducing type in each pump's discharge piping.
   f. Control Valves: Combination adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting pressure-reducing-and-check type in each pump's discharge piping.
   g. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump's discharge header piping.
6. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
7. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for multiple-pump, constant-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
   a. Control Logic: Electromechanical system with switches, relays **OR** Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, **as directed**, and other devices in the controller.
   b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, general-purpose, Class A, full-voltage, combination-magnetic type with undervoltage release feature, motor-circuit-protector-type disconnect, and short-circuit protective device.

1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.

c. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, solid-state, reduced-voltage type.
1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.

d. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.

e. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.

f. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch for each pump in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
1) Duplex, Automatic, Alternating Starter: Switches lead pump to lag main pump and to two-pump operation.
2) Triplex, Sequence (Lead-Lag-Lag) Starter: Switches lead pump to one lag main pump and to three-pump operation.

g. Pump Operation and Sequencing: Current- or pressure- sensing method.
1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.

h. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.

i. Lights: Running light for each pump.

j. Alarm Signal Device: Sounds alarm when backup pumps are operating.
1) Time Delay: Controls alarm operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds, with automatic **OR** manual, **as directed**, reset.

k. Thermal-bleed cutoff.

l. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.

m. High-suction-pressure cutout.

n. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.

o. High-discharge-pressure cutout.

p. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:
1) On-off status of each pump.
2) Alarm status.

8. Base: Structural steel.

C. Simplex, Variable-Speed Booster Pumps

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pump, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.

2. Pump:
a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
e. Seal: Mechanical.
f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.

3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings, and directly mounted to pump casing. Select motor that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.

4. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.

5. Valves:
a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.
b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.

c. Check Valve NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Silent or swing type in pump discharge piping.
d. Check Valve NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in pump discharge piping.
e. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump discharge piping.

6. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
7. Hydropneumatic Tank: Precharged, ASME-construction, **as directed**, diaphragm or bladder tank made of materials complying with NSF 61.
8. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for single-pump, variable-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
   a. Control Logic: Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, VFC, and other devices in the controller.
   b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, variable-frequency, solid-state type.
      1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
   c. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
   d. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
   e. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
   f. Pump Operation: Pressure-sensing method.
      1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
   g. VFC: Voltage-source, pulse-width, modulating-frequency converter; installed in control panel.
   h. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to transfer to constant-speed operation upon VFC failure.
   i. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
   j. Light: Running light for pump.
   k. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
   l. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.
   m. High-suction-pressure cutout.
   n. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
   o. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
   p. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:
      1) On-off status of each pump.
      2) Alarm status.
9. Base: Structural steel.

D. Multiplex, Variable-Speed Booster Pumps
   1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pumps, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
   2. Pumps:
      a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
      b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
      c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
      d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
      e. Seal: Mechanical.
      f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.
   3. Pumps:
      a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, frame-mounted, separately coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump. Include back-pullout design, **as directed**.
      b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
e. Seal: Mechanical.
f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
g. Coupling: Flexible, with metal guard.

4. Pumps:
   a. Type: In line, single stage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
   b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
   c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
   d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
   e. Seal: Mechanical.
   f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
5. Pumps:
   a. Type: Vertical, multistage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, multistage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
   b. Casing: Cast-iron or steel base and stainless-steel chamber.
   c. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
   d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
   e. Seal: Mechanical.
   f. Bearing: Water-lubricated sleeve type.
6. Pumps:
   a. Type: Vertical, can, as defined in HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3 for in-line, barrel or can, lineshaft, vertical pump.
   b. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
   c. Bowls: Epoxy-coated cast iron **OR** Cast iron, **as directed**.
   d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
   e. Seals: Mechanical and stuffing-box types.
   f. Bearings: Water-lubricated bushing type.
7. Motors: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings. Select motors that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
8. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.
9. Valves:
   a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping.
   b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping and in inlet and outlet headers, **as directed**.
   c. Check Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Silent or swing type in each pump's discharge piping.
   d. Check Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
   e. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump's discharge header piping.
10. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
11. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for multiple-pump, variable-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
    a. Control Logic: Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, VFC, and other devices in controller. Install VFC for pump motors larger than 25 hp in separate panel; same type as motor control panel enclosure.
    b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, variable-frequency, solid-state type.

1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac, with integral control-power transformer.

c. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.

d. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.

e. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch for each pump in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.

1) Duplex, Automatic, Alternating Starter: Switches lead pump to lag main pump and to two-pump operation.

2) Triplex, Sequence (Lead-Lag-Lag) Starter: Switches lead pump to one lag main pump and to three-pump operation.

f. Pump Operation and Sequencing: Pressure-sensing method or flow-sensing method **OR** Pressure-sensing method for lead pump and flow-sensing method for lag pumps, **as directed**.

1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.

g. VFC: Voltage-source, pulse-width, modulating-frequency converter for each **OR** lead, **as directed**, pump.

h. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to transfer to constant-speed operation upon VFC failure.

i. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.

j. Lights: Running light for each pump.

k. Alarm Signal Device: Sounds alarm when backup pumps are operating.

1) Time Delay: Controls alarm operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds, with automatic **OR** manual, **as directed**, reset.

l. Thermal-bleed cutoff.

m. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.

n. High-suction-pressure cutout.

o. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.

p. High-discharge-pressure cutout.

q. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:

1) On-off status of each pump.

2) Alarm status.

12. Base: Structural steel.

E. Motors

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors.

a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in NFPA 70.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine roughing-in for booster pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections before booster-pump installation.

B. Installation

1. Equipment Mounting: Install booster pumps on concrete base using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete", **as directed**.

a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

2. Equipment Mounting: Install booster pumps using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
   a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
3. Support connected domestic-water piping so weight of piping is not supported by booster pumps.

C. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Connect domestic-water piping to booster pumps. Install suction and discharge pipe equal to or greater than size of system suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**.
   a. Install shutoff valves on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Install ball, butterfly, or gate valves same size as suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for general-duty valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
   b. Install union, flanged, or grooved-joint connections on suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**, at connection to domestic-water piping. Comply with requirements for unions and flanges specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
   c. Install valved bypass, same size as and between piping, at connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
   d. Install flexible connectors, same size as piping, on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
   e. Install piping adjacent to booster pumps to allow service and maintenance.

D. Identification
1. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

E. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Perform visual and mechanical inspection.
   b. Leak Test: After installation, charge booster pump and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start booster pumps to confirm proper motor rotation and booster-pump operation.
   d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
   a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Adjusting
   1. Adjust booster pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Adjust pressure set points.
   3. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting booster pump to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

H. Demonstration
   1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain booster pumps.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23 13a

SECTION 22 11 23 23 - WATER SUPPLY WELLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water supply wells. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Cable-tool, Rotary drilled, Reverse-rotary drilled, and Driven water supply wells.
b. Jet, Line-shaft, and Submersible well pumps.

C. Definitions
1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.
3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
4. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
5. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: Submit certified performance curves and rated capacities of selected well pumps and furnished specialties for each type and size of well pump indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show layout and connections for well pumps.
a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Field quality-control reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Well Driller Qualifications: An experienced water supply well driller licensed in the jurisdiction where Project is located.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Comply with AWWA A100 for water supply wells.

F. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
b. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without the Owner's written permission.
2. Well Drilling Water: Provide temporary water and piping for drilling purposes. Provide necessary piping for water supply.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Well Casings
1. Steel Casing: AWWA C200, single ply, steel pipe with threaded ends and threaded couplings for threaded joints.

2. ABS Casing: ASTM F 480, ABS, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, bell-and-spigot pipe and couplings for solvent-cemented joints.
3. PVC Casing: ASTM F 480 and NSF 14, **as directed**, PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, bell-and-spigot pipe and couplings for solvent-cemented joints. Include NSF listing mark "NSF wc," **as directed**.
4. Pitless Adapter: Fitting, of shape required to fit onto casing, with waterproof seals.
5. Pitless Unit: Factory-assembled equipment that includes pitless adapter.
6. Well Seals: Casing cap, with holes for piping and cables, that fits into top of casing and is removable, waterproof, and vermin proof.

B. Grout
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, fine and coarse grades.
3. Water: Potable.

C. Water Well Screens
1. Screen Material: Fabricated of ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel, welded; with continuous-slot, V-shaped openings that widen inwardly **OR** tube; with slotted or perforated surface and designed for well-screen applications, **as directed**.
   a. Screen Couplings: Butt-type, stainless-steel coupling rings.
   b. Screen Fittings: Screen, with necessary fittings, closes bottom and makes tight seal between top of screen and well casing.
   c. Maximum Entering Velocity: 0.1 fps (0.03 m/s).

D. Pack Materials
1. Coarse, uniformly graded filter sand, maximum 1/8 inch (3 mm) in diameter.
2. Fine gravel, maximum 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

E. Jet-Type Well Pumps
1. Description: Shallow **OR** Deep, **as directed**,-well-design, jet well pump; self-priming; centrifugal pump capable of continuous operation; with the following features:
   a. Housing: Cast iron.
   b. Impeller: Single stage **OR** Multistage, **as directed**, centrifugal; fabricated of corrosion-resistant materials.
   c. Seals: Mechanical.
   d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
   e. Motor: Manufacturer's standard, NEMA MG 1 motor, panel, and accessories.
   f. Motor Controls: Electronic; variable speed.
   g. Check valve, ejector, and pressure-control valve.
2. Pump Accessories:
   a. Compression Tanks: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Facility Indoor Potable-water Storage Tanks" **OR** Precharged butyl rubber diaphragm, steel shell, fused polymeric lining, and 100-psig (690-kPa) working pressure, **as directed**.
   b. Pressure Switches: For pump control; for installation in piping.
   c. Water Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends.
      1) Cast-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.4, threaded, galvanized.
   d. Water Piping: ASTM D 2239, SIDR Numbers 5.3, 7, or 9 PE pipe; made with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**. Include NSF listing mark "NSF pw."
      1) Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D 2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated, male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.

F. Line-Shaft Well Pumps
1. Description: Line-shaft, water **OR** oil, **as directed**,-lubricated, vertical-turbine well pump complying with HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3; with the following features:

a. Impeller Material: Stainless steel **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Bronze, **as directed**.
b. Motor: Full-voltage starting, vertical hollow- or solid-shaft, squirrel-cage induction type complying with ANSI C50.10.
c. Pump Base: Cast iron or fabricated steel.
d. Column Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends and cast-iron or steel threaded couplings.

G. Submersible Well Pumps
1. Description: Submersible, vertical-turbine well pump complying with HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3; with the following features:
a. Impeller Material: Stainless steel **OR** Silicon bronze, **as directed**.
b. Motor: Capable of continuous operation under water, with protected submersible power cable.
c. Column Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends and cast-iron or steel threaded couplings.
d. Discharge Piping: ASTM D 2239, SIDR Numbers 5.3, 7, or 9 PE pipe; made with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**. Include NSF listing mark "NSF pw."
1) Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D 2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated, male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.

H. Motors
1. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 22.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Pilot-Hole Data: Review pilot-hole test analysis furnished by the Owner.
2. Neighborhood Well Data: Review operating and test analyses.

B. Installation
1. Construct well using cable-tool **OR** rotary drilling **OR** reverse-rotary drilling **OR** driven, **as directed**, method.
2. Take samples of substrata formation at 10-foot (3-m) intervals and at changes in formation throughout entire depth of each water supply well. Carefully preserve samples on-site in glass jars properly labeled for identification.
3. If selecting rotary drilled or reverse-rotary drilled method, excavate for mud pit or provide aboveground structure, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to allow settlement of cuttings and circulation of drill fluids back to well without discharging to on-site waterways.
4. Enlarge pilot hole and install permanent casing, screen, and grout. Install first section of casing with hardened steel driving shoe of an OD slightly larger than casing couplings if threaded couplings are used.
5. Set casing and liners round, plumb, and true to line.
6. Join casing pipe as follows:
a. Ream ends of pipe and remove burrs.
b. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside casing before installation.
c. Cut bevel in ends of steel casing pipe and make threaded joints.
d. Clean and make solvent-cemented joints for ABS and PVC casings.
7. If rotary drilled or reverse-rotary drilled well, mix grout in proportions of 1 cu. ft. (0.03 cu. m) or a 94-lb (42.6-kg) sack of cement with 5 to 6 gal. (19 to 23 L) of water. Bentonite clay may be added

in amounts of 3 to 5 lb/cu. ft. (1.4 to 2.3 kg/0.03 cu. m) for a 94-lb (42.6-kg) sack of cement. If bentonite clay is added, water may be increased to 6.5 gal./cu. ft. (25 L/0.03 cu. m) of cement.

8. If rotary drilled or reverse-rotary drilled well, place grout continuously, from bottom to top surface, to ensure filling of annular space in one operation. Do not perform other operations in well within 72 hours after grouting of casing. When quick-setting cement is used, this period may be reduced to 24 hours.
9. Provide permanent casing with temporary well cap. Install with top of casing 36 inches (910 mm) above finished grade, **as directed**.
10. Develop wells to maximum yield per foot (meter) of drawdown.
    a. Extract maximum practical quantity of sand, drill fluid, and other fine materials from water-bearing formation.
    b. Avoid settlement and disturbance of strata above water-bearing formation.
    c. Do not disturb sealing around well casings.
    d. Continue developing wells until water contains no more than 2 ppm of sand by weight when pumped at maximum testing rate.
11. Install jet well pumps with ejector in or attached to pump housing. Place check valve on suction line to prevent drainage of compression tank.
12. Install jet well pumps and pressure and suction lines. Install ejector where pressure and suction lines connect above well screen. Install check valve in suction line, or install foot valve below ejector, to prevent drainage of compression tank.
13. Install line-shaft **OR** submersible, **as directed**, well pumps according to HI 2.1-2.4 and provide access for periodic maintenance.
    a. Before lowering permanent pump into well, lower a dummy pump that is slightly longer and wider than permanent pump to determine that permanent pump can be installed. Correct alignment problems.
    b. Before lowering permanent pump into well, start pump to verify correct rotation.
    c. Securely tighten discharge piping joints.
    d. Locate line-shaft well pump near well bottom; locate motor above grade. Install driver plate to correctly align motor and pump.
    e. Connect motor to submersible pump and locate near well bottom.
        1) Connect power cable while connection points are dry and undamaged.
        2) Do not damage power cable during installation; use cable clamps that do not have sharp edges.
        3) Install water-sealed surface plate that will support pump and piping.

C. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
    a. Connect piping between well pump and water piping.
    b. Connect water distribution system in trench to well pipe at pitless adapter **OR** unit, **as directed**.
    c. Connect building water distribution to well pipe inside well house.
2. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
3. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

D. Well Abandonment
1. Comply with AWWA A100 when abandoning water supply wells. Fill and seal holes and casings and restore ground surface to finished grade.
   OR
   Follow well-abandonment procedures of authorities having jurisdiction. Restore ground surface to finished grade.

E. Field Quality Control

1. Plumbness and Alignment Testing: Comply with AWWA A100.
2. Furnish samples of water-bearing formation to testing laboratory and well-screen manufacturer for mechanical sieve analysis.
3. Prepare reports on static level of ground water, level of water for various pumping rates, and depth to water-bearing strata.
4. Performance Testing: Conduct final pumping tests after wells have been constructed, cleaned, and tested for plumbness and alignment.
    a. Provide discharge piping to conduct water to locations where disposal will not create a nuisance or endanger adjacent property. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
    b. Measure elevation to water level in wells.
    c. Perform two bailer or air-ejection tests to determine expected yield. Test at depths with sufficient quantity of water to satisfy desired yields.
    d. Test Pump: Variable capacity test pump with capacity equal to maximum expected yields at pressure equal to drawdown in wells, plus losses in pump columns and discharge pipes.
    e. Start and adjust test pumps and equipment to required pumping rates.
    f. Record readings of water levels in wells and pumping rates at 30-minute maximum intervals throughout 24-hour minimum period.
    g. Record maximum yields when drawdown is 60 inches (1500 mm) above top of suction screens after designated times.
    h. Operate pumping units continuously for eight hours after maximum drawdown is reached.
    i. Record returning water levels in wells and plot curves of well recovery rates.
    j. Remove sand, stones, and other foreign materials that may become deposited in wells after completing final tests.
5. Water Analysis Testing:
    a. Engage] a qualified testing agency to make bacteriological, physical, and chemical analyses of water from each finished well and report the results. Make analyses according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

       OR

       Analyze water sample from each finished well for bacteriological, physical, and chemical quality and report the results. Make analyses according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Cleaning
1. Disinfect water supply wells according to AWWA A100 and AWWA C654 before testing well pumps.

   OR

   Follow water supply well disinfection procedures required by authorities having jurisdiction before testing well pumps.

G. Protection
1. Water Quality Protection: Prevent well contamination, including undesirable physical and chemical characteristics.
2. Ensure that mud pit will not leak or overflow into streams or wetlands. When well is accepted, remove mud and solids in mud pit from Project site and restore site to finished grade.
3. Provide casings, seals, sterilizing agents, and other materials to eliminate contamination; shut off contaminated water.
4. Exercise care to prevent breakdown or collapse of strata overlaying that from which water is to be drawn.
5. Protect water supply wells to prevent tampering and introducing foreign matter. Retain temporary well cap until installation is complete.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 11 23 23	23 21 23 13	Hydronic Pumps
22 11 23 23	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 12 19 00 - POTABLE-WATER STORAGE TANKS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for potable-water storage tanks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes potable-water storage tanks and related accessories for indoor installation.

C. Definitions
1. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
2. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
3. LDPE: Low-density polyethylene plastic.
4. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of potable-water storage tank indicated.
2. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification
3. Source quality-control test reports.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification, **as directed.**

E. Quality Assurance
1. ASME Compliance for Steel Tanks: Fabricate and label steel, potable-water storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, where indicated.
2. ASME Compliance for FRP Tanks: Fabricate and label FRP, potable-water storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, where indicated.
3. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic potable-water storage tanks and components. Include appropriate NSF marking.
4. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects, Sections 1 to 9," for potable-water storage tanks. Include appropriate NSF marking.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Steel, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
3. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
4. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
5. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
6. Specialties and Accessories: Include pressure relief valve; pressure gage; thermometer; air-charging connection; and gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.

7. Horizontal Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel saddles, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
8. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
9. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
10. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.

B. Steel, Nonpressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, nonpressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
3. Construction: Steel, constructed with nontoxic welded joints.
4. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter.
5. Cover for Open Tank: Plastic **OR** Steel, with lining same as or similar to tank lining and, **as directed**, with shape that encloses top of tank.
6. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank.
    a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
7. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in the tank and the following:
    a. Vacuum relief valve.
    b. Free air vent with insect screen.
    c. Thermometer.
    d. Gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
8. Horizontal Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel saddles, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
9. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
10. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
11. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.

C. Steel, Floating-Wafer, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, vertical, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls and with floating-wafer separator.
2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
3. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
4. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
5. Floating Wafer: Nontoxic plastic, of diameter to match tank.
6. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
    a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
7. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and the following:
    a. Pressure relief valve.

b. Pressure gage.
c. Thermometer.
d. Air-charging connection.
e. Gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.

8. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
9. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
   b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
10. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.

D. Steel, Precharged, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Steel, Precharged, Diaphragm, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
   a. Description: Steel, vertical, pressured-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls and with air-charging valve and air precharge.
   b. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
   c. Operation: Factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm.
2. Steel, Precharged, Bladder, Water Storage Tanks
   a. Description: Steel, vertical, pressured-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls and with air-charging valve and air precharge.
   b. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
   c. Operation: Factory-installed, butyl-rubber bladder.
3. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
4. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
5. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and pressure gage.
6. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
7. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
   b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
8. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.

E. Insulated, Steel, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, vertical, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
2. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
3. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
4. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
5. Specialties and Accessories: Include pressure relief valve; pressure gage; thermometer; air-charging connection; and gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
6. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.

7. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
   b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
8. Insulation: Factory-installed, fiberglass or polyurethane foam; surrounding entire tank except connections and other openings; suitable for tank operating temperature; and complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
9. Jacket: Steel, with manufacturer's standard finish, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Steel, Gravity, Nonpressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, nonpressure-rated tank with cylindrical **OR** rectangular, **as directed**, sidewalls.
2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
3. Construction: Nonpressure rated, factory or field fabricated from ASTM A 794 steel sheets, with nontoxic welded joints.
4. Reinforcement: ASTM A 36/A 36M, structural-steel shapes, welded to tank as required to maintain tank shape.
5. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter **OR** wide, **as directed**.
6. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank.
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
7. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and the following:
   a. Vacuum relief valve.
   b. Free air vent with insect screen.
   c. Thermometer.
   d. Gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
8. Horizontal Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel saddles or legs, welded to tank.
9. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank.
10. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
11. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.

G. Plastic, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: FRP, vertical, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
2. Construction: ASME code, composite FRP **OR** Composite FRP, **as directed**, contact-molded or filament-wound, thermosetting-resin tank for 100-psig (690-kPa) **OR**125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
   a. Tank Lining Material: Nontoxic HDPE **OR** LDPE, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tanks.
3. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
4. Tappings: Factory-fabricated, reinforced FRP flanged-end nozzle.
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Include plastic-to-steel transition fitting from tank nozzle flange to ASME B1.20.1, female thread.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
5. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and the following:
   a. Pressure relief valve.
   b. Pressure gage.
   c. Thermometer.
6. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or reinforced FRP skirt attached by FRP brackets to tank sidewall.

7. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.

H. Plastic, Nonpressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. FRP, Potable-Water Storage Tanks:
a. Description: FRP, vertical, nonpressure-rated water tank; complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tanks.
b. Construction: ASTM D 3299, filament-wound **OR** ASTM D 4097, contact-molded, **as directed**, FRP.
c. Tappings: Factory-fabricated, FRP flanged-end nozzle.
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Include plastic-to-steel transition fitting from tank nozzle flange to ASME B1.20.1, female thread.
a) Exception: Tappings may be threaded FRP coupling integral with nozzle for connections for plastic piping.
2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
d. Vertical Tank Support: Separate factory-fabricated steel stand, capable of supporting tank.
2. PE, Potable-Water Storage Tanks:
a. Description: PE, vertical, flat-bottom, nonpressure-rated water tank; complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tanks.
b. Construction: ASTM D 1998, molded PE.
c. Tappings: Factory-fabricated bulkhead fittings, attached to tank.
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: With female thread.
2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
d. Vertical Tank Support: Separate factory-fabricated steel stand, capable of supporting entire bottom of tank.
3. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter.
4. Cover for Open Tank: Plastic, same as or similar to tank material and with shape that encloses top of tank.
5. Specialties and Accessories: Include vacuum relief valve; free air vent with insect screen; thermometer; and gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.

I. Source Quality Control
1. Test and inspect potable-water storage tanks according to the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
a. Pressure Testing for ASME-Code, Potable-Water Storage Tanks: Hydrostatically test to ensure structural integrity and freedom from leaks. Fill tanks with water, vent air, pressurize to 1-1/2 times tank pressure rating, disconnect test equipment, hold pressure for 30 minutes with no drop in pressure, and check for leaks. Replace tanks that fail test with new tanks, and repeat until test is satisfactory.
b. Pressure Testing for Non-ASME-Code, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks: Hydrostatically test to ensure structural integrity and freedom from leaks at pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Fill tanks with water, vent air, pressurize tanks, disconnect test equipment, hold pressure for two hours with no drop in pressure, and check for leaks. Repair or replace tanks that fail test with new tanks and repeat until test is satisfactory.
c. Nonpressure Testing for Potable-Water Storage Tanks: Fill tanks to water operating level to ensure structural integrity and freedom from leaks. Hold water level for two hours with no drop in water level. Repair or replace tanks that fail test with new tanks, and repeat until test is satisfactory.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Concrete Bases
1. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for tanks. Refer to Division 03 Section(s) "Cast-in-place Concrete" AND Division 22 Section(s) "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

B. Installation
   1. Install water storage tanks on concrete bases, level and plumb, firmly anchored. Arrange so devices needing servicing are accessible.
      a. Install horizontal tanks on concrete piers and factory-fabricated **OR** fabricated steel supports and, **as directed**, saddles.
   2. Anchor tank supports and tanks to substrate.
      a. Use steel or FRP straps over or around plastic tanks.
   3. Install tank seismic restraints.
   4. Install thermometers and pressure gages on water storage tanks and piping, if indicated. Thermometers and pressure gages are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
   5. Install the following devices on tanks where indicated:
      a. Pressure relief valves.
      b. Temperature and pressure relief valves.
      c. Vacuum relief valves.
      d. Tank vents on nonpressure tanks.
      e. Connections to accessories.
   6. After installing tanks with factory finish, inspect finishes and repair damages to finishes.

C. Connections
   1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14.. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
   2. Install piping adjacent to potable-water storage tanks to allow service and maintenance.
   3. Connect water piping to water storage tanks with unions or flanges and with shutoff valves. Connect tank drains with shutoff valves and discharge over closest floor drains.
      a. General-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
         1) Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Gate or ball.
         2) Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate or butterfly.
         3) Drain Valves: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) gate or ball valve. Include outlet with, or nipple in outlet with, ASME B1.20.7, 3/4-11.5NH thread for garden-hose service, threaded cap, and chain.
      b. Water Piping Connections: Make connections to dissimilar metals with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
      c. Connect air piping to hydropneumatic tanks with unions or flanges and gate or ball valves. Make connections to dissimilar metals with dielectric fittings, which are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

D. Field Quality Control
   1. Perform the following final checks before filling:
      a. Verify that air precharge in precharged tanks is correct.
      b. Test operation of tank accessories and devices.
      c. Verify that pressure relief valves have correct setting.
         1) Manually operate pressure relief valves.
         2) Adjust pressure settings.
      d. Verify that vacuum relief valves are correct size.
         1) Manually operate vacuum relief valves.
         2) Adjust vacuum settings.
   2. Filling Procedures: Follow manufacturer's written procedures. Fill tanks with water to operating level.

E. Cleaning
   1. Clean and disinfect potable-water storage tanks.

2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed, use procedure described in AWWA C652.

END OF SECTION 22 12 19 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 12 19 00a - SURFACE WATER-STORAGE TANKS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for surface water-storage tanks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes welded-steel reservoirs and standpipes for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.
2. This Section includes bolted-steel reservoirs and standpipes for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.
3. This Section includes wire- or strand-wound, concrete, surface water-storage tanks for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.
4. This Section includes circular, prestressed-concrete, surface water-storage tanks for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.

C. Definitions
1. Reservoir: Flat-bottomed, cylindrical, surface water-storage tank with shell height equal to or less than its diameter.
2. Standpipe: Flat-bottomed, cylindrical, surface water-storage tank with shell height greater than its diameter.
3. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
4. NR: Natural rubber.
5. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Structural Performance: Surface water-storage tank, including structural reinforcement and foundation, shall be capable of withstanding the effects of dead and live gravity loads and winds of 100 mph (161 km/h).
2. Seismic Performance: Surface water-storage tank, including structural reinforcement and foundation, shall be capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Thermal Movements: Surface water-storage tank, including structural reinforcement and foundation, shall allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
    a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include rated capacities, accessories, appurtenances, and furnished specialties for each surface water-storage tank indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details for each surface water-storage tank, including the following:
    a. Tank, roof, and shell openings.
    b. Safety railings and ladders.
    c. Plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

d. Structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
e. Power, signal, and control wiring.

3. Welding certificates.
4. Bacteriological test results.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the following to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
   a. Obstruction lighting.
   b. Lightning protection.
   c. Cathodic protection.
   d. Tank heaters.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
   b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
   c. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
2. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
4. Comply with AWWA D100, "Welded Steel Tanks for Water Storage," and with AWWA M42, "Steel Water-Storage Tanks," for welded-steel, surface water-storage tanks.
5. Comply with AWWA D103, "Factory-Coated Bolted Steel Tanks for Water Storage," and with AWWA M42, "Steel Water-Storage Tanks," for bolted-steel, surface water-storage tanks.
6. Comply with AWWA D110, "Wire- and Strand-Wound, Circular, Prestressed Concrete Water Tanks," for concrete, surface water-storage tanks with steel diaphragm.
7. Comply with AWWA D110, "Wire- and Strand-Wound, Circular, Prestressed Concrete Water Tanks," for cast-in-place-concrete, surface water-storage tanks with vertical prestressed reinforcement.
8. Comply with AWWA D115, "Circular Prestressed Concrete Water Tanks with Circumferential Tendons," for concrete, surface water-storage tanks with circumferential tendons.
9. Comply with NFPA 22, "Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection," for surface water-storage tanks for fire-suppression water supply.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Welded-Steel Reservoirs/Standpipes
1. Description: Welded-steel plates, bolts, rods, and reinforcing steel; designed and fabricated according to AWWA D100, AWWA M42, and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
   a. Capacity: 50,000 gal. (189 cu. m) **OR** 5,000,000 gal. (18 930 cu. m), **as directed**.
   b. Shell Roof (if self-supporting roof is required): Conical **OR** Dome **OR** Ellipsoidal, **as directed**, welded steel and self-supporting.
   c. Shell Roof (if supported roof is required): Conical with knuckle and column-rafter support.
   d. Reservoir Shell Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
   e. Standpipe Shell Height: Height, as directed by the Ownerfrom top of foundation to lower capacity **OR** overflow, **as directed**, level.
   f. Range of Head: Height, as directed by the Ownerfrom lower capacity level to overflow level.
   g. Pipe Connection: Match size of water-distribution pipe.

h. Overflow Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Grade B, Schedule 40, welded-steel pipe with ASTM A 234/A 234M, Grade WPB, Schedule 40, carbon-steel butt-weld fittings.
i. Roof Hatch: Steel, hinged cover, 24 by 15 inches (600 by 380 mm) minimum with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap with hasp and lock, located over interior ladder and adjacent to exterior ladder.
j. Roof Manhole: Steel, removable, 20-inch- (500-mm-) minimum-diameter cover with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch- (50-mm-) downward overlap with hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan.
k. Shell Sidewall Manholes: Two, steel, circular, 24 inches (600 mm) in diameter **OR** elliptical, 18 by 22 inches (450 by 560 mm) minimum, **as directed**.
l. Painter's Accessories: Include lugs **OR** couplings **OR** rail, **as directed**, inside and outside tank for painting.
m. Tank Vent: Steel pipe with stainless-steel screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
n. Foundation: Reinforced concrete. Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

B. Bolted-Steel Reservoirs/Standpipes
1. Description: Bolted-steel plates, bolts, rods, and reinforcing steel; designed and fabricated according to AWWA D100, AWWA M42, and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
a. Capacity: 4000 gal. (15 cu. m) **OR** 160,000 gal. (605 cu. m), **as directed**.
b. Shell Roof: Comply with AWWA D103.
c. Reservoir Shell Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
d. Standpipe Shell Height: Height, as directed by the Ownerfrom top of foundation to lower capacity **OR** overflow, **as directed**, level.
e. Range of Head: Height, as directed by the Ownerfrom lower capacity level to overflow level.
f. Pipe Connection: Match size of water-distribution pipe.
g. Overflow Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Grade B, Schedule 40, welded-steel pipe with ASTM A 234/A 234M, Grade W.B., Schedule 40, carbon-steel butt-weld fittings.
h. Roof Hatch: Steel, hinged cover, 24 by 15 inches (600 by 380 mm) minimum with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap with hasp and lock, located over interior ladder and adjacent to exterior ladder.
i. Roof Manhole: Steel, removable, 20-inch- (500-mm-) minimum-diameter cover with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch- (50-mm-) downward overlap with hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan.
j. Shell Sidewall Manholes: Two, steel, circular, 24 inches (600 mm) in diameter **OR** elliptical, 18 by 22 inches (450 by 560 mm) minimum, **as directed**.
k. Painter's Accessories: Include lugs **OR** couplings **OR** rail, **as directed**, inside and outside tank for painting.
l. Tank Vent: Steel pipe with stainless-steel screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
m. Foundation: Reinforced concrete. Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

C. Wire- Or Strand-Wound, Concrete, Surface Water-Storage Tanks
1. Comply with AWWA D110 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
2. Tank Capacity: 100,000 gal. (379 cu. m) **OR** 40,000,000 gal. (151 400 cu. m), **as directed**.
3. Tank Height: as directed by the Owner.
4. Tank Wall Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
5. Tank Floor: Reinforced, cast-in-place concrete.
6. Tank Wall (for cast-in-place concrete with vertical prestressed reinforcement):
a. Materials: Cast-in-place concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Superplasticizers are prohibited.

b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
c. Threadbars: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 1.25 to 1.375 inches (31 to 35 mm) in diameter.
d. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.

7. Tank Wall (for shotcrete with steel diaphragm):
   a. Materials: Shotcrete, with at least 10 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Include steel diaphragm. Air-entrainment admixtures and superplasticizers are prohibited.
   b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
   c. Diaphragm: Galvanized-steel sheet, at least 0.017 inch (0.43 mm) thick, complying with ASTM A 924/A 924M. Height of sheet shall be same as wall height.
   d. Diaphragm Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type M, polysulfide; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type M, Grade P or NS, polyurethane; or ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III, Grade 1, epoxy or double-fold vertical joints with mechanical seamer.
   e. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
8. Tank Wall (for precast concrete with steel diaphragm):
   a. Materials: Precast concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Include steel diaphragm. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
   b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
   c. Diaphragm: Galvanized-steel sheet, at least 0.017 inch (0.43 mm) thick, complying with ASTM A 924/A 924M. Height of sheet shall be same as wall height.
   d. Diaphragm Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type M, polysulfide; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type M, Grade P or NS, polyurethane; or ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III, Grade 1, epoxy or double-fold vertical joints with mechanical seamer.
   e. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
9. Tank Wall (for cast-in-place concrete with steel diaphragm):
   a. Materials: Cast-in-place concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Include steel diaphragm. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
   b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
   c. Diaphragm: Galvanized-steel sheet, at least 0.017 inch (0.43 mm) thick, complying with ASTM A 924/A 924M. Height of sheet shall be same as wall height.
   d. Diaphragm Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type M, polysulfide; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type M, Grade P or NS, polyurethane; or ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III, Grade 1, epoxy or double-fold vertical joints with mechanical seamer.
   e. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
10. Domed Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast **OR** shotcrete, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
11. Flat Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
12. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Grade 60 (Grade 240), zinc-coated billet steel bars.
13. Waterstops: Ribbed, PVC, 6 and 9 inches wide by 3/8 inch (150 and 225 mm wide by 10 mm) thick.
14. Bearing Pads:
   a. Material: NR **OR** ASTM D 2240, CR, with durometer hardness of 40 to 50, **as directed**.
   b. Minimum Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) under walls and 1/2 inch (13 mm) under roof.
   c. Minimum Width: 3 inches (75 mm) under walls and 2 inches (50 mm) under roof.
15. Sponge Filler: ASTM D 1056, Types 2A1 through 2A4, closed-cell CR; or ASTM D 1752, Type I, sponge rubber.
16. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, and Expansion Sleeve Inserts: Stainless steel.
17. Construction and Maintenance Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 48-by-48-inch- (1200-by-1200-mm-) minimum-size, hinged

cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.

18. Personnel Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 30-inch- (760-mm-) minimum, square hinged cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.
19. Tank Vents: Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, pipe with aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
20. Tank Interior Surface Sealer: Cementitious coating modified with acrylic or styrene-acrylic based polymer.

D. Circular, Prestressed-Concrete, Surface Water-Storage Tanks
1. Comply with AWWA D115 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
2. Tank Capacity: 100,000 gal. (379 cu. m) **OR** 40,000,000 gal. (151 400 cu. m), **as directed**.
3. Tank Height: as directed by the Owner.
4. Tank Wall Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
5. Tank Floor: Reinforced, cast-in-place concrete.
6. Tank Wall:
   a. Materials: Cast-in-place concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
   b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
   c. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
7. Domed Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast **OR** shotcrete, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
8. Flat Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
9. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Grade 60 (Grade 240), zinc-coated billet steel bars.
10. Waterstops: Ribbed, PVC, 6 and 9 inches wide by 3/8 inch (150 and 225 mm wide by 10 mm) thick.
11. Bearing Pads:
    a. Material: NR **OR** ASTM D 2240, CR, with durometer hardness of 40 to 50, **as directed**.
    b. Minimum Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) under walls and 1/2 inch (13 mm) under roof.
    c. Minimum Width: 3 inches (75 mm) under walls and 2 inches (50 mm) under roof.
12. Sponge Filler: ASTM D 1056, Types 2A1 through 2A4, closed-cell CR; or ASTM D 1752, Type I, sponge rubber.
13. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, and Expansion Sleeve Inserts: Stainless steel.
14. Construction and Maintenance Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 48-by-48-inch- (1200-by-1200-mm-) minimum-size, hinged cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.
15. Personnel Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 30-inch- (760-mm-) minimum, square hinged cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.
16. Tank Vents: Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, pipe with aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
17. Tank Interior Surface Sealer: Cementitious coating modified with acrylic or styrene-acrylic based polymer.

E. Paint Materials
1. Paint: Comply with AWWA D102.
2. Primer: Tank fabricator's standard epoxy-polyamide paint.
3. Tank Shell Interior Finish Paint: Tank fabricator's standard epoxy-polyamide paint complying with NSF 61 and compatible with prime coat.
4. Tank Shell Exterior Intermediate Paint: Tank fabricator's standard, two-component epoxy paint compatible with prime and finish paint. Intermediate coat shall have a slight color contrast with finish coat.
5. Tank Shell Exterior Finish Paint: Tank fabricator's standard urethane paint.
   a. Color: As selected by the Owner from tank manufacturer's paint chart.

F. Shop Painting
1. Factory coating according to AWWA D103.
2. Tank Shell Interior Finish Coat: Comply with NSF 61.
3. Tank Shell Exterior Finish Coat: Factory coating according to AWWA D103.

G. Surface Water-Storage Tank Appurtenances
1. Water-Level Controls: Automatic controls for maintaining water level in tank, with valves, piping, and audible and visual alarms to indicate the following:
   a. High- and low-water levels.
   b. Tank overflowing or tank not filling.
2. Obstruction Lighting: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Lightning Protection: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Lightning Protection For Structures".
4. Cathodic Protection: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Cathodic Protection" and with AWWA D104.
5. Tank Heaters: Comply with NFPA 22 and with capacity to maintain 42 deg F (6 deg C) water temperature inside surface water-storage tank.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Steel, Surface Water-Storage Tank Installation
1. Erect tank shell, accessories, and appurtenances according to AWWA D100 and AWWA M42.
2. Fabricate steel plate sections in the shop (for welded-steel, surface water-storage tanks). Erect tank shell by welding plate sections in the field.
3. Fabricate tank sections and drill or punch bolt holes in the shop (for bolted-steel, surface water-storage tanks). Install bolts during field erection of tank.
4. Set top of reinforced-concrete foundation at least 6 inches (150 mm) above finish grade.
5. Install roof hatch near exterior ladder.
6. Install roof manhole near center of roof.
7. Install tank vent at center of roof.
8. Install two manholes in tank wall near grade.

B. Concrete, Surface Water-Storage Tank Installation
1. Tank Wall (for wire- or strand-wound, prestressed-concrete, surface water-storage tanks): Construct tank wall and install accessories and appurtenances according to AWWA D110 and the following:
   a. Construct cast-in-place **OR** Erect precast, **as directed**, core wall with steel diaphragm. Install solid neoprene bearing pad and 9-inch- (225-mm-) wide waterstop between wall and wall footing.
   b. Install steel diaphragm. Apply shotcrete to interior of diaphragm to form core wall.
      1) Seal vertical joints in diaphragm with polysulfide, polyurethane, or epoxy sealant; or double-fold with a mechanical seamer.

2) Sand blast exterior of core wall to provide a well-pitted surface free from curing compounds, laitance, and form oils. Use 1.5 lb (7.3 kg) of silica sand (No. 16 grit) per square foot (meter) of surface area.
3) After sandblasting, wind wires or strands around exterior of core wall separating wires by at least 2.5 wire diameters or 3/8 inch (10 mm) to ensure that mortar will be located between wires. Do not install wires at horizontal level of pipe penetrations.
4) After installation of wires or strands, apply at least 3 coats of wet-mix shotcrete to exterior of tank wall in layers of at least 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick for a minimum total thickness of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Apply shotcrete when temperature range is at least 35 deg F (2 deg C) and rising to a maximum temperature of 95 deg F (35 deg C). Do not apply shotcrete if temperature is 40 deg F (5 deg C) and falling.
5) Fill voids in wall-to-base joint and seal around waterstops, base pads, and sponge fillers with polyurethane filler.

2. Tank Wall (for circular, prestressed-concrete, surface water-storage tanks): Construct tank wall and install accessories and appurtenances according to AWWA D115 and the following:
   a. Install vertical prestressed wall with threadbars and screw nut anchors.
   b. Sand blast exterior of core wall to provide well-pitted surface free from curing compounds, laitance, and form oils. Use 1.5 lb (7.3 kg) of silica sand (No. 16 grit) per square foot (meter) of surface area.
   c. Apply at least 3 coats of wet-mix shotcrete to exterior of tank wall in layers of at least 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick for a minimum total thickness of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Apply shotcrete when temperature range is at least 35 deg F (2 deg C) and rising to a maximum temperature of 95 deg F (35 deg C). Do not apply shotcrete if temperature is 40 deg F (5 deg C) and falling.
3. Floor: Reinforced, cast-in-place concrete. Slope floor 1.0 to 1.5 percent from highest point to water outlet pipe. Pour monolithically without cold joints and provide mechanical float finish.
4. Dome Roof: Install reinforced, cast-in-place concrete with circumferential prestressing. Place 6-inch (150-mm) waterstop between roof and wall if backfill level is within 6 inches (150 mm) of top of tank wall**.**
   a. Install curb on roof perimeter with at least 6 downspouts spaced 60 degrees and no more than 50 feet (15 m) apart.
5. Flat Slab Roof: Install reinforced, cast-in-place concrete with drop panels and support having reinforced, cast-in-place concrete columns. Place solid neoprene bearing pads and 6-inch (150-mm) waterstop (if backfill level is within 6 inches (150 mm) of top of tank wall) between roof and wall. If voids are present between wall and roof after use of solid bearing pads, fill voids with closed-cell CR pads and soft mastic.
   a. Install curb on roof perimeter with at least 6 downspouts spaced 60 degrees and no more than 50 feet (15 m) apart.
6. Install construction and maintenance hatch near wall **OR** ladder, **as directed**.
7. Install ventilators at highest point of roof. Install others where indicated.

C. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 21 OR Division 22. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Connect tanks to water-distribution piping.
3. Connect drains to storm-drainage piping.
4. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
5. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

D. Surface Preparation Of Steel Tanks
1. Field Cleaning: After erecting tank shell, remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finishes. Remove weld splatter, sharp edges on weld seams, and scabs and slivers by grinding. Remove weld flux, slag, fins, and laminations.

2. Field Surface Preparation: After field cleaning, prepare steel surfaces where shop prime coat has been damaged, according to Specifications listed above for shop cleaning, and remove dust or residue from cleaned surfaces.
3. If surface develops rust before prime coat is applied, repeat field surface preparation.

E. Field Painting
1. Apply paint according to AWWA D102.
2. Prime-Coat Touchup: Apply primer to cleaned areas and where shop finish has been damaged during shipping, handling, and erection. Apply prime coat to a dry film thickness of 3.0 to 5.0 mils (0.08 to 0.13 mm) for tank interior and to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm) for exterior tank and support surfaces.
3. Tank Shell Interior Finish Coats: Apply 2 coats of interior finish paint above bottom ring to a dry film thickness of 4.0 to 5.0 mils (0.1 to 0.13 mm). Apply interior finish paint to surfaces below bottom ring to a dry film thickness of 8.0 to 10.0 mils (0.2 to 0.25 mm).
4. Tank Shell and Steel Support Exterior Coats: Apply intermediate paint to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm). Apply finish paint to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm).
5. Concrete tanks do not require painting **OR** Paint concrete, surface water-storage tanks according to Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
6. Tank Exterior Lettering and Logo, **as directed**, (for all surface water-storage tanks): Apply one coat **OR** two coats, **as directed**, of urethane paint to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm) for each application.
7. Overflow Pipe: Paint pipe exterior that is outside tank and structure as indicated for tank exterior.
8. Exterior Ladders: Paint as indicated for tank shell exterior.
9. Do not paint if ambient temperature is less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or is expected to drop below 40 deg F (5 deg C) in the next 18 hours. Do not paint if temperature of steel surface is higher than 125 deg F (52 deg C). Do not apply paint if surfaces are wet or damp, if precipitation is expected, or if relative humidity will exceed 85 percent. Do not spray paint when wind velocity exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). Maintain at least a 24-hour waiting period between coats. Provide adequate ventilation in tank during painting to maintain clear atmosphere and provide explosion-proof flood lighting and spot lighting.
10. Complete daily painting to allow time for paint to dry before condensation is expected.

F. Surface Water-Storage Tank Appurtenance Installation
1. Install and adjust water-level control valves, piping, and alarms.
2. Install obstruction lighting according to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Install lightning protection according Division 26 Section "Lightning Protection For Structures".
4. Install cathodic protection according to Division 26 Section "Cathodic Protection" and AWWA D104.
5. Install tank heaters according to NFPA 22.

G. Field Quality Control
1. Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field quality-control testing:
   a. Tank Weld Test: Use radiographic method according to AWWA D100. Repair failures and retest.
   b. Leak Test (for welded-steel, surface water-storage tanks): Comply with AWWA D100 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply). Fill tanks with potable water and test for leaks after installation. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
      1) Water will be furnished by the Owner.
   c. Leak Test (for bolted-steel, surface water-storage tanks): Comply with AWWA D103 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply). Fill tanks with potable water and test for leaks after installation. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
      1) Water will be furnished by the Owner.
   d. Leak Test (for concrete, surface water-storage tanks): Comply with AWWA D110, AWWA D115 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply). Fill tanks with

potable water and test for leaks after installation. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

1) Water will be furnished by the Owner.

e. Test and adjust controls and safeties (for all surface water-storage tanks). Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

H. Cleaning

1. Clean interior and exterior of surface water-storage tanks.
2. Disinfect surface water-storage tanks according to AWWA C652 **OR** requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 22 12 19 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 12 23 13	22 33 00 00	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters
22 12 23 13	22 34 00 00	Fuel-Fired, Domestic Water Heaters

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 12 23 26 - FACILITY FUEL-OIL PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for facility fuel-oil piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes fuel-oil, fuel-oil and diesel-fuel-oil, and diesel-fuel-oil distribution systems and the following:
   a. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
   b. Piping and tubing joining materials.
   c. Piping specialties.
   d. Valves.
   e. Vertical, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
   f. Horizontal, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
   g. Containment-dike, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
   h. Insulated, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
   i. Concrete-vaulted, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
   j. Steel, fuel-oil USTs with STI-P3.
   k. Composite, steel, fuel-oil USTs.
   l. Jacketed, steel, fuel-oil USTs.
   m. FRP fuel-oil USTs.
   n. Fuel-oil AST accessories.
   o. Fuel-oil UST accessories.
   p. Fuel-oil storage tank piping specialties.
   q. Fuel-oil storage tank pumps.
   r. Fuel-transfer pumps.
   s. Fuel maintenance system.
   t. Liquid-level gage system.
   u. Leak-detection and monitoring system.
   v. Mechanical sleeve seals.
   w. Grout.
   x. Concrete bases.

C. Definitions
1. AST: Aboveground storage tank.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
5. FPM: Vinylidene fluoride-hexafluoropropylene copolymer rubber.
6. FRP: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic.
7. UST: Underground storage tank.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Maximum Operating-Pressure Ratings: 3-psig (21-kPa) fuel-oil supply pressure at oil-fired appliances.

2. Delegated Design: Design restraint and anchors for fuel-oil piping, ASTs, and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
3. Seismic Performance: Factory-installed support attachments for AST shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
    a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event, **as directed**."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For facility fuel-oil piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For fuel-oil piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    a. Detail fabrication and assembly of anchors and seismic restraints.
    b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
    c. Detail fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, and attachments of the same to building structure.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For ASTs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
    a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
    c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
5. Brazing certificates.
6. Welding certificates.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Operation and Maintenance Data.
9. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
2. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for fuel-oil piping materials, installation, testing, and inspecting.
6. Comply with requirements of the EPA and of state and local authorities having jurisdiction. Include recording of fuel-oil storage tanks and monitoring of tanks and piping.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Lift and support fuel-oil storage tanks only at designated lifting or supporting points, as shown on Shop Drawings. Do not move or lift tanks unless empty.
2. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

3. Store pipes and tubes with protective PE coating to avoid damaging the coating and to protect from direct sunlight.
4. Store PE pipes and valves protected from direct sunlight.

H. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-oil storage tanks and flexible, double-containment piping and related equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Storage Tanks:
      1) Failures include, but are not limited to, the following when used for storage of fuel oil at temperatures not exceeding 150 deg F (66 deg C):
         a) Structural failures including cracking, breakup, and collapse.
         b) Corrosion failure including external and internal corrosion of steel tanks.
      2) Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Final Completion.
   b. Flexible, Double-Containment Piping and Related Equipment:
      1) Failures due to defective materials or workmanship for materials installed together, including piping, dispenser sumps, entry boots, and sump mounting adapters.
      2) Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings
1. See Part 1.3 piping schedule articles for where pipes, tubes, fittings, and joining materials are applied in various services.
2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
   a. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
   b. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for butt and socket welding.
   c. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
   d. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
      1) Material Group: 1.1.
      2) End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
      3) Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
      4) Gasket Materials: Asbestos free, ASME B16.20 metallic, or ASME B16.21 nonmetallic, gaskets compatible with fuel oil.
      5) Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, cadmium-plated steel.
   e. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
      1) Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
3. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**.
   a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, streamlined pattern.
   b. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
      1) Gasket Material: Asbestos free, ASME B16.20, metallic, or ASME B16.21 nonmetallic, gaskets compatible with fuel oil.
      2) Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, cadmium-plated steel.
4. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**.
   a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, streamlined pattern.
   b. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
      1) Copper fittings with long nuts.
      2) Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
      3) Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.

B. Double-Containment Pipe And Fittings
   1. Flexible, Double-Containment Piping: Comply with UL 971.
      a. Pipe Materials: PVDF complying with ASTM D 3222 for carrier pipe with mechanical couplings to seal carrier, and PE pipe complying with ASTM D 4976 for containment piping.
      b. Fiberglass **OR** PE, **as directed**, sumps.
      c. Watertight sump entry boots, pipe adapters with test ports and tubes, coaxial fittings, and couplings.
      d. Minimum Operating Pressure Rating: 10 psig (69 kPa).
      e. Plastic to Steel Pipe Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with plastic end matching or compatible with carrier piping, and steel pipe end complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
      f. Include design and fabrication of double-containment pipe and fitting assemblies with provision for field installation of cable leak-detection system in annular space between carrier and containment piping.
   2. Rigid, Double-Containment Piping: Comply with UL 971.
      a. RTRP: ASTM D 2996 or ASTM D 2997 carrier and containment piping and mechanical couplings to seal carrier and containment piping or individually bonded joints.
         1) Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating for RTRP NPS 2 and NPS 3 (DN 50 and DN 80): 150 psig (1035 kPa).
         2) Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating for RTRP NPS 4 and NPS 6 (DN 100 and DN 150): 125 psig (860 kPa). Compliance with UL 971 is not required for NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger piping.
         3) Fittings: RTRF complying with ASTM D 2996 or ASTM D 2997, and made by RTRP manufacturer; watertight sump entry boots, termination, or other end fittings.
      b. Include design and fabrication of double-containment pipe and fitting assemblies with provision for field installation of cable leak-detection system in annular space between carrier and containment piping.

C. Piping Specialties
   1. Flexible Connectors: Comply with UL 567.
      a. Metallic Connectors:
         1) Listed and labeled for aboveground and underground applications by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
         2) Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze or stainless-steel, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
         3) Minimum Operating Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
         4) End Connections: Socket, flanged, or threaded end to match connected piping.
         5) Maximum Length: 30 inches (762 mm).
         6) Swivel end, 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum operating pressure.
         7) Factory-furnished anode.
      b. Nonmetallic Connectors:
         1) Listed and labeled for underground applications by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
         2) PFTE bellows with woven, flexible, bronze or stainless-steel, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
         3) Minimum Operating Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
         4) End Connections: Socket, flanged, or threaded end to match connected piping.
         5) Maximum Length: 30 inches (762 mm).
         6) Swivel end, 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum operating pressure.
         7) Factory-furnished anode.
   2. Y-Pattern Strainers:
      a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
      b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

c. Strainer Screen: 60 **OR** 80, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

3. Basket Strainers:
   a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
   b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
   c. Strainer Screen: 60 **OR** 80, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
   d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. T-Pattern Strainers:
   a. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
   b. End Connections: Grooved ends.
   c. Strainer Screen: 60 **OR** 80, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
   d. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).
5. Manual Air Vents:
   a. Body: Bronze.
   b. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
   c. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
   d. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
   e. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
   f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

D. Joining Materials
1. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for fuel oil.
2. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
3. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F (540 deg C) complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.
4. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.

E. Manual Fuel-Oil Shutoff Valves
1. See valve schedule in Part 1.3 for where each valve type is applied in various services.
2. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller for Liquid Service: Comply with UL 842.
   a. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
   b. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
   c. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
   d. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in the valve schedule.
   e. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
3. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with UL 842.
   a. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
   b. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
   c. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in the valve schedule.
   d. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
4. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   b. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
   c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   d. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
   e. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.

f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
h. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

5. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   b. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
   c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   d. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
   e. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
   f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
   g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
   h. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
6. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   b. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
   c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   d. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
   e. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
   f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
   g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
   h. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

F. Specialty Valves
1. Pressure Relief Valves: Comply with UL 842.
   a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Body: Brass, bronze, or cast steel.
   c. Springs: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
   d. Seat and Seal: Nitrile rubber.
   e. Orifice: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
   f. Factory-Applied Finish: Baked enamel.
   g. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   h. Relief Pressure Setting: 60 psig (414 kPa).
2. Oil Safety Valves: Comply with UL 842.
   a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Body: Brass, bronze, or cast steel.
   c. Springs: Stainless steel.
   d. Seat and Diaphragm: Nitrile rubber.
   e. Orifice: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
   f. Factory-Applied Finish: Baked enamel.
   g. Manual override port.
   h. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 60 psig (414 kPa).
   i. Maximum Outlet Pressure: 3 psig (21 kPa).
3. Emergency Shutoff Valves: Comply with UL 842.
   a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, poppet valve.
   c. Body: ASTM A 126, cast iron.
   d. Disk: FPM.
   e. Poppet Spring: Stainless steel.
   f. Stem: Plated brass.
   g. O-Ring: FPM.
   h. Packing Nut: PTFE-coated brass.
   i. Fusible link to close valve at 165 deg F (74 deg C).

j. Thermal relief to vent line pressure buildup due to fire.
k. Air test port.
l. Maximum Operating Pressure: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).

4. Mechanical Leak Detector: Comply with UL 842.
   a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Body: ASTM A 126, cast iron.
   c. O-Rings: Elastomeric compatible with fuel oil.
   d. Piston and Stem Seals: PTFE.
   e. Stem and Spring: Stainless steel.
   f. Piston Cylinder: Burnished brass.
   g. Indicated Leak Rate: Maximum 3 gph (3 mL/s) at 10 psig (69 kPa).
   h. Leak Indication: Reduced flow.

G. Vertical, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
1. Description:
   a. UL 142, single-wall, vertical, steel tank.
   b. UL 142 and STI F921, **as directed**, double-wall, vertical, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and interstitial space.
2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and maintained temperature up to 150 deg F (66 deg C).

H. Horizontal, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
1. Description:
   a. UL 142, single-wall, horizontal, steel tank.
   b. UL 142 and STI F921, **as directed**, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and interstitial space.
2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with maintained temperature up to 150 deg F (66 deg C).
3. Supports:
   a. Manufacturer's standard structural steel welded to tank.
   b. Manufacturer's standard type and number, steel or cast-iron cradles, for field installation.

I. Containment-Dike, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
1. Description: UL 142 and STI F911, single-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with open or enclosed **OR** enclosed, **as directed**, secondary-containment dike with capacity greater than tank capacity.
2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with maintained temperature up to 150 deg F (66 deg C).

J. Insulated, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
1. Description: UL 142 and UL 2085 **OR** UL 142, UL 2085, and STI F941, **as directed**, thermally insulated and fire-resistant, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and insulation and with interstitial space.
2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel and insulation; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with test temperature according to UL 2085.

K. Concrete-Vaulted, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
1. Description: UL 142 and UL 2085 **OR** UL 142, UL 2085, and STI F941, **as directed**; thermally insulated, fire-resistant and protected, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and insulation and with interstitial space.

2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel and insulation and encased in concrete that will protect from bullets; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with test temperature according to UL 2085.

L. Steel, Fuel-Oil UST With STI-P3
1. Description: UL 58 and STI P3, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with cathodic protection and electrical isolation.
   a. Containment Method: STI-P3, Type I, with primary and secondary walls in contact **OR** Type II, with interstitial space, **as directed**.
2. Construction: Fabricated with welded steel; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing liquids with specific gravity up to 1.1; fabricated for the following loads:
   a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
   b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.
   c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).
3. Corrosion-Protection System: Protect tank and factory-installed piping by engineered and installed corrosion-protection system according to STI P3, with means of monitoring cathodic protection.

M. Composite, Steel, Fuel-Oil UST
1. Description: UL 58, double-wall, horizontal, composite tank; with coating complying with UL 1746 and STI F894.
   a. Containment Method: STI F894, Type I, with primary and secondary walls in contact **OR** Type II, with interstitial space, **as directed**.
2. Construction: Fabricated with welded steel and factory coating according to UL 1746 and STI F894; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing liquids with specific gravity up to 1.1; fabricated for the following loads:
   a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
   b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.
   c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).

N. Jacketed, Steel, Fuel-Oil UST
1. Description: Jacketed, horizontal, steel tank; complying with UL 58, and with plastic or fiberglass jacket and corrosion-protection system according to UL 1746 and STI F922, **as directed**.
2. Construction: Tank fabricated with welded carbon steel, and jacket fabricated with plastic or fiberglass and vacuum-sealed interstitial space; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and with integral leak-detection device. Tank fabricated for the following loads:
   a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
   b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.
   c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).

O. FRP Fuel-Oil UST
1. Description: Horizontal, FRP UST; UL 1316, double wall, with interstitial space and integral, hydrostatic, leak-detection and monitoring system, **as directed**.
2. Construction: Fabricated with fiberglass-reinforced polyester resins; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure; fabricated for the following loads:
   a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
   b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.

c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).

P. Shop Painting Of AST
1. Apply manufacturer's standard prime coat to exterior steel surface of AST and supports.
2. Prepare exterior steel surface of AST and tank supports.
3. Shop Cleaning: After fabrication, blast clean according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, **as directed**.
4. After cleaning, remove dust or residue from cleaned surfaces.
5. If surface develops rust before prime coat is applied, repeat surface preparation.
6. Apply manufacturer's standard prime coat to shop-cleaned, dry surface same day as surface preparation.
7. Apply manufacturer's standard two-component, epoxy finish coats.

Q. Fuel-Oil AST Accessories
1. Tank Manholes (for horizontal tanks and some vertical tanks): 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed; centered on top of tank.
2. Tank Manholes (for vertical tanks): 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed; on top and at side of tank.
3. For Horizontal Tanks: Threaded pipe connection fittings on top of tank, for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.
4. For Vertical Tanks: Threaded pipe connection fittings on top or sides of tank as indicated, for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.
5. Striker Plates: Inside tank, on bottom below fill, vent, sounding, gage, and other tube openings.
6. Lifting Lugs: For handling and installation.
7. Ladders (for horizontal tanks and some vertical tanks): Carbon-steel ladder inside tank, anchored to top and bottom, and located as indicated. Include reinforcement of tank at bottom of ladder.
8. Ladders (for vertical tanks): Carbon-steel ladder outside tank, anchored to top and side wall. Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for exterior steel ladder.
   a. Cage: Include welded steel cage around ladders for tanks 20 feet (6 m) high or higher.
9. Supply Tube: Extension of supply piping fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
10. Sounding and Gage Tubes: Extension of fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).

R. Fuel-Oil UST Accessories
1. Tank Manholes: 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed, with extension collar; for access to inside of tank.
2. Steel Tank Masonry Supports: Two 6-by-6-by-3/8-inch (150-by-150-by-10-mm) steel angles, 72 inches (1800 mm) long, located longitudinally on tank on each side of manholes and continuously welded in place.
3. Threaded pipe connection fittings on top of tank for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging, in locations and of sizes indicated. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.
4. Striker Plates: Inside tank, on bottom below fill, vent, sounding, gage, and other tube openings.
5. Lifting Lugs: For handling and installation.
6. Ladders: Carbon-steel ladder inside tank, anchored to top and bottom. Include reinforcement of tank at bottom of ladder.
7. Supply Tube: Extension of supply piping fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
8. Sounding and Gage Tubes: Extension of fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
9. Containment Sumps: Fiberglass **OR** PE, **as directed**, with sump base, add-on extension pieces as required, sump top, lid, and gasket-seal joints. Include sump entry boots for pipe penetrations through sidewalls.

10. Sump Entry Boots: Two-part pipe fitting for field assembly and of size required to fit over pipe. Include gaskets shaped to fit sump sidewall, sleeves, seals, and clamps as required for liquid-tight pipe penetrations.
11. Anchor Straps: Storage tank manufacturer's standard anchoring system, with straps, strap-insulating material, cables and turnbuckles, of strength at least one and one-half times maximum uplift force of empty tank without backfill in place.
12. Filter Mat: Geotextile woven or spun filter fabric, in 1 or more layers, for minimum total weight of 3 oz./sq. yd. (101.7 g/sq. m).
13. Overfill Prevention Valves: Factory fabricated or shop or field assembled from manufacturer's standard components. Include drop tube, cap, fill nozzle adaptor, check valve mechanism or other devices, and vent if required to restrict flow at 95 percent of tank capacity and to provide complete shutoff of filling at 98 **OR** 99, **as directed**, percent of tank capacity.

S. Fuel-Oil Storage Tank Piping Specialties
1. Fitting Materials: Cast iron, malleable iron, brass, or corrosion-resistant metal; suitable for fuel-oil service.
   a. Surface, Flush-Mounted Fittings: Waterproof and suitable for truck traffic.
   b. Aboveground-Mounted Fittings: Weatherproof.
2. Spill-Containment Fill Boxes: Flush mounting, with drainage feature to drain oil into tank, threaded fill-pipe connection, and wrench operation.
3. Fill Boxes: Flush mounting, with threaded fill-pipe connection and wrench operation.
4. Locking Fill Boxes: Flush mounting, with locking-type inner fill cap for standard padlock and threaded fill-pipe connection.
5. Supply and Sounding Drop Tubes: Fuel-oil supply piping or fitting, inside tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above bottom of tank, and with end cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
6. Pipe Adapters and Extensions: Compatible with piping and fittings.
7. Suction Strainers and Check Valves: Bronze or corrosion-resistant metal components.
8. Foot Valves and Antisiphon Valves: Poppet-type, bronze or corrosion-resistant metal components.
9. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.
10. Metal Manholes: 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter frame and cover. Furnish manhole units of adequate size for access to fittings if size is not indicated.
11. Monitoring Well Caps: Locking pipe plug and manhole.

T. Submersible Fuel-Oil Pumps
1. Description: Comply with UL 79, UL 87, and UL 343.
   a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Impeller: Turbine.
   c. Housing and Volute: Cast iron.
   d. Bearings: Bronze, self-lubricating.
   e. Seals: Mechanical.
   f. Shaft: Polished steel.
   g. Suspension Piping: Telescoping to accommodate tank diameter and depth of bury.
   h. Base: Steel.
   i. Pressure Relief: Built in.
   j. Discharge Check Valve: Built in.
   k. Drive: Direct, close coupled.
2. Controls: Pump controller panel complying with UL 353 and UL 508C and with interlock and terminals for connections to fuel-oil-burning equipment **OR** diesel-driven fire pumps **OR** diesel-driven emergency generators **OR** diesel-fuel-oil dispenser, **as directed**.
   a. Run pumps to maintain minimum manifold pressure with outdoor-air temperature less than 60 deg F (16 deg C).

b. Run pumps on seven-day schedule.
c. Stage pumps on pressure at a common supply manifold.
d. Alternate pumps to equalize run time.
e. Alarm motor failure.
f. Manual reset dry-run protection. Stop pumps if fuel level falls below pump suction.
g. Deenergize and alarm pump locked rotor condition.
h. Alarm open circuit, high and low voltage.
i. Indicating lights for power on, run, and off normal conditions.
j. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
   1) Start/stop pump set when required by schedule, fuel-fired appliance operation, day tank level control, or weather conditions.
   2) Operating status.
   3) Alarm off-normal status.

3. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
   a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
   b. Thermal-Overload Protection: Motor-winding temperature sensor.
   c. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.

U. Simplex Fuel-Oil Transfer Pumps
1. Description: Comply with UL 343, and HI M109.
   a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Type: Positive-displacement, rotary type.
   c. Impeller: Steel gear with crescent **OR** Carbon vane, **as directed**.
   d. Housing: Cast-iron foot mounted.
   e. Bearings: Bronze, self-lubricating.
   f. Shaft: Polished steel.
   g. Seals: Mechanical.
   h. Base: Steel.
   i. Pressure Relief: Built in.
   j. Discharge Check Valve: Built in.
2. Drive: V-belt with guard; gear reducer; or direct, close coupled **OR** V-belt with guard **OR** Gear reducer **OR** Direct, close coupled, **as directed**.
3. Controls:
   a. Run pump to maintain minimum manifold pressure with outdoor-air temperature less than 60 deg F (16 deg C).
   b. Run pump on seven-day schedule.
   c. Alarm motor failure.
   d. Manual reset dry-run protection. Stop pump if fuel level falls below pump suction.
   e. Deenergize and alarm pump locked rotor condition.
   f. Alarm open circuit, high and low voltage.
   g. Indicating lights for power on, run, and off normal conditions.
   h. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
      1) Start/stop pump set when required by schedule, fuel-fired appliance operation, day tank level control, or weather conditions.
      2) Operating status.
      3) Alarm off-normal status.
4. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.

V. Duplex **OR** Triplex, **as directed**, Fuel-Oil Transfer Pump Sets
1. Description: Comply with HI M109.
a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Type: Positive-displacement, rotary type.
c. Impeller: Steel gear with crescent **OR** Carbon vane, **as directed**.
d. Housing: Cast-iron foot mounted.
e. Bearings: Bronze, self-lubricating.
f. Shaft: Polished steel.
g. Seals: Mechanical.
h. Base: Steel.
i. Pressure Relief: Built in.
j. Discharge Check Valve: Built in.
2. Drive: V-belt with guard, gear reducer, or direct close coupled **OR** V-belt with guard **OR** Gear reducer **OR** Direct close coupled, **as directed**.
3. Controls:
a. Run pumps to maintain minimum manifold pressure with outdoor-air temperature less than 60 deg F (16 deg C).
b. Run pumps on seven-day schedule.
c. Stage pumps on pressure at a common supply manifold.
d. Alternate pumps to equalize run time.
e. Alarm motor failure.
f. Manual reset dry-run protection. Stop pumps if fuel level falls below pump suction.
g. Deenergize and alarm pump locked rotor condition.
h. Alarm open circuit, high and low voltage.
i. Indicating lights for power on, run, and off normal conditions.
j. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
1) Start/stop pump set when required by schedule, fuel-fired appliance operation, day tank level control, or weather conditions.
2) Operating status.
3) Alarm off-normal status.
4. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
5. Piping Furnished with Pumps: Steel with ferrous fittings and threaded or welded joints.
6. Strainers Furnished with Pumps: Duplex, basket type with corrosion-resistant-metal-screen baskets.

W. Fuel Maintenance System
1. Description: Factory fabricated and wired fuel maintenance system for fuel-oil filtration; with enclosure, filter, fuel-oil pump, and controls; FMG approved, listed, and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R, painted steel containing pumps, filters, accessories, and controls. Hinged door on the front of enclosure.

b. Pump: Comply with HI M109, steel-gear-with-crescent, positive-displacement, direct-coupled, rotary-type.
c. Materials: Cast-iron housing; bronze bearings; steel shaft; mechanical seals; and built-in, pressure relief bypass valve.
d. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
   1) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
   2) Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
e. Piping: Steel with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints or wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
f. Multistage Filter: Spin-on, replaceable types.
   1) Stage 1: 100-mesh strainer.
   2) Stage 2: Centrifuge to separate particulates and water from oil.
   3) Stage 3: Coalescing water and particulate filter.
   4) Stage 4: 30-micron particulate removal.
   5) Stage 5: 10-micron particulate removal.
   6) Stage 6: Minimum 99.5 percent water removal with see-through bowl and water-sensor probe.
   7) Stage 7: 1.5 **OR** 3, **as directed**,-micron particulate removal.
g. Multiple-Tank Manifolds:
   1) Manifold fabricated of Schedule 80, black steel pipe and threaded nipples for two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, tanks.
   2) Solenoid valves for supply and return piping to each tank.
   3) Strainers for each tank supply connection.
h. Programmable Logic Controller:
   1) Alarm on maximum 15-in. Hg (51-kPa) vacuum at pump suction indicating plugged filter.
   2) Alarm on high water level in filter.
   3) Alarm leak in enclosure.
   4) Touch screen; with minimum 2-line, 20-character, backlit, LCD display.
   5) Controller strip heater with thermostat.
i. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
   1) Start/stop system when required by schedule.
   2) Operating status.
   3) Alarm off-normal status.

X. Liquid-Level Gage System
1. Description: Calibrated, liquid-level gage system complying with UL 180 with floats **OR** UL 1238 with probes, **as directed**, or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.
2. Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms, fuel indicator with registration in gallons (liters), and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
3. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.

Y. Leak-Detection And Monitoring System
1. Cable and Sensor System: Comply with UL 1238.
   a. Calibrated, leak-detection and monitoring system with probes and other sensors and remote alarm panel for fuel-oil storage tanks and fuel-oil piping.
   b. Include fittings and devices required for testing.
   c. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.
   d. Calibrated, liquid-level gage complying with UL 180 with floats **OR** UL 1238 with probes, **as directed,** or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.

e. Remote Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms, fuel indicator with registration in gallons (liters), and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
f. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.

2. Hydrostatic System: Comply with UL 1238.
a. Calibrated, leak-detection and monitoring system with brine antifreeze solution, reservoir sensor, and electronic control panel to monitor leaks in inner and outer tank walls.
b. Include fittings and devices required for testing.
c. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.
d. Calibrated, liquid-level gage complying with UL 180 with floats **OR** UL 1238 with probes, **as directed**, or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.
e. Remote Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms, fuel indicator with registration in gallons (liters), and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
f. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.

Z. Fuel Oil
1. Fuel Oil: ASTM D 396, Grade No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**.
2. Diesel Fuel Oil: ASTM D 975, Grade Low Sulfur **OR** No. 1-D, special-purpose **OR** No. 2-D, general-purpose, **as directed**, high volatility.

AA. Sleeves
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

BB. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

CC. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to fit around pipe or tube and with OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

DD. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.

a. Characteristics: Posthardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

EE. Labeling And Identifying
1. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (762 mm) deep; colored yellow.

FF. Concrete Manholes
1. Precast Concrete Manhole Sections: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), base and concentric-cone sections with integral ladder or steps.
2. Cast-Iron Frame and Cover: Heavy-duty, water-resistant, cast-iron manhole frame, gasket, and bolted cover; 24-inch- (609-mm-) diameter, inside opening dimension; 8-inch (203-mm) frame riser height.

GG. Source Quality Control
1. Pressure test and inspect fuel-oil storage tanks, after fabrication and before shipment, according to ASME and the following:
a. Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**, Single-Wall Steel ASTs: UL 142.
b. Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**, Double-Wall Steel ASTs: UL 142, STI F921, and STI R931.
c. Horizontal, Containment-Dike, Steel ASTs: UL 142 and STI F911.
d. Horizontal, Concrete-Vaulted **OR** Concrete-Vaulted and Insulated **OR** Insulated, **as directed**, Steel ASTs: UL 142 and UL 2085.
e. Horizontal, Steel USTs with the STI-P3 Corrosion-Protection System: UL 58 and STI P3.
f. Composite **OR** Composite and Jacketed **OR** Jacketed, **as directed**, Steel USTs: UL 58.
g. FRP USTs: UL 1316.
2. Affix standards organization's code stamp.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Preparation
1. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off fuel oil to premises or piping section.
2. Comply with NFPA 30 and NFPA 31 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

C. Outdoor Piping Installation
1. Install underground fuel-oil piping buried at least 18 inches (457 mm) below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
a. If fuel-oil piping is installed with less than 12 inches (305 mm) of cover to finished grade, install in containment piping.
2. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
a. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining, to cover, seal, and protect joints.
b. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer. Review protective coating damage prior to repair.
OR
Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

3. Install double-containment, fuel-oil pipe at a minimum slope of 1 percent downward toward fuel-oil storage tank sump.
4. Install vent pipe at a minimum slope of 2 percent downward toward fuel-oil storage tank sump.
5. Assemble and install entry boots for pipe penetrations through sump sidewalls for liquid-tight joints.
6. Install metal pipes and tubes, fittings, valves, and flexible connectors at piping connections to AST and UST.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction in rigid pipe.
8. Install system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
9. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Install sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
10. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
11. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
12. Install pressure gage on suction **OR** suction and discharge, **as directed**, from each pump. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

D. Indoor Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
3. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping free of sags and bends.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
8. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    a. New Piping:
        1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
        2) Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
        OR
        Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
        3) Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
        OR
        Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
        4) Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
        OR

Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.

5) Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
OR
Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.

6) Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.

9. Existing Piping:
   1) Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
   OR
   Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
   2) Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
   OR
   Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
   3) Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
   OR
   Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.
   4) Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
   OR
   Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
   5) Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
10. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
11. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
12. Comply with requirements for equipment specifications in Division 14 AND Division 21 for roughing-in requirements.
13. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, or utility spaces; above ceilings; below grade or floors; and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
14. Prohibited Locations:
    a. Do not install fuel-oil piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    b. Do not install fuel-oil piping in solid walls or partitions.
15. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
16. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
17. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at final connection to each piece of equipment and elsewhere as indicated. Unions are not required on flanged devices.
18. Do not use fuel-oil piping as grounding electrode.
19. Install Y-pattern **OR** basket **OR** T-pattern, **as directed**, strainer on inlet side of fuel-oil pump.

E. Valve Installation
1. Install manual fuel-oil shutoff valves on branch connections to fuel-oil appliance.
2. Install valves in accessible locations.
3. Protect valves from physical damage.
4. Install metal tag attached with metal chain indicating fuel-oil piping systems.
5. Identify valves as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
6. Install oil safety valves at inlet of each oil-fired appliance.

7. Install pressure relief valves in distribution piping between the supply and return lines.
8. Install one-piece, bronze ball valve with hose end connection at low points in fuel-oil piping.
9. Install manual air vents at high points in fuel-oil piping.
10. Install emergency shutoff valves at dispensers (for systems with fuel-oil or diesel-fuel-oil dispensers).

F. Piping Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
4. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
   a. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
   b. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
6. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
7. Flared Joints: Comply with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench according to fitting manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not overtighten.
8. Fiberglass-Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Fuel-Oil AST Installation
1. Install tank bases and supports.
2. Connect piping and vent fittings.
3. Install ground connections.
4. Install tank leak-detection and monitoring devices.
5. Install steel ASTs according to STI R912.
6. Install insulated and concrete-vaulted, steel ASTs according to STI R942.
7. Fill storage tanks with fuel oil.

H. Fuel-Oil UST Installation
1. Excavate to sufficient depth for a minimum of 3 feet (1 m) of earth cover from top of tank to finished grade. Allow for cast-in-place, concrete-ballast base plus 6 inches (150 mm) of sand or pea gravel between ballast base and tank. Extend excavation at least 12 inches (300 mm) around perimeter of tank.
2. Set tie-down eyelets for hold-down straps in concrete-ballast base and tie to reinforcing steel.
3. Place 6 inches (152 mm) of clean sand or pea gravel on top of concrete-ballast base.
4. Set tank on fill materials and install hold-down straps.
5. Connect piping.
6. Install tank leak-detection and monitoring devices.
7. Install containment sumps.
8. Backfill excavation with clean sand or pea gravel in 12-inch (305-mm) lifts and tamp backfill lift to consolidate.
9. Install filter mat between top of backfill material and earth fill.
10. Install steel USTs with the STI-P3 corrosion-protection system according to STI R821 and STI R891. Protect anodes during tank placement and backfilling operations.

11. Install composite, steel USTs according to STI R913 and STI R891.
12. Install jacketed, steel USTs according to STI R923 and STI R891.
13. Install FRP USTs with FRP hold-down straps, manhole extensions, and manhole risers.
14. Fill storage tanks with fuel oil.

I. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Pipe hanger and support and equipment support materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
2. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Maximum span, 84 inches (2130 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 108 inches (2740 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   c. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
   e. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
   f. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 13 feet (4 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
3. Support vertical steel pipe at each floor and at spacing not greater than 15 feet (4.5 m).
4. Install hangers for horizontal, drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: Maximum span, 60 inches (1524 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 84 inches (2130 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   d. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   e. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 108 inches (2740 mm); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
   f. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
   g. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
5. Support vertical copper tube at each floor and at spacing not greater than 10 feet (3 m).

J. Fuel-Oil Pump Installation
1. Submersible Pumps:
   a. Suspend pumps from supply piping and anchored to bottom of tank.
2. Transfer Pumps:
   a. Install pumps with access space for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, and accessories.
   b. Set pumps on and anchor to concrete base.
3. Install two-piece, full-port ball valves at suction and discharge of pumps.
4. Install mechanical leak-detector valves at pump discharge.
5. Install Y-pattern **OR** basket **OR** T-pattern, **as directed**, strainer on inlet side of simplex fuel-oil pumps.
6. Install check valve on discharge of simplex fuel-oil pumps.
7. Install suction piping with minimum fittings and change of direction.
8. Install vacuum and pressure gage, upstream and downstream respectively, at each pump to measure the differential pressure across the pump. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

K. Fuel Maintenance System Installation
1. Install suction line, with foot valve, at one end of storage tank, 1 inch (25 mm) from the bottom of tank.
2. Install return line at the opposite end of storage tank from suction line.

L. Liquid-Level Gage System Installation
   1. Install liquid-level gage system. Locate panel inside building where indicated.

M. Leak-Detection And Monitoring System Installation
   1. Install leak-detection and monitoring system. Install alarm panel inside building where indicated.
      a. Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks: Install probes **OR** Install probes or use factory-installed integral probes **OR** Use factory-installed integral probes, **as directed**, in interstitial space.
      b. Single-Wall, Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks: Install probes as indicated.
      c. Double-Containment, Fuel-Oil Piping: Install leak-detection sensor probes in fuel-oil storage tank containment sumps and at low points in piping **OR** cable probes in interstitial space of double-containment piping, **as directed**.
      d. Install liquid-level gage.

N. Connections
   1. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
   2. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having threaded pipe connection.
   3. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment having flanged pipe connection.
   4. Connect piping to equipment with ball valve and union. Install union between valve and equipment.
   5. Install flexible piping connectors at final connection to burners or oil-fired appliances that must be moved for maintenance access.

O. Labeling And Identifying
   1. Nameplates, pipe identification, and signs are specified in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
      OR
      Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplates and signs on or near each service regulator, service meter, and earthquake valve.
      a. Text: In addition to identifying unit, distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
   2. Install detectable warning tape directly above fuel-oil piping, 12 inches (304 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (152 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs. Terminate tracer wire in an accessible area, and identify as "tracer wire" for future use with plastic-laminate sign.
      a. Piping: Over underground fuel-oil distribution piping.
      b. Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks: Over edges of each UST.

P. Field Painting Of AST
   1. If shop painting AST, prepare and touch up damaged exterior surface of AST and supports, **as directed**, as specified in "Shop Painting of AST" Article.
   2. If field painting AST, prepare exterior steel surface of AST and tank supports, **as directed**.
   3. Field Cleaning: After fabrication, blast clean according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, **as directed**.
   4. After cleaning, remove dust or residue from cleaned surfaces.
   5. If surfaces develop rust before prime coat is applied, repeat surface preparation.
   6. Prepare surface of AST and supports, **as directed**, and apply painting systems according to specifications in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" for severe **OR** moderate **OR** mild, **as directed**, environment high-gloss **OR** semigloss, **as directed**, finish for ferrous metal.

Q. Field Painting Of Aboveground Piping
   1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for painting interior and exterior fuel-oil piping.

2. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
   a. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
      1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
      2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
      3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
      4) Color: Gray, **as directed**.
3. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
   a. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
      1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive **OR** Quick-drying alkyd, **as directed**, metal primer.
      2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Interior latex matching topcoat.
      3) Topcoat: Interior latex (flat) **OR** (low sheen) **OR** (eggshell) **OR** (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
      4) Color: Gray, **as directed**.
   b. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
      1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive **OR** Quick-drying alkyd, **as directed**, metal primer.
      2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
      3) Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat) **OR** (eggshell) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
      4) Color: Gray, **as directed**.
4. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

R. Concrete Bases
1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
   a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
   b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (457-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
   c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   f. Use 3000-psig (20.7-MPa), **unless directed otherwise**, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

S. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
   a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Tanks: Minimum hydrostatic or compressed-air test pressures for fuel-oil storage tanks that have not been factory tested and do not bear the ASME code stamp or a listing mark acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
      1) Single-Wall Tanks: Minimum 3 psig (20.7 kPa) and maximum 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
      2) Double-Wall Tanks:
         a) Inner Tanks: Minimum 3 psig (20.7 kPa) and maximum 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
         b) Interstitial Space: Minimum 3 psig (20.7 kPa) and maximum 5 psig (34.5 kPa), or 5.3-in. Hg (18-kPa) vacuum.

3) Where vertical height of fill and vent pipes is such that the static head imposed on the bottom of the tank is greater than 10 psig (69 kPa), hydrostatically test the tank and fill and vent pipes to a pressure equal to the static head thus imposed.
4) Maintain the test pressure for one hour.

b. Piping: Minimum hydrostatic or pneumatic test-pressures measured at highest point in system:
1) Fuel-Oil Distribution Piping: Minimum 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
2) Fuel-Oil, Double-Containment Piping:
a) Carrier Pipe: Minimum 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
b) Containment Conduit: Minimum 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for minimum 60 minutes.
3) Suction Piping: Minimum 20-in. Hg (68 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
4) Isolate storage tanks if test pressure in piping will cause pressure in storage tanks to exceed 10 psig (69 kPa).

c. Inspect and test fuel-oil piping according to NFPA 31, "Tests of Piping" Paragraph; and according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

d. Test liquid-level gage for accuracy by manually measuring fuel-oil levels at not less than three **OR** four **OR** five, **as directed**, different depths while filling tank and checking against gage indication.

e. Test leak-detection and monitoring system for accuracy by manually operating sensors and checking against alarm panel indication.

f. Start fuel-oil transfer pumps to verify for proper operation of pump and check for leaks.

g. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

h. Bleed air from fuel-oil piping using manual air vents.

3. Fuel-oil piping and equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

T. Outdoor Piping Schedule

1. Underground fuel-oil piping shall be one of the following. Size indicated is carrier-pipe size.
a. Flexible, double-containment piping.
b. Rigid, double-containment piping.

2. Underground fuel-oil-tank fill and vent piping shall be one of the following:
a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

4. Aboveground fuel-oil piping shall be one of the following:
a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.
b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.
c. Annealed **OR** Drawn, **as directed**,-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

U. Indoor Piping Schedule

1. Aboveground fuel-oil piping shall be one of the following:
a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15) and Smaller: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints **OR** Annealed-temper copper pipe, wrought copper fittings, and brazed or flared joints, **as directed**.
b. NPS 5/8 to NPS 2 (DN 18 to DN 50): Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints **OR** Drawn temper copper pipe, wrought copper fittings, and brazed joints, **as directed**.

c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel pipe, steel fittings, and welded or flanged joints **OR** Drawn temper copper pipe, wrought copper fittings, and brazed or flanged joints, **as directed**.
d. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
e. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
f. Annealed-temper copper tube, brass fittings, and flared joints.
g. Drawn-temper copper tubing, copper fittings, and brazed joints.

V. Aboveground Manual Fuel-Oil Shutoff Valve Schedule
1. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
a. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
b. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger shall be one of the following:
a. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
b. Bronze, nonlubricated **OR** lubricated, **as directed**, plug valve.
3. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
a. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
b. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 22 12 23 26

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 12 23 26a - UNDERGROUND STORAGE TANKS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of underground storage tanks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Intent of Work
1. It is the intent of this specification to ensure that the work, as completed, shall meet or exceed all applicable codes, ordinances, rules and regulations of every authority having jurisdiction in the area.
2. The installation shall include all necessary equipment, controls, valves and fittings, excavation, backfill as described or called for on the plans. In some cases, the Contractor shall prepare the plans. In any case, the Contractor shall obtain all permits at its expense.
3. The Contractor shall install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Where drawings (if any) and specification conflict with manufacturer's recommendations, it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to bring this to the attention of the Owner before installation.
4. The overall intent shall be that the Contractor shall provide everything required to make a complete and operational job in every respect.

C. Codes And Standards
1. Reference is to the latest edition of the code or standard unless otherwise noted. Comply with the latest EPA requirements.
2. The codes and standards referred to are the minimum standards. Where the requirements of these specifications and the accompanying drawings (if any) exceed those of the codes and standards, the drawings and specifications shall supersede.
3. The installation shall conform to provisions of the NFPA requirement with latest amendments.
4. The entire installation including all equipment shall conform to The Occupational and Safety Health Act of 1970, and all EPA regulations.

D. Visit To Site: Bidders are advised to visit the site and carefully examine the existing conditions before submitting bids, as no allowance will be made for lack of knowledge of existing conditions where such conditions may reasonably be determined by observation.

E. Permits
1. Obtain all permits required for the installation of this work and pay all fees in connection therewith. Permits and fees involved in removal of any item from the site shall be included.
2. Provide copies of inspection and testing certificates from all agencies and authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Layout Basis
1. The layout, which must be stamped by an Engineer registered in the State in which the Project is located, is based upon the use of particular items of equipment, identified by manufacturer's make and model number. Dimensions, arrangements, efficiency and service connections required for these particular items have been considered in making the layout. Contractor shall submit any deviations proposed with its bid.
2. The Contractor may use the equipment of any manufacturer listed as approved for substitution provided they have the proper connections, capacities, efficiency and dimensions. Variances from the requirements stated herein shall be sustainable reasons for disapproval of the submitted equipment. All costs arising from variances in substituted items shall be paid for by the Contractor.

3. Equivalent products by other manufacturers must be submitted to the the Owner for prior approval at least ten (10) days prior to bid date.

G. Submittals
1. All submittals shall bear a stamp or notation indicating that the Contractor has reviewed the submittals for compliance with drawings, governing authorities and specifications.
2. All submittals shall bear sufficient notations to clearly indicate the specific make, model number, accessories, capacities, options, and specification paragraph numbers.
3. All submittals shall indicate complete compliance with all performance and specification requirements as herein specified and/or indicated or shall specifically list any exceptions. Exceptions shall be subject to approval by the the Owner.
4. The review (by the the Owner) of equipment does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for compliance with the contract documents or authorities as specified.
5. Contractor shall coordinate electrical characteristics of equipment with electrical specifications and the available power characteristics.
6. Materials requiring shop drawing submittals shall not be installed prior to shop drawings being reviewed by the the Owner. The Contractor agrees that failure to conform to the above may result in removal of all installed materials that have been disapproved from the project. Installation of specified equipment will be mandatory. Removal of disapproved equipment shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.
7. Submit the following for review via shop drawings (to be approved or disapproved):
    a. Xerxes or approved equal, double wall (do not unload manually). Size and capacity.
    b. Bury depth.
    c. Bed and backfill (not over 7'-0" traffic and no traffic).
    d. Double walls when continuous vacuum pump and monitor are used require a maximum burial depth of three (3) feet from tank top to grade.
    e. When not subjected to traffic loads, use 24" backfill or 12" minimum backfill plus 4" re-bar reinforced concrete on top.
    f. When subjected to traffic loads, use 36" backfill or 18" minimum backfill plus 6" of re-bar reinforced concrete.
    g. If tank is 12'-0" in diameter (actually, 7'-11" is manufactured for large gallonage) then, no traffic shall be provided with 42" minimum cover, or 38" backfill plus 4" re-bar reinforced concrete. With traffic, use 38" backfill plus 6" of asphalt or 6" of re-bar reinforced concrete.
    h. Monitoring fittings, fiberglass reservoir, vapor sensor 4" tank fittings, tank fill tube insert, venting, stage two vapor recovery system, manway and manway extensions, manway risers, site monitoring wells, barricades, installation check list, hydrostatic tank monitoring.
    i. Job site safety precautions.
    j. Reservoir fiberglass sensor.
    k. Reservoir leak detection.
    l. Electronic control panels, sensor circuit, transmission contact switch power source circuit, alarm bell, alarm bell silence button, control panel false alarms, etc.
    m. Piping sump bottom, usually 28 3/8" x 30".
    n. Flex connectors to piping.
    o. Unions, nipples, manway cover, FRP fitting, opening for stage II vapor recovery line if required.
    p. 3" pipe sump fitting.
    q. When using piping sump sensor equal to Owens Corning fiberglass model PSS, submit system including electrical power supply and signal wiring.
    r. Control panel equal to Owens Corning fiberglass model SB-0011B (single circuit) or SB-0014B (4 circuit) as applicable.
    s. Fiberglass pipe and fittings equal to "Ameron" type Dualoy 3000/L pressure rated and with chemically resistant epoxy resin for the service intended. The Dualoy 3000/L shall be a secondary containment system. No other product piping will be acceptable.

H. Guarantee

1. Contractor shall guarantee that if any materials or workmanship covered by these specifications proves defective within one (1) year, such defects shall be corrected by the Contractor at once without charge to the Owner.

1.2 PRODUCTS:

A. Single-Wall Fiberglass Underground Storage Tanks
   1. The tank shall comply with the following governing standards:
      a. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) Standard 1316. A UL certification plate shall be attached to each tank.
      b. National Sanitation Foundation Standard, NSF Standard 61.
      c. ANSI/AWWA D120-02 Thermosetting Fiberglass-Reinforced Plastic Tanks.
      d. Military Specification No. MIL-T-52777(A)
   2. The Contractor shall provide and install the "fiberglass" underground storage tanks. Tanks shall be as manufactured by Xerxes Corporation, Minneapolis, MN or approved equal as judged by the Owner. Follow manufacturer's instructions for installation and testing.
   3. Loading Conditions: Tank shall meet the following design criteria:
      a. Internal Load: Tank shall be designed to withstand a 5-psig air-pressure test with 5:1 safety factor. When tank is designed for on-site testing, contractor shall individually test tank for leakage prior to installation. Maximum test pressure is 5 psig (3 psig for a 12-foot diameter tank).
      b. Vacuum Test: Tanks 10-foot diameter and smaller shall be designed to withstand a vacuum test to 11.5 inches of mercury.
      c. Surface Loads: Tank shall withstand surface H-20 axle loads when properly installed according to tank manufacturer`s current Installation Manual and Operating Guidelines.
      d. External Hydrostatic Pressure: Tank shall be capable of being buried in ground with 7 feet of overburden over the top of the tank, the hole fully flooded and a safety factor of 5:1 against general buckling.
      e. Tank shall support accessory equipment- such as internal pump platforms, drop/fill tubes, submersible pumps and ladders- when installed according to tank manufacturer`s current Installation Manual and Operating Guidelines.
   4. Product Storage:
      a. Tank shall be capable of storing water products with specific gravity up to 1.1.
      b. Tank shall be vented to atmospheric pressure.
      c. Tank shall be capable of storing products identified in the manufacturer`s current standard limited warranty.
   5. Materials:
      a. Tank shall be manufactured with 100% resin and glass-fiber reinforcement No sand fillers.
      b. The laminate materials used in the internal coating system of a portable water tank shall conform to the requirements of NSF Standard 61.
      c. Tank Dimensions: as directed by the Owner.
   6. Manways (Required for Potable Water Tanks): Shall be flanged and 22-inch I.D. **OR** 30-inch I.D (for larger tanks), **as directed,** complete with gasket, bolting hardware and cover. Optional manway extensions shall be FRP.

B. Double-Wall Fiberglass Underground Storage Tanks
   1. The Contractor shall provide and install the "fiberglass" underground storage tanks of the specified volume and diameter.
   2. The tank shall be of fiberglass. Tank laminates shall be constructed of 100% resin and fiberglass reinforcements without sand fillers. Ribs are to be integrally cast into tank body. Tanks shall bear the listing mark of Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. Tank shall have an annular space between the primary and secondary shell walls to allow for free flow and containment of all leaked product from primary tank. This space shall be filled at the factory with a brine solution for hydrostatic monitoring. Tanks shall be as manufactured by Xerxes Corporation, Minneapolis, MN or approved equal as judged by the Owner.

3. The tank shall comply with the following governing standards:
   a. ASTM Standard Document No. 4021-81
   b. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. (UL.) File #MH-9061 (N) for underground storage of flammable liquids. A UL certification plate shall be attached to each tank.
   c. Military Specification No. MIL-T-52777(A)
   d. Factory Mutual Systems approval J.I. IG4AO.AF
   e. National Sanitation Foundation, Standard 14
   f. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA-30), (NFPA-30A) Flammable and Combustible Liquid Code and (NFPA-31) Standard for Installation of Oil Burning Equipment.
4. The tank shall be capable of the following loading conditions:
   a. Internal load: Tank shall withstand 5 psi air pressure test with 5 to 1 safety factor. Contractor shall test prior to installation as this is to test for leakage. Maximum test pressure is 5 psi.
   b. Vacuum Test: Every tank shall be tested to 11.5 inches (primary tank) and 9.5 inches (secondary tank) mercury vacuum by the tank manufacturer to assure structural integrity.
   c. Surface Loads: Tank shall withstand surface H-20 axle load when properly installed according to current manufacturer's installation instruction (32,000 lbs.).
   d. External hydrostatic pressure: Tank shall withstand 7' of overburden with the hole fully flooded with 7:1 safety factor against buckling.
5. Provide glass fiber-reinforced plastic straps for the tank shown. Provide number and location of straps as specified by the manufacturer. Each strap shall be capable of withstanding the buoyancy load of 25,000 lbs. for 8' tank diameter. Straps shall be standard as supplied by the tank manufacturer. A concrete pad or concrete deadman must be used with anchor straps as recommended by tank manufacturer.
6. The Contractor shall provide fiberglass piping sump with fittings as indicated. The piping sump shall be manufactured by Xerxes Corporation or approved equal and supplied with tanks.
   a. The piping sump shall be installed so that it is suitable for monitoring the double-wall piping system and containment of its product. Piping sump shall be located on tanks 22" minimum manway.
7. All tank fittings shall be standard (proofed tight) as supplied by the tank manufacturer. The tank shall have an opening for one each of the following:
   a. Fill/Manual Gauging
   b. Vent/Overfill/Stage One Vapor Recovery
   c. Pump (pressure system) or supply and return (suction system)
   d. In tank gauging automatic inventory control
   e. Others as shown or required by the operating agency
8. The tank shall have a factory filled brine interstitial and reservoir for continuous monitoring of both inner and outer walls.
9. Tank to be installed per manufacturer installation instructions which will be inspected as it progresses.

C. Spill Protection
   1. Universal model 70CD, or approved equal, spill containment shall be used as containment basin for spills during filling. A manual valve, if so required, shall be used to return any spilled product back to tank.

D. Overfill Prevention
   1. Universal model 37, or approved equal, float valve is to be used for overfill prevention. The automatic shut off device must stop the flow of product being delivered when tank is 90% full. Access must be provided.

E. Stage One Vapor Recovery
   1. Stage one vapor recovery is incorporated into the access assembly of the overfill prevention access way. See drawing for details. (Less than 10,000 gales per month through flow)

F. Stage Two Vapor Recover
1. Piping for stage two vapor recovery will be installed for future use. Required for gasoline motor fuel only. (More than 10,000 gales per month through flow)

G. Tank Trim
1. Surface manholes shall have all cast iron rim and minimum 10" galvanized steel skirt. Tank trim shall have Universal Valve.

H. Submersible Turbine Pump Specifications
1. General Pump Specifications: The pump shall be designed to pump gasoline, diesel, kerosene and jet fuel. The entire pumping assembly shall have UL listing and shall meet all requirements of UL79. The pump discharge head and manifold assembly shall be manufactured from ASTM A 48 Class 30 grey iron. The pump shall be available in 1/3, 3/4, and 1-1/2 hp sizes and shall be manufactured to the proper length as determined by the tank diameter, type of tank, and bury depth. The pump motor shall have a thermal over current overload protector with automatic reset. The pump motor assembly shall be clearly marked with pertinent information including Model, Horsepower, Voltage, Phase, and Manufacturer. The pump motor shall be a permanent split phase capacitor type, and shall incorporate a 15 mfd capacitor. The pumping unit shall not incorporate any flexible diaphragms and all sealing shall be accomplished with "o" ring or UL recognized fiber gaskets. The pump shall have a removable intake screen with openings no greater than 3/32 inch. The pump shall be manufactured by FE Petro, Inc., McFarland, WI. or approved equal as judged by the the Owner.
2. Installation and Maintenance Specifications: The pump shall have a two-wire field connection and an easy access ground wire terminal, and shall incorporate a wire seal plug which will accommodate three wires. The pump shall incorporate a port for line pressure testing that shall be sealed with a 1/4 NPT pipe plug. The pump unit shall have a fully extractable head in order to permit removal of the pump motor assembly without disturbing the discharge piping or the electrical wiring. The product in the pipelines shall be held in place by a line check valve that shall have a minimum sealing of 170 lbs when the pump is not running. The line check valve shall be independent of the removable head and shall be easily accessible. The removal of the extractable portion of the pump shall not disturb product in the pipelines downstream of the check valve. During the removal of the extractable portion of the pump, product contained in the discharge manifold of the pump shall drain automatically into the storage tank. The pump motor shall be interchangeable by horsepower with different manufacturers' product.
3. Operation Specifications: The pump shall have an air/vapor elimination system that returns air or vapors to the underground storage tank through a tube discharging near the top of the pump motor assembly. The pump unit shall contain a built-in expansion relief valve that relieves pressure above pumping pressure but below 50 psi. The pump motor shall utilize the product being pumped for lubrication of the motor bearings and for cooling the stator, and this fluid shall discharge into the underground storage tank at the top of the motor. The pump shall have siphon capability built into the pump as standard.

I. Piping System
1. All piping fittings and adhesives shall be UL listed made of fiberglass double wall. Pipe shall be in compliance with ASTM D 2996 and classified by designation code RTRP-11AF-3111. Pipe shall be filament wind of continuous glass filament. Pipe must have a minimum bend radius of 50 feet on 2" primary (80 feet on 3" secondary) to allow settling of tank. Pipe shall have maximum tensile loads of 1160 lbs, compressive loads 2210 lbs at 75 degrees Fahrenheit on 2" primary. 3" pipe shall have tensile load of 2020 lbs at 75 degrees and compressive loads of 3850 lbs. Pipe to be factory proof tested at 1000 psig-2", 700 psig-3". Pipe shall be Smith Fiberglass Red thread II, or approved equal as judged by the Owner.
2. Vent piping shall not have secondary containment. Vent shall not be sloped less than 1/4" per foot downward to tank.
3. Product piping shall have secondary containment. Product piping shall not be sloped less than 1/8" per foot downward toward tank.
4. All piping must slope back toward tank.

5. All piping must be installed as per manufacturer installation instructions. the Owner shall monitor each installation daily.

J. Leak Detection
1. Tank shall have a Pullulert FD241RRA, or approved equal, float probe mounted on the brine filled hydrostatic reservoir. The system shall monitor both the inner and outer walls of the tank.
   a. Alarm Conditions:
      1) Hydrocarbons in hydrostatic reservoir
      2) A loss of fluid in reservoir
2. Piping shall have a Pollulert FD241RRA, or approved equal, float probe mounted in the piping sump. System shall monitor the piping sump compartment that has to be designed to catch any leaked product from the primary piping system. This probe shall distinguish the difference between water and hydrocarbons and alarm on any one or both conditions.
3. Remote monitoring piping sumps shall be installed only if piping can not be sloped toward tank. The Contractor shall use as many remote monitoring piping sumps as needed to assure that all sections of piping are monitored. All monitoring sumps shall have a Pollulert FD241RRA or approved equal probe for leak detection.
4. Control panel shall have probe status for wet, dry, or hydrocarbon. Alarm conditions are to be selectable. Control panel must have installed relay or provision for installing relays for remote alarms. Control panel shall have both visual and audible alarm. System shall have a two year warranty from date of manufacture. Ground water probes shall be adjustable 1/8" to 2" for product detection. Probes shall be wired by a single cable run. Systems must be UL listed for Class 1, Division 1, Group D locations and meet all existing EPA regulations. Leak detection shall be Pollulert systems or approved equal.
5. Submersible pump shall have a mechanical in-line leak detector with a free floating check valve. Leak detector shall be vaporless LD2000 or approved equal.

K. In Tank Gauging System
1. Gauging system shall provide inventory management designed to continuously monitor underground storage tanks. System must provide information on inventory, delivery of fuel, and product through-put. System must measure fuel levels, water level and fuel temperature. This is to ensure proper compensated level readings. System shall have five temperature sensors, two floats, one for product level, one for water interface. System shall have a 48 character LCD display and internal thermal printer. System shall utilize a magnetostrictive probe and have visual, audible alarm with automatic printout. The system shall be designed to have 16 input on/off devices, RS232 port full duplex with adjustable baud rate. Tank gauging system shall be Pollulert system or approved equal.

L. Test For Pipe
1. Test of the piping system shall be made per manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Furnish the Owner with a certificate stating that all piping has been tested as specified and has been shown to be tight.
3. The piping systems may be tested in sections if necessary, but a final test may be required of the entire piping system at the completion of the system. The final test shall be made while pipe is exposed to view where possible.
4. Both primary and secondary pipe must be tested.

M. Test For Tank
1. Pre-installation: All Xerxes or approved equal tanks shall be tested prior to shipment, but it is required that all tanks be tested by the Contractor prior to installation. After installation and before final backfilling to grade, the tank must be retested to assure that no damage occurred during installation.
2. Hose/Valve Assembly: In order to test the tank, the hose/valve assembly must be connected from the reservoir to a service fitting. The hose/valve assembly will already be connected from the reservoir to a service fitting when the tank is shipped. If the hose/valve assembly is not connected

when the tank is delivered, contact the Customer Service Representative at the Xerxes or other plant nearest you, before attempting to test the tank.

3. Primary (Internal) Tank Test: Prior to installation, check to see that all service and monitor fittings are plugged and tightened, except the service fitting with a temporary plastic plug. Close the valve on the hose/valve assembly. Remove the temporary plastic plug and connect the pressure source to the service fitting. Pressure test the primary (internal) tank to 5 psig for 60 minutes.
4. Secondary (External) Tank Test:
    a. CAUTION: Never pressurize the secondary tank or (annular space) without connecting it to the primary tank. The secondary tank and primary tank will be properly connected if the hose/valve assembly is in place as shipped. Failure to have the secondary tank and primary tank properly connected could potentially result in tank failure and personal injury, and will void all warranties.
    b. While the primary tank is still under pressure, open the valve on the hose/valve assembly until the pressure stabilizes. Once the pressure has stabilized, either add or subtract air pressure to stabilize the pressure at 5 psig. Observe the tank for any liquid on the exterior surface and check the gauge at the pressure source for any drop in pressure.
    c. After completing the test, relieve the pressure at the source.

N. Product Dispenser
1. A fiberglass containment box shall be installed with each product dispenser. Containment box shall be as manufactured by Petro Fiberglass or approved equal. Double wall pipe shall terminate inside containment box. A flex connector as manufactured by Dana Everflex or approved equal shall be used to connect product pipe to the shear valve within the containment box. The shear valve shall be air tested at the factory and shall not lose its seal when its top is removed for service. Shear valve shall be Universal model 521 or approved equal. Each product dispensing hose shall be equipped with a re-connectable breakaway featuring a pressure balancing chamber to prevent nuisance breaks and shall disconnect at 200 lbs. A hose coupling shall separate the breakaway and hose swivel. The nozzle shall have a means of automatically stopping flow if the nozzle is not at the proper dispensing angle. Nozzle shall be of die-cast construction UL listed and have a flow equalizer to maintain 10 GPM flow. Breakaway, hose coupling, hose swivel, and nozzle shall be as manufactured by Husky or approved equal. Dispenser shall be compatible with vapor recovery systems.

END OF SECTION 22 12 23 26a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 12 23 26	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 13 16 00 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
4. Stainless steel drainage pipe and fittings.
5. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
6. Copper tube and fittings.
7. ABS pipe and fittings.
8. PVC pipe and fittings.
9. Specialty pipe fittings.
10. Encasement for underground metal piping.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221313 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.
2. Section 221329 "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps" for effluent and sewage pumps.
3. Section 226600 "Chemical-Waste Systems for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for chemical-waste and vent piping systems.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. as directed by the Owner .

C. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and elevations, or Building Information Model (BIM) drawn to scale, showing items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service in accordance with requirements indicated:

1. Notify [**Architect**] [**Construction Manager**] [**Owner**] no fewer than [**two**] days or as directed by the Owner in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without [**Architect's**] [**Construction Manager's**] [**Owner's**] written permission.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation are capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: [**10 ft. head of water (30 kPa head of water)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: [**50 psig (345 kPa)**] [**100 psig (690 kPa)**] [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .

B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with [**ASCE/SEI 7**] or as directed by the Owner . See Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment":

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified[**and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event**]."
2. Component Importance Factor: [**1.5**] [**1.0**].

C. **Requirements for Component Amplification Factor and Component Response Modification Factor** as directed by the Owner .

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings:

1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark.
2. ASTM A74, [**service**] [**and**] [**extra-heavy**] cast iron.

B. Gaskets: ASTM C564, rubber.

C. Caulking Materials: ASTM B29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings:

1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark.
2. ASTM A888 or CISPI 301.

B. Single-Stack Aerator Fittings: ASME B16.45, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.

C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Standards: ASTM C1277 and CISPI 310.
2. Description: Stainless steel corrugated shield with stainless steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

D. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Standards: ASTM C1277 and ASTM C1540. or as directed by the Owner .
2. Description: Stainless steel shield with stainless steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.5 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, standard-weight cast iron. Include square-cut-grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.

B. [**Galvanized-**]Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, threaded.

C. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:

1. [**Galvanized-**]Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M or ASTM A106/A106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
3. [**Galvanized-**]Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

D. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.

1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

E. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A536, ductile-iron castings; ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron castings; ASTM A234/A234M, forged steel fittings; or ASTM A106/A106M, steel pipes with dimensions matching ASTM A53/A53M, steel pipe, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM F1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys, EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

2.6 STAINLESS STEEL DRAINAGE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Description: Comply with requirements of ASME A112.3.1 drainage pattern.

B. Material: [**Type 304 stainless steel**] [**Type 316L stainless steel**] [**Type 304 or 316L stainless steel**].

C. Pipe Construction: Seamless.

D. Internal Sealing Rings: [**EPDM**] [**NBR**] or as directed by the Owner [**, marked or color-coded for the application**].

E. Joints: Single or double, socket and spigot ends.

2.7 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:

1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot ends unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:

1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot ends unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

C. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping: AWWA C151/A21.51, with round-cut-grooved ends in accordance with AWWA C606.

D. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-End Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A536, ductile-iron castings, with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A 21.10, ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A 21.53, ductile-iron fittings, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys, EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

2.8 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.

C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L and Type M (ASTM B88M, Type B and Type C), water tube, drawn temper.

D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B), water tube, annealed temper.

E. Copper Pressure Fittings:

1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.

1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

G. Solder: ASTM B32, lead free with ASTM B813, water-flushable flux.

2.9 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14 for plastic piping components. Include "NSF-dwv" marking for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

B. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D2661, Schedule 40.

C. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F628, Schedule 40.

D. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D2661, made in accordance with ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.

E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2235.

1. as directed by the Owner .

2.10 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic piping components. Include "NSF-dwv" marking for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" marking for plastic sewer piping.

B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 drain, waste, and vent.

C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F891, Schedule 40.

D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2665, made in accordance with ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.

1. as directed by the Owner .

F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.

1. as directed by the Owner .

2.11 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections of same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    a. Standard: ASTM C1173.
    b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
    d. Sleeve Materials:
        1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C564, rubber.
        2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D5926 PVC.
        3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D5926 PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    a. Standard: ASTM C1460.
    b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
    a. Standard: AWWA C219.
    b. Description: Metal sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
    c. Center-Sleeve Material: [**Manufacturer's standard**] [**Carbon steel**] [**Stainless steel**] [**Ductile iron**] [**Malleable iron**].
    d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
    e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:
    a. Description:

1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Pressure Rating: [**125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C)**] [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] [**250 psig (1725 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:

a. Description:

1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
3) Pressure Rating: [**125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C)**] [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] [**175 psig (1200 kPa)**] [**300 psig (2070 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

a. Description:

1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
2) Pressure Rating: [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

5. Dielectric Nipples:

a. Description:

1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
2) Electroplated steel nipple.
3) Pressure Rating: [**300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.12 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

B. Material: [**Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm)**] [**or**] [**high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm)**] minimum thickness.

C. Form: [**Sheet**] [**or**] [**tube**].

D. Color: [**Black**] [**or**] [**natural**] or as directed by the Owner .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.

1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in [**Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"**] [**Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"**].

K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.

1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch, and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.

    a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.

3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.

    a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

L. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.

1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

M. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Sanitary Waste: Two percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; [**1**] [**2**] percent or as directed by the Owner downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: [**Two**] percent or as directed by the Owner downward in direction of flow.
3. Vent Piping: [**One**] percent or as directed by the Owner down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

N. Install cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

1. Install encasement on underground piping in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

O. Install steel piping in accordance with applicable plumbing code.

P. Install stainless-steel piping in accordance with ASME A112.3.1 and applicable plumbing code.

Q. Install aboveground copper tubing in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

R. Install aboveground ABS piping in accordance with ASTM D2661.

S. Install aboveground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2665.

T. Install underground [**ABS**] [**and**] [**PVC**] piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.

U. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:

1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Hubless, Single-Stack Drainage System: Comply with ASME B16.45 and hubless, single-stack aerator fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

V. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600.

1. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints.
2. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
3. Install encasement on piping in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

W. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

1. Install encasement on piping in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

X. Install force mains at elevations indicated.

Y. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.

a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.

a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.

a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

Z. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

AA. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

BB. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

CC. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Caulked Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum caulked joints.

C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints:

1. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.

1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

    a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
    c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

E. Join stainless-steel pipe and fittings with gaskets in accordance with ASME A112.3.1.

F. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints in accordance with ASTM B828. Use ASTM B813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B32, lead-free-alloy solder.

G. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe in accordance with AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

H. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

I. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. ABS Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2235 and ASTM D2661 appendixes.
3. PVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2855 and ASTM D2665 appendixes.

J. Joint Restraints and Sway Bracing:

1. Provide joint restraints and sway bracing for storm drainage piping joints to comply with the following conditions:

    a. Provide axial restraint for pipe and fittings [**5 inches (125 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction, branches, and changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes.
    b. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings [**4 inches (100 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction 45 degrees and greater.
    c. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings [**5 inches (125 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction and branch openings.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Waste Drainage Piping: [**Unshielded**] [**Shielded**], nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
4. In Underground Force Main Piping:

    a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for [**NPS 2 (DN 50)**] or as directed by the Owner and Smaller: Use dielectric [**nipples**] [**unions**].
3. Dielectric Fittings for [**NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**] or as directed by the Owner . Use dielectric [**flanges**] [**flange kits**] [**nipples**].
4. Dielectric Fittings for [**NPS 5 (DN 125)**] and Larger or as directed by the Owner : Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General valve installation requirements for general-duty valve installation are specified in the following Sections:

1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
3. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
4. Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Shutoff Valves:

1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
2. Install [**gate**] [**full-port ball**] valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
3. Install [**gate**] valve or as directed by the Owner for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.

D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.

1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. [**Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.**]
2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in [**Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"**] [**Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"**].

1. Install [**carbon-steel**] pipe hangers or as directed by the Owner for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install [**stainless steel**] [**fiberglass**] pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
3. Install [**carbon-steel**] pipe support clamps or as directed by the Owner for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.

5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42 clamps.
6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

    a. 100 Ft. (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Ft. (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44 pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52 spring hangers.

C. Install hangers for [**cast-iron**] [**steel**] [**stainless steel**] [**and**] [**copper**] soil piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

D. Install hangers for [**ABS**] [**and**] [**PVC**] piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

E. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting[**, valve,**] and coupling.

F. Support vertical runs of [**cast-iron**] [**steel**] [**stainless steel**] [**and**] [**copper**] soil piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

G. Support vertical runs of [**ABS**] [**and**] [**PVC**] piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
5. Install horizontal backwater valves [**with cleanout cover flush with floor**] [**in pit with pit cover flush with floor**] or as directed by the Owner .
6. Comply with requirements for [**backwater valves**] [**cleanouts**] [**and**] [**drains**] specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
7. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.

    a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
    b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

D. Connect force-main piping to the following:

1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.

E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

F. Make connections in accordance with the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.

B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.

    a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.

    a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.

a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10 ft. head of water (30 kPa head of water).
b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
c. Inspect joints for leaks.

4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.

a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1 inch wg (250 Pa).
b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.

5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

E. Test force-main piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.

a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.

a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours.
b. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

D. Exposed [**ABS**] [**and**] [**PVC**] Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping [**NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. Service cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings[**and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings**]; [**CISPI**] [**heavy-duty**] hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
4. Stainless steel pipe and fittings, sealing rings, and gasketed joints.
5. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
6. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
7. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
8. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: [**Unshielded**] [**Shielded**], nonpressure transition couplings.

C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping [**NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. Service cast iron, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings [**and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings**]; [**CISPI**] [**heavy-duty**] hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
4. Stainless steel pipe and fittings, sealing rings, and gasketed joints.
5. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: [**Unshielded**] [**Shielded**], nonpressure transition couplings.

D. Aboveground, vent piping [**NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller**] or as directed by the Owner is to be [**any of**] the following:

1. Service cast iron, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; [**CISPI**] [**heavy-duty**] hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
4. Stainless steel pipe and fittings gaskets, and gasketed joints.
5. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.

    a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 and DN 90): Hard copper tube, Type M (Type C); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.

6. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
7. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
8. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: [**Unshielded**] [**Shielded**], nonpressure transition couplings.

E. Aboveground, vent piping [**NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger**] or as directed by the Owner is to be [**any of**] the following:

1. Service cast iron, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; [**CISPI**] [**heavy-duty**] hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
4. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: [**Unshielded**] [**Shielded**], nonpressure transition couplings.

F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping [**NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. [**Extra-heavy**] [**Service**] cast-iron soil piping; [**gaskets; and gasketed**] [**caulking materials; and caulked**] joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; [**CISPI**] [**heavy-duty**] [**cast-iron**] hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Stainless steel pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
4. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
5. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: [**Unshielded**] [**Shielded**], nonpressure transition couplings.

G. Underground, soil and waste piping [**NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. [**Extra-heavy**] [**Service**], cast-iron soil piping; [**gaskets; and gasketed**] [**caulking materials; and caulked**] joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; [**CISPI**] [**heavy-duty**] [**cast-iron**] hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
3. [**Solid-wall**] [**Cellular-core**] PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: [**Unshielded**] [**Shielded**], nonpressure transition couplings.

H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains [**NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50)**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.

I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains [**NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150)**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
3. Grooved-end, galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains [**NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. [**Hard**] [**Soft**] copper tube, Type L (Type B); [**wrought-**]copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
5. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.

K. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains [**NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger**] or as directed by the Owner are to be [**any of**] the following:

1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); [**wrought-**]copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
3. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
4. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
5. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 13 16 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
22 13 16 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 13 16 00	22 11 16 00a	Storm Drainage Piping
22 13 16 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
22 13 16 00	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
22 13 16 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
22 13 16 00	22 05 76 00a	Sanitary Sewerage

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 13 19 13 - HIGH-EFFICIENCY PARTICULATE FILTRATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for high-efficiency particulate filtration. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. HEPA rigid-cell box filters.
   b. HEPA V-bank cell filters.
   c. HEPA filter diffusers.
   d. HEPA filter fan modules.
   e. ULPA filters.
   f. 95 percent DOP filters.
   g. Front- and rear-access filter frames.
   h. Side-service housings.
   i. Filter gages.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5, "Systems and Equipment."
3. Shop Drawings: For air filters. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Show filter rack assembly, dimensions, materials, and methods of assembly of components.
   b. Include setting drawings, templates, and requirements for installing anchor bolts and anchorages.
   c. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Field quality-control reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended use.
2. ASHRAE Compliance:
   a. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
3. Comply with IEST-RP-CC001.3.
4. Comply with UL 586.
5. Comply with IEST-RP-CC007.1.
6. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

E. Coordination
1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. HEPA Rigid-Cell Box Filters
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, disposable, packaged air filters with media perpendicular to airflow and with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
3. Media: Fibrous material, constructed so individual pleats are maintained under rated-airflow conditions.
   a. Internal Separators: None **OR** Aluminum in media folds, **as directed**.
   b. Gasket Material: None **OR** Neoprene **OR** Blue gel, **as directed**.
   c. Gasket Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
   d. Faceguard Material: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   e. Faceguard Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
4. Filter-Media Frames:
   a. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
   b. Materials: Stainless steel **OR** Fire-retardant plywood **OR** Fabricated aluminum **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard **OR** Galvanized sheet **OR** Non-fire-retardant particleboard, **as directed**.
   c. Style: Box **OR** Double-turned flange **OR** Deep channel **OR** Double-turned flange, one side, **as directed**.
5. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

B. HEPA V-Bank Cell Filters
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, disposable, packaged air filters with media at an angle to airflow and with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
3. Media: Fibrous material, constructed so individual pleats are maintained under rated-airflow conditions.
   a. Internal Separators: None **OR** Aluminum in media folds, **as directed**.
   b. Gasket Material: None **OR** Neoprene **OR** Blue gel, **as directed**.
   c. Gasket Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
   d. Faceguard Material: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   e. Faceguard Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
4. Filter-Media Frames:
   a. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
   b. Materials: Stainless steel **OR** Fire-retardant plywood **OR** Fabricated aluminum **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard **OR** Galvanized sheet **OR** Non-fire-retardant particleboard, **as directed**.
   c. Style: Box **OR** Double-turned flange **OR** Deep channel **OR** Double-turned flange, one side, **as directed**.
5. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

C. HEPA Filter Diffusers
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, individually ducted, HEPA filter-holding ceiling modules.
2. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with glass filament separators.
   a. Media to Module Side Bond: Urethane sealant.

b. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
c. Application: Class 100 **OR** Class 10 **OR** Class 1, **as directed**, clean room.

3. Casing:
   a. Configuration: Ducted inlet **OR** Plenum inlet **OR** Plenum inlet with prefilter, **as directed**.
   b. Module Material: Extruded aluminum, 16 gage with mill finish.
   c. Suspension: Ceiling grid.
4. Accessories:
   a. Diffusion damper.
   b. Diffusion-damper adjustment port.
   c. Filter test port.

D. HEPA Filter Fan Modules
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, HEPA filter ceiling module with fan.
2. Casing:
   a. Configuration: Ducted inlet **OR** Plenum inlet **OR** Plenum inlet with prefilter, **as directed**.
   b. Module Material: Extruded aluminum, 16 gage with mill finish.
   c. Suspension: Ceiling grid **OR** Independent, **as directed**.
3. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with aluminum separators **OR** vinyl-coated aluminum separators **OR** separators of ribbons of filter media, **as directed**.
   a. Frame Material: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant particleboard **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick particleboard **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminized steel **OR** Cadmium-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
   b. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
   c. Face Gasket: Neoprene expanded rubber **OR** Ceramic fiber **OR** Silicone, **as directed**.
   d. Faceguard: Plastic **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
4. Accessories: Filter test port.
5. Control: Variable speed.
6. Motor:
   a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
   b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
   c. Type: Permanent-split capacitor with SCR for speed adjustment **OR** Electronically commutated motor, **as directed**.
   d. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
   e. Enclosure: Open dripproof **OR** Totally enclosed, fan cooled **OR** Totally enclosed, air over **OR** Open, externally ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated **OR** Severe duty **OR** Explosion proof **OR** Dust-ignition-proof machine, **as directed**.
   f. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron **OR** Cast aluminum **OR** Rolled steel, **as directed**.
   g. Motor Bearings: as directed by the Owner
   h. Unusual Service Conditions:
      1) Ambient Temperature: as directed by the Owner .
      2) Altitude: as directed by the Owner above sea level.
      3) High humidity.
   i. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
   j. NEMA Design: as directed by the Owner .
   k. Service Factor: as directed by the Owner .
   l. Motor Speed: Single speed **OR** Multispeed, **as directed**.
      1) Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.

E. ULPA Filters
   1. Description: Factory-fabricated, ULPA filters with holding casing.
   2. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with aluminum separators **OR** vinyl-coated aluminum separators **OR** separators of ribbons of filter media, **as directed**.
   3. Frame Material: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant particleboard **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick particleboard **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminized steel **OR** Cadmium-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **adected**.
   4. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife-edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
   5. Face Gasket: Neoprene expanded rubber **OR** Ceramic fiber **OR** Silicone, **as directed**.
   6. Mounting Frames: Construct downstream corners of holding device with cushion pads to protect media. Provide bolted filter-sealing mechanism to mount and continuously seal each individual filter.

F. 95 Percent DOP Filters
   1. Description: Factory-fabricated, 95 percent DOP filters with holding casing.
   2. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with aluminum separators **OR** vinyl-coated aluminum separators **OR** separators of ribbons of filter media, **as directed**.
   3. Frame Material: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant particleboard **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick particleboard **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminized steel **OR** Cadmium-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
   4. Frame Style: Box single header **OR** Double header **OR** Double turned flange **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) deep channel, **as directed**.
   5. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
   6. Face Guard Material: Galvanized **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, mesh.
   7. Face Guard Location: Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
   8. Gasket Material: Neoprene expanded rubber **OR** Ceramic fiber **OR** Silicone, **as directed**.
   9. Gasket Location: Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
   10. Mounting Frames: Construct downstream corners of holding device with cushion pads to protect media. Provide bolted filter-sealing mechanism to mount and continuously seal each individual filter.

G. Front- And Rear-Access Filter Frames
   1. Framing System: Aluminum framing members with access for either upstream (front) or downstream (rear) filter servicing, cut to size and prepunched for assembly into modules. Vertically support filters to prevent deflection of horizontal members without interfering with either filter installation or operation.
   2. Prefilters: Incorporate a separate track, removable from front or back.
   3. Sealing: Factory-installed, positive-sealing device for each row of filters to ensure seal between gasketed filter elements to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
   4. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

H. Side-Service Housings
   1. Description: Factory-assembled, side-service housings, constructed of 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** double-wall casing with 1-inch (25-mm) insulation, **as directed**, to hold filters. Side servicing is through gasketed access doors on one side, and

housings are capable of connection to other housings. Equip housings with metal slide channel tracks with clamping mechanisms to hold filters, and the following:
a. Pressure tap and fitting.
b. DOP/freon test ports.
c. Decontamination ports.
d. Isolation dampers.
e. Lifting lugs.

2. Prefilters: Integral tracks to accommodate 2-, 4-, and 6-inch- (50-, 100-, and 150-mm-) thick, disposable filters.
3. Access Doors: Continuous gaskets on perimeter and positive-locking swivel, **as directed**, devices. Provide ribbed bagging rim behind access door and PVC bags for bag-in, bag-out arrangement, **as directed**. Arrange so filter cartridges can be loaded from an access door for each tier and section of the following:
   a. Combination prefilter and HEPA filter.
      OR
      Prefilter.
      OR
      HEPA filter.
   b. Upstream and downstream test section.
4. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing gasket material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
5. Accessories:
   a. Filter change-out trays.
   b. Document-storage pocket.
   c. Filter removal rod.
6. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

I. Filter Gages
1. Diaphragm type with dial and pointer in metal case, vent valves, black figures on white background, and front recalibration adjustment.
   a. Diameter: 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5-Inch wg (125 Pa) or Less: 0- to 0.5-inch wg (0 to 125 Pa).
   c. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5- to 1.0-Inch wg (125 to 250 Pa) or Less: 0- to 1.0-inch wg (0 to 250 Pa).
   d. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 1.0- to 2.0-Inch wg (250 to 500 Pa) or Less: 0- to 2.0-inch wg (0 to 500 Pa).
   e. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 2.0- to 3.0-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) or Less: 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa).
   f. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 3.0- to 4.0-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) or Less: 0- to 4.0-inch wg (0 to 1000 Pa).
2. Manometer-Type Filter Gage: Molded plastic, with epoxy-coated aluminum scale, logarithmic-curve tube gage with integral leveling gage; graduated to read from 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa) and accurate within 3 percent of full-scale range.
3. Accessories: Static-pressure tips, tubing, gage connections, and mounting bracket.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.
2. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
3. Install filter gage for each filter bank.

4. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters that were used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
5. Install filter-gage static-pressure tips upstream and downstream from filters. Install filter gages on filter banks with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in an accessible position. Adjust and level inclined gages.
6. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling unit installations.

B. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Operate automatic roll filters to demonstrate compliance with requirements.
   b. Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.
   c. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3.0-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter with soapy water to check for air leaks.
   d. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3.0-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; and test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter for air leaks according to pressure-decay method in ASME N510.
3. Air filter will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

C. Cleaning
1. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19 13

SECTION 22 13 19 26 - INTERCEPTORS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interceptors. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Grease interceptors.
b. Oil interceptors.
c. Sand interceptors.

C. Definitions
1. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
2. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of metal and plastic interceptor indicated. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast-concrete interceptor indicated.
a. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
3. Coordination Drawings: Interceptors, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from Installers of the items involved:
a. Interceptors.
b. Piping connections. Include size, location, and elevation of each.
c. Interface with underground structures and utility services.

E. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Sewer Services: Do not interrupt services to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sewer services according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
b. Do not proceed with interruption of sewer services without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Grease Interceptors
1. Grease Interceptors: Precast concrete complying with ASTM C 913.
a. Include rubber-gasketed joints, vent connections (if required), manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow, unless directed otherwise.
b. Structural Design Loads:
1) Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
2) Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
3) Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
4) Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.

c. Resilient Pipe Connectors (if required): ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into interceptor walls, for each pipe connection.
d. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
e. Grade Rings (if required): Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
f. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
    1) Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
    2) Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
    3) Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "INTERCEPTOR," or “GREASE INTERCEPTOR,” or “SANITARY SEWER."

B. Oil Interceptors
1. Oil Interceptors: Precast concrete comply with ASTM C 913.
    a. Include rubber-gasketed joints, vent connections, manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow.
    b. Structural Design Loads:
        1) Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
        2) Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
        3) Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
        4) Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.
    c. Resilient Pipe Connectors (if required): ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into interceptor walls, for each pipe connection.
    d. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**,, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    e. Grade Rings (if required): Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
    f. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
        1) Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
        2) Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
        3) Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "INTERCEPTOR," or “OIL INTERCEPTOR,” or “SANITARY SEWER."
    g. Waste-oil storage tank and piping are specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping".
2. Oil Interceptors: Factory-fabricated, cast-iron or steel body; with removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
    a. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil Outlet Piping Connections: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Extension (if required): Cast-iron or steel shroud, full size of interceptor, extending from top of interceptor to grade.

c. Cover: Cast iron or steel, with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890, A-03, walkway load, **as directed**.
d. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping" for waste-oil storage tank and piping

3. Oil Interceptors: Plastic body; with removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
a. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil Outlet Piping Connections: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Extension (if required): Plastic shroud, full size of interceptor, extending from top of interceptor to grade.
c. Cover: Plastic with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890, A-03, walkway load, as **directed**.
d. Waste-oil storage tank and piping are specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping".

C. Sand Interceptors
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, cast-iron or steel body and inlet grate; with settlement chamber and removable basket or strainer.
2. Outlet Piping Connection: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Grate: Cast iron or steel with reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890, A-03, walkway load, **as directed**.

D. Precast-Concrete Manhole Risers
1. Precast-Concrete Manhole Risers: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M) **OR** ASTM C 913, **as directed**, with rubber-gasket joints.
a. Structural Design Loads:
1) Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
2) Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
3) Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
4) Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.
b. Length: From top of underground concrete structure to grade.
c. Riser Sections: 3-inch (75-mm) minimum thickness and 36-inch (915-mm) diameter.
d. Top Section: Eccentric cone, unless otherwise indicated. Include top of cone to match grade ring size.
e. Gaskets: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber.
f. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals.
2. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust the manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
3. Manhole Frames and Covers (if required): Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
a. Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
c. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to the following:
1) Grease Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "INTERCEPTOR" **OR** “GREASE INTERCEPTOR” **OR** “SANITARY SEWER", **as directed.**
2) Oil Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "INTERCEPTOR” **OR** “OIL INTERCEPTOR” **OR** “SANITARY SEWER", **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
   1. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

B. Installation
   1. Install precast-concrete interceptors according to ASTM C 891. Set level and plumb.
   2. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.
   3. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements. Set tops 3 inches (75 mm) above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.
   5. Set metal and plastic interceptors level and plumb.
   6. Set tops of metal interceptor covers flush with finished surface in pavements. Set tops 3 inches (75 mm) above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
   7. Install piping and oil storage tanks according to Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping".

C. Connections
   1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
   2. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

D. Identification
   1. Identification materials and installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving". Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
      a. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
      b. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19 26

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 13 19 33	22 05 23 00a	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 13 19 33	23 05 23 00	General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
22 13 19 33	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
22 13 19 33	22 05 76 00a	Sanitary Sewerage
22 13 23 00	22 13 19 26	Interceptors

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 13 29 13 - PACKAGED SEWAGE PUMPING STATIONS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for packaged sewage pumping stations. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes dry-well, packaged pumping stations with dry-well or vacuum-primed sewage pumps.
2. This Section includes wet-well, packaged pumping stations with submersible or submersible grinder or wet-well-mounting sewage pumps.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Pressure Rating of Sewage Pumps and Discharge Piping Components: At least equal to sewage pump discharge pressure, but not less than 125 psig (860 kPa).
2. Pressure Rating of Other Piping Components: At least equal to system operating pressure.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for each packaged pumping station. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Product Certificates: For sewage pumps, signed by product manufacturer.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Maintenance Data: For packaged pumping stations to include in maintenance manuals.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: Nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
4. Comply with HI 1.1-1.2, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature and Definitions"; HI 1.3, "Centrifugal Pumps for Design and Application"; and HI 1.4, "Centrifugal Pumps for Installation, Operation and Maintenance," for sewage and sump pumps.
5. Comply with UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps," for sewage and sump pumps.

F. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewer Service: Do not interrupt sanitary sewer service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sanitary sewer service according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary sewer service.

b. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary sewer service without the Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Dry-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations
1. Dry-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Dry-Well Sewage Pumps:
a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor and collection of sanitary sewage and with dry equipment chamber for sewage pumps, controls, and accessories.
1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, dry-well-type, nonclog sewage pumps with controls and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; mechanical or stuffing-box seals; and pedestal-mounted motor.
2. Dry-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Vacuum-Primed Sewage Pumps:
a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor and collection of sanitary sewage and with dry equipment chamber for sewage pumps, vacuum pumps, controls, and accessories.
1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, dry-chamber-mounting, vacuum-primed, nonclog sewage pumps located in dry compartment above wet pit, with controls and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; mechanical or stuffing-box seals; pedestal-mounted motor; and suction piping extending to bottom of wet pit.
7) Vacuum Pumps: Duplex arrangement with controls, vacuum piping, and vent piping of size and capacity required for system. Include automatic alternator, with manual disconnect switch, to change sequence of lead-lag vacuum pumps at completion of each cycle.

B. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations
1. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Submersible Sewage Pumps:
a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor, sewage pumps and collection of sanitary sewage and with sewage pumps and dry equipment chamber for controls and accessories.

1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, submersible-type sewage pumps, with guide rail, quick-disconnect system, controls, and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; and hermetically sealed motor with moisture-sensing probe, mechanical seals, and waterproof power cable.

2. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Submersible Grinder Sewage Pumps:
   a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for sewage pumps and collection of sanitary sewage and with dry equipment chamber for controls and accessories.
      1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
      2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
      3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
      4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
      5) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, submersible grinder-type sewage pumps, with guide rail, quick-disconnect system, controls, and piping. Include stainless-steel grinder impeller and hermetically sealed motor with moisture-sensing probe, mechanical seals, and waterproof power cable.
         a) If Project has more than one wet-well, packaged sewage pumping station with submersible grinder sewage pumps,

3. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Wet-Well-Mounting Sewage Pumps:
   a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor, sewage pumps and collection of sanitary sewage and with suspended sewage pumps and dry equipment chamber for pump motors, controls, and accessories.
      1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
      2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
      3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
      4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by The Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
      5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
      6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, wet-well-mounting-type, nonclog sewage pumps suspended from dry-compartment floor, with controls and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; grease-lubricated bearings and stuffing-box seal; shaft coupling; and pedestal-mounted motor.

C. Comminutors:
   1. Description: Motor-operated, single- or twin-shaft, cutter- or grinder-design unit with controls; for pipeline installation.
      a. Body: Stainless steel or ductile iron with flanged ends and access plate.

b. Cutting Elements: Motor-driven rotor and stationary cutters or grinders of hardened stainless or heat-treated steel.
c. Motor: Explosion proof, directly connected to body.
d. Control Panel: NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for installation in dry equipment chamber.

D. Controls
1. Control Sequence of Operation: Cycle each sewage pump on and off automatically to maintain wet-well sewage level. Automatic control operates both pumps in parallel if wet-well level rises above starting point of low-level pump, until shutoff level is reached. Automatic alternator, with manual disconnect switch, changes sequence of lead-lag sewage pumps at completion of each pumping cycle.
2. Self-Purging, Air-Bubbler System: Senses variations of sewage level in wet well. Include duplex-arrangement oilless air compressors to furnish bubbler air; filters; air-storage reservoir; piping; airflow meter with needle valve adjustment for airflow regulation; sewage depth gage; air-bubbler piping to wet well; and pressure-sensing, dustproof mercury switches.
3. Electrode **OR** Float-Switch **OR** Pressure-Switch **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed**, System: Senses variations of sewage level in wet well. Include high and low adjustments capable of operating on 6-inch (150-mm) minimum differential of liquid level.
4. Motor Controllers: Magnetic, full voltage, nonreversing. Include undervoltage release, thermal-overload heaters in each phase, manual reset buttons, and hand-automatic selector switches. Include circuit breakers to provide branch-circuit protection for each controller.
5. 120-V accessory controls with 15-A, single-phase circuit breakers or fuses for each item.
6. Control Panel: Enclosure complying with UL 508A and with UL 508A, Supplement SB, **as directed**, with separate compartments and covers for controllers, circuit breakers, transformers, alternators, and single-phase controls. Include 20-A duplex receptacle in NEMA WD 1, Configuration 5-20R mounted on exterior of control panel.
   a. Mounting: Inside, on dry-chamber wall **OR** Outside, on pedestal, at grade, **as directed**.
   b. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 4 **OR** 4X, **as directed**.
7. Install labels on panel face to identify switches and controls.
8. Wiring: Tin-copper wiring.
9. Connection for Portable Generator: Nonautomatic (manual) transfer switch with receptacle matching generator electrical power requirements. Nonautomatic transfer switches are specified in Division 26 Section "Transfer Switches" and receptacles are specified in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".

E. Accessories
1. Lighting: Minimum of 2, UL 1571, heavy-duty, cast-metal, wet-location-type fixtures with 100-W bulbs and guards in service area. Locate switches, with pilot lights, at chamber entrance.
2. Submersible Sump Pump:
   a. Discharge Size: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum.
   b. Pump End Bell and Motor Shell: Cast iron.
   c. Motor: 1/3 hp, 1750-rpm, hermetically sealed, capacitor-start, with built-in overload protection.
   d. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze or ASTM B 36/B 36M, brass.
   e. Shaft: Stainless steel.
   f. Bearings: Grease-lubricated, factory-sealed ball bearings.
   g. Seals: Mechanical.
   h. Accessories: Inlet strainer.
   i. Controls: Float switch.
3. Dehumidifier: Electric refrigeration system, adjustable humidistat, reverse-acting thermostat for low-temperature cutoff controls, and condensate pump with drain piping to sump.
   a. Dehumidification system capacity adequate to remove at least 15 pints (7 L) of water per day from service area air that is 80 deg F (27 deg C) with a relative humidity of 60 percent.
4. Ventilation: Electrically powered ventilation system. Include centrifugal blower with 4-inch- (100-mm-) round exhaust vent designed to keep out rain, insects, and other foreign matter; limit switch

to start blower if entrance door or lid is opened; 0- to 15-minute timer; and separate manual switch.
   a. Ventilating system capacity to change air in dry equipment chamber every two minutes.
5. Heater: Electric, 1.5 kW minimum, with fan and thermostat control.
6. High-Water Audio Alarm: Horn for audio indication of station high-water level, energized by separate level-detecting device. Include alarm silencer switch and relay in station.
7. Remote Alarm Circuit: Include contacts for connection to remote alarm panel.

F. Motors
1. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".

G. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Structural Steel: ASTM A 6/A 6M, W or HP shapes, or ASTM A 36/A 36M, plates or beams.
2. Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink cement grout.
   a. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
3. Concrete: Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

H. Packaged Sewage Pumping Station Fabrication
1. Fabricate shell from structural-steel plate with continuous welds to make watertight and gastight construction.
   a. Walls: 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) minimum thickness.
   b. Top and Bottom Heads: 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum thickness. Weld reinforcing steel to top and bottom heads.
   c. Entrance-Tube Walls: 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) minimum thickness.
   d. Weld steel access ladder and air vent to shell and entrance tube, **as directed**.
   e. Apply three coats of epoxy resin to interior and exterior surfaces.
   f. Include at least two **OR** four, **as directed**, exterior magnesium anode(s) for cathodic protection.
2. Fabricate shell from fiberglass with structural-steel reinforcement.
   a. Attach structural-steel reinforcement to top and bottom heads.
   b. Fabricate shell with continuous joints to make watertight and gastight construction.
   c. Attach air vent to pump chamber and entrance tube, **as directed**.
   d. Ladder: Steel **OR** Fiberglass, **as directed**.
3. Install sump, 18 inches (450 mm) in diameter by 10 inches (254 mm) deep in dry-chamber floor. Slope floor toward sump and fasten rubber mat to floor walkway with cement.
4. Entrance tube may be furnished separately for field installation.
5. Entrance Cover: Waterproof and corrosion resistant, with lock. Include way to open cover from inside tube if cover is locked.
6. Air Vent: Duct fabricated from corrosion-resistant material, extended to above grade, outlet turned down, and with insect screen in outlet.
7. Factory fabricate piping between unit components.
   a. Use galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings or ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
   b. Use fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
   c. Flanged and union joints may be used instead of joints specified.
   d. Use dielectric fittings for connections between ferrous- and copper-alloy piping.
8. Piping Connections: Unless otherwise indicated, make the following piping connections:
   a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller threaded pipe connection.
   b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment having flanged pipe connection.
9. Valves: Ferrous alloy.
   a. Sewage Pump Piping: Include gate valve on each pump inlet and gate and check valves on each discharge pipe.
   b. Sump Pump Piping: Include ball or gate and check valves on discharge pipe.

c. Compressed-Air Piping: Include ball and check valves on discharge pipe from each air compressor.
d. Vacuum Piping: Include ball and check valves on inlet pipe to each vacuum pump.

10. Wiring: Tin-coated copper.

I. Source Quality Control
1. Test and inspect sewage and sump, **as directed**, pumps according to HI 1.6, "Centrifugal Pump Tests." Include test recordings that substantiate correct performance of pumps at design head, capacity, suction lift, speed, and horsepower.
2. Test accessories and controls through complete cycle. Include test recordings that substantiate correct performance.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

B. Installation
1. Install packaged sewage pumping station components where indicated, according to specific equipment and piping arrangement indicated.
2. Shell Base Supports: Form from structural-steel beams, of number and lengths required to support bottom of shell and to anchor beams to concrete foundation.
a. Use elevator blocks attached to bottom of shell to slope station floor 1 inch in 10 feet (25.4 mm in 3 m) down toward sump.
3. Grout under and around shell. Ensure that there are no voids between foundation slab and underslab of pumping station.
4. Fill voids between shell sidewalls, sleeves, and piping and make watertight seal with grout.
5. Connect anode conductors to grounding lugs on steel housing.
6. Join separate sections of housing by field welding.
7. Field weld entrance tube to housing.

C. Connections
1. Sanitary sewer piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Sanitary Sewers". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping.
2. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

D. Identification
1. Install identifying labels permanently attached to equipment.
2. Install operating instruction signs permanently attached to equipment or on pumping station wall near equipment.
3. Arrange for installing green warning tape or detectable warning tape over outside edges of underground packaged sewage pumping stations. Tape materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

E. Painting
1. Prepare and paint ferrous piping in wet wells, structural-steel supports, and anchor devices with coal-tar epoxy-polyamide paint according to SSPC-Paint 16.
2. Paint field-welded areas to match factory coating.

F. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.. Report results in writing.
3. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
4. Tests and Inspections:
    a. After installing packaged sewage pumping stations and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements. Furnish water required for pump tests.
    b. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
    d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
5. Remove and replace packaged sewage pumping stations that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

G. Startup Service
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
    a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    b. Adjust pump, accessory, and control settings, and safety and alarm devices.

H. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged sewage pumping stations.

END OF SECTION 22 13 29 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 13 29 13a - SEWAGE PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sewage pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Submersible effluent pumps.
b. Submersible sewage pumps.
c. Wet-pit-volute sewage pumps.
d. Sewage-pump, reverse-flow assemblies.
e. Sewage-pump basins and basin covers.
f. Progressing-cavity sewage pumps.
g. Packaged, submersible sewage-pump units.
h. Packaged wastewater-pump units.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
2. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
3. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

F. Coordination
1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Submersible Effluent Pumps
1. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Effluent Pumps:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit.
b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as**

directed, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.

e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.

f. Seal: Mechanical.

g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.

1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.

h. Controls (rod-and-float type):

1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.

2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.

3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.

4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).

5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):

1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.

2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.

3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.

4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

j. Control-Interface Features:

1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.

2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:

a) On-off status of pump.

b) Alarm status.

2. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Effluent Pumps:

a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit.

b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.

c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.

d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.

e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.

f. Seals: Mechanical.

g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.

h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.

1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.

i. Controls (rod-and-float type):

1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.

2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.

3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

k. Control-Interface Features:
1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
a) On-off status of pump.
b) Alarm status.

3. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Single-Seal Effluent Pumps:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.
e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
f. Seal: Mechanical.
g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.

4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

j. Control-Interface Features:
1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
a) On-off status of pump.
b) Alarm status.

k. Guide-Rail Supports:
1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

4. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Double-Seal Effluent Pumps:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.
e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
f. Seals: Mechanical.
g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.

3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

k. Control-Interface Features:
1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
a) On-off status of pump.
b) Alarm status.

l. Guide-Rail Supports:
1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

B. Submersible Sewage Pumps
1. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Sewage Pumps:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit.
b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
f. Seal: Mechanical.
g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.

2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

j. Control-Interface Features:
1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
a) On-off status of pump.
b) Alarm status.

2. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Sewage Pumps:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit.
b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
f. Seals: Mechanical.
g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
k. Control-Interface Features:
1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
a) On-off status of pump.

b) Alarm status.

3. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Single-Seal Sewage Pumps:
   a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
   b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
   d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
   e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
   f. Seal: Mechanical.
   g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
      1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
   h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
      5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   j. Control-Interface Features:
      1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
      2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
         a) On-off status of pump.
         b) Alarm status.
   k. Guide-Rail Supports:
      1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
      2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
      3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
      4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
      5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
      6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
      7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

4. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Double-Seal Sewage Pumps:
   a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
   b. Pump type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
   d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
   e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
   f. Seals: Mechanical.
   g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
   h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
      1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
   i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
      5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   k. Control-Interface Features:
      1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
      2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
         a) On-off status of pump.
         b) Alarm status.
   l. Guide-Rail Supports:
      1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
      2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
      3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
      4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
      5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
      6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.

7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

5. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Grinder Sewage Pumps:
   a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, grinder sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
   b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail supports.
   d. Impeller: Bronze or stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced, with stainless-steel cutter, grinder, or slicer assembly; capable of handling solids; and keyed and secured to shaft.
   e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
   f. Seal: Mechanical.
   g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
      1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
   h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
      5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   j. Control-Interface Features:
      1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
      2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
         a) On-off status of pump.
         b) Alarm status.
   k. Guide-Rail Supports:
      1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
      2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
      3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
      4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
      5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
      6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
      7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

6. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Progressing-Cavity, Grinder Sewage Pumps:
   a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested progressing-cavity, grinder sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
   b. Pump Type: Submersible, progressing-cavity, single-screw rotary, grinder sewage pump as defined in HI 3.1-3.5.
   c. Pump Body: Cast iron.
   d. Pump Bearings: Radial and thrust types.
   e. Pump Shaft: Steel.
   f. Rotor: Stainless steel.
   g. Stator: Buna-N **OR** Natural rubber, **as directed**.
   h. Seal: Packing gland and mechanical types.
   i. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
   j. Controls (rod-and-float type):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
      5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   k. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
   l. Control-Interface Features:
      1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
      2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
         a) On-off status of pump.
         b) Alarm status.
   m. Guide-Rail Supports:
      1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
      2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
      3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
      4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
      5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
      6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
      7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

C. Wet-Pit-Volute Sewage Pumps
   1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit.

2. Pump Type: Wet-pit-volute, single-stage, separately-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
3. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet and threaded or flanged connection for discharge piping.
4. Pump Shaft: Stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**.
5. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
6. Sleeve Bearings: Bronze. Include oil-lubricated, intermediate sleeve bearings at 48-inch (1200-mm) maximum intervals if basin depth is more than 48 inches (1200 mm), and grease-lubricated, ball-type thrust bearings.
7. Pump and Motor Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
8. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast-iron flanges and flanged fittings or ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
    a. Modify piping configuration to accommodate reverse-flow assembly.
9. Support Plate: Cast iron or coated steel and strong enough to support pumps, motors, and controls. Refer to Part 1.2 "Sewage-Pump Basins and Basin Covers" Article for requirements.
10. Shaft Seal: Stuffing box, with graphite-impregnated braided-yarn rings and bronze packing gland.
11. Motor: Single-speed; grease-lubricated ball bearings and mounted on vertical, cast-iron pedestal.
12. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    d. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    e. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
13. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    b. Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    d. High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
14. Control-Interface Features:
    a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
        1) On-off status of pump.
        2) Alarm status.

D. Sewage-Pump, Reverse-Flow Assemblies
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, sewage pump reverse-flow assembly for factory or field assembly and installation in sewage pump basin. Include the following corrosion-resistant-metal components:
    a. Inlet Fitting: One combination inlet-overflow strainer fitting.
    b. Valves: Two shutoff valves and two check valves.
    c. Strainers: Two strainer housings with reverse-flow, self-flushing strainers.
    d. Pipe and Fittings: Size and configuration required to connect to sewage pumps and piping.

E. Sewage-Pump Basins And Basin Covers

1. Basins: Factory-fabricated, watertight, cylindrical, basin sump with top flange and sidewall openings for pipe connections.
   a. Material: Cast iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Polyethylene, **as directed**.
   b. Reinforcement: Mounting plates for pumps, fittings, guide-rail supports if used, and accessories.
   c. Anchor Flange: Same material as or compatible with basin sump, cast in or attached to sump, in location and of size required to anchor basin in concrete slab.
2. Basin Covers: Fabricate metal cover with openings having gaskets, seals, and bushings; for access to pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, vent connections, and power cables.
   a. Reinforcement: Steel or cast iron, capable of supporting foot traffic for basins installed in foot-traffic areas.

F. Progressing-Cavity Sewage Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested progressing-cavity, single-screw rotary pump as defined in HI 3.1-3.5.
2. Pump Body: Cast iron with feet for base or floor installation.
3. Pump Bearings: Radial and thrust types.
4. Pump Shaft: Steel.
5. Rotor: Chrome-plated steel.
6. Stator: Buna-N **OR** Natural rubber, **as directed**.
7. Seals: Packing gland and mechanical types.
8. Coupling: Flexible.
9. Motor: Single-speed; grease-lubricated ball bearings.

G. Packaged, Submersible Sewage-Pump Units
1. Packaged, Submersible, Grinder, Sewage-Pump Units:
   a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, basin-mounted, grinder, sewage-pump unit.
   b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   c. Pump Casing: Cast iron.
   d. Impeller: Stainless-steel grinder, cutter, or slicer type with shredding ring.
   e. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
   f. Control (for simplex pump unit): Manufacturer's standard panel for one pump.
   g. Controls (for duplex pump unit): Automatic, with mechanical- or mercury-float switches and alternator.
   h. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
   i. Basin: Watertight plastic, **as directed**, and of size required for pumps, with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with pump discharge and vent connections.
2. Packaged, Submersible, Nonclog, Sewage-Pump Units:
   a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, basin-mounted, sewage-pump unit.
   b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   c. Pump Casing: Cast iron.
   d. Impeller: Brass or cast iron; statically and dynamically balanced, non-clog design, and capable of handling 2-inch (50-mm) diameter solids.
   e. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.

f. Control (for simplex pump units): Manufacturer's standard panel for one pump.
g. Controls (for duplex pump unit): Automatic, with mechanical- or mercury-float switches and alternator.
h. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
i. Basin: Watertight plastic, **as directed**, and of size required for pumps, with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with pump discharge and vent connections.

H. Packaged Wastewater-Pump Units
1. Packaged, Wet-Pit-Volute, Wastewater-Pump Units:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, basin-mounted, effluent-pump unit.
b. Pump Type: Wet-pit-volute, single-stage, separately-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Body and Impeller: Corrosion-resistant materials.
d. Motor: With built-in overload protection and mounted vertically on basin cover.
e. Power Cord: Three-conductor, waterproof cable of length required but not less than 72 inches (1830 mm) and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
f. Control: Float switch.
g. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
h. Basin: Watertight, aluminum, plastic, or coated steel with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with vent and pump discharge connections.
2. Packaged, Submersible Wastewater-Pump Units:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, effluent-pump unit with basin.
b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Body and Impeller: Corrosion-resistant materials.
d. Pump Seals: Mechanical.
e. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type, with built-in overload protection.
f. Power Cord: Three-conductor, waterproof cable of length required but not less than 72 inches (1830 mm) and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
g. Control: Float switch.
h. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
i. Basin: Watertight plastic with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with vent and pump discharge connections.

I. Motors
1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
2. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Excavation and filling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

B. Examination
1. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of sanitary drainage and vent piping connections before sewage pump installation.

C. Installation
1. Pump Installation Standards:
   a. Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of centrifugal pumps.
   b. Comply with HI 3.1-3.5 for installation of progressing-cavity sewage pumps.
2. Equipment Mounting (for equipment supported on slabs-on-grade): Install progressing-cavity sewage pumps on concrete base using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
   a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
   b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
   c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Equipment Mounting: Install progressing-cavity sewage pumps using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
   a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
4. Equipment Mounting: Install progressing-cavity sewage pumps on vibration isolation equipment base. Comply with requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
5. Wiring Method (for pumps with wall-mounted controls): Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
6. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

E. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
   b. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Startup Service
   1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform **OR** Perform, **as directed**, startup service.
      a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Adjusting
   1. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Adjust control set points.

H. Demonstration
   1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION 22 13 29 13a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 13 29 13b - LIFT STATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This Specification covers the furnishing and installation of sewage lift stations. Work includes but is not limited to earthwork, installation of watertight precast concrete sump basin, basin access cover, submersible sewage pumps, pump guide rail system, pump control system, valves and piping and electrical connections as required. Specific sizes of basins, pumps, and piping shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner.

B. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   a. Pipe and fittings
   b. Check valves
   c. Gate valves
   d. Submersible sewage grinder pumps
   e. Pump motor
   f. Flexible flanged coupling
2. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include pumps, alarms, and motors. Data for submersible sewage grinder pump station data shall include all information on all equipment, alarm panel and controls, pumps and pump performance curves, and station layout.

C. Delivery, Storage, and Handling of Materials
1. Delivery and Storage: Inspect materials delivered to site for damage. Unload and store with minimum handling. Store materials in enclosures or under protective covering. Store rubber gaskets not to be installed immediately under cover, out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep interior of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris.
2. Handling: Handle pipe, fittings, valves, and other accessories in such manner as to ensure delivery to the trench in sound, undamaged condition. Avoid injury to coatings and linings on pipe and fittings; make satisfactory repairs if coatings or linings are damaged. Carry pipe to the trench; do not drag it.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Precast Concrete Sump Basin(s)
1. Precast Concrete Sump Basin shall be constructed in conformance with Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems". Basin shall have an integral bottom base section.
2. Joint Sealant: Seal all joints with EZ Stik Butyl Gasket as manufactured by Concrete Products Supply Co., or approved equal. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Pipe Opening Seals.
4. Waterproofing: Waterproof interior of concrete sump with one coat of Koppers Coal Tar Bitumastic Black or approved equal. Repair all damaged coating before final backfill. Do not coat cover of basin.
5. Access Hatch - Aluminum Hinged Frame and Cover Model EC-3HD by Syracuse Castings, Cicero, NY (315) 699-2601, or approved equal. Frame and cover shall be heavy duty, rated for H-20 Loadings. Frame shall be angle style frame. Material shall be 6061-T6 aluminum for bars, angles and extrusions. 1/4" diamond plate shall be 5086 aluminum. Unit designed heavy duty, for H-20 wheel loads where not subject to high density traffic. Unit supplied with a heavy duty pneu-spring, for ease of operation when opening cover. Each hatch shall be equipped with a hold open arm. Door shall lock open in the 90 degree position. Hinges shall be of heavy duty design. Material shall be a brass alloy with a 65,000 psi tensile strength. Each hinge shall have

a Grade 316 Stainless Steel, 3/8" diameter hinge pin. Exterior of frame, which comes in contact with concrete shall have one coat black bituminous paint. Unit supplied with a recessed stainless steel slamlock. Angle frame must be completely encased in concrete. Both bearing plates must be fully supported by a bed of concrete.

6. The unit shall be supplied with aluminum safety grate. Safety Grate shall be made of 6061-T6 aluminum with a minimum ultimate strength of 38,000 psi and a minimum yield strength of 35,000 psi as per ASTM B221. Grate design shall use safety factors as defined in the "Specifications for Aluminum Structures", by the Aluminum Association, Inc., 5th edition, DEC. 1986 for "Bridge Type Structures."
   a. Grating shall be designed to withstand a minimum live load of 300 pounds per square foot. Deflection shall not exceed 1/150th of the span.
   b. Grate openings shall be 4" x 4", which will allow for visual inspection of the pit once the access hatch is open.
   c. Each grate shall be provided with a stainless steel, safety check chain. Chain will prevent the grating from falling into the pit.
   d. Welding shall be in accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.2 "Structural Welding Code for Aluminum."

B. Submersible Sewage Pump System
   1. Submersible sewage effluent pumps shall be sized as directed by the Owner and specified herein. Pump shall be heavy duty cast iron with stainless steel fasteners. The impeller shall be semi-open, non-clog, engineered plastic capable of passing 3/4" solids. Pump motor shall be oil filled. Pumps shall be equal to SHEF Series as manufactured by Hydromatic or approved equal. Specific pump performance data shall conform to the following:

      1/2 HP Pumps 230 volt/single phase/60 Hz/2" NPT/ 3450 rpm
      40 gpm @ 42 ft. TDH
      50 gpm @ 32 ft. TDH
      60 gpm @ 18 ft. TDH

      1 HP Pumps 230 volt/single phase/60 Hz/2" NPT/3450 rpm
      20 gpm @ 80 ft. TDH
      30 gpm @ 76 ft. TDH
      40 gpm @ 71 ft. TDH
      50 gpm @ 65 ft. TDH

C. Duplex Guide Rail System: Complete package system shall be as manufactured by Moran Manufacturing Inc., or approved equal, as follows.
   1. The guide rail assembly shall be constructed of Type 304 stainless steel and shall consist of a minimum of two rails, a bottom base plate, a minimum of one cross brace every 18 inches between the rails and a wall brace, all welded together to provide the maximum structural integrity. The rails shall be round to provide a non-binding surface during installation and removal of the pump. The guide rail assembly shall be installed as a one piece unit and shall be bolted with stainless anchor bolts to the basin bottom and the basin wall a minimum of two places each.
   2. The pump bracket assembly shall consist of a top bracket and a bottom bracket. The brackets shall be fabricated of 1/4" steel material and shall be painted with coal tar epoxy paint at such rate as to provide a minimum 10 mil thickness. The top bracket shall be attached to the discharge piping above the pump disconnect and shall be constructed in such a manner that pump cannot be removed from the guide rail assembly except when removing pump out the top of the sump basin. The bottom bracket shall be attached to the pump at the discharge connection and shall guide the pump along the guide rail assembly to ensure proper alignment of the pump.

3. A 3/16" min. (7 x 9) stainless steel lifting cable, 10 ft. longer than the sump depth, shall be furnished for lifting and lowering the pump in the sump basin. The stainless steel lifting cable shall be of the 18-8 type 302/304 stainless steel and shall have minimum nominal breaking strength of 15 times the weight of the pump. It shall be substantially attached to the top of the pump and shall have a formed loop at the other end.
4. The discharge piping shall include a cast iron ball check valve, with a natural rubber ball and clean out port with plug for easy access, a brass quick disconnect fitting, with an O-ring stem brass gate valve, per pump. All other piping shall be schedule 40 stainless steel.
5. The station shall have a gate valve extension handle per valve which will allow the gate valve to be operated from a maximum of 6" below the basin cover. The handle shall be constructed of a minimum of 3/8" dia. Type 304 stainless steel. The handle shall be held in place by being attached to the gate valve and by the guide rail wall brace.
6. All internal metal parts that are not brass, galvanized steel, or stainless steel shall be painted with coal-tar epoxy paint to resist corrosion, unless otherwise noted.
7. Mercury level control switches shall be provided for lead pump on, lag pump on and high level alarm, pumps off and low level alarm.
8. The mercury switch shall be encapsulated in polyurethane foam for corrosion and shock resistance. Level switches shall be weighted to hold position in the sump. The cord connecting the control shall be No. 16-2, rated for 13 amps, and shall be type C-SJO. To ensure optimum longevity, mercury contacts shall be of the mercury-to-mercury type and encapsulated in a glass tube and shall be rated for 20 amps at 115 VAC.
9. The manufacturer of the lift station shall furnish a limited warranty for 18 months from the date of shipment or 12 months from start-up (whichever occurs first), that all equipment shall be free from defects in design, materials and workmanship. The lift station manufacturer shall furnish replacement parts for any component proven defective whether of its or other manufacturer during the warranty period, excepting only those items which are normally consumed in service, such as (but not limited to) light bulbs, oil, grease, packing, etc.
10. Installation instructions shall be furnished with the station.

D. Control System
1. This system shall be controlled and protected by a packaged system as manufactured by Rombus, or approved equal. The control shall provide automatic start, stop and alternation of 2 pumps, and shall provide an audible alarm as well as visual indication of high level conditions.
2. The control panel shall be pre-wired in a NEMA 3R weatherproof enclosure, and all necessary components including the following: single phase lightning arrestor for protection of the pumps, NEMA rated contractor and thermal magnetic circuit breaker for each pump, a main control/alarm circuit fused disconnect switch, separately fused control and alarm circuits, panel mounted duplex alternating relays, control relays, and terminal blocks for the connection on all external wiring. Provide a 20 amp/115v convenience outlet in each panel on its own GFCI circuit breaker. Multi-colored circuitry is to be used within the control panel to facilitate trouble shooting.
3. Mounted inside the enclosure shall be hand-off-auto switches and run pilot lights for each pump circuit; normal-off-test switch and alarm pilot light for high level alarm; float test toggle switches for each float to override floats to simulate operation; non-resettable elapsed time meters for each pump.
4. Mounted remotely from the Control Panel shall be a 4" 120V alarm bell and a flashing alarm light.

E. System Operation: As the level in the sump rises to the lead pump on level, the pump selected as lead by the alternator will come on line, and will pump the level down to the pump off level. The pump will then turn off, and the alternator will cycle, selecting the other pump as lead for the next cycle. If, with the lead pump running, the level in the tank continues to rise to the lag pump on level, the lag pump will come on line, alarms will sound, and will run with the lead pump until the pumps off level has been reached. The pumps will then be turned off, and the alternator will cycle. If level continues to drop to the low level alarm float, alarm circuits will be activated.
1. Placing the T-O-N switch into the off position will de-energize the alarm bell and flashing light, but the alarm pilot light will remain illuminated until the alarm condition has been cleared. When the

alarm pilot light is extinguished, the T-O-N switch may be reset to the normal position, and the alarm will stand ready for the next alarm.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. The Contractor shall excavate the station site to the elevations as required to meet project requirements. Compact the subgrade and install crushed stone.

B. Install lift station in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Perform additional exterior waterproofing as required to repair original coating and to achieve a watertight sump basin. The discharge piping shall be extended and connected to the sewage force mains. Backfill material shall be approved by the Owner. No backfill material shall have any dimension greater than 6". Backfill material within 15" of basin shall not have a dimension greater than 2".

C. The Lift Station control panel shall be mounted to the building nearby and shall have sufficient cord supplied by the Lift Station manufacturer to avoid any splices. All necessary electrical connections between pumps, flow controls and control panel shall be made in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. No splices shall be made in the basin. Lightning protection shall be provided in the panel.

D. Install pump power conductors in rigid steel conduit between Lift Station and Control Panel.

E. Upon completion, the Lift Station shall be tested to assure there is no leakage and that the pumps, controls and alarm are operating satisfactorily. The Lift Station manufacturer's representative shall be present during initial start up and testing. Three (3) Lift Station operation and maintenance manuals shall be provided.

END OF SECTION 22 13 29 13b

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 13 29 16	22 13 29 13a	Sewage Pumps
22 13 29 33	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 14 29 13 - SUMP PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sump pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Submersible sump pumps.
b. Wet-pit-volute sump pumps.
c. Sump-pump basins and basin covers.
d. Packaged drainage-pump units.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
2. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
3. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Submersible Sump Pumps
1. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Sump Pumps:
a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, semiopen, **as directed**, design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
f. Seal: Mechanical.

g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
   1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.

h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
   1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
   2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
   3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
   4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
   5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
   1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
   2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
   3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
   4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

j. Control-Interface Features:
   1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
   2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      a) On-off status of pump.
      b) Alarm status.

2. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Sump Pumps:
   a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
   b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
   d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, semiopen, **as directed**, design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
   e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
   f. Seals: Mechanical.
   g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
   h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
      1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
   i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
      1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
      2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
      3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
      4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).

5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

k. Control-Interface Features:
1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
a) On-off status of pump.
b) Alarm status.

B. Wet-Pit-Volute Sump Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.
2. Pump Type: Wet-pit-volute, single-stage, separately-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
3. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet and threaded connection for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and flanged connection for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger discharge piping.
4. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, semiopen, **as directed**, design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
5. Sleeve Bearings: Bronze. Include oil-lubricated, intermediate sleeve bearings at 48-inch (1200-mm) maximum intervals if basin depth is more than 48 inches (1200 mm), and grease-lubricated, ball-type thrust bearings.
6. Pump and Motor Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
7. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast-iron flanges and flanged fittings or ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
8. Support Plate: Cast iron or coated steel and strong enough to support pumps, motors, and controls. Refer to Part 1.2 "Sump-Pump Basins and Basin Covers" Article for requirements.
9. Shaft Seal: Stuffing box, with graphite-impregnated braided-yarn rings and bronze packing gland.
10. Motor: Single-speed; grease-lubricated ball bearings and mounting on vertical, cast-iron pedestal.
11. Controls (rod-and-float type):
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
d. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
e. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
12. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
b. Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.

c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
d. High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

13. Control-Interface Features:
    a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
        1) On-off status of pump.
        2) Alarm status.

C. Sump-Pump Basins And Basin Covers
1. Basins: Factory-fabricated, watertight, cylindrical, basin sump with top flange and sidewall openings for pipe connections.
    a. Material: Cast iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Polyethylene, **as directed**.
    b. Reinforcement: Mounting plates for pumps, fittings, and accessories.
    c. Anchor Flange: Same material as or compatible with basin sump, cast in or attached to sump, in location and of size required to anchor basin in concrete slab.
2. Basin Covers: Fabricate metal cover with openings having gaskets, seals, and bushings; for access to pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, vent connections, and power cables.
    a. Reinforcement: Steel or cast iron, capable of supporting foot traffic for basins installed in foot-traffic areas.

D. Packaged Drainage-Pump Units
1. Packaged Pedestal Drainage-Pump Units:
    a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, freestanding, sump-pump unit.
    b. Pump Type: Wet-pit-volute, single-stage, separately-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    c. Pump Casing: Corrosion-resistant material, with strainer inlet, design that permits flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
    d. Impeller: Aluminum, brass, or plastic.
    e. Motor: With built-in overload protection and mounted vertically on sump pump column.
    f. Power Cord: Three-conductor, waterproof cable of length required but not less than 72 inches (1830 mm), with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    g. Control: Float switch.
2. Packaged Submersible Drainage-Pump Units:
    a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, basin-mounted, sump-pump unit.
    b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    c. Casing: Metal.
    d. Impeller: Brass.
    e. Pump Seal: Mechanical.
    f. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type, with built-in overload protection.
    g. Power Cord: Three-conductor, waterproof cable of length required but not less than 72 inches (1830 mm), with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    h. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
    i. Control: Motor-mounted float switch.

j. Basin: Plastic.

E. Motors
1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
2. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork
1. Excavation and filling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

B. Examination
1. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump pump installation.

C. Installation
1. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of sump pumps.

D. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

E. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
b. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Startup Service
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform **OR** Perform, **as directed**, startup service.
a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Adjusting
1. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Adjust control set points.

H. Demonstration
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION 22 14 29 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 14 29 13	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 15 13 00 - HVAC INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for HVAC instrumentation and controls. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

C. Definitions
1. DDC: Direct digital control.
2. I/O: Input/output.
3. LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.
4. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.
5. PC: Personal computer.
6. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.
7. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

D. System Performance
1. Comply with the following performance requirements:
   a. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
   b. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.
   c. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
   d. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.
   e. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
   f. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
   g. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.
   h. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:
      1) Water Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
      2) Water Flow: Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
      3) Water Pressure: Plus or minus 2 percent of full scale.
      4) Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
      5) Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
      6) Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1.0 deg C).
      7) Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F (1.5 deg C).
      8) Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F (0.15 deg C).
      9) Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
      10) Airflow (Pressurized Spaces): Plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.
      11) Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
      12) Airflow (Terminal): Plus or minus 10 percent of full scale.

13) Air Pressure (Space): Plus or minus 0.01-inch wg (2.5 Pa).
14) Air Pressure (Ducts): Plus or minus 0.1-inch wg (25 Pa).
15) Carbon Monoxide: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.
16) Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
17) Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.
   a. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
   b. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
   c. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   a. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
   b. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
   c. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
   d. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
   e. Written description of sequence of operation.
   f. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
   g. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
   h. DDC System Hardware:
      1) Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
      2) Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
      3) Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.
   i. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
   j. Controlled Systems:
      1) Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
      2) Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
      3) Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
      4) Points list.
3. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
4. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with LonWorks.
5. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:
   a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
   b. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
   c. Device address list.
   d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
   e. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

6. Software Upgrade Kit: For the Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.
2. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Control System
1. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, and accessories to control mechanical systems.
2. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.
3. Control system shall include the following:
   a. Building intrusion detection system specified in Division 28 Section "Intrusion Detection".
   b. Building clock control system specified in Division 27 Section "Clock Systems".
   c. Building lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls".
   d. Fire alarm system specified in Division 28 Section(s) "Digital, Addressable Fire-alarm System" OR "Zoned (dc Loop) Fire-alarm System", **as directed**.

B. DDC Equipment
1. Operator Workstation: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, PC-based microcomputer(s) with minimum configuration as follows:
   a. Motherboard: With 8 integrated USB 2.0 ports, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
   b. Processor: Intel Pentium 4, <**Insert clock speed**> MHz.
   c. Random-Access Memory: 512 MB.
   d. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 1280 x 1024 **OR** 1600 x 1200, **as directed**, pixels, 64-MB video memory, with TV out.
   e. Monitor: 17 inches (430 mm) **OR** 19 inches (480 mm), **as directed**, LCD color.
   f. Keyboard: QWERTY, 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
   g. Floppy-Disk Drive: 1.44 MB.
   h. Hard-Disk Drive: 80 GB.
   i. CD-ROM Read/Write Drive: 48x24x48.
   j. Mouse: Three button, optical.
   k. Uninterruptible Power Supply: 2 kVa.
   l. Operating System: Microsoft Windows XP Professional with high-speed Internet access.
      1) ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Workstation shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.

2) LonWorks Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.

m. Printer: Black-and-white, laser-jet type as follows:
1) Print Head: 1200 x 1200 dpi resolution.
2) Paper Handling: Minimum of 250 sheet trays.
3) Print Speed: Minimum of 120 characters per second.

n. Printer: Color, ink-jet type as follows:
1) Print Head: 4800 x 1200 dpi optimized color resolution.
2) Paper Handling: Minimum of 100 sheets.
3) Print Speed: Minimum of 17 ppm in black and 12 ppm in color.

o. Application Software:
1) I/O capability from operator station.
2) System security for each operator via software password and access levels.
3) Automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
4) Database creation and support.
5) Automatic and manual database save and restore.
6) Dynamic color graphic displays with up to 10 screen displays at once.
7) Custom graphics generation and graphics library of HVAC equipment and symbols.
8) Alarm processing, messages, and reactions.
9) Trend logs retrievable in spreadsheets and database programs.
10) Alarm and event processing.
11) Object and property status and control.
12) Automatic restart of field equipment on restoration of power.
13) Data collection, reports, and logs. Include standard reports for the following:
a) Current values of all objects.
b) Current alarm summary.
c) Disabled objects.
d) Alarm lockout objects.
e) Logs.
14) Custom report development.
15) Utility and weather reports.
16) Workstation application editors for controllers and schedules.
17) Maintenance management.

p. Custom Application Software:
1) English language oriented.
2) Full-screen character editor/programming environment.
3) Allow development of independently executing program modules with debugging/simulation capability.
4) Support conditional statements.
5) Support floating-point arithmetic with mathematic functions.
6) Contains predefined time variables.

2. Diagnostic Terminal Unit: Portable notebook-style, PC-based microcomputer terminal capable of accessing system data by connecting to system network with minimum configuration as follows:
a. System: With one integrated USB 2.0 port, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
b. Processor: Intel Pentium 4, <**Insert clock speed**> MHz.
c. Random-Access Memory: 128 MB.
d. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 800 x 600 **OR** 1024 x 768, **as directed**, pixels, 64-MB video memory.
e. Monitor: 17 inches (430 mm) **OR** 19 inches (480 mm), **as directed**, LCD color.
f. Keyboard: QWERTY 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
g. Floppy-Disk Drive: 1.44 MB.
h. Hard-Disk Drive: 800 MB.
i. CD-ROM Read/Write Drive: 48x24x48.
j. Pointing Device: Touch pad or other internal device.

3. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
   a. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   b. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
      1) Global communications.
      2) Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
      3) Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
      4) Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
      5) Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.
   c. Standard Application Programs:
      1) Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
      2) HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
      3) Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.
      4) Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
      5) Remote communications.
      6) Maintenance management.
      7) Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).
   d. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   e. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
   f. LonWorks Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.
4. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.
   a. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   b. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
      1) Global communications.
      2) Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
      3) Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
   c. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
   d. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
   e. LonWorks Compliance: Control units shall use LonTalk protocol and communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol.
5. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
   a. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
   b. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
   c. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.

d. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation with three-position (on-off-auto) override switches and status lights, **as directed**.
e. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA) with status lights, two-position (auto-manual) switch, and manually adjustable potentiometer, **as directed**.
f. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
g. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.

6. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
   a. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
   b. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
   c. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.
7. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
   a. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
   b. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
   c. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
   d. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

C. Unitary Controllers
1. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.
   a. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
   b. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform scheduling with real-time clock, **as directed**. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
   c. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
   d. LonWorks Compliance: Communicate using EIA/CEA 709.1 datalink/physical layer protocol using LonTalk protocol.
   e. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 50 deg C).
   f. Enclosure: Waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F (5 to 65 deg C).

D. Alarm Panels
1. Unitized cabinet with suitable brackets for wall or floor mounting. Fabricate of 0.06-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, furniture-quality steel or extruded-aluminum alloy, totally enclosed, with hinged doors and keyed lock and with manufacturer's standard shop-painted finish. Provide common keying for all panels, **as directed**.
2. Indicating light for each alarm point, single horn, acknowledge switch, and test switch, mounted on hinged cover.
   a. Alarm Condition: Indicating light flashes and horn sounds.
   b. Acknowledge Switch: Horn is silent and indicating light is steady.
   c. Second Alarm: Horn sounds and indicating light is steady.
   d. Alarm Condition Cleared: System is reset and indicating light is extinguished.
   e. Contacts in alarm panel allow remote monitoring by independent alarm company.

E. Analog Controllers
1. Step Controllers: 6- or 10-stage type, with heavy-duty switching rated to handle loads and operated by electric motor.
2. Electric, Outdoor-Reset Controllers: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range, adjustable set point, scale range minus 10 to plus 70 deg F (minus 23 to plus 21 deg C), and single- or double-pole contacts.
3. Electronic Controllers: Wheatstone-bridge-amplifier type, in steel enclosure with provision for remote-resistance readjustment. Identify adjustments on controllers, including proportional band and authority.
   a. Single controllers can be integral with control motor if provided with accessible control readjustment potentiometer.
4. Fan-Speed Controllers: Solid-state model providing field-adjustable proportional control of motor speed from maximum to minimum of 55 percent and on-off action below minimum fan speed. Controller shall briefly apply full voltage, when motor is started, to rapidly bring motor up to minimum speed. Equip with filtered circuit to eliminate radio interference.
5. Receiver Controllers: Single- or multiple-input models with control-point adjustment, direct or reverse acting with mechanical set-point adjustment with locking device, proportional band adjustment, authority adjustment, and proportional control mode.
   a. Remote-control-point adjustment shall be plus or minus 20 percent of sensor span, input signal of 3 to 13 psig (21 to 90 kPa).
   b. Proportional band shall extend from 2 to 20 percent for 5 psig (35 kPa).
   c. Authority shall be 20 to 200 percent.
   d. Air-supply pressure of 18 psig (124 kPa), input signal of 3 to 15 psig (21 to 103 kPa), and output signal of zero to supply pressure.
   e. Gages: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm), **as directed**, in diameter, 2.5 percent wide-scale accuracy, and range to match transmitter input or output pressure.

F. Time Clocks
1. Seven-day, programming-switch timer with synchronous-timing motor and seven-day dial; continuously charged, nickel-cadmium-battery-driven, eight-hour, power-failure carryover; multiple-switch trippers; minimum of two and maximum of eight signals per day with two normally open and two normally closed output contacts.
2. Solid-state, programmable time control with 4 **OR** 8, **as directed**, separate programs each with up to 100 on-off operations; 1-second resolution; lithium battery backup; keyboard interface and manual override; individual on-off-auto switches for each program; 365-day calendar with 20 programmable holidays; choice of fail-safe operation for each program; system fault alarm; and communications package allowing networking of time controls and programming from PC.

G. Electronic Sensors
1. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.
2. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:
   a. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C) **OR** 0.36 deg F (0.2 deg C), **as directed**, at calibration point.
   b. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
   c. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 18 inches (460 mm), **as directed**, long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
   d. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 36 inches (915 mm) long, flexible **OR** 72 inches (1830 mm) long, flexible **OR** 18 inches (460 mm) long, rigid, **as directed**; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft. (1 sq. m).
   e. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
   f. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
      1) Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.
      2) Set-Point Indication: Concealed **OR** Keyed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.

3) Thermometer: Concealed **OR** Exposed **OR** Red-reading glass **OR** Spiral bimetal, **as directed**.
4) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
5) Orientation: Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**.

g. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
h. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

3. RTDs and Transmitters:
a. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point.
b. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
c. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 18 inches (460 mm), **as directed**, long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
d. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 18 inches (460 mm) long, rigid **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) long, rigid **OR** 48 inches (1200 mm) long, rigid **OR** 24 feet (7.3 m) long, flexible, **as directed**; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m); length as required.
e. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
f. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
1) Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.
2) Set-Point Indication: Concealed **OR** Keyed **OR** Exposed\, **as directed**.
3) Thermometer: Concealed **OR** Exposed **OR** Red-reading glass **OR** Spiral bimetal, **as directed**.
4) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
5) Orientation: Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**.
g. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
h. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

4. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.
a. Accuracy: 5 **OR** 2, **as directed**, percent full range with linear output.
b. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
c. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
1) Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.
2) Set-Point Indication: Concealed **OR** Keyed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.
3) Thermometer: Concealed **OR** Exposed **OR** Red-reading glass **OR** Spiral bimetal, **as directed**.
4) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
5) Orientation: Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**.
d. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
e. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 50 deg C) **OR** minus 22 to plus 185 deg F (minus 30 to plus 85 deg C) **OR** minus 40 to plus 170 deg F (minus 40 to plus 76 deg C), **as directed**.
f. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.

5. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:
a. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
1) Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
2) Output: 4 to 20 mA.
3) Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg (0 to 62 Pa).
4) Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa).

b. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig (1034-kPa) operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
c. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig (1034-kPa) operating pressure and tested to 300-psig (2070-kPa); linear output 4 to 20 mA.
d. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
e. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
   a. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.
   b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed **OR** Keyed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.
   c. Thermometer: Concealed **OR** Exposed **OR** Red-reading glass **OR** Spiral bimetal, **as directed**.
   d. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
   e. Orientation: Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**.
7. Room sensor accessories include the following:
   a. Insulating Bases: For sensors located on exterior walls.
   b. Guards: Locking; heavy-duty, transparent plastic; mounted on separate base **OR** Metal wire, tamperproof **OR** Locking, solid metal, ventilated, **as directed**.
   c. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.

H. Pneumatic Sensors
1. Pneumatic Transmitters: Vibration and corrosion resistant.
   a. Space-Temperature Sensors: Linear-output type, 50 to 100 deg F (10 to 38 deg C) range, with blank locking covers matching room thermostats.
   b. Room Return-Air Temperature Sensors: Linear-output type with bimetal sensing element and corrosion-proof construction, 50 to 100 deg F (10 to 38 deg C) range, designed to be mounted in light troffers.
   c. Duct-Mounted or Immersion-Type Temperature Sensors: Range as required for 3- to 15-psig (21- to 103-kPa) output signal.
   d. Temperature Transmitters: Rigid-stem type with bimetal sensing elements unless averaging is required, 3- to 15-psig (21- to 103-kPa) output signal.
      1) Averaging-Element Sensors: Single- or multiple-unit capillary elements.
      2) Tamperproof Sensors: Corrosion-resistant construction, suitable for mounting on vibrating surface with exposed capillary protected with temperature-compensated armor or protective tubing.
      3) Pipe-Mounted Temperature-Sensing Elements: Rod-and-tube type; with separable wells filled with heat-conductive compound.
      4) Outdoors: Provide bulb shield with mounting bracket.
   e. Space and Duct Humidity Transmitters: One pipe, directly proportional, with minimum sensing span of 20 to 80 percent relative humidity for 3- to 15-psig (21- to 103-kPa) output signal, corrosion resistant and temperature compensated, and with factory-calibrated adjustment.
      1) Space Mounting: With covers to match thermostats.
   f. Differential-Pressure Transmitters: One pipe, direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; pressure sensor and transmitter of linear-output type; with range of 0 to 50 psig (0 to 344 kPa), and 3- to 15-psig (21- to 103-kPa) output signal.
   g. Differential-Air-Pressure Transmitters: One pipe, direct acting, double bell; unidirectional with suitable range for expected input; and temperature compensated.
      1) Accuracy: 5 percent of full range and 2 percent of full scale at midrange.
      2) Output Signal: 3 to 15 psig (21 to 103 kPa).
2. Digital-to-Pneumatic Transducers: Convert plus or minus 12-V dc pulse-width-modulation outputs, or continuous proportional current or voltage to 0 to 20 psig (0 to 140 kPa).
3. Pneumatic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Potentiometer mounted in enclosure with adjustable crank-arm assembly connected to damper to transmit 0 to 100 percent valve/damper travel.

I. Status Sensors
   1. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa).
   2. Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig (55 to 414 kPa), piped across pump.
   3. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.
   4. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.
   5. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.
   6. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.
   7. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
   8. Water-Flow Switches: Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless-steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

J. Gas Detection Equipment
   1. Carbon Monoxide Detectors: Single or multichannel, dual-level detectors using solid-state plug-in sensors with a 3-year minimum life; suitable over a temperature range of 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C); with 2 factory-calibrated alarm levels at 50 and 100 **OR** 35 and 200, **as directed**, ppm.
   2. Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F (minus 5 to plus 55 deg C) and calibrated for 0 to 2 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output;, for wall mounting.
   3. Oxygen Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state zircon cell sensing; suitable over a temperature range of minus 32 to plus 1100 deg F (0 to 593 deg C) and calibrated for 0 to 5 percent, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting.
   4. Occupancy Sensor: Passive infrared, with time delay, daylight sensor lockout, sensitivity control, and 180-degree field of view with vertical sensing adjustment; for flush mounting.

K. Flow Measuring Stations
   1. Duct Airflow Station: Combination of air straightener and multiport, self-averaging pitot tube station.
      a. Casing: Galvanized-steel frame.
      b. Flow Straightener: Aluminum honeycomb, 3/4-inch (20-mm) parallel cell, 3 inches (75 mm) deep.
      c. Sensing Manifold: Copper manifold with bullet-nosed static pressure sensors positioned on equal area basis.

L. Thermostats
   1. Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with push-button or lever-operated fan switch.
      a. Label switches "FAN ON-OFF" **OR** "FAN HIGH-LOW-OFF" **OR** "FAN HIGH-MED-LOW-OFF", **as directed**.
      b. Mount on single electric switch box.
   2. Electric, solid-state, microcomputer-based room thermostat with remote sensor.
      a. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
      b. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
      c. Set up for four separate temperatures per day.
      d. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from 1 hour to 31 days.
      e. Short-cycle protection.

f. Programming based on weekday, Saturday, and Sunday **OR** every day of week, **as directed**.
g. Selection features include degree F or degree C display, 12- or 24-hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, and fan on-auto.
h. Battery replacement without program loss.
i. Thermostat display features include the following:
1) Time of day.
2) Actual room temperature.
3) Programmed temperature.
4) Programmed time.
5) Duration of timed override.
6) Day of week.
7) System mode indications include "heating," "off," "fan auto," and "fan on."

3. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.
4. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F (13 to 30 deg C) set-point range, and 2 deg F (1 deg C) maximum differential.
a. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
b. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.
5. Remote-Bulb Thermostats: On-off or modulating type, liquid filled to compensate for changes in ambient temperature; with copper capillary and bulb, unless otherwise indicated.
a. Bulbs in water lines with separate wells of same material as bulb.
b. Bulbs in air ducts with flanges and shields.
c. Averaging Elements: Copper tubing with either single- or multiple-unit elements, extended to cover full width of duct or unit; adequately supported.
d. Scale settings and differential settings are clearly visible and adjustable from front of instrument.
e. On-Off Thermostat: With precision snap switches and with electrical ratings required by application.
f. Modulating Thermostats: Construct so complete potentiometer coil and wiper assembly is removable for inspection or replacement without disturbing calibration of instrument.
6. Fire-Protection Thermostats: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction; with fixed or adjustable settings to operate at not less than 75 deg F (24 deg C) above normal maximum operating temperature, and the following:
a. Reset: Manual.
OR
Reset: Automatic, with control circuit arranged to require manual reset at central control panel; with pilot light and reset switch on panel labeled to indicate operation.
7. Pneumatic Room Thermostats: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, pipe(s), fully proportional with adjustable throttling range and tamperproof locking settings, direct or reverse acting as required. Factory calibrated at 2.5 psig/deg F (17.2 kPa/deg C).
a. Factory Calibration: 2.5 psig/deg F (17.2 kPa/deg C).
b. Range: 45 to 85 deg F (7 to 30 deg C).
c. Sensitivity Adjustment Range: 1 to 4 psig/deg F (7 to 27.6 kPa/deg C).
d. Dual-Temperature Thermostats: Automatic changeover from normal setting to lower setting for unoccupied cycles, with manual-reset lever to permit return to normal temperatures during unoccupied cycles, with automatic reset to normal during next cycle of operation.
e. Limits: Field adjustable, to limit setting cooling set point below 75 deg F (24 deg C), and heating set point above 75 deg F (24 deg C).
f. Room Thermostat Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
1) Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.

2) Set-Point Indication: Concealed **OR** Keyed **OR** Exposed, **as directed**.
3) Thermometer: Concealed **OR** Exposed **OR** Red-reading glass **OR** Spiral bimetal, **as directed**.
4) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
5) Orientation: Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**.

g. Room thermostat accessories include the following:
1) Insulating Bases: For thermostats located on exterior walls.
2) Thermostat Guards: Locking; heavy-duty, transparent plastic; mounted on separate base **OR** Metal wire, tamperproof **OR** Locking, solid metal, ventilated, **as directed**.
3) Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.
4) Aspirating Boxes: For flush-mounted aspirating thermostats.
5) Set-Point Adjustment: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter, adjustment knob.

8. Immersion Thermostat: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range and adjustable set point.
9. Airstream Thermostats: Two-pipe, fully proportional, single-temperature type; with adjustable set point in middle of range, adjustable throttling range, plug-in test fitting or permanent pressure gage, remote bulb, bimetal rod and tube, or averaging element.
10. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- or automatic-, **as directed**, reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or below set point.
a. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet (6 m).
b. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. (2 sq. m) of coil surface.
11. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual- or automatic-, **as directed**, reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches (300 mm) of bulb length is equal to or above set point.
a. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet (6 m).
b. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. (2 sq. m) of coil surface.
12. Heating/Cooling Valve-Top Thermostats: Proportional acting for proportional flow, with molded-rubber diaphragm, remote-bulb liquid-filled element, direct and reverse acting at minimum shutoff pressure of 25 psig (172 kPa), and cast housing with position indicator and adjusting knob.

M. Humidistats
1. Pneumatic Room Humidistats: Wall-mounting, proportioning type with adjustable throttling range, 20 to 90 **OR** 55 to 95 **OR** 25 to 65, **as directed**, percent operating range, and cover matching room thermostat cover.
2. Duct-Mounting Humidistats: Electric insertion, 2-position type with adjustable, 2 percent throttling range, 20 to 80 percent operating range, and single- or double-pole contacts.
3. Pneumatic Duct-Mounting Humidistats: Proportioning type with adjustable throttling range, 20 to 90 **OR** 55 to 95 **OR** 25 to 65, **as directed**, percent operating range, in galvanized-steel duct box.

N. Actuators
1. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
a. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
b. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
c. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
d. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
e. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).

f. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).

2. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
   a. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
   b. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
      1) Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. (86.8 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
      2) Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. (62 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
      3) Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft (49.6 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
      4) Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. (37.2 kg-cm/sq. m) of damper.
      5) Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm (5 to 13 m/s): Increase running torque by 1.5.
      6) Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm (13 to 15 m/s): Increase running torque by 2.0.
   c. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
   d. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
   e. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
   f. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 **OR** 120 **OR** 230, **as directed**,-V ac.
   g. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
   h. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
   i. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 40 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C), **as directed**.
   j. Temperature Rating (Smoke Dampers): Minus 22 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 30 to plus 121 deg C).
   k. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed **OR** 30 seconds **OR** 60 seconds **OR** 120 seconds, **as directed**.
3. Pneumatic Valve Operators: Rolling-diaphragm, spring-loaded, piston type with spring range as required and start-point adjustment and positioning relay, **as directed**. Operator shall maintain full shutoff at maximum pump differential pressure.
4. Pneumatic Damper Operators: Rolling-diaphragm, piston type with adjustable stops and spring return, sized to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action. Where actuators operate in sequence, provide pilot positioners.
   a. Pilot Positioners: With the following characteristics:
      1) Start Point: Adjustable from 2 to 12 psig (14 to 83 kPa).
      2) Operating Span: Adjustable from 5 to 13 psig (35 to 90 kPa).
      3) Linearity: Plus or minus 10 percent of output signal span.
      4) Hysteresis: 3 percent of span.
      5) Response: 0.25-psig (1723-Pa) input change.
      6) Maximum Pilot Signal Pressure: 20 psig (140 kPa).
      7) Maximum Control Air-Supply Pressure: 60 psig (410 kPa).
   b. Actuator Housing: Molded or die-cast zinc or aluminum. Terminal unit actuators may be high-impact plastic with ambient temperature rating of 50 to 140 deg F (10 to 60 deg C) unless located in return-air plenums, **as directed**.
   c. Inlet-Vane Operators: High pressure, with pilot positioners.

O. Control Valves
   1. Control Valves: Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Hydronic system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:

a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Class 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Class 125 iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
c. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and stainless-steel or brass seats.
   1) Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom.
   2) Double-Seated Valves: Balanced plug; cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plugs on top and bottom.
d. Sizing: 3-psig (21-kPa) **OR** 5-psig (35-kPa), **as directed**, maximum pressure drop at design flow rate or the following:
   1) Two Position: Line size.
   2) Two-Way Modulating: Either the value specified above or twice the load pressure drop, whichever is more.
   3) Three-Way Modulating: Twice the load pressure drop, but not more than value specified above.
e. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.
f. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator and trim shall provide minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of total system (pump) head for two-way valves and 100 percent of pressure differential across valve or 100 percent of total system (pump) head.

3. Steam system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:
   a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Class 125 bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Class 125 iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
   c. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and stainless-steel seats.
      1) Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom of guided plugs.
      2) Double-Seated Valves: Balanced plug; cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plugs on top and bottom of guided plugs.
   d. Sizing: For pressure drop based on the following services:
      1) Two Position: 20 percent of inlet pressure.
      2) Modulating 15-psig (103-kPa) Steam: 80 percent of inlet steam pressure.
      3) Modulating 16- to 50-psig (110- to 350-kPa) Steam: 50 percent of inlet steam pressure.
      4) Modulating More Than 50-psig (350-kPa) Steam: As indicated.
   e. Flow Characteristics: Modified linear characteristics.
   f. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator and trim shall provide minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of operating (inlet) pressure.
4. Butterfly Valves: 200-psig (1380-kPa), 150-psig (1034-kPa) maximum pressure differential, ASTM A 126 cast-iron or ASTM A 536 ductile-iron body and bonnet, extended neck, stainless-steel stem, field-replaceable EPDM or Buna N sleeve and stem seals.
   a. Body Style: Wafer **OR** Lug **OR** Grooved, **as directed**.
   b. Disc Type: Nickel-plated ductile iron **OR** Aluminum bronze **OR** Elastomer-coated ductile iron **OR** Epoxy-coated ductile iron, **as directed**.
   c. Sizing: 1-psig (7-kPa) maximum pressure drop at design flow rate.
5. Terminal Unit Control Valves: Bronze body, bronze trim, two or three ports as indicated, replaceable plugs and seats, and union and threaded ends.
   a. Rating: Class 125 for service at 125 psig (860 kPa) and 250 deg F (121 deg C) operating conditions.
   b. Sizing: 3-psig (21-kPa) maximum pressure drop at design flow rate, to close against pump shutoff head.

c. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.

6. Self-Contained Control Valves: Bronze body, bronze trim, two or three ports as indicated, replaceable plugs and seats, and union and threaded ends.
   a. Rating: Class 125 for service at 125 psig (860 kPa) and 250 deg F (121 deg C) operating conditions.
   b. Thermostatic Operator: Wax **OR** Liquid, **as directed**,-filled integral **OR** remote, **as directed**, sensor with integral **OR** remote, **as directed**, adjustable dial.

P. Dampers
1. Dampers: AMCA-rated, parallel **OR** opposed, **as directed**,-blade design; 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches (200 mm) and length of 48 inches (1220 mm).
   a. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze **OR** nylon, **as directed**, blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
   b. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
   c. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.
      OR
      Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. (50 L/s per sq. m) of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf (5.6 N x m); when tested according to AMCA 500D.

Q. Air Supply
1. Control and Instrumentation Tubing: Copper tubing complying with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) or ASTM B 280 Type ACR.
   a. Fittings: Cast-bronze solder fittings complying with ASME B16.18; or wrought-copper solder fittings complying with ASME B16.22, except forged-brass compression-type fittings at connections to equipment.
   b. Joining Method: Soldered or brazed.
   OR
   Control and Instrumentation Tubing: ASTM D 2737 Type FR plenum-rated polyethylene, flame-retardant, nonmetallic tubing rated for 30 psig (207 kPa) and ambient temperature range of 10 to 150 deg F (minus 13 to plus 65 deg C) with flame-retardant harness for multiple tubing.
   c. Fittings: Compression or push-on polyethylene fittings.
2. Tank: ASME storage tank with drain test cock, automatic moisture removal trap, tank relief valve, and rubber-cork vibration isolation mounting pads.
3. Duplex Air Compressor: Capacity to supply compressed air to temperature-control system.
   a. Pressure control with adjustable electric contacts, set to start and stop both compressors at different pressures.
   b. Electrical alternation set with motor starters and disconnect to operate compressors alternately or on time schedule.
4. Simplex Air Compressor: Tank-mounting compressor with capacity to supply compressed air to temperature-control system, with starter and disconnect.
   a. Pressure control with adjustable electric contacts, set to start and stop compressor.
5. Compressor Type: Reciprocating **OR** Scroll, **as directed**.
6. Size compressor and tank to operate compressor not more than 20 **OR** 30, **as directed**, minutes during a 60-minute period.
7. Compressor Accessories: Low-resistance intake-air filter, and belt guards.

8. System Accessories: Air filter rated for 97 percent efficiency at rated airflow, and combination filter/pressure-reducing station or separate filter and pressure-reducing station.
9. Refrigerated Air Dryer: Self-contained, refrigerated air dryer complete with heat exchangers, moisture separator, internal wiring and piping, and with manual bypass valve.
    a. Heat Exchangers: Air-to-refrigerant coils with centrifugal-type moisture separator and automatic trap assembly.
    b. Refrigeration Unit: Hermetically sealed, operating to maintain dew point of 13 deg F (minus 11 deg C) at 20 psig (140 kPa), housed in steel cabinet with access door and panel.
    c. Accessories: Air-inlet temperature gage, air-inlet pressure gage, on-off switch, high-temperature light, power-on light, refrigerant gage on back, air-outlet temperature gage, air-outlet pressure gage, and with contacts for remote indication of power status and high-temperature alarm.
10. Desiccant Dryer: Obtains dew point in pneumatic air piping between compressor and tank at least 15 deg F (minus 9 deg C) below inlet-air dew point at design conditions.
11. Pressure Gages: Black letters on white background, 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) in diameter, flush or surface mounting, with front calibration screw to match sensor, and having a graduated scale in psig (kPa).
12. Instrument Pressure Gages: Black letters on white background, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter, stem mounted, with suitable dial range.
13. Diaphragm Control and Instrument Valves: 1/4-inch (6-mm) forged-brass body with reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene diaphragm, stainless-steel spring, and color-coded phenolic handle.
14. Gage Cocks: Tee or level handle, bronze, rated for 125 psig (860 kPa).
15. Relays: For summing, reversing, and amplifying highest or lowest pressure selection; with adjustable I/O ratio.
16. Switches: With indicating plates and accessible adjustment; calibrated and marked.
17. Pressure Regulators: Zinc or aluminum castings with elastomeric diaphragm, balanced construction to automatically prevent pressure buildup, and producing flat reduced-pressure curve.
18. Particle Filters: Zinc or aluminum castings with 97 percent filtration efficiency at rated airflow, quick-disconnect service devices, and aluminum or plastic bowl with metal guard and manual drain cock.
19. Combination Filter/Regulators: Zinc or aluminum castings with elastomeric diaphragm, balanced construction to automatically prevent pressure buildup, and producing flat reduced-pressure curve; with threaded pipe connections, quick-disconnect service devices, and aluminum or plastic bowl with metal guard and manual drain cock.
20. Airborne Oil Filter: Filtration efficiency of 99.9 percent for airborne lubricating oil particles of 0.025 micron or larger.
21. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and labeled.
    a. High Pressure: Size for installed capacity.
    b. Low Pressure: Size for installed capacity of pressure regulators and set at 20 percent above low pressure.
22. Pressure-Reducing Stations: Two parallel pressure regulators.

R. Control Cable
1. Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.
2. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.

3. Mount compressor and tank unit on elastomeric mounts **OR** spring isolators with 1-inch (25 mm) static deflection **OR** restrained spring isolators with 1-inch (25-mm) static deflection, **as directed**. Vibration isolators are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Isolate air supply with wire-braid-reinforced rubber hose. Secure and anchor according to manufacturer's written instructions and seismic-control requirements.
   a. Pipe manual and automatic drains to nearest floor drain.
   b. Supply instrument air from compressor units through filter, pressure-reducing valve, and pressure relief valve, with pressure gages and shutoff and bypass valves.
4. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches (1220 mm) **OR** 60 inches (1530 mm), **as directed**, above the floor.
   a. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.
5. Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:
   a. Entrances.
   b. Public areas.
   c. Where indicated.
6. Install automatic dampers according to Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories".
7. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
8. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
9. Install hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping".
10. Install steam and condensate instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Steam And Condensate Heating Piping".
11. Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping".
12. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 21 specifying air ducts.
13. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".

B. Pneumatic Piping Installation
   1. Install piping in mechanical equipment rooms inside mechanical equipment enclosures, in pipe chases, or suspended ceilings with easy access.
      a. Install copper tubing with maximum unsupported length of 36 inches (915 mm), for tubing exposed to view.
      b. Install polyethylene tubing in metallic raceways or electrical metallic tubing. Electrical metallic tubing materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 26 Section "Underfloor Raceways For Electrical Systems".
   2. Install terminal single-line connections, less than 18 inches (460 mm) in length, with copper or polyethylene tubing run inside flexible steel protection.
   3. In concealed locations such as pipe chases and suspended ceilings with easy access, install copper **OR** polyethylene bundled and sheathed **OR** polyethylene tubing in electrical metallic, **as directed**, tubing. Electrical metallic tubing materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
   4. In concrete slabs, furred walls, or ceilings with no access, install copper or polyethylene tubing in electrical metallic tubing or vinyl-jacketed polyethylene tubing.
      a. Protect embedded-copper and vinyl-jacketed polyethylene tubing with electrical metallic tubing extending 6 inches (150 mm) above finished slab and 6 inches (150 mm) into slab. Pressure test tubing before and after pour for leak and pinch.
      b. Install polyethylene tubing in electrical metallic tubing extending 6 inches (150 mm) above floor line; pull tubing into electrical metallic tubing after pour.
   5. Install tubing with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
   6. Purge tubing with dry, oil-free compressed air before connecting control instruments.

a. Bridge cabinets and doors with flexible connections fastened along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support tubing.

7. Number-code or color-code control air piping for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control tubing.
8. Pressure Gages or Test Plugs: Install on branch lines at each receiver controller and on signal lines at each transmitter, except individual room controllers.

C. Electrical Wiring And Connection Installation
1. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
2. Install building wire and cable according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
3. Install signal and communication cable according to Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
   a. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
   b. Install exposed cable in raceway.
   c. Install concealed cable in raceway.
   d. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
   e. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
   f. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
   g. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
4. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.
5. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

D. Field Quality Control
1. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   a. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
   b. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
   c. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   d. Pressure test control air piping at 30 psig (207 kPa) or 1.5 times the operating pressure for 24 hours, with maximum 5-psig (35-kPa) loss.
   e. Pressure test high-pressure control air piping at 150 psig (1034 kPa) and low-pressure control air piping at 30 psig (207 kPa) for 2 hours, with maximum 1-psig (7-kPa) loss.
   f. Test calibration of pneumatic **OR** electronic, **as directed**, controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
   g. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
   h. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
   i. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
   j. Test software and hardware interlocks.
2. DDC Verification:
   a. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
   b. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
   c. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.

d. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
e. Check installation of air supply for each instrument.
f. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
g. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
h. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
i. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
j. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
k. Check DDC system as follows:
    1) Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
    2) Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
    3) Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
    4) Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

3. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

E. Adjusting

1. Calibrating and Adjusting:
    a. Calibrate instruments.
    b. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
    c. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
    d. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
        1) Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
        2) Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
        3) Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
        4) Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
        5) Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
    e. Flow:
        1) Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.
        2) Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.
    f. Pressure:
        1) Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
        2) Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.
    g. Temperature:
        1) Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
        2) Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.
    h. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
    i. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.
    j. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.
    k. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.
2. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

3. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

F. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls.

END OF SECTION 22 15 13 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 15 13 00	22 15 19 13	General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 15 19 13 - GENERAL-SERVICE PACKAGED AIR COMPRESSORS AND RECEIVERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for general-service packaged air compressors and receivers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Lubricated, reciprocating air compressors.
b. Oil-free, reciprocating air compressors.
c. Oilless, reciprocating air compressors.
d. Oil-free, rotary-screw air compressors.
e. Oil-flooded, rotary-screw air compressors.
f. Oil-free, rotary, sliding-vane air compressors.
g. Oil-sealed, rotary, sliding-vane air compressors.
h. Inlet-air filters.
i. Air-cooled, compressed-air aftercoolers.
j. Water-cooled, compressed-air aftercoolers.
k. Refrigerant compressed-air dryers.
l. Desiccant compressed-air dryers.
m. Computer interface cabinet.

C. Definitions
1. Actual Air: Air delivered from air compressors. Flow rate is delivered compressed air measured in acfm (actual L/s).
2. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
3. Standard Air: Free air at 68 deg F (20 deg C) and 1 atmosphere (29.92 in. Hg) before compression or expansion and measured in scfm (standard L/s).

D. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design compressed-air equipment mounting, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Seismic Performance: Compressed-air equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For compressed-air equipment mounting indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
a. Detail fabrication and assembly of supports.
b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For compressed-air equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturers.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label receivers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Packaged Air Compressors And Receivers
1. General Description: Factory-assembled, -wired, -piped, and -tested; electric-motor-driven; air-cooled; continuous-duty air compressors and receivers that deliver air of quality equal to intake air.
2. Control Panels: Automatic control station with load control and protection functions. Comply with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
a. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 12 control panel unless otherwise indicated.
b. Motor Controllers: Full-voltage, combination magnetic type with undervoltage release feature and motor-circuit-protector-type disconnecting means and short-circuit protective device.
c. Control Voltage: 120-V ac or less, using integral control power transformer.
d. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
e. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
f. Automatic control switches to alternate lead-lag compressors for duplex **OR** sequence lead-lag compressors for multiplex, **as directed**, air compressors.
g. Instrumentation: Include discharge-air pressure gage, air-filter maintenance indicator, hour meter, compressor discharge-air and coolant temperature gages, and control transformer.
h. Alarm Signal Device: For connection to alarm system to indicate when backup air compressor is operating.
3. Receivers: Steel tank constructed according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
a. Pressure Rating: At least as high as highest discharge pressure of connected compressors, and bearing appropriate code symbols.
b. Interior Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating.
c. Accessories: Include safety valve, pressure gage, drain, and pressure-reducing valve.
4. Mounting Frame: Fabricate mounting and attachment to pressure vessel with reinforcement strong enough to resist packaged equipment movement during a seismic event when base is anchored to building structure.

B. Lubricated, Reciprocating Air Compressors
1. Compressor(s): Lubricated, reciprocating-piston type with lubricated compression chamber and crankcase.
a. Submerged gear-type oil pump.
b. Oil filter.
c. Combined high discharge-air temperature and low lubrication-oil pressure switch.
d. Belt guard totally enclosing pulleys and belts.

C. Oil-Free, Reciprocating Air Compressors
1. Compressor(s): Oil-free, reciprocating-piston type with nonlubricated compression chamber, lubricated crankcase, and of construction that prohibits oil from entering compression chamber.

a. Submerged gear-type oil pump.
b. Oil filter.
c. Combined high discharge-air temperature and low lubrication-oil pressure switch.
d. Belt guard totally enclosing pulleys and belts.

D. Oilless, Reciprocating Air Compressors
1. Compressor(s): Oilless (nonlubricated), reciprocating-piston type, with sealed oil-free bearings, that will deliver air of quality equal to intake air.
a. High discharge-air temperature switch.
b. Belt guard totally enclosing pulleys and belts.

E. Oil-Free, Rotary-Screw Air Compressors
1. Compressor(s): Oil-free, rotary-screw type with nonlubricated helical screws and lubricated gear box, and of construction that prohibits oil from entering compression chamber.
a. Coupling: Nonlubricated, flexible type.
b. Cooling/Lubrication System: Unit-mounted, air-cooled exchanger package prepiped to unit; with air pressure circulation system with coolant stop valve, full-flow coolant filter, and thermal bypass valve.
c. Air Filter: Dry type, with maintenance indicator and cleanable replaceable filter element.
d. Air/Coolant Receiver and Separation System: 150-psig- (1035-kPa-) rated steel tank with ASME safety valve, coolant-level gage, multistage air-coolant separator element, minimum pressure valve, blowdown valve, discharge check valve, coolant stop valve, full-flow coolant filter, and thermal bypass valve.
e. Capacity Control: Capacity modulation between zero and 100 percent air delivery, with operating pressures between 50 and 100 psig (345 and 690 kPa). Include necessary control to hold constant pressure. When air demand is zero, unload compressor by using pressure switch and blowdown valve.

F. Oil-Flooded, Rotary-Screw Air Compressors
1. Compressor(s): Oil-flooded, rotary-screw type with lubricated helical screws and lubricated gear box.
a. Coupling: Nonlubricated, flexible type.
b. Cooling/Lubrication System: Unit-mounted, air-cooled exchanger package prepiped to unit; with air pressure circulation system with coolant stop valve, full-flow coolant filter, and thermal bypass valve.
c. Air Filter: Dry type, with maintenance indicator and cleanable replaceable filter element.
d. Air/Coolant Receiver and Separation System: 150-psig- (1035-kPa-) rated steel tank with ASME safety valve, coolant-level gage, multistage air-coolant separator element, minimum pressure valve, blowdown valve, discharge check valve, coolant stop valve, full-flow coolant filter, and thermal bypass valve.
e. Capacity Control: Capacity modulation between zero and 100 percent air delivery, with operating pressures between 50 and 100 psig (345 and 690 kPa). Include necessary control to hold constant pressure. When air demand is zero, unload compressor by using pressure switch and blowdown valve.

G. Oil-Free, Rotary, Sliding-Vane Air Compressors
1. Compressor(s): Oil-free, nonpulsating, rotary, sliding-vane type with nonlubricated sliding vanes.
a. Cleanable inlet screens.
b. Outlet silencers on discharge connections.

H. Oil-Sealed, Rotary, Sliding-Vane Air Compressors
1. Compressor(s): Nonpulsating, rotary, sliding-vane type with oil-sealed sliding vanes.
a. Cleanable inlet screens.
b. Outlet silencers and oil-mist separators on discharge connections.

I. Inlet-Air Filters

1. Description: Combination inlet-air filter-silencer, suitable for remote installation, for each air compressor.
   a. Construction: Weatherproof housing for replaceable, dry-type filter element, with silencer tubes or other method of sound reduction.
   b. Capacity: Match capacity of air compressor, with filter having collection efficiency of 99 percent retention of particles larger than 10 micrometers.
2. Description: Combination inlet-air filter-silencer, suitable for remote installation, for multiple air compressors.
   a. Construction: Weatherproof housing for replaceable, dry-type filter element, with silencer tubes or other method of sound reduction.
   b. Capacity: Match total capacity of connected air compressors, with filter having collection efficiency of 99 percent retention of particles larger than 10 micrometers.

J. Air-Cooled, Compressed-Air Aftercoolers
1. Description: Electric-motor-driven, fan-operation, finned-tube unit; rated at 250 psig (1725 kPa) and leak tested at 350-psig (2415-kPa) minimum air pressure; in capacities indicated. Size units to cool compressed air in compressor-rated capacities to 10 deg F (6 deg C) above summertime maximum ambient temperature. Include moisture separator and automatic drain.

K. Water-Cooled, Compressed-Air Aftercoolers
1. Description: Shell and tube unit, rated at 250 psig (1725 kPa) and leak tested at 350-psig (2415-kPa) minimum air pressure, in capacities indicated. Include moisture separator and automatic drain.

L. Refrigerant Compressed-Air Dryers
1. Description: Noncycling, air-cooled, electric-motor-driven unit with steel enclosure and capability to deliver 35 deg F (2 deg C), 100-psig (690-kPa) air at dew point. Include automatic ejection of condensate from airstream, step-down transformers, disconnect switches, inlet and outlet pressure gages, thermometers, automatic controls, and filters.

M. Desiccant Compressed-Air Dryers
1. Description: Twin-tower unit with purge system, mufflers, and capability to deliver plus 10 deg F (minus 12 deg C), 100-psig (690-kPa) air at dew point. Include dew point controlled purge, step-down transformers, disconnect switches, inlet and outlet pressure gages, thermometers, automatic controls, and filters.

N. Computer Interface Cabinet
1. Description:
   a. Wall mounting.
   b. Welded steel with white enamel finish.
   c. Gasketed door.
   d. Grounding device.
   e. Factory-installed, signal circuit boards.
   f. Power transformer.
   g. Circuit breaker.
   h. Wiring terminal board.
   i. Internal wiring capable of interfacing 20 alarm signals.

O. Motors
1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
   a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Equipment Installation
1. Equipment Mounting:
a. Install air compressors, aftercoolers, and air dryers on concrete bases using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
1) Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
2) Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
3) For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4) Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5) Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
b. Install air compressors, aftercoolers, and air dryers using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
1) Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
c. Install air compressors, aftercoolers, and air dryers on vibration isolation inertia bases. Comply with requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
d. Install air compressors, aftercoolers, and air dryers on concrete bases. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
1) Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
2) For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3) Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4) Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
e. Install water-cooled, compressed-air aftercoolers and desiccant compressed-air dryers on concrete bases. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
1) Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
2) For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3) Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4) Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
2. Install compressed-air equipment anchored to substrate.
3. Arrange equipment so controls and devices are accessible for servicing.

4. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
5. Install the following devices on compressed-air equipment:
   a. Thermometer, Pressure Gage, and Safety Valve: Install on each compressed-air receiver.
   b. Pressure Regulators: Install downstream from air compressors and dryers.
   c. Automatic Drain Valves: Install on aftercoolers, receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate over nearest floor drain.

B. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "General-service Compressed-air Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Identification
1. Identify general-service air compressors and components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

D. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
   a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   b. Check for lubricating oil in lubricated-type equipment.
   c. Check belt drives for proper tension.
   d. Verify that air-compressor inlet filters and piping are clear.
   e. Check for equipment vibration-control supports and flexible pipe connectors and verify that equipment is properly attached to substrate.
   f. Check safety valves for correct settings. Ensure that settings are higher than air-compressor discharge pressure but not higher than rating of system components.
   g. Check for proper seismic restraints.
   h. Drain receiver tanks.
   i. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   j. Test and adjust controls and safeties.

E. Demonstration
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air compressors, aftercoolers, and air dryers.

END OF SECTION 22 15 19 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 15 19 13	22 15 13 00	HVAC Instrumentation And Controls
22 15 19 19	22 15 19 13	General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers
22 15 19 19	22 15 13 00	HVAC Instrumentation And Controls

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 31 16 00 - WATER SOFTENERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water softeners. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes household and commercial water softeners.
a. Chemicals.
b. Water testing kits.

C. Definitions
1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of water softener and water testing kit indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and connections to piping systems.
a. Include wiring diagrams.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water softeners to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
6. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASME Compliance for Steel Tanks: Fabricate and label mineral tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, where indicated.
3. ASME Compliance for FRP Tanks: Fabricate and label mineral tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, where indicated.

F. Warranty
1. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water softener that fail in materials or workmanship within Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Household Water Softeners
1. Description: Factory-assembled, fully-automatic, pressure-type water softener.
a. Configuration: Unit with one mineral tank and one brine tank or cabinet-style, combination mineral and brine tank unit with equivalent characteristics.
b. Mineral Tank: Steel or FRP, with coating or liner suitable for potable-water service and 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum pressure rating.

c. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects."
d. Controls: For fully automatic operation.
e. Brine Tank: Combination measuring and wet-salt storing system.
   1) Tank and Cover Material: FRP or molded PE.
   2) Brine Valve: Float operated and plastic fitted for automatic control of brine withdrawn and freshwater refill.
   3) Size: Large enough for at least two regenerations at full salting.
f. Factory-Installed Accessories:
   1) Piping, valves, tubing, and drains.
   2) Sampling cock.
   3) Main-operating-valve position indicator.

B. Commercial Water Softeners
1. Description: Factory-assembled, pressure-type water softener.
   a. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects."
   b. Configuration: Single unit with one mineral tank **OR** Twin unit with two mineral tanks **OR** Triple unit with three mineral tanks, **as directed**, and one brine tank, factory mounted on skids, **unless directed otherwise**.
   c. Mineral Tanks: FRP, pressure-vessel quality.
      1) Construction: Non-ASME code **OR** Fabricated and stamped to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, "Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Pressure Vessels," **as directed**.
      2) Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa), **as directed** , minimum.
      3) Wetted Components: Suitable for water temperatures from 40 to at least 100 deg F (5 to at least 38 deg C) **OR** 40 to at least 120 deg F (5 to at least 49 deg C) **OR** 40 to at least 150 deg F (5 to at least 66 deg C), **as directed**.
      4) Freeboard: 50 percent minimum for backwash expansion above normal resin bed level.
      5) Support Legs or Skirt: Constructed of structural steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
      6) Upper Distribution System: Single, point type, fabricated from galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
      7) Lower Distribution System: Hub and radial-arm or header-lateral type; fabricated from nonmetallic pipe and fittings with individual, fine-slotted, nonclogging plastic strainers; arranged for even flow distribution through resin bed.
      8) Liner: PE, ABS, or other material suitable for potable water.
   d. Mineral Tanks: Steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, electric welded; pressure-vessel quality.
      1) Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
      2) Construction: Non-ASME code **OR** Fabricated and stamped to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," **as directed**.
      3) Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      4) Wetted Components: Suitable for water temperatures from 40 to at least 100 deg F (5 to at least 38 deg C) **OR** 40 to at least 120 deg F (5 to at least 49 deg C) **OR** 40 to at least 150 deg F (5 to at least 66 deg C), **as directed**.
      5) Freeboard: 50 percent minimum for backwash expansion above normal resin bed level.
      6) Handholes: 4 inches (102 mm) round or 4 by 6 inches (102 by 152 mm) elliptical, in top head and lower sidewall of tanks 30 inches (762 mm) and smaller in diameter.
      7) Manhole: 11 by 15 inches (280 by 380 mm) in top head of tanks larger than 30 inches (762 mm) in diameter.

8) Support Legs or Skirt: Constructed of structural steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
9) Finish: Hot-dip galvanized on exterior and interior of tank after fabrication, unless tank is stainless steel.
10) Finish: Exterior of tank spray painted with rust-resistant prime coat, 2- to 3-mil (0.051- to 0.076-mm) dry film thickness. Interior sandblasted and lined with epoxy-polyamide coating, 8- to 10-mil (0.203- to 0.254-mm) dry film thickness.
11) Upper Distribution System: Single, point type, fabricated from galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
12) Lower Distribution System: Hub and radial-arm or header-lateral type; fabricated from PVC pipe and fittings with individual, fine-slotted, nonclogging PE strainers; arranged for even flow distribution through resin bed.
13) Liner: PE, ABS, or other material suitable for potable water.

e. Controls: Automatic; factory mounted on unit and factory wired.
1) Adjustable duration of various regeneration steps.
2) Push-button start and complete manual operation.
3) Electric time clock and switch for automatic operation, except for manual return to service.
4) Sequence of Operation: Program multiport pilot-control valve to automatically pressure-actuate main operating valve through steps of regeneration.
5) Pointer on pilot-control valve shall indicate cycle of operation.
6) Means of manual operation of pilot-control valve if power fails.

f. Controls: Fully automatic; factory mounted on unit and factory wired.
1) Adjustable duration of various regeneration steps.
2) Push-button start and complete manual operation.
3) Electric time clock and switch for fully automatic operation, adjustable to initiate regeneration at any hour of day and any day of week or at fixed intervals.
4) Sequence of Operation: Program multiport pilot-control valve to automatically pressure-actuate main operating valve through steps of regeneration and return to service.
5) Pointer on pilot-control valve shall indicate cycle of operation.
6) Means of manual operation of pilot-control valve if power fails.
7) Main Operating Valves: Industrial, automatic, multiport, diaphragm type with the following features:
a) Slow opening and closing, nonslam operation.
b) Diaphragm guiding on full perimeter from fully open to fully closed.
c) Isolated dissimilar metals within valve.
d) Self-adjusting, internal, automatic brine injector that draws brine and rinses at constant rate independent of pressure.
e) Valve for single mineral-tank unit with internal automatic bypass of raw water during regeneration.
f) Sampling cocks for soft water.
g) Special tools are not required for service.
8) Flow Control: Automatic, to control backwash and flush rates over wide variations in operating pressures, and that does not require field adjustments.
a) Meter Control: Equip each mineral tank with signal-register-head water meter that will produce electrical signal indicating need for regeneration on reaching hand-set total in gallons (liters). Design so signal will continue until reset.
b) Demand-Initiated Control:
i. Equip single mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meter that electrically activates cycle controller to initiate regeneration at preset total in gallons (liters). Design so head automatically resets to preset total in gallons (liters) for next service run.
ii. Equip each mineral tank of twin mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meters that electrically activate cycle controllers to initiate regeneration at preset total in gallons (liters). Design so heads

automatically reset to preset total in gallons (liters) for next service run. Include electrical lockout to prevent simultaneous regeneration of both tanks.

iii. Equip each mineral tank of twin mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meter in common outlet header that electrically activates cycle controller to automatically regenerate one mineral tank at preset total in gallons (liters) and divert flow to other tank. Set to repeat with other tank. Include electrical lockout to prevent simultaneous regeneration of both tanks.

iv. Equip each mineral tank of multiple mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meters that electrically activate cycle controllers to automatically regenerate at preset total in gallons (liters). Design so heads automatically reset to preset total in gallons (liters) for next service run. Include electrical lockouts to prevent simultaneous regeneration of more than one tank.

v. Equip each mineral tank of multiple mineral-tank units with automatic-reset-head water meter in common outlet header that electrically activates cycle controller to automatically regenerate one mineral tank at preset total in gallons (liters) and divert flow to other tanks. Set to repeat with other tanks. Include electrical lockouts to prevent simultaneous regeneration of more than one tank.

g. Brine Tank: Combination measuring and wet-salt storing system.
   1) Tank and Cover Material: Fiberglass, 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) thick; or molded PE, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) thick.
   2) Brine Valve: Float operated and plastic fitted for automatic control of brine withdrawn and freshwater refill.
   3) Size: Large enough for at least four regenerations at full salting.

h. Factory-Installed Accessories:
   1) Piping, valves, tubing, and drains.
   2) Sampling cocks.
   3) Main-operating-valve position indicators.
   4) Water meters.

2. Capacity and Characteristics:
   a. Service: Cold **OR** Hot, **as directed**, water.
   b. Number of Mineral Tanks: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.

C. Chemicals
1. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock.
   a. Exchange Capacity: 30,000 grains/cu. ft. (69 kg/cu. m) of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb (6.8 kg) of salt.
2. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride; free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are not acceptable.
   a. Form: Processed, food-grade salt pellets **OR** plain salt pellets **OR** crystallized solar salt from shallow ponds and milled into irregular particles **OR** plain, brine block salt, **as directed**.

D. Water Testing Sets
1. Description: Manufacturer's standard water-hardness testing apparatus and chemicals with testing procedure instructions. Include metal container suitable for wall mounting.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Concrete Bases

1. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for commercial water softeners. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

B. Water Softener Installation
1. Install household water softeners on floor. Anchor water softener and brine tanks to substrate.
2. Install commercial water softener equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
3. Install seismic restraints for tanks and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure.
4. Install brine lines and fittings furnished by equipment manufacturer but not specified to be factory installed.
5. Prepare mineral-tank distribution system and underbed for minerals and place specified mineral into mineral tanks.
6. Install water testing sets mounted on wall, unless otherwise indicated, and near water softeners.

C. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14.. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
3. Make piping connections between water-softener-unit headers and dissimilar-metal water piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
4. Install shutoff valves on raw-water inlet and soft-water outlet piping of each mineral tank, and on inlet and outlet headers.
   a. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
   b. Plastic valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
   c. Exception: Water softeners with factory-installed shutoff valves at locations indicated.
5. Install pressure gages on raw-water inlet and soft-water outlet piping of each mineral tank. Pressure gages are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
   a. Exception: Water softeners with factory-installed pressure gages at locations indicated.
   b. Exception: Household water softeners.
   c. Exception: Water softeners in hot-water service.
6. Install valved bypass water piping around water softeners.
   a. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
   b. Plastic valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
   c. Water piping is specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
   d. Exception: Household water softeners.
   e. Exception: Water softeners in hot-water service.
7. Install drains as indirect wastes to spill into open drains or over floor drains.
8. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
9. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

D. Field Quality Control
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   a. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3. Remove and replace malfunctioning water softeners that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

E. Startup Service
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Add water to brine tanks and fill with salt.
a. Household Water Softeners: Processed food-grade salt pellets **OR** plain salt pellets **OR** crystallized solar salt, **as directed**.
b. Commercial Water Softeners: Plain salt pellets **OR** Crystallized solar salt **OR** Plain, brine block salt **OR** Food-grade salt pellets, **as directed**.
3. Sample water softener effluent after startup and at three consecutive seven-day intervals (total of four samples), and prepare certified test reports for required water performance characteristics. Comply with the following:
a. ASTM D 859, "Test Method for Silica in Water."
b. ASTM D 1067, "Test Methods for Acidity or Alkalinity of Water."
c. ASTM D 1068, "Test Methods for Iron in Water."
d. ASTM D 1126, "Test Method for Hardness in Water."
e. ASTM D 1129, "Terminology Relating to Water."
f. ASTM D 3370, "Practices for Sampling Water from Closed Conduits."

F. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial water softeners.

END OF SECTION 22 31 16 00

SECTION 22 33 00 00 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electric, water heaters. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following electric water heaters:
   a. Household, small-capacity electric water heaters.
   b. Household, storage electric water heaters.
   c. Household, collector-to-tank, solar-electric water heaters.
   d. Household, collector-to-tank, heat-exchanger-coil, solar-electric water heaters.
   e. Flow-control, instantaneous electric water heaters.
   f. Thermostat-control, instantaneous electric water heaters.
   g. Light-commercial electric water heaters.
   h. Commercial electric booster heaters.
   i. Commercial, storage electric water heaters.
   j. Compression tanks.
   k. Water heater accessories.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7 - "Service Water Heating."
3. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. ASME Compliance: Where indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
4. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

E. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) Structural failures including storage tank and supports.

2) Faulty operation of controls.
3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

b. Warranty Period(s): From date of Final Completion:
1) Household Electric Water Heaters:
a) Storage Tank: Five **OR** Six **OR** 10, **as directed**, years.
b) Controls and Other Components: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years.
2) Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: One **OR** Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, year(s).
3) Light-Commercial Electric Water Heaters:
a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
b) Controls and Other Components: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years.
4) Commercial Electric Water Heaters:
a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
b) Controls and Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
5) Compression Tanks: One year.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Household Electric Water Heaters
1. Household, Small-Capacity Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174.
a. Storage-Tank Construction: Corrosion-resistant metal or steel with corrosion-resistant coating, **as directed**.
1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
1) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005, if tank has drain outlet. Provide hose-end drain valve in piping for water heaters without drain outlet. Hose-end drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties".
2) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
3) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
4) Heating Element: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
5) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
6) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
7) Power Supply Cord: 24 to 72 inches (610 to 1830 mm) with plug.
8) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
2. Household, Standard **OR** Tabletop, **as directed**, Storage Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174.
a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
a) Standard: Cylindrical shape.

b) Tabletop: Rectangular shape, with flat-top work surface and raised back.
6) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
7) Heating Elements: Two; electric, screw-in immersion type with 12 kW or less total, and wired for nonsimultaneous operation, unless otherwise indicated.
8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
9) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
10) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

3. Household, Collector-to-Tank, Solar-Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174 with piping and electrical connections for UL 1279 solar collector system.
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
      1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
   b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      1) Sensor electrical connections and tank stud for sensor.
      2) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      3) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      4) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
      5) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
      6) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      7) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
      8) Heating Element: One; electric, screw-in immersion type with 6 kW or less.
      9) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
      10) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
      11) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
4. Household, Collector-to-Tank, Heat-Exchanger-Coil, Solar-Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174 with integral coil-type heat exchanger.
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
      1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
   b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
      4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
      5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      6) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
      7) Heat Exchanger: Corrosion-resistant-metal immersion coil.
      8) Heating Element: One; electric, screw-in immersion type with 6 kW or less.
      9) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
      10) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
      11) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater

working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

B. Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters
   1. Flow-Control, Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 499 for tankless electric (water heater) heating appliance.
      a. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
         1) Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
         2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
         3) Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
         4) Temperature Control: Flow-control fitting.
         5) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
         6) Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
      b. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.
   2. Thermostat-Control, Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 499 for tankless electric (water heater) heating appliance.
      a. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
         1) Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
         2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
         3) Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
         4) Temperature Control: Thermostat.
         5) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
         6) Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
      b. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

C. Light-Commercial Electric Water Heaters
   1. Description: Comply with UL 174 for household, storage electric water heaters.
      a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.
         1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
         2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
         3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
      b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
         1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
         2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
         3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
         4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
         5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
         6) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
         7) Heating Elements: Two; electric, screw-in immersion type; wired for simultaneous operation, unless otherwise indicated.
         8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
         9) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
         10) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
      c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with legs for off-floor installation.

D. Commercial Electric Water Heaters
   1. Commercial Electric Booster Heaters: Comply with UL 1453 requirements for booster-type water heaters.

a. Storage-Tank Construction: Corrosion-resistant metal **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
   1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
   2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.

b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
   1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
   2) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
   3) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
   4) Jacket: Rectangular shaped, with stainless-steel front panel, unless otherwise indicated.
   5) Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
      a) Option: Booster heaters with 9 kW or less total may have 2 or 3 elements.
      b) Staging: Input not exceeding 18 kW per step.
   6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat, to setting of at least 180 deg F (82 deg C).
   7) Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
   8) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, combination temperature and pressure relief valve. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   9) Gages: Combination temperature and pressure type or separate thermometer and pressure gage.

c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with brackets for undercounter **OR** legs for floor, **as directed**, installation.

2. Commercial, Storage Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 1453 requirements for storage-tank-type water heaters.

a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, arrangement.
   1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
   2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.

b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
   1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
   2) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
   3) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
   4) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   5) Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
      a) Staging: Input not exceeding 18 kW per step.
   6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
   7) Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
   8) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

d. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

E. Compression Tanks
1. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
a. Construction:
1) Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1, pipe thread.
2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
3) Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

F. Water Heater Accessories
1. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
2. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating.
3. Water Heater Stand and Drain-Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch- (457-mm-) high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 (DN 25) drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
4. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.
5. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
6. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
7. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that are capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
8. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
9. Water Regulators: ASSE 1003, water-pressure reducing valve. Set at 25-psig- (172.5-kPa-) maximum outlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
10. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

G. Source Quality Control
1. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
2. Hydrostatically test commercial, **as directed**, water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
3. Prepare test reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Water Heater Installation
1. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
a. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or direct on floor is indicated.

b. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

2. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
3. Install seismic restraints for light-commercial and commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
4. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
5. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
6. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
7. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
8. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of household, collector-to-tank, solar-electric water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
9. Install pressure gage(s) on inlet and outlet of commercial electric water- heater piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
10. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve, thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves and to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
11. Install water regulator, with integral bypass relief valve, in booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping.
12. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
13. Fill water heaters with water.
14. Charge compression tanks with air.

B. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

C. Field Quality Control
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   a. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
   c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

D. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial and instantaneous electric water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 33 00 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 33 30 13	22 33 00 00	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters
22 33 30 16	22 33 00 00	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters
22 33 30 16	22 34 00 00	Fuel-Fired, Domestic Water Heaters
22 33 33 00	22 33 00 00	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 34 00 00 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fuel-fired water heaters. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following fuel-fired water heaters:
   a. Household, atmospheric, storage, gas water heaters.
   b. Household, direct-vent, storage, gas water heaters.
   c. Household, power-vent, storage, gas water heaters.
   d. Instantaneous, tankless, gas water heaters.
   e. Commercial, atmospheric, storage, gas water heaters.
   f. Commercial, power-burner, storage, gas water heaters.
   g. Commercial, power-vent, storage, gas water heaters.
   h. Commercial, high-efficiency, gas water heaters.
   i. Commercial, coil-type, finned-tube, gas water heaters.
   j. Commercial, grid-type, finned-tube, gas water heaters.
   k. Household, oil-fired water heaters.
   l. Commercial, oil-fired water heaters.
   m. Large-capacity, oil-fired water heaters.
   n. Dual-fuel, gas and oil-fired water heaters.
   o. Compression tanks.
   p. Water heater accessories.

C. Definitions
1. LP Gas: Liquefied-petroleum fuel gas.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7 - "Service Water Heating."
3. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment". Include the following:
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. ASME Compliance:

a. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
b. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.

4. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9" for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

F. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
      2) Faulty operation of controls.
      3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
   b. Warranty Period(s): From date of Final Completion:
      1) Household, Gas Water Heaters:
         a) Storage Tank: Five **OR** Six **OR** 10, **as directed**, years.
         b) Controls and Other Components: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years.
      2) Instantaneous, Gas Water Heaters:
         a) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
         b) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
      3) Commercial, Gas Water Heaters:
         a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
         b) Controls and Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
      4) Oil-Fired Water Heaters:
         a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
         b) Burner and Controls: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, year(s).
         c) Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
      5) Dual-Fuel Water Heaters:
         a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
         b) Burner and Controls: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, year(s).
         c) Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
      6) Compression Tanks: One year.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Household, Gas Water Heaters

1. Household, Atmospheric, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
      1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
   b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
      4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
      5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      6) Burner: For use with atmospheric water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
      7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.

8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
9) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Draft Hood: Low-profile-type, draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
d. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.

2. Household, Direct-Vent, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.

b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
6) Burner: For use with direct-vent water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
9) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Direct-Vent System: Through-wall **OR** Through-roof, **as directed**, coaxial- or double-channel, vent assembly with water heater manufacturers' outside intake/exhaust screen.

3. Household, Power-Vent, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.

b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
6) Burner: For use with power-vent water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
9) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.

B. Instantaneous, Gas Water Heaters
   1. Description: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3, except storage is not required.
      a. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
         1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
         2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
         3) Heat Exchanger: Copper tubing.
         4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
         5) Burner: For use with tankless water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
         6) Automatic Ignition: Manufacturer's proprietary system for automatic, gas ignition.
         7) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
         8) Jacket: Metal with enameled finish or plastic.
      b. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

C. Commercial, Gas Water Heaters
   1. Commercial, Atmospheric, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
      a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
         1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
            a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
            b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
         2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
         3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
         1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
         2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
         3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
         4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
         5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
         6) Burner: For use with atmospheric water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
         7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
         8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
         9) Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
         10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
      c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
      d. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
      e. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.
      f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
   2. Commercial, Power-Burner, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.

a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
   1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
   2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.

b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
   1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
   2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
   3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
   4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
   5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   6) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Burner: Comply with UL 795 for power-burner water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
   1) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.

d. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.

e. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.

f. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

g. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.

h. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

3. Commercial, Power-Vent, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
      1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
         a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
         b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
      2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.

   b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
      4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
      5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.

6) Burner: For use with power-vent water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
9) Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valve with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
d. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.
e. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

4. Commercial, High-Efficiency, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
a. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 84 **OR** 85 **OR** 88 **OR** 95, **as directed**, percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions. Following features and attributes may be modified or omitted if water heater otherwise complies with requirements for performance.
b. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
c. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
6) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
d. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for high-efficiency water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
e. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
f. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
g. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
h. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.

5. Commercial, Coil-Type, Finned-Tube, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.13 for hot-water boilers.
a. Description: Packaged unit with boiler, storage tank, pump, piping, and controls.

b. Boiler Construction: ASME code with 160-psig (1100-kPa) working-pressure rating for hot-water-boiler-type water heater.
   1) Heat Exchanger: Helix or spiral, finned-copper-tube coils with bronze headers.
   2) Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with boiler. Attach to boiler before testing.
      a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

c. Boiler Appurtenances:
   1) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire boiler except connections and controls.
   2) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   3) Burner: For use with coil-type, finned-tube water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
   4) Temperature Control: Adjustable, storage tank temperature-control fitting and flow switch, interlocked with circulator and burner.
   5) Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
   6) Automatic Ignition: Intermittent electronic ignition complying with ANSI Z21.20.

d. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

e. Support: Steel base or skids.

f. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.

g. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.

h. Hot-Water Storage Tank: Connected with piping to circulating pump and water heater.
   1) Construction: According to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) **OR** 125-psig (860-kPa), **as directed**, working-pressure rating.
   2) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
   3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
   5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   6) Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
   7) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005, factory installed.
   8) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

i. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F (107 deg C) continuous-water-temperature rating.

j. Piping: Copper tubing; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or flanged joints.

k. Mounting: Water heater, tank, and accessories factory mounted on skids.

6. Commercial, Grid-Type, Finned-Tube, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.13 for hot-water boilers.
   a. Description: Packaged unit with boiler, storage tank, pump, piping, and controls.

b. Boiler Construction: ASME code with 160-psig (1100-kPa) working-pressure rating for hot-water-boiler-type water heater.
   1) Heat Exchanger: Horizontal, straight, finned-copper tubes with bronze headers.
   2) Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with boiler. Attach to boiler before testing.
      a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

c. Boiler Appurtenances:
   1) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire boiler except connections and controls.
   2) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   3) Burner: For use with grid-type, finned-tube water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
   4) Temperature Control: Adjustable, storage tank temperature-control fitting and flow switch, interlocked with circulator and burner.
   5) Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
   6) Automatic Ignition: Intermittent electronic ignition complying with ANSI Z21.20.

d. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

e. Support: Steel base or skids.

f. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.

g. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.

h. Hot-Water Storage Tank: Connected with piping to circulating pump and water heater.
   1) Construction: According to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) **OR** 125-psig (860-kPa), **as directed**, working-pressure rating.
   2) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
   3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
   5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   6) Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
   7) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005, factory installed.
   8) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

i. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F (107 deg C) continuous-water-temperature rating.

j. Piping: Copper tubing; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or flanged joints.

k. Mounting: Water heater, tank, and accessories factory mounted on skids.

D. Oil-Fired Water Heaters

1. Household, Oil-Fired Water Heaters: Comply with UL 732 for storage water heaters.
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
      1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
   b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
      4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
      5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
      7) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
      8) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   c. Oil Burner: Comply with UL 296 for use with No. 2 fuel oil.
   d. Draft Regulator: Barometric type or adjustable-damper device.
2. Commercial, Oil-Fired Water Heaters: Comply with UL 732 for storage water heaters.
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
      1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
         a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
         b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
      2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
      4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
      5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
      7) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   c. Oil Burners: Comply with UL 296 for use with No. 2 fuel oil.
   d. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
   e. Draft Regulator: Barometric type or adjustable-damper device.
   f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
3. Large-Capacity, Oil-Fired Water Heaters: Comply with UL 732 for storage water heaters except when capacity is greater than 120 gal. (454 L).
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.

1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
   a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
   b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.

b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
7) Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
8) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Oil Burner: Comply with UL 296 for use with No. 2 fuel oil.
d. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
e. Draft Regulator: Barometric type or adjustable-damper device.
f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

E. Dual-Fuel Water Heaters
1. Description: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 or UL 732 requirements appropriate for dual-fuel, gas and oil-fired water heaters.
   a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
      1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
         a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
         b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
      2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
      4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
      5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.

7) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

c. Dual-Fuel Burners: Combination gas-oil burner assembly, complying with appropriate requirements of UL 795; or comply with UL 296 for oil burners for No. 2 fuel oil and UL 795 for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.

d. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.

e. Vent Connection: According to standards of authorities having jurisdiction for dual-fuel water heaters.

f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

F. Compression Tanks

1. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
   a. Construction:
      1) Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      3) Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

G. Water Heater Accessories

1. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CGA 9.1, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
2. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18, appliance type. Include pressure rating, capacity, and pressure differential required between gas supply and water heater.
3. Gas Automatic Valves: ANSI Z21.21, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
4. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select each relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   a. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
   b. Oil-Fired Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3.
5. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of water heater.
   a. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
   b. Oil-Fired Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3.
6. Water Heater Stand and Drain Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch- (457-mm-) high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 (DN 25) drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
7. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.
8. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
9. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Provide dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
10. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that is capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
11. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.

H. Source Quality Control

1. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
2. Hydrostatically test commercial water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
3. Prepare test reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Water Heater Installation
1. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
   a. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or direct on floor is indicated.
   b. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
2. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
3. Install seismic restraints for commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
4. Install gas water heaters according to NFPA 54.
5. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supplies to gas water heaters without shutoff valves.
6. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
7. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas water heaters, if required for operation of safety control.
8. Install oil-fired water heaters according to NFPA 31.
9. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater, relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
10. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
11. Install water heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
12. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
13. Install pressure gage(s) on inlet and outlet piping of commercial, fuel-fired water heater piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
14. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves and to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
15. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
16. Fill water heaters with water.
17. Charge compression tanks with air.

B. Connections

1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

C. Field Quality Control
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   a. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
   c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

D. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instantaneous and commercial water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 34 00 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 34 36 13	22 33 00 00	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 34 36 23 - WATER-TUBE BOILERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water-tube boilers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes packaged, factory-fabricated and -assembled, gas-fired, finned water-tube boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.
2. This Section includes packaged, water-tube boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water or steam with the following configurations, burners, and outputs:
   a. Factory and Field assembled.
   b. Atmospheric gas, Forced-draft gas, Oil, and Combination gas and oil burner.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include performance data, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Design calculations and vibration isolation base details, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
      1) Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
      2) Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails and equipment mounting frames.
   b. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that boiler, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Include the following:
4. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
8. Other Informational Submittals:
   a. ASME "A" Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A" stamp certificate of authorization as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.
   b. Startup service reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
3. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."
4. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N, "Uniform Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Furnaces and Boilers."

5. I=B=R Compliance: Boilers shall be tested and rated according to HI's "Rating Procedure for Heating Boilers" and "Testing Standard for Commercial Boilers," with I=B=R emblem on a nameplate affixed to boiler.
6. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 726, "Oil-Fired Boiler Assemblies" **OR** UL 726, "Oil-Fired Boiler Assemblies" and UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment" **OR** UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment", **as directed**. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Warranty
1. Special Warranty for Finned Water-Tube Boilers: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace heat exchangers damaged by thermal shock and vent dampers of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: 20 years from date of Final Completion.
   b. Warranty Period for Vent Dampers: Five years from date of Final Completion.
2. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace drums, tubes, headers, cabinets, atmospheric gas burners, and pressure vessels of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Warranty Period for Drums, Tubes, Headers, Cabinets, and Atmospheric Gas Burner: Five years from date of Final Completion, pro rata.
   b. Warranty Period for Pressure Vessel: 20 years from date of Final Completion, for thermal shock.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Finned Water-Tube Boilers
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested boiler with tubes sealed into headers pressure tight, and set on a steel base; including insulated jacket, flue-gas vent, combustion-air intake connections, water supply and return connections, and controls.
2. Heat Exchanger:
   a. Finned copper **OR** steel **OR** copper-nickel, **as directed**, tubing with stainless-steel baffles.
   b. Bronze **OR** Cast-iron **OR** Steel, **as directed**, headers.
   c. Single-pass **OR** Two-pass, **as directed**, horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** coil, **as directed**, configuration.
   d. Tubes shall be sealed in header with silicone O-ring gaskets **OR** by welding **OR** by mechanically rolling tubes in header, **as directed**.
3. Combustion Chamber Internal Insulation: Interlocking panels of refractory insulation, high-temperature cements, mineral fiber, and ceramic refractory tile for service temperatures to 2000 deg F (1100 deg C).
4. Casing:
   a. Jacket: Sheet metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
   b. Control Compartment Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
   c. Finish: Baked enamel over primer **OR** Baked enamel over galvanizing **OR** Powder coated, **as directed**.
   d. Insulation: Minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) **OR** 2-inch- (50-mm-), **as directed**, thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
   e. Draft Hood: Integral **OR** External, **as directed**.
   f. Combustion-Air Connection: Inlet duct collar and sheet metal closure over burner compartment.
   g. Mounting base to secure boiler with accessory for mounting on combustible surface, **as directed**.
      1) Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler pressure vessel, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration And

Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.

5. Burner:
   a. Burner Tubes and Orifices: Stainless steel, for natural **OR** propane, **as directed**, gas. Mount burner tubes in a slide-out burner drawer for ease of inspection, **as directed**.
      1) Sealed Combustion: Factory-mounted centrifugal fan to draw outside air into boiler and discharge into burner compartment.
      2) Direct Vent: Factory-mounted centrifugal fan to draw flue gas out of boiler and discharge into boiler vent.
   b. Vertical Burner:
      1) High-temperature stainless steel **OR** Ceramic, **as directed**, to fire in a 360-degree pattern.
      2) Burner shall have a viewing port for observation of burner operation and a factory-mounted centrifugal fan to supply room **OR** outside, **as directed**, air through a replaceable 99 percent efficient (1-micrometer particles) filter, **as directed**, to boiler burner.
      3) Fan shall be controlled to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber before firing.
   c. Gas Train for Commercial Boilers: Control devices and full-modulation **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low **OR** proportional, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in AGA **OR** ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**. In addition to these requirements, include shutoff cock, pressure regulator, and control valve.
   d. Gas Train for Residential Boilers: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff, pressure regulator, and pilot adjustment.
   e. Pilot: Standing **OR** Intermittent-electric-spark **OR** Hot-surface, **as directed**, pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.
   f. Flue-Gas Recirculation Fans: Centrifugal fans on burner assembly to recirculate flue gas to decrease oxides of nitrogen emissions to less than 30 ppm.

   g. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
6. Trim:
   a. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, **as directed**, and high limit.
   b. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
   c. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
   d. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic **OR** Manual, **as directed**.
   e. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) hose-end gate valve.
   f. Circulation Pump: Non-overloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.
7. Controls:
   a. Refer to Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
      OR
      Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
      1) Control transformer.
      2) Motorized Vent Damper: Interlocked with burner to open before burner starts. If damper fails to open, stop burner operation.
      3) Set-Point Adjust: Set points shall be adjustable.
      4) Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain space temperature in response to thermostat with heat anticipator located in heated space.
         OR

Sequence of Operation: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 200 deg F (93 deg C); at 60 deg F (15 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 140 deg F (60 deg C).

5) Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.

b. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
   1) High Cutoff: Manual **OR** Automatic, **as directed**, reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
   2) Water Flow Switch: Automatic-reset paddle-switch shall prevent burner operation on low water flow.
   3) Blocked Vent Safety Switch: Manual-reset switch factory mounted on draft diverter.
   4) Rollout Safety Switch: Factory mounted on boiler combustion chamber.
   5) Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.

c. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
   1) Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm **OR** low water level alarm, **as directed**.
   2) Control: On/off operation, hot water supply temperature set-point adjustment, **as directed**.
   3) A communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building automation system.

B. Steel **OR** Flexible, **as directed**, Water-Tube Boilers
1. Description: Factory-fabricated and assembled **OR** Field-assembled, **as directed**, water-tube boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base; including insulated jacket, flue-gas vent, supply and return connections, and controls.
2. Heat-Exchanger Design: Straight steel tubes rolled into steel headers.
   a. Accessible head plates at both ends.
   b. Handholes or couplings, **as directed**, in headers for water-side inspections.
   c. Accessible drain and blowdown tappings, both high and low, for surface and mud removal.
   d. Lifting lugs on top of boiler.
   e. Built-in air separator.
3. Heat-Exchanger Design: Bent steel tubes swaged **OR** welded, **as directed**, into steel headers with membrane waterwall design, **as directed**.
   a. Limit tube configurations to two **OR** four, **as directed**.
   b. Accessible drain and blowdown tappings, both high and low, for surface and mud removal.
   c. Accessible inspection ports in drum, mud legs, and tube manifolds.
   d. Lifting lugs on top of boiler.
   e. Built-in air separator.
4. Combustion Chamber: Equipped with minimum 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) **OR** 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, 2700 deg F (1482 deg C) poured refractory on floor and minimum 2-inch (50-mm) **OR** 3-1/2-inch (89-mm), **as directed**, lap-jointed cast refractory with fiber-blanket joint seals on side walls. Combustion chamber shall have flame observation ports in front and back **OR** back, **as directed**.
5. Casing:
   a. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm) thick, lightweight refractory; 1-inch (25-mm) thick insulating board; galvanized-steel membrane, and 2-inch (50-mm) thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger and combustion chamber **OR** 2-inch (50-mm)

thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger and combustion chamber, **as directed**.

b. Top Flue Connection: Constructed of aluminized steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

c. Jacket: Mirror-finish stainless steel, with screw-fastened closures.

OR

Jacket: Sheet metal **OR** Galvanized sheet metal, **as directed**, with screw-fastened closures and baked-enamel **OR** powder-coated, **as directed**, protective finish.

d. Mounting base to secure boiler to concrete base.

1) Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.

e. Control Compartment Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1A.

6. Draft Diverter **OR** Barometric Damper, **as directed**: Galvanized-steel assembly with flue-gas thermometer.

7. Burner - Atmospheric Gas Burners:

a. Burner and Orifices: Stainless steel **OR** Cast iron, **as directed**, for natural **OR** propane, **as directed**, gas.

b. Gas Train for Commercial Boilers: Control devices and full-modulation **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in AGA **OR** ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.

c. Gas Train for Residential Boilers: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff, pressure regulator, and pilot adjustment.

d. Pilot: Standing **OR** Intermittent-electric-spark, **as directed**, pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.

8. Burner - Forced-Draft Gas Burners:

a. Burner: Welded construction with multivane, stainless-steel, flame-retention diffuser for natural **OR** propane, **as directed**, gas. Mount burner on hinged access door to permit access to combustion chamber, **as directed**.

b. Blower: Forward-curved centrifugal fan integral to burner, directly driven by motor; with adjustable, dual-blade damper assembly and locking quadrant to set air-fuel ratio.

1) Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

a) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

c. Gas Train: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in AGA **OR** ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.

d. Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.

e. Flue-Gas Recirculation: Burner connections shall be equipped for recirculating flue gas.

1) Maximum Oxides of Nitrogen Emissions: 20 **OR** 30, **as directed**, ppm.

9. Burner - Oil Burners:

a. Burner: Welded construction with multivane, stainless-steel, flame-retention diffuser for fuel oil. Mount burner on hinged access door to permit access to combustion chamber, **as directed**.

b. Blower: Forward-curved centrifugal fan integral to burner, directly driven by motor; with adjustable, dual-blade damper assembly and locking quadrant to set air-fuel ratio.

1) Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

a) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

c. Oil Supply: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.

1) Oil Pump: Two-stage, gear-type oil pump integral to and directly driven by blower, **as directed**, shall be capable of producing 300-psig (2070-kPa) discharge pressure and 15-inch Hg (50.7-kPa) vacuum.
2) Oil Piping Specialties:
   a) Suction-line, manual, gate valve.
   b) Removable-mesh oil strainer.
   c) 0- to 30-inch Hg (0- to 101.3-kPa) vacuum; 0- to 30-psig (0- to 207-kPa) vacuum-pressure gage.
   d) 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) oil-nozzle pressure gage.
   e) Nozzle-line, solenoid-safety-shutoff oil valve.

d. Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff solenoid using cadmium sulfide **OR** UV scanner, **as directed**, flame-safety control.
e. Flue-Gas Recirculation: Burner connections shall be equipped for recirculating flue gas.
   1) Maximum Oxides of Nitrogen Emissions: 30 ppm.

10. Burner - Combination Gas and Oil Burners:
    a. Burner: Welded construction with multivane, stainless-steel, flame-retention diffuser for fuel oil and natural **OR** propane, **as directed** gas. Mount burner on hinged access door to permit access to combustion chamber, **as directed**.
    b. Blower: Forward-curved centrifugal fan integral to burner, directly driven by motor; with adjustable, dual-blade damper assembly and locking quadrant to set air-fuel ratio.
       1) Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
          a) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
    c. Oil Supply: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI, **as directed**.
       1) Oil Pump: Two-stage, gear-type oil pump integral to and directly driven by blower, **as directed**, shall be capable of producing 300-psig (2070-kPa) discharge pressure and 15-inch Hg (50.7-kPa) vacuum.
       2) Oil Piping Specialties:
          a) Suction-line, manual, gate valve.
          b) Removable-mesh oil strainer.
          c) 0- to 30-inch Hg (0- to 101.3-kPa) vacuum; 0- to 30-psig (0- to 207-kPa) vacuum-pressure gage.
          d) 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) oil-nozzle pressure gage.
          e) Nozzle-line, solenoid-safety-shutoff oil valve.
    d. Gas Train: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.
    e. Gas Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.
    f. Oil Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff solenoid with cadmium sulfide **OR** UV scanner, **as directed**, flame-safety control.
    g. Flue-Gas Recirculation: Burner connections shall be equipped for recirculating flue gas.
       1) Maximum Oxides of Nitrogen Emissions: 20 **OR** 30, **as directed**, ppm.

11. Trim for Hot-Water Boilers:
    a. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.1, "Power Piping **OR** ANSI B31.9, "Building Services Piping", **as directed**.
    b. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, **as directed**, and high limit.
    c. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.

d. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
e. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic **OR** Manual, **as directed**.
f. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) hose-end gate valve.
g. Tankless Heater: Carbon-steel **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, header with copper-tube heat exchanger, mounted in a port of upper drum and sealed with fiber gasket.
    1) Tappings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
    2) Tappings NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

12. Trim for Steam Boilers:
    a. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.1, "Power Piping **OR** ANSI B31.9, "Building Services Piping", **as directed**.
    b. Pressure Controllers: Operating, firing rate, **as directed**, and high limit.
    c. Safety Relief Valve:
        1) Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
        2) Description: Fully enclosed steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff; factory set and sealed.
            a) Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and outlet with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
    d. Pressure Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) diameter. Gage shall have normal operating pressure about 50 percent of full range.
    e. Water Column: Minimum 12-inch (300-mm) glass gage with shutoff cocks.
    f. Drain Valves: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) or nozzle size with hose-end connection.
    g. Blowdown Valves: Factory-installed bottom and surface, slow-acting blowdown valves same size as boiler nozzle. Blowdown valves shall be combination of slow and quick acting as required by ANSI B31.1, **as directed**.
    h. Stop Valves: Boiler inlets and outlets, except safety relief valves or preheater inlet and outlet, shall be equipped with stop valve in an accessible location as near as practical to boiler nozzle and same size or larger than nozzle. Valves larger than NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have rising stem.
    i. Stop-Check Valves: Factory-installed, stop-check valve and stop valve at boiler outlet with free-blow drain valve factory installed between the two valves and visible when operating stop-check valve.
    j. Tankless Heater: Carbon-steel header with copper-tube heat exchanger, mounted in a port of upper manifold and sealed with fiber gasket.
        1) Tappings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
        2) Tappings NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

13. Controls:
    a. Refer to Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
    OR
    Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
        1) Control transformer.
        2) Set-Point Adjust: Set points shall be adjustable.
        3) Operating Pressure Control for Steam Boilers: Factory wired and mounted to cycle burner.
        4) Low-Water Cutoff and Pump Control for Steam Boilers: Cycle feedwater pump(s) for makeup water control.

5) Sequence of Operation for Hot-Water Boilers: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain space temperature in response to thermostat with heat anticipator located in heated space.
OR
Sequence of Operation for Hot-Water Boilers: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 200 deg F (93 deg C); at 60 deg F (15 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 140 deg F (60 deg C).
6) Sequence of Operation for Steam Boilers: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain a constant steam pressure. Maintain pressure set point plus or minus 10 percent.
7) Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.

b. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
1) High Cutoff: Manual **OR** Automatic, **as directed**, reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature for hot-water boiler or design pressure for steam boiler.
2) Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic (for hot-water boilers) or Float and electronic (for steam boilers) probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be manual **OR** automatic, **as directed**,-reset type.
3) Blocked Vent Safety Switch (Atmospheric Boilers): Manual-reset switch factory mounted on draft diverter.
4) Rollout Safety Switch (Atmospheric Boilers): Factory mounted on boiler combustion chamber.
5) Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.

c. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
1) Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm **OR** low water level alarm, **as directed**.
2) Control: On/off operation, hot water supply temperature set-point adjustment **OR** steam pressure adjustment, **as directed**.
3) A communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building automation system.

C. Electrical Power
1. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 22.
OR
Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
a. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
b. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
c. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal, **as directed**, raceway.
d. Field power interface shall be to wire lugs **OR** fused disconnect switch **OR** nonfused disconnect switch **OR** circuit breaker, **as directed**.
e. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with disconnect switch or circuit breaker, **as directed**.

f. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

D. Venting Kits
1. Vent Damper (for Finned Water-Tube Boilers): Motorized, UL listed for use on atmospheric burner boiler equipped with draft hood; motor to open and close damper; stainless-steel vent coupling and damper blade; keyed wiring harness connector plug; and dual-position switches to permit burner operation.
2. Kit: Complete system, ASTM A 959, Type 29-4C, **as directed**, stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal, thimble, indoor plate, vent adapter, condensate trap, and sealant.
3. Combustion-Air Intake: Stainless steel, pipe, vent terminal with screen, inlet air coupling, and sealant.

E. Source Quality Control
1. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
2. Burner and Hydrostatic Test (for Factory-Assembled Boilers): Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
3. Allow the Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify the Owner 14 days in advance of testing.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Boiler Installation
1. Install boilers level on concrete base. Concrete base is specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac", and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 31.
2. Vibration Isolation: Elastomeric isolator pads **OR** mounts, **as directed**, with a minimum static deflection of 0.25 inch (6.35 mm). Vibration isolation devices and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
3. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
4. Install oil-fired boilers according to NFPA 31.
5. Assemble boiler tubes in sequence and seal each tube joint.
6. Assemble and install boiler trim.
7. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
8. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

B. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
4. Connect oil piping full size to burner inlet with shutoff valve and union.
5. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
6. Connect steam and condensate piping to supply-, return-, and blowdown-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
7. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain (for hot-water boilers).
8. Install piping from safety valves to drip-pan elbow and to nearest floor drain (for steam boilers).
9. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.
10. Boiler Flue Venting (for Finned Water-Tube Boilers):
a. Install venting kit and combustion-air intake.

b. Connect full size to boiler connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, And Stacks".

11. Connect breeching to full size of boiler outlet. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, And Stacks" for venting materials.
12. Install flue-gas recirculation duct from vent to burner. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, And Stacks" for recirculation duct materials.
13. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
14. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   b. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   c. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
   d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
      1) Burner Test (for Field-Assembled Boilers): Adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency.
      2) Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature **OR** steam pressure, **as directed**.
      3) Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
4. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
5. Performance Tests, as directed:
   a. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.
   b. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment in order to comply.
   c. Perform field performance tests to determine the capacity and efficiency of the boilers.
      1) For dual-fuel boilers, perform tests for each fuel.
      2) Test for full capacity.
      3) Test for boiler efficiency at low fire 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 80, 60, 40 and 20, **as directed**, percent of full capacity. Determine efficiency at each test point.
   d. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.
   e. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.
   f. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat produced during tests if building systems are not adequate.
   g. Notify the Owner in advance of test dates.
   h. Document test results in a report and submit to the Owner.

D. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers.

END OF SECTION 22 34 36 23

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 34 46 11	22 34 00 00	Fuel-Fired, Domestic Water Heaters

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 35 23 13 - DOMESTIC WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for heat exchangers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following heat exchangers:
   a. Heating-fluid-in-coil, instantaneous heat exchangers.
   b. Domestic-water-in-coil, instantaneous heat exchangers.
   c. Heating-fluid-in-U-tube-coil, instantaneous heat exchangers.
   d. Circulating, compact heat exchangers.
   e. Circulating, storage heat exchangers.
   f. Noncirculating, compact heat exchangers.
   g. Noncirculating, storage heat exchangers.
   h. Brazed-plate heat exchangers.
   i. Frame-and-plate heat exchangers.
   j. Heat reclaimers.
   k. Compression tanks.
   l. Heat-exchanger accessories.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type and size of heat exchanger indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification
4. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For heat exchangers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label heat-exchanger storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9" for all components that will be in contact with water.

E. Warranty
1. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of heat exchangers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) Structural failures including heat exchanger, storage tank, and supports.
      2) Faulty operation of controls.
      3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
   b. Warranty Period(s): From date of Final Completion:

1) Instantaneous Heat Exchangers:
   a) Tube Coil and Shell: One year.
   b) Controls and Other Components: One year.
2) Circulating, Storage Heat Exchangers:
   a) Storage Tank: Five years.
   b) Tube Coil: Five years.
   c) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
3) Noncirculating, Storage Heat Exchangers:
   a) Storage Tank: Five years.
   b) Tube Coil: Five years.
   c) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
4) Plate Heat Exchangers:
   a) Brazed-Plate Type: One year.
   b) Plate-and-Frame Type: One year.
5) Heat Reclaimers: One year.
6) Compression Tanks: One year.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Instantaneous Heat Exchangers
   1. Heating-Fluid-in-Coil, Instantaneous Heat Exchangers:
      a. Description: Packaged assembly of tank, heat-exchanger coils, controls, and specialties for heating domestic water with heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, in heat-exchanger coils.
      b. Construction: ASME-code, negligible-capacity, copper-lined, carbon-steel shell with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
         1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with heat-exchanger shell. Attach tappings to shell before testing and labeling.
            a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
            b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
         2) Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire shell and nozzle except connections and controls.
         3) Heat-Exchanger Coils: Copper **OR** Copper nickel **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, helix-wound coils for heating fluid with pressure rating equal to or greater than heating-fluid supply pressure.
         4) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat that operates control valve and that is capable of maintaining outlet-water temperature within 4 deg F (2 deg C) of setting.
         5) Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
         6) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
      c. Miscellaneous Components for Heating Hot-Water Unit: Control valve, valves, and piping. Include components fitted for pneumatic control.
      d. Miscellaneous Components for Steam Unit: Strainers, steam-control valve, steam trap, valves, pressure gage, thermometer, and piping. Include components fitted for pneumatic control.
         1) Exception: Steam trap is not required if manufacturer's written instructions direct that it not be used.
      e. Stand: Factory fabricated for floor mounting.

2. Domestic-Water-in-Coil, Instantaneous Heat Exchangers:
   a. Description: Tankless, packaged assembly of heat-exchanger coils, controls, and specialties for heating domestic water in coils with steam in shell.
   b. Construction: ASME code, with cast-iron or steel shell for steam.
      1) Cast-Iron Shell Pressure Rating: 75 psig (517 kPa).
      2) Steel Shell Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire shell and nozzle except connections and controls.
   c. Heat-Exchanger Coils: Spiral-wound, copper or copper-alloy **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, coils for domestic water.
   d. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat that operates steam-control valve and that is capable of maintaining outlet-water temperature within 3 deg F (2 deg C) of setting.
   e. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
   f. Miscellaneous Components: Strainers, steam-control valve, steam trap, valves, and piping.
   g. Stand: Factory fabricated for floor mounting.
3. Heating-Fluid-in-U-Tube-Coil, Instantaneous Heat Exchangers:
   a. Description: Tankless, packaged assembly of heat-exchanger coil, controls, and specialties for heating domestic water in shell with heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, in coil.
   b. Construction: ASME-code, negligible-capacity, copper-lined, carbon-steel or copper-alloy shell with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
      1) Configuration: Horizontal **OR** Vertical, **as directed**.
      2) Shell Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with water heater shell. Attach tappings to shell before testing and labeling.
         a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
         b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
      3) Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire shell and nozzle except connections and controls.
      4) Heat-Exchanger Coil: Copper, double-wall **OR** single-wall, **as directed**, U tubes for heating fluid.
         a) Tube Pressure Rating: Equal to or greater than heating-fluid supply pressure.
   c. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat that operates steam-control valve and that is capable of maintaining outlet-water temperature within 5 deg F (3 deg C) of setting.
   d. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
   e. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into shell.
   f. Miscellaneous Components for Heating Hot-Water Unit: Control valve, valves, and piping. Include components fitted for pneumatic control.
   g. Miscellaneous Components for Steam Unit: Strainers, steam-control valve, steam trap, valves, pressure gage, thermometer, and piping. Include components fitted for pneumatic control.
   h. Stand: Factory fabricated for floor mounting.

B. Circulating, Storage Heat Exchangers
   1. Circulating, Compact Heat Exchangers:
      a. Description: Packaged, small-capacity, hot-water storage tank with heat-exchanger coil; circulator; controls; and specialties for heating domestic water with heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, in coil.

b. Flow Pattern: Standard-flow arrangement, with water from bottom of storage tank circulated across heat-exchanger coil and returned to tank. Include hot-water outlet located at top of tank and temperature sensor in tank.
c. Storage Tank Construction: ASME-code, vertical; copper-silicon or corrosion-resistant metal with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating. Include nozzle and head for heat-exchanger tube coil.
    1) Configuration: Vertical.
    2) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing and labeling.
        a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
        b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    3) Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire storage tank and nozzle except connections and controls.
d. Heat-Exchanger Coil: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), **as directed**, diameter, vented, double-wall, copper or copper-alloy, U tubes with tube sheet and supporting baffles.
    1) Heat-Exchanger Pressure Rating: Equal to or greater than heating-fluid supply pressure.
e. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
f. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system. Include automatic low-water cutoff device or system.
g. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
h. Gages: Factory-mounted thermometer and pressure gage.
i. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F (107 deg C) continuous-water-temperature rating.
    1) Pump Control: Sensor for operating pump and control valve.
j. Miscellaneous Components for Heating Hot-Water Units: Control valve, valves, and piping.
k. Miscellaneous Components for Steam Units: Strainers, steam-control valve, steam trap, valves, and piping.
l. Support: Factory mounted on skids.
m. Energy Management System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling heat exchanger.

2. Circulating, Storage Heat Exchangers:
    a. Description: Packaged, large-capacity, hot-water storage tank with heat-exchanger coil, circulator, controls, and specialties for heating domestic water with heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, in coil.
    b. Flow Pattern: Standard-flow arrangement, with water from bottom of storage tank circulated across heat-exchanger coil and returned to tank. Include hot-water outlet located at top of tank and temperature sensor in tank.
    c. Flow Pattern: Reverse-flow arrangement, with water from storage tank drawn across heat-exchanger coil and returned to bottom of tank. Include hot-water outlet and temperature sensor located in or at coil shell.
    d. Storage Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working-pressure rating. Include nozzle and head for heat-exchanger tube coil.

1) Configuration: Horizontal **OR** Vertical, **as directed**.
2) Manhole: 11 by 15 inches (280 by 380 mm) in end head of horizontal **OR** sidewall of vertical, **as directed**, storage tank shell.
3) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing and labeling.
   a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
   b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
4) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
5) Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
6) Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire storage tank and nozzle except connections and controls.

e. Heat-Exchanger Coil: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), **as directed**, diameter, vented, double-wall, copper or copper-alloy, U tubes with tube sheet and supporting baffles.
   1) Heat-Exchanger Pressure Rating: Equal to or greater than heating-fluid supply pressure.

f. Temperature Control: Adjustable temperature aquastat, mounted in storage tank shell head, unless otherwise indicated.

g. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system. Include automatic low-water cutoff device or system.

h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

i. Gages: Factory-mounted thermometer and pressure gage.

j. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F (107 deg C) continuous-water-temperature rating.
   1) Pump Control: Sensor for operating pump and control valve.

k. Support: Factory mounted on skids.

l. Energy Management System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling heat exchanger.

C. Noncirculating, Storage Heat Exchangers
1. Compact Heat Exchangers:
   a. Description: Hot-water storage tank with integral heat-exchanger coil, controls, and specialties for heating domestic water with heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, in coil.
   b. Storage Tank Shell Construction: Steel or stainless steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
      1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      3) Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire tank except connections and controls.
      4) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish, unless otherwise indicated.
      5) Anode Rods for Steel Tanks: Factory installed, magnesium.

c. Heat-Exchanger Coil: Copper or stainless-steel coil assembly, permanently installed inside storage tank, for heating fluid. Include working-pressure rating equal to or greater than heating-fluid supply pressure.
d. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
e. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relief valve with relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

2. Storage Heat Exchangers:
   a. Description: Assembly of hot-water storage tank with separate heat-exchanger coil; controls; and specialties for heating domestic water with heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, in coil.
   b. Storage Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working-pressure rating. Include nozzle and head for heat-exchanger tube coil.
      1) Configuration: Horizontal **OR** Vertical, **as directed**.
      2) Manhole: 11 by 15 inches (280 by 380 mm) in end head of horizontal **OR** sidewall of vertical, **as directed**, storage tank shell.
      3) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing and labeling.
         a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
         b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
      4) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      5) Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
      6) Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire storage tank and nozzle except connections and controls.
   c. Heat-Exchanger Coil: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) **OR** NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), **as directed**, diameter, vented, double-wall, copper or copper-alloy, U tubes with tube sheet and supporting baffles.
      1) Heat-Exchanger Pressure Rating: Equal to or greater than heating-fluid supply pressure.
   d. Temperature Control: Adjustable temperature aquastat, mounted in storage tank shell head, unless otherwise indicated.
   e. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
   f. Support: Factory mounted on skids.

D. Plate Heat Exchangers
   1. Brazed-Plate Heat Exchangers:
      a. Description: Assembly of heat-exchanger plates, permanently brazed together, for using heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, to heat domestic water.
      b. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa) **OR** 400 psig (2760 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      c. Plate Construction: Single **OR** Vented, double, **as directed**, wall.
      d. Plate Material: ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
      e. Connections: Stainless steel; threaded.

2. Frame-and-Plate Heat Exchangers:
   a. Description: Assembly of nonfixed-position, heat-exchanger plates, with frame, for using heating hot water **OR** steam, **as directed**, to heat domestic water.
   b. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa) **OR** 400 psig (2760 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   c. Frame:
      1) Carrying and Guide Bars: Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
      2) Fixed, Frame Plate; Pressure Plate; Support Column; and Nuts and Bolts: Carbon steel.
   d. Channel Plates:
      1) Type: Single **OR** Vented, double, **as directed**, wall.
      2) Material: ASTM A 666, Type 304 or 316 stainless steel.
      3) Gasket Material: Butyl or acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber, suitable for potable water.
   e. Connections: Stainless steel suitable for potable water.
      1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
   f. Protective Shroud: Steel, covering channel plates.
   g. Insulation: Complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for operating temperature. Surround entire heat exchanger except connections.

E. Heat Reclaimers
   1. Description: Waste-heat recovery device complying with and listed according to UL 207 for heat reclaimers. Device includes vertical drainage tube with helical, domestic water preheat coil around drainage tube.
      a. Drainage Tube: ASTM B 306, Type DWV, center, copper drainage tube of size indicated.
      b. Water Preheat Coil: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), copper water tube, of size indicated attached to drainage tube.
         1) Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) on potable-water supply tubing.
      c. Capacity and Characteristics:
         1) NPS 2 (DN 50) Drainage Tube:
            a) Domestic Water Preheat Coil: NPS 3/8 (DN 10).
            b) Unit Height: 20 inches (508 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 30 inches (762 mm), **as directed**.
         2) NPS 3 (DN 80) Drainage Tube:
            a) Domestic Water Preheat Coil: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 3/4 (DN 20), **as directed**.
            b) Unit Height: 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 40 inches (1016 mm) **OR** 60 inches (1524 mm), **as directed**.
         3) NPS 4 (DN 100) Drainage Tube:
            a) Domestic-Water Preheat Coil: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) **OR** NPS 3/4 (DN 20), **as directed**.
            b) Unit Height: 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 40 inches (1016 mm) **OR** 60 inches (1524 mm), **as directed**.

F. Compression Tanks
   1. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
      a. Construction:
         1) Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
         2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
         3) Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
      b. Capacity and Characteristics:
         1) Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.

2) Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. (7.6 L) **OR** 4 gal. (15.1 L) **OR** 7 gal. (26.5 L) **OR** 10 gal. (37.9 L), **as directed**, minimum.

G. Heat-Exchanger Accessories
1. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into heat-exchanger storage tank.
2. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of heat exchanger.
3. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
4. Source Quality Control
5. Test and inspect heat-exchanger storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
6. Hydrostatically test commercial heat-exchanger storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
7. Prepare test reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Heat-Exchanger Installation
1. Install heat exchangers on concrete bases.
   a. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
2. Install heat exchangers level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
3. Anchor heat exchangers to substrate.
4. Install seismic restraints for heat exchangers. Anchor to substrate.
5. Install temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tank shells of heat exchangers with domestic water storage. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into shells. Extend relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
6. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for heat exchangers without storage. Extend relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
7. Install heat-exchanger drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for heat exchangers that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
8. Install thermometer on each heat-exchanger domestic-water inlet and outlet piping, and install thermometer on each heat-exchanger heating-fluid inlet and outlet piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
9. Install pressure gages on heat-exchanger heating-fluid piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
10. Fill heat exchangers with water.
11. Charge compression tanks with air.

B. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to heat exchangers to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of heat exchangers.

3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

C. Field Quality Control
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   a. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
   c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Remove and replace heat exchangers that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

D. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain heat exchangers.

END OF SECTION 22 35 23 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
22 35 23 13	22 33 00 00	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 01 10 91 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sequence of operation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes control sequences for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment.

C. Definitions
1. DDC: Direct digital control.
2. VAV: Variable air volume.

D. Heating Control Sequences
1. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Control:
   a. Input Device: Thermostat **OR** Thermistor temperature sensor **OR** Resistance temperature sensor, **as directed**.
   b. Output Device: Control valve.
   c. Action: Modulate control valve to maintain heating-water supply temperature.
   d. Display:
      1) Heating-water supply temperature.
      2) Heating-water supply temperature set point.
      3) Control-valve position.
2. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Reset:
   a. Input Device: Electric, outdoor-air-reset controller **OR** Outdoor-air sensor, **as directed**.
   b. Output Device: Unitary controller **OR** DDC system software, **as directed**.
   c. Action: Reset heating-water supply temperature in straight-line relationship with outdoor-air temperature for the following conditions:
      1) 195 deg F (90 deg C) heating water when outdoor-air temperature is minus 30 deg F (minus 35 deg C).
      2) 130 deg F (54 deg C) heating water when outdoor-air temperature is 75 deg F (24 deg C).
      3) 150 deg F (65 deg C) minimum, heating-water temperature.
   d. Display:
      1) Outdoor-air temperature.
      2) Heating-water supply temperature.
      3) Heating-water supply temperature set point.
3. Control Primary Circulating Pump(s):
   a. Input Device: Thermostat **OR** DDC system, **as directed**.
   b. Output Device: Starter **OR** DDC system command to starter, **as directed**, relay.
   c. Action: Energize pump(s) at outdoor-air temperatures below 65 deg F (18 deg C).
   d. Display:
      1) Outdoor-air temperature.
      2) Operating status of primary circulating pump(s).

E. Central Refrigeration Equipment Sequences
1. Start and Stop Condenser-Water Pump(s):
   a. Enable: Allow pump to start when water is in cooling tower:
      1) Input Device: Water pressure transducer.

2) Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; DDC system binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Confirm water in cooling-tower sump.

b. Enable: When outdoor-air temperature conditions are met:
1) Input Device: Space thermostat **OR** DDC system outdoor-air temperature, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; DDC system binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Confirm outdoor-air temperature is above 50 deg F (10 deg C).

c. Enable: When demand conditions are met:
1) Input Device: DDC system software demand.
2) Action: Confirm cooling demand from ventilation system(s).

d. Initiate:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Energize pump(s).

e. Display:
1) Low-level cooling-tower sump alarm.
2) Outdoor-air temperature.
3) Cooling (software) demand indication.
4) Time and time schedule.
5) Condenser-water pump(s) on-off status.
6) Condenser-water pump(s) on-off indication.

2. Start and Stop Chilled-Water Pump(s):
a. Input Device: Flow switch in condenser-water circuit.
b. Output Device: Starter **OR** DDC system command to starter, **as directed**, relay.
c. Action: Energize pump(s).
d. Display:
1) Chilled-water flow indication.
2) Chilled-water pump(s) on-off status.
3) Chilled-water pump(s) on-off indication.

3. Start and Stop Cooling-Tower Fans(s):
a. Input Device: Flow switch in condenser-water circuit.
b. Output Device: Starter **OR** DDC system command to starter, **as directed**, relay.
c. Action: Energize fan(s).
d. Display:
1) Condenser-water flow indication.
2) Cooling-tower fan(s) on-off indication.

4. Start and Stop Refrigeration Machine(s):
a. Input Device: Flow switch in condenser-water circuit. Flow switch in chilled-water circuit, **as directed**.
b. Output Device: Refrigeration **OR** DDC system command to refrigeration, **as directed**, machine terminal strip.
c. Action: Energize refrigeration machine(s) internal control circuit.
d. Display:

e. Condenser-water flow indication.
f. Chilled-water flow indication.
g. Refrigeration machine on-off indication.
h. Chilled-water supply and return temperature.
i. Chilled-water temperature control-point adjustment.

5. Start and Stop Chiller(s):
a. Input Device: Flow switches in condenser-water and chilled-water circuit.
b. Output Device: Chiller **OR** DDC system command to chiller, **as directed**, terminal strip.
c. Action: Energize chiller internal control circuit.

d. Display:
   1) Condenser-water flow indication.
   2) Chilled-water flow indication.
   3) Chiller(s) on-off status.
   4) Chiller(s) on-off indication.
   5) Chilled-water supply and return temperature.
   6) Chilled-water temperature control-point adjustment.

6. Alternate Chiller(s):
   a. Input Device: Electric alternator **OR** DDC system software, **as directed**.
   b. Output Device: Chiller **OR** DDC system command to chiller, **as directed**, terminal strip.
   c. Action: Operate chiller(s) on lead-lag, alternating each startup.
      OR
      Action: Adding and dropping chiller(s) as follows: **Sequence and parameters** as directed by the Owner .
   d. Display: Chiller(s) on-off indication.
7. Alarm Chiller(s) Start Failure:
   a. Input Device: Chiller control panel terminal strip contact **OR** software signal, **as directed**.
   b. Output Device: Analog control panel **OR** DDC system alarm, **as directed**.
   c. Action: Signal alarm.
   d. Display: Chiller "failure-to-start" indication.
8. Chilled-Water Level:
   a. Input Device: Expansion tank level switch **OR** liquid sensor, **as directed**.
   b. Output Device: Electric relay signal to alarm panel **OR** DDC system alarm, **as directed**.
   c. Action: Signal alarm.
   d. Display: Expansion tank low-level alarm.
9. Chilled-Water Supply Temperature:
   a. Input Device: Temperature sensor **OR** transmitter, **as directed**, in common chilled-water supply piping.
   b. Output Device: Integral chiller controls **OR** DDC system signal to chiller control panel, **as directed**.
   c. Action: Maintain constant leaving chilled-water temperature reset according to highest cooling demand, **as directed**.
      1) Display: Chilled-water supply temperature.
10. Condenser-Water Temperature:
    a. Input Device: Temperature sensor **OR** transmitter, **as directed**, in cooling-tower sump.
    b. Output Device: Bypass control valve **OR** Cooling-tower fan starter relay **OR** DDC system command to cooling-tower fan starter relay, **as directed**.
    c. Action: Modulate control valve open to cooling tower and closed to bypass and cycle tower fan(s) on and off **OR** and to low speed and then to high speed, **as directed**, to maintain 65 deg F (18 deg C) **OR** 70 deg F (21 deg C), **as directed**, sump temperature. Close valve when unoccupied, **as directed**.
    d. Display:
       1) Condenser-water sump (return) control-point temperature.
       2) Condenser-water sump (return) temperature.
       3) Control-valve position.
       4) Cooling-tower fan(s) on-off indication.
       5) Condenser-water supply temperature.
11. Cooling-Tower Sump Heater:
    a. Input Device: Sump temperature sensor **OR** transmitter, **as directed**.
    b. Output Device: Electric relay **OR** DDC system command to electric relay**,** as directed**,** and solenoid valve, **as directed**.
    c. Action: Energize sump heater; drain sump on low temperature, **as directed**.
    d. Display:
       1) Cooling-tower sump temperature.
       2) Cooling-tower sump heater on-off indication.
       3) Cooling-tower dump indication.

12. Operator Station Display: Indicate the following on operator workstation display terminal:
    a. DDC system graphic.
    b. DDC system status, on-off.
    c. Low-level cooling-tower sump alarm.
    d. Outdoor-air temperature.
    e. Cooling (software) demand indication.
    f. Time and time schedule.
    g. Condenser-water pump(s) on-off status.
    h. Condenser-water pump(s) on-off indication.
    i. Condenser-water flow indication.
    j. Chilled-water pump(s) on-off status.
    k. Chilled-water pump(s) on-off indication.
    l. Cooling-tower fan(s) on-off indication.
    m. Chilled-water flow indication.
    n. Refrigeration machine on-off indication.
    o. Chilled-water supply temperature.
    p. Chilled-water return temperature.
    q. Chilled-water temperature control-point adjustment.
    r. Chiller(s) on-off status.
    s. Chiller(s) on-off indication.
    t. Chiller "failure-to-start" indication.
    u. Expansion tank low-level alarm.
    v. Condenser-water sump (return) control-point temperature.
    w. Condenser-water sump (return) temperature.
    x. Condenser-water control-valve position.
    y. Cooling-tower fan(s) on-off indication.
    z. Condenser-water supply temperature.
    aa. Cooling-tower sump temperature.
    bb. Cooling-tower sump heater on-off indication.
    cc. Cooling-tower dump indication.
    dd. Chilled-water pressure drop through chiller.
    ee. Entering condenser-water temperature.
    ff. Leaving condenser-water temperature.
    gg. Condenser-water pressure drop through chiller.
    hh. Chiller condenser-water supply and return temperature.
    ii. Chiller chilled-water supply and return temperature.
    jj. System capacity in tons.

F. Air-Handling-Unit Control Sequences
    1. Start and Stop Supply Fan(s):
        a. Enable: Freeze Protection:
            1) Input Device: Duct-mounted averaging element thermostat, located before supply fan.
            2) Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; analog alarm panel **OR** DDC system alarm, **as directed**.
            3) Action: Allow start if duct temperature is above 37 deg F (3 deg C); signal alarm if fan fails to start as commanded.
        b. Enable: High-Temperature Protection:
            1) Input Device: Duct-mounted thermostat, located in return air.
            2) Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; analog alarm panel **OR** DDC system alarm, **as directed**.
            3) Action: Allow start if duct temperature is below 300 deg F (150 deg C).
        c. Enable: Smoke Control:
            1) Input Device: Duct-mounted smoke detector, located in return **OR** supply, **as directed**, air.

2) Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; analog alarm panel **OR** DDC system alarm, **as directed**.
3) Action: Allow start if duct is free of products of combustion.

d. Initiate: Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.
3) Action: Energize fan(s).

e. Initiate: Unoccupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** DDC system demand, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Room thermostat **OR** Binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.
3) Action: Energize fan(s).

f. Unoccupied Ventilation:
1) Input Device: Time clock and room thermostat **OR** DDC system time schedule and output, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Room thermostat **OR** DDC system binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.
3) Action: Cycle fan(s) during unoccupied periods.

g. Display: Supply-fan on-off indication.

2. Supply Fan(s) Variable-Volume Control:

a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Enable control.

b. Volume Control (for fans equipped with variable inlet vanes):
1) Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter **OR** Differential-pressure switch, **as directed**, sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to conditioned-space static pressure.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to modulating damper actuator. Set inlet guide vanes to minimum **OR** closed, **as directed**, position when fan is stopped.
3) Action: Maintain constant supply-duct static pressure.

c. Volume Control (for fans equipped with variable-speed drives):
1) Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter **OR** Differential-pressure switch, **as directed**, sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to conditioned-space static pressure.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output, **as directed**, to motor speed controller. Set variable-speed drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
3) Action: Maintain constant supply-duct static pressure.

d. High Pressure:
1) Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to static pressure outside the duct.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system binary output, **as directed**, to alarm panel **OR** motor starter, **as directed**.
3) Action: Stop fan and signal alarm when static pressure rises above excessive-static-pressure set point.

e. Display:
1) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure indication.
2) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure set point.
3) Supply-fan airflow rate.
4) Supply-fan inlet vane position **OR** speed, **as directed**.

3. Start and Stop Return Fan(s):

a. Initiate: Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.

3) Action: Energize fans when supply fans are energized.

b. Initiate: Unoccupied Time Schedule:
   1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** DDC system demand, **as directed**.
   2) Output Device: Room thermostat **OR** Binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.
   3) Action: Energize fans when supply fans are energized.

c. Unoccupied Ventilation:
   1) Input Device: Time clock and room thermostat **OR** DDC system time schedule and output, **as directed**.
   2) Output Device: Room thermostat **OR** DDC system binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.
   3) Action: Cycle fan(s) during unoccupied periods.

d. Display: Return-fan on-off indication.

4. Return Fan(s) Variable-Volume Control:
   a. Occupied Time Schedule:
      1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
      2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
      3) Action: Enable control.
   b. Volume Control (for fans equipped with variable inlet vanes):
      1) Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter **OR** Differential-pressure switch, **as directed**, sensing building static pressure referenced to outdoor static pressure.
      2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to modulating damper actuator. Set inlet guide vanes to minimum **OR** closed, **as directed**, position when fan is stopped.
      3) Action: Maintain constant building static pressure.
   c. Volume Control (for fans equipped with variable-speed drives):
      1) Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter **OR** Differential-pressure switch, **as directed**, sensing building static pressure referenced to outdoor static pressure.
      2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output, **as directed**, to motor speed controller. Set variable-speed drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
      3) Action: Maintain constant building static pressure.
   d. Display:
      1) Return-air static-pressure indication.
      2) Return-air static-pressure set point.
      3) Return-fan airflow rate.
      4) Return-fan inlet vane position **OR** speed, **as directed**.
      5) Building static-pressure indication.
      6) Building static-pressure set point.

5. Return Fan(s) Variable-Volume Control:
   a. Occupied Time Schedule:
      1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
      2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
      3) Action: Enable control.
   b. Volume Control (for fans equipped with variable inlet vanes):
      1) Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter **OR** Differential-pressure switch, **as directed**, sensing building static pressure referenced to outdoor static pressure.
      2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to modulating damper actuator. Set inlet guide vanes to minimum **OR** closed, **as directed**, position when fan is stopped.
      3) Action: Maintain constant building static pressure.
   c. Volume Control (for fans equipped with variable-speed drives):
      1) Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter **OR** Differential-pressure switch, **as directed**, sensing building static pressure referenced to outdoor static pressure.

2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output, **as directed**, to motor speed controller. Set variable-speed drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
3) Action: Maintain constant building static pressure.

d. Display:
1) Return-fan-discharge static-pressure indication.
2) Return-fan-discharge static-pressure set point.
3) Return-fan airflow rate.
4) Return-fan inlet vane position **OR** speed, **as directed**.

6. Preheat Coil:
a. Freeze Protection:
1) Input Device: Duct-mounted averaging element thermostat, located after preheat coil.
2) Output Device: Hard wired through motor starter; analog alarm panel **OR** DDC system alarm, **as directed**.
3) Action: Allow start if duct temperature is above 33 deg F (1 deg C).

b. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.
3) Action: Energize coil circulating pump(s).

c. Supply **OR** Discharge, **as directed**,-Air Temperature:
1) Input Device: Time clock and duct-mounted thermostat **OR** DDC system time schedule and electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Modulating control valve.
3) Action: Maintain air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).

d. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock and duct-mounted thermostat mounted in outdoor air **OR** DDC system time schedule and outdoor-air temperature, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**, to motor starter.
3) Action: Energize coil circulating pump(s) when outdoor-air temperature falls below 35 deg F (2 deg C).

e. Display:
1) Preheat-coil air-temperature indication.
2) Preheat-coil air-temperature set point.
3) Preheat-coil pump operation indication.
4) Preheat-coil control-valve position.

7. Mixed-Air Control:
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic relay **OR** DDC system output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Enable control.

b. Minimum Position:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to modulating damper actuator(s).
3) Action: Open minimum outdoor-air dampers **OR** outdoor-air dampers to minimum position, **as directed**.

c. Heating Reset:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** DDC system software, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to modulating damper actuator(s).
3) Action: Close minimum outdoor-air dampers **OR** Set outdoor-air dampers to minimum position, **as directed**.

d. Supply **OR** Mixed, **as directed**,-Air Temperature:

1) Input Device: Duct-mounted thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to modulating damper actuator(s).
3) Action: Modulate outdoor-, return-, and relief-air dampers to maintain air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).

e. Cooling Reset:
1) Input Device: Outdoor- and return-air, duct-mounted thermostats **OR** electronic temperature sensors, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to damper actuator(s).
3) Action: Set outdoor-air dampers to minimum position when outdoor-air temperature exceeds return-air temperature **OR** enthalpy exceeds return-air enthalpy, **as directed**.

f. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, to modulating damper actuator(s).
3) Action: Position outdoor- and relief-air dampers closed and return-air dampers open.

g. Display:
1) Mixed-air-temperature indication.
2) Mixed-air-temperature set point.
3) Mixed-air damper position.

8. Humidifier:
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**, and airflow switch
2) Output Device: Pneumatic relay **OR** DDC system output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Enable control.

b. Humidity:
1) Input Device: Room humidistat **OR** Return-air, duct-mounted humidistat **OR** DDC system, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Receiver controller **OR** DDC system analog output **OR** DDC system analog output to digital-to-pneumatic transducer, **as directed**, enables humidifier **OR** modulates control valve to maintain humidity **OR** cycles pump to maintain humidity **OR** cycles pump and modulates control valve to maintain humidity, **as directed**, in straight-line relationship for the following conditions:
a) 20 percent when outdoor-air temperature is minus 30 deg F (minus 35 deg C).
b) 40 percent when outdoor-air temperature is 75 deg F (24 deg C).
3) Action: Modulate outdoor-, return-, and relief-air dampers to maintain air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).

c. Display:
1) Relative humidity indication.
2) Relative humidity set point.
3) Relative humidity control-valve position.

9. Filters: During occupied periods, when fan is running, differential air-pressure transmitters exist.
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Electric relay **OR** DDC system output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Enable control.

b. Differential Pressure:

1) Input Device: Differential-pressure switches **OR** Pressure transmitter, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Analog alarm panel **OR** DDC system alarm, **as directed**.
3) Action: Signal alarm on low- and high-pressure conditions.

c. Display:
1) Filter air-pressure-drop indication.
2) Filter low-air-pressure set point.
3) Filter high-air-pressure set point.

10. Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**, Heating Coil:
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Enable control.

b. Supply **OR** Discharge, **as directed**,-Air Temperature:
1) Input Device: Duct-mounted thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Normally open **OR** closed, **as directed**, modulating control valve.
3) Action: Maintain supply-air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).

c. Temperature Reset (for constant-temperature supply-air systems):
1) Input Device: Duct-mounted thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**, in return air.
2) Output Device: Direct to receiver controller **OR** DDC system, **as directed**, in straight-line relationship for the following conditions:
a) 65 deg F (18 deg C) when return-air temperature is 70 deg F (21 deg C).
b) 55 deg F (13 deg C) when return-air temperature is 75 deg F (24 deg C).
3) Action: Reset supply-air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).

d. Temperature Reset (for multizone or dual-duct supply-air systems):
1) Input Device: Load analyzer **OR** DDC system, **as directed**, with input from room thermostats **OR** temperature sensors, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Direct to receiver controller **OR** DDC system, **as directed**.
3) Action: Reset supply-air temperature in response to greatest heating demand.

e. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock and room thermostat **OR** DDC system time schedule and output, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Room thermostat (cycling fan) **OR** DDC system binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Enable normal control **OR** Return valve to normal position, **as directed**, when fan is cycled on.

f. Display:
1) Fan-discharge air-temperature indication.
2) Fan-discharge air-temperature set point.
3) Heating-coil air-temperature indication.
4) Heating-coil air-temperature set point.
5) Heating-coil pump operation indication.
6) Heating-coil control-valve position.
7) Hot-deck air-temperature indication.
8) Hot-deck air-temperature set point.

11. Hydronic Cooling Coil:
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Enable control.

b. Supply **OR** Discharge, **as directed**,-Air Temperature:
1) Input Device: Duct-mounted thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Normally open **OR** closed, **as directed**, modulating control valve.
3) Action: Maintain supply-air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).

c. Temperature Reset (for constant-temperature systems):
   1) Input Device: Duct-mounted thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**, in return air.
   2) Output Device: Direct to receiver controller **OR** DDC system, **as directed**, in straight-line relationship for the following conditions:
      a) 65 deg F (18 deg C) when return-air temperature is 70 deg F (21 deg C).
      b) 55 deg F (13 deg C) when return-air temperature is 75 deg F (24 deg C).
   3) Action: Reset supply-air temperature set point of 55 deg F (13 deg C).

d. Temperature Reset (for multizone or dual-duct supply-air systems):
   1) Input Device: Load analyzer **OR** DDC system, **as directed**, with input from room thermostats **OR** temperature sensors, **as directed**.
   2) Output Device: Direct to receiver controller **OR** DDC system, **as directed**.
   3) Action: Reset supply-air temperature in response to greatest heating demand.

e. Unoccupied Time Schedule:
   1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
   2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
   3) Action: Disable control.

f. Display:
   1) Fan-discharge air-temperature indication.
   2) Fan-discharge air-temperature set point.
   3) Cooling-coil air-temperature indication.
   4) Cooling-coil air-temperature set point.
   5) Cooling-coil control-valve position.
   6) Cold-deck air-temperature indication.
   7) Cold-deck air-temperature set point.

12. Multizone Damper Control:
    a. Occupied Time Schedule:
       1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
       2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
       3) Action: Enable control.
    b. Room Temperature:
       1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
       2) Output Device: Damper actuator.
       3) Action: Maintain room temperature.
    c. Display:
       1) Room temperature indication.
       2) Room temperature set point.
       3) Multizone damper position.
13. Coordination of Air-Handling Unit Sequences: Ensure that preheat, mixed-air, heating-coil, and cooling-coil controls have common inputs and do not overlap in function.
14. Operator Station Display: Indicate the following on operator workstation display terminal:
    a. DDC system graphic.
    b. DDC system on-off indication.
    c. DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
    d. Outdoor-air-temperature indication.
    e. Supply-fan on-off indication.
    f. Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure indication.
    g. Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure set point.
    h. Supply-fan airflow rate.
    i. Supply-fan inlet vane position **OR** speed, **as directed**.
    j. Return-fan on-off indication.
    k. Return-air static-pressure indication.
    l. Return-air static-pressure set point.
    m. Return-fan airflow rate.
    n. Return-fan inlet vane position **OR** speed, **as directed**.

o. Building static-pressure indication.
p. Building static-pressure set point.
q. Preheat-coil air-temperature indication.
r. Preheat-coil air-temperature set point.
s. Preheat-coil pump operation indication.
t. Preheat-coil control-valve position.
u. Mixed-air-temperature indication.
v. Mixed-air-temperature set point.
w. Mixed-air damper position.
x. Relative humidity indication.
y. Relative humidity set point.
z. Relative humidity control-valve position.
aa. Filter air-pressure-drop indication.
bb. Filter low-air-pressure set point.
cc. Filter high-air-pressure set point.
dd. Fan-discharge air-temperature indication.
ee. Fan-discharge air-temperature set point.
ff. Heating-coil air-temperature indication.
gg. Heating-coil air-temperature set point.
hh. Heating-coil pump operation indication.
ii. Heating-coil control-valve position.
jj. Hot-deck air-temperature indication.
kk. Hot-deck air-temperature set point.
ll. Cooling-coil air-temperature indication.
mm. Cooling-coil air-temperature set point.
nn. Cooling-coil control-valve position.
oo. Cold-deck air-temperature indication.
pp. Cold-deck air-temperature set point.
qq. Room temperature indication.
rr. Room temperature set point.
ss. Multizone damper position.

G. Terminal Unit Operating Sequence
1. Cabinet Unit Heater, Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**:
a. Room Temperature:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Room thermostat **OR** DDC system binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Cycle fan to maintain temperature.
b. Low-Temperature Safety:
1) Input Device: Line-voltage, on-off thermostat, pipe mounted.
2) Output Device: Hard wired.
3) Action: Stop fan when return heating-water **OR** condensate, **as directed**, temperature falls below 35 deg F (2 deg C).
c. Display:
1) Room temperature indication.
2) Room temperature set point.
2. Cabinet Unit Heater, Electric: Room thermostat cycles fan and sequences stages of heating.
3. Unit Heater, Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**:
a. Room Temperature:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Room thermostat **OR** DDC system binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Cycle fan to maintain temperature.
b. Low-Temperature Safety:
1) Input Device: Line-voltage, on-off thermostat, pipe mounted.
2) Output Device: Hard wired.

3) Action: Stop fan when return heating-water **OR** condensate, **as directed**, temperature falls below 35 deg F (2 deg C).

c. Display:
1) Room temperature indication.
2) Room temperature set point.

4. Unit Heater, Electric: Room thermostat cycles fan and sequences stages of heating.
5. Combustion-Air Unit Heaters:
a. Room Temperature:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, control-valve operator.
3) Action: Modulate valve to maintain temperature.
b. Display:
1) Room temperature indication.
2) Room temperature set point.
3) Control-valve position.
6. Radiant Heating Cable, Electric: Room thermostat cycles power.
7. Radiant Heating Panel, Electric: Room thermostat cycles power.
8. Radiant Heating Panel, Hydronic:
a. Room Temperature:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, control-valve operator.
3) Action: Modulate valve to maintain temperature.
b. Display:
1) Room temperature indication.
2) Room temperature set point.
3) Control-valve position.
9. Two-Pipe, Single-Coil, Fan-Coil Unit:
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Fan switch **OR** Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Start and stop fan and enable control.
b. Room Temperature:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**, in room **OR** return air, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, control-valve operator.
3) Action: Modulate valve to maintain temperature.
c. DDC System Changeover:
1) Input Device: Thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**, in supply-water **OR** on supply-water piping **OR** DDC system, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Hard-wired relay **OR** DDC system software, **as directed**.
3) Action: Reverse control-valve action to switch from heating to cooling.
d. Display:
1) DDC system graphic.
2) DDC system on-off indication.
3) DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
4) Room temperature indication.
5) Room temperature set point.
6) Control-valve position.
7) Supply-water temperature indication.
10. Four-Pipe, Hydronic Fan-Coil Unit:
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Fan switch **OR** Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.

3) Action: Start and stop fan, and enable control.

b. Room Temperature:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, control-valve operators.
3) Action: Modulate multiport control valves to maintain temperature.

c. Display:
1) DDC system graphic.
2) DDC system on-off indication.
3) DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
4) Room temperature indication.
5) Room temperature set point.
6) Control-valve position.

11. Unit Ventilator: Room thermostat modulates heating-and-cooling control valves; airstream thermostats modulate outdoor- and return-air dampers as follows:
a. Occupied Time Schedule:
1) Input Device: Fan switch **OR** Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Time clock **OR** Binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Start and stop fan, move outdoor- and return-air dampers to minimum **OR** maximum, **as directed**, outdoor-air position, and enable control.

b. Room Temperature - Valves:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, control-valve operators.
3) Action: Modulate heating-water supply control valve and chilled-water supply control valve in sequence to maintain temperature.

c. Room Temperature - Dampers:
1) Input Device: Thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**, in mixed air.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, control damper actuators.
3) Action: Modulate outdoor- and return-air dampers to maintain temperature.

d. Supply-Air Temperature Limit:
1) Input Device: Thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**, in discharge air.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, control-valve operators and control damper actuators.
3) Action: Override room thermostat to control valves and dampers to prevent discharge air from dropping below a minimum set point.

e. Warm-up Cycle:
1) Input Device: Time clock **OR** DDC system time schedule, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Hard-wired relay **OR** DDC system binary output, **as directed**.
3) Action: Open heating-water supply control valve, close outdoor-air damper, and open return-air damper.

f. Display:
1) DDC system graphic.
2) DDC system on-off indication.
3) DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
4) Room temperature indication.
5) Room temperature set point.
6) Control-valve position.
7) Damper position.

12. Heating Coils, Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**:
a. Room Temperature:
1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic **OR** Electric, **as directed**, control-valve operators.
3) Action: Modulate **OR** Cycle, **as directed**, valve to maintain temperature.

b. Display:
   1) Room temperature indication.
   2) Room temperature set point.
   3) Control-valve position.

13. Heating Coils, Electric: Room thermostat cycles coils **OR** sequences stages of heating, **as directed**.
14. Radiators and Convectors, Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**:
    a. Occupancy:
       1) Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
       2) Output Device: DDC system binary output.
       3) Action: Report occupancy and enable occupied temperature set point.
    b. Room Temperature:
       1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
       2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic **OR** Electric, **as directed**, control-valve operators.
       3) Action: Modulate **OR** Cycle, **as directed**, valve to maintain temperature.
          a) Occupied Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
          b) Unoccupied Temperature: 65 deg F (18 deg C).
    c. Display:
       1) Room/area served.
       2) Room temperature indication.
       3) Room temperature set point.
       4) Room temperature set point, occupied.
       5) Room temperature set point, occupied standby.
       6) Room temperature set point, unoccupied.
       7) Control-valve position as percent open.
15. Radiators and Convectors, Electric: Room thermostat cycles coils **OR** sequences stages of heating, **as directed**.
16. Constant-Volume, Terminal Air Units, Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**:
    a. Occupancy:
       1) Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
       2) Output Device: DDC system binary output.
       3) Action: Report occupancy and enable occupied temperature set point.
          a) Occupied Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
          b) Unoccupied Temperature: 65 deg F (18 deg C).
    b. Room Temperature:
       1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
       2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic **OR** Electric, **as directed**, control-valve operators.
       3) Action: Modulate **OR** Cycle, **as directed**, valve to maintain temperature.
    c. Display:
       1) Room/area served.
       2) Room occupied/unoccupied.
       3) Room temperature indication.
       4) Room temperature set point.
       5) Room temperature set point, occupied.
       6) Room temperature set point, unoccupied.
       7) Control-valve position as percent open.
17. VAV, Terminal Air Units with Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**, Coils:
    a. Occupancy:
       1) Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
       2) Output Device: DDC system binary output.
       3) Action: Report occupancy and enable occupied temperature set point.
          a) Occupied Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
          b) Unoccupied Temperature: 65 deg F (18 deg C).

b. Room Temperature:
   1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
   2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, damper actuators and control-valve operators.
   3) Action: Modulate damper and valve to maintain temperature.
      a) Sequence damper from full open to minimum position, then valve from closed to fully open.

c. Display:
   1) Room/area served.
   2) Room occupied/unoccupied.
   3) Room temperature indication.
   4) Room temperature set point.
   5) Room temperature set point, occupied.
   6) Room temperature set point, unoccupied.
   7) Air-damper position as percent open.
   8) Control-valve position as percent open.

18. Dual-Duct, VAV, Terminal Air Units:
   a. Occupancy:
      1) Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
      2) Output Device: DDC system binary output.
      3) Action: Report occupancy and enable occupied temperature set point.
         a) Occupied Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
         b) Unoccupied Temperature: 65 deg F (18 deg C).
   b. Room Temperature:
      1) Input Device: Room thermostat **OR** Electronic temperature sensor, **as directed**.
      2) Output Device: Pneumatic **OR** Electronic, **as directed**, damper actuators.
      3) Action: Modulate dampers to maintain temperature.
         a) Sequence when space temperature is below set point: Close VAV damper to minimum position, open hot-deck dampers and close cold-deck dampers, then open VAV damper.
         b) Sequence when space temperature is above set point: Close VAV damper to minimum position, close hot-deck dampers and open cold-deck dampers, then open VAV damper.
   c. Display:
      1) Room/area served.
      2) Room occupied/unoccupied.
      3) Room temperature indication.
      4) Room temperature set point.
      5) Room temperature set point, occupied.
      6) Room temperature set point, unoccupied.
      7) VAV damper position as percent open.
      8) Hot-deck damper position as percent open.
      9) Cold-deck damper position as percent open.

H. Ventilation Sequences
   1. Combustion-Air, Makeup Unit Control, Electric: Start fan when served appliance burner starts; room thermostat sequences stages of heating.
   2. Combustion-Air, Makeup Unit Control, Hydronic **OR** Steam, **as directed**: Start fan when served appliance burner starts; room thermostat cycles **OR** modulates, **as directed**, control valve.
   3. Gravity Roof Ventilator: Occupancy sensor **OR** Room thermostat, **as directed**, opens dampers.
   4. Exhaust Fan: Occupancy sensor **OR** Interlock with light switch **OR** Room thermostat, **as directed**, cycles fan.
   5. Kitchen Exhaust Fan: Occupancy sensor starts fan and energizes makeup air unit.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

1.3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 01 10 91

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 01 10 91	23 05 93 00	Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing
23 01 20 91	23 05 93 00	Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing
23 01 20 91	23 01 10 91	Sequence Of Operation

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 01 30 51 - AIR DUCT CLEANING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for HVAC air-distribution system cleaning. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes cleaning HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components.

C. Definitions
1. ASCS: Air systems cleaning specialist.
2. NADCA: National Air Duct Cleaners Association.

D. Submittals
1. Qualification Data: For an ASCS.
2. Strategies and procedures plan.
3. Cleanliness verification report.

E. Quality Assurance
1. ASCS Qualifications: A certified member of NADCA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed.**
   a. Certification: Employ an ASCS certified by NADCA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed,** on a full-time basis.
   b. Supervisor Qualifications: Certified as an ASCS by NADCA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 181 and UL 181A for fibrous-glass ducts.
3. Cleaning Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components to determine appropriate methods, tools, and equipment required for performance of the Work.
2. Perform "Project Evaluation and Recommendation" according to NADCA ACR 2006.
3. Prepare written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
4. Proceed with work only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation
1. Prepare a written plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures. At a minimum, include the following:
   a. Supervisor contact information.
   b. Work schedule including location, times, and impact on occupied areas.
   c. Methods and materials planned for each HVAC component type.
   d. Required support from other trades.
   e. Equipment and material storage requirements.

f. Exhaust equipment setup locations.

2. Use the existing service openings, as required for proper cleaning, at various points of the HVAC system for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
3. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006, "Guidelines for Constructing Service Openings in HVAC Systems" Section.

C. Cleaning
1. Comply with NADCA ACR 2006.
2. Remove visible surface contaminants and deposits from within the HVAC system.
3. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned:
   a. Air devices for supply and return air.
   b. Air-terminal units.
   c. Ductwork:
      1) Supply-air ducts, including turning vanes and reheat coils, to the air-handling unit.
      2) Return-air ducts to the air-handling unit.
      3) Exhaust-air ducts.
   d. Air-Handling Units:
      1) Interior surfaces of the unit casing.
      2) Coil surfaces compartment.
      3) Condensate drain pans.
      4) Fans, fan blades, and fan housings.
   e. Filters and filter housings.
4. Collect debris removed during cleaning. Ensure that debris is not dispersed outside the HVAC system during the cleaning process.
5. Particulate Collection:
   a. For particulate collection equipment, include adequate filtration to contain debris removed. Locate equipment downwind and away from all air intakes and other points of entry into the building.
   b. HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for particles sized 0.3 micrometer or larger shall be used where the particulate collection equipment is exhausting inside the building,
6. Control odors and mist vapors during the cleaning and restoration process.
7. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning. Restore them to their marked position on completion of cleaning.
8. System components shall be cleaned so that all HVAC system components are visibly clean. On completion, all components must be returned to those settings recorded just prior to cleaning operations.
9. Clean all air-distribution devices, registers, grilles, and diffusers.
10. Clean visible surface contamination deposits according to NADCA ACR 2006 and the following:
    a. Clean air-handling units, airstream surfaces, components, condensate collectors, and drains.
    b. Ensure that a suitable operative drainage system is in place prior to beginning wash-down procedures.
    c. Clean evaporator coils, reheat coils, and other airstream components.
11. Duct Systems:
    a. Create service openings in the HVAC system as necessary to accommodate cleaning.
    b. Mechanically clean duct systems specified to remove all visible contaminants so that the systems are capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
12. Debris removed from the HVAC system shall be disposed of according to applicable Federal, state, and local requirements.
13. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
    a. Source-Removal Cleaning Methods: The HVAC system shall be cleaned using source-removal mechanical cleaning methods designed to extract contaminants from within the HVAC system and to safely remove these contaminants from the facility. No cleaning

method, or combination of methods, shall be used that could potentially damage components of the HVAC system or negatively alter the integrity of the system.
1) Use continuously operating vacuum-collection devices to keep each section being cleaned under negative pressure.
2) Cleaning methods that require mechanical agitation devices to dislodge debris that is adhered to interior surfaces of HVAC system components shall be equipped to safely remove these devices. Cleaning methods shall not damage the integrity of HVAC system components or damage porous surface materials such as duct and plenum liners.

b. Cleaning Mineral-Fiber Insulation Components:
1) Fibrous-glass thermal or acoustical insulation elements present in equipment or ductwork shall be thoroughly cleaned with HEPA vacuuming equipment while the HVAC system is under constant negative pressure and shall not be permitted to get wet according to NADCA ACR 2006.
2) Cleaning methods used shall not cause damage to fibrous-glass components and will render the system capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR 2006).
3) Fibrous materials that become wet shall be discarded and replaced.

14. Coil Cleaning:
a. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.
b. See NADCA ACR 2006, "Coil Surface Cleaning" Section. Type 1, or Type 1 and Type 2, cleaning methods shall be used to render the coil visibly clean and capable of passing Coil Cleaning Verification (see applicable NADCA ACR 2006).
c. Coil drain pans shall be subject to NADCA ACR 2006, "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Verification." Ensure that condensate drain pans are operational.
d. Electric-resistance coils shall be de-energized, locked out, and tagged before cleaning.
e. Cleaning methods shall not cause any appreciable damage to, cause displacement of, inhibit heat transfer, or cause erosion of the coil surface or fins, and shall comply with coil manufacturer's written recommendations when available.
f. Rinse thoroughly with clean water to remove any latent residues.

15. Antimicrobial Agents, Coatings, and Sanitizers:
a. Apply antimicrobial agents, coatings, and sanitizers if active fungal growth is reasonably suspected or where unacceptable levels of fungal contamination have been verified. Apply antimicrobial agents and coatings according to manufacturer's written recommendations and EPA registration listing after the removal of surface deposits and debris.
b. When used, antimicrobial treatments, coatings, and sanitizers shall be applied after the system is rendered clean.
c. Apply antimicrobial agents, coatings, and sanitizers directly onto surfaces of interior ductwork. Fogging is prohibited.
d. Sanitizing agent products shall be registered by the EPA as specifically intended for use in HVAC systems and ductwork.

D. Cleanliness Verification
1. Verify cleanliness according to NADCA ACR 2006, "Verification of HVAC System Cleanliness" Section.
2. Verify HVAC system cleanliness after mechanical cleaning and before applying any treatment or introducing any treatment-related substance to the HVAC system, including biocidal agents, coatings, and sanitizers.
3. Perform visual inspection for cleanliness. If no contaminants are evident through visual inspection, the HVAC system shall be considered clean. If visible contaminants are evident through visual inspection, those portions of the system where contaminants are visible shall be re-cleaned and subjected to re-inspection for cleanliness.
4. Additional Verification:
a. Perform surface comparison testing or NADCA vacuum test.
b. Conduct NADCA vacuum gravimetric test analysis for nonporous surfaces.
5. Verification of Coil Cleaning:

a. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.
b. Coil will be considered clean if cleaning restored the coil static-pressure differential within 10 percent of **inches wg (Pa)** as directed by the Owner the differential measured when the coil was first installed.
OR
Coil will be considered clean if the coil is free of foreign matter and chemical residue, based on a thorough visual inspection.

6. Prepare a written cleanliness verification report. At a minimum, include the following:
   a. Written documentation of the success of the cleaning.
   b. Site inspection reports, initialed by supervisor, including notation on areas of inspection, as verified through visual inspection.
   c. Surface comparison test results if required.
   d. Gravimetric analysis (nonporous surfaces only).
   e. System areas found to be damaged.
7. Photographic Documentation: Comply with requirements listed in Scope of Work.

E. Restoration
1. Restore and repair HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and components according to NADCA ACR 2006, "Restoration and Repair of Mechanical Systems" Section.
2. Restore service openings capable of future reopening. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section “Metal Ducts". Include location of service openings in Project closeout report.
3. Replace fibrous-glass materials that cannot be restored by cleaning or resurfacing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section “Metal Ducts" & Division 23 Section “Nonmetal Ducts" .
4. Replace damaged insulation according to Division 23 Section “Hvac Insulation".
5. Ensure that closures do not hinder or alter airflow.
6. New closure materials, including insulation, shall match opened materials and shall have removable closure panels fitted with gaskets and fasteners.
7. Reseal fibrous-glass ducts. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section “Nonmetal Ducts".

END OF SECTION 23 01 30 51

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 01 30 51	23 05 93 00	Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing
23 01 30 51	23 01 10 91	Sequence Of Operation

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 01 50 61 - CAST-IRON BOILERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cast-iron boilers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes packaged cast-iron boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water or steam with the following configurations and burners:
   a. Factory and Field assembled.
   b. Atmospheric gas, Sealed-combustion, gas, Forced-draft, gas, Oil, and Combination gas and oil burner.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include performance data, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Design calculations and vibration isolation base details, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
      1) Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
      2) Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails and equipment mounting frames.
   b. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that boiler, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Include the following:
4. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
3. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."
4. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N, "Uniform Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Furnaces and Boilers."
5. I=B=R Compliance: Boilers shall be tested and rated according to HI's "Rating Procedure for Heating Boilers" and "Testing Standard for Commercial Boilers," with I=B=R emblem on a nameplate affixed to boiler.
6. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 726, "Oil-Fired Boiler Assemblies **OR** UL 726, "Oil-Fired Boiler Assemblies," and UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating

Equipment **OR** UL 795, "Commercial-Industrial Gas Heating Equipment", **as directed**. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace controls and heat exchangers of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
a. Warranty Period for Controls: Two years from date of Final Completion.
b. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Five **OR** 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Manufactured Units
1. Description: Factory fabricated and assembled **OR** field assembled, **as directed**.
a. Cast-iron sections shall be sealed pressure tight and held together with tie rods set on an insulated steel base, **as directed**; including insulated jacket and flue-gas vent connection.
OR
Ship cast-iron sections disassembled with all materials and equipment, including seals, tie rods, and insulated jacket and flue-gas vent connection for field assembly.
2. Cast-Iron Section Design:
a. Configuration: Wet base **OR** back **OR** leg, **as directed**.
b. Number of Passes: Single **OR** Multiple, **as directed**.
c. Sectional Joints: High-temperature sealant to seal flue-gas passages not in contact with heating medium, tapered cast-iron push nipples, **OR** O-ring gaskets, **OR** fiber roping, **as directed**, and held together with tie rods.
d. Drain and blowdown tappings.
e. Return injection tube to equalize water flow to all sections.
f. Crown inspection tappings with brass plugs.
g. Built-in air separator.
3. Combustion Chamber: Equipped with ceramic-fiber target wall **OR** refractory **OR** insulation, **as directed**, and flame observation ports, front and back.
4. Casing:
a. Jacket: Sheet metal **OR** Galvanized sheet metal, **as directed**, with snap-in or interlocking closures and baked-enamel **OR** powder-coated, **as directed**, protective finish.
b. Insulation: Minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) **OR** 2-inch- (50-mm-), **as directed**, thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
c. Combustion Chamber Access: Refractory lined, hinged, front.
d. Access: For cleaning between cast-iron sections.
e. Draft Hood: Flue canopy and top **OR** rear, **as directed**, flue connection shall be constructed of aluminized **OR** stainless, **as directed**, steel containing adjustable outlet damper assembly.
f. Insulated base constructed of aluminized steel to permit boiler to be installed on combustible floor.
g. Mounting Frame: Steel rails to mount assembled boiler package on concrete base.
1) Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.
h. Control Cabinet: Sheet metal casing shall cover all controls, gas train, and burner.
5. Draft Diverter: Steel assembly integral with boiler casing **OR** Separate galvanized-steel assembly, **as directed**.

B. Burner: For Atmospheric Gas Burners.

1. Burner Tubes and Orifices: Stainless steel **OR** Cast iron, **as directed**, for natural **OR** propane, **as directed**, gas.
2. Gas Train: Control devices and full-modulation **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.
   OR
   Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff, pressure regulator, and pilot adjustment.
3. Pilot: Standing **OR** Intermittent-electric-spark, **as directed**, pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.

C. Burner: For Residential-Size Boilers With Sealed-Combustion Burners.
1. Burner Tubes and Orifices: Stainless steel **OR** Cast iron, **as directed**, for natural **OR** propane, **as directed**, gas.
2. Blower: Forward-curved centrifugal fan integral to burner, directly driven by motor; with adjustable, dual-blade damper assembly and locking quadrant to set air-fuel ratio.
   a. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
      1) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
3. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff, pressure regulator, and pilot adjustment.
4. Pilot: Standing **OR** Intermittent-electric-spark, **as directed**, pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.

D. Burner: For Forced-Draft Burners.
1. Burner: Welded construction with multivane, stainless-steel, flame-retention diffuser for natural **OR** propane, **as directed**, gas.
2. Blower: Forward-curved centrifugal fan integral to burner, directly driven by motor; with adjustable, dual-blade damper assembly and locking quadrant to set air-fuel ratio.
   a. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
      1) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
3. Gas Train: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.
4. Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.
5. Flue-Gas Recirculation: Burner connections shall be equipped for recirculating flue gas.
   a. Maximum Oxides of Nitrogen Emissions: 20 **OR** 30, **as directed**, ppm.

E. Burner: For Oil Burners.
1. Burner: Welded construction with multivane, stainless-steel, flame-retention diffuser for fuel oil.
2. Blower: Forward-curved centrifugal fan integral to burner, directly driven by motor; with adjustable, dual-blade damper assembly and locking quadrant to set air-fuel ratio.
   a. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
      1) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
3. Oil Supply: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.
   a. Oil Pump: Two-stage, gear-type oil pump integral to and directly driven by blower, **as directed**, shall be capable of producing 300-psig (2070-kPa) discharge pressure and 15-inch Hg (50.7-kPa) vacuum.
   b. Oil Piping Specialties:
      1) Suction-line, manual, gate valve.
      2) Removable-mesh oil strainer.
      3) 0- to 30-inch Hg (0- to 101.3-kPa) vacuum; 0- to 30-psig (0- to 207-kPa) vacuum-pressure gage.

4) 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) oil-nozzle pressure gage.
5) Nozzle-line, solenoid-safety-shutoff oil valve.

4. Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff solenoid using cadmium sulfide **OR** UV scanner, **as directed**, flame-safety control.
5. Flue-Gas Recirculation: Burner connections shall be equipped for recirculating flue gas.
   a. Maximum Oxides of Nitrogen Emissions: 30 ppm.

F. Burner: For Combination Gas And Oil Burners.
1. Burner: Welded construction with multivane, stainless-steel, flame-retention diffuser for fuel oil and natural **OR** propane, **as directed**, gas.
2. Blower: Forward-curved centrifugal fan integral to burner, directly driven by motor; with adjustable, dual-blade damper assembly and locking quadrant to set air-fuel ratio.
   a. Motors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
      1) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
3. Oil Supply: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.
   a. Oil Pump: Two-stage, gear-type oil pump integral to and directly driven by blower, **as directed**, shall be capable of producing 300-psig (2070-kPa) discharge pressure and 15-inch Hg (50.7-kPa) vacuum.
   b. Oil Piping Specialties:
      1) Suction-line, manual, gate valve.
      2) Removable-mesh oil strainer.
      3) 0- to 30-inch Hg (0- to 101.3-kPa) vacuum; 0- to 30-psig (0- to 207-kPa) vacuum-pressure gage.
      4) 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) oil-nozzle pressure gage.
      5) Nozzle-line, solenoid-safety-shutoff oil valve.
4. Gas Train: Control devices and modulating **OR** on-off **OR** low-high-low, **as directed**, control sequence shall comply with requirements in ASME CSD-1 **OR** FMG **OR** IRI **OR** UL, **as directed**.
5. Gas Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff with electronic supervision of burner flame.
6. Oil Pilot: Intermittent **OR** Interrupted, **as directed**,-electric-spark pilot ignition with 100 percent main-valve and pilot-safety shutoff solenoid with cadmium sulfide **OR** UV scanner, **as directed**, flame-safety control.
7. Flue-Gas Recirculation: Burner connections shall be equipped for recirculating flue gas.
   a. Maximum Oxides of Nitrogen Emissions: 20 **OR** 30, **as directed**, ppm.

G. Trim: For Hot-Water Boilers.
1. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
2. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, **as directed**, and high limit.
3. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
4. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
5. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic **OR** Manual, **as directed**.
6. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) hose-end gate valve.
7. Tankless Heater: Carbon-steel header with copper-tube heat exchanger, mounted in an upper port of cast-iron sections and sealed with fiber gasket.
   a. Tappings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
   b. Tappings NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

H. Trim: For Steam Boilers.
1. Include devices sized to comply with ANSI B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
2. Pressure Controllers: Operating, firing rate, **as directed**, and high limit.
3. Safety Relief Valve:
   a. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
   b. Description: Fully enclosed steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff; factory set and sealed.
      1) Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and outlet with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
4. Pressure Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) diameter. Gage shall have normal operating pressure about 50 percent of full range.
5. Water Column: Minimum 12-inch (300-mm) glass gage with shutoff cocks.
6. Drain Valves: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) or nozzle size with hose-end connection.
7. Blowdown Valves: Factory-installed bottom and surface, slow-acting blowdown valves same size as boiler nozzle.
8. Stop Valves: Boiler inlets and outlets, except safety relief valves or preheater inlet and outlet, shall be equipped with stop valve in an accessible location as near as practical to boiler nozzle and same size as or larger than nozzle. Valves larger than NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have rising stem.
9. Stop-Check Valves: Factory-installed, stop-check valve and stop valve at boiler outlet with free-blow drain valve factory installed between the two valves and visible when operating stop-check valve.
10. Tankless Heater: Carbon-steel header with copper-tube heat exchanger, mounted in an upper port of cast-iron sections and sealed with fiber gasket.
    a. Tappings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
    b. Tappings NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

I. Controls
1. Refer to Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
   OR
   Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
   a. Control transformer.
   b. Set-Point Adjust: Set points shall be adjustable.
   c. Operating Pressure Control for Steam Boilers: Factory wired and mounted to cycle burner.
   d. Low-Water Cutoff and Pump Control for Steam Boilers: Cycle feedwater pump(s) for makeup water control.
   e. Sequence of Operation for Hot-Water Boilers: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain space temperature in response to thermostat with heat anticipator located in heated space.
      OR
      Sequence of Operation for Hot-Water Boilers: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 200 deg F (93 deg C); at 60 deg F (15 deg C) outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 140 deg F (60 deg C).
   f. Sequence of Operation for Steam Boilers: Electric, factory-fabricated and field-installed panel to control burner firing rate to maintain a constant steam pressure. Maintain pressure set point plus or minus 10 percent.
      1) Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers.
2. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
   a. High Cutoff: Manual **OR** Automatic, **as directed**, reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature **OR** pressure, **as directed**.

b. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic for hot-water boilers or Float and electronic for steam boilers probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be manual **OR** automatic, **as directed**,-reset type.
c. Blocked Vent Safety Switch for Atmospheric Burners: Manual-reset switch factory mounted on draft diverter.
d. Rollout Safety Switch for Atmospheric Burners: Factory mounted on boiler combustion chamber.
e. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.

3. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
   a. Hardwired Points:
      1) Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm **OR** low water level alarm, **as directed**.
      2) Control: On/off operation, hot water supply temperature set-point adjustment **OR** steam pressure adjustment, **as directed**.
   b. A communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building automation system.

J. Electrical Power
1. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 22..
2. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
   a. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
   b. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.
   c. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
   d. Field power interface shall be to wire lugs **OR** fused disconnect switch **OR** nonfused disconnect switch **OR** circuit breaker, **as directed**.
   e. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with disconnect switch or circuit breaker, **as directed**.
   f. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

K. Source Quality Control
1. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
2. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
3. Allow the Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify the Owner 14 days in advance of testing.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Boiler Installation
1. Install boilers level on concrete base. Concrete base is specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac" and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 31..
2. Vibration Isolation: Elastomeric isolator pads **OR** mounts, **as directed**, with a minimum static deflection of 0.25 inch (6.35 mm). Vibration isolation devices and installation requirements are

specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".

3. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
4. Install oil-fired boilers according to NFPA 31.
5. Assemble boiler sections in sequence and seal between each section if boiler is not delivered fully assembled.
6. Assemble and install boiler trim.
7. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
8. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

B. Connections

1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
4. Connect oil piping full size to burner inlet with shutoff valve and union.
5. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
6. Connect steam and condensate piping to supply-, return-, and blowdown-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
7. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain, for hot-water boilers.
8. Install piping from safety valves to drip-pan elbow and to nearest floor drain, for steam boilers.
9. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.
10. Connect breeching full size to boiler outlet. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, And Stacks" for venting materials.
11. Install flue-gas recirculation duct from vent to burner. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, And Stacks" for recirculation duct materials.
12. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
13. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
    a. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    b. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    c. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
    d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
        1) Burner Test: Adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency.
        2) Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level and water temperature **OR** steam pressure, **as directed**.
        3) Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
4. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

5. Performance Tests, **as directed**:
   a. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.
   b. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment to comply.
   c. Perform field performance tests to determine capacity and efficiency of boilers.
      1) For dual-fuel boilers, perform tests for each fuel.
      2) Test for full capacity.
      3) Test for boiler efficiency at low fire 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 80, 60, 40, and 20 percent of full capacity. Determine efficiency at each test point.
   d. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.
   e. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.
   f. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat produced during tests if building systems are not adequate.
   g. Notify the Owner in advance of test dates.
   h. Document test results in a report and submit to the Owner.

D. Demonstration
   1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers.

END OF SECTION 23 01 50 61

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 01 50 61	23 21 13 23d	Hydronic Piping

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 01 60 71 - CONDENSING UNITS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for condensing units. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes air-cooled and water-cooled condensing units.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each condensing unit, include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories. Include equipment dimensions, weights and structural loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
   a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints, **as directed**, and for designing vibration isolation bases.
   b. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
   c. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that condensing units, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Include the following:
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and maintenance data.
6. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
7. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit EA 4: Documentation required by Credit EA 4 indicating that equipment and refrigerants comply.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Fabricate and label refrigeration system according to ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
3. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
4. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label water-cooled condensing units to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

E. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of condensing units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      1) Compressor failure.
      2) Condenser coil leak.

b. Warranty Period: Four **OR** Five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
c. Warranty Period (Compressor Only): Five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
d. Warranty Period (Condenser Coil Only): Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Condensing Units, Air Cooled, 1 To 5 Tons (3.5 TO 17.6 kW)
1. Description: Factory assembled and tested, consisting of compressor, condenser coil, fan, motors, refrigerant reservoir, and operating controls.
2. Compressor: Scroll, hermetically sealed, with rubber vibration isolators.
a. Motor: Single **OR** Two, **as directed**, speed, and includes thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
b. Two-Speed Compressor: Include manual-reset, high-pressure switch and automatic-reset, low-pressure switch.
c. Accumulator: Suction tube.
d. Refrigerant Charge: R-407C **OR** R-410A, **as directed**.
3. Condenser Coil: Seamless copper-tube, aluminum-fin coil; circuited for integral liquid subcooler, with removable drain pan and brass service valves with service ports.
4. Condenser Fan: Direct-drive, aluminum propeller fan; with permanently lubricated, totally enclosed fan motor with thermal-overload protection and ball bearings, **as directed**.
5. Accessories:
a. Coastal Filter: Mesh screen to protect condenser coil from salt damage.
b. Crankcase heater.
c. Cycle Protector: Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid compressor cycling.
d. Electronic programmable thermostat **OR** Low-voltage thermostat and subbase, **as directed**, to control condensing unit and evaporator fan.
e. Evaporator Freeze Thermostat: Temperature-actuated switch that stops unit when evaporator reaches freezing temperature.
f. Filter-dryer.
g. High-Pressure Switch: Automatic-reset switch cycles compressor off on high refrigerant pressure.
h. Liquid-line solenoid.
i. Low Ambient Controller: Cycles condenser fan to permit operation down to 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch, **as directed**.
OR
Low Ambient Controller: Controls condenser fan speed to permit operation down to minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C) with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch, **as directed**.
j. Low-Pressure Switch: Automatic-reset switch cycles compressor off on low refrigerant pressure.
k. PE mounting base to provide a permanent foundation.
l. Precharged and insulated suction and liquid tubing.
m. Sound Hood: Wraps around sound attenuation cover for compressor.
n. Thermostatic expansion valve.
o. Time-Delay Relay: Continues operation of evaporator fan after compressor shuts off.
6. Unit Casing: Galvanized steel, finished with baked enamel; with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Mount service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.

B. Condensing Units, Air Cooled, 6 To 120 Tons (21 TO 422 kW)
1. Description: Factory assembled and tested, air cooled; consisting of casing, compressors, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, and unit controls.

2. Compressor: Hermetic or semihermetic compressor designed for service with crankcase sight glass, crankcase heater, and backseating service access valves on suction and discharge ports.
   a. Capacity Control: Cylinder unloading **OR** Hot-gas bypass, **as directed**.
   b. Refrigerant Charge: R-407C **OR** R-410A **OR** HFC-134a, **as directed**.
3. Condenser Coil: Seamless copper-tube, aluminum-fin coil, including subcooling circuit and backseating liquid-line service access valve. Factory pressure test coils, then dehydrate by drawing a vacuum and fill with a holding charge of nitrogen or refrigerant.
4. Condenser Fans: Propeller-type vertical discharge; either directly or belt driven. Include the following:
   a. Permanently lubricated ball-bearing motors.
   b. Separate motor for each fan.
   c. Dynamically and statically balanced fan assemblies.
5. Operating and safety controls include the following:
   a. Manual-reset, high-pressure cutout switches.
   b. Automatic-reset, low-pressure cutout switches.
   c. Low oil pressure cutout switch.
   d. Compressor-winding thermostat cutout switch.
   e. Three-leg, compressor-overload protection.
   f. Control transformer.
   g. Magnetic contactors for compressor and condenser fan motors.
   h. Timer to prevent excessive compressor cycling.
6. Accessories:
   a. Electronic programmable thermostat **OR** Low-voltage thermostat and subbase, **as directed**, to control condensing unit and evaporator fan.
   b. Low Ambient Controller: Cycles condenser fan to permit operation down to 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch, **as directed**.
      OR
      Low Ambient Controller: Controls condenser fan speed to permit operation down to minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C) with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch, **as directed**.
   c. Gage Panel: Package with refrigerant circuit suction and discharge gages.
   d. Hot-gas bypass kit.
   e. Part-winding-start timing relay, circuit breakers, and contactors.
7. Unit Casings: Designed for outdoor installation with weather protection for components and controls and with removable panels for required access to compressors, controls, condenser fans, motors, and drives. Additional features include the following:
   a. Steel, galvanized or zinc coated, for exposed casing surfaces; treated and finished with manufacturer's standard paint coating.
   b. Perimeter base rail with forklift slots and lifting holes to facilitate rigging.
   c. Gasketed control panel door.
   d. Nonfused disconnect switch, factory mounted and wired, for single external electrical power connection.
   e. Condenser coil hail guard **OR** grille, **as directed**, to protect coil from physical damage.

C. Condensing Units, Water Cooled
1. Description: Factory assembled and tested, water cooled; consisting of compressors, water-cooled condensers, bases, and unit controls.
2. Compressor: Hermetic or serviceable hermetic type; with oil pump, operating oil charge, and suction and discharge shutoff valves. Factory mounted on base using spring isolators. Include the following:
   a. Thermally protected compressor motor.
   b. Crankcase heater.
   c. Capacity control using cylinder unloading, suction pressure controlled and discharge pressure operated, designed for unloaded start.
   d. Refrigerant Charge: R-407C **OR** R-410A **OR** HFC-134a, **as directed**.

3. Condenser: Single-pass, tube-in-tube coaxial type; with seamless, integral-finned, copper tube and steel outer shell with water-regulating valve.
   OR
   Condenser: Multipass, shell-and-tube type; with replaceable, seamless, integral-finned copper tubes; positive-liquid subcooling circuit; pressure relief device; liquid-level test cock; purge connection; liquid-line shutoff valve; and angle valve for connection of water-regulating valve.
   a. Unit Construction: ASME stamped, **as directed**, for refrigerant-side working pressure of 385 psig (2650 kPa) and water-side working pressure of 250 psig (1720 kPa).
4. Accessories include the following:
   a. Discharge-line muffler.
   b. Gage panel containing gages for suction, discharge, and oil pressure.
   c. Electric solenoid cylinder unloaders.
   d. Pump-down relay package.
   e. Crankcase cover plates with equalizer connections.
5. Controls: Factory-mounted and -wired panel with the following:
   a. Timer to prevent short cycling.
   b. High- and low-refrigerant-pressure safety controls.
   c. Power- and control-circuit terminal blocks.
   d. Compressor motor starter.
   e. Control-circuit on-off switch.
   f. Control-circuit fuse.

D. Motors
1. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
   a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
   b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 22.

E. Source Quality Control
1. Verification of Performance: Rate condensing units according to ARI 210/240, ARI 340/360, or ARI 365.
   a. Energy Efficiency: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
2. Test and inspect shell and tube condensers according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Testing Requirements: Factory test sound-power-level ratings according to ARI 270.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated; maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
2. Install condensing units on concrete base. Concrete base is specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac" and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 31.
3. Concrete Bases:
   a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete slab. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of the base.
   b. For equipment supported on structural slab, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
e. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

4. Install roof-mounting units on equipment supports specified in Division 07.
5. Vibration Isolation: Mount condensing units on rubber pads with a minimum deflection of 1/4 inch (6.35 mm). Vibration isolation devices and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
   OR
   Vibration Isolation: Mount condensing units on restrained spring isolators with a minimum deflection specified by the Owner. Vibration isolation devices and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
6. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
7. Loose Components: Install electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

B. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect precharged refrigerant tubing to unit's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing so it does not interfere with access to unit. Install furnished accessories.
4. Connect refrigerant piping to air-cooled condensing units; maintain required access to unit. Install furnished field-mounted accessories. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping".
5. Connect refrigerant and condenser-water piping to water-cooled condensing units. Maintain clear tube removal space. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping" and condenser-water piping and specialties are specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Domestic Water Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Hydronic Piping", **as directed**.

C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   a. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
   b. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
   c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
   d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
   e. Verify proper airflow over coils.
2. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning condensing units and retest as specified above.

D. Startup Service
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
   a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
   b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
   c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
   d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
   e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
   f. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
2. Lubricate bearings on fans.
3. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
4. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.

5. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.
6. Measure and record airflow over coils.
7. Verify proper operation of condenser capacity control device.
8. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
9. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings and adjust belt tension, **as directed**.

E. Demonstration
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain condensing units.

END OF SECTION 23 01 60 71

SECTION 23 05 13 00 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common motor requirements for HVAC equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

C. Coordination
1. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
   a. Motor controllers.
   b. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
   c. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
   d. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Motor Requirements
1. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.
2. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
3. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

B. Motor Characteristics
1. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
2. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

C. Polyphase Motors
1. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
2. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
3. Service Factor: 1.15.
4. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   a. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
   b. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
5. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
6. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
7. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
8. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
9. Insulation: Class F.
10. Code Letter Designation:
    a. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.

b. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

11. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

D. Polyphase Motors With Additional Requirements

1. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
2. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
   a. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
   b. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
   c. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
   d. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
3. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

E. Single-Phase Motors

1. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
   a. Permanent-split capacitor.
   b. Split phase.
   c. Capacitor start, inductor run.
   d. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
2. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
3. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
4. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
5. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

1.3 EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 05 13 00

SECTION 23 05 16 00 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for expansion fittings and loops for HVAC piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Flexible, ball-joint, packed expansion joints.
b. Slip-joint packed expansion joints.
c. Expansion-compensator packless expansion joints.
d. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
e. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
f. Rubber packless expansion joints.
g. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
h. Pipe loops and swing connections.
i. Alignment guides and anchors.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
2. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
b. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
c. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
d. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.
5. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
b. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Packed Expansion Joints
1. Flexible, Ball-Joint, Packed Expansion Joints:

a. Standards: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section II, "Materials"; and ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials and design of pressure-containing parts and bolting.
b. Material: Carbon-steel assembly with asbestos-free composition packing.
c. Design: For 360-degree rotation and angular deflection.
d. Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig at 400 deg F (1725 kPa at 204 deg C).
e. Angular Deflection for NPS 6 (DN 150) and Smaller: 30 degree minimum.
f. Angular Deflection for NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: 15 degree minimum.
g. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
h. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

2. Slip-Joint Packed Expansion Joints:
a. Standard: ASTM F 1007.
b. Material: Carbon steel with asbestos-free PTFE packing.
c. Design: With internal guide and injection device for repacking under pressure. Include drip connection if used for steam piping.
d. Configuration: Single joint **OR** Single joint with base and double joint with base, **as directed**, class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
e. End Connections: Flanged or weld ends to match piping system.

B. Packless Expansion Joints
1. Metal, Expansion-Compensator Packless Expansion Joints:
a. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
b. Configuration for Copper Tubing: Two-ply, phosphor-bronze bellows with copper pipe ends.
1) End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
2) End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Threaded.
c. Configuration for Steel Piping: Two-ply, stainless-steel bellows; steel-pipe end connections; and carbon-steel shroud.
1) End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
2) End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged **OR** Weld, **as directed**.

2. Rubber, Expansion-Compensator Packless Expansion Joints:
a. Material: Twin reinforced-rubber spheres with external restraining cables.
b. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 170 deg F (1035 kPa at 77 deg C) unless otherwise indicated.
c. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.

3. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
a. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
b. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
c. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
1) Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C) and 340 psig at 450 deg F (2340 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.
2) Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F (4830 kPa at 21 deg C) and 500 psig at 450 deg F (3450 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.
d. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
1) Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F (2070 kPa at 21 deg C) and 225 psig at 450 deg F (1550 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.

2) Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F (2890 kPa at 21 deg C) and 315 psig at 450 deg F (2170 kPa at 232 deg C) ratings.

e. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
   1) Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F (3100 kPa at 21 deg C) and 325 psig at 600 deg F (2250 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
   2) Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F (4830 kPa at 21 deg C) and 515 psig at 600 deg F (3550 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.

f. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Carbon-steel fittings with flanged **OR** weld, **as directed**, end connections.
   1) Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F (1380 kPa at 21 deg C) and 145 psig at 600 deg F (1000 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
   2) Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F (1900 kPa at 21 deg C) and 200 psig at 600 deg F (1380 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.

g. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): Carbon-steel fittings with flanged **OR** weld, **as directed**, end connections.
   1) Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F (860 kPa at 21 deg C) and 90 psig at 600 deg F (625 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
   2) Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F (1130 kPa at 21 deg C) and 120 psig at 600 deg F (830 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.

h. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 14 (DN 350) and Larger: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged **OR** weld, **as directed**, end connections.
   1) Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F (1130 kPa at 21 deg C) and 120 psig at 600 deg F (830 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.

4. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:
   a. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
   b. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
   c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Configuration: Single joint **OR** Single joint with base and double joint with base, **as directed**, class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
   e. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single **OR** Multi, **as directed**,-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
      1) End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
      2) End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Solder joint or threaded.
      3) End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged.
   f. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single **OR** Multi, **as directed**,-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe ends, and carbon-steel shroud.
      1) End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
      2) End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged **OR** Weld, **as directed**.

5. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:
   a. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
   b. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-NMEJ-703.

c. Arch Type: Single **OR** Multiple, **as directed**, arches with external control rods, **as directed**.
d. Spherical Type: Single **OR** Multiple, **as directed**, spheres with external control rods, **as directed**.
e. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 40 to DN 100): 150 psig (1035 kPa) at 220 deg F (104 deg C).
f. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 140 psig (966 kPa) at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
g. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 140 psig (966 kPa) at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
h. Material for Fluids Containing Acids, Alkalies, or Chemicals: BR **OR** CSM **OR** EPDM, **as directed**.
i. Material for Fluids Containing Gas, Hydrocarbons, or Oil: Buna-N **OR** CR, **as directed**.
j. Material for Water: BR **OR** Buna-N **OR** CR **OR** CSM **OR** EPDM **OR** NR, **as directed**.
k. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

C. Grooved-Joint Expansion Joints
1. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
2. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
3. Nipples: Galvanized, **as directed**, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
4. Couplings: Five **OR** Seven **OR** 10 **OR** 12, **as directed**, flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, Buna-N gasket suitable for diluted acid, alkaline fluids, and cold and hot water **OR** EPDM gasket suitable for cold and hot water, **as directed**, and bolts and nuts.

D. Alignment Guides And Anchors
1. Alignment Guides:
a. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.
2. Anchor Materials:
a. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
c. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
d. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
1) Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
2) Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
3) Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
e. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
1) Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
2) Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
3) Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Expansion-Joint Installation
1. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

2. Install packed-type expansion joints with packing suitable for fluid service.
3. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
4. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.
5. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping

B. Pipe Loop And Swing Connection Installation
1. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
2. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
3. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.
4. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

C. Alignment-Guide And Anchor Installation
1. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
2. Install one **OR** two, **as directed**, guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
3. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
4. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
5. Anchor Attachments:
   a. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
   b. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
6. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
   a. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
   b. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 23 05 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 05 17 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
23 05 17 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
23 05 17 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
23 05 17 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 19 00 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for meters and gages for HVAC piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
   b. Filled-system thermometers.
   c. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
   d. Light-activated thermometers.
   e. Thermowells.
   f. Dial-type pressure gages.
   g. Gage attachments.
   h. Test plugs.
   i. Test-plug kits.
   j. Sight flow indicators.
   k. Orifice flowmeters.
   l. Pitot-tube flowmeters.
   m. Turbine flowmeters.
   n. Venturi flowmeters.
   o. Vortex-shedding flowmeters.
   p. Impeller-turbine, thermal-energy meters.
   q. Ultrasonic, thermal-energy meters.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Bimetallic-Actuated Thermometers
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
3. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
4. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**, with unified-inch screw threads.
5. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
6. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
7. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Stainless steel.
9. Element: Bimetal coil.
10. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.

11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**, percent of scale range.

B. Filled-System Thermometers
   1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
      a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
      b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
      c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
      d. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, **as directed**, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
      e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
      f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
      g. Window: Glass or plastic.
      h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel.
      i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
      j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
         1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
         2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
      k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
   2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
      a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
      b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
      c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
      d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
      e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
      f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
      g. Window: Glass or plastic.
      h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
      i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
      j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
         1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
         2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
      k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
   3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
      a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
      b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
      c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
      d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
      e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
      f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
      g. Window: Glass or plastic.
      h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.

i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
g. Window: Glass or plastic.
h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

C. Liquid-In-Glass Thermometers
1. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
b. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
f. Window: Glass or plastic.
g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
b. Case: Plastic; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
e. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
f. Window: Glass or plastic.
g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

3. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
   e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   f. Window: Glass or plastic.
   g. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
4. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
   b. Case: Plastic; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
   e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   f. Window: Glass or plastic.
   g. Stem: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

D. Light-Activated Thermometers
1. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
   a. Case: Plastic **OR** Metal, **as directed**; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   c. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
   d. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
   e. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   f. Display: Digital.
   g. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).
2. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
   a. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
   b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
   c. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.
      1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
   d. Display: Digital.
   e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).

E. Duct-Thermometer Mounting Brackets
   1. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

F. Thermowells
   1. Thermowells:
      a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
      b. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
      c. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR **OR** CUNI, **as directed**.
      d. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES **OR** CSA, **as directed**.
      e. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
      f. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
      g. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
      h. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
      i. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
      j. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
      k. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
   2. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

G. Pressure Gages
   1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
      1) Standard: ASME B40.100.
      2) Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure relief, **as directed**, type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
      3) Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
      4) Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
      5) Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
      6) Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
      7) Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
      8) Window: Glass or plastic.
      9) Ring: Metal **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
      10) Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
   2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
      a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
      b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
      c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
      d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
      e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
      f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
      g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
      h. Window: Glass or plastic.
      i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.

3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   b. Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, type; cast aluminum or drawn steel **OR** metal, **as directed**; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
   c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
   e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
   f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
   g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
   h. Window: Glass or plastic.
   i. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   j. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
   a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
   b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
   c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
   e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
   f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
   g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
   h. Window: Glass or plastic.
   i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.

H. Gage Attachments
1. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type **OR** porous-metal-type, **as directed**, surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
2. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass **OR** stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, pipe with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, pipe threads.
3. Valves: Brass ball **OR** Brass or stainless-steel needle, **as directed**, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

I. Test Plugs
1. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
2. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
3. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
4. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C).
5. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber.

J. Test-Plug Kits
1. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one **OR** two, **as directed**, thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C).
3. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C).
4. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa).
5. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

K. Sight Flow Indicators
1. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
2. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1034 kPa), **as directed**.
4. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
5. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
6. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

L. Flowmeters
1. Orifice Flowmeters:
   a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
   b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
   c. Sensor: Wafer-orifice-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation between pipe flanges.
      1) Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for gas **OR** oil **OR** steam **OR** water, **as directed**.
      2) Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.
      3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
   d. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected sensor and having 6-inch- (152-mm-) diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to sensor.
      1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
      2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
   e. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected sensor and having two 12-foot (3.7-m) hoses, with carrying case.
      1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
      2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
   f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
   g. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor and indicator.
   h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
2. Pitot-Tube Flowmeters:
   a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
   b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
   c. Sensor: Insertion type; for inserting probe into piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute (liters per second).
      1) Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for oil **OR** water, **as directed**.
      2) Construction: Stainless-steel probe of length to span inside of pipe, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
      3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

d. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
e. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power connection.
f. Accuracy: Plus or minus 3 percent.
g. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

3. Turbine Flowmeters:
   a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
   b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
   c. Sensor: Impeller turbine; for inserting into pipe fitting or for installing in piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute (liters per second).
      1) Design: Device or pipe fitting with inline turbine and integral direct-reading scale for gas **OR** oil **OR** steam **OR** water, **as directed**.
      2) Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with plastic turbine or impeller.
      3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 180 deg F (82 deg C).
   d. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
   e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
   f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
   g. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
4. Venturi Flowmeters:
   a. Description: Flowmeter with calibrated flow-measuring element, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
   b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
   c. Sensor: Venturi-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation in piping.
      1) Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for gas **OR** oil **OR** steam **OR** water, **as directed**.
      2) Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel, with brass fittings and attached tag with flow conversion data.
      3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
      4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
      5) End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
      6) End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged or welded.
      7) Flow Range: Flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
   d. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch- (152-mm-) diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.
      1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
      2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
   e. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot (3.7-m) hoses, with carrying case.
      1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
      2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
   f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
   g. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor.
   h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
5. Vortex-Shedding Flowmeters:
   a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
   b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
   c. Sensor: Inline type; for installing between pipe flanges and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute (liters per second).

1) Design: Flow obstruction device, vortex-measurement type for gas **OR** steam **OR** liquids, **as directed**.
2) Construction: Stainless-steel body, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 1000 psig (6900 kPa).
4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 500 deg F (260 deg C).
5) Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power operation.

d. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.25 percent for liquids and 0.75 percent for gases.
f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
g. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

M. Thermal-Energy Meters
1. Impeller-Turbine, Thermal-Energy Meters:
a. Description: System with strainer, **as directed**, flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
b. Flow Sensor: Impeller turbine with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter; for installing in piping.
1) Design: Total thermal-energy measurement.
2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Minimum Temperature Range: 40 to 250 deg F (5 to 121 deg C).
c. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type transducer.
d. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack, **as directed**; for wall mounting.
1) Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
2) Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
f. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons (liters) and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
g. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.
h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.
2. Ultrasonic, Thermal-Energy Meters:
a. Description: Meter with flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
b. Flow Sensor: Transit-time ultrasonic type with transmitter.
c. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type or strap-on transducer.
d. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack, **as directed**.
1) Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
2) Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
f. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons (liters) and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
g. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid **OR** one-third of pipe diameter **OR** to center of pipe, **as directed**, and in vertical position in piping tees.
2. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

3. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
4. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
5. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
6. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
7. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
8. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
9. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
10. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
11. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
12. Install test plugs in piping tees.
13. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
14. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
15. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
16. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
17. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
18. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
19. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
20. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
21. Install thermometers in the following locations:
    a. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
    b. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
    c. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
    d. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
    e. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
    f. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
    g. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
22. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
    a. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
    b. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
    c. Suction and discharge of each pump.

B. Connections
1. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
2. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
3. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
4. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

C. Adjusting
1. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

D. Thermometer Schedule
1. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be one of the following:
    a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
    b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
    c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
    d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
    e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.

2. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
   e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
3. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
   e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
4. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
   e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
5. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
   e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
6. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat-recovery unit shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
   e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
7. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
   e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
8. Thermometers at outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
   b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
   c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
   d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
9. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

E. Thermometer Scale-Range Schedule
1. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 100 deg C) **OR** Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F and minus 40 to plus 100 deg C, **as directed**.
2. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
3. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
4. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
5. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
6. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
7. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
8. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
9. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
10. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
11. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
12. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
13. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 400 deg F (0 to 200 deg C) **OR** 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C, **as directed**.
14. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 550 deg F (10 to 300 deg C) **OR** 50 to 550 deg F and 10 to 300 deg C, **as directed**.
15. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
16. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
17. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
18. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 50 to 400 deg F (0 to 200 deg C) **OR** 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C, **as directed**.
19. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 45 deg C) **OR** Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F and minus 40 to plus 45 deg C, **as directed**.
20. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 100 deg C) **OR** Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F and minus 40 to plus 100 deg C, **as directed**.
21. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
22. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
23. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
24. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
25. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed.**
26. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 50 to 400 deg F (0 to 200 deg C) **OR** 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C, **as directed**.

F. Pressure-Gage Schedule

1. Pressure gages at discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal case.
   b. Sealed, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, plastic case.
   c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
2. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal case.
   b. Sealed, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, plastic case.
   c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
3. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be one of the following:
   a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal case.
   b. Sealed, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, plastic case.
   c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.

G. Pressure-Gage Scale-Range Schedule
1. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kP, **as directed**.
2. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kP, **as directed**.
3. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kP, **as directed**.
4. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kP, **as directed**.
5. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
6. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
7. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.
8. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa, **as directed**.
9. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa, **as directed**.
10. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
11. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
12. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
13. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
14. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.
15. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa, **as directed**.
16. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa, **as directed**.
17. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.

18. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
19. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
20. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
21. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.
22. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa, **as directed**.
23. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa, **as directed**.
24. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
25. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
26. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
27. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
28. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.

H. Flowmeter Schedule
1. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Orifice **OR** Pitot-tube **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed,** type.
2. Flowmeters for Condenser-Water Piping: Orifice **OR** Pitot-tube **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed,** type.
3. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Orifice **OR** Pitot-tube **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed,** type.
4. Flowmeters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Orifice **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed,** type.

I. Thermal-Energy Meter Schedule
1. Thermal-Energy Meters for Chilled-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed,** type.
2. Thermal-Energy Meters for Condenser-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed,** type.
3. Thermal-Energy Meters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed,** type.
4. Thermal-Energy Meters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed,** type.

END OF SECTION 23 05 19 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 05 19 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
23 05 19 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
23 05 19 00	22 05 19 00	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
23 05 19 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
23 05 19 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 23 00 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of general-duty valves for HVAC piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Bronze angle valves.
b. Brass ball valves.
c. Bronze ball valves.
d. Iron ball valves.
e. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
f. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
g. High-performance butterfly valves.
h. Bronze lift check valves.
i. Bronze swing check valves.
j. Iron swing check valves.
k. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
l. Iron, grooved-end swing-check valves.
m. Iron, center-guided check valves.
n. Iron, plate-type check valves.
o. Bronze gate valves.
p. Iron gate valves.
q. Bronze globe valves.
r. Iron globe valves.
s. Lubricated plug valves.
t. Eccentric plug valves.
u. Chainwheels.

C. Definitions
1. CWP: Cold working pressure.
2. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
3. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
4. NRS: Nonrising stem.
5. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
6. RS: Rising stem.
7. SWP: Steam working pressure.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
2. ASME Compliance:
a. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
b. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
c. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
a. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
b. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
c. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
d. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
e. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
f. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
2. Use the following precautions during storage:
a. Maintain valve end protection.
b. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
3. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Valves
1. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
2. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
3. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
4. Valve Actuator Types:
a. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
b. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
c. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves, **as directed**.
d. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish the Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 **OR** 10, **as directed**, plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
e. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
5. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
a. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
b. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
c. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
6. Valve-End Connections:
a. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
b. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
c. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
d. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
7. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

B. Bronze Angle Valves
1. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
6) Packing: Asbestos free.
7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

2. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded.
      5) Stem: Bronze.
      6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      7) Packing: Asbestos free.
      8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded.
      5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
      6) Packing: Asbestos free.
      7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded.
      5) Stem: Bronze.
      6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      7) Packing: Asbestos free.
      8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

C. Brass Ball Valves
1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) Body Design: One piece.
      4) Body Material: Forged brass.
      5) Ends: Threaded.
      6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      7) Stem: Brass.
      8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      9) Port: Reduced.
2. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Two piece.
      5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Brass.
      9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      10) Port: Full.
3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:

1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Forged brass.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Stainless steel.
9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10) Port: Full.

4. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Two piece.
      5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Brass.
      9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      10) Port: Regular.
5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Two piece.
      5) Body Material: Brass or bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      10) Port: Regular.
6. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Brass.
      9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      10) Port: Full.
7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.

8) Stem: Stainless steel.
9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10) Port: Full.

D. Bronze Ball Valves
1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
3) Body Design: One piece.
4) Body Material: Bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
7) Stem: Bronze.
8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9) Port: Reduced.
2. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
3) Body Design: One piece.
4) Body Material: Bronze.
5) Ends: Threaded.
6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
7) Stem: Stainless steel.
8) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
9) Port: Reduced.
3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Bronze.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Bronze.
9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
10) Port: Full.
4. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Bronze.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Stainless steel.
9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10) Port: Full.
5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).

4) Body Design: Two piece.
5) Body Material: Bronze.
6) Ends: Threaded.
7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
8) Stem: Bronze.
9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
10) Port: Regular.

6. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Two piece.
      5) Body Material: Bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      10) Port: Regular.
7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Bronze.
      9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      10) Port: Full.
8. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Three piece.
      5) Body Material: Bronze.
      6) Ends: Threaded.
      7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      10) Port: Full.

E. Iron Ball Valves
1. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-72.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Split body.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      7) Stem: Stainless steel.
      8) Ball: Stainless steel.

9) Port: Full.

F. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves
1. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Seat: EPDM.
6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
2. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Seat: NBR.
6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
3. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Seat: EPDM.
6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
4. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Seat: NBR.
6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
5. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Seat: EPDM.
6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Stainless steel.
6. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.

2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Seat: NBR.
6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Stainless steel.

7. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
8. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: NBR.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
9. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Seat: EPDM.
      6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
10. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
       2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
       3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
       4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
       5) Seat: NBR.
       6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
       7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
11. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
       2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
       3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
       4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
       5) Seat: EPDM.

6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
7) Disc: Stainless steel.

12. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
        2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
        3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
        4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        5) Seat: NBR.
        6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
        7) Disc: Stainless steel.

G. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves
1. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
        2) CWP Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
        3) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
        4) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
        5) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
        6) Seal: EPDM.
2. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
        2) NPS 8 (DN 50) and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
        3) NPS 10 (DN 250) and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
        4) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
        5) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
        6) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
        7) Seal: EPDM.

H. High-Performance Butterfly Valves
1. Class 150, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-68.
        2) CWP Rating: 285 psig (1965 kPa) at 100 deg F (38 deg C).
        3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
        4) Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
        5) Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
        6) Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
        7) Disc: Carbon steel.
        8) Service: Bidirectional.
2. Class 300, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-68.
        2) CWP Rating: 720 psig (4965 kPa) at 100 deg F (38 deg C).
        3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
        4) Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.
        5) Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
        6) Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
        7) Disc: Carbon steel.
        8) Service: Bidirectional.

I. Bronze Lift Check Valves
   1. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
         2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
         3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
         4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
         5) Ends: Threaded.
         6) Disc: Bronze.
   2. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
         2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
         3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
         4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
         5) Ends: Threaded.
         6) Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

J. Bronze Swing Check Valves
   1. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
         2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
         3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
         4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
         5) Ends: Threaded.
         6) Disc: Bronze.
   2. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
         2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
         3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
         4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
         5) Ends: Threaded.
         6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
   3. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
         2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
         3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
         4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
         5) Ends: Threaded.
         6) Disc: Bronze.
   4. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
      a. Description:
         1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
         2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
         3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
         4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
         5) Ends: Threaded.
         6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.

K. Iron Swing Check Valves
   1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
      a. Description:

1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
6) Ends: Flanged.
7) Trim: Bronze.
8) Gasket: Asbestos free.

2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      6) Ends: Flanged.
      7) Trim: Composition.
      8) Seat Ring: Bronze.
      9) Disc Holder: Bronze.
      10) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      11) Gasket: Asbestos free.
3. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      6) Ends: Flanged.
      7) Trim: Bronze.
      8) Gasket: Asbestos free.

L. Iron Swing Check Valves With Closure Control
1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      6) Ends: Flanged.
      7) Trim: Bronze.
      8) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      9) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.
2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      6) Ends: Flanged.
      7) Trim: Bronze.
      8) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      9) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

M. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves
1. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:
a. Description:
1) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
2) Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
3) Seal: EPDM.
4) Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

N. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
5) Style: Compact wafer.
6) Seat: Bronze.
2. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
6) Ends: Flanged.
7) Seat: Bronze.
3. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Style: Compact wafer.
6) Seat: Bronze.
4. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
6) Ends: Flanged.
7) Seat: Bronze.
5. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
6) Seat: Bronze.
6. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).

3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
6) Ends: Flanged.
7) Seat: Bronze.

7. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      6) Seat: Bronze.
8. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      6) Ends: Flanged.
      7) Seat: Bronze.
9. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      5) Style: Compact wafer.
      6) Seat: EPDM **OR** BR, **as directed**.
10. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
       2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
       3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
       4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
       5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
       6) Ends: Flanged.
       7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
11. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
       2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
       3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
       4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
       5) Style: Compact wafer.
       6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
12. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
       2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
       3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
       4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
       5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
       6) Ends: Flanged.
       7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.

13. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
        3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
        4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
        5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
        6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
14. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
        3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
        4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
        5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
        6) Ends: Flanged.
        7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
15. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
        3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
        4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
        6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
16. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
        2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
        3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
        4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
        6) Ends: Flanged.
        7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.

O. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: API 594.
        2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
        3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
        4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
        5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
        6) Seat: Bronze.
2. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: API 594.
        2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
        3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
        4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
        5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        6) Seat: Bronze.
3. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    a. Description:
        1) Standard: API 594.

2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
6) Seat: Bronze.

4. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      6) Seat: Bronze.
5. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
6. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
7. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
8. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
9. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: API 594.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
10. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    a. Description:
       1) Standard: API 594.

2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.

P. Bronze Gate Valves
1. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

Q. Iron Gate Valves
1. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.

5) Ends: Flanged.
6) Trim: Bronze.
7) Disc: Solid wedge.
8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Bronze.
      7) Disc: Solid wedge.
      8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
3. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Bronze.
      7) Disc: Solid wedge.
      8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
4. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      5) Ends: Flanged.
      6) Trim: Bronze.
      7) Disc: Solid wedge.
      8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

R. Bronze Globe Valves
1. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
      5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
      6) Packing: Asbestos free.
      7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
      4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
      5) Stem: Bronze.
      6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      7) Packing: Asbestos free.
      8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
4) Ends: Threaded.
5) Stem: Bronze.
6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
7) Packing: Asbestos free.
8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

S. Iron Globe Valves
1. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
4) Ends: Flanged.
5) Trim: Bronze.
6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
4) Ends: Flanged.
5) Trim: Bronze.
6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

T. Lubricated Plug Valves
1. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
2. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
3. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
a. Description:
1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.

6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

4. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
5. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
6. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
7. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
8. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
      5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
      6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

U. Eccentric Plug Valves
1. 175 CWP, Eccentric Plug Valves with Resilient Seating.
   a. Description:
      1) Standard: MSS SP-108.
      2) CWP Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
      3) Body and Plug: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray iron; ASTM A 126, gray iron; or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      4) Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel.
      5) Ends: Flanged.

6) Stem-Seal Packing: Asbestos free.
7) Plug, Resilient-Seating Material: Suitable for potable-water service unless otherwise indicated.

V. Chainwheels
1. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
a. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
b. Attachment: For connection to ball **OR** butterfly **OR** plug, **as directed**, valve stems.
c. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron **OR** Cast iron **OR** Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating, **as directed**.
d. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Valve Installation
1. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
2. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
3. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
4. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
5. Install chainwheels on operators for ball **OR** butterfly **OR** gate **OR** globe **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.
6. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
a. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
b. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
c. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

B. Adjusting
1. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

C. General Requirements For Valve Applications
1. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
a. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly **OR** gate **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves.
b. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
c. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe **OR** angle **OR** ball **OR** butterfly, **as directed**, valves.
d. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe **OR** angle **OR** butterfly, **as directed**, valves.
e. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**,-seat check valves.
2. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
3. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
a. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
b. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

c. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
d. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
e. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
f. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
g. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping except Steam and Steam Condensate Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

D. Chilled-Water Valve Schedule
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**, bronze.
f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
d. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 150 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
e. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
f. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
g. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
h. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
i. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.
j. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
k. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
l. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
m. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
n. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
o. Eccentric Plug Valves: 175 CWP, resilient seating.

E. Condenser-Water Valve Schedule
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.

b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.

2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
d. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 150 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
e. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
f. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
g. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
h. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
i. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.
j. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600): Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
k. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
l. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
m. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
n. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.

F. Heating-Water Valve Schedule
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
d. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 150 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
e. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
f. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
g. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
h. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
i. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.
j. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
k. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
l. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
m. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.

G. Low-Pressure Steam Valve Schedule (15 psig (104 kPa) Or Less)
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
c. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
d. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
e. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
c. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
e. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
g. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.

H. High-Pressure Steam Valve Schedule (More Than 15 psig (104 kPa))
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.

b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
c. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
d. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**, bronze.
e. Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** 150, **as directed**, bronze, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.

2. Pipe Sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150, iron.
c. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
e. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
g. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.

I. Steam-Condensate Valve Schedule
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
a. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
c. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
d. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
e. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.

2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
c. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
e. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
g. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
h. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 23 05 23 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 05 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
23 05 23 00	22 05 23 00a	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
23 05 23 00	22 05 76 00	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
23 05 23 00	22 11 16 00b	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
23 05 23 00	23 21 13 23d	Hydronic Piping
23 05 23 00	23 21 23 13	Hydronic Pumps
23 05 23 00	22 11 16 00g	Refrigerant Piping
23 05 23 00	22 05 23 00b	Water Distribution
23 05 23 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 29 00 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
   b. Trapeze pipe hangers.
   c. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
   d. Metal framing systems.
   e. Fiberglass strut systems.
   f. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
   g. Fastener systems.
   h. Pipe stands.
   i. Equipment supports.

C. Definitions
1. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
   b. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
   c. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
   a. Trapeze pipe hangers.
   b. Metal framing systems.
   c. Fiberglass strut systems.
   d. Pipe stands.
   e. Equipment supports.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   a. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
   b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

4. Welding certificates.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metal Pipe Hangers And Supports
1. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
   a. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
   b. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
   c. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
   d. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
   e. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
   a. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
   b. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
   c. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
3. Copper Pipe Hangers:
   a. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
   b. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

B. Trapeze Pipe Hangers
1. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

C. Fiberglass Pipe Hangers
1. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
   a. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
   b. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of fiberglass, polyurethane or stainless steel.
2. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:
   a. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
   b. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

D. Metal Framing Systems
1. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
   a. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
   b. Standard: MFMA-4.
   c. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.

d. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
e. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
f. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc **OR** Hot-dipped galvanized **OR** Mill galvanized **OR** In-line, hot galvanized **OR** Mechanically-deposited zinc, **as directed**.
OR
Paint Coating: Vinyl **OR** Vinyl alkyd **OR** Epoxy **OR** Polyester **OR** Acrylic **OR** Amine **OR** Alkyd, **as directed**.
OR
Plastic Coating: PVC **OR** Polyurethane **OR** Epoxy **OR** Polyester, **as directed**.
OR
Combination Coating: as directed by the Owner.

2. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
a. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
b. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
c. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
d. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
e. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
f. Coating: Zinc **OR** Paint **OR** PVC, **as directed**.

E. Fiberglass Strut Systems
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
a. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass or other plastic channel with inturned lips.
b. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
c. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of fiberglass **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts
1. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
2. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig (688-kPa), ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
3. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
4. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
5. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

G. Fastener Systems
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated **OR** stainless-, **as directed**, steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

H. Pipe Stands

1. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
2. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
3. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
4. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
   a. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
   b. Base: Plastic **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   c. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
   d. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
5. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
   a. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
   b. Bases: One or more; plastic.
   c. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
   d. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
   e. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
6. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

I. Equipment Supports
1. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

J. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
2. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
   a. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
   b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
2. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
   a. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
   b. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
3. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

4. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
7. Fastener System Installation:
   a. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
   b. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Pipe Stand Installation:
   a. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
   b. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
9. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
10. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
11. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
12. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
13. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
14. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
15. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
16. Insulated Piping:
   a. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
      1) Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
      2) Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
      3) Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
   b. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
      1) Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
   c. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
      1) Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
   d. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
      1) NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
      2) NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
      3) NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.

4) NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
5) NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.

e. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
f. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

B. Equipment Supports
1. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
2. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
3. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

C. Metal Fabrications
1. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
2. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
c. Remove welding flux immediately.
d. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

D. Adjusting
1. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
2. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

E. Painting
1. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

OR

Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

F. Hanger And Support Schedule
1. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
2. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
3. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

4. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
5. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
6. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
7. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
8. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
9. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
10. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
    b. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C),pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
    c. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
    d. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
    e. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
    f. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
    g. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
    h. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
    i. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
    j. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
    k. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
    l. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
    m. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
    n. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
    o. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
    p. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
    q. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
    r. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

s. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
t. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
u. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

11. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
    b. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
12. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
    b. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
    c. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
    d. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
    e. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
13. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
    b. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
    c. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
    d. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
    e. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
    f. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
    g. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
    h. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
    i. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
    j. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
    k. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
    l. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
        1) Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
        2) Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
        3) Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
    m. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
    n. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
    o. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

14. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    b. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
    c. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
15. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
    a. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
    b. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
    c. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
    d. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
    e. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
    f. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
    g. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
    h. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
        1) Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
        2) Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
        3) Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
16. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
17. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
18. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 29 00a - STEAM DISTRIBUTION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steam distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes underground piping outside the building for distribution of steam and condensate.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Provide components and installation capable of producing steam piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings:
a. Steam Piping: 15 psig (104 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa), **as directed**.
b. Condensate Piping: 100 psig (690 kPa).

D. Submittals
1. Product Data:
2. Shop Drawings:
3. Welding certificates.
4. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
2. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," **as directed**, for materials, products, and installation.
3. ASME Compliance: Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear appropriate ASME labels.

F. Project Conditions
1. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
b. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Piping Materials
1. Refer to Article 1.3 "Piping Application" for applications of pipes, tubes, fittings, and joining methods.
2. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.

B. Steel Pipes And Fittings
1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade A, Standard Weight; with plain ends.
2. Nipples: ASTM A 733, Standard Weight, seamless, carbon-steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M.

3. Malleable-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300, with threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
4. Cast-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Classes 125 and 250, standard pattern, with threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
5. Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9 and ASTM A 234/A 234M, seamless or welded.

C. Conduit Piping
1. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled, airtight and watertight, drainable, pressure-tested piping with conduit, inner pipe supports, and insulated carrier piping. Fabricate so insulation can be dried in place by forcing dry air through conduit.
2. Carrier Pipe: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade A with beveled **OR** socket, **as directed**, ends for welded joints.
3. Carrier Pipe Insulation:
   a. Mineral-Wool Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 547, Type I, molded.
      1) Apparent Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.31 at 200 deg F (0.044 at 93 deg C) mean temperature.
      2) Density: Maximum 10 lb/cu. ft. (160 kg/cu. m) average.
      3) Compressive Strength: 10 psig (69 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
      4) Bands: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
   b. Calcium Silicate Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 533, Type I; preformed, incombustible, inorganic, with non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement.
      1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.60 at 500 deg F (0.087 at 260 deg C).
      2) Dry Density: 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m) maximum.
      3) Compressive Strength: 60 psig (414 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
      4) Bands: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
   c. Polyisocyanurate Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
      1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.14 at 75 deg F (0.020 at 24 deg C).
      2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 400 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 204 deg C).
      3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
      4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
      5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
      6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
      7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
   d. Polyurethane Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
      1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.13 at 75 deg F (0.019 at 24 deg C).
      2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 93 deg C).
      3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
      4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
      5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
      6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
      7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
4. Minimum Clearance:
   a. Between Carrier Pipe Insulation and Conduit: 1 inch (25 mm).
   b. Between Insulation of Multiple Carrier Pipes: 3/16 inch (4.75 mm).
   c. Between Bottom of Carrier Pipe Insulation and Conduit: 1 inch (25 mm).
   d. Between Bottom of Bare, Carrier Pipe and Casing: 1-3/8 inches (35 mm).
5. Conduit: Spiral wound, steel. Finish conduit with 2 coats of fusion-bonded epoxy, minimum 20 mils (0.50 mm) thick. Cover with polyurethane foam insulation with a high-density polyethylene jacket; thickness indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Application" Article, **as directed**.
6. Conduit: Spiral wound, bare steel. Cover with polyurethane foam insulation with a high-density polyethylene jacket; thickness indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Application" Article.

7. Carrier Piping Supports within Conduit: Corrugated galvanized steel with a maximum spacing of 10 feet (3 m).
8. Fittings: Factory-fabricated and -insulated elbows and tees. Elbows may be bent pipe equal to carrier pipe. Tees shall be factory fabricated and insulated, and shall be compatible with the carrier pipe.
9. Expansion Offsets and Loops: Size casing to contain piping expansion.
10. Conduit accessories include the following:
    a. Water Shed: Terminal end protector for carrier pipes entering building through floor, 3 inches (75 mm) deep and 2 inches (50 mm) larger than casing; terminate casing 20 inches (500 mm) above the floor level.
    b. Guides and Anchors: Steel plate welded to carrier pipes and to casing, complete with vent and drainage openings inside casing.
    c. End Seals: Steel plate welded to carrier pipes and to casing, complete with drain and vent openings on vertical centerline.
    d. Gland Seals: Packed stuffing box and gland follower mounted on steel plate, welded to end of casing, permitting axial movement of carrier piping, with drain and vent connections on vertical centerline.
    e. Joint Kit: Half-shell, pourable or split insulation and shrink-wrap sleeve.
11. Source Quality Control: Factory test the conduit to 15 psig (105 kPa) for a minimum of 2 minutes with no change in pressure. Factory test the carrier pipe to 150 percent of the operating pressure of system. Furnish test certificates.

D. Cased Piping
1. Description: Factory-fabricated piping with carrier pipe, insulation, and casing.
2. Carrier Pipe: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade A with beveled **OR** socket, **as directed**, ends for welded joints.
3. Carrier Pipe Insulation:
    a. Polyurethane Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
        1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.13 at 75 deg F (0.019 at 24 deg C).
        2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 93 deg C).
        3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
        4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
        5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
        6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
        7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
4. Casing: High-density polyethylene **OR** Filament-wound, fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
5. Casing accessories include the following:
    a. Joint Kit: Half-shell, pourable or split insulation, casing sleeve, and shrink-wrap sleeve.
    b. Expansion Blanket: Elastomeric foam, formed to fit over piping.
    c. End Seals: Shrink wrap the casing material to seal watertight around casing and carrier pipe.
6. Source Quality Control: Factory test the carrier pipe to 150 percent of the operating pressure of system. Furnish test certificates.

E. Loose-Fill Insulation
1. Granular, Loose-Fill Insulation: Inorganic, nontoxic, nonflammable, sodium potassium aluminum silicate with calcium carbonate filler. Include chemical treatment that renders insulation hydrophobic.
    a. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.60 at 175 deg F (0.087 at 79 deg C) and 0.65 at 300 deg F (0.094 at 149 deg C).
    b. Application Temperature Range: 35 to 800 deg F (2 to 426 deg C).
    c. Dry Density: 40 to 42 lb/cu. ft. (640 to 672 kg/cu. m).
    d. Strength: 12,000 lb/sq. ft. (58 600 kg/sq. m).

2. Powder, Loose-Fill Insulation: Inert, nontoxic, nonflammable, calcium carbonate particles. Include chemical treatment that renders insulation hydrophobic.
   a. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): ASTM C 177, 0.58 at 100 deg F (0.084 at 37 deg C) and 0.68 at 300 deg F (0.098 at 149 deg C).
   b. Application Temperature Range: Minus 273 to plus 480 deg F (Minus 169 to plus 250 deg C).
   c. Dry Density: Approximately 60 lb/cu. ft. (960 kg/cu. m).
   d. Strength: 12,000 lb/sq. ft. (58 600 kg/sq. m).

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork: Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Application
1. Steam Piping: Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, steel pipe with cast-iron, threaded fittings and threaded **OR** steel fittings and welded **OR** ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings and mechanical, **as directed**, joints; granular **OR** powder, **as directed**, loose-fill insulation.
2. Steam Piping: Conduit piping with mineral-wool **OR** calcium silicate **OR** polyisocyanurate **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, carrier-pipe insulation and with coated, **unless directed otherwise to be** coated and insulated, conduit.
   a. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
3. Condensate Piping: Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, steel pipe with cast-iron, threaded fittings and threaded **OR** steel welding fittings and welded **OR** ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings and mechanical, **as directed**, joints; granular **OR** powder, **as directed**, loose-fill insulation.
4. Condensate Piping: Conduit piping with mineral-wool **OR** calcium silicate **OR** polyisocyanurate **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, carrier-pipe insulation and with coated **OR** coated and insulated, **as directed**, conduit.
   a. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
5. Condensate Piping: Cased piping with polyurethane carrier-pipe insulation.

C. Piping Installation
1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, unless deviations to layout are approved.
2. Remove any standing water in the bottom of trench.
3. Bed the pipe on a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) layer of granular fill material with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) clearance between the pipes.
4. Do not insulate piping or backfill piping trench until field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
5. Install piping at uniform grade of 0.2 percent downward in direction of flow or as indicated.
6. Install condensate piping at uniform grade of 0.4 percent downward in direction of flow.
7. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
10. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac" for sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals through exterior building walls.
11. Secure anchors with concrete thrust blocks. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
12. Connect to steam and condensate piping where it passes through the building wall. Steam and condensate piping inside the building is specified in Division 23 Section "Steam And Condensate Heating Piping".

D. Loose-Fill Insulation Installation
   1. Do not disturb the bottom of trench, or compact and stabilize it to ensure proper support.
   2. Remove any standing water in the bottom of trench.
   3. Form insulation trench by excavation or by installing drywall side forms to establish the required height and width of the insulation.
   4. Support piping with proper pitch, separation, and clearance to backfill or side forms using temporary supporting devices that can be removed after back filling with insulation.
   5. Place insulation and backfill after field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
   6. Apply bitumastic coating to carbon-steel anchors and guides. Pour concrete thrust blocks and anchors. Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for concrete and reinforcement.
   7. Wrap piping at expansion loops and offsets with mineral-wool insulation of thickness appropriate for calculated expansion amount.
   8. Pour loose-fill insulation to required dimension agitating insulation to eliminate voids around piping.
   9. Remove temporary hangers and supports.
   10. Cover loose-fill insulation with polyethylene sheet a minimum of 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick, and empty loose-fill insulation bags on top.
   11. Manually backfill 6 inches (150 mm) of clean backfill. If mechanical compaction is required manually backfill to 12 inches (300 mm) before using mechanical-compaction equipment.

E. Joint Construction
   1. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
   2. Keyed-Coupling Joints: Cut- or roll-groove pipes. Assemble joints with keyed couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts.
   3. Conduit and Cased Piping Joints: Assemble sections and finish joints with pourable or split insulation, exterior jacket sleeve, and apply shrink-wrap seals as required by manufacturer's written installation instructions.

F. Identification: Install continuous plastic underground warning tapes during back filling of trenches for underground steam and condensate distribution piping. Locate 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade, directly over piping. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for warning-tape materials and devices and their installation.

G. Field Quality Control
   1. Prepare steam and condensate piping for testing according to ASME B31.1 and ASME B31.9 and as follows:
      a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
      b. Isolate equipment. Do not subject equipment to test pressure.
      c. Install relief valve set at pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure.
      d. Fill system with temperature water. Where there is risk of freezing, air or a safe, compatible liquid may be used.
      e. Use vents installed at high points to release trapped air while filling system. Use drip legs installed at low points for complete removal of liquid.
   2. Test steam and condensate piping as follows:
      a. Subject steam and condensate piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure.
      b. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for 10 minutes, examine joints for leakage. Remake leaking joints using new materials and repeat hydrostatic test until no leaks exist.
   3. Test conduit as follows:
      a. Seal vents and drains and subject conduit to 15 psig (105 kPa) for 4 hours with no loss of pressure. Repair leaks and retest as required.
   4. Prepare a written report of testing.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 05 29 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
23 05 29 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
23 05 29 00	22 05 29 00	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
23 05 29 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
23 05 29 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 48 13 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Elastomeric hangers.
5. Snubbers.
6. Restraints - rigid type.
7. Restraints - cable type.
8. Restraint accessories.
9. Post-installed concrete anchors.
10. Concrete inserts.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.
2. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Designated Seismic System: A fire-suppression component that requires design in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7, Ch. 13 and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.

B. IBC: International Building Code.

C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (for the State of California).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Include load rating for each wind-load-restraint fitting and assembly.
3. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-[**and wind-load-**]restraint component.
4. Annotate types and sizes of seismic restraints and accessories, complete with listing markings or report numbers and load rating in tension and compression as evaluated by [**ICC-ES product listing**] [**UL product listing**] [**FM Approvals**] [**an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**] [**OSHPD**] [**an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**].
5. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

6. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated Design Submittal:

1. For each seismic-restraint [**and**] [**wind-load protection**] device, including [**seismic-restrained mounting,**] [**pipe-riser resilient support,**] [**snubber,**] [**seismic restraint,**] [**seismic-restraint accessory,**] [**and**] [**concrete anchor and insert**] that is required by this Section or is indicated on Drawings, submit the following:

   a. Seismic-[**and Wind-Load-**]Restraint Selection: Select seismic [**and wind-load**]restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data.
   b. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and seismic loads. Include certification by professional engineer that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
   c. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors and Inserts: Include calculations showing anticipated seismic[**and wind**] loads. Include certification that device is approved by an NRTL for seismic reinforcement use.
   d. Seismic Design Calculations: Submit all input data and loading calculations prepared under "Seismic Design Calculations" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   e. Wind-Load Design Calculations: Submit all static and dynamic loading calculations prepared under "Wind-Load Design Calculations" in "Performance Requirements" Article.
   f. Qualified Professional Engineer: All designated-design submittals for seismic [**and wind-load-restraint**]calculations are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

2. Seismic-[**and Wind-Load-**]Restraint Detail Drawing:

   a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic[**and wind**] restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
   b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
   c. Coordinate seismic restraint details with wind-load restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply also with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

3. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By [**an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**] [**UL**] [**FM Approvals**] [**OSHPD**] [**an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**], showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
4. All delegated design submittals for seismic-[**and wind-load-**]restraint detail Drawings are to be signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

D. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for fire-suppression piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Qualification Data: For [**professional engineer**] [**and**] [**testing agency**].

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in [**ASCE/SEI 7-05,**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10,**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16,**] Paragraph 13.2.2, "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" for all Designated Seismic Systems identified as such on Drawings or in the Specifications.

1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active fire-suppression system seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7 and AHRI 1270 (AHRI 1271), including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction [**or**] [**experience data as permitted by**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-05**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16**].
2. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in [**ASCE/SEI 7-05**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16**].
3. Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by a licensed professional engineer.
4. The following fire-suppression systems and components are Designated Seismic Systems and require written special certification of seismic qualification by manufacturer:

    a. as directed by the Owner .

F. Wind-Load Performance Certification: Provide special certification for fire-suppression system components subject to high-wind exposure and impact damage and designated on Drawings or in the Specifications to require wind-load performance certification.

1. Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated fire-suppression system device, stating that it will remain in place and operable following the design wind event and comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Certification must be based on ICC-ES or similar nationally recognized testing standard procedures acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. The following fire-suppression system systems and components require special certification for high wind performance. Written special certification of resistance to the effects of high wind load and impact damage must be provided by manufacturer.

    a. as directed by the Owner .

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Seismic-[**and Wind-Load-**]Restraint Device Load Ratings: Devices to be tested and rated in accordance with applicable code requirements and authorities having jurisdiction. Devices to be listed by a nationally recognized third party that requires periodic follow-up inspections and has a listing directory available to the public. Provide third-party listing by one or more of the following: [**ICC-ES product listing**] [**UL product listing**] [**FM Approvals**] [**an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**] [**an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**].

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design seismic[**and wind-load**] control system.

1. Seismic Performance: Equipment must be designed and secured to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with NFPA 13 and [**ASCE/SEI 7-05**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Wind-Load Performance: Equipment must be designed and secured to withstand the effects of high wind events determined in accordance with [**ASCE/SEI 7-05**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16**] or as directed by the Owner .

B. Seismic Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select seismic-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in [**NFPA 13**] [**and**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-05**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10 including supplement No. 1**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16**] **ASCE/SEI 7 edition or other seismic calculation method required by authorities having jurisdiction as directed by the Owner** . Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is the edition intended as reference throughout the Section Text.

a. Data indicated below to be determined by Delegated Design Contractor must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
b. Coordinate seismic design calculations with wind-load calculations for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.
c. Building Occupancy Category: [**I**] [**II**] [**III**] [**IV**].
d. Building Risk Category: [**I**] [**II**] [**III**] [**IV**].
e. Building Site Classification: [**A**] [**B**] [**C**] [**D**] [**E**] [**F**].

2. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-16 unless otherwise noted.

   a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force F_p: Value is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

      1) S_{DS} = Spectral Acceleration: **Value as directed by the Owner** . Value applies to all components on Project.
      2) a_p = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
      3) I_p = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
      4) W_p = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor from each component submittal.
      5) R_p = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
      6) z = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine from Project Drawings for each component by Delegated Design Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" is to be taken as zero.
      7) h = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated Design Contractor.

   b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.1.2.

   c. Seismic Relative Displacement D_{pl}: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

      1) D_p = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be Designed to Accommodate: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.2.
      2) I_e = Structure Importance Factor: **Value as directed by the Owner** . Value applies to all components on Project.
      3) δ_{xA} = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
      4) δ_{yA} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
      5) δ_{yB} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
      6) h_x = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
      7) h_y = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
      8) Δ_{aA} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
      9) Δ_{aB} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedules for each component.
      10) h_{sx} = Story Height Used in the Definition of the Allowable Drift Δ_a: See Drawings Schedules for each component.

   d. Component Fundamental Period T_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Paragraph 13.3.3. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

1) W_p = Component Operating Weight: Determined by contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
2) g = Gravitational Acceleration: [**32.17 fps^2 (9.81 m/s^2)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3) K_p = Combined Stiffness of Component, Supports, and Attachments: Determined by delegated design seismic engineer. **Value** as directed by the Owner .

3. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-10 unless otherwise noted.

a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force F_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-10, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

1) S_{DS} = Spectral Acceleration: **Value as directed by the Owner** . Value applies to all components on Project.
2) a_p = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
3) I_p = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) W_p = Component Operating Weight: For each component. Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor from equipment submittal.
5) R_p = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
6) z = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determined from Project Drawings for each component by Contractor. For items at or below the base, "z" is to be taken as zero.
7) h = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine from Project Drawings by Delegated Design Contractor.

b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.1.

c. Seismic Relative Displacement D_{pl}: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

1) D_p = Relative Seismic Displacement that Each Component Must Be Designed to Accommodate: Calculate by Delegated Design Contractor in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7-10, Paragraph 13.3.2.
2) I_e = Structure Importance Factor: **Value as directed by the Owner** . Value applies to all components on Project.
3) δ_{xA} = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) δ_{yA} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
5) δ_{yB} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
6) h_x = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
7) h_y = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
8) Δ_{aA} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.

9) Δ_{aB} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
10) h_{sx} = Story Height Used in the Definition of the Allowable Drift Δ_a: See Drawing Schedule for each component.

4. Calculation Factors, ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 13 - Seismic Design Requirements for Nonstructural Components: All section, paragraph, equation, and table numbers refer to ASCE/SEI 7-05 unless otherwise noted.

a. Horizontal Seismic Design Force F_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor by ASCE/SEI 7-05, Equation 13.3-1. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

1) S_{DS} = Spectral Acceleration: **Value as directed by the Owner** . Value applies to all components on Project.
2) a_p = Component Amplification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
3) I_p = Component Importance Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) W_p = Component Operating Weight: Obtain by Delegated Design Contractor for each component from component submittal.
5) R_p = Component Response Modification Factor: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
6) z = Height in Structure of Point of Attachment of Component for Base: Determine by Delegated Design Contractor for each component from Project Drawings. For items at or below the base, "z" is to be taken as zero.
7) h = Average Roof Height of Structure for Base: Determine by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings.

b. Vertical Seismic Design Force: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using method explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.1.
c. Seismic Relative Displacement D_p: Calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods explained in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Paragraph 13.3.2. Factors below must be obtained for this calculation:

1) δ_{xA} = Deflection at Building Level x of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
2) δ_{yA} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
3) δ_{yB} = Deflection at Building Level y of Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
4) h_x = Height of Level x to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
5) h_y = Height of Level y to which Upper Connection Point Is Attached: Determine for each component by Delegated Design Contractor from Project Drawings and manufacturer's data.
6) Δ_{aA} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure A: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
7) Δ_{aB} = Allowable Story Drift for Structure B: See Drawing Schedule for each component.
8) h_{sx} = Story Height Used in the Definition of the Allowable Drift Δ_a: See Drawing Schedule for each component.

C. Wind-Load Design Calculations:

1. Perform calculations to obtain force information necessary to properly select wind-load-restraint devices, fasteners, and anchorage. Perform calculations using methods acceptable to applicable code authorities and as presented in [**ASCE/SEI 7-05**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16**] **ASCE/SEI 7 edition or other wind-load calculation method required by authorities having jurisdiction** as directed by the Owner . Where "ASCE/SEI 7" is used throughout this Section, it is to be understood that the edition referred to in this subparagraph is intended as referenced throughout the Section Text unless otherwise noted.

    a. Factors indicated below that are specific to individual pieces of equipment must be obtained by Contractor and must be included in individual component submittal packages.
    b. Coordinate design wind-load calculations with seismic load calculations for equipment requiring both seismic and wind-load reinforcement. Comply with requirements in other Sections in addition to those in this Section for equipment mounted outdoors.

2. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 30. Perform calculations in accordance with one of the following, as appropriate:

    a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.
    b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
    c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" less than 60 feet (18.3 m).
    d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 feet (18.3 m) and less than 160 feet (48.8 m).
    e. PART 5: Open Buildings.

3. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment.

    a. Risk Category: [**I**] [**II**] [**III**] [**IV**] [**V**].
    b. h = Mean Roof Height: as directed by the Owner .
    c. V = Basic Wind Speed: as directed by the Owner .
    d. K_d = Wind Directionality Factor: as directed by the Owner .
    e. Exposure Category: [**B**] [**C**] [**D**].
    f. K_{zt} = Topographic Factor: as directed by the Owner .
    g. K_e = Ground Elevation Factor: as directed by the Owner .
    h. K_z = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height z): as directed by the Owner .
    i. K_h = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height h): as directed by the Owner .
    j. q_z = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    k. q_h = Velocity Pressure: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    l. G = Gust-Effect Factor: [**0.85**] as directed by the Owner .
    m. Enclosure Classification: as directed by the Owner .
    n. GC_{pi} = Internal Pressure Coefficient: as directed by the Owner .

4. Design wind pressure "p" for external sidewall-mounted equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 30. Perform calculations in accordance with the following, as appropriate:

    a. PART 1: Low-Rise Buildings.

b. PART 2: Low-Rise Buildings (Simplified).
c. PART 3: Buildings with "h" greater than 60 feet (18.3 m).
d. PART 4: Buildings with "h" less than 160 feet (48.8 m).
e. PART 5: Open Buildings.

5. Design wind pressure "p" for rooftop equipment is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 30, PART 6: Building Appurtenances and Rooftop Structures and Equipment.

a. Risk Category: [**I**] [**II**] [**III**] [**IV**] [**V**].
b. h = Mean Roof Height: as directed by the Owner .
c. V = Basic Wind Speed: as directed by the Owner .
d. K_d = Wind Directionality Factor: as directed by the Owner .
e. Exposure Category: [**B**] [**C**] [**D**].
f. K_{zt} = Topographic Factor: as directed by the Owner .
g. K_z = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height z): as directed by the Owner .
h. K_h = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height h): as directed by the Owner .
i. q_z = Velocity Pressure at Height z: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
j. q_h = Velocity Pressure at Height h: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 26.10.1 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
k. G = Gust-Effect Factor: [**0.85**] as directed by the Owner .
l. Enclosure Classification: as directed by the Owner .
m. GC_{pi} = Internal Pressure Coefficient: as directed by the Owner .

6. Design wind force "F" for rooftop equipment and external sidewall-mounted equipment such as louvers is to be calculated by Delegated Design Contractor using methods in ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 6.

a. I = Importance Factor: as directed by the Owner .
b. h = Mean Roof Height: as directed by the Owner .
c. V = Basic Wind Speed: as directed by the Owner .
d. K_d = Wind Directionality Factor: as directed by the Owner .
e. Exposure Category: [**B**] [**C**] [**D**].
f. K_{zt} = Topographic Factor: as directed by the Owner .
g. K_z = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height z): as directed by the Owner .
h. K_h = Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient (Evaluated at Height h): as directed by the Owner .
i. q_z = Velocity Pressure at Height z: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-05 Section 6.5.10 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
j. q_h = Velocity Pressure at Roof Height h: Value calculated by delegated wind-load design Contractor using methods detailed in ASCE/SEI 7-05 Section 6.5.10 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
k. G = Gust-Effect Factor: [**0.85**] as directed by the Owner .
l. GC_{pi}= Internal Pressure Coefficient: as directed by the Owner .
m. GC_p = External Pressure Coefficient: as directed by the Owner .
n. C_f = Force Coefficient: Value determined by delegated wind-load design Contractor from ASCE/SEI 7-05, Figures 6-21 through 6-23 or other source approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

o. A_f = Projected Area Normal to the Wind: Except where C_f is specified for the actual surface area, value determined by delegated wind-load design Contractor from equipment submittal or manufacturer.

D. Consequential Damage: Provide additional seismic and wind-load restraints for suspended fire-suppression system components or anchorage of floor-, roof-, or wall-mounted fire-suppression system components as indicated in [**ASCE/SEI 7-05**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16**] so that failure of a non-essential or essential fire-suppression system component will not cause the failure of any other essential architectural, mechanical, or electrical building component.

E. Fire/Smoke Resistance: Seismic-[**and wind-load-**]restraint devices that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.

F. Component Supports:

1. Load ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.
2. All component support attachments must comply with force and displacement resistance requirements of [**ASCE/SEI 7-05 Section 13.6**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10 Section 13.6**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16 Section 13.6**].

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads: **Drawing designation** as directed by the Owner .

1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties. Neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.
4. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
7. Sandwich-Core Material: [**Resilient**] [**and**] [**elastomeric**] or as directed by the Owner .

a. Surface Pattern: Smooth, ribbed, or waffle pattern.
b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: **Drawing designation** as directed by the Owner .

1. Mounting Plates:

a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded[**with threaded studs or bolts**].
b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.

2. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber, silicone rubber, or other elastomeric material.

2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: **Drawing designation** as directed by the Owner .

1. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.

a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.5 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: **Drawing designation** as directed by the Owner .

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Damping Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel-to-steel contact.

2.6 SNUBBERS

A. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchor Bolts: Secure to concrete surface with post-installed concrete anchors. Anchors to be seismically prequalified in accordance with ACI 355.2 testing and designated in accordance with [**ACI 318-08 Appendix D for 2009 IBC**] [**ACI 318-11 Appendix D for 2012 IBC**] [**ACI 318-14 Ch. 17 for 2015 or 2018 IBC**].
2. Preset Concrete Inserts: Seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC446 testing.
3. Anchors in Masonry: Design in accordance with TMS 402.
4. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
5. Resilient Cushion: Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.

2.7 RESTRAINTS - RIGID TYPE

A. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of AISI S110-07-S1 slotted steel channels, ANSI/ASTM A53/A53M steel pipe as per NFPA 13, or other rigid steel brace member. Includes accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.8 RESTRAINTS - CABLE TYPE

A. Seismic-Restraint Cables: [**ASTM A1023/A12023M galvanized or ASTM A603 galvanized-steel**] [**ASTM A492 stainless steel**] cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for seismic restraining cable service; with fittings attached by means of poured socket, swaged socket or mechanical (Flemish eye) loop.

B. Restraint cable assembly with cable fittings must comply with ASCE/SEI 19. All cable fittings and complete cable assembly must maintain the minimum cable breaking force. U-shaped cable clips and wedge-type end fittings do not comply and are unacceptable.

2.9 RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

A. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: [**Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections**] [**Reinforcing steel angle clamped**] to hanger rod. Non-metallic stiffeners are unacceptable.

B. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to [**rigid restraints**] [**and**] [**restraint cables**].

C. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

D. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

E. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.10 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE ANCHORS

A. Mechanical Anchor Bolts:

1. Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts:

1. Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M.

C. Provide post-installed concrete anchors that have been prequalified for use in seismic applications. Post-installed concrete anchors must comply with all requirements of [**ASCE/SEI 7-05, Ch. 13**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-10, Ch. 13**] [**ASCE/SEI 7-16, Ch. 13**].

1. Prequalify post-installed anchors in concrete in accordance with ACI 355.2 or other approved qualification testing procedures.

2. Prequalify post-installed anchors in masonry in accordance with approved qualification procedures.

D. Expansion-type anchor bolts are not permitted for equipment in excess of 10 hp (7.46 kW) that is not vibration isolated.

1. Undercut expansion anchors are permitted.

2.11 CONCRETE INSERTS

A. Provide preset concrete inserts that are seismically prequalified in accordance with ICC-ES AC466 testing.

B. Comply with ANSI/MSS SP-58.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation [**, wind control,**] and seismic control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by [**an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**] [**OSHPD**] [**an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**].

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry calculated static[**, wind load,**] and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION CONTROL[**, WIND-LOAD-RESTRAINT,**] AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Provide vibration-control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Fire-Suppression Vibration Isolation, Seismic, and Wind-Load-Restraint Schedule, where indicated on Drawings, or where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems.

B. Provide seismic-restraint [**and wind-load-restraint**]devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration Isolation, Seismic, and Wind-Load-Restraint Schedules, where indicated on Drawings, where the Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.

C. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Installation of vibration isolators[**, wind-load restraints,**] and seismic restraints must not cause any stresses, misalignment, or change of position of equipment or piping.

E. Comply with installation requirements of NFPA 13 for installation of all seismic-restraint devices.

F. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of equipment supports and roof penetrations.

G. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install snubbers on fire-suppression equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by [**an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**] [**OSHPD**] [**an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**] that provides required submittals for component.

H. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with all requirements in NFPA 13.
2. Design piping sway bracing in accordance with NFPA 13.

    a. Maximum spacing of all sway bracing to be no greater than indicated in NFPA 13.
    b. Design loading of all sway bracing not to exceed values indicated in NFPA 13.

I. Install seismic-[**and wind-load-**]restraint devices using methods approved by [**an evaluation service member of ICC-ES**] [**OSHPD**] [**an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**] that provides required submittals for component.

J. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

K. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

L. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

M. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the

structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Mechanical-Type Anchor Bolts: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors to be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive-Type Anchor Bolts: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross structural seismic joints and other points where differential movement may occur, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes," Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems," and Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for piping flexible connections.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test at no fewer than [**four**] or as directed by the Owner of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
7. Measure isolator deflection.

8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 23 05 48 13

SECTION 23 05 48 13a - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of vibration and seismic controls for HVAC piping and equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Isolation pads.
   b. Isolation mounts.
   c. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
   d. Freestanding and Restrained spring isolators.
   e. Housed spring mounts.
   f. Elastomeric hangers.
   g. Spring hangers.
   h. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
   i. Pipe riser resilient supports.
   j. Resilient pipe guides.
   k. Freestanding and Restrained air-mounting system.
   l. Restrained vibration isolation roof-curb rails.
   m. Seismic snubbers.
   n. Restraining braces and cables.
   o. Steel and Inertia, vibration isolation equipment bases.

C. Definitions
1. IBC: International Building Code.
2. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
3. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Wind-Restraint Loading:
   a. Basic Wind Speed: As required to meet Project requirements.
   b. Building Classification Category: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.
   c. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by the maximum area of the HVAC component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
2. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
   a. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: A **OR** B **OR** C **OR** D **OR** E **OR** F, **as directed**.
   b. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: I **OR** II **OR** III, **as directed**.
      1) Component Importance Factor: 1.0 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**.
      2) Component Response Modification Factor: 1.5 **OR** 2.5 **OR** 3.5 **OR** 5.0, **as directed**.
      3) Component Amplification Factor: 1.0 **OR** 2.5, **as directed**.
   c. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): Percentage as directed.
   d. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period: Percentage as directed.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each product indicated.

2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint calculations and details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
5. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
2. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Vibration Isolators
1. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
   a. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene **OR** rubber **OR** hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, **as directed**.
2. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
   a. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
   b. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
3. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.
   a. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
   b. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.
4. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
   a. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
   b. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
   c. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
   d. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
   e. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).

f. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

5. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
   a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
   b. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
   c. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
   d. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
   e. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
   f. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.
   a. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
   b. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
   c. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.
7. Elastomeric Hangers: Single or double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
8. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
   a. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
   b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
   c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
   d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
   e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
   f. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
   g. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
9. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.
   a. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
   b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
   c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
   d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
   e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
   f. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
   g. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
   h. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

10. Pipe Riser Resilient Support: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of 2 steel tubes separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene. Include steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions. Design support for a maximum load on the isolation material of 500 psig (3.45 MPa) and for equal resistance in all directions.
11. Resilient Pipe Guides: Telescopic arrangement of 2 steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene. Where clearances are not readily visible, a factory-set guide height with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion and contraction shall be fitted. Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

B. Air-Mounting Systems
1. Air Mounts: Freestanding, single or multiple, compressed-air bellows.
   a. Assembly: Upper and lower steel sections connected by a replaceable, flexible, nylon-reinforced neoprene bellows.
   b. Maximum Natural Frequency: 3 Hz.
   c. Operating Pressure Range: 25 to 100 psig (172 to 690 kPa).
   d. Burst Pressure: At least three times manufacturer's published maximum operating pressure.
   e. Leveling Valves: Minimum of 3 required to maintain leveling within plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
2. Restrained Air Mounts: Housed compressed-air bellows.
   a. Assembly: Upper and lower steel sections connected by a replaceable, flexible, nylon-reinforced neoprene bellows and spring, with angle-iron frame having vertical-limit stops and channel-section top with leveling adjustment and attachment screws.
   b. Maximum Natural Frequency: 3 Hz.
   c. Operating Pressure Range: 25 to 100 psig (172 to 690 kPa).
   d. Burst Pressure: At least three times manufacturer's published maximum operating pressure.
   e. Leveling Valves: Minimum of 3 required to maintain leveling within plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).

C. Restrained Vibration Isolation Roof-Curb Rails
1. General Requirements for Restrained Vibration Isolation Roof-Curb Rails: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind, **as directed**, forces.
2. Lower Support Assembly: Formed sheet-metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. Upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind, **as directed**, forces. Lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly.
3. Spring Isolators: Adjustable, restrained spring isolators shall be mounted on 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
   a. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or wind, **as directed**, restraint.
      1) Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt.
      2) Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
      3) Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.

4) Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5) Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

b. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
1) Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant standard neoprene **OR** natural rubber **OR** hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, **as directed**.

4. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
5. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

D. Vibration Isolation Equipment Bases
1. Steel Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
a. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
1) Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
b. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
c. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
2. Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
a. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
1) Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
b. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
c. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
d. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

E. Seismic-Restraint Devices
1. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
a. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
2. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
a. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
b. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
c. Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick resilient cushion.
3. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

4. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel **OR** ASTM A 492 stainless-steel, **as directed**, cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
5. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections **OR** Reinforcing steel angle clamped, **as directed**, to hanger rod.
6. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
7. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
8. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
9. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
10. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

F. Factory Finishes
1. Finish
a. Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
OR
Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
1) Powder coating on springs and housings.
2) All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3) Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4) Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control and wind-control, **as directed**, devices to indicate capacity range.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Applications
1. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
2. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
3. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

B. Vibration-Control And Seismic-Restraint Device Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
2. Equipment Restraints:

a. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
b. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
c. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, providing required submittals for component.

3. Piping Restraints:
   a. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
   b. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
   c. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
4. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
5. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, providing required submittals for component.
6. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
7. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
8. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
9. Drilled-in Anchors:
   a. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
   b. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
   c. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
   d. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
   e. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
   f. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

C. Accommodation Of Differential Seismic Motion
   1. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

D. Field Quality Control
   1. Perform tests and inspections.
   2. Tests and Inspections:
      a. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

b. Schedule test with the Owner before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
c. Obtain approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
d. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected.
e. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
f. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
g. Measure isolator deflection.
h. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
i. Air-Mounting System Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
j. Air-Mounting System Operational Test: Test the compressed-air leveling system.
k. Test and adjust air-mounting system controls and safeties.
l. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Adjusting
1. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
2. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
3. Adjust air-spring leveling mechanism.
4. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
5. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

F. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-mounting systems.

END OF SECTION 23 05 48 13a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 05 48 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
23 05 48 13	22 05 48 13	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment
23 05 48 13	22 11 16 00b	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
23 05 48 13	23 21 13 23d	Hydronic Piping
23 05 48 13	22 11 16 00f	Steam And Condensate Piping
23 05 48 13	22 11 16 00g	Refrigerant Piping
23 05 48 13	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 53 00 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for identification for HVAC piping and equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Equipment labels.
b. Warning signs and labels.
c. Pipe labels.
d. Duct labels.
e. Stencils.
f. Valve tags.
g. Warning tags.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Equipment Labels
1. Metal Labels for Equipment:
a. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) **OR** Aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
b. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
c. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
d. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets **OR** self-tapping screws, **as directed**.
e. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
2. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
a. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), **as directed**, thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
b. Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
c. Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
d. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
e. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
f. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
g. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets **OR** self-tapping screws, **as directed**.

h. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

3. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
4. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

B. Warning Signs And Labels
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), **as directed**, thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
3. Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets **OR** self-tapping screws, **as directed**.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
9. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

C. Pipe Labels
1. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
2. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover **OR** cover full, **as directed**, circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
3. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
4. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
   a. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
   b. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

D. Duct Labels
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), **as directed**, thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
3. Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets **OR** self-tapping screws, **as directed**.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

9. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
    a. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
    b. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

E. Stencils
1. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
    a. Stencil Material: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Fiberboard, **as directed**.
    b. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel **OR** acrylic enamel, **as directed**, black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
    c. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel **OR** acrylic enamel, **as directed**, in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

F. Valve Tags
1. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
    a. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) **OR** Aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) **OR** anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
    b. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain **OR** beaded chain **OR** S-hook, **as directed**.
2. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
    a. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

G. Warning Tags
1. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
    a. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum **OR** Approximately 4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm), **as directed**.
    b. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire **OR** Reinforced grommet and wire or string, **as directed**.
    c. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
    d. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

B. Equipment Label Installation
1. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
2. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

C. Pipe Label Installation
1. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Interior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

2. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles **OR** complying with ASME A13.1**, as directed**, on each piping system.
   a. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
   b. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
3. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
   a. Near each valve and control device.
   b. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
   c. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
   d. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
   e. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
   f. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
   g. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
4. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
   a. Chilled-Water Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   b. Condenser-Water Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **asa directed**.
   c. Heating Water Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   d. Refrigerant Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   e. Low-Pressure Steam Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   f. High-Pressure Steam Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
   g. Steam Condensate Piping:
      1) Background Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      2) Letter Color: Black **OR** Blue **OR** Red **OR** White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.

D. Duct Label Installation
1. Install plastic-laminated **OR** self-adhesive, **as directed**, duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
   a. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
   b. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
   c. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
   d. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
2. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels, showing service and flow direction, may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch (25 mm) high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
3. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

E. Valve-Tag Installation
1. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
2. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
   a. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
      1) Chilled Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      2) Condenser Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      3) Refrigerant: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      4) Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      5) Gas: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      6) Low-Pressure Steam: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm)2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      7) High-Pressure Steam: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
      8) Steam Condensate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, round **OR** square, **as directed**.
   b. Valve-Tag Color:
      1) Chilled Water: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed.**
      2) Condenser Water: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed.**
      3) Refrigerant: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
      4) Hot Water: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
      5) Gas: Natural **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      6) Low-Pressure Steam: Natural **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
      7) High-Pressure Steam: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
      8) Steam Condensate: Natural **OR** Green, **as directed**.
   c. Letter Color:
      1) Chilled Water: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      2) Condenser Water: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      3) Refrigerant: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      4) Hot Water: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      5) Gas: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      6) Low-Pressure Steam: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      7) High-Pressure Steam: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.
      8) Steam Condensate: Black **OR** White, **as directed**.

F. Warning-Tag Installation
1. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 05 53 00	22 05 53 00	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
23 05 53 00	23 01 10 91	Sequence Of Operation

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 93 00 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for testing, adjusting and balancing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Balancing Air Systems:
1) Constant-volume air systems.
2) Dual-duct systems.
3) Variable-air-volume systems.
4) Multizone systems.
5) Induction-unit systems.
b. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
1) Constant-flow hydronic systems.
2) Variable-flow hydronic systems.
3) Primary-secondary hydronic systems.

C. Definitions
1. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
2. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
3. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
4. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
5. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

D. Submittals
1. LEED Submittal:
a. Air-Balance Report for LEED Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation of work performed for ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2, "Air Balancing."
2. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 **OR** 60 **OR** 90, **as directed**, days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
3. Certified TAB reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC **OR** NEBB **OR** TABB **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
a. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC **OR** NEBB **OR** TABB **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
b. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC **OR** NEBB **OR** TABB **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification as a TAB technician, **as directed**.
2. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
a. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
b. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
3. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by the Owner **OR** Commissioning Authority, **as directed**.

4. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

F. Project Conditions
1. Full the Owner Occupancy: the Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with the Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with the Owner's operations.
OR
Partial the Owner Occupancy: the Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Final Completion. Cooperate with the Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with the Owner's operations.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
2. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
3. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
4. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
5. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Division 23 Section(s) "Metal Ducts" OR "Nonmetal Ducts", **as directed**, and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
6. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
   a. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
   b. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
7. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
8. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
9. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
10. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
11. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
12. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
13. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
14. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
15. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

16. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

B. Preparation
1. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
2. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
   a. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
   b. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
   c. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
   d. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
   e. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
   f. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
   g. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
   h. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

C. General Procedures For Testing And Balancing
1. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" **OR** ASHRAE 111 **OR** NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" **OR** SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing", **as directed**, and in this Section.
   a. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2, "Air Balancing."
2. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
   a. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
      OR
      After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories".
   b. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "Hvac Insulation".
3. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
4. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) **OR** metric (SI) **OR** inch-pound (IP) and metric (SI), **as directed,** units.

D. General Procedures For Balancing Air Systems
1. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
2. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
3. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
4. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
5. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
6. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
7. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
8. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
9. Check for airflow blockages.
10. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
11. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
12. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts".

E. Procedures For Constant-Volume Air Systems
1. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
   a. Measure total airflow.
      1) Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
   b. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
      1) Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
      2) Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
      3) Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
      4) Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
   c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
      1) Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
   d. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
   e. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
   f. Obtain approval from the Owner **OR** Commissioning Authority, **as directed**, for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Division 21 for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
   g. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
2. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
   a. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
      1) Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
   b. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
   c. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
3. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
   a. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
4. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
   a. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
   b. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

F. Procedures For Dual-Duct Systems

1. Verify that the cooling coil is capable of full-system airflow, and set mixing boxes at full-cold airflow position for fan volume.
2. Measure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate controls of mixing boxes and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing boxes.
   a. If insufficient static pressure exists, increase airflow at the fan.
3. Test and adjust the constant-volume mixing boxes as follows:
   a. Verify both hot and cold operations by adjusting the thermostat and observing changes in air temperature and volume.
   b. Verify sufficient inlet static pressure before making volume adjustments.
   c. Adjust mixing boxes to indicated airflows within specified tolerances. Measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse readings or by measuring static pressure at mixing-box taps if provided by mixing-box manufacturer.
4. Do not overpressurize ducts.
5. Remeasure static pressure in both hot and cold ducts at the end of the longest duct run to determine that sufficient static pressure exists to operate controls of mixing boxes and to overcome resistance in the ducts and outlets downstream from mixing boxes.
6. Adjust variable-air-volume, dual-duct systems in the same way as constant-volume, dual-duct systems; adjust maximum- and minimum-airflow setting of each mixing box.

G. Procedures For Variable-Air-Volume Systems
1. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum-airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
2. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
   a. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
   b. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
   c. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
   d. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
   e. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
      1) If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
   f. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
      1) Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
   g. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
   h. Record final fan-performance data.
3. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

a. Balance variable-air-volume systems the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
b. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
c. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
d. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
e. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
f. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.
g. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
    1) If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
h. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
    1) Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

4. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
    a. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
    b. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
    c. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
    d. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
    e. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
    f. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
    g. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

H. Procedures For Multizone Systems
1. Set unit at maximum airflow through the cooling coil.
2. Adjust each zone's balancing damper to achieve indicated airflow within the zone.

I. Procedures For Induction-Unit Systems
1. Balance primary-air risers by measuring static pressure at the nozzles of the top and bottom units of each riser to determine which risers must be throttled. Adjust risers to indicated airflow within specified tolerances.
2. Adjust each induction unit.

J. General Procedures For Hydronic Systems
1. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
2. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
3. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:

a. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
b. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
c. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
d. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
e. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
f. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
g. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
h. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

K. Procedures For Constant-Flow Hydronic Systems
1. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:
a. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
1) If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from the Owner **OR** Commissioning Authority, **as directed**, and comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps".
b. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
1) Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.
c. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
d. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
2. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
3. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
4. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.
5. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
a. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
6. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
7. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
a. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
b. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
c. Record settings and mark balancing devices.
8. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
9. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.
10. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

L. Procedures For Variable-Flow Hydronic Systems
1. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

M. Procedures For Primary-Secondary Hydronic Systems
   1. Balance the primary circuit flow first and then balance the secondary circuits.

N. Procedures For Steam Systems
   1. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
   2. Measure and record upstream and downstream steam pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
   3. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
   4. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.
   5. Verify the operation of each steam trap.

O. Procedures For Heat Exchangers
   1. Measure water flow through all circuits.
   2. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
   3. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.
   4. Measure inlet steam pressure.
   5. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

P. Procedures For Motors
   1. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
      a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
      b. Motor horsepower rating.
      c. Motor rpm.
      d. Efficiency rating.
      e. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
      f. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
      g. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
   2. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

Q. Procedures For Chillers
   1. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser, **as directed**, to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
      a. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
      b. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
      c. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
      d. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
      e. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
      f. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
      g. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

R. Procedures For Cooling Towers
   1. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:
      a. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
      b. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.

c. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
d. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
e. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
f. Measure cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.
g. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup water system.
h. Measure flow through bypass.

S. Procedures For Condensing Units
1. Verify proper rotation of fans.
2. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
3. Record compressor data.

T. Procedures For Boilers
1. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.
2. Steam Boilers: Measure and record entering-water temperature and flow and leaving-steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

U. Procedures For Heat-Transfer Coils
1. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
a. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
b. Water flow rate.
c. Water pressure drop.
d. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
e. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
f. Airflow.
g. Air pressure drop.
2. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
a. Nameplate data.
b. Airflow.
c. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
d. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
e. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
f. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
3. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
a. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
b. Airflow.
c. Air pressure drop.
d. Inlet steam pressure.
4. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
a. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
b. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
c. Airflow.
d. Air pressure drop.
e. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

V. Procedures For Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing Existing Systems
1. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
a. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
b. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
c. Check the refrigerant charge.
d. Check the condition of filters.
e. Check the condition of coils.
f. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
g. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.

h. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

2. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
   a. New filters are installed.
   b. Coils are clean and fins combed.
   c. Drain pans are clean.
   d. Fans are clean.
   e. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
   f. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
3. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
   a. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
   b. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
   c. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
   d. Balance each air outlet.

W. Tolerances

X. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
   a. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
   b. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
   c. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
   d. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

Y. Reporting
1. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
2. Status Reports: Prepare weekly **OR** biweekly **OR** monthly, **as directed**, progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

Z. Final Report
1. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
   a. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
   b. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
2. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
   a. Pump curves.
   b. Fan curves.
   c. Manufacturers' test data.
   d. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
   e. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
3. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

a. Title page.
b. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
c. Project name.
d. Project location.
e. Architect's name and address.
f. Engineer's name and address.
g. Contractor's name and address.
h. Report date.
i. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
j. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
k. Summary of contents including the following:
    1) Indicated versus final performance.
    2) Notable characteristics of systems.
    3) Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
l. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
m. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
n. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
o. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    1) Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    2) Conditions of filters.
    3) Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    4) Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    5) Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    6) Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    7) Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    8) Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

4. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
    a. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
    b. Water and steam flow rates.
    c. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
    d. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
    e. Terminal units.
    f. Balancing stations.
    g. Position of balancing devices.
5. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
    a. Unit Data:
        1) Unit identification.
        2) Location.
        3) Make and type.
        4) Model number and unit size.
        5) Manufacturer's serial number.
        6) Unit arrangement and class.
        7) Discharge arrangement.
        8) Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
        9) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
        10) Number, make, and size of belts.
        11) Number, type, and size of filters.
    b. Motor Data:
        1) Motor make, and frame type and size.
        2) Horsepower and rpm.
        3) Volts, phase, and hertz.
        4) Full-load amperage and service factor.
        5) Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
        6) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

c. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   1) Total air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
   2) Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
   3) Fan rpm.
   4) Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
   5) Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
   6) Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
   7) Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
   8) Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
   9) Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
   10) Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
   11) Outdoor-air damper position.
   12) Return-air damper position.
   13) Vortex damper position.

6. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
   a. Coil Data:
      1) System identification.
      2) Location.
      3) Coil type.
      4) Number of rows.
      5) Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
      6) Make and model number.
      7) Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
      8) Tube size in NPS (DN).
      9) Tube and fin materials.
      10) Circuiting arrangement.
   b. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
      1) Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
      2) Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
      3) Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
      4) Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
      5) Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
      6) Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
      7) Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
      8) Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
      9) Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
      10) Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
      11) Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
      12) Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
      13) Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
      14) Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
      15) Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).

7. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
   a. Unit Data:
      1) System identification.
      2) Location.
      3) Make and type.
      4) Model number and unit size.
      5) Manufacturer's serial number.
      6) Fuel type in input data.
      7) Output capacity in Btu/h (kW).
      8) Ignition type.
      9) Burner-control types.
      10) Motor horsepower and rpm.

11) Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
12) Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
13) Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
14) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

b. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
1) Total air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
2) Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
3) Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
4) Air temperature differential in deg F (deg C).
5) Entering-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
6) Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
7) Air static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
8) Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
9) High-fire fuel input in Btu/h (kW).
10) Manifold pressure in psig (kPa).
11) High-temperature-limit setting in deg F (deg C).
12) Operating set point in Btu/h (kW).
13) Motor voltage at each connection.
14) Motor amperage for each phase.
15) Heating value of fuel in Btu/h (kW).

8. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
a. Unit Data:
1) System identification.
2) Location.
3) Coil identification.
4) Capacity in Btu/h (kW).
5) Number of stages.
6) Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
7) Rated amperage.
8) Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
9) Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
10) Minimum face velocity in fpm (m/s).

b. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
1) Heat output in Btu/h (kW).
2) Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
3) Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
4) Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
5) Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
6) Voltage at each connection.
7) Amperage for each phase.

9. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
a. Fan Data:
1) System identification.
2) Location.
3) Make and type.
4) Model number and size.
5) Manufacturer's serial number.
6) Arrangement and class.
7) Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
8) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

b. Motor Data:
1) Motor make, and frame type and size.
2) Horsepower and rpm.
3) Volts, phase, and hertz.
4) Full-load amperage and service factor.

5) Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
6) Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
7) Number, make, and size of belts.

c. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
1) Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
2) Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
3) Fan rpm.
4) Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
5) Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).

10. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
a. Report Data:
1) System and air-handling-unit number.
2) Location and zone.
3) Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
4) Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
5) Duct size in inches (mm).
6) Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
7) Indicated air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
8) Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
9) Actual air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
10) Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
11) Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).

11. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
a. Unit Data:
1) System and air-handling unit identification.
2) Location and zone.
3) Apparatus used for test.
4) Area served.
5) Make.
6) Number from system diagram.
7) Type and model number.
8) Size.
9) Effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).

b. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
1) Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
2) Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
3) Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
4) Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
5) Final air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
6) Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
7) Space temperature in deg F (deg C).

12. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
a. Unit Data:
1) System and air-handling-unit identification.
2) Location and zone.
3) Room or riser served.
4) Coil make and size.
5) Flowmeter type.

b. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
1) Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
2) Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
3) Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
4) Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
5) Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).

6) Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).

13. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
    a. Unit Data:
        1) Unit identification.
        2) Location.
        3) Service.
        4) Make and size.
        5) Model number and serial number.
        6) Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
        7) Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        8) Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        9) Pump rpm.
        10) Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
        11) Motor make and frame size.
        12) Motor horsepower and rpm.
        13) Voltage at each connection.
        14) Amperage for each phase.
        15) Full-load amperage and service factor.
        16) Seal type.
    b. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
        1) Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        2) Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        3) Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
        4) Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
        5) Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        6) Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        7) Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        8) Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
        9) Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
        10) Voltage at each connection.
        11) Amperage for each phase.
14. Instrument Calibration Reports:
    a. Report Data:
        1) Instrument type and make.
        2) Serial number.
        3) Application.
        4) Dates of use.
        5) Dates of calibration.

AA. Inspections
1. Initial Inspection:
    a. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
    b. Check the following for each system:
        1) Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
        2) Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
        3) Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
        4) Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
        5) Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.
2. Final Inspection:
    a. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by the Owner **OR** Commissioning Authority, **as directed**.

b. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of the Owner **OR** Commissioning Authority, **as directed**.
c. the Owner **OR** Commissioning Authority, **as directed**, shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
d. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
e. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

3. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:
   a. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
   b. If the second final inspection also fails, the Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

BB. Additional Tests
1. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
2. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 05 93 00	01 71 23 16	Cutting and Patching
23 05 93 00	02 41 19 13	Selective Demolition
23 05 93 00	23 01 10 91	Sequence Of Operation

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 07 13 00 - HVAC INSULATION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for HVAC insulation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Insulation Materials:
1) Calcium silicate.
2) Cellular glass.
3) Flexible elastomeric.
4) Mineral fiber.
5) Phenolic.
6) Polyisocyanurate.
7) Polyolefin.
8) Polystyrene.
b. Fire-rated insulation systems.
c. Insulating cements.
d. Adhesives.
e. Mastics.
f. Lagging adhesives.
g. Sealants.
h. Factory-applied jackets.
i. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
j. Field-applied cloths.
k. Field-applied jackets.
l. Tapes.
m. Securements.
n. Corner angles.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings:
a. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
b. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
c. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
d. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
e. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
f. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
g. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
h. Detail field application for each equipment type.
4. Field quality-control reports.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   a. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   b. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Insulation Materials
1. Comply with requirements in Part 1.3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
2. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
3. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
4. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
5. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
6. Calcium Silicate:
   a. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   b. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
   c. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
7. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   a. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
   b. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
   c. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
   d. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
   e. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL, **as directed**: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
   f. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
8. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
9. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I **OR** II with factory-applied vinyl jacket **OR** III with factory-applied FSK jacket **OR** III with factory-applied FSP jacket, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
10. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.

11. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied FSK jacket, **as directed**. For equipment applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied FSK jacket, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
12. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.
13. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
    a. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
    b. Type II, 1200 deg F (649 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
14. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.
15. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ **OR** FSK jacket, **as directed**, complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
16. Phenolic:
    a. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
    b. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
    c. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
        1) Preformed Pipe Insulation: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
        2) Board for Duct and Plenum Applications: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
        3) Board for Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
17. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.
    a. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
    b. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
    c. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
        1) Pipe Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
        2) Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
18. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
19. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed

0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

B. Fire-Rated Insulation Systems
   1. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F (927 deg C). Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. tested and certified to provide a 1-hour **OR** 2-hour, **as directed**, fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
   2. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 1-hour **OR** 2-hour, **as directed**, fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

C. Insulating Cements
   1. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
   2. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
   3. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

D. Adhesives
   1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).
      a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   3. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
      a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   4. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
      a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   5. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
      a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   6. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).
   7. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
      a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   8. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
      a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Mastics
   1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
      a. For indoor applications, use mastics that have an approved VOC content or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   2. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
      a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.

b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
d. Color: White.

3. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.
4. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.
5. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
   a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms (2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
   b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 93 deg C).
   c. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
   d. Color: White.

F. Lagging Adhesives
1. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   a. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have an approved VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   b. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct, equipment, and pipe insulation.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 82 deg C).
   d. Color: White.

G. Sealants
1. Joint Sealants:
   a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   b. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
   d. Color: White or gray.
   e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
   d. Color: Aluminum.
   e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
   d. Color: White.
   e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

H. Factory-Applied Jackets

1. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
   a. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   b. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
   c. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
   d. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
   e. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   f. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms (0.007 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   g. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

I. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

J. Field-Applied Fabric-Reinforcing Mesh
   1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
   2. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Duct and Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering equipment.
   3. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for duct, equipment, and pipe.

K. Field-Applied Cloths
   1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

L. Field-Applied Jackets
   1. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
   3. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      a. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
      b. Color: White **OR** Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by the Owner, **as directed**.
      c. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
         1) Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
      d. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
   4. Metal Jacket:

a. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
   1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
   2) Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
   4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
   5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
      a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
      b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
      c) Tee covers.
      d) Flange and union covers.
      e) End caps.
      f) Beveled collars.
      g) Valve covers.
      h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

b. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
   1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
   2) Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
   4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
   5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
      a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
      b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
      c) Tee covers.
      d) Flange and union covers.
      e) End caps.
      f) Beveled collars.
      g) Valve covers.
      h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

5. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
6. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white **OR** stucco-embossed, **as directed**, aluminum-foil facing.
7. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
8. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms (0.007 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
9. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

M. Tapes
1. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 2 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
   f. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
2. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 2 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
   f. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
3. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
   a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
   b. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 500 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
4. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
   b. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
   c. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
   d. Elongation: 5 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.
5. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm).
   c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
   d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.
6. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
   a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
   b. Film Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
   c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
   d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
   e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

N. Securements
1. Bands:
   a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
   b. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
   c. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
2. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

a. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) **OR** 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

b. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) **OR** 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.

c. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   1) Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

d. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   1) Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
   2) Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
   3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

e. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   1) Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
   2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   3) Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

f. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
   1) Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

g. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

3. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

4. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel, **as directed**.

O. Corner Angles

1. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

2. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.
3. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
OR
Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
a. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
b. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
3. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

B. General Installation Requirements
1. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
2. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
3. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
4. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
5. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
6. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
7. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
8. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
9. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
10. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
a. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
b. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
c. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

d. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

11. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
12. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
    a. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
    b. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
    c. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
        1) For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
    d. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
    e. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.
13. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
14. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
15. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
16. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
    a. Vibration-control devices.
    b. Testing agency labels and stamps.
    c. Nameplates and data plates.
    d. Manholes.
    e. Handholes.
    f. Cleanouts.

C. Penetrations
1. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
    a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
    b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
    c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
    d. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
    a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
    b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
    c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
    d. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

4. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
5. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
   a. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
6. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   a. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
   b. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
   c. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

D. Equipment, Tank, And Vessel Insulation Installation
1. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
   a. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
   b. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
   c. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
   d. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
      1) Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
      2) Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
      3) On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
      4) Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
      5) Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
      6) Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
      7) Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
   e. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
   f. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
   g. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).
   h. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.

i. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
j. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
   a. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   b. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
3. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
   a. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch (150-mm) centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
   b. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, at least 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.6 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

E. General Pipe Insulation Installation
1. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
2. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
   a. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
   c. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
   d. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
   e. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
   f. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
   g. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
   h. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and

unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

i. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

3. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
4. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
   a. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
   b. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
   c. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
   d. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
   e. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

F. Calcium Silicate Insulation Installation
   1. Insulation Installation on Boiler Breechings and Ducts:
      a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
      b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
      c. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
   2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
      a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
      b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
      c. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
   3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
      a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
      b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   b. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
   c. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.
5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   b. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   c. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

G. Cellular-Glass Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
   b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
   c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
   d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
   d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   b. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
   b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Installation
1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
   b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
   b. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

I. Mineral-Fiber Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
   b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
   c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
   d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
   d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
   b. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
   b. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
   c. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   d. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
5. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

a. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
b. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
c. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    1) On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
    2) On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    3) Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    4) Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    5) Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    6) Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
d. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    1) Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    2) Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
e. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
f. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
g. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

6. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
a. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
b. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
c. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    1) On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
    2) On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.

3) Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
4) Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
5) Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

d. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
1) Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
2) Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

e. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

f. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

J. Phenolic Insulation Installation
1. General Installation Requirements:
a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

K. Polyisocyanurate Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
3. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:
a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
a. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

L. Polyolefin Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
a. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
a. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
a. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

M. Polystyrene Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
   a. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
   b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
   c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
   c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   a. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
   b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

N. Field-Applied Jacket Installation
1. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   a. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
   b. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   c. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
2. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   a. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   b. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   c. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   d. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
   e. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   a. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
4. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.
5. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

a. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
b. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
c. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
d. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
e. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

O. Fire-Rated Insulation System Installation
1. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
2. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
3. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

P. Finishes
1. Duct, Equipment, and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 07.
a. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
1) Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
3. Color: Final color as selected by the Owner. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
4. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

Q. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
b. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
c. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations

of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

3. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

R. Boiler Breeching Insulation Schedule
1. Round, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
2. Round, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
3. Rectangular, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
4. Rectangular, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
   c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.

S. Duct Insulation Schedule, General
1. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
   a. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
   b. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
   c. Indoor, concealed return located in nonconditioned space.
   d. Indoor, exposed return located in nonconditioned space.
   e. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
   f. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
   g. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
   h. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
   i. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
   j. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
   k. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
   l. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
2. Items Not Insulated:
   a. Fibrous-glass ducts.
   b. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
   c. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
   d. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
   e. Flexible connectors.
   f. Vibration-control devices.
   g. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

T. Indoor Duct And Plenum Insulation Schedule

1. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
3. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
5. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

6. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
8. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
9. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket **OR** board, **as directed**; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
10. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
11. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.

d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

12. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
13. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
14. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
15. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
16. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
17. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

18. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

19. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

20. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

21. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

22. Exposed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket **OR** board, **as directed**; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.

23. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
24. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
25. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
26. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.

U. Aboveground, Outdoor Duct And Plenum Insulation Schedule
1. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.

b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.

4. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed,** and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m, **as directed**, nominal density.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
8. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
9. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
10. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.

11. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.

12. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.

13. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.

14. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. (12-kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.

V. Equipment Insulation Schedule
1. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
3. Chillers: Insulate cold surfaces on chillers, including, but not limited to, evaporator bundles, condenser bundles, heat-recovery bundles, suction piping, compressor inlets, tube sheets, water boxes, and nozzles with one of the following:
a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for cooling service) insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

5. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for heating service) insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
6. Steam-to-hot-water converter insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
7. Hot-water-to-steam converter insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
8. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
9. Condenser-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
   c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
10. Dual-service heating and cooling pump insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
11. Heating-hot-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
12. Heat-recovery pump insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

13. Steam condensate pump and boiler feedwater pump insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
14. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
15. Condenser-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
16. Dual-service heating and cooling expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
17. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
18. Heat-recovery expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
19. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

20. Condenser-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
21. Dual-service heating and cooling air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
22. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
23. Heat-recovery air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
24. Thermal storage tank (brine, water, ice) insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    d. Phenolic: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    e. Polyisocyanurate (Outdoor Application Only): 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    f. Polystyrene (Outdoor Application Only): 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
25. Deaerator insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
26. Steam condensate tank and receiver insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

27. Steam flash-tank, flash-separator, and blow-off-tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
28. Piping system filter-housing insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
29. Outdoor, aboveground, heated, fuel-oil storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
    a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
    c. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

W. Piping Insulation Schedule, General
1. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
    a. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
    b. Underground piping.
    c. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

X. Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule
1. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
        5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
        6) Polyolefin: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
2. Chilled Water and Brine, 40 Deg F (5 Deg C) and below:
    a. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I **OR** Pipe Insulation Wicking System, **as directed**: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        3) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        4) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    b. NPS 4 (DN 100) to NPS 12 (DN 300): Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I **OR** Pipe Insulation Wicking System, **as directed**: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
        4) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    c. NPS 14 (DN 350) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.

2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I **OR** Pipe Insulation Wicking System, **as directed**: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4) Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

3. Chilled Water and Brine, above 40 Deg F (5 Deg C):
   a. NPS 12 (DN 300) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I **OR** Pipe Insulation Wicking System, **as directed**: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. NPS 14 (DN 350) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe, Type I **OR** Pipe Insulation Wicking System, **as directed**: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
4. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
   a. NPS 12 (DN 300) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
   b. NPS 14 (DN 350) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
5. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F (93 Deg C) and below:
   a. NPS 12 (DN 300) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. NPS 14 (DN 350) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

6. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, above 200 Deg F (93 Deg C):
   a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Steam and Steam Condensate, 350 Deg F (177 Deg C) and below:
   a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
8. Steam and Steam Condensate, above 350 Deg F (177 Deg C):
   a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, thick.
9. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
10. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      2) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
11. Dual-Service Heating and Cooling, 40 to 200 Deg F (5 to 93 Deg C):
   a. NPS 12 (DN 300) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      3) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      4) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. NPS 14 (DN 350) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.

2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4) Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

12. Heat-Recovery Piping:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
        4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
        5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
        6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
13. Hot Service Drains:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
14. Hot Service Vents:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

Y. Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule
1. Chilled Water and Brine:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
        2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
        4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        6) Polyolefin: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
        7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
3. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F (93 Deg C) and below:
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
        2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        3) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
        4) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
4. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, above 200 Deg F (93 Deg C):
    a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
        1) Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
        2) Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
        3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
5. Steam and Steam Condensate, 350 Deg F (177 Deg C) and below:

a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1) Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   2) Cellular Glass: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I or II: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.

6. Steam and Steam Condensate, above 350 Deg F (177 Deg C):
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 5 inches (125 mm) thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 5 inches (125 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I or II: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
7. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
8. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      2) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
9. Heat-Recovery Piping:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
10. Dual-Service Heating and Cooling:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      3) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      4) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
11. Hot Service Drains:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
12. Hot Service Vents:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
13. Fuel Oil Piping, Heated:
   a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

Z. Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule
   1. Loose-fill insulation, for belowground piping, is specified in Division 28.
   2. Chilled Water, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
   3. Condenser-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

4. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes, 200 Deg F (93 Deg C) and below: Cellular glass, 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
5. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, All Sizes, above 200 Deg F (93 Deg C):
   a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
6. Steam and Steam Condensate, All Sizes, 350 Deg F (177 Deg C) and below:
   a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
7. Steam and Steam Condensate, All Sizes, above 350 Deg F (177 Deg C):
   a. Calcium Silicate: 5 inches (125 mm) thick.
   b. Cellular Glass: 5 inches (125 mm) thick.
8. Dual-Service Heating and Cooling, All Sizes, 40 to 200 Deg F (4 to 93 Deg C): Cellular glass, 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
9. Fuel Oil Piping, All Sizes, Heated: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

AA. Indoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule
1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Equipment, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.

e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

6. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. None.
   b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
8. Piping, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
9. Piping, Exposed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

BB. Outdoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule

1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Equipment, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed,** thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm)

OR 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.

b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed** with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

8. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
   a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
9. Piping, Concealed:
   a. None.
   b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
10. Piping, Exposed:
   a. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm) **OR** 40 mils (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
   c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

CC. Underground, Field-Installed Insulation Jacket
   1. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 23 07 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 07 16 00	23 07 13 00	HVAC Insulation

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 13 23 - RELIEF WELLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for relief wells. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals
1. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings.
2. Statements
   a. Before installation, all well screen shall be approved.
   b. The filter pack material and its gradation shall be approved before it is placed.
   c. Submit the cement grout mixture proportion to be used in plugging abandoned wells.
3. Reports: Submit sampling and testing reports for each relief well, logs of the borings, well screen and riser pipe, backfill material, and pump tests. Register each well with the state as required by the state in which the well is installed.

C. Regulatory Requirements: The state statutory and regulatory requirements form a part of this specification.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Well Screen: The Contractor may, at its option, furnish and install well screen of any of the alternate types specified. The clear inside diameter of the screen shall be as directed by the Owner. Screen openings shall be uniform in size and pattern, and shall be spaced approximately equally around the circumference of the pipe.
1. PVC Pipe Screen: Pipe, fittings, and screen shall be of the size and types specified. Pipe, fittings, and screen shall conform to ASTM D 1784, ASTM D 1785, ASTM D 2466, or ASTM D 2467. All joints in the PVC pipe shall include couplings and shall be glued with a solvent cement conforming to ASTM D 2564. The PVC pipe strength properties shall be equivalent to PVC 1120 Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, unthreaded plastic pipe.
   a. Couplings: Couplings shall be bonded socket **OR** threaded, **OR** certilock, **as directed**, type. Fittings shall be produced of the same material and equal quality as specified for plastic pipe screen. Socket type fitting connections of pipe sections shall be bonded with solvent cement. The determination of the proportions and preparation of adhesives, the method of application, and the procedure used for making and curing the connections shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The system for making joints at the relief well site shall provide a curing period adequate to develop the ultimate strength of the solvent cement. Self-tapping screws or other devices for holding pipe in the couplings during the setting period may be utilized as long as the screws do not penetrate the inside of the pipe. In no case shall a newly-made joint in the casing be stressed, lowered into the relief well, or be submerged in water prior to complete curing of the solvent cement adhesive.
   b. Perforations: The PVC well screen shall be mill slot **OR** continuous wire wrapped rod base **OR** continuous wire wrapped rod base on perforated pipe **OR** continuous wire wrapped on perforated pipe screen **OR** similar to that manufactured by Johnson Well Equipment, Inc., Pensacola, FL, telephone (904) 453-3131, **as directed**. All well screen shall have smooth, sharp-edged openings free of burns, chipped edges, or broken areas on the interior and exterior surfaces of the pipe. The slots or groups of slots shall be distributed in a uniform pattern around the periphery of the pipe and shall be oriented with the length of the slot parallel to, normal to, or diagonal with the axis of the pipe.

2. Fiberglass Pipe Screen: Fiberglass pipe screen and fittings shall be manufactured from thermosetting epoxy resins and glass fiber by either a centrifugal casting process or by a filament winding process. Glass fiber used shall be continuous filament, electrical glass with a finish compatible with epoxy resins. Each glass fiber or filament shall be thoroughly impregnated with epoxy resin. Fiberglass pipe wall thickness, strength and durability requirements shall be equivalent to the Fiberglass/Epoxy pipe produced by Fiberglass Resources Corporation of Farmingdale, New York or Burgess Well Company, Inc., Minden, Nebraska, telephone (308) 832-1642. All fiberglass pipe and fittings shall be round and straight, of uniform quality and workmanship, and free from all defects including indentation, delamination, bends, cracks, blisters, porosity, dry spots, resin segregation and resin-starved areas. The inside of the pipe and fittings shall be smooth and uniform. The impregnation of the glass fiber with resin shall be such that when the pipe is cut or slotted, no fraying or looseness of glass fiber occurs.
   a. Couplings: Couplings for fiberglass pipe sections shall be socket threaded or mechanical key-type couplings. The couplings shall be manufactured of the same materials used for the fiberglass pipe specified herein and may be either cast integrally with the pipe sections or as separate components for attachment to the pipe in the manufacturers plant. Key-type couplings shall consist of male and female halves designed for joining and locking together by means of a key strip inserted in grooves in the coupling halves. The minimum wall thickness remaining at any grooved section shall not be less than the minimum thickness specified for pipe. Key strips and locking strips shall be of fiberglass, plastic or other non-corrosive material capable of withstanding shearing and bearing stresses equivalent to the design load for the coupling. Socket type fitting connections of the pipe sections shall be bonded with epoxy adhesive. The epoxy materials and bonding agents shall be as recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Self-tapping screws or other devices for holding adhesive-joined pipe in the couplings during the curing period may be utilized. In no case shall a newly-made joint in the casing pipe be lowered into the relief well, or be submerged in water prior to complete curing of the adhesive.
   b. Perforations: All fiberglass well screen shall be mill slot **OR** continuous wire wrapped rod base, **as directed**. All relief well screen shall have smooth, sharp-edged openings free of burrs, chipped edges, or broken areas on the interior and exterior surfaces of the pipe. The slots or groups of slots shall be distributed in a uniform pattern around the periphery of the pipe and shall be oriented with the length of the slot parallel to, normal to, or diagonal with the axis of the pipe.
3. Steel Pipe Screen: Steel well screen shall consist of perforated or slotted sections of steel pipe conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 53.
   a. Couplings: Couplings for steel pipe screen shall be welded joints or threaded couplings. Welding shall be performed in accordance with requirements in ASME B31.9. Couplings shall meet the material requirements specified for steel pipe screen, except perforations shall be omitted. All threaded pipe and fittings shall be threaded in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. All threaded pipe sections may be field connected. Couplings shall be given the same protection against corrosion as specified for the well screen pipe. Protective coatings damaged while making couplings shall have the areas recoated.
   b. Perforations: All steel pipe to be used as relief well screen shall be provided with perforations which shall consist of either machine-cut slots; drilled or punched openings. The slots or groups of slots shall be distributed in a uniform pattern around the periphery of the pipe and shall be oriented with the length of the slot parallel to, normal to, or diagonal with the axis of the pipe. The pattern of the openings shall be uniformly spaced around the periphery of the pipe.
4. Stainless Steel Well Screen: The perforated well screen and fittings shall be fabricated entirely from stainless steel conforming to ASTM A 312/A 312M, Type 304, 304-L, 316 or 316-L. The well screen shall be of stainless steel with a keystone wire-wrapped continuous slot strainer equivalent to that manufactured by Howard Smith Screen Company, Houston, TX, telephone (713) 869-5771 or Johnson Screens, St. Paul, MN 55164, telephone (612) 636-3900.
   a. Couplings: Couplings for the stainless steel well screen shall consist of the same material as the well screen and shall be threaded, flanged, and/or fitted with a welding ring. The

couplings shall conform in design to the couplings recommended by the manufacturer of the well screen.

b. Tailpipe for Well Screen: The tailpipe for each well screen shall be made of the same material and at least the same minimum thickness as the riser pipe and shall include a bottom plug.

B. Riser Pipe: The relief well riser pipe material and method of manufacture shall conform to the requirements specified in paragraph WELL SCREEN, except that the screen perforations or opening shall be omitted. The relief well riser pipe diameter and discharge details shall be as directed. Couplings to the well screen and between riser pipe sections shall be as specified in paragraph COUPLING.

C. Filter Pack: Material for the filter pack around the riser pipes and screens shall be a washed grave, **OR** washed sand **OR** dry processed sand, **as directed**, composed of hard, tough, and durable particles free from adherent coating. The filter pack shall not be crushed stone. The filter pack material shall contain no detrimental quantities of organic matter nor soft, friable, thin, or elongated particles in accordance with the quality requirements in ASTM C 33, Table 1 and Table 3, Class 5S, and in ASTM E 11, Table 1.

D. Outlet For Relief Well: Check Valve.

1. The check valve shall be a one piece reinforced all rubber (neoprene) check valve with an integral elastomer flange similar and equal to the Red Valve Series 35, manufactured by Red Valve Company, Inc., 700 North Bell Ave., Pittsburgh, PA 15106, telephone (412) 279-0044. The backup ring for the check valve shall be stainless steel. Stainless steel bolts, washers, and nuts shall be used to fasten the valves onto the flanged end of the pipes. The check valve shall be installed with the flared end duck bill in a vertical position.
   OR
   Fabricate check valves of brass **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, plate, threaded fasteners and rods. Fabricate sealing disc of silicone sponge rubber free of porous areas, foreign materials, and visible defects.
2. Workmanship and metalwork fabrication of check valves shall be as directed. Install check valves accurately vertically and adjust to the required elevation.

E. Concrete: Concrete shall conform to the requirements specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Drilling: Wells may be drilled by the reverse rotary circulation method or other method approved, which will ensure proper placement of the well screen, riser pipe, and filter pack. Methods which involve radical displacement of the formation, or which may reduce the yield of the well, will not be permitted. Excavated material shall be disposed of as directed.

1. Reverse Circulation Method: If the reverse circulation method is used for drilling wells, all of the drilling fluid shall be removed from the filter pack and the natural pervious formation. If in the opinion of the Owner the walls of the hole above the top of the filter pack require support during development operations, a temporary casing similar to that specified in paragraph TEMPORARY CASING shall be placed so as to extend from the ground surface to at least 3 ft (1 m) below the top of the filter pack. The diameter of the hole shall be such as will permit the placement of the minimum thickness of filter pack as specified in paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT. The drilling fluid shall be a suspension of fine grained soil or shall be a commercial product of a recognized manufacturer, shall be approved by the Owner, and shall have the characteristic of being readily removable from the filter pack and the walls of the formation by development as specified in paragraph DEVELOPMENT. The use of bentonite will not be permitted.
2. Temporary Casing: Temporary well casing of either iron or steel of sufficient length to case to the bottom of all borings shall be available at the construction site. the Owner will direct the use of a temporary casing to the bottom of the boring during drilling and placement of screen, riser, and

filter pack when it believes it is necessary to provide adequate support to the sides of the hole. When the walls of the boring will require support only during development operations a temporary casing will be required to extend only to a depth 3 ft (3 m) below the top of the filter pack. The temporary casing, shall have sufficient thickness to retain its shape and maintain a true section throughout its depth, and may be in sections of any convenient length. The temporary casing shall be such as to permit its removal without disturbing the filter pack, riser, or well screen. The setting of temporary casing shall be such that no cavity will be created outside of it at any point along its length. In the event the temporary casing should become unduly distorted or bent it shall be discarded and a new casing shall be used during installation of any additional relief wells.

B. Installation Of Riser Pipe And Screen

1. Assembly: All riser pipe and screen shall be in good condition before installation and all couplings and other accessory parts shall be securely fastened in place. The successive lengths of pipe shall be arranged to provide accurate placement of the screen sections in the bore hole. The riser-pipe shall be provided with an approved cap and a flanged top section, the top of which shall be set at the elevation directed. Centralizers shall be attached to the assembled riser pipe and screen in such numbers and of a type that they will satisfactorily center the riser pipe and screen in the well and will hold it securely in position while the filter pack material is being placed.
2. Joints: Sections of relief well pipe shall be joined together as specified in paragraph COUPLINGS. Joints shall be designed and constructed to have the strength of the pipe and where possible a strength capable to support the weight of the relief well stem as it is lowered into the hole. When not practicable to construct joints that will support the weight of the relief well stem, the stem shall be supported at the lower end by any approved means that will assure that the joints do not open while being lowered into place in the well.
3. Installation: The assembled riser pipe and screen shall be placed in the bore hole in such manner as to avoid jarring impacts and to ensure that the assembly is centered and not damaged or disconnected. The screen shall be suspended in the hole and not resting on the bottom of the hole. After the screen and riser pipe have been placed, a filter pack shall be constructed around the screen section as specified in paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT and the well developed as specified in paragraph DEVELOPMENT. The top of the riser pipe shall be held at the designated elevation during placement of the filter pack.
4. Check for Plumbness and Alignment: The well shall be constructed and all casing set round, plumb, and true. The Contractor shall perform the following tests after the installation of the well but prior to backfilling, and before its acceptance. Additional tests may be made during the performance of the work at the option of the Contractor. Should the Contractor fail to correct, at no additional cost to the Owner, any faulty alignment or plumbness disclosed as a result of these tests, the Owner may refuse to accept the well. the Owner may waive the requirements for plumbness if in its judgement the Contractor has exercised all possible care in constructing the well and the defect is due to circumstances beyond its control or if the utility of the completed well is not materially affected or if the cost of necessary remedial measures will be excessive. In no event will the provisions with respect to alignment be waived.
    a. Plumbness: Plumbness shall be tested by use of a plumb line. The plummet shall be suspended from a small diameter wire rope and its point of suspension shall be in the exact center of the plummet. The plummet shall be sufficiently heavy to stretch the wire rope taut. The wire rope shall pass over a guide sheave which shall be positioned above the top of the well and adjusted horizontally so that the plummet hangs in the center of the well. Displacement of the wire rope during the plumbness check shall be measured by means of a transparent plastic sheet on which a number of concentric circles shall be scribed or drawn, and which is centered on the top of the well. The exact center of these circles shall be marked, and then a slot, slightly larger than the plumb line and extending from this center to the edge, shall be cut in the plastic sheet. As the plummet is lowered, any out-of-plumb condition of the well will be indicated by the wire rope tending to drift away from the center, and the plastic sheet shall be rotated until the slot is oriented in the direction of this drift, while at all times maintaining the center of the concentric circles coincident with the center of the well. Measurement of the amount of drift shall be made

along the edge of the slot for each increment by which the plummet is lowered into the well. Drift at any depth shall be determined by multiplying the measured plumb line displacement by the total length of the plumb line and dividing the result by the fixed distance between the guide sheave and the top of the well. If desired, alignment may be calculated from the plumbness data in lieu of the alignment check described in paragraph ALIGNMENT. Should the well vary from the vertical in excess of allowable, the plumbness of the well shall be corrected by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

b. Alignment: Alignment shall be tested by lowering into the well a section of cylinder or a dummy of the same length. The outside diameter of cylinder shall be smaller than the inside diameter of the well. Should the cylinder fail to move freely throughout the length of the well, the alignment of the well shall be corrected by the Contractor at no additional expense to the Owner.

C. Filter Pack Placement: After the well screen and riser pipe have been installed, the filter pack material shall be placed by tremie, when using a well graded material, in an approved manner such that segregation will not occur. When using a uniform graded filter material, the material may be poured around the well screen at a rate that will prevent bridging of the material. The material shall be placed around all sides of the screen to assure that the screen is not pushed against the side of the bore hole causing the screen to come in contact with foundation material or prevent the proper thickness of filter from being placed uniformly around the screen. The filter pack shall be placed at a constant rate from the start of placement until it has reached the elevation directed. If a tremie is required, a double string of tremie pipe shall be used. The pipes shall be placed on opposite sides of the screen and/or casing, that is, 180 degrees apart, and shall be guided in such a manner that they will remain in this position throughout the placing process. The tremie pipes shall be set in place, filled completely with filter pack prior to being lifted off the bottom of the hole. The filter pack in the tremie pipe shall be kept above the water surface in the well throughout the placing process. In no case shall the gradation of the filter pack fall outside of the range specified in paragraph FILTER PACK.

D. Development

1. General: Following placement of filter pack materials, the Contractor shall develop the relief well by jetting, surging, intermittent pumping, or other approved methods as may be necessary to give the maximum yield of water. At the time of development of any relief well, the well shall be free of drawdown or surcharge effects due to pump testing, developing or drilling at another location. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining at the relief well the needed access and work area and clearance in the relief well necessary to accomplish development. The Contractor shall furnish, install, or construct the necessary discharge line and troughs to conduct and dispose of the discharge a sufficient distance from the work areas to prevent damage. Development shall be conducted to achieve a stable well of maximum efficiency and shall be continued until a satisfactory sand test, as specified in paragraph SAND TEST, is obtained. As development proceeds, filter pack material shall be added to the annular space around the screen to maintain the top elevation of the filter pack to the specified elevation. The Contractor shall provide an open tube or other approved means for accurately determining the water level in the well under all conditions. If at any time during the development process it becomes apparent in the opinion of the Owner that the well may be damaged, development operations shall be immediately terminated. the Owner may require a change in method if the method selected does not accomplish the desired results. the Owner may order that wells which continue to produce excessive amounts of fines after development for 6 hours be abandoned, plugged, and backfilled, and may require the Contractor to construct new wells nearby. All materials pulled into the well by the development process shall be removed prior to performing the pumping test.

   a. Jetting: Jetting should be performed using either a single or double ring jet. The jetting tool shall be constructed of high-strength material and conservatively designed and proportioned so that it will withstand high pressures. The jetting tool shall have two hydraulically balanced nozzles spaced 180 degrees **OR** four diameter holes spaced 90 degrees, **as directed**, apart and which shall exert the jetting force horizontally through the screen slots. The rings shall be constructed such that the tips of the jets shall be within 1/2 in. (13 mm) from the inner surface of the well screen. The pump used in conjunction with

the jetting tool shall be capable of providing a minimum jetting fluid exit velocity of 150 feet per second (45 meters per second). Prior to commencing jetting, and following each jetting cycle, all sand and/or other materials shall be removed from inside the screen. All wells shall be pumped during the jetting cycle to remove incoming sand and other material. Such pumping shall be at a rate not less than 115 percent of the rate at which fluid is introduced through the jetting tool. This will allow a flow of material into the well as it is being developed. Water used for development shall be free of sand. the Owner may require other means of developing the well such as intermittent pumping method, variation of the intermittent pumping method, or surge block if it appears that the development of the well is not producing the desired results.

b. Intermittent Pumping: Intermittent pumping shall be performed by pumping the well at a capacity sufficient to produce a rapid drawdown, stopping the pump (backflow through pump will not be permitted) to permit the water surface to rise to its former elevation, and repeating this procedure. Cycle time for this procedure will vary as directed but will not be more than 3 cycles per minute. A deep well turbine pump, or electric submersible pump with check valve, shall be used with any attachment necessary to accomplish rapid starting and stopping for intermittent pumping. The intake shall be set below the maximum expected drawdown in the well. Prior to commencing intermittent pumping, and periodically during development by this method, all sand and/or other materials shall be removed from inside the screen. The amount of drawdown may be decreased if, in the opinion of the Owner, the efficiency of the well might otherwise be impaired.

c. Surging: Surging of the well shall require use of a circular block which is smaller in diameter than the inside diameter of the relief well and is constructed of a material which will not damage the screen if the block comes in contact with the screen, and a bailer or pump to remove materials drawn into the well. The surging shall be continued for a period of approximately one hour or until little or no additional material from the foundation or filter pack can be pulled through the screen. The surge block shall be moved by a steady motion up and down the full length of the well screen. Prior to commencing surging, and periodically during development by this method, all sand and/or other materials shall be removed from inside the screen. All materials pulled into the well by the surging process shall be removed by the Contractor.

E. Backfilling: After the well has been developed, additional filter pack shall be added if necessary to meet the requirements of paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT. Then the annular space above the filter pack, shall be backfilled by first placing a layer of concrete sand on the filter pack and then filling the remainder of the space up to the finished ground surface **OR** well pit, **as directed**, with grout or concrete. The concrete backfill shall be placed to a depth at least equal to the existing impervious blanket. For PVC riser pipe, after the well has been developed, additional filter pack shall be added if necessary for it to meet the requirements of paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT. Then the remaining annular space above the filter pack shall be backfilled by first placing a layer of concrete sand on the filter pack and then filling the remainder of the space up to the finished ground surface **OR** well pit, **as directed**, with bentonite. The temporary casing, if used, shall be withdrawn in increments as the backfill is placed. The Contractor shall fill with impervious material to original grade all pits such as those incidental to the reverse rotary circulation method of drilling.

F. Plugging Of Abandoned Wells: The Contractor has the option of attempting to remove the well screen. If the well screen can be removed, the Contractor will grout the bore hole starting from the bottom of the hole. The grouting shall start at the elevation of the bottom of the tailpipe of the well. If the well screen can not be removed or breaks off during the removal attempt, the Contractor shall still be responsible for grouting the well from the bottom of the tailpipe to within 3 ft (1 m) of ground surface. Either of the above abandonment procedures may require the Contractor to redrill the hole so that the bore hole can be grouted. The well shall be grouted from the bottom of the tailpipe. After the grout has setup the riser pipe shall be cutoff. Then the hole shall be backfilled. The cement grout mixture proportion to be used shall be submitted for approval.

G. Tests

1. Pump Test: Upon completion but before acceptance, each well shall be subjected to a pump test of which a sand test will form a part. The Contractor shall provide a deep well turbine pump, capable of producing the specified drawdowns over periods of time sufficient to satisfactorily perform the pump test specified herein. The intake shall be set below the maximum expected drawdown in the well. The amount of sand shall be measured after each test. The pump shall be complete with either gasoline, diesel, or electric motor of adequate size. In case an electric motor is used, the Contractor shall provide, without additional cost to the Owner, the electric power and the necessary wiring. The Contractor shall provide an open tube or other approved means for accurately determining the water level in the well. The Contractor shall furnish and install an orifice meter of approved design or other approved equipment for the purpose of measuring the discharge from the well during the pumping test. The Contractor shall furnish, install, or construct the necessary pipe discharge line, troughs, or ditches necessary to dispose of the pumping test discharge a sufficient distance from the work area to prevent damage. The tests will be conducted under the direction of the Owner and may be made as soon as each well is completed. Test data will be recorded by the Owner. The Contractor shall test each well by pumping continuously for a minimum of 6 hours. Prior to starting the pump test all material shall be removed from the bottom of the well. If the test is interrupted, other than by order of the Owner, prior to the completion of the specified period of continuous operation, the test shall be re-run. In addition to the required pumping test, the Owner may direct the Contractor to perform additional pump tests. Such additional testing shall conform in general to the requirements specified herein except that the duration of the tests and the approximate draw-down will be determined by the Owner. In the event that sand or other material collects in the well as a result of the pump test, accurate measurements shall be taken as to the quantity of material in the well and all such material shall be removed by the Contractor. Upon completion of the pump test, the Contractor shall remove all equipment, discharge lines, electrical lines, lumber, and debris, and shall backfill any excavated areas with impervious material.
2. Sand Test: As part of each Pump Test or at the end of each intermittent pumping a determination of the amount of sand (filter pack and/or foundation material) a well is producing shall be performed. Prior to starting the sand test all material shall be removed from the bottom of the tailpipe. After the pump is at the desired pumping rate the flow from the discharge shall be diverted into a container that will collect all the sand being carried by the water **OR** through a Rossum Sand Tester, **as directed**. Upon completion of the test the amount of sand in the tailpipe shall be determined to verify that no material is being deposited in the bottom of the well.
3. Filter Pack Sampling and Testing: The Contractor shall verify that all materials conform to the specifications before delivery to the project. The particle size distribution of the filter pack shall be sampled and tested by the Contractor in accordance with ASTM C 136 and ASTM D 75. Within 48 hours before being placed in the relief well to be back-filled, the filter pack shall be sampled from the material stockpiled at the project site. There shall be at least one particle size distribution test on the filter pack for each well. A pump test shall be performed in accordance with technical provisions herein specified.
4. Reports: Reports shall include, for each relief well, logs of the boring, elevations of the well screen, top of riser pipe, bottom of the tailpipe, filter pack gradation, quantity of filter pack added during development, pump test, sand test, and report of backfilling. The log of backfill material shall include the filter pack particle size distribution test data, and notes concerning installation and development of the relief well. The pump test log shall include the duration of the test and the draw-down response data with time in the pumped well, in adjacent wells, and in nearby piezometers. The relief well log and the pump test log shall be submitted to the Owner. The Contractor shall also submit a report of the well installation to the appropriate public agency and in the form required by state statutory and/or regulatory requirements specified in paragraph REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 13 23a - MONITORING WELLS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for monitoring wells including drilling, casing, well screen, gravel packing, grouting, development, monitoring device, and incidental related work complete and ready for operation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. General Requirements
1. Each system, including equipment, materials, installation, and performance, shall be in accordance with local, State, and Federal regulations, ASTM D 5092, and EPA 600-4-89-034 except as modified herein. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "shall" has been substituted for the word "should" wherever it appears. Reference to the "Project Representative" and the "Owner" shall be interpreted to mean the Owner. Additional requirements are included under Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls". Mark and secure monitoring wells to avoid unauthorized access and tampering.

C. Submittals:
1. Shop Drawings: Well construction.
2. Product Data
   a. Well casing
   b. Well screen
   c. Filter pack
   d. Neat cement grout
   e. Bentonite seal
3. Certificates
   a. Well Drilling/Development Material Handling Plan
   b. Health and Safety Plan
   c. Field Sampling and Laboratory Testing Plan
   d. Treatment facility permit
   e. Installation Survey Report
   f. Well Development Report
   g. Borehole Analysis Report
4. Closeout Submittals
   a. Well Construction Permit
   b. Shipment manifests
   c. Delivery certificates
   d. Treatment and disposal certificates

D. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials in an undamaged condition. Unload and store with minimal handling. Store materials in on-site enclosures or under protective coverings. Store plastic piping and jointing materials, and rubber gaskets under cover, out of direct sunlight. Store materials off the ground. Keep insides of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris. Replace defective or damaged materials with new materials.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Required Drawings: Submit well construction drawings showing components and details of well casing, well screen, filter pack, annular seal, and associated items. Drawings shall be prepared by a State certified professional geologist or hydrogeologist, or by a State registered professional

civil engineer, hereafter referred to as the Contractor's Professional Consultant (CPC). Drawings shall be sealed.

2. Well Drilling/Development Material Handling Plan: A material handling plan shall be furnished by the Contractor 15 days prior to initiation of the work that describes phases of dealing with the potentially contaminated soil and groundwater, including the following: a schedule to be employed in the well drilling and development stages, a sequence of operations, the method of drilling and development, material hauling, proposed equipment, handling of the contaminated materials, soil and water testing requirements, and safety precautions and requirements.
3. Health and Safety Plan (HASP): Describe safety precautions for each phase of the project as specifically related to handling of soil and water removed during well drilling and development operations. Identify appropriate requirements of 29 CFR 1910 and COE EM-385-1-1. Identify safety equipment and procedures to be available and used during the project. Furnish the name and qualifications based on education, training, and work experience of the proposed Health and Safety Officer (HASO) and the members of the drill crew. The CPC may perform the responsibilities of the HASO if properly qualified.
4. Field Sampling and Laboratory Testing Plan: Describe field sampling methods and quality control procedures. Identify laboratory and laboratory methods to be used for contamination testing. Sample reports shall show sample identification for location, date, time, sample method, contamination level, name of individual sampler, identification of laboratory, and quality control procedures.
5. Treatment Facility Permit: Verification that the proposed treatment facility is permitted to accept the contaminated materials specified, prior to the start of excavation.
6. Well Development Report: Provide report, containing the following data for each well: project name and location, well designation, date and time of well installation, date and time of well development, static water level from top of well casing before development and 24 hours after development, field measurements of pH, temperature, and specific conductivity, depth of well from top of casing to bottom of well, screen length, description of development methodology size/capacity of pump or bailer, pumping rate, and recharge rate.
7. Well Construction Permit: Submit a completed permit application and a proposed method of construction to the appropriate state agency prior to construction of the well. Construction of the wells will not be allowed until an approved Well Construction Permit has been submitted to the Owner.
8. Shipment Manifests: Copies of manifests and other documentation required for shipment of waste materials within 24 hours after removal of waste from the site. Shipment manifests shall be signed by the Owner.
9. Delivery Certificates: Verification that the wastes were actually delivered to the approved treatment facility, within 7 days of shipment.
10. Treatment and Disposal Certificates: Verification that the wastes were successfully treated and remediated to the levels specified herein.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Well Casing
   1. Stainless Steel Piping: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Type 304, Schedule 40S, with flush threaded joint end fittings. Threaded joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape, and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.
   2. PVC Piping: ASTM F 480, Type 1, Grade 1, PVC 12454, NSF wc or NSF pw, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, with flush threaded joint fittings. Threaded joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape, and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.

B. Well Screen: Well screens shall be located as directed. The length of each screen shall be as directed. Slot size shall be as required to meet project requirements. Slotted openings shall be distributed uniformly around the circumference of the screen. Open area shall approach the formation's natural porosity.

1. Stainless Steel Screens: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Type 304, Schedule 40S, continuous slot construction, wire wound, with flush threaded joint ends.
2. PVC Screens: ASTM D 1785, PVC 1120, NSF wc or NSF pw, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, screen, Schedule 80, machine-slotted construction, flush threaded joint ends. Slots shall be even in width, length, and separation.

C. Primary Filter Pack: Provide clean, durable, well-rounded, and washed quartz or granite, with less than 5 percent non-siliceous material. The filter pack shall not contain organic matter or friable materials. The filter pack shall allow free flow of water in the well, and shall prevent the infiltration of aquifer materials. Filter pack shall have a 30 percent finer than (d-30) grain size size as required to meet project requirements, and a uniformity coefficient less than 2.5, in accordance with ASTM C 117 and ASTM C 136.

D. Secondary Filter Pack: Gradation in accordance with ASTM D 5092. Provide clean, durable, well-rounded, and washed quartz or granite. Pack shall not contain organic matter or friable materials.

E. Annular Sealants
1. Bentonite Seal: Provide powdered, granular, pelletized, or chipped sodium **OR** calcium, **as directed**, montmorillonite in sealed containers from a commercial source, free of impurities. Diameter of pellets shall be less than one fifth the diameter of the borehole annular space to prevent bridging. Bentonite base grout shall be in accordance with ASTM D 5092.
2. Neat Cement Grout: Provide neat cement grout in accordance with ASTM D 5092. Cement shall be in accordance with ASTM C 150. Quick setting admixtures shall not be allowed. Drilling mud or cuttings shall not be used as a sealing material.

F. Bottom Plugs: Provide flush threaded solid plug at the bottom of the well. Plug shall be the same material as the well casing **OR** screen to which it is attached, **as directed**. Joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.

G. Locking Well Cap: Provide flush threaded, weatherproof, and non-removable locking well cap on the top of the well. Well cap shall be of the same material as the well casing to which it is attached. Well cap shall accommodate padlock. Provide a long shackled padlock in accordance with ASTM F 883. Provide two keys for the padlock, and turn them over to the Owner. Locks at the well site shall be keyed alike.

H. Well Head Completions: Clearly mark and secure the well to avoid unauthorized access and tampering. Cast the words "MONITORING WELL" on the well head cover. Provide a sign reading, "WELL IS FOR MONITORING AND IS NOT SAFE FOR DRINKING." Provide stamped metal identification tag as follows:

DO NOT DISTURB
ID #: Date:
Installed By:
Total Depth:
Screened Interval:
TOC Elevation:
Other:
For Information, Call:

1. Aboveground Completions: Provide protective outer casing around the well casing extending above grade. The diameter of the protective outer casing shall be a minimum of 4 in. (100 mm) larger than the well casing diameter. The top of the protective outer casing shall extend a minimum of 6 in. (150 mm) above the top of the well casing cap. The protective outer casing shall be set in cement grout and the bottom of the protective well casing shall extend below the depth of the frost line **OR** to the depth indicated, **as directed**. A 1/4 in. (6 mm) diameter weep hole shall be drilled in the protective outer casing 3 in. (75 mm) above the ground surface. The annular space between the protective outer casing and the well casing shall be filled with pea gravel or coarse sand to just below the level of the cap on the well casing. The locking well cap

shall be provided on top of the protective outer casing. Provide 6 in. (150 mm) diameter steel pipe bollards, filled with concrete as indicated to protect the exposed well head.

a. Protective Outer Casing and Bollards: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B.

b. Well Casing Cap: Provide cap on top of the protective outer casing. Cap shall be flush threaded and of the same material as the protective outer casing. Threaded joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.

2. At-Grade Completions: Provide cast iron **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, vault box, 30 by 30 in. (750 by 750 mm) **OR** 12 in. (300 mm) diameter, **as directed**, with watertight frame and cover. Vault shall support H-20 loading for traffic areas **OR** a 100,000 lb. (45,360 kg) loading for airfield locations, **as directed**. The frame shall be 6 in. (150 mm) deep, and shall be set in a concrete collar a minimum of 8 in. (200 mm) thick, and extending 4 in. (100 mm) beyond the edge of the frame in all directions. Frame and concrete collar shall be set flush with the level of the existing pavement **OR** set 3 in. (75 mm) above the existing grade, **as directed**. Locking well cap shall be provided on top of the well casing, which will terminate inside the vault as indicated.

I. Polyethylene Sheeting: ASTM D 4397.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. General: Notify the Owner at least 15 days prior to commencement of work. Locations of wells shall be as indicated. Drilling, installation, and development of the monitoring wells shall be supervised, directed, and monitored by the CPC. Drilling, sampling, and well development equipment introduced to the well shall be decontaminated before and after each use in accordance with ASTM D 5088.

B. Drilling: Borehole shall be advanced using conventional 10 in. (250 mm) hollow-stem auger **OR** solid auger **OR** rotary wash, **as directed**, drilling methods. If it is the opinion of the CPC that an alternate drilling method is required, justification for a boring method change shall be submitted to the Owner, and approval for the change granted prior to drilling. Drill crew shall be experienced and trained in drilling and safety requirements for contaminated sites.

1. Sampling: Obtain samples in accordance with ASTM D 1586 or ASTM D 1587. Perform standard penetration tests at the following depths 0.0 to 1.5 ft (0 to 450 mm); 1.5 to 3.0 ft (450 to 900 mm); 3.0 to 4.5 ft (900 to 1350 mm); and 5 ft (1500 mm) centers or at changes in soil formation thereafter. Each soil sample shall be screened in the field with an organic vapor analyzer/flame ionization device (OVA/FID) capable of detecting vapors to a minimum of one ppm. Log boring in accordance with ASTM D 2487 and ASTM D 2488. Groundwater elevation shall be indicated.

2. Analysis: The CPC shall review the log data from each borehole and compare the data with the well design requirements. The CPC shall verify the adequacy of the well design, or shall offer a proposed modification to the design based on the geologic and hydrogeologic data obtained from the borehole. This review and analysis shall be conducted for each borehole **OR** for one borehole considered representative of the entire project, **as directed**. The CPC shall submit the borehole boring logs, the analysis of the well design, and any proposed design modifications to the Owner in a Borehole Analysis Report. Any modifications to the well design approved by the Owner shall be considered a change to the contract documents and shall be negotiated in accordance with the "CHANGES" clause.

3. Alignment: Verify that the well is straight by lowering a 10 ft (3 m) section of steel pipe 1/4 in. (6 mm) smaller in diameter than the inside diameter of the casing in to the well. For wells deeper than 200 ft (60 m), Contractor shall verify that the well is plumb.

C. Soil Removed From The Borehole

1. Temporary Containment of Soil Removed from the Borehole: Soil removed from the borehole shall be placed in a temporary containment area. Provide a temporary containment area near the well site. Cover containment area with 10 mil (0.25 mm) reinforced polyethylene sheeting. Place soil removed from the borehole[s] on the impervious barrier and cover with 6 mil (0.15 mm) reinforced polyethylene sheeting. Provide a straw bale berm around the outer limits of the

containment area and cover with polyethylene sheets. Secure edges of sheets with weights to keep the polyethylene sheeting in place. Water runoff shall be diverted from the stockpiled material. As an option, soil may be stockpiled in trucks suitable for transporting contaminated soils as specified herein.

2. Testing Requirements for Stockpiled Soils
   a. Sampling: A minimum of one composite sample shall be developed and analyzed for each required test for every 100 cu. yds. (76.4 cu. m) or fraction thereof from a composite stockpile of soil removed from all well sites. To develop a composite sample of the size necessary to run the required tests, the Contractor shall take several samples from different areas along the surface and in the center of the stockpile. These samples shall be combined and thoroughly mixed to develop the composite sample.
   b. Testing
      1) The soil shall contain no free liquid as demonstrated by EPA SW-846, Method 9095, paint filter liquids test.
      2) The sum of benzene, toluene, ethyl benzene, and xylene (BTEX) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 5030/8020.
      3) TPH (total petroleum hydrocarbons) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 8015, which has been modified for use with soil.
      4) Material shall be tested for TOX (total organic halogens) in accordance with EPA SW-846, Method 9020.
      5) Material shall be analyzed for full TCLP in accordance with EPA SW-846, Method 1311 and for ignitability, corrosivity, and reactivity.
      6) Material shall be tested for polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB's) in accordance with EPA SW-846, Method 8080.
      7) Moisture content of the sample shall be determined in accordance with EPA Method 160.3.
   c. Disposal of Stockpiled Soils
      1) Soils exhibiting TPH less than 100 ppm, BTEX less than 10 ppm, TOX less than 100 ppm, passing TCLP tests, and testing negative for PCB's shall be considered clean as shall be disposed of on-site, as directed by the Owner.
      2) Soils failing the TCLP test or exhibiting TOX greater than 100 ppm shall be managed in accordance with applicable State and local regulations. Payment for disposal of materials failing the TCLP metals test or TOX test shall be made in accordance with the "CHANGES" clause of the General Conditions.
      3) If the concentration of total BTEX is greater than 10 ppm or TPH greater than 100 ppm, the soil shall be treated and disposed of at a permitted soil recycling facility.

D. Well Installation: Well installation shall be in accordance with ASTM D 5092 and EPA 600-4-89-034, and as indicated on the well construction drawings submitted by the CPC and approved by the Owner. Borehole shall be stable and shall be verified straight before beginning installation.
   1. Casings and Screens: Well casings, screens, plugs, and caps shall be decontaminated prior to delivery by the manufacturer and shall be certified clean. Materials shall be delivered, stored, and handled in such manner as to ensure that grease, oil, or other contaminants do not contact any portion of the well screen and casing assembly prior to installation. If directed by the Owner, the well screen and casing assembly shall be cleaned with high pressure water prior to installation. Personnel shall wear clean cotton or surgical gloves while handling the assembly. Centralizers shall be used to ensure that the well screen and casing assembly is installed concentrically in the borehole. When the assembly has been installed at the appropriate elevation, it shall be adequately secured to preclude movement during placement of the filter packs and annular seals. The top of the well casing shall be capped during filter pack placement.
   2. Primary and Secondary Filter Packs: Primary and secondary filter packs shall be placed as indicated on the approved well construction drawings to fill the entire annular space between the screen and casing assembly and the outside wall of the borehole. Place both the primary and secondary filters with a tremie pipe in accordance with EPA 600-4-89-034 and ASTM D 5092. Placement of the primary and secondary filters by gravity or free fall methods is not allowed. Control speed of filter placement to prevent bridging and to allow for settlement. Prior to

commencement of work, equipment and methods required to place filters shall be approved by the Owner.

3. Bentonite Seal: Bentonite shall be placed as a slurry through a tremie pipe. Control speed of bentonite placement to prevent bridging or segregation of slurry. Additional water shall be added to the annular space as directed by the CPC to ensure complete hydration of the bentonite. Bentonite shall cure a minimum of 48 hours before the placement of cement grout to ensure complete hydration and expansion of the bentonite.
4. Neat Cement Grout: Cement grout shall be placed in the annular space above the bentonite seal as indicated on the well construction drawings. Cement grout shall be placed as a slurry through a tremie pipe, and injected under pressure to reduce chance of voids. Grout shall be injected in one continuous operation until full strength grout flows out at the ground surface without evidence of drilling cuttings or fluid. Cement grout shall cure a minimum of 48 hours before beginning well development operations.
5. Well Head Completions: Well head completions shall be as indicated and as specified herein.

E. Well Development: Well development shall be in accordance with EPA 600-4-89-034 and ASTM D 5092 except as modified herein. Bailing, surging, and pumping/overpumping/backwashing are acceptable development methods. Air surging and jetting are prohibited. Method of development shall be chosen by the CPC and approved by the Owner. Well development shall not begin until the well installation is complete and accepted by the Owner. Well development operations shall be conducted continuously until development water flows clear and free of drilling fluids, cuttings, or other materials. At such time representative water samples shall be tested for pH, temperature, and specific conductivity in accordance with EPA 600-4-79-20. Samples shall be taken every 3 hours. When stabilized readings of these parameters, as accepted by the Owner, have been achieved for 12 consecutive hours, well development operations shall cease.

F. Water From Well Development Operations: Water from the well development operations shall be containerized in accordance with State and local regulations. One sample shall be taken and analyzed for each required test for every 1000 gallons (3780 liters) of stored water from well development operations.

1. Testing
   a. The sum of benzene, toluene, ethyl benzene, and xylene (BTEX) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 8020.
   b. TPH (total petroleum hydrocarbons) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 8015.
2. Disposal of Containerized Water
   a. Water exhibiting TPH less than 0.5 ppm and BTEX less than 1 ppb shall be considered clean and shall be disposed of on-site as directed by the Owner.
   b. If the concentration of total BTEX is greater than 1 ppb or TPH greater than 0.5 ppm, the water shall be treated and disposed of at a permitted facility.

G. Transportation Of Contaminated Soil And Water: The Contractor shall be solely responsible for complying with Federal, State, and local requirements for transporting contaminated materials through the applicable jurisdictions and shall bear responsibility and cost for any noncompliance. In addition to those requirements, the Contractor shall do the following:

1. Inspect and document vehicles and containers for proper operation and covering.
2. Inspect vehicles and containers for proper markings, manifest documents, and other requirements for waste shipment.
3. Perform and document decontamination procedures prior to leaving the worksite and again before leaving the disposal site.

H. Disposal Of Contaminated Soil And Water: Contaminated materials removed from the site shall be disposed of in a treatment/disposal facility permitted to accept such materials.

I. Installation Survey: Upon completion of well installation and development and acceptance by the Owner therefor, the Contractor vertical and horizontal position of each well shall be determined by a registered land surveyor licensed in the State where the work is located . The survey shall document the vertical elevations of the top of the casing pipe and the ground surface elevation adjacent to each well. Survey shall be accurate to the nearest 0.01 ft (3 mm). This data shall be submitted with a well location map as the Installation Survey Report.

J. Cleanup: Upon completion of the well construction, remove debris and surplus materials from the jobsite.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13 23a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 13 23b - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for facility natural gas piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
b. Piping specialties.
c. Piping and tubing joining materials.
d. Valves.
e. Pressure regulators.
f. Service meters.
g. Mechanical sleeve seals.
h. Grout.
i. Concrete bases.

C. Definitions
1. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
a. Piping and Valves: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
b. Service Regulators: 65 psig (450 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa), **as directed**, minimum unless otherwise indicated.
c. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 5 psig (34.5 kPa) **OR** 10 psig (69 kPa) **OR** 20 psig (138 kPa) **OR** 65 psig (450 kPa), **as directed**.
2. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less **OR** More than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) **OR** More than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) but not more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa), **as directed**.
OR
Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less.
OR
Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) but not more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa), and is reduced to secondary pressure of more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa).
OR
Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Three pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) but not more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa), and is reduced to secondary pressures of more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), and is reduced again to pressures of 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less.

3. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For natural-gas piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   a. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
   b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
3. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
4. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

H. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
   b. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Owner's written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings
1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
   a. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
   b. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
   c. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.

d. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
   1) Material Group: 1.1.
   2) End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
   3) Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
   4) Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
   5) Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.

e. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
   1) Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

f. Mechanical Couplings:
   1) Stainless-steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
   2) Buna-nitrile seals.
   3) Stainless-steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, bolts, washers, and nuts.
   4) Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
   5) Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.

2. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
   a. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
   b. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
      1) Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
         a) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
         b) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directed**, or less.
   c. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
   d. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
   e. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
   f. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
3. Aluminum Tubing: Comply with ASTM B 210 and ASTM B 241/B 241M.
   a. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy 5456 is prohibited.
   b. Protective Coating: Factory-applied coating capable of resisting corrosion on tubing in contact with masonry, plaster, insulation, water, detergents, and sewerage.
   c. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
      1) Copper-alloy fittings.
      2) Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
      3) Dryseal threads shall comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR** ASTM B 837, Type G, **as directed**.
   a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
   b. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
      1) Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
      2) Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
   c. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
5. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR** ASTM B 837, Type G, **as directed**.
   a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
   b. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.

1) Copper fittings with long nuts.
2) Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
3) Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.

c. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

6. Tin-Lined Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, seamless, annealed, with interior tin-plated lining.
   a. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
      1) Copper fittings with long nuts.
      2) Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
      3) Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
7. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.
   a. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
   b. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
   c. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
      1) Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.
      2) Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground, **as directed**.
      3) Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
      4) Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
      5) Tracer wire connection.
      6) Ultraviolet shield.
      7) Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
   d. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
      1) Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
      2) Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
      3) Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
      4) Factory-connected anode.
      5) Tracer wire connection.
      6) Ultraviolet shield.
      7) Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
   e. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
      1) PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
      2) Buna-nitrile seals.
      3) Acetal collets.
      4) Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
   f. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
      1) Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
      2) PE body tube.
      3) Buna-nitrile seals.
      4) Acetal collets.
      5) Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
   g. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
      1) Stainless-steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
      2) Buna-nitrile seals.
      3) Stainless-steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, bolts, washers, and nuts.
      4) Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

B. Piping Specialties
   1. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
      a. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
      b. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
      c. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
      d. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
      e. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
      f. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
      g. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
      h. Maximum Length: 72 inches (1830 mm).
   2. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.
      a. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
      b. Nitrile seals.
      c. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
      d. For indoor or outdoor applications.
      e. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.
   3. Y-Pattern Strainers:
      a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
      b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
      c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
      d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
   4. Basket Strainers:
      a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
      b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
      c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
      d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
   5. T-Pattern Strainers:
      a. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
      b. End Connections: Grooved ends.
      c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
      d. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).
   6. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

C. Joining Materials
   1. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
   2. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
   3. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F (540 deg C) complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

D. Manual Gas Shutoff Valves
   1. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
   2. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
      a. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).

b. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
c. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
d. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
e. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch (25 mm) and smaller.
f. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) to NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

3. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
   a. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
   b. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
   c. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   d. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
4. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   b. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
   c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   d. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
   e. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
   f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
   h. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   i. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
5. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   b. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
   c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   d. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
   e. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
   f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
   h. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   i. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
6. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
   a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   b. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
   c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
   d. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
   e. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
   f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
   g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
   h. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   i. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
7. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
   a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
   b. Plug: Bronze.

c. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
d. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
e. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
f. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
g. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

8. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
a. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
b. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
c. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
d. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
e. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
f. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
g. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
h. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
i. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

9. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
a. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
b. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
c. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
d. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
e. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
f. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
g. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
h. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
i. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

10. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.
a. Body: PE.
b. Ball: PE.
c. Stem: Acetal.
d. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
e. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
f. CWP Rating: 80 psig (552 kPa).
g. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 60 deg C).
h. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
i. Include plastic valve extension.
j. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

11. Valve Boxes:
a. Cast-iron, two-section box.
b. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
c. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
d. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
e. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

E. Motorized Gas Valves
1. Automatic Gas Valves: Comply with ANSI Z21.21.
a. Body: Brass or aluminum.
b. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
c. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.

d. Normally closed.
e. Visual position indicator.
f. Electrical **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.

2. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.
a. Pilot operated.
b. Body: Brass or aluminum.
c. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
d. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
e. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
f. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
g. Normally closed.
h. Visual position indicator.

F. Earthquake Valves
1. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.
a. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Maximum Operating Pressure: 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
c. Cast-aluminum body with nickel-plated chrome steel internal parts.
d. Nitrile-rubber valve washer.
e. Sight windows for visual indication of valve position.
f. Threaded end connections complying with ASME B1.20.1.
g. Wall mounting bracket with bubble level indicator.
2. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.
a. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Maximum Operating Pressure: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) **OR** 7 psig (48 kPa) **OR** 60 psig (414 kPa), **as directed**.
c. Cast-aluminum body with stainless-steel internal parts.
d. Nitrile-rubber, reset-stem o-ring seal.
e. Valve position, open or closed, indicator.
f. Composition valve seat with clapper held by spring or magnet locking mechanism.
g. Level indicator.
h. End Connections: Threaded for valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

G. Pressure Regulators
1. General Requirements:
a. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
b. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
c. Elevation compensator.
d. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
2. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
a. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
b. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
c. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
d. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
e. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
f. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
g. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
h. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
i. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.

j. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
k. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig (690 kPa).

3. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
   a. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
   b. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
   c. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
   d. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
   e. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
   f. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
   g. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
   h. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
   i. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
   j. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
   k. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig (13.8 kPa) **OR** 5 psig (34.5 kPa) **OR** 10 psig (69 kPa), **as directed**.
4. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
   a. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
   b. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
   c. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
   d. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
   e. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
   f. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
   g. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   h. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig (6.9 kPa) **OR** 2 psig (13.8 kPa) **OR** 5 psig (34.5 kPa), **as directed**.

H. Service Meters
1. Diaphragm-Type Service Meters: Comply with ANSI B109.1 **OR** ANSI B109.2, **as directed**.
   a. Case: Die-cast aluminum.
   b. Connections: Steel threads.
   c. Diaphragm: Synthetic fabric.
   d. Diaphragm Support Bearings: Self-lubricating.
   e. Compensation: Continuous temperature and pressure, **as directed**.
   f. Meter Index: Cubic feet **OR** Liters **OR** Cubic feet and liters, **as directed**.
   g. Meter Case and Index: Tamper resistant.
   h. Remote meter reader compatible.
   i. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig (690 kPa).
   j. Pressure Loss: Maximum 0.5-inch wg (124 Pa) **OR** 2.0-inch wg (498 Pa), **as directed**.
   k. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus 1.0 percent.
2. Rotary-Type Service Meters: Comply with ANSI B109.3.
   a. Case: Extruded aluminum.
   b. Connection: Flange.
   c. Impellers: Polished aluminum.
   d. Rotor Bearings: Self-lubricating.
   e. Compensation: Continuous temperature and pressure, **as directed**.
   f. Meter Index: Cubic feet **OR** Liters **OR** Cubic feet and liters, **as directed**.
   g. Tamper resistant.
   h. Remote meter reader compatible.
   i. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig (690 kPa).
   j. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus 2.0 percent.

3. Turbine Meters: Comply with ASME MFC-4M.
   a. Housing: Cast iron or welded steel.
   b. Connection Threads or Flanges: Steel.
   c. Turbine: Aluminum or plastic.
   d. Turbine Bearings: Self-lubricating.
   e. Compensation: Continuous temperature and pressure, **as directed**.
   f. Meter Index: Cubic feet **OR** Liters **OR** Cubic feet and liters, **as directed**.
   g. Tamper resistant.
   h. Remote meter reader compatible.
   i. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig (690 kPa).
   j. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus 2.0 percent.
4. Service-Meter Bars:
   a. Malleable- or cast-iron frame for supporting service meter.
   b. Include offset swivel pipes, meter nuts with o-ring seal, and factory- or field-installed dielectric unions.
   c. Omit meter offset swivel pipes if service-meter bar dimensions match service-meter connections.
5. Service-Meter Bypass Fittings:
   a. Ferrous, tee, pipe fitting with capped side inlet for temporary natural-gas supply.
   b. Integral ball-check bypass valve.

I. Dielectric Fittings
1. Dielectric Unions:
   a. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
   b. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
   c. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
   d. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.
2. Dielectric Flanges:
   a. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
   b. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
   c. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
   d. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.
3. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
   a. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
   b. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly.
   c. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or PE bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
   d. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
   e. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

J. Sleeves
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

K. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
   a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
   b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.

c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

L. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to fit around pipe or tube, and OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
   a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

M. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
   a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
   b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
   c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

N. Labeling And Identifying
1. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation
1. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
2. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 **OR** the International Fuel Gas Code, **as directed**, to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
3. Comply with NFPA 54 **OR** the International Fuel Gas Code, **as directed**, requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

B. Outdoor Piping Installation
1. Comply with NFPA 54 **OR** the International Fuel Gas Code, **as directed**, for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
2. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
   a. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
3. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
4. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
   a. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.

b. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
OR
Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

5. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:
   a. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
   b. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
6. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
7. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   a. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
   b. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
8. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
9. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
10. Install pressure gage downstream **OR** upstream and downstream, **as directed**, from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

C. Indoor Piping Installation
1. Comply with NFPA 54 **OR** the International Fuel Gas Code, **as directed**, for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
3. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
4. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
5. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
6. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
7. Locate valves for easy access.
8. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
9. Install piping free of sags and bends.
10. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
11. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.
    a. New Piping:
       1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
       2) Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
          OR
          Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
       3) Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
          OR

Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.

4) Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
OR
Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.

5) Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.

Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.

6) Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.

b. Existing Piping:

1) Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
OR
Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.

2) Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
OR
Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.

3) Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.
OR
Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.

4) Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
OR
Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.

5) Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

12. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
13. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
14. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
15. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
    a. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
16. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
17. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
18. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

a. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
b. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
c. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
d. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    1) Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
e. Prohibited Locations:
    1) Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    2) Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.

19. Use concentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes.
20. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
21. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
22. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
23. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
24. Install pressure gage downstream **OR** upstream and downstream, **as directed**, from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

D. Service-Meter Assembly Installation
1. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground, on concrete bases.
2. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.
3. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.
4. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.
5. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.
6. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.
7. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

E. Valve Installation
1. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
2. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
3. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
4. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
5. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

F. Piping Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints:

a. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
b. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
c. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
d. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
e. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

4. Welded Joints:
   a. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
   b. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
   c. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
6. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
7. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.
8. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
   a. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
   b. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

G. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
2. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
3. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   b. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   c. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   d. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
   e. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (15.8 mm).
4. Install hangers for horizontal drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 3/8 (DN 10): Maximum span, 48 inches (1220 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   b. NPS 1/2 and NPS 5/8 (DN 15 and DN 18): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   c. NPS 3/4 and NPS 7/8 (DN 20 and DN 22): Maximum span, 84 inches (2134 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
   d. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
5. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
   a. NPS 3/8 (DN 10): Maximum span, 48 inches (1220 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

b. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

H. Connections
1. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
2. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
3. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
4. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
5. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

I. Labeling And Identifying
1. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
OR
Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

J. Painting
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
2. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
a. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
4) Color: Gray, **unless directed otherwise**.
3. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
a. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive **OR** Quick-drying alkyd, **as directed**, metal primer.
2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Interior latex matching topcoat.
3) Topcoat: Interior latex (flat) **OR** (low sheen) **OR** (eggshell) **OR** (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
4) Color: Gray, **unless directed otherwise**.
b. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive **OR** Quick-drying alkyd, **as directed**, metal primer.
2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
3) Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat) **OR** (eggshell) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
4) Color: Gray, **unless directed otherwise**.
4. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

K. Concrete Bases
1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to seismic codes at Project.
a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.

b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
f. Use 3000-psig (20.7-MPa), **unless directed otherwise**, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

L. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 **OR** the International Fuel Gas Code, **as directed**, and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

M. Outdoor Piping Schedule
1. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
a. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
b. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
c. Annealed **OR** Drawn, **as directed**,-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.
2. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
a. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
b. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
c. Annealed **OR** Drawn, **as directed**,-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
3. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed **OR** flared, **as directed**, joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.
4. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

N. Indoor Piping Schedule For System Pressures Less Than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa)
1. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be one of the following:
a. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
b. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
c. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed **OR** flared, **as directed**, joints.
d. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
e. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
a. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
b. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
c. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
3. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
a. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
b. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
4. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

5. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

O. Indoor Piping Schedule For System Pressures More Than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) And Less Than 5 psig (34.5 kPa)
   1. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be one of the following:
      a. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
      b. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
      c. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed **OR** flared, **as directed**, joints.
      d. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
      e. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
   2. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
      a. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
      b. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
      c. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
   3. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
      a. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
      b. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
   4. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
   5. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

P. Indoor Piping Schedule For System Pressures More Than 5 psig (34.5 kPa)
   1. Aboveground Piping: Maximum operating pressure more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
   2. Aboveground, Branch Piping: Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
   3. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
      a. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
      b. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
   4. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
      a. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
      b. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
   5. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
   6. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

Q. Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule
   1. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.
   2. Underground:
      a. PE valves.
      b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze plug valves.
      c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Cast-iron, lubricated **OR** nonlubricated, **as directed**, plug valves.

R. Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule
   1. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
      a. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
      b. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

c. Bronze plug valve.

2. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
   a. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
   b. Bronze plug valve.
   c. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
3. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
   a. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
   b. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
   c. Bronze plug valve.
4. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger shall be one of the following:
   a. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
   b. Bronze plug valve.
   c. Cast-iron, nonlubricated **OR** lubricated, **as directed**, plug valve.
5. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
   a. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
   b. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**,-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
   c. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13 23b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 13 23c - FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes LPG distribution pipe, fittings, related components, and appurtenances that convey liquefied-petroleum gas (LPG) in its vapor phase from point of connection with existing or new storage container, or from utility service main to building service.

B. Products include the following:

1. Steel pipe and fittings.
2. CSST and fittings.
3. Aluminum tubing and fittings.
4. Copper tubing and fittings.
5. PE pipe, tubing, and fittings.
6. Polyamide pipe, tubing, and fittings.
7. Mechanical couplings.
8. Piping specialties.
9. Valves.
10. Pressure regulators.
11. Service meters.
12. Dielectric fittings.
13. Storage containers.
14. Vaporizers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CSST: Corrugated stainless steel tubing.

B. CWP: Cold working pressure.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

D. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

E. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

F. LPG: Liquefied-petroleum gas.

G. PE: Polyethylene.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Piping specialties.
2. CSST with associated components.
3. Valves: Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
4. Pressure Regulators: Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
5. Service Meters: Indicate pressure ratings and capacities. Include bypass fittings, meter bars, and supports.
6. Dielectric fittings.
7. Storage containers.
8. Transport truck-unloading specialties.
9. Vaporizers.

B. Shop Drawings: Provide plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

1. Shop Drawings Scale: [**1/4 inch per foot (1:50)**] or as directed by the Owner .
2. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for service meter assembly and pressure regulator assembly.

C. Delegated Design Submittals: Comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which LPG piping is indicated and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which LPG piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Submit certification that vaporizer, air mixer, storage container supports, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Certificates:

1. Welding certificates.

E. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

F. Qualification Statements: For professional engineer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For LPG equipment and accessories.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with ASME BVPC.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing LPG piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

C. Store pipes and tubes with protective PE coating to avoid damaging coating and protect from direct sunlight.

D. Protect stored PE pipes, tubing, and valves from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

B. Interruption of Existing LPG Service: Do not interrupt LPG service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of LPG supply according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify [**Architect**] [**Construction Manager**] [**Owner**] no fewer than [**two**] days or as directed by the Owner in advance of proposed interruption of LPG service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of LPG service without [**Architect's**] [**Construction Manager's**] [**Owner's**] written permission.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain each product type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 58[**, and**] [**, NFPA 54**] [**, and**] [**, the International Fuel Gas Code**] for LPG distribution system, including materials, installation, and testing.

B. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying LPG.

D. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Minimum Operating Pressure for Piping and Valves: [**125 psig (862 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner unless otherwise indicated.
2. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: [**5 psig (34.5 kPa)**] [**10 psig (69 kPa)**] [**20 psig (138 kPa)**] [**65 psig (450 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .

E. LPG System Pressure within Buildings:

1. System Pressure within Buildings, One Pressure Range: [**0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less**] [**More than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa)**] [**More than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) but not more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa)**].
2. System Pressure within Buildings, Two Pressure Ranges, Not More Than 2 psig (13.8 kPa): Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less.
3. System Pressure within Buildings, Two Pressure Ranges, Not More Than 5 psig (34.5 kPa): Primary pressure is more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) but not more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa) and is reduced to secondary pressure of more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa).
4. System Pressure within Buildings, Three Pressure Ranges: Primary pressure is more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) but not more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa), is reduced to secondary pressures of more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), and is reduced again to pressures of 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less.

F. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for LPG piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

H. Seismic Performance: Vaporizers and storage container supports are to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with [**ASCE/SEI 7**] or as directed by the Owner . See Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

1. The term "withstand" means "the piping/unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified[**and the piping system will be fully operational after the seismic event**]."
2. Component Importance Factor: [**1.5**] [**1.0**].
3. **Requirements for Component Amplification Factor and Component Response Modification Factor** as directed by the Owner .

2.3 PIPE, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe and Fittings:

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M black steel, Schedules 40 and 80, Type E or S, Grade B.
2. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
3. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
4. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
5. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

    a. Material Group: 1.1.
    b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground, and stainless steel underground.

6. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.

    a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

B. CSST and Fittings:

1. CSST:

    a. Standard: ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26.
    b. Tubing: ASTM A240/A240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
    c. Jacket - Electrically Insulative and UV-Resistant Polymer with Flame Retardant:

        1) Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

            a) Flame-Spread Index: [**25**] or as directed by the Owner .
            b) Smoke-Developed Index: [**50**] [**450**] or as directed by the Owner .

    d. Jacket - with Fully Vent-Capable PE Sleeve: Include associated fittings suitable for locations requiring vented containment.

2. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with CSST and suitable for metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.

4. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections are to comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 25 psig (172 kPa).

C. Aluminum Tubing and Fittings:

1. Aluminum Tubing: ASTM B210/B210M and ASTM B241/B241M.

    a. Material: Aluminum Alloy 5456 is prohibited.

2. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.

    a. Copper-alloy fittings.
    b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
    c. Dryseal threads are to comply with ASME B1.20.3.

3. Protective Coating: Factory-applied coating suitable for resisting corrosion on tubing in contact with masonry, plaster, insulation, water, detergents, and sewerage.

D. Copper Tubing and Fittings:

1. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: [**ASTM B88, Type K (ASTM B88M, Type A)**] [**ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B)**] [**ASTM B837, Type G**].
2. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: [**ASTM B88, Type K (ASTM B88M, Type A)**] [**ASTM B88, Type L (ASTM B88M, Type B)**] [**ASTM B837, Type G**].
3. Tin-Lined Copper Tube: ASTM B280, seamless, annealed, with interior tin-plated lining.
4. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
5. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.

    a. Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos-free, aluminum o-rings and spiral-wound metal gaskets.

6. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
7. Flare Fittings: ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.

    a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
    b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
    c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
8. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.

E. PE Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings:

1. PE Pipe and Tubing: ASTM D2513, SDR 11.
2. PE Fittings: ASTM D2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D3261, butt-fusion type.
3. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11, and steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
4. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.

    a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11 inlet.
    b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B with corrosion-protective coating covering.[**Vent casing aboveground.**]
    c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
    d. Outlet is to be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.

e. Tracer wire connection.
f. Ultraviolet shield.
g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.

5. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.

a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
b. Outlet is to be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
d. Factory-connected anode.
e. Tracer wire connection.
f. Ultraviolet shield.
g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.

F. Polyamide Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings:

1. Polyamide pipe, tubing, and fittings: ASTM F2945.

2.4 COUPLINGS

A. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller:

1. Standard: ASTM D2513.
2. PE body.
3. Elastomeric seals.
4. Independent gripping collets.
5. Couplings are suitable for joining PE pipe to PE pipe.

B. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger:

1. Standard: ASTM D2513.
2. Plastic body.
3. Body tube.
4. Seals.
5. Collets.
6. Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
7. Couplings are to be suitable for joining PE pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to PE pipe.

C. Steel Mechanical Couplings:

1. [**Stainless steel**] [**Steel**] flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
2. Buna-nitrile seals.
3. [**Stainless steel**] [**Steel**] bolts, washers, and nuts.
4. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.
5. Couplings are to be suitable for joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.

2.5 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Flexible Piping Joints:

1. Approved for LPG service.

2. Stainless steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
3. Minimum working pressure of 250 psig (1723 kPa) and 250 deg F (121 deg C) operating temperature.
4. Flanged- or threaded-end connections to match equipment connected and to be capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
5. Maximum 36-inch (914-mm) length for liquid LPG lines.

B. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: ANSI Z21.75.
4. CSST with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches (1830 mm).

C. Quick-Disconnect Devices:

1. Standard: ANSI Z21.41/CSA 6.9.
2. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
3. Nitrile seals.
4. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
5. For indoor or outdoor applications.
6. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

D. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: [**40**] [**60**]-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).

E. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: [**40**] [**60**]-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).

F. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: [**40**] [**60**]-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).

G. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.6 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for LPG.

B. Welding Filler Metals: AWS D10.12/D10.12M.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F (540 deg C).

2.7 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. Manual Gas Shutoff Valves - Metallic:

1. Description: Metallic ball valve or metallic plug valve of type indicated in schedules under Part 3.
2. Standards:

    a. ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1.
    b. ASME B16.33.
    c. ASME B16.44.
    d. ANSI LC 4/CSA 6.32.

3. System Pressure Rating: [**0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or less**] [**More than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa)**] [**More than 2 psig (13.8 kPa) but not more than 5 psig (34.5 kPa)**] [**More than 5 psig (34.5 kPa) but not more than 125 psig (862 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .

4. End Connections:

    a. Threaded Ends: ASME B1.20.1.
    b. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: ASME B1.20.3.
    c. Flanged Ends: ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
5. Tamperproof locking feature.

B. Manual Gas Shutoff Ball Valves - PE:

1. Standard: ASME B16.40.
2. Body: PE.
3. Ball: Polypropylene.
4. Stem: Acetal.
5. Seats and Seals: NBR.
6. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
7. CWP Rating: [**80 psig (552 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
8. Operating Temperature: [**Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 60 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
9. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
10. Plastic valve extension.
11. Tamperproof locking feature.

C. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.

2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.8 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

A. Hydrostatic Relief Valves:

1. Standard: NFPA 58.
2. Operating Pressure: [**350 psig (2413 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Body: Brass.
4. Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Disc and Seat: NBR.
6. Brass body and stainless steel, spring-operated valve with resilient rubber disc seat and protective cap.
7. Factory set and tested.
8. Valve is to reseat after relieving pressure.

B. Electrically Operated Automatic Gas Valves:

1. Standards:

a. ANSI Z21.21.
b. UL 429.
c. FM Global approved.

2. Pilot operated.
3. Body: Brass or aluminum.
4. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
5. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
6. Coil: Continuous-duty, molded enclosure, replaceable.
7. Normally closed.
8. Visual position indicator.
9. Electrical Characteristics: [**120 V ac, 60 Hz**] [**24 V ac, 60 Hz**] [**24 V dc**] or as directed by the Owner .

2.9 EARTHQUAKE VALVES

A. Description: Seismically activated automatic gas shutoff valve.

B. Standard: ASCE/SEI 25.

C. Maximum Operating Pressure: [**10 psig (69 kPa)**] [**60 psig (414 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .

D. Sight windows for visual indication of valve position.

E. Threaded complying with ASME B1.20.1.

F. Threaded for valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller; or flanged for valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.

2.10 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. Service Pressure Regulators:

1. Standards:

a. NFPA 58.
b. ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22.

2. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet and no pressure-sensing piping external to the regulator.
3. Pressure regulator is to maintain discharge pressure-setting downstream and is not to exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
4. Maximum Inlet Pressure: [**100 psig (690 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
5. Maximum Outlet Pressure: [**2 psig (13.8 kPa)**] [**5 psig (34.5 kPa)**] [**10 psig (69 kPa)**] [**20 psig (138 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
6. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
7. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
8. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.

B. Line-Pressure Regulators:

1. Standards:

a. NFPA 58.
b. ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22.

2. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet and no pressure-sensing piping external to the regulator.
3. Pressure regulator is to maintain discharge pressure-setting downstream and is not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
4. Maximum Inlet Pressure: [**2 psig (13.8 kPa)**] [**5 psig (34.5 kPa)**] [**10 psig (69 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
5. Maximum Outlet Pressure: [**2 psig (13.8 kPa)**] [**5 psig (34.5 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
6. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
7. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
8. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators:

1. Standards:

a. NFPA 58.
b. ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3.

2. Regulator may include vent-limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Maximum Inlet Pressure: [**1 psig (6.9 kPa)**] [**2 psig (13.8 kPa)**] [**5 psig (34.5 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. Maximum Outlet Pressure: [**1 psig (6.9 kPa)**] [**2 psig (13.8 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
5. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

2.11 SERVICE METERS

A. Diaphragm-Type Service Meters:

1. Standard: [**ANSI B109.1**] [**ANSI B109.2**].
2. Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Connections: Steel threads.
4. Diaphragm: Synthetic fabric.
5. Diaphragm Support Bearings: Self-lubricating.
6. Compensation: Continuous temperature[**and pressure**].
7. Meter Index: [**Cubic feet**] [**Liters**] [**Cubic feet and liters**].
8. Meter Case and Index: Tamper resistant.
9. Remote meter reader compatible.
10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: [**100 psig (690 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
11. Pressure Loss: Maximum [**0.5 inch wg (124 Pa)**] [**2.0 inch wg (498 Pa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
12. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus [**1.0**] percent or as directed by the Owner .

B. Rotary-Type Service Meters:

1. Standard: ANSI B109.3.
2. Case: Extruded aluminum.
3. Connection: Flange.
4. Impellers: Polished aluminum.
5. Rotor Bearings: Self-lubricating.
6. Compensation: Continuous temperature[**and pressure**].
7. Meter Index: [**Cubic feet**] [**Liters**] [**Cubic feet and liters**].
8. Tamper resistant.
9. Remote meter reader compatible.
10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: [**100 psig (690 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
11. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus [**2.0**] percent or as directed by the Owner .

C. Turbine Meters:

1. Standard: ASME MFC.4M.
2. Housing: Cast iron or welded steel.
3. Connection Threads or Flanges: Steel.
4. Turbine: Aluminum or plastic.
5. Turbine Bearings: Self-lubricating.
6. Compensation: Continuous temperature[**and pressure**].
7. Meter Index: [**Cubic feet**] [**Liters**] [**Cubic feet and liters**].
8. Tamper resistant.
9. Remote meter reader compatible.
10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: [**100 psig (690 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
11. Accuracy: Maximum plus or minus [**2.0**] percent or as directed by the Owner .

D. Service-Meter Bars:

1. Malleable- or cast-iron frame for supporting service meter.
2. Include offset swivel pipes, meter nuts with o-ring seal, and factory- or field-installed dielectric unions.
3. Omit meter offset swivel pipes if service-meter bar dimensions match service-meter connections.

E. Service-Meter Bypass Fittings:

1. Ferrous, tee, pipe fitting with capped side inlet for temporary LPG supply.
2. Integral ball-check bypass valve.

2.12 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
2. Pressure Rating: [**125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C)**] [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] [**250 psig (1725 kPa)**].
3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
3. Pressure Rating: [**125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C)**] [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] [**175 psig (1200 kPa)**] [**300 psig (2070 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
2. Pressure Rating: [**150 psig (1035 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or PE.
5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.13 STORAGE CONTAINERS

A. Description: Factory-designed, -fabricated, and -tested containers.

B. Standards:

1. NFPA 58.
2. ASME BPVC-VIII-1.
3. UL 125.
4. UL 842.
5. Department of Transportation (DOT) Regulations.

C. Provide all appurtenances as required by NFPA 58, qualified to UL 125:

1. Vapor-shutoff valve.
2. Liquid-shutoff valve.
3. Pressure-relief valve.
4. Fixed maximum liquid level gauge.
5. Filler valve.
6. Overfilling protection device.
7. Actuated liquid withdrawal excess-flow valve.
8. Provide container appurtenances with a minimum service pressure rating of 250 psig (1724 kPa).

D. Provide exposed metal surfaces mechanically cleaned, primed, and painted for resistance to corrosion for outdoor installation.

E. Provide ladders for access to valves more than 72 inches (1830 mm) aboveground.

F. Stainless Steel Nameplate: Attach to aboveground storage container or to adjacent structure for underground storage container.

1. Name and address of supplier or trade name of container.
2. Water capacity in gallons and liters.
3. Design pressure in psig and kPa.

a. Statement: "This container does not contain a product having a vapor pressure in excess of **Maximum pressure in psig (kPa) at 100 deg F (37.8 deg C)** or as directed by the Owner ."
b. Outside surface area in square feet and square meters.
c. Year of manufacture.
d. Shell thickness in inches and millimeters.
e. Overall length in feet and meters.
f. OD in feet and meters.
g. Manufacturer's serial number.
h. ASME code label.

4. Felt support pads and two concrete or painted-steel saddles per storage container. Corrosion protection required at container-to-felt contact.
5. Tie straps for each saddle.
6. Straps and anchors for tie-down slab.
7. Asphalt-based coating for corrosion protection.
8. Container connections and valves protected in manway at top of storage container.
9. Manway equipped with ventilation louvers.

2.14 TRANSPORT TRUCK UNLOADING FACILITY

A. Transport Truck Unloading Facility: Provide in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 58.

1. Support structure consisting of a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) steel channel or 6-by-4-inch (150-by-100-mm) rectangular steel tubing, a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) above and below grade.
2. Liquid-fill and vapor-return, quick-disconnect fittings.
3. Liquid- and vapor-shutoff valves with hydrostatic relief valves mounted between the quick-disconnect fittings and shutoff valves.
4. Excess-flow safety shutoff valve in vapor-return line.
5. Backflow check valve in liquid-fill line.
6. Remote emergency shutoff valve station with underground cable to the vapor emergency shutoff valve.

2.15 VAPORIZERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -calibrated, and -tested vaporizers.

B. Standards:

1. NFPA 58.
2. ASME BPVC-VIII-1.

3. NFPA 70.
4. FM Global labeled.

C. Vaporizers - Direct-Type, Direct-Fired Heat Exchanger:

1. ASME-rated and -stamped, LPG, vaporizer coil contained in an insulated enclosure insulated with a burner.
2. Burner Tubes and Orifices: Stainless steel.
3. Gas Train: Control devices and burner-control sequence are to be FM Global labeled. Provide shutoff valve, high- and low-pressure safety switches, pressure regulator, and main- and pilot-control valves.
4. Burner Operating Controls:

    a. Controls are to maintain safe operating conditions.
    b. High-Pressure Cutoff: Manual reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum design pressure.
    c. Operating Vapor-Pressure Control: Factory piped and mounted to control burner.

D. Vaporizers - Indirect-Type, Direct-Fired Heat Exchanger:

1. ASME-rated and -stamped, LPG, vaporizer vessel with a replaceable, immersion-type, electric heating element.
2. Heating Element Operating Controls:

    a. Controls are to maintain safe operating conditions.
    b. Operating Vapor-Pressure Control: Factory wired and mounted to control heating element.
    c. High-Pressure Cutoff: Manual reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum design pressure.
    d. Alarm Bell and Rotary Beacon: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; is to sound alarm for out-of-normal conditions.
    e. Control Transformer: 115 V maximum control voltage.

E. Vaporizers - Direct-Type, Water-Bath Heat Exchanger:

1. ASME-rated and -stamped, helical, LPG, vaporizer coil submerged in water bath. Straight, steel fire tubes welded into steel headers.
2. Water Bath:

    a. Water bath filled with water/glycol solution designed to prevent freezing at [**minus 30 deg F (minus 34 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
    b. Water-bath, high- and low-level sight glasses.
    c. Low-water cutoff to stop burner and annunciate alarm.
    d. Water/glycol fill and vent fitting.
    e. Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) hose-end drain valves.
    f. Operating high- and low-limit aquastat controllers.
    g. Water-bath temperature gage; a minimum of 2-1/2 inches (63 mm) in diameter. Gauges are to have operating-temperature ranges, so normal operating range is at approximately 50 percent of full range.

3. Burner Tubes and Orifices: Stainless steel.
4. Gas Train: Control devices and burner-modulation control sequence is to be FM Global labeled. Provide shutoff valve, high- and low-pressure safety switches, pressure regulator, and main- and pilot-control valves.
5. Burner Operating Controls:

    a. Operating controls are to maintain safe operating conditions.

b. Operating Water-Bath Temperature Control: Factory wired and mounted to control burner.
c. High-Temperature and High-Pressure Cutoff: Manual reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum design temperature or vapor pressure.
d. Alarm Bell and Rotary Beacon: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; is to sound alarm for out-of-normal conditions.
e. Control Transformer: 115 V maximum control voltage.

F. Vaporizers - Indirect-Type, [**Steam**][**Hot Water**] Heat Exchanger:

1. ASME-rated and -stamped, LPG vaporizer with immersion tubes containing [**steam**] [**hot water**] and LPG in surrounding shell.
2. Operating Controls:

a. Controls are to maintain safe operating conditions.
b. High-Temperature and High-Pressure Cutoff: Manual reset if operating conditions rise above maximum design temperature or pressure.
c. Alarm Bell and Rotary Beacon: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; sound alarm for out-of-normal conditions.
d. Control Transformer: 115 V maximum control voltage.

G. Building Management System Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable building management system to monitor and control set points and display vaporizer status and alarms.

H. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Heating Fuel: [**Propane**] [**Butane**] [**Electric**].
2. Vaporization Heat Exchanger:

a. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: [**250 psig (1723 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
b. Test Pressure: [**375 psig (2586 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .

3. LPG Vaporization Rate: **gph (mL/s)** as directed by the Owner .
4. Entering-LPG Temperature: [**Minus 30 deg F (Minus 34 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
5. Leaving-LPG Temperature: [**80 deg F (26.7 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
6. Discharge-LPG Pressure: [**90 psig (621 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .
7. Burner Gas Input: **Btu/h (kW)** as directed by the Owner .
8. Electric Burner Input: **kilowatts** as directed by the Owner .
9. [**Atmospheric**] **psig (kPa)** as directed by the Owner .
10. [**160 deg F (71 deg C)**] or as directed by the Owner .
11. Electrical Characteristics:

a. Volts: [**120**] [**240**] [**480**] V or as directed by the Owner .
b. Phase: [**Single**] [**Three**].
c. Hertz: 60.
d. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: as directed by the Owner .
e. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: as directed by the Owner .

2.16 DETECTABLE WARNING TAPE

A. Acid- and alkali-resistant PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for LPG piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Close equipment-shutoff valves before turning off LPG to premises or piping section.

B. Inspect LPG piping in accordance with code(s) and authority having jurisdiction to determine that LPG utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.

C. Comply with requirements of code(s) and authority having jurisdiction for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR PIPING

A. Comply with code and authority having jurisdiction requirements for installation and purging of LPG piping.

B. Install underground, LPG piping buried a minimum of [**12 inches (300 mm)**] or as directed by the Owner below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

C. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

D. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.

E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

F. Joints for connection to inlets and outlets on vaporizers, regulators, and valves may be flanged or threaded to match the equipment.

G. Install pressure gauge [**downstream**] [**upstream and downstream**] from each service regulator. Pressure gauges are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gauges for HVAC Piping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR PIPING

A. Comply with requirements of the code(s) and authority having jurisdiction for installation and purging of LPG piping.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated. Piping in equipment rooms and service areas may be installed exposed. Piping is not to be installed in inaccessible locations.

1. Conceal piping in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
2. Except as specified below, install concealed piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints, as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

    a. Above Accessible Ceilings: Piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.

        1) Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

    b. In Floors: Install piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures, such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
    c. In Floor Channels: Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
    d. In Walls or Partitions: Protect piping installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.

        1) Exception: Piping passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.

    e. Prohibited Locations:

        1) Do not install piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
        2) Do not install piping in return-air plenums.
        3) Do not install piping in solid walls or partitions.

    f. Under the Building: Install in vented containment conduit or CSST with integral vented sleeve and associated fittings.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Locate valves for easy access from a standing position.

G. Install LPG piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment, and verify final appliance and equipment locations for roughing-in.

K. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where readily accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.

1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of three pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

L. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors, and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

M. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

N. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

O. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.

P. Do not use LPG piping as grounding electrode.

Q. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.

R. Install pressure gauge [**downstream**] [**upstream and downstream**] from each line regulator. Pressure gauges are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gauges for HVAC Piping."

S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.6 INSTALLATION OF SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY

A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground[**, on concrete bases**].

B. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.

C. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.

D. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.

E. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.

F. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.

G. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of CSST, aluminum, or copper connector.

B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.

C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.

E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

F. Do not install valves in return-air plenums.

3.8 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints in accordance with AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Ch. 22, "Pipe and Tube."

F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for LPG service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join in accordance with ASTM D2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.9 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.

B. Install LPG piping electrically continuous and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance in accordance with NFPA 70.

C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.

D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas-shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1830 mm) of each gas-fired appliances and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF TRANSPORT TRUCK UNLOADING FACILITY

A. Install transport truck unloading in a cast-in-place concrete base, 48 inches (1220 mm) square by 36 inches (914 mm) deep. Set top of concrete base at least 6 inches (150 mm) above finished grade.

B. Install remote emergency shutoff station with cable release in an accessible location, a minimum of 25 ft. (7.6 m) and a maximum of 100 ft. (30 m) away from transport truck unloading.

C. Install at least two 6-inch- (150-mm-) diameter metal bollards set in and filled with concrete on both sides of transport truck unloading. Bollard length is to be at least 48 inches (1220 mm) above and below grade, with concrete encasement a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF STORAGE CONTAINER

A. Do not install storage containers in a pit.

B. Fill storage container to at least 80 percent capacity with [**butane**] [**propane**].

C. Install piping connections with swing joints or flexible connectors to allow for storage container settlement and for thermal expansion and contraction.

D. Ground containers in accordance with NFPA 780. Grounding is specified in Section 264113 "Lightning Protection for Structures."

E. Set storage containers in felt pads on concrete or steel saddles. Install corrosion protection at container-to-felt contact.

F. Install tie-downs over storage containers on saddles with proper tension.

G. Set concrete saddles on dowels set in concrete base. Anchor steel saddles to concrete base.

H. Set storage container on concrete ballast base large enough to offset buoyancy of empty storage container immersed in water.

I. Install tie-down straps over container anchored in ballast base, and repair damaged coating.

J. Backfill with a minimum coverage for underground or mounded storage containers in accordance with NFPA 58.

K. Backfill with pea gravel as required in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

L. Install cathodic protection for storage container. Cathodic protection is specified in Section 134713 "Cathodic Protection."

3.12 INSTALLATION OF VAPORIZER

A. Install vaporizer with access space for periodic maintenance.

B. Set vaporizers on and anchor to concrete base.

C. Connect liquid line from pump set, and connect vapor supply to distribution piping.

D. Install backup connection from vapor space of container to inlet of pressure-regulating valve at vaporizer discharge to bypass the vaporizer during maintenance. Install shutoff valves to change source from vaporizer to storage container.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

C. Label and identify gas piping and pressure outside a multitenant building by tenant.

3.14 CONCRETE BASES

A. Anchor equipment to concrete base in accordance with Project codes.

1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on [**18-inch (451-mm)**] centers or as directed by the Owner around the full perimeter of the base.

3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Use [**3000 psig (20.7 MPa)**] or as directed by the Owner , 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement, as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with requirements of the code(s) and authority having jurisdiction for testing, inspection, and purging of LPG installation.

B. LPG installation will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Defective products are to be replaced.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.16 DEMONSTRATION

A. [**Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train**] [**Train**] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain LPG equipment.

3.17 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Underground piping is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. PE pipe, tubing, and fittings joined by heat-fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
2. Polyamide pipe, tubing, and fittings terminated in an accessible location.
3. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
4. [**Annealed**] [**Drawn**]-temper copper tube, Type L (Type B) with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.
5. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
6. CSST tubing and fittings with integral vented sleeve terminated in an accessible location.

B. Aboveground piping is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. CSST and fittings.
2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
3. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings.
4. [**Annealed**] [**Drawn**]-temper copper tube, Type L (Type B,) with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for copper tubing.

C. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper, with wrought-copper fittings and [**brazed**] [**flared**] joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no pipe joints in concrete.

3.18 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG (3.45 kPa)

A. Aboveground piping is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. CSST and fittings.
2. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
3. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and [**brazed**] [**flared**] joints.
4. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
5. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
6. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
7. Drawn-temper copper tube, Type L (Type B) with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

B. Underground, below building, piping is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
3. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
4. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.19 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG (3.45 kPa) AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG (34.5 kPa)

A. Aboveground piping is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. CSST and fittings.
2. Annealed-temper, tin-lined copper tube with flared joints and fittings.
3. Annealed-temper copper tube, Type L (Type B) with wrought-copper fittings and [**brazed**] [**flared**] joints.
4. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
5. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
6. Schedule 40, steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
7. Drawn-temper copper tube, [**Type L (Type B)**] [**Type G**] with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

B. Underground, below building, piping is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
3. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
4. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.20 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 5 PSIG (34.5 kPa)

A. Aboveground Piping: Maximum operating pressure more than [**5 psig (34.5 kPa)**] or as directed by the Owner .

B. Aboveground piping is to be [**one of**] the following:

1. CSST and fittings.
2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
3. Drawn-temper copper tube, [**Type L (Type B)**] [**Type G**] with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

C. Underground, below building, piping is to be [**one of**] the following:

1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
3. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
4. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.21 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.

B. Underground Vapor Piping:

1. PE valves.
2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze, [**lubricated**] [**nonlubricated**] plug valves.
3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Cast-iron, [**lubricated**] [**nonlubricated**] plug valves.

3.22 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, [**full**] [**regular**]-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
3. Bronze plug valve.

B. Valves for pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger is to be[**one of**] the following:

1. Two-piece, [**full**] [**regular**]-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
2. Bronze plug valve.
3. Cast-iron, [**nonlubricated**] [**lubricated**] plug valve.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13 23c

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 13 23d - HYDRONIC PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydronic piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
   a. Hot-water heating piping.
   b. Chilled-water piping.
   c. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping.
   d. Condenser-water piping.
   e. Glycol cooling-water piping.
   f. Makeup-water piping.
   g. Condensate-drain piping.
   h. Blowdown-drain piping.
   i. Air-vent piping.
   j. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

C. Definitions
1. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
2. RTRF: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) fittings.
3. RTRP: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) pipe.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
   a. Hot-Water Heating Piping: **psig (kPa),** as directed by the Owner at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
   b. Chilled-Water Piping: **psig (kPa),** as directed by the Owner at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
   c. Dual-Temperature Heating and Cooling Water Piping: **psig (kPa),** ethylene at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
   d. Condenser-Water Piping: **psig (kPa),** as directed by the Owner at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
   e. Glycol Cooling-Water Piping: **psig (kPa),** as directed by the Owner at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
   f. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
   g. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F (66 deg C).
   h. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
   i. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
   j. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of the following:
   a. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
   c. Pressure-seal fittings.
   d. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
   e. Air control devices.

f. Chemical treatment.
g. Hydronic specialties.

2. LEED Submittal:
   a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 (1:50) scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer.
6. Field quality-control test reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
8. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications:
   a. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by the pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
   b. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by the manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.
2. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
   a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
   b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
4. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Copper Tube And Fittings
1. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), **as directed**.
2. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).
3. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
4. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
   a. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
   b. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated, **as directed**, EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F (110 deg C) for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
5. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
   a. Housing: Copper.
   b. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.

c. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
d. Minimum 200-psig (1379-kPa) working-pressure rating at 250 deg F (121 deg C).

6. Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
7. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

B. Steel Pipe And Fittings

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
2. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
3. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
4. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
5. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
6. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
7. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
   a. Material Group: 1.1.
   b. End Connections: Butt welding.
   c. Facings: Raised face.
8. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
   a. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
   b. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
9. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
   a. Housing: Steel.
   b. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
   c. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
   d. Minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) working-pressure rating at 230 deg F (110 deg C).
10. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

C. Plastic Pipe And Fittings

1. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedules 40 and 80, plain ends as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
2. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
3. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedules 40 and 80, plain ends as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
4. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.

D. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings

1. RTRP: ASTM D 2996, filament-wound pipe with tapered bell and spigot ends for adhesive joints.
2. RTRF: Compression or spray-up/contact molded of same material, pressure class, and joining method as pipe.
3. Flanges: ASTM D 4024. Full-face gaskets suitable for the service, minimum 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) thick, 60-70 durometer. ASTM A 307, Grade B, hex head bolts with washers.

E. Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
6. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
7. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
   a. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
      1) Use CPVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
      2) Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
   b. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
      1) Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
      2) Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.
   a. Use fiberglass adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

F. Transition Fittings
1. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
   a. CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end.
2. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
   a. MSS SP-107, CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, union. Include brass or copper end, Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

G. Dielectric Fittings
1. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
3. Dielectric Unions:
   a. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
4. Dielectric Flanges:
   a. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
5. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
   a. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.

b. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

6. Dielectric Couplings:
   a. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
7. Dielectric Nipples:
   a. Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

H. Valves
1. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 22 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
2. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
3. Plastic Ball Valves:
   a. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece CPVC or PVC to match piping.
   b. Ball: Full-port CPVC or PVC to match piping.
   c. Seats: PTFE.
   d. Seals: EPDM.
   e. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
   f. Handle Style: Tee shape.
   g. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
   h. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
   i. Comply with MSS SP-122.
4. Plastic Butterfly Valves:
   a. Body: PVC or CPVC to match piping wafer type for installation between flanges.
   b. Disc: EPDM-coated steel.
   c. Seats: PTFE.
   d. Handle Style: Locking lever.
   e. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
   f. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
5. Plastic Check Valves:
   a. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece PVC or CPVC to match piping.
   b. Ends: Socket or flanged.
   c. Seats: PTFE.
   d. Check Style: Swing or ball type.
   e. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
   f. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
6. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
   a. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
   b. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
   c. Plug: Resin.
   d. Seat: PTFE.
   e. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
   f. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
   g. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
   h. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
   i. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
7. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
   a. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
   b. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
   c. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
   d. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
   e. Seat: PTFE.

f. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
g. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
h. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
i. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
j. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

8. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves:
   a. Body: Bronze or brass.
   b. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
   c. Seat: Brass.
   d. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
   e. Diaphragm: EPT.
   f. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
   g. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
   h. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
   i. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
9. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves:
   a. Body: Bronze or brass.
   b. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
   c. Seat: Brass.
   d. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
   e. Diaphragm: EPT.
   f. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
   g. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
   h. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
   i. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
10. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:
    a. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
    b. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel **OR** Corrosion resistant, **as directed**, tamper proof, self cleaning, and removable.
    c. Combination Assemblies: Include bonze or brass-alloy ball valve.
    d. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
    e. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
    f. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
    g. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa) **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
    h. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.

I. Air Control Devices
1. Manual Air Vents:
   a. Body: Bronze.
   b. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
   c. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
   d. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
   e. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
   f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).
2. Automatic Air Vents:
   a. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
   b. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
   c. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
   d. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).

e. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

3. Expansion Tanks:
   a. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested with taps fabricated and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
   b. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. (379-L) unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
   c. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 240 deg F (116 deg C) maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
   d. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- (20-mm-) diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.
4. Diaphragm-Type **OR** Bladder-Type, **as directed**, Expansion Tanks:
   a. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
   b. Diaphragm **OR** Bladder, **as directed**: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
   c. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.
5. Tangential-Type Air Separators:
   a. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
   b. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
   c. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
   d. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
   e. Size: Match system flow capacity.
6. In-Line Air Separators:
   a. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
   b. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
   c. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).
7. Air Purgers:
   a. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
   b. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   c. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

J. Chemical Treatment
1. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 5-gal. (19-L) capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
   a. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.
2. Ethylene and Propylene Glycol: Industrial grade with corrosion inhibitors and environmental-stabilizer additives for mixing with water in systems indicated to contain antifreeze or glycol solutions.

K. Hydronic Piping Specialties
1. Y-Pattern Strainers:

a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

2. Basket Strainers:
a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

3. T-Pattern Strainers:
a. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
b. End Connections: Grooved ends.
c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**,-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
d. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).

4. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:
a. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
b. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
c. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
d. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

5. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:
a. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
b. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
c. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
d. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

6. Expansion fittings are specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Hvac Piping".

1.3 EXECUTION

1. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

2. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.

d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.

3. Hot-water heating piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
   a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
4. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
   a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
   b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
   c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
   d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
5. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
   a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
   c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
   d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
   e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
6. Chilled-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
   a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
7. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
   a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
   b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
   c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
   d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
8. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
   a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
   b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
   c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
   d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
   e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
9. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
   a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
   b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
10. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
    a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.

b. Schedule 80 **OR** 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

11. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
    a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**,, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
    b. Schedule 80 **OR** 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
    c. Schedule 80 **OR** 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
    d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
    e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
12. Condenser-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
    a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
    b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
13. Glycol cooling-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
    a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
    b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
    c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
    d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
14. Glycol cooling-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
    a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
    b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
    c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
    d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
    e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
15. Glycol cooling-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
    a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
    b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
16. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be either of the following:
    a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
    b. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings, and solvent-welded joints.
17. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
18. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M (C) **OR** DWV, **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints, **as directed**.
    OR
    Condensate-Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

19. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
20. Air-Vent Piping:
    a. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
    b. Outlet: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
21. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Valve Applications
1. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install throttling-duty **OR** calibrated-orifice, balancing, **as directed**, valves at each branch connection to return main.
3. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
4. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
5. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
6. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

C. Piping Installations
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
5. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
6. Install piping at indicated slopes.
7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
9. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
10. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
11. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
12. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
13. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
14. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side down.
15. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed, **as directed**, tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
16. Install valves according to Division 22 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
17. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

18. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
19. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).
20. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Hvac Piping".
21. Identify piping as specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".

D. Hangers And Supports
1. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
2. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Fire-suppression Piping And Equipment" OR Division 22 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
3. Install the following pipe attachments:
    a. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
    b. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
    c. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
    d. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
    e. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
    f. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
4. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
    a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    d. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    e. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    f. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
    g. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
    h. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): Maximum span, 13 feet (4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
    i. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
    j. NPS 5 (DN 125): Maximum span, 16 feet (4.9 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
    k. NPS 6 (DN 150): Maximum span, 17 feet (5.2 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (20 mm).
    l. NPS 8 (DN 200): Maximum span, 19 feet (5.8 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (20 mm).
    m. NPS 10 (DN 250): Maximum span, 22 feet (6.7 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (20 mm).
    n. NPS 12 (DN 300): Maximum span, 23 feet (7 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (20 mm).
    o. NPS 14 (DN 350): Maximum span, 25 feet (7.6 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (24 mm).
    p. NPS 16 (DN 400): Maximum span, 27 feet (8.2 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (24 mm).
    q. NPS 18 (DN 450): Maximum span, 28 feet (8.5 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (24 mm).
    r. NPS 20 (DN 500): Maximum span, 30 feet (9.1 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (30 mm).
5. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
    a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
d. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
e. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
f. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
g. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).

6. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
7. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
8. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

E. Pipe Joint Construction
1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
   c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
   d. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
10. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
11. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
12. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
13. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

F. Hydronic Specialties Installation

1. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
   OR
   Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
2. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
3. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
   OR
   Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
4. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
5. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
   a. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
   b. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.

   OR

   Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

G. Terminal Equipment Connections
1. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
2. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
3. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
4. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 22 Section(s) "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

H. Chemical Treatment
1. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
   a. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
   b. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
   c. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
   d. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum 100 ppm. Modify this value if closed system contains glycol.
   e. Corrosion Inhibitor:
      1) Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
      2) Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
      3) Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
      4) Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
      5) Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
   f. Soluble Copper: Maximum 0.20 ppm.
   g. Tolyiriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum 10 ppm.
   h. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum 10 ppm.

i. Ammonia: Maximum 20 ppm.
j. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum 20 ppm.
k. Microbiological Limits:
1) Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum 1000 organisms/ml.
2) Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum 100 organisms/ml.
3) Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/ml.
4) Sulfate Reducers: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
5) Iron Bacteria: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.

2. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
3. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.
4. Fill systems indicated to have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:
a. Hot-Water Heating Piping: Minimum percent ethylene, as directed by the Owner **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.
b. Chilled-Water Piping: Minimum percent ethylene, as directed by the Owner **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.
c. Dual-Temperature Heating and Cooling Water Piping: Minimum percent, as directed by the Owner ethylene **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.
d. Glycol Cooling-Water Piping: Minimum percent ethylene, as directed by the Owner. **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.

I. Field Quality Control
1. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
b. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
c. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
d. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
e. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
2. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
a. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
b. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
c. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
d. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
e. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
f. Prepare written report of testing.
3. Perform the following before operating the system:
a. Open manual valves fully.
b. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
c. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
d. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).

e. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
f. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
g. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13 23d

SECTION 23 21 13 23e - RADIANT HEATING PIPING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for radiant heating piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes radiant heating piping, including pipes, fittings, and piping specialties.

C. Definitions
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. PEX: Crosslinked polyethylene.
3. PEX/AL/PEX: Crosslinked polyethylene/aluminum/crosslinked polyethylene.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of radiant heating pipe, fitting, manifold, specialty, and control.
   a. For radiant heating piping and manifolds, include pressure and temperature rating, oxygen-barrier performance, fire-performance characteristics, and water flow and pressure drop characteristics.
2. Shop Drawings: Show piping layout and details drawn to scale, including valves, manifolds, controls, and support assemblies, and their attachments to building structure.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. PEX Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe Material: PEX plastic according to ASTM F 876.
2. Oxygen Barrier: Limit oxygen diffusion through the tube to maximum 0.10 mg per cu. m/day at 104 deg F (40 deg C) according to DIN 4726.
3. Fittings: ASTM F 1807, metal insert and copper crimp rings.
4. Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 100 psig (690 kPa) and 180 deg F (82 deg C).

B. PEX/AL/PEX Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe Material: PEX plastic bonded to the inside and outside of a welded aluminum tube according to ASTM F 1281.
2. Oxygen Barrier: Limit oxygen diffusion through the pipe to maximum 0.10 mg per cu. m/day at 104 deg F (40 deg C) according to DIN 4726.
3. Fittings: ASTM F 1974, metal insert fittings with split ring and compression nut (compression joint) or metal insert fittings with copper crimp rings (crimp joint).
4. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 50 or less, respectively, tested according to ASTM E 84.
5. Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 100 psig (690 kPa) and 210 deg F (99 deg C).

C. EPDM Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe Material: Crosslinked EPDM inner and outer tubes.
2. Wall Thickness: Minimum 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
3. Oxygen Barrier: Ductile aluminum foil layer applied to the inner tube to limit oxygen diffusion through the pipe to maximum 0.10 mg per cu. m/day at 104 deg F (40 deg C) according to DIN 4726.

4. Reinforcing Braid: Braided-aluminum wire between the inner and outer tube.
5. Fittings: ASTM F 1807, copper with stainless-steel crimps or clamps.
6. Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 100 psig (690 kPa) and 210 deg F (99 deg C).

D. Distribution Manifolds
1. Manifold: Minimum NPS 1 (DN 25), brass **OR** copper **OR** modular plastic **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Main Shutoff Valves:
   a. Factory installed on supply and return connections.
   b. Two **OR** Three, **as directed**,-piece body.
   c. Body: Brass or bronze.
   d. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
   e. Seals: PTFE.
   f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).
3. Manual Air Vents:
   a. Body: Bronze.
   b. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
   c. Operator: Key furnished with valve, or screwdriver bit.
   d. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
   e. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
   f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).
4. Balancing Valves:
   a. Body: Plastic or bronze, ball or plug, or globe cartridge type.
   b. Ball or Plug: Brass or stainless steel.
   c. Globe Cartridge and Washer: Brass with EPDM composition washer.
   d. Seat: PTFE.
   e. Visual Flow Indicator: Flowmeter with visible indication in a clear plastic cap at top of valve.
      OR
      Differential Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable meter to measure loss across calibrated orifice.
   f. Handle Style: Lever or knob, with memory stop to retain set position if used for shutoff.
   g. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
   h. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
5. Zone Control Valves:
   a. Body: Plastic or bronze, ball or plug, or globe cartridge type.
   b. Ball or Plug: Brass or stainless steel.
   c. Globe Cartridge and Washer: Brass with EPDM composition washer.
   d. Seat: PTFE.
   e. Actuator: Replaceable electric motor.
   f. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
   g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
6. Thermometers:
   a. Mount on supply and return connections.
   b. Case: Dry type, metal or plastic, 2-inch (50-mm) diameter.
   c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
   d. Movement: Mechanical, connecting element and pointer.
   e. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
   f. Pointer: Black metal.
   g. Window: Plastic.
   h. Connector: Rigid, back type.
   i. Thermal System: Liquid- or mercury-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem.

j. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

7. Mounting Brackets: Copper, or plastic or copper-clad steel, where in contact with manifold.

E. Piping Specialties

1. Cable Ties:
   a. Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
   b. Minimum Width: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
   c. Tensile Strength: 20 lb (9 kg), minimum.
   d. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
2. Floor-Mounting Staples:
   a. Steel, with corrosion-resistant coating and smooth finish without sharp edges.
   b. Minimum Thickness: 3/32 inch (2.4 mm).
   c. Width: Minimum, wider than tubing.
3. Floor-Mounting Clamps:
   a. Two bolt, steel, with corrosion-resistant coating and smooth finish without sharp edges.
   b. Minimum Thickness: 3/32 inch (2.4 mm).
   c. Width: Minimum, wider than tubing.
4. Floor Mounting Tracks:
   a. Aluminum or plastic channel track with smooth finish, no sharp edges.
   b. Minimum Thickness: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
   c. Slot Width: Snap fit to hold tubing.
   d. Slot Spacing: 2-inch (50-mm) **OR** 3-inch (75-mm), **as directed**, intervals.
5. Channeled Subfloor:
   a. Plywood, APA-rated subfloor panel, composed of premium, tongue-and-groove, 7-layer, Douglas fir structural subfloor panels.
   b. Particleboard manufactured to meet Federal Housing Authority standards of less than 0.3-ppm formaldehyde.
   c. Clad panel with minimum 0.025-inch- (0.635-mm-) thick aluminum recessed in the grooves sized to maintain contact with radiant piping.
6. Modular Interlocking Blocks:
   a. Polypropylene snap-together blocks with grooves to support piping.
   b. Galvanized sheet metal or aluminum emission plates.
   c. Natural mineralboard cover panel.
7. Heat-Emission Plates:
   a. Formed aluminum suitable for radiant heating piping.
   b. Minimum Thickness: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
   c. Slot Width: Snap fit to maintain pressure fit on tubing.

F. Controls

1. Temperature-control devices and sequence of operations are specified in Division 23 Section(s) "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" AND "Sequence Of Operations For Hvac Controls".
2. Wall-Mounting Thermostat:
   a. Minimum temperature range from 50 to 90 deg F (10 to 32 deg C).
   b. Manually operated with on-off switch.
   c. Day and night setback and clock program with minimum four periods per day.
   d. Operate pumps or open zone control valves if room temperature falls below the thermostat setting, and stop pumps or close zone control valves when room temperature rises above the thermostat setting.
3. Heated-Panel Thermostat:
   a. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 50 to 90 deg F (10 to 32 deg C).
   b. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected pump or zone control valve.
   c. Remote bulb on capillary tube, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing radiant panel temperature.
   d. Stop pump or close zone control valves if heated-panel thermostat setting is exceeded.

e. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

4. Heated-Panel Thermostat with Outdoor Temperature Reset:
   a. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 50 to 90 deg F (10 to 32 deg C).
   b. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected pump and zone control valve.
   c. Remote bulb on capillary tube, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing radiant panel temperature.
   d. Remote bulb on capillary tube, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing outdoor-air temperature.
   e. Operate zone control valves to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outdoor-air temperature as follows:
      1) Low outdoor-air temperature, zero deg F (minus 18 deg C) with high supply-water temperature 110 deg F (43 deg C).
      2) High outdoor-air temperature, 60 deg F (16 deg C) with low supply-water temperature 70 deg F (21 deg C).
   f. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.
5. Precipitation and Temperature Sensor:
   a. Microprocessor-based **OR** Automatic, **as directed**, control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.
   b. Precipitation and temperature sensors shall sense the surface conditions of pavement and shall be programmed to operate pump and zone control valves as follows:
      1) Temperature Span: 34 to 44 deg F (1 to 7 deg C).
      2) Adjustable Delay Off Span: 30 to 90 minutes.
      3) Start Pump or Open Zone Control Valves: Following two-minute delay if ambient temperature is below set point and precipitation is detected.
      4) Stop Pump or Close Zone Control Valves: On detection of a dry surface plus time delay.
   c. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and precipitation and temperature sensors.
   d. Minimum 30-A contactor to start pump and open valves.
   e. Precipitation sensor shall be mounted in pavement.
   f. Provide relay with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, for interface with central HVAC control system workstation.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Applications
   1. Install the following types of radiant heating piping for the applications described:
      a. Piping in Exterior Pavement: EPDM **OR** PEX **OR** PEX/AL/PEX, **as directed**.
      b. Piping in Interior Reinforced-Concrete Floors: EPDM **OR** PEX **OR** PEX/AL/PEX, **as directed**.
      c. Piping in Level Fill Concrete Floors (Not Reinforced): EPDM **OR** PEX **OR** PEX/AL/PEX, **as directed**.
      d. Piping in Ceilings: EPDM **OR** PEX **OR** PEX/AL/PEX, **as directed**.
      e. Piping in Subfloors: EPDM **OR** PEX **OR** PEX/AL/PEX, **as directed**.
      f. Piping below Wood Floors: EPDM **OR** PEX **OR** PEX/AL/PEX, **as directed**.

B. Installation
   1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop or Coordination Drawings.
   2. Install radiant heating piping continuous from the manifold through the heated panel and back to the manifold without piping joints in heated panels.

3. Connect radiant piping to manifold in a reverse-return arrangement.
4. Do not bend pipes in radii smaller than manufacturer's minimum bend radius dimensions.
5. Install manifolds in accessible locations, or install access panels to provide maintenance access as required in Division 08 Section "Access Doors And Frames".
6. Refer to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping" for pipes and connections to hydronic systems and for glycol-solution fill requirements.
7. Fire- and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
8. Piping in Exterior Pavement:
    a. Secure piping in concrete floors by attaching pipes to reinforcement using cable ties.
    b. Space cable ties a maximum of 18 inches (457 mm) o.c., and at center of turns or bends.
    c. Maintain 3-inch (75-mm) minimum cover.
    d. Install a sleeve of 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick, foam-type insulation or PE pipe around tubing and extending for a minimum of 10 inches (250 mm) on each side of slab joints to protect the tubing passing through expansion or control joints. Anchor sleeve to slab form at control joints to provide maximum clearance for saw cut.
    e. Maintain minimum 40-psig (275-kPa) pressure in piping during concrete placement and continue for 24 hours after placement.
9. Piping in Interior Reinforced-Concrete Floors:
    a. Secure piping in concrete floors by attaching pipes to reinforcement using cable ties.
    b. Space cable ties a maximum of 18 inches (457 mm) o.c., and at center of turns or bends.
    c. Maintain 2-inch (50-mm) minimum cover.
    d. Install a sleeve of 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick, foam-type insulation or PE pipe around tubing and extending for a minimum of 10 inches (250 mm) on each side of slab joints to protect the tubing passing through expansion or control joints. Anchor sleeve to slab form at control joints to provide maximum clearance for saw cut.
    e. Maintain minimum 40-psig (275-kPa) pressure in piping during concrete placement and continue for 24 hours after placement.
10. Piping in Level Fill Concrete Floors (Not Reinforced):
    a. Secure piping in concrete floors by attaching pipes to subfloor using tracks, clamps, or staples.
    b. Space tracks, clamps, or staples a maximum of 18 inches (457 mm) o.c., and at center of turns or bends.
    c. Maintain 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum cover.
    d. Install a sleeve of 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick, foam-type insulation or PE pipe around tubing and extending for a minimum of 10 inches (250 mm) on each side of slab joints to protect the tubing passing through expansion or control joints. Anchor sleeve to slab form at control joints to provide maximum clearance for saw cut.
    e. Maintain minimum 40-psig (275-kPa) pressure in piping during the concrete pour and continue for 24 hours during curing.
11. Piping in Ceiling:
    a. Secure piping by attaching pipes to ceiling substrate using clamps or staples.
    b. Space clamps or staples a maximum of 18 inches (457 mm) o.c., and at center of turns or bends.
    c. Maintain 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) minimum plaster cover.
    d. Maintain minimum 40-psig (275-kPa) pressure in piping during the plaster application and continue for 24 hours during curing.
12. Piping in Subfloor:
    a. Secure piping by laying piping in subfloor channels or modular interlocking blocks.
    b. Use straight channel panels or blocks in the center, and curved channel panels or blocks at the ends.
    c. Finish floor with mineralboard panel cover or finished floor surface.
13. Piping below Wood Floor:
    a. Secure piping by attaching pipes to subfloor using heat-emission plates, clamps, or staples.

b. Space heat-emission plates, clamps, or staples a maximum of 4 inches (100 mm) o.c., and at center of turns or bends.
c. Install heat-emission plates on underside of wood subfloor with maximum space between plates, as noted above, to maintain pipe contact with floor.

14. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and ensure integrity of piping and as approved.
15. After system balancing has been completed, mark balancing valves to permanently indicate final position.
16. Perform the following adjustments before operating the system:
    a. Open valves to fully open position.
    b. Check operation of automatic valves.
    c. Set temperature controls so all zones call for full flow.
    d. Purge air from piping.
17. After the concrete or plaster heating panel has cured as recommended by concrete or plaster supplier, operate radiant heating system as follows:
    a. Start system heating at a maximum of 10 deg F (6 deg C) above the ambient radiant panel temperature, and increase 10 deg F (6 deg C) each following day until design temperature is achieved.
    b. For freeze protection, operate at a maximum of 60 deg F (16 deg C) supply-water temperature.

C. Field Quality Control
1. Prepare radiant heating piping for testing as follows:
    a. Open all isolation valves and close bypass valves.
    b. Open and verify operation of zone control valves.
    c. Flush with clean water, and clean strainers.
2. Tests and Inspections:
    a. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Subject piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure but not more than 100 psig (690 kPa). Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    b. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning radiant heating piping components that do not pass tests, and retest as specified above.
4. Prepare a written report of testing.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13 23e

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 21 13 23	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
23 21 13 23	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00	Domestic Water Piping
23 21 13 23	22 13 16 00	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00a	Storm Drainage Piping
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00b	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00c	Compressed-Air Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00d	Vacuum Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00e	Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
23 21 13 23	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
23 21 13 23	22 12 23 26	Facility Fuel-Oil Piping
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00f	Steam And Condensate Piping
23 21 13 23	22 11 16 00g	Refrigerant Piping
23 21 13 23	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
23 21 13 23	22 05 23 00b	Water Distribution
23 21 13 23	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
23 21 13 23	22 05 76 00a	Sanitary Sewerage
23 21 13 23	23 05 29 00a	Steam Distribution
23 21 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
23 21 16 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
23 21 16 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
23 21 16 00	22 11 16 00b	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
23 21 16 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
23 21 16 00	22 12 23 26	Facility Fuel-Oil Piping
23 21 16 00	23 21 13 23c	Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping
23 21 16 00	22 12 23 26a	Underground Storage Tanks
23 21 16 00	23 21 13 23d	Hydronic Piping
23 21 16 00	23 21 23 13	Hydronic Pumps
23 21 16 00	22 11 16 00f	Steam And Condensate Piping
23 21 16 00	22 11 16 00g	Refrigerant Piping
23 21 16 00	22 11 19 00	Electronic Air Cleaners
23 21 16 00	22 05 23 00b	Water Distribution
23 21 16 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
23 21 16 00	23 05 29 00a	Steam Distribution

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 23 13 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydronic pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
b. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
c. Separately coupled, horizontal, in-line centrifugal pumps.
d. Separately coupled, vertical, in-line centrifugal pumps.
e. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
f. Separately coupled, base-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
g. Separately coupled, vertical-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
h. Separately coupled, vertical-mounted, turbine centrifugal pumps.
i. Automatic condensate pump units.

C. Definitions
1. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
2. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
2. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.
2. Store pumps in dry location.
3. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.
4. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.
5. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Close-Coupled, In-Line Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** union end, **as directed**, connections.
b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel**, as directed**.
d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
f. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
3. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and rigidly mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

B. Close-Coupled, End-Suction Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** flanged, **as directed**, connections.
b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
e. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
f. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; rigidly mounted to pump casing with integral pump support. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

C. Separately Coupled, Horizontal, In-Line Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa), **as**

directed, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.

2. Pump Construction:
   a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** union end, **as directed**, connections.
   b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
   c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
   e. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert with interlocking spider **OR** Interlocking frame with interconnecting springs, **as directed**, capable of absorbing vibration.
4. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated ball **OR** oil-lubricated sleeve, **as directed**, bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and resiliently **OR** rigidly, **as directed**, mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

D. Separately Coupled, Vertical, In-Line Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
   a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** union end, **as directed**, connections.
   b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
   c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
   d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
   e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
   f. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
3. Shaft Coupling: Axially split spacer coupling.
4. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; rigidly mounted to pump casing with lifting eye and supporting lugs in motor enclosure. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

E. Separately Coupled, Base-Mounted, End-Suction Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
   a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and threaded companion-flange **OR** flanged, **as directed**, connections. Provide integral mount

on volute to support the casing, and attached piping to allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping or requiring the realignment of pump and motor shaft, **as directed**.

b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket.
e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
f. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor **OR** EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications, **as directed**.
4. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
5. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.
6. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

F. Separately Coupled, Base-Mounted, Double-Suction Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
a. Casing: Radially **OR** Horizontally, **as directed**, split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and ASME B16.1, Class 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, flanges. Casing supports shall allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping, **as directed**.
b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
c. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket.
e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
f. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor **OR** EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications, **as directed**.
4. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
5. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.

6. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

G. Separately Coupled, Vertical-Mounted, Double-Suction Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
   a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom of volute, mounting support, and ASME B16.1, Class 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, flanges.
   b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
   c. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
   d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket.
   e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
   f. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration.
4. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

H. Separately Coupled, Vertical-Mounted, Turbine Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, single-stage **OR** multistage, **as directed**, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, end-suction pump as defined in HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically and projecting into a sump. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C).
2. Pump Construction:
   a. Pump Bowl: Cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear ring, **as directed**, cone **OR** basket, **as directed**, strainer, and suction bell. Water passages of intermediate bowls shall be coated with porcelain enamel, **as directed**.
   b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
   c. Pump Shaft: Carbon **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel sized per AWWA E-101.
   d. Pump Bearings: Water-lubricated bronze and rubber sleeve bearings contained in cast-iron housing.
   e. Pump Column: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Grade B steel pipe.
   f. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Seal shall be replaceable without removing the motor or disturbing the piping.
   g. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
3. Shaft Coupling: Keyed with locking collets.
4. Discharge Head: ASME B16.1, Class 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, discharge flange with threaded gage tapping. Top of discharge head shall have a registered fit to accurately locate the driver.
5. Drive Ratchet: Nonreversing ratchet.

6. Hollow Shaft Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to discharge head. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

I. Automatic Condensate Pump Units
1. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch- (1800-mm-) minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

J. Pump Specialty Fittings
1. Suction Diffuser: Angle pattern, 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 300-psig (2060-kPa), **as directed**, pressure rating, cast **OR** ductile, **as directed**,-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory-fabricated support.
2. Triple-Duty Valve: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 300-psig (2060-kPa), **as directed**, pressure rating, cast **OR** ductile, **as directed**,-iron body, pump-discharge fitting; with drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features. Brass gage ports with integral check valve, and orifice for flow measurement.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Concrete Bases
1. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for pumps and controllers. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac"
a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
2. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 31.

B. Pump Installation
1. Comply with HI 1.4 **OR** HI 2.4, **as directed**.
2. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
3. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
4. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers **OR** spring hangers **OR** spring hangers with vertical-limit stop, **as directed**, of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
5. Suspend vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps independent of piping. Install pumps with motor and pump shafts vertical. Use continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers **OR** spring hangers **OR** spring hangers with vertical-limit stop, **as directed**, of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Fire-suppression Piping And Equipment" AND Division 23 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" AND Division 23 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".

6. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment procedure is complete.
   a. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm) between pump base and foundation for grouting.
   b. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.
7. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

C. Alignment
1. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.
2. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
3. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation" **OR** HI 2.1-2.5, "Vertical Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation",**as directed**.
4. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

D. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
4. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
5. Install check valve and throttling **OR** triple-duty, **as directed**, valve on discharge side of pumps.
6. Install Y-type strainer **OR** suction diffuser, **as directed**, and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
7. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
8. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge, at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple input selector valve.
9. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
10. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.
11. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
12. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

END OF SECTION 23 21 23 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 21 23 13	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
23 21 23 13	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
23 21 23 16	23 21 23 13	Hydronic Pumps
23 21 23 16	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
23 21 23 16	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 23 23 - ELECTRIC-DRIVE, VERTICAL-TURBINE FIRE PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electric-drive, vertical-turbine fire pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Vertical-turbine fire pumps.
   b. Fire-pump accessories and specialties.
   c. Flowmeter systems.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Fire pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Pump Equipment, Accessory, and Specialty Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum unless higher pressure rating is indicated.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, performance curves, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For fire pumps, motor drivers, and fire-pump accessories and specialties. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Product Certificates: For each fire pump, from manufacturer.
5. Source quality-control reports.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 20, "Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection."

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps
   1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested fire-pump and driver unit.
   2. Base: Fabricated and attached to fire-pump and driver unit with reinforcement to resist movement of pump during seismic events when base is anchored to building substrate.
   3. Finish: Red paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.

B. Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps
   1. Pump Head: Cast iron, for surface discharge.
      a. Discharge Outlet: With flange according to ASME B16.1 except connections may be threaded according to ASME B1.20.1, in sizes where flanges are not available.
      b. Pump Head Seal: Stuffing box and packing.
      c. Base: Cast iron or steel with hole for electrical cable.
   2. Pump:
      a. Standard: UL 448, for vertical-turbine pumps for fire service.
      b. Line Shaft: Stainless steel or steel, with corrosion-resistant shaft sleeves.
      c. Line Shaft Bearings: Rubber sleeve, water lubricated.
      d. Line Shaft: Steel.
      e. Line Shaft Bearings: Corrosion resistant, oil lubricated.
      f. Impeller Shaft: Monel metal or stainless steel.
      g. Bowl Section: Multiple cast-iron bowls with closed-type bronze or stainless-steel impellers.
      h. Column Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends and cast-iron or steel fittings, in sections 10 feet (3 m) or less.
      i. Suction Strainer: Cast or fabricated, bronze or stainless steel, and sized to restrict passage of 0.5-inch (12.7-mm) spheres.
   3. Driver:
      a. Standard: UL 1004A.
      b. Type: Electric motor; NEMA MG 1, polyphase Design B.
      c. Mounting: On pump head above pump.

C. Fire-Pump Accessories And Specialties
   1. Automatic Air-Release Valves: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation in fire-pump discharge piping.
   2. Relief Valves:
      a. Description: UL 1478, bronze or cast iron, spring loaded; for installation in fire-suppression water-supply piping.
   3. Outlet Fitting: Concentric tapered reducer at pump-head discharge outlet.
   4. Discharge Cone: Closed **OR** Open, **as directed**, type.
   5. Hose Valve Manifold Assembly:
      a. Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 20.
      b. Header Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized steel with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
      c. Header Pipe Fittings: ASME B16.4, galvanized cast-iron threaded fittings.
      d. Automatic Drain Valve: UL 1726.
      e. Manifold:
         1) Test Connections: Comply with UL 405 except provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
         2) Body: Flush type, brass or ductile iron, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
         3) Nipples: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
         4) Adapters and Caps with Chain: Brass or bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
         5) Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; rectangular.
         6) Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.

7) Exposed Parts Finish: Polished **OR** Rough, **as directed**, brass, **as directed**, chrome plated, **as directed**.
8) Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."

OR

Manifold:

1) Test Connections: Comply with UL 405 except provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
2) Body: Exposed type, brass, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
3) Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; round.
4) Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads. Include caps and chains.
5) Exposed Parts Finish: Polished **OR** Rough, **as directed**, brass, **as directed**, chrome plated, **as directed**.
6) Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."

D. Flowmeter Systems
1. Description: UL-listed or FM-Approved, fire-pump flowmeter system with capability to indicate flow to not less than 175 percent of fire-pump rated capacity.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
3. Sensor: Annubar probe, orifice plate, or venturi unless otherwise indicated. Sensor size shall match pipe, tubing, flowmeter, and fittings.
4. Permanently Mounted Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) in diameter. Include bracket or device for wall mounting.
   a. Tubing Package: NPS 1/8 or NPS 1/4 (DN 6 or DN 10) soft copper **OR** plastic, **as directed**, tubing with copper or brass fittings and valves.

   OR

   Portable Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) in diameter and with two 12-foot- (3.7-m-) long hoses in carrying case.

E. Grout
1. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Characteristics: Nonshrink and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
3. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

F. Source Quality Control
1. Testing: Test and inspect fire pumps according to UL 448 requirements for "Operation Test" and "Manufacturing and Protection Tests."
   a. Verification of Performance: Rate fire pumps according to UL 448.
2. Fire pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
3. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Fire-Pump Installation Standard: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation of fire pumps, relief valves, and related components.
2. Equipment Mounting: Install fire pumps on concrete bases. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
   a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
   b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.

c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

3. Install fire-pump discharge piping equal to or larger than size required by NFPA 20.
4. Support piping and pumps separately so weight of piping does not rest on pumps.
5. Install valves that are same size as connecting piping. Comply with requirements for fire-protection valves specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes" OR "Wet-pipe Sprinkler Systems", **as directed**.
6. Install pressure gage on pump head discharge flange pressure-gage tapping. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes" OR "Wet-pipe Sprinkler Systems", **as directed**.
7. Install flowmeters and sensors. Install flowmeter-system components and make connections according to NFPA 20 and manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not factory mounted. Furnish copies of manufacturers' wiring diagram submittals to electrical Installer.
9. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

B. Alignment
1. Align pump and driver shafts after complete unit has been leveled on concrete base, grout has set, and anchor bolts have been tightened.
2. After alignment is correct, tighten anchor bolts evenly. Fill baseplate completely with grout, with metal blocks and shims or wedges in place. Tighten anchor bolts after grout has hardened. Check alignment and make required corrections.
3. Align piping connection.
4. Align pump and driver shafts for angular and parallel alignment according to HI 2.4 and to tolerances specified by manufacturer.

C. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping and valves specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes" OR "Wet-pipe Sprinkler Systems", **as directed**. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to pumps and equipment to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect relief-valve discharge to drainage piping or point of discharge.
4. Connect flowmeter-system meters, sensors, and valves to tubing.
5. Connect fire pumps to their controllers.

D. Identification
1. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for fire-pump marking according to NFPA 20.

E. Field Quality Control
1. Test each fire pump with its controller as a unit. Comply with requirements for electric-motor-driver fire-pump controllers specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Electric-drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" OR "Diesel-drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" OR "Electric-drive, Vertical-turbine Fire Pumps" OR "Diesel-drive, Vertical-turbine Fire Pumps"
2. Perform tests and inspections.
   a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
3. Tests and Inspections:
   a. After installing components, assemblies, and equipment including controller, test for compliance with requirements.
   b. Test according to NFPA 20 for acceptance and performance testing.

c. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
d. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
e. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

4. Components, assemblies, and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.
6. Furnish fire hoses in number, size, and length required to reach storm drain or other acceptable location to dispose of fire-pump test water. Hoses are for tests only and do not convey to the Owner.

F. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire pumps.

END OF SECTION 23 21 23 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 21 23 23a - DIESEL-DRIVE, VERTICAL-TURBINE FIRE PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for diesel-drive, vertical-turbine fire pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
   a. Vertical-turbine fire pumps.
   b. Fire-pump accessories and specialties.
   c. Flowmeter systems.

C. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Fire pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Pump Equipment, Accessory, and Specialty Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum unless higher pressure rating is indicated.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, performance curves, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For fire pumps, right-angle gear drives, engine drivers, and fire-pump accessories and specialties. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Product Certificates: For each fire pump, from manufacturer.
5. Source quality-control reports.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Operation and maintenance data

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for location and application.
2. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 20, "Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection."

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested fire pump, right-angle gear drive, and driver.
2. Base: Fabricated and attached to fire pump, right-angle gear drive, and driver with reinforcement to resist movement of pump, gear drive, and driver during seismic events when base is anchored to building substrate.
3. Finish: Red paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.

B. Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps
1. Pump Head: Cast iron, for surface discharge.
   a. Discharge Outlet: With flange according to ASME B16.1 except connections may be threaded according to ASME B1.20.1, in sizes where flanges are not available.
   b. Pump Head Seal: Stuffing box and packing.
   c. Base: Cast iron or steel with hole for electrical cable.
2. Pump:
   a. Standard: UL 448, for vertical-turbine pumps for fire service.
   b. For static water levels of 50 feet (15 m) or less and for water-lubricated bearings.
      1) Line Shaft: Stainless steel or steel, with corrosion-resistant shaft sleeves.
      2) Line Shaft Bearings: Rubber sleeve, water lubricated.
   c. For static water levels between 50 and 200 feet (15 and 61 m) and for oil-lubricated bearings.
      1) Line Shaft: Steel.
      2) Line Shaft Bearings: Corrosion resistant, oil lubricated.
   d. Impeller Shaft: Monel metal or stainless steel.
   e. Bowl Section: Multiple cast-iron bowls with closed-type bronze or stainless-steel impellers.
   f. Column Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends and cast-iron or steel fittings, in sections 10 feet (3 m) or less.
   g. Suction Strainer: Cast or fabricated, bronze or stainless steel, and sized to restrict passage of 0.5-inch (12.7-mm) spheres.
3. Right-Angle Gear Drive:
   a. Description: FM-Approved, speed-reduction gear drive for pump speed control. Provide ratio for outlet speed of approximately 1760 rpm.
4. Engine-to-Gear Drive Shaft: FM-Approved, telescoping, steel drive shaft with universal joint and grease fitting at each end. Include metal shaft guard.
5. Driver:
   a. Standard: UL 1247.
   b. Type: Diesel engine.
   c. Emergency Manual Operator: Factory wired for starting and operating standby engine in case of malfunction in main controller or wiring.
   d. Engine Cooling System: Factory-installed radiator.
      1) Coolant: Type recommended by driver manufacturer.

      OR

      Engine Cooling System: Factory-installed water piping, valves, strainer, pressure regulator, heat exchanger, coolant pump, bypass piping, and fittings.
      1) Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), copper water tube; ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure fittings; AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series brazing filler metal; and brazed joints.
   e. Engine-Jacket Water Heater: Factory-installed electric elements.
   f. Dual Batteries: Lead-acid-storage type with 100 percent standby reserve capacity.
   g. Fuel System: According to NFPA 20.
      1) Fuel Storage Tank: Size indicated but not less than required by NFPA 20. Include floor legs, direct-reading level gage, and secondary containment tank with capacity at least equal to fuel storage tank.

h. Exhaust System: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Schedule 40, black steel pipe; ASME B16.9, weld-type pipe fittings; ASME B16.5, steel flanges; and ASME B16.21, nonmetallic gaskets. Fabricate double-wall, ventilated thimble from steel pipe.
   1) Exhaust Connector: Flexible type.
   2) Exhaust Silencer: Industrial **OR** Residential, **as directed**, type.

C. Fire-Pump Accessories And Specialties
1. Automatic Air-Release Valves: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation in fire-pump discharge piping.
2. Relief Valves:
   a. Description: UL 1478, bronze or cast iron, spring loaded; for installation in fire-suppression water-supply piping.
3. Outlet Fitting: Concentric tapered reducer at pump-head discharge outlet.
4. Discharge Cone: Closed **OR** Open, **as directed**, type.
5. Hose Valve Manifold Assembly:
   a. Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 20.
   b. Header Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized steel with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
   c. Header Pipe Fittings: ASME B16.4, galvanized cast-iron threaded fittings.
   d. Automatic Drain Valve: UL 1726.
   e. Manifold:
      1) Test Connections: Comply with UL 405 except provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
      2) Body: Flush type, brass or ductile iron, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
      3) Nipples: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
      4) Adapters and Caps with Chain: Brass or bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
      5) Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; rectangular.
      6) Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
      7) Exposed Parts Finish: Polished **OR** Rough, **as directed**, brass, **as directed**, chrome plated, **as directed**.
      8) Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."

      OR

      Manifold:
      1) Test Connections: Comply with UL 405 except provide outlets without clappers instead of inlets.
      2) Body: Exposed type, brass, with number of outlets required by NFPA 20.
      3) Escutcheon Plate: Brass or bronze; round.
      4) Hose Valves: UL 668, bronze, with outlet threaded according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads. Include caps and chains.
      5) Exposed Parts Finish: Polished **OR** Rough, **as directed**, brass, **as directed**, chrome plated, **as directed**.
      6) Escutcheon Plate Marking: Equivalent to "FIRE PUMP TEST."

D. Flowmeter Systems
1. Description: UL-listed or FM-Approved, fire-pump flowmeter system with capability to indicate flow to not less than 175 percent of fire-pump rated capacity.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
3. Sensor: Annubar probe, orifice plate, or venturi unless otherwise indicated. Sensor size shall match pipe, tubing, flowmeter, and fittings.
4. Permanently Mounted Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) in diameter. Include bracket or device for wall mounting.
   a. Tubing Package: NPS 1/8 or NPS 1/4 (DN 6 or DN 10) soft copper **OR** plastic, **as directed**, tubing with copper or brass fittings and valves.

OR

Portable Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor; with dial not less than 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) in diameter and with two 12-foot- (3.7-m-) long hoses in carrying case.

E. Grout
1. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Characteristics: Nonshrink and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
3. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

F. Source Quality Control
1. Testing: Test and inspect fire pumps according to UL 448 requirements for "Operation Test" and "Manufacturing and Production Tests."
   a. Verification of Performance: Rate fire pumps according to UL 448.
2. Fire pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
3. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Fire-Pump Installation Standard: Comply with NFPA 20 for installation of fire pumps, relief valves, and related components.
2. Equipment Mounting: Install fire pumps on concrete bases. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
   a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
   b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install fire-pump discharge piping equal to or larger than size required by NFPA 20.
4. Support piping and pumps separately so weight of piping does not rest on pumps.
5. Install valves that are same size as connecting piping. Comply with requirements for fire-protection valves specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes" OR "Wet-pipe Sprinkler Systems", **as directed**.
6. Install pressure gage on pump head discharge flange pressure-gage tapping. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes" OR "Wet-pipe Sprinkler Systems", **as directed**.
7. Install piping hangers and supports, anchors, valves, gages, and equipment supports according to NFPA 20.
8. Install fuel system according to NFPA 20.
9. Install water supply and drain piping for diesel-engine heat exchangers. Extend drain piping from heat exchangers to point of disposal.
10. Install exhaust system piping for diesel engines. Extend to point of termination outside structure. Install pipe and fittings with welded joints; install components having flanged connections with gasketed joints.
11. Install condensate drain piping for diesel-engine exhaust system. Extend drain piping from low points of exhaust system to condensate traps and to point of disposal.
12. Install flowmeters and sensors. Install flowmeter-system components and make connections according to NFPA 20 and manufacturer's written instructions.
13. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not factory mounted. Furnish copies of manufacturers' wiring diagram submittals to electrical Installer.

14. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

B. Alignment
1. Align fire-pump-driver, right-angle gear-drive, and fire-pump shafts after complete unit has been leveled on concrete base, grout has set, and anchor bolts have been tightened.
2. After alignment is correct, tighten anchor bolts evenly. Fill baseplate completely with grout, with metal blocks and shims or wedges in place. Tighten anchor bolts after grout has hardened. Check alignment and make required corrections.
3. Align piping connections.
4. Align pump and driver shafts for angular and parallel alignment according to HI 2.4 and to tolerances specified by manufacturer.

C. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping and valves specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes" OR "Wet-pipe Sprinkler Systems", **as directed**. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to pumps and equipment to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect relief-valve discharge to drainage piping or point of discharge.
4. Connect flowmeter-system meters, sensors, and valves to tubing.
5. Connect fire pumps to their controllers.

D. Identification
1. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for fire-pump marking according to NFPA 20.

E. Field Quality Control
1. Test each fire pump with its right-angle gear drive and controller as a unit. Comply with requirements for electric-motor-driver fire-pump controllers specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Electric-drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" OR "Diesel-drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" OR "Electric-drive, Vertical-turbine Fire Pumps" OR "Diesel-drive, Vertical-turbine Fire Pumps".
2. Perform tests and inspections.
    a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
3. Tests and Inspections:
    a. After installing components, assemblies, and equipment including controller, test for compliance with requirements.
    b. Test according to NFPA 20 for acceptance and performance testing.
    c. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    d. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
    e. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
4. Components, assemblies, and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.
6. Furnish fire hoses in number, size, and length required to reach storm drain or other acceptable location to dispose of fire-pump test water. Hoses are for tests only and do not convey to the Owner.

F. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
    a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Demonstration
   1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire pumps, right-angle gear drives, and fire-pump controllers.

END OF SECTION 23 21 23 23a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 21 23 23	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
23 21 23 23	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
23 21 29 00	23 21 23 13	Hydronic Pumps
23 21 29 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
23 22 16 00	22 05 19 00	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
23 22 16 00	22 11 16 00b	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
23 22 16 00	23 05 19 00	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
23 22 16 00	22 11 16 00f	Steam And Condensate Piping
23 22 16 00	22 11 16 00g	Refrigerant Piping
23 22 16 00	22 05 23 00b	Water Distribution
23 22 16 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
23 22 16 00	23 05 29 00a	Steam Distribution

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 22 23 13 - STEAM CONDENSATE PUMPS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steam condensate pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes electric-driven and pressure-powered steam condensate pumps.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include details of installation.
   a. Include wiring diagrams.
3. Operation and maintenance data.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label steam condensate pumps to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

E. Delivery, Storage, and Handling
1. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.
2. Store steam condensate pumps in dry location.
3. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.
4. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.
5. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Electric-Driven Steam Condensate Pumps
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, packaged, electric-driven pumps; with receiver, pump(s), controls, and accessories suitable for operation with steam condensate.
2. Configuration: Simplex **OR** Duplex, **as directed**, floor-mounting pump with receiver and float switch(es); rated to pump 200 deg F (93 deg C) steam condensate.
   a. Receiver: Floor-mounting, close-grained cast iron **OR** welded steel, **as directed**; with externally adjustable float switch(es), and flange(s) for pump mounting.
   b. Pump(s): Centrifugal, close coupled, vertical design, permanently aligned, and bronze fitted; with replaceable bronze case ring and mechanical seal; mounted on receiver flange.
   c. Factory Wiring: Between pump(s) and float switch(es), for single external electrical connection. Fused control power transformer if voltage exceeds 230 V.
   d. Electrical **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, pump alternator to operate pumps in lead-lag sequence and allow both pumps to operate if the normal start level for a single pump is exceeded.
3. Configuration: Duplex floor-mounting pump with receiver and float switches; rated to pump 210 deg F (99 deg C) steam condensate.

a. Receiver: Floor-mounting, close-grained cast iron **OR** welded steel, **as directed**; with externally adjustable float switches and flanges for pump mounting.
b. Pumps: Regenerative turbine, close coupled, permanently aligned, and bronze fitted; with mechanical seals and an independent pump control circuit for each pump; mounted on base or receiver flange; rated to operate with a minimum of 2 feet (6 kPa) of NPSH.
c. Factory Wiring: Between pumps and float switches, for single external electrical connection. Fused control power transformer if voltage exceeds 230 V.
d. Electrical **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, pump alternator to operate pumps in lead-lag sequence and allow both pumps to operate if the normal start level for a single pump is exceeded.

4. Configuration: Duplex floor-mounting pumps with receiver and float switches; rated to pump minimum 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 210 deg F (99 deg C), **as directed**, steam condensate.
   a. Receiver: Floor-mounting, close-grained cast iron **OR** welded steel, **as directed**; externally adjustable float switches; with water-level gage, steam condensate thermometer, discharge-pressure gage for each pump, bronze gate valves between receiver and pumps, flanges for pump mounting, and lifting eyebolts.
   b. Inlet Strainer: Cast iron with self-cleaning bronze screen, dirt pocket, and cleanout plug on receiver inlet.
   c. Pumps: Centrifugal, close coupled, vertical design, permanently aligned, and bronze fitted; with replaceable bronze case rings, stainless-steel shafts, and mechanical seals; mounted on receiver flanges; rated to operate with a minimum of 2 feet (6 kPa) of NPSH.
   d. Control Panel: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 12, **as directed**, enclosure with hinged door and grounding lug, mounted on pump; factory wired for single external electrical connection; and with the following components within cabinet:
      1) Motor controller for each pump.
      2) Electrical pump alternator to operate pumps in lead-lag sequence and allow both pumps to operate on receiver high level.
      3) Manual lead-lag control to override electrical pump alternator to manually select the lead pump.
      4) Momentary contact "TEST" push button on cover for each pump.
      5) Numbered terminal strip.
      6) Disconnect switch.
      7) Fused transformer for control circuit.

5. Configuration: Duplex floor-mounting pump with elevated receiver, float switches, and connecting piping; rated to pump 212 deg F (100 deg C) steam condensate.
   a. Receiver: Close-grained cast iron **OR** Welded steel, **as directed**, mounted on fabricated-steel supports; externally adjustable float switches; with water-level gage, steam condensate thermometer, pump discharge pressure gages, bronze isolation valves between receiver and pumps, and lifting eyebolts.
   b. Inlet Strainer: Cast iron with self-cleaning bronze screen, dirt pocket, and cleanout plug on receiver inlet.
   c. Pumps: Centrifugal, close coupled, permanently aligned, and bronze fitted; with replaceable bronze case rings, stainless-steel shafts, and mechanical seals; mounted on base below receiver; rated to operate with a minimum of 2 feet (6 kPa) of NPSH.
   d. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, Grade B or ASTM A 106; Schedule 80; seamless steel.
   e. Fittings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B16.1, Class 125 cast iron, threaded.
   f. Fittings NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASTM A 234/A 234M, steel, for welded connections.
   g. Control Panel: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 12, **as directed**, enclosure with hinged door and grounding lug; mounted on pump; factory wired for single external electrical connection; and with the following components within cabinet:
      1) Motor controller for each pump.
      2) Electrical pump alternator to operate pumps in lead-lag sequence and allow both pumps to operate on receiver high level.

3) Manual lead-lag control to override electrical alternator to manually select the lead pump.
4) Momentary contact "TEST" push button on cover for each pump.
5) Numbered terminal strip.
6) Disconnect switch.
7) Fused transformer for control circuit.

6. Configuration: Underground duplex pump with basin and float switches; rated to pump 200 deg F (93 deg C) steam condensate.
   a. Basin: Cast iron, with hub-type inlets.
   b. Basin Cover: Cast iron or steel with gasketed openings for access, pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, and vent connections.
      1) Anchor Flange: Cast iron, attached to basin, in location and of size required to anchor basin to concrete slab.
   c. Pumps: Wet-pit mounted, vertical, flexible coupled, and suspended.
      1) Casing: Cast iron with open inlet.
      2) Shaft and Bearings: Stainless-steel shaft with oil-lubricated, bronze, intermediate sleeve bearings; 48-inch (1200-mm) maximum intervals where basin depth is more than 48 inches (1200 mm); and grease-lubricated, ball-type, thrust bearings.
      3) Shaft Couplings: Flexible, capable of absorbing vibration.
      4) Seals: Mechanical; with carbon rotating ring, bearing on a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and enclosed by a flexible bellows and gasket.
      5) Motors: Vertically mounted on cast-iron pedestal.
      6) Pump Discharge Piping: Manufacturer's standard steel or bronze pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Control Panel: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 12, **as directed**, enclosure with hinged door and grounding lug; mounted on pump; factory wired for single external electrical connection; and with the following components within cabinet:
      1) Motor controller for each pump.
      2) Electrical pump alternator to operate pumps in lead-lag sequence and allow both pumps to operate on receiver high level.
      3) Manual lead-lag control to override electrical alternator to manually select the lead pump.
      4) Momentary contact "TEST" push button on cover for each pump.
      5) Numbered terminal strip.
      6) Disconnect switch.
      7) Fused transformer for control circuit.

B. Pressure-Powered Steam Condensate Pumps
   1. Description: Factory-fabricated, pressure-powered pumps with mechanical controls, valves, piping connections, and accessories suitable for pumping steam condensate using steam **OR** compressed air, **as directed**.
   2. Configuration: Simplex **OR** Duplex, **as directed**, pump with float-operated valve control.
      a. Pump Body: Cast iron **OR** Welded steel, **as directed**.
      b. Piping Connections: Threaded; for steam condensate, operating medium, vent, and indicated accessories.
      c. Level Gage: Glass site gage with shutoff cocks.
      d. Valves: Manufacturer's standard check valves on inlet and outlet.
      e. Internal Parts: Stainless-steel float, springs, and actuating mechanism.
      f. Valve Seals: Replaceable from exterior.
      g. Receiver: Cast iron **OR** Welded steel, **as directed**, factory mounted on steel supports; with water-level site glass and threaded piping connections.
      h. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, Grade B or ASTM A 106; Schedule 80; seamless steel.
      i. Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125 cast iron, threaded.

C. Motors

1. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
   1. Install pumps according to HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."
   2. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
   3. Support pumps and piping separately so piping is not supported by pumps.
   4. Install pumps on concrete bases. Anchor pumps to bases using inserts or anchor bolts.
   5. Install thermometers and pressure gages.

B. Connections
   1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
   2. Install steam supply for pressure-powered pumps as required by Division 23 Section "Steam And Condensate Heating Piping".
   3. Install compressed-air supply for pressure-powered pumps as required by Division 22 Section "General-service Compressed-air Piping".
   4. Install gate and check valves on inlet and outlet of pressure-powered pumps.
   5. Install check valve, gate valve, and globe valve at pump discharge connections for each electric-driven pump.
   6. Pipe drain to nearest floor drain for overflow and drain piping connections.
   7. Install full-size vent piping to outdoors, terminating in 180-degree elbow at point above highest steam system connection or as indicated.
   8. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
   9. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

END OF SECTION 23 22 23 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 23 13 00	22 11 16 00g	Refrigerant Piping
23 23 13 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
23 23 16 00	07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
23 23 16 00	07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
23 23 16 00	22 13 16 00	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
23 23 16 00	22 11 16 00a	Storm Drainage Piping
23 23 16 00	07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
23 23 16 00	23 21 13 23d	Hydronic Piping
23 23 16 00	22 11 16 00g	Refrigerant Piping
23 23 16 00	23 01 60 71	Condensing Units
23 23 23 00	23 01 60 71	Condensing Units

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 25 13 00 - HVAC WATER TREATMENT

A. Description Of Work
   1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for HVAC water treatment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work

B. Summary
   1. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:
      a. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls.
      b. Biocide chemical-feed equipment and controls.
      c. Ozone-generator biocide equipment and controls.
      d. UV-irradiation unit, biocide equipment, and controls.
      e. Chemical treatment test equipment.
      f. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.
      g. Makeup water softeners.
      h. RO equipment for HVAC makeup water.
      i. Water filtration units for HVAC makeup water.

C. Definitions
   1. EEPROM: Electrically erasable, programmable read-only memory.
   2. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
   3. RO: Reverse osmosis.
   4. TDS: Total dissolved solids.
   5. UV: Ultraviolet.

D. Performance Requirements
   1. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
   2. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
   3. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, dual-temperature water, and glycol cooling, shall have the following water qualities:
      a. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
      b. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
      c. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
      d. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
      e. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
      f. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
      g. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
      h. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
      i. Microbiological Limits:
         1) Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
         2) Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
         3) Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
         4) Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
         5) Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
   4. Steam Boiler and Steam Condensate:
      a. Steam Condensate:
         1) pH: Maintain a value within 7.8 to 8.4.
         2) Total Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 5 to 50 ppm.

3) Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 15 ppm.
4) Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
5) TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
6) Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
7) Total Hardness: Maintain a maximum value of 2 ppm.

b. Steam boiler operating at 15 psig (104 kPa) and less shall have the following water qualities:
1) "OH" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 200 to 400 ppm.
2) TDS: Maintain a value within 600 to 3000 ppm.

c. Steam boiler operating at more than 15 psig (104 kPa) shall have the following water qualities:
1) "OH" Alkalinity: 200 to 400 ppm.
2) TDS: Maintain a value within 600 to 1200 ppm to maximum 30 times RO water TDS.

5. Open hydronic systems, including condenser **OR** fluid-cooler spray, **as directed**, water, shall have the following water qualities:
a. pH: Maintain a value within 8.0 to 9.1.
b. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
c. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100ppm.
d. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
e. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
f. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
g. Free "OH" Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 0 ppm.
h. Microbiological Limits:
1) Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 10,000 organisms/ml.
2) Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
3) Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
4) Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
5) Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
i. Polymer Testable: Maintain a minimum value within 10 to 40.

6. Passivation for Galvanized Steel: For the first 60 days of operation.
a. pH: Maintain a value within 7 to 8.
b. Calcium Carbonate Hardness: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.
c. Calcium Carbonate Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
a. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification
5. Other Informational Submittals:
a. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.
b. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
c. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to the Owner.

F. Quality Assurance
1. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Manual Chemical-Feed Equipment
1. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
a. Capacity: 2 gal. (7.6 L) **OR** 5 gal. (19 L), **as directed**.
b. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 175 psig (1210 kPa), **as directed**.

B. Automatic Chemical-Feed Equipment
1. Water Meter:
a. AWWA C700, oscillating-piston, magnetic-drive, totalization meter.
b. Body: Bronze.
c. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig (20 kPa).
d. Registration: Gallons (Liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters).
e. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.
2. Water Meter:
a. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
b. Body: Bronze.
c. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa).
d. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig (20 kPa).
e. Registration: Gallons (Liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters).
f. End Connections: Threaded.
g. Control: Low-voltage signal capable of transmitting 1000 feet (305 m).
3. Water Meter:

4. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
a. Body: Bronze **OR** Epoxy-coated cast iron, **as directed**.
b. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
c. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig (20 kPa).
d. Registration: Gallons (Liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters).
e. End Connections: Flanged.
f. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.
5. Inhibitor Injection Timers:
a. Microprocessor-based controller with LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
b. Programmable timers with infinite adjustment over full range, and mounted in cabinet with hand-off-auto switches and status lights.
c. Test switch.
d. Hand-off-auto switch for chemical pump.
e. Illuminated legend to indicate feed when pump is activated.
f. Programmable lockout timer with indicator light. Lockout timer to deactivate the pump and activate alarm circuits.
g. LCD makeup totalizer to measure amount of makeup and bleed-off water from two water meter inputs.
6. pH Controller:

a. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 14 units. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
b. Digital display and touch pad for input.
c. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
d. High, low, and normal pH indication.
e. High or low pH alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
f. Hand-off-auto switch for acid pump.
g. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.

7. TDS Controller:
   a. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 5000 micromhos. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
   b. Digital display and touch pad for input.
   c. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
   d. High, low, and normal conductance indication.
   e. High or low conductance alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
   f. Hand-off-auto switch for solenoid bleed-off valve.
   g. Bleed-off valve activated indication.
   h. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.
   i. Bleed Valves:
      1) Cooling Systems: Forged-brass body, globe pattern, general-purpose solenoid with continuous-duty coil, or motorized valve.
      2) Steam Boilers: Motorized ball valve, steel body, and TFE seats and seals.
8. Biocide Feeder Timer:
   a. Microprocessor-based controller with digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
   b. 24-hour timer with 14-day skip feature to permit activation any hour of day.
   c. Precision, solid-state, bleed-off lockout timer and clock-controlled biocide pump timer. Prebleed and bleed lockout timers.
   d. Solid-state alternator to enable use of two different formulations.
   e. 24-hour display of time of day.
   f. 14-day display of day of week.
   g. Battery backup so clock is not disturbed by power outages.
   h. Hand-off-auto switches for biocide pumps.
   i. Biocide A and Biocide B pump running indication.
9. Chemical Solution Tanks:
   a. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
   b. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
   c. Capacity: 30 gal. (114 L) **OR** 50 gal. (189 L) **OR** 120 gal. (454 L), **as directed**.
10. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:
    a. Self-priming, positive-displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
    b. Adjustable flow rate.
    c. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
    d. Built-in relief valve.
    e. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

11. Chemical Solution Tubing: Polyethylene tubing with compression fittings and joints except ASTM A 269, Type 304, stainless steel for steam boiler injection assemblies.
12. Injection Assembly:
    a. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 (DN 15) with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
    b. Ball Valve: Three **OR** Two, **as directed**,-piece, stainless steel; selected to fit quill.
    c. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
    d. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig (4137 kPa) at 200 deg F (93 deg C).

C. Ozone-Generator Biocide Equipment
1. Corona discharge generator with stainless-steel generating cells, and transformer housed in a NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure. Assembly shall be suitable for continuous duty. Provide site glasses to verify proper operation of generator.
2. Water-cooled generators shall be provided with cooling water at maximum 70 deg F (21 deg C) and 35 psig (241 kPa).
3. Generator vessels exposed to system pressure shall be constructed according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code and be equipped with pressure relief valve.
4. External air compressor or induced airflow through a cleanable prefilter supplies concentrated oxygen through a molecular sieve with minus 62 deg F (minus 52 deg C) dew point to avoid the formation of nitric acid.
5. Microprocessor-based control with software in EEPROM, surge protection, high-temperature cutout, and operational status lights. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
6. Ozone Contactors:
    a. Bubble diffusers.
    b. Induction injection nozzle.
    c. Injectors with static mixers.
7. Ozone Detector and Alarm Devices:
    a. Detector:
        1) Sensor: Metal dioxide semiconductor.
        2) Concentration Range: 0.01 to 0.14 ppm.
        3) Accuracy: Plus or minus 20 percent of range.
        4) Sensitivity: 0.01 ppm.
        5) Response Time: Maximum 10 seconds.
        6) Operating Temperature: 50 to 100 deg F (10 to 38 deg C).
        7) Relatively Humidity: 20 to 95 percent, noncondensing over the operating temperature range.
    b. Horns:
        1) Electric-vibrating-polarized type.
        2) 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille.
        3) Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet (3 m) from the horn.
    c. Visible Alarm Devices:
        1) Xenon strobe lights listed in UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate.
        2) Rated Light Output: 75 **OR** 110, **as directed**, candela.
        3) Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
8. Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus: Open-circuit, pressure-demand, compressed air includes completely assembled, portable, self-contained devices designed for hazardous breathing environment application.
    a. Face Piece: EPDM or silicone rubber construction material, one-size-fits-all with double-sealing edge, stainless-steel speaking diaphragm and lens retainer, five adjustable straps to hold face piece to head (two straps on each side and one on top), exhalation valve in

mask, close-fitting nose piece to ensure no CO_2 buildup, and perspiration drain to avoid skin irritation and to prevent eyepiece, spectacle, and lens fogging.

b. Backplate: Orthopedically designed of chemical and impact-resistant, glass-fiber composite **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.

c. Harness and Carrier Assembly: Large triangular back pad, backplate, and adjustable waist and shoulder straps. Modular in design, detachable components, and easy to clean and maintain. Shoulder straps padded with flame-resistant material, reinforced with stainless-steel cable, and attached with T-nuts, washers, and screws.

d. Air Cylinder: 30 **OR** 45 **OR** 60, **as directed**,-minute, low-pressure, air-supply-loaded fiberglass **OR** aluminum **OR** steel, **as directed**, cylinders fitted with quick-fill assembly for refilling and air transfer.

e. Wall-Mounting Cabinet: Leakproof, corrosion-resistant, clear, plastic case.

f. Tested and Certified: By the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health and by the Mine Safety and Health Administration, according to 42 CFR 84, Subpart H.

D. Stainless-Steel Pipes And Fittings

1. Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ASTM A 269, Type 316.
2. Stainless-Steel Fittings: Complying with ASTM A 815/A 815M, Type 316, Grade WP-S.
3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Stainless-Steel Ball Valves: ASTM A 351, Type 316 stainless-steel body; ASTM A 276, Type 316 stainless-steel stem and vented ball, carbon-filled TFE seats, threaded body design with adjustable stem packing, threaded ends, and 250-psig (1725-kPa) SWP and 600-psig (4140-kPa) CWP ratings.
4. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Stainless-Steel Ball Valves: ASTM A 351, Type 316 stainless-steel body; ASTM A 276, Type 316 stainless-steel stem and vented ball, threaded body design with adjustable stem packing, threaded ends, and 150-psig (1035-kPa) SWP and 600-psig (4140-kPa) CWP rating.

E. UV Biocide Equipment

1. Target Irradiation: Minimum 30,000 microwatts x s/sq. cm.
2. Light Source Vessels:
   a. ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel.
   b. Construct for minimum 150 psig (1035 kPa) at 150 deg F (65 deg C) according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, and equipped with pressure relief valve.
   c. Light Source Sleeve: Quartz, with EPDM O-ring seals.
   d. Light Source: Replaceable UV lamp producing minimum target irradiation of 254-nm wavelength light.
3. Controls: Interlock with pumps to operate when water is circulating.

F. Chemical Treatment Test Equipment

1. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TDS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers, and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.
2. Sample Cooler:
   a. Tube: Sample.
      1) Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) tubing.
      2) Material: ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
      3) Pressure Rating: Minimum 2000 psig (13 790 kPa).
      4) Temperature Rating: Minimum 850 deg F (454 deg C).
   b. Shell: Cooling water.
      1) Material: ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel.
      2) Pressure Rating: Minimum 250 psig (1725 kPa).
      3) Temperature Rating: Minimum 450 deg F (232 deg C).
   c. Capacities and Characteristics:
      1) Tube: Sample.
         a) Flow Rate: 0.25 gpm (0.016 L/s).

b) Entering Temperature: 400 deg F (204 deg C).
c) Leaving Temperature: 88 deg F (31 deg C).
d) Pressure Loss: 6.5 psig (44.8 kPa).

2) Shell: Cooling water.
a) Flow Rate: 3 gpm (0.19 L/s).
b) Entering Temperature: 70 deg F (21 deg C).
c) Pressure Loss: 1.0 psig (6.89 kPa).

3. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
a. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.
b. Four-station rack for open systems.

G. Chemicals
1. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Water Softener Chemicals:
a. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. (69 kg/cu. m) of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb (6.8 kg) of salt.
b. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are not acceptable.

H. HVAC Makeup Water Softener
1. Description: Twin mineral tanks and one brine tank, factory mounted on skid.
2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tanks with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
3. Mineral Tanks:
a. Fabricate and label steel filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
b. Fabricate and label FRP filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, if indicated.
c. Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
d. Wetted Components: Suitable for water temperatures from 40 to at least 100 deg F (5 to at least 38 deg C).
e. Freeboard: 50 percent, minimum, for backwash expansion above the normal resin bed level.
f. Support Legs or Skirt: Constructed of structural steel, welded or bonded to tank before testing and labeling.
g. Finish: Hot-dip galvanized on exterior and interior of tank after fabrication.
h. Upper Distribution System: Single-point type, fabricated from galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
i. Lower Distribution System: Hub and radial-arm or header-lateral type; fabricated from PVC pipe and fittings with individual, fine-slotted, nonclogging PE strainers; arranged for even-flow distribution through resin bed.
4. Controls: Automatic; factory mounted on mineral tanks and factory wired.
a. Adjustable duration of regeneration steps.
b. Push-button start and complete manual operation override.
c. Pointer on pilot-control valve shall indicate cycle of operation.
d. Means of manual operation of pilot-control valve if power fails.
e. Main Operating Valves: Industrial, automatic, multiport, diaphragm type with the following features:

1) Slow opening and closing, nonslam operation.
2) Diaphragm guiding on full perimeter from fully open to fully closed.
3) Isolated dissimilar metals within valve.
4) Self-adjusting, internal, automatic brine injector that draws brine and rinses at constant rate independent of pressure.
5) Float-operated brine valve to automatically measure the correct amount of brine to the softener and refill with fresh water.
6) Sampling cocks for soft water.

f. Flow Control: Automatic control of backwash and flush rates over variations in operating pressures that do not require field adjustments. Equip mineral tanks with automatic-reset-head water meter that electrically activates cycle controller to initiate regeneration at preset total in gallons (liters), and automatically resets after regeneration to preset total in gallons (liters) for next service run. Include alternator to regenerate one mineral tank with the other in service.

5. Brine Tank: Combination measuring and wet-salt storing system.
   a. Tank and Cover Material: Fiberglass a minimum of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) thick; or molded PE a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) thick.
   b. Brine Valve: Float operated and plastic fitted for automatic control of brine withdrawn and freshwater refill.
   c. Size: Large enough for at least four regenerations at full salting.
6. Factory-Installed Accessories:
   a. Piping, valves, tubing, and drains.
   b. Sampling cocks.
   c. Main-operating-valve position indicators.
   d. Water meters.
7. Water Test Kit: Include water test kit in wall-mounting enclosure for water softener.

I. RO Equipment For HVAC Makeup Water
1. Description: Factory fabricated and tested with RO membrane elements in housings, high-pressure pumps and motors, controls, valves, and prefilter; mounted on skid.
2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tanks with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
3. Skid Assembly: Welded-steel frame coated with epoxy protective finish.
4. RO Membrane and Housing:
   a. Element: Thin-film composite with U-cup brine seal with minimum 98 percent salt rejection based on 2000-ppm water supplied at 225 psig (1551 kPa) and 77 deg F (25 deg C).
   b. Housing: ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel with PVC end caps held in place with stainless-steel straps.
5. High-Pressure Pumps and Motors:
   a. Pump:
      1) Vertical, multistage centrifugal operating at 3500 rpm with ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless-steel casing, shaft, impellers, and inlet and discharge casting.
      2) Bearings shall be tungsten carbide and ceramic.
      3) Cast-iron frame and flanged suction and discharge connections.
   b. Motor: NEMA-standard, C-faced TEFC motor supported on the pump-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
6. Controls:
   a. Microprocessor-based controller with LCD display.
   b. Interlock for remote start/stop control.
   c. Membrane flush sequence when pumps shut down.
   d. Run time indicator.
   e. Low-pressure safety cutoff.
   f. Panel-mounted gages as follows:

1) Product and concentrate.
2) Inlet, cartridge filter outlet, RO feed, RO concentrate, and RO product pressures.
3) Product conductivity monitor.

7. Valves:
   a. Stainless-steel pump, concentrate, and recycle throttling valves rated for minimum 300 psig (2068 kPa).
   b. Automatic inlet shutoff valve, diaphragm type; solenoid actuated, normally closed, and constructed of glass-reinforced noryl thermoplastic.
   c. PVC valves with EPDM seats and seals for isolation at inlet, and check and sample valves at product and concentrate. Sample valves at cartridge filter outlet, concentrate, and product outlet.
8. Prefilter:
   a. Housing: Polypropylene with built-in relief or vent valve.
   b. Element: Spun-wound polypropylene.
9. Inlet Water Tempering Valve: Thermostatic water-tempering valve to maintain 77 deg F (25 deg C), **as directed**, inlet water temperature to RO unit.
10. Activated Carbon Filter:
    a. Media Tank: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester rated for minimum 150 psig (1035 kPa) with internal backwash distributor and filtered water collector.
    b. Media: 12 x 40-mesh, bituminous coal-based activated carbon.
    c. Backwash Valve: Piston-operated control valve with drain-line, flow-control orifice.
    d. Backwash Control: Seven-day time clock.
11. Atmospheric Storage Tank:
    a. Tank: Polyethylene single piece with closed top and flat bottom with manway in top, 0.2-micron filter vent, inlet, discharge, and drain piping connections, and bulkhead fittings for level controls.
    b. Control: Level switches start and stop RO unit. Low-level limit shall stop repressurization pumps, and signal an alarm.
12. Repressurization Pumps:
    a. Pumps: Two close-coupled, single-stage centrifugal pumps, with mechanical seals. Wetted components ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
    b. Controls: NEMA-4X pump control panel constructed of fiberglass to control pumps, one operating, one standby, with automatic alternator and fail-over control.
    c. Motor: ODP motor supported on the pump-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
13. Water Test Kit: Include water test kit in wall-mounting cabinet for RO unit.

J. Filtration Equipment
1. Multimedia Filters:
   a. Description: Factory-fabricated and -tested, simplex, multimedia filter system of filter tank, media, strainer, circulating pump, piping, and controls for removing particles from water.
      1) Filter Tank: Corrosion resistant with distribution system and media.
         a) Fabricate and label steel filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
         b) Fabricate and label FRP filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, if indicated.
         c) Pipe Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
         d) Steel Tank Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel, Class 150 flanges according to ASME B16.5 or grooved according to AWWA C606.
         e) FRP Tank Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Type A, integral; Designation E, 125-psig (0.862-MPa) or F, 150-psig (1.034-MPa) pressure category flanges of grade same as tank material according to ASTM D 5421.

2) Motorized Valves: Flanged or grooved-end, ductile-iron butterfly type with EPDM valve seat and stem seal; with ASTM B 148 aluminum bronze disc.
3) Strainer: Basket type mounted on pump suction.
4) Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, F, or E; Grade B, Schedule 40 black steel, with flanged, grooved, or threaded joints and malleable, steel welding, or ductile-iron fittings.
5) Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) copper water tube, copper-alloy solder-joint fittings, and brazed, flanged, or grooved joints.
6) Safety Valves: Automatic pressure relief.
7) Circulating Pump: Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, end suction, centrifugal. Comply with UL 778 and with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
   a) Casing: Radially split, cast iron.
   b) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
   c) Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
   d) Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
   e) Seal: Mechanical.
   f) Motor: ODP motor supported on the pump-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
8) Controls: Automatic control of circulating pump and tank backwash; factory wired for single electrical connection.
   a) Panel: NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure with time clock and pressure gages.
   b) Pump: Automatic and manual switching; manual switch position bypasses safeties and controls.
   c) Backwash: Automatic; with time clock and differential pressure switch.
   d) Backwash Valve: Tank mounted with valves interlocked to single actuator.
9) Support: Skid mounting. Fabricate supports and base and attachment to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist filter movement during a seismic event when filter base is anchored to building structure.

2. Self-Cleaning Strainers:
   a. Description: Factory-fabricated and -tested, ASTM A 126, Class B, cast-iron or steel, self-cleaning strainer system of tank, strainer, backwash arm or cleaning spiral, drive and motor, piping, and controls for removing particles from water.
      1) Fabricate and label ASTM A 126, Class B, cast-iron or steel strainer tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
      2) Pipe Connections:
         a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
         b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel, Class 150 flanges according to ASME B16.5 or grooved according to AWWA C606.
   b. Motorized Valves: Flanged or grooved-end, ductile-iron angle type with EPDM valve seat and stem seal; with ASTM B 148 aluminum bronze disc.
   c. Strainer: ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
   d. Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, F, or E; Grade B, Schedule 40 black steel, with flanged, grooved, or threaded joints and malleable, steel welding, or ductile-iron fittings.
   e. Safety Valves: Automatic pressure relief.
   f. Backwash Arm Drive:
      1) Drive Casing: Cast iron.
      2) Worm Gears: Immersed in oil.
      3) Motor: ODP motor supported on the strainer-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
   g. Controls: Automatic control of backwash; factory wired for single electrical connection.
      1) Panel: NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure with time clock and pressure gages.

2) Backwash Arm Drive: Automatic and manual switching; manual switch position bypasses safeties and controls.
3) Backwash: Automatic; with time clock and differential pressure switch.
4) Backwash Valve: Electric actuator.

h. Support: Skid mounting. Fabricate supports and base and attachment to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist strainer movement during a seismic event when strainer base is anchored to building structure.

3. Bag **OR** Cartridge, **as directed**,-Type Filters:
   a. Description: Floor-mounting housing with filter bags **OR** cartridges, **as directed**, for removing particles from water.
      1) Housing: Corrosion resistant; designed to separate inlet from outlet and to direct inlet through bag **OR** cartridge, **as directed**,-type water filter; with bag support and base, feet, or skirt.
         a) Pipe Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
         b) Steel Housing Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel, Class 150 flanges according to ASME B16.5 or grooved according to AWWA C606.
         c) Plastic Housing Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: 150-psig (1035-kPa) plastic flanges.
      2) Bag **OR** Cartridge, **as directed**: Replaceable; of shape to fit housing.
4. Centrifugal Separators:
   a. Description: Simplex separator housing with baffles and chambers for removing particles from water by centrifugal action and gravity.
   b. Housing: With manufacturer's proprietary system of baffles and chambers.
      1) Construction: Fabricate and label steel separator housing to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
      2) Inlet: Designed with tangential entry to produce centrifugal flow of feedwater.
      3) Vortex Chamber: Designed for downward vortex flow and gravity separation of particles.
      4) Collection Chamber: Designed to hold separated particles.
      5) Outlet: Near top of unit.
      6) Purge: At bottom of collection chamber.
      7) Pipe Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
      8) Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel, Class 150 flanges according to ASME B16.5 or grooved according to AWWA C606. Provide stainless-steel flanges if tank is stainless steel.
   c. Motorized Purge Valve: Gate or plug pattern valve.
      1) Motorized Valves: Butterfly-type, flanged or grooved-end, ductile-iron body, with EPDM valve seat and stem seal; with ASTM B 148 aluminum bronze disc.
   d. Strainer: Stainless-steel basket type mounted on pump suction.
   e. Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, F, or E; Grade B, Schedule 40 black steel, with flanged, grooved, or threaded joints and malleable, steel welding, or ductile-iron fittings.
   f. Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) copper water tube, copper-alloy solder-joint fittings, and brazed, flanged, or grooved joints.
   g. Circulating Pump: Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, end suction, centrifugal. Comply with UL 778 and with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
      1) Casing: Radially split, cast iron.
      2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      3) Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
      4) Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
      5) Seal: Mechanical.

6) Motor: ODP motor supported on the pump-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

h. Controls: Automatic control of circulating pump and separator purge; factory wired for single electrical connection.
   1) Panel: NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure.
   2) Pump: Automatic and manual switching; manual switch position bypasses safeties and controls.
   3) Separator Purge: Automatic and manual.
   4) TDS Controller Interlock: Open separator purge valve with bleed-off control.

i. Support: Skid mounting. Fabricate supports and base and attachment to separator housing with reinforcement strong enough to resist separator movement during a seismic event when separator base is anchored to building structure.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Water Analysis
   1. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

B. Installation
   1. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
   2. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" for seismic restraints.
   3. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.
   4. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
   5. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
   6. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, dual-temperature water, and glycol cooling, and equipped with the following:
      a. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
      b. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
      c. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
      d. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
      e. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.
   7. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for steam boiler and steam condensate systems and include the following:
      a. Install makeup water softener.
      b. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
      c. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.
         1) Pumps shall operate for timed interval when contacts close at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.
      d. Install test equipment and furnish test-kit to the Owner.
      e. Install RO unit for makeup water.
      f. Install TDS controller with sensor and bleed valves.
         1) Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TDS concentration.
      g. Install inhibitor injection timer with injection pumps and solution tanks.

1) Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into main steam supply header.

8. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for condenser **OR** fluid-cooler spray, **as directed**, water and include the following:
   a. Install makeup water softener.
   b. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
   c. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.
      1) Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.
   d. Install test equipment and provide test-kit to the Owner. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
   e. Install TDS controller with sensor and bleed valves.
      1) Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TDS concentration.
   f. Install pH sensor and controller with injection pumps and solution tanks.
      1) Injector pumps shall operate to maintain required pH.
   g. Install biocide feeder alternating timer with two sets of injection pumps and solution tanks.
      1) Injection pumps shall operate to feed biocide on an alternating basis.
   h. Install ozone generator with diffusers in condenser-water piping.
   i. Ozone generator shall operate continuously with condenser-water flow.
   j. Install UV-irradiation lamps in condenser-water piping.
      1) UV lights shall operate continuously with condenser-water flow.

C. Ozone-Generator Installation
   1. Install ozone generator and equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
   2. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" for seismic restraints.
   3. Pipe ozone from ozone generator to condenser water with stainless-steel pipe and fittings with welded joints.
   4. Install two **OR** three, **as directed**,-piece, stainless-steel ball valve in ozone supply to condenser water.
   5. Pipe cooling water to ozone generator, and to air-gap drain fitting with stainless-steel pipe and fittings with welded joints where enclosed in ozone-generator room.
   6. Install two **OR** three, **as directed**,-piece, stainless-steel ball valve in cooling water supply to ozone generator.
   7. Mounting supports for ozone generator shall be ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
   8. Mount breathing apparatus outside ozone-generator room.
   9. Mount and install ozone detector, warning lights, and audible alarm inside ozone-generator room. Mount another set of warning lights and audible alarm just outside the main entrance to ozone-generator room.

D. UV-Irradiation Unit Installation
   1. Install UV-irradiation units on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
   2. Install seismic restraints for UV-irradiation units and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" for seismic restraints.

E. Water Softener Installation

1. Install water softener equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
2. Install seismic restraints for tanks and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" for seismic restraints.
3. Install brine lines and fittings furnished by equipment manufacturer but not factory installed.
4. Prepare mineral-tank distribution system and underbed for minerals and place specified mineral into mineral tanks.
5. Install water-testing sets on wall adjacent to water softeners.

F. RO Unit Installation
1. Install RO unit and storage tank on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor RO unit and storage tank with pumps to substrate.
2. Install seismic restraints for tanks and floor-mounting accessories and anchor to building structure. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment" for seismic restraints.
3. Install interconnecting piping and controls furnished by equipment manufacturer but not factory installed.
4. Install water testing sets on wall adjacent to RO unit.

G. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
3. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac".
4. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 23 Section "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
5. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup water connections to potable-water systems.
6. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in Division 22 for connecting electrical equipment.
7. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
8. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

H. Field Quality Control
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
2. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
3. Tests and Inspections:
    a. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
    b. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
    c. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.

d. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
e. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
f. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
g. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
h. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.

4. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
5. Sample boiler water at one-week intervals after boiler startup for a period of five weeks, and prepare test report advising the Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article for each required characteristic. Sample boiler water at four **OR** six **OR** eight, **as directed**,-week intervals following the testing noted above to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section.
6. At four **OR** six **OR** eight, **as directed**,-week intervals following Final Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising the Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
7. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
   a. Silica: ASTM D 859.
   b. Steam System: ASTM D 1066.
   c. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
   d. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
   e. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

I. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 23 25 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
23 25 13 00	22 12 23 26	Facility Fuel-Oil Piping
23 25 13 00	22 12 23 26a	Underground Storage Tanks
23 25 13 00	23 21 13 23d	Hydronic Piping
23 25 13 00	22 05 23 00c	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 01 30 91	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 01 50 51	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 01 50 51	02 84 16 00	Removal of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
26 01 50 51	02 84 16 00a	Interior Lighting
26 01 50 51	02 84 16 00b	Exterior Lighting
26 01 50 52	02 84 16 00	Removal of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
26 01 50 52	02 84 16 00a	Interior Lighting
26 01 50 52	02 84 16 00b	Exterior Lighting
26 01 50 53	02 84 16 00	Removal of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
26 01 50 53	02 84 16 00a	Interior Lighting
26 01 50 53	02 84 16 00b	Exterior Lighting
26 01 50 81	02 84 16 00a	Interior Lighting

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 00 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for electrical. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
b. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
c. Sleeve seals.
d. Grout.
e. Common electrical installation requirements.

C. Definitions
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sleeves For Raceways And Cables
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
a. Minimum Metal Thickness:
1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

B. Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

C. Grout

1. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Common Requirements For Electrical Installation
1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
3. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
4. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
5. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

B. Sleeve Installation For Electrical Penetrations
1. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
5. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
6. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
7. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
8. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
   a. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
9. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
10. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
11. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
12. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
13. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

C. Sleeve-Seal Installation
1. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve

seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

D. Firestopping
   1. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

END OF SECTION 26 05 00 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 13 16 - MEDIUM-VOLTAGE CABLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of medium-voltage cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes cables and related splices, terminations, and accessories for medium-voltage electrical distribution systems.

C. Definitions
1. NETA ATS: Acceptance Testing Specification.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of cable indicated. Include splices and terminations for cables and cable accessories.
2. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with IEEE C2 and NFPA 70.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Cables
1. Cable Type: MV90 **OR** MV105, **as directed**.
2. Comply with UL 1072, AEIC CS 8, ICEA S-93-639, and ICEA S-97-682, **OR** ICEA S-94-649, **as directed**.
3. Conductor: Copper **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Conductor Stranding: Compact round, concentric lay, Class B) **OR** Concentric lay, Class B, **as directed**.
5. Strand Filling: Conductor interstices are filled with impermeable compound.
6. Conductor Insulation: Crosslinked polyethylene **OR** Ethylene-propylene rubber, **as directed**.
   a. Voltage Rating: 5 **OR** 8 **OR** 15 **OR** 25 **OR** 35, **as directed,** kV.
   b. Insulation Thickness: 100 **OR** 133, **as directed,** percent insulation level.
7. Shielding: Copper tape **OR** Solid copper wires, **as directed**, helically applied over semiconducting insulation shield.
8. Shielding and Jacket: Corrugated copper drain wires embedded in extruded, chlorinated, polyethylene jacket.
9. Three-Conductor Cable Assembly: Three insulated, shielded conductors cabled together with ground conductors, **as directed**.
   a. Circuit Identification: Color-coded tape (black, red, blue) under the metallic shielding.
10. Cable Armor: Interlocked aluminum **OR** Interlocked galvanized steel **OR** Corrugated aluminum tube, **as directed,** applied over cable.
11. Cable Jacket: Sunlight-resistant PVC **OR** Chlorosulfonated polyethylene, CPE, **as directed**.

B. Splice Kits

1. Connectors and Splice Kits: Comply with IEEE 404; type as recommended by cable or splicing kit manufacturer for the application.
2. Splicing Products: As recommended, in writing, by splicing kit manufacturer for specific sizes, ratings, and configurations of cable conductors. Include all components required for complete splice, with detailed instructions.
    a. Combination tape and cold-shrink-rubber sleeve kit with rejacketing by cast-epoxy-resin encasement or other waterproof, abrasion-resistant material.
    b. Heat-shrink splicing kit of uniform, cross-section, polymeric construction with outer heat-shrink jacket.
    c. Premolded, cold-shrink-rubber, in-line splicing kit.
    d. Premolded EPDM splicing body kit with cable joint sealed by interference fit of mating parts and cable.

C. Solid Terminations
1. Multiconductor Cable Sheath Seals: Type recommended by seal manufacturer for type of cable and installation conditions, including orientation.
    a. Compound-filled, cast-metal body, metal-clad cable terminator for metal-clad cable with **OR** without, **as directed,** external plastic jacket.
    b. Cold-shrink sheath seal kit with preformed sleeve openings sized for cable and insulated conductors.
    c. Heat-shrink sheath seal kit with phase- and ground-conductor rejacketing tubes, cable-end sealing boot, and sealing plugs for unused ground-wire openings in boot.
    d. Cast-epoxy-resin sheath seal kit with wraparound mold and packaged, two-part, epoxy-resin casting material.
2. Shielded-Cable Terminations: Comply with the following classes of IEEE 48. Insulation class is equivalent to that of cable. Include shield ground strap for shielded cable terminations.
    a. Class 1 Terminations: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief tube; multiple, molded-silicone rubber, insulator modules; shield ground strap; and compression-type connector.
    b. Class 1 Terminations: Heat-shrink type with heat-shrink inner stress control and outer nontracking tubes; multiple, molded, nontracking skirt modules; and compression-type connector.
    c. Class 1 Terminations: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief shield terminator; multiple-wet-process, porcelain, insulator modules; shield ground strap; and compression-type connector.
    d. Class 1 Terminations, Indoors: Kit with stress-relief tube, nontracking insulator tube, shield ground strap, compression-type connector, and end seal.
    e. Class 2 Terminations, Indoors: Kit with stress-relief tube, nontracking insulator tube, shield ground strap, and compression-type connector. Include silicone-rubber tape, cold-shrink-rubber sleeve, or heat-shrink plastic-sleeve moisture seal for end of insulation whether or not supplied with kits.
    f. Class 3 Terminations: Kit with stress cone and compression-type connector.
3. Nonshielded-Cable Terminations: Kit with compression-type connector. Include silicone-rubber tape, cold-shrink-rubber sleeve, or heat-shrink plastic-sleeve moisture seal for end of insulation whether or not supplied with kits.

D. Separable Insulated Connectors
1. Description: Modular system, complying with IEEE 386, with disconnecting, single-pole, cable terminators and with matching, stationary, plug-in, dead-front terminals designed for cable voltage and for sealing against moisture.
2. Terminations at Distribution Points: Modular type, consisting of terminators installed on cables and modular, dead-front, terminal junctions for interconnecting cables.
3. Load-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type units with 200-A load make/break and continuous-current rating; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.

4. Dead-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type unit with 600-A continuous-current rating; designed for de-energized disconnecting and connecting; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.
5. Dead-Front Terminal Junctions: Modular bracket-mounted groups of dead-front stationary terminals that mate and match with above cable terminators. Two-, three-, or four-terminal units as indicated, with fully rated, insulated, watertight conductor connection between terminals and complete with grounding lug, manufacturer's standard accessory stands, stainless-steel mounting brackets, and attaching hardware.
    a. Protective Cap: Insulating, electrostatic-shielding, water-sealing cap with drain wire.
    b. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: Two-terminal, dead-front junction arranged for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction.
    c. Grounding Kit: Jumpered elbows, portable feed-through accessory units, protective caps, test rods suitable for concurrently grounding three phases of feeders, and carrying case.
    d. Standoff Insulator: Portable, single dead-front terminal for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction. Insulators suitable for fully insulated isolation of energized cable-elbow terminator.
6. Test-Point Fault Indicators: Applicable current-trip ratings and arranged for installation in test points of load-break separable connectors, and complete with self-resetting indicators capable of being installed with shotgun hot stick and tested with test tool.
7. Tool Set: Shotgun hot stick with energized terminal indicator, fault-indicator test tool, and carrying case.

E. Arc-Proofing Materials
1. Tape for First Course on Metal Objects: 10-mil- (250-micrometer-) thick, corrosion-protective, moisture-resistant, PVC pipe-wrapping tape.
2. Arc-Proofing Tape: Fireproof tape, flexible, conformable, intumescent to 0.3 inch (8 mm) thick, compatible with cable jacket.
3. Glass-Cloth Tape: Pressure-sensitive adhesive type, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide.

F. Fault Indicators
1. Indicators: Automatically **OR** Manually, **as directed,** reset fault indicator with inrush restraint feature, arranged to clamp to cable sheath and provide a display after a fault has occurred in cable. Instrument shall not be affected by heat, moisture, and corrosive conditions and shall be recommended by manufacturer for installation conditions.
2. Resetting Tool: Designed for use with fault indicators, with moisture-resistant storage and carrying case.

G. Source Quality Control
1. Test and inspect cables according to ICEA S-97-682 **OR** ICEA S-94-649, **as directed,** before shipping.
2. Test strand-filled cables for water-penetration resistance according to ICEA T-31-610, using a test pressure of 5 psig (35 kPa).

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install cables according to IEEE 576.
2. Pull Conductors: Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
    a. Where necessary, use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant that will not deteriorate conductor or insulation.
    b. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave cable grips that will not damage cables and raceways. Do not use rope hitches for pulling attachment to cable.

3. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
4. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Common Work Results For Electrical".
5. Install direct-buried cables on leveled and tamped bed of 3-inch- (75-mm-) thick, clean sand. Separate cables crossing other cables or piping by a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) of tamped earth. Install permanent markers at ends of cable runs, changes in direction, and buried splices.
6. Install "buried-cable" warning tape 12 inches (305 mm) above cables.
7. In manholes, handholes, pull boxes, junction boxes, and cable vaults, train cables around walls by the longest route from entry to exit and support cables at intervals adequate to prevent sag.
8. Install cable splices at pull points and elsewhere as indicated; use standard kits.
9. Install terminations at ends of conductors and seal multiconductor cable ends with standard kits.
10. Install separable insulated-connector components as follows:
    a. Protective Cap: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal to which no feeder is indicated to be connected.
    b. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: Three.
    c. Standoff Insulator: Three.
11. Arc Proofing: Unless otherwise indicated, arc proof medium-voltage cable at locations not protected by conduit, cable tray, direct burial, or termination materials. In addition to arc-proofing tape manufacturer's written instructions, apply arc proofing as follows:
    a. Clean cable sheath.
    b. Wrap metallic cable components with 10-mil (250-micrometer) pipe-wrapping tape.
    c. Smooth surface contours with electrical insulation putty.
    d. Apply arc-proofing tape in one half-lapped layer with coated side toward cable.
    e. Band arc-proofing tape with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide bands of half-lapped, adhesive, glass-cloth tape 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.
12. Seal around cables passing through fire-rated elements according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
13. Install fault indicators on each phase where indicated.
14. Ground shields of shielded cable at terminations, splices, and separable insulated connectors. Ground metal bodies of terminators, splices, cable and separable insulated-connector fittings, and hardware.
15. Identify cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

B. Field Quality Control
1. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    b. After installing medium-voltage cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 13 16

SECTION 26 05 13 16a - UNDERCARPET CABLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of undercarpet cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Undercarpet cable and service fittings for branch circuits.
b. Undercarpet cable and service fittings for communication and data transmission.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
a. Indicate cable types, accessories, and transition boxes.
b. Indicate proposed layering of cables, cable dimensions, and installation requirements.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NEMA UC 2, "Undercarpet Power Distribution Systems" and with NFPA 70.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Power Distribution Cable
1. Cable: Factory laminated and complying with NEMA UC 2; three-piece assembly including bottom shield, conductor assembly, and top shield.
a. Bottom Shield: Abrasion resistant, nonmetallic **OR** Metallic, **as directed**.
b. Conductor Assembly: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**,-wire branch circuit with insulated ground, **as directed**.
c. Top Shield: Copper or copper alloy.
2. Current Rating: 20 **OR** 30 **OR** 20 and 30, **as directed**, A.

B. Communication And Data Cable
1. Category 5e Communication and Data Cable: Extruded-vinyl jacket over 4 unshielded, twisted pairs, No. 24 AWG, copper; complying with TIA/EIA 568-B; and tested to 300-lb (136-kg) rollover test.

C. Pedestals
1. Description: Manufacturer's standard low **OR** regular, **as directed**,-profile type, single **OR** two **OR** three, **as directed**, gang with single **OR** duplex, **as directed**, receptacles and Category 5e modular connectors, **as directed**.
a. Pedestal Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

D. Power Cable Transition Unit

1. Description: Interface transition unit, with junction box, for connecting three-, four-, or five-conductor, flat-conductor cable to building wiring system.

E. Communication And Data Cable Transition Unit
1. Description: Category 5 transition termination circuit board in wall-mounted box to convert round incoming cable to outgoing flat-undercarpet cable.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Do not begin installation until heavy construction is completed and wheeled traffic is no longer a threat.
2. Do not stack cables in circulation routes.
3. Limit total installed height to 0.09 inch (2.29 mm).
4. Install cables in proper order with power-transmission cable first, followed by telephone cable and then data cable. Cross cables at 90-degree angles.
5. Install undercarpet cables and accessories using special tools as recommended by undercarpet cable manufacturer.

B. Connections
1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
2. Connect undercarpet cable and components to branch circuits and to ground as indicated and instructed by manufacturer.

C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Branch-Circuit Cables: After cables have been installed and energized, perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
b. Communication and Data Cables: After cables have been installed and connected between telecommunications outlet and system cross-connect panel, test each cable according to TIA/EIA TSB67. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 13 16a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 05 13 16	26 05 19 16a	Conductors And Cables

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 19 13 - UNDERFLOOR RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of underfloor raceways for electrical systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Flat-top, single-channel, underfloor raceways.
   b. Flat-top, multichannel, underfloor raceways.
   c. Flush, flat-top underfloor raceways.
   d. Cellular metal underfloor raceways.
   e. Trench-type underfloor raceways.
   f. Electrical connection components for precast concrete, hollow-core, floor decks.
   g. Electrical connection components for electrified cellular steel floor decks.
   h. Service fittings.

C. Definitions
1. Flush Outlet: Underfloor raceway outlet installed so the top of the fixed portions of the receptacles, jacks, and connector assemblies is located approximately at the surface of the floor or floor covering, and with the bodies of connected plugs exposed above the surface of the floor.
2. Flush Underfloor Raceway: Rectangular cross-section, flat-top raceway installed with the top of the raceway flush with the surface of the concrete in which it is embedded.
3. Header Raceway: Rectangular cross-section, single-channel or multichannel, underfloor raceway arranged as feeder raceway to bring wires and cables to service raceways from panelboards and communication terminal components.
4. Recessed Outlet: Underfloor raceway outlet installed with the top of the fixed portion of the connector assemblies located below the surface of the floor or floor covering and arranged to receive plug connectors with the bodies of the plugs concealed below the floor level.
5. Service Raceway: Underfloor distribution raceway providing direct connection to service fittings using preset or afterset inserts.
6. Trench Header: Trench-type raceway arranged as feeder raceway to bring wires and cables to service raceways from panelboards and communication terminal equipment.
7. Underfloor Raceway: A conduit, duct, or cell assembly, or trench located within the floor material or with its top at the floor surface.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For underfloor raceway components, fittings, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For underfloor raceways. Include floor plans, assembly drawings, sections, and details.
   a. Identify components and accessories such as expansion-joint assemblies, straight raceway lengths, preset and afterset inserts, and service fittings.
   b. Provide dimensions locating raceway header and distribution elements. Include spacing between preset inserts and between preset inserts and ends of duct runs, walls, columns, junction boxes, and header duct connections.
   c. Show connections between raceway elements and relationships between components and adjacent structural and architectural elements including slab reinforcement, floor finish work, permanent partitions, architectural module lines, and pretensioning or post-tensioning components.

d. Indicate height of preset inserts, junction boxes, and raceways coordinated with depth of concrete slab and floor fill.
e. Indicate thickening of slabs where required for adequate encasement of raceway components.
f. Document coordination of exposed components with floor-covering materials to ensure that fittings and trim are suitable for indicated floor-covering material.
g. Revise locations from those indicated in the Contract Documents, as required to suit field conditions and to ensure a functioning layout. Identify proposed deviations from the Contract Documents.
h. Show details of connections and terminations of underfloor raceways at panelboards and communication terminal equipment in equipment rooms, wire closets, and similar spaces.
i. Identify those cells of cellular floor deck that are to be connected and fitted for the following underfloor distribution:
    1) Power.
    2) Voice.
    3) Data.
    4) Signal.
    5) Communications.

3. Samples: For typical underfloor raceway products, in specified finish, including the following:
    a. Service fittings and flush and recessed outlet and junction-box covers.
    b. A section of each service raceway configuration with specified preset insert and service fitting installed.
    c. A junction box of each size and type for use with underfloor raceway.
    d. A section of each header raceway configuration, complete with provisions for connection with service raceway.
    e. A section of trench-type raceway, complete with cover and required trim.
    f. A junction box of each size and type, complete with cover and trim.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For underfloor raceways, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
    a. Manufacturer's written instructions for locating preset inserts and for installing afterset inserts.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Flat-Top, Single-Channel, Underfloor Raceways
1. Description:
    a. Material: Steel.
    b. Cross-Section Shape: Rectangular.
    c. Number of Levels: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
    d. Minimum Bending Radius for Communication Cables: Combination of raceways, fittings, inserts, junction boxes, service fittings, and mounting and connection arrangements for wiring devices and jacks shall provide a 2-inch- (50-mm-) minimum bending radius for communication cables.
2. Service Raceways: Fitted with preset inserts.
    a. Nominal Raceway Dimensions:
        1) Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
        2) Power Service Raceway Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm).
        3) Communication Service Raceway Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 6-1/2 inches (165 mm), **as directed**.

b. Number of Single-Channel Raceways per Run: One **OR** Two **OR** Three **OR** Four **OR** Five, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
c. Preset Inserts: Rectangular **OR** Round, **as directed**.
1) Spacing: 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed,** o.c.
2) Size: Rectangular dimensions as required to accommodate mounting and connection of flush-mounted, duplex receptacle or dual communication-jack or connector service fitting.
3) Size: 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter.
4) Equip each insert with a disposable cover and select insert height so cover is 1/8 inch (3 mm) below surface of concrete.
5) Arrange insert for optional attachment of flush-, surface-, or wiring- extension service fitting to replace disposable cover.

3. Header Raceways: Single channel, without preset inserts (blank raceway).
a. Nominal Raceway Dimensions:
1) Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
2) Power Header Raceway Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm).
3) Communication Header Raceway Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 6-1/2 inches (165 mm), **as directed**.
b. Arrangement: In same plane as **OR** Below, **as directed**, service raceways.
c. Connections: Arranged to connect with service raceways at single-level **OR** two-level, **as directed**, junction boxes.

B. Flat-Top, Multichannel, Underfloor Raceways
1. Description:
a. Material: Steel.
b. Cross-Section Shape: Rectangular.
c. Number of Longitudinal Channels: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, separated by steel wall(s).
d. Number of Levels: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
e. Minimum Bending Radius for Communication Cables: Combination of raceways, fittings, inserts, junction boxes, service fittings, and mounting and connection arrangements for wiring devices and jacks shall provide a 2-inch- (50-mm-) minimum bending radius for communication cables.
2. Service Raceways: Fitted with preset inserts.
a. Nominal Raceway Dimensions:
1) Depth: 1-3/8 inches (35 mm).
2) Power Service Channel Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 4-3/8-inches (111 mm), **as directed**.
3) Communication Service Channel Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 6-1/2 inches (165 mm), **as directed**.
b. Preset Inserts:
1) Spacing: 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed,** o.c.
2) Size: Dimensions as required to accommodate mounting and connection of flush- and surface-mounted, single- and multiple-system service fittings or to connect to wiring extensions for feeding wall outlets for power **OR** communications **OR** power and communications, **as directed**.
3) Equip each insert with a disposable cover arranged for installation with top 1/8 inch (3 mm) below surface of concrete.
4) Arrange inserts for optional attachment of flush-, surface-, or wiring-extension service fitting to replace disposable cover. Arrange brackets, mountings, barriers, and floor access covers to support, isolate, and provide access to flush or surface outlet-mounting connector, jack, and receptacle devices.
3. Header Raceways: Multichannel, without preset inserts (blank raceway).
a. Nominal Raceway Dimensions:
1) Header Raceway Depth: Same as service raceways **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (90 mm), **as directed**.

2) Power Header Channel Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 4-3/8-inches (111 mm), **as directed**.
3) Communication Header Channel Width: 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 6-1/2 inches (165 mm), **as directed**.

b. Arrangement: In same plane as **OR** Below, **as directed**, service raceways.
c. Connections: Arranged to connect with service raceways at single-level **OR** two-level, **as directed**, junction boxes.

C. Flush, Flat-Top Underfloor Raceways
1. Description:
a. Material: Steel.
b. Cross-Section Shape: Rectangular, single channel and multichannel, separated by steel wall(s).
c. Listed and labeled for installation with top flush with concrete floor.
d. Number of Levels: One.
2. Service Raceways: Fitted with preset inserts.
a. Number of Longitudinal Channels per Multichannel Raceway: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**.
b. Number of Single-Channel Raceways per Run: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
c. Nominal Channel Dimensions: 3 inches (76 mm) wide by 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) deep.
d. Preset Inserts: Threaded opening with removable steel plug that is flush with top of raceway when screwed in place.
1) Spacing: 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, o.c., full length of each service raceway.
2) Arrangement: Stagger insert locations on parallel raceways or channels to accommodate placement of adjacent service fittings.
3) Size: 1-5/8-inch (41-mm) diameter.
3. Header Raceways: Raceways same as service raceways except without preset inserts (blank raceway).
a. Nominal Channel Dimensions: Same as service raceways.
b. Arrangement: In same plane as service raceways.
c. Connections: Arranged to connect with service raceways at junction boxes.

D. Cellular Metal Underfloor Raceways
1. Service Raceways: Fitted with preset inserts.
a. Material: Steel.
b. Number of Longitudinal Cells: Three, separated by steel walls.
c. Nominal Dimensions of Cells:
1) Overall Depth: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2) Cross-Sectional Area of Cells: Power cells: 5-1/2 sq. in. (35.5 sq. cm); communication system cells: 16 sq. in. (103 sq. cm).
d. Minimum Bending Radius for Communication Cables: Combination of raceways, fittings, inserts, junction boxes, service fittings, and mounting and connection arrangements for wiring devices and jacks shall provide a 2-inch- (50-mm-) minimum bending radius for communication cables.
e. Preset Inserts: Rectangular-shaped metal housing assemblies arranged to provide electrical outlet access to each cell of each raceway designated for service raceway use. Inserts shall be provided throughout the entire length of each such raceway.
1) Spacing: 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed,** o.c.
2) Include housing and connecting provisions for a flush or recessed, single-, double-, or triple-system service fitting.
3) Include mounting and connecting provisions for a surface, single- or multiple-system service fitting.

4) Include connecting provisions for a wiring-extension service fitting to feed wall outlets.
5) Equip each insert with a disposable cover plate arranged for installation with top 1/8 inch (3 mm) below surface of concrete. Arrange insert to receive a flush-, recessed-, or wiring-extension service fitting to replace disposable top.

2. Header Assembly: A junction box and raceway arrangement arranged to feed wires and cables to service raceways.
   a. Three-compartment junction box connecting blank, multicell cellular header raceway (no inserts) with cellular service raceways.
      1) Arrange junction box in the center of a 60-inch (152-cm) length of header raceway.
      2) Cellular header raceway shall have same dimensions as service raceways.
      3) Provide capability for service raceways to be run in both directions from intersection with header raceway.
   b. Three-compartment junction box preassembled with blank, flat-top, multichannel header raceway (no inserts) and fitted to connect with cellular service raceway at right angles to header raceway.
      1) Arrange junction box in the center of a 60-inch (152-cm) length of header raceway.
      2) Provide capability for service raceways to be run in both directions from intersection with header raceway.

E. Trench-Type Underfloor Raceways
1. Trench: Steel, shop or factory welded and fabricated to indicated sizes. Include the following features:
   a. Slab Depth Adjustment: Minimum of minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) to plus 5/8 inch (16 mm) before and during concrete placement.
   b. Cover Supports: Height adjustable, with leveling screws to rigidly support cover assembly.
   c. Screed Strip: Extruded aluminum along both edges at proper elevation without requiring shim material.
   d. Trim Strip: Select to accommodate floor finish material.
   e. Partitions: Arranged to separate channels and isolate wiring of different systems.
   f. Grommeted openings in active floor cells or service raceways.
   g. Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant finish, applied after fabrication.
2. Cover Plates: Removable, steel plates, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, each weighing 60 lb (27 kg) or less with full gasket attached to side units. Fabricate intermediate supports to limit unsupported spans to 15 inches (380 mm) or less. Fabricate covers with appropriate depth recess to receive indicated floor finish.

F. Electrical Connection Components For Cellular Steel Floor Deck
1. Preset Inserts: Rectangular metal-housing assemblies.
   a. Spacing: 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed,** o.c.
   b. Size: As required to provide electrical outlet access to each cell of each group of three cells that is designated for electrical service raceway use.
   c. Equip each insert with a disposable cover arranged for installation with top 1/8 inch (3 mm) below surface of concrete. Arrange insert to receive a flush-, recessed-, or wiring-extension service fitting to replace disposable cover.
   d. Include housing and connecting provisions for a flush or recessed, single-, double-, or triple-system service fitting.
   e. Include mounting and connecting provisions for a surface, single-, double-, or triple-system service fitting.
   f. Include connecting provisions for a wiring-extension service fitting to feed wall outlets.

G. Electrical Connection Components For Cellular Concrete Floor Deck
1. Afterset Inserts: Round metal-nipple assembly with internal and external threading, arranged to screw into plug driven into 1-7/8-inch (48-mm) hole drilled through floor fill, where present, and deck-cell wall into floor raceway cell.

a. Inserts shall be compatible with floor-mounting service fittings.
b. Inserts shall provide wiring path from cell to power **OR** communication **OR** power and communication, **as directed**, wall and ceiling outlets.
c. Inserts shall provide wiring path from cell to header raceway.

H. Supports, Fittings, And Hardware
1. Supports, fittings, and hardware shall be compatible with raceway and outlet system and shall be listed for use with raceway systems and components specified.
2. Supports: Adjustable for height and arranged to maintain alignment and spacing of raceways during concrete placement. Include hold-down straps.
3. Raceway Fittings: Couplings, expansion-joint sleeves, cross-under offsets, vertical and horizontal elbows, grounding screws, adapters, end caps, and other fittings suitable for use with basic components to form a complete installation.

I. Junction Boxes
1. Description: Manufacturer's standard enclosure for indicated type, quantity, arrangement, and configuration of raceways at each raceway junction, intersection, and access location. Include the following accessories and features:
a. Mounting brackets.
b. Escutcheons and holders to accommodate surrounding floor covering.
c. Means for leveling and height adjustment more than 3/8 inch (10 mm) before and after concrete is placed.
d. Raceway Openings: For underfloor raceways and conduits arranged to accommodate raceway layout.
e. Covers shall have appropriate depth recess to receive specific floor finish material.
f. Partitions to separate wiring of different systems.

J. Service Fittings
1. Exposed Parts Finish: Brass **OR** Brushed Aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Flush, Single-System Service Fitting for Round Inserts: Include mounting and cover to support and provide access to single connector, jack, or receptacle device; mounted flush with floor within body of insert.
a. Connector, Jack, and Receptacle Devices: Single modular type; complying with Division 26 Section(s) "Wiring Devices" AND Division 27 Section(s) "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
b. Power Receptacle Outlet: Suitable for 20-A device.
3. Flush, Single- or Multiple-System Service Fitting for Rectangular Inserts: Include mounting, hinged cover, and trim to support and provide access to connector, jack, or receptacle devices mounted flush with floor within insert.
a. Connector, Jack, and Receptacle Devices: Modular type; complying with Division 26 Section(s) "Wiring Devices" AND Division 27 Section(s) "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
b. Power Receptacle Rating: 20 A, 120 V unless otherwise indicated.
4. Recess-Mounted Service Fitting: Modular fittings compatible with preset inserts and shall include covers; provisions for receptacles, jacks, and connectors; and associated device plates for indicated systems. Include hinged flush handhole covers with recessed depth to match thickness of floor finish material. Provide for internally mounted receptacle- and communication-jack and connector assemblies complying with requirements in Division 26 Section(s) "Wiring Devices" AND Division 27 Section(s) "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
a. Duplex receptacle.
b. Duplex telephone-data jacks.
c. Double duplex receptacles.
d. Duplex receptacle and duplex telephone-data jacks.
e. Double duplex telephone-data jacks, Category 5 **OR** Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**.

f. Fiber-optic cable connector.

5. Surface-Mounted Service Fitting: Modular pedestal type, with locking attachment matched to insert floor opening.
   a. Power-outlet, double-faced, surface-mounted unit for duplex receptacle on both sides.
   b. Power-outlet, single-faced, surface-mounted unit for duplex receptacle on one side.
   c. Communication-outlet, double-faced, surface-mounted unit.
      1) Include bushed openings on both sides; 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter; insulated with nonconducting material.
      2) Include provisions for modular dual fiber-optic connector assembly on both sides.
      3) Include provisions for modular dual jack-connector assembly, rated for Category 5 **OR** Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**, on both sides.
   d. Communication-outlet, single-faced, surface-mounted unit with bushed opening on one side; 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter; insulated with nonconducting material.
   e. Combination surface-mounted unit for duplex receptacle on one side and with communication cable connection provision on opposite side.
      1) Communication Side: Include bushed opening; 1-inch (25-mm) minimum diameter; insulated with nonconducting material.
      2) Communication Side: Include provisions for modular dual fiber-optic connector assembly.
      3) Communication Side: Include provisions for modular dual jack-connector assembly, rated for Category 5 **OR** Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**.
6. Flush-Mounted Service Fittings: Modular fittings compatible with preset inserts and shall include covers, provisions for receptacles jacks and connector assemblies and wiring extensions to wall-mounted outlets, and associated device plates for indicated systems. Include flush handhole covers, recessed to suit floor finish material. Internally mounted, modular, receptacle, jack and connector assemblies shall comply with requirements in Division 26 Section(s) "Wiring Devices" AND Division 27 Section(s) "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
   a. Duplex convenience receptacle.
   b. Duplex telephone-data outlets.
   c. Double duplex convenience receptacles.
   d. Duplex convenience receptacle and duplex telephone-data outlets.
   e. Double duplex telephone-data outlets.
   f. Duplex communication jack, rated for Category 5 **OR** Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**.
   g. Duplex fiber-optic communication connector.
   h. Wiring-Extension Service Fittings: Arrangement of brackets and mountings to support, and provide access to wiring or cabling of a cell, and to connect the cable or raceway that extends the system to an individual wall outlet. Provide for connection of FMC **OR** ENT **OR** Type MC cable, **as directed**, for power extensions, and FMC **OR** ENT **OR** optical fiber/communication cable raceway, **as directed**, for communication system extensions.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
   1. Install raceways aligned and leveled and, unless otherwise indicated, parallel or perpendicular to building walls.
   2. Provide a concrete base for support of cellular metal raceway.
   3. Arrange supports to attain proper elevation, alignment, and spacing of raceways. Install supports securely at ends and at intervals not to exceed 60 inches (1500 mm), to prevent movement during concrete pour.
   4. Level raceway components with finished slab and make adjustments for floor finishes.
   5. Adjust supports to maintain a 1/16- to 3/8-inch (1.6- to 10-mm) finished concrete cover over preset inserts.
   6. Remove burrs, sharp edges, dents, and mechanical defects.
   7. Cap or plug boxes, insert- and service-fitting openings, and open ends of raceways.

8. Seal raceways, cells, junction boxes, and inserts to prevent water, concrete, or foreign matter from entering raceways before and during pouring slab or placing fill. Tape joints, or seal with compound, as recommended in writing by underfloor raceway manufacturer.
9. Junction Boxes: Install tops level and flush with finished floor. Install blank closure plates or plugs to close unused junction-box openings. Grout boxes in place to prevent movement during construction. Place top covers in inverted position during construction to prevent damage to surface of cover. Reinstall covers in proper position prior to final acceptance of Work.
10. Afterset Inserts: Cut, hole saw, and drill slab and raceways to allow for installation.
11. Ground underfloor raceway components.
12. Install a marker at the center of the last insert of each cell and channel of each straight run of metal underfloor service raceway to locate the insert and identify the system.
    a. Install markers at last inserts on both sides of permanent walls and at first inserts adjacent to each junction box.
    b. Install markers flush at screed line before pouring slab or placing fill. Extend marker with grommeted screw when floor covering is placed. Do not extend through carpet.
    c. Use slotted-head screw to identify electrical power; use Phillips-head screw to identify conventional communications.
    d. Use another distinctive screw head to identify third system such as special-purpose wiring.
13. Level raceway components with finished slab and make adjustments in raceway component elevation to accommodate indicated floor finishes.

B. Field Quality Control
    1. Perform tests and inspections.
        a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
    2. Tests and Inspections:
        a. Perform visual inspection of interior of each junction box **OR** section of trench raceway, **as directed**, to verify absence of dirt, dust, construction debris, and moisture. Replace damaged and malfunctioning components.
        b. Perform point-to-point tests of ground continuity and resistance of ground path between the most remote accessible fitting on each branch of each underfloor raceway system and the main electrical distribution grounding system.
            1) Determine cause and perform correction of any point-to-point resistance value that exceeds 0.05 ohms.
            2) Comply with NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications about safety, suitability of test equipment, test instrument calibration, and test report and records.

C. Cleaning
    1. Clean and swab out underfloor raceways, inserts, and junction boxes after finish has been applied to floor slab, and remove foreign material, dirt, and moisture. Leave interiors clean and dry.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 05 19 13	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 19 16 - ELECTRICAL RENOVATION

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electrical renovation. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

1.2 GENERAL

A. Quality Assurance
   1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with following:
      a. Electrical: National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC).
      b. Accessibility:
         1) Architectural Barriers Act of 1968 as amended (42 USC 4151-4157) and HUD implementing regulations (24 CFR Part 40).
            a) Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS).
         2) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 as amended (29 USC 794) and HUD implementing regulations 24 CFR Part 8.
         3) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines (24 CFR Chapter 1).
         4) Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (42 USC §§ 12101, et seq.) and implementing regulations (28 CFR Part 35).

B. Project Conditions
   1. Existing Conditions: Buildings will be occupied during construction. See Division 1 Section “Summary of Work.” Do not interfere with use of occupied portions of building. Maintain free and safe passage to and from occupied areas.

C. Scheduling And Sequencing
   1. Scheduling and Completion: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.

D. Alterations, Cutting And Protection
   1. Protection: Protect existing finishes, equipment, utilities and adjacent work, which is scheduled to remain, from damage.
   2. Existing Operating Facilities: Confine operations to immediate vicinity of new work and do not interfere with or obstruct ingress or egress to and from adjacent facilities.

1.3 PRODUCTS

A. Materials
   1. Electrical Materials and Devices: Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC):
      a. Boxes: Galvanized steel, not less than 1.6 mm (0.0625 inch) thickness (NEC 370-20) grounded in accordance with NEC, Article 250, suitable for recess mounting.
         1) Provide boxes of appropriate shape and size for intended purpose.
      b. Devices:
         1) Duplex Receptacles: 15 A or 20 A 115 V, UL Listed with screw side connections and corrugated bearing pads.
            a) GFIC Outlets: 115 V, 60 Hz, 15/20 A rating, UL Listed.
         2) Switches: 15 A. 115 V, single pole, single throw switch, UL Listed, with side screw connections and corrugated bearing pads.

a) Garbage Disposal: Heavy duty, 120/277 VAC, 60 Hz, single pole, single throw, 20 A rate, UL listed and CSA certified.

3) Cover Plates: Smooth plastic in color to match existing.

c. Wiring: Insulated wire, Type NM 600 V with ground wire, sized as appropriate for intended purpose and in accordance with NEC.

1) Aluminum Wire: Not allowed unless existing wiring is aluminum.

2) Provide necessary fittings in accordance with NEC.

1.4 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Units, Spaces and Areas to be Renovated: Inspect to become familiar with existing conditions and to take measurements which are necessary for renovation work to be completed in accordance with contract requirements.
   a. Carefully inspect condition of existing spaces including, but not limited to walls, floors, plumbing, electrical, etc. as essential to successful completion of renovation work.
   b. Survey each space and verify dimensions for work.

B. Preparation

1. Building Occupation: Carry out renovation work to cause as little inconvenience to occupants as possible. See Division 1 Section “Summary of Work.”
2. Protection: Protect and be responsible for existing buildings, facilities, utilities, and improvements within areas of construction operations.
   a. Tenant's Property: Be responsible for any damage or loss to residents' property and to other work. Replace any material, which, in opinion of the Owner, has become damaged to extent that it could not be restored to its original condition.
   b. Take precautions to protect residents and public from injury from construction operations.

C. Laying Out Work

1. Discrepancies: Verify dimensions and elevations indicated in layout of existing work.
   a. Prior to commencing work, carefully compare and check Drawings (if any), for discrepancies in locations or elevations of work to be executed.
   b. Refer discrepancies among Drawings (if any), Specifications and existing conditions to the Owner for adjustment before work affected is performed.
      1) Failure to make such notification shall place responsibility on Contractor to carry out work in satisfactory, workmanlike manner.
2. Contractor: Responsible for location and elevation of construction contemplated by Construction Documents.

D. Location Of Equipment And Piping

1. Drawings (if any) indicating location of equipment, piping, ductwork, etc. are diagrammatic and job conditions shall not always permit their installation in location shown. When this situation occurs, bring condition to the Owner's attention immediately. Relocation will be determined in joint conference.
2. Contractor: Do not relocate any items without first obtaining the Owner's acceptance. Remove and relocate such relocated items at own expense if so directed.

E. Electrical Work

1. General: Install boxes, wiring, and devices as indicated and required to connect and control electrical devices in accordance with NFPA 70 (NEC).
   a. Boxes: Solidly anchor to framing or blocking.
2. Removing Electrical Switch or Duplex Outlet (Non-Hazardous Locations):
   a. Box to Remain:
      1) Remove electrical device; cap hot and neutral with set-screw wire connectors.

2) Attach ground wire to remaining box with solid screw attachment.
3) Provide and install natural finish aluminum blank cover plate with screw fasteners integral to match size of box remaining.

b. Box to be removed:
1) Remove electrical device and box and pull wire out of wall back to first circuit panel, disconnecting from circuit panel.
2) Patch and repair hole in partition to match existing.

3. Garbage Disposal Electrical Hook-up: See Section “Plumbing.” Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC):
a. Wiring: Install from disposal through concealed spaces to house panel, anchoring wire, and providing necessary fittings.
b. Switch: Install above counter top backsplash.

4. Range Hood Electrical Hook-up: See Section “Residential Appliances.” Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC):
a. Electric service: Install insulated wire from range hood through concealed spaces to house panel, anchoring wire, and providing necessary fittings.

5. Water Heater Electrical Hook-up: See Division 15 Section “Domestic Water Heaters.” Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC).

6. Furnace Electrical Hook-up: See Section “Furnaces.” Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC).

7. Smoke Detector Electrical Hook-up: See “Fire Alarm.” Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC).

F. Integrating Existing Work
1. Protection: Protect existing improvements from damage.
a. Where new work is to be connected to existing work, exercise special care not to disturb or damage existing work more than necessary.
b. Damaged Work: Replace, repair and restored to its original condition at no cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 19 16a - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of conductors and cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
b. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
c. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

C. Definitions
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Conductors And Cables
1. Aluminum and Copper, **as directed**, Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
2. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THW **OR** THHN-THWN **OR** XHHW **OR** UF **OR** USE **OR** SO, **as directed**.
3. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for armored cable, Type AC **OR** metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM **OR** Type SO **OR** Type USE, **as directed**, with ground wire.

B. Connectors And Splices
1. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

C. Sleeves For Cables
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch (1.3- or 3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
4. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

D. Sleeve Seals
   1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
      a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
      b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
      c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Conductor Material Applications
   1. Feeders: Copper **OR** Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger, **as directed**. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
   2. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Conductor Insulation And Multiconductor Cable Applications And Wiring Methods
   1. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Type XHHW, single conductors in raceway **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Type SE or USE multiconductor cable, **as directed**.
   2. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
   3. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
   4. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Underground feeder cable, Type UF, **as directed**.
   5. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI, **as directed**.
   6. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
   7. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
   8. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
   9. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Underground branch-circuit cable, Type UF, **as directed**.
   10. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI, **as directed**.

11. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI, **as directed**.
12. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
13. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
14. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway **OR** Power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes **OR** Power-limited tray cable, in cable tray, **as directed**.

C. Installation Of Conductors And Cables
1. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
3. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
4. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
5. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
6. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
7. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
8. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
   a. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.
9. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, of slack.

D. Sleeve Installation For Electrical Penetrations
1. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
   a. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
   b. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
5. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
6. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
7. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
8. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance, **as directed**.
9. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies, **as directed**.
10. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

11. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
12. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
13. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
14. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

E. Sleeve-Seal Installation
1. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

F. Firestopping
1. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

G. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
    a. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services, **as directed**, for compliance with requirements.
    b. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    c. Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
        1) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Final Completion.
        2) Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
        3) Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
3. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
    a. Test procedures used.
    b. Test results that comply with requirements.
    c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
4. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16a

SECTION 26 05 19 16b - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for communications. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Communications equipment coordination and installation.
b. Sleeves for pathways and cables.
c. Sleeve seals.
d. Grout.
e. Common communications installation requirements.

C. Definitions
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sleeves For Pathways And Cables
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
a. Minimum Metal Thickness:
1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

B. Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of pathway or cable.
b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

C. Grout

1. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Common Requirements For Communications Installation
1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
3. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
4. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both communications equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
5. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

B. Sleeve Installation For Communications Penetrations
1. Communications penetrations occur when pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
5. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
6. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
7. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
8. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
   a. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
9. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
10. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pathway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal pathway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
11. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
12. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
13. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

C. Sleeve-Seal Installation
1. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve

seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

D. Firestopping
   1. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for communications installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 19 16c - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for communications equipment room fittings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Telecommunications mounting elements.
b. Backboards.
c. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets.
d. Telecommunications service entrance pathways.
e. Grounding.

C. Definitions
1. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
2. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
3. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel not exceeding 6 inches (152 mm) in width.
4. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
5. LAN: Local area network.
6. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
7. Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a bottom without ventilation openings within integral or separate longitudinal side rails.
8. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of integral or separate longitudinal rails and a bottom having openings sufficient for the passage of air and using 75 percent or less of the plan area of the surface to support cables.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Floor-mounted cabinets and cable pathways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
b. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
c. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.
3. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For floor-mounted cabinets, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions. Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.
c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff **OR** personnel must possess the standards and experience for membership.
a. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD **OR** RCDD/NTS **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership **OR** Commercial Installer, Level 2, **as directed**.
b. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician **OR** Level 2 Installer, **as directed**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
c. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership **OR** Commercial Installer, Level 2, **as directed**, to perform the on-site inspection.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
4. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

G. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install equipment frames and cable trays until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and work above ceilings is complete.

H. Coordination
1. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with the Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
a. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and the Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
b. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
c. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
d. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the equipment room.
2. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pathways
1. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.

2. Cable Support: NRTL labeled. Cable support brackets shall be designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable. Cable tie slots fasten cable ties to brackets.
   a. Comply with NFPA 70 and UL 2043 for fire-resistant and low-smoke-producing characteristics.
   b. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
   c. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
   d. Straps and other devices.
3. Cable Trays:
   a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
      1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
      2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
      3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
      4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
      5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
4. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
   a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

B. Backboards
1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".

C. Equipment Frames
1. General Frame Requirements:
   a. Distribution Frames: Freestanding and wall-mounting, modular-steel units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
   b. Module Dimension: Width compatible with EIA 310 standard, 19-inch (480-mm) panel mounting.
   c. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
2. Floor-Mounted Racks: Modular-type, steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, construction.
   a. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip, **as directed**.
   b. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Modular Freestanding Cabinets:
   a. Removable and lockable side panels.
   b. Hinged and lockable front and rear doors.
   c. Adjustable feet for leveling.
   d. Screened ventilation openings in the roof and rear door.
   e. Cable access provisions in the roof and base.
   f. Grounding bus bar.
   g. Rack **OR** Roof, **as directed**,-mounted, 550-cfm (260-L/s) fan with filter.
   h. Power strip.
   i. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
   j. All cabinets keyed alike.

4. Modular Wall Cabinets:
   a. Wall mounting.
   b. Steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, construction.
   c. Treated to resist corrosion.
   d. Lockable front and rear doors.
   e. Louvered side panels.
   f. Cable access provisions top and bottom.
   g. Grounding lug.
   h. Rack **OR** Roof, **as directed**,-mounted, 250-cfm (118-L/s) fan.
   i. Power strip.
   j. All cabinets keyed alike.
5. Cable Management for Equipment Frames:
   a. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
   b. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
   c. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
   d. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

D. Power Strips
1. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.
   a. Rack mounting.
   b. Six, 15-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R **OR** 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R, **as directed**, receptacles.
   c. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
   d. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
   e. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing:
      1) When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
         OR
         Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
   f. Close-coupled, direct plug-in **OR** Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m), **as directed**, line cord.
   g. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
   h. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 33 **OR** 26 **OR** 13, **as directed**, kA per phase.
   i. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all 3 modes shall be not more than 330 V.

E. Grounding
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
2. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:
   a. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression **OR** exothermic, **as directed**,-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
   b. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide (6 mm thick by 100 mm wide) with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart.
   c. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.
3. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

F. Labeling
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Entrance Facilities
   1. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.
   2. Install underground **OR** buried **OR** aerial, **as directed**, pathways complying with recommendations in TIA/EIA-569-A, "Entrance Facilities" Article.
      a. Install underground **OR** buried, **as directed**, entrance pathway complying with Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".

B. Installation
   1. Comply with NECA 1.
   2. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.
   3. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
   4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

C. Firestopping
   1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
   2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
   3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

D. Grounding
   1. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
   2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
   3. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
   4. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.
      a. Bond the shield of shielded cable to the grounding bus bar in communications rooms and spaces.

E. Identification
   1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
   2. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
   3. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 **OR** Class 3 **OR** Class 4, **as directed**, level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard, **as directed**.
   4. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16c

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 19 16d - COMMUNICATIONS BACKBONE CABLING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for communications backbone cabling. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Pathways.
b. UTP cable.
c. 50/125 and 62.5/125-micrometer, optical fiber cabling.
d. Coaxial cable.
e. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
f. Cabling identification products.

C. Definitions
1. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
2. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
3. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
4. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
5. LAN: Local area network.
6. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
7. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

D. Backbone Cabling Description
1. Backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.
2. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

E. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

F. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings:
a. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by the Owner.
b. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
c. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
d. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:
1) Cross-connects.
2) Patch panels.
3) Patch cords.

e. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
f. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.

3. Qualification Data: For Installer, **as directed**, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
4. Source quality-control reports.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Maintenance Data.
7. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
   a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
   b. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
   c. Device address list.
   d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

G. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff **OR** personnel must possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
   a. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD **OR** personnel that possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
   b. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician **OR** Level 2 Installer, **as directed**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
   b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directed**, or less.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
5. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

H. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
   a. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
   b. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
   c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

I. Software Service Agreement
1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
   a. Provide 30 days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pathways
1. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
2. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
   a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
   b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
   c. Straps and other devices.
3. Cable Trays:
   a. Cable Tray Material: Metal, suitable for indoors, and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inches (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inches (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
      1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
      2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
      3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
      4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
      5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
4. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
   a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

B. Backboards
1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

C. UTP Cable
1. Description: 100-ohm, 100-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair binder groups covered with a gray thermoplastic jacket and overall metallic shield.
   a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
   b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
   c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**.
   d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG, **as directed**.
      2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or MPP, CMP, or MPR, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG, **as directed**.
      5) Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; or MPP or MPR, **as directed**.
      6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
      7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.

D. UTP Cable Hardware

1. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
2. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 5e **OR** 110-style IDC for Category 6 **OR** 66-style IDC for Category 5e, **OR** 110-style IDC for Category 6e **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
3. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
   a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
4. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
   a. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated **OR** conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria, **as directed**.
5. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
6. Patch Cords: Factory-made, 4-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1200-mm), **as directed**, lengths; terminated with 8-position modular plug at each end.
   a. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
   b. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

E. Optical Fiber Cable
1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.
   a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
   b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
   c. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B **OR** TIA/EIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
   d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or OFNR, OFNP, **as directed**.
      2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
      3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; or OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**.
      5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
   e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, armored type.
   f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
   g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
2. Jacket:
   a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable **OR** Orange for 62.5/125-micrometer cable, **as directed**.
   b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
   c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware

1. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
   a. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
2. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.
3. Cable Connecting Hardware:
   a. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
   b. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
   c. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

G. Coaxial Cable
1. General Coaxial Cable Requirements: Broadband type, recommended by cable manufacturer specifically for broadband data transmission applications. Coaxial cable and accessories shall have 75-ohm nominal impedance with a return loss of 20 dB maximum from 7 to 806 MHz.
2. RG-11/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
   a. No. 14 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor.
   b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   c. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 60 percent aluminum braid.
   d. Jacketed with sunlight-resistant, black PVC or PE.
   e. Suitable for outdoor installations in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 85 deg C.
3. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATVR.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, silver-plated, copper-covered steel conductor.
   b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   c. Triple shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 95 percent aluminum braid; covered by aluminum foil with grounding strip.
   d. Color-coded PVC jacket.
4. RG-6/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV or CM.
   a. No. 16 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
   c. Jacketed with black PVC or PE.
   d. Suitable for indoor installations.
5. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 40 percent aluminum braid.
   c. PVC jacket.
6. RG59/U (Plenum Rated): NFPA 70, Type CMP.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; foam fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 65 percent aluminum braid.
   c. Copolymer jacket.
7. NFPA and UL compliance, listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1655 and with NFPA 70, "Radio and Television Equipment" and "Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution" Articles. Types are as follows:
   a. CATV Cable: Type CATV, or CATVP or CATVR, **as directed**.
   b. CATV Plenum Rated: Type CATVP, complying with NFPA 262.
   c. CATV Riser Rated: Type CATVR; or CATVP, CATVR, or CATV, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
   d. CATV Limited Rating: Type CATVX.

H. Coaxial Cable Hardware
1. Coaxial-Cable Connectors: Type BNC, 75 ohms.

I. Grounding

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

J. Identification Products
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

K. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
2. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
5. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Entrance Facilities
1. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

B. Wiring Methods
1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
   a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
   b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
2. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

C. Installation Of Pathways
1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A.
2. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings". Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
4. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
5. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
6. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
   a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
   b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
   c. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
   d. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.

e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

7. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

D. Installation Of Cables

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. General Requirements for Cabling:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
   b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
   c. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
   d. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
   e. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
   f. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
   g. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
   h. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
   i. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
   j. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
   k. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
3. UTP Cable Installation:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
   b. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
4. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
   b. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
5. Open-Cable Installation:
   a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
   b. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
   c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
6. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
   a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
   b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
   c. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
7. Outdoor Coaxial Cable Installation:
   a. Install outdoor connections in enclosures complying with NEMA 250, Type 4X. Install corrosion-resistant connectors with properly designed O-rings to keep out moisture.
   b. Attach antenna lead-in cable to support structure at intervals not exceeding 36 inches (915 mm).
8. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
9. Separation from EMI Sources:

a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
   1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
   2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
   3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).
c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
   1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
   2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
   3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
   1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
   2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
   3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
e. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
f. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

E. Firestopping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

F. Grounding
1. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
3. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
4. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

G. Identification
1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
   a. Administration Class: 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**.
   b. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
3. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 **OR** Class 3 **OR** Class 4, **as directed**, level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.

4. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.
5. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
6. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
7. Cable and Wire Identification:
    a. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
    b. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
    c. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
    d. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
        1) Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device with name and number of particular device as shown.
        2) Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
    e. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
8. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA 606-A, for the following:
    a. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

H. Field Quality Control
1. Tests and Inspections:
    a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
    b. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
    c. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
        1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    d. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
        1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
        2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

a) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
b) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

2. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
3. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
4. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16d

SECTION 26 05 19 16e - COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for communications horizontal cabling. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Pathways.
b. UTP cabling.
c. 50/125 and 62.5/125-micrometer, optical fiber cabling.
d. Coaxial cable.
e. Multiuser telecommunications outlet assemblies.
f. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
g. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
h. Cabling system identification products.
i. Cable management system.

C. Definitions
1. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
2. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
3. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel.
4. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.
5. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
6. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
7. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
8. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
9. LAN: Local area network.
10. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.
11. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.
12. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
13. Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom without ventilation openings.
14. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom having openings for the passage of air.
15. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

D. Horizontal Cabling Description
1. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.
a. TIA/EIA-568-B.1 requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.

b. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more that one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
c. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
d. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.

2. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m), and includes the components that extend from the telecommunications outlet/connectors to the station equipment.
3. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment. The maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) in the horizontal cross-connect.

E. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

F. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings:
a. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by the Owner.
b. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
c. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
d. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:
1) Cross-connects.
2) Patch panels.
3) Patch cords.
e. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
f. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
3. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, in specified finish, one for each size and outlet configuration and faceplates for color selection and evaluation of technical features.
4. Qualification Data: For Installer, **as directed**, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
5. Source quality-control reports.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Maintenance Data.
8. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
b. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
c. Device address list.
d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

G. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff **OR** personnel must possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
a. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD **OR** personnel that possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
b. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician **OR** Level 2 Installer, **as directed**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.

2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
   b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directions**, or less.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
5. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

H. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
   a. Test optical fiber cables to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
   b. Test optical fiber cables while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
   c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

I. Software Service Agreement
1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
   a. Provide 30 days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pathways
1. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
2. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
   a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
   b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
   c. Straps and other devices.
3. Cable Trays:
   a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors, and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
      1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
      2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
      3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
      4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
      5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
4. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.

a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

B. Backboards
1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

C. UTP Cable
1. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair, binder groups covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.
   a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
   b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
   c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**.
   d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG, **as directed**.
      2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or MPP, CMP, or MPR, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG, **as directed**.
      5) Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; or MPP or MPR, **as directed**.
      6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
      7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.

D. UTP Cable Hardware
1. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
2. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 5e **OR** 110-style IDC for Category 6 **OR** 66-style IDC for Category 5e, OR 110-style IDC for Category 6e **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
3. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
   a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
4. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
   a. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated **OR** conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria, **as directed**.
5. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
6. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900 mm) **OR** 48-inch (1200-mm), **as directed**, lengths; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end.
   a. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
   b. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

E. Optical Fiber Cable

1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.
   a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
   b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
   c. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B **OR** TIA/EIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
   d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or OFNR, OFNP, **as directed**.
      2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
      3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; or OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**.
      5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
   e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, armored type.
   f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
   g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
2. Jacket:
   a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable **OR** Orange for 62.5/125-micrometer cable, **as directed**.
   b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
   c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware
1. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
   a. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
2. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.
3. Cable Connecting Hardware:
   a. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
   b. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
   c. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

G. Coaxial Cable
1. Cable Characteristics: Broadband type, recommended by cable manufacturer specifically for broadband data transmission applications. Coaxial cable and accessories shall have 75-ohm nominal impedance with a return loss of 20 dB maximum from 7 to 806 MHz.
2. RG-11/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
   a. No. 14 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor.
   b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   c. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 60 percent aluminum braid.
   d. Jacketed with sunlight-resistant, black PVC or PE.
   e. Suitable for outdoor installations in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 85 deg C.
3. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATVR.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, silver-plated, copper-covered steel conductor.
   b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.

c. Triple shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 95 percent aluminum braid; covered by aluminum foil with grounding strip.
d. Color-coded PVC jacket.

4. RG-6/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV or CM.
   a. No. 16 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
   c. Jacketed with black PVC or PE.
   d. Suitable for indoor installations.
5. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 40 percent aluminum braid.
   c. PVC jacket.
6. RG59/U (Plenum Rated): NFPA 70, Type CMP.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; foam fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 65 percent aluminum braid.
   c. Copolymer jacket.
7. NFPA and UL compliance, listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1655 and with NFPA 70 "Radio and Television Equipment" and "Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution" Articles. Types are as follows:
   a. CATV Cable: Type CATV or CATVP or CATVR, **as directed**.
   b. CATV Plenum Rated: Type CATVP, complying with NFPA 262.
   c. CATV Riser Rated: Type CATVR; or CATVP, CATVR, or CATV, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
   d. CATV Limited Rating: Type CATVX.

H. Coaxial Cable Hardware
1. Coaxial-Cable Connectors: Type BNC, 75 ohms.

I. Consolidation Points
1. Description: Consolidation points shall comply with requirements for cable connecting hardware.
   a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
   b. Number of Connectors per Field:
      1) One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.
      2) One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus 25 percent spare positions.
   c. Mounting: Recessed in ceiling **OR** Wall **OR** Desk **OR** Furniture, **as directed**.
   d. NRTL listed as complying with UL 50 and UL 1863.
   e. When installed in plenums used for environmental air, NRTL listed as complying with UL 2043.

J. Multiuser Telecommunications Outlet Assembly (MUTOA)
1. Description: MUTOAs shall meet the requirements for cable connecting hardware.
   a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
   b. Number of Connectors per Field:
      1) One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.
      2) One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus 25 percent spare positions.
   c. Mounting: Recessed in ceiling **OR** Wall **OR** Desk **OR** Furniture, **as directed**.
   d. NRTL listed as complying with UL 50 and UL 1863.
   e. Label shall include maximum length of work area cords, based on TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
   f. When installed in plenums used for environmental air, NRTL listed as complying with UL 2043.

K. Telecommunications Outlet/Connectors

1. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Workstation Outlets: Two **OR** Four, **as directed**,-port-connector assemblies mounted in single or multigang faceplate.
   a. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
   b. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel **OR** Brass, **as directed**, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
   c. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
      1) Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
   d. Legend:
      1) Factory labeled by silk-screening or engraving for stainless steel **OR** brass, **as directed**, faceplates.
         OR
         Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
         OR
         Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

L. Grounding
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

M. Identification Products
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

N. Cable Management System
1. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database and graphic, **as directed**, capabilities.
2. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA/EIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.
3. Information shall be presented in database view, schematic plans, or technical drawings.
   a. Microsoft Visio Professional or AutoCAD drawing software shall be used as drawing and schematic plans software.
4. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:
   a. Direct upload tests from circuit testing instrument into the personal computer.
   b. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

O. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
2. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
5. Factory-sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
6. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
7. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Entrance Facilities

1. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

B. Wiring Methods
   1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
      a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
      b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
   2. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
   3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

C. Installation Of Pathways
   1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
   2. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings". Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
   3. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
   4. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
   5. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
   6. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
      a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
      b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
      c. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
      d. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.
      e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
   7. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

D. Installation Of Cables
   1. Comply with NECA 1.
   2. General Requirements for Cabling:
      a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
      b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
      c. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
      d. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
      e. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to telecommunications outlet/connectors:
         1) Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
         2) Locate consolidation points for UTP at least 49 feet (15 m) from communications equipment room.
      f. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.

g. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
h. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
i. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
j. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
k. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
l. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
m. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

3. UTP Cable Installation:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
   b. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
4. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
   b. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
5. Open-Cable Installation:
   a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
   b. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
   c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
6. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
   a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
   b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
   c. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
7. Outdoor Coaxial Cable Installation:
   a. Install outdoor connections in enclosures complying with NEMA 250, Type 4X. Install corrosion-resistant connectors with properly designed O-rings to keep out moisture.
   b. Attach antenna lead-in cable to support structure at intervals not exceeding 36 inches (915 mm).
8. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
9. Separation from EMI Sources:
   a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
   b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
      2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
      3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).
   c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).

2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

e. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).

f. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

E. Firestopping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

F. Grounding
1. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
3. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
4. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

G. Identification
1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
a. Administration Class: 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**.
b. Color-code cross-connect fields. Apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
2. Using cable management system software specified in Part 2, develop Cabling Administration Drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable and label cable, jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with same designation. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.
3. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
4. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 **OR** Class 3 **OR** Class 4, **as directed**, level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
5. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
6. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and

equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA/EIA-606-A. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by the Owner.

7. Cable and Wire Identification:
   a. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
   b. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
   c. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
   d. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
      1) Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
      2) Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
   e. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
   f. Uniquely identify and label work area cables extending from the MUTOA to the work area. These cables may not exceed the length stated on the MUTOA label.
8. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.
   a. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

H. Field Quality Control
1. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
   b. Visually confirm Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
   c. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
   d. Test UTP backbone copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
      1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
   e. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
      1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
      2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
         a) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
         b) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
   f. UTP Performance Tests:

1) Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:
   a) Wire map.
   b) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
   c) Insertion loss.
   d) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
   e) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
   f) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
   g) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
   h) Return loss.
   i) Propagation delay.
   j) Delay skew.

g. Optical Fiber Cable Performance Tests: Perform optical fiber end-to-end link tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

h. Coaxial Cable Tests: Conduct tests according to Division 27 Section "Master Antenna Television System".

i. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP and optical fiber systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.
   1) Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
   2) Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.

2. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
3. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16e

SECTION 26 05 19 16f - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for electronic safety and security. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Electronic safety and security equipment coordination and installation.
b. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
c. Sleeve seals.
d. Grout.
e. Common electronic safety and security installation requirements.

C. Definitions
1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sleeves For Raceways And Cables
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
a. Minimum Metal Thickness:
1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

B. Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

C. Grout

1. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Common Requirements For Electronic Safety And Security Installation
   1. Comply with NECA 1.
   2. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
   3. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
   4. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electronic safety and security equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
   5. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

B. Sleeve Installation For Electronic Safety And Security Penetrations
   1. Electronic safety and security penetrations occur when raceways, pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
   2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
   3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
   4. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
   5. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
   6. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
   7. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
   8. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
      a. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
   9. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
   10. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
   11. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
   12. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
   13. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

C. Sleeve-Seal Installation
   1. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.

2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

D. Firestopping
1. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electronic safety and security installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16f

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 19 16g - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for conductors and cables for electronic safety and security. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. UTP cabling.
b. 50/125 and 62.5/125-micrometer, multimode optical fiber cabling.
c. Coaxial cabling.
d. RS-232 cabling.
e. RS-485 cabling.
f. Low-voltage control cabling.
g. Control-circuit conductors.
h. Fire alarm wire and cable.
i. Identification products.

C. Definitions
1. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
2. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
3. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
4. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
5. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).
6. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Pathways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
a. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
1) Nominal OD.
2) Minimum bending radius.
3) Maximum pulling tension.
2. Shop Drawings: Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
a. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
b. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
c. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For pathways, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

5. Source quality-control reports.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wire and cable to include in operation and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
   a. Allowable pulling tension of cable.
   b. Cable connectors and terminations recommended by the manufacturer.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.
   a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed,** to supervise on-site testing.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
   b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directed**, or less.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
   a. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical-fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
   b. Test optical fiber cable on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; include the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
   c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

H. Project Conditions
1. Do not install conductors and cables that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
   a. Indications that wire and cables are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration and sagging of factory packing materials.
2. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pathways
1. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
   a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
   b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
   c. Straps and other devices.
2. Cable Trays:

a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors, and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
   1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep, **as directed**. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
   2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, wide.
   3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm), **as directed**, wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
   4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
   5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**, wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.

3. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used, **as directed**.
4. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

B. Backboards
1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".

C. UTP Cable
1. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.
   a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
   b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
   c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**.
   d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; **OR** MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG, **as directed**.
      2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP **OR** MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; **OR** MPP, CMP, or MPR, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; **OR** MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG, **as directed**.
      5) Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; **OR** MPP or MPR, **as directed**.
      6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
      7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR **OR** MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.

D. UTP Cable Hardware
1. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.
2. Connecting Blocks: 110-style for Category 5e **OR** 110-style for Category 6 **OR** 66-style for Category 5e, **OR** 110-style for Category 6e **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25, **as directed**, percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

E. Optical Fiber Cable
1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, **as directed**, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.

a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for indoor cable OR ICEA S-87-640 for outside plant, as directed, for mechanical properties.
b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
c. Comply with TIA-492AAAB **OR** TIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
   1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, **OR** OFNR, OFNP, **as directed**.
   2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
   3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, complying with UL 1666.
   4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; **OR** OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**.
   5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
   6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **asa directed**, complying with UL 1666.
e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, armored type.
f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.

2. Jacket:
   a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable **OR** Orange for 62.5/125-micrometer cable, **as directed**.
   b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-C.
   c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware
1. Cable Connecting Hardware: Meet the Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA-604-2-B, TIA-604-3-B, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
   a. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
   b. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

G. Coaxial Cable
1. General Coaxial Cable Requirements: Broadband type, recommended by cable manufacturer specifically for broadband data transmission applications. Coaxial cable and accessories shall have 75-ohm nominal impedance with a return loss of 20 dB maximum from 7 to 806 MHz.
2. RG-11/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
   a. No. 14 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor.
   b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   c. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 60 percent aluminum braid.
   d. Jacketed with sunlight-resistant, black PVC or PE.
   e. Suitable for outdoor installations in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 85 deg C.
3. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATVR.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, silver-plated, copper-covered steel conductor.
   b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   c. Triple shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 95 percent aluminum braid; covered by aluminum foil with grounding strip.
   d. Color-coded PVC jacket.
4. RG-6/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV or CM.
   a. No. 16 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
   c. Jacketed with black PVC or PE.

d. Suitable for indoor installations.

5. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 40 percent aluminum braid.
   c. PVC jacket.
6. RG59/U (Plenum Rated): NFPA 70, Type CMP.
   a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; foam fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
   b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 65 percent aluminum braid.
   c. Copolymer jacket.
7. NFPA and UL Compliance: Coaxial cables shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1655, and with NFPA 70 "Radio and Television Equipment" and "Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution" Articles. Types are as follows:
   a. CATV Cable: Type CATV, **OR** CATVP or CATVR, **as directed**.
   b. CATV Plenum Rated: Type CATVP, complying with NFPA 262.
   c. CATV Riser Rated: Type CATVR; **OR** CATVP, CATVR, or CATV, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
   d. CATV Limited Rating: Type CATVX.

H. Coaxial Cable Hardware
1. Coaxial-Cable Connectors: Type BNC, 75 ohms.

I. RS-232 Cable
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
   a. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
   b. Polypropylene insulation.
   c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
   d. PVC jacket.
   e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
   f. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
   a. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
   b. Plastic insulation.
   c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
   d. Plastic jacket.
   e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
   f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

J. RS-485 Cable
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM **OR** CMG, **as directed**.
   a. Paired, 2 pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
   b. PVC insulation.
   c. Unshielded.
   d. PVC jacket.
   e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
   a. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
   b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
   c. Unshielded.
   d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
   e. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

K. Low-Voltage Control Cable

1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
   a. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
   b. PVC insulation.
   c. Unshielded.
   d. PVC jacket.
   e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
   a. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
   b. PVC insulation.
   c. Unshielded.
   d. PVC jacket.
   e. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

L. Control-Circuit Conductors
1. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in raceway **OR** Type XHHN, complying with UL 44, in raceway, **as directed**.
2. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in raceway **OR** power-limited cable, complying with UL 83, concealed in building finishes **OR** power-limited tray cable, complying with UL 83, in cable tray **OR** Type XHHN, complying with UL 44, in raceway, **as directed**.
3. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF, complying with UL 83.

M. Fire Alarm Wire And Cable
1. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
2. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than **OR** No. 18 AWG **OR** size as recommended by system manufacturer, **as directed**.
   a. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.
3. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
   a. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum.
   b. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
   c. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket, **as directed**, with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.

N. Identification Products
1. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

O. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
2. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

5. Factory sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
6. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
7. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation Of Pathways
1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA-569-B.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
3. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
4. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
5. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
   a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
   b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
   c. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
   d. Extend conduits 3 inches (75 mm) above finished floor.
   e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
6. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

B. Installation Of Hangers And Supports
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for installation of supports for pathways, conductors and cables.

C. Wiring Method
1. Install wiring in metal raceways and wireways. Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch (21 mm). Control and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
2. Install wiring in raceways except in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and in interior hollow gypsum board partitions where cable may be used. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch (21 mm). Control and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
3. Install cable, concealed in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors when possible.
4. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Use lacing bars and distribution spools. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with intrusion system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

D. Installation Of Conductors And Cables
1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Conductors: Size according to system manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
3. General Requirements for Cabling:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
   b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."

c. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
d. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
e. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
f. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
g. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
h. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

4. UTP Cable Installation: Install using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, rating of components and that ensure Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
   b. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
5. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
   b. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
6. Outdoor Coaxial Cable Installation:
   a. Install outdoor connections in enclosures complying with NEMA 250, Type 4X. Install corrosion-resistant connectors with properly designed O-rings to keep out moisture.
   b. Attach antenna lead-in cable to support structure at intervals not exceeding 36 inches (915 mm).
7. Open-Cable Installation:
   a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
   b. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1525 mm) apart.
   c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
8. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
   a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
   b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
   c. Coil cable 72 inches (1830 mm) long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
9. Separation from EMI Sources:
   a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-B recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
   b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
      2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
      3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).

c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
   1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
   2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
   3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
   1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
   2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
   3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
e. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
f. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

E. Fire Alarm Wiring Installation
1. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
2. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
   a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
   b. Fire alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated raceway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
3. Wiring Method:
   a. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
   b. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of 2-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is **OR** is not, **as directed**, permitted.
   c. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables may **OR** shall not, **as directed**, be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.
4. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
5. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
6. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
7. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
8. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

F. Power And Control-Circuit Conductors
1. 120-V Power Wiring: Install according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables" unless otherwise indicated.
2. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
   a. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.

b. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
c. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

G. Connections
1. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Perimeter Security Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Intrusion Detection" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
3. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Access Control" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
4. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Video Surveillance" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
5. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Plc Electronic Detention Monitoring And Control Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
6. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section(s) "Digital, Addressable Fire-alarm System" OR "Zoned (dc Loop) Fire-alarm System", **as directed**, for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
7. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Refrigerant Detection And Alarm" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

H. Firestopping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Comply with TIA-569-B, "Firestopping" Annex A.
3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

I. Grounding
1. For communications wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
2. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

J. Identification
1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

K. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
b. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
c. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross connection.
1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
d. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
   a) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
   b) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

e. Coaxial Cable Tests: Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Master Antenna Television System".

3. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
4. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16g

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 05 19 16	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 05 19 16	26 05 00 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 19 16	26 05 13 16	Medium-Voltage Cables
26 05 19 16	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
26 05 19 16	26 05 23 00	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 23 00 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of control-voltage electrical power cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. UTP cabling.
b. 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, multimode optical fiber cabling.
c. RS-232 cabling.
d. RS-485 cabling.
e. Low-voltage control cabling.
f. Control-circuit conductors.
g. Identification products.

C. Definitions
1. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
2. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel section.
3. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
4. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
5. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
6. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
7. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).
8. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
9. Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of integral or separate longitudinal side rails, and a bottom without ventilation openings.
10. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of integral or separate longitudinal rails and a bottom having openings sufficient for the passage of air and using 75 percent or less of the plan area of the surface to support cables.
11. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Field quality-control reports.
3. Maintenance data.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.
a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directed**, or less.

3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
   1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
      a. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight **OR** optical loss test set, **as directed**.
      b. Test optical fiber cable on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; include the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
      c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pathways
   1. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**, cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
      a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
      b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
      c. Straps and other devices.
   2. Cable Trays:
      a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
         1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
         2) Trough or Ventilated Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
         3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
         4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
         5) Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
   3. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used, **as directed**.
      a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

B. Backboards
   1. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".

C. UTP Cable
   1. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair binder groups covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket, **as directed**.
      a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
      b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
      c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**.
      d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or Type CMG; or Type MPP, Type CMP, Type MPR, Type CMR, Type MP, or Type MPG, **as directed**.
2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or Type MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or Type MPP, Type CMP, or Type MPR, **as directed**; complying with UL 1666.
4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or Type MPP, Type CMP, Type MPR, Type CMR, Type MP, Type MPG, Type CM, or Type CMG, **as directed**.
5) Multipurpose: Type MP or Type MPG; or Type MPP or Type MPR, **as directed**.
6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or Type MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.

D. UTP Cable Hardware
1. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.
2. Connecting Blocks: 110 style for Category 5e **OR** 110 style for Category 6 **OR** 66 style for Category 5e, **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare; integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

E. Optical Fiber Cable
1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.
a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
c. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B **OR** TIA/EIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or Type OFNR or Type OFNP, **as directed**.
2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or Type OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or Type OFCG; or Type OFNG, Type OFN, Type OFCR, Type OFNR, Type OFCP, or Type OFNP, **as directed**.
5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or Type OFNP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or Type OFNR, Type OFCP, or Type OFNP, **as directed**; complying with UL 1666.
e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**,-armored type.
f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
2. Jacket:
a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125 **OR** Orange for 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer cable.
b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware
1. Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with the Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
a. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
b. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

G. RS-232 Cable
   1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
      a. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. Polypropylene insulation.
      c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
      d. PVC jacket.
      e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
      f. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
   2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
      a. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. Plastic insulation.
      c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
      d. Plastic jacket.
      e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
      f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

H. RS-485 Cable
   1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM or Type CMG, **as directed**.
      a. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. PVC insulation.
      c. Unshielded.
      d. PVC jacket.
      e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
   2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
      a. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
      c. Unshielded.
      d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
      e. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

I. Low-Voltage Control Cable
   1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
      a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. PVC insulation.
      c. Unshielded.
      d. PVC jacket.
      e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
   2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
      a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. PVC insulation.
      c. Unshielded.
      d. PVC jacket.
      e. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
   3. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
      a. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. PVC insulation.
      c. Unshielded.
      d. PVC jacket.
      e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
   4. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
      a. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
      b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
      c. Unshielded.

d. Plastic jacket.
e. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

J. Control-Circuit Conductors
1. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN **OR** Type XHHN, **as directed**, in raceway, complying with UL 83 **OR** UL 44, **as directed**.
2. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway **OR** Type XHHN, in raceway **OR** power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes **OR** power-limited tray cable, in cable tray, **as directed**, complying with UL 83 **OR** UL 44, **as directed**.
3. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.

K. Identification Products
1. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

L. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
2. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
5. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation Of Pathways
1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
3. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
4. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
5. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
c. Secure conduits to backboard if entering room from overhead.
d. Extend conduits 3 inches (75 mm) above finished floor.
e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
6. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

B. Installation Of Conductors And Cables
1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. General Requirements for Cabling:
a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
c. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.

d. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
e. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
f. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
g. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
h. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

3. UTP Cable Installation:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
   b. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
4. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
   a. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
5. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
   a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
   b. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
6. Open-Cable Installation:
   a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
   b. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1525 mm) apart.
   c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
7. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
   a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
   b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
   c. Coil cable 72 inches (1830 mm) long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
8. Separation from EMI Sources:
   a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
   b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
      2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
      3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
   c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
      2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
      3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
   d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

e. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
f. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

C. Removal Of Conductors And Cables
1. Remove abandoned conductors and cables.

D. Control-Circuit Conductors
1. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
a. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No 14 AWG.
b. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
c. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits, No 12 AWG.

E. Firestopping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

F. Grounding
1. For data communication wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
2. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

G. Identification

H. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

I. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
b. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
c. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not after cross connection.
1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
d. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
a) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.

b) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

3. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
4. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 23 00

SECTION 26 05 26 00 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lightning protection. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes lightning protection for structures, structure elements and building site components.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For air terminals and mounting accessories.
   a. Layout of the lightning protection system, along with details of the components to be used in the installation.
   b. Include indications for use of raceway, data on how concealment requirements will be met, and calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of grounded and isolated metal bodies.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer. Include data on listing or certification by UL.
4. Certification, signed by Contractor, that roof adhesive is approved by manufacturer of roofing material.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Comply with recommendations in NFPA 780, Annex D, "Inspection and Maintenance of Lightning Protection Systems," for maintenance of the lightning protection system.
7. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features, including the following:
   a. Ground rods.
   b. Ground loop conductor.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Certified by UL or LPI as a Master Installer/Designer, trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. System Certificate:
   a. UL Master Label.
      OR
      LPI System Certificate.
      OR
      UL Master Label Recertification.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 780, "Definitions" Article.

E. Coordination
1. Coordinate installation of lightning protection with installation of other building systems and components, including electrical wiring, supporting structures and building materials, metal bodies requiring bonding to lightning protection components, and building finishes.
2. Coordinate installation of air terminals attached to roof systems with roofing manufacturer and Installer.
3. Flashings of through-roof assemblies shall comply with roofing manufacturers' specifications.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Lightning Protection System Components
1. Comply with UL 96 and NFPA 780, **as directed**.
2. Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: NFPA 780, Class I **OR** Class II, **as directed**, aluminum **OR** copper, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Air Terminals More than 24 Inches (600 mm) Long: With brace attached to the terminal at not less than half the height of the terminal.
   b. Single-Membrane, Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: Designed specifically for single-membrane roof system materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
3. Main and Bonding Conductors: Copper **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Ground Loop Conductor: The same size and type as the main conductor except tinned.
5. Ground Rods: Copper-clad **OR** Zinc-coated **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel, sectional type, **as directed**; 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter by 10 feet (3 m) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm) in diameter by 96 inches (2400 mm), **as directed**, long.
6. Heavy-Duty, Stack-Mounted, Lightning Protection Components: Stainless steel **OR** Solid copper **OR** Monel metal **OR** Lead sheathed, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A and NFPA 780.
2. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid sharp bends.
3. Conceal the following conductors:
   a. System conductors.
   b. Down conductors.
   c. Interior conductors.
   d. Conductors within normal view of exterior locations at grade within 200 feet (60 m) of building.
4. Cable Connections: Use crimped or bolted connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components. Use exothermic-welded connections in underground portions of the system.
   OR
   Cable Connections: Use exothermic-welded connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components.
   a. Exception: In single-ply membrane roofing, exothermic-welded connections may be used only below the roof level.
5. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with roofing membrane and adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Bond extremities of vertical metal bodies exceeding 60 feet (18 m) in length to lightning protection components.
7. Ground Loop: Install ground-level, potential equalization conductor and extend around the perimeter of structure **OR** area or item indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building foundation.
   b. Bond ground terminals to the ground loop.
   c. Bond grounded building systems to the ground loop conductor within 12 feet (3.6 m) of grade level.
8. Bond lightning protection components with intermediate-level interconnection loop conductors to grounded metal bodies of building at 60-foot (18-m) intervals.

B. Corrosion Protection
1. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.

2. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

C. Field Quality Control
1. Notify the Owner at least 48 hours in advance of inspection before concealing lightning protection components.
2. UL Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
OR
LPI System Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain an LPI System Certificate.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 26 00a - GROUNDING AND BONDING

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for grounding and bonding. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications, **as directed**:
   a. Overhead-lines grounding.
   b. Underground distribution grounding.
   c. Common ground bonding with lightning protection system.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
   a. Test wells.
   b. Ground rods.
   c. Ground rings.
   d. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
   e. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation And Maintenance Data", include the following:
   a. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells **OR** ground rings **OR** grounding connections for separately derived systems**, as directed** based on NETA MTS **OR** NFPA 70B**, as directed.**
      1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
      2) Include recommended testing intervals.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
   a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed,** to supervise on-site testing.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Conductors
1. Insulated Conductors: Copper **OR** Tinned-copper, **as directed**, wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Bare Copper Conductors:
   a. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
   b. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
   c. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
   d. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
   e. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
   f. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
   g. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
3. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
   a. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
   b. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.
4. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm), **as directed**, in cross section, with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

B. Connectors
1. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
2. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
   a. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
3. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
4. Bus-bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression **OR** exothermic-type wire terminals, **as directed**, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

C. Grounding Electrodes
1. Ground Rods: Copper-clad **OR** Zinc-coated **OR** Stainless, **as directed,** steel, sectional type, **as directed**; 3/4 inch by10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) **OR** 5/8 by 96 inches (16 by 2400 mm), **as directed,** in diameter.
2. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
   a. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches (1200 mm) long.
   b. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Applications
1. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper **OR** tinned-copper, **as directed**, conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
   a. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
   b. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

3. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
4. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
   a. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.
5. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
   a. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
   b. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
   c. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
   d. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

B. Grounding Overhead Lines
1. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
2. Install 2 parallel ground rods if resistance to ground by a single, ground-rod electrode exceeds 25 ohms.
3. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade in undisturbed earth.
4. Ground-Rod Connections: Install bolted connectors for underground connections and connections to rods.
5. Lightning Arrester Grounding Conductors: Separate from other grounding conductors.
6. Secondary Neutral and Transformer Enclosure: Interconnect and connect to grounding conductor.
7. Protect grounding conductors running on surface of wood poles with molding extended from grade level up to and through communication service and transformer spaces.

C. Grounding Underground Distribution System Components
1. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
2. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
3. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields as recommended by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
4. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

D. Equipment Grounding
1. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
2. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
   a. Feeders and branch circuits.

b. Lighting circuits.
c. Receptacle circuits.
d. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
e. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
f. Flexible raceway runs.
g. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
h. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
i. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
j. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.

3. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
4. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
5. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
   a. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
   b. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
8. Metal and Wood Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

E. Installation
1. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
2. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
3. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.

b. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

4. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems" and shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.
   a. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
5. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
   a. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
   b. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
   c. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
6. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
   a. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
   b. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
   c. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
7. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
8. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.
9. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column **OR** indicated item, **as directed**, extending around the perimeter of building **OR** area or item indicated, **as directed**.
   a. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
   b. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building foundation.
10. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to NFPA 70, using a minimum of 20 feet (6 m) of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
    a. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet (6 m) long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
    b. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.

F. Labeling
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" for instruction signs. The label or its text shall be green.
2. Install labels at the telecommunications bonding conductor and grounding equalizer and at the grounding electrode conductor where exposed.
   a. Label Text: "If this connector or cable is loose or if it must be removed for any reason, notify the facility manager."

G. Field Quality Control
   1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
   2. Tests and Inspections:
      a. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
      b. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at ground test wells.
         1) Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
         2) Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
      c. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
   3. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
      a. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
      b. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
      c. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
      d. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 **OR** 3, **as directed,** ohm(s).
      e. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
      f. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
   4. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify the Owner promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26 00a

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 05 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 05 26 00	02 84 33 00	Overhead Electrical Distribution

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 13 00 - SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Switchboards.
2. Surge protection devices.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Instrumentation.
5. Control power.
6. Accessory components and features.

B. Related Requirements

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
3. Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" for arc-flash analysis and arc-flash label requirements.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Switchboards.
2. Overcurrent protective devices.
3. Surge protection devices.
4. Ground-fault protection devices.
5. Accessories.
6. Other components.
7. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
7. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series rating of installed devices.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
10. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
11. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified material and finish, for color selection.

D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field Quality-Control Reports:

a. Test procedures used.
b. Test results that comply with requirements.
c. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation **AND / OR** testing instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Handling, storing, and providing temporary heat.
2. Mounting accessories and anchoring devices.
3. Testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.

B. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty documentation.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Spare Parts: Furnish to Owner spare parts, for repairing switchboards, that are packaged with protective covering for storage on-site and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than two of each size and type.
2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no less than one of each size and type.

B. Special Tools: Furnish to Owner proprietary equipment, keys, and software required to operate, maintain, repair, adjust, or implement future changes to switchboards, that are packaged with protective covering for storage on-site and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
2. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.
3. Portable Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Floor-supported, roller-based, elevating carriage arranged for movement of circuit breakers in and out of compartments for present and future circuit breakers.
4. Overhead Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Mounted at top front of switchboard, with hoist and lifting yokes matching each drawout circuit breaker.
5. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.

B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary electric heating (250 W per section) **OR** connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service **as directed** to prevent condensation.

C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation in accordance with NECA 400 **OR** NEMA PB 2.1.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed switchboard perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Extended-Warranty Period: Two years **OR** from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment **as directed**.

B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that switchboard performs in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of components that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Initial **OR** Extended-Warranty Period **as directed**: Three years **OR** from date of Substantial Completion **as directed**; full **OR** prorated coverage for labor, materials, and equipment **as directed**.
2. Follow-On Extended-Warranty Period: Five years **OR** as directed from date of Substantial Completion; full **OR** prorated coverage for materials that failed because of transient voltage surges only **as directed**, free on board origin **OR** destination, freight prepaid **as directed**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SWITCHBOARDS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 2.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with UL 891.

G. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Panel **OR** Fixed, individually mounted **as directed**.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Sections front and rear aligned.

H. Front- and Side-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Section Alignment: Front and Rear aligned.

I. Front- and Rear-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually **OR** Drawout mounted **as directed**.
2. Branch Devices: Panel **OR** Fixed, individually **OR** Panel and fixed, individually **OR** Fixed and individually compartmented **OR** Individually compartmented and drawout mounted **as directed**.
3. Sections front and rear **OR** rear aligned **as directed**.

J. Nominal System Voltage: 480Y/277 V **OR** 208Y/120 V **as directed.**

K. Main-Bus Continuous: 5000 **OR** 4000 **OR** 3000 **OR** 2500 **OR** 2000 **OR** 1600 **OR** 1200A **as directed.**

L. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, UL 50E, Type 1 **OR** Type 2 **as directed**.

M. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray **OR** custom color finish over rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.

N. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 3R **OR** Type 3R, with interior-lighted walk-in aisle **as directed**.

1. Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard **OR** custom color; undersurfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating **as directed**.
2. Enclosure: Flat **OR** Downward, rearward sloping roof; bolt-on rear covers **OR** rear hinged doors for each section, with provisions for padlocking **as directed**.
3. Doors: Personnel door at each end of aisle, minimum width of **30 inch (762 mm) as directed**; opening outwards; with panic hardware and provisions for padlocking **OR** cylinder lock. At least one door must be sized to permit largest single switchboard section to pass through without disassembling doors, hinges, or switchboard section.
4. Accessories: LED luminaires, ceiling mounted; wired to three-way light switch at each end of aisle; ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) duplex receptacle; emergency battery pack luminaire installed on wall of aisle midway between personnel doors.
5. Walk-in Aisle Heating and Ventilating:

    a. Factory-installed electric unit heater(s), wall or ceiling mounted, with integral thermostat and disconnect and with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of **40 deg F (5 deg C) as directed** with outside design temperature of **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) as directed.**
    b. Factory-installed exhaust fan with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of **100 deg F (38 deg C) as directed** with outside design temperature of **90 deg F (32 deg C) as directed.**
    c. Ventilating openings complete with replaceable fiberglass air filters.
    d. Thermostat: Single stage; wired to control heat and exhaust fan.

6. Power for Space Heaters, Ventilation, Lighting, and Receptacle: Include control-power transformer, with spare capacity of 25 percent, within switchboard. Supply voltage must be 120 V(ac) **OR** 120/240 V(ac) **OR** 120/208 V(ac) **as directed**.
7. Power for space heaters, ventilation, lighting, and receptacle provided by remote source.

O. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.

P. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.

Q. Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.

1. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point **OR** Manual switching of branch-circuit protective device **as directed**.
2. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in switchboard **OR** 120 V external branch circuit **as directed**.

R. Service Entrance Rating: Switchboards intended for use as service entrance equipment may contain from one to six service disconnecting means with overcurrent protection, neutral bus with disconnecting link, grounding electrode conductor terminal, and main bonding jumper.

S. Utility Metering Compartment: Barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealable door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.

T. Customer Metering Compartment: Separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring must be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks.

U. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.

V. Removable, Hinged Rear Doors and Compartment Covers: Secured by captive thumb screws **OR** standard bolts, **as directed,** for access to rear interior of switchboard.

W. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.

X. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:

1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
2. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
3. Removable covers may form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear must be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
4. Bottom must be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
5. Cable supports must be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.

Y. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide phase bus arrangement A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, and left to right when viewed from front of switchboard.
2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material:

    a. Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity silver-plated **OR as directed**.
    b. Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy with tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.

3. Copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
4. Tin-plated aluminum feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
5. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression connectors for outgoing circuit conductors **as directed**. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
6. Ground Bus: **1/4 by 2 inch (6 by 50 mm-) OR 1/4 by 1 inch (6 by 25 mm-) OR** Minimum-size required by UL 891 **as directed,** hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors **as directed**.
7. Main-Phase Buses and Equipment-Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
8. Disconnect Links:

    a. Isolate neutral bus from incoming neutral conductors.
    b. Bond neutral bus to equipment-ground bus for switchboards utilized as service equipment or separately derived systems.

9. Neutral Buses: 50 **OR** 100 percent of ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated **as directed**, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables **as directed**. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.

10. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.

Z. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

AA. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.

BB. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

2.2 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. SPDs: Listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1449, Type 1 **OR** Type 2 **as directed**.

B. Features and Accessories:

1. Integral disconnect switch.
2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Indicator light display for protection status.
4. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250 V(ac) **OR** 2 A and 24 V(ac) **as directed**, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts must reverse on failure of surge diversion module or on opening of current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
5. Surge counter.

C. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase may not be less than 200 kA **OR** 250 kA **OR** 300 kA **as directed.** Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of ratings of individual MOVs in each mode.

D. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V **OR** 208Y/120 V **as directed**, three-phase, four-wire circuits may not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 700 V for 208Y/120 V **as directed**.
2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 1200 V for 208Y/120 V **as directed**.
3. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 1000 V for 208Y/120 V **as directed**.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits may not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
2. Line to Ground: 700 V **OR** 1000 V **as directed**.
3. Line to Line: 1000 V.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA **OR** 200 kA **as directed.**

G. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents **as directed**.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    c. Long and short time adjustments.
    d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6 mA trip).
7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30 mA trip).
8. MCCB Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression style **as directed**, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
    d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator **as directed**.
    e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
    f. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted communication module **as directed,** with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
    g. Shunt Trip: 120 V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 OR 75 percent of rated voltage **as directed**.
    h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
    i. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts **as directed**; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
    j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key must be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 80 **OR** 100 percent rated **as directed**, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.

1. Fixed **OR** Drawout circuit-breaker mounting **as directed**.
2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
3. Standard **OR** Full function microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings **as directed**:

a. Instantaneous trip.
b. Time adjustments for long- and short-time pickup.
c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.

4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
5. Remote trip indication and control.
6. Communication Capability: Web enabled integral Ethernet communication module and embedded Web server with factory-configured Web pages (HTML file format). Provide functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
7. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key must be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
8. Control Voltage: 40 V(dc) **OR** 125 V(dc) **OR** 250 V(dc) **OR** 120 V(ac) **as directed**.

C. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high clamping pressure on switch blade after it engages stationary contacts.

1. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times switch current rating.
2. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.

a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.

3. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
4. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
5. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.

a. Configuration: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator **as directed**.
b. Internal Memory: Integrates cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses effect to initiate tripping.
c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).

6. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if phase fuse opens.

D. High-Pressure, Butt-Type Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses butt-type contacts and spring-charged mechanism to produce and maintain high-pressure contact when switch is closed.

1. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times switch current rating.
2. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.

a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.

b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.

3. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
4. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
5. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.

   a. Configuration: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator **as directed**.
   b. Internal Memory: Integrates cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses effect to initiate tripping.
   c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
   d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).

6. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if phase fuse opens.

E. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

F. Fuses are specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."

2.4 INSTRUMENTATION

A. Instrument Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:

1. Potential Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 120 V, 60 Hz, single **OR** tapped **OR** double secondary **as directed**; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy must be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
2. Current Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound **OR** bushing **OR** bar or window type **as directed**; single **OR** double secondary winding and secondary shorting device **as directed**. Burden and accuracy must be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.

B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:

1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:

   a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
   b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
   c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
   d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 1 percent.
   e. Megavars: Plus or minus 1 percent.
   f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 1 percent.
   g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.

h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 1 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 1 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.

2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

C. Analog Meters:

1. Meters: 4 inch (100 mm) diameter or 6 inch (150 mm) square, flush or semiflush, with anti-parallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.

D. Voltmeters: Cover expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.

E. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.

1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of phase-to-phase voltages and, where neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in closed-circuit condition at all times.

F. Ammeters: 2-1/2 inch (64 mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for indicated feeder circuits only.

G. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
3. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
4. Potential indicating lamps.
5. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
6. Four-dial clock register.
7. Integral demand indicator.
8. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
9. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
10. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
11. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
12. Appropriate multiplier tag.

H. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Suitable for use with switchboard watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
3. Cyclometer.
4. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
5. Positive chart drive mechanism.
6. Capillary pen holding minimum of one month's ink supply.
7. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
8. Capable of indicating and recording 5 **OR** 15 **OR** 30 minute integrated demand of totalized system **as directed**.

2.5 CONTROL POWER

A. Control Circuits:

1. 120 V(ac), supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.
2. 120 V(ac), supplied from remote branch circuit.
3. Control voltage V(dc) **as directed**.

B. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to primary side of each control-power transformer at line side of associated main circuit breaker. 120 V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.

C. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.

D. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Mounting Accessories: For anchors, mounting channels, bolts, washers, and other mounting accessories, comply with requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" or manufacturer's instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards in accordance with NECA 400 **OR** NEMA PB 2.1 **as directed**.

1. Lift or move panelboards with spreader bars and manufacturer-supplied lifting straps following manufacturer's published instructions.
2. Use rollers, slings, or other manufacturer-approved methods if lifting straps are not furnished.
3. Protect from moisture, dust, dirt, and debris during storage and installation.
4. Install temporary heating during storage in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work or that affect performance of equipment.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Switchboards and Accessories: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NECA 400 **OR** NEMA PB 2.1 **as directed**.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Techniques:

1. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4 inch (100 mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

    a. Install conduits entering underneath switchboard, entering under vertical section where conductors will terminate. Install with couplings flush with concrete base. Extend 2 inch (50 mm) above concrete base after switchboard is anchored in place.
    b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18 inch (450 mm) centers around full perimeter of concrete base.
    c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
    d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, published instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
    f. Anchor switchboard to building structure at top of switchboard if required or recommended by manufacturer.

2. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, straps and brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
3. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
4. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.
5. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.
6. Install overcurrent protective devices, surge protection devices, and instrumentation.

    a. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

7. Install spare-fuse cabinet.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Section 262500 "Enclosed Bus Assemblies." Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.

B. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.

C. Bond conduits entering underneath switchboard to equipment ground bus with bonding conductor sized in accordance with NFPA 70.

D. Support and secure conductors within switchboard in accordance with NFPA 70.

E. Extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Mimic Bus:

1. Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on minimum 0.032 inch (0.813 mm) thick anodized aluminum photoengraved nameplate, located at eye level on front cover of switchboard incoming service section.
2. Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on engraved minimum 0.0625 inch (1.588 mm) thick laminated-plastic (Gravoply) nameplate, located at eye level on front cover of switchboard incoming service section.
3. Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram.
4. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.
5. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.

E. Service Equipment Label: Labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. **As directed**.

B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect **OR** Tenant **OR** authorities having jurisdiction **OR** Names or titles of witnesses **as directed**.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Acceptance Testing:

a. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit. Open control and metering circuits within switchboard, and remove neutral connection to surge protection and other electronic devices prior to insulation test. Reconnect after test.
b. Test continuity of each circuit.

2. Test ground-fault protection of equipment for service equipment in accordance with NFPA 70.
3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
4. Correct malfunctioning units on-site where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
5. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front **OR** front and rear panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner **as directed**.
b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
c. Instruments and Equipment:

1) Use infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

6. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Nonconforming Work:

1. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

E. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports, including certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

F. Manufacturer Services:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support **OR** supervise field tests and inspections **as directed**.

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated **OR** as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies" **as directed.**

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

END OF SECTION 26 24 13 00

SECTION 26 24 13 00a - ELECTRICITY METERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. [**Electricity metering**] [**Work to accommodate utility company revenue meters, and Owner's electricity meters used to manage electrical power system**].

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. KY or KYZ Pulse: Term used by metering industry to describe method of measuring consumption of electricity (kWh) that is based on relay opening and closing in response to rotation of disk in meter. Electronic meters generate pulses electronically.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Electrical Service Connections:

1. Coordinate with utility companies and utility-furnished components.

a. Comply with requirements of utility providing electrical power services.
b. Coordinate installation and connection of utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of meter.
2. For metering infrastructure components.
3. For metering software.

B. Shop Drawings: For electricity-metering equipment.

1. Include elevation views of front panels of control and indicating devices and control stations.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation,

operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

4. Include series-combination rating data for modular meter centers with main disconnect device.
5. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
6. Submit evidence that meters are compatible with connected monitoring and control devices and systems specified in [**Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."**] **Section number and title** as directed by the Owner .

    a. Show interconnecting signal and control wiring, and interface devices to show compatibility of meters.
    b. For reporting and billing interfaces and adapters, list network protocols and provide statements from manufacturers that input and output devices comply with interoperability requirements of the protocol.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation [**and testing**] instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Installation of metering equipment.

B. Sample warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Contracts:

1. Software and firmware service agreement.

B. Warranty documentation.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed metering equipment performs in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Extended-Warranty Period: [**Two**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that metering equipment performs in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. [**Initial**]Extended-Warranty Period: [**Three**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion; [**full**] [**prorated**] coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.
2. Follow-On Extended-Warranty Period: [**Eight**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion; [**full**] [**prorated**] coverage for materials[**that failed because of transient voltage surges**] only, free on board [**origin**] [**destination**], freight prepaid.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 916.

2.2 UTILITY METERING INFRASTRUCTURE

A. Install metering accessories furnished by utility company, complying with its requirements.

B. Utility-Furnished Meters: Connect data transmission facility of metering equipment installed by Utility.

1. Data Transmission: Transmit pulse data over control-circuit conductors, classified as Class 1 per NFPA 70, Article 725. Comply with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

C. Current-Transformer Cabinets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.

D. Meter Sockets:

1. Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
2. Meter Sockets: Steady-state and short-circuit current ratings must meet indicated circuit ratings.

E. Modular Meter Center: Factory-coordinated assembly of main service [**terminal box with lugs only**] [**disconnect device**], wireways, meter socket modules, and feeder circuit breakers arranged in adjacent vertical sections complete with interconnecting buses.

1. Comply with requirements of utility company for meter center.

a. Comply with UL 67.

2. Housing: UL 50E, [**Type 1**] [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4X**] enclosure.
3. Meter Socket Rating: Coordinated with connected feeder circuit rating.
4. Minimum Short-Circuit Rating: [**22 000 A**] [**42 000 A**] [**65 000 A**] [**100 000 A**] or as directed by the Owner symmetrical at rated voltage.
5. Steady-state and short-circuit current ratings must have ratings that match connected circuit ratings.
6. Main Disconnect Device:

a. Circuit breaker, series-combination rated for use with downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers and having adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes of 250 A and larger. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and

Circuit Breakers." Circuit breakers must be operable from outside enclosure to disconnect unit. Configure cover so it can be opened only when disconnect switch is open.

b. Fusible switch, UL 98 Type GD, series-combination rated by fuse manufacturer to protect downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers." Switch must be operable from outside enclosure to disconnect unit. Configure cover so that it can be opened only when disconnect switch is open.

7. Feeder Circuit Breakers: Series-combination-rated molded-case units, rated to protect downstream circuit breakers and to house load centers and panelboards that have [**10 000 A**] or as directed by the Owner interrupting capacity.

   a. Identification: Complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
   b. Physical Protection: Tamper resistant, with hasp for padlock.

8. Surge Protection:

   a. Factory-installed in main disconnect, integrally mounted, UL 1449 Type 1. Comply with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
   b. Field-mounted external to main disconnect, UL 1449 Type 2, with integral disconnect and overcurrent protective device. Comply with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
   c. Factory-installed in main terminal box, integrally mounted, UL 1449 Type 1. Comply with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
   d. Field-mounted external to main terminal box, UL 1449 Type 2, with integral disconnect and overcurrent protective device. Comply with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."

F. Arc-Flash Warning Labels;

1. Comply with requirements for "Arc-Flash Warning Labels" in Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Studies." Apply 3-1/2-by-5 inch (76-by-127 mm) thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis.
2. Comply with requirements for "Self-Adhesive Equipment Labels" and "Signs" in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Apply 3-1/2-by-5 inch (76-by-127 mm) thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis. Labels must be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

   a. Label must have orange header with wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and must include the following information taken directly from arc-flash hazard analysis:

      1) Location designation.
      2) Nominal voltage.
      3) Flash protection boundary.
      4) Hazard risk category.
      5) Incident energy.
      6) Working distance.
      7) Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

2.3 ELECTRICITY METERS

A. System Description: Able to meter designated activity loads, with or without external alarm, control, and communication capabilities, or other optional features.

B. General Requirements for Meters:

1. Comply with NEMA ANSI C12.1 and NEMA ANSI C12.20, [**0.1**] [**0.2**] [**0.5**] accuracy class.
2. Ambient Temperature: Minus 22 deg F to plus 158 deg F (Minus 30 deg C to plus 70 deg C).
3. Humidity: Zero to 95 percent, noncondensing.
4. Capacities and Characteristics:

    a. Circuit: 120/240 V(ac), 100 A.
    b. Measure: kWh, onboard LED display.
    c. Remote-Reading Options: None.

5. Billing Meters Accuracy: [**0.2**] [**0.5**] [**1.0**] percent of reading, complying with NEMA ANSI C12.20.
6. Meters Certification: Certified by [**California Type Evaluation Program**] or as directed by the Owner as complying with [**4 CCR 4027, Article 2.2**] **State or Federal regulatory requirements** as directed by the Owner .
7. Certify that meters comply with NEMA ANSI C12.20 requirements by laboratory accredited by the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). Laboratory must use test equipment that is certified annually and is traceable to NIST standards.
8. Enclosure: Supplied by meter manufacturer, UL 50E, [**Type 1**] [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4X**] minimum, with provisions for locking or sealing.
9. Identification: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
10. Onboard Nonvolatile Data Storage: kWh, until reset.
11. Sensors: Current-sensing type, supplied by electronic meter manufacturer, with current or voltage output, selected for optimum range and accuracy for meters indicated for this application.

    a. Type: [**Split**] [**and**] [**solid**] core, complying with recommendation of meter manufacturer.

C. kWh Meter: Electronic [**single-phase**] [**and**] [**three-phase**] meters, measuring electricity use.

1. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter must be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
2. Display:

    a. LCD with characters not less than 0.25 inch (6 mm) high, indicating accumulative kWh and current kilowatt load. Retain accumulated kWh in nonvolatile memory, until reset.
    b. Digital electromechanical counter, indicating accumulative kWh.

D. kWhd Meter: Electronic [**single-phase**] [**and**] [**three-phase**] meters, measuring electricity use and demand. Demand must be integrated over [**15-minute**] interval or as directed by the Owner .

1. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter must be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
2. Display: LCD with characters not less than 0.25 inch (6 mm) high, indicating the following:

    a. Accumulative kWh.
    b. Current time and date.
    c. Current demand.
    d. Historic peak demand.
    e. Time and date of historic peak demand.

3. Retain accumulated kWh and historic peak demand in nonvolatile memory, until reset.

E. KY and KYZ Pulse Totalizer:

1. Pulse Totalizer: Instrument for demand and billing applications where one or more utility revenue meters stream KY or KYZ energy pulses. Instrument must totalize kWh accumulated over user-selected period and must log maximum and minimum kWhd for that period. Record each period with date/time stamp. Time period must be user selected from one to 60 minutes.

    a. Pulse Input: [**One**] or as directed by the Owner , individually programmable, KYZ Form C (three-wire) contact pulse channels. Pulse interval, pulse rate, and minimum pulse width must be field adjustable, set for pulse stream provided by utility revenue meter.
    b. Data Totalizing Capacity of Each Channel: Not less than 149 days at 15-minute intervals.
    c. Instrument Power: User selectable, 120 V(ac) and 277 V(ac).
    d. Clock: Line frequency.

F. Remote Reading Options:

1. Pulse Output: [**KY**] [**KYZ**], complete with optical sensor and interface devices.
2. TIA-232 serial interface.
3. TIA-485 serial interface, with [**Modbus RTU protocol**] or as directed by the Owner .
4. USB interface.
5. TCP/IP adapter.

G. Current-Transformer Cabinet: Size and configuration as recommended by metering equipment manufacturer for use with indicated connected feeder and sensors.

H. Uninterruptible Power Supply: Single phase, 120 V(ac), sized and rated to provide continuous power to meter for operations of [**48**] hours or as directed by the Owner after interruption of normal power.

1. Output: Sine wave, total harmonic distortion less than 5 percent at full load.
2. Battery: Maintenance free, sealed, lead acid, and leakproof.
3. Control Panel: LED status display of "on-battery," "replace battery," and "overload."

I. Data Transmission Cable: Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

J. Software: PC-based product [**of**] [**recommended by**] meter manufacturer, suitable for calculating utility cost allocation.

1. Utility Cost Allocation: Automatically import electricity-usage records to allocate electricity costs for the following:

    a. At least [**15**] departments or as directed by the Owner .
    b. At least [**30**] tenants or activities or as directed by the Owner .
    c. At least [**five**] processes or as directed by the Owner .
    d. At least [**five**] buildings or as directed by the Owner .

2. Activity Billing Software: Automatically import electricity-usage records to automatically compute and prepare electricity-use statements [**and invoices**] based on electricity use [**and peak demand**]. Maintain separate directory for each allocation. Prepare summary reports in user-defined formats and time intervals.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Install modular meter center according to switchboard installation requirements in NECA 400.
2. Install arc-flash labels as required by NFPA 70.

C. Special Techniques:

1. Install meters furnished by utility company. Install raceways and equipment according to utility company's published instructions. Provide empty conduits for metering leads and extend grounding connections as required by utility company.
2. Wiring Methods:

a. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
b. Install unshielded, twisted-pair cable for control and signal transmission conductors, complying with Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
c. Minimum conduit size is metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Series Combination Warning Label: Self-adhesive labels, with text as required by NFPA 70.
2. Equipment Identification Labels: Self-adhesive labels with clear protective overlay. For residential meters, provide additional card holder suitable for [**printed, weather-resistant card**] [**typewritten card**] with occupant's name.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. [**Acceptance**]Testing Preparation:

1. as directed by the Owner .

B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by [**Architect**] [**Tenant**] [**authorities having jurisdiction**] **Names or titles of witnesses** as directed by the Owner .

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Equipment and Software Setup:

a. Set meter date and time clock.
b. Test, calibrate, and connect pulse metering system.
c. Set and verify billing demand interval for demand meters.
d. Report settings and calibration results.

e. Set up reporting and billing software, insert billing location names and initial constant values and variable needed for billing computations.

2. Connect load of known power rating, [**1.5 kW**] minimum or as directed by the Owner , to circuit supplied by metered feeder.
3. Turn off circuits supplied by metered feeder and secure them in off condition.
4. Run test load continuously for eight hours minimum, or longer, to obtain measurable meter indication. Use test-load placement and setting that ensures continuous, safe operation.
5. Check and record meter reading at end of test period and compare with actual electricity used, based on test-load rating, duration of test, and sample measurements of supply voltage at test-load connection. Record test results.
6. Generate test report and billing for each tenant or activity from meter reading tests.

D. Nonconforming Work:

1. Electricity metering will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

E. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

F. Manufacturer Services:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to [**support**] [**supervise**] field tests and inspections.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. After installation, protect metering equipment from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

3.5 MAINTENANCE

A. Software and Firmware Service Agreement:

1. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, verify that software and firmware service agreement includes software and firmware support for [**two**] years or as directed by the Owner .
2. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software and firmware to latest version. Install and program software and firmware upgrades that become available within [**two**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion.[**Verify that upgrading software includes operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.**]

a. Upgrade Notice: No fewer than [**30**] days or as directed by the Owner to allow Owner to schedule and access the system [**and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.**]

3. Upgrade Reports: Prepare report after each update, documenting upgrades installed.

END OF SECTION 26 24 13 00a

SECTION 26 24 13 00b - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Receptacle switches.
4. Shunt trip switches.
5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
6. Molded-case switches.
7. Enclosures.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. GFEP: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for equipment protection.

B. GFLS: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for life safety.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
3. Current and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
5. Include evidence of qualified electrical testing laboratory listing for series rating of installed devices.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
7. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in [**PDF**] [**and**] C**alculation program format** as directed by the Owner in electronic format.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty documentation.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Spare Parts: Furnish to Owner spare parts, for repairing enclosed switches and circuit breakers, that are packaged with protective covering for storage on-site and identified with labels describing contents.[**Include the following:**]

1. Fuses: Equal to [**10**] percent or as directed by the Owner of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than [**three**] or as directed by the Owner of each size and type.
2. Fuse Pullers: [**Two**] or as directed by the Owner for each size and type.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed enclosed switches and circuit breakers perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Extended-Warranty Period: [**Two**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that enclosed switches and circuit breakers perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Extended-Warranty Period: [**Three**] years or as directed by the Owner from date of Substantial Completion; [**full**] [**prorated**] coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. [**Single**] [**Double**] throw.
2. [**Three**] [**six**] pole.
3. [**240**] [**600**] V(ac).
4. [**1200 A and smaller**] [**200 A and smaller**].
5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate [**specified**] [**indicated**] fuses.
6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of hookstick to operate handle.
7. Auxiliary Contact Kit: [**One**] [**Two**] NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - [**24 V(ac)**] [**120 V(ac)**] [**208 V(ac)**] [**240 V(ac)**] [**6 V(dc)**] [**12 V(dc)**] [**24 V(dc)**].
8. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 V(ac), 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, [**240**] [**600**] V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, [**240**] [**600**] V(ac), 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, [**240**] [**600**] V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

E. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of hookstick to operate handle.
7. Auxiliary Contact Kit: [**One**] [**Two**] NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - [**24 V(ac)**] [**120 V(ac)**] [**208 V(ac)**] [**240 V(ac)**] [**6 V(dc)**] [**12 V(dc)**] [**24 V(dc)**].
8. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.4 RECEPTACLE SWITCHES

A. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: [**240**] [**600**] V(ac), [**30**] [**60**] [**100**] A or as directed by the Owner ; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate [**specified**] [**indicated**] fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

B. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: [**240**] [**600**] V(ac), [**30**] [**60**] [**100**] A or as directed by the Owner ; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Interlocking Linkage: Provided between receptacle and switch mechanism to prevent inserting or removing plug while switch is in on position, inserting plug other than specified, and turning switch on if incorrect plug is inserted or correct plug has not been fully inserted into receptacle.

D. Receptacle: Polarized, three-phase, four-wire receptacle (fourth wire connected to enclosure ground lug).

E. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of hookstick to operate handle.

7. Auxiliary Contact Kit: [**One**] [**Two**] NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - [**24 V(ac)**] [**120 V(ac)**] [**208 V(ac)**] [**240 V(ac)**] [**6 V(dc)**] [**12 V(dc)**] [**24 V(dc)**].
8. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.5 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

A. General Requirements: Comply with[**ASME A17.1,**] UL 50, and UL 98, with Class J fuse block and 200 kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating.

B. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: [**240**] [**600**] V(ac), [**30**] [**60**] [**100**] A or as directed by the Owner ; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate [**specified**] [**indicated**] fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: [**240**] [**600**] V(ac), [**30**] [**60**] [**100**] A or as directed by the Owner ; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Control Circuit: 120 V(ac); obtained from [**integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses,**] **Source of control power** as directed by the Owner with control power [**transformer**] [**source**] of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, pilot, indicating and control devices.

E. Accessories:

1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
2. Oiltight [**red**] [**green**] [**white**] [**yellow**] ON pilot light.
3. Isolated neutral lug; [**100**] [**200**] percent rating.
4. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
5. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; [**120 V(ac)**] [**24 V(dc)**] coil voltage.
6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.
7. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
8. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
9. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
10. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
11. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of hookstick to operate handle.
12. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.
13. Auxiliary Contact Kit: [**One**] [**Two**] NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - [**24 V(ac)**] [**120 V(ac)**] [**208 V(ac)**] [**240 V(ac)**] [**6 V(dc)**] [**12 V(dc)**] [**24 V(dc)**].
14. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.6 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Circuit breakers must be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components must be completely isolated from handle and accessory mounting area.

B. Circuit breakers must have toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. Circuit-breaker handle must be over center, be trip free, and reside in tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon must be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip

circuit breaker with push-to-trip button, located on face of circuit breaker to mechanically operate circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

C. Maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings must be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers must be [**100 percent rated**] [**series rated**] [**100 percent rated or series rated as indicated on Drawings**]. [**Circuit breaker/circuit breaker**] [**Fuse/circuit breaker**] combinations for series connected interrupting ratings must be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Series rated combination used must be marked on end-use equipment along with statement "Caution - Series Rated System. _____ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."

D. MCCBs must be equipped with device for locking in isolated position.

E. Lugs must be suitable for [**60 deg C rated wire on 125 A circuit breakers and below**] [**75 deg C rated wire**] [**90 deg C rated wire, sized in accordance with 75 deg C temperature rating in NFPA 70**].

F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with required interrupting capacity for available fault currents.

G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.

I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, RMS sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:

1. Instantaneous trip.
2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.

J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

K. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.

L. GFLS Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6 mA trip).

M. GFEP Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30 mA trip).

N. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
3. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
4. Alarm Switch: One [**NO**] [**NC**] contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
5. Auxiliary Contacts: [**One SPDT switch**] [**Two SPDT switches**] with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.

6. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
7. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; [**integrally mounted, self-powered**] [**remote-mounted and powered**] type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
8. Communication Capability: [**Circuit-breaker-mounted**] [**Universal-mounted**] [**Integral**] [**Din-rail-mounted**] communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
9. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key must be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
11. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with [**electronic**] [**ground-fault**] trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
12. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
13. Accessory Control Power: [**Integrally mounted, self-powered**] [**Remote mounted and powered**]; [**24 V(ac)**] [**120 V(ac)**] [**208 V(ac)**] [**240 V(ac)**] [**12 V(dc)**] [**24 V(dc)**] [**120 V(dc)**].

2.7 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

A. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.

B. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

C. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
2. Lugs:

    a. [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    b. Lugs must be suitable for [**60 deg C rated wire on 125 A circuit breakers and below**] [**75 deg C rated wire**] [**90 deg C rated wire, sized in accordance with 75 deg C temperature rating in NFPA 70**].

3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
6. Auxiliary Contacts: [**One SPDT switch**] [**Two SPDT switches**] with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
7. Alarm Switch: One [**NO**] [**NC**] contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key must be removable only when switch is in off position.
9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
11. Accessory Control Power Voltage: [**Integrally mounted, self-powered**] [**Remote mounted and powered**]; [**24 V(ac)**] [**120 V(ac)**] [**208 V(ac)**] [**240 V(ac)**] [**12 V(dc)**] [**24 V(dc)**] [**120 V(dc)**].

2.8 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

B. Enclosure Finish: Enclosure must be [**finished with**] [**gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (UL 50E Type 1)**] [**gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvannealed steel (UL 50E Types 3R, 12)**] [**a brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel (UL 50E Type 4-4X stainless steel)**] [**copper-free cast aluminum alloy (UL 50E Types 7, 9)**].

C. Conduit Entry: UL 50E Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures may not contain knockouts. UL 50E Types 7 and 9 enclosures must be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.

D. Operating Mechanism: Circuit-breaker operating handle must be [**externally operable with operating mechanism being integral part of box, not cover**] [**directly operable through front cover of enclosure (UL 50E Type 1)**] [**directly operable through dead front trim of enclosure (UL 50E Type 3R)**] [**externally operable with operating mechanism being integral part of cover (UL 50E Types 7, 9)**]. Cover interlock mechanism must have externally operated override. Override may not permanently disable interlock mechanism, which must return to locked position once override is released. Tool used to override cover interlock mechanism must not be required to enter enclosure in order to override interlock.

E. Enclosures designated as UL 50E Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K must have dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of enclosure cover when circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning circuit breaker ON when enclosure cover is open.

F. UL 50E Type 7/9 enclosures must be furnished with breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Commencement of work will indicate Installer's acceptance of areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 SELECTION OF ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, [**Type 1**] or as directed by the Owner .

B. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4X**] or as directed by the Owner .

C. [**Kitchen**] [**Wash-Down**] Areas: UL 50E, [**Type 4X**] , [**stainless steel**] or as directed by the Owner .

D. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: UL 50E, [**Type 4**] or as directed by the Owner .

E. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: UL 50E, Type 12.

F. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: UL 50E, [**Type 7**] [**Type 9**] or as directed by the Owner [**with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts**].

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Special Techniques:

1. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
2. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
3. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
4. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
5. Install fuses in fusible devices.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. [**Acceptance**]Testing Preparation:

1. as directed by the Owner .

B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by [**Architect**] [**Tenant**] [**authorities having jurisdiction**] **Names or titles of witnesses** as directed by the Owner .

C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
c. Verify that unit is clean.
d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods:

1) Use low-resistance ohmmeter.

a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of lowest value.

2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

a) Bolt-torque levels must be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on Drawings.
i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

2. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values may not exceed high level of manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
e. Perform ground fault test in accordance with NETA ATS Section 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

D. Tests and Inspections for Molded-Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on Drawings.
b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
d. Verify that unit is clean.
e. Operate circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods:

1) Use low-resistance ohmmeter.

a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of lowest value.

2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

a) Bolt-torque levels must be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with coordination study.

2. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
c. Perform contact/pole resistance test. Drop values may not exceed high level of manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of lowest value.
d. Perform insulation resistance tests on control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential must be 500 V(dc) for 300 V rated cable and 1000 V(dc) for 600 V rated cable. Test duration must be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values may be no less than 2 M Ω.
e. Determine the following by primary current injection:

1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values must be as specified. Trip characteristics may not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values must be as specified. Trip characteristics may not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values must be as specified. Trip characteristics may not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values must be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.

f. Test functionality of trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics must be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of shunt trip and close coils must be as indicated by manufacturer.
h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.

3. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties.

E. Nonconforming Work:

1. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

F. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

G. Manufacturer Services:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to [**support**] [**supervise**] field tests and inspections.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges[**as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."**] [**to values indicated on Drawings.**] [**to values indicated in attached schedule.**]

3.7 PROTECTION

A. After installation, protect enclosed switches and circuit breakers from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

3.8 MAINTENANCE

A. Infrared Scanning of Enclosed Switches and Breakers: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform infrared scan of joints and connections. Remove covers so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner. Take visible light photographs at same locations and orientations as infrared scans for documentation to ensure follow-on scans match same conditions for valid comparison.

1. Instruments and Equipment: Use infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform two follow-up infrared scans of enclosed switches and breakers, one at four months and another at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
3. Instrument: Use infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
4. Report: Prepare certified report that identifies units checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial actions taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 26 24 13 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 16 00 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Power panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Load centers.
4. Electronic-grade panelboards.
5. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.

C. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Power panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Load centers.
4. Electronic-grade panelboards.
5. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
7. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.

3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of coordination curves.

C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards submit final versions after load balancing.

B. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation and testing instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Recommended procedures for installing panelboards.
2. Recommended torque settings for bolted connections on panelboards.
3. Recommended temperature range for energizing panelboards.

C. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty documentation.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Spare Parts: Furnish to Owner spare parts, for repairing panelboards, that are packaged with protective covering for storage on-site and identified with labels describing contents. Include the following:

1. Keys: Two **OR** spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock, **as directed**.
2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two **OR** spares for each panelboard, **as directed**.
3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

B. Special Tools: Furnish to Owner proprietary equipment, keys, and software required to operate, maintain, repair, adjust, or implement future changes to panelboards, that are packaged with protective covering for storage on-site and identified with labels describing contents. Include the following:

1. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
2. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation in accordance with NECA 407 **OR** NEMA PB 1**, as directed**.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Extended-Warranty Period: Two years **OR** from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment, **as directed**.

B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.

1. Initial **OR** Extended-Warranty Period: Three **OR** Four years from date of Substantial Completion, **as directed**; full **OR** prorated coverage for labor, materials, and equipment, **as directed**.
2. Follow-On Extended-Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion, **as directed**; full **OR** prorated coverage for materials that failed because of transient voltage surges only, free on board origin **OR** destination, freight prepaid.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Existing Products: To be modified **OR** to be removed and re-installed, **as directed**.

A. Basis for Pricing: Name of manufacturer; model number or series for existing product.

B. Description: Description of existing product, including special features, options, and finishes that may impact Work, **as directed**.

C. Accessories: Accessories included with existing product, **as directed**.

2.2 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards in accordance with IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing agency recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Enclosures: Flush **AND** Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

    a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1, **as directed**.
    b. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R, **as directed**.
    c. Kitchen or Wash-Down Areas: UL 50E, Type 4X, stainless steel, **as directed**.
    d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 4, **as directed**.
    e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: UL 50E, Type 5 **OR** Type 12**, as directed**.

2. Height: 7 ft (2.13 m) maximum.
3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims must cover live parts and may have no exposed hardware.
4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims must cover live parts and may have no exposed hardware.
5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
7. Finishes:

    a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, **as directed**.
    b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel **OR** Same finish as panels and trim, **as directed**.
    c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.

G. Incoming Mains:

1. Location: Top **OR** Bottom **OR** Convertible between top and bottom, **as directed**.
2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 A must be field convertible to main breaker.

H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper**,** 98 percent conductivity**, as directed**.

a. Plating must run entire length of bus.
b. Bus must be fully rated for entire length.

2. Interiors must be factory assembled into unit. Replacing switching and protective devices may not disturb adjacent units or require removing main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure.
6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors must be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings.
7. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
8. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, **as directed**.
2. Terminations must allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical type, with lug on neutral bar for each pole in panelboard, **as directed**.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression **OR** Mechanical type type, with lug on bar for each pole in panelboard, **as directed**.
6. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device, **as directed**.
7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device, **as directed**.
8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device, **as directed**.
9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

J. Quality-Control Label: Panelboards or load centers must be labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers must have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers must have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 5 **OR** 10 **OR** 20 percent, **as directed**.

L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:

1. Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices

listed and labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series-connected short-circuit rating.

a. Panelboards rated 240 V or less must have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10 000 A(rms) symmetrical.
b. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V must have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14 000 A(rms) symmetrical.

2. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

a. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less must have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10 000 A(rms) symmetrical.
b. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V must have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14 000 A(rms) symmetrical.

M. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1 **OR** Type 2, **as directed**.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than **36 inch (914 mm)** high, provide two latches, keyed alike, **as directed**.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** Fused switch **OR** Lugs only, **as directed**.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers **OR** Bolt-on circuit breakers **OR** Plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal, **as directed**.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers **OR** Plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal, **as directed**.

F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

G. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically **OR** mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard, **as directed**.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: 120 V branch circuit **OR** 24 V control circuit, **as directed.**

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

B. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** lugs only, **as directed.**

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in **OR** Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units, **as directed**.

D. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically **OR** mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard, **as directed**.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: 120 V branch circuit **OR** 24 V control circuit, **as directed.**

E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with flush **OR** multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike, **as directed**. Outer door must permit full access to panel interior. Inner door must permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus must remain concealed.

F. Column-Type Panelboards: Single row of overcurrent devices with narrow gutter extension and overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

1. Column-Type Panelboard Doors: Concealed hinges secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.5 LOAD CENTERS

A. Listing Criteria: Comply with UL 67.

B. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** lugs only, **as directed**.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

D. Doors: Concealed hinges secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

E. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

2.6 ELECTRONIC-GRADE PANELBOARDS

A. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1; UL 67; and UL 1449 after installing SPD.

B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

C. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.

E. Factory-Installed, Integral SPD:

1. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase may not be less than 100 kA, **as directed**. Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of ratings of individual MOVs in given mode.
2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V **OR** 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits, **as directed,** may not exceed the following:

a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.

3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits may not exceed the following:

a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
d. Line to Line: 1200 V.

4. SCCR: Equal to SCCR of panelboard in which installed **OR** exceed 100 kA **OR** exceed 200 kA, **as directed**.
5. Nominal Rating: 20 kA **OR** 10 kA, **as directed**.

F. Buses:

1. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
2. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.

2.7 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents, **as directed**.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:

a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:

a. RMS sensing.
b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event must be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused trip.
f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
g. Field-Adjustable Settings:

1) Instantaneous trip.
2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3) Long and short time adjustments.
4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6 mA trip).
6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30 mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240 V, single-pole configuration.
8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
9. MCCB Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
    c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
    d. Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials, **as directed**.
    e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
    f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator, **as directed**.
    g. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control", **as directed.**
    h. Shunt Trip: 120 V **OR** 24 V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75 percent of rated voltage, **as directed**.
    i. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on **OR** off **OR** on or off position, **as directed**.
    j. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
    k. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional **OR** with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay, **as directed**.
    l. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 A must have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
    m. Auxiliary Contacts: One, SPDT switch **OR** Two, SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts, **as directed**.
    n. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
    o. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key must be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
    p. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
    q. Multipole units enclosed in single housing with single handle **OR** factory assembled to operate as single unit, **as directed**.

B. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."
2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
    b. Mechanical cover interlock with manual interlock override, to prevent opening of cover when switch is in on position. Interlock must prevent switch from being turned on with cover open. Operating handle must have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.
    c. Auxiliary Contacts: One **OR** Two normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation, **as directed**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.

B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards in accordance with NECA 407 **OR** PB 1.1, **as directed**.

C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.

D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Panelboards: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NECA 407 **OR** PB 1.1, **as directed**
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Techniques:

1. Equipment Mounting:

    a. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
    b. Attach panelboard to vertical finished or structural surface behind panelboard.
    c. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch (16 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) in depth, **as directed**. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
    d. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

2. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
3. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
4. Mount top of trim 7.5 ft (2.3 m) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
5. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
6. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
7. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

    a. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.

b. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.

8. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
9. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
10. Stub four 1 inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in future. Stub four 1 inch (25 mm) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
11. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
12. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

D. Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

E. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles must be located on interior of panelboard door.

F. Breaker Labels: Faceplate must list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

G. Circuit Directory:

1. Provide directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder **OR** metal frame with transparent protective cover, **as directed**.

a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.

2. Provide computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.

a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.

3. Create directory to indicate installed circuit loads **OR** after balancing panelboard loads, **as directed**; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Architect **OR** Tenant **OR** authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**. Names or titles of witnesses, **as directed**.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Do not perform **OR** Perform optional tests, **as directed**. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment:

        1) Use infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

D. Nonconforming Work:

1. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

E. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports, including certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

F. Manufacturer Services:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support **OR** supervise field tests and inspections, **as directed**.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated **OR** as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies," **as directed.**

C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.

1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within panelboard, may not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 19 00 - ELECTRICAL POWER MONITORING AND CONTROL

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electrical power monitoring and control. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following for monitoring and control of electrical power system:
   a. PC-based workstation(s) and software.
   b. Communication network and interface modules for RS-232; RS-485, Modbus TCP/IP; and IEEE 802.3 data transmission protocols.

C. Definitions
1. Ethernet: Local area network based on IEEE 802.3 standards.
2. Firmware: Software (programs or data) that has been written onto read-only memory (ROM). Firmware is a combination of software and hardware. Storage media with ROMs that have data or programs recorded on them are firmware.
3. HTML: Hypertext markup language.
4. I/O: Input/output.
5. KB: Short for kilobyte. When used to describe data storage, "KB" represents 1024 bytes.
6. KY Pulse: A term used by the metering industry to describe a method of measuring consumption of electricity that is based on a relay changing status in response to the rotation of the disk in the meter.
7. LAN: Local area network; sometimes plural as "LANs."
8. LCD: Liquid crystal display.
9. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less that 50 V or remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.
10. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
11. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.
12. PC: Personal computer; sometimes plural as "PCs."
13. rms: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.
14. RS-232: A TIA standard for asynchronous serial data communications between terminal devices.
15. RS-485: A TIA standard for multipoint communications using two twisted-pairs.
16. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.
17. THD: Total harmonic distortion.
18. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply; used both in singular and plural context.
19. WAN: Wide area network.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   a. Attach copies of approved Product Data submittals for products (such as switchboards and switchgear) that describe power monitoring and control features to illustrate coordination among related equipment and power monitoring and control.
2. Shop Drawings: For power monitoring and control equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Outline Drawings: Indicate arrangement of components and clearance and access requirements.

b. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
c. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
d. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with a block diagram.
e. UPS sizing calculations for workstation.

3. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
   a. Self-study guide describing the process for setting equipment's network address; setting the Owner's options; procedures to ensure data access from any PC on the network, using a standard Web browser; and recommended firewall setup.
   b. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
   c. Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with the Owner-selected options.
   d. Device address list and the set point of each device and operator option, as set in applications software.
   e. Graphic file and printout of graphic screens and related icons, with legend.
4. Software Upgrade Kit: For the Owner to use in modifying software to suit future power system revisions or power monitoring and control revisions.
5. Software licenses and upgrades required by and installed for operating and programming digital and analog devices.
6. Field quality-control test reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power monitoring and control units, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
   a. Operating and applications software documentation.
   b. Software licenses.
   c. Software service agreement.
   d. PC installation and operating documentation, manuals, and software for the PC and all installed peripherals. Software shall include system restore, emergency boot diskettes, and drivers for all installed hardware. Provide separately for each PC.
   e. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on CD-ROM of the hard-copy submittal.
8. Other Informational Submittals:
   a. System installation and setup guides, with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

F. Software Service Agreement
1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include the operating systems. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
   a. Provide 30-day notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Functional Description
1. Instrumentation and Recording Devices: Monitor and record load profiles and chart energy consumption patterns.
a. Calculate and Record the Following:
1) Load factor.
2) Peak demand periods.
3) Consumption correlated with facility activities.
b. Measure and Record Metering Data for the Following:
1) Electricity.
2) Domestic water.
3) Natural gas.
2. Software: Calculate allocation of utility costs.
a. Automatically Import Energy Usage Records to Allocate Energy Costs for the Following:
1) At least 15 departments.
2) At least 30 tenants.
3) At least five processes.
4) At least five buildings.
b. Verify utility bills and analyze alternate energy rates, **as directed**.
3. Power Quality Monitoring: Identify power system anomalies and measure, display, and record trends and alarms of the following power quality parameters:
a. Voltage regulation and unbalance.
b. Continuous three-phase rms voltage.
c. Periodic max./min./avg. samples.
d. Harmonics.
e. Voltage excursions.
4. Emergency Load Shedding. Preserve critical loads or avoid total shutdown due to unforeseen loss of power sources according to the following logic:
a. Determine system topology.
b. Evaluate remaining loads and sources.
c. Shed loads in less than 100 ms.
5. Demand Management:
a. Peaking or co-generator control.
b. Load interlocking.
c. Load shedding.
d. Load trimming.
6. System: Report equipment status and power system control.

B. System Requirements
1. Monitoring and Control System: Include PC-based workstation **OR** multiple PC-based workstations **OR** multiple PC-based workstations with graphics capability and Web access, **as directed**, with its operating system and application software, connected to data transmission network.
2. Surge Protection: For external wiring of each conductor entry connection to components to protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads.
a. Minimum Protection for Power Lines 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits".
b. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Lines: Comply with requirements as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
3. Addressable Devices: All transmitters and receivers shall communicate unique device identification and status reports to monitoring and control clients.

4. BAS Interface: Provide factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, display, and record data for use in processing reports.
   a. Hardwired Monitoring Points: Electrical power demand (kilowatts), electrical power consumption (kilowatt-hours), power factor, **as directed**.
      OR
      ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) **OR** LonTalk **OR** Modbus **OR** Industry-accepted, open-protocol, **as directed**, communication interface with the BAS shall enable the BAS operator to remotely monitor meter information from a BAS operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at metering panel shall be available through the BAS.

C. Operating System
1. Software: Configured to run on a portable laptop computer, a single PC, or a palm computer, with capability for accessing a single meter at a time. System is not connected to a LAN. Modbus TCP/IP, RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.
   OR
   Software: Configured to run on a single PC, with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Modbus TCP/IP, RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.
   OR
   Software: Configured for a server and multiple client PCs, each with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Ethernet, Modbus TCP/IP, RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.
   OR
   Software: Configured for a server and multiple client PCs, each with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Software shall include interactive graphics client and shall be Web enabled. Workstations and portable computers shall not require any software except for an Internet browser to provide connectivity and full functionality. Include a firewall recommended by manufacturer. 100 Base-T Ethernet, Modbus TCP/IP RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.
2. Operating System Software: Based on 32-bit, Microsoft Windows workstation operating system. Software shall have the following features:
   a. Multiuser and multitasking to allow independent activities and monitoring to occur simultaneously at different workstations.
   b. Graphical user interface to show pull-down menus and a menu tree format.
   c. Capability for future additions within the indicated system size limits.
3. Peer Computer Control Software: Shall detect a failure of workstation and associated server, **as directed**, and shall cause other workstation and associated server, **as directed**, to assume control of all system functions without interruption of operation. Drivers shall be provided in both central computers to support this mode of operation.

D. Applications Software
1. Basic Requirements:
   a. Fully compatible with and based on the approved operating system.
   b. Password-protected operator login and access; three levels, minimum.
   c. Password-protected setup functions.
   d. Context sensitive on-line help.
   e. Capability of creating, deleting, and copying files; and automatically maintaining a directory of all files, including size and location of each sequential and random-ordered record.
   f. Capability for importing custom icons into graphic views to represent alarms and I/O devices.
   g. Automatic and encrypted backups for database and history; automatically stored at central control PC **OR** selected workstation, **as directed**, and encrypted with a nine-character alphanumeric password, which must be used to restore or read data contained in backup.
   h. Operator audit trail for recording and reporting all changes made to user-defined system options.
2. Workstation Server Functions:

a. Support other client PCs on the LAN and WAN, **as directed**.
b. Maintain recorded data in databases accessible from other PCs on the LAN and WAN, **as directed**.

3. Data Formats:
   a. User-programmable export and import of data to and from commonly used Microsoft Windows spreadsheet, database, billing, and other applications; using dynamic data exchange technology.
   b. Option to convert reports and graphics to HTML format.
   c. Interactive graphics.
   d. Option to send preprogrammed or operator designed e-mail reports.
4. Metered Data: Display metered values in real time.
5. Remote Control:
   a. Display circuit-breaker status and allow breaker control.
   b. User defined with load-shedding automatically initiated and executed schemes responding to programmed time schedules, set points of metered demands, utility contracted load shedding, or combinations of these.
6. Equipment Documentation: Database for recording of equipment ratings and characteristics; with capability for graphic display on monitors.
7. Graphics: Interactive color-graphics platform with pull-down menus and mouse-driven generation of power system graphics, in formats widely used for such drafting; to include the following:
   a. Site plan.
   b. Floor plans.
   c. Equipment elevations.
   d. Single-line diagrams.
8. User-Defined Monitoring and Control Events: Display and record with date and time stamps accurate to 0.1 second, and including the following:
   a. Operator log on/off.
   b. Attempted operator log on/off.
   c. All alarms.
   d. Equipment operation counters.
   e. Out-of-limit, pickup, trip, and no-response events.
9. Trending Reports: Display data acquired in real-time from different meters or devices, in historical format over user-defined time; unlimited as to interval, duration, or quantity of trends.
   a. Spreadsheet functions of sum, delta, percent, average, mean, standard deviation, and related functions applied to recorded data.
   b. Charting, statistical, and display functions of standard Windows-based spreadsheet.
10. Alarms: Display and record alarm messages from discrete input and controls outputs, according to user programmable protocol.
    a. Functions requiring user acknowledgment shall run in background during computer use for other applications and override other presentations when they occur.
11. Waveform Data: Display and record waveforms on demand or automatically on an alarm or programmed event; include the graphic displays of the following, based on user-specified criteria:
    a. Phase voltages, phase currents, and residual current.
    b. Overlay of three-phase currents, and overlay each phase voltage and current.
    c. Waveforms ranging in length from 2 cycles to 5 minutes.
    d. Disturbance and steady-state waveforms up to 512 points per cycle.
    e. Transient waveforms up to 83,333 points per cycle on 60-Hz base.
    f. Calculated waveform on a minimum of four cycles of data of the following:
       1) THD.
       2) rms magnitudes.
       3) Peak values.
       4) Crest factors.
       5) Magnitude of individual harmonics.
12. Data Sharing: Allow export of recorded displays and tabular data to third-party applications software.
13. Tenant or Activity Billing Software:

a. Automatically compute and prepare tenant bills **OR** activity demand and energy-use statements, **as directed**, based on metering of energy use and peak demand integrated over user-defined interval.
b. Intervals shall be same as used by electric utilities, including current vendor.
c. Import metered data from saved records that were generated by metering and monitoring software.
d. Maintain separate directory for each tenant's historical billing information.
e. Prepare summary reports in user-defined formats and time intervals.

14. Reporting: User commands initiate the reporting of a list of current alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in system or a log of past events.
a. Print a record of user-defined alarm, supervisory, and trouble events on workstation printer.
b. Sort and report by device name and by function.
c. Report type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble), description, date, and time of occurrence.
d. Differentiate alarm signals from other indications.
e. When system is reset, report reset event with same information concerning device, location, date, and time.

E. Communication Components And Networks
1. Transient Voltage Surge Suppression and Electromagnetic-Interference Immunity: Include in solid-state equipment. Comply with IEEE C37.90.
2. Network Configuration: High-speed, multi-access, open nonproprietary, industry standard communication protocol; LANs complying with EIA 485, 100 Base-T Ethernet, and Modbus TCP/IP.

F. Power Monitors
1. Separately mounted, permanently installed instrument for power monitoring and control.
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 12, **as directed**.
2. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
a. Indoor installation in non-air-conditioned **OR** nontemperature-controlled, **as directed**, spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of 0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
3. rms Real-Time Measurements:
a. Current: Each phase, neutral, average of three phases, percent unbalance.
b. Voltage: Line-to-line each phase, line-to-line average of three phases, line-to-neutral each phase, line-to-neutral average of three phases, line-to-neutral percent unbalance.
c. Power: Per phase and three-phase total.
d. Reactive Power: Per phase and three-phase total.
e. Apparent Power: Per phase and three-phase total.
f. Power Factor: Per phase and three-phase total.
g. Displacement Power Factor: Per phase and three-phase total.
h. Frequency.
i. THD: Current and voltage.
j. Accumulated Energy: Real kWh, reactive kVARh, apparent kVAh (signed/absolute).
k. Incremental Energy: Real kWh, reactive kVARh, apparent kVAh (signed/absolute).
l. Conditional Energy: Real kWh, reactive kVARh, apparent kVAh (signed/absolute).
4. Demand Current Calculations, per Phase, Three-Phase Average and Neutral:
a. Present.
b. Running average.
c. Last completed interval.
d. Peak.
5. Demand Real Power Calculations, Three-Phase Total:

a. Present.
b. Running average.
c. Last completed interval.
d. Predicted.
e. Peak.
f. Coincident with peak kVA demand.
g. Coincident with kVAR demand.

6. Demand Reactive Power Calculations, Three-Phase Total:
   a. Present.
   b. Running average.
   c. Last completed interval.
   d. Predicted.
   e. Peak.
   f. Coincident with peak kVA demand.
   g. Coincident with kVAR demand.
7. Demand Apparent Power Calculations, Three-Phase Total:
   a. Present.
   b. Running average.
   c. Last completed interval.
   d. Predicted.
   e. Peak.
   f. Coincident with peak kVA demand.
   g. Coincident with kVAR demand.
8. Average Power Factor Calculations, Demand Coincident, Three-Phase Total:
   a. Last completed interval.
   b. Coincident with kW peak.
   c. Coincident with kVAR peak.
   d. Coincident with kVA peak.
9. Power Analysis Values:
   a. THD, Voltage and Current: Per phase, three phase, and neutral.
   b. Displacement Power Factor: Per phase, three phase.
   c. Fundamental Voltage, Magnitude and Angle: Per phase.
   d. Fundamental Currents, Magnitude and Angle: Per phase.
   e. Fundamental Real Power: Per phase, three phase.
   f. Fundamental Reactive Power: Per phase.
   g. Harmonic Power: Per phase, three phase.
   h. Phase rotation.
   i. Unbalance: Current and voltage.
   j. Harmonic Magnitudes and Angles for Current and Voltages: Per phase, up to 31st **OR** 63rd, **as directed**, harmonic.
10. Power Demand Calculations: According to one of the following calculation methods, selectable by the user:
    a. Thermal Demand: Sliding window updated every second for the present demand and at end of the interval for the last interval. Adjustable window that can be set in 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes.
    b. Block Interval with Optional Subintervals: Adjustable for 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes. User-defined parameters for the following block intervals:
       1) Sliding block that calculates demand every second, with intervals less than 15 minutes, and every 15 seconds with an interval between 15 and 60 minutes.
       2) Fixed block that calculates demand at end of the interval.
       3) Rolling block subinterval that calculates demand at end of each subinterval and displays it at end of the interval.
    c. Demand Calculation Initiated by a Synchronization Signal:
       1) Signal is a pulse from an external source. Demand period begins with every pulse. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.

2) Signal is a communication signal. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
3) Demand can be synchronized with clock in the power meter.

11. Sampling:
    a. Current and voltage shall be digitally sampled at a rate high enough to provide accuracy to 63rd harmonic of 60-Hz fundamental.
    b. Power monitor shall provide continuous sampling at a rate of 128 samples per cycle on all voltage and current channels in the meter.
12. Minimum and Maximum Values: Record monthly minimum and maximum values, including date and time of record. For three-phase measurements, identify phase of recorded value. Record the following parameters:
    a. Line-to-line voltage.
    b. Line-to-neutral voltage.
    c. Current per phase.
    d. Line-to-line voltage unbalance.
    e. Line-to-neutral voltage unbalance.
    f. Power factor.
    g. Displacement power factor.
    h. Total power.
    i. Total reactive power.
    j. Total apparent power.
    k. THD voltage L-L.
    l. THD voltage L-N.
    m. THD current.
    n. Frequency.
13. Harmonic Calculation: Display and record the following:
    a. Harmonic magnitudes and angles for each phase voltage and current through 31st **OR** 63rd, **as directed**, harmonic. Calculate for all three phases, current and voltage, and residual current. Current and voltage information for all phases shall be obtained simultaneously from same cycle.
    b. Harmonic magnitude reported as a percentage of the fundamental or as a percentage of rms values, as selected by user.
14. Current and Voltage Ratings:
    a. Designed for use with current inputs from standard instrument current transformers with 5-A secondary and shall have a metering range of 0-10 A.
    b. Withstand ratings shall be not less than 15 A, continuous; 50 A, lasting over 10 seconds, no more frequently than once per hour; 500 A, lasting 1 second, no more frequently than once per hour.
    c. Designed for use with voltage inputs from standard instrument potential transformers with a 120-V secondary.
15. Accuracy:
    a. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5; and IEC 60687, Class 0.5 for revenue meters.
    b. Accuracy from Light to Full Rating:
        1) Power: Accurate to 0.25 percent of reading, plus 0.025 percent of full scale.
        2) Voltage and Current: Accurate to 0.075 percent of reading, plus 0.025 percent of full scale.
        3) Power Factor: Plus or minus 0.002, from 0.5 leading to 0.5 lagging.
        4) Frequency: Plus or minus 0.01 Hz at 45 to 67 Hz.
16. Waveform Capture:
    a. Capture and store steady-state waveforms of voltage and current channels; initiated manually. Each capture shall be for 3 cycles, 128 data points for each cycle, allowing resolution of harmonics to 31st harmonic of basic 60 Hz.
    b. Store captured waveforms in internal nonvolatile memory; available for PC display, archiving, and analysis.
17. Input: One digital input signal(s).

a. Normal mode for on/off signal.
b. Demand interval synchronization pulse, accepting a demand synchronization pulse from a utility demand meter.
c. Conditional energy signal to control conditional energy accumulation.

18. Outputs:
    a. Operated either by user command sent via communication link, or set to operate in response to user-defined alarm or event.
    b. Closed in either a momentary or latched mode as defined by user.
    c. Each output relay used in a momentary contact mode shall have an independent timer that can be set by user.
    d. One digital KY pulse to a user-definable increment of energy measurement. Output ratings shall be up to 120-V ac, 300-V dc, 50 mA, and provide 3500-V rms isolation.
    e. One relay output module(s), providing a load voltage range from 20- to 240-V ac or from 20- to 30-V dc, supporting a load current of 2 A.
    f. Output Relay Control:
        1) Relay outputs shall operate either by user command sent via communication link or in response to user-defined alarm or event.
        2) Normally open and normally closed contacts, field configured to operate as follows:
            a) Normal contact closure where contacts change state for as long as signal exists.
            b) Latched mode when contacts change state on receipts of a pickup signal; changed state is held until a dropout signal is received.
            c) Timed mode when contacts change state on receipt of a pickup signal; changed state is held for a preprogrammed duration.
            d) End of power demand interval when relay operates as synchronization pulse for other devices.
            e) Energy Pulse Output: Relay pulses quantities used for absolute kWh, absolute kVARh, kVAh, kWh In, kVARh In, kWh Out, and kVARh Out.
            f) Output controlled by multiple alarms using Boolean-type logic.

19. Onboard Data Logging:
    a. Store logged data, alarms, events, and waveforms in 80 **OR** 800, **as directed**, KB of onboard nonvolatile memory.
    b. Stored Data:
        1) Billing Log: User configurable; data shall be recorded every 15 minutes, identified by month, day, and 15-minute interval. Accumulate 24 months of monthly data, 32 days of daily data, and between 2 to 52 days of 15-minute interval data, depending on number of quantities selected.
        2) Custom Data Logs: One **OR** Three, **as directed**, user-defined log(s) holding up to 96 parameters. Date and time stamp each entry to the second and include the following user definitions:
            a) Schedule interval.
            b) Event definition.
            c) Configured as "fill-and-hold" or "circular, first-in first-out."
        3) Alarm Log: Include time, date, event information, and coincident information for each defined alarm or event.
        4) Waveform Log: Store captured waveforms configured as "fill-and-hold" or "circular, first-in first-out."
    c. Default values for all logs shall be initially set at factory, with logging to begin on device power up.

20. Alarms.
    a. User Options:
        1) Define pickup, dropout, and delay.
        2) Assign one of four severity levels to make it easier for user to respond to the most important events first.
        3) Allow for combining up to four alarms using Boolean-type logic statements for outputting a single alarm.

b. Alarm Events:
1) Over/undercurrent.
2) Over/undervoltage.
3) Current imbalance.
4) Phase loss, current.
5) Phase loss, voltage.
6) Voltage imbalance.
7) Over kW demand.
8) Phase reversal.
9) Digital input off/on.
10) End of incremental energy interval.
11) End of demand interval.

21. Control Power: 90- to 457-V ac or 100- to 300-V dc.
22. Communications:
a. Power monitor shall be permanently connected to communicate via Modbus TCP via a 100 Base-T Ethernet **OR** RS-485 Modbus TCP/IP, **as directed**.
b. Local plug-in connections shall be for RS-232 and 100 Base-T Ethernet.
23. Display Monitor:
a. Backlighted LCD to display metered data with touch-screen **OR** touch-pad, **as directed**, selecting device.
b. Touch-screen display shall be a minimum 12-inch diagonal, resolution of 800 by 600 RGB pixels, 256 colors; NEMA 250, Type 1 display enclosure.
c. Display four values on one screen at same time.
1) Current, per phase rms, three-phase average and neutral, **as directed**.
2) Voltage, phase to phase, phase to neutral, and three-phase averages of phase to phase and phase to neutral.
3) Real power, per phase and three-phase total.
4) Reactive power, per phase and three-phase total.
5) Apparent power, per phase and three-phase total.
6) Power factor, per phase and three-phase total.
7) Frequency.
8) Demand current, per phase and three-phase average.
9) Demand real power, three-phase total.
10) Demand apparent power, three-phase total.
11) Accumulated energy (MWh and MVARh).
12) THD, current and voltage, per phase.
d. Reset: Allow reset of the following parameters at the display:
1) Peak demand current.
2) Peak demand power (kW) and peak demand apparent power (kVA).
3) Energy (MWh) and reactive energy (MVARh).

G. Standalone, Web-Enabled Monitoring And Control Instrument
1. Separately mounted, permanently installed instrument for power monitoring and control.
a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 12, **as directed**.
2. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability.
a. Indoor installation in non-air-conditioned **OR** nontemperature-controlled, **as directed**, spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of 0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
3. Power-Distribution Equipment Monitor: Web enabled, with integral network port and embedded Web server with factory-configured firmware and HTML-formatted Web pages for viewing of power monitoring and equipment status information from connected devices equipped with digital communication ports.

4. LAN Connectivity: Multipoint, RS-485 Modbus serial communication network, interconnecting all breaker trip units, protective relays, drives, and metering devices equipped with communications. Serial communication network connected to Ethernet server that functions as a gateway and server, providing data access via 10 Base-T **OR** 100 Base-T **OR** 100 Base-FX, **as directed**, LAN.
5. Communication Devices within the Equipment: Addressed at factory and tested to verify reliable communication with network server.
6. Server Configuration:
   a. Initial network parameters set using a standard Web browser. Connect via a local operator interface, or an RJ-45 port accessible from front of equipment.
   b. Network server shall be factory programmed with embedded HTML-formatted Web pages that are user configurable and that provide detailed communication diagnostic information for serial and Ethernet ports as status of RS-485 network; with internal memory management information pages for viewing using a standard Web browser.
   c. Login: Password protected; password administration accessible from the LAN using a standard Web browser.
   d. Operating Software: Suitable for local access; firewall protected.
7. Data Access:
   a. Network server shall include embedded HTML pages providing real-time information from devices connected to RS-485 network ports via a standard Web browser.
8. Equipment Monitoring Options: Login shall be followed by a main menu for selecting summary Web pages that follow.
9. Summary Web pages shall be factory configured to display the following information for each communicating device within the power equipment lineup:
   a. User-Configured Custom Home Page: Provide for the lineup, showing status-at-a-glance of key operating values, **as directed**.
   b. Circuit Summary Page: Circuit name, three-phase average rms current, power (kW), power factor, and breaker status.
   c. Load Current Summary Page: Circuit name, Phase A, B, and C rms current values.
   d. Demand Current Summary Page: Circuit name, Phase A, B, and C average demand current values.
   e. Power Summary Page: Circuit name, present demand power (kW), peak demand power (kW), and recorded time and date.
   f. Energy Summary Page: Circuit name, energy (kWh), reactive energy (kVARh), and time/date of last reset.
   g. Transformer Status Page: Transformer tag, coil temperatures, and cooling fan status.
   h. Motor-Control Center Status Page: Circuit name, three-phase average rms current, thermal capacity (percentage), and drive output frequency (Hz) contactor status.
   i. Specific Device Pages: Each individual communicating device shall display detailed, real-time information, as appropriate for device type.
      1) Display historical energy data that shall be logged automatically for each device, as appropriate for device type.
      2) Display historical data logged from each device in graphical time-trend plots. Value to be displayed on time-trend plot shall be user selectable. Time interval to be displayed on scale shall be for previous day or week.
   j. Export historical energy data to a PC or workstation through network using FTP (File Transfer Protocol). Format exported data in a CSV (Comma Separated Variable) file format for importing into spreadsheet applications.
10. Communications:
    a. Power monitor: Permanently connected to communicate via RS-485 Modbus TCP/IP **OR** Modbus TCP via an 100 Base-T Ethernet, **as directed**.
    b. Local Plug-in Connections: RS-232 and 100 Base-T Ethernet.
    c. Monitor Display: Backlighted LCD to display metered data with touch-screen **OR** touch-pad, **as directed**, selecting device.

H. Workstation Hardware

1. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
   a. Indoor installation in spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Computer: Standard unmodified PC of modular design. CPU word size shall be 32 bytes or larger; CPU operating speed shall be at least 66 MHz **OR** GHz, **as directed**.
   a. Memory: 256 MB of usable installed memory, expandable to a minimum of 1024 MB without additional chassis or power supplies.
   b. Real-Time Clock:
      1) Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 minute per month.
      2) Time Keeping Format: 24-hour time format including seconds, minutes, hours, date, day, and month; automatic reset by software.
      3) Clock shall function for one year without power.
      4) Provide automatic time correction once every 24 hours by synchronizing clock with the Time Service Department of the U.S. Naval Observatory.
   c. Serial Ports: Two RS-232-F serial ports for general use, with additional ports as required. Data transmission rates shall be selectable under program control.
   d. Parallel Port: Enhanced.
   e. LAN Adapter Card: 10/100-Mbps PCI bus, internal network interface card.
   f. Sound Card: For playback and recording of digital WAV sound files associated with audible warning and alarm functions.
   g. Color Monitor: PC compatible, not less than 18 inches (455 mm), LCD type, with a minimum resolution of 1280 by 1024 pixels, noninterlaced, and a maximum dot pitch of 0.28 mm.
   h. Keyboard: Minimum of 64 characters, standard ASCII character set based on ANSI INCITS 154.
   i. Mouse: Standard, compatible with installed software.
   j. Disk Storage: Include the following, each with appropriate controller:
      1) Minimum 80-GB hard disk, maximum average access time of 10 ms.
      2) Floppy Disk Drive: High density, 3-1/2-inch (90-mm) size.
      3) PCMCIA slot with removable 500-MB media.
      4) 100-MB Iomega Zip drive.
      5) 250-MB Iomega Jaz drive.
   k. Magnetic Tape System, **as directed**: 4-mm cartridge magnetic tape system with minimum 2 **OR** 4 **OR** 12 **OR** 20, **as directed**,-GB formatted capacity per tape. Provide 10 tapes, each in a rigid cartridge with spring-loaded cover and operator-selectable write-protect feature.
   l. Modem: 56,600 bps, full duplex for asynchronous communications. With error detection, auto answer/autodial, and call-in-progress detection. Modem shall comply with requirements in ITU-T v.34, ITU-T v.42, ITU-T v.42 Appendix VI for error correction, and ITU-T v.42 BIS for data compression standards; and shall be suitable for operating on unconditioned voice-grade telephone lines complying with 47 CFR 68.
   m. Audible Alarm: Manufacturer's standard.
   n. CD-ROM Drive:
      1) Nominal Storage Capacity: 650 MB.
      2) Data Transfer Rate: 1.2 Mbps.
      3) Average Access Time: 150 ms.
      4) Cache Memory: 256 KB.
      5) Data Throughput: 1 MB/second, minimum.
   o. Report Printer: Minimum resolution 600 dpi laser printer.
      1) Connected to central station and designated workstations.
      2) RAM: 2 MB, minimum.
      3) Printing Speed: Minimum 12 pages per minute.

4) Paper Handling: Automatic sheet feeder with 250-sheet paper cassette and with automatic feed.

p. Interface: Bidirectional parallel and universal serial bus.

q. LAN Adapter Card: 10/100-Mbps internal network interface card.

3. Redundant Central Computer: Connected in a hot standby, peer configuration; automatically maintains copies of system software, application software, and data files. System transactions and other activities that alter system data files shall be updated to system files of redundant computer in near real-time. If central computer fails, redundant computer shall assume control immediately and automatically.

4. UPS: Self-contained; complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Static Uninterruptible Power Supply".

a. Size: Provide a minimum of 6 hours of operation of workstation station equipment, including 2 hours of alarm printer operation, **as directed**.

b. Batteries: Sealed, valve regulated, recombinant, lead calcium.

c. Accessories:

1) Transient voltage suppression.
2) Input-harmonics reduction.
3) Rectifier/charger.
4) Battery disconnect device.
5) Static bypass transfer switch.
6) Internal maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
7) External maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
8) Output isolation transformer.
9) Remote UPS monitoring.
10) Battery monitoring.
11) Remote battery monitoring.

I. RS-232 ASCII Interface

1. ASCII interface shall allow RS-232 connections to be made between a meter or circuit monitor operating as the host PC and any equipment that will accept RS-232 ASCII command strings, such as local display panels **OR** dial-up modems **OR** alarm transmitters, **as directed**.

2. Pager System Interface: Alarms shall be able to activate a pager system with customized message for each input alarm.

a. RS-232 output shall be capable of connection to a pager interface that can be used to call a paging system or service and send a signal to a portable pager. System shall allow an individual alphanumeric message per alarm input to be sent to paging system. This interface shall support both numeric and alphanumeric pagers.

3. Alarm System Interface:

a. RS-232 output shall be capable of transmitting alarms from other monitoring and alarm systems to workstation software.

4. Cables:

a. PVC-Jacketed, RS-232 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; PVC jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.

1) NFPA 70, Type CM.
2) Flame Resistance: UL 1581, Vertical Tray.

b. Plenum-Type, RS-232 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; plastic jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.

1) NFPA 70, Type CMP.
2) Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

J. LAN Cables

1. Comply with Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".

2. RS-485 Cable:
   a. PVC-Jacketed, RS-485 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, PVC jacket, and NFPA 70, Type CMG.
   b. Plenum-Type, RS-485 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, unshielded, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket, and NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Unshielded Twisted Pair Cables: Category 5e **OR** 6, **as directed**, as specified for horizontal cable for data service in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".

K. Low-Voltage Wiring
1. Low-Voltage Control Cable: Multiple conductor, color-coded, No. 20 AWG copper, minimum.
   a. Sheath: PVC; except in plenum-type spaces, use sheath listed for plenums.
   b. Ordinary Switching Circuits: Three conductors, unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Switching Circuits with Pilot Lights or Locator Feature: Five conductors, unless otherwise indicated.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Cabling
1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
3. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
   OR
   Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use NRTL-listed plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
4. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with specified category rating of components and that ensure specified category performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
5. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.

B. Identification
1. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
2. Label each power monitoring and control module with a unique designation.

C. Grounding
1. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Power and Grounding Sensitive Electronic Equipment."

D. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Electrical Tests: Use caution when testing devices containing solid-state components.
   b. Continuity tests of circuits.
   c. Operational Tests: Set and operate controls at workstation and at monitored and controlled devices to demonstrate their functions and capabilities. Use a methodical sequence that cues and reproduces actual operating functions as recommended by

manufacturer. Submit sequences for approval. Note response to each test command and operation. Note time intervals between initiation of alarm conditions and registration of alarms at central-processing workstation.

1) Coordinate testing required by this Section with that required by Sections specifying equipment being monitored and controlled.
2) Test LANs according to requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
3) System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of calculated battery operating time.
4) Verify accuracy of graphic screens and icons.
5) Metering Test: Load feeders, measure loads on feeder conductor with an rms reading clamp-on ammeter, and simultaneously read indicated current on the same phase at central-processing workstation. Record and compare values measured at the two locations. Resolve discrepancies greater than 5 percent and record resolution method and results.
6) Record metered values, control settings, operations, cues, time intervals, and functional observations and submit test reports printed by workstation printer.

3. Correct deficiencies, make necessary adjustments, and retest. Verify that specified requirements are met.
4. Test Labeling: After satisfactory completion of tests and inspections, apply a label to tested components indicating test results, date, and responsible agency and representative.
5. Reports: Written reports of tests and observations. Record defective materials and workmanship and unsatisfactory test results. Record repairs and adjustments.
6. Remove and replace malfunctioning devices and circuits and retest as specified above.

E. Demonstration

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems.
   a. Train the Owner's management and maintenance personnel in interpreting and using monitoring displays and in configuring and using software and reports. Include troubleshooting, servicing, adjusting, and maintaining equipment. Provide a minimum of 12 hours' training.
   b. Training Aid: Use approved final versions of software and maintenance manuals as training aids.

END OF SECTION 26 24 19 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 19 00a - SWITCHGEAR

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for switchgear. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes metal-enclosed, low-voltage power circuit-breaker switchgear rated 1000 V and less for use in ac systems.

C. Definitions
1. ATS: Acceptance Testing Service.
2. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of switchgear, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings: For each type of switchgear and related equipment.
   a. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Include the following:
   b. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around switchgear where pipe and ducts are prohibited. Show switchgear layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.
4. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified finish. Manufacturer's color charts showing colors available for mimic bus.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that switchgear, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
6. Field quality-control test reports.
7. Updated mimic-bus diagram reflecting field changes after final switchgear load connections have been made, for record.
8. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchgear and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
   a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
   b. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver switchgear in sections of lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
2. Store switchgear indoors in clean dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect switchgear from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
3. If stored in areas subjected to weather, cover switchgear to provide protection from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchgear; install electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

G. Project Conditions
1. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace building components and structures to provide pathway for moving switchgear into place.
2. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service.
3. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchgear, including clearances between switchgear, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
4. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 40 deg C.
   b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Ratings
1. Nominal System Voltage: 480 V, 3 wire **OR** 480/277 V, 4 wire **OR** 240 V, 3 wire **OR** 208/120 V, 4 wire, **as directed,** 60 Hz.
2. Main-Bus Continuous: 4000 **OR** 3200 **OR** 2000 **OR** 1600, **as directed,** A.
3. Short-Time and Short-Circuit Current: Match rating of highest-rated circuit breaker in switchgear assembly.

B. Fabrication
1. Factory assembled and tested and complying with IEEE C37.20.1.
2. Indoor Enclosure Material: Steel.
3. Outdoor Enclosure Material: Galvanized steel.
4. Outdoor Enclosure Fabrication Requirements: Weatherproof; integral structural-steel base frame with factory-applied asphaltic undercoating; and each compartment equipped with the following features:
   a. Structural design and anchorage adequate to resist loads imposed by 125-mph (200-km/h), **as directed**, wind.
   b. Space heater operating at one-half or less of rated voltage, sized to prevent condensation.
   c. Louvers equipped with insect and rodent screen and filter; arranged to permit air circulation while excluding insects, rodents, and exterior dust.
   d. Hinged front door with padlocking provisions.
   e. Interior light with switch.
   f. Weatherproof duplex receptacle.

g. Common internal aisle of sufficient width to permit protective-device withdrawal, disassembly, and servicing in aisle.
h. Aisle access doors with outside padlocking provisions and interior panic latches.
i. Aisle space heaters operating at one-half or less of rated voltage, thermostatically controlled.
j. Vaporproof fluorescent aisle lights with low-temperature ballasts, controlled by wall switch at each entrance.
k. GFCI duplex receptacles, a minimum of two, located in aisle.
l. Aisle ventilation louvers equipped with insect and rodent screen and filter and arranged to permit air circulation while excluding insects, rodents, and exterior dust.

5. Finish: IEEE C37.20.1, manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on phosphatizing-treated metal surfaces.
6. Section barriers between main and tie circuit-breaker compartments shall be extended to rear of section.
7. Bus isolation barriers shall be arranged to isolate line bus from load bus at each main and tie circuit breaker.
8. Circuit-breaker compartments shall be equipped to house drawout-type circuit breakers and shall be fitted with hinged outer doors.
9. Fabricate enclosure with removable, hinged, rear cover panels to allow access to rear interior of switchgear.
10. Auxiliary Compartments: Match and align with basic switchgear assembly. Include the following:
    a. Utility metering compartment that complies with utility company requirements.
    b. Bus transition sections.
    c. Incoming-line pull sections.
    d. Hinged front panels for access to metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
    e. Pull box on top of switchgear for extra room for pulling cable, with removable top, front, and side covers and ventilation provisions adequate to maintain air temperature in pull box within same limits as switchgear.
        1) Set pull box back from front to clear circuit-breaker lifting mechanism.
        2) Bottom: Insulating, fire-resistant material with separate holes for cable drops into switchgear.
        3) Cable Supports: Arranged to ease cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.
11. Bus bars connect between vertical sections and between compartments. Cable connections are not permitted.
    a. Main Phase Bus: Uniform capacity the entire length of assembly.
    b. Neutral Bus: 50 **OR** 100, **as directed,** percent of phase-bus ampacity, except as indicated. Equip bus with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Include braces for neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders.
    c. Vertical Section Bus Size: Comply with IEEE C37.20.1, including allowance for spare circuit breakers and spaces for future circuit breakers.
    d. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
       OR
       Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Silver- or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy, with copper or tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.
       OR
       Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy.
    e. Use silver-plated copper or tin-plated aluminum for connecting circuit-breaker line to aluminum bus.
    f. Use copper for connecting circuit-breaker line to copper bus.
    g. Contact Surfaces of Buses: Silver plated.
    h. Feeder Circuit-Breaker Load Terminals: Silver-plated copper bus extensions equipped with pressure connectors for outgoing circuit conductors.

i. Ground Bus: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with pressure connector for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors, minimum size 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm).
j. Supports and Bracing for Buses: Adequate strength for indicated short-circuit currents.
k. Neutral bus equipped with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders are braced.
l. Neutral Disconnect Link: Bolted, uninsulated, 1/4-by-2-inch (6-by-50-mm) copper bus, arranged to connect neutral bus to ground bus.
m. Provide for future extensions from either end of main phase, neutral, and ground bus by means of predrilled bolt-holes and connecting links.
n. Bus-Bar Insulation: Individual bus bars wrapped with factory-applied, flame-retardant tape or spray-applied, flame-retardant insulation.
    1) Sprayed Insulation Thickness: 3 mils (0.08 mm), minimum.
    2) Bolted Bus Joints: Insulate with secure joint covers that can easily be removed and reinstalled.

C. Components
1. Instrument Transformers: Comply with IEEE C57.13.
    a. Potential Transformers: Secondary-voltage rating of 120 V and NEMA accuracy class of 0.3 with burdens of W, X, and Y.
    b. Current Transformers: Ratios as indicated; burden and accuracy class suitable for connected relays, meters, and instruments.
2. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: UL-listed or -recognized, microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
    a. Inputs from sensors or 5-A current-transformer secondaries, and potential terminals rated to 600 V.
    b. Switch-selectable digital display of the following:
        1) Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
        2) Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
        3) Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
        4) Three-Phase Real Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
        5) Three-Phase Reactive Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
        6) Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
        7) Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
        8) Integrated Demand, with Demand Interval Selectable from 5 to 60 Minutes: Plus or minus 2 percent.
        9) Accumulated energy, in megawatt hours (joules), plus or minus 2 percent; stored values unaffected by power outages for up to 72 hours.
    c. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
3. Analog Instruments: Rectangular, 4-1/2-inch (115-mm) square, accurate within 1 percent, semiflush mounting, with antiparallax 250-degree scale and external zero adjustment, complying with ANSI C39.1.
    a. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded scale range of normal voltage plus 10 percent.
    b. Voltmeter Selector Switch: Rotary type with off position to provide readings of phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral voltages.
    c. Ammeters: Cover an expanded scale range of bus rating plus 10 percent.
    d. Ammeter Selector Switch: Permits current reading in each phase and keeps current-transformer secondary circuits closed in off position.
    e. Locate meter and selector switch on circuit-breaker compartment door for indicated feeder circuits only.
    f. Watt-Hour Meters: Flush- or semiflush-mounting type, 5 A, 120 V, 3 phase, 3 wire; with 3 elements, 15-minute indicating demand register, and provision for testing and adding pulse initiation.

g. Recording Demand Meter: Usable as totalizing relay or indicating and recording maximum demand meter with 15-minute interval.
   1) Operation: Meter counts and records a succession of pulses entering two channels.
   2) Housing: Drawout, back-connected case arranged for semiflush mounting.

4. Relays: Comply with IEEE C37.90, types and settings as indicated; with test blocks and plugs.
5. Surge Arresters: Distribution class, metal-oxide-varistor type. Comply with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.
   a. Install in cable termination compartments and connect in each phase of circuit.
   b. Coordinate rating with circuit voltage.
6. Provision for Future Devices: Equip compartments with rails, mounting brackets, supports, necessary appurtenances, and bus connections.
7. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for switchgear interior, including instruments and instrument transformers.
8. Control Power Supply: Control power transformer supplying 120-V control circuits through secondary disconnect devices. Include the following features:
   a. Dry-type transformers, in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA, including primary and secondary fuses.
   b. Two control power transformers in separate compartments with necessary interlocking relays; each transformer connected to line side of associated main circuit breaker.
      1) Secondary windings connected through a relay or relays to control bus to effect an automatic transfer scheme.
      2) Secondary windings connected through an internal automatic transfer switch to switchgear control power bus.
   c. Control Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses with current-limiting and overload protection.
   d. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
9. Control Wiring: Factory installed, complete with bundling, lacing, and protection; and complying with the following:
   a. Flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.
   b. Conductors sized according to NFPA 70 for duty required.

D. Circuit Breakers
1. Description: Comply with IEEE C37.13.
2. Ratings: As indicated for continuous, interrupting, and short-time current ratings for each circuit breaker; voltage and frequency ratings same as switchgear.
3. Operating Mechanism: Mechanically and electrically trip-free, stored-energy operating mechanism with the following features:
   a. Normal Closing Speed: Independent of both control and operator.
   b. Slow Closing Speed: Optional with operator for inspection and adjustment.
   c. Stored-Energy Mechanism: Manually charged **OR** Electrically charged, with optional manual charging, **as directed**.
   d. Operation counter.
4. Trip Devices: Solid-state, overcurrent trip-device system consisting of one or two current transformers or sensors per phase, a release mechanism, and the following features:
   a. Functions: Long-time-delay, short-time-delay, and instantaneous-trip functions, independent of each other in both action and adjustment.
   b. Temperature Compensation: Ensures accuracy and calibration stability from minus 5 to plus 40 deg C.
   c. Field-adjustable, time-current characteristics.
   d. Current Adjustability: Dial settings and rating plugs on trip units or sensors on circuit breakers, or a combination of these methods.
   e. Three bands, minimum, for long-time- and short-time-delay functions; marked "minimum," "intermediate," and "maximum."
   f. Pickup Points: Five minimum, for long-time- and short-time-trip functions. Equip short-time-trip function for switchable I^2t operation.

g. Pickup Points: Five minimum, for instantaneous-trip functions.
h. Ground-fault protection with at least three short-time-delay settings and three trip-time-delay bands; adjustable current pickup. Arrange to provide protection for the following:
   1) Three-wire circuit or system.
   2) Four-wire circuit or system.
   3) Four-wire, double-ended substation.
i. Trip Indication: Labeled, battery-powered lights or mechanical targets on trip device to indicate type of fault.

5. Auxiliary Contacts: For interlocking or remote indication of circuit-breaker position, with spare auxiliary switches and other auxiliary switches required for normal circuit-breaker operation, quantity as indicated. Each consists of two Type "a" and two Type "b" stages (contacts) wired through secondary disconnect devices to a terminal block in stationary housing.
6. Drawout Features: Circuit-breaker mounting assembly equipped with a racking mechanism to position circuit breaker and hold it rigidly in connected, test, and disconnected positions. Include the following features:
   a. Interlocks: Prevent movement of circuit breaker to or from connected position when it is closed, and prevent closure of circuit breaker unless it is in connected, test, or disconnected position.
   b. Circuit-Breaker Positioning: An open circuit breaker may be racked to or from connected, test, and disconnected positions only with the associated compartment door closed unless live parts are covered by a full dead-front shield. An open circuit breaker may be manually withdrawn to a position for removal from the structure with the door open. Status for connection devices for different positions includes the following:
      1) Test Position: Primary disconnect devices disengaged, and secondary disconnect devices and ground contact engaged.
      2) Disconnected Position: Primary and secondary devices and ground contact disengaged.
7. Arc Chutes: Readily removable from associated circuit breaker when it is in disconnected position, and arranged to permit inspection of contacts without removing circuit breaker from switchgear.
8. Padlocking Provisions: For installing at least three padlocks on each circuit breaker to secure its enclosure and prevent movement of drawout mechanism.
9. Operating Handle: One for each circuit breaker capable of manual operation.
10. Electric Close Button: One for each electrically operated circuit breaker.
11. Mechanical Interlocking of Circuit Breakers: Uses a mechanical tripping lever or equivalent design and electrical interlocks.
12. Key Interlocks: Arranged so keys are attached at devices indicated. Mountings and hardware are included where future installation of key-interlock devices is indicated.
13. Undervoltage Trip Devices: Instantaneous, with adjustable pickup voltage **OR** Adjustable time-delay and pickup voltage, **as directed**.
14. Shunt-Trip Devices: Where indicated.
15. Fused Circuit Breakers: Circuit breaker and fuse combinations complying with requirements for circuit breakers and trip devices and with the following:
   a. Fuses: NEMA FU 1, Class L current limiting, sized to coordinate with and protect associated circuit breaker.
   b. Circuit Breakers with Frame Size 1600 A and Smaller: Fuses on line side of associated circuit breaker, on a common drawout mounting, arranged so fuses are accessible only when circuit breaker is in disconnected position.
   c. Circuit Breakers with Frame Sizes More Than 1600 A: Fuses and circuit breakers may be installed in separate compartments on separate drawout mountings. Fuse drawout element is interlocked with associated power circuit breaker to prevent drawing out fuse element unless circuit breaker is in open position.
   d. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Positive means of tripping and holding circuit breaker in open position when a fuse opens. Open-fuse status is indicated at front of circuit breaker or fuse drawout element.

16. Indicating Lights: To indicate circuit breaker is open or closed, for main and bus tie circuit breakers interlocked either with each other or with external devices.

E. Accessories
1. Accessory Set: Furnish tools and miscellaneous items required for circuit-breaker and switchgear test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
   a. Racking handle to manually move circuit breaker between connected and disconnected positions.
   b. Portable test set for testing all functions of circuit-breaker, solid-state trip devices without removal from switchgear.
   c. Relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchgear meters and switchgear class relays.
2. Circuit-Breaker Removal Apparatus: Portable, floor-supported, roller-base, elevating carriage arranged for moving circuit breakers in and out of compartments.
3. Circuit-Breaker Removal Apparatus: Overhead-circuit-breaker lifting device, track mounted at top front of switchgear and complete with hoist and lifting yokes matching each size of drawout circuit breaker installed.
4. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Identified and compartmented steel box or cabinet with lockable door.
5. Storage for Manual: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.

F. Identification
1. Mimic Bus: Continuous mimic bus, arranged in single-line diagram format, using symbols and lettered designations consistent with approved mimic-bus diagram.
   a. Mimic-bus segments coordinated with devices in switchgear sections to which applied, to produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchgear components and connections.
   b. Medium: Painted graphics, as selected by Architect.
   c. Color: Contrasting with factory-finish background; as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. System Power Riser Diagrams: Depict power sources, feeders, distribution components, and major loads. Include as-built data for low-voltage power switchgear and connections as follows:
   a. Frame size of each circuit breaker.
   b. Trip rating for each circuit breaker.
   c. Conduit and wire size for each feeder.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 400.
2. Anchor switchgear assembly to 4-inch (100-mm), channel-iron floor sill embedded in floor **OR** concrete base, **as directed,** and attach by bolting.
   a. Sills: Select to suit switchgear; level and grout flush into floor **OR** concrete base, **as directed**.
   b. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for seismic-restraint requirements.
   c. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 3 inches (75 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switchgear unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
3. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchgear units and components.

B. Identification
   1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
   2. Diagram and Instructions:
      a. Frame and mount under clear acrylic plastic on the front of switchgear.
         1) Operating Instructions: Printed basic instructions for switchgear, including control and key-interlock sequences and emergency procedures.
         2) System Power Riser Diagrams: Depict power sources, feeders, distribution components, and major loads.
      b. Storage for Maintenance: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.

C. Connections
   1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
   2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

D. Field Quality Control
   1. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
      a. Test insulation resistance for each switchgear bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
      b. Test continuity of each circuit.
   2. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform the following:
      a. Inspect switchgear installation, including wiring, components, connections, and equipment. Test and adjust components and equipment.
      b. Verify that electrical control wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal by means of point-to-point continuity testing. Verify that wiring installation complies with requirements in Division 22.
      c. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      d. Assist in field testing of equipment including pretesting and adjusting of equipment and components.
      e. Report results in writing.
   3. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
      a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for each of the following NETA categories:
         1) Switchgear.
         2) Circuit breakers.
         3) Protective relays.
         4) Instrument transformers.
         5) Metering and instrumentation.
         6) Ground-fault systems.
         7) Battery systems.
         8) Surge arresters.
         9) Capacitors.
      b. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
   4. Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchgear. Remove front and rear panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchgear 11 months after date of Final Completion.

b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switchgear checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

E. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable, protective-relay trip characteristics according to results in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study".
2. Set field-adjustable, protective-relay trip characteristics.

F. Cleaning
1. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of switchgear. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

G. Protection
1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to switchgear, according to manufacturer's written instructions, throughout periods when switchgear environment is not controlled for temperature and humidity within manufacturer's stipulated service conditions.

END OF SECTION 26 24 19 00a

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 19 00b - MOTOR-CONTROL CENTERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for motor-control centers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes MCCs for use with ac circuits rated 600 V and less and having the following factory-installed components:
   a. Incoming main lugs and OCPDs.
   b. Full-voltage magnetic controllers.
   c. Reduced-voltage magnetic controllers.
   d. Reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers.
   e. Multispeed controllers.
   f. VFCs.
   g. Feeder-tap units.
   h. TVSS.
   i. Instrumentation.
   j. Auxiliary devices.

C. Definitions
1. BAS: Building automation system.
2. CE: Conformite Europeene (European Compliance).
3. CPT: Control power transformer.
4. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
5. GFCI: Ground fault circuit interrupting.
6. IGBT: Insulated-gate bipolar transistor.
7. LAN: Local area network.
8. LED: Light-emitting diode.
9. MCC: Motor-control center.
10. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
11. MCP: Motor-circuit protector.
12. NC: Normally closed.
13. NO: Normally open.
14. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
15. PCC: Point of common coupling.
16. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
17. PT: Potential transformer.
18. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
19. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
20. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.
21. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion.
22. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
23. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
24. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: MCCs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of controller and each type of MCC. Include shipping and operating weights, features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. LEED Submittals:
   a. Product Data for Credit EA 5: For continuous metering equipment for energy consumption.
3. Shop Drawings: For each MCC, manufacturer's approval, custom and production drawings as defined in UL 845. In addition to requirements specified in UL 845, include dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections; and conduit entry locations and sizes, mounting arrangements, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment.
   a. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
      1) Each installed unit's type and details.
      2) Factory-installed devices.
      3) Enclosure types and details.
      4) Nameplate legends.
      5) Short-circuit current (withstand) rating of complete MCC, and for bus structure and each unit.
      6) Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of each installed controller and feeder device, and installed devices.
      7) Specified optional features and accessories.
   b. Schematic and Connection Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring for each installed controller.
   c. Nameplate legends.
   d. Vertical and horizontal bus capacities.
   e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of each installed unit.
4. Harmonic Analysis Study and Report: Comply with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification; identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze possible **OR** designated operating scenarios, including recommendations for VFC input filtering to limit TDD and THD(V) at each VFC **OR** at the defined PCC to specified levels, **as directed**.
5. Standard Drawings: For each MCC, as defined in UL 845.
6. Production Drawings: For each MCC, as defined in UL 845.
7. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around MCCs where pipe and ducts are prohibited. Show MCC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.
8. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For MCCs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
9. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
10. Product Certificates: For each MCC, from manufacturer.
11. Source quality-control reports.
12. Field quality-control reports.
13. Operation and Maintenance Data: For MCCs, all installed devices, and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:

a. Manufacturer's Record Drawings: As defined in UL 845. In addition to requirements specified in UL 845, include field modifications and field-assigned wiring identification incorporated during construction by manufacturer, Contractor, or both.
b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
d. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers.
e. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
f. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.

14. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
15. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.
16. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification to supervise on-site testing, **as directed**.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain MCCs and controllers of a single type from single source from single manufacturer.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Comply with NFPA 70.
5. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section “Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver MCCs in shipping splits of lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery paths.
2. Handle MCCs according to the following:
a. NEMA ICS 2.3, "Instructions for the Handling, Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Motor Control Centers Rated Not More Than 600 Volts."
b. NECA 402, "Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Motor Control Centers."
3. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside MCCs; install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per vertical section **OR** connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service, **as directed**.

H. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) **OR** exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period, **as directed**.
b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
c. Humidity: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
d. Altitude: Exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m), or 3300 feet (1000 m) if MCC includes solid-state devices.
2. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service or Distribution Systems: Do not interrupt electrical service to, or distribution systems within, a facility occupied by the Owner or others unless

permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
b. Indicate method of providing temporary electrical service.
c. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without the Owner's written permission.
d. Comply with NFPA 70E.

3. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for MCCs, including clearances between MCCs and adjacent surfaces and other items.

I. Coordination
1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
2. Coordinate features of MCCs, installed units, and accessory devices with remote pilot devices and control circuits to which they connect.
3. Coordinate features, accessories, and functions of each MCC, each controller, and each installed unit with ratings and characteristics of supply circuits, motors, required control sequences, and duty cycle of motors and loads.

J. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace TVSS **OR** VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period, **as directed**.
a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Manufactured Units
1. General Requirements for MCCs: Comply with NEMA ICS 18 and UL 845, **as directed**.

B. Functional Features
1. Description: Modular arrangement of main units, controller units, control devices, feeder-tap units, instruments, metering, auxiliary devices, and other items mounted in vertical sections of MCC.
2. Controller Units: Combination controller units.
a. Install units up to and including Size 3 on drawout mountings with connectors that automatically line up and connect with vertical-section buses while being racked into their normal, energized positions.
b. Equip units in Type B and Type C MCCs with pull-apart terminal strips for external control connections.
3. Feeder-Tap Units: Through 225-A rating shall have drawout mountings with connectors that automatically line up and connect with vertical-section buses while being racked into their normal, energized positions.
4. Future Units: Compartments fully bused and equipped with guide rails or equivalent, ready for insertion of drawout units.
5. Spare Units: Installed in compartments indicated "spare."

C. Incoming Mains
1. Incoming Mains Location: Top and bottom, **as directed**.
2. Main Lugs Only: Conductor connectors suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, **as directed**.
b. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical type, **as directed**.

3. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents, **as directed**.
   a. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
   b. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
   c. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
      1) Instantaneous trip.
      2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      3) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
   d. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
   e. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
   f. MCCB Features and Accessories:
      1) Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
      2) Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material, **as directed**.
      3) Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
      4) Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator, **as directed**.
      5) Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
      6) Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control," **as directed**
      7) Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75 percent of rated voltage, **as directed**.
      8) Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
      9) Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
      10) Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
4. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker: 80 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.
   a. Fixed **OR** Drawout, circuit-breaker mounting, **as directed**.
   b. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
   c. Standard **OR** Full function microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings, **as directed**:
      1) Instantaneous trip.
      2) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      3) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
   d. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
   e. Remote trip indication and control.

f. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
g. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
h. Control Voltage: 40 **OR** 125 **OR** 250 **OR** 120-V ac, **as directed**.

D. Combination Controllers
1. Full-Voltage Controllers:
a. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Enclosed Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
b. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
1) Configuration: Nonreversing and reversing.
2. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers:
a. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A; closed transition; adjustable time delay on transition.
b. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Reduced voltage, electrically held.
1) Configuration:
a) Wye-Delta Controller: Four contactors, with a three-phase starting resistor/reactor bank.
b) Part-Winding Controller: Separate START and RUN contactors, field-selectable for one-half or two-thirds winding start mode, with either six- or nine-lead motors; with separate overload relays for starting and running sequences.
c) Autotransformer Reduced-Voltage Controller: Medium-duty service, with integral overtemperature protection; taps for starting at 50, 65, and 80 percent of line voltage; two START and one RUN contactors.
3. Reduced-Voltage, Solid-State Controllers:
a. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage, Solid-State Controllers: Comply with UL 508.
b. Reduced-Voltage, Solid-State Controllers: An integrated unit with power SCRs, heat sink, microprocessor logic board, door-mounted digital display and keypad, bypass contactor, and overload relay; suitable for use with NEMA MG 1, Design B, polyphase, medium-induction motors.
1) Configuration: Standard duty **OR** Severe duty; nonreversible **OR** reversible, **as directed**.
2) Starting Mode: Voltage ramping **OR** Current limit **OR** Torque control **OR** Torque control with voltage boost, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
3) Stopping Mode: Coast to stop **OR** Adjustable torque deceleration **OR** Adjustable braking, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
4) Shorting (Bypass) Contactor: Operates automatically when full voltage is applied to motor and bypasses the SCRs. Solid-state controller protective features shall remain active when the shorting contactor is in the bypass mode.
5) Shorting and Input Isolation, **as directed**, Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type; manufacturer's standard operating voltage, matching control power or line voltage, depending on contactor size and line-voltage rating. Provide coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
6) Logic Board: Identical for all ampere ratings and voltage classes, with environmental protective coating.
7) Adjustable acceleration-rate control using voltage or current ramp, and adjustable starting torque control with up to 400 percent current limitation for 20 seconds.
8) SCR bridge shall consist of at least two SCRs per phase, providing stable and smooth acceleration with **OR** without, **as directed**, external feedback from the motor or driven equipment.

9) Keypad, front accessible; for programming the controller parameters, functions, and features; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following functions:
   a) Adjusting motor full-load amperes, as a percentage of the controller's rating.
   b) Adjusting current limitation on starting, as a percentage of the motor full-load current rating.
   c) Adjusting linear acceleration and deceleration ramps, in seconds.
   d) Initial torque, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
   e) Adjusting torque limit, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
   f) Adjusting maximum start time, in seconds.
   g) Adjusting voltage boost, as a percentage of the nominal supply voltage.
   h) Selecting stopping mode and adjusting parameters.
   i) Selecting motor thermal-overload protection class between 5 and 30.
   j) Activating and de-activating protection modes.
   k) Selecting or activating communications modes.
10) Digital display, front accessible; for showing motor, controller, and fault status; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following:
   a) Controller Condition: Ready, starting, running, stopping.
   b) Motor Condition: Amperes, voltage, power factor, power, and thermal state.
   c) Fault Conditions: Controller thermal fault, motor overload alarm and trip, motor underload, overcurrent, shorted SCRs, line or phase loss, phase reversal, and line frequency over or under normal.
11) Controller Diagnostics and Protection:
   a) Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring SCR and motor thermal characteristics and providing controller overtemperature and motor overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
   b) Protection from line-side reverse phasing; line-side and motor-side phase loss; motor jam, stall, and underload conditions; and line frequency over or under normal.
   c) Input isolation contactor that opens when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component, or when the motor is stopped.
      OR
      Shunt trip that opens the disconnecting means when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component, **as directed**.
12) Remote Output Features:
   a) All outputs prewired to terminal blocks.
   b) Form C status contacts that change state when controller is running.
   c) Form C alarm contacts that change state when a fault condition occurs.
13) Optional Features:
   a) Analog output for field-selectable assignment of motor operating characteristics; 0 to 10-V dc **OR** 4 to 20-mA dc, **as directed**.
   b) Additional field-assignable Form C contacts for alarm outputs.
   c) Surge suppressors in solid-state power circuits providing three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
   d) Full-voltage bypass contactor operating automatically **OR** manually, with NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch, **as directed**. Power contacts shall be totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; and assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.

4. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers:
   a. General Requirements for Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
   b. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Two speed, full voltage, across the line, electrically held. Compelling relay to ensure that motor will start only at low speed.
      1) Configuration: Non-reversing **OR** Reversing; consequent pole **OR** two winding, **as directed**.

2) Compelling relays shall ensure that motor starts only at low speed.
3) Accelerating timer relays shall ensure properly timed acceleration through speeds lower than that selected.
4) Decelerating timer relays shall ensure automatically timed deceleration through each speed.
5) Antiplugging timer relays shall ensure a time delay when transferring from FORWARD to REVERSE and back.

5. Disconnecting Means and OCPDs:
   a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
      1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class L fuses, **as directed**.
      2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
      3) Auxiliary Contacts: NO/NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
   b. MCP Disconnecting Means:
      1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
      2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
      3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
      4) NC **OR** NO alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped **as directed**.
      5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
   c. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
      1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
      2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
      3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
      4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
      5) NC **OR** NO alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped, **as directed**.
   d. Molded-Case Switch Disconnecting Means:
      1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with in-line fuse block for Class J or L power fuses (depending on ampere rating), providing an interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only.
      2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
      3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with molded-case switch handle.
      4) NC **OR** NO alarm contact that operates only when molded-case switch has tripped, **as directed**.
6. Overload Relays:
   a. Melting-Alloy Overload Relays:
      1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30 tripping characteristic, **as directed**.
      3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
   b. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
      1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30 tripping characteristic, **as directed**.
      3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
      4) Ambient compensated.

5) Automatic resetting.

c. Solid-State Overload Relays:
1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
2) Sensors in each phase.
3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing, **as directed**.
a) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
b) Analog communication module.

d. NC **OR** NO isolated overload alarm contact, **as directed**.

e. External overload reset push button.

7. Control Power:
a. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120 V ac, **as directed**; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200VA, **as directed.**

E. VFCS
1. General Requirements for VFCs: Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508C, **as directed**.
2. Application: Constant torque and variable torque, **as directed**.
3. VFC Description: Variable-frequency power converter (rectifier, dc bus, and IGBT PWM inverter) factory packaged in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
a. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."
b. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
c. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
d. Listed and labeled for single-phase use by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Design and Rating: Match load type such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.
5. Output Rating: Three-phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range **OR** 66 Hz, with torque constant as speed changes, **as directed**; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
6. Unit Operating Requirements:
a. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 10 **OR** 15 percent of VFC input voltage rating, **as directed**.
b. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 3 **OR** 5 percent, **as directed**.
c. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
d. Minimum Efficiency: 96 **OR** 97 percent at 60 Hz, full load, **as directed**.
e. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 **OR** 98 percent under any load or speed condition, **as directed**.
f. Overload Capability: 1.1 **OR** 1.5 times the base load current for 60 seconds **as directed**; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
g. Starting Torque: Minimum of 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
h. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 **OR** 10 percent, **as directed**.
i. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.

j. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.

7. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 16 **OR** 32 bit isolated from all power circuits, **as directed**.
8. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.
   Signal: Electrical **OR** Pneumatic, **as directed**.
9. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
   a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
   b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
   c. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
   d. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
   e. Current Limit: 30 to a minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
10. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
   a. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
   b. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
   c. Under- and overvoltage trips.
   d. Inverter overcurrent trips.
   e. VFC and Motor Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad; NRTL approved.
   f. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
   g. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
   h. Loss-of-phase protection.
   i. Reverse-phase protection.
   j. Short-circuit protection.
   k. Motor overtemperature fault.
11. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.
12. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.
13. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.
14. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
15. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
16. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker **OR** NEMA AB 1, molded-case switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses **OR** NEMA AB 1, thermal-magnetic circuit breaker **OR** NEMA KS 1, nonfusible switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses **OR** NEMA KS 1, fusible switch with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism, **as directed**.
   a. Disconnect Rating (for VFCs without bypass systems): Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
   b. Disconnect Rating (for VFCs with bypass systems): Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
   c. Auxiliary Contacts: NO/NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
   d. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
   e. NC **OR** NO alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped, **as directed**.

F. VFC Controls And Indication
1. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
   a. Power on.
   b. Run.
   c. Overvoltage.
   d. Line fault.
   e. Overcurrent.
   f. External fault.
2. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.
   a. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
   b. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
      1) Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.
3. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
   a. Running log of total power versus time.
   b. Total run time.
   c. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.
4. Indicating Devices: Digital display and additional readout devices as required, mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters, including, but not limited to:
   a. Output frequency (Hz).
   b. Motor speed (rpm).
   c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
   d. Motor current (amperes).
   e. Motor torque (percent).
   f. Fault or alarming status (code).
   g. PID feedback signal (percent).
   h. DC-link voltage (V dc).
   i. Set point frequency (Hz).
   j. Motor output voltage (V ac).
5. Control Signal Interfaces:
   a. Electric Input Signal Interface:
      1) A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc **OR** 4- to 20-mA dc **OR** Operator-selectable "x"- to "y"-mA dc, **as directed**.
      2) A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.
   b. Pneumatic Input Signal Interface: 3 to 15 psig (20 to 104 kPa).
   c. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BAS or other control systems:
      1) 0- to 10-V dc.
      2) 4- to 20-mA dc.
      3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
      4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
   d. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (0 to 10V dc **OR** 4 to 20mA dc **OR** operator-selectable "x" to "y" mA dc, **as directed**), which can be configured for any of the following:
      1) Output frequency (Hz).
      2) Output current (load).
      3) DC-link voltage (V dc).
      4) Motor torque (percent).
      5) Motor speed (rpm).
      6) Set point frequency (Hz).

e. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
   1) Motor running.
   2) Set point speed reached.
   3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
   4) PID high- or low-speed limits reached.

6. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.
   a. Number of Loops: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
7. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display VFC status and alarms and energy usage, **as directed**. Allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration; settings retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.
   a. Network Communications Ports: Ethernet and RS-422/485.
   b. Embedded BAS Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135 BACnet **OR** Echelon LonWorks **OR** Ethernet TCP/IP **OR** Johnson Metasys N2 **OR** Modbus/Memobus **OR** Siemens System 600 APOGEE **OR** an acceptable equivalent protocols accessible via the communications ports, **as directed**.

G. VFC Line Conditioning And Filtering
1. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit TDD at input terminals of VFCs to less than 5 **OR** 8 percent and THD(V) to 3 **OR** 5 percent, **as directed**.
2. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit TDD and THD(V) at the defined PCC per IEEE 519.
3. Input Line Conditioning: **Requirements** as directed by the Owner .
4. VFC Output Filtering: **Requirements** as directed by the Owner .
5. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

H. VFC Bypass Systems
1. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes, and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.
2. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.
   OR
   Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic **OR** manual, allows local and remote transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface **OR** automatic control system feedback, **as directed**.
3. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode, **as directed**.
   a. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA rated contactor, **as directed**.
   b. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA rated contactor, **as directed**.
   c. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
      OR
      Bypass Controller: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier, **as directed**, arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing and

troubleshooting of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

a. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA rated contactor, **as directed**.
b. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA rated contactors, **as directed**.
c. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

4. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) **OR** Reduced-voltage (autotransformer) type, **as directed**.
   a. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
   b. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
   c. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
   d. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
      1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
      2) Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
   e. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT **OR** control power source of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices, **as directed**.
   f. CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200 VA, **as directed**.
5. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.
   a. Melting-Alloy Overload Relays:
      1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30 tripping characteristic, **as directed**.
      3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
   b. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
      1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30 tripping characteristic, **as directed**.
      3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
      4) Ambient compensated.
      5) Automatic resetting.
   c. Solid-State Overload Relays:
      1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
      2) Sensors in each phase.
      3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing, **as directed**.
      4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
      5) Analog communication module.
      6) NC **OR** NO isolated overload alarm contact, **as directed**.
      7) External overload reset push button.

I. Optional VFC Features
   1. Multiple-Motor Capability: VFC suitable for variable-speed service to multiple motors. Overload protection shuts down VFC and motors served by it, and generates fault indications, when overload protection activates.
      a. Configure to allow two or more motors to operate simultaneously at the same speed; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.

b. Configure to allow two motors to operate separately; operator selectable via local or remote switch or contact closures; single overload relay for both motors; separate output magnetic contactors for each motor.
c. Configure to allow two motors to operate simultaneously and in a lead/lag mode, with one motor operated at variable speed via the power converter and the other at constant speed via the bypass controller **OR** separate overload relay for each controlled motor, **as directed**.

2. Damper control circuit with end of travel feedback capability.
3. Sleep Function: Senses a minimal deviation of a feedback signal and stops the motor. On an increase in speed-command signal deviation, VFC resumes normal operation.
4. Motor Preheat Function: Preheats motor when idle to prevent moisture accumulation in the motor.
5. Firefighter's Override (Smoke Purge) Input: On a remote contact closure from the firefighter's control station **OR** smoke-control fan controller, **as directed**, this password-protected input:
   a. Overrides all other local and external inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands).
   b. Forces VFC to operate motor, without any other run or speed command, at a field-adjustable, preset speed **OR** Forces VFC to transfer to Bypass Mode and operate motor at full speed, **as directed**.
   c. Causes display of Override Mode on the VFC display.
   d. Reset VFC to normal operation on removal of override signal automatically **OR** manually, **as directed**.
6. Remote Indicating Circuit Terminals: Mode selection, controller status, and controller fault.
7. Remote digital operator kit.
8. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a notebook computer.

J. Feeder-Tap Units
1. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity, **as directed**, to meet available fault currents.
   a. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
   b. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
   c. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
      1) Instantaneous trip.
      2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      3) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
   d. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
   e. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
   f. MCCB Features and Accessories:
      1) Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
      2) Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material, **as directed**.
      3) Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

4) Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator, **as directed**.
5) Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
6) Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section “Electrical Power Monitoring And Control", **as directed**.
7) Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75 percent of rated voltage, **as directed**.
8) Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
9) Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts **OR** "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts **OR** "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts, **as directed**.
10) Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

2. Fusible Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, clips to accommodate specified fuses with lockable handle.
3. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section “Fuses".

K. Transient Voltage Suppression Devices
1. Surge Protection Device Description: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, wired-in **OR** plug-in **OR** bolt-on solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** non-modular type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the MCC short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories, **as directed**:
   a. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
   b. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
   c. Integral disconnect switch.
   d. Redundant suppression circuits.
   e. Redundant replaceable modules.
   f. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
   g. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
   h. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
   i. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one NO and one NC, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
   j. Four **OR** Six digit transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges, **as directed**.
2. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase, **as directed**.
3. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
4. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 **OR** 208Y/120 **OR** 600Y/347V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows, **as directed**:
   a. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
   b. Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
   c. Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.

   OR

   Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:

a. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
b. Line to Ground: 400 V.
c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

OR

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240 **OR** 480 **OR** 600-V, three-phase, three-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:

a. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
b. Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.

L. Instrumentation

1. Instrument Transformers (for the Owner metering): IEEE C57.13, NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:
   a. PTs: IEEE C57.13; 120 V, 60 Hz, single **OR** tapped **OR** double secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings, **as directed**. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
   b. Current Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound **OR** bushing **OR** bar **OR** window type, **as directed**; single **OR** double secondary winding and secondary shorting device, **as directed**. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
   c. CPTs: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
   d. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.
2. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
   a. Listed **OR** recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.
   b. Inputs from sensors or 5-A current-transformer secondaries, and potential terminals rated to 600 V.
   c. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with the indicated maximum accuracy tolerances:
      1) Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
      2) Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
      3) Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
      4) Three-Phase Real Power (Megawatts): Plus or minus 2 percent.
      5) Three-Phase Reactive Power (Megavars): Plus or minus 2 percent.
      6) Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
      7) Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
      8) Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
      9) Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
      10) Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
   d. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
3. Ammeters, Voltmeters, and Power-Factor Meters: ANSI C39.1.
   a. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) square, flush **OR** semiflush, with antiparallax 250-degree scale and external zero adjustment, **as directed**.
   b. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.
4. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.
   a. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and phase-to-neutral voltages where a neutral is included.
   b. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.

5. Feeder Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90 **OR** 120 degree scale, **as directed**. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for feeder circuits, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:
   a. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
   b. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
   c. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
   d. Potential indicating lamps.
   e. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
   f. Four-dial clock register.
   g. Integral demand indicator **OR** Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter, **as directed**.
   h. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
   i. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
   j. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
   k. Appropriate multiplier tag.
7. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:
   a. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
   b. Suitable for use with MCC watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
   c. Cyclometer.
   d. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
   e. Positive chart drive mechanism.
   f. Capillary pen holding a minimum of one month's ink supply.
   g. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
   h. Capable of indicating and recording 5 **OR** 15 **OR** 30 minute integrated demand of totalized system, **as directed**.

M. MCC Control Power

Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from CPT **OR** 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit, **as directed**.

1. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two CPTs in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each CPT at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.
2. Control Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
3. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

N. Enclosures

1. Indoor Enclosures: Freestanding steel cabinets unless otherwise indicated. NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 1A **OR** Type 2 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
2. Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.
   a. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point **OR** Manual switching of branch-circuit protective device, **as directed**.
   b. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in MCC **OR** 120-V external branch circuit, **as directed**.
3. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray **OR** custom color finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface, **as directed**.
4. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 3R, non-walk-in aisle **OR** Type 3R, with interior-lighted walk-in aisle, **as directed**.

a. Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard **OR** custom color, **as directed**; undersurfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating.
b. Enclosure: Flat **OR** Downward, rearward sloping roof, **as directed**; bolt-on rear covers **OR** rear hinged doors for each section, with provisions for padlocking, **as directed**.
c. Doors: Personnel door at each end of aisle, minimum width of 30 inches (762 mm); opening outwards; with panic hardware and provisions for padlocking **OR** cylinder lock, **as directed**.
d. Accessories: Fluorescent lighting fixtures, ceiling mounted; wired to a three-way light switch at each end of aisle; GFCI duplex receptacle; emergency battery pack lighting fixture installed on wall of aisle midway between personnel doors.
e. Walk-in Aisle Heating and Ventilating:
1) Factory-installed electric unit heater(s), wall **OR** ceiling mounted, with integral thermostat and disconnect and with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of 40 deg F (5 deg C) with outside design temperature of 104 deg F (40 deg C), **as directed**.
2) Factory-installed exhaust fan with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of 100 deg F (38 deg C) with outside design temperature of 23 deg F (minus 5 deg C).
3) Ventilating openings complete with replaceable fiberglass air filters, **as directed**.
4) Thermostat: Single stage; wired to control heat and exhaust fan.
5) Power for Space Heaters, Ventilation, Lighting, and Receptacle: Include a CPT within the switchboard.
6) Supply voltage shall be 120 **OR** 120/240 **OR** 120/208V ac **OR** Power for space heaters, ventilation, lighting, and receptacle provided by a remote source, **as directed**.

5. Compartments: Modular; individual lift-off, **as directed**, doors with concealed hinges and quick-captive screw fasteners. Interlocks on units requiring disconnecting means in off position before door can be opened or closed, except by operating a permissive release device.
6. Interchangeability: Compartments constructed to allow for removal of units without opening adjacent doors, disconnecting adjacent compartments, or disturbing operation of other units in MCC; same size compartments to permit interchangeability and ready rearrangement of units, such as replacing three single units with a unit requiring three spaces, without cutting or welding.
7. Wiring Spaces:
a. Vertical wireways in each vertical section for vertical wiring to each unit compartment; supports to hold wiring in place.
b. Horizontal wireways in bottom **OR** top **OR** bottom and top of each vertical section for horizontal wiring between vertical sections, **as directed**; supports to hold wiring in place.

O. Auxiliary Devices
1. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
a. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy **OR** Standard duty, oiltight type, **as directed**.
1) Push Buttons: Covered **OR** Lockable **OR** Recessed **OR** Shielded **OR** Shrouded **OR** Unguarded types; maintained **OR** momentary contact unless otherwise indicated, **as directed**.
2) Pilot Lights: Incandescent **OR** LED **OR** Neon **OR** Resistor **OR** Transformer, types, **as directed**; **Color(s)**, **as directed**; push to test, **as directed**.
3) Selector Switches: Rotary type.
b. Elapsed-Time Meters: Heavy duty with digital readout in hours; nonresettable **OR** resettable, **as directed**.
c. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90 **OR** 120 degree scale and plus or minus 2 percent accuracy with selector switches having an off position, **as directed**.
2. NC **OR** NO **OR** Reversible NC/NO contactor auxiliary contact(s), **as directed**.

3. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable pneumatic **OR** solid-state time-delay relays, **as directed**.
4. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
5. Space heaters, with NC auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
6. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.
7. Cover gaskets for Type 1 enclosures.
8. Terminals for connecting power factor correction capacitors to the line **OR** load side of overload relays, **as directed**.
9. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks; unwired **OR** wired, **as directed**.
10. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Identified and compartmented steel box **OR** cabinet with hinged lockable door, **as directed**.

P. Characteristics And Ratings
1. Wiring: NEMA ICS 18, Class I **OR** Class I-S, **as directed**, Type A **OR** Type B, for starters above Size 3 **OR** Type B-D, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type B-T, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type C, **as directed**.
   OR
   Wiring: NEMA ICS 18, Class II **OR** Class II-S, **as directed**, Type B, for starters above Size 3 **OR** Type B-D, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type B-T, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type C, **as directed**.
2. Control and Load Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.
3. Nominal System Voltage: 480 V, three phase, three wire **OR** 480Y/277 V, three phase, four wire, **as directed**.
   OR
   Nominal System Voltage: 208 V, three phase, three wire **OR** 208/120 V, three phase, four wire, **as directed**.
4. Short-Circuit Current Rating for Each Unit: Combination series rated **OR** Fully rated, **as directed**; 22 **OR** 42 **OR** 65 **OR** 100 kA, **as directed**.
5. Short-Circuit Current Rating of MCC: Combination series rated **OR** Fully rated, **as directed**, with its main overcurrent device; 22 **OR** 42 **OR** 65 **OR** 100 kA, **as directed**.
6. Environmental Ratings:
   a. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
   b. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C)
   c. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
   d. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m), or 3300 feet (1000 m) if MCC includes solid-state devices.
7. Main-Bus Continuous Rating: 600 **OR** 800 **OR** 1000 **OR** 1200 **OR** 1600 **OR** 2000 A, **as directed**.
8. Vertical-Bus Minimum, **as directed**, Continuous Rating: 300 **OR** 600 **OR** 1200 A, **as directed**.
9. Horizontal and Vertical Bus Bracing (Short-Circuit Current Rating): Match MCC short-circuit current rating.
10. Main Horizontal and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of MCC's main and vertical sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends, **as directed**. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder bus, **as directed**.
11. Vertical Phase and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire usable height of vertical sections, except for sections incorporating single units.
12. Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver **OR** tin plated, **as directed**.

OR

Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy, **as directed**.

13. Neutral Buses: 50 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables, **as directed**. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus, **as directed**.

    OR

    Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables, **as directed**. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus, **as directed**.
14. Ground Bus: Minimum size required by UL 845, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors, **as directed**. For busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run, **as directed**.
15. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible MCCs:
    a. Main Devices: Drawout **OR** Fixed mounted, **as directed**.
    b. Controller Units: Drawout and fixed mounted, **as directed**.
    c. Feeder-Tap Units: Drawout and fixed mounted, **as directed**.
    d. Sections front and rear aligned.
16. Utility Metering Compartment: Fabricated, barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealed door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic MCC. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.
17. the Owner Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks, **as directed**.
18. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic MCC.
19. Pull Box on Top of an MCC:
    a. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as MCC.
    b. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
    c. Removable covers forming top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear easily removable for drilling and cutting.
    d. Insulated bottom of fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into MCC.
    e. Cable supports arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables, including those for future installation.
    f. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
20. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of unit.
21. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.
22. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for OCPDs and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

Q. Source Quality Control
1. MCC Testing: Inspect and test MCCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 18.
2. VFC Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.
    a. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor **OR** a motor that is comparable to that for which the VFC is rated, **as directed**.
    b. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.
3. MCCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine areas and surfaces to receive MCCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Harmonic Analysis Study
1. Perform a harmonic analysis study to identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze possible **OR** designated operating scenarios, including recommendations for VFC input filtering to limit TDD and THD(V) at the defined PCC to specified levels, **as directed**.
2. Prepare a harmonic analysis study report complying with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification.

C. Installation
1. Coordinate layout and installation of MCCs with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
2. Floor-Mounting Controllers: Install MCCs on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 3 Section “Cast-in-place Concrete".
    a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
    b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
    c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section “Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
5. Install fuses in each fusible switch.
6. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section “Fuses".
7. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.
8. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
9. Install power factor correction capacitors. Connect to the line **OR** load side of overload relays, **as directed**. If connected to the load side of overload relays, adjust overload heater sizes to accommodate the reduced motor full-load currents.
10. Comply with NECA 1.

D. Identification
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section “Identification For Electrical Systems" for identification of MCC, MCC components, and control wiring.
    a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
    b. Label MCC and each cubicle with engraved nameplate.
    c. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
    d. Mark up a set of manufacturer's connection wiring diagrams with field-assigned wiring identifications and return to manufacturer for inclusion in Record Drawings.

2. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for MCCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of MCCs.

E. Control Wiring Installation
1. Install wiring between enclosed controllers **OR** master terminal boards, **as directed**, and remote devices and facility's BAS **OR** and facility's central-control system, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section “Control-voltage Electrical Power Cables".
2. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
3. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.
   a. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
   b. Connect selector switches within enclosed controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

F. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for installation of conduit in Division 26 Section “Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Drawings indicate general arrangement of conduit, fittings, and specialties.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section “Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

G. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
   a. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
   b. Test continuity of each circuit.
3. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
   b. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
   c. Test continuity of each circuit.
   d. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify the Owner before starting the motor(s).
   e. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
   f. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   g. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
   h. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
      1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each multipole enclosed controller. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each multipole enclosed controller 11 months after date of Final Completion.
      3) Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
   i. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

j. Mark up a set of manufacturer's drawings with all field modifications incorporated during construction and return to manufacturer for inclusion in Record Drawings.

4. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed controllers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

H. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

I. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
2. Adjust overload relay heaters or settings if power factor correction capacitors are connected to the load side of the overload relays.
3. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes **OR** 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors, **as directed**. Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify the Owner before increasing settings.
4. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers at 50 **OR** 65 **OR** 80 percent, **as directed**.
5. Set field-adjustable switches and program microprocessors for required start and stop sequences in reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers.
6. Program microprocessors in VFCs for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Final Completion.
7. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section “Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study".

J. Protection
1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
2. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Final Completion.

K. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based, reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 26 24 19 00b

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 24 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 24 19 00	26 27 33 00	Power Distribution Units
26 24 19 00	26 29 13 13	Enclosed Controllers

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 25 13 00 - ENCLOSED BUS ASSEMBLIES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for enclosed bus assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
   a. Feeder-bus assemblies.
   b. Plug-in bus assemblies.
   c. Bus plug-in devices.

C. Definitions
1. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

D. Submittals
1. Shop Drawings: For each type of bus assembly **OR** bus assembly and plug-in device, **as directed**.
   a. Show fabrication and installation details for enclosed bus assemblies. Include plans, elevations, and sections of components. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, connectors, straight lengths, and fittings.
   b. Show fittings, materials, fabrication, and installation methods for listed fire-stop barriers and weather barriers.
   c. Indicate required clearances, method of field assembly, and location and size of each field connection.
   d. Detail connections to switchgear, switchboards, transformers, and panelboards.
   e. Wiring Diagrams: Power and signal **OR** and control, **OR** signal, and control, **as directed**, wiring.
   f. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
      1) Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
      2) Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
2. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and sections, drawn to scale. Include scaled bus-assembly layouts and relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical, and electrical elements. Show the following:
   a. Vertical and horizontal enclosed bus-assembly runs, offsets, and transitions.
   b. Clearances for access above and to the side of enclosed bus assemblies.
   c. Vertical elevation of enclosed bus assemblies above the floor or bottom of structure.
   d. Support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
3. Location of adjacent construction elements including light fixtures, HVAC and plumbing equipment, fire sprinklers and piping, signal and control devices, and other equipment.
4. Product Certificates: For each type of enclosed bus assembly, signed by product manufacturer.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosed bus assemblies, plug-in devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" Include the following:
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
      1) The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2) The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

6. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed bus assemblies to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 1.3.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed bus assemblies and plug-in devices through one source from a single manufacturer.
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
5. Comply with NEMA BU 1, "Busways."
6. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver, store, and handle enclosed bus assemblies according to NEMA BU 1.1, "General Instructions for Proper Handling, Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Busway Rated 600 Volts or Less."

G. Project Conditions

1. Derate enclosed bus assemblies for continuous operation at indicated ampere ratings for ambient temperature not exceeding 122 deg F (50 deg C) **OR** 140 deg F (60 deg C), **as directed**.

H. Coordination

1. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed bus assemblies and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or floors or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
2. Coordinate size and location of concrete curbs around openings for vertical bus. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 31.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Enclosed Bus Assemblies

1. Feeder-Bus Assemblies: NEMA BU 1, low-impedance bus assemblies in nonventilated housing; single-bolt joints; ratings as indicated.
   a. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting provisions and attachments for feeder-bus assemblies with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces

defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" when mounting provisions and attachments are anchored to building structure

b. Voltage: 120/208 **OR** 240 **OR** 480 **OR** 277/480, **as directed**, V; 3 phase; 100 **OR** 200 **OR** percent neutral capacity, **as directed**.
c. Temperature Rise: 55 deg C above 40 deg C ambient maximum for continuous rated current.
d. Bus Materials: Current-carrying copper **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, conductors, fully insulated with Class 130C insulation except at joints; plated surface at joints.
e. Ground:
   1) 50 percent capacity integral with housing.
   2) 50 percent capacity internal bus bars of material matching bus material.
   3) 50 percent capacity isolated, internal bus bar of material matching bus material.
f. Enclosure: Steel with manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Aluminum with manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Weatherproof, steel or aluminum with manufacturer's standard finish, sealed seams, drains, and removable closures, **as directed**.
g. Fittings and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard.
h. Mounting: Arranged flat, edgewise, or vertically without derating.

2. Plug-in Bus Assemblies: NEMA BU 1, low-impedance bus assemblies in nonventilated housing; single-bolt joints; ratings as indicated.
   a. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting provisions and attachments for switchboards with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" when mounting provisions and attachments are anchored to building structure.
   b. Voltage: 120/208 **OR** 240 **OR** 480 **OR** 277/480, **as directed**, V; 3 phase; 100 **OR** 200 **OR** percent neutral capacity, **as directed**.
   c. Temperature Rise: 55 deg C above 40 deg C ambient maximum for continuous rated current.
   d. Bus Materials: Current-carrying copper **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, conductors, fully insulated with Class 130C insulation except at stabs and joints; plated surface at stabs and joints.
   e. Ground:
      1) 50 percent capacity integral with housing.
      2) 50 percent capacity internal bus bar of material matching bus material.
      3) 50 percent capacity isolated, internal bus bar of material matching bus material.
   f. Enclosure: Steel, with manufacturer's standard finish, plug-in openings 24 inches (610 mm) o.c., and hinged covers over unused openings **OR** Aluminum, with manufacturer's standard finish, plug-in openings 24 inches (610 mm) o.c., and hinged covers over unused openings, **as directed**.
   g. Fittings and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard.
   h. Mounting: Arranged flat, edgewise, or vertically without derating.

B. Plug-In Devices
   1. Fusible Switches: NEMA KS 1, heavy duty; with R-type rejection **OR** J-type **OR** L-type, **as directed**, fuse clips to accommodate specified fuses; hookstick-operated handle, lockable with two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position. See Division 16 Section "Fuses" for fuses and fuse installation requirements.
   2. Molded-Case Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1; hookstick-operated handle, lockable with two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
   3. TVSS: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with NEMA KS 1, fusible, disconnect switch and external handle to isolate TVSS from busway. TVSS product and installation requirements are specified in Division 16 Section "Transient Voltage Suppression."
   4. Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, full voltage, nonreversing, across the line, unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Control Circuit: 120 V; obtained from integral control power transformer, **as directed**, with a control power transformer **OR** source, **as directed**, of enough capacity to operate connected pilot, indicating and control devices, plus 100 percent spare capacity.

b. Combination Controller: Factory-assembled combination controller and disconnect switch with or without overcurrent protection as indicated.
   1) Fusible Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with R-type rejection **OR** J-type, **as directed**, fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 947-4-1, as certified by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. See Division 26 Section "Fuses" for fuses and fuse installation requirements.
      OR
      Nonfusible Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.
      OR
      Circuit-Breaker Disconnecting Means: NEMA AB 1, motor-circuit protector with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.

c. Overload Relay: Ambient-compensated type with inverse-time-current characteristic and NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic. Overload relays shall have heaters or sensors in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of specific motor to which they connect and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.

d. Adjustable Overload Relay: Dipswitch selected for motor running overload protection with NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic, and selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing. Adjustable overload relays shall have Class II ground-fault protection with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.

5. Multispeed Motor Controllers: Match controller to motor type, application, and number of speeds; include the following accessories:
   a. Compelling relay ensures motor starts only at low speed.
   b. Accelerating relay ensures properly timed acceleration through speeds lower than that selected.
   c. Decelerating relay ensures automatically timed deceleration through each speed.
6. Accessories: Hookstick operator, adjustable to maximum extension of 14 feet (4.3 m), **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Support bus assemblies independent of supports for other elements such as equipment enclosures at connections to panelboards and switchboards, pipes, conduits, ceilings, and ducts.
   a. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and to comply with seismic-restraint details according to Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
   b. Design each fastener and support to carry 200 lb (90 kg) or 4 times the weight of bus assembly, whichever is greater.
   c. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
   d. Support bus assembly with not less than 3/8-inch (10-mm) steel rods. Install side bracing to prevent swaying or movement of bus assembly. Modify supports after completion to eliminate strains and stresses on bus bars and housings.
   e. Fasten supports securely to building structure according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
2. Install expansion fittings at locations where bus assemblies cross building expansion joints. Install at other locations so distance between expansion fittings does not exceed manufacturer's recommended distance between fittings.
3. Construct rated fire-stop assemblies where bus assemblies penetrate fire-rated elements such as walls, floors, and ceilings. Seal around penetrations according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

4. Install weatherseal fittings and flanges where bus assemblies penetrate exterior elements such as walls or roofs. Seal around openings to make weathertight. See Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and application.
5. Install a concrete curb at least 4 inches (100 mm) high around bus-assembly floor penetrations.
6. Coordinate bus-assembly terminations to equipment enclosures to ensure proper phasing, connection, and closure.
7. Tighten bus-assembly joints with torque wrench or similar tool recommended by bus-assembly manufacturer. Tighten joints again after bus assemblies have been energized for 30 days.
8. Install bus-assembly, plug-in units. Support connecting conduit independent of plug-in unit.

B. Connections
1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
4. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Final Completion, perform an infrared scan of bus assembly including joints and plug-in units.
   a. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
   b. Perform 2 follow-up infrared scans of bus assembly, one at 4 months and the other at 11 months after Final Completion.
   c. Prepare a certified report identifying bus assembly checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.
5. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

D. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges and overload relay trip settings, **as directed**, as indicated.

E. Cleaning
1. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

F. Protection
1. Provide final protection to ensure that moisture does not enter bus assembly.

END OF SECTION 26 25 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 25 16 00	26 25 13 00	Enclosed Bus Assemblies
26 27 13 00	02 84 33 00	Overhead Electrical Distribution

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 27 16 00 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of raceways and boxes. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

C. Definitions
1. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
2. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
3. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
4. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
5. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
6. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
7. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
8. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
9. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
2. Shop Drawings: For the following raceway components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   a. Custom enclosures and cabinets.
   b. For handholes and boxes for underground wiring, including the following:
      1) Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
      2) Frame and cover design.
      3) Grounding details.
      4) Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
      5) Joint details.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required for wireways, nonmetallic wireways and surface raceways, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
4. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
   a. Structural members in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
   b. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures and cabinets and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" AND "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems". Include the following:
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
      1) The term "withstand" means "the cabinet or enclosure will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will retain its enclosure characteristics, including its interior accessibility, after the seismic event."

b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

6. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
7. Source quality-control test reports.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metal Conduit And Tubing
1. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
2. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.
3. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
4. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC, **as directed**.
a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
5. EMT: ANSI C80.3.
6. FMC: Zinc-coated steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Zinc-coated steel or aluminum, **as directed**.
7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
8. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
a. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
b. Fittings for EMT: Steel **OR** Die-cast, **as directed**, set-screw **OR** compression, **as directed**, type.
c. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
9. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

B. Nonmetallic Conduit And Tubing
1. ENT: NEMA TC 13.
2. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.
3. LFNC: UL 1660.
4. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
5. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

C. Optical Fiber/Communications Cable Raceway And Fittings
1. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for plenum **OR** riser **OR** general-use, **as directed**, installation.

D. Metal Wireways
1. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 12 **OR** 3R, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

3. Wireway Covers: Hinged type **OR** Screw-cover type **OR** Flanged-and-gasketed type **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

E. Nonmetallic Wireways
1. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with no holes or knockouts. Cover is gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections are flanged, with stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
   OR
   Description: PVC plastic, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with snap-on cover and mechanically coupled connections with plastic fasteners.
2. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

F. Surface Raceways
1. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected **OR** Prime coating, ready for field painting, **as directed**.
2. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two-piece construction, manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected from manufacturer's standard **OR** custom, **as directed**, colors.

G. Boxes, Enclosures, And Cabinets
1. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
2. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
3. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.
4. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast metal **OR** Sheet metal, **as directed**, fully adjustable **OR** semi-adjustable, **as directed**, rectangular.
5. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
6. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
7. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum **OR** galvanized, cast iron, **as directed**, with gasketed cover.
8. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
   b. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic, finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint, **as directed**.
9. Cabinets:
   a. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
   b. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
   c. Key latch to match panelboards.
   d. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
   e. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

H. Handholes And Boxes For Exterior Underground Wiring
1. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.
   a. Color of Frame and Cover: Gray **OR** Green **as directed**.
   b. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open **OR** closed **OR** integral closed, **as directed**, bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
   d. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
   e. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC" **OR** "TELEPHONE" **OR** as indicated for each service, **as directed**.

f. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
g. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
3. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester-resin enclosure joined to polymer-concrete top ring or frame.
4. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers of polymer concrete **OR** reinforced concrete **OR** cast iron **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.

I. Sleeves For Raceways
1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch (1.3- or 3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
4. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

J. Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

K. Source Quality Control For Underground Enclosures
1. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
a. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
b. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
c. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Raceway Application
1. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
a. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC **OR** RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC **OR** RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, **as directed**.
b. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC **OR** EMT **OR** RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, **as directed**.
c. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40 **OR** 80, **as directed**,-PVC, direct buried.

d. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC **OR** LFNC, **as directed**.
e. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R **OR** 4, **as directed**.
f. Application of Handholes and Boxes for Underground Wiring:
1) Handholes and Pull Boxes in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete **OR** Fiberglass enclosures with polymer-concrete frame and cover **OR** Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, **as directed**, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
2) Handholes and Pull Boxes in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer-concrete units **OR** Heavy-duty fiberglass units with polymer-concrete frame and cover, **as directed**, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
3) Handholes and Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.

2. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:
a. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT **OR** ENT **OR** RNC, **as directed**.
b. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT **OR** RNC identified for such use, **as directed**.
c. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC, **as directed**. Includes raceways in the following locations:
1) Loading dock.
2) Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
3) Mechanical rooms.
d. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT **OR** ENT **OR** RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, **as directed**.
e. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
f. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC, **as directed**.
g. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** EMT, **as directed**.
h. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: Riser-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** EMT, **as directed**.
i. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: General-use, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** Riser-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** Plenum-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** EMT, **as directed**.
j. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, in damp or wet locations.

3. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch (16-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (21-mm), **as directed**, trade size.
4. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
a. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
b. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.
5. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
6. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.

B. Installation
1. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
2. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

3. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
4. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" AND "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
5. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
6. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.
7. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
   a. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
   b. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
   c. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.
9. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
10. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
11. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
12. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
    a. 3/4-Inch (19-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
    b. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
    c. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
13. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
    a. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
    b. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
14. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
    a. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:
       1) Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
       2) Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
       3) Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
       4) Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
    b. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change.

c. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.

15. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, **as directed**, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
    a. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
    b. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
16. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
17. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
18. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

C. Installation Of Underground Conduit
1. Direct-Buried Conduit:
    a. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
    b. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving"
    c. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
    d. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
    OR
    Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
        1) Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
        OR
        For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
    e. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits, placing them 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of conduit.

D. Installation Of Underground Handholes And Boxes
1. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
3. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
4. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, **Depth of frost line below grade at Project site** as directed by the Owner below grade.
5. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.

6. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

E. Sleeve Installation For Electrical Penetrations
1. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
   a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
   b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
5. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
6. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
7. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
8. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
9. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies, **as directed**.
10. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
11. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
12. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
13. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
14. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

F. Sleeve-Seal Installation
1. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

G. Firestopping
1. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

H. Protection
1. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

a. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
b. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 27 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 27 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 27 16 00	26 24 19 00	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control
26 27 16 00	26 24 19 00b	Motor-Control Centers
26 27 23 00	26 27 26 00	Wiring Devices

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 27 26 00 - WIRING DEVICES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of wiring devices. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. This Section includes the following:
a. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
b. Twist-locking receptacles.
c. Receptacles with integral surge suppression units.
d. Wall-box motion sensors.
e. Isolated-ground receptacles.
f. Hospital-grade receptacles.
g. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
h. Solid-state fan speed controls.
i. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
j. Communications outlets.
k. Pendant cord-connector devices.
l. Cord and plug sets.
m. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

C. Definitions
1. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
2. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
3. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
4. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
5. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
6. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

D. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
3. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Straight Blade Receptacles
1. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.

2. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498 Supplement SD.
3. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
   a. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
4. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
   a. Description: Labeled to comply with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

B. GFCI Receptacles
1. General Description: Straight blade, feed **OR** non-feed, **as directed**,-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
2. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
3. Hospital-Grade, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.

C. TVSS Receptacles
1. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 1449, with integral TVSS in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground.
   a. TVSS Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 volts and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.
   b. Active TVSS Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
2. Duplex TVSS Convenience Receptacles:
   a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
3. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
   a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
4. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.
   a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
5. Isolated-Ground, Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
   a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

D. Hazardous (Classified) Location Receptacles
1. Available Wiring Devices for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with NEMA FB 11 and UL 1010.

E. Twist-Locking Receptacles
1. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
2. Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
   a. Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw

terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

F. Pendant Cord-Connector Devices
1. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.
a. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
b. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

G. Cord And Plug Sets
1. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
a. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
b. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

H. Snap Switches
1. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.
2. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
3. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:
a. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."
4. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
a. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
5. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
6. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

I. Wall-Box Dimmers
1. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
2. Control: Continuously adjustable slider **OR** toggle switch **OR** rotary knob, **as directed**; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
3. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
a. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "OFF," **as directed**.
4. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

J. Fan Speed Controls
1. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.
a. Continuously adjustable slider **OR** toggle switch **OR** rotary knob, **as directed**, 5 A **OR** 1.5 A, **as directed**.
b. Three-speed adjustable slider **OR** rotary knob, **as directed**, 1.5 A.

K. Occupancy Sensors
1. Wall-Switch Sensors:

a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).

2. Wall-Switch Sensors:
   a. Description: Adaptive-technology type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 20 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
3. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
   a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).
4. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
   a. Description: Dual technology, with both passive-infrared- and ultrasonic-type sensing, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, and a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).
5. Wide-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
   a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 150-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).
6. Exterior Occupancy Sensors:
   a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, weatherproof, adjustable time delay up to 15 minutes, 180-degree field of view, and 110-foot (34-m) detection range. Minimum switch rating: 1000-W incandescent, 500-VA fluorescent.

L. Communications Outlets
1. Telephone Outlet:
   a. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for terminating 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.
2. Combination TV and Telephone Outlet:
   a. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e; and one Type F coaxial cable connector.

M. Wall Plates
1. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
   a. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
   b. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting **OR** Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic **OR** 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished stainless steel **OR** 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, brushed brass with factory polymer finish **OR** 0.05-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick anodized aluminum **OR** 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick steel with chrome-plated finish, **as directed**.
   c. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel **OR** Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic, **as directed**.
   d. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic **OR** Cast aluminum, **as directed**, with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."
2. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum **OR** thermoplastic, **as directed**, with lockable cover.

N. Floor Service Fittings
1. Type: Modular, flush-type **OR** flap-type **OR** above-floor, **as directed**, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
2. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
3. Service Plate: Rectangular **OR** Round, **as directed**, die-cast aluminum **OR** solid brass, **as directed**, with satin finish.
4. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening **OR** Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 Category 5e jacks for UTP cable, **as directed**.

O. Poke-Through Assemblies

1. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service outlet assembly.
    a. Service Outlet Assembly: Pedestal type with services indicated **OR** Flush type with two simplex receptacles and space for two RJ-45 jacks **OR** Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks, **as directed**.
    b. Size: Selected to fit nominal 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
    c. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
    d. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
    e. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of two **OR** four, **as directed**, 4-pair, Category 5e voice and data communication cables.

P. Multioutlet Assemblies
1. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
2. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
3. Wire: No. 12 AWG.

Q. Service Poles
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -wired units to extend power and voice and data communication from distribution wiring concealed in ceiling to devices or outlets in pole near floor.
    a. Poles: Nominal 2.5-inch- (65-mm-) square cross section, with height adequate to extend from floor to at least 6 inches (150 mm) above ceiling, and with separate channels for power wiring and voice and data communication cabling.
    b. Mounting: Ceiling trim flange with concealed bracing arranged for positive connection to ceiling supports; with pole foot and carpet pad attachment.
    c. Finishes: Manufacturer's standard painted finish and trim combination **OR** Satin-anodized aluminum, **as directed**.
    d. Wiring: Sized for minimum of five No. 12 AWG power and ground conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 3 or 5 voice and data communication cables.
    e. Power Receptacles: Two duplex, 20-A, heavy-duty, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R units.
    f. Voice and Data Communication Outlets: Blank insert with bushed cable opening **OR** Two RJ-45 Category 5e jacks **OR** Four RJ-45 Category 5e jacks, **as directed**.

R. Finishes
1. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
    a. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Almond **OR** Black **OR** Brown **OR** Gray **OR** Ivory **OR** White **OR** As selected, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
    b. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
    c. TVSS Devices: Blue.
    d. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange **OR** As specified above, with orange triangle on face, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation
1. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
2. Coordination with Other Trades:

a. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
b. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
c. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
d. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

3. Conductors:
   a. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
   b. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
   c. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
   d. Existing Conductors:
      1) Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
      2) Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
      3) Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.
4. Device Installation:
   a. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
   b. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
   c. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
   d. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
   e. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
   f. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
   g. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
   h. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
   i. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
5. Receptacle Orientation:
   a. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up **OR** down, **as directed**, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right **OR** left, **as directed**.
   b. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.
6. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
7. Dimmers:
   a. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
   b. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
   c. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
8. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
9. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

B. Identification
   1. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
      a. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black **OR** white **OR** red, **as directed**,-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

C. Field Quality Control
   1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
      a. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
      b. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
      c. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.
   2. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
      a. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
      b. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
      c. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
      d. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
      e. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
      f. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
   3. Test straight blade convenience outlets in patient-care areas **OR** hospital-grade convenience outlets, **as directed**, for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz. (115 g).

END OF SECTION 26 27 26 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 27 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 27 26 00	26 27 16 00	Raceways And Boxes
26 27 26 00	26 24 19 00	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control
26 27 26 00	26 29 13 13	Enclosed Controllers

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 27 33 00 - POWER DISTRIBUTION UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured power distribution units.
2. Input-output, circuit-breaker section.
3. Isolation transformer section.
4. SPD system.
5. Output panelboards.
6. Power distribution unit controls.
7. Monitoring, status, and alarm annunciation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. EPO: Emergency power-off.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Coordination Meeting(s): For power distribution units. Conduct meeting(s) [**as videoconference**] [**or**] site location as directed by the Owner before **Construction activity** as directed by the Owner .

1. Attendees: Installers, fabricators, representatives of manufacturers, representatives of Owner, and administrants for field tests and inspections. Notify Architect [**, Construction Manager**] [**, and Owner's Commissioning Authority**] of scheduled meeting dates.
2. Coordinate layout and installation of power distribution units with Owner's equipment.
3. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute record to other participants.
4. Adjust arrangements and locations of power distribution units to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of equipment.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
2. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for power distribution units.

3. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and [**mounting**] [**attachment**] details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Certificates: For each type of power distribution unit, signed by product manufacturer.

D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions: Record copy of official installation[**and testing**] instructions issued to Installer by manufacturer for the following:

1. Installation and startup checks.

B. Source quality-control reports.

1. For each factory test of power distribution units.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver equipment in fully enclosed vehicles after specified environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment is to be placed.

B. Store equipment in spaces with environments controlled within manufacturer's ambient temperature and humidity tolerances for non-operating equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXISTING PRODUCTS[**TO BE MODIFIED**] [**TO BE REMOVED AND RE-INSTALLED**]

A. Basis for Pricing: **Name of manufacturer; model number or series for existing product** as directed by the Owner .

B. Description: **Description of existing product, including special features, options, and finishes that may impact Work** as directed by the Owner .

C. Accessories: **Accessories included with existing product** as directed by the Owner .

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.

2.3 MANUFACTURED POWER DISTRIBUTION UNITS

A. Description: Integrated and coordinated assembly of power-line-conditioning and distribution components packaged in single cabinet or modular assembly of cabinets [**each with full-swivel casters mounted to bottom frame**]. Include the following components:

1. Input-power, circuit-breaker section.
2. Isolation transformer.
3. SPD system.
4. Output panelboard(s).
5. Alarm, monitoring, and control system.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical."

D. Wiring Access: [**Top**] [**and**] [**bottom**] wiring access.

E. Unit Capacity Rating: Carry indicated RMS kilovolt-ampere load continuously without affecting normal operation of circuit breakers, monitoring system, or unit controls and without exceeding rated insulation temperature for the following input voltage and load current:

1. Input Voltage: Within rated input-voltage tolerance band of unit.
2. Load Current: Minimum of 3.0 crest factor and 85 percent total harmonic distortion.

2.4 INPUT-POWER, CIRCUIT-BREAKER SECTION

A. Description: Three-pole, [**shunt-tripped,**]thermal-magnetic-type circuit breaker, rated for indicated interrupting capacity and 125 percent of input current of unit at 100 percent rated load at unit capacity rating.

1. Dual-Input Units:

a. Two input circuit breakers arranged to provide transfer between two input-power sources.
b. Controls and interfaces to allow selecting either open- or closed-transition transfer between two input-power sources.
c. Use 120 V permissive signal from both upstream voltage sources to indicate acceptable conditions for closed-transition transfer.
d. Open second circuit breaker automatically after closed-transition transfer is completed.

2. Static Transfer Switch: Three-pole, double-throw; solid-state, automatic transfer switch.

2.5 ISOLATION TRANSFORMER SECTION

A. Description: Dry-type, electrostatically shielded, three-phase, common-core, convection-air-cooled isolation transformer.

1. Comply with UL 1561[**including requirements for nonsinusoidal load-current-handling capability defined by designated K-factor**].
2. Cores: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses, one leg per phase.
3. Coil Material and Insulation: [**Aluminum**] [**Copper**] windings, 220 deg C insulation class.
4. Temperature Rise: Designed for [**80**] [**115**] [**150**] deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient.
5. Output Impedance: 3.5 plus or minus 0.5 percent.
6. Regulation: 2 to 4 percent maximum, at full-resistive load; 5 percent maximum, at rated nonlinear load.
7. Taps: Six full-capacity compensation taps at 2.5 percent increments; two above and four below nominal voltage.
8. Full-Load Efficiency: Minimum 96 percent at rated[**nonlinear**] load.
9. Magnetic-Field Strength External to Transformer Enclosure: Less than 0.1 G at 18 inch (450 mm).
10. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated must comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.

    a. Unit may not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor.
    b. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.

11. Electrostatic Shielding: Independently shield each winding with full-width, [**single**] [**double**], copper, electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.

    a. Coil leads and terminal trips must be arranged to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output connections.
    b. Shield Terminal: Separate, and marked "Shield" for grounding connection. Shield must be connected to reference ground point for distribution panels.
    c. Capacitance: Limit capacitance between primary and secondary windings to maximum of 33 pF over frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.
    d. Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: 120 dB minimum, 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minus 65 dB minimum, 1.5 to 100 kHz.
    e. Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: 52 dB minimum, 1.5 to 10 kHz.

12. Neutral Rating: [**1.732 times**] [**200 percent of**] system full-load ampere rating.
13. Shipping Restraints: Paint or otherwise color code bolts, wedges, blocks, and other restraints that are to be removed after installation and before energizing. Use fluorescent colors that are easily identifiable inside transformer enclosure.

2.6 SPD SYSTEM

A. Description: Integrated SPD system, complying with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits," to protect unit panelboard, and having the following features:

1. Disconnect Device: Manual, three-pole, fused disconnect switch to de-energize SPD system while permitting power distribution units to continue operation. Fuses must be rated for 200 kA interrupting capacity.
2. Nonlinear Loading: System must accommodate rated-load current with minimum 3.0 crest factor and 85 percent total harmonic distortion.

2.7 OUTPUT PANELBOARDS

A. Description: Panelboards complying with Section 262416 "Panelboards" except for mounting provisions. Mount [**single**] [**double**] panelboards on power distribution unit behind flush doors. Include the following features:

1. Construction: [**30**] [**42**] pole, [**208 V**] [**240 V**], three phase; capable of accepting branch circuit breakers rated up to 100 A.
2. Panelboard Rating: [**225 A**] or as directed by the Owner , with main circuit breaker.
3. Panelboard Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: Copper, with neutral bus at least [**1.732**] [**two**] times nominal phase bus rating.
4. Isolated Ground Bus: Copper, adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from supports.
5. Branch Circuit Breakers: [**Bolt**] [**Plug**] on.
6. Cable Racks: Removable and arranged for supporting and routing cables for panelboard entrance.
7. Access Panels: Arranged so additional branch-circuit wiring can be installed and connected in future.

2.8 POWER DISTRIBUTION UNIT CONTROLS

A. Include the following control features:

1. EPO switch integral with power distribution unit.
2. Power-off input terminals for connection to remote EPO switch.
3. Shutdown with automatic unit disconnection for the following alarm conditions:

    a. High temperature in transformer coil.
    b. High or low input or output voltage.
    c. Phase loss.
    d. Ground fault.
    e. Reverse-phase rotation.

4. Alarm Contacts: Electrically isolated, Form C (one normally open and one normally closed), summary alarm; contact set must change state if monitored function goes into alarm mode.
5. Auxiliary Control Outputs: **Control function outputs** as directed by the Owner .

2.9 MONITORING, STATUS, AND ALARM ANNUNCIATION

A. Description: Microprocessor-based monitoring, status, and alarm annunciation panel mounted flush in front of power distribution unit to provide status display and failure-indicating interface for the following:

1. Power Monitoring:

    a. Input Voltage: Line-to-line, RMS.
    b. Output Voltage: Line-to-line and line-to-neutral, RMS.
    c. Output current.

2. Status Indication: Unit on.
3. Alarm Annunciation:

    a. High temperature in transformer coil.
    b. High and low input voltage.
    c. High and low output voltage.

d. Phase loss.
e. Ground fault.
f. Frequency.
g. Phase rotation.
h. SPD module failure.

4. Audible Alarm and Silencing Switch: Alarm sounds when alarm indication occurs. Silencing switch must silence audible alarm but leave visual indication active until alarm condition is corrected.

2.10 SOUND LEVEL

A. Fully assembled products must have average audible sound levels [**more than 3 dB**] below the following maximum sound levels, without fans running, when factory tested in accordance with IEEE C57.12.91:

1. 9 kVA and Smaller: [**40**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .
2. 9.01 to 30 kVA: [**45**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .
3. 30.01 to 50 kVA: [**45**] [**48**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .
4. 50.01 to 150 kVA: [**50**] [**53**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .
5. 150.01 to 300 kVA: [**55**] [**58**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .
6. 300.01 to 500 kVA: [**60**] [**63**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .
7. 500.01 to 700 kVA: [**62**] [**65**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .
8. 700.01 to 1000 kVA: [**64**] [**67**] dB(A-weighted) or as directed by the Owner .

B. Mount transformer on rubber isolation pads.

2.11 ENCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS

A. Single, freestanding, galvanized steel, UL 50E Type 1 enclosure. Opening of exterior door may not provide access to live parts. Panels and covers that expose hazardous voltages must require tools to remove.

B. Access from front, top, and side only for installation, operations, and normal maintenance, including infrared scanning of bus and breakers. Normal operating controls and instrumentation must be located on front of enclosure.

C. Arrange enclosure to allow lifting and moving via forklift.

2.12 FINISHES

A. Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and primer.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will witness required factory tests. Notify Architect at least 14 days before date of tests and indicate their approximate duration.

B. Testing Administrant: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] qualified electrical testing agency to evaluate power distribution units.

C. [**Factory**]Tests and Inspections: Test and inspect power distribution units, by, or under supervision of, qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, in accordance with referenced before delivering to site. Affix label with name and date of [**manufacturer's**] [**qualified electrical testing laboratory's**] certification of system compliance.

1. Conduct factory sound-level tests.

D. Nonconforming Work:

1. Equipment that does not pass tests and inspections will be considered defective.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Connections to Connectors and Terminals: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with torque-tightening values in UL 486A-486B.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Techniques:

1. Arrange power distribution units to provide adequate access to equipment and circulation of cooling air. Locate transformers away from corners and not parallel to adjacent wall surface.
2. Coordinate size and location of [**concrete bases**] [**access flooring support**] with actual power distribution unit provided.
3. Equipment Mounting:

a. Install power distribution units on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
b. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
c. Supports must penetrate and be independent of access flooring.

D. Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Identify equipment and install warning signs in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
3. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
4. Install flexible connections at conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate sound and vibration transmission to building structure.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. [**Acceptance**] Testing Preparation:

1. **Requirements** dB(A-weighted) as directed by the Owner .

B. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by [**Architect**] [**Tenant**] [**authorities having jurisdiction**] N**ames or titles of witnesses** dB(A-weighted) as directed by the Owner .

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform manufacturer's recommended tests and inspections.
2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS for circuit breakers, molded case; and for transformers, dry type, air cooled, low voltage. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Perform functional tests of power distribution units throughout their operating ranges. Test each monitoring, status, and alarm function.
4. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

D. Nonconforming Work:

1. Power distribution unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

E. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

F. Manufacturer Services:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to [**support**] [**supervise**] field tests and inspections.

3.3 SYSTEM STARTUP

A. [**Engage factory-authorized service representative to perform**] [**Perform**] startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.
2. Verify that power distribution units are installed and connected in accordance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and with published installation requirements in other electrical Sections.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

B. Adjust power distribution units to provide optimal voltage to equipment served throughout normal operating cycle of loads served. Record input and output voltages and adjustment settings, and incorporate into test results.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. After installation, protect power distribution units from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

3.7 MAINTENANCE

A. Infrared Scanning of Power Distribution Units: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform infrared scan of conductor and bus joints and connections. Remove covers so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner. Take visible light photographs at same locations and orientations as infrared scans for documentation to ensure follow-on scans match same conditions for valid comparison.

1. Use infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
2. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform two follow-up infrared scans of power distribution units, one at four months and another at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
3. Instrument: Use infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
4. Report: Prepare certified report that identifies joints and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial actions taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 26 27 33 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 27 73 00	26 27 26 00	Wiring Devices

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 28 13 00 - FUSES

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fuses. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section Includes:
a. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches, panelboards, switchboards, enclosed controllers, and motor-control centers.
b. Plug fuses rated 125-V ac and less for use in plug-fuse-type enclosed switches, fuseholders, and panelboards.
c. Plug-fuse adapters for use in Edison-base, plug-fuse sockets.
d. Spare-fuse cabinets.

C. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Operation and maintenance data.

D. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

E. Project Conditions
1. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Cartridge Fuses
1. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

B. Plug Fuses
1. Characteristics: UL 248-11, nonrenewable plug fuses; 125-V ac.

C. Plug-Fuse Adapters
1. Characteristics: Adapters for using Type S, rejection-base plug fuses in Edison-base fuseholders or sockets; ampere ratings matching fuse ratings; irremovable once installed.

D. Spare-Fuse Cabinet
1. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
a. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.

b. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
c. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
d. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Fuse Applications
1. Cartridge Fuses:
a. Service Entrance: Class L, fast acting **OR** Class L, time delay **OR** Class RK1, fast acting **OR** Class RK1, time delay **OR** Class J, fast acting **OR** Class J, time delay **OR** Class T, fast acting, **as directed**.
b. Feeders: Class L, fast acting **OR** Class L, time delay **OR** Class RK1, fast acting **OR** Class RK1, time delay **OR** Class RK5, fast acting **OR** Class RK5, time delay **OR** Class J, fast acting **OR** Class J, time delay, **as directed**.
c. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1 **OR** Class RK5, **as directed**, time delay.
d. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay **OR** Class RK5, time delay **OR** Class J, fast acting **OR** Class J, time delay, **as directed**.
e. Control Circuits: Class CC, fast acting **OR** time delay, **as directed**.
2. Plug Fuses:
a. Motor Branch Circuits: Edison-base type, dual **OR** Edison-base type, single **OR** Type S, dual **OR** Type S, single, **as directed**,-element time delay.
b. Other Branch Circuits: Edison-base type, single-element fast acting **OR** Edison-base type, dual-element time delay **OR** Edison-base type, single-element time delay **OR** Type S, dual-element time delay **OR** Type S, single-element time delay, **as directed**.

B. Installation
1. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
2. Install plug-fuse adapters in Edison-base fuseholders and sockets. Ensure that adapters are irremovable once installed.
3. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

C. Identification
1. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 28 13 00

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 28 13 00	26 24 19 00a	Switchgear
26 28 16 13	26 24 16 00	Panelboards

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 29 13 13 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work
1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for enclosed controllers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Summary
1. Section includes the following enclosed controllers rated 600 V and less:
   a. Full-voltage manual.
   b. Full-voltage magnetic.
   c. Reduced-voltage magnetic.
   d. Reduced-voltage solid state.
   e. Multispeed.

C. Definitions
1. CPT: Control power transformer.
2. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
3. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
4. N.C.: Normally closed.
5. N.O.: Normally open.
6. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
7. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

D. Performance Requirements
1. Seismic Performance: Enclosed controllers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
   a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

E. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of enclosed controller. Include manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and enclosure types and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings: For each enclosed controller. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, details, and required clearances and service spaces around controller enclosures.
   a. Show tabulations of the following:
      1) Each installed unit's type and details.
      2) Factory-installed devices.
      3) Nameplate legends.
      4) Short-circuit current rating of integrated unit.
      5) Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating of OCPDs in combination controllers by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
      6) Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual OCPDs in combination controllers.
   b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed controllers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
   a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
   a. Routine maintenance requirements for enclosed controllers and installed components.
   b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
   c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
   d. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.
7. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
8. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

F. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed.**.
   a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed,** to supervise on-site testing.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store enclosed controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect enclosed controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
2. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover enclosed controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers; install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller **OR** connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service, **as directed**.

H. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
   a. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
   b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).
2. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
   a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
   b. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
   c. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without the Owner's written permission.
   d. Comply with NFPA 70E.

I. Coordination
1. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
2. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
3. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Full-Voltage Controllers
1. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
2. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing **OR** Two speed, **as directed**.
b. Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, mounting.
c. Red **OR** Green, **as directed**, pilot light.
d. Additional Nameplates: FORWARD and REVERSE for reversing switches **OR** HIGH and LOW for two-speed switches, **as directed**.
3. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Two speed, **as directed**.
b. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type **OR** melting alloy type, **as directed**.
c. Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, mounting.
d. Red **OR** Green, **as directed**, pilot light.
e. Additional Nameplates: HIGH and LOW for two-speed controllers.
4. Integral Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing **OR** Two speed, **as directed**.
b. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters and sensors in each phase, matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and having appropriate adjustment for duty cycle; external reset push button; bimetallic type **OR** melting alloy type, **as directed**.
c. Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, mounting.
d. Red **OR** Green, **as directed**, pilot light.
e. Additional Nameplates: FORWARD and REVERSE for reversing controllers **OR** HIGH and LOW for two-speed controllers, **as directed**.
f. N.O. **OR** N.C., **as directed**, auxiliary contact.
5. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing, **as directed**.
b. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
c. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
d. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
e. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:

1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.

f. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
4) Ambient compensated.
5) Automatic resetting.

g. Solid-State Overload Relay:
1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
2) Sensors in each phase.
3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
5) Analog communication module.

h. N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.

i. External overload reset push button.

6. Combination Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.

a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class R **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.
2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.

b. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.

c. MCP Disconnecting Means:
1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.

d. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.

5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.

B. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers
1. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A; closed-transition; adjustable time delay on transition.
2. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Reduced voltage, electrically held.
a. Configuration:
1) Wye-Delta Controller: Four contactors, with a three-phase starting resistor/reactor bank.
2) Part-Winding Controller: Separate START and RUN contactors, field-selectable for 1/2- or 2/3-winding start mode, with either six- or nine-lead motors; with separate overload relays for starting and running sequences.
3) Autotransformer Reduced-Voltage Controller: Medium-duty service, with integral overtemperature protection; taps for starting at 50, 65, and 80 percent of line voltage; two START and one RUN contactors.
b. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
c. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
d. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
e. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
f. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
4) Ambient compensated.
5) Automatic resetting.
g. Solid-State Overload Relay:
1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
2) Sensors in each phase.
3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
5) Analog communication module.
h. N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
i. External overload reset push button.
3. Combination Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of reduced-voltage magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class R **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.
2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.

b. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
   1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
   2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
   3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.

c. MCP Disconnecting Means:
   1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
   2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
   3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
   4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
   5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.

d. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
   1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
   2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
   3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
   4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
   5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.

C. Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controllers
1. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controllers: Comply with UL 508.
2. Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controllers: An integrated unit with power SCRs, heat sink, microprocessor logic board, door-mounted digital display and keypad, bypass contactor, and overload relay; suitable for use with NEMA MG 1, Design B, polyphase, medium induction motors.
   a. Configuration: Standard duty **OR** Severe duty, **as directed**; nonreversible **OR** reversible, **as directed**.
   b. Starting Mode: Voltage ramping **OR** Current limit **OR** Torque control **OR** Torque control with voltage boost, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
   c. Stopping Mode: Coast to stop **OR** Adjustable torque deceleration **OR** Adjustable braking, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
   d. Shorting (Bypass) Contactor: Operates automatically when full voltage is applied to motor, and bypasses the SCRs. Solid-state controller protective features shall remain active when the shorting contactor is in the bypass mode.
   e. Shorting and Input Isolation, **as directed**, Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type; manufacturer's standard operating voltage, matching control power or line voltage, depending on contactor size and line-voltage rating. Provide coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
   f. Logic Board: Identical for all ampere ratings and voltage classes, with environmental protective coating.
   g. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
      1) CPT Spare Capacity: 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.

h. Adjustable acceleration-rate control using voltage or current ramp, and adjustable starting torque control with up to 400 percent current limitation for 20 seconds.

i. SCR bridge shall consist of at least two SCRs per phase, providing stable and smooth acceleration with **OR** without, **as directed**, external feedback from the motor or driven equipment.

j. Keypad, front accessible; for programming the controller parameters, functions, and features; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following functions:
   1) Adjusting motor full-load amperes, as a percentage of the controller's rating.
   2) Adjusting current limitation on starting, as a percentage of the motor full-load current rating.
   3) Adjusting linear acceleration and deceleration ramps, in seconds.
   4) Initial torque, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
   5) Adjusting torque limit, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
   6) Adjusting maximum start time, in seconds.
   7) Adjusting voltage boost, as a percentage of the nominal supply voltage.
   8) Selecting stopping mode, and adjusting parameters.
   9) Selecting motor thermal overload protection class between 5 and 30.
   10) Activating and de-activating protection modes.
   11) Selecting or activating communication modes.

k. Digital display, front accessible; for showing motor, controller, and fault status; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following:
   1) Controller Condition: Ready, starting, running, stopping.
   2) Motor Condition: Amperes, voltage, power factor, power, and thermal state.
   3) Fault Conditions: Controller thermal fault, motor overload alarm and trip, motor underload, overcurrent, shorted SCRs, line or phase loss, phase reversal, and line frequency over or under normal.

l. Controller Diagnostics and Protection:
   1) Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring SCR and motor thermal characteristics, and providing controller overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
   2) Protection from line-side reverse phasing; line-side and motor-side phase loss; motor jam, stall, and underload conditions; and line frequency over or under normal.
   3) Input isolation contactor that opens when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component or when the motor is stopped.
      OR
      Shunt trip that opens the disconnecting means when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component.

m. Remote Output Features:
   1) All outputs prewired to terminal blocks.
   2) Form C status contacts that change state when controller is running.
   3) Form C alarm contacts that change state when a fault condition occurs.

n. Optional Features:
   1) Analog output for field-selectable assignment of motor operating characteristics; 0 to 10-V dc **OR** 4 to 20-mA dc, **as directed**.
   2) Additional field-assignable Form C contacts, as indicated, for alarm outputs.
   3) Surge suppressors in solid-state power circuits providing three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
   4) Full-voltage bypass contactor operating automatically **OR** manually, with NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch, **as directed**. Power contacts shall be totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; and assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
   5) Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
      a) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      b) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.

c) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.

6) Bimetallic Overload Relays:
   a) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
   b) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
   c) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
   d) Ambient compensated.
   e) Automatic resetting.
7) Solid-State Overload Relay:
   a) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
   b) Sensors in each phase.
   c) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
   d) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
   e) Analog communication module.
8) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
9) External overload reset push button.

3. Combination Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controller: Factory-assembled combination of reduced-voltage solid-state controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
   a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
      1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class L **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.
      2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
      3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
   b. MCP Disconnecting Means:
      1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
      2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
      3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
      4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
      5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
   c. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
      1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
      2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
      3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
      4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
      5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.
   d. Molded-Case Switch Disconnecting Means:
      1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with in-line fuse block for Class J or L power fuses (depending on ampere rating), providing an interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only.
      2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with molded-case switch handle.
4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when molded-case switch has tripped.

D. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers
1. General Requirements for Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
2. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Two speed, full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing, **as directed**; consequent pole **OR** two winding, **as directed**.
b. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
c. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
d. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
e. Compelling relays shall ensure that motor will start only at low speed.
f. Accelerating timer relays shall ensure properly timed acceleration through speeds lower than that selected.
g. Decelerating timer relays shall ensure automatically timed deceleration through each speed.
h. Antiplugging timer relays shall ensure a time delay when transferring from FORWARD to REVERSE and back.
i. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
j. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
4) Ambient compensated.
5) Automatic resetting.
k. Solid-State Overload Relay:
1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
2) Sensors in each phase.
3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
5) Analog communication module.
l. N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
m. External overload reset push button.
3. Combination Multispeed Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of reduced-voltage magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class R **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.

2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.

b. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.

c. MCP Disconnecting Means:
1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.

d. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.

E. Enclosures
1. Enclosed Controllers: NEMA ICS 6, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
a. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
c. Kitchen **OR** Wash-Down, **as directed**, Areas: Type 4X, stainless steel.
d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: Type 4.
e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.
f. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: Type 7 **OR** Type 9, **as directed**.

F. Accessories
1. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
a. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy **OR** Standard, **as directed**,-duty, oiltight, **as directed**, type.
1) Push Buttons: Covered **OR** Lockable **OR** Recessed **OR** Shielded **OR** Shrouded **OR** Unguarded, **as directed**, types; maintained **OR** momentary, **as directed**, as indicated.
2) Pilot Lights: Incandescent **OR** LED **OR** Neon **OR** Resistor **OR** Transformer, **as directed**, types; colors as indicated; push to test, **as directed**.
3) Selector Switches: Rotary type.
b. Elapsed Time Meters: Heavy duty with digital readout in hours; nonresettable **OR** resettable, **as directed**.

c. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale and plus or minus two percent accuracy. Where indicated, provide selector switches with an off position.

2. N.C. **OR** N.O. **OR** Reversible N.C./N.O., **as directed**, auxiliary contact(s).
3. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable pneumatic **OR** solid-state, **as directed**, time-delay relays.
4. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
5. Breather and drain assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in Type 4 **OR** Type 4X **OR** Type 7 **OR** Type 9, **as directed**, enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
6. Space heaters, with N.C. auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in Type 3R **OR** Type 4X **OR** Type 12, **as directed**, enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
7. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.
8. Cover gaskets for Type 1 enclosures.
9. Terminals for connecting power factor correction capacitors to the line **OR** load, **as directed**, side of overload relays.
10. Spare control wiring terminal blocks, quantity as indicated; unwired **OR** wired, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination
1. Examine areas and surfaces to receive enclosed controllers, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Installation
1. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on walls with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
2. Floor-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal-thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
   a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
   b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
5. Install fuses in each fusible-switch enclosed controller.
6. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
7. Install heaters in thermal overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.

8. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
9. Install power factor correction capacitors. Connect to the line **OR** load, **as directed**, side of overload relays. If connected to the load side of overload relays, adjust overload heater sizes to accommodate the reduced motor full-load currents.
10. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Identification
1. Identify enclosed controllers, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
   a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
   b. Label each enclosure with engraved nameplate.
   c. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

D. Control Wiring Installation
1. Install wiring between enclosed controllers and remote devices and facility's central control system, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-voltage Electrical Power Cables".
2. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
3. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.
   a. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
   b. Connect selector switches with enclosed-controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

E. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Perform tests and inspections.
3. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
   a. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
   b. Test continuity of each circuit.
4. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment, **as directed**.
   b. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
   c. Test continuity of each circuit.
   d. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify the Owner before starting the motor(s).
   e. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
   f. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   g. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
   h. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
      1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller 11 months after date of Final Completion.

3) Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

i. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

5. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
6. Prepare test and inspection reports including a certified report that identifies enclosed controllers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

F. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
2. Adjust overload-relay heaters or settings if power factor correction capacitors are connected to the load side of the overload relays.
3. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load ampere ratings and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cooldown between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify the Owner before increasing settings.
4. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers at 50 **OR** 65 **OR** 80, **as directed**, percent.
5. Set field-adjustable switches and program microprocessors for required start and stop sequences in reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.
6. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study", **as directed**.

G. Protection
1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
2. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Final Completion.

H. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based, reduced-voltage solid-state controllers, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 26 29 13 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

Task	Specification	Specification Description
26 29 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

Task	Specification(s)
01 22 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 22 20 00	01 22 16 00
01 22 23 00	01 22 16 00
01 31 33 00	01 22 16 00
01 42 13 00	01 42 13 00
01 42 16 00	01 42 13 00
01 42 19 00	01 42 19 00
01 51 13 00	26 24 16 00
01 52 13 00	01 52 13 00, 01 22 16 00
01 52 19 00	01 22 16 00, 01 52 13 00
01 53 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 54 23 00	01 54 23 00, 01 54 23 00a, 01 22 16 00
01 54 26 00	01 22 16 00
01 55 23 00	01 22 16 00
01 55 26 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 26 00	01 56 26 00, 01 56 26 00a, 01 22 16 00
01 56 29 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 33 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 39 00	01 22 16 00
01 58 13 00	01 22 16 00
01 66 19 00	01 22 16 00
01 71 13 00	01 22 16 00
01 71 23 16	01 71 23 16
01 74 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 74 19 00	01 74 19 00, 01 22 16 00
02 32 13 00	02 32 13 00, 01 22 16 00
02 41 13 13	02 41 13 13, 02 41 19 13
02 41 16 13	02 41 16 13, 02 41 13 13, 02 41 19 13
02 41 19 13	02 41 19 13, 01 71 23 16, 02 41 13 13, 02 41 16 13
02 41 19 16	02 41 13 13, 02 41 16 13, 02 41 19 13
02 43 13 13	01 22 16 00
02 61 26 00	02 61 26 00, 02 82 33 00
02 81 00 00	02 81 00 00, 02 61 26 00
02 82 16 00	02 82 16 00
02 82 33 00	02 82 33 00, 02 82 33 00a, 01 22 16 00, 02 61 26 00, 02 82 16 00
02 83 19 13	02 83 19 13, 02 83 19 13a, 02 83 19 13b, 02 83 19 13c, 02 82 33 00, 02 82 33 00a
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13, 02 83 19 13a, 02 83 19 13b, 02 83 19 13c
02 84 16 00	02 84 16 00, 02 84 16 00a, 02 84 16 00b
02 84 33 00	02 84 33 00
02 87 13 33	02 87 13 33
02 87 16 13	02 87 16 13
02 89 00 00	01 22 16 00, 02 83 19 13, 02 83 19 13a, 02 83 19 13b, 02 83 19 13c
02 90 55 00	01 22 16 00
03 01 30 71	03 01 30 71, 03 01 30 71a, 01 22 16 00
03 05 13 00	03 05 13 00
03 11 13 00	01 22 16 00, 03 05 13 00
03 11 16 13	03 11 16 13, 03 11 16 13a, 03 05 13 00
03 11 23 00	01 22 16 00, 03 05 13 00
03 15 13 13	03 05 13 00
03 15 13 16	03 05 13 00
03 15 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 15 19 00	05 50 00 00
03 21 11 00	03 05 13 00

Task	Specification(s)
03 21 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 22 11 00	03 05 13 00
03 22 13 00	03 05 13 00
03 22 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 30 53 00	03 30 53 00, 03 05 13 00
03 31 13 00	03 31 13 00, 03 31 13 00a, 03 31 13 00b, 03 31 13 00c, 03 31 13 00d, 03 05 13 00
03 35 13 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 19 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 23 00	03 35 23 00, 03 05 13 00
03 35 26 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 29 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 33 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 63 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 66 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 83 00	03 05 13 00
03 37 13 00	03 37 13 00, 03 37 13 00a
03 37 16 00	03 05 13 00, 03 11 16 13
03 39 13 00	03 11 16 13
03 39 23 23	03 05 13 00
03 51 13 00	03 51 13 00
03 51 16 00	03 51 16 00, 03 51 16 00a, 03 51 16 00b
03 53 14 00	03 53 14 00
03 53 19 00	03 53 14 00
03 54 16 00	03 54 16 00
03 61 16 00	01 22 16 00
03 62 13 00	03 62 13 00
03 62 16 00	03 62 13 00
03 64 23 00	03 62 13 00
03 64 26 00	01 22 16 00
05 05 19 00	01 22 16 00, 05 50 00 00
05 05 21 00	05 05 21 00
05 05 23 00	01 22 16 00, 05 05 21 00, 05 50 00 00
05 12 23 00	05 12 23 00, 05 05 21 00, 05 50 00 00
05 13 00 00	05 50 00 00
05 14 13 00	05 14 13 00, 01 22 16 00
05 15 16 00	05 15 16 00, 05 50 00 00
05 15 19 00	05 15 16 00
05 21 19 00	05 21 19 00
05 31 13 00	05 31 13 00
05 31 33 00	05 31 13 00
05 36 00 00	05 31 13 00
05 41 00 00	05 12 23 00
05 42 13 00	05 12 23 00
05 43 00 00	01 22 16 00, 05 12 23 00, 05 50 00 00
05 50 00 00	05 50 00 00
05 51 13 00	05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a, 05 50 00 00
05 51 19 00	05 50 00 00, 05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a
05 51 33 13	05 50 00 00, 05 52 13 00
05 51 33 16	05 50 00 00
05 51 33 23	05 50 00 00, 05 52 13 00
05 52 13 00	05 52 13 00, 05 50 00 00
05 53 13 00	05 53 13 00, 01 22 16 00, 05 50 00 00

Task	Specification(s)
05 54 00 00	05 50 00 00
05 55 13 00	05 50 00 00, 05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a
05 55 16 00	05 50 00 00, 05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a
05 56 00 00	05 50 00 00
05 58 16 00	05 58 16 00, 05 15 16 00
05 59 65 00	01 22 16 00, 05 15 16 00
06 01 20 91	06 01 20 91
06 05 23 00	06 05 23 00, 06 05 23 00a, 06 05 23 00b, 06 10 00 00
06 05 73 13	01 22 16 00
06 05 73 33	06 05 23 00, 06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a, 06 05 23 00b, 06 15 13 00a
06 10 00 00	06 10 00 00
06 11 13 00	06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a
06 11 16 00	06 11 16 00, 01 22 16 00, 06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a
06 15 13 00	06 15 13 00, 06 15 13 00a, 06 11 16 00, 06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a
06 16 23 00	06 16 23 00, 06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a
06 16 33 00	06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a, 06 16 23 00
06 16 43 00	06 11 16 00, 06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a, 06 16 23 00
07 01 50 81	07 01 50 81, 07 01 50 81a, 07 51 13 00, 07 53 23 00
07 05 13 00	07 01 50 81, 07 01 50 81a, 07 52 13 00, 07 52 16 00, 07 53 16 00, 07 53 23 00
07 11 13 00	07 11 13 00, 07 14 16 00
07 13 13 00	07 13 13 00, 07 11 13 00
07 13 53 00	07 13 53 00, 03 01 30 71a
07 14 13 00	07 14 13 00
07 14 16 00	07 14 16 00
07 16 13 00	07 16 13 00
07 16 16 00	07 16 16 00
07 16 19 00	07 16 19 00
07 17 13 00	07 17 13 00
07 19 13 00	07 19 13 00
07 19 16 00	07 19 13 00
07 21 13 13	07 21 13 13, 07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 52 13 00, 07 52 16 00, 07 53 16 00, 07 53 23 00
07 21 13 16	07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 52 13 00, 07 52 16 00, 07 53 16 00, 07 53 23 00
07 21 13 19	07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 52 13 00, 07 52 16 00, 07 53 16 00, 07 53 23 00
07 21 16 00	07 21 16 00
07 21 23 00	07 21 16 00
07 21 26 00	07 21 16 00
07 21 29 00	07 21 16 00
07 22 16 00	07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 52 13 00, 07 52 16 00, 07 53 16 00, 07 53 23 00
07 24 13 00	07 24 13 00, 07 24 13 00a
07 26 13 00	06 10 00 00
07 31 13 13	07 31 13 13
07 31 16 00	07 31 16 00
07 31 26 00	07 31 26 00
07 31 29 00	07 31 29 00
07 31 29 13	07 31 29 00
07 31 29 16	07 31 29 00
07 31 29 19	01 22 16 00, 07 31 29 00
07 31 33 00	07 31 33 00, 01 22 16 00
07 32 13 00	07 32 13 00
07 32 16 00	07 32 16 00
07 34 00 00	07 31 13 13, 07 31 16 00, 07 31 26 00, 07 31 29 00, 07 32 13 00
07 41 13 00	07 41 13 00, 07 41 13 00a
07 41 33 00	07 41 13 00
07 42 13 00	07 41 13 00

Task	Specification(s)
07 42 13 19	07 42 13 19
07 42 63 00	01 22 16 00
07 42 93 00	07 42 93 00
07 46 16 00	07 46 16 00, 07 46 16 00a, 07 41 13 00, 07 42 93 00
07 46 19 00	07 41 13 00, 07 46 16 00, 07 42 93 00, 07 46 16 00a
07 46 23 00	06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a, 06 16 23 00
07 46 29 00	06 10 00 00, 06 05 23 00a, 06 16 23 00
07 46 33 00	07 42 93 00
07 46 46 00	07 46 46 00, 07 46 46 00a, 01 22 16 00, 07 42 93 00
07 46 63 00	07 46 63 00, 07 46 16 00a
07 51 13 00	07 51 13 00, 06 05 23 00a, 07 01 50 81, 07 01 50 81a, 07 52 13 00, 07 52 16 00, 07 53 23 00
07 52 13 00	07 52 13 00, 07 01 50 81
07 52 16 00	07 52 16 00, 07 01 50 81
07 53 16 00	07 53 16 00, 07 01 50 81, 07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 53 23 00
07 53 23 00	07 53 23 00, 07 01 50 81, 07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a
07 53 29 00	07 01 50 81, 07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 53 23 00
07 54 19 00	07 54 19 00, 07 01 50 81
07 54 23 00	07 54 23 00, 07 01 50 81
07 56 00 00	07 56 00 00, 07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 53 23 00
07 57 13 00	07 56 00 00
07 58 00 00	07 51 13 00
07 62 13 00	07 62 13 00
07 63 00 00	07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 07 63 00 00b, 07 62 13 00
07 65 16 00	07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 53 23 00, 07 56 00 00
07 71 13 00	07 62 13 00
07 71 23 00	07 71 23 00, 07 71 23 00a, 01 22 16 00, 07 62 13 00
07 71 26 00	07 62 13 00
07 72 13 00	07 72 13 00, 07 72 13 00a
07 72 23 00	07 72 23 00, 07 72 13 00
07 72 26 00	07 72 23 00
07 72 33 00	07 72 23 00
07 72 36 00	07 72 23 00
07 72 53 00	07 31 13 13, 07 72 23 00
07 72 56 00	07 72 56 00, 07 72 56 00a, 07 72 56 00b, 07 72 56 00c
07 72 63 00	01 22 16 00
07 73 00 00	07 51 13 00, 07 01 50 81a, 07 52 13 00, 07 52 16 00, 07 53 16 00, 07 53 23 00
07 76 16 00	01 22 16 00
07 81 16 00	07 81 16 00
07 81 23 00	07 81 16 00
07 81 33 00	07 81 16 00
07 84 13 16	07 84 13 16, 07 84 13 16a, 07 84 43 00
07 84 13 19	07 84 13 16, 07 84 13 16a, 07 84 43 00
07 84 16 00	03 05 13 00
07 84 43 00	07 84 43 00, 07 84 13 16, 07 84 13 16a
07 84 56 13	07 84 56 13, 07 81 16 00
07 91 23 00	07 91 23 00
07 91 26 00	07 91 23 00
07 92 13 00	07 91 23 00
07 92 19 00	07 91 23 00
07 95 13 13	07 95 13 13
07 95 13 16	07 95 13 16, 07 95 13 13
08 01 11 61	08 01 11 61, 08 01 11 61a
08 01 52 61	08 01 52 61

Task	Specification(s)
08 01 81 10	07 42 13 19
08 05 13 00	08 05 13 00, 08 05 13 00a, 08 05 13 00b, 01 22 16 00, 08 01 11 61
08 31 13 00	08 31 13 00
08 62 00 00	08 62 00 00
08 62 23 00	08 62 00 00
08 63 13 00	08 62 00 00
08 66 00 00	08 66 00 00
08 90 00 00	08 90 00 00
08 91 16 00	08 90 00 00
08 95 13 00	01 22 16 00
08 95 16 00	01 22 16 00, 05 50 00 00, 07 71 23 00
22 01 40 81	22 01 40 81, 22 01 40 81a
22 05 13 00	22 05 13 00
22 05 19 00	22 05 19 00
22 05 23 00	22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a, 22 05 23 00b, 22 05 23 00c, 01 22 16 00, 23 05 23 00
22 05 29 00	22 05 29 00
22 05 48 13	22 05 48 13
22 05 53 00	22 05 53 00
22 05 76 00	22 05 76 00, 22 05 76 00a
22 07 19 00	22 07 19 00, 22 07 19 00a
22 11 16 00	22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 11 16 00c, 22 11 16 00d, 22 11 16 00e, 22 11 16 00f, 22 11 16 00g, 07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 22 13 16 00, 07 63 00 00b, 23 21 13 23d
22 11 19 00	22 11 19 00, 01 22 16 00, 07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 07 63 00 00b, 22 11 16 00f, 22 05 23 00b, 22 05 23 00c
22 11 23 13	22 11 23 13, 22 11 23 13a
22 11 23 23	22 11 23 23, 23 21 23 13, 22 05 23 00c
22 12 19 00	22 12 19 00, 22 12 19 00a
22 12 23 13	22 33 00 00, 22 34 00 00
22 12 23 26	22 12 23 26, 22 12 23 26a, 22 05 23 00c
22 13 16 00	22 13 16 00, 07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 22 11 16 00a, 07 63 00 00b, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 23 00c, 22 05 76 00a
22 13 19 13	22 13 19 13
22 13 19 26	22 13 19 26
22 13 19 33	22 05 23 00a, 23 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00c, 22 05 76 00a
22 13 23 00	22 13 19 26
22 13 29 13	22 13 29 13, 22 13 29 13a, 22 13 29 13b
22 13 29 16	22 13 29 13a
22 13 29 33	01 22 16 00
22 14 29 13	22 14 29 13, 22 05 23 00c
22 15 13 00	22 15 13 00, 22 15 19 13
22 15 19 13	22 15 19 13, 22 15 13 00
22 15 19 19	22 15 19 13, 22 15 13 00
22 31 16 00	22 31 16 00
22 33 00 00	22 33 00 00
22 33 30 13	22 33 00 00
22 33 30 16	22 33 00 00, 22 34 00 00
22 33 33 00	22 33 00 00
22 34 00 00	22 34 00 00
22 34 36 13	22 33 00 00
22 34 36 23	22 34 36 23
22 34 46 11	22 34 00 00
22 35 23 13	22 35 23 13, 22 33 00 00
23 01 10 91	23 01 10 91, 23 05 93 00

Task	Specification(s)
23 01 20 91	23 05 93 00, 23 01 10 91
23 01 30 51	23 01 30 51, 23 05 93 00, 23 01 10 91
23 01 50 61	23 01 50 61, 23 21 13 23d
23 01 60 71	23 01 60 71
23 05 13 00	23 05 13 00
23 05 16 00	23 05 16 00
23 05 17 00	07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 07 63 00 00b, 22 05 23 00c
23 05 19 00	23 05 19 00, 07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 22 05 19 00, 07 63 00 00b, 22 05 23 00c
23 05 23 00	23 05 23 00, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00a, 22 05 76 00, 22 11 16 00b, 23 21 13 23d, 23 21 23 13, 22 11 16 00g, 22 05 23 00b, 22 05 23 00c
23 05 29 00	23 05 29 00, 23 05 29 00a, 07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 22 05 29 00, 07 63 00 00b, 22 05 23 00c
23 05 48 13	23 05 48 13, 23 05 48 13a, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 48 13, 22 11 16 00b, 23 21 13 23d, 22 11 16 00f, 22 11 16 00g, 22 05 23 00c
23 05 53 00	23 05 53 00, 22 05 53 00, 23 01 10 91
23 05 93 00	23 05 93 00, 01 71 23 16, 02 41 19 13, 23 01 10 91
23 07 13 00	23 07 13 00
23 07 16 00	23 07 13 00
23 21 13 23	23 21 13 23, 23 21 13 23a, 23 21 13 23b, 23 21 13 23c, 23 21 13 23d, 23 21 13 23e, 07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 22 11 16 00, 22 13 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 11 16 00c, 22 11 16 00d, 22 11 16 00e, 07 63 00 00b, 22 12 23 26, 22 11 16 00f, 22 11 16 00g, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 23 00b, 22 05 23 00c, 22 05 76 00a, 23 05 29 00a
23 21 16 00	01 22 16 00, 07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 07 63 00 00b, 22 12 23 26, 23 21 13 23c, 22 12 23 26a, 23 21 13 23d, 23 21 23 13, 22 11 16 00f, 22 11 16 00g, 22 11 19 00, 22 05 23 00b, 22 05 23 00c, 23 05 29 00a
23 21 23 13	23 21 23 13, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 23 00c
23 21 23 16	23 21 23 13, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 23 00c
23 21 23 23	23 21 23 23, 23 21 23 23a, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 23 00c
23 21 29 00	23 21 23 13, 22 05 23 00c
23 22 16 00	22 05 19 00, 22 11 16 00b, 23 05 19 00, 22 11 16 00f, 22 11 16 00g, 22 05 23 00b, 22 05 23 00c, 23 05 29 00a
23 22 23 13	23 22 23 13
23 23 13 00	22 11 16 00g, 22 05 23 00c
23 23 16 00	07 63 00 00, 07 63 00 00a, 22 13 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 07 63 00 00b, 23 21 13 23d, 22 11 16 00g, 23 01 60 71
23 23 23 00	23 01 60 71
23 25 13 00	23 25 13 00, 22 12 23 26, 22 12 23 26a, 23 21 13 23d, 22 05 23 00c
26 01 30 91	01 22 16 00
26 01 50 51	01 22 16 00, 02 84 16 00, 02 84 16 00a, 02 84 16 00b
26 01 50 52	02 84 16 00, 02 84 16 00a, 02 84 16 00b
26 01 50 53	02 84 16 00, 02 84 16 00a, 02 84 16 00b
26 01 50 81	02 84 16 00a
26 05 00 00	26 05 00 00
26 05 13 16	26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 19 16a
26 05 19 13	26 05 19 13, 26 05 13 16a
26 05 19 16	26 05 19 16, 26 05 19 16a, 26 05 19 16b, 26 05 19 16c, 26 05 19 16d, 26 05 19 16e, 26 05 19 16f, 26 05 19 16g, 01 22 16 00, 26 05 00 00, 26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 23 00
26 05 23 00	26 05 23 00
26 05 26 00	26 05 26 00, 26 05 26 00a, 01 22 16 00, 02 84 33 00
26 24 13 00	26 24 13 00, 26 24 13 00a, 26 24 13 00b
26 24 16 00	26 24 16 00
26 24 19 00	26 24 19 00, 26 24 19 00a, 26 24 19 00b, 01 22 16 00, 26 27 33 00, 26 29 13 13
26 25 13 00	26 25 13 00
26 25 16 00	26 25 13 00

Task	Specification(s)
26 27 13 00	02 84 33 00
26 27 16 00	26 27 16 00, 01 22 16 00, 26 24 19 00, 26 24 19 00b
26 27 23 00	26 27 26 00
26 27 26 00	26 27 26 00, 01 22 16 00, 26 27 16 00, 26 24 19 00, 26 29 13 13
26 27 33 00	26 27 33 00
26 27 73 00	26 27 26 00
26 28 13 00	26 28 13 00, 26 24 19 00a
26 28 16 13	26 24 16 00
26 29 13 13	26 29 13 13, 01 22 16 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

GORDIAN®

gordian.com | 855.467.9444
30 Patewood Drive
Building 2, Suite 350
Greenville, South Carolina 29615